









LORD BERNERS' PROISSART.



SIR JOHN FROISSART'S  
**CHRONICLES**

OF

ENGLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN, PORTUGAL, SCOTLAND,

BRITTANY, FLANDERS,

AND

THE ADJOINING COUNTRIES ;

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL FRENCH,

AT THE COMMAND OF KING HENRY THE EIGHTH,

BY

**John Bourchier, Lord Berners.**

---

REPRINTED FROM PYNSON'S EDITION OF

1523, AND 1525 ;

WITH THE NAMES OF PLACES AND PERSONS CAREFULLY CORRECTED,

*TO WHICH ARE ADDED,*

**A MEMOIR OF THE TRANSLATOR,**

AND

*A COPIOUS INDEX TO THE WORK.*

VOL. II.

---

**London :**

PRINTED FOR F. C. AND J. RIVINGTON ; T. PAYNE ; WILKIE AND ROBINSON ; LONGMAN, HURST,  
REES, ORME, AND BROWN ; CADELL AND DAVIES ; J. MURRAY ; R. H. EVANS ;  
J. MAWMAN ; AND R. BALDWIN.

1812.





**H**ere begynneth the thirde  
and fourthe boke of syr John Froissart of the cron-  
cles of Englande, fraunce, Spaygne, Portyngale,  
Scotlande, Bretayne, flaunders, and other places  
adioynyng, translated out of frenche into englysshe  
by Johan Bourchier, knyght, lorde Berners, de-  
putie generall of the Kynges towne of Ca-  
lais and marchesse of the same; at the com-  
maundement of our most highe redouted  
soverayne lorde kynge Henrye the  
eyght, kynge of England and of  
Fraunce and highe defender  
of the Chrysten  
faithe, &c.



## THE PREFACE OF SIR JOHAN BOURCHIER, KNYGHT, LORDE BERNERS.

SYTHE hystorie (as I haue in my Preface vpon the fyrst volume of this cronycle declared) is the wytnesse of tymes, the lyght of trouthe, the lyfe of remembraunce, the maistres of the lyfe, y messenger of olde season, wherof innumerable comodyties growen: I ne thynke the labours myspeute, that I at the highe comaunderment of our moost redoughted soueraygne lorde Henry the eyght, kyng of Englande and of Frauce, highe defender of the Christen faythe, &c. haue employed aboute the translacyon of nowe the foure volumes of sir Johan Froissart, out of Freuche into our Englysshe tong. Certainly nat the boütie of the same cronycles, in whom are conteygned the warres of these parties, whiche warres (discryued in Freuche by sir Johan Froissart ryght ornatly), as many that haue great vnderstandyng in dyuers tonges, in whome warres are written, plainly saye, for knyghtly feates, manhode, and humanyte, passe ryght moche the warres of farre countreis: nor the great pleasure that my noble countreyenne of Englande take in redyng y worthy and knightly dedes of their valyaunt auncettours, encourageth me halfe so moche, as the princely exhorte, whiche, of all erthely kynges the very worshyppe, and honour, our foresaid gracyous soueraygne gaue me; he, who for the manyfolde royall vertues in his highnesse foude, nat of two or thre small realmes, but is worthy to reygne and be kyng ouer the vnyuersall worlde, delyteth in nothyng more than to haue, as I sayd, the moost famous dedes of his predecessours and subiettes sette out with all dilygence; so that it mought appere to euery mannes sight, ouer what and howe worthy people his auncettours haue done, and nowe his maiestie with all kyngly prudence reigneth: and herin his hyghnesse taketh synguler pleasure to beholde howe his worthy subiettes, seyng in hystorie the very famous dedes, as it were ymages, represent their valyaunt auncettours, contende by vigorous vertue and manhode to folowe, yea to passe them if they maye. Truely, the ymages as they vsed in olde tyme to erecte in worshyp and remembraunce of them that were descended of noble blode, ne beare halfe the wytnesse that the noble dedes sette out in hystorie done; whiche well appereth by the wordes of the prudent kyng Agesilaus, who dying, comaundered that neyther ymage nor picture to his resemblaunce shulde be made: for if I haue, sayd he, any noble thyng famously done, it shall beare wytnesse ynough of me: if I haue nought done, certainly all the ymages lytell aueylen, as who saythe suche thynges mought be made in mynde of them that were but dastardes, and neuer dyde worthy dede in all their lyfe: wherfore, for the loue and honour that I beare to our moost puissaunt soueraygne, and to do pleasure to his subiettes, bothe nobles and commons, I haue endeoured me to translate out of Frēche (as sayd is) into Englysshe the four volumes of sir Johan Froissart, and reduced them into twayne; wherin if I haue erred, I praye them that shall defaute fynde to cōsyder the greatnesse of the hystorie and my good wyll, that aske nothyng elles of them for my great labour, but of their curtesy to amende where nede shal be; and yet for their so doynge, I shall praye to god finally to sende them the blyse of heuen. Amen.

¶ Thus endeth the preface of sir Johan Bouchier, knight, lord Berners, deputie of Calais, translatur of this present cronycle: and hereafter foloweth the table, with they chapters as the stande in the boke by order, &c.



HEREAFTER FOLOWETH

THE TABLE OF THIS PRESENT VOLUME.

FIRST, howe syr Johan Bourchyer, gouernour of Gaunt duryng the truse, had newe vitayled the towne of Gūt; and howe a maner of people, called comporselles,<sup>a</sup> dyd moche hurte in the country . . . . . Capitulo primo.

Howe ſ bridge of Taylbourcke was won by the frenchemen; and howe the englisshmen fortyfied themselfe agaynst the cōmyng of the frenchmen; and howe the admyrall of Fraūce and his rout aryued at Edenborowe in Scotlande . . . . . Cap. ii.

Howe the frenchemen founde a wyld country of Scotlāde, and were yuell content with the admyrall; and howe he pacyfyed them with fayre wordes; and howe Fraunces Atreman and his company had nerehande taken Ardenbourke in Flaunders . . . . . Cap. iii.

Howe the lorde of saint Albyne and Enguerante zendequyn saued Ardenbourke fro takynge; and howe the quene of Hungery sent ambassadours into Fraunce, to marry therle of Valoyes to her eldest doughter . . . . . Cap. iv.

Howe the duchesse of Brabant wrote to duke Frederyke of Bauyere<sup>b</sup> of the maryage of the yonge frenche kyng with her nese Isabell of Bauyer;<sup>b</sup> and howe the duke and the lady came to Quesnoy . . . . . Cap. v.

Howe Fraunces Atreman toke the towne of Dan;<sup>c</sup> and howe the frenche kynge wedded the lady Isabell of Bauyere,<sup>b</sup> and after wente and layde siege to Dan;<sup>c</sup> Cap. vi.

Howe dyuers burgesses of Sluse were beheeded; and howe Sluse was chaunged for the lande of Bethune; and howe the siege of Dan<sup>c</sup> contynued longe . . . . . Cap. vii.

Howe the gauntoyse fledde out of Dan<sup>c</sup> by nyght; and howe the frenchemen toke the towne and destroyed it; and also howe the kynge dystroyed the country of the foure craftes . . . . . Cap. viii.

Howe the frenche kynge departed oute of Flaunders, and gaue leau to his men to departe; and howe he came to Parys to treat with the ambassadours of Hungry; and howe the marques of Blanqueforte<sup>d</sup> toke by strēgth to his wyfe the same lady, enherytour of Hungry . . . . . Cap. ix.

Howe the duke of Burbone toke Bertuell in Poictou; and also of the great assemble that the kynge of Scottes made to entre into Englande . . . . . Cap. x.

Howe the frenchemen and scottes wan the castell of Varley,<sup>e</sup> and dystroyed dyuers other townes in Northumberlande; and howe they withdrewe agayne into Scotlande, whan they knewe that the kynge of Englande was cōmyng on them with a great puyssaunce . . . . . Cap. xi.

VOL. II. . . . . b . . . . . Howe

<sup>a</sup> Porkers.

<sup>b</sup> Bavaria.

<sup>c</sup> Damme.

<sup>d</sup> Brandenburg?

<sup>e</sup> Wark?

- Howe syr Johan Hollande slewe syr Rycharde Stafforde: and howe the erle of Stafforde came to the kyng to demaunde iustyce . . . . . Cap. xii.
- Howe the kyng of Englande caused to be dystroyed the church of Mewreus<sup>a</sup> in Scotlande; and howe the barones of Scotlande answered the admyrall of Fraunce, and deused to leaue Scotlande and to lette the englysshemen alone. . . . . Cap. xiii.
- Howe the kyng of Englande toke Edenborowe, the chiefe cytie of Scotlande; and howe the duke of Lancastre was in purpose to retourne into Wales<sup>b</sup> to close in the frenchemen and the scottes; and what the frenchemen and scottes dyd in the sayd countrey . . . . . Cap. xiiii.
- Howe the erle of Oxenforde<sup>c</sup> brake the pursute that the kyng of Englande had thought to haue made into Wales<sup>b</sup> after the frenchemen and scottes; and howe the kyng returned the same way that he came; and howe the frenchemen and scottes determyned to retourne agayne into Scotlande . . . . . Cap. xv.
- Howe the frenche lordes were in great paryll in scotlande; and coude nat finde the meanes to passe ouer the see; and how they shewed the erles Duglas and Morette<sup>d</sup> the hardnesse that they founde in that countrey: and what answer they made to them . . . . . Cap. xvi.
- Howe the admyrall enfourmed the frenche kyng and his counsaile of the state of Scotlande; and howe the duke of Burgoyne had great desyre to cause ŷ frenche kyng to make a iourney into Englande . . . . . Cap. xvii.
- Howe by the grace of God two burgesses of Gaunt entred to treat with ŷ duke of Burgoyne for peace; and howe they gaue the charge therof to a knight of Flaunders; and what answer the duke gaue vnto them . . . . . Cap. xviii.
- Howe these two foresayd burgesses assembled their frendes to accomplysse their enterprise, and sent syr Johan Delle for the dukes letters of peace . . . . . Cap. xix.
- Howe syr Johan Delle came to Gaunt to the markette place, where as Roger, and Jaques, and the aldermen of the cytie were; and howe he delyuered them letters fro the duke of Burgoyne; and howe they of Gaunt sente to Turney; and of the confirmation of the peace; and of the charters that were made therof . . . . . Cap. xx.
- Howe sir Johan Froissart, auctour of this cronycle, departed out of Fraunce and went to the erle of Foyz, and the maner of his voyage . . . . . Cap. xxi.
- Howe the prince of Wales and the princesse came to Tarbe; and of the request ŷ the countesse of Arminake made to the prince and princesse; and howe the countrey of Gascoyne was newly agayne in warre . . . . . Cap. xxii.
- Of the warres that ŷ duke of Aniou made agaynst the englysshemen; and howe he recovered the castell of Maluouyn in Bygore, whiche was afterwarde gyuen to the erle of Foize . . . . . Cap. xxiii.
- Howe the garyson and castell of Lourde was caste downe and discomfyted by the great dylygence ŷ the erle of Foiz made . . . . . Cap. xxiiii.
- Howe the peace was made bytwene ŷ duke of Berrey and the erle of Foyz; and of the begynnynge of the warre that was bytwene the erle of Foiz and the erle of Arminake . . . . . Cap. xxv.
- Of the great vertuousnesse and larges that was in the erle of Foize; and the maner of the pytuous dethe of Gascone,<sup>e</sup> the erles sonne . . . . . Cap. xxvi.
- Howe syr Peter of Byerne had a stronge dysease, and of the countesse of Bisquay, his wyfe . . . . . Cap. xxvii.
- Of the great solēpnite that the erle of Foiz made at the feest of saynte Nycholas, and the tale that the Bastot of Maulyon shewed to sir Johan Froissart . . . . . Cap. xxviii.
- Howe

<sup>a</sup> Melrose;<sup>b</sup> Cumberland.<sup>c</sup> Suffolk.<sup>d</sup> Moray.<sup>e</sup> Gaston.

- Howe dyuers capytaynes, englysshe and other, were dyscomfyted before the towne of Saxe by the Frenchemen . . . . . Cap. xxix.
- How a Squyer called Lymosyn tourned frenche; and howe he caused Loyes Rambalt his cōpanyon in armes to be taken . . . . . Cap. xxx.
- Of the state or ordynaūce of the erle of Foize; and howe the towne of yran<sup>a</sup> rebelled for the great traueyle, dompage, and outrage that was done therto . . . . . Cap. xxxi.
- Howe the kynge of Castyle left the siege of Lyxbonc; and howe they of saynt yrayne<sup>a</sup> excused themselfe . . . . . Cap. xxxii.
- Of the marueylous batayle that was at Juberothe,<sup>b</sup> bytwene the kynge of Castyle and kynge Johan of Portugale . . . . . Cap. xxxiii.
- Of the spanyarde, howe they ordred themselfe and their batayle . . . . . Cap. xxxiiii.
- Howe the frenche knyghtes and gascons, suche as were taken prisoners at Juberoth<sup>b</sup> by the portugaloyes, were slayne by their maysters, and none escaped . . . . . Cap. xxxv.
- Howe the kynge of Castyle and all his great batayle were dyscomfyted by the kyng of Portugale before a vyllage called Juberothe<sup>b</sup> . . . . . Cap. xxxvi.
- Howe a spiryte, called Orthone, serued the lorde of Corasse a longe tyme, and brought him euer tidynges from all partes of the worlde . . . . . Cap. xxxvii.
- Howe a siege was layde to Breste in Bretayne; and howe that dyuers englyssh forstresses aboute the cōuntry of Tholous were recouered and tourned frenche, . . . . . Cap. xxxviii.
- Howe the castelles of Conuall, of Bygore, and of Nefuyll, were taken, and all they within taken, slayne, and hanged . . . . . Cap. xxxix.
- Howe the kynge of Cypres was slayne and murdered in his bedde by his owne brother, by exortacyon and corruptyon of the infydeles for the bountye and hardynesse that was in hym . . . . . Cap. xl.
- Howe the kynge of Armony<sup>c</sup> was examyned, and howe lx. M. turkes were slayne and destroyed in the realme of Hungry . . . . . Cap. xli.
- Howe pope Vrbane and pope Clement were at gret discorde togyder; and howe the cristen kynges were in varyaunce for their lectyons; and of the warres bytwene them, . . . . . Cap. xlii.
- Howe they of Portugale sent out messangers into Englande to shewe tydynges of their cōuntry to the kynge of Englande, and to the great lordes there . . . . . Cap. xliii.
- Howe Laurens Fongase, ambassadour fro the kynge of Portugale into Englande, shewed to the duke of Lancastre the maner of the discorde that was bytwene the realmes of Castyle and Portyngale . . . . . Cap. xliiii.
- Howe Laurence Fongase shewed the Duke of Lancastre the maner of the batayle of Juberoth<sup>b</sup> bytwene the kynges of Castyle and Portyngale . . . . . Cap. xlv.
- Howe the ambassadours of Portyngale had aunswere of the kynge of Englande and great gyftes; and howe they tooke their leaue and went into their countreys . . . . . Cap. xlvi.
- Howe the duke of Lancastre assayed the lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, that were in the bastydies before Brest in Bretayne, and howe they defended themselfe . . . . . Cap. xlvii.
- Howe the duke of Lancastre and his hoost whāne they had sojourned a moneth at Colongne,<sup>d</sup> than they departed and rode towarde saynt James in Galyce . . . . . Cap. xlviii.
- Of the great apparell and prouyson that generally was made in the realme of Fraunce by the kynge there, and by his counsaile, for a iourney to be made into Englande, and also of the deth of Fraunces Atreman . . . . . Cap. lii.<sup>e</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Santarem.    <sup>b</sup> Aljubarota.    <sup>c</sup> Armenia.    <sup>d</sup> Coronna.    <sup>e</sup> The chapters in the original are erroneously numbered, that it is hardly possible to correct them, without producing great confusion.

- Howe the kyng of Portyngale wrote amyably to the duke of Lancastre, whan he knewe that he was arruyed at saynt James in Galyce; and of the socours that the kyng of Castyle sent for into Frauce; and howe the towne of Ruelles in Galyce was taken by Englysshemen . . . . . Cap. liii.
- Howe the duke of Lācastres marshall and his men assayed the towne of Vieclope<sup>a</sup> in Galyce, whiche yelded by cōposycion; and of the ambassadours that the duke sent to the kyng of Portyngale . . . . . Cap. li.
- Howe they of Bayon yelded them to the duke of Lancastre; and howe the marshall of his hoost entred into the towne and toke possessyon therof . . . . . Cap. liiii.
- Howe the duke of Lancastre and the duchesse helde them at saynte James in Galyce; and of the comferte that the frenche knyghtes gaue to the kyng of Castyle, . . . . . Cap. lxii.
- Of the great apparell of shyppes and galeys that the Frenchemen made on the see to passe into Englande . . . . . Cap. liiii.
- Howe the frenche kinge and his vnclcs arruyed at Sluse in Flaunders . . . . . Cap. liiii.
- Howe the frenche kyng taryed at Sluse with his great hoost, to the entent to entre into Englande . . . . . Cap. lv.
- Howe syr Symon Burley wolde haue had by his counsaile saynt Thomas of Caunterburyes shryne remoued to y<sup>e</sup> castell of Douer, wherby he atchyued great hate, . . . . . Cap. lv.
- Howe the kyng of Armony<sup>b</sup> passed into Englande, in truste to fynde some meanes of peace or good appoyntment bytwene y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Englande and the frenche kyng . . . . . Cap. lvi.
- Howe the kinge of Armony<sup>b</sup> returned out of Englande, and of the aunswere that was made to hym . . . . . Cap. lvii.
- Howe the duke of Berrey departed fro Parys to come to Sluse; and howe the constable of Fraunce toke the see, and of the wynde that was contrary to hym . . . . . Cap. lviii.
- Howe the voyage into Englande was broken by reason of the wyndes and of wynter, and by counsaile of the duke of Berrey . . . . . Cap. lix.
- Howe kyng Charles of Fraunce and the frenche lordes returned yuell content fro sluse and out of Flaunders, whereas their prouysyons were made to haue gone into Englande; and of the feest that was made at London . . . . . Cap. lx.
- Howe a squier called Jaques le Grise was acused in the parlyament howse at Parys before all the lordes there present, by a knyght called Johan of Carongne, and what iudgement was gyuen vpon them; and howe they iusted at vttraunce in Paris in a place called saynt Katheryne, belynde the temple; and howe Jaques le Grise was confounded . . . . . Cap. lxi.
- Howe the kyng of Aragon dyed; and howe the archebysshoppe of Burdeaux was set in prisone in Barcelona . . . . . Cap. lxi.
- How a batayle of armes was done in Burdeaux before the seneschall there and dyuers other . . . . . Cap. lxii.
- Howe Johan of Bretaygne, sonne to syr Charles of Bloyes, was deluyered out of prison by the meanes of syr Olyuer of Clysson, constable of Fraunce . . . . . Cap. lxxii.
- Howe the duke of Burboue was chosen to go into Castyle and dyuers other; and howe syr Johan Bucke admyrall of Flaunders was taken prisoner by the englysshmen . . . . . Cap. lxxii.
- Howe the englysshemen aryued and brent dyuers villages . . . . . Cap. lxxiii.
- Howe

<sup>a</sup> Villeclope,<sup>b</sup> Armenia.



- Howe the duke of Lācasters marshall toke the towne of Rybadane,<sup>a</sup> whiche was strongly kept . . . . . Cap. lxxiii.
- Howe the duke of Lancastre sent for the admyrall and marshall and his other offycers to come to the weddyng of his daughter and the kynge of Portyngale, Cap. lxxiii.
- Howe the duke of Lancastre and his men rode towards the cytie of Besances;<sup>b</sup> and howe the towne made composycion with them . . . . . Cap. lxxv.
- Howe the duchesse and her daughter went to se the kynge of Portyngale and the quene; and howe the towne of Besances<sup>b</sup> submytted them vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre . . . . . Cap. lxxvi.
- Howe they of Besances<sup>b</sup> that had ben sente to the kynge of Castyle came home to their towne after it was rendred vp to the duke of Lancastre . . . . . Cap. lxxvii.
- Howe syr Johan Hollande and syr Raynolde de Roy fought togyder in lystes before the duke of Lancastre in the towne of Besances<sup>b</sup> . . . . . Cap. lxxviii.
- Howe the kynge of Portyngale and the duke of Lancastre determyned to entre into the realme of Castyle . . . . . Cap. lxxix.
- Howe syr Wylliam of Lygnac and sir Gaultyer of Passac came to the ayde of kynge Johan of Castyle . . . . . Cap. lxxx.
- Howe a great myschiefe fell in Englande bytwene the gentylnen and cōmons for accompte of suche money as had been reysed of the cōmons . . . . . Cap. lxxxi.
- Of the great dyscordes that were in Englande after the breakyng of the frenche armye; and how the gouernours about the kynge were constrayned by the cōmons of the good townes to make acomptes of such money as was come into their hands the season that they ruled . . . . . Cap. lxxxii.
- Howe the constable of Fraūce and dyuers other lordes and knyghtes of the realme appalled great prouysions to go into Englande to wyn townes and castels, Cap. lxxxiii.
- Howe the duke of Bretayne sent for all his lordes and knyghtes to come to counsayle vnto Wannes<sup>c</sup> and after counsayle he desyred the constable to go and se his castell of Ermyne; and howe he toke hym there prisoner, and the lorde of Beaumanoire with hym . . . . . Cap. lxxxiii.
- Howe the constable of Fraūce was delyuered at the request of the lorde de la Vale, payenge a certayne raunsome; and howe the constable delyuered to the duke three castelles and a towne, and payed a hūdred thousande frankes . . . . . Cap. lxxxv.
- Howe writings were made at the duke of Bretayns deuyse for the constable to rendre his towne and castelles to the duke and to his heyres for euer; and how they were delyuered to the duke . . . . . Cap. lxxxvi.
- Howe tydynges came to the frenche kynge fro the partyes of Almayne, the whiche were to hym ryght displeasaunt, and vnto his vnclcs . . . . . Cap. lxxxvii.
- Howe the Duke of Lācasters men assayed the towne of Aurence, and toke it; for it gaue vp as other dyd . . . . . Cap. lxxxviii.
- Howe the kynge of Portyngale brente a towne whan he was departed for Porte,<sup>d</sup> and besieged two castels . . . . . Cap. lxxxix.
- Howe the kynge of Portyngale and his host came before Feroule and assaulted it, and it was won and brought vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre . . . . . Cap. lxxxx.
- Howe the frenche ambassadours came to the duke of Bretayne vpon the takyng of the constable of Fraunce; and of the answeare that was made to them . . . . . Cap. xcii.
- Howe the kyng of Englandes vnclcs were of one acorde and alyauce agaynst the kynge and his counsayle; and of the murmuryng of the people agaynst the duke of Irelande; and of the aunswere of the londoners to the duke of Gloucestre, Cap. xcii.

Howe

<sup>a</sup> Ribadavia.<sup>b</sup> Betanços.<sup>c</sup> Vannes.<sup>d</sup> Oporto.

- Howe the day of accompte came, and there the offycers appered in the presens of the kynges vnclcs and cōmons of Englande; and howe syr Symon Burley was prisoner in the towre of Lōdon; and howe syr Thomas Tryvet dyed . . . . . Cap. xciii.
- Howe the kyng of Englande departed fro London; and howe syr Symon Burley was beheeded at London; and his nephewe also; and howe the duke of Lancastre was dyspleased . . . . . Cap. xciiii.
- Howe the counsayle drewe togyder for the reformacyon of the kyng and of the realme; and howe by the counsayle of the duke of Irelande the kyng was of the accorde to make warre agaynst his vnclcs, and agaynst the cyties and townes . . . . . Cap. xcv.
- Howe the kyng of Englande made his sōmons to drawe towards London; and howe syr Roberte Tryuuylen<sup>a</sup> was taken at Westmyenster and beheeded, by the cōmaundement of the kynges vnclcs . . . . . Cap. xcvi.
- Howe tydynges came to the kyng of the dethe of his knyght, and demaunded counsayle theron; and howe he ordayned the duke of Irelande soueraygne of all his menne of warre . . . . . Cap. xcvi.
- Howe y<sup>e</sup> duke of Irelande sent thre knyghtes to London to knowe some tydynges; and howe the kynges vnclcs and they of London went into the felde to fyght with the duke of Irelande and his affynyte . . . . . Cap. xcvi.
- Howe the kynges vnclcs wan the iourney agaynst the duke of Irelande; and howe he fledde and dyuers other of his company . . . . . Cap. xcix.
- Howe the duke of Irelande and his company fled; and howe the kynges vnclcs were at Oxenforde; and howe syr Nycholas Bramble<sup>b</sup> was beheeded; and howe the kyng was sent for by the bysshoppe of Caunterbury . . . . . Cap. C.
- Howe by the kyng and his vnclcs all the lordes of Englande were sente for to come to Westmyenster to a generall counsayle there to be holden . . . . . Cap. C.i.
- Howe the kyng of Portyngale with his puyssaunce assembled with the duke of Lancastre and his puyssaunce; and howe they coulde nat passe the ryuer of Dierne;<sup>c</sup> and howe a squyer of Castyle shewed theym the passage . . . . . Cap. C.ii.
- Howe the tydynges spred abroad that the kyng of Portyngale and the duke of Lancastre were passed the ryuer of dierne;<sup>c</sup> and howe it came to the kyng of Castylles knowledge; and howe certayne of the englisse knyghtes came and rode before vyle Arpent;<sup>d</sup> and howe the kyng of Portugale and the duke of Lancastre determynd there to tary the cōmyng of the duke of Burbon . . . . . Cap. C.iii.
- Howe the duke of Lancastre gaue lycence to his men; and howe an haraulde was sent to the kyng of Castyle; and howe thre knyghtes of Englande wente to speake with the kyng of Castyle for a saueconducte for the dukes men to passe thouroughe his countrey . . . . . Cap. C.iiii.
- Howe these thre knyghtes obtayned a saueconducte of the kyng of Castyle for their people to passe; and howe dyuers of the englysshemen dyed in Castyle; and howe the duke of Lancastre fell in a great sicknesse . . . . . Cap. C.v.
- Howe syr Johan Hollande the Duke of Lancastres constable tooke his leaue of the duke, and he and his wyfe returned by the kyng of Castyle, who made hym good chere; and howe syr Johan Dambrycourt went to Parys to accomplysse a dede of armes bytwene hym and syr Boucyquaut . . . . . Cap. C.vi.
- Howe the duke of Burbone departed fro Auignon to go into Castyle with all his hoost, and came to Burgus in Spaygne, and there founde the kyng of Castyle; and howe the duke of Lancastre herde those tydynges; and howe the duke of Burbone departed fro the kyng, and went streyght agayne into Fraunce . . . . . Cap. C.vii.
- Howe

<sup>a</sup> Tresillian.<sup>b</sup> Bramber.<sup>c</sup> Duezo.<sup>d</sup> Villanpando:

- Howe the erle of Foiz receyued honourably the duke of Bourbon, and of the great gyftes that he gaue hym; and howe syr Willyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passackes company departed out of Spayne; and of the incydent that fortunued in the towne of saynte Phagon . . . . . Cap. C.viii.
- Howe the kynge of Castyle and his counsaile were yuell content with syr Willyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultier of Passackes company; and howe the duke of Lancastre departed fro saynt Jaques to Bayon . . . . . Cap. C.ix.
- Howe the erle of Armynake tooke great payne to treat with the companys to departe out of the realme of Fraunce . . . . . Cap. C.x.
- Howe the erle Reynolde of Guerles<sup>a</sup> who had layde all his landes in guage, and wyste nat what to do, came for refuge to the archebysshoppe of Cologne his vncl, who blained hym; and howe ambassidours went to Berthaulte of Malygnes<sup>b</sup> . . . . . Cap. C.xi.
- Howe the erle Reynolde of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was maryed to Mary, daughter to Berthalte of Malygnes,<sup>b</sup> by whome he hadde a daughter, and after maryed agayne in Englande, and hadde issue two sonnes and a daughter; and howe syr Johan of Bloyes wedded the eldest daughter of the erle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and howe after, the countie of Guerles<sup>a</sup> remayned with the erle of Guerles<sup>a</sup> yongest daughter . . . . . Cap. C.xii.
- Howe these castelles of Gauleche, Butlie, and Null, came to the duke of Brabant; and howe the duke of Julyers sustayned the Lynfars in his countre, who robbed all maner of people; and of the great assemble that the duke of Brabante made to go to Julyers; and howe he was dyscomfyted . . . . . Cap. C.xiii.
- Howe the duke of Brabant dyed; and howe the duke Guillyam of Guerles<sup>a</sup> treated with the duchesse of Brabante to haue agayne the thre castelles, and what aunswere he had; and howe he made alyaunce with the kynge of Englande . . . . . Cap. C.xiii.
- Howe the duchesse of Brabante sent messangers to the frenche kynge, complaynyng of the duke of Guerles;<sup>a</sup> and howe the kynge and his counsaile were sore busyed with incydetes that fell in the realme of Fraunce, as well for the defyaunces of Guerles<sup>a</sup> as the busynesse in Bretayne . . . . . Cap. C.xv.
- Howe by a straunge fortune the kynge of Nauer dyed in the cytie of Pampylona; and howe Charles his sonne was crowned; and howe Vanchadore<sup>c</sup> was besieged by the duke of Berrey; and howe the duke of Burgoyne sente to the duchesse of Brabante, . . . . . Cap. C.xvi.
- Howe the frenchemen after they had brent and ryffed the towne of Seaulle returned to their garyson; and of the ioye that the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse of Brabant made for that dede; and howe syr Johan Boesme Lauce<sup>d</sup> dyscomfyted the englysshemen, . . . . . Cap. C.xvii.
- Howe syr Johan Boesme Lauce<sup>d</sup> ledde these prisoners to Mount Ferante; and howe they of the countrey were gladde when they herde of this entreprise; and howe Geronet and his company were sette to ransome, and delyuered by the money that Perot of Bierne lent hym . . . . . Cap. C.xviii.
- Howe Geronet of Mandurāt with twelue of his company returned to Mount Ferant; and howe Perot of Bernoys with four hundred speares wente to Mount Ferante; and wolde nat entre into the towne by none other way but in at the gate, . . . . . Cap. C.xix.
- Howe Geronet lette in Perot le Bernoys and his company into the towne of Mount ferant, whereof the countrey was afraide; and howe the kynge and his vncl, beyng at Parys were therwith sore dyspleased, and also the erle Dolphyn of Auuergne, . . . . . Cap. C.xx.
- Howe Perotte le Bernoys and his company tooke their counsaile, and determyned nat . . . . . to

<sup>a</sup> Reginald of Gueldres:<sup>b</sup> Mechlin:<sup>c</sup> Ventadour.<sup>d</sup> Bonne-lance.

- to kepe the towne of Mount ferant; and howe the sayd Perot and his company departed thens by night with all their pyllage and prisoners, and wente and refreshed them in the towne of Ousac<sup>a</sup> . . . . . Cap. C.xxi.
- Howe they of the towne of Cleremounte made a skrimysshe with these pyllers that had taken and robbed the towne of Moutferant at the gates of the towne, Cap. C.xxii.
- Howe the duke of Berrey married the lady Mary his daughter to the erle of Bloyes sonne; and howe the same yere the sonne of the duke of Berrey married the lady Mary of Fraunce, suster to the yonge kynge Charles of Fraunce . . . Cap. C.xxiii.
- Howe, after the departyng of the duke of Lancastre, all that euer he had wonne in Galyce the frenchemen recovered it in lesse than fyftene dayes; and howe the Englysshemen that had ben there in that warre defamed and spake yuell of the coutry of Galyce; and howe the Frenche kynge sente for the duke of Irelande, Cap. C.xxiiii.
- Howe the constable of Fraunce wolde nat accorde that the kynge shulde goo into Almaygne, bycause of the incydentes of the realme; and howe the duke of Bretayne fournysshed his garysons, and made alyauce with the kynge of Englande and with the kynge of Nauerre, and of the army made by the englysshemen . . . Cap. C.xxv.
- Howe the Brabansoyes layde siege to the towne of Graue; and howe the Constable of Fraunce tooke saynt Malo and saynte Mathewes, and sette there men in garysone; and howe the duke of Lancastre was at Bayon, greatly dyscomfyted in that he coulde get no maner of ayde . . . . . Cap. C.xxvi.
- Howe the duke of Berrey sente letters to the duke of Lancastre to Bayon; and howe the duke sente the cople of the same letters into Foyze and into Nauerre, to the entent to haue them publysshed in Spayne; and howe the duke of Bretayne demaunded counsaile of his men in all his busynesse . . . . . Cap. C.xxvii.
- Howe the duke of Bretayne delyuered vp the thre castelles of syr Olyuer of Clyssons; and howe he receyued ioyously the lorde of Coucy and his company, ambassadours fro the frenche kynge; and howe the duke of Lancastre made great chere to syr Helyon of Lygnacke, seneschall of Xaynton, ambassadoure fro the duke of Berrey, Cap. C. xxviii.
- Howe the kynge of Castyle sente his ambassadours to the duke of Lancastre to treate for a maryage to be hadde bytwene his sonne and the dukes daughter; and howe at the request of the duke of Berrey a truse was made by the duke of Lancastre in the countreys of Tholousyn and Rouergue . . . . . Cap. C.xxix.
- Howe the Dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne departed to go to Bloyes; and howe the duke of Bretayne came thyder; and howe the dukes dyd so moche that they had hym to Parys, in maner agaynst his wyll . . . . . Cap. C.xxx.
- Howe Lewes, kynge of Cycyle, entred into Parys in estate royall; and howe the duke of Bretayne entred on the nyght of saint Johan the Baptyst, the yere of grace a thousande thre hundred fourscore and seuyne; and of a dede of armes done before the kynge at Moutereau fault yon, bytwene a knyght of Englande, called syr Thomas Harpyngham,<sup>b</sup> and a frenche knyght, named syr Johan de Barres . . . Cap. C.xxxi.
- Howe the duke of Bretayne entred into Parys, and came to the castell of Loure<sup>c</sup> to the frenche kynge . . . . . Cap. C.xxxii.
- Howe the erle of Arundell, beyng on the see more than a moneth, came to the hauen of Maraunt,<sup>d</sup> a lytell fro Rochell; and howe he sent a messenger to Perot le Bernoys, that he and other capytayns shulde kepe the felde . . . . . Cap. C.xxxiii.

Howe

<sup>a</sup> Donzac.<sup>b</sup> Hapurgan.<sup>c</sup> The Louvre.<sup>d</sup> Marans.

- Howe they of Marroys and Rochelloys were sore afrayde of the Englysshemen that were a lande; and howe they of Rochell made a skrymysshe with them; and howe after the englysshemen had pylled the countrey about Maraunt,<sup>a</sup> they drewe agayne to the see with their pyllage, whiche was great . . . . . Cap. C.xxxiii.
- Howe Perot le Bernoys and his companyons resorted agayne to their holdes with great pyllage; and howe the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> coulde haue no ayde of the Englysshemen to reyse the siege before Graue; and howe the brabantsois made a brige ouer the ryuer of mense, the whiche they of Guerles<sup>b</sup> dyd breake, bryn, and dystroy, as ye shall here after . . . . . Cap. C.xxxv.
- Howe the Brabantsoys passed the ryuer through the towne of Rauesten ouer y<sup>e</sup> bridge there, and so entred into Guerles,<sup>b</sup> than the duke departed fro Nymay<sup>c</sup> with thre hundred speares, and came agaynst them and dyscomfyted them, bytwene Rauesten and the towne of Graue . . . . . Cap. C.xxxvi.
- Howe the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> after he had dyscomfyted the brabantsoys, he went agayne to Nymay;<sup>c</sup> and howe tydynges came to the frenche kyng; and howe the kyng sent ambassadours to the kyng of Almayne<sup>d</sup> . . . . . Cap. C.xxxvii.
- Howe the frenche kyng gaue leaue to the duke of Bretaygne to retourne into his countrey; and howe the cou<sup>t</sup>rey of Brabant wolde nat consent to the kynges passage nor his army; and howe the ambassadours of Fraunce spedde . . . . . Cap. C.xxxviii.
- Howe the erle of Bloys sent to the frenche kinge two hundred speares; and howe the duke of Lorayne and the lorde Henry of Bare came to the kyng; and howe the dukes of Julyers and of Guerles knewe that the frenche kyng came on them, . . . . . Cap. C.xxxix.
- Howe syr Hellyon of Lygnacke made his reporte to the duke of Berrey; and howe the lordes of Scotlande assembled toguyder in the cytie of Berdane,<sup>e</sup> and determyned to reyse vp an armye to entre into Englande; and of an englyssh squyer who was taken by the scottes, who knewe the secretes of bothe realmes, Englande and Scotlande, . . . . . Cap. C.xl.
- Howe the erle Douglas wan the penon of sir Henry Percy, at the barryers vpon Newecastell vpon Tyne; and howe the scottes brent the castell of Pondlen;<sup>f</sup> and howe syr Henry Percy and syr Rafe his brother tooke aduise to folowe the scottes, to conquire agayne the penon that was lost at the skrymysshe . . . . . Cap. C.xli.
- Howe sir Henry Percy and his brother, with a good nombre of men of armes and archers, went alter the scottes to wyn agayne his penon, that the erle Douglas had won before Newcastell vpō tyne; and howe they assayled the scottes before Mou<sup>t</sup>berke<sup>g</sup> in their lodgynges . . . . . Cap. C.xlii.
- Howe the erle James Douglas by his valyantnesse encoraged his men, who were reculed, and in a maner disconfited, and in his so doynge he was wounded to dethe, . . . . . Cap. C.xliiii.
- Howe in this bataile sir Rafe Percy was sore hurte, and taken prisoner by a scottishe knyght . . . . . Cap. C.xliiii.
- Howe the scottes wanne the batayle agaynst the Englysshemen besyde Ottebridge,<sup>h</sup> and there was taken prisoners sir Hery and sir Rafe Percy; and howe an Englysshe squier wolde nat yelde hym, no more wolde a scottysse squyer, and so were slayne bothe; and howe the bysshoppe of Durham and his cōpany were discomfyted amonge themselfe, . . . . . Cap. C.xlv.
- Howe sir Mathewe Reedman departed fro the batayle to saue hymselfe; and howe sir  
 Vol. II. c James

<sup>a</sup> Marans.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> Nimeguen.<sup>d</sup> Germauy.<sup>e</sup> Aberdeen.<sup>f</sup> Pontland?<sup>g</sup> Otterbourne.

- James Lynsey was taken prisoner by ſ bysshoppe of Durham; and howe after the batayle scurrers were sent forthe to discouer the country . . . . . Cap. C.xlvi.
- Howe the scottes departed, and caryed with them the erle Duglas deed, and buried hym in the abbey of Nimayes;<sup>a</sup> and howe sir Archambault Duglas and his company departed fro before Carlyle, and returned into Scotlande . . . . . Cap. C.xlvii.
- Howe the duke of Jullyers came and excused hymselfe of the defyaunce that his son the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> had made to the Frenche kyng, and so became his subiette; and of dyuers feates of armes done bitwene the frechemen and the almaynes before Recougne<sup>c</sup> . . . . . Cap. C.xlviii.
- Howe the duke of Julyers and the archebysshop of Coloygne departed fro the Frenche kyng and wente to Nimaye<sup>d</sup> to the duke of Guerles;<sup>b</sup> and howe by their meanes he was reconcyled and brought to peace with the Frenche kyng and with the duchesse of Brabant . . . . . Cap. C.xlix.
- Howe the erle of Arundell and the knyghtes of Englande beyng on the see, by fortune of the wynde came to the palyce<sup>e</sup> besyde Rochell, whose beyng there was signified to sir Loyes of Xancere: and of the departyng of the erle of Arundell, Cap. C.l.
- Howe the admyrall of Fraunce was ordayned by the Frenche kyng and his counsayle as ambassadour, to go to the kyng of Castile; and howe the duke of Berrey sent to the erle of Foize to treat for a maryage bytwene the duke of Berrey and the erles daughter of Bolonge . . . . . Cap. C.li.
- Howe Geffray Tete Noyre dyde chose a capitayne ouer his company, and howe he made his testament and so dyed; and howe the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> departed fro his country to go into Pruce,<sup>f</sup> and of the incydenche that fell to hym in the lande of the duke of Stulpe, where he was taken prisoner and disconfyted . . . . . Cap. C.lii.
- Howe sir Johan of Vyen dyde his message to kyng Johan of Castyle fro the frenche kyng and his counsayle, and what answere the kyng of Castyle made to hym, Cap. C.liii.
- Howe sir Loyes of Xancere went to se the erle of Foize at Orthays; and howe before the duke of Lancaster at Burdeux there were dedes of armes done bytwene fyue Frenchemen and fyue Englysshemen; and howe the duchesse of Lancaster went with her daughter into Castyle to kyng Johñ . . . . . Cap. C.liiii.
- Howe the duchesse of Lancaster departed fro the kyng of Castyle, and wente to Mantuell<sup>g</sup> to bring her fathers bones to Ciuyle; and howe the Frenche kyng sent ambassadours to the erle of Foize, to treat for the mariage of the duke of Berrey his vncler with therle of Boloyns daughter . . . . . Cap. C.lv.
- Howe certayne wyse men treated for a peace to endure for thre yere bytwene Fraūce and Englande, and all their alyes, as well on the one parte as on the other, by lāde and by see . . . . . Cap. C.lvi.
- Of the ordynaunce of the entre of quene Isabell into the towne of Paris, Cap. C.lvii.
- Howe the lorde of Castell morant, whom therle of saynt Poule had lefte behynde him in Englande, returned into Fraunce with the charter of the truse, sealed by kynge Richard and his vncler, to endure thre yere by see and by lande . . . . . Cap. C.lviii.
- The maryage of kyng Loyes, sonne of the duke of Aniou, to the daughter of kyng Peter of Arragone; and howe he went with the quene of Naples his mother to Auignon to se pope Clement . . . . . Cap. C.lix.
- Howe

<sup>a</sup> Melrose.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> Remogne.<sup>d</sup> Nimeguen.<sup>e</sup> La Palice.<sup>f</sup> Prussia.<sup>g</sup> Montiel.

- Howe the Frenche kyng had desyre to go and visyte  $\hat{y}$  farre partes of his realme; and howe he went fyrste into Burgoyne and to Auignone to se pope Clement, Cap. C.lx.
- Howe sir Peter Courtney cāe into Fraūce to do armes with sir Guye of Tremoyle; and howe the lorde of Clary conueyed hym; and by what occasion he dyde armes with hym in the marchesse of Calis . . . . . Cap. C.lxi.
- Howe the iustes at saynt Inguelyert, otherwyse called Sandynghfelde, were enterprised by sir Raynolde of Roie, the yonge sir Bouciquant, and the lorde of saynt Pye, Cap. C.lxii.
- Of the complayntes made to the Frenche kyng by the people of Languedocke, in the towne of Besyers, agaynst Betisache, treasurer to the duke of Berrey, of the great extorcyons that he had made, and of his confession, and of the cruell dethe that he hadde in the sayd towne . . . . . Cap. C.lxiii.
- Howe the Frenche kyng beyng at Tholous, sent for the erle of Foize, who came thyder and dyd homage to the kyng for the couētie of Foize . . . . . Cap. C.lxiiii.
- Of the feate and couynaūt that was done bytwene the kyng and the duke of Thourayne his brother, whiche of them shulde sonest come to Parys fro Mountpellyer, whiche is a hundred and fyftie leages asondre, eche of them but with one knight, Cap. C.lxv.
- Of the dethe of pope Vrbayne of Rome, called the Antepape; and howe pope Clement wrote to the Frenche kyng, and to his vnclcs, and to the vnyuersite; and of the electyon of pope Bonyface by the cardynals of Rome . . . . . Cap. C.lxvi.
- Of the yeldyng vp and takyng of the stronge castell of Vanchadore<sup>a</sup> in Lymosyn, of olde parteyninge to sir Geffray Teate Noyre . . . . . Cap. C.lxvii.
- Of the dedes of armes at saynt Ingylbertes, continewyng thyrtye dayes, agaynst all cōmers of the realme of Englande and other countreis, euery manne thre courses, Cap. C.lxviii.
- Of the enterprise and voyage of  $\hat{y}$  knyghtes of Fraunce and Englande, and of the duke of Burbone, who was as chiefe of that armye, at the request of the genouoys, to go into Barbary to besiege the stronge towne of Affryke . . . . . Cap. C.lxix.
- Of a capitayne, a robber and a pyller of the countre, called Aymergot Marcell, who helde a strong castell in the marchesse of Rouergue, called the Roche of Vandoy; and howe it was besieged by the vicount of Meaulx, and of the takyng therof; and howe Aymergot was taken and brought to Parys . . . . . Cap. C.lxx.
- Howe the Christen lordes and the genouoys beyng in the ysle of Conymbres<sup>b</sup> at ancre, departed thens to go and lay siege to the strong cytie of Affryke in Barbary; and howe they maynteyned the siege . . . . . Cap. C.lxxi.
- Howe after this aduenture and dōmage that fell to the christen men by reason of this assault before the towne of Affryke, and that so many knyghtes and squyers were deede, they maynteyned themselves more wiselyer after than they dyde before, and contynued their siege a longe season after . . . . . Cap. C.lxxii.
- Of a feest and iustes made by the kyng of Englande in London, whyle the Christen knyghtes and squyers were at the siege before the towne of Affryke agaynst the sarasyns; and howe this feest was published in dyuers countreis and landes, Cap. C.lxxiii.
- Howe and by what incydent  $\hat{y}$  siege was reysed before the towne of Affryke, and by what occasion, and howe euery man returned to their owne countreis, Cap. C.lxxiiii.

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.<sup>b</sup> Commercs, or Commino.

- Of thenglysshe knyghtes that were sente to Parys to the Frenche kyng fro the kyng of Englande and his vnclcs, to treate for a peace . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxv.
- Of the dethe of kyng Johan of Castyle, and of the crownynge of kyng Henry his sonne . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxvi.
- Of the army of the yonge erle Johan of Armysnake, and of the voyage that he made into Lombardy; and howe he dyed at the sieg before the towne of Alexãdre, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxvii.
- Howe sir Peter of Craon fell in the Frenche kynges displeasure and in the Duke of Thourayns, and after he was receuyed by the duke of Bretayne . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxviii.
- Of the dethe of the yonge erle Loyes of Chastellon, sonne to therle Guye of Bloys, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxix.
- Of the sodayne dethe of the erle Gascone of Foize, and howe the erle of Chastellon cãm to his enherytaunce . . . . . Cap. C.lxxx.
- Howe the treatie of peace renewed at Towers in Thourayne, bytwene the Frenche kyng and the duke of Bretayne; and of the maryage of the daughter of Fraunce to the sonne of Bretayne; and of Johan of Bretayne, erle of Ponthieur, and the daughter of the duke of Bretayne . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxxi.
- Howe the erle of Bloyes and Mary of Namure his wyfe solde the countie of Bloyes and all their landes to ð duke of Thourayn, the frenche kynges brother, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxii.
- Howe sir Roger of Spaygne and sir Espaygne du Lyon spedde with the Frenche kyng and his counsaile for the Vycount of Chastellons busynesse; and howe he was set in possessyon in the countie of Foize, and of the money that he payde, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxiii.
- Of the great assemble that was made at Amyence of the Frenche kyng and his cõsaile, and of the kyng of Englandes vnclcs, on the treatie of peace, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxiiii.
- Howe sir Peter of Craon, throughe yuell wyll, by subtile crafte, beate downe sir Olyuer of Clysson, wherwith the kyng and his counsaile were sore displeased, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxv.
- Howe in great dilygence the Prouost of Parys pursued sir Peter of Craon, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxvi.
- Of the great armye and voyage that the Frenche kyng purposed to make into Bretayne agaynst the duke, bycause he susteyned sir Peter of Craonne; and howe in that voyage the kyng fell sicke, wherby the voyage brake . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxvii.
- Howe the duke of Thourayne, brother to the Frenche kyng, resigned the Duchy of Thourayne into the kynges handes, and howe by exchange the kyng gaue hym the duchy of Orlyãuce, and so euer after he was called the duke of Orlyãunce, . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxviii.
- Howe the dukes of Burgoyne and of Berrey, vnclcs to the Frenche kyng, had the gouernance of the realme; and howe they chased and toke suche as gouerned the kyng before . . . . . Cap. C.lxxxix.
- Howe sir Olyuer of Clysson, constable of fraunce, departed out of Parys, after the answer that the duke of Burgoyne had made hym, and went to Mount le Heury, and fro thens into Bretayne . . . . . Cap. C.xc.
- Howe the treuse whiche was accorded bytwene Englande and Fraunce for thre yeres was renewed . . . . . Cap. C.xci.



- Of the aduerture of a Daunce that was made at Parys in lykenesse of wodhouses, wherein the Frenche kyng was in paryll of dethe . . . . . Cap. C.xcii.
- Howe pope Bonyface and the cardynals of Rome sent a Frere, a wyse clerke, to the Frenche kyng . . . . . Cap. C.xciii.
- Howe the mariage was treated of y<sup>e</sup> lorde Philyppe of Arthoyes, erle of Ewe, and the lady Mary of Berry, wydowe, daughter to the duke of Berrey; and howe he was admitted cōstable of Fraunce . . . . . Cap. C.xciii.
- Of the forme of the peace made bytwene the Frenche kyng and the kyng of Englāde by meanes of the four dukes, vnclcs to bothe kynges . . . . . Cap. C.xcv.
- Of the dethe of pope Clemēt at Auignon, and of the electyon of pope Benedict, . . . . . Cap. C.xcvi.
- Of a clerke named maister Johan of Waresnes . . . . . Cap. C.xcvi.
- Howe the kyng of England gaue to the duke of Lancastre and to his heyres for euer the duche of Acquitayne; and howe the kyng prepared to go into Irelande, and the duke into Acquitayne . . . . . Cap. C.xcviii.
- Of the dethe of quene Anne of Englande, wyfe to kynge Richarde, daughter to y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Boesme<sup>a</sup> and Emperour of Almayne . . . . . Cap. C.xcix.
- Howe sir Johñ Froissart arryued in Englande, and of the gyfte of a boke that he gaue to the kyng . . . . . Cap. CC.
- Of the refuse of them of Acquitayne made to the duke of Lancastre; and howe they sente into Englāde to the kyng and his cōsayle, shewyng hym the wyll of the hole cōtreiy of Acquitayne . . . . . Cap. CC.i.
- The deuyse and of the conquest that kyng Richarde had made in Irelande; and howe he brought to his obeysaunce foure kynges of that cōtreiy . . . . . Cap. CC.ii.
- Of the ambassade that the kyng of Englande sent into Fraūce to treat of the maryage bytwene the lady Isabell, the Frenche kynges eldest daughter, and hymselfe; and of the lounge aunswere they hadde . . . . . Cap. CC.iii.
- Of a squyer named Robert the Hermyt, howe he was sent to the treaties of the peace holden at Balyngham;<sup>b</sup> and howe he was after sente into Englande to kyng Richarde and his vnclcs . . . . . Cap. CC.iii.
- Of the delyneraunce of the lorde de la Riuer and sir Johñ le Mercier; and howe they were putte out of prisone . . . . . Cap. CC.v.
- Of the peace that was had bytwene the duke of Bretaygne and syr Olyuer of Clysston, . . . . . Cap. CC.vi.
- Howe the kyng of Hungry wrote to the Frenche kyng the state of the great Turke; and howe Johan of Burgoyne eldest sonne to the duke of Burgoyne, was chiefe and heed of the armye that went thyder . . . . . Cap. CC.vii.
- Howe the erle of Ostreuaunt enterprised to go into Fryse . . . . . Cap. CC.vii.
- Of the iudgement made in the Parlyament for the quene of Naples agaynste sir Peter of Craon . . . . . Cap. CC.ix.
- Of the conclusyon of the maryage taken at Parys, bytwene the kyng of Englande and Isabell daughter to the Frenche kyng; and howe the duke of Lancastre remaried . . . . . Cap. CC.x.
- Howe the great turke desyred the soudan and many other kynges, Sarasyns, to ayde hym with men of warre to resyst agaynste the christen men; and howe many valyaunt sarasyns came to hym out of farrre countreis . . . . . Cap. CC.xi.
- Howe the lorde of Coucy and other lordes of the christen men about a. xv. hundred speares disconfyted

<sup>a</sup> Bohemia.<sup>b</sup> Leulinghan.

- disconfyted a fyne thousande Turkes duryng the sieg before Nicopoly, Cap. CC.xii.
- Howe the peace bytwene Englande and Fraunce contynewed; and of the maryage of the kyng of Englande with the doughter of Fraunce . . . . . Cap. CC.xiii.
- Howe the erle of Heynaulte and the erle of Ostreuaunt his sonne, made a great armye of men of armes, knightes and squyers, to go into Fryse<sup>a</sup> . . . . . Cap. CC.xiii.
- Of the armye that the Frenche kyng sent into Fryse<sup>a</sup> in the ayde of his cosyns, and the lorde Valeran, erle of saynt Poule, and the lorde Charles de la Brethe were capitayns, Cap. CC.xv.
- Howe the maryage of the kyng of Englande to the doughter of Fraunce was ordred; and howe the Frenche kyng deluyered his doughter to the kyng of Englande in his tent, bytwene Arde and Calais . . . . . Cap. CC.xvi.
- Howe the sieg before Nicopoly in Turkey was reysed by Lamorabaquy;<sup>b</sup> and how the Frenchemen were discōfyted; and howe the hungaryons fledde . . . . . Cap. CC.xvii.
- Of the pouertie and misery that the christen knyghtes of Fraunce and other nacions endured in the cōmyng home to their countreis . . . . . Cap. CC.xviii.
- Howe the trewe tydynges of the batayle in Turkey was knowen in the Frenche kynges house . . . . . Cap. CC.xix.
- Howe the duchesse of Orlyauce, daughter to the duke of Myllayne, was hadde in suspecte of the Frenche kynges syckenesse . . . . . Cap. CC.xx.
- Howe the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse his wyfe tooke great diligence to fynde the meanes to redeme out of prysone the Erle of Neuers their sonne, and the other prysoners beyng in Turkey . . . . . Cap. CC.xxi.
- Howe the Duke of Gloucestre subtly sought out the meanes howe to distroy kyngge Richarde of Englande, his nephewe . . . . . Cap. CC.xxii.
- Howe the Duke of Gloucestre was taken by the erle Marshall, by the cōmaundement of the kyngge . . . . . Cap. CC.xxiii.
- Howe the lordes of Fraunce retourned by see to Venyce; and of the ysles they founde by the waye . . . . . Cap. CC.xxiii.
- Howe after the retourne of the lordes of Fraunce, the Frenche kyngge entended what he myght, to sette a concorde and peace in the churche . . . . . Cap. CC.xxv.
- Of the dethe of y<sup>e</sup> duke of Gloucestre and of the erle of Arundell; and howe the kynges vncles and the Londoners tooke the mater . . . . . Cap. CC.xxvi.
- Of the great armye that was made in the cite of Reynes, as well by the Emperoure as of the realme of Fraunce on the state of holy churche . . . . . Cap. CC.xxvii.
- Howe the erle marshall in Englande apealed by guage of vtterauce therle of Derby, sonne to the duke of Lancastre, in the presence of the kyngge and his counsaile, Cap. CC.xxviii.
- Howe kyngge Richarde gaue sentēce wherby he banysshed out of Englande the erle of Derby for ten yere, and therle Marshall for euer . . . . . Cap. CC.xxix.
- Howe the erle of Derby departed fro Lōdon to go into Fraunce, and the erle Marshall went into Flaunders, and so into Lombardy . . . . . Cap. CC.xxx.
- Howe the lorde Guyllyam, erle of Ostreuaunt, sent to his cosyn, the erle of Derby, certayne messangers; and howe the erle came to Parys, and howe he was receuyed, Cap. CC.xxxi.
- Howe the treatie that had been at Reynes bytwene the Frenche kyngge and the kyng of Almaygne, concerning the vnyte of y<sup>e</sup> churche was folowed; and howe the byshoppe of Cambrey was sent by the sayd kynges to Rome and to Auignon, to them

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.

- them that wrote themselves popes, to thentent that they shuld depose themselves fro their papalytees, and submytte them to the order of these two kynges,  
Cap. CC.xxxii.
- Howe the Frēche kyng assembled the prelates and other noble mē of his realme with the vnyuersyte of Parys, to take counsaile howe they shulde order pope Benedic at Auignon,  
Cap. CC.xxxiii.
- Of the answer of the duke of Lancastre to the knyght sent to hym fro his sonue, therle of Derby; and howe the duke of Lancastre dyed . . . . . Cap. CC.xxxiiii.
- Howe the dethe of the duke of Lancastre was knowen in Fraunce; the kyng of Eng- lande wrote in maner of ioye to the Frenche kyng therof, and wrote nothyng therof to therle of Derby, who was the dukes son . . . . . Cap. CC.xxxv.
- Of the treatie of a maryage bytwene the erle of Derby and the duke of Berreys doughter; and howe kyng Richarde of Englande dyde lette it, by the erle of Salisbury,  
Cap. CC.xxxvi.
- Howe kyng Richarde ordayned to go into the marchesse of Irelande, Cap. CC.xxxvii.
- Howe the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury was sente into Fraunce to therle of Derby, fro the Londoners and other counsayls of Englande, to haue hym to retourne into Englande . . . . . Cap. CC.xxxviii.
- Howe the erle of Derby tooke leaue of the Frenche kyng, and went to his cosyn the duke of Bretayne . . . . . Cap. CC.xxxix.
- Howe the erle of Derby arryued in Englande; and howe he was receyued of ŷ Lōdoners,  
Cap. CC.xl.
- Howe tidynges cāe to kynges Richarde of the cōmyng of therle of Derby with great puissaunce . . . . . Cap. CC.xli.
- Howe kyng Richarde yelded hymselfe to the erle of Derby to go to London,  
Cap. CC.xlii.
- Of the state of quene Isabell of Englande, and howe she had all newe persones apoynt- ed to wayte vpon her; and howe kyng Rycharde was sette in the towre of London,  
Cap. CC.xliii.
- Howe kyng Richarde of Englande resined the crowne and the realme into the handes of the erle of Derby, duke of Lancastre . . . . . Cap. CC.xliiii.
- Of the coronacyon of kyng Henry duke of Lancastre, by the consent of the realme, and the maner of the feest . . . . . Cap. CC.xlv.
- Howe newes of the takyng of kyng Rycharde was knowen in Fraunce by the comyng thyder of the lady Coucy; and howe the Frenche kyng was displeased,  
Cap. CC.xlvi.
- Howe the Frenche kyng reysed vp an armye to sende vpon the fronters of Englāde,  
Cap. CC.xlviii.
- Of the dethe of kyng Rycharde of Englande; and howe the treuse bytwene Englande and Fraunce was renewed, and also of the deposityon of pope Benedic at Auignon,  
Cap. CC.xlix.



## THE CRONYCLE OF FROISSART.

---

*Howe sir Johan Bouchier, governour of Gaunt, during the truse had newe vitayled the towne of Gaunt. And howe a maner of people called comporsels<sup>a</sup> dyde moche hurte in the countre.*

### CAPITULO PRIMO.

**S**IR Johā Bouchier who had *ȝ* gouernyng of Gaūt vnder kyng Rycharde of Englande, and the capiteyns of the cōmontie of the towne, as Peter de Boyes, frāces Atreman, and Peter le Myttre,<sup>b</sup> they prouyded surely for the warre, and duryng the truse they had greatly vitayled and refreshed the towne with all prouision parteyning to the warre, and also the castell of Gauure, and other places vnder their rule.

In the same season there was a cōpany of rutters gadered togyder in the wode of Respayle, and there they had fortified a house, so that it coude nat lightly be wonne; they were people chased out of Alos, of Grantmount, and out of other places in Flaūders, and had lost all that euer they had, and wyst nat how to lyue, but by robberyng and pilling wheresoeuer they coude gete it: so that there was as than no spekyng but of these pygges of Respayle. This woode is bytwene Regnays and Grauntmount, Anghien and Lysen:<sup>c</sup> they dyde moche hurt in the lordship of Athe, and in the lande of Floberge, and of Lyssines, and in the lande of Danghien; and these pyllers were borne out by them of Gaunt, for vnder the coloure of them they dyde moche hurt as in robberyng and sleynge: they wolde go into Heynalte and take men and women in their beddes, and leade them to their forteresse, and raunsome thē at their pleasure: they made warre to euery man. The capitayne of Athe, who was called Baudrius de la Mocte,<sup>d</sup> layde often tymes awayte for them, but he coude neuer trappe them, they knewe so many shyftes. They were so feared in the frōters of Heynalte and Brabant, that none durst go that waye into the countre.

The duke of Burgoyne on the other parte, for the warr that he loked for, he garysshed and prouided for all his townes in Flāders. There was capitayne of Bruges, the lorde of Guystelles, and of Courtray, sir Johan Jeumont, and sir Willyam of Namure.<sup>e</sup> As than sir Willyam of Guystels was lorde of Dan,<sup>f</sup> and of Courtray, sir Johan Jeumont, and sir Peter of Neyper.<sup>g</sup> In lykewis in all the townes on the frontier

VOL. II.

B

of

<sup>a</sup> Porkers.

<sup>b</sup> Le Nuytre.

<sup>c</sup> Lyssines.

<sup>d</sup> Lorde Baudrius, and de la Motte.

<sup>e</sup> "For Sir William of Namur was at that time Lord of Sluys."—From the Lyons' edition.

<sup>f</sup> Damme.

<sup>g</sup> "Sir Peter de la Siple was Lord of Ipres."—Lyons' edition.

of Fraunce, there were men of warre set by the duke of Burgoyne. In the towne of Ardenbourcke, there was in garyson sir Guy of Pontaillyer, marshall of Burgoyne, sir Ryflarte, of Flaunders, sir Johan of Jeumont, sir Henry of Coynge, the lorde of Montigny, in Ostrenant,<sup>a</sup> the lorde of Longneual, sir Johan Barnet,<sup>b</sup> sir Peter Bayllenn, Philpot Gany, Raoleyn de la Foley, and dyuers other; these men of armes were two hundred; and so they toke aduysse togyder, and were in wyll to ryde into the foure craftes,<sup>c</sup> and destroy that countre, for moche vitayle came fro thens into Gaūt; and so on a day they departed and toke that way, and the same day that the frenchemen were rydden forthe, there was rydden forthe out of Gaunt a two thousande men mete for the warre, and Fraūces Atreman was their capitayne: and so sodainly they mette with the frenchmen in a village, and whan eche of them knewe other, they sawe well they shulde haue batayle. Than the frenchmen valiantly set fote to the erthe, and approached their ennemyes, and the gauntoyse in lykewise set on them; there they beganne to shote and to fight eche with other; they were on suche a place that the gauntoyse coude nat passe at their aduātage; there was a sore batayle, and many feates of armes done on bothe partes, and dyuers caste to the grounde: Sir Riflart of Flaunders was ther a good knight, and dyd valiantly. The knyghtes and squyers fought valiantly with the gaūtoyse, and so it behoued them to do, for there was no raunsome; but finally the gauntoyse were of suche nombre that they obteyned the place, and the frenchmen were constrained to lepe on their horses or els they had been all lost, for the gauntoyse surmounted them. And there was slayne sir Johā Varlet,<sup>b</sup> sir Peter of Bailleule, Bell Forrier, Philippe of Ganey, Raolen de la Foley, and dyuers other, whiche was great damage; and the other were fayne to flye, and to entre into Ardēbourcke, or els they had ben deed without recouerie. And after this aduenture, the vycount of Meaulx was sent in garyson to Ardenbourcke, with a certayne nombre of men of armes, and they newly repayed the towne, and he had with hym a hūdred speares of good men of armes. And as than sir Johan of Jeumont was great baylye of Flaunders, and so he had ben two yere before: he was greatly douted in all the countre of Flaunders, bycause of his valyantesse; and whan he might get any of the gauntoyse, there went no raunsome for them, for he outhur putte them to dethe, or els cutte of their handes and fete, or putte oute their eyen, and sende them home, to gyue ensāple to the other gauntoyse; he was so renowned in Flaunders to do iustyce without pytie in correctyng the gauntoyse, that there was no spekyng in all Flaunders but of hym.

Thus in euery Realme the worlde was in trouble, as well bitwene Fraūce and Englande, as Castell<sup>d</sup> and Portyngale, for ther the warre was newly renewed; and the lady of Aniove, who wrote herselfe quene of Naples and of Hierusalem, was come to Auygnon to the pope, and there kepte her house, and her son Loyes with her, who was called kyng of Cecyle, the whiche his father hadde conquered; the quenes entencion was to make warre in Prouence, without they of that countre wolde take her for their lady, and become vnder her obeysaūce, and sir Bernarde de la Salle was entred into Prouence, and made warre there in her quarell. The same season ſy lorde of Coucy was also at Auygnon, and had layen a xv. wekes in his bedde, of a hurte that he hadde on his legge with rennyng of a horse: and whan he was hole, than he olentymes dyde vyses the quene and recōforted her, the whiche he coulde do right well; the quene taryed there for to abyde for the duke of Berrey, who was also comyng to Auignon to speke with the pope, and to ayde his suster the quene. The frenche kyng and his vnclles hadde sente into Prouence sir Loyes of Sanxere, marshall of Fraunce, with fyue hūdred men of armes to warre in that cōūtre, without they wolde come to obeysaunce vnder

<sup>a</sup> Ostrevant.<sup>b</sup> Bernecte.<sup>c</sup> Quatre Mestiers.<sup>d</sup> Castile.

vnder the quene : some submytted themselfe, but nat all ; howebeit, the cytie of Marcell,<sup>a</sup> and the grettest parte of the countre yelded them to the quene, but the cytie of Ayes, in Prouence, and Tarraston,<sup>b</sup> and dyuers knyghtes of the countre, wolde nat yelde them to the quene, sayeng, howe sic had no ryght to demaunde the countie of Prouence, tyll she were peasably receyued for lady, and her sonne as kynge, of Pulle,<sup>c</sup> and Calabre, in Naples, and Cecile, and whan she hath possession of these, than Prouence shall obeye her, as reason requyreth. In those marches there made warre for<sup>d</sup> the erle Sir Charles de la Paixe,<sup>e</sup> the erle Conuersant,<sup>f</sup> and sir Johan of Luzenbourge,<sup>g</sup> his sonne. And with the quene at Auignon, as chefe of her counsaile, was sir Johan of Baylleule.<sup>h</sup>

In the same season there fell in Lombardy a marueylous insydence, which was moche spoken of throughe out all the worlde, and that was of the Erle of Vertus, called sir Galeas,<sup>i</sup> and of his brother sir Barnabo, the grettest in all Lombardy ; they had raygned longe and gouerned all Lōbardy lyke two bretherne : the one of them ruled nyne cyties, and the other tenne, and the cyte of Millayne was gouerned one yer by the one, and thother yere by the other ; whan sir Galeas dyed, he lefte behynde hym a sonne, who was than erle of Vertus, and named like his father sir Galeas, but than swaged the loue bitwene him and sir Barnabo, his vncl, for than sir Galeas doughted hym of sir Barnabo, his vncl, leest that he wolde take away his lades fro him, lyke as he dyde fro his father, for his vncl of olde tyme<sup>k</sup> toke awaye the lande fro their brother sir Mauffe,<sup>l</sup> and caused him to dye. So thus therle of Vertus doutyd hym greatly of his vncl ; howebeit, he wrought subtelly to bringe hymselfe in suretie, I shall shewe you howe. Sir Barnabo had in vsage, that all suche landes as he had rule of, he raunsomed thē so greuously, and wolde taxe the men two or thre tymes in a yere, to paye the halfe or thirde parte of their goodes, and none durst saye agaynst hym for feare ; and sir Galeas, erle of Vertus, dyde otherwyse, for the entent to gete loue ; he toke none ayde of his men, but lyued all onely by his reuenewes, and that rule he kept a fyue yere after the dethe of his father, so that he had the loue of all Lombardy, and euery man said they wolde be gladd to lyue vnder hym, and euery man spake yuell of sir Barnabo priuely as they durst, because he toke so excessyuelly of them ; so finally the Erle of Vertus thought to execute his entent, as he that doughted greatly his vncl, and as it was sayde he sawe some lykelyhode. On a day he sente secretly for suche as he trusted best, and to some he shewed his entent, but nat to all, for feare that his purpose shulde be known.

And so it fortunyd that sir Barnabo on a daye rode forth fro one Castell to another to sporte hym : the erle of Vertus his nephewe knewe therof, and layde for hym thre bussmentes, to the entent that his vncl shulde nat scape, for he must nedes at leest passe by one of them ; the erle cōmaūded to take hym but nat to slee him, without he made great defēce. So as sir Barnabo roode forth and thought none yuell, nor was in no feare of his nephewe, so he fell in the daunger of one of the bussmentes, the whiche opnyed and approached hym with their speares couched in the rest. Sir Barnabo had with hym a squyer of Almaygne,<sup>m</sup> who came to hym and sayd, Sir, saue yourselfe, for yonder company maketh but yuell countenance agaynst you, they are partyeyng to youre nephewe sir Galeas ; Sir Barnabo answered, I knowe nat howe to saue myselfe, if they owe me any yuell wyll, but I haue done no trespasse to my nephue, wherby that I ought to flye awaye ; so alwayes they of the bussment drewe nerer and nerer streight vpon him. There was a knyght of Almaygne<sup>n</sup> with sir Barnabo, and whan he

B 2

sawe

<sup>a</sup> Marseilles.<sup>b</sup> Tarrascon.<sup>c</sup> Apulia.<sup>d</sup> It should be "against."<sup>e</sup> Durazzo.<sup>f</sup> Count of Conversano.<sup>g</sup> Luxemburg.<sup>h</sup> Bueil.<sup>i</sup> The name of these brethren was

Visconti.

<sup>k</sup> This is strangely mistranslated ; it ought to be "like as his father and his vncl of

old time," &amp;c.

<sup>l</sup> Matthew.<sup>m</sup> Germany.

sawe this company approche towarde his maister, he had sir Barnabos swerde in his hāde and drewe it oute of the sheth, and tooke it his maister, and sayd, Sir, defende yourselfe,<sup>a</sup> and than the knight drewe out his owne swerde lyke a valyant man to stande at his defence; howbeit, all aueyled hym nothyng, for incōtyment he was enuyroned, and his mayster also, with their enemyes, and the sayd knight was ther slayne, bycause he putte hymselfe to defence, wherof sir Galeas was afterwarde ryght sore displeased. So sir Barnabo was there taken, for he made no defence, nor none of his men, and so he was brought to a castell wher his nephue was, who was gladde of his comyng. The same day sir Barnabos wyfe and chyldren were taken, who were to mary, and they were kepte in Myllayne in prison. Than sir Galeas toke all the seignories, townes, and castels, that parteyned to sir Barnabo in all Lombardy, to his possessyon, and his vnclē dyed, I can nat saye howe; I thynke he was lette blode in the necke, accordyng to the blode lettyng in Lombardy, whan they wyll auauce a mannes ende. Amonge these tidinges sprang abrode; some were glad therof, and some were sorie, for this sir Barnabo hadde done in his tyme many cruell and horryble dedes, and pytuous iustyce withoute reason, so that but fewe people complayned his trouble, but sayde, he hadde well deserued it. Thus ended sir Barnabo, who had in his dayes raygned puissauntly in Lombardy.

Nowe lette vs retourne to the duke of Burbons, and the Erle of Marchesse army, and what they dyde in Poictou, and in Lymosyn.

They departed fro Moleyns,<sup>b</sup> in Burbonoyse, and so rode forthe with great reuell, and the duke had in his company his nephewe, Johan of Harcourte. The specyall nombre of his army came out of Berry, Auuergne, Poictou, Rouergue, Xaynton, and Lymosyn, and they met togider at Nyorte, a xii. leages fro Poicters. In this meane season sir Wylliam of Lynacke, a right valyant knyght, seneschall of Xaynton, who was as than gouernoure of Myllayne,<sup>c</sup> (in those marchesse,) and so he came into Angouloyns,<sup>d</sup> with a certayne nombre of men of armes, a two hundred; he rested before the castell of the Egle,<sup>e</sup> in the whiche were Englysshemmen, and all the wynter and somer past before had greatly domaged the countre; than this sir Wylliam lyghted afote, and so dyd all his cōpany, and valyantly assayled the castell; it was a sore assaute and well contynued, for they within defēded themselfe for feare of their lyues; Sir Wylliam hymselfe that day dyde right nobly, and gaue ensample howe his men shulde assaile withoute any sparyng. This assaut was so well contynued, that the Castell was taken byforce; the frenchemen entred in by ladders, and all that were within slayne and taken. Thus this sir Wylliam of Lygnac dyde the first enterprise in that season, abydinge for the duke of Burbone and his route.

Whan the duke of Burbone was come to Nyorte, and his company, there he founde a great nombre of men of warre abydinge for hym; and there was redy his cōsyn, the erle of Marche, with a great nōbre, and also the Vycount of Tonnere, and sir Henry of Thouars seneschall of Lymosyn, the lorde of Pons, the lorde of Parteney, the lorde of Thouars,<sup>f</sup> the lorde of Puyssaunce,<sup>g</sup> and dyuers other barons of Poytou, and of Xaynton; and than sir William of Lignacke came to the duke, who had newly wonne the Castell of the Egle,<sup>e</sup> wherfore the duke gaue hym great thanks. Whan all these men of warre were assembled toguyder, they were a seyn hundred speares, besyde the Geneuoyes, and other varlettes: they were in nombre two thousande fightyngē men; thane they

<sup>a</sup> These few words of the German are not to be found in the Lyons' edition; a sentence, however, occurs there in a parenthesis, and which is omitted by Lord Berners, but which does not seem material to the narrative, viz. ("which was seen by those who were advancing to take him.")

<sup>b</sup> Moulins.

<sup>c</sup> Joines conjectures it to be Millac.

<sup>d</sup> The Angoumois.

<sup>e</sup> L'Aigle.

<sup>f</sup> Tours.

<sup>g</sup> Pousanges.



they toke aduise whyder they shulde go, outhere to Vertuell,<sup>a</sup> or to Taylbourc, or to Mountlewe; and all thynges consydered, they determyned to go to Mountlewe, because it was a castell standyng on the laundes of Burdeaux: they thought if they might get that castell, all other shulde be the more easier to wyne; and, also, than shulde no man come out of Burdeaux without their knowledge. So they rode thyderwarde and passed Angolesme,<sup>b</sup> and so came before Mountlewe, and ther layd their siege. The chefe leaders of all the dukes hoost was sir James Pounsarte,<sup>c</sup> and Johan Bonne Launce: incontynent they made redy to assaile the castell, and so enuyroned the castell aboute, and gaue assaute with great courage, and they within defended themselves valiantly; surely there was an harde assaute and well contynued, and many a proper dede of armes done, for the frenchemen dilygently moūted vp on their ladders, and fought with daggers hande to hande on the walles: so moche dyde the frenchemen, that by pure assaute they wan the castell, and they within slayne, there were but a fewe that were saued. Whan the frenchemen had possession of Moūtlewe, they newlye furnysshed it with men of warre and other prouisyon, and than they toke the waye to Taylbourcke, of the whiche forteresse Dynandon of Perat was capitayne, a proper man of armes; he made but lytell compte of the frenchemen. And whyle the duke laye at siege before this castell, his company wanne two lytell fortresses, whiche had sore haryed the fronters of Poitou. and Lymosyn, by reason of the Englysshmen that were in them; these two fortresses were called Troucet,<sup>d</sup> and Archat, and all that were within were slayne, and the castelles deluyered to thē of the countre, and they dyde beate thē downe to the grounde.

*Howe the bridge of Taylbourcke was wonne by the frenchemen, and howe the Englysshemen fortified themselves against the comyng of the frenchemen. And howe the admyrall of Fraunce and his rout arryued at Edenborowe, in Scotlaunde.*

## GAP. II.

THUS the siege was layd before Tailbourcke by four bastedes; there was in Tailbourcke, a bridge on the ryuer of Charent, and the Englysshemen and Gascoyns had well fortified it, so that all the season before ther coude no shyppe passe to Rochell, nor into Xaynton, without daūger or by truage. Than the frenche lordes aduysed to wyne the bridge to haue the lesse to do, and to lye the more surer in their bastydes; they caused to come to Rochell, shippes by the ryuer of Charent, and in theym certayne Geneuoyes and crosbowes, and made them to scrymysshe with them of the bridge; there was a sore assaute, for the Englysshemen and Gascons had ryght well fortified the bridge, and valyantly dyde defende thēselfe: so they were assayed by lande and by ryuer.

Johan the sonne of the erle of Harcourt was there made knight and reysed his baner; the duke of Burbone his vncler made him knight. This assaut was well cōtinued, and many a feate of armes ther done, the Geneuoyes and crosbowes that were in the shyppes, shotte so rudely and so hole toguyder at them on the bridge, that none of them durste scantely shewe any defence. What shulde I make longe tale; by force of assaut the bridge on the ryuer was wonne, and all that were foude thereon slayne and drowned, none scaped. Thus the frenchemen had the bridge of Taylbourc, their siege was the easier.

<sup>a</sup> Bertueil.

<sup>b</sup> Through the Angoumois.  
La Francitti.—Johnes.

<sup>c</sup> Pousart.

<sup>d</sup> La Troncette.—D. Sawage.

easier. It was but thre leages fro saynt Jolñs Dangle,<sup>a</sup> and two leages fro Xauntes,<sup>b</sup> in the best cowntre of the worlde.

Of the losse of<sup>c</sup> Tayllebourke, they within, Dynandon, and other, were sore dismayed, as they had good cause, for they had lost therby the passage of the ryuer; howbeit, yet they wolde nat yelde them, they thought theselsel in a stronge place, and trusted on some rescue fro Burdeaux; for it was shewed in all those fronters and englysslie forteresses, that the duke of Lancastre, or elles the erle of Buckynggham, with two thousande men of armes and four thousande archers, shulde come to Burdeaux to fyght with the frenchemen, and to reyse all their siege. Of this they greatly trusted; but it fortunod otherwyse, as I shall shewe you. It was ordayned in Englande, that the Duke of Lancastre and sir Johan Hollande, brother to the kyng, sir Thomas Percy, sir Thomas Triuet, the lorde Fitzwater, sir Wylliam wyndesore, sir Johñ Fitzwaren,<sup>d</sup> and other barons, knyghtes, and squyers, with a thousande speares and thre thousande archers, shulde haue gone to Burdeaux, to haue ben there all the somer, and to haue refreshed Mortayne, Boutuyll, and other fortresses in Gascoyne and Lāguedocke, and to fight with the Frenchemen if they founde them in the cuntry; and after that they had taryed there a season, than to haue gone fro thens into Castell,<sup>e</sup> to Bayon, and to Nauarre; for they were in treatie with the kyng of Nauer. This was ymagined in Englade, but all tourned to nought; for whan they knewe the certayute that the admyrall of Fraūce, with a thousande speares of chosen knyghtes and squyers, were come into Scotlande, than they chaunged their purpose, and durst sende none of their men oute of the realme, for they doughted greatly the dedes of the frenchemen and scottes ioyned togyder: also the same tyme there ranne a voyce through all Englande, howe they shulde be the same somer assayled with the frenchmen in thre parties; one by Breitagne, for the duke there was become frenche: and another by Normandye, for the whiche (as it was sayd) the constable of Fraūce made his prouisyon at Harflewe and Depe, and so alonge the see syde to saynt Valeries and to Crotoy; and the thirde by the Scottes; so that for the sight of this they wolde suffre no knyghtes nor squyers to go out of Englande, but made prouisyon to defende their hauyns and portes of the see. The same season the Erle of Arundell, Richarde, was admyrall of the see, and was on the see with a thre or foure score great shyppes, furnysshed with men of armes and archers; and he hadde small shippes that ranne in and oute, and viewed the boundes of the yles of Normandy, to knowe tidynges.

Nowe lette vs leaue to speke of the duke of Burbone, and of the siege of Tayllebourcke, where as he laye a nyne wekes, and let vs shewe howe the admyrall of Fraūce toke lande in the realme of Scotlande, and what chere they had made to them at their firste lodgyng.

The frenche army that went into scotlande had wynde at wyll; it was in the monethe of Maye, whan the waters be peaseable and meke, and the ayre softe and swete. First they costed Flāders, Holande, zelande, and Frise,<sup>f</sup> and at last aproched to the sight of Scotlande; but are they aryued, ther fell an harde aduenture to a yonge knyght of Fraunce, a proper man of armes, called sir Aubert Dāgyers:<sup>g</sup> the knyght was yong and of haute courage, and to shewe his strength and lyghtnesse of body, he lepte vp cleue armed on the walle of the shyppe, and in the lightyng his fete slypped, and so fell ouer the borde into the see, so that he coulde nat be holpen, for incōtyment he sanke downe, bycause of  $\frac{3}{4}$  weight of his harnes, and also the ship sayled euer forthe.

Of

<sup>a</sup> St. Jean d'Angely.

<sup>b</sup> Saintes.

<sup>c</sup> "The bridge of."

<sup>d</sup> Called by Johnes,

"Silbain," and by D. Sauvage, "Silbarin."

<sup>e</sup> Castile.

<sup>f</sup> Frizeland.

<sup>g</sup> D'Angers.

Of this knyghtes aduerture all the barownes and knyghtes were sore dyspleased, but there was no remedy: and so longe they sayled, that they arryued at Edenborowe, the chiefe towne in Scotlande, and wher as the kyng in tyme of peace moost cōmenly laye. And as soone as the erle Duglas and the Erle Morette<sup>a</sup> knewe of their comynge, they wente to the hauyn and mette with them, and receyued them swetely, sayeng, howe they were right welcome into that countrey: and the barons of Scotlande kewe ryght well sir Geffray de Charney, for he had been the somer before, two monethes in their company: sir Geffray acquaynted them with the Admyrall, and the other knyghtes of Fraunce; as at that tyme the kyng of Scottes was nat there, for he was in the wylde scottysse,<sup>b</sup> but it was shewed these knyghtes, howe the kyng wolde be there shortly; wherwith they were well content, and so were lodged there about in the vyllages; for Edenborough, though the kyng kepte there his chefe resydence, and that it is Parys in Scotlāde, yet it is nat lyke Tourney or Valencēnes, for in all the towne there is nat foure thousand houses; therfore it behoued these lordes and knyghtes to be lodged about in vyllages, as at Donfer, Melyne,<sup>c</sup> Cassell,<sup>d</sup> Dōbare, aluest,<sup>e</sup> and suche other. Anone tidynges sprange about in Scotlande, that a great nombre of men of armes of Fraūce were come into their countre: some therat dyde murmure and grudge, and sayde, Who the deuyll hath sent for them?<sup>f</sup> What do they here? Cannat we maynteyne our warre with Englande well ynough withoute their helpe? We shall do no good as longe as they be with vs. Let it be shewed vnto them, that they may retourne agayne, and that we be stronge ynough in Scotlande to maynteyne our warre without them; and therfore we wyll none of their company. They vnderstande nat vs nor we them; therfore we cannat speke togyuder: they wyll anone ryffle and eate vp all that euer we haue in this countrey: they shall doo vs more dyspytes and domages than though the Englysshemen shulde fyght with vs; for though the Englysshemen brinne our houses, we care lytell therfore; we shall make them agayne chepe ynough; we are but thre dayes to make them agayne, if we maye geate foure or fyue stakes, and bowes to couer them.

*Howe the Frenchemen founde a wylde countrey of Scotlande, and were yuell content with thadmyrall, and howe he pacifyed thē with fayre wordes; and howe Fraunces Atreman and his company had nere hande taken Ardenbourcke in Flaūders.*

## C A P. III.

THUS the scottes sayde in Scotlande, at the comynge of the frenchmen thyder, for they dyde sette nothyng by them, but hated them in their courage and diffamed them in their language as moche as they myght, lyke rude people without honoure, as they be. All thynges considered, it was to great an armye of so many noblemen to come into Scotlande, and kewe no reason why; a twentie or thirtie knyghtes of Fraunce had been better than all that nombre of fyue hūdred or a thousande; and the cause why is this:

In Scotlande ye shall fynde no man lightlye of honoure nor gentylnesse; they be lyke wylde and sauage people; they wyll be with no man acquaynted, and are greatly enuyous with the honoure or profyte of any other man, and they dought euer to lese that they haue, for it is a poore countre; and whan the Englysshemen maketh any roode or voyage into the couētre, as they haue done oftē before this tyme, if they thynke

to

<sup>a</sup> Of Moray.<sup>b</sup> Highlands.<sup>c</sup> Dunfermline.<sup>d</sup> Kelso.<sup>e</sup> Dalkeith.<sup>f</sup> In the French, "Quel diable les a amenés?" What devil hath brought them hither.

to lyue, they muste cause their prouysion and vitayle to folowe theym at their backe, for they shall fynde nothyng in that cōtrei but with moche payne; nor they shall fynde none yron to shoue their horses, nor leddar to make harnesse, sadelles, or bridelles; for all suche thynges cometh to them redy made oute of Flaunders; and whan that prouysion fayleth, there is none to gette in the country. Whan the barownes and knightes of Fraunce who were wonte to fynde fayre hostryes, halles hanged, and goodly castelles, and softe beddes to reste in, sawe themselfe in that necessite, they began to smyle, and said to the admyrall, Sir, what pleasure hath brought vs hyder? we neuer knewe what pouertie ment tyll now: we fynde nowe the olde sayenge of our fathers and mothers true, whāne they wolde saye, Go your waye, and ye lyue long, ye shall fynde harde and poore beddes, whiche nowe we fynde; therefore lette vs go oure voyage that we be come for; lette vs ryde into Englade; the longe taryenge here in Scotlande is to vs nother honourable nor profytable. The admyrall apeased them as well as he myght, and sayde, Sirs, it behoueth vs to suffre a lytell, and to speke fayre, sithe we be in this daunger; we haue a great longe waye yet to passe, and by Englande we can nat retourne; therefore lette vs take in gree that we fynde; we can nat be alwayes at Parys or Dygeon, at Beautie<sup>a</sup> or at Chalons: it behoueth them that wyll lyue in this worlde, thynkyng to haue honoure, to suffre somtyme as well pouertie as welth.

Thus sir Johan of Vien, admyrall of Fraunce, apeased his companyons with these wordes and suche other, whiche I can nat all reherce. They aquaynted them as moche as they might with the barownes of Scotlande, but they were visyted by them but very lytell; for as I haue sayde before, there is in the lytell honour, and of all people yuell to be aquaynted withall. The moost company that the frenchemen had, was the erle Douglas and the erle Morette;<sup>b</sup> these two lordes dyde them more solace than all the resydue of Scotlande; yet there was another thyng that was right harde to the frenchemen; for whan they were in Scotlande, and wolde ryde, they foude horses to dere, for that that was nat worthe tenne florens they coude nat bye vnder threscore or a hūdrēd, and yet with moche payne to gette any for money; and yet whan they had any horses, than hadde they nother harnesse, sadell, nor bridell, without they had brought it with them out of Flaūders. In this trouble and daunger were the frenchemen; yea, and moreouer, whāne their varlettes went forthe a forragynge, and hadde charged their horses with suche as they coude gette, in their retournynge home the scottes themselfe laye in wayte for theym, and all that they had taken from them, and they well beten and some slayne; so that there was none that durste go a foragynge for feare to be slayne, for in a moneth the frenchemen loste of their varlettes mo than a hundred; for if they went forthe thre or foure togyder, they neuer returned agayne. Thus the frenchemen were handeled; and besyde that, the kynge of Scottes was desyred to come forthe, and so were the other lordes, knightes, and squyers of the realme; but they answered and sayd, howe they wolde make no warre into Englande as at that tyme; and that they sayd, to thentent that the Frenchemen shulde paye well for their comyng; for or the kyng wolde come out of the wylde scottyssh<sup>c</sup> to Edenboroughe, he demaūded to haue a great somme of money for hym and for his people; and the admyrall of Fraūce was fayne to promyse and to seale, that the kynge shulde haue a certayne somme of money or he and his company auoyded the realme; if he had nat done thus, he shulde haue hadde none ayde of the scottes: he was fayne to make that marchaūdisse or elles a worse; and yet, whan he had made the best accorde and apoyntment that he coude make with theym, he hadde by them but lytell profyte nor helpe, as ye shall here further in the hystorie.

But nowe a lytell I wyll retourne and tell of the aduentures of Flaunders and of the maryage

<sup>a</sup> Beaune.

<sup>b</sup> Of Moray.

<sup>c</sup> Highlands.

maryage of the yonge frenche kyng, and howe Ardenbourcke hadde nere been taken by stelthe, where as the Vycont of Meaulx and sir Johñ of Jeumont laye in garyson.

After the disconfytur that sir Ryffarte of Flaunders had made in the lande of the four craftes<sup>a</sup> without Gaunt, than he came to Ardēbourcke, and thyder was sente in garyson sir Robert of Bethune, vycoût of Meaulx, and there he foûde sir Johan of Jumont and his company; and thyder was sente a xl. speares, knightes and squyers, suche as desyred to seke adventures. Whaïne the Vycont was come thider, he entended to fortify and repayre the towne in all poyntes. Fraunces Atreman and they of Gaunte subtelly ymaged night and day howe they might amoye and do damage to their enemyes, as they shewed right well to their neighbours, as Andwarp,<sup>b</sup> Teiemōde,<sup>c</sup> Ardenbourcke, Bruges, Danne,<sup>d</sup> and Sculse: they ever ymaged, howe to wyne any of them by crafte; and to say the trouth, they had suche cōpany as were mete to execute suche dedes. So it fortunēd, about the ende of Maye, Fraūces Atreman and a seuyn thousande with hym departed fro Gaunt, to thentent to wyne Ardenbourke by stelh, and all the knightes and squyers therin, and specially they desyred to haue the capitayne, sir Johan Jumont, bycause he had done them many great damages, as in takyng and sleying, and puttyng out of their eyen, and cuttyng of handes, fete, and eares of their men: so thus on a Wednysdaye, aboute the dawnyng of they daye, they came to Ardēbourcke, and had with them scalyngē leddars redy: the Vycont of Meaulx, sir Johan Jumont, sir Ryffarte of Flaunders, the lorde of Damert, sir Tercelette of Montigny, and sir Parducas of Pount saint Marke, the lorde of Langueuall, and sir Johan his sonne, sir Hewe Desnell, the lorde de Lalayne, sir Reynolde of Lōmye, and dyuers other, lay slepyng in their beddes, on trust of the watche. Nowe beholde what aduēture they were in. The watche that had watched all nyght was as than departed, and their reliefe nat come as than; the same season Fraunces Atreman and the gaūtoise with their ladders were redy come into the dikes, and so cāe to the walles and dressed vp their ladders, and began to mount. The same season by aduēture there was walkyngē within the wall the lorde of saynt Albyne, and with hym a squyer of Picardy, named Enguerant zēdequyn,<sup>e</sup> a picarde with a morespikē; I thynke they had ben of the watche the same nyght, and was nat as than departed: to say the trouthe, and they had nat ben, Ardenbourcke had ben taken, and all the knightes in their beddes.

*Howe the lorde of saynt Albyne and Enguerant zendequyn sauēd Ardenbourke fro takyng; and how the quene of Hungry sente ambassadours into Fraunce, to mary therle of Voloyes<sup>f</sup> to her eldest doughter.*

### C A P. III.

WHAN sir Gousseaux<sup>g</sup> of saynt Martyne and Enguerant zendequen sawe howe the gauntoyse mounted vp the walles by ladders, and they saw wher ther was one puttyngē his legge ouer the wall, to haue entred into the towne, they were thā sore abassed, but yet nat so moche but that they toke conforte to themselfe; for they sawe well if they fledde, the towne were lost without recouery; for they parceyued well that theyr entryng was bytwene the departyng of the watche and the comyng of the reliefe. Than Enguerant sayd to the mores pyke, Steppe on forwarde; beholde yonder the gauntoyse are entryngē; helpe to defende vs, or elles the towne is loste; and so they thre went to

VOL. II.

C

the

<sup>a</sup> Les Quatre Mestiers.

<sup>b</sup> Oudenarde.

<sup>c</sup> Dendremonde.

<sup>d</sup> Damme.

<sup>e</sup> "And two or three picards with them, armed with pikes."—*Johnes and D. Sauvage.*

<sup>f</sup> Valois.

<sup>g</sup> The lord of St. Albyne.

the same place where as they sawe the gauntoyse entrynge, and the Pycarde with the morespyke strake hym that was entrynge ouer the wall suche a stroke, that he bare hym clene fro the wall and ladder, and so fell downe into the dyke; and therwith the watche arose, and sawe howe there were in the dykes and there aboute, a great batayle of the gauntoyse; thañe he sowned his trumpette, Treason, treason: therwith the towne styrred euery man oute of their beddes, and harkened to the crye, and sawe howe the gauntois wolde haue stollen their towne: than they armed them as fast as they might; howebeit, for all this the gauntoyse dyde all their best to haue entred into their towne; and the sayde thre<sup>a</sup> persones valyantly defended the walles more than the space of halfe an hour agaynst all the comers, the whiche turned to their great prayse. Thañe the other lordes and knightes came thyder in good array, as the Vycount of Meaulx, with his baner before hym: sir Johan of Jeumont, his penon before hym: and sir Ryflarte of Flaunders, and other; and they founde the knight, the squyer, and the mores pyke, fightyng and defendyng the walles: thañe they cryed their cryes to the rescue: and whan Fraunces Atreman and the gauntoyse perceyued the matter, and howe they hadde fayled of their ententes, they withdrewe themselfe fayre and easely, and reculed their people, and so departed and returned into the rule of the four craftes:<sup>b</sup> and so than they of the garyson of Ardenbourke toke more hede to the kepyng of the towne than they dyde before, and they honoured greatly among them the foresaid thre persones, for and they had nat been, the towne had ben loste and all their throtes cutte.

Ye haue herde here before howe the duke of Aniou, who called hymselfe kynge of Naples, of Cecyle, and of Hierusalem, made warre thre yeres, in Pule,<sup>c</sup> Calabre, and in Naples, agaynst sir Charles de la Paix,<sup>d</sup> and in the makinge of that warre he dyed, and in lykewise so dyde sir Charles de la Paix:<sup>d</sup> some sayd he was slayne in the realme of Hungry, by the consentment of the quene; for after the dethe of the kyng of Hungry, bycause this sir Charles was sonne to the kynges brother, therfore he maynteyned that the realme shulde fall to hym; for his vncler the kyng of Hungry, after his dethe, lefte behynde hym but daughters; so, therfore, the quene feared leest he wolde disheryte her daughters; and therfore (as it was sayd) she caused this sir Charles de la Paix<sup>d</sup> to be slayne, of whose dethe ther was had great marueyle; and<sup>e</sup> so therby the quene was sore enforced, and of her yonge sonne the kyng beyng at Auignon, and so they made war in Prouence. The kyng of Hungry lyuenge, the barons and prelates of Hungry counsayled hym to gyue Margarete, his eldest daughter, whiche was likely to be a great inheritour, to Loyes of Fraunce, erle of Valoyes sonne, and brother to the frenche kyng, bycause they thought he shulde than abyde among them in Hügrý. And whan the kyng was deed, they sent ambassadours into Fraunce to the kyng and to his vncler, shewyng howe the quene of Hungry wolde haue for her eldest daughter the erle of Valoyes. This request semed to the kyng and to his vncler, and to the barons of Fraunce, to be right noble and profitable, excepte one thyng; they thought therby that the erle of Valoyes shulde be very farre of fro his owne nacion; howebeit, all thynges consydred, they thought it a noble and a right profitable thyng for the erle of Valoyes to be kyng of Hungry, the whiche is one of the grettest realmes in crystendome. So these ambassadours were gretly feested and nobly receyued, and to thē gyuen many great gyftes: and so agayne with them ther went to Hügrý other ambassadours out of Frauce, as the byssshop of Mayllerete and sir Johñ la Parson,<sup>f</sup> who by procuracyon generall, whan they were come into Hügrý, he wedded in the name of the erle of Valoyes the lady Margarete, and thaume the bysshoppe returned into Frauce, and also sir Johan Parson,<sup>f</sup> who

<sup>a</sup> Five?<sup>b</sup> The Quatre Mestiers.<sup>c</sup> Apulia.<sup>d</sup> Durazzo.<sup>e</sup> This is hardly intelligible; according to Johnes, it should be "and the war of the queen of Naples and her son Louis the young king, who resided at Avignon, was more strenuously carried on in Prouence."<sup>f</sup> La Personne.

who had wedded the lady and lync by her a bedde curtesly, accordynge to the custome in suche matters requyred; and of this, when he came into Fraunce, he shewed letters patentes and publyke instrumentes, so that they of Fraūce were well content; and so longe after the erle of Valoys wrote hymselfe kyng of Hungry.

Also ye haue herde how the duke of burgoyne<sup>a</sup> and the duke Aubert of Bauier,<sup>b</sup> lorde of Heynalte, Hollande, zelande, and Frise,<sup>c</sup> had maryed their chyldren at Cambray toguyder, at whiche maryage the frenche kyng was with great tryumphe: some sayde, howe the same tyme that the frenche kyng and his vnclcs, the duke of Burgoyne,<sup>a</sup> the duke of Burbone, and the duke Aubert were there at Cambray, and the lady of Burgoyne,<sup>a</sup> the lady of Brabant, and the lady of Heynalte, howe that by the procurement of the duchesse of Brabant, there was secretly a treatie of maryage moued bytwene the yonge kyng Charles of Fraūce and the lady Isabell, doughter to duke Stephyn of Bauyer;<sup>b</sup> for kyng Charles of Fraunce that laste dyed, before in his dethe bedde he ordayne that Charles his sonne shulde be maryed into Almaygne,<sup>d</sup> if they sawe any place cōuenient, wherby the almayns shulde be alyed to Fraūce; for he sawe well howe the kyng of Englande was maryed to the kyng of Almaynes<sup>d</sup> suster. wherby he spedde moche the better. This duchesse of Brabant, who was a ryght sore ymaginatyue lady, shewed many reasons to the kynges vnclcs and to his counsayle, sayenge, howe this lady was doughter to a great lorde in Almaygne,<sup>d</sup> and the greatest of all the Bauyers,<sup>b</sup> and howe that therby they shulde haue great alyauce in Almaygne;<sup>d</sup> for duke Stephyn (she sayde) was so great a manne, that he myght well breke the purposes of the great lordes of thempyre, for he was as great or greater than the kyng of Almaygne;<sup>d</sup> the whiche enclyned sonest the counsayle of Fraūce to parceyuer in that mater; howbeit, the mater was handeled right secretly, for there were but fewe that knewe therof tyll it were doone, and the cause why this was; it is the vsage in Fraunce that any lady, doughter to any great lorde, yf the kyng shulde mary her, firste she shulde be sene and viewed all naked, by certayne ladyes therto admytted, to knowe if she were proper and mēte to brynge forthe chyldren: and also bycause this lady was of a farre countre, so that if she shulde be pleasaunt to the kyng or nat, or elles all were broken: for these causes the mater was kepte secrete; but the lady, about the feest of Penthecost after, she was brought to Brabant to the duchesse there, who ioyfully receyued her, and ordered her, accordynge to the vsage of Fraunce: and with her in company was duke Frederyke of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> her vnclc, by whom, to saye trouthe, the maryage was firste procured, by suche wayes as I shall shewe you.

*Howe the duchesse of Brabant wrote to duke Frederyke of Bauyer<sup>b</sup> of the maryage of the yonge frenche kyng with her nese Isabell of Bauyer;<sup>b</sup> and howe the duke and the lady came to Quesnoy.*

## CAP. V.

WHAN that duke Frederyke of Bauier<sup>b</sup> cāe first into Frāce to serue the frēche kyng in his journey that he made into Flaunders, and came to the siege of Bourbour, true it was, he was feasted and receyued by the kynges vnclcs, bycause he was come so farre of to serue the kyng as out of the cōūtre of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> the whiche was more than two hundred leages of: this was reputed for a great seruyce, and he was alwayes loged nere to the kyng, in token of good loue and fauour: and whan he departed out of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> he

C 2

thought

<sup>a</sup> Burgundy.<sup>b</sup> Bavaria.<sup>c</sup> Frizeland.<sup>d</sup> Germany.

thought surely that there shulde be batayle bytwene the frenche kyng and the kyng of Englande, in the marchesse of Flaunders or of frauce, for so raine all the brute in all Almaygne;<sup>a</sup> therefore the kyng and his vneles gaue hym the more thanke: and thus as he was with the kyng in that voyage before Burbourke and Bergues, the kynges vneles curtesly demaunded on a day of hym, if he had any doughters to mary, sayeng, howe they lacked a wyfe for the kyng, and howe that they had rather the kyng shulde mary in Bauyer<sup>b</sup> rather thane in any other place, for auunciently the bauyers<sup>b</sup> were of the counsaile of Fraunce. The duke answered and sayd, surely I haue no doughter to mary, but myne elder brother, duke Stephyn of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> hath a right fayre lady to his doughter. Of what age is she of? quod the lordes. Bytwene xiii.<sup>c</sup> and fourtene, quod the duke. That is all that we desyre, quod the kynges vneles: therefore, sir, whan ye do retourne home into Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> speke to your brother of the mater, and bring your nese a pylgrimage to saynt Johns of Amvence, and the kyng shal be there, if it please hym: we thinke he wyll desyre it, for he loneth gladly to se fayre thynges, and if he wysshe to haue her, she shall be quene. So this was the first procurement; and as at y<sup>e</sup> tyme there was no more done nor sayde, the kyng knewe nothyng of these wordes. And whaie this duke Frederyke of Bauyer<sup>b</sup> was returned home, he shewed all this mater to duke Stephyn of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> his brother, who studyed somewhat at his wordes, and at last sayd, Fayre brother, I belene well it is as ye saye; my doughter shulde be happy if she myght come to so high an honour as to be frenche quene; but Fraunce is very farre of, and it is a matter wisely to be regarded to make a Quene. I shulde be ryght soore displeasid if my doughter shulde be caryed into Frauce for suche a purpose, and than sente home agayne; yet I had rather mary her at myne ease, nere home. This was the answer that duke Stephyn gaue to his brother duke Frederyke, wherewith duke Frederyke was well content, and wrote all his answer in substauce to the kynges vneles, and to his vncl duke Auberte, and to the Duches of Brabant. They hadde went that duke Frederyke had forgotten the mater, for they were aboute maryages for the kyng in other places. And the kyng was nere agreed to the doughter of the duke of Lorayne, for she was a fayre damosell of her age, nere to the kynges age; she was of noble and great generacyon of the house of Bloyes; also there was spekyng for the doughter of the Duke of Lancaster, who was after quene of Portyngale, but there was no conclusion, bycause of the warre; therefore the mater hanged styll in suspence. (And as ye haue herle before,) the duches of Brabant, wha she was at Cambray, at the maryages of Burgoyne and Heynalte, and that the frenche kyng was ther, and the duke of Burbone and Burgoyne<sup>d</sup> were there, than she moued forthe this maryage of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> for the kyng, allirmynge that it was moost profitable and honorable for the kyng, bycause of the alyanuce with Almaygne.<sup>e</sup> Madame, quod the kynges vneles, we here nothyng therof. Well, quod the duchesse, I warrant you ye shall here somewhat therof or this soner be paste. Her promyse was well fullylled, for she dyde so moche, that duke Frederyke, vncl to the damosell, was so agreed with his brother, duke Stephyn, that he shulde conney the lady into Fraunce, and that it shulde be noysed all the waye that they went a pylgrimage to sant Johans of Amvence. Every man supposed the same, for Almayns<sup>f</sup> gothe often on pylgrimage; it is their vsage.

Whan duke Frederyke and his nese, the lady Isabell of Bauyer,<sup>b</sup> had ben thre dayes at Brusels, than they toke leue, but it was the duchesse intenson to be as soon as Amvence, or soner than they: So than they came into Heynalte to Quesnoy, where they founde the duke and the duchesse, and sir Wylliam erle of Ostreuaunt<sup>g</sup> and his wyfe; there they were nobly receyved, for duke Aubert was her vncl, and had great mar-  
nycle

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Bavaria.<sup>c</sup> Twelve. *D. Sarrage.*<sup>d</sup> Burgundy.<sup>e</sup> Germany.<sup>f</sup> Ostreuaunt.



neyle what brought them into that countre, and than demanded why they came thyder. Certaynlye, quod duke Frederyke, I haue had moche payne to bringe the maty to this purpose; and so there he shewed hym all the maty, and sayd, I haue brought my brother in that mynde, that I haue brought my nese hyder as ye saue; but when I departed, my brother sayd to me, Nowe Frederike, my fayre brother, ye leade with you Isabell my daughter without any sure estate, for if the frenche kyng wyll refuse her, than is she shamed for euer; therefore aduise you well, for if the maty come nat well to passe, ye shall haue me your enemy for euer; therefore, fayre nyce, ye maye se what daunger I haue putte myselfe in. Than duke Aubert sayd, fayre nephwe, be nat dismayde, for by the pleasure of god she shal be the frenche quene, and thane shall ye be quyte, and haue the loue of duke Stephyn your brother.

Thus they taryed at Quesnoy the space of thre wekes, and ȝ duchesse, who was sage, endoctrined the yonge damosell of Baynes<sup>a</sup> in maner and in countenance, and charged her appayrell, for she was but simple arrayed, after the state of France; thanne she arrayed her as though she had ben her owne daughter; and when euery thyng was redy, ȝ duchesse and the damoselle rode farthe till they came to Amience, and by that tyme was come thyder the duchesse of Burgoyne<sup>b</sup> and of Brabant, and also the frenche kyng and his consaule. The lorde de la Ryner<sup>c</sup> and sir Guy de la Tremoyle,<sup>d</sup> barownes and knyghtes issued out of Amience to mete and receyne them of Heynault. Thus they were brought into Amience, and had moche honoure done to them, and the lordes and ladyes ech of them dyde vrsite other lonyngly; but with moche payne the kyng might slepe, for the inwarde desyre ȝ he had to se her that shulde be his wyte; and he demanded of the lorde de la Ryner<sup>e</sup> when he shulde se her. Of those wordes the ladies had great spotte; so that the Fridaye when the damosell was redy, the thre duchesses ledde the damosell to the kyng, and than she kneled downe, but the kyng toke her vp by the hede and behelde her well, by which regard loue entred into his herte. Than the constable of France sayd to the lorde Goucy, Sir, by my faythe this ladye shall abyde with vs, I se well by ȝ kyng, for his eyes gothe neuer from her. So when they had ben with the kyng certayne space, the ladyes toke leaue of the kyng and went to their lodgynges; as yet they knewe not the kynges intencion. Than the duke of Burgoyne charged the lorde de la Ryner<sup>f</sup> to enquire of the kyng his mynde, who dyde so right diligently, sayeng, Sir, and it lyke youre grace, howe lyke you this yonge lady? shall she abyde with vs? Yea, truly, quoth the kyng, she right well pleaseth vs; therefore shewe vnto myne nyce of Burgoyne,<sup>g</sup> that she maye be deliuered to vs. When the lorde de la Ryner<sup>h</sup> heerde hym saye so, he incontynent shewed it to ȝ duke of Burgoyne;<sup>i</sup> and he streight waye went and shewed it to the ladies, wherof they had great ioye, and cryed, Nowell.<sup>j</sup> Thus the lordes and ladyes were in great ioye, and the kynges nyces were in mynde to haue had the mariage at Arras, but it pleased not the kyng to go soo farre; therefore he desyred his nyce that it might be done there. Well, quod the duke, in a good hour be it, so let it be.

Than the duke of Burgoyne,<sup>k</sup> the constable, the lorde de la Ryner,<sup>l</sup> and the lorde de la Tremoyle,<sup>m</sup> and dyners other in his company, went to the lady of Heynault, and foude her with her nese by her; there he shewed the these tidynges, how the kyng had broken their purpose as the mariage to be at Arras, sayeng, howe the maty touched the kyng so nere,<sup>n</sup> wherfore to morowe next we must heale him of his sicknesse. The

duchesse

<sup>a</sup> Bavaria.

<sup>b</sup> Burgundy.

<sup>c</sup> Rivers.

<sup>d</sup> Tremouille.

<sup>e</sup> "Qui

deputis fut sui epoma." *D. Sauvage*. "Who afterwards was his wife." The arrangement had been kept secret from him.

<sup>f</sup> In the Lyons' edition, "d'Arment, Noel."

<sup>g</sup> "That

he had confessed he could neither chep nor enyke a pape, on account of her, whom he was anxious to have to wife." *From the Lyons' edition.*

duches began to smyle; and so than they departed eche fro other with great ioye and solace. The same saturday at night Fraunces Atreman and the gauntoyse, with a seyn thousande with hym, wente out of the lades of the foure craftes,<sup>a</sup> after he had fayled of takyng of Ardenbourke, and he promysed to them of Gaunt at his departyng, that he wolde neuer retourne into Gaunt tyll he had won some good towne: for the gauntoyse dyd what they might to putte the frenchemen to suche busynesse, that they shulde sende no more companye into Scotlande to the admyrall, to make warre agaynst the Englysshmen; for ther was a cōmon brute, that the Constable and dyuers other men of armes, and certayne crosbowes of Gene,<sup>b</sup> shulde entre into the see, and go into Scotlande to reconforte their men that were ther allredy, makyng warre agaynst Englande. Frāces Atreman, who was a proper man of armes, issued the sayd saturday out of the quarter called the foure craftes,<sup>a</sup> and all night he went costyng Bruges, trustyng to haue wonne it, but it wolde nat be. Whan he sawe that he fayled there, he wente to Danne,<sup>c</sup> and there his spyes mette with hym, and sayde, Sir, it were good ye went to Danne,<sup>c</sup> for sir Roger of Guystelles, who is capitayne there, is nat nowe in the towne; and true it was, he was goone to Bruges, wenyng that the towne of Dan<sup>c</sup> had ben strong ynoughe for their defence, but he was disceyued.

*Howe Frāces Atreman toke the towne of Dan,<sup>c</sup> and howe the french king wedded the lady Isabell of Bauyer,<sup>d</sup> and after went and layde siege to Dame.<sup>e</sup>*

#### CAP. VI.

WHANNE Fraunces Atreman knewe by his espyes y<sup>f</sup> sir Roger of Guystels was nat in Dan,<sup>c</sup> he deuoyded his company in two, and tooke hymselfe the lesse nombre, and sayd, Sirs, go you yonder wayes to suche a gate, and wha<sup>n</sup>e ye here me blowe, go to the barryers and breke thē downe, and I and my cōpany shall bete downe the gate, for it wyll be ouer long or we entre by ladders; the towne shal be ours, I put no dout. It was done as he ordayned, and so wente with the lesse nōbre: and so the first went with ladders into the dykes: they founde no withstandyng, and passed the myre and dressed vp ther ladders, and so entered into the towne and came to the gate, sownyng their hornes without any daunger, for the good men of y<sup>f</sup> towne were in their beddes: this was the xvii. day of July. Thus they came to the gate and brake the barriers, and they without brake downe y<sup>f</sup> barriers there, so that euery man entred. Than they of the towne began to styrre, but that was to late, for they were taken in their houses, and as many as were founde in harnesse and at defence, were slayne without mercy. Thus the good towne of Dan<sup>c</sup> was taken, wherin was founde great richesse, and specially the sellers full of Maluesey<sup>e</sup> and wyne Granade; and it was shewed me howe there was great richesse there of thē of Bruges, whiche they had brought thyder, for feare that they had of rebellyon of the cōmon people.

Frāces Atreman, whan he sawe that he was lorde of Dan,<sup>c</sup> he was greatly reioysed, and sayd, Nowe haue I well kept my promyse with them of Gaunte: this towne shall serue vs well to maister Bruges, Sluse, and Ardenbourke. Than incontynent he made a crye, that no man shulde be so hardy to touche or do any displeasure to any lady or gētylwoman in the towne. There was the same tyme there a seyn knyghtes wyues, who were come thyder to se the lady of Guystelles, she was redy to lye downe a chyld beed. Thus after they had pilld the towne, and slayne all suche as wolde nat take their

<sup>a</sup> Quatre Mestiers.

<sup>b</sup> Geneva.

<sup>c</sup> Damme.

<sup>d</sup> Bavaria.

<sup>e</sup> Malinscy.

their parte, than they went to repayre the towne agayne. Whanne they of Bruges herde therof, they were sore displeased, and nat without cause, and armed them, and with baner displayed came before the towne of Dan,<sup>a</sup> and began to scrimysse and to assaile the towne; but all was for nought; they lost more than thei wan, and so returned agayne to Bruges. Whan these tidynges came to Gaunt, they were greatly reioysed, and reputed that enterprise for a noble dede, and Fraüces Atreman for a valyant man.

Nowe let vs returne to the frenche kynges weddingg.

Whan the duches Margarete of Heynalte, who had the yonge lady in her keynge, whan she sawe the day was come, she apparelled the lady honestly; and to them came the duches of Burgoyne<sup>b</sup> and the duches of Brabant, accompanied with many ladies and damosels: these three ladies coueyed the lady Isabell of Bauiers<sup>c</sup> in a chayre, ryche-lye couered, with a crowne on her heed, worthe the richesse of a realme, whiche the kyng had sent her before: and the bysshoppe of the same place dyde wedde them in the presens of all the lordes and ladies. After the masse and solempnyte finysshed, the kyng and all they went to dyner, whiche was great and sumptuous, and erles and barownes serued the kyng in ryche array. Thus the day cōtynued in great sporte tyll it was night: than the kyng went to bedde with his newe wyfe: so the feest endured tyll the wednisday<sup>d</sup> after. Than tidynges came to the kyng and his counsaile, howe Fraunces Atreman had wonne the towne of Danne;<sup>e</sup> also there came an haraude from the duke of Burbone, and brought letters to the kyng, signifieng hym howe Taylbourcke was wonne and turned frenche, and howe the duke of Burbone and his cōpany was goyng to ley siege to Vertuell,<sup>f</sup> and howe they had in Poyctou, Xaynton, and Limosyn recōquered sixe forteresses. These tidynges somwhat reioysed the court, and sette at nought the lesyng of Danne,<sup>g</sup> sauyng that it was cōcluded that the kyng shulde do nothing tyll he had ben in Flaunders and won agayne Danne,<sup>h</sup> and to entre so farre into the four craftes,<sup>i</sup> out of the whiche all the venym issued, that he shulde leave no house standyng, but to dystroy all. Than messengers were sent ouer all the realme of Fraunce, cōmaundyng all men of warre to be by the first day of August in ȝ marchesse of Picardy, to ley siege to Dan.<sup>j</sup> These tidynges spredde abrode in the realme of Fraunce, and euery knight and squyer made them redy to come to the kyng, as they were cōmaunded. The same day duke Frederyke of Bauyer,<sup>c</sup> and duke Aubert, and all the barony toke leue of the kyng, and euery man returned home to their owne, and lefte with the kyng the lady Isabell of Bauyer,<sup>c</sup> as than the frenche quene.

The frenche kyng, who had made his cōmaundement throughe all his realme, sayd howe he wolde neuer come in Parys tyll he had ben before the towne of Danne;<sup>h</sup> and so the xxv. day of July he departed fro Amyence with the constable, and dyuers other lordes of his house, and went to Arras, where he taryed but one night, and the next day he went to Lan<sup>k</sup> in Arthoyse, and dayly men of warre came to hym fro all partes; and so at last he came to Ipre, so that by ȝ firste day of August he was before Dan,<sup>h</sup> and laye so nere to it, that the gonne shot passed ouer his heed. A thre dayes after came to the kyng, Wylliam of Heynalte, who was ryght welcome to the kyng and to the duke of Burgoyne: so there they layde a goodly siege about Dan,<sup>h</sup> and therin was enclosed Fraüces Atreman, who bare himselfe valiantly, for euery day ther was outhere scrimysse or assaut, without it were truse. The lorde of Clary, who was mayster of the ordynance with the lorde of Coucy, was striken with a quarell out of the towne, of whiche stroke he dyed; whiche was great damage, for he was a noble knight. To the siege of Danne

<sup>a</sup> Damme.  
edition and Johnes.

<sup>b</sup> Burgundy.  
<sup>c</sup> Bertueil.

<sup>e</sup> Bavaria.  
<sup>f</sup> Quatre Mestiers.

<sup>d</sup> Tuesday, according to the Lyons'  
<sup>g</sup> Lens.—Johnes.

Danne<sup>a</sup> there came men oute of the good townes of Flaunders, as Ipre, Bruges, and out of Franke. At this siege were beyond a hundred thousande men. The kyng laye by-twene Dan<sup>a</sup> and Gaunte; and capitayne of the flemmynges was the lorde of saynt Pye<sup>b</sup> and the lorde of Guystels, with a xxv. speares, and laye myddes amonge them for feare of discencion.

*Howe dyuers burgesses of Sluse were beheaded; and howe Sluse was chaunged for the lande of Bethune; and howe the siege of Danne<sup>a</sup> contynued longe.*

### CAP. VII.

AT an assaut there was made knyght by the kyng, Wylliam of Heynalte: that day he reared vp his baner, and quytte hymselfe lyke a good knyght; but at that assaute the Frenchemen loste more than they wanne, for Fraunces Atreman had with hym certayne archers of Englande, who greatly greued the assaylantes; also he had great plentie of artillery, for whan the towne was wonne it was well furnysshed, and also he caused moche to be brought fro Gaūt, whan he knewe that he shulde haue siege layde to the towne. In the same season, whyle the siege laye thus before Danne,<sup>a</sup> some of the greatest of the towne of Sluse, suche as than bare moost rule in the towne, were so wrapped with treason, ꝑ they wolde haue delinered the towne to the kynges enemyes, and to haue murdered their capitayne and his company in their beddes, and to haue set fyre in the kynges nauy, that lay there at ancre, laded with prouisyon for the kyng; before he wente to Danne,<sup>a</sup> he was in purpose to haue gone into Scotlande after his admyrall; and also these traitors had thought to haue broken downe the see bankes, therby to haue drowned the greatest parte of the kynges hoost. Of all this they had made marchaundise with them of Gaūte, and all these treasons shulde haue ben done in one night; but ther was a good man in the towne, as he was in an hostry, herde all this treason that they were purposed to do, and incontynent he went to the capitayne, and shewed hym the mater, and named to hym certayne of them that had thus conspyred the treason. Whan ꝑ capitayne herde that, he sore marueyled, and toke a threscore speares of his company and wente fro house to house of the treatours, and so toke and sette them in dyuers prisons in sure kepyng: than he toke his horse and rode to the kyng, and so came to his tente before hym and the duke of Burgoyne;<sup>c</sup> he shewed all ꝑ mater howe the towne of Sluse was likely to haue ben lost, and all the kynges hoost likely to haue ben in the water to the brestes; wherof the kyng and the lordes had great marueyle: and than the capitayne was cōmaunded that he shulde retourne to Sluse, and incontynent to stryke of all their heedes, withoute any respyte, therby all other to take ensample. So the capitayne returned, and incontynent strake of all their heedes. This was the conclusion of that busynesse. Than the duke of Burgoyne cast in his aduise, to fynde some meanes to entreat his cōsyn, sir William of Namure, to haue of hym the towne of Sluse by exchange for other landes, and to ioynge that towne to the countie of Flaunders; and this was moche by thaduyse of sir Guy de la Tremoyle,<sup>d</sup> who had the somer before sojourned in Sluse, with a certayne nombre of men of warre.

Whañe sir Wylliam of Namure herde first spekyng of that matter, he was marueylously displeasid, for the towne of Sluse, with the apendauntes and profyters of the see, was a fayre and profytable herytage, and it was fallen to him by his auncestours, wherfore  
he

<sup>a</sup> Danme.

<sup>b</sup> Sainpi.

<sup>c</sup> Burgundy.

<sup>d</sup> Tremouille.

he loued it the better; howebeit, the duke of Burgoyne<sup>a</sup> lay so sore on hym, therefore, that there was no remedy, but to make the exchange; for the dukes entensyon was to make there a stronge castell, to subdue all comers and goers by the sec entryng into the hauyn of Sluse, and to kepe it with mē of warre, so that none shulde entre by the see in those marchesse without their daunger, and to make a towre so highe, to se twētie leages into the see. So thus breuely this sir Wylliam of Namure was so sore desyred by the duke of Burgoyne<sup>a</sup> and his counsaile, that he was contente to exchange Sluse for the landes of Bethune, whiche is a fayre and a great herytage in that cuntry; he to haue that to hym and to his heyres for euer: and so than incontynent the duke of Burgoyne sette workemen a worke to make the castell of Sluse.

Nowe lette vs speke of the siege of Danne.<sup>b</sup>

There was nere euery daye an assaute, and dyuers scrimysshes at the gates and barriers, so that dyuers were hurt and slayne daylye. The frenchmen coude nat well come to the walles, bycause of the dykes were full of myre; for if it had ben rayny wether, the hoost shulde haue had moche ado, and shulde haue ben fayne to haue dislodged, wheder they wolde or nat; but by the space of a moneth that the siege endured, it neuer rayned, and they had vitayle ynoughe; howebeit, bycause of the yuell ayre and the stynkyng of deed beestes and horses the ayre was so corrupte, that dyuers knights and squyers were therby sore sicke, so that dyuers went to refresshe them at Bruges and other places, to forsake the yuell ayre.

The kyng hymselfe went and laye at Marles, howebeit, his tentes were styll pight vp in the felde. The entent of Fraūces Atreman was to holde styll the towne, tyll socours came out of Englande to reyse the siege; and surely they of Gaunte had sende into Englande for rescue, and surely the kyng of Englandes vncler had come ouer the see sufficiently garnysshed with men of warre and artillarye to haue reysed the siege, but that they were lette bycause of the admyralles beyng in Scotlande, with a certayne nombre of men of armes: and also it was sayde in the realme of Englande, that the constable of Fraūce shulde come after into Scotlande with a great puisaūce for to make warre into Englande, wherby the gauntoyse were nat rescued; wherfore it behoued them within the towne of Dan<sup>b</sup> to make an yuell bargayne.

*Howe the gauntoyse fledde out of Dan<sup>b</sup> by night, and howe the frenchemen toke the towne and destroyed it; and also howe the kyng destroyed the cuntrye of the foure craftes.*

#### C A P. VIII.

THE xxvii. day of August the towne of Dan<sup>b</sup> was won; for whan Fraunces Atreman perceyued that he had no socour, and that his artillary began to fayle, than he was somewhat discomforted in hymself, and sayd to them of his counsaile, Sirs, I wyll that we of Gaunt go our wayes, and lette vs shewe this one to another secretlye, for if they of the towne knewe of our departyng, to saue themselfe, their wyues and children, paraduente they wyll make a shrewde marchaundyse for vs, yea, and delyuer vs to oure enemyes, so that they may be in rest and peace, and that shulde coste vs oure lyues, but I shall kepe them well therfro; wherfore let vs kepe vs all toguyder, and let vs go about the towne to vysite the watche, and lette vs cause the men and women of the towne to go into the mynster, makynge them to beleue that to morowe next we

VOL. II.

D

shall

<sup>a</sup> Burgundy.

<sup>b</sup> Damme.

shall haue a great assaute: and bicause we wolde y they shulde haue no damage, therefore we wyll haue them in suretie in the churche out of the waye; and we shall saye to the watchemen, that we wyll go out and make a scrymysse with the hoost; and whan we be in the felde, lette vs ryde on the spures to Gaunte. They of his counsayle sayd, Sir, ye haue well sayd, so lette it be. And so euery man ordayned himselfe as they had purposed, and in the euenyng they trussed redy all their goodes, suche as they might cary awaye, and put all women and children and other prisoners into the mynster, and specially all ladyes and gētylwomen, sayeng to them, Fayre ladyes, we shall haue to morowe in the mornyng a great assaute, and we wolde nat that ye shulde be abasshed or take any damage. So thus they lefte them in the churche, and at the first hour of the night the gauntoise went and dyde visyte the watche, and on the walles there were none but they of the towne. Than Fraunces Atreman sayde to them, Sirs, make this night good watche, and depart nat fro the walles for any thyng ye here or se, for in y mornyng we shall haue an assaut, but yet first this night I wyll awake the hoost. His wordes were well beleued; euery man went he had sayd trouthe. Whan he had ordayned euery thyng accordyng to his mynde, than he caused a gate to be opyned, and so he and all his company issued out, and he was nat halfe a leage fro the towne but it was day light: than they of the towne perceyued well that Fraunces Atreman and all his company were gone; than they thought themselfe disceyued: than y chefe of the towne began to entreate with the men of the kynges, that were there as prisoners, sayeng to them, howe they had slayne Fraunces Atreman the same night.

Whan dyuers of the towne of Dan<sup>a</sup> vnderstode howe Fraūces Atreman and his cōpany were gone, and howe the gate was opyn, they ran out of the towne that best might; and whan this was knowen in thoost, the bretons and burgonyons<sup>b</sup> desyring to wyn, mounted on their horses and fell in the chase, and pursued the gauntoise tyll they cāe within two leagues of Gaunte: so in the chase there were many slayne and taken, mo than fyue hundred, but of them were but fewe gaūtoise, but moost of Danne,<sup>c</sup> that fledde out of the towne: in the meane season the towne was assayled, where was made no defence; so the frenchemen entred on euery syde by ladders, and had passed the dykes with moche payne: and whan they were within, they had wende to haue won gret riches, but they fōude there nothing but poore people, men, women, and chyl dren, and gret plentie of good wyne; and so for dispyte and displeasure they sette fyre in the towne, so that it was nighe all brent; wherof the kyng and the duke of Burgone was sore displeased, but they coude nat amende it; howbeit, the ladyes and gentywomen with moche payne were saued fro hurt of their bodyes or losse of their goodes.

After the takyng of Dan,<sup>a</sup> the kyng was counsayled to dislodge, and so the king went and lodged a two leagues fro Gaunte, at a towne called Artulle,<sup>c</sup> and whyles the kyng lay there, his men of armes rode in the cōuntry of the four craftes,<sup>d</sup> and distroyed all the cōuntre, bycause in tyme past the gauntoyse had chiefe cōfort euer fro them; therefore they brent downe towres, churches, and houses, and chased the men, women, and chyl dren into the woodes. Whan the frēchmen had done that distruction, than it was ordayned to go and lay siege to the castell of Gaure, and than after to Gaunte; but all that tourned to nothyng, for tidynges came to the kyng beyng at Artuelle,<sup>c</sup> fro the queene of Hungry, by the bysshop of Wasselure,<sup>e</sup> the sayd queenes ambassadour, with dyuers knyghtes and squyers in his company; and they brought letters of credence, certifyng howe the said queene was comyng into Fraunce, to fetche Lewes of Fraunce, erle of Valoys, to haue hym into Hūgry to her doughter, whom sir Johan la Parson had

<sup>a</sup> Damme.<sup>b</sup> Burgundians.<sup>c</sup> Artevelle.<sup>d</sup> Les Quatre Mestiers.<sup>e</sup> Vassereul.

had wedded by procuracion in the name of the erle of Valoyes. These tidynges pleased greatly the kyng and his counsayle; and so it was thought, that for the honour of the yonge Lewes, erle of Valois, that they shulde returne into Fraunce, and thought they hadde done ynoughe for that season in the countre of Flaunders.

*Howe the frenche kyng departed out of Flaunders, and gaue leaue to his men to departe, and howe he cāe to Parys to treat with the ambassadours of Hungry; and howe the Marques of Blanquefort<sup>a</sup> toke by strēgth to his wyfe the same lady enherytoure of Hungry.*

## CAP. IX.

THAN the frenche kyng departed fro Artuell the xii. day of Septembre, and gaue leaue to all men of warre to returne to their owne houses; of the whiche departyng the Gauntoyse were ryght gladdē. Than the kyng went to Craye,<sup>b</sup> where the quene his wyfe was; for whan he went fro Amyens to Flaunders, he sent her thyder to kepe her estate; and so he taried ther certen dayes, and so the kyng wente to Parys, and the quene to Boyse de Vyncens;<sup>c</sup> and ther the kyng and his counsayle entended for the ordring of the yong erle of Valoyes, for he wolde that he shulde go nobly into Hūgry, where as they toke hym for kyng; but the mater chaunged otherwyse in a shorte season after in the realme of Hungry, as ye shall here after. It is of trouthe y<sup>e</sup> the quene of Hūgry, mother to the yonge lady whom the erle of Valoys had wedded by procuracion (as ye haue herde before) had all her entēt to make therle of Valoys kyng of Hungry, desyring in her mynde nothyng so moche; and for y<sup>e</sup> same entent she had sente the byshop Vasereull and other of her countrey into Fraunce: and in the meane season that these ambassadours came into Fraunce, the kyng of Almayne,<sup>d</sup> who wrote himselfe kyng of Romayns, had a brother yonger than hymselfe, named Henry of Blāquefort.<sup>a</sup> This kyng of Romayns was enfourmed of the state of the treatie bytwene the quene of Hungry and the yonge erle of Valoys, and howe that the ambassadours were goone for hym into Fraunce. This kyng of Romayns, who loued better the profite of his brother rather than of his cosyn, cast his āduyse, and had done long, and all his entensyon and affection was, howe to bring the mater about secretly and craftely, as he well shewed; for if the quene of Hungry had knowen of his mynde, she wolde haue provided remedy right well therfore; but she knewe it nat, as it well appered. The counsayle of Almayne<sup>d</sup> knewe right well that the quene of Hūgry and her daughter were a sportyng of them at a castell nere to the marchesse of Almaygne:<sup>d</sup> that ones knowen, the Marques of Blāquefort<sup>a</sup> assembled a great nōbre of men of armes, to the nombre of ten thousande, and so came sodaynly, and layde siege to the castell where as the quene was. Whan the quene sawe that, she was sore dismayed, and incontynent sent to the Marques, to knowe why he had besieged her, and what thyng he demanded. The Marques answered, that it was for none other thyng, but that she wolde mary her daughter to a stranger, brother to the frēche kyng, by whom she coude neuer haue any conforte if she neded; therefore, he sayd, it were more better and profitable for her and for the realme of Hungry to let hym haue her who is her cosyn, rather than another of a farre cōutre, as Lewes, erle of Valoyes. The quene answered agayne and sayd, howe she neuer herde before his desyre, and therefore she was agreed with the frenche kynges brother; sayeng also, howe the kyng of Hungry, her husbāde, or he dyed, had ordayned that it shulde so be. To the whiche sayeng, the Marques answered and sayd, He cared nat for all that, but sayd, howe he had the good wyll of the most parte of all

D 2

the

<sup>a</sup> Brandenburg?<sup>b</sup> Craonne?<sup>c</sup> The wood of Vincennes.<sup>d</sup> Germany.

the realme of Hungry, wherfore he sayd he wolde haue her, outhr by fayre meanes or by foule: the queene was sore dismayd with those wordes; howbeit, she helde her stylle and sente all about for socoure, but none wolde come to her agaynst the Marques, and there the hungryes sheved well howe they hadde as lyue haue the marchaundyse of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> as of Fraūce; and whan the queene sawe that she coulde haue no conforte of her men, she wyste nat what to do: the Marques thretened her, that if he wanne her by force, he wolde sette her in a towre, with bredde and water, as longe as she lyued, whiche made the queene afrayed, for she sawe well she was but in a weake place, wout men, vitayle, or prouision; than she treated with the Marques, and delyuered hym her dere doughter, and incontyent he dyd wedde her and bedde her.

Thus sir Henry of Boesme,<sup>b</sup> marques of Blanqueforte, came to the herytage of Hungry, wherof he was kyng, more by force than by loue, as to the consentynge of the olde queene, but she was fayre to agre, or els to haue made a worse marchaundyse. These tidynge were anone knowen with the ambassadoures that were in Fraunce, and were comyng homwarde, and the erle of Valoys redy at Troyse, and had taken leaue of the kyng, and of his vnclis; whan he herde of these tidynge he was sore displeased, but he coulde nat remedy it.

Thus the hugros<sup>c</sup> departed right sore displeased, they had good cause why; the yonge erle retourned to Parys to the kyng his brother, and to his vnclis, who made no great force of that maryage, Sayeng, howe the erle of Valoys was happy that his wyfe was taken fro hym, for they sayde, howe Hungry was very farre of, and yuell to be ledde by the frenchemen, nor they coude haue but lytell ayde or cōforte of thē: therefore this mater was forgotten and lytell sette by. Than they thought for hym another maryage, that was the doughter of the duke of Myllayne, who was inherytoure to all Lombardy, whiche lande is more ryche than the realme of Hungry, and more nerer for the frenchemen.

Nowe lette vs leaue to speke of these mariages, and lette vs retourne to the duke of Burbone, who was in Poyctou, at the siege before Bertuell: and than lette vs retourne to the admyrall beyng in Scotlande, and shewe howe he dyd there.

*Howe the duke of Burbone toke Bertuell, in Poictou. And also of the great assemble that the kyng of scottes made to entre into Englande.*

#### C A P. X.

THE same season that the kyng was in Flaunders, as well before Dan,<sup>d</sup> as before other places, the duke of Burbone with a great nombre entred into Lymosyn, and into Poictou, and toke dyuers castelles and fortresses that were as than Englysshe, as Archeacke, Garnat, Mountlue, eight myle fro Burdeaux, and Taylbourcke, on the ryuer of Charent, and than wente and layde siege before Bertuell, a stronge castell in Poictou, on the marchesse of Limosyn, and Xaynton. Of Bertuell were capitayns, Andrue Pinas, an Englyssheman, and Bertande Mōtrynet, Gascoyne, and they had with thē a certayne nombre of good companyons. At this siege there was dyuers assautes and scrimysshes, and many feates of armes done, and nighe euery day at the baryers: what by them within and them without, therē was scrimysshing where as  
were

<sup>a</sup> Germany.

<sup>b</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>c</sup> Hungarians.

<sup>d</sup> Damme.



were some slayne and some hurt; howbeit, the duke of Burbone sayde, he wolde nat departe thens tyll he had the castell at his pleasure, for so he had promysed the duke of Berry whan he departed fro hym last. And durynge the siege, it fortun-ed that Bertrande dn Montrynet, one of the capitayns of the castell, as he was deuysing to make a newe dyke, ther came a gonne shotte fro the hoost, and sodainly slewe the sayd Bertrande, who before that tyme had escaped sixtene peryllous sieges; of his dethe they within the castell were sore dismayed and soroufull, but they coude nat amende it, and so than Andrewe was capitayne alone: and than within fyftene dayes after, there was a treatie bytwene them without and them within, to yelde vp the castell with all the prouision therin, and they within to be surely cōueyed to Boutcuyll, wherof Dyrandon de la Perade,<sup>a</sup> was capiten. Thus the frenchemen had the castell of Bertuell, whiche incontyent they newly repayred, and furnyssed with artyllary and men of warre; than the duke wente and refreshed hym at a good towne therby called Cares, and so from thens to Lymogines,<sup>b</sup> and there he taryed an eight dayes, and determyned to retourne into Fraunce: and so he dyde, and founde the kyng at Parys, with his nephue the erle of Valoyes, who receuyed hym with great ioye.

Nowe lette vs retourne to the busynesse of Scotlāde, and to the admyrall of Fraunce, and what he dyde in that season.

Ye haue herde here before howe y admyrall of Fraunce, with a certayne men of warre lāded in Scotlande at Edenborowe, and howe they founde there another maner of countre than it was shewed the yere before by the barones of Scotlande: for the kyng there and the barons of Scotlande the yere before had enformed sir Geffray of Charney, and sir Aymarde de Marse,<sup>c</sup> that if the seneschall, constable, or admyrall, of Fraunce, wolde passe the see and come into Scotlāde, but with one thousand speares, and fyue hundred crosbowes, with harnesse to arme a thousande scottes, that than with the ayde of the hole realme of Scotlande they wolde fyght with thenglysshmen, and make so great a hole in Englande, that it shulde neuer be recouered: and so thus the Frenchemen with the admyrall passed the see, and were come into Scotlande; howbeit, they founde nat all the sayd promyse nat very true; first, they founde harde people and yuell frendes, and a poore cōutre; suche knightes and squyers of Fraunce as were there, knewe nat wheder to sende their varlettes to forrage, they durst nat without they went i great routes, for the bribours of the countrey who watched for them at the passages, and often tymes slewe of them. At last kyng Robert of Scotlande cāe to Edenborowe with a payre of reed blered eyes, it semed they were lyned with sēdall,<sup>d</sup> and it semed ryght well by hym, that he was no valyant man in armes: it semed he had rather lye styll than to ryde: he had a ix. sonnes, and they loued well armes: so thus whā the kyng was come thyder, the lordes and knightes of Fraunce drewe to hym and dyd their dutie;

<sup>a</sup> Probably Dinandon of Perat, of whom see back.

<sup>b</sup> Lymoges.

<sup>c</sup> Hamart de Masse.

<sup>d</sup> In the french edition "il sembloit de sendal," which Mr. Johnes has translated "eyes of the colour of sandal wool." Cendal, or sendal, was a thin silk, generally of a reddish colour. "Cendal une ctoffe de soie, dont on faisoit les banieres et l'oriflamme."—Glossaire de la Langue Romaine.

L'oriflamme est une baniere,  
Aucun poi plus fort que guimple,  
De cendal roujyans et simple,  
Sans pourtraicture d'autre chose.

Guyart, poete de 13<sup>me</sup> siecle.

"All was couyrde wyth redd sendell  
"The carpage behynde, as yow telle,  
"Came with the tresur ryght."

Le bone Florence of Rome, MSS. Mor. Public Library, Cambridge.

dutie; and there was present the erle Douglas, the erle Morette,<sup>a</sup> the erle de la Mayre,<sup>b</sup> the erle of Surbaulte,<sup>c</sup> and dyners other: there the admyrall requyred the kyng, that y cause of their comyng into that cowntre myght be accōplysshed, sayeng howe they wolde fayne make a iourney into Englande. The barons, knyghtes, and squyers, of Scottlāde, suche as desyred to auance themselfe, were right ioyfull, and said that if god be pleased they wolde make suche a voyage, y shulde be to their honour and profyte. The kyng than sent out his cōmaundement to assemble his power, and so at the day assigned he had redy a xxx. thousande men all on horsebacke, and as they came, they lodged accordyng to the vsage of their cowntrey, I thynke nat all at their ease.

Sir Johan de Vyen, who had great desyre to ryde, and to employe his tyme into Englande, to do some great enterpriise, when he sawe the scottes were come, he sayd, Sirs, nowe it is tyme to ryde, we haue lyen to long styll; so than the setting forwarde was publysshed to euery man: thā they toke their waye to Rosebourcke.<sup>d</sup> In this iourney the kyng was nat, he abode styll at Édēborow, but all his sonnes were in the army. The thousande complete harnesses that the Frenchemen brought with thē, was deluyered to the knyghtes of Scotlande, and of Norwiche,<sup>e</sup> who were before but yuell harnesssed, of the whiche harnesses they had great ioye, and so they rode towarde Northumberlande; and so longe they rode that they came to the abbey of Mauues,<sup>f</sup> and there they lodged all about the ryuer of Tymbre,<sup>g</sup> and the nexte day they cā to Morlane,<sup>h</sup> and than before Rosebourcke:<sup>d</sup> the kepar of Rosebour<sup>d</sup> vnder the lorde Mōtagu, was a knight called sir Edwarde Clyfforde: the admyrall of Fraunce, and the scottes, taryed and behelde well the castell, and all thynges considred. they sawe well to assayle it shulde lytell aueyle them, for the castell was stronge and well furnyssed with artillery. And so than they passed by and drewe along the ryuer syde approchyng to Berwyke. And so long they rode that they came to two towres right strong, whiche were kept by two knyghtes, the father and the sonne, bothe were called sir Johan Strande; aboute these towres were fayre landes and a fayre place, the whiche incontinēt were brent, and the two towres assayled. Ther was many feates of armes shewed, and dyuers scottes hurte with shotte and cast of stones; finally the towres were wonne, and the knyghtes within, by playne assaut, yet they defended thē as longe as they might endure.

*Howe the frenchemen and scottes wanne the castell of Varley,<sup>i</sup> and distroyed diuers other townes in Northumberlande, and howe they withdrew agayne into Scottlāde, whan they knewe that the kyng of Englāde came on them with a great puyssaunce.*

## C A P. XI.

AFTER the conquest of thes two towres, than they went to another castel called Varley,<sup>i</sup> partyeyning to the herytage of sir Johā Montagu, and Capitayne there vnder hym was sir Johan of Lusseborne, who had there with hym his wyfe and his chyldren, and all his good: he knewe well before that the scottes wolde come thyder, therefore he had purueyed the castel to the best of his power to abyde the assaute: so about this castell

<sup>a</sup> Of Moray.      <sup>b</sup> Mar.      <sup>c</sup> Sutherland.      <sup>d</sup> Roxburgh.      <sup>e</sup> In the French, "Norwege," meaning, I apprehend, those from the Western and Orkney Isles.—Johnes omits the phrase altogether.      <sup>f</sup> Melrose.      <sup>g</sup> Tweed.      <sup>h</sup> Lambir-Laes.

<sup>i</sup> Wark?

tell taryed all the armye; this castell stode in a fayre countre, by a fayre ryuer whiche cometh out of Tymbre,<sup>a</sup> and roneth into the see. So on a day there was a great assaut, and the frenchemen bare thē well the same day, moche better than the scottes dyd, for they entred into the dykes, and passed through with moche payne; there was many feates of armes done, what by them aboue and them beneth; the frenchemen mouēd vp by ladders, and fought hande to hande with daggars on the walles: Sir Johan Lusseborne dyd quyte hymselfe lyke a valyant knight, and fought with the frenchemen hande to hande on the ladders. At this assaute there was slayne a knight of Almaygne,<sup>b</sup> called sir Bleres<sup>c</sup> Gastelayne, whiche was great damage; there were many hurt that day, but finally there was so moche people, and thassaute so well contynued, that the castell was wonne, and the knight, his wyfe and chylde taken, and a xl. other prisoners. And than the castell was brent and rased downe, for they sawe well that it was nat to be kept, seying that it was so farr in Englande as it was. Than the admyrall and scottes rode towarde Auwike,<sup>d</sup> in y<sup>e</sup> lande of the lorde Percy, and lodged there about, and brent certayne villages; and so came to another castell of therle of Northūberlandes, standing on the see syde, but they assayed it nat, for they knew well that they shulde lese their payne: and so they rode all about that fronter, half waye bytwene Berwyke and Newcastle, on the ryuer of Tyne, and there they vnderstode howe y<sup>e</sup> duke of Lācastre, therle of Northūberlande, the erle of Notyngam, the lorde Neuell, and the barons of those marches of Northūberlande, and of the bysshoprikes of Yorke and Dyrham, were comyng on them with a great power. Whan thadmyrall of Fraunce knewe therof, he was right ioyfull, and so were all the barons of Fraūce that were in his cōpany, for they desyred to haue batayle, but the scottes cared lytell therfore; there they were counsayled to returne againe towarde Berwyke, bycause of their prouisiōn that folowed them, and also to be nere their owne coūtre, and there to abyde for their enemyes; so thadmyrall beleued thē, and returned towarde Berwyke, wherof sir Thomas Redman was capitayne, and with hym right good men of armes. So the frenchemen and scottes lay before the towne but assayed it nat, and so passed by the next day, and toke the waye to Burbourcke,<sup>e</sup> to retourne to their owne countrees.

Tidynges was brought anon into Englāde, howe the frēchmen and scottes were in Northumberlāde, and destroyed and brent the coūtre: the kyng of Englande knewe right well before of their comyng, wherfore y<sup>e</sup> lordes were redy in the felde, and toke their waye towarde the scottes. Thenglysshmen had made that somer the grettest prouisiōn that euer they made, to go into Scotlande, bothe by lande and water; they had a xxvi.<sup>f</sup> vessels on the see charged with prouisiōn costyng the frōters of Englande, redy to entre into euery hauē of Scotland; and the kyng cāe hymselfe acōpanyed with his vnclēs, therle of Cābridge, and sir Thomas Holand; ther was also therle of Salisbury, therle of Arūdell, the yong erle of Penbroke, the yong lorde Spēsar, therle of Stafforde, and therle Mysien,<sup>g</sup> and so many barons and knightes, that they were four M. speeres, besyde them that were before w<sup>th</sup> the duke of Lācastre, therle of Northūberlāde, therle of Notyngam, the lorde Lucy, the lorde Neuell, the lordes and barons that were on before pursuyng the scottes, who were a two M. speeres, and xv. M. archers, and the kyng and the lordes were fyltie M. archers, besyde varlettes.

The kyng folowed the duke of Lancastre so fast, that he and all his host came into the marches about Yorke: for on the way tidynges cāe to the kyng, howe that his people that were before were likely to fight with the scottes in the marches of Northūberlande, therefore he made the gretter hast: and so the kyng cāe at last to saūt Johñs of Beuerley

<sup>a</sup> Tweed.<sup>b</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> Alberis.<sup>d</sup> Alnwick.<sup>e</sup> Roxburgh.<sup>f</sup> It should be six score.<sup>g</sup> Mysien. Q<sup>r</sup>?

Beuerley in the marches of Dyrham, and ther tidynges came to the kyng, how that the scottes were returned into their owne countre; so all the men of warre lodged about in the marches of Northüberland.

Nowe shall I shewe you of an aduēture that fell in thēglysshe hoost, wherby that voyage was broken, and mortall warre bytwene certayne of the lordes.

*Howe sir Johan Hollande slewe sir Rycharde Stafforde, and howe therle of Stafforde came to the kyng to demaunde iustyce.*

### C A P. XII.

IN the marches of saīt Johñ of Beuerley, in ȝ dyoces of Yorke, the kyng of Englande was lodged with a great nombre of erles, barons, and knyghtes, for euery man lay as nere the kyng as they might, and specially his two vnclis, sir Thomas Holande, erle of Lien,<sup>a</sup> and sir Joan Holande his brother. In the kynges company there was a knyght of Boesme,<sup>b</sup> was come to se the quene of Englande, and for loue of ȝ quene, the kyng and the lordes made hym good chere: his name was sir Myles,<sup>c</sup> he was a fresshe lustye knight after the vsage of Almaygne;<sup>d</sup> and so it fortunēd besyde a vyllage nere to saīt Johans of Beuerley, ȝ there fell wordes bitwene this knight, and two squyers of sir Johan of Hollandes, brother to the kyng, and to the wordes there came two archers of sir Johan<sup>e</sup> Staffordes; the wordes so multiplied that the two archers toke parte with the straunger, and blamed the two squyers, sayng, Sirs, ye do wrōge to medyll with this knight, for ye knowe he is belongyng to the quene, and of her countre: ye ought rather to support him than otherwise: than one of the squyers sayd, what enuyous knaue, hast thou to do, thouge I blame hym for his folly? What haue I to do? quod the archer: I haue right well to do therwith, for he is companyon to my mayster, therefore I wyll nat be in the place to suffre hym to receyue any villany; yea, quod the squyer, if I thought thou woldest ayde hym agaynste me, I wolde put this swerd through thy body, and made cōtūnaūce as thouge he wolde haue stryken him: the archer stepped backe with his bowe, whiche was redy bente, and sette an arowe therin and drewe it vp, and shotte agaynst the squyer, that the arowe pearsed thorough the body and hart, and so fell downe deed; whan the other squyer sawe his felowe deed, he fledde awaye, and sir Myles<sup>e</sup> returned to his lodgyng. The two archers went to their maister, and shewed hym all the aduēture: Sir Richarde<sup>e</sup> Stafforde sayde, Thou hast done right yuell; Sir, quod the archer, I coude do none otherwise, without I wolde haue been slayne myselfe, and I had rather haue slayne hym, thā he shulde haue slayne me: Well, quod sir Rycharde,<sup>e</sup> go thy waye that thou be nat founde, and I shall entreate for thy peace with sir Johan of Holande, by my father, or by some other. So the archer departed.

Tidynges anone was brought to sir Johan of Holande, that an archer of sir Richarde<sup>e</sup> Staffordes, had slayne a squyer of his, ȝ man that he loued best in all the worlde, and it was shewed hym the maner howe, and that it was for the cause of sir Myles<sup>e</sup> the straūger. Whan sir Johan of Holande was well enfourmed of this aduēture, he was ryght sore displeased, and sayd, I shall neuer eate nor drinke tyll it be reuenged; than he lepte on his horse, and toke certayne of his men with hym, and departed fro his owne lodgyng, it was as than right late, and so rode into the feldes and enquered where

sir

<sup>a</sup> Kent.

<sup>b</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>c</sup> Meles.

<sup>d</sup> Germany.

<sup>e</sup> Johnes calls him Ralph.

sir Myles<sup>a</sup> was lodged; it was shewed hym he was lodged in the reregarde, with the erle of Deuuryniers,<sup>b</sup> and therle of Stafforde. Than sir Johan Hollande toke the waye thyderwarde, and sought to fynde sir Myles.<sup>a</sup> And as he and his men rode vp and downe amonge the hedges and bushes, in a straite waye he mette at aduenture with sir Rycharde<sup>c</sup> Stafforde, and because it was night he demaūded who was there; I am, quod he, Rycharde<sup>c</sup> Stafforde; and I am Hollande, quod the other, and I seke for the: one of thy seruauantes hath slayne my best beloued squyer: and therwith drewe out his sword, and strake Rycharde<sup>c</sup> Stafforde, so that he slewe hym and fell downe deed, whiche was great pytie; so he passed forthe and knewe nat well what he had done, but he sawe well one falle to the grounde. Sir Rycharde<sup>c</sup> Staffordes men were sore dismayd when they sawe their maister deed; than they cryed, A, Holande, Holande, ye haue slayne the some of therle of Stafforde, this wyll be heuy tidynges to the father whaīe he knoweth therof. Some of sir Johan of Holandes seruauantes herde well these wordes, and sayde to their mayster, Sir, ye haue slayne sir Rycharde<sup>c</sup> Stafforde; well, quod sir Johan Hollāde, what than? I had leauer haue slayne him than a worse: the better haue I reuenged the dethe of my squyer. Than sir Johan of Hollande wente streyght to saynt Johans of Beuerley, and tooke the francheise of the towne, and abode there styll, for he knewe well there wolde be moche ado in the hooste for the dethe of that knight, and he wyst nat what the kynge wolde saye or do in the mater; so to eschue all parylles, he tooke sentuary in the towne of saynt Johans of Beuerley.

Tidynges anone came to the Erle of Stafforde, howe his sonne was slayne by yuell aduenture: thane the erle demaunded who had slayne hym; and suche as were by hym when he was slayne, sayd, sir, the kynges brother, sir Johan of Holande dyd slee hym: and shewed hym the cause why, and howe it was. Ye maye well knowe that he that loued entierly his sonne, and hadde no mo but hym, and was a fayre yonge knyght, and a couragious, was marueylously sore dyspleased, and sente incontinyt for all his frendes to haue their counsaile, howe he shulde vse hymselfe in the reuengynge of his dethe: the moost wysest man of his counsaile sayd, Sir, to morowe in the mornynge shewe all the matter to the kyng, and desyre hym to haue lawe and iustyce. Thus they suaged somewhat his yre, and so passed that night; and the nexte mornynge Rycharde<sup>c</sup> Stafforde was buried in the churche of the vyllage therby, and at his buryeng were all those of his lynage, barons, knightes, and squyers, that were in that armye. And the obsequy done, the erle of Stafforde, and a threscore of his lynage, mounted on their horses, and so came to the kynge, who was well enformed of that yuell aduenture; and so the Erle founde the kyng and his vnclis toguyder, and a great nombre of knightes with them. When the erle came before the kyng he kneled downe, and all wepyng, sayde with a soroufull harte, Sir, ye are kynge of Englande, and haue solemnly sworne to kepe Englāde in all right, and to do iustyce; sir, ye knowe how your brother wout any tytell of reason, hath slayne my sonne and ayre; Sir, I requyre you do me right and iustyce, or els ye shall haue no worse enemy than I wyll be; and sir, I wyll ye knowe the dethe of my son toucheth me so nere, that and it were nat for brekyng of this voyage that we be in, I shulde bring the host into suche trouble, that with honour it shulde be amended, and so cōteruenged, that it shulde be spoken of a hūdred yeres hereafter in Englande: but as nowe I wyll cease tyll this voyage into Scotlande be done, for our enemyes shall nat reioyse of the trouble of the erle of Stafforde. The kyng answered, knowe for trouthe, that I shall do you iustyce and reason, as far forthie as all my barones wyll iudge: I shall nat fayle therof for no brother that I haue: than they of the erles lynage sayd, Sir, ye haue sayd well, we thanke you therof. Thus the lynage

VOL. II.

E

of

<sup>a</sup> Meles.<sup>b</sup> Devonshire?<sup>c</sup> Ralph.

of sir Richarde<sup>a</sup> Stafforde was apeased, and so helde on their iourney into Scotlande, and all the iourney the erle of Stafforde made no semblant of the dethe of liis sonne, wherin all the barons reputed hym right sage.

*Howe the kyng of Englande caused to be destroyed the church of Meurous,<sup>b</sup> in Scotlande: and howe the barons of Scotlande answered the admyrall of Fraunce, and denyed to leaue Scotlande, and to let the Englesshemen alone.*

### C A P. XIII.

THUS auansed forthe the kyng of Englande with seuyn thousande men of armes, and threscore thousand archers. All the strength of the realme of Englāde was there, for it was sayd, howe the admyrall of Fraunce wolde fight with thē: and in dede he had great desyre and wyll so to do, for he sayde to the barons of Scotlande or they came forthe, Sirs, make your sommons to gette as moche strength as ye can, for if the Englysshemen come into Scotlande, I wyll surely fight with thē; the scottes sayd as than howe they were content therwith; howebeit, after they toke other aduise. The kyng of Englande passed forthe so farr, that he passed Duresme,<sup>c</sup> and Newecastell, on the ryuer of Tyne, and all the lande of Northumberlande, and so at laste came to Berwyke, wherof sir Mathue<sup>d</sup> Redman was capitayne, who receyued the kyng ioyfully: and the kyng taryed nat ther long, but passed forthe ouer the ryuer of Twede, and toke his lodgyng at the abbey of Mewrous,<sup>b</sup> the whiche for all the warres that had been bytwene Englande and Scotlande, had neuer no hurt nor damage, but as than it was clene brent and exiled, for it was thentent of the englysshmen nat to retourne agayne into Englande, tyll they had destroyed all Scotlande, bycause they were fortified at that tyme by the frenchemen. Whāne the admyrall of Fraunce knewe that the kyng of Englande was passed the ryuer of Twede, and was entred into Morlane,<sup>e</sup> in Scotlande, than he sayd to the barons of Scotlande, Sirs, why do we sytte styll? let vs go forthe and aduise our ennemyes, and fyght with them; it was shewed vs or we came here, that if ye had out of Fraunce but one thousāde of good men of armes, ye shulde be stronge ynough to fyght with the Englysshemen: and I ensure you ye haue mo than a thousāde, and fyue hundred crosbowes, and surely the knightes and squyers that be here in my company ar parfyte men of armes, and the floure of chiuallrye, and wyll nat flye, but abyde suche aduerture as god wyll sende you and them.

To these wordes answered the barones of Scotlāde, who knewe so well the puissaunce of the Englysshemen, that they hadde no wyll to fight with them, wherfore they said, Sirs, we beleue well that ye and your company be chosen men, and of great valure; but sir, we haue knowledge that all the power of Englande is here, there were neuer so many Englysshemen toguyder assembled as be nowē: and ye wyll, we shall bringe you into suche a place, that ye shall well se and aduise them; and thanne if ye counsayle that they shall be fought with all, it shall nat be refused by vs, for surely, sir, all suche wordes as ye haue said, we dyde speke them: A goddes name, quod the admyrall, let me ones se thē. And so anon after, therle Douglas, and other barons of Scotlāde, brought thadmyrall vnto a highe mountayne, and vnder the hyll there was a passage, wherby thēglysshe host must passe; on this hyll was thiadmyrall, w̄ diuers knightes of  
Fraūce

<sup>a</sup> Ralph.

<sup>b</sup> Melrose.

<sup>c</sup> Durham.

<sup>d</sup> Before called Thomas.

<sup>e</sup> Lambir-law.

Fraunce in his company, and there clerely they sawe the Englysshemen and all their puissaunce, and ther they nombred them as nere as they coude, to be a sixe thousande men of armes, and threscore thousande archers, and other; than all thynges cōsydred, they sayd howe they were nat of puyssaunce suffycient to fight with the Englysshemen, for they passed nat a thousande speares, and a xxx. thousande of all other men, and but yuell armed: than the admyrall sayd to the erle Duglas, and to therle Morette,<sup>a</sup> Sirs, ye saye but good reason, though ye haue no wyll to fight with the Englysshemen: therfore aduyse you what ye wyll do: they are stronge ynoughe to ouer ryde all your countrey, and to distroy it, and sithe ye maye nat fight with them, I pray you bring me throughe your countrey, by some priuie waye into Englande, if it maye be, and we shall make them warre in some other parte, as they do to vs here: Sir, quoth the barones, that shall we well do, for we knowe dyuers wayes.

So thus the admyrall and the barones of Scotlande determyned to forsake Scotlande, and to lette the Englysshmen alone, and to go and entre into Wales,<sup>b</sup> and to go to the cytie of Carlyle, and there to reuenge them; so they lette the Englysshemen, and toke the forestes and mountayns, and as they rode throughe out Scotlande, they distroyed all as they wente, and brent townes, vyllages, and maners, and caused all the men, women, and chyldren, of the cōutre, to driue all their catayle, and to go into y wyld forestes, for they knewe well the Englysshemen wolde nat folowe them thyder; and the kyng of Scottes wente into the wyld scottysse,<sup>c</sup> bicause he was nat i good poynt to ryde a warfare, and ther he taryed all the warre duryng, and lette his men alone. So the Frenchemen and Scottes passed the highe mountayns, bytwene Northumberlāde and Scotlande, and entred into the lande of Wales,<sup>b</sup> and began to brenne villages, and dyd moche hurte in the Mombrayes<sup>d</sup> landes, and the erle of Notynggham, the erle of Staf-forde, and the barone of Grasoppe,<sup>e</sup> and the Mosgraues landes, and so they toke the waye to the cytie of Carlyle.

*Howe the kyng of Englande toke Edēborowe, the chefe cytie of Scotlande. And howe the duke of Lancastre was in purpose to retourne into Wales,<sup>b</sup> to close in the frenchemen and scottes; and what the frenchemen and the scottes dyde in the sayd countrey.*

## C A P. XIII.

THE<sup>f</sup> admyrall of Fraunce was the erle of Grannt Pre, and the lorde of saynt Croix, sir Geffray of Charney, sir Wyllyam de Brume,<sup>g</sup> sir James of Boesme,<sup>h</sup> the lorde of Pegny, the lorde of Hees, the lorde of Marnell, sir Valeran of Rauennall,<sup>i</sup> the barone Diuery, the barone of Fountayns, the lorde of Croye, sir Brake of Braquemont, the lorde of Landury, and well a thousande speres of barons and knyghtes of Fraunce: and so they and the lordes of Scotlande rode in Northūberlande, bytwene the mountayns on the fronters of Wales,<sup>b</sup> brennyng townes, maners, and countrees; and the kyng of Englande, and his vnclen, with barons and knyghtes of Englāde and their companyes, entred into Scotlande, and brent and exyled on their parte, and so the kyng came and lodged in Edenborowe, y chefe towne in all Scotlande, and there taryed fyue dayes, and at his departyng it was set afyre and brent vp clene, but the castell had no hurt, for it was stronge ynough and well kept. Whyle the kyng lay at Edenborowe, then-

E 2

glysshmen

<sup>a</sup> Of Moray.<sup>b</sup> Cumberland.<sup>c</sup> Highlands.<sup>d</sup> Mowbray.<sup>e</sup> Greystock.<sup>f</sup> "With the."<sup>g</sup> Breunc.<sup>h</sup> Boenn.<sup>i</sup> Reynval.

glyssmen rode abrode in the countre and dyd moche hurt, but they foude nother man nor beest abrode, for all was withdrawn into the forestes. In the Englysshe hoost were mo than a hundred thousande men, and well as many horse, wherof they had nede of great prouisyon, and they foude none in Scotlande, but out of Englande there cā to thē great plentie, bothe by lande and by see. Than the kyng departed fro Edēborowe, and rode towarde Estruleyn,<sup>a</sup> a good towne, wherin there was a great abbey of blacke monkes, and moost comenly the kynges of Scotlande are there buried; the kyng lay in the abbey, and at their departyng, abbey and all was brent. Than they passed the ryuer of Taxe,<sup>b</sup> whiche ronnet to saint John's towne;<sup>c</sup> at the castell of Strulyne,<sup>d</sup> there was a great assaute, but it wolde nat be wonne, yet the towne, and all the landes of the lorde Vercey, they brent.

The entent of the duke of Lancastre, and of his bretherne, was to passe through Scotlande, and to pursue the scottes and frenchemen, for they knew well they were gone the way to Wales,<sup>d</sup> to go to Carlyle, and so they thought to enclose thē bytwene Englande and Scotlande, and to fight with them at their aduantage: this purpose they thought veryly to holde. Thenglysshemen spredde abrode in Scotlāde, there was no resystance agaynst thē, for the countre was voyde of all men of warre: they were gone into Englande with the admyrall of Fraunce: and so there the Englysshmen brent the towne of saynt John's,<sup>e</sup> where as the ryuer of Taxe<sup>b</sup> rynneth, and there is a good hauen to sayle thens ouer all the worlde, and after they brent the towne of Donde;<sup>f</sup> the Englysshmen spared nother abbeys nor minsters, but set all on fyre. And so they of the vourarde ran to Bredan,<sup>g</sup> whiche is a cytie on the see syde, it is on thentre of the wyld scottyshe,<sup>h</sup> but they dyd no hurte therto; howbeit, they of the countrey were right sore afrayed: they of that cytie thought to haue assaute, for they feared leest y kyng of Englande wolde haue come thyder, and haue ouerron all that countre.

Thus in lykewise as the Englysshemen dyde in Scotlande, so dyd the frenchemen and scottes in Englande, in the marchesse of Northumberlande and Wales,<sup>d</sup> and they brent a great countre as they went out of Northumberlande, and entred into Wales,<sup>d</sup> whiche was otherwise called Wynslande,<sup>b</sup> and passed by the landes of the lordes of Graystocke, and Clyfforde, and brent in their voyage dyuers great villages, for they were no men of warre in that cōtre as than, for they were all with the kyng. So they came to the cyte of Carlyle, in Wales,<sup>d</sup> whiche was well closed with gates, walles, and dykes; it was a place that of auncyent tyme kyng Arthure loued right well, bycause that there were great woodes, and many dedes of armes there was done: there laye in Carlyle in garison sir Lewes Clyfforde, brother to sir Wyllyam Neuell, and with hym sir Thomas Mosgraue,<sup>i</sup> and Dauy Holgraue, his sonne, and sir Dongorise,<sup>k</sup> and dyuers other, of the marchesse and fronters of Wales,<sup>d</sup> for the cytie of Carlyle was chiefe cytie of all that countre, and it was nedefull for good men of warre to be ther, for whan the admyrall of Fraunce came thyder he assayled the cytie by great force, the whiche assaute was cruell and fierse. So thus before the cytie there were many noble dedes of armes done.

<sup>a</sup> Sterling.<sup>b</sup> Tay.<sup>c</sup> Perth.<sup>d</sup> Cumberland.<sup>e</sup> Dundee.<sup>f</sup> Aberdeen.<sup>g</sup> Highlands.<sup>h</sup> Westmorland.<sup>i</sup> "And his son, Dauy Holgraue," &c.<sup>k</sup> Earl of Angus.



*Howe the erle of Oxenforde<sup>a</sup> brake the pursute that the kyng of Englād had thought to haue made into Wales<sup>b</sup> after the frenchemen and scottes; and howe the kyng returned the same waye that he came: and howe the frenchemen and scottes determined to retourne agayne into Scollāde.*

## CAP. XV.

THE kyng of Englandes vnclis knewe well what waye the admyrall of Fraūce and the scottes helde, and said how they thought it for y best to folowe theym, and to serche tyll they myght fynde them, and so to fight with them, sayeng, howe they coude in no wyse escape them; in this purpose was the duke of Lancastre and his bretherne, and dyuers other of the great barons of Englande, and the moost parte of the cōmons of the hoost, and as than all their prouisyon was come as well by lande as by see, and the kyng also was agreed to the same purpose; and than on a night the erle of Oxenforde, who was as than chiefe of counsaile with the kyng, and bare all the rule, the kyng trusted no man so moche, he turned the kyng cleue fro his purpose, I can nat shewe you for what cause, but he enformed the kyng, as it was knowen after, and said, sir, What thynke ye to do? Wyll ye folowe the way that your vnclis hath counsayled? Sir, knowe for trouth, that if ye do so, ye shall neuer retourne agayne, for sir, the duke of Lācastre desyreth none other thyng but that ye were deed, that he might be kyng: howe durst he cōsayle your grace to go this wynter season into a strange cōuntry; Sir, I wolde nat counsaile you to passe the moūtayns of Northumberlande, for there be mo than xxx. streightes and passages, that if ye were closed in them, ye shulde neuer come out agayne without daunger of the scottes; Sir, putte nat youreselfe into that daunger whatsoever they saye to you; if the duke of Lancastre wyll go, lette hym go, and haue the charge therof, but by my counsaile ye shall nat go; Sir, ye haue done ynough for this one tyme: youre father was neuer so farre within Scollāde, nor yet kyng Edwarde youre grauntfather; therefore, sir, this oughte to contente you: and saue youre owne persone, ye be yonge and lusty, and suche there be that sheweth you fayre semblant, and loueth you but lytell. The kyng gaue suche audyence to the sayeng of this erle, that it went neuer out of his mynde, as ye shall her after.

The next mornyng the lordes of Englande, and their people, ordred themselfe to departe out of Scollāde, and to folowe their ennemyes to fight with them, as it was concluded the night before; than the duke of Lancastre came to the king his nephue, nat knowyng of the trouble and change of his purpose; and the kyng beyng in his malencoly, assone as he sawe hym he sayd in great yre, certesse vnclis of Lācastre, ye shall nat attayne as yet to your entent: thynke you for all your wordes, y we wyll lese ourselfe folisshely? I wyll nat beleue you, nor yet your cōsayle, for I se therby more damage than profyte to vs and to our people: for if ye wyll make this voyage, do it and ye lyste, but as for me I wyll nat, for I wyll retourne into Englande the nexte waye, and all suche as loue vs wyll folowe vs: than the duke of Lancastre sayd, Sir, I shall folowe you, for ye haue neuer a man in your company that loueth you so well as I do, and also my bretherne, and if there be any man wyll saye (except your persone) that I wolde any thyng otherwyse than well to you or to your people, here is my gage to the cōtrarie;

50

<sup>a</sup> Suffolk.<sup>b</sup> Cumberland.

so there was none that wolde speke any worde; and the kynge helde his peace and spake to other of his seruantes of other maters, and orderyng hymselfe to retorne into Eng-lande the same way y he came; and the duke of Lācastre departed fro the kynge right sore troubled in his mynde, and returned to his cōpany, and made newe ordynaice, for in the morning they had thought to haue folowed the frenchemen into the marches of Wales,<sup>a</sup> but they dyde nat so, for they returned the next waye into Englande. Lo, thus ye may se howe therle of Oxçorde,<sup>b</sup> who was great with the kyng, brake all this voyage, and dyuers of the great lordes sayd that the kyng was yuell counsayled, seyng that all the prouisyon was come: for they sayd they might well haue folowed the scottes into Wales,<sup>c</sup> for in their so doying they shulde cuer haue drawn into Englande warde; and some persons that were very of payne and trauell said, howe that all thynges cōsīdred, they were better to retourne than to go any further, sayeng, howe a great prouision must be had to serue suche an host, and howe it was yuell to passe the mountayns that wynter season, wherby they sayd they might rather lese than wyne.

Thus in this season brake vp the iorney and army of Englande, and the kynge and his lordes returned into Englande, the same way they came, but they hadde destroyed the moost parte of the realme of Scotlande. These tidynges came to the admyrall of Fraūce, and to the scottes; than they tooke counsayle what was best for them to do, and so concluded to retourne agayne into Scotlande, for their vitails began to fayle, and they were in a poore cuntry, for they had destroyed the marches of Carlyle, and the landes of the barone of Clyfforde, the lorde Maubray,<sup>c</sup> and the bysshoprike of Carlyle, but the cytie they coude nat wyne; and the frenchemen sayd, howe they had brent and destroyed in the bysshoprike of Dyrhame, and Carlyle, that was better worthe than all y townes in Scotlande. So the frenchemen and scottes returned into Scotlande the same waye they came, and whan they came into Scotlāde they founde the cuntry destroyed, but the people of the cuntry dyde sette but lytell therby, and said, howe with thre or four poles, shortely they wolde make agayne their houses, for they had saued moche of their catayle in the forestes: but all that the frenchemen tooke they were fayne to paye truely therfore, and dere; the frenchemen were often in great daunger, for the scottes and they were at many debates for vitayle; and the scottes sayd, howe the frenchemen dyde them more damage than the Englysshemen had done; and whan it was demanded of them, why so? they answered and sayde, howe the frenchemen as they rode abrode, they beate downe and defoyled their cornes, as whete, barley, and otes, and wolde nat kepe the highe wayes, but rather ryde through the corne: of whiche domages, they said, they wolde haue of them a trewe recōpence or they departed out of Scotlande, and sayde howe they shulde nother haue shyppe nor maryner to passe thē over the see, without their leaue and lycēce; and dyuers other knightes and squyers complayned, that their woodes were cutte downe by the frenchemen to make their lodgynges.

<sup>a</sup> Cumberland.<sup>b</sup> Suffolk.<sup>c</sup> Mowbray.

*Howe the Frenche lordes were in great paryll in Scottāde, and coulde nat fynde the meanes to passe over the see; and howe they shewed thertes Douglas, and Morette,<sup>3</sup> the hardnesse that they fōude in that countre, and what answerē they made to them.*

## CAP. XVI.

WHAN the admyrall and his company were returned into Scotlande, and were come to Edenborowe, they had endured great payne, and as than they coulde fynde nothing to bye for their money; wynes they had but lytell, and but small ale or bere, and their bredde was of barley or of otes, and their horses were deed for hunger, and fōudred for pouertie, and whan they wolde haue solde thē, they wyst nat to whom, nor ther was none wolde gyue thē onc penny, nother for horse nor for harnesse; the soudyers shewed to their capitayns howe they were delte withall, and they knewe it right well by experyence of themselfe, and their men said howe they coulde nat long endure in that payne: they said that the realme of Scotlande was suche a countre nat to kepe an hoost in wynter, and if they shulde abyde there tyll somer they shulde be deed for pouertie, and if they shulde departe asonder and serche for their lyueng abroadē ī the cōūtre, they doutēd that the scottes wolde slee them in their beddes. The admyrall consydred well all these thynges, and sawe clerely how it was likely to be as they sayde; howebeit, he was in purpose to abyde there all the wynter, and to sende to the frenche kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne,<sup>b</sup> certifyng them what case they were in, and to haue newe prouisyon of money and vitayls, and to make a newe fresshe warre agayne the nexte somer to in Englande; howebeit, he sawe well the yuels of the scottes, and consydred the parell of his people; than he gaue leaue to departe all suche as wolde: but at their departing was the mischefe, for the lordes coulde fynde no passage for thēselfe nor for their men. The scottes wolde that such knightes and squyers as were but poore shulde departe, to thentent that they might rule the remnant at more ease, and sayd to the admyrall, Sir, lette youre men departe whan they wyll, but as for youreselfe, ye shall nat departe out of this cōūtre, tyll we be full satisfied of all suche charges as we haue borne all this sea-on for your army.

These tidynges were right harde to the admyrall, and to the other barons of Fraūce, and shewed all the mater to the erle Douglas, and to the erle Morette,<sup>4</sup> who besemyng were right sore displeased that they were so hardely dalte withall, and said: We be right sorie, for this dealyngē wyll cause that neuer scottysse knight shall come into Fraunce to haue good chere; and so these two erles spake to the other erles and barons of Scotlande, who said, howe they had loste as well as they. wherfore dissymule you with them, for we wyll be recōpensēd: than these two erles sayd to the admyrall, and to the other lordes of Fraūce, howe they coulde nat rule the other lordes nor the cōmons, wherfore it behoued them if they purposed to go out of the realme, to satisfy the cōmons and to restore agayne all their domages: and whan the admyrall sawe that it wolde be non otherwise, he thought he wolde nat lese the more for the lesse; and he consydred well howe he was without conforte, and closed in with the see, and sawe howe the scottes were of a wylde opynion, wherfore they were fayne to agre to the scottes entent, and caused a crye to be made, that all maner of persons shulde come to the admyrall of Fraunce, and proue that any of his men had done thē any damage, and he wolde recōpence

<sup>3</sup> Of Moray:<sup>b</sup> Burgundy.

pence them to the value therof: whiche crye apesed the scottes; and so the admyrall became dettour to them all, and sayd, howe he wolde nat departe out of Scotlāde, tyll all the complaynātes were fully satisfyed and payed. Than dyuers knightes and squyers hadde passage, and so retourned, some into Flaūders, and as wynde and weder wolde drine them, without horse and harness, ryght poore and feble, cursyng the day that ener they came in Scotlande, sayeng, howe there were neuer men had so harde a voyage: wysshing that the french kyng had peace with Englande one yere or two, and so bothe kynges togider to go into Scotlande, vtterly to destroy that realm for euer; for they said, they neuer sawe so yuell people, nor so false traytonrs, nor more folysshe people in feates of warre.

The admyrall of Fraunce by thē that departed first, wrote letters to the frenche kyng and to the duke of Burgoyne,<sup>a</sup> certifyeng them what case he was in, and how the scottes delte with hym, and that if they wolde haue hym to come home, they must sende thyder suche sōmes of money as he was become dettoure, for to be payed to the knightes, squyers, and commens of Scotlande; for the scottes sayd playnly, that the warre that they made into Englande at that season, was for Fraunce, and nat for themselfe: therfore all suche domages as they haue taken by that iourney, they wolde be fully recompēsed agayne or he departed out of Scotlande, to the whiche he had sworne and agreed. The frenche kyng and his counsaile were bōude to redeme agayne the admyrall, for they sende hym thyder: thañe the sōmes of money were ordayned for, and the money payed by exchāge in the towne of Bruges, so that the scottes were contente. Than the admyrall departed out of Scotlande whan all thynges was payed, and so toke his leaue of the kyng, who was in the wylde scottysse,<sup>b</sup> and of the erles Duglas, and Morette,<sup>c</sup> who conueyed them to the see syde; and so he toke shyppyng at Edenborowe, and had wynde at wyll, and arryued at Sluse, in Flaūders. Some knightes and squyers of his company returned natagayne with hym: they thought they wolde se other countrees, and so they went into dyuers partes: the moost parte retourned into Fraunce so poore, that they were nat able to get thēselfe any horse; some bought them horses, and specially the burgonions, the cāpenoise,<sup>d</sup> the barroise,<sup>e</sup> and the lorayns.

*Howe the admyrall enformed the frenche kyng and his counsaile of the state of Scotlande, and howe the duke of Burgoyne had gret desyre to cause the frenche kyng to make a iorney into Englande.*

#### C A P. XVII.

WHAN the admyrall was retourned into Fraunce to the yonge kyng Charles, and to y<sup>e</sup> duke of Burgoyne,<sup>a</sup> they made hym good chere, as it was reason, and demaūded of hym the condycion of the kyng and of the lordes of Scotlande; he sayd, howe the scottes somewhat resembled the Englysshemen, because they be enuyous oucr strāgers; and moreouer he sayde, that he had rather be erle of Sauoy, or erle of Arthoyse, than to be kyng of scottes, and sayd, howe he hadde sene all the power of Scotlande in one daye togyder, as the scottes sayd themselfe, and yet he neuer sawe togyder past fyue hundred speares, and about a xxx. thousande other men of warr, the whiche nombre agaynt Englysshe archers, or agaynst a thousande of other good men of armes, coude nat longe

<sup>a</sup> Burgundy.

<sup>b</sup> Highlands.

<sup>c</sup> Of Moray.  
<sup>e</sup> From Bar.

<sup>d</sup> Those from Champagne.

longe endure. Than the admyrall was demaunded, if ho had sene the puyssaunce of Englande? He answered yea; for on a day, quod he, whan I sawe the scottes flye awaye for feare of the Englysssmen, I desyred them to bring me where as I might se and aduise the Englysshe hoost; and so they dyde: I was set in a straite passage where as they must nedes passe, and to my demyng they were a lx. thousande men of warre; and the scottes sayd that it was all the power of England, and that there were none abydinge behynde. Than the kyng and his counsaile studied a lytell, and at laste sayd, It is a great thyng of threscore thousande archers and of sixe or seyn thousande men of armes. It maye well be, quod the Constable, that they may make that nombre; but yet I had rather fight with theym at home in their owne marches than with halfe the nombre here, and so I herde my maister saye oftentimes whan I was yonge. By my faithe, quod the admyrall, if ye had ben there with a great nombre of men of armes, as I supposed<sup>a</sup> ye shulde haue bē, I thynke we hadde fanysshed all Scotlande. Thus the constable and admyrall deuysed togynder, and they sette the duke of Burgoyne<sup>b</sup> in great desyre to make an armye into Englade.

Nowe let vs leaue a lytell to speke of thē, and retourne to the busynesse of Flaunders.

It is of trouthe the duke of Burgoyne<sup>b</sup> had ymagined in his mynde to make the nexte somer folowynge, whiche shulde be in the yere of oure lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and fyue,<sup>c</sup> a great army, and to moue the frenche kyng as moche as he might, to go into Englande; and also the constable of Frañce, who was an expert knight and well beloued in the realme of Frañce, and had ben brought vp in his youthe in the realm of Englande, he in lykewise gaue counsaile to the same enterpryse, and so dyde the lorde de la Tremoyle;<sup>d</sup> and bycause y<sup>e</sup> the duke of Berrey was in Poictou and Lymosyn, and knewe nothyng of this counsaile, the duke of Burgoyne,<sup>b</sup> who was chiefe about the kyng, he had dyuers ymaginacions; he thought well, that as long as the warre contynued in Flaunders, the voyage ouer the see into Englande coude nat well be done; wherefore he was more troubled with them of Gaunte, and enclyned rather to their desyres, for he knewe well how they were alyed to thenglysshemen, and howe they had in Gaunte a knight of Englande, called sir Johan Bouchier, sent thyder by kyng Richarde to gouerne the towne and to counsaile them; howbeit, the gauntoyse desyred to haue peace, for they were so ouerlaid by the warre, that the moost ryche and notablist persones of the towne were nat maisters of their owne goodes, for the wylde soudyours gouerned them; and the wyse men sawe well, that at length it coude nat endure, but that they were all in great parell: and whan they were togynder, dyuers often tymes marueyled howe they had endured so longe as they hadde done; they sawe well it was rather by force than by loue, for Peter de Boyse alwayes parceyuered in his yuell opynions and damages, so that non durst speke before hym of peace: for if he knewe any persone, though he were neuer so sage, that spake of any treatie of peace, incōtyent he was slayne and murdered without pytie or remedy.

This warre that they of Gaunte hadde maynteyned agaynst their lorde therle Loyes of Flaunders and the duke of Bourgoyne,<sup>b</sup> had endured a seyn yere, wherby ther was suche hurte done, that it were great marueyle to reherse. The turkes, paynims, and sarasyns<sup>c</sup> sorowed that warre; for of trouthe the marchaundyses of eightene realmes aryued lightly at Sluse, and had their delyueraunce at Danne or at Bruges, whiche was

VOL. II.

F

all

<sup>a</sup> This passage differs materially from the French edition and Johnes', which agree together; the latter translates the sentence thus: "if you had been there with a good command of men at arms and Genoise, as I proposed, and as it was agreed on when I undertook this expedition, we would have engaged them when in Scotland, or destroyed them from want of provision.—Vol. iii. p. 53, quarto edit.

<sup>b</sup> Burgundy.

<sup>c</sup> 1386.

<sup>d</sup> Tremouille.

<sup>e</sup> "would have."

<sup>f</sup> Damme.

all let by this warre. Than beholde and cōsydre if these farre parties sorowed this warre, moche more ought to be sorie the landes nexte adioynnge therto; and there was none coude fynde any meane of peace: and so firste by the grace of god and diuynē inspyracion, and by the hūble prayers of good folkes, that god opened his eares, and had pytie of the poore people of Flaunders. And howe the peace came by them I shall shewe you fro poynt to poynt: as I shewed you before the begynning, so shall I declare the endynge. The begynnyng of the hate was by Johñ de Bare, Johan Piet,<sup>a</sup> Gylbert Mathue, Johau Lyon, and suche other, and I desyre you to herken thervnto.

*How by the grace of god two burgesses of Gaunt enteredde to treat with the duke of Burgoyne<sup>b</sup> for peace; and howe they gaue the charge therof to a knight of Flaunders, and what aunswere the duke gaue vnto them.*

### CAP. XVIII.

IN this season in the towne of Gaunt was sir Johan Bourchyer, ruler there vnder the kynge of Englande, and Peter de Boyse dyd assyst hym, and susteygned all their yuell opynions. Ther were some wyse men right sore displeased with the dyscōcion bytwene their natural lorde and the towne; howbeit, they durst nat shewe forth the ententes of their hartes, but one of them to another, as they durst, secretly; for if Peter de Boyse had known that they had made any sēblant of peace, they shulde haue ben slayne wout mercy, in lyke maner as he and Philyppe Dartuell had slayne sir Symon Becte<sup>c</sup> and sir Gylbert Brute;<sup>d</sup> and to kepe the people of Gaūt in feare, he had caused dyuers to be slayne in that season. In that season afore or Fraunces Atreman was putte oute of the towne of Dan<sup>e</sup> by the frenche kyng, and had destroyed the cōtrey of the foure maysters, and that the kyng was returned agayne into Fraunce (as ye haue herde before), they of Gaūt began to dout, and the notable men of the towne supposed y<sup>e</sup> the nexte somer the frenche kyng wolde retourne agayne and besiege the towne; but Peter de Boyse and suche other of his secte made but lyght therof, sayenge, howe they wolde gladly se the kyng before their towne, for they sayd they had suche alyaunce with the kyng of Englāde, that they shulde soone be ayded and confortd. In this season there was in the towne two valyant men of good lyfe and of good couersacyon, of a meane lygnage, nat of the best nor of the worst, whiche persones were sore displeased to se the discorde bytwene the towne and their naturall lorde; howebeit, they durste nat speke therof, for feare of Peter de Boyse. One of them was a maryner, and the other a bocher; the one called Roger de Creuyn,<sup>e</sup> and the other Jaques Dardenbourke.

Bi these two persones the matter was first set awarke, and with thē a wyse knight of Flaunders, called sir Johan Delle, who tooke great payne therin; but he nor all the knyghtes in Flaūders coude neuer haue brought it to passe, and it had nat ben by the meanes of these two persons. This knight, sir Johan Delle, was wel beloued in the towne of Gaunt, and came and wente at his pleasure without any suspicion. These two forsayd persons had great displeasure of this debate, and spake priuely togyder therof: and Roger said to Jaques, Wyll there be no remedy fōūde bytwene the towne of Gaunte (in the whiche we were borne, and is nowē in a harde case) and the duke of Burgoyne

<sup>a</sup> These two names have not been mentioned before.

<sup>d</sup> Gente.

<sup>e</sup> Damme.

<sup>b</sup> Burgundy.

<sup>f</sup> Cremin.

<sup>c</sup> Bcte.

goyñ<sup>a</sup> our naturall lorde? It were a great almes dede to make a peace; and they that so coude do, shulde haue thanke of god, and great prayse of the worlde; for by that meanes  $\bar{y}$  trouble shulde be ceased for euer. Ye saye trouthe, quoth Jaques; but it is a harde thyng to bringe about, for Peter de Boyse is a paryllous man; there is none dare speke of peace for feare of hi. Well, quod Roger, yet it cannot be alwayes thus; at last it must nedes haue an ende. Shewe me, quod Jaques, by what meanes it myght be, and I wyll gladly here you. Than, quod Roger, ye be the chefe of all the bochery, and moost beloued and dradde; ye might secretly shewe your corage and entent to them that be your frēdes, and as ye se howe they enclyne, ye maye speke further, lytell and lytell; and on the other syde, I that am a maryner, and beloued with all maner of men, and I knowe some of their corages, howe that the warre displeaseth them, for they haue great damage therby, and I shall shewe my mynde to some, who shall drawe other to  $\bar{y}$  same purpose; and if we maye gette these two craftes of our accorde, the other craftes and other good people, suche as desyreth peace, wyll sone encline to vs. Well, quod Jaques, and I shall speke gladly to thē of my crafte, and speke you to yours. And as they deuysed so it was done, ryght secretly and wisely; so that by the grace of the Holygost, Jaques Dardenbourc fōude all tho of the bochery well enclined to his wyll; and Roger on his part, by meanes of his fayre language, founde the maryners ryght well agreed therto, for their crafte was nere loste, for lacke of vsage.

Thus these two wyse men shewed eche to other howe they founde their people disposed to haue peace. Than they said howe they must haue some other sage persone to shewe all this matter to their lorde: at last they remembred them of a knight called sir Johan Dell; and so they went to hym and discovered to hym all their ententes secretly, and sayd, Sir, we haue laboured so moche to thē of our craftes, that they be well enclined to haue peace, so that our lorde the duke of burgoyn<sup>a</sup> wolde pardon them, and to graunt vs our aūcyent fraunchesses, according to the tenours of our charters and bulles. Than this sir Johan sayd, I shall gladly go and entreate hym; and so this knight went out of the towne to  $\bar{y}$  duke, who was in Fraūce with the kyng, and he shewed hym all the forsaid mater, and dyd so moche with his fayre langage, that the duke enclined to here what he wolde saye; and for the desyre that the duke had to make a voyage into Englande, the lightlyer he condiscended to haue peace with them of Gaunt; and also his counsayle, sir Guy de la Tremoyle<sup>b</sup> and sir Johan de Vyen, and the constable and the lorde Coucy, counsayled him to take peace with thē. Than the duke answered and sayd to sir Johñ Delle, I am content to do in this mater as ye wyll deuise, and so retourne ye agayne to thē that sent you hyder: and the duke demaunded of hym, if Fraunces Atreman were a counsayle of this treatie or nat. Sir, quod he, I thinke he knoweth nothyng therof; he kepeth the castell of Gaure, and I knowe nat if they that sent me hyder wolde that he shulde knowe it or nat. Tell thē, quod the duke, that they speke hardly with him in the mater, for I thinke he wyll nat be agaynst me, for as I vnderstāde he desireth gretly to be at peace w me. As the duke cōmaunded, so this knyght dyd, and returned to Gaunt and brought these good tidynges: and than he went to the castell of Gaure to speke with Fraunces Atreman, and discovered all his entent secretly to hym. And whan Fraunces had a lytell studyed, merely he said, And if my lorde the duke wyll pardon them of Gaunt and vpholde their fraunchesses, I shall nat be rebell agaynst hym, but be right diligent to haue peace. Than this knight departed fro hym, and went agayne into Fraunce to the duke, and shewed hym all the mater. The duke herde hym gladly, and wrot letters, open, and close, sealed with his seale, to thē of Gaūte: and this knyght with those letters returned into Flaunders, and

<sup>a</sup> Burgundy.<sup>b</sup> Tremouille

so came to Gaūt; but he shewed nat the letters as than, but he promysed Roger and Jaques to accōplysše their ententes. Beholde nowe what parel this knight and they were in; for if sir Johan Bouchier and Peter de Boyse had knowen of the mater, all the worlde shulde nat haue saued their lyues.

*Howe these two foresayd burgesses assembled their frendes to accomplysše their enterprise, and sente sir Johan Delle for the dukes letters of peace.*

#### C A P. XIX.

THANNE Roger and Jaques said to sir Johā Dell, Sir, ye shall come on monday nexte comyng, into this towne at nyne of the clocke, and bringe with you the dukes letters, and shewe them openly to the cōmons of Gaunte, wherby they shall gyue the more credence, for by that houre we wyll be lordes of the towne, or elles slayne in the quarell. Well, quod sir Johan, be it as ye saye; and so ended their cōsayle for that tyme; and sir Johan Delle went out of the towne to accomplysše his purpose. These other two wysemen studyed howe to bringe aboute their purpose, and so spake with some of their frendes and aldermen of the craftes, so that they had a great nombre of their accorde, and determyned that on the nexte monday, at nyne of the clocke, they shulde departe out of their houses, with the banner of Flaūders before them, cryeng: the Lyon of Flaūders, the lorde of the countrey, hath gyuen peace to the good towne of Gaunte, and hath pardoned clerely all trespasses; for all this mater was sagely hādeled, yet it came to the knowledge of Peter de Boise; and as soone as he knewe therof, he went streight to sir Johan Bouchier, who was soueraygne capitayne ther vnder the kyng of Englande, and sayd to hym, Roger Creuyn<sup>a</sup> and Jaques Dardēbourke wyll be to morowe by nyne of the clocke in the market place, with the banner of Flaunders before them, and they wyll crye through the towne, the Lyon of Flaūders, lorde of this countre, hath gyuen peace to the towne of Gaunte, and hath pardoned all trespasses. What shall we do? The kyng of Englande shall nat be thañe obeyed, without we preuent them, and putte them out of our iurysdyctions. What is best than to do? quod sir Johan Bouchier. Than answered Peter and sayd, It behoueth that to morowe in the mornyng we assemble in barnes all our men in the house de la Vale,<sup>b</sup> and than let vs go through the towne, with the kyng of Englandes baner before vs, and lette vs crye also, The Lyon of Flaunders, kyng of Englande, lorde of this countrey and towne of Gaunte; and whan we come into the market place, suche as be on our partie wyll drawe to vs, and than lette vs slee all the other treatours. It is well deuysed, quoth sir Johan Bouchier; lette it so be done.

Nowe beholde, if god dyde nat moche for these two, Roger and Jaques; for they were enfourmed of Peter de Boyse deuysē: and whan they knewe it, they were nat abashed, but late in the euenyng they sente to all their frendes, that where as they shulde be the nexte daye in the market place by eight of the clocke, in any wyse, they desyred them to be there by seuyn of the clocke: and that they dyde to preuent Peter de Boyse. To this poyntment euery man was agreed, and on the monday in the mornyng sir Johan Bouchier and his company came to the house called de la Vale,<sup>b</sup> and with hym a threscore; and Peter de Boyse came thyder with a xl.; there they armed thē, and in good ordynance sette themselfe forwarde. And Roger and Jaques assembled their frendes togyder, and the moost parte of the aldermen and burgesses of Gaunt came to them: than they toke the erles baner and went through the towne, cryeng

<sup>a</sup> Cremin.

<sup>b</sup> "Hôtel de la Ville:"—the town hall.



cryeng the foresaid crye; and suche as herde the crye, and sawe the aldermen of their craftes and the baners of the erle, they folowed after and came to the same cōpany; and so by seuyñ of the clocke they came to the market place, and there set thēsēlfē in good order, with therles baners before them, and euer there came mo and mo to them. These tidynges came anone to sir Johñ Bouchier and to Peter de Boyse, who were assemblynge of their people: than they went forthe with the baners of Englāde before them, and as they wente they cryed their cryes before deuysed; and so they came to the said market place, and there araynged themselfe before the other; but euer suche as came, the moost parte went to the Erles baners; so that if a hundred came, fourscore went thyder; insomoche, that all the place was full of men of arnes, and so they stode eche regardyng other.

Whan Peter de Boyse sawe howe the aldermen of the craftes drewe to Roger and Jaques, he was sore abashed, and doutēd greatly of his lylē; for he sawe suche as were wont to serue hym flye awaye fro hym, and so priuely he stale awaye oute of the prease, and hydde hymselfe for feare of dethe. And whan Roger and Jaques sawe y nighē all the people drewe to their parte, they were right ioyouse and well cōforted, and nat without good cause; for than they sawe well that the people of Gaunt wolde be in peace w̄ their lorde. Than they departed with a certayne of their company, with the baners of Flaunders before them, and so came to sir Johan Bouchier and to the Englysshemen, who were nat very sure of their lynues, whan they sawe them come towarde them. Than Roger demaūded of sir Johan Bouchier wher Peter de boyse was, and what was his entent, and whyder he was their frende or enemy. The knight answered and said, I thynke Peter de Boyse be here by me; and whan he sawe that he was gone, he sayd, I knowe nat wher he is become; I went he had been in my company; but as for me, I am and wyll be seruauñt to my naturall lorde, the kyng of Englande, who sende me hyder at your owne desyres, if ye well remembre. It is true, quod they; for if ye had nat ben desyred to come hyder by the towne of Gaunte, ye shulde haue ben slayne; but for the honour of the kyng of Englande, who sende you hyder at our request, ye shall nat nede to feare, nor non of yours; ye shall haue no hurte; we shall saue you from all domages, and conducte you to the towne of Calayes; wherfore departe to your lodgynges peasably, and styre nat for any thyngē ye here or se; for we wyll be vnder the obeysaūce of oure naturall lorde the duke of Burgoyne,<sup>a</sup> and wyll make no more warre. The knyght was ryght ioyouse of that aunswere to be so quyte, and sayd, Sirs, sythe it wyll be none otherwyse, so be it; and I thanke you of that ye offere me at this tyme.

*Howe sir Johan Dell came to gaūt to the markette place, where as Roger and Jaques and the aldermen of the cytie were, where and howe he deliuered them letters for the duke of Burgoyne;<sup>a</sup> and howe they of Gaunt sent to Turney, and of the conyrmacion of the peace and of the charters that were made therof.*

## CAP. XX.

THAN sir Johan Bouchier departed peasably fro the place with all the englysshmen, and suche Gauntoyse as were in his companye fledde awaye and hydde thēsēlfē; and anone after entred into the towne sir Johan Delle, and came into the market place with the dukes letters, sende thyder by the duke; and there they were opyned and reed to all the people, whiche gretlye pleased them. Than Fraunces Atreman was sent for fro  
the

<sup>a</sup> Burgundy.

the castell of Gaure, who incōtyent came to them and agreed to the treatie, and sayd it was well; and so therupon sir Johan Delle was sente agayne to the duke, who was as than at Arras, and shewed hym all the demeanour of the gauntoyse, and howe that Peter de Boyse had as than no rule nor audyence in the towne, and howe that if he had ben foude he had been slayne; and howe that Fraūces Atreman dyde acqute hymselfe valyātly and conforvable to the peace. All these thynges pleased moche the duke, and so he sealed a charter of peace and a truse to endure vntyll the firste day of Januarye, and in the meane season a counsaile to be had for that matter in the cytie of Tournay; and all this sir Johā Delle brought agayne with hym to Gaunte, wherof all the people had great ioye, for they shewed than howe they had great desyre to haue peace. All this season sir Johan Bowchie and the Englysshemen and Peter de Boyse were styll in Gaunte, but there was no man wolde do any thyng after them; and Peter de Boyse lyued styll in rest, with that he sware that he shulde nat procure nor moue any thyng that shulde cause any warre bytwene the towne and their naturall lorde; and thus was done by the meanes of Fraunces Atreman, who spake for hym: wherby Peter lyued in reste, for they knewe well that Peter alwayes helde with their opynions, and was a true and a good capitayne.

This truce duryng, they of Gaūte apoynted them that shulde go to Tournay to conclude this treatie, and Fraūces Atreman was sent thyder as chiefe, bycause he was a man reasonable and well knowen with all lordes; and with hym wente Roger Creuyn<sup>a</sup> and Jaques Dardēbourke; and they came to Turney in the vtas of saynt Andrewe with a fyfthie horse, and were all lodged toguyder at the sygne of the Samon, in the strete of saynt Brise; and the v. day of Decembre thyder came the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse his wyfe, and the lady of Neuers their daughter, and they entred into Turney at the gate towarde Lyle; and agaynst their entryng, the gaūtoyse that were there issued out to mete with them; and whan they sawe the duke, they enclyned theymselfe on their horses bare headed: and the duke passed lightly by them, for he made haste to mete with the duchesse of Brabant, who was comyng to the cytie by the gate of Malynes,<sup>b</sup> and she was lodged in the bysshoppes palays. So thus began the treatie bytwene the Duke and the towne of Gaunt, and sir Johan Delle toke great payne to go and come bytwene the parties; and at the desyre of the duches of Bourgoyne<sup>c</sup> and of the lady Neuers, the duke forgaue all his yuell wyll, and the peace was made, cryed, accorded, written, and sealed bytwene the parties, in maner as foloweth:

*Hereafter ensueth the tenoure of the letters and charters of peace.*

Philyppe, the sonne of Fraūces duke of Burgoyne,<sup>c</sup> erle of Flaunders, Artoyse, and Palatyne, lorde of Selynes, erle of Rethell and Malynes,<sup>b</sup> and Margarete, duchesse and countesse of the sayd cōtreis, to all them that hereith or seyth this present writyng, we sende gretynge. We wyll that it be knowen, that oure welbeloued subiectes, aldermen and commons of our good towne of Gaunte, hath right humbly required our lorde the kyng and vs, that we shulde haue pytie and mercy on them, and to pardone all offences by them, or any for them, done to the kyng or to vs: and for pytie and compassyon of our said subiectes, by our letters we haue pardoned thē; and also we haue conformed their aunycnt priuyliges, frauncheses, customes, and vsage, in case that they wyll playnly obey the kyng and vs; whiche pardone they of Gaunte and their parte takers haue receyued right humbly by suche letters and messāgers as they sent to vs in great nombre to Turney, and they haue clene renounced all debates and warres, and

<sup>a</sup> Cremin.<sup>b</sup> Mechlin.<sup>c</sup> Burgundy.

with good hartes are returned to true obeysaunce to the kyng and to vs, promysyng from hensforthe to be true frendes and faithfull to the kyng and to vs; to the king as their soueraygne lorde, and to vs as their naturall lorde, by reason of Margarete our wyfe as their naturall lady and heretour; wherfore the kyng and we haue receyued to our grace our said subiectes, and haue gyuen them letters of pardon and pure remysion, with restytucion of their priuylges, customes, and vsages, the whiche more at large appereth by the content of oure letters; after whiche pardons our sayd subiectes haue made to vs dyuers supplicacions, the whiche we haue receyued, and haue caused them by good delyberacyon to be sene, vysited, and examyned by our counsaile, the whiche well sene, and for the comen profite of all the couëtre, and to eschue all discensions that hereafter might fall, of our speciall grace, and by the contēplacion of our good subiectes, we haue ordred and determined in maner as foloweth: Firste, whereas they desyre that we shulde confyrme their aūcient priuylges of Tournay, Danduarde,<sup>a</sup> Grauntmont, Meule, Teremounde,<sup>b</sup> Ruplemount,<sup>c</sup> Abste,<sup>d</sup> Atharcle,<sup>e</sup> Breuelies,<sup>f</sup> Douse,<sup>g</sup> and of the Chateleys and playne cuntry parteyning to the same townes: we haue ordayne that the inhabytaūtes of the sayd townes shulde come to vs, brīgyng with them their priuylges, which shal be sene by our couisaile; and that done, we shall so do, that our said subiectes of Gaūt and they of the sayd good townes shall by reason holde them content; and if any of the sayde priuylges be lost by any case, fortune, or otherwise, we shall make good reformacion therof: also whereas they haue desyred for the course of marchaundyse, we haue cōsented that they haue all their auncyent course, payng their custome of olde tyme contynewed; also whereas they desyre, that if any of the inhabytaūtes of our towne of Gaunt, or any of their adherentes, happe to be arrested in tyme to come in any countre out of the cuntry of Flaunders, for the occasyon of the debates and foresayd discensyons, that than we shulde cause them to be released and to lyue in reste: and in that case we haue graūted, that if any of them be arrested for y cause, we shall ayde, comfort, and defende them with our power, agaynst any that so shulde trouble them, as we be boude to defende our good and true subiectes; also they requyre, that all suche prisoners as we haue, whiche were of their partie, that they shulde be delyuered; we haue ordayne and do ordayne, that all suche prisoners, if they be putte to their raūsome, that they pay their raunsome and be delyuered, payeng also their reasonable expenses: so that if any of these prisoners or their frendes or kynne haue in their hādes any fortresses of ours kepyng it agaynst vs, first that they delyuer suche fortresses, into oure handes, and also in lykewise that they delyuer all suche prisoners as they haue in their handes.

Moreouer by our habundant grace we haue ordayne and do ordayne, that all suche as by the occasions of the debates and discencyons that were laste in oure cuntry of Flaūders, and haue ben banished out of our good townes of Bruges, Ipre, the cuntry of Francke, and other townes and places, and also, all suche as hath ben banysshed by iustyce of the lawe out of Gaunt, or put out or iudged without lawe and be absent: that all suche be restored and maye retourne and dwell in the sayd towne, and all suche as hath taken their parte, to be restored agayne at their pleasure, to suche places as they came fro; and whan they entre agayne into any of the sayd townes, that they swere to our offycers to be true to vs, and to kepe the peace, and suretie of the sayde townes, nor that they beare any yuell wyll priuely nor aparte to any of the inhabytaūtes of the sayd townes, nor to do them any yuell or domage; and that all suche as entre into any towne shall swere to obey the kyng and vs; and suche as be absent the tyme hereafter lymitted, shall be restored to all the fees, houses, rentes, and herytages, whersoer they be, notwithstanding

<sup>a</sup> Oudenarde.<sup>b</sup> Dendremoude.<sup>c</sup> Russelmoude.<sup>d</sup> Alost.<sup>e</sup> Ath. Arcl.<sup>f</sup> Breuilles.<sup>g</sup> Dynse.

withstandyng any forfayture done by them, by the occasyon of the sayd discensyons, but they to enioye them as in their primer state: also if any of the sayd inhabytauntes of the towne of gaüt, or any of their adherentes be out of the towne, and be in the countreis of Brabant, Holande, zelande, or in Cambresis, or in the bysshoprike of Liege, that they come and submytte themselfe to vs, or to suchie as we shall appoynte, win the space of two monethes after the publicacion of this peace; that than they to enioye the pardone and foresaid grace: and suche as be in the realme of Englande, or in Fryselade, Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and other on that syde the great see, they to come and submytte theymselfe within foure monethes after notyfycacion of this peace: and suche as be beyonde the great See, at Rome or at saynt James,<sup>b</sup> they to haue respyte of their submissyon a hole yere after knowlege of this peace; and than they thus sworne, may enioye this our sayd pardone: and also all suche as hath ben banysshed or iudged out of our sayd towne by the sayde occasyon, that they be restored to their fees, houses, rentes, and herytages, whansoever they wyll at their pleasure. As for mouable goodes that hath ben taken of eyther partie, there shal be no restytuicion made therof, but euery partie to be quyte therof: also if any oblygacions be made for any mouable goodes, taken for the said occasyons for dyscharynge of their consyence, to render them agayne: and all suche houses as shall be deluyered agayne to the owners, that nothing be taken out of theym, nayled or pynned with yron or leed, and fro thensforthe the reuenewes to be payable to the owners: and also though it be so, that some of our subiectes of Gaunt haue done homage for suche landes as they holde to other lordes than to the true owners, wherby their landes myght be fortified:<sup>c</sup> natwithstandyng, we of our specyall grace, wyll that they shall styll enioye suche landes in doynge to vs homage for that they holde of vs without, and to other meane for that they holde of them: and also we graunt all disenherytauntes and recognysaūces done by the lawe bytwene any partes, to stande, so that our subiectes of Gaüt, aldermen, counsaylours, and cōmens of the same, and their adherentes, by their owne good wylls, renounce all their alyaunces, promises, oblygacions made, and homage that they or any of them haue done or made to the kyng of Englande, or to any of his deputies or officers, or to any other that be no good wyllers to ȝ kyng or to vs, and fro hensforwarde to swere to be true to the kyng as to their soueraygne lorde, and to his successours kynges of Fraunce, and to vs as their ryght lorde and lady, and to our successours erles of Flaunders, and to vs do seruyce as true subiectes ought to do to their lorde and lady: as to defende our persons, honours, herytages, and rightes, and to lette, to their powers, all suche as wolde the contrarye, and to gyue knowlege therof to vs or to our officers, sauynge alwayes their priuyleges and fraunchesse: also to the entent thatoure subiectes of the towne of Gaüt shulde be alwayes in good peace and true obeysaunce to the kyng, and to vs and to our heyres erles of Flaunders, and to eschewe all discēsyons and debates that myght fall, we wyll and ordayne, that all these sayde artycles be surelye kepte without breakyng; and straitely we cōmaunde all our subiectes, on payne to lese, that they maye lese to vs, that for any occasyon of the sayd debates or discēsyōs, that they do nothing openly nor priuely i worde nor dede, that shulde be preiudiciall to thē of gaunt, nor to rebuke or to gyue them any yuell language: and if any do contrarye to these sayde artycles, or do any iniury or damage to theym of Gaunte, or to any of their alyes, or any that helde on our partie, by occasyon of any of the sayd debates or discencyons, do any suche offence, that by suche knowledge of the lordes offycers, and by the lawes to whom it appartayneth, that the dede be cremenell, the doers, ayders, and counsayle keepars withoute fraude, be punysshed by their bodyes and goodes, as brekers of the peace, as well by iustyce of our officers as of our lordes officers, by the lawes of the countrey to whom it apparteyneth, and reasonable satisfactyon made to the partie hurte, of the goodes of the trespasser, and the residue to vs or to the

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> St. Jago do Compostella.<sup>c</sup> Forfeited.

the lordes of the soyle, sauynge euer to all townes their priuileges; and if any of our burgesses of the sayd towne of gaüt, though they be nat banysshed by the lawe, and if they be gyltie for breakynge of this peace, and thynke by reason of the priuileges of olde tyme, therby to be saued, and nat to lese any of their goodes: yet nowe we wyll by this present treatie that they shall lese their goodes, and the partie hurte satisfied therof, as is said before, and the resydue to come to the right heyres, as though they were deed, in all other cases sauynge the priuileges of the towne of Gaunte: and if suche yuell doers can nat be taken, thañ they to be banysshed and depriued from their goodes; also if there be any  $\bar{y}$  in wordes or otherwyse do contrarye to this our said ordynance, and cōe to the knowledge of our offycers, we wyll that all suche be punysshed and to make amendes, in suche maner that they maye be ensample to all other; the punysshment to be done by the offycers of the lawe, and by them to whom the right apperteyneth, natwithstandynge any priuledge or fraunchesse of any place: also if any persone of the churche do agaynst this ordynauce, than he to be delyuered to his ordynarie, he to take suche vengeauce on him as a breaker of the peace, and as the case requireth. Also we wyll that this sayd peace bytwene vs and oure subiectes be cryed and publysshed solemnely in this towne, and in all other townes of Flaüders; and herafter if any dout be made in any of the sayd artycles or circumstaunces therof, we shall than declare and cause to be declared by our counsayle euery thyng, that all parties shall of reason holde them content. And we aldermen, burgesses, and cōonties of the towne of Gaunt, for vs and all oure adherentes, we receyue and haue receuyed hübly the sayd graces, pardons, and beuefytes to vs done by kyng Charles our souerayne lorde, and by the said duke and duchesse, erle and cōtesse of Flaüders, our naturall lorde and lady; of the whiche graces and pardons we thanke with all our hertes the kyng our souerayne lorde and his successours, and our naturall lorde and lady afsaysd erle and countesse of Flaunders; and we make and shall make promyse, as trewe and faythfull subiectes ought to do, and we shall kepe and defēde their personages and honours; in wytnesse of the whiche thynges, we the sayde duke and duchesse haue putte our seales to these present letters; and we shyriffes, aldermen, burgesses, and cōmons of the sayde towne of Gaunt, haue also putte to the seale of the towne of Gaunte; and moreouer, we the sayd duke and duchesse praye and requyre oure welbeloued aunte, duchesse of Lusembourg<sup>a</sup> and of Brabant, and our right welbeloued brother the duke Aubert of Baye,<sup>b</sup> and also the aldermen, cōontie, and counsayle of Gaunt, and also we the duke and duchesse of Burgoyne, and our aldermen, counsayle, and cōonties of Gaunt, requyre and praye the barones and nobles of the cuntry of Flaunders hereafter folowynge, and to all good townes, as Bruges, Ipre, the terrouer of Frāke, and the good townes of Malynes<sup>c</sup> and Auuers,<sup>d</sup> that what for  $\bar{y}$  well of the peace, and knowledge of suretie of the foresaid thynges, and of eche of them, we desyre them to sette to their seales; and we Jane, by the grace of God duchesse of Lusembourg,<sup>a</sup> of Brabaunt, and of Lancbourcke,<sup>e</sup> and we duke Aubert of Bayere,<sup>b</sup> baylye and gouernour of the cuntry of Heynaulte, Hollande, and zelande, and of the seignorie of Frise,<sup>f</sup> and we Wyllyam, eldest sonne of the erle of Namure, lorde of Sluse, and Hughe lorde dātoyne Chateleyne of Gaunt, and Johñ lorde of Guystelles and of Harues, Henry de Bures<sup>g</sup> lorde of Dysquemeweb<sup>h</sup> and of Haure, Johan lorde of Gonuseberge and of Jentoyse, Arnolde of Jouste lorde of Estornay, Philyppe lorde Daxalle, Loyse of the Halse<sup>i</sup> bastarde of Flaunders, Gyarde of Rasenhen lorde of Baserode, Gaultier lorde of Halme,<sup>k</sup> Philyppe of Namure<sup>l</sup> lorde of Eque, Johñ Villayne lorde of saynt Johans withoute<sup>m</sup> the Chatellayne of Ipre, and Loyse lorde of Lambres knight, and we the borowe maysters and aldermen of Bruges

VOL. II.

G

and

<sup>a</sup> Luxemburgh.  
<sup>f</sup> Frizeland.

<sup>b</sup> Bavaria.  
<sup>g</sup> Bruges.  
<sup>h</sup> Hamur.

<sup>c</sup> Mechlin.  
<sup>d</sup> Dixmude.  
<sup>e</sup> St. Jean d'outre.

<sup>d</sup> Antwerp.  
<sup>i</sup> De Hasle.

<sup>e</sup> Limbourg.  
<sup>k</sup> Halun.

and Ipre, we Philyppe of Redehen,<sup>a</sup> Mountferant aldermen of Moütfranke, and o Mountamare knight shyryfe of terrouer of Franke,<sup>b</sup> for and in the name of the sayd Terrouer, whiche hath no seale, and the commons and counsayls of the townes of Malynes<sup>c</sup> and Anners,<sup>d</sup> haue by the foresayd prayers and request for the welth of the peace, and in wytnes of the trouthe, and for more suretie of the sayd thynges, and of eche of them, we haue putte to the scales of the sayd townes to this present treatie, made at Tourney the cyghtene day of the moneth of Decembre, in the yere of grace a thousande thre hundred fourscore and fyue.

After the makyng of these present letters and charters of peace, and engrosed and sealed, they were publysshed, and the duke had the one parte of them, and the towne of Gaunt the other parte: than Fraüces Atreman and the cōmons of the towne of Gaüt beyng there, toke their leaue humbly of the duke and of the duchesse, and also of the lady of Brabāt, thankyng her a thousande tymes of her ayde and helpe in makynge of their peace, and offred themselfe euer to be redy to do her seruyce. The good lady thanked thē right swetely, and exhorted them euer to kepe fermely the peace, and so to styrre f̄ people, that they neuer rebell agaynst their lorde and lady. So than euery body departed and went home to their owne: the duke and duchess returned to Lyle, and they of Gaunt returned to their towne. Whan Peter de Boise sawe the sure confyrmacion of the peace, and that all the people of Gaunt had great ioye therof, and were in mynde and wyll neuer to rebell more nor to haue warr, he was therof greatly abashed, and had dyuers ymaginacyons, wheder he shulde abyde styll in Gaunte (for all thynges was pardoned by the dukes charter, sealed with his seale) or elles to departe into Englande with sir Johan Bourchier and with the Englysshemen, who apparelled them to go; and all thynges consydred, he thought in hymselfe that he coude nat trust this peace nor to abyde in Gaunte. And whan Fraunces Atreman sawe that he wolde nat abyde, he sayd to him, Peter, what thynke ye to do? why do ye feare? ye knowe well, that by this treatie, sealed by f̄ duke, that for any thyng that is past, there shall neuer chalenge be made to you for that. Than Peter answered and sayd, yea, in letters written lyeth nat all true pardons: some pardoneth well by mouthe and gyueth wrytyng therof, but yet the hateder remayneth styll in their corages: as for me, I am a man of the towne of Gaunt, of small reputacion and of base lynage, and to my power I haue susteyned the rightes, lyberties, and frācheses of the towne. Thynke you that win this two or thre yere the people wyll remēbre it? I feare nay. There be great lygnages in the towne of Gylbert Mathewes and his bretherne; they wyll retourne, and they were enemyes to my mayster, Johan Leon:<sup>e</sup> gladly I wolde neuer se theym, nor the parentes of sir Gylbert Brute,<sup>f</sup> nor of sir Symon Becte,<sup>g</sup> who were by me slayne; wherfore in this case I can nat be sure of my lyfe: and as for you, Fraunces Atreman, wyll you abyde amonge suche a sort of treatours, who haue so falsely broken their othe and promyse to the kynge of Englande? I swere to you truely ye wyll repente it, for it wyll coste you youre lyfe. I can nat saye, quod Fraunces; but I truste so well in this peace, and in the duke and duchesses promyse, that I wyll iopardie to abyde.

Than Peter de Boyse made a request to the aldermen and counsaile of the towne, sayyng, Fayre lordes, to my power I haue truely serued the towne of Gaüt, and haue ben in many an harde aduenture in that behalfe; and for all the good seruyce that I haue done, in the name of rewarde, I aske none other thyng, but that I maye be sauely conducted

<sup>a</sup> This passage appears corrupted. It should be, "We Philip of Redehen and de Mountferrant, aldermen: Montfranc of Mountamare, knight," &c.

<sup>b</sup> The Franconate.

<sup>c</sup> Mechlin.

<sup>d</sup> Antwerp.

<sup>e</sup> Lyon.

<sup>f</sup> Gente.

<sup>g</sup> Bete.

conducted with sir Johan Bouchier, whome ye sende into Englande: this is all that I demaunde. And they all answered, it shulde be done: and as for sir Roger Emeryne<sup>a</sup> and Jaques Dardenbourcke, by whome this treatie was firste moued, they were ryght gladde of his departure, and so were dyuers other notable persones in Gaunt, suche as loued the peace. So thus Peter de Boyse departed from Gaunte, in the company of sir Johan Bouchier, and toke with hym all the substāuce that he hadde; he was well furnysshed of golde, syluer, and iewelles: and sir Johan Delle dyde conducte them vnder the dukes saluc conducte to the towne of Calais, and than the gauntoise returned. Sir Johan Bouchier and Peter de Boyse, as soone as they might, they wente into Englande, and came to the kyng and to his vnclcs, and shewed them the dedes of theym of Gaunte. The kyng made Peter de Boyse good chere, and so dyde the duke of Lancastre and his bretherne, and gaue hym great thanke in that he was come to them, and had abandoned theym of Gaunte to come into Englande. The kyng incontynent retaygned hym, and gaue hym an hundred marke sterlyng, yerely to be payed out of the staple of the wolles in London. Thus Peter de Boyse abode styll in Englande, and the good towne of Gaunt in peace: and sir Roger Emeryn<sup>b</sup> was made chefe alderman of the flete of Gaunte, whiche was a good offyce and of great profyte, whan the shyppes myght haue their course with marchaundyse; and sir Jaques Dardbourc was made chefe ruler of all the meane craftes in the towne of Gaunte, whiche also was a great and a profytable offyce.

*Howe sir Johan Froyssart, auctour of this cronycle, departed out of Fraunce, and wente to the erle of Foiz, and the maner of his voyage.*

## CAP. XXI.

IT is longe now sith I made any mencion of the busynesses of farre countreis, for the busynesses nerer home hath ben so fresshe, that I lafte all other maters to write therof; howbeit, all this season valyant men, desyring to auāuce themselves in the realme of Castell and Portyngale, in Gascoyne, in Rouergue, in Quercy, in Lymosyn, and in Bygore, euery day they ymaged by what subteltie they coulde gette one of another by dedes of armes, or by stealyng of townes, castels, and fortresses; and therefore I Johñ Froyssart, who haue taken on me to cronycle this present hystorie, at the request of the highe renomed prince sir Guy of Chatellon, erle of Bloyse, lorde of Dauesnes, Beauuoy, Destonhon, and of la Guede,<sup>b</sup> my souerayne mayster and good lorde, cōsydring in myselfe howe there was no great dedes of armes likely towarde in the parties of Picardy or Flaūders, seyng the peace was made bytwene the duke and them of Gaunt, and it greatly anoyed me to be ydell, for I knewe well that after my deth this noble and highe hystorie shulde haue his course, wherin dyuers noble men shulde haue great pleasure and delyte; and as yet I thāke god I haue vnderstanding and remembraūce of all thynges passed, and my wyt quicke and sharpe ynough to conceyue all thynges shewed vnto me, touchyng my princypall mater, and my body as yet able to endure and to suffre payne, all thynges cōsydred, I thought I wolde nat lette to pursue my sayde first purpose; and to thentent to knowe the trouthe of dedes done in farre countries, I founde occasion to go to the highe and mighty prince Gascone,<sup>c</sup> erle of Foiz and of Byerne; for I knewe well, & if I might haue that grace to come into his house, and to be there at leysar, I coulde nat be so well enformed to my purpose in none other place of the worlde; for thyder resorted all maner of knightes and strāge squyers, for the great

G 2

noblenes

<sup>a</sup> Cremin.<sup>b</sup> Guede.<sup>c</sup> Gaston.

noblenes of the sayd erle. And as I ymaged, so I dyd, and shewed to my redoubted lorde the Erle of Bloyes myne entent; and he gaue me letters of recōmendaciōns to therle of Foiz: and so long I rode without parell or damage, that I cāe to his house called Ortaise, in the cōūtre of Berne, on saynt Katheryns day, the yere of grace M. three hundred fourscore and eight: and the sayd erle, as soone as he sawe me, he made me good chere, and smylyng sayd, howe he knewe me, and yet he neuer sawe me before, but he had often herde spekyng of me; and so he reteyned me in his house to my great ease, with the helpe of the letters of credence that I brought vnto hym, so that I might tary there at my pleasure: and there I was enfourmed of the busynesse of the realmes of Castyle, Portyngale, Nauar, and Aragon; yea, and of the realme of Englande, and cōūtre of Burbonoyse and Gascoyne: and the erle himselfe, if I dyd demaunde any thyng of him, he dyde shewe me all that he knewe, sayenge to me, howe thystorie that I had begon shulde hereafter be more praysed than any other, and the reason he sayd why, was this: Howe that l. yere passed there had been done more marueylous dedes of armes in the worlde than in thre hundred yere before that. Thus was I in the court of the erle of Foiz, well cheryssed and at my pleasure; it was the thyng that I moost desyred to knowe newes, as touchyng my mater; and I had at my wyll lordes, knightes, and squiers, euer to enforme me, and also the gentle erle hymself. I shall nowe declare in fayre langage all that I was enfourmed of, to encrease therby my mater, and to gyue ensample to thē, that lyste to auance themselves. Here before I haue recounted great dedes of armes, takynge and santynge townes and castelles, and batayles and harde encountrynges, and yet hereafter ye shall here of many mo, the whiche by the grace of god I shall make iust narracion. ~

Ye haue herde here before, that whan the lorde Edmonde, sonne to the kyng of Englande, erle of Cambridge, was departed fro the realme of Portingale, and had take shyping at Lusēbourke,<sup>a</sup> and howe he had made couynant that Johan,<sup>b</sup> to recouer our heritage. So thus we be come hyder, paraduēture nat so many as ye wrote for; but suche as I haue here be of suche good wylles, that they dare well abyde the aduenture of batayle agaynst all those ŷ be nowe present with the erle of Trystmare,<sup>c</sup> and surely we shall nat be content with you, without we haue batayle. Suche wordes or lyke the Erle of Cambridge shewed to the kyng of Portingale or he departed, the whiche kyng herde thē well; howebeit, he neuer durste gyue batayle on the playne of Saluence, whaē he was before the spaynierdes, nor they of the countre wolde nat gyue hym counsaile therto, but sayde to hym, Sir, the puyssaunce of the kyng of Castell is as nowe so great, and that by fortune or misaduenture that ye lese the felde, ye lese than youre realme for euer; wherfore it were better ye suffred, than to do a thyng wherby ye shulde haue damage and parell. And whan the erle of Cambridge sawe it wolde be none otherwyse, he retourned to Lusenborne,<sup>a</sup> and apparelled his shyppes and toke leaue of the kyng of Portyngale, and so toke the see with his company, and wolde nat leaue Johan his sonne in Portingale with

<sup>a</sup> Lisbon.

<sup>b</sup> Several sentences are omitted in this place, without which, what follows is unintelligible. I insert them here, translated from the Lyons' edition: "*how he had made a covenant, that Johan his son should be married to the lady Beatrice, daughter of Fernando, king of Portugal. The earl was displeasid with the king, because with his puissaunce he had encamped fifteen days in front of John, king of Castile, without fighting him, and had made peace with that king without his approbation. This offended him much; and the earl, when the negotiation commenced, had said to the king, "Sir king, take care what you do, for we are not come into this country to eat, drink, and rob, but we are come to make war upon the son of that bastard, who called himself King of Castile and Count of Transtamarre, and to conquer our heritage, which this son, John de Transtamarre is in possession of; for you know that my brother and I married the daughters of the king Don Pedro, your cousin, and that they are the rightful heireses of the kingdom of Castile; and that to aid us in reconquering it (for every good lord should lean to right and not to injustice) you wrote to England to us, by your knight, now present, that if we were to lead into that country two thousand speares and two or three thousand archers, with the aid that you could afford us, there would be great hopes—"*

<sup>c</sup> Transtamarre.



with the kyng, nor with the lady that he shulde mary withall: the chyldre was but yonge: and so thus the erle retourned into Englande. Thus was the dealyng as than of the journey in Portyngale.

The erle of Cambridge retourned into Englande on the maner as ye haue herde before, and shewed his brother the duke of Lancastre all the dealyng of kyngre Ferant<sup>a</sup> of Portyngale. The duke was sorie therof, for he sawe therby that his conquest of Castell was farre of, and also kyng Richarde of Englande had about him cōsaille that were nat after his apetyte, and specially thierle of Oxeforde,<sup>b</sup> who was chefe in the kynges fanour; this erle dyd set as great trouble bytwene the kyng and his vnclcs as he might, and said oftentymes to the kyng: sir, if ye wyll folowe the myndes of your vnclcs, the duke of Lancastre, and the erle of Cambridge, it shall well cost all the treasure in Englande, about their warre in Spayne, and yet they shall coquere nothyng: it were better for you to kepe your owne people and your money, than to spende it abrode where as ye can gette no profytc, and kepe and defende your owne herytage, wherin ye haue warre on all sydes, as well by Fraunce, as by Scotlande, rather than to employ your tyme in other countreis: the yonge kyngre enclyned lightly to his wordes, for he loued him with all his hart, bicause they had been norished vp togyuder: and this erle had great alyuances with dyuers lordes and knightes of Englande, for he dyde all his maters by the counsaile of sir Symon Burle,<sup>c</sup> sir Robert Treuelyen,<sup>d</sup> sir Nicholas Brambre, sir Johan Beauchampe, sir Johan Salisbury, and sir Mychaell de la pole, and also sir Thomas Tryuet, and sir Wylliam Helmon, were named to be of the same parte: so that by the dyfferens and discorde bitwene the kyngre and his vnclcs, and the nobles and commons of the realme, many vnclcs came therby in Englade, as ye shall here hereafter in this hystorie.

It was nat longe after that the erle of Cambridge departed out of Portyngale, but that the kyngre Feraunt<sup>a</sup> felle sicke, and so contynued a hole yere and dyed, and than he had no mo chyldren but the Quene of Spayne; than kyngre Johan of Castell was enformed of his deth, and howe that the realm of Portyngale was fallen into his hādes, and howe that he was ryghtfull heyre therunto, by reason of the dethe of the kyngre; so ther was dyuers cōsails kept on that mater, and some sayd, howe that the Portyngales were so harde harted people, y they wolde nat be had without it were by conquest; and indede whan the Portyngales sawe howe they were without a kyng, than they determyned by counsaile to sende to a bastarde brother of the kynges, a sage and a valyant man, called Denyse,<sup>e</sup> but he was a man of relygton, and was mayster of the hospytals<sup>f</sup> in all the realme: they sayd they had rather be vnder the rule of this maister Denyse, than vnder the rule of the kyngre of Castell, for they reputed hym no bastarde, that hath good corage to do well. Whan this maister Denyse vnderstode the cōmens wyll of foure chiefe cyties of Portyngale, (for they hadde great affectyon to crowne hym kyng,) wherof he had great ioye, and so wrote secretly to his frendes and came to Luxbone,<sup>g</sup> whiche is the kay of the realme: the people of the towne receyued hym with great ioye, and demaūded of hym if they crowned him kyng, wheder he wolde be good to thē or nat, and kepe the lande in their fraunchese; and he answered and sayd, he wolde be to thē as they desyred, and that they had neuer a better kyngre than he wolde be. Than they of Luxbone<sup>e</sup> wrote to Connubres,<sup>h</sup> to Pount de Portugale,<sup>i</sup> and to them of Dourke,<sup>k</sup> these were the kayes of the Realme, and so they determyned to crowne to their kyngre this maister Denyse, who was a sage and a valyant man, and of good gouernauce, and was brother

<sup>a</sup> Fernando.<sup>b</sup> Oxford.<sup>c</sup> Burley.<sup>d</sup> Tresilian.<sup>e</sup> Froissart mistakes

Denis for his brother John, who succeeded Fernando.

<sup>f</sup> "Des Hospitaliers," Lyons' edition.<sup>g</sup> i. e. Grand master of the Knights Hospitallers, called, in Portugal, the *Order of Avis*.<sup>h</sup> Lisbon.<sup>i</sup> Coimbra.<sup>j</sup> Oporto.<sup>k</sup> Ourique.

to kyng Ferant,<sup>2</sup> for they sawe well the realme coude nat be longe without a kyng, as well for feare of the spayniardes, as of the myscreātes of Granado, and of Bongie,<sup>b</sup> who marched on them. So these sayde townes, and certayne of the lordes of the lande enclined to him, but some of ȝ lordes sayd, that it was nat mete a bastarde to be crowned kyng; and the people of the good townes said that it shulde be so, for of necessitye they must so do, sithe they had none other, and seyng that he was a valyant and a sage man, bothe in wytte and in dedes of armes, and they toke ensample by kyng Henry, who was crowned kyng of Castell by electyon of the cuntry, and for the cōmon profyete, and that was done, kyng Peter beyng alyue. So thus the electyon abode on this maister Denyse, and solempnely he was crowned in the Cathedrall church of Connubres,<sup>c</sup> by the accorde and puyssaunce of the cōmons of the realme, and there he sware to kepe iustyce, and to do ryght to his people, and to kepe and maynteyne their fraunchises, and to lyue and dye with them, wherof they hadde great joye.

Whan these tidynges came to the hearyng of don Johan, kyng of Castell, he was sore displeasid therwith, and for two causes; the one was, bycause his wyfe was enheryter there, and the other bycause the people by election hadde crowned maister Denyse kyng there: wherfore this kyng Johan toke tytell to make warr, and to demaūde of them of Luxbone<sup>d</sup> the sōme of two hundred thousande florens, whiche Ferant<sup>2</sup> promysed hym when he toke his daughter to his wyfe: so than he sende the Erle of Terme, therle of Ribydea,<sup>e</sup> and the bysshoppe of Burges,<sup>f</sup> into Portyngale, as his ambassadours to them of Luxbone;<sup>d</sup> and whan they were at saynt yrayne,<sup>2</sup> the laste towne of Castell, towarde Luxbone,<sup>d</sup> than they sent an haraulde to the kyng, and to them of Luxbone,<sup>d</sup> to haue a saue conducte to go and come, and to furnysshe their voyage, whiche was graunted lightly, and so they came to Luxbone,<sup>d</sup> and so the towne assembled their counsaile toguyder: and the ambassadours shewed why they were come thyder, and finally sayde, ye sirs of Luxbone,<sup>d</sup> ye ought iustely nat to marueyle, if the kyng our souerayne lorde demaundeth of you the sōme of money that ye are bounde for, and is nat cōtent that ye haue gyuen ȝ noble crowne of Portyngale to a clerke, a man of relygion, and a bastarde; it is a thyng nat to be suffred, for by rightfull election, there is non nerer to ȝ crowne thā he; and also, ye haue done this without the assent of the nobles of the realme, wherfore the kyng our maister saythe, that ye haue done yuell, and without that ye shortely do remedy the mater, he wyll make you sharpe warr. To the whiche wordes don Feraunt,<sup>2</sup> Gallopes de vyle fois,<sup>b</sup> a notable burgesse of the cyte, answered and sayd, Sirs, ye reproche vs greatly for our electyon, but your owne election is as moche reprobable, for ye crowned in Spaygne a bastarde, sonne to a iewe, and it is clerely knowen, that to the ryghtfull election your kyng hath no right to the realme of Portyngale: for the right resteth in the daughters of kyng Peter, who be in Englande maryed, bothe Constance and Isabell, maryed to the duke of Lancastre, and to therle of Cambridge; wherfore sirs, ye may departe whan ye wyll, and retourne to them that sent you hyder, and say that our electyon is good, whiche we wyll kepe, and other kyng we wyll haue none, as longe as he lyst to be our kyng; and as for ȝ sōme of money that ye demaūde of vs, we say we are nothyng boude therto: take it of them that were boude therfore, and of such as had the profyete therof. At this answer the kyng of Portyngall was nat present; howbeit, he knewe well what shulde be sayd: and whā these ambassadours sawe they coude haue non other answer, they toke their leaue and departed, and returned to Cyuell,<sup>1</sup> where they laste the kyng, and his cōsaile, to whom they shewed all the said answer. Than the kyng of Spayne toke cōsaile what was

<sup>2</sup> Fernando.  
<sup>f</sup> Burgos.

<sup>b</sup> Bugia.  
<sup>c</sup> Santarem.

<sup>e</sup> Coimbra.      <sup>d</sup> Lisbon.  
<sup>b</sup> Johnes calls him Villafons.

<sup>c</sup> Rebede.  
<sup>1</sup> Seville.

was best to do in this mater; than it was determyned that the kyng of Portyngale shulde be defied, and howe that the kyng of Spayne had a good quarell to moue the warre for dyuers reasons: so than kyng Denyse was defyed, and all his helpers in Portyngale. Than the kyng of Spayne made a gret sōmons of men of warr, to lay siege to the cytie of Luxbone,<sup>a</sup> and the kyng savd, he wolde neuer departe thens tyll he had it, for they had answered hym so proudely, that they shulde derely repent it, if he might ouercōe them. Thus the kyng of Castell, with all his puissaūce, came to saynt yrayne.<sup>b</sup> At y season there was a knight chased out of his court, who was called sir Nauret, for if the kyng myght haue gette hym, it shulde haue cost hym his heed; the knight had knowledge therof, for he hadde many good frendes; so he auoyded the Realme of Castell, and came to Luxbone,<sup>c</sup> to the kyng of Portyngale, who had great iove of his comyng, and retayned hym, and made hym a great capitayne, and he dyde after moche hurte to the spayniardes. The kyng of Castell departed fro saynt yrayne,<sup>b</sup> and came and layde siege before the cytie of Luxbone,<sup>c</sup> and enclosed therein the kyng of Portyngale. The siege endured more than a hole yere; and constable of the host was the erle of Longueuyll, and Marshall of the hoost was sir Raynolde Lymosyn, he was a knight of Limosyn, who long before came into Spaygne with sir Bertram of Clesquy,<sup>d</sup> in the firste warres that he made in Spaygne; this sir Raynolde was a valiant knight, and well proued, and the kyng had well maryed hym to a fayre lady, and to a fayre herytage, and by her he had two sonnes, Raynolde and Henry, and he was greatly prayved in the realme of Castell for his prowes: and with the kyng of Castell there was Dagheynes<sup>e</sup> Mandake, sir Dygo Persement, don Peter Roseament, don Maryche de Versaulx portugaleys, who were turned spaynishe, and the great mayster of Calestrane,<sup>f</sup> and his brother, a yong knyght, called don Dighemeres, Pier Goussart, of selme,<sup>g</sup> Johan Radigo de Hoyes, and the great mayster of saint Jaques.<sup>h</sup> The kyng had well with hym a thyrtye thousande men. There were dyueis assautes and scrimysshes, and many feates of armes done, on the one parte and on the other. The spaygnierdes knewe well that the kyng of Portyngale shulde haue none ayde of the nobles of his realme, for the commons had made hym kyng agaynst their wylls; so the kyng of Castell had intensyon to cōquere Luxbone,<sup>c</sup> and all the cōntre, or he returned, for he sawe well they shulde haue none ayde, without it were out of Englande, wherof he had moost doute: and yet when he had well ymagined, he sawe well the Englysshemen were farr of, and he had herde howe they kyng of Englāde, and his vncles, were nat all of the best acorde, wherfore he thought hymselfe the more of suretie at his siege, whiche siege was right plentyfull of all thynges; there was in no market in Castell more plentie than was ther. And the kyng of Portyngale lay styll in the cytie of Luxbone<sup>c</sup> at his ease, for they coude nat take the see fro hym, and he determyned to sende into Englāde to the kyng, and to the duke of Lancastre, trustie ambassadours, to renewe the alliances made before, by twene the kyng, and kyng Ferant,<sup>b</sup> his brother; and also the ambassadours had in charge to shewe the duke of Lancastre, that in maryage he wolde gladly haue his doughter Phylippe, and to make her quene of Portyngale, and to swere and seale a perpetuall peace and alyance bytwene them, and also promysynge hym, that if he wolde come thyder with two or thre thousande men of warre, and as many archers, to helpe and ayde hym to cōquere his enherytaunce of Castell; on this message was apoynted two knyghtes, sir Johan Radegoe, and sir Johñ Tetedore, and an archedeaken of Luxbone,<sup>c</sup> called Marche de la Fugyre;<sup>i</sup> so they made them redy and toke the see, and had good wynde, and so sayled towarde the fronters of Englande. On the other parte the kyng of Castell laye a siege, and he was counsayled to write into Fraunce, and into Gascoyne, for some ayde

<sup>a</sup> Lisbon.<sup>b</sup> Santarem.<sup>c</sup> Guesclin.<sup>d</sup> "These names are probably verymuch disfigured, but I am unable to rectify them."—*Johnes*.<sup>e</sup> Calatrava.<sup>f</sup> Seville.<sup>g</sup> St. Jago.<sup>h</sup> Fernando.<sup>i</sup> Figgieri.—*Johnes*.

ayde of knyghtes and squyers, for the spaynierdes supposed well that the kyng of Portyngale had sende for socoure into Englande to reyse their siege, and they thought they wolde nat be so taken, but that their puissaūce might be stronge ynough to resyst the Englyssmen and Portugaleyse; and as he was counsayled, so he dyde, and sende letters and messagers into Fraunce, to dyuers knyghtes and squyers, suche as desyred dedes of armes, and specially in the countrey of Byerne, in the countie of Foiz, for there were plentie of good knyghtes desyring dedes of armes, for though they had ben brought vp with the erle of Foiz, as than there was good peace bitwene hym and therle of Armynake. So these messages of these two kynges were nat sone brought about; howbeit, the warres in other places ceased neuerthelesse, as in Auuergne, in Tholousyn, in Rouergue, and in the lande of Bygore.

Nowe lette vs leau to speke of the busynesse of Portyngale a lytell, and speke of other maters.

*Howe the prince of Wales and the princes came to Tarbe, and of the request that the coütresse of Armynake made to the prince and princessse: and howe the countre of Gascoyne was newly agayne in warre.*

#### C A P. XXII.

BITWENE the countie of Foiz, and the countre of Bierne, lyeth the coütie of Bigore, whiche countie parteyned to Fraunce, and marchesed on the coütre of Tholousin, on the one parte, and on the countie of Connuges,<sup>a</sup> and of Bierne, on the other parte: and in the countie of Bygore lyeth the strong castell of Lourde, whiche was englysshe euer sythe that the countie of Bigore was yelded to the kyng of England, and to the prince, for the redempcion of kyng Johan of Fraūce, by the treatie and peace made at Bertigny,<sup>b</sup> before Charters, and after conyrfirmed at Calais, as it hath ben shewed before in ſy other hystorie. Whan the prince of Wales was come out of Englande, and that the kyng his father had gyuen hym in herytage all the lande and duchy of Acquitayne, wherin there were two archebisshoppes, and xxii. other bysshoppes, and that he was come to Burdeaux, on the ryuer of Gyronne,<sup>c</sup> and had taken the possessyōs of all these landes, and lye there a yere, than he and the princessse were desyred by the erle Johan of Armynake, that they wolde come into the countre of Bigore, into the cytie of Tarbe, to se that coütre, whiche as than he had nat sene before; and the erle of Armynake thought that if the prince and princessse were in Bygore, that the Erle of Foiz wolde come and se them, and wher as he dyd owe hym for his raunsome two hundred and fyftie thousande frankes, he thought he wolde desyre the prince and princessse to requyre the erle of Foiz to forgyue hym the same sōme or parte therof; so moche dyd the erle of Armynake that at his instance the prince and prīces cāe to the cytie of Tarbe. This towne is fayre and standeth in a playne countre, amonge the fayre vynes, and it is a towne, cytie, and castell, closed with gates and walles, and separated eche fro other, fro the mountayns of Byerne, and Catheloyne,<sup>d</sup> cometh the fayre ryuer of Lyse, whiche ronnethe throughe Tarbe, and is as clere as a fountayne, and a fyue leages thens is the towne of Morlance, parteyninge to the erle of Foiz, at the entre of the countie of Bierne, and vnder the mountayne, a sixe leages fro Tarbe, is the towne of Panne,<sup>e</sup> whiche also parteyneth to the sayd erle. The same tyme that the prince and princessse was at Tarbe, therle of Foiz was at Panne:<sup>e</sup> he was there hylding of a fayre castell, ioyninge

<sup>a</sup> Comminges.

<sup>b</sup> Bretigny.

<sup>c</sup> Garonne.

<sup>d</sup> Catalonia.

<sup>e</sup> Pau.

inge to the towne, without on the ryuer of Grane:<sup>a</sup> assone as he knewe the comynge of the prince and princesse beyng at Tarbe, he ordayned to go and se theym in great estate, with mo than sixe hundred horses, and threscore knyghtes in his company; and of his comynge to Tarbe, was the prince and princesse right ioyouse, and made hym good chere: and there was the erle of Armysnake, and the lorde Dalbret, and they desyre the price to requyre the erle of Foiz to forgyue therle of Armysnake all, or els parte of the somme of florens that he ought to haue; and the prince, who was wyse and sage, consyderynge all thynges, thought that he might nat do so, and sayde, Sir erle of Armysnake, ye were taken by armes in y<sup>e</sup> iourney of batayle, and ye dyde putte my cosyn the erle of Foiz in aduerture agaynste you: and thoughe fortune were fauourable to hym and agaynst you, his valure ought nat than to be made lesse; by lyke dedes, my lorde my father nor I, wolde nat be contente that we shulde be desyred to leaue that we haue wonne by good aduerture, at the batayle of Poicters, wherof we thanke god: wha<sup>n</sup>e the erle of Armysnake herde that he was abasshed, for he fayled of his entente; howbeit, yet he lefte nat of so, but than he required the princesse, who with a good hert, desyred therle of Foiz to gyue her a gyfte; Madame, quod therle, I am but a meane man, therefore I can gyue no great gyftes: but madame, if the thyng that ye desyre passe nat the valure of threscore thousande frankes, I wyll gyue it you with a gladde chere; yet the princesse assayed agayne, if she coude cause hym to graunt her full desyre; but the erle was sage and subtell, and thought verily that her desyre was to haue hym to forgyue clerely the Erle of Armysnake all his dette; and than he sayde agayne, Madame, for a poore knight as I am, who buyldeth townes and castelles, the gyfte that I haue graunted you ought to suffice: the princesse coude bringe hym no farther, and whan she sawe that, she said, gentyll erle of Foiz, the request that I desyre of you, is to forgyue clerely the erle of Armysnake; Madame, quod the erle, to your request I ought well to condiscende: I haue sayd to you, that if your desyre passe nat the valure of threscore thousande frankes, that I wolde graunt it you; but, madame, the erle of Armysnake oweth me two hundred and fyfytie thousande frankes, and, at your request, I forgiue hym therof threscore thousande frankes. Thus the mater stode in that case, and the erle of Armysnake, at the request of the princes, wan the forgyueng of threscore thousande frankes; and anone after the erle of Foiz returned to his owne countre.

I, Sir Johan Froissarde, make narracion of this busynesse, bycause whan I was in the countie of Foyz, and of Bierne, I passed by the cou<sup>n</sup>tie of Bygore, and I demaunded and enquered of the newes of y<sup>e</sup> countrey, suche as I knewe nat before; and it was shewed me, howe the prince of Wales and of Aquitayne, whyle he was at Tarbe, he had great wyll to go se the castell of Lourde, whiche was a thre leages of, nere to the entre of the mountayne; and whan he was there, and had well aduysed the towne, the castell, and the cou<sup>n</sup>tre, he praysed it greatly, as well for the str<sup>e</sup>ngth of the castell, as bycause it stode on the fronter of dyuers countreis: for the garyson there might ronne well into the realme of Arragon, into Catellon,<sup>b</sup> and to Barselon:<sup>c</sup> than the price called to hym a knyght of his housholde, in whom he had great truste, and loued hym entierly, and he had serued hym truely, and was called sir Pyer Ernalde,<sup>d</sup> of the countre of Bierne, an experte man of armes, and cosyn to the erle of Foiz; than the prince sayde to hym, sir Ernalde,<sup>d</sup> I instytute and make you Chateleyne and capitayne of Lourde, and gouernour of the countre of Bygore: loke that ye kepe this castell, se well that ye make a good accompte therof to the kyng my father and to me. Sir, quod the knyght, I thanke you, and I shall obserue your com<sup>a</sup>ndement: there he dyde homage to the prince, and the prince put hym in possession. It is to be knowen, that whan the warre began to re-

VOL. II.

H

newe

<sup>a</sup> Gave.<sup>b</sup> Catalonia.<sup>c</sup> Barcelona.<sup>d</sup> Peter Ernaut.

newe bytwene Englande and Fraūce, as it hath ben shewed before, the erle Guy of saynt Poule, and sir Hugh of Chatellon, mayster of the crosbowes in Fraunce in that tyme, beseged the towne of Abuyle, and wan it, with all the countre of Poitou. The same tyme two great barons of Bigore, thone called sir Marnalte Barbesan, and the lorde Danchlyn, tourned frenche, and toke the towne, cytie, and castell of Tarbe, which was but easely kept for the kyng of Englande; but styll the castell of Lourde was in the handes of sir Pier Ernalt,<sup>a</sup> of Bierne, who wolde in no wyse yelde vp the castell, but made euer great warre agaynst the realme of Fraūce, and sent for great company of aduenturers into Bierne and Gascoyne, to helpe and to ayde hym to make warre, so that he had togyder many good men of armes, and he had with hym sixe capitayns, and euery man fyftie speares vnder hym.

The first was his brother Johan of Bierne, a right expert squyer, and Pier Danchyne of Bygore, brother germayne to the lorde Danchyne, he wolde neuer tourne frenche, Nandon of saynt Colombe, Ermalton of mount Ague, of saynt Basyll, and the Bourge of Carnela; these capitayns made dyuers iourneys into Bygore, into Tholousyn, into Carcassene,<sup>b</sup> and into Albygoise, for euer assone as they were out of Lourde, they were in the lande of their enemyes: and somtyme they wolde aduenture thyrty leages of fro their holde, and in their goynge they wolde take nothyng, but in their retourne there was nothyng coulde scape thē; somtyme they brought home so great plentie of beestes and prisoners, that they wyst nat howe to kepe them: thus they raūsommed all the cōtrey, excepte the erle of Foiz landes, for in his landes they durste nat take a chekyn, withoute they payed truely therfore, for if they had displeased the erle, they coulde nat longe haue endured; these companyons of Lourde ranne ouer all the countre at their pleasure, and I rode nat farre fro them. Thus the cytie of Tarbe was in great doute, so that they were fayne to make couynant with thē: and bytwene Tarbe and Lourde, there was a great vyllage, and a good abbey, called Gynors,<sup>c</sup> who in lykewise were fayne to agre with them. Also on ȝ other parte on the ryuer of Lysse, there was a great towne, called Bagneres; they of that towne had a harde season, for they were so haryed by the garyson of Maluoysen, standynge on a hylle, and the ryuer of Lysse rynnynge vnderneath, vnto a walled towne, called Turney, into the whiche towne they of Lourde and of Maluoysen, hadde euer their recourse, to the whiche towne they dyde no hurte, bycause they had their resorte thyder; and they of the towne had euer a good market of their pyllage, and so dissymuled euer with them, whiche they were fayne to do, or elles they coulde nat haue lyued, for they had no ayde nor socoure of any persone: the capitayne of Maluoysen was a gascoyne, and his name was Remouet de Lespè, an experte man of armes; he and his company, and they of Lourde, raūsommed as well the marchautes of Aragon and Catheloyne,<sup>d</sup> as of Fraunce, without they agreed with them.

In the season that I enterprised to go se the erle of Foiz, and to se the dyuersities of the cōtreyes, where as I had neuer ben before, whan I departed fro Carcassene,<sup>b</sup> I lefte the waye to Tholous, and wente to Monterorall, and so to Fonges,<sup>e</sup> than to Bell, and than to the first towne of therle of Foiz, and than to Masieres, and so to the castell of Sanredyn,<sup>f</sup> and than I cāe to the good cytie of Pauyers,<sup>g</sup> partyeyng to the erle of Foiz, and there I taryed, abydinge for some company goynge into the countre of Byerne, where the erle was; and whan I had taryed there a thre dayes in great pleasure, for ȝ cytie was delectable, stādyng among the fayre vynes, and enuytoned with a fayre ryuer large and clere, called Liège, and on a day it so fortunied, that thyder came a kynght of the erle

<sup>a</sup> Peter Ernaut.<sup>b</sup> The country about Carcasson.<sup>c</sup> Guyors.<sup>d</sup> Catalonia.<sup>e</sup> Tonges.—*Johnes*<sup>f</sup> Sauredun.<sup>g</sup> Pamiers.

of Foiz, fro Auignon warde, called sir Espaenge de Lion, a valyant and an experte man of armes, about the age of l. yeres: and so I gate me into his company, and he was greatly desyrons to here of the maters of Fraunce; and so we were a sixe dayes in our iourney, or we came to Ortayse: and this knyght euery day after he had sayd his prayers, moost parte all the day after he toke his pastyme with me, in demaundryng of tidinges, and also whan I demaüded any thyng of hym, he wolde answeere me to my purpose; and whan we departed fro Pauyers,<sup>a</sup> we past by the moüt of Cesse, whiche was an yuell passage, and so we came to the towne and castell of Ortayse,<sup>b</sup> whiche was frenche,<sup>c</sup> but we passed by it, and so came to dynere to a castell of therle of Foiz, halfe a leage thens, called Carlat, standynge highe on a mountayne; and after dynere the knight sayd to me, sir, let vs ryde toguyder fayre and easely, we haue but two leages to ryde to our lodgyng: and so I was content to do; than the knight said, we haue this day passed by the castell of Ortayse,<sup>b</sup> which dothe moche damage in this countre, Peter Dauchyn kepeth it, and hath taken and stollen out of the realme of Frāce, more than threscore thousande frākes; than I demaüded how that might be: I shall shewe you, quod the knight; On our lady day in August, there is euer a great fayre, and all the cōtre resorteth thyder, for there is moche marchādise; that day Pier Dauchyn and his cōpanions of Lourde, had taken their aduise, and were determyned to get this towne and castell; and so they sent two simple varlettes, (by semyng,) to the sayd towne in the moneth of Maye, to get themselfe some seruyce in the towne, and so they dyde, and were reteyned with two maisters, and they dyde right dilygent seruyce to their maysters, and so went in and out on their maisters busynesse, without any suspiciousnes of thē; and so on our lady day in August, ther were many marchantes strangers, of Foiz, of Bierne, and of Frāuce, and as ye knowe well, whan marchantes do mete that sawe nat togyder long before, they wyll make good chere togyder; and so in the same houses where as these two varlettes were i seruice, were many marchantes drinkyng and makyng good chere, and their osten with them: and by apoyntment, about midnight, Pier Dāchin and his cōpany cāe to Ortaise,<sup>b</sup> and enbusshed thēselfe in a wode whiche passed throughe, and so they sent sixe varlettes to the towne with ii. ladders, and they passed the dykes and came to the walles and reared vp their ladders, and the other ii. varlettes that were in seruice in the towne dyd ayde thē, while their maysters sat makyng good chere; so these sayd varlettes dyde put thēselfe in aduerture, and one of the said two varlettes brought the other sixe to the gate within, wher there was two men keypyng the keys; than this varlet said to the other sixe, sirs, kepe yourselfe here priuy and close, and styrre nat tyll ye here me whistle: I trust to make the porters to open the gate of their warde, they haue the keyes of the great gate, and therefore assone as they haue opyned their warde, I wyll whystle; than steppē forthe and slee the porters, I knowe well ynoughe the keyes of the gate, for I haue oft tymes helped to kepe the gate with my maister; and as they deuyed so they dyd; and so the varlet went to the gate, and sawe and herde howe the porters were drikyng within their warde; than he called thē by their names, and said, sirs, open your dore, I haue brought you of the best wyne that euer you dranke, which my maister hath sent you, to the entent you shulde kepe your watche the better; and they who knewe right well the varlet, beleued that he had said trouthe, and opyned the dore, and than he whistled, and thother sixe stept forthe and entred in at the dore, and there they slewe the porters so priuely, that none knewe therof: thā they toke the keyes and went and opyned y gate, and let downe the bridge easely y none knewe therof; than they blewe a blast in a horne, so y they that were enbusshed moüted on their horses, and came on the spurres, and entred on the bridge, and come into the towne, and so toke all the men of the towne syttyng drikyng, or els

H 2

in

<sup>a</sup> Pamiers.<sup>b</sup> Ortigas.<sup>c</sup> "Which belongs to the king of France."

in their beddes. Thus was Ortayse<sup>a</sup> taken by Pier Danchin of Bigore, and by his cōpanyons of Lourde. Than I demaūded of the knight howe they gat the castell? I shall shewe you, quoth he: The same tyme that Ortayse<sup>a</sup> was thus taken, the capiten of the castell by his yuell aduenture was in the towne, and supped with certayne marchauntes of Carcassen,<sup>b</sup> and was there taken among other: and in ȳ next morning Pier Dāchyn brought him before the castell, wher as his wyfe and chyldren were, and made thē beleue that he wolde strike of his heed, wout his wife wolde delyuer vp the castell, and if she wolde so do, he promised to delyuer her husbāde quyte, and to suffre hym and all his to departe with bagge and baggage, wout any hurt; and the lady who sawe herselfe in a harde case, and sawe she was nat able to make ware herselfe, and for sauynge of her husbādes lyfe, she yelded vp the castell; and so her husbāde and she and all their departed, and went to Papiers.<sup>c</sup> Thus had Pier Dāchyn the towne and castell of Ortayse,<sup>a</sup> and the same tyme that they entred, he and his cōpany wan above xxx. M. frākes, what in merchandise and prisoners of Frāce: but all suche as were of the coūtie of Foiz, or of Bierne, were clene delyuered wout any damage; and this Pier Danchyn kept Ortayse<sup>a</sup> after the space of v. yere, and he and his cōpany oftymes wolde ron to the gates of Carcassone, whiche was a sixe leages thens, and dyde great damage to the countre, as well by ransomyng of the townes, as by pyllage ouer all the countrey.

In the meane season that Pier Dāchyn was in the garison of Ortayse,<sup>a</sup> on a night certayne of his cōpany went out and came to a castel called Paielier, a good leage thens, wherof a frenche knight, called Raymon du Pailier, was owner; they had ben ther often before and fayled of their purpose, but as thā their happe was suche that they scaled the castell and toke it, and the knight and the lady in their beddes, and let the lady and her children go fre, but they kept styll the knight in his owne castell the space of foure monethes, and at last he payed a M. frākes for his rāsome; and finally, whan they had sore ouerryden the coūtre they solde these two castels, Ortayse<sup>a</sup> and Paielier, to thē of the coūtre for viii. M. frankes, and than they went to Lourde their principall garyson. So thus in this aduenture knightes dyd put thēselfe dayly. Also the same tyme ther was an expert man of armes in ȳ castell of Lourde, a gascone borne, he was called le Mēgeant of saynt Basyll; on a tyme he and xxx. with him departed fro Lourde, and rode at all aduentures into Tholousyn, and had thought to haue gote the castell of Penne, in Allugois,<sup>d</sup> but he myst of his entent; and whan he sawe that he fayled of his purpose, he cāe to the gate and made a great scrymisshe: and the same proper hour the seneshall of Tholous rode forthe, and with hym sir Hughe de Froidwyll, and a lx. speares, and came by aduenture to Pan,<sup>e</sup> while the sayd scrymisshe was in doynge; than incontynent they sette lōte to the erthe and came to the barryers, and so than the Mēgeant was ouer matched, but ther he fought valiantly hande to hande, and wōuded the other knight in two or thre places; howbeit, finally he was taken by force, and his men outhur taken or slayne, ther were but a fewe that scaped. So this Mēgeant was ledde to Tholous, and than the cōmons of the towne wolde haue slayne hym bitwene the handes of the seneshall, he had moche payne to saue his lyfe, and so brought hym into the castell, for he was ryght yuell beloued in Tholous; yet after it happed so well for hym, that the duke of Berry cāe thider, and this knyght had suche frendes that he was delyuered, and the seneshall had a thousande frankes for his rāsome; and whan he was delyuered he returned to Lourde, and began agayne to make newe enterprises. And so on a tyme he departed fro Lourde, and fyue with hym, without any amour, and he dyde on the abbot of a monke, and lyke other thre monkes with hym, and they had all shauen crownes, so that euery man that sawe them wende surely that they had ben

ben

<sup>a</sup> Ortingas.<sup>b</sup> Carcassone.<sup>c</sup> Pamiers.<sup>d</sup> The Albigeois.<sup>e</sup> Penne.



ben monkes, the abbit and gesture became them so well; and in this maner he came to Mountpellyer, and toke vp his lodgyng at the signe of the Egle,<sup>a</sup> and said howe he was an abbot of high Gascon,<sup>b</sup> and was goyng to Parys on certayne busynesse parteyning to his house: and so he gate famylier aquayntaūce with a ryche man of the towne, called Barēger, who had also to do at Paris for certayne busynesse; than this abbot said howe he wolde pay for his costes if he lyst to go in his cōpany, wherof the good man was right ioyouse in that he shulde haue his charges borne, and so he and one varlet with hym went forth with this monke; and whan they had ryden a thre leages, this cōūterfet monke, sir Megeant, toke him prisoner, and ledde him secrete wayes to his garison of Lourde, and after dyd rāūsōme him at v. M. frākes. Than I said, ah, saint Mary, was this Mēgeant suche an expert man of armes? ye truly, sir, quoth he, and in war he dyed, in a place wher as we shall passe within this dayes, in a cōūtre called the Layre,<sup>c</sup> ī Bigore, by a towne called Lachmache:<sup>d</sup> well sir, quod I, and I shall remēbre you therof, whan we come ther: and so we rode tyll we came to Mōstequen,<sup>e</sup> a good towne closed, parteyning to therle of Foiz, whiche the Armynagois,<sup>f</sup> and the Labrisyēce,<sup>g</sup> toke by stelthe on a season, but they kept it nat but thre dayes: and in the mornyng we departed fro Mōstequen,<sup>e</sup> and rode to the towne of Palamuche,<sup>h</sup> a good towne closed on the ryuer of Garon, parteyning to therle of Foiz; and whan we were almost ther we had thought to haue passed the bridge of Garon, to haue entred into the towne, but we coulde nat; for ŷ day before it had so sore rayned fro the mōūtayns of Chataloyne<sup>i</sup> and Aragon, wherby another ryuer was so encreased, whiche was called Saluz, and ran so fast, that it reysed vp the ryuer of Garon in suche wise, ŷ it brake one of the arches of the bridge, whiche was of tymbre: wherfore we returned agayne to Montestquen,<sup>e</sup> and taryed there all the day; than the next day the knight had cōūsayle to passe the ryuer by botes by the towne of Casseres: so we rode thider, and dyd so moche ŷ we past the ryuer of Garon with great payne and parell, for the bote that we were in was nat very great; it coude nat take at one tyme but two horses and their kēpars, and they that ruled the bote; and so whan we were ouer we rode to Casseres, and abode there all that daye, and in the meane tyme ŷ our supper was a dressyng, this knight said to me, sir Johan, let vs go and se the towne; and so we passed along through the towne, and cāe to the gate toward Palamuche,<sup>h</sup> and went out therat and came to the dykes; than the knyght shewed me a pane of the wall, and said, sir, se you yonder parte of the wall whiche is newer than all the remnant: yea sir, quod I. Well, quod he, I shall shewe you why it is so; it is a ten yere past sithe it fortunēd; ye haue herde or this of the warre that was bytwene the erle of Armynake and therle of Foiz, howbeit, nowe they are in peace; but the Armynagoise,<sup>f</sup> and Labrisience,<sup>g</sup> wan but lytell by that warre, for on a saynt Nycholas euyn, the yere of our lorde a thousande thre hūdred threscore and two, therle of Foiz toke in batayle therle of Armynake, and the lorde Dalbret his nephe, and all the noble men that were with them, and so ledde thē as prisoners to Ortaise, wherby the erle of Foiz hath receyued ten tymes a hundred thousande frankes; and it fortunēd after that the father of the erle of Armynake nowe lyueng, called sir Johan of Armynake, made a journey and toke this towne of Casseres, and they had with them a ii. hundred men of armes, and so thought to kepe the towne by strength. These tidynges whan they came to the knowledge of the erle of Foiz, beyng as thañe at Panne,<sup>k</sup> he lyke a sage and a valyant knight, called to hym two bastard bretherne of his, called sir Arnalt Guyllam and sir Pier de Bierne, and sayd to them, sirs, I wyll ye ryde incontyngent to Casseres: I shall sende you men on euery syde, and within thre dayes I shal be with you myselte, and let none come out of the towne, but that ye fight with

<sup>a</sup> Angel.<sup>b</sup> Upper Gascony.<sup>c</sup> Larre.<sup>d</sup> L'Archinach.<sup>e</sup> Montesquieu.<sup>f</sup> Armignacs.<sup>g</sup> The family of l'Abreth, or d'Albret.<sup>h</sup> Palaminich.<sup>i</sup> Catalonia.<sup>j</sup> Pau.

with thē, for ye shal be stronge ynoughe ; and whan ye come there, cause the men of the cowntre to bring thyder great plentie of wode, busshes, and fagottes, and choke the gates therwith, and than wout that, make stronge baryyers, for I wyll ȳ they that be within be so enclosed that they issue nat out of the gates ; I shall cause them to take another way. These two knyghtes dyd his comaūdement, and so wente to Palamuche,<sup>a</sup> and all men of warre of Bierne folowed them, and so they came before this towne of Casseres. They that were within sette lytell by them, but they were nat ware howe they were enclosed within the towne, so that they coulde nat issue oute at any gate : and the thirde day the erle of Foiz came thider with fyue hūdred men of armes, and as sone as he came he caused baryyers to be made rounde about the towne, and also barriers roūde about his host, bycause they shulde nat be troubled in the night tyme ; so in this case they laye longe without any assaut, in so moche that vitayle began to fayle them within, for though they had wyne great plentie, they had nothyng to eate, nor they coulde nat flye away by the ryuer, for it was as thañe to depe ; than they thought it were better to yelde thēselfe as prisoners, than to dye so shamefully for famyne, and so fell in treaty ; therle of Foiz agreed to their treatie, so that they shulde nat issue out at no gate, but to make a hole in the wall, and go out therat, to come one by one without armour, and so to yelde them as prisoners ; it behoued thē to take this way, and so made a hole in ȳ wall and issued oute, one by one, and there was the erle redy and all his people in order of batayle to receyue them as prisoners, and euer as they came out the Erle sent them to dyuers castelles as prisoners : and his cosyn sir Johñ of Armynake, sir Bernarde Dalbret, and sir Manalt of Barlabason,<sup>b</sup> sir Raymōde de Benache, sir Benedicke de la Corneyle, and a twentie of the beste personages, he ledde with hym to Ortaise ; and or they departed, he had of them two hundred thousande frākes, and thus was this hole in the wall made : and than we wente to our supper. And the nexte day we rode alonge by the ryuer of Garon, and passed by Palamuche,<sup>a</sup> and than we entred into the lande of the erle of Comynges and Armynake, and on the other syde was the ryuer of Garon, and the lande of therle of Foiz ; and as we rode, this knyght shewed me a stronge towne, called Marteras the Toussac, partyninge to therle of Comynges, and on the other syde of the ryuer on the moūtayne he shewed me two castelles partyninge to the erle of Foiz, the one called Mountarall, and the other Mountclare : and as we rode bytwene these townes and castelles alonge by the ryuer of Garon, in a fayre medowe, this knyght sayd to me, sir Johan, I haue sene here many fayre scrimysshes and encountrynges bytwene the Foizois and Armynakes, for as than there was no towne nor castell but that was well furnysshed with men of warre, and so they warred eche vpon other ; the Armynakes agaynst yonder two castelles made a bastyde, and kept it with men of warre, and dyde moche hurt in the erle of Foiz lande : but I shall shewe you howe it fortunēd. The erle of Foiz on a night sent his brother Peter de Bierne, with two hūdred speres, and with them a four hundred villayns of the cowntre, charged with fagottes, moche wode and busshes, and brought it to the bastide, and than sette fyre theron, and so brent the bastyde, and all them that were within without mercy, and sithe, it was neuer made agayne. So in suche deuyses we rode all that day alonge by the ryuer of Garon, and what on the one syde and on the other, we sawe many fayre castelles and fortresses ; all that were on our lyfte hande partyned to therle of Foiz, and the other syde partyned to therle of Armynake. And so thus we passed by Montpesac, a fayre castell and a strōge, standyng on an highe rocke, and vnderneath was the towne and the highe way, and without the towne a lytell, there was a place called a la garde,<sup>c</sup> and a towre bitwene the rocke and the ryuer, whiche towre had a gate and a portcolyse of yron ; sixe men might well kepe this passage agaynst all the worlde, for there coulde no

man

<sup>a</sup> Palaminich.<sup>b</sup> Barbasan.<sup>c</sup> La Garde.

man passe but two on a front, what for the towre on the one syde, and the ryuer on the other syde. Than I sayd to the knyght, sir, here is a stronge passage, and a myghtie countre; it is true, quod the knyght, and though thentre be stronge, yet the erle of Foiz dyde conquere it ones, and he and all his passed the same waye, with the helpe of the archers of Englāde, that he had as than in his company, and the great desyre that they had to passe into the countre. Come ryde nere me sir, quod he, and I shall shewe you howe it was: and so I rode inste by hym: and than he sayd, Sir, on a tyme, the Erle of Armynake, and the lorde Dalbret, with a fyue hūdred men of warre cāe into the countre of Foiz, and to the marches of Pauyers,<sup>a</sup> and this was in the begynnyng of August, whan men dyd gather in their cornes, and ȝ grapes were ripe, at whiche tyme there was great habundance in the countre; than sir Johan of Armynake and his company lodged before the towne Sanredun, a lytell leage fro the cytie of Pauyers,<sup>a</sup> and he sente to them of Pauyers,<sup>a</sup> that without they wolde bye their cornes and wyues, and pay for them, they said els they wolde brinne and distroy all togyder: than they of Pauyers<sup>a</sup> were in great feare, for the Erle their lorde was farre of fro them, for he was as than in Byerne, and so they were fayne to bye their owne cornes, and payed for them fyue thousande frankes; but they desyred fyftene dayes of respYTE, whiche was graūted them. Than the erle of Foiz was enforced of all this busynesse, and he hasted hym as moche as he might, and assembled togyder his men, and came sodaynly into the cytie of Pauyers,<sup>a</sup> with xii. hundred speares, and so had fought with sir Johan of Armynake, if he had taryed, but he departed and wente into the countie of Comynges: so he had no money of them of Pauyers,<sup>a</sup> for they had no leysar to tarye therfore; but than therle of Foiz claymed the same sōme, for he sayd he was come, and saued their money and corne, and had put awaye all their ennemyes, and so he had it to paye his men of warre therewith, and there he taryed tyll they had inned all their corne and vyntage. And so we passed than foreby a castell called Bretytte, and also by another castell called Bacles, all parteynyng to the erle of Comynges. And as we rode along by the ryuer, I sawe a fayre castell, and a great towne, and I demaunded of the knyght what the castell was called; and he said it was named Montesplayne,<sup>b</sup> parteynyng to a cosyn of the erle of Foiz, called sir Roger Despaygne; a great barone in the countre, and in Tholousyn, and as than was seneshall of Carcassoney. Than I demaunded of this knyght if he were a kynne to sir Charles of Spayne, who was constable of Fraunce; and he answered and sayde, no, he is nat of that blode, for sir Loyes of Spayne, and this sir Charles that ye speke of, came bothe out of the realme of Spayne, and were lynially ex-traught of Spayne and of Fraunce, by their mothers syde, and were cosyn germayns to kynge Alphons of Spayne, and I serued in my youthe sir Loyes of Spayne in the warres of Bretaygne, for he was alwayes on the partie of sir Charles of Bloyes, agaynst the erle Moūtforde. And so we lefte spekyng of that matter, and rode to saynt Gouffens, a good towne of the Erle of Foiz. And the next day we dynd at Monreyle,<sup>c</sup> a good stronge towne of the Frenche kynges, and sir Roger de Spayne kepte it: and after dyner we rode the waye towards Lourde, and so rode through a great launde, enduryng a fyftene leages, called the laundes Lanne de vous,<sup>d</sup> wherin were many daungerous passages, for theues and yuell doers; and in this launde stode the castell of Mesere, parteynyng to the erle of Foiz, a good leage fro the towne of Tournay, the whiche castell the knyght shewed me, and sayd, Sir, beholde yonder is Maluoysen: but, sir, haue ye herde here before howe the duke of Aniou, whan he was in this countre and wente to Lourde, what he dyde in this countre, and howe he layde siege to Lourde, and wanne it, and also the castell of Gryngalet,<sup>e</sup> on the ryuer side that ye se yonder

<sup>a</sup> Pamiers.<sup>b</sup> Montespan.<sup>c</sup> Moncuil.—*Johnes.*<sup>d</sup> Lane-bourg.—*Ibid.*<sup>e</sup> Trigalet.

yonder before vs,<sup>a</sup> parteyneth to the lorde de la Barte? Than I remembredmyselfe, and said, Sir, I trowe I neuer herde therof as yet, therfore I praye you shewe me the mater; but, sir, I praye you shewe me where is the ryuer of Garon become, for I can se it no more: ye say trouthe, quod the knyght, it departeth here, in the tryng of these mountayns, and it groweth and cometh out of a fountayne a thre leages hens, the way to Chatelomy,<sup>b</sup> by a castell called saynt Beart, the fronter of the realme of Fraunce towarde Aragon; and there is as nowe a squyer called Ermalton, otherwyse called Bourge de Spaygne, he is lorde therof, and chatelayne of all the cōutrey, and he is cosyn germayne to sir Roger de Spayne; if we se hym I shall shewe you him, he is a goodly persone and a good man of armes, and he hath done more damage to theym of Lourde, than any other knyght or squyer of all the cōutrey, and the erle of Foiz loueth him ryght well, for he is his companion in armes.

I wyll leaue to speke of hym, for I thynke at this feest of Christmas ye shall se him in the erle of Foiz house; but nowe I shall shewe you of the duke of Aniou, howe he came into this cōutrey, and what he dyde. Than we rode forthe fayre and easely, and he began to saye as foloweth.

*Of the warres that the duke of Aniou made agaynst the Englysshmen, and howe he recovered the castell of Maluoysen, in Bigore, whiche was afterwarde gyuen to therle of Foiz.*

#### C A P. XXIII.

AFTER the begynnynge of the warres, whāne they began to wynne on the Englysshmen, that they helde in Acquitayne, and that sir Olyuer Clesquyn<sup>c</sup> was become fr̄che, he ledde ȳ duke of Aniou into Bretaygne, on the landes of sir Robert Canoll,<sup>d</sup> who was at the sege<sup>e</sup> before Dyriuall,<sup>f</sup> as ye haue herde before as I thynke, and of the treatie that sir Hughe Brice<sup>g</sup> his cosyn made to the duke of Aniou, as to r̄dre the castell and delyuer good hostages, so that the duke of Aniou shulde nat cōe to reyse the siege; but whan sir Robert Canoll<sup>d</sup> was within the castell of Dyriuall,<sup>f</sup> than he wolde holde no tretie: all this is true, sir, quod I: well, quod he, but haue you herde of the scrimysse that was before the castell, where as sir Olyuer de Clesquyn<sup>c</sup> was wounded? Sir, I can nat tell you, quod I; I can nat remembre all, wherfore sir I praye you shewe me of the scrimysse, and of the siege, what came therof, for paraduenture ye knowe it some other wayes than I do, and ye shall retourne agayne well ynoughe to your purpose of them of Lourde, and of Maluoysen. It is true, quod the knyght, it was so that sir Garses of the castell,<sup>h</sup> a right valyaunt knight of the cōutrey and good frenche, wente to the duke of Aniou to cause hym to come before Beauuosyn; the duke had made his sommons to holde his iourney before Dyriuall,<sup>f</sup> and made this sir Garses, for his valyantnesse, marshall of his host; and true it is, as I herde say, ȳ whā he sawe that sir Robert Canoll<sup>d</sup> wolde nat kepe the treatie that was made before, nor wolde nat delyuer the castell of Dyriuall;<sup>f</sup> than he came to the duke and sayd, Sir, what shall we do with these hostages? it is no faulte in them that the castell is nat gyuen vp, and it were great pytie that they shulde dye, for they be ḡtlymen and haue deserued no dethe: than the duke said, were it good than to delyuer them? yea, truely sir, quod the knyght, it were great pytie otherwyse: well, quod the duke, do therin as ye lyst.

Than

<sup>a</sup> "And which."

<sup>b</sup> Catalonia.

<sup>c</sup> Clisson.

<sup>d</sup> Knolles.

<sup>e</sup> "And to the siege."

<sup>f</sup> Derval.

<sup>g</sup> Broc.

<sup>h</sup> Garses du Chatel.

<sup>i</sup> Malvoisin.

Than this sir Garses went to delyuer them; and as he wente, sir Olyuer Clesquyn<sup>a</sup> mette him, and demanded wheder he went and fro whens he came. I come fro my lorde the duke of Aniou, and am goyng to delyuer the hostages. To delyuer them, quod sir Olyuer; abyde a lytell, and retourne agayne with me to the duke. And so they cāe to the duke, who was in his lodgyng in a great study. Sir Olyuer saluted hym, and said, Sir, what is your entent? Shall nat these hostages suffre dethe? By my faytliche they shall, in the dyspyte of sir Robert Canoll<sup>b</sup> and sir Byre,<sup>c</sup> who hath falsed their faith; wherfore, sir, I wyll ye knowe, wout they dye, I shall weare no armure this hole yere after in none of your warres: if they shulde scape thus, it were good chepe: the siege hath coste you threscore M. frankes, and nowe you wyll shewe grace to your enemies, who kepeth with you nother faythe nor trouthe. With those wordes the duke began to chafe, and sayd, sir Olyuer, do therin as ye thynke best. Than, quod sir Olyuer, I wyll that they lese their lyues; there is good cause why, sith they kepe nat their promyse. Than sir Olyuer departed fro the duke, and came to a place before the castell; and sir Garses durst nat speke one worde for them, for if he had, he shulde haue lost his labour, sith sir Olyuer had taken on hym the enterprise. Than he called the hangman, and made hym stryke of the heedes of two knyghtes and two squyers, whiche was great pytie, and there were mo than two hundred in the hoost that wepte for them. And incontynent sir Robert Canoll<sup>b</sup> opnyed a posterne gate, and on the brimme of the dykes, in dyspyte of the frenchemen, he caused to stryke of the heedes of all the prisoners that he had, without any respyte, and incontynent opnyed the castell gate and lette downe the bridge, and issued out and came to the barryers, and scrymsshed with the frenchemen: and as sir Garses shewed me, ther was a sore scrimysshe, and there sir Olyuer Clesquyn<sup>a</sup> was hurt, and so returned to his lodgyng. There were thre good<sup>d</sup> men of armes (two squyers of the country of Bierne), Bertram de Baruge<sup>e</sup> and Eualton de Payne,<sup>f</sup> and they were bothe sore hurt; and the next day the duke dislodged and went fro Dyryuall<sup>g</sup> to Tholous, to the entente to distroye Lourde, for they of Tholous cōplayned greatly of the garyson of Lourde.

So than the duke went first and layd siege to Maluoysen, whiche we maye se yonder before vs; and the duke had in his company an viii. thousande men of warre, besyde the geneuoyes and the cōmons of the good townes. Capitayne as than of Maluoysen was a squyer of Gascoyne, called Raymonde de Lespe,<sup>h</sup> an experte man of armes. Euery day at the barriers there was scrimysshes and goodly feates of armes done; and the duke laye in yonder fayre medowes, bytwene the towne of Turney and the castell by the ryuer syde of Lyссе. This siege enduryng, sir Garses, marshall of thoost, went with fyue hundred men of armes and two hundred archers and crosbowes, and a two thousande of other cōmons, and layd siege to the castell of Trygalet, whiche we haue lefte here behynde vs, whiche castell a squyer of Gascoyne kepthe for the lorde de la Barde, for he was his cosyn, and was called the Bastot of Manlyon;<sup>i</sup> and he had within the castell a xl. companyons, and they dyd in that countre suche maystries, that none coude go that waye but they were taken prisoners, without it were the pylgrimes that wente to saynt James, with the ayde of another fortresse called Nemeluz.<sup>k</sup> In these two garysons all the robbers and pyllers of the coūtre assembled; and euer they were agaynst the erle of Foiz, and also agaynst the erle of Arminake; wherfore they cared nat, though the duke of Aniou came into that coūtre. And whan sir Garses was come before the castell of Trygalet, he coulde nat approche on the one parte for the ryuer, and so gaue a great assaute, and many men hurte bothe within and without with shot; and fyue dayes togyder this sir Garses made assautes, so that at laste the artillery within began to fayle them, and the frēchemen parceyued it very well. Than by gentylnesse

VOL. II.

I

sir

<sup>a</sup> Clisson.<sup>b</sup> Knolles.<sup>c</sup> Broc.<sup>d</sup> In the French, "*tres bons*"—"very good."<sup>e</sup> Barcege.—*Johnes*.<sup>f</sup> Ernulton du Pin.<sup>g</sup> Derval.<sup>h</sup> Raymonet de l'Espèc.<sup>i</sup> Maulcou.<sup>k</sup> Nenuilleux.

sir Garses caused the capitayne to come and speke with him vnder saueconducte, and sayd to hym, Bastot, I knowe well what case ye be in; ye haue no artillery within, nor nothyng to defende you fro the saute but speares. Knowe for trouthe, that if ye be taken by force, I can nat saue your lyfe nor none of youre company, for the cōmons of the cōntre wyll slee you all, which I wolde be lothe to se, for ye are my cosyn; therefore I counsaile you to yelde vp the fortesse; and sythe ȳ I desyre you so to do, ye can beare no blame in your so doyng, and departe hens wheder as ye lyst, for ye haue kepte this castell long ynough. Sir, quod the squyer, I wolde gladly folowe your cōsaile, if it were out of dedes of armes, for in dede I am your cosyn; but, sir, I can nat yelde vp this fortesse all alone, for suche as be within haue as good parte therof as I haue, though they holde me for their capitayne. Sir, I shall go to them and shewe them as ye haue said; if they accorde to rendre it vp, I shall nat say nay; and if they wyll kepe it styll, whatsoever aduēture fall, I shall take suche parte as they do. It is well said, quod sir Garses; departe whan ye wyll, I knowe your entent. Than the Bastot of Manlyon<sup>3</sup> returned to the castell of Trygalet, and called all his company toguyder, and ther shewed them all the sayeng of sir Garses, and so demanded of them what they thought was best to do: and so they counsayled toguyder a longe space; some wolde abyde the aduēture, and sayd howe they were stronge ynough; and some wolde departe, and said, howe it was a good tyme so to do, seyng that they had no more artillery, and sawe well howe the duke of Aniou was cruell, and the cōmons of Thoulous, of Carcassoney, and of other townes thereabout, sore displeasid with them, for the great domages that they had done to thē. So all thynges consydred, they concluded to yelde vp the castell, so that they might be safely conducted and all theirs to the castell Culyer,<sup>4</sup> the whiche was kepte by some of their companyons on the fronter of Tholousin. So thus the capitayne returned agayne to the host to speke with sir Garses, and he agreed to their desyres, for he sawe well the castell wolde nat lightly be wonne by assaute, without losse of moche people. So than they prepared to departe, and trussed all their baggage, for they had moche pyllage; they toke with them the best, and lefte the resydue; and sir Garses conueyed thē to Culyer without daunger. Thus the frenchemen at that tyme gate this castell Trygalette. Than sir Garses dyd gyue the castell to the cōmons of the cōntre, and they dyd rase it downe, as ye se, so that there was neuer none sithe that wolde reedify it agayne: and so fro thens sir Garses wente towarde the castell Nantylleux,<sup>5</sup> standyng on these laundes nere to the castell Lameu.<sup>6</sup> And as he wente thyderwarde, one shewed hym ȳ the castell Nantylleux<sup>5</sup> was voyde, and they departed that kepte it. Thāne sir Garses taryed in the felde, and deuysed what was best than to do. Than the seneshall of Nobesen sayd, sir, this castell of Nantylleux<sup>5</sup> is in my bayliwyke, and it ought to parteyne to the erle of Foiz. I praye you let me haue it, and I shall make it to be so kepte, on my proper coste and charge, that no man that wyll any hurte to the contrarye<sup>7</sup> shall neuer entre therin. Sir, quod they of Tholous, he sayeth well, and he is a valyant man; it were better he had it than another. Well, quod sir Garses, I am content. Thus the castell of Nantylleux<sup>5</sup> was deliuered to the seneschall of Nobesen, who incontyent rode thyder, and founde it clene voyde: than he newly fortified that was broken, and he set therin a capitayne, a squyer of the cōntre called Fortefey saynt Poule; and than he returned to the siege of Maluoysen, where ȳ duke was, and also thyder was come sir Garses and all his company, and shewed the duke all that he had done. This siege endured about a vi. wekes, and nighe euery day there was scrimsshinge at the baryers; at laste they withoute stopped their water, so that their sesterns began to drie, and in sixe wekes their fell nat a droppe of rayne, the season was so drie and hote, and they wout had ease ynoughe by reason of the fayre ryuer. Whan they win sawe what case they were in, they were sore abashed,

<sup>3</sup> Mauleon.<sup>4</sup> Cullie.<sup>5</sup> Nemilleux.<sup>6</sup> Mesen?<sup>7</sup> "Country."

abasshed, for they sawe well they coude nat long endure. Wyne they hadde plentie, but fresshe water fayled them. Thāñe they aduysed to fall in treatie with the duke, and so they dyde; and Raymonde de lespee purchased a saueconduct to go into the hoost to speke with the duke, and so he dyd, and sayd, Sir, if ye wyll be courtesse to me and to my company, I shall render into youre handes the castell of Maluoysen. What curtesy wolde ye, quod the duke, that I shulde shewe you? Departe your waye, you and all yours into your owne cōutreis, and entre nat into no forteresse that holdeth agaynst vs; for if ye do, and if I get you or any of you, I shall delyuer you to Joselyn, that shall make your beerdes without any rasoure. Sir, quod Raymonde, if we shall departe, shall we haue with vs all our bagges and baggages for that we haue wonne it by armes, and in great aduenture? Than the duke studyed a lytell, and sayd, I am content that ye bere with you as moche as ye may beare in males<sup>a</sup> and somers, and none otherwise, and if ye haue any prisoners, that ye delyuer them to vs. I am cōtent, quoth Raymonde. Thus all they within departed, and yelded vp the castell to the duke of Aniove: but Raymonde de lespe<sup>b</sup> tourned and became frenche, and serued the duke of Aniove longe tyme after, and went with him into Italy, and there dyed in a scrimysse before Naples, whan the duke of Aniou and the duke of Sauoy made their voyage.

*Howe the garison and castell of Lourde was cast downe and disconfyted by the great diligence that the Erle of Foiz made.*

## C A P. XXIII.

THUS, quod the knight, the duke of Aniou gatte the castell of Maluoysen, wherof he great ioye, and made it to be kepte by a knyght of Bygore, called sir Cyquart of Luperier, and after he gaue it to the erle of Foiz, who kepeth it yet, and wyll do as longe as he lyueth: and he hath made capitayne there a knyght of Bygore, one of his owne lynage, called sir Raymon de Lane: and whan the duke of Aniou had the possessyon of Maluoysen, and had delyuered his countrey fro the Englysshmen and fro the pyllers of the countre, than he wente and layd seige before the castell of Lourde. Than therle of Foiz douted greatly the duke of Aniou, bycause he cam so nere hym, and wyste nat what he entended. Than therle of Foiz assembled togyder knyghtes and squyers, and sent thē aboute to dyuers garysons, and sette his brother, sir Arnolde Guyllame, in the towne of Morlens with two hundred speares,<sup>c</sup> in the towne of Panne,<sup>d</sup> and sir Peter of Cabeston into the cite of Lestrade with other two hundred speares, and sir Monant of Nōualles<sup>e</sup> went into the towne of Hartlet with a hundred speares, and Arnolde Geherell<sup>f</sup> into the towne of Montgeberell<sup>g</sup> with a hūdred speares, sir Foulquant Dortery into the towne of Sanetere<sup>h</sup> with a hundred speares, and I, Espayne of Lyon, was sente to the Mount Marson with two hundred speares. There was no castell in all Bierne but that was well prouyded with men of warre, and the erle himselfe laye styll at his castell of Ortayse by his florens. Why, sir, quod I, hath he so great plentie of florens? Sir, quod he, at this houre I thynke he hath well to the nōbre of xxx. tymes a hundred thousande: there is no lorde lyuenge as now, that is so large and lyberall in gyueng of gyftes as he is. Than I demaunded of hym to what maner of people he was so lyberall? he answered and said, to straungers, to knyghtes, and squyers comyng through his countre, and to heraldes and mynstrels, and to euery man that speketli

I 2

with

<sup>a</sup> Trunks.<sup>b</sup> L'Espèe.<sup>c</sup> "His other brother, Peter de Béarne, with 200 speares," omitted.<sup>d</sup> Pau.<sup>e</sup> Mouvant de Nouailles, or Noailles.<sup>f</sup> Crual Geberel.<sup>g</sup> Montgerbiel.<sup>h</sup> Sauveterre.

with hym; there is none departeth fro him without some rewarde; for if any refuse his gyfte, he is nat content. A saynt mary, sir, quod I, to what entent kepeth he so moche money, and wher dothe he get it? Is his reuenues so great, to gader togyuder suche treasure? Sir, I wolde gladly knowe this, if it pleased you. Well, sir, quod the knight, ye shall know it; but ye haue demaüded of me two thynges: first ye haue demaüded of me, to what entent he kepeth suche treasure; I shall shewe you. Therle of Foiz alway douteth of the warre that he had with therle of Arminake, and also for the busynesse of his neighbours, the frenche kyng and the kyng of Englande, whom he wolde nat wyllingly displease; for he hath alwayes dissymuled bytwene them duryng all the warr season vnto this present tyme, for he neuer armed hymselfe for any of their parties; he hath alwayes been euer in good case with bothe parties: I saye to you, and so ye shall saye youreselfe whaie ye haue ones knowlege of hym and herde him speke, and ones knowe the order and state of his house, ye shall se that he is at this daye the moost sage prince in the worlde; and there is none so great a lorde, nother the frenche kyng nor the kyng of Englande, ý wyll wyllingly haue his yuell wyll: as for his other neighbours, as the kyng of Arragon or the kyng of Nauar, he estemeth them but lytell, for he wyll fynde mo men of armes (by reason of suche frendes as he hath gote w his giftes and money that he hath in treasure) than bothe those kynges can do; for I haue herde hym saye, that whan the kyng of Cyper<sup>a</sup> was in his countre of Byerne, and moued him to haue gone to the voiage of the holy Sepulture, he hadde thought the same tyme to haue made suche a iourney, that if the frenche kyng or the kyng of Englande had taken that enterprise, howe ther shulde haue ben no lorde shulde haue brought suche a company as he wolde haue done, and as yet he is of the same mynde; and in parte, that is one of the causes that he gadereth suche treasure.

The prince of Wales, the season that he reigned in the countre of Aquitayne, beyng at Burdeux on the ryuer of Geronde,<sup>b</sup> thought to haue made hym warre. The prince manassyde him for the couître of Bierne, and wolde haue had hym to haue holde his couître of hym; and the erle sayd he wolde nat, and sayd, howe his countre of Bierne was so free a lande, that it ought to do homage to no man of the worlde: and the prince, who at that tyme was great and sore feared, said howe he wolde compell hym perforce, for therle of Arminake and the lorde Dalbret, who loued nat therle of Foiz, bycause of suche victories as he hadde won on them before, they tytled the prince euer in his eare, and entysed hym to haue made warre agaynst the erle of Foiz: but the voiage that the prince made into Spayne brake his purpose; also sir Johñ Chandos, who was chefe of couisayle with the prince, was agaynst it, that the prince shulde make any warre to the erle. The erle of Foiz loued right well sir Johan Chandos, and he hym; but the erle douted the prince, bycause he was fierse and coragious; and therefore he gadered togyder as moche treasure as he coude gette, to thentent therwith to defende hym if nede were: and so he set great tayles and taxes in all his couître and in euery towne, whiche as yet endureth, and shall do as long as he lyueth; he had of euery fyre euery yere two frākes, and the ryche to beare out the poore; therby he gadered and yet dothe, great riches, and the people payeth it with a marueylous good wyll; for by reason therof, there is nother Englysshe nor frenche, nor robbers nor reyuers, ý dothe them any hurte to the value of one pēny: and so his countre is in sauegarde and iustice truely kepte; for in doying of iustyce he is right cruell; he is the moost rightfull lorde ý is nowe lyueng: and so with these wordes we came to the towne of Turney, where as we shulde rest all night. So than the knight ceased of his talkyng, and I remembered well where we lefte agaynst the next day, and we were lodged at the signe of the Starre, and toke our ease; and at supper tyme, the capitayne of Maluoysin, called  
sir

<sup>a</sup> Cyprus.<sup>b</sup> Garonne.



sir Raymonde of Lane, came to se vs, and supped with vs, and brought with hym four flaggons of the best wyne, that I drāke of in all my journey: those two knyghtes talked long togider, and when it was late the knight departed and returned to the castell of Maluoysin: and the next mornyng we mounted on our horses, and departed fro Tourney, and passed by a gyde the ryuer of Lysse, and rode towarde the cytie of Tarbe, and entred into Bigore; and we lefte the waye to Lourde, to Bagneres, and to the castell of Mountgaylliard on the lyfte hande; and we rode towarde a vyllage called Teracimytat, and dyd coost it, and came to a wode in the lande of the lorde of Barbasan, and we came nere to a castell called Matheras, at the entre of the countre of Layre.<sup>a</sup> Than the knight said to me, Sir Johan, beholde here the place of Layre,<sup>a</sup> and beholde it well and aduise the coultre, which semed to me right strāge: I thought myselfe but as lost ther, if I had nat ben in the company with that knight: than I remēbred the wordes that this knight had shewed me ii. or thre dayes before of that countre of Layre<sup>a</sup> and of the Mēgeant of Lourde: than I sayd to hym, Sir, ye shewed me the last daye, that when we shulde be in the coultre of Layre,<sup>a</sup> that ye wolde shewe me the maner of the Mēgeant of Lourde, and howe he dyed. It is true, sir, quoth the knyght; come on and ryde by me, and I shall shewe you. Than I rode nere hym to here his wordes, and than he sayde, Sir, in the season that Peter Danchync helde the castell and castell<sup>b</sup> of Ortyngas, as I haue shewed you before this tyme, they of the garison of Lourde sōtyme rode forthe at aduventure farre fro their garyson; howbeit, they had nat alwayes the aduantage, for ye maye beholde here the castell of Barbasan and the castell of Martheras, wherin there was alwayes many men of warre there, and in other garysons, as Bagneres, Tourney, Mountgalyarde, Salenges, Benache, Gorre, and Tarbe, all frenche townes and garysons: and whan these garysons knewe that they of Lourde rode outhur towardes Tholous or Carcassone, thā they wolde laye bussumentes for them, and somtyme take fro them of Lourde their praye and pyllage, and somtyme they scaped without any reconter. And on a tyme it fortunad that Ernaulton of saynt Colombe and the Mengeant of saynte Cornyle, and to the nombre of sixscore speares of good men of warre departed fro Lourde about the moūtayns bytwene these two ryuers Lysse and Lesse, and so rode nere to Tholous; and at their retournyng they founde in the meadowes a great nombre of beestes, oxen and keen, hogges, mottions, and lambes; and also they toke dyuers of the good men of the countre prisoners, and so droue all their pray before them. Than it was shewed to the capitayne of Tarbe, a squyer of Gascoyne, called Ernaltou Byfette, an experte man of armes, howe they of the garyson of Lourde were abroad, and were comyng homeward with a great praye: than he sente to the lorde of Benache and to Engueroise,<sup>c</sup> eldest sonne to sir Raymonde, and also to the lorde of Barbasan, certifyng them howe he wolde ryde out agaynst theym of Lourde. The knyghtes and squyers of the countrey of Bigore agreed to ryde forthe, and assembled toguyder at Tourney, and with them ther was the Bourcke<sup>d</sup> of Spaygne, who came fro his garyson of saynt Bearte: so they were to the nombre of two hundred speares, and they had their spyes abroad in the countrey, to knowe what they of Lourde dyde. On the other syde, they of Lourde had abroad their spies, to knowe if any men of warre were abroad to lette them of their enterprise: and so moche dyde these, y<sup>e</sup> eyther partie knewe what other dyde. Whāne they of Lourde knewe howe they of the frenche garysons were abroad and taryed for them at Tourney, than they were in doute, and toke cōsaille what they might best do to saue their pray: than they determyned to departe their company in two; the one company to driue before them their praye with all their varlettes, and to go couertly by the lane of Bourge,<sup>e</sup> and so to passe the waye by the bridge of Tourney, and to passe the ryuer of Lesse, bytwene Tourney and Lymosyn;<sup>f</sup> and the other company to ryde in batayle by the mountayns, and to make shewe to go agayne

<sup>a</sup> Larre.<sup>b</sup> "Garrison."<sup>c</sup> De Lane.<sup>d</sup> Bourg.<sup>e</sup> Lane-bourg.<sup>f</sup> Malvoisin.

agayne into the countre of Layre,<sup>a</sup> by Martheras, and so to fall in bytwene Barbason and Mountgalyarde, and sayd, that if they mete togyuder about Mountgallyarde, than they shulde be in sauegarde, for than we shall be soone at Lourde. Thus as they ordayned, so they dyde; and the bastarde of Carnyllacke, Guyllonet of Harmyes,<sup>b</sup> and Perot Burcyer, Johñ Calleeuyn of Basile,<sup>c</sup> the reed squier,<sup>d</sup> and fourtie speares, with all their varlettes, with all their pray, toke the waye by the lane of Burge,<sup>e</sup> and so to passe the ryuer at the bridge bitwene Tourney and Maluoysin, thynkyng to mete all togyuder bytwene Cynitat and Mouÿtgayllarde; and so they departed, and the other cōpany, as Ernaltton of Restue, Ernaltton of sait Colombe, and the Mēgeant of saynt Cornyle, with fourscore men of armes, there was nat x. varlettes among them: so they made thēself redy, and rode close togyuder, euer lokyng for their enemyes, for they knewe well they were abrode to watche for them. In lyke maner as they of Lourde had taken their aduise and coūsayle howe to retourne, in lykewise the frenchemen tooke counsayle howe they might encounter their enemyes; and sir Monant of Barbason and Ernaltton Byffet sayd to their companye, Sirs, we knowe well howe they of Lourde are abrode in the feldes, and driueth before them great praye and many prisoners: it shulde be a great dyspleasure to vs if they shulde scape; therefore lette vs put ourselfe into two bussumentes; we are company ynoughe so to do. Than it was ordayned that Ernaltton and the Bourge of Spayne, sir Raymonde of Benache, and Anguer of Lane, with a hundred speres, shulde kepe the passage at Tourney; for they knewe well that they of Lourd, with their praye, must nedes passe the ryuer of Lysse: and it was ordayned, that the lorde of Barbason and Ernaltton Byffet, with a hundred speares, shulde ryde at aduentures; so thus they departed, and the lorde of Benache and the Bourge of Spaygne put themselfe in a bussment, bytwene Maluoysin and Turney; and the other company rode and toke the same waye that we be nowe in, which is called the Layre, and here they mette with thē of Lourde; and whan eche of them sawe other, they alyghted, and made them redy to fyght, and so came eche agaynst other, cryeng their cryes, saynt George Lourd, and the other our lady of Bygore; and so there eche came to other with haude strokes, foyninge with their speares eche at other a great space; and as I herde reported of them that were ther, at the first brunt there was none ouerthrown: and so whan eche of thē had a great space foyned eche at other, they caste downe their speares, and toke their axes, and gaue therwith eche to other great and horrible strokes, euery man with his matche, and in that maner they fought togyuder more than two<sup>f</sup> houres; and whan any of them had fought so long that they lacked brethe, than they wolde fayre and easely departe, and go sytte downe by a dyke syde that was full of water, and put of their bassenettes and refresshe themselfe; and whan they were well refresshed, they putte on their bassenetes and returned agayne to fight. I beleue there was nat suche a busynesse nor a batayle so well fought (sithe the batayle y<sup>g</sup> was in Bretayne of xxx. agaynst as many) as this was here at Martheras in Bigore. Thus they fought hande to hande, and Ernaltton of saynt Colombe was at the poynt to haue ben disconfyted by a squyer of the countre called Guyllonet of Salynges. This Ernaltton of saint Colombe had a varlet, who stode by and sawe the batayle and fought nat, for ther was none that sayd any thyng to hym: and whan he sawe his maister almost at vttraunce, he was sorie, and so came to his maister and tooke his axe out of his handes, and sayd, Ernaltton, go your waye and rest you, ye can no lengar fight; and than he with the axe wente to the squyer and gaue him suche a stroke on the heed, that he was astonied, and had nere hande fallen to the erthe. Whaife Guyllonet felte hymselfe stryken, he was sore displeased, and came agaynst the varlet to haue stryken hym, but the varlet stepte vnder the stroke and enbrased the squyer, who was sore traueyled with

<sup>a</sup> Larre.<sup>b</sup> De Harnes.<sup>c</sup> Calemin de Bassele.<sup>d</sup> Le rouge Escuyer.<sup>e</sup> Lane-bourg.<sup>f</sup> Johnes and the Lyons<sup>g</sup> edition say *three* hours.

with so long fightyng, and so the varlet ouerthrewe hym wrestlyng vnder hym. Thā the varlet sayde, I shall slee the, without thou wylte yelde thyselfe to my maister. Who is thy mayster? quod the squyer. Ernalton of saynt Colombe, quod the varlette, with whome thou haste fought all this season. The squyer sawe that he had nat the vantage, but that he was vnder the varlette, who had a daggar redy to stryke hym; So he yelded hym to rendre his body prisoner at Lourde within fyftene dayes after, rescues or no rescues. This seruyce dyd this varlet to his maister: and, sir Johñ, I assure you, ther were many feates of armes done, and many ouerthrowen and taken prisoners; some to yelde themselfe in a certayne space at Tarbe, and some to come to Lourde. They fought this day hande to hande; Ernalton Byfet with the Mengeant of saynt Basyll; they dyde many a feate of armes bytwene thē, and they fought so long till they were so wery that they coude ayde themselfe no lengar: and ther was slayne on the place two capitayns, the mēgeant of Lourde, and on the other parte Ernalton Byffet. Than ceased the batayle by agrement of bothe parties, for they were so wery that they coude scante holde their axes in their handes. Some vnarmed them, to reffreshe thēselfe, and lefte their armure in the place. They of Lourde bare away with them the Mengeant slayne, and the frenchemen bare Ernalton Byffet to Tarbe: and to thentent that this batayle shulde be had in remembrance, wher as the two squyers fought, there was set a crosse of stone; beholde yonder is the crosse; and with those wordes we came to the crosse, and there we sayd for their soules a Pater noster and an Aue maria. By my faythe, sir, quod I, I am gladd I haue herde this, for this was a sharpe busynesse of so lytell people. But, sir, what became of them that wente with the praye? I shall shewe you, quod he. They came to the parte of Tournay besyde Maluoysin, to haue passed there, as they had ordayned, and ther they founde the bussment of the Bourge of Spaygne, who brake out of their bussment, and they of Lourde coude nat recule backe; they had no remedy, but to aduētūre theirselfe. And I tell you trouthe, there was as sore a fight, and as long endured or lengar, than that at Martheras, and there Ernalton of Spayne dyde marueylous in armes; he had an axe in his hande; whosoever he strake therwith went to the erth, for he was bygge and well made, and nat ouer charged with moche flesshe: he toke ther with his owne handes the two capitayns, the Burge of Coruyle<sup>a</sup> and Perot Palatyne of Bierne; and there was slayne a squier of Nauar, called Ferādo<sup>b</sup> of Myrando, who was an expert man of armes: some that were at the busynesse sayd, that the Bourge of Spaygne slewe hym, and some sayd he was ouercome for heat in his harnesse: finally the praye was rescewed, and all taken or slayne that wente therwith; ther were but thre saued themselfe, and they were varlettes, who departed and wente ouer the ryuer of Lysse. Thus became of this aduēture. They of Lourde neuer loste before so moche as they dyde than: they were courtlesly ransomed, and dyuers delyuered by exchange one for another, for dyuers of them that fought here at the place of Layre were taken by thē of Lourde; therfore enery parte were courtesye one to another in ransomyng of their companyons. Ah, saynt Mary, sir, quod I, is the Bourge of Spayne so bygge a man as ye speke of? Yea, sir, truly, quod he; for in all Gascoyne there is none lyke hym in strength of body; therfore the erle of Foiz hath hym euer in his company: it paste nat a thre yere that he dyde in a sporte a great dede, as I shall shewe you.

So it was on a Christmas day the Erle of Foiz helde a great feest, and a plentifull of knyghtes and squyers, as it is his vsage; and it was a colde day, and the erle dyned in the hall, and with hym great company of lordes; and after dyner he departed out of the hall, and wente vp into a galarye of xxiiii. stayes of heyght, in whiche galarye ther was a great chymney, wherin they made fyre whan therle was ther; and at that tyme

<sup>a</sup> Comillac.

<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand.

tyme there was but a small fyre, for the erle loued no great fyre; howbeit, he hadde woode ynoughe there about, and in Bierne is wode ynoughe. The same daye it was a great frost and very colde: and whan the erle was in the galarye, and sawe the fyre so lytell, he sayde to the knyghtes and squiers about hym, Sirs, this is but a small fyre, and the day so colde: than Ernulton of Spayne went downe the stayres, and beneth in the courte he sawe a great meny of asses, laden with woode to serue the house: than he wente and toke one of the grettest asses, with all the woode, and layde hym on his backe, and went vp all the stayres into the galary, and dyde cast downe the asse with all the woode into the chymney, and the asses fete vpwarde; wherof the erle of Foiz had great ioye, and so hadde all they that were there, and had marueyle of his strength, howe he alone came vp all the stayres with the asse and the woode in his necke. I toke great pleasure in this tale, and in other that this knyght sir Espaygne de Leon shewed me, wherby I thought my iourney moche the shorter; and in shewyng of these maters, we passed the pase of Layre and the castell of Martheras, where as the batayle was, and so we rode nere to the castell of Barbason, whiche is stronge and fayre, and is within a leage of Tarbe, whiche we sawe before vs, and a fayre waye costyng the ryuer of Lyse comyng fro the mountayns: than we rode fayre and easely at our leysar to refresshe our horses, and there he shewed me the ryuer, the castell, and the towne of Mount-galyarde, and the waye that laye to Lourde. Thafie it came to my remembrance to demaunde the knight, howe the duke of Aniou whan he was in the countrey, and that the castell of Maluoysin was yelded to hi, came before Lourde, and what he dyd there; and with right a good wyll he shewed me and said, Whanne the duke of Aniowe departed from Maluoysin with all his host, he passed ouer the ryuer of Lyse at the bridge of Tournay, and wente and lodged at Bagniers, where as is a good ryuer goyng to Tarbe, for this ryuer of Tournay cometh nat thyder, but falleth into the ryuer of Garon besyde Moütunllyon:<sup>a</sup> and so the duke went and layd siege to Lourde, Sir Peter Ernulton of Bierne, and Johan his brother, Peter Danchyn, Ernulton of Restue, Ernulton of saynt Colombe, and the Mengeant, who as than was Iyueng, and Ferando<sup>b</sup> of Myrando, with Olyuer Barbe, the Burge of Cornyllacke, and the Burge Canuse,<sup>c</sup> and certayne other cōpanions beyng within Lourde; whan they were well enfourmed of the dukes comyng thyder, they fortified them and their garyson agaynst hym, and helde the towne of Lourde for all the sautes that the duke made, whiche fyftene dayes continually endured, and there were many feates of armes done. The duke ordayne many instrumentes of warre for the saute, so that finally the towne was wonne, but they loste neyther man, woman, nor good, for they were all withdrawn into the castell, for they knewe well at length the towne wolde nat holde, for it was closed but with dykes and pales. Whan the towne of Lourde was won, the Frenchemen had great ioye, and so lodged in the towne rōude about the castell, whiche was nat prigniabe without it were with long siege. There the duke taryed more than sixe wekes, and lost more than he wanne; for they without coulde do no hurte to them within, for the Castell standeth on a rounde rocke, made in suche maner that no man coude aprouche it by scalyng nor otherwyse, but by one entre; and there at the baryers were many scrimysshes and many feates of armes done, and dyuers knyghtes and squyers of Fraunce were hurte, suche as wolde prese to nere. Whan the duke sawe howe he coude nat haue his entent to gette the castell of Lourde, than he fell in treatie with the capitayne within, and offred him moche money to gyue vp the garyson. The knight, who was of great valyantesse, excused hymselfe, and said, Howe the garyson was nat his, but it parteyned to the herytage of the kyng of Englande; and sayd, Howe he coude nat sell it, nor gyue it, nor putte it awaye, without he shulde be a traytour, whiche in no wyse he wolde be, but trewe to his naturall lorde duryng his lyfe; and moreouer sayd, that whan the  
castell

<sup>a</sup> Montmillion.<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>c</sup> Camus.

castell was delyuered hym, it was on a condycion, whiche he sware solempnely by his faythe in the prince of Wales hande, ȳ he shulde kepe the castell of Lourde agaynst all men duryng his lyfe, excepte it were agaynst the kyng of Englande. The duke coude neuer haue other answeere of hym, for gyfte nor promyse that he coulde make. And whan the duke of Aniou and his counsaile sawe howe they coude haue nothyng els, and sawe that they loste their payne, they dislodged, and at their departyng they clene brent the towne. Than the duke of Aniove drewe backe in coostyng Bierne, and rode towarde the Mount Marsen, and had knowledge howe the erle of Foiz had fortified all his garysons with men of warre, wherof he was nothyng dyscontent, but he was displeased in that the knyghtes and squyers of Bierne helde Lourde agaynst hym. The erle of Foiz (as I haue shewed you here before) doughted greatly the duke of Aniove, though he duke dyde hym no hurte: but the erle of Arminake and the lorde Dalbret wolde haue had the Duke to haue made hym warre, but the duke had no wyll thereto; but whyle he lodged bytwene Mounte Marsen and the Boce<sup>e</sup> Dalbret, he sent to the erle to Ortaise, sir Peter of Beule, whom the erle receyued honorably, and lodged hym in the castell of Ortaise, and made hym as good chere as he coude, and gaue hym mulettes and coursers, and to his men great gyftes: and he sente by hym to the duke of Aniove foure coursers and two Allans<sup>b</sup> of Spaygne, fayre and good: and there were secrete treaties bytwene the erle and this sir Peter of Beule, of whiche treaties no man knewe the entent therof of a good space after; but after, by suche euident tokens as appered, we supposed somewhat, and the mater I shall shewe you, and by that tyme we shall come to Tarbe.

Anone after that the duke of Aniou had made his voyage, and that he was at Tholous, than the erle of Foiz sende by his letters certayne messangers to Lourde, to his cosyne sir Peter Ernulton of Bierne, desyryng hym to come and speke with hym at Ortaysse: and whan the knyght had reed therles letters, and sawe his notable message, he had dyuers ymaginacions, and wyst nat wheder he might go or abyde: all thynges consydrd, he sayd he wolde go, bycause in no wyse he wolde displease the erle. And whan he departed fro Lourde, he sayd to Johan of Bierne his brother, in the presens of all the companyons of the garyson: Brother Johan, the erle of Foiz hath sente for me, I can nat tell you why; but sythe it is his pleasure to speke with me, I wyll go to hym: I feare me greatly that I shal be requyred to gyue vp this forresse of Lourde; for the duke of Aniou, whan he was in the cuntrye, he costed Bierne, and entred nat therin; and the erle of Foiz hath longe entended to haue the castell of Maluoysin, to the entent to be lorde of the lane de Bourge, and of the fronters of Comynges and of Bigore. I knowe nat what treatie ther is made bytwene hym and the duke of Aniou; but one thyng I saye playnly: as longe as I lyue I shall neuer yelde vp the garyson but to myne owne naturall lorde the kyng of Englade; wherfore, brother Johan, in case that I stablysshe you in myne absence to be Capitayne here, that ye shall swere to me by the faythe of your gentylnesse, that ye shall kepe this castell, in lyke maner and fourme as I do, and that for lyfe or dethe ye fayle nat. And Johan of byerne sware to fulfyll his desyre. Than sir Peter Ernulton wente to Ortaysse, and alyghted at the signe of the Moone, and whan he thought it was tyme, he wente to the castell of Ortaysse to therle, who with great ioye receyued hym, and made hym syt at his borde, and shewed him as great semblant of loue as he coude; and after dyner he said, Cosyn Peter, I haue to speke w̄ you of dyuers thynges, wherfore I wyll that ye departe nat without my leaue. The knight answered and sayd, sir, I shall nat departe tyll it be your pleasur. Than the thirde day after the erle of Foiz said vnto hym, in the presens of the vycount of Gousserant, his brother, and before the lorde Dächyn of Bigore and dyuers other knyghtes and squyers, the erle sayd aloude, ȳ euery man might here hym, Peter, I sende for you,

VOL. II.

K

and

<sup>a</sup> Hill of Dalbret.<sup>b</sup> A species of dog, the breed of which came from Albania.—*Cotgrace*.

and ye be come: I wyll ye knowe, the duke of Anion wolde me moche yuell, bycause of the garison of Lourde, whiche ye kepe, for the whiche cause my lande was nere hāde ouerron and good frendes had nat been; and it is his opynion and dyuers other of his company, that he hateth me, bicause (as they say) howe I maynteyne and sustayne you, bycause ye be of Byerne; and it is nat mete for me to haue the yuell wyll of so great a prince as the duke of Aniove is; wherfore I cōmaunde you, as ye wyll eschewe my displeasure, and by the faythe and lignage that ye owe to me, that ye yelde vp the garyson of Lourde into my handes. When the knyght herde these wordes he was sore abashed, and studyed a lytell, remembering what aunswere he might make, for he sawe well the Erle spake in good faithe; howbeit, all thynges consydred, he sayd, Sir, true it is, I owne to you faythe and homage, for I am a poore knyght of your blode and of your country; but as for the castell of Lourde, I wyll nat delyuer it to you; ye haue sent for me, to do with me as ye lyst; I holde it of the kyng of Englande; he sette me there; and to none other lyueng wyll I delyuer it. When the erle of Foyz herde that answere, his blode chafed for yre, and sayd, drawyng out his daggar, A treatour, sayest thou nay? By my heed thou hast nat sayd that for nought, and so therwith strake the knight, that he wounded hym in fyue places, and there was no knyght nor barone y durst steppe bytwene them. Than the knyght sayd, Ah sir, ye do me no gentylnesse to sende for me and slee me. And yet, for all the strokes that he had with the daggar, therle cōmaūded to cast him in prison downe into a depe dyke; and so he was, and ther dyed, for his woundes were but yuell loked vnto. Ah, saynt Mary, quod I to the knyght, Was nat this a great crueltie? Whatsoener it was, quoth the knyght, thus it was. Lette one aduyse hym well, or he displease him; for and he be angry, there is no pardon: he helde ones his cosyn germayne, the vicōūt of Chateau Bein,<sup>a</sup> who is his heryter, eight monethes in the towne of Ortaise in prison, and after raūsomed him at fourtie thousande frankes. Why, sir, quod I, hath the erle of Foyz no chyl dren? No, truely, sir, quod he, by any wyfe; but he hath two younge knyghtes y be his bastards, whom ye shall se, and he loueth them as well as hymselfe: they be called sir Johan<sup>b</sup> and sir Gracyen. Than I demaunded yf euer he were maryed? Yea, truely, quod he, and is yet, but his wyfe is nat with hym. Why, sir, wher is she? Sir, quod he, she is in Nauar, for the kyng there is her cosyn; she was daughter to kyng Loyes of Nauar. Yet than I demaunded yf euer the erle had any chyl dren. Yes, sir, quod he, he had a fayre sonne, who had the fathers harte, and all the countrey loued hym, for by hym all the countre of Biern was in rest and peace, where as it hath ben sith in debate and stryfe, for he had maryed the suster of therle of Armynake. Sir, quod I, what became of that sonne, and it maye be knowne? Sir, quod he, I shall shewe you, but nat as nowe, for the mater is ouer longe, and we are nere the towne, as ye se: therwith I left the knight in peace, and so we came to Tarbe, and toke oure lodgyng at the Starre, and there taryed all that day, for it was a towne of great easement, bothe for man and horse, with good hay and otes and a fayre ryuer.

The nexte day after masse we mounted a horsbacke, and departed fro Tarbe, and came to a towne called Iorre, whiche valyantlye alwayes helde agaynst them of Lourde; and so we passed by the towne withoute, and than entred into the countrey of Bierne. Than the knight stode styll and sayd, Sir, beholde here is Bierne: and we stode in a crosse waye. The knight aduysed hym whiche waye to take, outhur to Morlens or to Panne;<sup>c</sup> at laste we toke the waye to Morlens, ridyng ouer the laūdes of Bierne, whiche were right playne. Thāne I demaunded of hym, if the towne of Panne<sup>c</sup> were nere vs? and he sayde, yes; and so he shewed me the steple; howbeit, the distaūce was farther of than it semed, for it was an yuel way to ryde, bycause of the myres, to thi that knewe

<sup>a</sup> Bon.<sup>b</sup> Jenvain.<sup>c</sup> Pau.

knewe nat the countre ; and nat farre thens was the castell of Lourde ; and I demaunded who was as than capitayne there ? he sayd, that as than the seneschall of Bigore was capitayne there, admytted by the kyng of Englande, brother to sir Peter of Bierne (as ye haue herde before). That is trewe, sir, quod I ; but dyde he neuer after go to se the erle of Foiz ? He answered and sayd, Sith the dethe of his brother he neuer came there, but other of his company hath ben often with the erle, as Peter Danchyn, Ernaltton of Restue, Ernaltton of saynt Colome, and other. Sir, quod I, hath the erle of Foiz made any amendes for the dethe of that knight, or sorie for his dethe ? Yes, truely, sir, quod he, he was right sorie for his dethe ; but as for amendes, I knowe of none, without it be by secrete penaunce, masses, or prayers: he hath with hym the same knyghtes sonne, called Johan of Byerne, a gracyous squyer, and the erle loueth hym right well. Ah, sir, quod I, the duke of Aniove, who that wolde so fayne haue the castell of Lourde, ought to be well content with the erle of Foyz, whan he slewe suche a knight, his owne cosyn, for to accomplysshe his desyre. By my faythe, sir, quod he, so he was ; for anone after that the duke came to the Frenche kyng, the kyng sent into this countre sir Roger of Spaygne, and a presydent of the parlyament chambre of Parys, and letters sealed, makyng mencion howe the kyng dyde gyue to the erle of Foiz the couētie of Bygore duryng his lyfe, to holde y same of the crowne of Fraunce. The Erle thanked greatly the kyng, for the great loue that he shewed him, and for that great gyfte, without any request makyng: but for all that the sayd sir Roger of Spaygne coude do, saye, or shewe, the erle in no wyse wolde take the gyfte, but he toke the castell of Maluoy-sin, bycause it was a fre lande, for that castell and the purteynaunce holdeth of no man, but of God, and also aunccyently it parteyneth to his enherytaunce. The frenche kyng, by the meanes of the duke of Aniove, dyd gyue it hym, and the erles ware and promysed to take it on a condycion, that he shuld neuer sette man there that shulde do any yuell to the realme of Fraunce ; and so he dyde, for suche as were ther feared as moche thenglisshemen as any other Frenche garysons in Gascoyne, but the Bernoyse durst nat ronne into the countre of Foyz.

*Howe the peace was made bitwene the duke of Berry and therle of Foiz, and of the begynninge of the warre that was bitwene therle of Foiz and the erle of Armynake.*

## CAP. XXV.

ALL these maters that sir Espayne de Leon shewed me, right well cōtented me ; and euery nyght, assoone as we were at our lodgynges, I wrote euer all that I herde in the day, the better therby to hane thē in remēbraunce, for writyng is the best remēbraunce that may be. And so we rode the sayd morning to Morlens ; but are we came there, I said, sir, I haue forgot to demaūde of you, whan ye shewed me the aduentures of Foiz,<sup>2</sup> dyde dissymule with the duke of Berrey, who had to wyues, the daughter and suster of therle of Armynake, and wheder that the duke of Berry made him any warre, and howe he dyd ? Howe he dyd, quod the knight, I shall shewe you. In tyme past the duke of Berrey wolde him as moche yuell as he coude ymagyn, but as nowe, by meanes whiche ye shall here of whan ye come to Ortaise, they be accorded. Why, sir, quod I, was there any cause why the duke shulde be displeased with hym ? As helpe me god, quod the knight, non ; but I shal shewe you the cause. Whan Charles the frenche kyng, father to kyng Charles that nowe is, was dyssessed, the realme of Fraūce was deuyded in two partes, as in the gouernyng therof ; for the duke of Aniou, who en-

K 2

tended

<sup>2</sup> " And of Armignac, how the Count de Foiz," omitted.

tended to go into Italy, as he dyd, he gaue vs the rule, and than his<sup>2</sup> two bretherne, the duke of Berry and the duke of Burgoyne had  $\frac{1}{2}$  rule. The duke of Berry had the gouernynge of Languedocke, and the duke of Burgoyne ruled Languedoyle<sup>3</sup> and Picardy. Whan they of Languedocke vnderstode  $\frac{1}{2}$  the duke of Berry had the gouernynge ouer them, they were sore abashed, and specially they of Tholous, for they knewe well that  $\frac{1}{2}$  duke was a sore taker of golde and syluer, and a sore oppressar of the people: also ther was in Carcassone and in Rouergue, bretons and tholousins, whiche the duke of Aniou had left in the couëtre, and they robbed and pyllled, and the brute ran,  $\frac{1}{2}$  the duke of Berry maynteyned them, to thētent to ouermaister  $\frac{1}{2}$  good townes; but in this season that I speke of, the duke of Berrey was nat in the couëtre there; he was with the kyng in Flaunders. They of Tholous, who be great and puissant, perceuyed howe the frenche kyng was yonge, and was greatly busyed in Flaunders, for the ayde of his vncl the duke of Burgoyne: and they sawe well howe they were dayly robbed and pyllled by the britons and other, so that they wyste nat what to do. Than they sent and treated with the erle of Foiz, desyryng hym, for a certayne sōme of money that they offred hym, euery moneth to be payed, that he wolde take on him the gouernynge of Tholous, and of the couëtre of Tholousin; and also he was desyred of other townes in lykewise: they desyred hym, bycause they knewe hym for a iuste man and a rightwyse in iustyce, redouted of his enemyes, and fortunate in all his businesse; and also they of Tholous loued hym, for he had been euer to them a good neyghbour. Thus he toke on him the charge and the gouernynge, and sware to maynteyne and kepe the countre in their ryght agaynst all men that wolde do any wrong therto, reseruyng all onely the frenche kynges persone. Than he sette men of warr to watche the wayes and passages, wher as these robbers and pyllars vsed to passe, and on a daye he toke, slewe, and drowned of them, at Roboston in Tholousin, mo than four hūdred, wherby he gate great grace and honoure of them of Tholous and of Carcassone, of Besyers, and Mountpellyer, and of other good townes there about, so that the renome ran in Fraunce howe they of Languedoke were tourned, and had taken to their lorde the erle of Foyz: and the duke of Berry, who was souerayne there, toke therat great displeasure, and had therle of Foiz in great hate, bycause he medled so farre in the busynesse of Fraunce, and wherby he maynteyned them of Tholous styll in their rebellyon agaynst him. Than he sente men of warre into the countre, but they were fiersly driuen backe agayne by the erles men, so that wheder they wolde or no, they were fayne to drawe backe, or els they had loste more than they shulde haue wonne. With this the duke of Berrey was sore displeasid w<sup>th</sup> the erle of Foiz, and he sayd, howe therle of Foiz was the most presumptuous and proudest knight of all the worlde: the duke as than coude suffre no good to be spoken of hym; howebit, he made hym no warre, for the erle of Foiz had alwayes his townes and castelles so well prouyded for, that none durste entre into his lande: but whan the duke of Berry came into Languedocke, than he left his rule, for he wolde thā no lengar exerceyse agaynste the duke, but the displeasure rested styll after a certayne space; but nowe shall I shewe you by what meanes the peace was norished bytwene them.

It was a ten yere paste that the lady Ellyanour of Comynges, as nowe couëtess of Bouloynne, and nere cosyn to therle of Foiz, and right enherytour to the countie of Comynges, thoughte that the erle of Armynake hadde it in possession, she came to Ortaise to therle of Foiz, and brought with her a yonge daughter of thre yere of age. Therle her cosyn made her good chere, and he demanded her of her busynesse, and wheder she was goynge. Sir, quod she, I am goynge into Arragon to myne vncl and aunte,

<sup>2</sup> The countries north and south of the Loire were called Langue d'oc and Langue d'oïl: the latter was to the north of that river. This distinction ceased in the reign of Francis I.



aunte, the erle of Virgell,<sup>a</sup> and there I purpose to abyde; for I haue great displeasure to abyde with my husbunde, sir Johan of Boloyn, for I thought he wolde haue recouered myne enherytaunce of Comynges from the erle of Armynake, who kepeth it fro me, and he hath my suster in prisone, and he wyll do nothyng in the mater; he is so softe a knight, that he wyll do nothyng, but take his ease and eate and drinke, and to spende that he hath, folysshelye; and I thynke, whan he is erle he wyll take his pleasure more; therefore I wyll no lengar abyde with hym, and I haue brought with me my daughter, whom I wyll delyuer into your handes, prayenge you to kepe and to norrishe her vp, for I trust, by reason of her lynage, ye wyll nat fayle thus to do, for I haue hoope in you, that ye wyll kepe her. I had moche payne to gette her awaye out of the cuntrye, and out of the handes of my husbunde her father; but bycause I take thē of Armynake myne aduersaries and yours, who wolde gladly steale my daughter awaye, bycause she is enherytour of Comynges, therefore I haue brought her vnto you; wherfore, sir, I requyre you fayle me nat at this busynesse; and I am sure her father my husbunde, whan he knoweth y I haue lefte her with you, he wyll be right ioyfull, for he hath sayd often tymes to me, that this his daughter shulde put hym to great doute. And whan the erle had well herde the wordes of the lady Elyanour his cosyn, he was right ioyfull, and ymaged in himselfe howe that childe after shulde do hym some pleasure, as by the meanes of her mother, to haue a ferme peace w his enemies, or els to marry her in so highe a place, that his ennemyes shulde doute hym therby. Than he answered the lady and said, Madame and cosyn, all that ye desyre I shall do it with right a good wyll, for I am bounde therto by lynage; and as for your daughter, my cosyn, I shall kepe her as well as though she were myne owne proper chyld. Sir, quod she, I thanke you. Thus the yong daughter of Bouloyne abode with the erle of Foiz at Ortaise, and she neuer departed thens sithe, and the lady her mother went to Arragon; she hath been sithe ones or twyse to se her daughter, but she neuer desyred to haue her agayne, for therle kepte her as well as if she were his owne chyld: and to the purpose as to the meane of the peace that I shewed you, the erle ymaged to gette by her the loue agayne of the duke of Berry; and as nowe at this present tyme the duke of Berry hath gret desyre to be marryed, and I thynke by that I herde at Auygnon by the pope, who is cosyn germayne to the ladyes father, he shewed me howe the duke of Berrey desyreth to haue her in maryage. Ah, saynt Mary, sir, quod I, howe your wordes be to me right agreable, for it hath done me great pleasure, all that euer ye haue shewed me, whiche shall nat be loste, for it shall be putte in remembreance and cronyeled, if god wyll sende me the grace to retourne to the towne of Valencēnes, where as I was borne: but, sir, I am sore displeased of one thyng. What is that? quod he. I shall shewe you: by my faythe, that so hyghe and valyant a prince as the Erle of Foiz is, shulde be without lauffull issue. Sir, quod the knight, if he had one, as ones he had, he shulde be the most ioyouse prince of the worlde, and so wolde be all the couētre. Why, sir, than quod I, is his lande than withoute an heyre? Nay, sir, quod he, the Vycount of the castell Bone,<sup>b</sup> his cosyn germayne, is his heyre. Is he a valyant man in armes? quod I. Nay, be my faythe, sir, quod he; and therefore the erle loueth hym nat, and thynketh to make his two bastardes sōnes, who be right valyant, his heyres, and thynketh to marry them in an highe lynage, for he hath golde and syluer ynough, wherby he thynketh to gette theym wyues, suche as shall ayde and conforte them. Sir, quod I, it maye well be; howebeit, the thyng is nat reasonable, that bastardes shulde be made herytours of landes. Wherfore nat, sir, quod he, if there lacke good heyres? Se you nat howe the spaynierdes haue crowned Henry a bastarde to be kyng, and also they of Portyn-gale crowned a bastarde to their kyng? It hath been sene in the worlde in dyuers realmes, that bastardes by force hath reigned. Was nat Wylliam Conquerour

bastarde

<sup>a</sup> D'Urgueil.

<sup>b</sup> Chateau-bon.

bastarde sonne to a duke of Normandy, who conquered all Englande, and was kyng there, so that all the kynges syth are discended fro hym? Sir, quod I, all this might well be; ther is nothyng but that may fall; but they of Armynake are right stronge, and so therby this cuntrye shal be euer in warre and stryfe: but, sir, I pray you shewe me the iust cause why the warre first moued bytwene them of Foiz and Armynake. I wyll shewe you, quod the knight: I ensure you it is a marueylous warre, for as they saye, eche of the haue cause. Sir, aunciently, about a hūdred yere past, there was a lorde in Bierne called Gascone,<sup>a</sup> a ryght valyant man in armes, and is buried in the freres right solempnely at Ortaise, and there ye may se what persone he was of stature and of body; for in his lyfe tyme his pycure was made in latyn,<sup>b</sup> the whiche is yet there. This Gascone<sup>c</sup> lorde of Bierne had two doughters; the eldest was maryed to the erle of Armynake that was thañe, and the yongest to the erle of Foiz, who as than was nephue to the kyng of Aragon, and as yet therle of Foiz beareth his armes, for he discended out of Aragon; his armes are palle golde and goules: and so it fortunod, that this lorde of Biern had a gret warre agaynst the kyng of Spayne that was than, who came through all Bisquay w a gret nombre of men of warre to entre into Bierne. The lorde Gascone<sup>d</sup> of Bierne, when he was enformed of his comyng, he assembled people on all sydes, where he might get men of warre, and wrote letters to his two sonnes in lawe, therle of Armynake and therle of Foiz, y they shulde come to serue and ayde hym to defende his herytage. These letters sene, the erle of Foiz, as sone as he myght, assēbled his people, and prayed all his frendes so moche, that he had a fyue hūdred knyghtes and squiers armed, and two thousande varlettes with speares, dartes, and pauesses, all afote; and so he came into the cuntrye of Bierne to serue his father, who had of hym gret ioye: and so all they passed the bridge at Ortaise ouer the ryuer, and lodged bytwene Sanetere<sup>e</sup> and thospytall. And the kyng of Spayne, who had xx. M. men, was lodged nat far thens; and ther the lorde Gascon<sup>f</sup> of Bierne, and therle of foiz, taryed for therle of Armynac, and thought euer y he wolde cōe, and so taryed for hi thre dayes; and on the iiii. day therle of Armynac sent his letters by an haraulde to the lorde Gascoine<sup>g</sup> of Bierne, and sente hym worde howe he myght nat come, nor howe he hadde nothyng to do to beare armes for the cuntrye of Bierne. When the lorde Gascoyne<sup>h</sup> herde those tidynges of excusacions, and sawe howe he shulde haue none ayde nor confort of the Erle of Armynake, he was sore abashed, and demaunded counsayle of the erle of Foiz, and of the other barones of Bierne, howe they shulde maynteyne the selfe. Sir, quod the erle of Foiz, sithe we be here assembled, let vs go and fight with our enemyes. This counsayle was taken: than they ordayned their people, they were a twelle hūdred men of armes and sixe thousande men afote. The erle of Foiz toke the first batayle, and so came on the kyng of Spaygne and sette on his lodgynges: and ther was a great batayle, and a fierse, and slayne mo than ten thousande spayniardes; and there therle of Foiz toke prisoners the kyng of Spayngnes sonne and his brother, and sent them to his father in lawe, the lorde Gascoyne<sup>i</sup> of Bierne, who was in the arerregarde; and there the spaynyerdes were so disconfyted, that the erle of Foiz chased them to the porte saynt Adrian<sup>j</sup> in Bisquay; and the kyng of Spayne toke the abbey, and dyde on the vesture of a monke, or els he had ben taken. Than the erle of Foiz returned to the lorde Gascone<sup>k</sup> of Bierne, who made hym good chere, as it was reason. for he had saued his honour and kepte his cuntrye of Bierne, the whiche els was lykely to haue ben loste, bycause of this batayle and disconfytur that the erle of Foiz made on the spaynierdes, and for the takyng of the kynges sonne and brother; and the lorde of Bierne hadde peace with the spaynierdes at his owne wyll. And when the lorde Gascoyne<sup>l</sup> was returned to Ortaise, there before all the barons of Foiz and Bierne that were there present, he sayd to his sonne of Foiz: Fayre sonne, ye are my true and faith-  
full

<sup>a</sup> Gaston.<sup>b</sup> Metal.<sup>c</sup> Sauveterre.<sup>d</sup> The gates of St. Andero.

full sonne; ye haue saued myne honour and my cōuntry. The erle of Armynake, who hath maryed myne eldest daughter, hath excused hymselfe from this busynesse, and wolde nat come to defēde myne herytage wherin he shulde haue part; wherfore I saye, that suche parte as he shulde haue by reason of my daughter, he hath forfait and lost it, and here clerely I enheryte you, my sonne of Foiz, after my dyscease, of all the hoolle lande, and to your heyres for euer; and I desyre, wyll, and commaunde all my subiectes, to seale, accorde, and agre to the same; and all answered, howe they were well contente so to do. Thus, by this meanes as I haue shewed you, aunciently the erles of Foiz were lordes of the countre of Bierne, and bare the crye, armes, and name, and had the profyte therof; howebeit, for all this they of Arminake had nat their clayme quyte: this is the cause of the warre bytwene Foiz and Armynake. By my faythe, sir, than quod I, ye haue well declared the mater; I neuer herde it before, and nowe y I knowe it, I shall putte it in perpetuall memorie, if god gyue me grace to retourne into my cōuntry; but, sir, if I durste, I wolde fayne demaunde of you one thyng; by what insyden the erle of Foiz sonne dyed? thañe the knyght studied a lytell and sayd, Sir, the maner of his dethe is right pytuous, I wyll nat speke therof; whan ye come to Ortaise, ye shall fynde thē that wyll shewe you if ye demaunde it. And than I helde my peace, and we rode tyll we came to Morlens.

*Of the great vertuoussnesse and largesse that was in therle of Foiz, and the maner of the pytuouse dethe of Gascone,<sup>a</sup> the erles sonne.*

## CAP. XXVI.

THE next day we departed and roode to dyner to Moûtgarbell, and so to Ercye, and there we dranke, and by sonne setting we came to Ortaise; the knight alighted at his owne lodgyng, and I alyghted at the Mone, wher dwelte a squier of the erles Ernallon de Pyne, who well receyued me, bycause I was of Fraunce: Sir Spayne of Leon wente to the castell to therle, and founde hym in his galarye, for he had but dyned a lytell before, for the erles vsage was alwayes, that it was hygh noon or he arose out of his bedde, and supped cuer at mydnight; the knight shewed hym howe I was come thider, and incontynent I was sente for to my lodgyng, for he was the lorde of all the worlde y moost desyred to speke with straūgers, to here tidynges. Whan the erle sawe me, he made me good chere, and reteyned me as of his house, wher I was more than xii. wekes, and my horse well entreated; the acquayntaunce of hym and of me was, bycause I had brought with me a boke, whiche I made at the contēplacion of Vmslance of Boesme,<sup>b</sup> duke of Luzenbounge and of Brabant, whiche boke was called the Melyader, conteyninge all the songes, baladdes, rundeaux, and vyrelays, whiche the gentyll duke had made in his tyme, whiche by imaginacyon I had gadered toguyder, whiche boke the erle of Foiz was gladd to se; and euery night after supper I reed theron to hym, and while I reed there was none durst speke any worde, bycause he wolde I shulde be well vnderstande, wherin he tooke great solace; and when it came to any mater of questyon, than he wolde speke to me, nat in Gascoyne, but in good and fayre frenche; and of his estate and house I shall somewhat recorde, for I taryed there so long, that I might well parceyue and knowe moche. This erle Gascone<sup>a</sup> of Foiz, with whom I was, at y tyme he was of a fyftie yere of age and nyne: and I say I haue in my tyme sene many knyghtes, kynges, princes, and other, but I neuer sawe none lyke hym of personage, nor of so fayre forme, nor so well made; his vysage fayre, sangyue, and  
smylyng,

<sup>a</sup> Gaston.<sup>b</sup> Wincellaus of Bohemia.

smylyng, his eyen gray and amorous, wher as he lyst to set his regarde: in euery thyng he was so parfite that he can nat be praised to moche; he loued that ought to be beloued, and hated that ought to be hated; he was a wyse knyght, of highe enterprise, and of good counsayle; he neuer had myscreant with hym; he sayd many orisons euery daye: a nocturne of the psalter, matyns of our lady, of the holy goost, and of the crosse, and dirige euery day; he gaue fyue florens in small money at his gate to poore folkes, for the loue of god; he was large and courtesse in gyftes; he coulde ryght well take where it partheyned to hym, and to deluyter agayne wher as he ought; he loued hoūdes of all beestes wynter and somer; he loued huntynge; he neuer loued folly, outrage, nor foly larges; euery moneth he wolde knowe what he spended; he tooke in his countre to receyue his renewes, and to serue him, notable persons, that is to saye, xii. receyuours, and euer fro ii. monethes to two monethes, two of them shulde serue for his receyte: for at the two monethes ende he wolde change and put other two into that offyce, and one that he trusted best shulde be his comptroller, and to hym all other shulde accompt, and the comptroller shulde accōpt to hym by rolles and bokes written, and thaccōptes to remayne styll with therle: he had certeyne cofers in his chambre, out of the whiche ofte tymes he wolde take money to gyue to lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, suchie as came to hym, for none shulde departe fro him without some gift, and yet dayly multiplied his treasure, to resyst the aduētures and fortunes that he douted; he was of good and easy acquayntance with euery man, and amorously wolde speke to thē; he was shorte in counsayle and answers; he had four secretaries, and at his risynge they must euer be redy at his hande without any callynge; and whan any letter were deluyered him, and that he had reed it, than he wolde calle them to write agayne, or els for some other thyng. In this estate therle of Foiz lyued. And at mydnight, whan he came out of his chambre into the hall to supper, he had euer before hym xii. torches brennyng, borne by xii. varlettes standyng before his table all supper; they gaue a gret light, and the hall euer full of knyghtes and squyers, and many other tables dressed to suppe who wolde; ther was none shulde speke to hym at his table, but if he were called; his meate was lightlye wyldre foule, the legges and wynges alonely, and in the day he dyd but lytell eate and drike: he had great pleasure in armony of instrumētes; he coude do it right well hymselfe; he wolde haue songes song before him; he wolde gladly se conseytes and fantasies at his table, and whan he had sene it, than he wolde sende it to ŷ other tables: breuely, all this I consydred and aduised. And or I came to his court I had ben in many courtes of kynges, dukes, princes, erles, and great ladyes, but I was neuer in none ŷ so well liked me, nor ther was none more reioysed dedes of armes, than the erle dyde: there was sene in his hall, chābre, and court, knyghtes and squyers of honour goyng vp and downe, and talkyng of armes and of amours; all honour ther was founde, all maner of tidynges of euery realme and countre ther might be herde, for out of euery cōtre there was resort, for the valyantesse of this erle. Ther I was enfourmed of the moost parte of the dedes of armes ŷ was done in Spayne, in Portyngale, in Aragon, in Nauar, in Englande, and in Scotlande, and in the fronters and lymitacions of Lāguedocke, for I sawe come thyder to therle while I was there, knyghtes and squyers of all nacyns, and so I was enformed by them, and by the erle himselfe, of all thynges that I demaūded; ther I enquired howe Gascon<sup>3</sup> therles son died, for sir Espayn of Leon wolde nat shewe me any thing therof; and so moch I enquired, ŷ an aūcient squyer and a notable mā shewed ŷ mater to me, and began thus: True it is, quod he, that the erle of Foiz, and my lady of Foiz his wife, agreeth nat well togyder, nor haue nat done of a long season, and the discorde bytwene thē first moued by the kyng of Nauar, who was brother to the lady: for the kyng of Nauar pledged himselfe for the lorde Dalbret, whom

\* Gaston.

whom the erle of Foiz had in prisone, for the sōme of fyftie thousande frankes; and the erle of Foiz, who knewe that the kyng of Nauarr was craftie and malycious, in the beginning wolde nat trust hym, wherw̄ the countesse of Foiz had great displeasur and indignacyon agaynst the erle her husbānde, and sayd to hym, Sir, ye repute but small honour in the kyng of Nauar, my brother, whā ye wyll nat trust hym for fyftie M. frankes: though ye haue no more of the armynakes, nor of the labrisyence,<sup>a</sup> than ye haue, it ought to suffice; and also, sir, ye knowe well ye shulde assigne out my dower, whiche mōuteth to fyftie thousande frākes, whiche ye shulde put into the hādes of my brother, the kyng of Nauarr; wherfore, sir, ye can nat be yuell payed. Dame, quod he, ye saye trouthe, but if I thought that the kyng of Nauarr wolde stoppe the payment for that cause, the lorde Dalbret shulde neuer haue gone oute of Ortayse, and so I shulde haue ben payed to the last penny; and sithe ye desyre it, I wyll do it, nat for the loue of you, but for the loue of my sonne. So by these wordes, and by the kyng of Nauars oblygacion, who became dettoure to the erle of Foiz, the lorde Dalbret was delyuered quyte, and became frenche, and was maryed, in Fraūce, to the suster of the duke of Burbone, and payed at his ease to the kyng of Nauar, the sōme of fyftie thousande frankes for his raunsome, for the whiche sōme the kyng was boūde to therle of Foiz, but he wolde nat sende it to the erle. Than the erle of Foiz sayd to his wyfe, Dame, ye must go into Nauarre to the kyng your brother, and shewe hym howe I am nat well content with hym, that he wyll nat sende me that he hath receyued of myne; the lady answered, howe she was redy to go at his cōmaūdemēt: and so she departed and rode to Panyplone,<sup>b</sup> to the kyng her brother, who receyued her with moche ioye: the lady dyd her message fro poynt to poynt. Than the kyng answered, fayre suster, the sōme of money is yours, therle shulde gyue it for your dowre; it shall neuer go out of the realme of Nauarr, sithe I haue it in possessyon. Ah, sir, quod f̄ lady, by this ye shall sette great hate bytwene therle my husbānde and you, and if ye holde your purpose, I dare nat retourne agayne into the countie of Foiz, for my husbānde wyll slee me; he wyll saye I haue disceyued him. I can nat tell, quod the kyng, what ye wyll do; outhere tarye or departe; but as for the money, I wyll nat departe fro it, it parteyneth to me to kepe it for you, but it shal neuer go out of Nauer. The countesse coude haue none other answer of the kyng her brother, and so she taryed styll in Nauar, and durst nat retourne agayne. The erle of Foiz, when he sawe the dealyng of the kyng of Nauar, he began to hate his wyfe, and was yuell content with her; howebeit, she was in no faute, but that she returned nat agayne when she hadde done her message; but she durst nat, for she knewe well therle her husbāde was cruell where he toke displeasure: thus the mater standeth. The erles sonne, called Gascone,<sup>c</sup> grewe and waxed goodly, and was maryed to the daughter of therle of Armynake, a fayre lady, suster to therle that nowe is, the lorde Bertrande of Armynake; and by the coniūctyon of that maryage, ther shulde haue ben peace bytwene Foiz and Armynake: the chylde was a fyftene or sixtene yere of age, and resembled right well to his father. On a tyme he desyred to go into Nauar to se his mother, and his vnclē the kyng of Nauarr, whiche was in an yuell hour for hym, and for all this countre: when he was come into Nauarre, he had there good chere, and taryed with his mother a certayne space and than toke his leaue, but for all that he coude do, he coude nat gette his mother out of Nauer, to haue gone with hym into Foiz, for she demaunded if the erle had cōmaūded hym so to do or no; and he answered, that when he departed, therle spake nothyng therof; therefore the lady durst nat go thider, but so taryed styll: than the chylde wente to Panyplone,<sup>b</sup> to take his leaue of the kyng his vnclē; the kyng made hym great chere, and taryed hym there a ten dayes, and gaue

VOL. II.

L

to

<sup>a</sup> The house of Dalbret.<sup>b</sup> Pampeluna.<sup>c</sup> Gaston.

to him great giftes, and to his men: also the last gyfte that the kyng gaue hym was his dethe; I shall shewe you howe.

When this gētylman shulde departe, the kyng drewe hym aparte into his chambre, and gaue hym a lytell purse full of poudre, which poudre was suche, that if any creature lyueng dyd ete therof, he shulde incōtynent dye without remedye; than the kyng sayd, Gascone,<sup>a</sup> layre nephue, ye shall do as I shall shewe to you; ye se howe the erle of Foiz, your father, wrongfully hath your mother, my suster, in gret hate, wherof I am sore displeased, and so ought ye to be; howebeit, to performe all the mater, and that your father shulde loue agayne your mother, to that entent ye shall take a lytell of this powder, and put it on some meate that your father maye eat it, but beware that no man se you: and as soone as he hath eaten it, he shall entende to nothyng but to haue agayne his wyfe, and so to loue her euer after, whiche ye ought greatly to desyre; and of this that I shewe you let no man knowe, but kepe it secrete, or els ye lese all the dede. The chyld, who thought all that the kyng sayd to hym had ben true, sayde, Sir, it shal be done as ye haue deuysed; and so departed fro Pampylone,<sup>b</sup> and returned to Ortayse; the erle his father made hym good chere, and demanded tidynges of the kyng of Nauar, and what gyftes he had gyuen him; and the chyld shewed hym howe he had gyuen hym dyuers, and shewed hym all excepte the purse with the powder. Ofte tymes this yong Gascone,<sup>a</sup> and yuan his bastarde brother, laye togyuder, for they loued togyuder lyke bretherne, and were lyke arrayed and apparelled, for they were nere of a greatnesse and of one age; and it happened on a tyme as their clothes laye togyuder on their beddes, yuan sawe a purse at Gascons<sup>a</sup> cote, and sayd, what thyng is this that ye beare euer about you? wherof Gascoyne had no ioye, and sayd, yuan, gyue me my cote, ye haue nothyng to do therwith; and all that day after Gascone<sup>a</sup> was pensyue. And it fortunyd a thre dayes after, as god wolde that the erle shulde be saued; Gascone<sup>a</sup> and his brother yuan fell out togyuder, playeng at tennes, and Gascone<sup>a</sup> gaue hym a blowe, and the chyld wente into his fathers chambre and wepte, and the erle as than hadde herde masse; and whan the erle sawe him wepe, he said, Sonne yuan, what aylest thou? Sir, quod he, Gascone<sup>a</sup> hath beaten me, but he were more worthy to be beaten than I. Why so, quod therle? and incontynent suspected some thyng. By my faithe sir, quod he, sithe he returned out of Nauar, he beareth priuely at his brest a purse full of pouder, I wote nat what it is, nor what he wyll do therwith, but he hath sayde to me ones or twyse, that my lady his mother shulde shortly be agayne in your grace, and better beloued than euer she was. Peace, quod the erle, and speke no more, and shewe this to no man lyuenge. Sir, quod he, no more I shall. Than the erle entred into ymaginacyon, and so came to the houre of his dyner, and wasshed and sat downe at his table in the hall. Gascone,<sup>a</sup> his son, was vsed to sette downe all his seruyce, and to gyue the sayes;<sup>c</sup> and whan he had sette downe the first course, the erle cast his eyen on hym, and sawe the strynges of the purse hangyng at his bosome; than his blode chaūged, and said, Gascone,<sup>a</sup> cōe hyder, I wyll speke with the in thyne eare; the chyld came to him, and the erle toke hym by the bosome and founde out the purse, and with his knyfe cut it fro his bosome; the chyld was abashed and stode styll and spake no worde, and loked as pale as ashes for feare, and began to trymble; the erle of Foiz opnyed the purse and toke of the powder, and layde it on a trenchour of bredde, and called to him a dogge and gaue it hym to eate; and assoone as the dogge had eaten the first morsell, he tourned his eyen in his heed and dyed incontynent; and whāne the

erle

<sup>a</sup> Gaston.

<sup>b</sup> Pampeluna.

<sup>c</sup> In the original French, "et faisoit essay de toutes ses viandes," *i. e.* and tasted first all the dishes.

erle sawe that he was sore displeasid, and also he had good cause, and so rose fro the table, and toke his knife and wolde haue stryken his son: than the knightes and squyers ran bytwene them and said, Sir, for goddes sake haue mercy, and be nat so hastye: be well enformed first of the mater, or ye do any yuell to your chyldre: and the first worde that therle said was, A, gascone,<sup>a</sup> treatour, for to encrease thyne herytage y shulde come to the, I haue had warre and hatered of the Frenche kyng, of the kyng of Englade, of the kyng of Spayne, of the kyng of Nauar, and of the kyng of Arragon, and as yet I haue borne all their malesses, and nowe thou woldest murther me; it moueth of an yuell nature; but first thou shalt dye with this stroke; and so stept forthe with his knife, and wolde haue slayne him: but than all the knightes and squyers kneled downe before hym wepyng, and sayd, Ah, sir, haue mercy for goddes sake, slee nat Gascone<sup>a</sup> your sonne, remembre ye haue no more chyldren; Sir, cause hym to be kepte, and take good enformacion of the mater: paradventure he knewe nat what he bare, and paradventure is nothyng gyltie of the dede. Well, quod the erle, incontynent put hym in prisone, and let hym be so kepte that I may haue a reconyng of hym. Than the chyldre was put into the towre; and the erle toke a great many of them that serued his sonne, and some of them departed: and as yet the bysshoppe of Lascalle<sup>b</sup> is at Pan,<sup>c</sup> out of the countre, for he was had in suspect, and so were dyuers other. Therle caused to be put to dethe a fyftene right horribly, and the cause that the erle layde to them was, he sayde: It coulde be none otherwyse, but that they knewe of y chyldes secretes, wherfore they ought to haue shewed it to hym, and to haue said, Sir, Gascone<sup>a</sup> your sonne beareth a purse at his bosome; bycause they dyde nat thus, they dyed horribly, wherof it was great pytie, for some of thē were as fresshe and as ioly squyers, as were any in all the coultre, for euer the erle was serued with good men. This thyng touched the erle nere to the herte, and that he well shewed: for on a day he assembled at Ortaise all the nobles and prelates of Foiz, and of Bierne, and all the notable persons of his countrey; and whan they were all assembled, he shewed theym wherfore he sente for thē, as howe he had foude his sonne in this defaute, for the whiche he sayd, his entent was to putte hym to dethe, as he had well deserued. Than all y people answered to that case with one voyce, and sayde, Sir, sauynge your grace, we wyll nat that Gascoyne<sup>a</sup> shulde dye, he is your heyre, and ye haue no mo: and whan the erle herde the people howe they desyred for his sonne, he sōwhat refrayned his yre; than he thought to chastyce hym in prisone a moneth or two, and than to sende hym on some voyage for two or thre yere, tyll he might somewhat forget his yuell wyll, and that the chyldre might be of greater age and of more knowledge. Than he gaue leane to all the people to depart; but they of Foiz wolde nat departe fro Ortaise, tyll the erle shulde assure them that Gascoyn<sup>a</sup> shulde nat dye, they loued the chyldre so well: than the erle promysed them, but he sayd, he wolde kepe hym in prisone a certayne space to chastyce hym: and so vpon this promyse euery man departed, and Gascone<sup>a</sup> abode styll in prisone. These tidynges spredde abrode into dyuers places; and at that tyme pope Gregorie the xi. was at Auygnon. Than he sente the cardynall of Amyens in legacion into Byerne, to haue come to therle of Foiz for that businesse, and by that tyme he came to Besiers, he herde suche tidynges, that he neded nat to go any further for that mater, for there he herde howe Gascon,<sup>a</sup> sonne to the erle of Foyz, was deed. Sythe I haue shewed you so moche, nowe shall I shewe you howe he dyed.

The erle of Foyz caused his sonne to be kepte in a darke chambre, in the towre of Ortaise, a tenne dayes; lytell dyde he eate or drinke, yet he had ynoughe brought hym every daye, but whan he sawe it he wolde go therfro, and sette lytell therby; and some

L 2

sayd,

<sup>a</sup> Gaston.

<sup>b</sup> Johnes calls it Lescar.

<sup>c</sup> Pau.

sayd, that all the meate that had been brought hym, stode hole and entier the day of his dethe, wherfore it was great marueyle that he lyued so longe, for dyuers reasons. The erle caused hym to be kepte in the chambre alone withoute any company, outhur to couysayle or conforte hym; and all that season the chylde laye in his clothes as he came in, and he argued in himselfe, and was full of malencoly, and cursed the tyme that euer he was borne and engendred, to come to suche an ende. The same day that he dyed, they that serued hym of meate and drinke, whan they came to hym, they sayde, Gascone,<sup>2</sup> here is meate for you; he made no care therof, and sayde, sette it downe there: he that serued hym, regarded and sawe in the prison all the meate stande hole as it had been brought hym before, and so departed and closed the chambre dore, and went to the erle, and sayd, Sir, for goddes sake haue mercy on your sonne Gascone,<sup>2</sup> for he is nere famysshed in prisone; there he lyeth, I thinke he neuer dyde eate any thyng sythe he came into prisone, for I haue sene there this daye all that euer I brought hym before, lyeng toguyder in a corner: of those wordes the Erle was sore dyspleased, and withoute any worde spekyng, went out of his chambre, and came to the prisone where his sonne was: and in an yuell houre, he had the same tyme a lytell knyfe in his hande to pare withall his nayles; he opnyed the prisone dore, and came to his sonne, and had the lytell knyfe in his hande, nat an ynche out of his hande, and in great dyspleasure he thruste his hande to his sonnes throte, and the poynt of the knife a lytell entred into his throte into a certayne vayne, and sayd, Ah, treatour, why doest nat thou eate thy meate? and therwith the Erle departed without any more doynge or sayeng, and went into his owne chambre. The chylde was abasshed, and afrayed of the comynge of his father, and also was feble of fastynge, and the poynt of the knyfe a lytell entred into a vayne of his throte, and so fell downe sodaynly and dyed. The erle was scante in his chambre, but the kepar of the chylde came to hym, and sayd, Sir, Gascone,<sup>2</sup> your sonne is deed: deed? quod the Erle: yea, truely sir, quod he. The erle wolde nat beleue it, but sente thyder a squyer that was by him, and he went, and came agayne, and sayd, Sir, surely he is deed. Than the Erle was sore displeased, and made great complaynt for his sonne, and sayd, A, Gascone,<sup>2</sup> what a poore aduenture is this for the and for me; in an yuell hour thou wentest to Nauar to se thy mother; I shall neuer haue  $\hat{y}$  ioye that I had before. Than therle caused his barbour to shaue hym, and clothed himselfe in blacke, and all his house, and with moche sore wepyng, the childe was borne to the Freres, in Ortaise, and there buryed. Thus as I haue shewed you, the erle of Foyz slewe Gascoyne<sup>2</sup> his sonne, but the kynge of Nauar gau the occasyon of his dethe.

*Howe sir Peter of Byerne had a strange dysease; and of the countesse of Bisquay, his wyfe.*

#### C A P. XXVII.

WHAN I had herde this tale of the dethe of Gascone,<sup>a</sup> sonne to the erle of Foyz, I hadde great pytie therof, for the loue of therle his father, whome I founde a lorde of hyghe recomendacyon, noble, lyberall, and curtesse, and also for loue of the countrey, that shulde be in great stryfe for lacke of an heyre: than I thanked the squyer, and so departed fro hym; but after I sawe him dyuers tymes in the erles house, and talked  
often

<sup>a</sup> Gaston.



often tymes with hym. And on a tyme I demaūded of hym of sir Peter of Byerne, bastarde brother to therle of Foyz, (bycause he semed to me a knyght of great valure,) wheder he were riche, and maryed or no: the squyer aunswered, and sayd, truely he is maryed, but his wyfe and chyldren be nat in his company; and why, sir? quod I: I shall shewe you, quod the squier.

This sir Peter of Bierne hath an vsage, that in the night tyme whyle he slepeth, he wyll ryse and arme hymselfe, and drawe out his swerde, and fyght all aboute the house, and can nat tell with whome, and than gothe to bedde agayne; and whan he is wakyng, his seruantes do shewe hym howe he dyde; and he wolde saye, he knewe nothyng therof, and howe they lyed: sōtyme his seruantes wolde leaue non armure nor swerde in his chābre, and whan he wold thus ryse and fynde non armour, he wolde make suche a noyse and rumoure, as though all the deuylls of helle had ben in his chambre. Than I demaunded yf he had great landes by his wyfe? yes, truely sir, quod he, but the lady by whom cometh the lande, ioyeth of the profytes therof; this sir Peter of Bierne hath but the fourthe parte. Sir, quod I, where is his wyfe? sir, quod he, she is in Castell,<sup>a</sup> with the kyng her cosyn; her father was erle of Bisquay, and was cosyn germayne to kyng Dampeter,<sup>b</sup> who slewe him, and also he wold haue had the lady to haue put her in prisone, and he toke the possession of all the lande, and as long as he lyued the lady had nothyng there; and it was sayd to this lady, who was countesse of Bisquay, after the dyssease of her father, Madame, saue yourselfe, for kyng Dampeter,<sup>b</sup> if he may gette you, wyll cause you to dye, or els put you in prisone, he is so sore displeased with you, bycause he sayth ye shulde report and beare wytnesse, yf he caused the quene his wyfe to dye in her bedde, who was suster to the duke of Burbone, and suster to the frenche quene; and your wordes, (he sayth,) are beleued, rather thañe another, bycause ye were preuy of her chambre; and for this cause, the lady Florens, countesse of Bisquay, departed out of her cōtre with a smalle company, as the cōmon vsage is, to flye fro dethe as nere as men can: so she went into the cōuntry of Bascles,<sup>c</sup> and passed through it, and so came hyder to Ortayse to the Erle, and shewed hym all her aduerture. The erle, who had euer pyte of ladyes and damoselles, reteyned her, and so she abode with the lady of Carase, a great lady in his cōtre. As than this sir Peter of Byerne his brother, was but a yonge knyght, and had nat thanne this vsage to ryse a nyghtes, as he dothe nowe; the erle loued hym well, and maryed hym to this lady, and recouered her landes: and so this sir Peter had by this lady a soune and a daughter, but they be with their mother in Castell,<sup>a</sup> who be as yet but yong, therefore the lady wolde nat leaue them with their father. Ah, saynt Mary, quod I, howe dyde sir Peter of Bierne take this fantasy, First, that he dare nat slepe alone in his chambre, and that whan he is aslepe, ryseth thus and maketh all that besynesse? they are thynges to be marueyled at. By my faithe, quod the squyer, he hath ben often demaunded therof, but he saythe he can nat tell wherof it cometh: the first tyme that euer he dyde so, was the night after that he had ben on a day a huntynge in the wodes of Bisquay, and chased a marueylous great Beare, and yf beare had slayne four of his houndes, and hurt dyers, so that none durst come nere him; than this sir Peter toke a swerde of Burdeaux, and came in great yre, for bycause of his houndes, and assayled the beare, and fought longe with hym, and was in great parell, and tooke great payne or he coulde ouercome hym; finally, he slewe the beare, and than returned to his lodgyng, to the castell of Lāguedon,<sup>d</sup> in Bisquay, and made the beare to be brought with him: euery man had marueyle of the greatnesse of the beast, and of the hardnesse of yf knyght, howe he durst assayle the beare. And whañe the countesse of Bisquay, his wyfe, sawe yf beare, she fell in a sowne, and had great dolour, and so she was borne into her chambre; and so all that day,

<sup>a</sup> Castile.<sup>b</sup> Don Pedro.<sup>c</sup> In Verard's edition, "Basques."<sup>d</sup> Languedudon.

day, the night after, and the nexte day, she was sore discomforted, and wolde nat shewe what she ayled; on the thirde daye she sayd to her husbunde, Sir, I shall nat be hoole tyll I haue been a pylgrimage at saynt James: Sir, I praye you gyue me leaue to go thyder, and to haue with me my sonne, and Adrian my daughter: her husbunde agreed thereto. She toke all her golde, iowels, and treasure with her, for she thought neuer to retourne agayne, wherof her husbunde toke no hede: so the lady dyde her pylgrimage, and made an errande to go and se the kynge of Castell,<sup>†</sup> her cosyn, and the quene. They made her good chere, and ther she is yet, and wyll nat retourne agayne, nor sende her chyldren: and so thus the next night that this sir Peter had thus chased the beare and slayne hym, while he slept in his bedde this fātasy toke hym: and it was said, that the countesse his wyfe knewe well, as sone as she sawe the beare, that it was the same that her father dyde ones chase, and in his chasyng, he herde a voyce and sawe nothyng, that sayd to him, Thou chasest me, and I wolde the no hurte; therefore thou shalt dye an yuell dethe. Of this the lady had remembraunce whan she sawe the beare, by that she had herde her father saye before; and she remembred well howe kynge dan Peter<sup>b</sup> strake of her fathers heed, without any cause, and in lykewise she feared her husbunde; and yet she saythe and maynteyneth, y<sup>†</sup> he shall dye of an yuell dethe, and that he dothe nothyng as yet to that he shall do hierafter.

Nowe, sir, I haue shewed you of sir Peter of Byerne, as ye haue demaūded of me, and this is a true tale, for thus it is, and thus it befell: howe thynke you, quod he, therby? And I, who mused on the great marueyle, sayde, sir, I beleue it well, that it is as ye haue sayde: Sir, we fynde in olde wrytyng, that aūciently suche as were called goddes and goddesses, at their pleasure wolde chaunge and transforme men into beestes and into foules, and in lykewyse women: and it might be so that this bere was before some knight chasyng in the forest of Bisquay, and paraduenteure displeased in y<sup>†</sup> tyme some god or goddes, wherby he was transformed vnto a beare, to do there his penaunce, as aūciently Acteon was chaūged vnto an hart. Acteon, quod the squyer, I pray you shewe me that storie; I wolde fayne here it. Sir, quod I, accordyng to the aūcyent wrytynges, we fynde howe Acteon was a iolye and an expert knight, and loued the sporte of huntyng about all games; and on a day he chased in the wodes, and an Harte arose before hym, marueylous great and fayre; he hunted hym all the daye, and lost all his company, seruauentes, and hoūdes, and he was right desyrous to folowe his pray, and folowed the fewe of the hart tyll he came into a lytell medowe, closed rounde about with wodes and highe trees; and in the medowe there was a fayre fountayne, in the whiche Dyana, goddesse of Chastyte, was bayninge herselfe, and her damoselles about her. The knight cāe sodaynly on them or he was ware, and he was so farre forwarde, that he coulde nat go backe; and the damoselles were abashed to se a strāger, and ran to their lady and shewed her, who was ashamed, because she was naked; and whan she sawe the knyght, she sayde, Acteon, they that sente the lyder loued the but lytell: I wyll nat that whan thou arte gone hens in other places, that thou shuldest reporte that thou haste sene me naked, and my damoselles; and for the outrage that thou hast done, thou mayst haue penaunce; therefore I wyll that thou be transformed in the lykenesse of the same Harte, that thou haste chased all this daye: and in incōtynent Acteon was tourned vnto an Harte, who naturally loueth the water. In lykewise it might be of the beare of Bisquay, and howe that the lady knewe paraduenteure more than she wolde speke of at that tyme; therefore she ought the better to be excused. The squier answered and sayd, Sir, it maye well be. Than we lefte oure talkyng for that tyme.

*Of*

† Castile.

‡ Don Pedro.

*Of the great solempnetie that the erle of Foiz made at the feest of saint Nycholas; and the tale that the Bastot of Maulyon shewed to sir Johan Froyssart.*

## CAP. XXVIII.

AMONGE other solempnities that the erle of Foiz kepte on the hyghe feestes of the yere, he kept euer the fest of saynt Nycholas in great solempnytie, he and all his lande, as great as at the fest of Ester; and this was shewed me by a squier of his house the thirde day that I came hyder, and I sawe it myselfe right well apparent, for I was there on the same day. First, all the clergie of the towne of Ortayse, and all the people, men, women, and chyldren, with processyon came to the castell to fetch the erle, who all afote departed fro his castell, and went with the clergie a processyon to the church of saynt Nycholas, and there the clergie sange a psalme of the psalter, *Benedictus dominus deus meus, qui docet manus meas ad praliū, et digitos meos ad bellum, &c.* and whan this psalme was songe, than they began to syng as they dyde on Christmas day or Eester daye, in the popes chapell or in the Frenche kynges, for he had with hym many syngars; the bysshoppe of Pauyers<sup>a</sup> sange the masse; and there I herde as good playeng at organs as euer I herde in any place: to speke breuely and accordyng to reason, the erle of Foiz than was right parfyte in all thynges, and as sage and as parceyung as any hyghe prince in his dayes; there was none coude cōpare with hym in wytte, honour, nor in larges. At the feestes of Christmas, whiche he kepte euer right solempne, came to his house many knyghtes and squyers of Gascone, and to euery man he made good chere. There I sawe the Burge of Spayne, who layde the woode and the asse on the fyre toguyder, of whom sir Espayne de Lion shewed of his force, and I was gladde to se hym; and therle of Foiz made hym good sēblant: there I sawe also knyghtes of Aragon, and of Englande, of the duke of Lācastres house, who as than laye at Burdeux. The erle made them good chere, and gauē them great gyftes. I aquaynted myselfe with those knyghtes, and by them I was enforced of many thynges that fell in Castell, in Nauar, and in Portyngale, of the whiche I shall speke of, whan tyme requyreth hereafter: and on a day I sawe a squyer of Gascone, called the Bastot of Maulyon, a man of a fyftie yere of age, an expert man of armes and a hardy, be semyng: he alighted at my lodgyng in Ortaise, at the signe of the Moone, at Ernalton de Pyns: he brought with hym his somers and caryages, as though he had ben a great barone, and was serued bothe he and his seruaūtes in syluer vessell: and whan I herde his name, and sawe therle of Foiz and euery mā do hym so moche honour, than I demaūded of sir Espayne de Lion, and sayd, Sir, is nat this the squyer that departed fro the castell of Trygalet, whan the duke of Aniou laye at siege before Maluoysiu? Yes, truly, quod he, it is the same, and he is a good man of armes and a good capitayne: and so than I fell in aquayntaunce with hym, for he was lodged there as I was: and a cosyn of his, called Ernalton, capitayn of Carlate in Anuergne, with whome I was well aquaynted, helped me to be aquainted with him, and in lykewise so dyd the Burge of Compare:<sup>b</sup> and at a tyme, as we were talkyng and deuysyng of armes, sytting by the fyre abyding for mydnight, that therle shulde go to supper, than this squiers cosyn began to reken vp his life, and of the dedes of armes that he had ben at, sayeng howe he had endured as moche losse as profite. Than he demaūded of me, and sayd, sir Joliñ, haue ye in your hystorie any thyng of this maters that I speke of? and I answered and said, I coude nat tell tyll I here thē: shewe forthe your mater, and I wyll gladly here you;

<sup>a</sup> Paumiers.<sup>b</sup> Copare.

you, for paraduēture I haue herde somewhat, but nat all. That is true, quod the squyer; than he began to saye thus: The first tyme that I bare armure was vnder the captall of Beufz,<sup>a</sup> at ŷ batayle of Poyters, and as it was my happe, I had that daye thre prisoners, a knight and two squiers, of whōe I had one with another four C. thousande frākes. The next yere after I was in Pruce,<sup>b</sup> with the erle of Foyz and the Captall his sonne,<sup>c</sup> vnder whom I was; and at our retourne, at Meulx<sup>d</sup> in Brye, we founde the duchesse of Normandy that was than, and the duchesse of Orlvance, and a great nombre of ladyes and damoselles, who were closed in and besieged by them of the Jaquery; and if god had nat helped thē, they had ben enforced and defouled, for they were of great puissance, and in nōbre mo than ten thousande, and the ladyes were alone: and so we, in ŷ ayde of those ladyes, dyd sette on thē, and there were slayne of the Jaquery mo than sixe thousande, and they rebelled neuer sythe. At ŷ tyme it was truse bytwene Fraunce and Englande, but the kyng of Nauar made warre in his own quarell agaynst the frenche kyng and Regent. The erle of Foiz returned into his owne countre, but my maister the captall, and I, and other, abode styll with the kyng of Nauar for his wages: and than we and other that ayded vs made great war in Fraūce, and specially in Picardy, and toke many townes and castelles in the bysshoprike, these of Beauuoise and Amyens; and as than we were lordes of the feldes and ryuers, and conquered great synance. And whan the truse fayled bytwene Englande and Fraunce, than the kyng of Nauarre seased his warre, and toke a peace bytwene the Regent and hym. Than the kyng of Englande, with a great puysance, passed the see, and came and layde siege to the towne of Remus.<sup>e</sup> Than the kyng of Englāde sent for my maister, who was at Cleremont in Beamoyns,<sup>f</sup> and there made warre for the kyng agaynst all the countrey: than we came to the kyng of Englande and to his chyldren. And than, quod the squyer to me, Sir Johan, I thynke ye knowe allredy all that mater, and howe the kyng of Englande wedded his wife, and howe he came before Charters, and howe the peace was made there bytwene these two kynges. That is true, sir, quod I; in wrytyng I haue it, and the contynue of all the treaties. Than the Bastot of Maulyon spake agayne and sayde: whan this peace was thus made bitwene these two kynges, it was ordayned that all mē of warre and companyōs shulde avoyde and leaue their fortresses and castels that they helde: than all maner of men of warre and poore companions drewe togyuder, and the capitayns tooke counsaile what they shulde do; and than they sayde: though these two kynges haue taken peace togyuder, yet we muste lyue. Than they wente into Burgoyne, and there were capitayns of all nacyons, Englysshe, Gascons, Spanyardes, Naueroise, Almayns,<sup>g</sup> Scottes, and of all maner of nacyons, and there I was as a capitayne; and there we foude in Burgoyne and about the ryuer of Loyre of our cōpany a xii. thousande of one and other, and in the same cōpany ther were a thre or four thousande of good and chosen men of warre, and as subtell in all dedes of armes as might be, and apte to aduise a batayle, and to take their aduantage, and as hardy to scale and assayle towne or castell; and that was well sene at ŷ bataile of Brinay, wher as we ouerthru the cōstable of Fraūce and therle of Forestz, and two thousande speares, knightes and squiers. This bataile dyd great profite to the cōpanyons, for before they were but poore, and than they were all riche, by reason of good prisoners, townes, and castels that they wan in the bisshoprike of Lion and on the ryuer of Rone: and whan they had the pont saynt Esprite, they departed their warre, and made warr to the pope and to the cardynalles, who coude nat be quyte of them, nor had nat ben, tyll they founde another remedy. The pope sent into Lōbardy for the Marques of Moutferant, a right valyant knight, who had warre with the lorde of Myllayne. Whā he was come to Auignon, the pope and the cardynals spake to hym in suche wyse, that he entreted with the

<sup>a</sup> Buchl.<sup>b</sup> Prussia.<sup>c</sup> His Cousin.<sup>d</sup> Meaux.<sup>e</sup> Rhicims.<sup>f</sup> Beauvoisin.<sup>g</sup> Germans.

the capitayns, Englysshe, gascons, and almayns,<sup>a</sup> for threscore thousande frākes, that the pope and cardynals shulde pay to certayne of these capitayns and to their cōpanyes, as sir Johan Hastourde,<sup>b</sup> a valyant englysshe knyght, sir Robert Briquet, Carsuell, nandon le bagerant, the bourge Camus, and dyuers other, and so than went into Lōbardy, and gaue vp ȝ pōūt saynt Esprite: and of all their routes, they toke but the vi. parte; but we taried behynde, sir Seguin of Batefoile, sir Johā ioell,<sup>c</sup> sir James Plāchyn, sir Johā Aymery, the burge of Piergourt,<sup>d</sup> Espiot, Loys Rābalt, Lymosyn, Jaques tryturell,<sup>e</sup> I, and dyuers other: and we kepte styll, and lay at saynt Clement, at Barell, at Terrare, at Brinay, at the pont saynt Denys, at thospitall of Ortifart, for we had mo than xl.<sup>f</sup> fortresses and houses, in the countreis of Forestz, Velay, base Burgoyn, and on the ryuer of Loyre; and we rāusomed all the cōtre, they coude nat be quyte of vs, nother for payng well nor otherwise: and in a night we toke the fortresse of Charite, and there we abode a yere and a halfe, and all was ours fro Charite to Puy in Auuergne. Sir Seguin of Batefoile had lefte his garison of anse, and helde Bride,<sup>g</sup> in Auuerne, wherby he had gret profite, what there and in the cōtre, to the value of a C. M. frankes: and on the ryuer of Loyre to Orlians, and the ryuer of Dalyer,<sup>h</sup> was all ours: and the archprest, who was capitayne of Neuars, and was good frenche, coude nat remedy the countre, but in that he knewe many of the cōpanyōs, and so by his desyre sōtyme the lesse hurte was done: and the archprest dyd the same tyme moche good in Neuernoise, for he caused ȝ cite of Neuers to be closed, els it had been ouerron and robbed diuers tymes; for we had in those marches, townes, and castelles, mo than xxvi. There was neyther knight, nor squyer, nor riche man, without he were agreed with vs, that durst loke out of his house: and this warre we made in the tytell of the kyng of Nauar.

*Howe dyuers capitayns, englysshe and other, were discōfited before the towne of Sāxere by the frenchemen.*

## C A P. XXIX.

IN the same season fell the batayle of Cocherell, where the captall of Beufz<sup>i</sup> was capitayne for the kyng of Nauar, and dyuers knyghtes and squyers of our company went to hym. Sir Jaques Planchyn and sir Johan Joel<sup>c</sup> went to serue hym with two hundred speares. The same season I kept a castell, called the Becke Dalyer, nere to Charyte, goyng towarde Barbanoise, and I had vnder me a xl. speares, and I made in the countre mylles<sup>k</sup> greatly to my profyte, about saynt Purcyn and saynt Peter de moustier. And whan I herde howe the captall my mayster was in Constantyne, and assembled men of warre, for the great desyre that I had to se hym, I departed fro my garyson with a xii. speares, and I fell in company with sir Johan Joel<sup>c</sup> and sir Jaques Planchyn, and, without any busynesse or reencounter, we came to the captall. I thynke, sir Johan, ye haue allredy the knowlege what became of that busynesse. That is true, quod I, for there was taken the captall of Beufz,<sup>i</sup> and sir Johan Joel<sup>c</sup> slayne and sir Jaques Planchyn. That is true, quod the Batefoyle<sup>l</sup> of Maulyon; there I was also taken; howbeit, I fortunied metely well: ther was a cosyn of myne, who was called Bernard of Terryde, he dyed after in Portyngale, at the batayle of Juberot;<sup>m</sup> and this Bernarde,

VOL. II.

M

who

<sup>a</sup> Germans.<sup>b</sup> Hawkwood.<sup>c</sup> Jewell.<sup>d</sup> Perigord.<sup>e</sup> Tritto. I.

ix.

<sup>f</sup> Brioude.<sup>g</sup> Allier.<sup>h</sup> Buch.<sup>i</sup> The translator has strangelymisunderstood this passage. It is in the French, "*en la marche de Moulins*;" i.e. "in the country about Moulins."<sup>l</sup> Bastot.<sup>m</sup> Aljubarrota.

who was as than vnder sir Aymenon of Pomyers, he toke me and raūsome me in the felde at a thousande frankes, and gaue me a good saucōducte to retourne to my garyson of Bec Dalyer. Assoone as I came to my castell, I sent a seruauent of myne, with a thousande frankes, to my cosyn to Parys, and had my quyttaunce for the same. The same season, sir Johan Aymery, an Englysshe knight, and the greatest capitayne that we had, rode forthe, costyng the ryuer of Loyre to come to Charite, and he was encoūtered by a bussment of the lorde Rugemōt and the lorde of Wodnay,<sup>a</sup> and by some of the archprestes men: they were farr stronger than he, and so there he was taken and ouerthrowen, and ransomed to a xxx. thousande frankes, which he payed incontynent. Of his takyng and losse he was sore displeased, and sware that he wolde neuer entre into his owne garyson tyll he had won agayne as moche as he had lost. Than he assembled togyder a great nombre of companyons, and came to Charyte on Loyre, and desyred the capitayns ther, as Lamyt<sup>b</sup> and Carsnell, and the burge of Piergourt<sup>c</sup> and me, for I was there as than to sporte me: ther he desyred vs all to ryde forthe with hym: we demaunded of hym wheder he wolde ryde? By my faythe, quod he, we wyll passe ȝ ryuer of Loyre at saint Thybalte, and lette vs scale and assayle the towne and castell of Sāxere; for, quod he, I haue sworne and auowed, that I wyll nat entre into no fortresse that I haue, tyll I haue sene the chyldren of Sanxere; and if we maye gette that garyson, and the erles chyldren within, Johñ, Loys, and Robert, than we shall be well reuenged, and therby we shal be lordes of the countre; and I thynke we shall lightly come to oure entent, for they take no hede of vs, and this lyeng styll here dothe vs no maner of profyte. That is true, sir, quod we; and so all we promysed to ryde with hym, and incontynent we made vs redy: and so it fortunēd ȝ all oure purpose was known in the towne of Sanxere. The same tyme ther was there a capitayn, a valyant squyer of Burgoyne, of the lowe marchesse, called Guyssharte Albygon, who toke great hede to kepe well the towne and castell of Sanxer, and the chyldren within. This sir Guysshart had a mōke to his brother, of the abbey of saynt Thybalt, whiche is nere to Sanxere: this monke was sent to Charyte on the ryuer of Loyre for his brother, to beare a certayn raūsome thider ȝ the townes owed by couynant: so we toke no hede to him, and he knewe all our ententes, howe I can nat tell, and all our names that were capitaynes there, and what nombre we were of, and what houre we shulde departe, and howe we were determyned to passe the ryuer at the porte of saynt Thybalte: and so he returned and went to Sanxere, and shewed his brother all oure myndes. Than therle there and his bretherne prouyded for remedy, and they sente for knyghtes and squyers of Berry and Burbonoyse, and to the capitayns and garysons therabout, so that they were a foure hundred speares of good men of warre, and made a bussment of two hundred speares without the towne of Sanxere, in a wode: and we knewe nothyng of all this, and at the sonne goyng downe, we departed fro Charyte, and rode a good pase tyll we came to Penly,<sup>d</sup> and at the porte there, we hadde redy bootes and barges, to passe vs ouer and oure horses: and so we paste ouer the ryuer of Loyre, as we had ordayned, and we were ouer by mydnight; and bycause ȝ daye came on, we ordayned a hundred speares to abyde there to kepe oure horses and bootes, and the remynaunt of vs passed forthe foreby the frenche bussment. When we were paste a quarter of a myle, than they brake out of their bussment, and rode to them that we had left behynde vs at the ryuer syde: and anone they had disconfyted them and all slayne or taken, and our horses wonne, and the botes arested; and than they mounted on our horses, and came after vs on the spurres, and were as soone in the towne as we: they cryed, our lady of Sāxere; for the erle was there hymselfe with his men, and his bretherne, sir Loyes and sir Robert, had made the bussment. So thus we were inclosed

on

<sup>a</sup> Vendelay.<sup>b</sup> *Ante*, "La Nuyt."<sup>c</sup> Perigord.<sup>d</sup> Peully, or Preully.

on all partes; for they a horsbacke, assoone as they cāe to vs, they alighted afote and assayed vs fierly: and the thyng that moost greued vs was, we coude nat enlarge ourselfe to fight, we were in suche a narowe waye, closed on bothe sides with hay, hedges, and vngardes, and also some of our encynyes, suche as knewe the cōūtre, were rydden about and gette into the vngardes, and dyd hurt vs sore with castyng of stones, and we coude nat go backe, and moche payne to gette to the towne, it stode so hygh on a moūtayne: so we were sore traueyled, and sir Johñ Aymery was hurt, our souerayne capitayn, by the hādes of sir Guysshart Albygon, who toke hym prisoner, and had moche ado to saue his lyfe; he put hym into a house in ȝ towne, and made hym to be layde on a bedde, and sayd to the owner of the house, kepe well this prisoner, and se his woundes staunched, for if he lyue, he shall paye me xx. thousande frankes: and so sir Guysshart lefte his prisoner, and retourned to the batayle, and quytte hymselfe lyke a good man of armes. And there was w̄ the chyldren of Saxere. come thider to their ayde and to the countreis. sir Guysshart dalphyn, the lorde Marney, sir Gerarde and sir Wylliam Barbone, the lorde of Cousant, the lorde de la Pier, the lorde de la Palys, the lorde of Neutry,<sup>a</sup> the lorde de la coise,<sup>b</sup> and the lorde of Syette,<sup>c</sup> and dyuers other. I say sir to you, this was a batayle right fell and cruell: we defēded ourself as long as we might, so that on bothe partes there were slayne dyuers persones, and many hurte, for by that they shewed they had rather haue taken vs alyue than to slee vs; and finally we were all taken, Carsayle launt,<sup>d</sup> Nandon, le bourge de Pyergourt,<sup>e</sup> Espyot, the burge of Lespare, Angerot le moūtgyse, Philyppe of Roe, Peter of Corthue,<sup>f</sup> the Pesat of Palyuiers,<sup>g</sup> the bourge of Darusen,<sup>h</sup> and all our capitayns, and I myselfe, and we were brought to the castell of Sāxere. Neuer before in the realme of Fraunce the companyons lost so moche as they dyde at that iourney; howbeit, Guysshart Albygon loste his prisoner by neglygence: he bledde so sore, that he dyed for defaute of lokyng vnto. Thus ended Johan Aymery, by this iourney that was thus done besyde Sanxere. Charyte was deluyered, and all the garysons therabout, by composycion, that we shulde be quyte out of prison; and so we had saueconducte to departe out of the countre whider we lyst: and it fortunad as than for vs, that the same season sir Bertram of Clesquy,<sup>i</sup> the lorde of Beayne,<sup>k</sup> sir Arnolde Dandrehen, and the erle of Marche, they toke their voiage to go into Spaygne, to ayde the kyng Dampeter;<sup>l</sup> but first I was in Bretayne, at the bataile of Alroy,<sup>m</sup> vnder sir Hughe Caurell;<sup>n</sup> and there I recovered my losse, for the iourney was ours, and I had to my parte good prisoners, by whom I had two M. frankes. Than I went with ten speares, with sir Hugh Caurell,<sup>n</sup> into Spayne, and there helped to put kyng Dampeter<sup>l</sup> out of his realme: and than whan ȝ alyances were made bytwene the kyng Dampeter<sup>l</sup> and the prince of Wales, and that he wolde abyde in Castell, I was there in the company of sir Hugh Caurell,<sup>n</sup> and I retourned with hym into Aequitayne. Than the warre renewed bytwene the frenche kyng and the prince: than we had moche ado, for we had sore warre, and many capitayns, englysshe and Gascoyns, were slayne, and yet, I thāke god, I am alyue. Ther dyed sir Robert Briquet, bytwene the lande of the duke of Orliance and the countre of Bloyse, in a place called Olinet, and there he and all his company were ouerthrowen by a squyer of Heynalt, a valyant man of armes and a good capitayne, called Alars Doustienes, surnamed Barbason, for he was of that lynage; he was as than gouernoure of Bloys, and kepar of all the countre, sette there by the lordes therof, as Loys, Johñ, and Guy. So it was his fortune to encoūtre with sir Robert Briquet and sir Robert Cheney; and they and all their cōpany were slayne, for ther were non taken to ransome: and at the batayle of

M 2

Nyorth

<sup>a</sup> Neutry.  
<sup>c</sup> Corthon.<sup>b</sup> Croise.  
<sup>e</sup> Panniers.<sup>c</sup> Sicete.—*Jolmes.*<sup>d</sup> D'Armesen.<sup>e</sup> Carsuelle, la Nuyt.<sup>f</sup> Guesclin.<sup>g</sup> Perigord.<sup>h</sup> Beaujeu.<sup>i</sup> Don Pedro.<sup>m</sup> Aurai.<sup>n</sup> Calverley.

Nyortho in Xayntain,<sup>a</sup> Carsuell was slayne by sir Bertram of Clesquy,<sup>b</sup> and a seuyn C. englysshmen were slayne there; and at saint Seure were slayne other englysshe capitayns, as Rycharde Elys and Richarde Helyn: I knewe but fewe except myselfe but ý were slayne. I haue holde fronter and made warre for the kyng of Englāde, for myne herytage lyeth in Burdelois. Somtyme I haue been so ouerthrowen and pulled downe, that I had nat wherwith to lepe a horsbacke; and another tyme I haue been riche ynough, whan good fortunes came: and in a season I and Raymonet de la Pee were companions togyder, and we had in Tholousyn, on the frōters of Bygore, the castell of Malnoysin, the castell of Trygalet, and the castell of Vāteulx,<sup>c</sup> whiche as than dyde vs great profyete. Thāfe the duke of Aniou toke them fro vs, by force of puyssaunce, but than Raymonet de Pee tourned Frenche, and I abyde styll good englysshe, and shall do whyle I lyue; true it was, whan I had loste the castell of Trygalet, and was cōducted to the castell Cuyillet, and that the duke was gone backe agayne into Fraunce, I determyned to do somewhat, outhere to gette some profyete, or els to lose all, or to dye in the payne. I caused by spyall the towne and castell of Thury in Albygois to be well auiewed, whiche castell after aueyled to me, what by good fortunes and patesfyeng<sup>d</sup> of the countrey a hundred thousande frankes. I shall shewe you howe I wanne it.

Without the towne there is a fayre foūtayne, and of vsage euery mornynge the women of the towne wolde come thyder with pottes and other vesselles on their heedes, to fetche of the clere water ther. Than I toke fyftie cōpanyons of the garyson of Guillet, and we rode all a daye throughle wodes and bussches, and the nexte night about mydnight I sette a bushment nere to Thury, and I and a sixe other, all onely, dyde on vs womens aray, and with pottes in our handes; and so we cāe to a medowe right nere to ý towne, and hydde ourselfe behynde great cockes of hay that were there standyng, for it was about the feest of sāt Johan, whan they make hay: and whan the hour came that the gate was opnyed to lette the women go out for water, we seuyn toke our pottes, and fylled them at the fountayne, and wente towarde the towne, oure faces wrapped in kerchers, so that we coude nat be knowen: the women that we mette goyng for water said to vs, Ah, saynt Mary, gosseppes, ye were vp be tymes; we aunswered in their language with a faynt voyce, that is true, and so paste by them and came to the gate, and we founde nobody there but a souter, dressyng forthe of his baggage. Than one of vs blewe a horne, to drawe thyder our cōpany out of the bushment. The souter toke no hede; but whan he harde ý horne blowe, he demaūded of thē, What is this? Who was that blewe the horne? One answered and sayd, It was a preest wente into the feldes. Ah, that is true, quod the souter; it was sir Fraūces, our preest; gladly he gothe a mornynge to seke for an hare. Than our company came, and we entered into the towne, where we foūde no man to drawe his swerde to make any defence. Thus I toke the towne and castell of Thury, wherby I haue had great profite yerely, more than the castell of Trygalet with the appurtenāuce, is worthe: but as nowe I wote nat what to do, for I am in a treatie with therte of Armynake and with the dolphyn of Auergne, who hath expresse autorite by the Frenche kyng to bye all townes and fortresses of the companyons, such as they holde in their handes whersoouer they be, outhere in Auergne, Rouergue, Lymosyn, Quercy, Pyergourt,<sup>e</sup> Albegois, Agen, and of all suche as hath or dothe make any warre in the kyng of Englandes tytell; and many are departed and haue rendred their fortresses: I cannot tell if I wyll rendre nyne or nat. With that worde, sayd the Burge of Compayne,<sup>f</sup> Cosyn, it is true; for of Carlat, whiche I holde in Auergne, I am cōe hyder to here some tidynges, for sir Loys of Sanxere,

<sup>a</sup> Xaintonge.<sup>b</sup> Gueselin.<sup>c</sup> Nantilleux.<sup>d</sup> Making compositions.<sup>e</sup> Perigorl.<sup>f</sup> Copaire.



Sanxere, marshall of Frāce, wyll be here shortely; he is as nowe at Tarbe, as I haue herde of suche as come thens. With these wordes, they called for wyne, and dranke. Than the Bastot sayd to me, sir Johan, are ye well enformed of my lyfe? yet I haue had other aduētūres, whiche I haue nat shewed, nor wyll nat speke of all. Sir, quod I, I haue well herde you.

*Howe a squyer, called Limosin, turned frenche; and howe he caused Loys Rambalt,<sup>a</sup> his companyon in armes, to be taken.*

## CAP. XXX.

THAN agayn I demaunded of hym where Rambalt,<sup>a</sup> an expert squier and a great capytayne of mē of warr, was becōe; bycause I sawe him ones in Auignon in great aray. I shall shewe you, quod the Bastot of Maulyon. In tyme past, whan sir Seguygn of Batefoyle helde Bride<sup>b</sup> in Velay, a ten myle fro Puy in Auuergne, and that he had made warre in the countre, and conquered moche, than he retourned into Gascon, and gaue to Loyes Rābalt,<sup>a</sup> and to another cōpanyon of his, called Lymosin, Bride<sup>b</sup> and Anse, on the water of Sōme:<sup>c</sup> the countre as than was so desolate and full of cōpanyons in euery corner, y none durst go out of their houses; and bitwene Bride<sup>b</sup> in Auuerne and Anse is more than xxvi. myle, a cōtre full of moūtayns: and whan Loyes Rambalt<sup>a</sup> wolde ryde for his pleasure fro Bride<sup>b</sup> to Anse, he rode without doute or feare, for he helde dyuers fortresses in the countie of Forestes and therabout, wher he refreshed hym; for as thā the gentylmen of Auuergne, of Forestes, of Velaye, and the fronters, were sore traueyled, and ouer layde with the warre: they were so taken and ransomed, that they doughted the warre; for there was none of the great lordes of Frāuce that sente any men of warre into the cōtre, for the frenche kyng was yonge, and had moche ado in dyuers partes of the realme, for in enery parte the companyos and companyes rode and dyd moche hurte, so that the realme coude nat be quyte of thē; and also dyuers of the lordes of Fraunce were in Englande in hostage, and in the meane season their countreys and men were pyllled and robbed, and had no remedy, for the men of the countre were without corage to defende themselfe: and so it was that Rambalte<sup>a</sup> and Lymosin, who were companyons in armes, fell out: I shall shewe you howe.

Loyes Rambalte<sup>a</sup> had at Bride<sup>b</sup> a fayre woman to his louer, whome he loued parfytely; and whan he rode fro Bride<sup>b</sup> to Anse, he cōmaunded Lymosin to take good hede to her: and Lymosin, who was his companyon in armes, and in whome he moost trusted, he toke so good hede to the damosell, that he had his pleasure of her whan he lyst, so that Loyes Rambalte<sup>a</sup> was enfourmed therof, and he coude suffre it no lengar; so that he toke suche a hate agaynst his companyon, that he caused hym to be taken by his seruantes, and made hym to be driuen all naked, saue a breche, about the towne, and beaten with scourges, and trippettes to be blown before him, and at certayne places his dede to be openly cryed, and than banished the towne lyke a treatour, and in a symple cote, putte out. This dispyte dyd Loyes Rambalte<sup>a</sup> to Lymosin, whiche dispyte Lymosin toke greuously, and sayd, howe he wolde be reuēged if euer it laye in his power, as he was anone after: and this Lymosin, whyle he was in prosperite, in ridyng bytwene Bride<sup>b</sup> and Anse, he euer forbare the landes of the lorde of Voult, dwelling on the ryuer

<sup>a</sup> Raimbaut.<sup>b</sup> Erioude.<sup>c</sup> Saone.

ryuer of Rone, for he had serued him in his youthe. Than he thought to go to hym, and to crye hym mercy, and to desyre hym to make his peace in Fraunce: and so in his cote afote, he went to Voulte, for he knewe ryght well the way, and so went into a house; and whan he sawe his tyme, he wente to the castell, and the porter wolde nat suffre hym to entre, but at last he spake so fayre, that the porter dyde lette him in, and cōmaunded hym to go no farther in wout he were cōmaunded, and he obeyed. Whan the lorde was vp, he went downe into the court to sporte hym, and so came to the gate: than Lymosin felle downe on his knees, and sayde, sir, do ye nat knowe me? By my faythe, quod the lorde, no; he thought lytell it shulde haue been Lymosin; and whan he had well aduysed hym, he sayd, Thou resemblst well Lymosin, who was ones my seruaunt. Sir, quod he, Lymosin I am, and your seruaunt: than he cryed him mercy for all thynges paste before, and shewed hym fro poynt to poynt all his busynesse, and howe Loyes Rambalte<sup>a</sup> had dalte with hym at the ende. Than the lorde sayd, Lymosin, is it as thou sayest, and that thou wylte becōe good frenche? I shall make thy peace. By my faith, sir, quod he, I neuer dyde so moche hurte to the realme of Fraunce, but I shall do agayne more profyte therto. That wolde I se gladly, quod the lorde of Voulte. The lorde kept him in his house tyll he had made his peace in euery place, and whā Lymosin myght in suretie ryde, than the lorde of Voulte armed hym, and brought hym to the seneshall of Velay, and acquaynted hym there; and ther he was examyned of the state of bride<sup>b</sup> and of Loyes Rambalte,<sup>c</sup> and whan he rydeth, what waye he taketh: and than he sayd, Whan Loyes rydeth, he hath nat with him past a xxx. or a xl. speares, and the wayes that he kepeth I knowe them by harte, for with hym and without hym I haue rydden them ofte tymes; and, sir, if ye wyll sende forthe a company of men of armes, on ieopardy of my heed, ye shall haue him within fystene dayes. The capitayns ther toke hede to his sayeng, and sent out spyes, and Rambalte<sup>c</sup> was spyed as he was rydinge fro Bride<sup>b</sup> to Anse besyde Lion, on the ryuer of Rone. Whan Lymosin knewe it, he shewed it to ¶ lorde of Voulte, and sayd, Sir, Loyes Rābalte<sup>c</sup> is nowe at Anse, and at his retournyng I shall bring you to a streight, wher as he must nedes passe by. Than the lorde of Voulte made an assemble, and was capitayne hymselfe, and sente for the bayly of Velay, the lorde of Mountclan,<sup>e</sup> sir Gerarde<sup>d</sup> of Salyers and his sonne, sir Plāseart<sup>e</sup> of Vernet, the lorde of Newcastle,<sup>f</sup> and for other men of armes therabout, so that he was a thre C. speares; and they all assembled at Nonnay, and, by the cōsaile of Lymosin, they made two bussmentes: the vicoūt of Polygnac and the lorde of Chalencon had the rule of the one, and the lorde Voulte and the lorde of Mount Clan<sup>e</sup> had the gudyng of the other bussment, and with them sir Loyes of Tornon and the lorde of Salyers; and they hadde equally deuyded their company. The firste company kepthe the pase nere to saynt Rambart<sup>f</sup> in Forestes, wher as Loyes Rambalte<sup>a</sup> shulde passe the ryuer of Loyre, or els he muste haue gone by Guyde<sup>h</sup> or Pynne: and whan Loyes Rambalte<sup>a</sup> had done that he came for to Anse, he departed with a xl. speares, and thought nat to haue any rencounter, and douted nothyng of Lymosin; it was the leest thought he had; and lightlye euer the way that he rode outwarde he wolde nat come homewarde: and as he came outwarde, he cāe by saynt Rambalte,<sup>a</sup> and at his retourne he toke another waye, and toke the mountayns aboue Lyon and aboue Vyenne, and vnder the Burge Darlental,<sup>i</sup> and rode streyght towarde the Mounastrie, a thre lytell myle fro Puye; and he hadde passed bytwene the castell of Monestrole and Mountlaucon, and so came aboute the cowntre, towarde a vyllage called Batery, bytwene Nonnay and saynt Julyane; and in the wode ther was a streyght passage,

<sup>a</sup> Raimbaut.  
 † Villeneuve.

<sup>b</sup> Brioude.  
<sup>c</sup> Rambut.

<sup>e</sup> Montelare.

<sup>d</sup> Guerrot.

<sup>f</sup> Plouserat.

<sup>h</sup> "A gué au dessus du Puy;" at a ford above Puy.—*Lyon's edit.*

<sup>i</sup> The village of Argenthal.

sage, whiche he muste nedes passe, or els to go by Nonnay, at whiche streight laye the lorde of Voult with two hundred speares; and Loyes Rambalt<sup>a</sup> toke no hede tyll he was among them. Than the Lorde of Voulte, who was redy to do his enterprise, layde the speare in the rest, and came cryinge, la Voulte, and dashed in among the companions, who rode abroad withoute good araye; and so at the first metyng many of them were overthronen to the erthe, and Loyes Rābault<sup>a</sup> was stryken fro his horse by a squyer of Auuergne, called Amblardon, and so he toke hym prisoner, and all other taken or slayne, none scaped: and ther they foude in boiettes a thre M. frankes, whiche Loyes Rābalt<sup>a</sup> had receuyed at Anse, for trybute of certayne vyllages therabout, wherof they were gladd, for euery man had his parte. And whan Lymosin sawe Rambalt<sup>a</sup> thus trapped, he came before hym, and sayd in reproche, Loyes, Loyes, here fauteth company: remembre ye of the blame and shame that ye dyde put me to at Bride<sup>b</sup> for your maystres? I wolde haue thought lytell for a woman, ye wolde haue put me to that ye dyd; for if ye had done as moche to me, I wolde nat haue been so angry, for two suche cōpanyōs in armes as we were, myght haue past our tyme well ynoughe with one woman. With those wordes the lordes laughed; but Loyes Rābalt<sup>a</sup> had no sporte therat. By the takyng thus of this Loyes Rābalt<sup>a</sup>, Bride<sup>b</sup> was deluyered to the scenshali of Auuergne, for after they had lost their capitayne and the chefe men they had, they wolde kepe it no lēgar; and in lykewise so dyde they of Anse, and other fortresses in Velay and Forestes, that was on their parte; for they within any of these fortresses were right ioyouse to yelde vp their holdes, to saue their lynes. Than Loyes Rābalt<sup>a</sup> was brought to Nonnay, and there set in prisone, and the frēche kyng had great ioye of his takyng, and, as I herde reported, he was beheced at Newcastle<sup>c</sup> besyde Auygnon. Thus Loys Rambalt<sup>a</sup> dyed; god haue mercy on him. Thus, sir, quod the Bastot of Maulyon, I haue holde you with talkyng, to passe awaye the night; howbeit, sir, all that I haue said is true. Sir, quod I, with all my herte I thanke you; Sir, I trust your sayenges shall nat be loste; for, sir, and god suffre me to retourne into myne owne countre, all that I haue herde you saye, and all that I haue sene and founde in my voyage, I shall put it in remembraunce in the noble cronycle that the erle of Bloys hath set me awarke on; for I shall write it and cronycle it by the grace of god, to the entent it shal be in parpetuall remembraunce. Than the Bourge of Compayne,<sup>d</sup> called Ernaltou, began to speke, and wolde gladly that I shulde parceyue by hym that he wolde I shulde recorde his lyfe, and of the Bourge Englysshe his brother, and howe they had done in Auuergne and in other places; but as than he had no leysar, for the watche of the castell sowned to assemble all mē that were in the towne to come vp to the Castell, to suppe with the erle of Foiz. Thanne these two squyers made them redy, and lyghted vp torches, and so we wente vp to the Castell, and so dyde all other knyghtes and squyers that were lodged in the towne.

<sup>a</sup> Raimbaut.<sup>b</sup> Brioude.<sup>c</sup> Villeneuve.<sup>d</sup> Copaire.

*Of the state or ordynaunce of the erle of Foiz, and howe the towne of yran<sup>2</sup> rebelled, for the great traueyle, damage, and outrage that was don thereto.*

## C A P. XXXI.

OF the astate and order of the erle of Foiz can nat be to moche spoken nor praysed; for the season y I was at Ortaise, I foude hym suche, and moche more than I can speke of; but whyle I was there, I sawe and herde many thynges that turned me to great pleasure. I sawe on a Christēmas day, sytting at his borde, four bysshoppes of his countre; two Clementynes and two Vrbanystes: the bysshoppe of Pamyers and the bysshoppe of Lescalle,<sup>b</sup> Clementynes, they satte highest: than the bysshoppe of Dayre<sup>c</sup> and the bysshop of Rone<sup>d</sup> on the fronters of Burdeloys and Bayon, Vrbanystes: than satte therle of Foiz, and than the vycount of Roquebertyn of Gascone, and the vycount of Brunyquell, the vycount of Josseraūt,<sup>e</sup> and a knight of Englad of the duke of Lancasters, who as than laye at Narbone, the duke had sent hym thyder; the knight was called sir Wylliam Wylloughby. And at another table satte fyue abbottes and two knyghtes of Arragon, called sir Raymonde de Mount florentyne and sir Marten de Ruane. And at another table satte knyghtes and squyers of Gascone and of Bigore: first, the lorde of Daychin,<sup>f</sup> than sir Gaylart de la Mote, sir Raymōde of Newcastell,<sup>g</sup> the lorde of Chamōt, Gascone, the lorde of Compan,<sup>h</sup> the lorde de la Layne, the lorde of Mountferant, sir Wylliam Bernarde, sir Peter of Corton, the lorde of Valenchyn, and sir Aungalle, named the Basell: and at other tables, knyghtes of Bierne a great nōbre: and the cheife stewardes of the halle were sir Espaygne of Leon, sir Siquart de Boyes Verdune, sir Nonnans of Nonnallys,<sup>i</sup> and sir Peter of Vaultx of Bierne; and the two Erles bastarde bretherne serued at y table, sir Ernaltou Guyllame and sir Peter of Byerne: and the erles two sonnes, sir yuan of Leschell was shewer, and sir Gracyen bare his cuppe. And there were many Mynstrelles, as well of his owne as of straungers, and eche of them dyde their deuoyre in their faculties. The same day therle of Foiz gauē to harauldes and mynstrelles the sōme of fyue hundred frākes, and gauē to the duke of Tourayns mynstrelles, gownes of clothe of golde furred with Ermyns, valued at two hundred frankes. This dyner endured foure houres. Thus I am gladdē to speke of the erle of Foiz, for I was there in his house a xii. wekes, and well entreated in all thynges; and whyle I was there, I might lerne and here tidynges of all countreis; and also the gentyll knyght, sir Espaygne of Leon, in whose company I entred into the countre, he caused me to be acquaynted with knyghtes and squyers, suche as coude declare to me any thyng that I coude demaunde; for I was enformed of the busynesse of Portingale and of Castell, and what maner of warre they had made, and of the batayls and rencounters bytwene those two kynges and their assysters, of whiche busynesses I shall make iuste report.

Ye haue herde here before howe kyngē don Johan of Castell hadde besieged the castell of Luxbone,<sup>k</sup> and the king Johan of Portyngale therin, whom the good townes had crowned to their kyng for his valyantnesse, howebeit, in dede he was a bastarde: and also ye haue herde how the same kyng sende into Englande to the duke of Lancastre and to the erle of Cambridge, who had in maryage his cosyns, to haue socour of thē. These messangers were two knyghtes and a clerke, sir Johan Radyngos and sir Johā

<sup>a</sup> Santaren.<sup>b</sup> Lescar.<sup>c</sup> Ayre.<sup>d</sup> Rou.<sup>e</sup> Gousserant.<sup>f</sup> D'Anchin.<sup>g</sup> Chateau-neuf.<sup>h</sup> Copaire.<sup>i</sup> Nouvans de Nouvailles.<sup>k</sup> Lisbon.

Johā Dore,<sup>a</sup> and with them a clerke lycensiate in the lawe, arche deaken of Lysbone. These messangers dyd so moche by the see, that they came to Hampton,<sup>b</sup> and there taryed a daye, and there gate horses, for they had none of their owne, and so rode to London. This was in the moneth of August, and the kyng was in the marches of Wales a huntyng at his pleasure, and his vnclcs, the duke of Lācastre, therle of Cābridge sir Edmonde, and sir Thomas erle of Buckyngham, were also in their owne countreis a sportynge, wherfore the kyng of Portyngales messangers had more to do: so first they spake with the duke of Lancastre, who was at Hertforde, that twentie myle fro London; the duke receyued them ioyously, and opyned fy letters that they brought him, and the duke reed them thre tymes, the better to vnderstande thē, and than he sayd, Sirs, ye be right delyue into this countre, but ye be come in the worst tyme of the yere to haue spedy delyueraūce of your ambassade, for the kyng and my bretherne are sparclod abrode here and ther, and ye can haue no full answey tyll the counsayle come togyder at London, at the feest of saynt Mighaell; but sythe the great parte of your message toucheth me and my brother, therfore I will write to hym, that he and I shal be shortely at London, or therabout, and than we shall take cōsayle togyder; wherfore as nowe ye shall retourne to London, and whan my brother is come nere, ye shall haue tidynge fro vs. The ambassadours of Portyngale were content, and so returned to London, and were well lodged and toke their ease. The duke of Lancastre forgate nat that they had sayd to hym, and so incontynent wrote to his brother therle of Cambridge of that busynesse: and whan therle had reed his brothers letters, he prepared hymself and rode to Hertforde, besyde Ware, wher the duke was, and there they were thre dayes togyder in cōsayle, and so ordayned to go to London, as the duke had promysed to the ambassadours; and so they came to London. Than these two lordes, and they of Portyngale, had great cōsayls bytwene them, for the erle of Cābridge, who had ben before in Portyngale, was nothyng cōtent with kyng Ferant<sup>c</sup> of Portyngale last deed; for he sayd, he made his warre but slackely, and also agaynst the wyll of hym and all the Englysshmen, he toke peace with the spanyerdes: wherfore the erle sayd, he had doute that at the counsayle at Myghelmas, the cōmontie wolde nat agre lightly to make another vyage into Portyngale, for the journey thyder before had cost greatly the realme of Englande, and no profyte therby. The ambassadours cōceyued well the erles wordes, and sayde, Sir, than was than, and nowe is nowe; the kyng, whom god pardon, redouted greatly fy fortunes of the worlde, but the kyng our mayster that nowe is, hath another mynde and ymaginacion: for if he fynde in the felde his enemyes, though he be lesse of power, yet he wyll gyue the setting on, whatsoeuer fall therby, and this sir, we dare faythfully assure you; and my lordes, besyde that, your quarell is clere to ouerron and to conquere the realme of Castell, for the enberytaunce parteyneth to you and to your wyues, and to your chyldren; and to conquere it, ye cannat haue so good an entre into Castell, as by Portyngale, sythe ye haue all that realme according therto; therfore sir, and one of you wyll come thyder with suche a sufficient nombre, and by the ayde ye shall haue there, ye shal be able to kepe the felde. The duke of Lancastre answered, Sirs, this lyeth nat in vs, but in the kyng and in the realme, but we shall do oure good wylls, ye maye be sure therof. Thus they ended their counsayle, and the portyngalois laye styll at London, abydyng Mighelmas; and the duke of Lancastre, and the erle of Cambridge, returned into their owne countreis on the marches of the Northe. Than came Myghelmas, and the parlament at Westmyenster, and the kynges approached and came to Wyndesore, and so to Chertsey, and the queene with hym, and than to Stanes, and also his chefe of counsayle, the erle of Oxenforde:<sup>d</sup> for by him euery thyng was done, and without hym, nothyngc. The

VOL. II.

N

same

<sup>a</sup> Testa d'oro.<sup>b</sup> Southampton.<sup>c</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>d</sup> Oxford.

same season there was in Flaunders, bytwene the duke of Burgoyne, and the gaūtoise, great warre. And ther were newly retourned out of Flaunders into Englande, the bysshoppe of Norwiche, sir Hugh Caurell,<sup>a</sup> sir Wylliam Helman, sir Thomas Tryuet, and other, who had in the same somer ben at the siege with the gauntoise before Ipre; than came the frenche kyng and closed them in, in Burbonoise, (as is rehersed here before ī this hystorie.) but as than there was truse bytwene Fraunce, Englande, and Flaunders, to endure tyll mydsomer after, but the scottes had moche to do. Also there was at London the counsayle of Gaūt, and they desyred to haue a gouernour to helpe to sustayne the kepyng of their towne; they desyred one of the kynges vnclays, or els the erle of Salisbury. So at this counsayle at London there were many counsayls, as well for the flēmynges, as for Portyngale, and Scotlande, who made thē warre. The duke of Lancastre drewe to that parte that he might haue a nōbre of men of warre and archers, to go into Portyngale; and he shewed the lordes, prelates, and comons, howe they were all bounde by faythe and othe, to ayde hym and his brother to wynne the herytage in Castell, and that he sayde, they promysed, whan the kyng his nephue was crowned, and it apered by their letters sealed; and moreouer, the duke complayned hym howe they of the realme dyd hym and his brother wronge, in that whan his brother therle of Cambridge was in Portyngale, that they keppe but smally the couynaunt that they had promysed; for he sayd, it was promysed to sende to hym thider two thousande speares, and as many archers, and nothing was done, wherby their quarell of the right of their enherytaunce was greatly hyndred. The dukes wordes were well harde, as it was reason; and the moost notablist persons of ſ counsayle said, howe he had right to speke as he dyd; howebeit, they sayd, that the busynesses of the realme that touched them nere, must first be preferred: some wolde that his wyll shulde haue ben accomplysshed, and some other said, that it shulde be a great outrage to sende out of the realme two thousande men of warre, and four thousande archers, to so long a iourney as īto Portugale, for the fortunes of the see be daūgerous, and the ayre of Portyngale marueylous hote; sayeng, that if the realme of Englande shulde lese suche a company, it shulde be a damage irrecuparable; howebeit, all thynges alledged, finally it was ordayned, that the duke of Lancastre shulde passe the Sec with seyn hūdred speares, and four thousande archers, and euery man payed for a quarter of a yere; howebeit, they reserued, that yf any accydent touchyng the realme of Englāde, by the meanes of Fraūce or Scotlande, shulde happen to falle before their departure into Portyngale, than to tary: the duke agreed therto, sythe he sawe it wolde be none otherwyse. And than, as ye haue herde before, whāne the duke of Lancastre was redy with all his men at Hampton,<sup>b</sup> to take his voyage into Portyngale, and that the ambassadurs were retourned, and had brought wordē into Portyngale, howe the duke of Lancastre was comyng with suche a nombre of men of warre, than the portyngalois had great ioye. So it fortunēd than that a lettē fell in Englande, whiche taryed the duke of Lancastre for a season, for the admyrall of Fraunce, sir Johan of Vien, with a thousande speares of good men of armes, toke shippyng at Scluse, and sayled into Scotlande, and made warre into Englande, so that all the realme came to resyst thē. All this is shewed here before in this hystorie, wherfore I nede nat to speke therof agayne, but I wyll speke of the siege of Lisbone, and of the kyng of Spayne, of whome I shall make true relacyon, accordyngē as I was enformed.

Kyngē don Johan of Castell beyng at siege before Lisbone, tidynges came into his hoost, by marchauntes of his countrey that came fro Flaunders, howe the duke of Lancastre, with a great nombre of men of warre, were comyng thyderwarde to reyse the  
siege

<sup>a</sup> Calverley.

<sup>b</sup> Southampton.

siege ther; these tidynges were well beleued, for the spanyardes knewe well howe the duke of Lancastre wolde do his payne and dilygence to make warre on the realme of Castell, bycause he claymed part therof by the ryght of his wyfe; howebeit, the kyng helde styll his siege, and he had sent messengers and letters to haue ayde out of Frauce, and specially he sent into the cōutre of Bierne, and into the lande of the erle of Foiz; and out of Byerne there issued in a four dayes respyte, a thre hundred speares of chosyn men of armes: and there was come to Ortaise, out of the realme of Fraūce, to go into Castell, to serue f̄ king there, Sir Johan of Rue, burgonyon, and sir Geffray Richon, breton, and sir Geffray de Partenay, and eche of thē had a company by themselves. Than they of Bierne made thē redy, as the lorde of Lynguasshe,<sup>a</sup> a great barone, and companion to the erle of Foiz, and sir Peter Lyer, sir Johan de Les pres, the lorde of Bordes, sir Bertrande of Baruge, the lorde of Moriage,<sup>b</sup> sir Raymonde Dausac, sir Johñ of Salagre, sir Monan of Saruen,<sup>c</sup> sir Pyer of Robier, sir Stephyn of Valentyne, and sir Raymonde of Rarasse, sir Peter of Hanefan, sir Ogert of Domesson, and dyuers other; and sir Espayngnolet of Spaygne, eldest sonne to sir Roger of Spaygne, cosyn of lygnage and armes to the erle of Foiz, he went in the company of them of Bierne. These lordes and knightes of Bierne made their assemble at Ortaise, and therabout: and it was shewed me, by them that sawe them departe fro Ortaise, howe that they were the best armed and apoynted company, that wente out of Byerne many a daye before. And whan the erle of Foiz sawe surely howe they wolde departe to go into Spaygne, (thoughe at the begynnyng he somewhat consented therto, and that they shulde receyue the kyng of Castelles wages,) yet he was angry and soroufull of their departyng, for he sawe well that his countre was sore febled therby: than he sent sir Espaygne de Leon, and sir Cabestan, to these sayd lordes, knightes, and squyers, desyringe them to come togyuder to his castell of Ortaise, to the entent to gyue theym a dyner to their farewell. The knightes obeyed, as it was reason, and came to Ortaise to se the erle, who receyued them with gladde chere; and after masse caused thē all to come to him into his secrete chambre; and than in maner of counsaile he said to them, sir, it is than your ententes to departe out of my countre, and to leaue in my handes the warre with the erle of Armynake, and ye to go and make warre for the kyng of Spayne; this departure toucheth me right nere. Sir, quod they, we muste nedes go, for to that entent we haue receyued f̄ kyng of Castels wages; and sir, the warre bytwene Spayne and Portyngale ones atchyued, than we shall retourne agayne in sauergarde; atchyued, quod therle, nay nat so soone, for as nowe it dothe but begyn, for there is a newe kyng in Portyngale, and he hath sent for ayde into Englande: therefore this warre is likely to endure a long season, and ye to kepe the felde, for ye shall nat be fought with, tyll the duke of Lancastre and his cōpany be come thyder, and so ye shall derely bye the wages ye haue receyued. Sir, quod they, sythe we haue done so moche we must nedes performe our voyage; well, god spede you, quod the erle, let vs go to dyner, it is tyme: and than therle with these lordes and knightes went into his hall, and there the tables were. There they had a great dyner at great leaser, and was serued with enery thyng that to that day parteyned. And after dyner, therle ledde with hym all this cōpany into the galarye; than he entred into comunyng with them, and sayd, Fayre lordes and frendes, it shall greue me to se your departyng out of my countre, nat for that I am dyspleased with your auancementes and honours, for in all cases I wolde gladly augment and exalte your honours and profyte; but I haue great pytie of you, for ye are the chefe flour of chivalry of my countre of Bierne, and ye thus to go into a straunge countre; I wolde cōsayle you yet agayne to leaue this voyage, and to let the kyng of Castell, and the kyng of Portyngale, make their warre bytwene theymselve, for ye are nat bounde none otherwyse: Sir,

N 2

quod

<sup>a</sup> Lingnach.<sup>b</sup> Marciage.<sup>c</sup> Mouvant de Sarmen.

quod they, sauynge your displeasure, we can nat do thus; and sir, ye knowe more than ye speke of; we haue taken wages and gyftes of the kyng of Castell, wherfore we must nedes deserue it: Well, quod therle, ye speke well, but I shall shewe you what shall come of this vyage: outhere ye shall retourne so poore and so naked, that lyse shall stragle you,<sup>a</sup> or els ye shall be all slayne or taken. The knyghtes began to laughe, and sayd, Sir, we must abyde the aduenture. Than therle fell in other talkyng, and lefte that in rest; and that than he shewed them, in maner of comunycacion, all the nature of the Spanyardes, howe they be sluttysse and lousy, and enuyous of other mennes welthe, wherfore, quod he, I reed you take good counsayle: and than he demaunded for wyne and spyce, and he made euery mā drinke, and than toke euery man by the hande, and badde them farewell, and departed fro thē and went into his chambre. And at the fote of the castell the knyghtes mouēd on their horses, and so rode to Sanetere,<sup>b</sup> and ther lodged that night: and the nexte day they departed, and entred into the lande of Baseles,<sup>c</sup> and toke the waye to Panpylone,<sup>d</sup> and they passed surely, for they payed truly for all that they tooke. And in the same season, whyle the kyng laye in Lisbon, and had layen there the space of a yere, than they of the towne of saynt yrayne<sup>e</sup> rebelled agaynst f kyng of Castell, and closed their gates, and sayde, that nother French nor spaynysse shulde entre into their towne, bycause of the damage that they had done to them, and oppressyous: and some sayd, it was in the faute of Geffray Rycons company, and sir Parteney, who had a cōpany of bretons, who toke euer that they might gette, for they set nothyng by peace. Than the cytezens toke the two castelles, and sayd, how they wolde kepe them and their towne agaynst all persons that wolde do thē any hurte. And the same day that they rebelled, they slewe mo than threscore bretons, and had nere slayne sir Geffray Partenay, but that he saued hymselfe vnder f walles of the towne f were nere his lodgyng. Than the frenchmen and bretons that were there, fierly assauted them of saynt yrayne,<sup>e</sup> but they lost more than they wonne, and so dyd nothyng. These tidynge came into the hoost to the kyng of Castell, howe that they of saynt yrayn<sup>e</sup> were tourned portyngalois, and howe they were in mynde to deluyer the towne and castelles to the kyng of Portyngale: of whiche newes the kyng was nat content, and called to hym his marshall, sir Raynolde Lymosin, and said, take a hundred or two hundred speares, and go to saūt yrayne,<sup>e</sup> and knowe why the men of the towne do rebell, and what occasion they haue to do as they haue done. So the marshall rode forthe, and with hym a two hundred speares, and came to saynt yrayne:<sup>e</sup> and he sent before hym an haraulde to shewe them of his comyng, and howe he wolde speke with them at the barryers; and so he dyde his message, and it was answered hym by thē of the towne, sayeng, Sir haralde, we knowe right well sir Raynolde Lymosin is a gentylman, and a valyant knight, and is marshall with the kyng: he may right well come hyder, if it please hym, vnarmed into the towne, or els nat: this was all the message that the haralde brought to his mayster. Thāne sir Raynolde sayd, I am nat come hyder to do thē any damage, but to knowe their ententes; it is all one to me, to entre armed or vnarmed, to knowe their wylles: and so he, and sixe with hym, rode thyder vnarmed, and lefte all his cōpany behynde hym; and so he alyghted before the barryers, and when they within sawe him in that estate, they opnyed the gate and receyued him into the towne, and made hym good chere; and than he assembled the people in the market place, and sayde, Sirs, all ye that dwell in this towne, take hede what I saye; I am sente hyder by the kyng of Castell, to demaunde of you for what entencion ye do rebell, and close your gates, and haue slayne of them that be come hyder

to

<sup>a</sup> "And shall grow between your nails, (showing them by his gestures of rubbing the two palms of his hands together, what he meant.)"—Johnes; with whom also the Lyons' edition agrees.

<sup>b</sup> Sauuctere.

<sup>c</sup> Biscay.

<sup>d</sup> Pampeluna.

<sup>e</sup> Santarem.



to serue the kyng; knowe for trouthe, the kyng is sore displeased with you, and also he is enfourmed, howe that ye haue taken in possessyon the two castelles of this towne, whiche parteyneth to his enherytaunce, and howe that ye wyll delyuere them to his aduersary, the kyng of Portyngale. Than they answered and sayd, Sir Raynolde, sauynge the kynges grace, we are nat so disposed, nor to rendre them to any mannes handes, but to our kyng, the kyng of Castell, of whome we holde them, so that he gouerne vs in peace and iustice; and y<sup>e</sup> we do, or haue done, was in y<sup>e</sup> faut of these robbers and pylers the bretons, who were lodged in this towne, for yf we had been sarazyns or worse people, we coulde nat haue ben worse dalte withall than we were, as in raunysshinge of our wyues and doughters, breakynge vp our coffers, and breakynge out of the heedes of our vesselles of wyne, beatynge and meamyng of vs, whan we speke any worde to them; therefore it can nat be marueyled, (whan we sawe these outrages done to vs and to ours, by thē that shulde defende vs.) though we were displeased; men wyll be displeased for lesse cause; Sir, ye maye shewe all this if it please you, for we be of one accorde, that whosoouer come, we wyll receyue into our towne nother frenche nor breton, nor none but the kynges owne persone, with suche as shall please hym, so that we be nat traueyled nor putte to vyolence. Wha<sup>n</sup> sir Raynolde herde them saye so, he was apeace, for it semed to hym, that they dyd no wronge to putte out of their towne their enemyes; and than he sayde, O, ye good people, I haue well herde you, and well vnderstande you: ye shall abyde in peace, and I wyll retourne to the kyng, and shewe hym all that ye haue sayd, and in good faythe I shall do for you as moche as in me is possyble to do: Sir, we thanke you, quod they, and we trust in you, that if the kyng haue any yuell informacyon of vs, y<sup>e</sup> ye wyll be oure good meane. And than sir Raynolde tooke his leaue and departed, and returned to his company, who abode for hym in the feldes. And so he rode tyll he came to the hoost before Lisbone, and lyghted at his lodgyng, and wente to the kyng, and shewed hym all that he hadde harde and founde with thē of yrayne.<sup>a</sup> Whan the kyng knewe the trouthe, he sayd, by my faythe they haue done wisely, for no man can be sure of thes robbers.

And whan sir Geffray Richlone, and sir Geffray Partenay, and their companyes, sawe howe they coulde haue none other remedy of them of saynt yrayne,<sup>a</sup> and that the kyng of Castell dissymuled with them, they were sore displeased, and sayd among themselfe, we haue well lefte the realme of Fraunce to come hyder, to serue the kyng of spayne, thus to be shamed and domaged by a sorte of villayns, and we can haue no right; we trust shortly hyder wyll come a sorte of knyghtes of Gascone; we wyll suffre tyll they come, and than we wyll all agree togyder, and reueng our companyons that they haue slayne and yuell entreated. Tidynge came into the hoost to the kyng and to his counsayle, that the bretons sore manasshed them of saynt yrayne,<sup>a</sup> and maketh their auaunte, that the Gascoyns ones cōe, howe they shulde derely paye for that is done; wherefore the kyng was counsayled to departe fro the siege, and to go and refresshe hym a season at saynt yrayns,<sup>a</sup> and to sette the mater in a good waye, and so thier to tary the comyng of the gascoyns, of whome there were a foure hundred speares of good men of warre; wherof they kyng was ioyfull, and wolde nat that they shulde fynde the cōtre in trouble at their comyng; and also moche of his people desyred to refresshe them, for there they had layen longe, and nothyng done: than it was commaunded euery man to dislodge, and to drave towarde saynt yrayne:<sup>a</sup> than the spanyardes dyslodged, and all other, and so came into the marches of saynt yrayne.<sup>a</sup> Whan they of saint yrayne<sup>a</sup> knewe howe the kyng of Castell was comyng towarde their towne, they ordayned twelwe  
men,

<sup>a</sup> Santarem:

men, the most notablest persons of their towne, to mount on their horses: and so they dyde, and rode tyll they came where the kyng was, to knowe his pleasure; and the kyng was alighted vnder the shadowe of Olyue trees, to refresshe hym, for the great heate that was than; and this was a two leages fro saynt yrayne;<sup>2</sup> and there was sir Raynolde Lymosin, marshall of the hoost, who knewe of their comyng, and so he was present by the kyng whan they came and kneled downe, and said as foloweth:

*Howe the kyng of Castell lefte the siege of Lisbon: and howe they of saynt yrayne<sup>2</sup> excused themselves.*

#### G A P. XXXII.

RIGHT redouted prince, and noble kyng of Castell, we are come hyder to youre presens, sende from the poore cōmynaltie of youre poore towne and bayliwike of saynt yrayne.<sup>3</sup> To thē it is gyuen to vnderstande, howe ye be greatly with them displeasid; and sir, wheder it be thus, or shal be, right redouted sir, the faute came nat by them, but by reason of the iniuries and oppressyons that the bretons hath done to thē, suche as were in their towne; Sir, all their yuell dedes can nat come to knowledge; sir, we blame nat the maysters, squiers, nor knightes, nor capitens, but all onely them that dyde vs hurte; for sir, these pyllers and robbers, bretons, hane doone with vs suche dedes, that it were marueyle to thynke or to recorde it; Sir, they helde a season in subiectyon the towne and cōtre about saynt yrayne,<sup>2</sup> so that we herde of theym many great complayntes; and sir, in the dyspyte of vs, they wolde breake vp oure cofers, and take all that we had, and vyolate our wyues and our daughters before our faces, and whan we spake any worde, we were beten, maymed, or slayne; in this pouertie we were a two monethes or more; wherefore right redouted and noble kyng, we besech your grace, if we haue displeasid you for this cause, or for any other, that it maye please you that we may haue true iustyce and lafull informacyon, and to maynteygne vs in our ryght, as ye promysed and sware to vs, to kepe vs in our lyberties, the first tyme we sware you kyng in the towne of saynt yrayne;<sup>2</sup> sir, ye shall do great almesse on vs; for sir, whan ye be come thyder, we truste in you and in your counsayle to be suche noblenesse, that the towne of saynt yrayne<sup>2</sup> shall be opyned agaynst your comyng: and that it may please your grace, your poore people there cryeng for mercy, and complaynyng of their iniuries and oppressyons done to them, that youre royall maiestie, and your noble counsayle, wyl graunt them grace and remyssyon of that is paste, and to remedy their wronges. The kyng stode styll a lytell, and sir Raynolde Lymosin kneled downe, and said, Dere sir, ye haue herde your people of saynt yrayns<sup>2</sup> complaynt, shewyng what hath ben don to them, wherefore may it plase you to answere them: Raynold, quod the kyng, we knowe well they had a iuste cause to do as they dyde; go to them and bydde them ryse and go their wayes to saynt yrayne,<sup>2</sup> and make redy for my comyng, for ther we wyl lye this night; and also, shewe thē howe they shal be well maynteyned in their right. Than sir Raynolde rose and went to thē, and sayd, Sirs, aryse, the kyng hath well conceyued your sayeng, ye desyre but right and iustyce, and that ye shall haue; go your wayes, and apparell as ye ought to do the towne of saynte yrayns<sup>2</sup> agaynst the kynges comyng, and do so that he may gyue you thāke: your maters shall come well to passe, by suche means as ye shall haue in your ayde: Sir, quod they, we thanke you. Than they toke their leaue of the kyng, and returned

<sup>2</sup> Santarem.

retourned to their towne, and shewed all that they had herde of the kyng, and the answer that sir Raynolde Lymosin made them on the kynges behalfe, wherof all they of the towne were gladdē: than they apparelled their towne richely agaynst the kynges comyng, and strawed the stretes with fresshe grene herbes: so the kyng entred in the cuenyng, and lodged at the castell called the Lyon, and his men in the towne as many as might, and the moost parte in the felde, and in the villages therabout; ther the kyng was well a moneth: and so ȝ mater stode, for if they had done more, more had they lost.

*Of the marueylous batayle that was at Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> bytwene the kyng of Castell, and kyng Johan of Portyngale.*

## CAP. XXXIII.

WHYLE the kyng of Castell was at saūt yrayns,<sup>b</sup> ther come to hym the gascons of Bierne, with a fayre cōpany; sir Raynolde Lymosin rode to receyue them, and welcomed them ryght swetely, as he that coulde right well do it, and brought thē to the kyng, who had great ioye of their comyng, and cōmaunded sir Raynolde Lymosin to se them well lodged at their ease: and he dyde so that they were contented: thus these busynesses rested, and the kyng laye styll at saynt yrayns,<sup>b</sup> and his people there about. The kyng of Castell hadde as than abrode lodged in the felde, and therabout, a four thousande men of armes, and xxx. thousande of other; and on a daye he called the barones of Fraunce to counsayle, to knowe their myndes, howe he shulde mētayne forthe his warre, for he had layen at great cost before Lisbone, and had done nothyng; and surely if the gascoins had nat come and encouraged the kyng, he had departed fro saynt yrayns,<sup>b</sup> and gone outhur to Bergus,<sup>c</sup> or into Galice, for his people were sore anoyed to lye so longe in ȝ felde: whan the knyghtes of Fraunce, and of Bierne, were come before the kyng, he sayde, Fayre sirs, ye be all good men of warre, wherfore I wolde haue your cōsayle, howe I may maynteyne my warre agaynst the lysbonoyes and portyngaloyes, that haue kepte me here in the felde a yere, and yet I haue done nothyng to them; I had thought to haue gotte them out of Lisbone to haue fought with them, but they wolde in no wyse issue out, wherfore my people gyue me counsayle, to gyue euery man leaue to departe to their owne houses, wherfore I pray you gyue me youre adyse. The knyghtes of Fraunce, and of Byerne, who were but newly come, and desyred armes, and as than had nothyng done, thinking to deserue their wages that they had receyued, answered and sayde, Sir, ye be a puyssant man of landes, and lytell costeth you the payne and traueyle of your people, and specially sithe they be in their owne cōuntry: we wolde nat saye so moche yf they were in a straunge cōuntry clene without prouysion; but as nowe we saye, they ought nat to gyue you any suche counsayle, for they be here in as great ease, as we se, as though they were at home; Sir, we saye to you nat in maner of a determyneate cōsayle, for ye are wyse ynough, but we thynke by your highe prudence, the best were to chuse as yet to kepe the felde: ye maye well kepe it tyll the feest of saint Michaell, and paraduēture by that tyme your enemyes wyll assemble togyder, and drawe out into the felde whan ye take leest hede therto, and so thā without fayle they shal be fought withall; Sir, we haue great desyre to wyn sōwhat, for this journey hath cost vs moche, and great payne and traueyle, bothe to ourself and to our horses, or we came into this cōutre; therfore,

sir,

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>b</sup> Santarem.<sup>c</sup> Burgos.

sir, it shall nat be the opinyon of our company thus to departe agayne. By my faithe, quod the kyng, ye speke well and truely; in this warre and other, I shall vse fro hensforth the after your counsaile; for the kyng my father, and I also, haue founde alwayes in youre countreis great trouthe and faythfulnesse; and god haue mercy of sir Bertram of Clesquyes<sup>a</sup> soule, for he was a true knyght, by whome in his tyme we had many recoueraunses, and good iourneys.

The wordes and counsailes that the kyng had of them of Fraunce, and of Bierne, were anone knowen among the lordes and knightes of Spaygne, wherwith they were sore displeased, for two causes; One, bycause it semed to them that their kyng had more trust and cōfydence in straungers, than in them who were his liege men, and had crowned hym kyng; the seconde was, in that they of Fraunce counsayled the kyng to kepe styll his warre, and they felyng themselfe so wery of the warre; and so spake among themselfe in dyuers maners, nat openly but priuely; they wolde saye the kyng coude make no warre but by the frenchemen, and in lykewise no more coude his father; so they had great enuy at the frenchemen, whiche well appered, for whan the frēche varlettes went out a forragyng, if the spaynishe forrengers were stronger, than they wolde take their forage fro them, and beate them and mayme them, so that complayntes came therof to the kyng; and he blamed therfore his marshall sir Raynolde Lymosyn, and sayde, why haue ye nat prouyded for this mater? the marshall excused hym, and sayde, as god might helpe hym, he knewe nothyng therof, and that he wolde prouyde a remedy fro thensforth; incontynent he stablysshed men of armes to kepe the feldes, that the frenche forēgers rode at their suretie, and also he made a crye and a cōmaundement, that euery man that had any vitayle or prouision to sell, that they shulde bringe it to the felde before saūt yrayns,<sup>b</sup> and they shuld haue a prise reasonable for euery thyng. So than the straungers had largely their parte, for the kyng ordayned that they shulde be serued before all other, wherof the spanyardes had great dyspyte.

So it was the same weke that the kyng of Castell departed fro the sieg of Lisbone, three great shyppes of men of warre, and Englysshe archers, aryued at Lisbone, they were to the nōbre of fyue hundred, one and other, and the thirde parte of them were of the cōpanyons aduenturers, hauyng no wages of no man; some were of Calys, of Chierburge, of Brest in Bretayne, of Mortaygne in Poytou: they had herde of the warre bytwene Castell and Portyngale, and they came to Burdeux, and ther assembled and sayd, let vs go at aduenture into Portyngale, we shall fynde them there that wyll receyue vs and sette vs awarke. Sir Johan Harpedan, who as than was marshall of Burdeux, counsayled thē greatly therto, for he wolde nat they shulde abyde in burdeloys, for they might ther haue done more hurte than good, bycause they were companyons aduenturers, and had nothyng to lese. Of them that aryued at Lisbon, I can nat name all: there were thre squyers englysshe that were their capitayns, one was called Northbery, and another Morbery, and the thirde Huguelyn of Harcerell,<sup>c</sup> and there were none of them paste the age of fyfte yere, and good men of armes, and well vsed in the feates of warr. Of the comyng of these Englysshemen, they of Lisbone were right gladde, and so was the kyng of Portyngale, who wolde se thē; and so they went to the palays where the kyng was, who made them great chere, and demaūded of them if the duke of Lancastre had sent them thyder: Sir, quod Northbery, it is a longe season sythe he had any knowledge of vs, or we of hym; Sir, we be men of dyuers sortes sekynge for aduentures, here be some are come to serue you fro the towne of Calays: by my faithe, quod the kyng, you and they bothe are right hartely welcome, your comyng dothe me  
great

<sup>a</sup> Guesclin.<sup>b</sup> Santarem.<sup>c</sup> Hartsel.

great good and ioye, and shortely I shall sette you awarke; we haue ben here inclosed a gret season, so that we be wery therof, but nowe we wyll be at large in the felde, as well as our enemyes hath been: Sir, quod they, we desyre nothyng els; and sir, we desyre you that shortely we maye se youre enemyes. The kyng made them a dyner in his palays at Lisbone, and cōmaunded that they shulde all be lodged in the cytie at their ease, and to be payed for their wages for thre monethes. Than the kyng set his clerkes awarke, and made letters, and sente thē ouer all his realme, cōmaundyng euey man able to beare harnesse to drawe to Lisbone.

All suche as these letters came vnto obeyed nat, for many abode styll ī their houses: for thre partes of the Realme dissymuled with the kyng, and with theym of Lisbone, bycause they had crowned kyng a bastarde, and spake great wordes ther agaynst priuely; and bycause of the great trouble and dyfferēce that the kyng of Castell and his cōsaille sawe in the realme of Portyngale, made hym to auance hymselfe, to the entent to haue conquered the cōntre, sayenge, howe all shulde be wonne with one dayes journey of batayle, and that yf they of Lisbone might be ouerthrowen, the resydue of the cōntrey wolde nat be sorie of it, but put out of the realme that mayster Denyce,<sup>a</sup> or elles slee hym, and than it shulde be a lande of conquest for hym, for his wyfe was ryght enherytoure; yet with a good wyll kyng Johan of Castell wolde haue lefte the warre, but his people wolde nat suffre him, for they euer gauē hym corage, sayeng, how his quarell and cause was iuste. And whan the kyng of Portyngale sawe that his commaundement was nat obserued, and that moche of his people disobeyed to serue hym, he was right pensyue and malencolyous; he called to hym suche as he trusted best of Lisbone, and of the knyghtes of his house, who dyde their payne to crowne hym, and also they had serued kyng Ferant,<sup>b</sup> as sir Johan Radygos, and sir Johā Teatedore, the lorde of Siegere,<sup>c</sup> and sir Gōme of Tabeston, Ambrise Condricho, and Peter his brother, sir Onges<sup>d</sup> of Nauaret, a knyght of Castell, who was tourned Portyngaloyes, for kyng Johan hadde chased hym out of his realme, and the kyng of Portyngale hadde reteyned hym and made hym a chiefe capitayne: at this counsaile the kyng shewed many thynges, and sayde, Sirs, ye that be here I knowe well ye be my frēdes, for ye haue made me kyng; beholde nowe howe dyuers folkes of my realme excuseth themselves, so that I canne nat gette them to the felde: for yf they had as good wyll to fight with oure enemyes as I haue, I wolde be right gladde therof, but they be nat so dysposed: I se howe they refrayne and dyssymule the mater, wherfore I haue nede of counsaile on this mater, howe I maye order myselfe, and therfore I praye you lette me haue your aduise: Than sir Gōme of Tabeston, a knight of Portyngale, sayde, Sir, I counsaile you for youre honoure, that as soone as ye maye, drawe yourselfe and all youre people into the felde, and aduenture you and we also, and we shall ayde you to dye in the quarell, for ye be our kyng; and if there be any in Portyngale rebelles and disdaynfull to serue you, I saye, and so saythe dyuers of this towne, that it is bycause ye haue nat issued oute to shewe youre face agaynst your enemyes; ye haue the grace as yet to be reputed a valyaunt man in armes, and they saye, that nowe at nede your valyantesse fayleth you; this it is that hath set your enemyes in pride, and hath cooled your subiectes, for if they sawe in you dedes of valure and of prowes, they wolde obey and dout you, and so wolde do your enemyes: by my heed, quod the king, ye say well, and so it is; wherfore sir, I wyll incontynent that euery man make hym redy, for we wyll ryde out shortely and loke on our enemyes: outhur we wyll wyn all at this tyme or lese all. Sir, quod the knyght, it shall be done, for if the journey be yours, and god sende you good fortune, ye shall be kyng of Portyngale for euer, and ye shall be praysed in all straunge realmes, where as the knowledge therof shall come, and to

VOL. II.

O

the

<sup>a</sup> Of Avis.<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>c</sup> Figuier.<sup>d</sup> Monges.

the parfyte herytage of Portyngale ye can nat attayne, but by batayle; ye may take ensample of kyng don Henry your cosyn, father to kyng Johan that nowe is kyng of Castell, of Spaygne, of Tollet,<sup>a</sup> of Galyce, of Corduane,<sup>b</sup> and of Sibyle;<sup>c</sup> he came to all these herytages by batayle, otherwyse he had neuer had them; for ye knowe howe the puissance of the prince of Wales, and of Acquitayne, put kyng don Peter, your cosyn, into possession of all these herytages and landes closed within Spayne, and afterwarde by a iourney of batayle y<sup>e</sup> don Henry had at Nauntuell,<sup>d</sup> agaynst don Peter, who there loste all agayne, and don Henry put in possession as he was before: at whiche iourney he aduentured hymselfe and his, or els he had nat ben kyng ther; in lykewise sir ye must aduenture, if ye thynke to lyue with honour: sir, quod the kyng, ye saye true, I wyll haue none other counsaile but this, for this is profytable for vs.

Thus departed that counsaile. And than it was ordayned, y<sup>e</sup> within thre dayes every man shulde drawe into the feldes, and there to take some ground to abyde their enemyes; those thre dayes they kepte the gates so close of Lisbone, that nother man nor woman coude issue out, for they wolde nat y<sup>e</sup> their enemyes shulde be prey of their entensyon. And whan the Englysshmen that were there, vnderstode that they shulde issue oute and drawe towardes saynt yrayns<sup>e</sup> to loke on their enemyes, they were joyfull; than every man made hym redy, and the archers dressed redy their bowes and arowes, and all other, in euery thyng that they neded: and on a thursdaye they departed out of Lisbone, and that day they lodged by a lytell ryuer syde, a two leages fro Lisbone, with their faces towardes saynt yrayns,<sup>e</sup> and every man sayde with good herte and wyll, that they wolde neuer retourne to Lisbone tyll they had sene their enemyes; sayeng, howe it was better for them that they shulde go and requyre batayle of their enemyes, rather than they shulde come on them: for they said, they had sene and herde dyuers ensamples of requyrers and nat requyrers, and euer of fyue, four hath optayned, and in a maner all the vycories that the englysshmen haue had in Fraūce, they were euer the requyrers; for naturally the secars for batayle are more stronger and coragious in asayinge, than the defendars be. Of this opynyon they were nere all; and some of the burgesses of Lisbone sayde, We were at Bruges, in Flaūders, whan the gauntoyse came before the towne, and requyred batayle agaynst the Erle of Flaunders, and all his puisaunce, and we knowe well that Phylippe Dartuell, Petre de Boyse, Johan Clyquieriell, Fraūces Atreman, and Peter le Myttier,<sup>f</sup> who as than were capitayns of the gauntoyse, they brought oute of Gaunte no mo but seuyn thousande men, and yet they requyred batayle of their enemyes, and ouercame and disconfyted a xi. thousande; this is true, and this was without any treason, but by clene fortune of batayle; this was done on a saturdaye, a leage fro Bruges, as we herde reported the nexte day whan they had wonne the towne of Bruges: so thus they dyde putte in aduenture, outhor to wynde or to lese; and thus must we do if we thynke to haue any good spede. Thus these lisbonoyse that thursdaye spake one to another: and whan the kyng was enformed of their wordes, and of their great confort, he had great ioye.

And on the Friday in the mornynge, they sowned their trumpettes and made them redy, and toke the waye on the right hāde, folowyng the ryuer and the playne cowntre, for their caryaȝe that folowed them, and so rode that daye four leages. That daye tidynges cāe to the kyng of Castell, where he laye at saynte yrayns,<sup>e</sup> that the Portyngalois, and the Lisbonoyes, were cōnyng towardes hym. These tidynges anone were spredde abrode in the host, wherof the Spayngiardes, Frenchemen, and Gascoyns, had great

<sup>a</sup> Toledo.<sup>b</sup> Cordova.<sup>c</sup> Seville.  
<sup>e</sup> Le Nuitre.<sup>d</sup> Montiel.<sup>e</sup> Santarem.

great ioye, and sayde: beholde yonder Lisbonoyes be valyant men, sithe they come to seke for batayle; shortly let vs go into the felde, and lette vs close them among vs and we maye, to the entent that they retourne nat agayne. Thañe it was ordayned and publysshed in the hoost, that euery man the Saturdaye in the mornynge, a foote and a horsebacke, shuld issue out of saynt yrayns,<sup>a</sup> and drawe towards their ennemyes to fyght with them: euery man made hym redy, and were ioyfull of that journey. And on the saturday in the mornynge they sowned their trumpettes, and the kyng herde masse in the castell, and drake, and than lepte on his horse, and euery man with hym, and so drewe into the felde in good aray of batayle, Sir Raynolde Limosin, marshall of the hoost, formast: and he sente forth the scurrers to aduise the dealyng of their ennemyes, and to se where they were, and what nombre they were of; and the frenchmen sente forth the two squyers, one a Burgonion, and the other a Gascone, the burgonyon was called Wylliam of Mötigny, and he was there with sir Johan of Rey;<sup>b</sup> and they of Gascoyne and Bierne, sent forth the Bertrande of Barge,<sup>c</sup> and they were bothe the same day made knyghtes; and with them rode forth a Chatellayne of Castell, a good man of armes, called Peter Ferant<sup>d</sup> of Medyne, he was on a marueylous light Genet; and whyle these thre rode forth to aduise their enemyes, ¶ resydue of the hoost rode a softe pase, and they were in nombre two thousande speares, knyghtes and squiers, Gascoyns, Burgonyons, Frenchmen, Picardes, and Bretons, as well apoynted and armed as any men might be, and a twötie thousande spanyardes, all a horsbacke; and they had nat rydden forth a bowe shotte but they stode still. On the other syde, the kyng of Portyngale in lykewise had sent forth the thre scurrers to avieu iustely the demeanyng of the sparyardes, wherof two of them were Englysshe squyers, expert men of armes, one called Jaquyne Dartebery,<sup>e</sup> and the other Philippe Barqueston,<sup>f</sup> and with them Ferrant de la Grosse,<sup>g</sup> of Portyngale: they were all well horsed, and rode forth tyll they came to a lytell hyll, and there they might well se the behauyng of the spanyardes; than they returned to the kyng of Portyngale, and to his counsayle, and ther made relacyon of that they had done, and sayd, Sir, we haue ben so farre forward that we haue sene your enemyes; sir, surely they be a great nombre, they are welle a thyrtye thousande horse; therefore sir, take your aduise. Than the kyng demaunded if they rode all in one batayle or nat; Sir, quod they, surelye they be in two batayls. Than the kyng turned hym towarde his people, and sayd aloude, Sirs, nowe aduise you well, for there nedeth nowe no cowardnesse, for we shall fight shortelye, for our enemyes be comyng, and hath gret desyre to fynde vs; and so they shall, for we can nat flye nor retourne; we are issued out of Lisbon a great nombre of people: thynke sirs to do well, and lette vs selle our lyues dere; ye haue made me kyng, this daye shall I se yf the crowne of Portyngale wyll abyde with me peasably or nat; and sirs, of one thyng be ye sure, I shall nat flye, but abyde the aduerture with you: than they all answered, with a good wyll, so be it, and we shall all abyde with you. Than the Englysshe capytayns were called forth, as Northbery, and Hertesell, and other of the that were moost experte in armes; the kyng demaunded of them what counsayle they wolde gyue hym, howe to abyde the aduerture of the batayle, for he sayd, he knewe well they must nedes fyght, for his enemyes aproched faste, and they be in nombre four agaynst one of vs: than the Englyssshmen sayd, Sir, sithe we shall haue bataile, and that they be greater in nombre than we be, wherfore it is a harde partie: we can nat cōquere without we take some aduaūtage of some hedges or bussches: lette vs take suche a groūde as we may fortify, and that they shall nat entre vpon vs so lightly, as they shulde do on the playne felde. Sirs, quod the kyng, ye speke wysely, and it shal be as ye haue deuysed.

O 2

On

<sup>a</sup> Santarem.<sup>b</sup> Rue.<sup>c</sup> Barege.<sup>d</sup> Fernando.<sup>e</sup> James Hartlebury.<sup>f</sup> Bradestan.<sup>g</sup> Fernando de la Gresse.

On this counsaile of the Englysshmen the kyng rested, and ther toke aduysse what groude they might take ; and nat farre of fro them was the towne of Juberothe,<sup>a</sup> a great vyllage : thyder the Lisbonoyes had sent all their prouision, somers and caryages, for it was their entension that night to lodge there, wheder they had batayle or no, if they might scape with honour : and without the towne, a quarter of a leage or therabout, ther was a great abbey of monkes, whyder they of Juberothe,<sup>a</sup> and of other vyllages were wonte to come to here masse, and the churche standeth a lytell oute of the waye in a moote, enuyroned about with great trees, hedges, and bushes : it was a stronge place with a lytell helpe ; than the Englysshmen were called to counsaile to the kyng, for thoughte they were but fewe, yet the kyng wolde folowe moche their aduysse ; thañe they sayde, Sir, we knowe hereby a place, the mynster without Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> among the trees, it standeth in a stronge place, with a lytell amendement and helpe ; and suche as knewe the countre sayd, sir, it is true. Than the kyng sayd, let vs drawe thyder, and let vs order there ourselfe as men of warr ought to do, so that whan oure enemyes come, let thē nat fynde vs vnprouided ; incōtynēt it was done, and so they came wher as the churche was. Than whan the Englysshemen, and sir Monges of Naueret, and dyuers other valyāt men of Portugale, and of Lisbon, had well aduysed the place rōūde about, they sayd, this place is stronge ynough with a lytell helpe, so that we maye here abyde the aduerture : than on the syde nexte the feldes they cutte downe the trees, and layde them one ouer another, to thentent that horsemen shulde nat come with full course on them : they lafte one waye open nat very large, and suche archers and crosbowes as they had, they sette them on euery syde of the waye, and their men of armes all afote in a playne within the way, and the churche on their one syde, and ther was the kynges baners pight vp ; and whan they had thus ordered euery thyng they were in great ioye, and sayd, that if it pleased god they were well, and in suche a place to kepe longe, and to make a good iourney ; than the kyng sayd, Fayre sirs, this day euery man do his parte and thynke nat to flye, for that can nat aueyle vs : we are far of fro Lisbon, and also in the chase there is no recoueryng, for thre wyll slee and beate downe xii. that be flyenge ; therfore shewe this daye that ye be men of prowes, and selle derely your lyues, and ymagyn in yourselfe howe the iourney shal be ours, as it shal be if god be pleased, and than shall we be moche honoured and spoken of in straūge countreis, where as the tidynges shall come, for alwayes the victours be exalted, and they that be disconfyted, disprayed ; and sirs, thynke howe ye haue made me kyng, wherfore ye ought to be the more hardy and coragious ; and of one thyng be ye sure, that as long as this axe endureth in my hādes I shall fight, and if it fayle or breke I shall get another, and shewe myselfe that I wyll mentayne and defende the crowne of Portyn-gale for myselfe, and for the right that I haue by successyon of my brother, the whiche I take on my soule that myne enemyes traueyleth me wrongfully, and that the quarell is myne.

Than all suche as harde the kyng sayd, sir, of your grace and mercy ye admonest vs wyselye, and sir, we shall helpe to ayde and maynteyne that we haue gyuen you, whiche is your owne : Sir, we shall all abyde with you here in this same place, and shall nat departe, without god departe vs ; Sir, make a crye to all youre people, for euery man hath nat herde you speke, cōmaundyng on payne of dethe no man to flye ; and sir, if there be any that are faynt harted to abyde the batayle, let them come forth, and gyue thē leaue to departe fro the other, for one faynt harte may discouraige two dosyn of good men, or els stryke of their heedes in your presens, to gyue ensample to other : the kyng answered, I wyll it be so. Than there were two knightes ordayned to goe and sertche euery cōpany, and to demaunde if any were abashed to abyde the batayle.

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.



taile. The messengers reported to the kyng whan they retourned, that they coude fynde no man but that was redy to abyde the aduerture of batayle; it is so moche the better, quod the kyng. Than the kyng caused all that wolde be made knyghtes to come before hym, and he wolde gyue them the order of knighthod, in the name of god and of saynt George. And as I vnderstāde ther were made a threscore newe knyghtes, wherof the kyng had great ioye, and dyd sette them in the front of the batayle, and sayd to thē, sirs, the order of knighthode is as noble and higlie, as any herte can thynke, and there is no knight that ought to be a coward nor shamefull, but ought to be fierse and hardy as a lyon, whā his helme is on his heed and seyth his ennemyes: and bycause I wolde ye shulde this day shewe prowes wher it ought to be shewed, therefore I ordayne you in the first front of the bataile; and sirs, do so that we maye haue honour and you also, otherwyse your spurres are but yuell set on: and euery knight answered as his tourne fell, as he passed by the kyng, Sir, with the pleasure of god we shall so do, to haue your grace and loue. Thus the portyngalois ordred themselves, and fortified them besyde the church of Juberoth,<sup>3</sup> in Portyngale. That daye there was no Englishman that wolde be made knight, yet they were desyred of the kyng and other, but they excused themselves for that day.

*Of the spanyardes, howe they ordered themselves and their batayle.*

#### CAP. XXXIII.

NOWE let vs retourne to the kyng don Johan of Castell, and of the knyghtes and squyers of Fraūce and of Gascone, who were ther with him: and such as they had sent to aduise their enemyes, retourned agayne and sayd, Sir kyng, and ye lordes and knyghtes here present, we haue rydded so forwarde, that we haue sene oure enemyes, and accordyng as we can iuge, they be nat paste ten thousande men in all, one and other, and they be about the mynster of Juberothe,<sup>3</sup> and ther they be rested and sette in order of batayle, and there they shall be founde, who soeuer wyll seke for them. Than the kyng called to hym his counsayle, and specially the barons and knyghtes of Fraunce, and demaūded of them what was best to do; they answered and sayd, Sir, we thynke it were best let them be fought withall incontynent: we se nothyng elles, for by that is reported they be afrayed and in great doute, bycause they be so farre of fro any fortesse, Lisbonne is farre of a sixe leages, they can nat ronne thyder with their ease, but they shall be ouertaken by ſ waye, without they take the aduātage of the night: therfore sir, we counsayle, sithē ye knowe where they be, order your batayls and go and fyght with them, whyle your people be of good wyll to do well. Than the kyng demaūded of thē of his owne cōntre their opinyons, as of sir Dangonyes<sup>b</sup> Mendant, sir Dygo Parsement, Pier Goussart of Moūtdasque, and Pier Ferrant of Valesque, and of the great mayster of Calatrane: they answered the kyng and sayd, Sir, we haue well harde the knyghtes of Fraunce, howe they wolde haue you hotely to sette on your enemyes: Sir, we wyll that ye knowe and they also, that are we can come to thē it wyll be nyght, for ye se the sonne draweth downe ward, and as yet ye haue nat ordred youre batayls; Sir, therefore we thynke it were good ye taryed tyll the mornynge, and lette vs drawe

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.

<sup>b</sup> In the repetition of Spanish names, Lord Berners is particularly unfortunate; to facilitate the knowledge of this passage, perhaps the best mode is to extract the names of the several noblemen alluded to by Froissart from Johnes' translation, where they occur in the following order: — "Don Gangeles Nunez de Gusman, Don Diego de Mendoza, Peter Gorsales de Mendoza, Peter Lopez d'Alaya, and the grand master of Calatrava.

drawe so nere them, and laye so good spyall in dyuers places, that if they wolde dislodge aboute mydnight and departe, than lette vs also dyslodge, for they can nat flye nor scape vs, the cowntre is so playne, and there is no place to hyde them by Lisbone, whiche we can nat gette with our ease; sir, this counsaile we gyue you. Than the kyng stode styll a lytell and caste downe his loke to the erthe, and after he tourned his regarde on the straügers. Thā the marshall, sir Raynolde Lymosin, sayd, to please the frēchmen, in the langage of Spaygne, to the entent he might the better be vnderstande of euery man, and so turned hym to the spanyardes, suche as had gyuen the kyng that counsaile, Sayeng, and calling euery man by his name, sirs, howe can ye be more sage in batayls, or more vsed in armes, than these valyant knyghtes be that be here present? Howe can ye deuise any thyng beyond them, that shulde be of any valure? for they haue done nothing els all their life dayes, but traueyll fro realme to realme to fynde and to do dedes of armes; Howe can you, or durst you, deuise any thyng agaynst their wordes, whiche are so noble and so highe, for to kepe the honour of the kyng and of his realme, wherin ye haue greater parte than they? For ye haue there your herytages and your bodies, and they haue nothing there but nowe al onely their bodies, whiche they wyll firste and formast put in aduerture, and so they haue desyred of the kyng to haue the first batayle, and the kyng hath graunted them; than regarde their great and noble courage, whan they wyll first of all aduerture thēselfe for you: it shulde seme that ye haue enuy at them, and that ye wolde that profyte nor honour shulde come to them, whiche ye ought nat to do, but to be all of one accorde and wyll; and also, by you and by youre counsaile, the kyng hath ben here in the felde longe at great cost and charge, for hym and for all his, and layne at siege before Lisbone, and coude neuer haue the aduerture of batayle tyll nowe, with hym that writeth hymselfe kyng of Portyngale, wherin he hath no right, for he is a bastarde, and nat dyspensed withall: and now he is in the felde with suche frēdes as he hath, whiche is no great nombre, and if nowe by crafte he shulde agayne withdrawe hymselfe and nat fought withall, ye put yourselfe than in aducture that all the hole hoost shulde ryse on you and slee you, or els that the kyng shulde repute you for traytours, and strike of your heedes, and cōfyske all your landes; therefore I se no better way for you than to be styll, and let them alone that hath sene more than you in suche busynesses, for ye neuer sawe that they haue done, nor neuer shall. And than ŷ kyng loked vp, and by semyng was gladd with those wordes, and the spanyardes were abasshed, and feared they had done gretter trespance than they dyd, for though the marshall reproved them and spake agaynst them, yet they had well spoken, and truely couंसayled the kyng: but what for valyantnesse, and to please the strangers, who desyred batayle, the marshall spake as he dyde.

Than euery man was styll, and the kyng sayd, I wyll in the name of god and saynt James, that our enemyes be fought withall, and all suche as wyll be made knyghtes to cōe forth before me, for I wyll gyue thē thordre of knyghthode, in the honour of god and saynt George. Than ther came forthe many squyers of Frāce, and of Byerne, and there they were made knyghtes of the kynges hande, as sir Roger of Spayne, Edmōde, son to sir Roger: of the cōutie of Foiz, sir Bertrande of Barroge,<sup>a</sup> sir Peter of Salebere, sir Peter of Valentyne, sir Wylliam of Quere, sir Angers of Sollenayre, sir Peter of Vaude, sir Wylliam of Montigny, and of one and other, to the nōbre of a hundred and xl. and ther were certayne barons of Bierne that raysed vp ther first their baners, and also dyuers of Castell, and also sir Johan of Rey.<sup>b</sup> There might haue ben sene amonge these newe knyghtes great noblenesse, and they maynteyned thēselfe so goodly that it was pleasure to beholde thē, for they were a fayre batayle. Than the lorde of Loynghiache,

<sup>a</sup> Barege.<sup>b</sup> Rue.

Loyngiache<sup>a</sup> came before the kyng, and all other that were strangers, whatsoever nacion they were of, so they were no spanyardes, they were all named in the name of strangers; than they said to the kyng, Sir, we be come fro farre partes to serue you: Sir, we requyre you do vs that grace to let vs haue the first batayle; I am content, quod the kyng, in the name of god and sãit James, and saynt George be in your ayde. Than the spanyardes sayd one to another softly, beholde, for goddesssake beholde, howe our kyng putteth all his truste in these frēchmen, he hath no parlyte trust in none other; they shall haue the first batayle, they prayse vs nat so moche ý they wyll take vs with them, they wyll do their dede by themselfe, and than lette vs do ours be ourselfe, let vs let them alone with their enterprise; they haue made their auaunt howe they be stronge ynough to discomfyte the Portugaloy; lette it be so, we are content, but it were good we demaunded of the kyng, wheder he wyll abyde with vs, or els go with the frenchemen. So therupon they were long in murmuryng, wheder they shulde demaūde it, or els be styll, for they douted greatly the wordes of sir Raynolde Lymosin; howebeit, all thynges consydrēd, they thought it none yuell to demaunde hym the questyon. Than sixe of the moost notablist of them wente to the kyng, and enclyned themselfe, and sayd,

Right noble kyng, we se and vnderstande well by aparent signes, that this day ye shall haue batayle with youre enemyes, god sende grace it be to your honoure and vycorie, as we greatly desyre; Sir, we wolde knowe wheder your pleasure lyeth, to be amonge the frenchmen, or els with vs: Fayre sirs, quod the kyng, though I haue graunted the first batayle to these knightes and squyers straūgers, who are come farre of to serue me, and are valyant and expert men in warres, yet for all that I renounce you nat, for I wyll be and abyde amonge you, therfore sirs, helpe to defende me. Of this answer the spanyerdes had great ioy, and were well contented, and sayd, sir, so shall we do, and nat to fayle to dye in the quarell, for sir, we are sworne to you, and so haue promised by the faithe of our bodyes whan ye were crowned; for sir, we loued so well the kyng your father, that we can nat fayle you in any wise: that is our trust, quod the kyng. So thus the kyng of Spayne abode among his owne men, who were well a twentie thousande horsmen, all couered in stele. Sir Raynolde Lymosin was in the first batayle, for it was his right so to be, bycause he was marshall.

The same saturday was a fayre daye, and the sonne was tounred towarde euynsong. Than the first batayle came before Juberoth,<sup>b</sup> where the kyng of Portugale and his men were redy to receyue thē. Of these frenche knightes there were a two thousande speares, as fresshe and as well ordred men as coulde be denyed, and as soone as they sawe their enemyes, they ioyned togyuder lyke men of warre, and aproched in good order tyll they came within a bowe shotte; and at their first comyng ther was a harde rēcountre, for suche as desyred to assayle to wyn grace and prayse entred into the straye way, where the Englysshmen by their policy had fortyfied thē: and bycause thentre was so narowe there was great prease, and great mischeffe to ý assaylātes, for suche englysshe archers as were there shot so holly togyuder, that their arowes pearsed men and horse, and whan the horses were full of arowes they fell one vpon another; than the Englysshmen of armes, the Portugaloy, and Lisbonoyes, came on them cryng their cries, our lady of Portugale, with good speares and sharpe heedes, wherwith they strake and hurte many knightes and squyers. There was the lorde of Lanache,<sup>c</sup> of Bierne, beaten downe, and his baner won and he taken prisoner, and many of his men taken and slayne; also sir Johan of Ree,<sup>c</sup> sir Geffray Richon, sir Geffray of Parteney, and all their cōpanyes

<sup>a</sup> Lingnach.<sup>b</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>c</sup> Rue.

nyes that were entred within the straye: there horses were so hurte with tharchers, that they fell on their maysters, and one vpon another: there these frenchmen were in great danger, for they coude nat helpe one another, for they had no roume to enlarge themselves, nor to fight at their wyll. And whan the Portugaloy's sawe that myschefe fall on the first assaylers they were gladde, and as fresshe and coragious to fyght as any men might be. There was the kyng of Portugale, with his baners before hym, mounted on a good horse, trapped with the armes of Portugale, and he had great ioye to se y myschefe fall on his enemyes: and to confort his people he laughed and sayd a highe, on forthe good men, dede you and fight with good wyll, for if ther be no mo but these we nede nat to feare, and if I knewe euer any thyng in batayle, all these be ours.

Thus the kyng of Portugale reconforted his people, who fought valiätly, and had enclosed in the streight all the first assaylers, of whome ther were many slayne. True it was that this first batayle whiche these knyghtes of Fraüce and of Bierne ledde, had thought to haue ben quickelyer ayded of the spanyerdes than they were, for if the kyng of Castyle and his company, who were a twentie thousande men, had come by another parte and assayed the Portugaloy's, it had been lykely the iourney to haue ben theirs, but they dyde nothyng, wherfore they were to blame and receyued damage; also in dede the frenchmen sette on to soone, but they dyde it to thentent to haue won honoure, and to maynteyne the wordes they had spoken before the kyng: and also as I was enformed, the spanyierdes wolde nat sette on so soone, for they loued nat the frenchmen, for they had said before, lette them alone, they shall finde right well to whōe to speke: these frēchmen ar great vantours and highe mynded, and also our kyng hath no parfite trust but in thē, and sith the kyng wolde they shulde haue the honour of the iourney, let vs suffre them to take it, or els we shall haue all at our entētes. Thus by these meanes the spanyierdes stode styll in a great batayle, and wolde nat go forwarde, whiche was right displeasnt to the kyng, but he coude nat amede it: but the spanyierdes sayd, because ther was none retourned from the batayle, sir, surely these knyghtes of Fraüce haue disconfyted your enemyes, thonour of this iourney is theirs: God gyue grace, quod the kyng, that it be so, let vs ryde than somewhat forwarde: than they rode a crosbowe shotte forwarde, and than agayne rested: it was a great beautie to se them, they were so well mouëd and armed. And in the mean season the frenchmen fought, and suche as had leysar to alight fought valiätly; dyuers knyghtes and squyers of eyther partie dyd many feates of armes one vpon another, and whan their speares fayled, they toke axes and gaue many great strokes on the helmes, sleyng and maymyng eche other.

Whosoever were in suche case of armes as the frenchmen and portugaloy's were at Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> must abyde the aduerture as they dyde, without they wolde flye away, and in flyeng there is more paryll than to abyde the batayle, for in flyeng lightly are moost slayne, and in batayle whan one seith he is ouermatched, he yeldeth hymselfe prisoner. It can nat be said but that the knyghtes of Fraunce, of Bretayne, of Burgoyne, and of Byerne, but that right valiantly fought: but at their first encountre they were hardly handled, and all that was by the counsayle of the Englysshmen to fortyfie their place. So at this first batayle the portugaloy's were strōger than their enemyes, so they were all taken or slayne, but fewe that were sauēd; so that there were at that firste brunt a thousande knyghtes and squyers taken prisoners, wherof the portugaloy's were ioyfull, and thought as that day to haue no more batayle, and so made good chere to their prisoners, and euery man sayd to their prisoners, Sirs, be nat abashed, for ye are won by clene feate of armes: we shall kepe you good company, as we wolde ye shuld do, if ye hadde

vs

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.

vs in lyke case: ye shall come to Lisbonne and refresshe you there, and shal be at your ease; and they thanked them when they sawe none other bote. And so there some were put to their fynauce incontynent, and some wolde abyde their aduenture, for they ymagined that the kynge of Spaygne with his great armye wolde shortly come and delyuer them.

*Howe the frenche knightes and gascoyns, suche as were taken prisoners at Juberoth<sup>2</sup> by the portugaloyes, were slayne of their maysters, and none escaped.*

## CAP. XXXV.

TIDYNGES came into the felde to the kyng of Castyle and to his companye, who were aprochyng to Juberoth<sup>2</sup> by thē that fledde, who cāe cryeng with great feare, and sayd: sir kyng, auance yourselfe, for all they of ȝ vowarde are outh taken or slayne; there is no remedy of their delyueraunce, without it be by your puyssaunce. And whan the kyng of Castyle herde those tidynges, he was sore displeased, for he had good cause, for it touched hym nere. Than he cōmaūded to ryde on, and sayd, auāuce forthe baners, in the name of god and saynt George; lette vs ryde to the rescue, sithe our men haue nede therof. Than the spaynierdes began to ryde a better pase cloose toguyder in good order, and by that tyme the sonne was nere downe; thā some sayd, it were best to abyde tyll the mornyng, bycause it was so nere night, they said they coude make but an easy iourney. The kynge wolde they shulde sette on incontynent, and layde his reasons, and said, What, shall we leaue our enemyes in rest nowe they be very, to gyue them leysar to refresshe themselves? whosoouer do gyue that counsaile, loueth nat myne honour. Than they rode forthe, makyng great noyse and brunt, with sownyng of trumpettes and tabours, to abasse therwith their enemyes. Nowe shall I shewe you what the kyng of Portugale dyd and his company.

As soone as they had discōfited the vowarde and taken their prisoners, and that they sawe none other batayle comyng wīn their sight, yet for all that they wolde put no trust in their first vycorie; therfore they sent sixe notable persons to go and auiewe the cōūtre, to se if they shulde haue any more to do. They that rode forthe came and sawe the kynge of Castelles great batayle comyng to them warde, fast approchyng to Juberoth<sup>2</sup>, more than twentie thousande horsmen: than they returned as fast as they might, and sayde all an highe to the people, Sirs, aduyse you well, for as yet we haue done nothing: beholde yonder cometh the kyng of Castyle with his great batayle, with mo than twentie thousande men; there is none taryed behynde. Whā they herde those tidynges, they toke shorte counsaile, whiche was of necessity: than incontynent they ordayne a pyteous dede, for euery man was cōmaūded, on payne of dethe, to slee their prisoners without mercy, noble, gentyll, ryche, nor other, none except. Than the lordes, knightes, and squyers that were prisoners were in a harde case, for there was no prayer that auayled them from the dethe; and so they were slayne, some in oae place and some in another, as they were spredde abrode vnarmed, wenyng to haue ben sauēd, but they were nat. To say trouth, it was great pytie, for euery man slewe his prisoner, and he that dyd nat, other men slewe thē in their handes: and the portugaloyes and the Englysshmen who had gyuen that counsaile, sayd it was better to slee than to be slayne; for if we kylle them nat, whyle we be a fightyng they wyll escape and slee vs, for ther is no trust in a mānes enemy. Thus was slayne by great mischiefe the lord of Long-

VOL. II.

P

nache,

<sup>2</sup> Aljubarota.

nache,<sup>a</sup> sir Peter of Byerne, the lorde of Lespres, the lorde of Byerne, the lorde of Boordes, sir Bertrande of Bergues,<sup>b</sup> the lorde of Morayne, sir Raymōde of Douzanche,<sup>c</sup> sir Johan of Fologe,<sup>d</sup> sir Manaut of Sarenen, sir Peter of Salybers, sir Stephyn Valentyne, sir Raymon Courase, sir Peter Hansame,<sup>e</sup> and to the nombre of thre hundred squyers of Byerne; and of Fraunce, sir Johan of Rue, sir Geffray Richon, sir Geffray Partenay, and diuers other. Lo, beholde the great yuell aduenture that felle that saturday, for they slewe as many good prisoners as wolde well haue ben worthe, one with another, foure hundred thousande frankes.

*Howe the kynge of Castell and all his great batayle were discōfyted by the kyng of Portugale, before a vyllage called Juberoth.<sup>f</sup>*

### C A P. XXXVI.

WHAN the lisbonoise, englysshe, and Portugaloyse had delyuered the place and slayne all their prisoners, neuer a one scaped without he were before conueyed to the vyllage of Juberoth,<sup>f</sup> where as all their caryages were: than they drewe all togyder with a feirse wyll, on the same place where as they were first assayled, and as than the sonne was goyng downe: than the kyng of Castell, in a puysant array, with his baners and penons dysplayed, and mounted on their horses well couered, came on cryeng Castell, and began to entre into þe place that was fortified, and there they were receyued with speres and axes; and at the first comyng, the shotte of arowes greued sore their horses, so that many therby were slayne and ouerthrowen: and all that season the kyng of Castell nor his men knewe nat of the myschiefe that was fallen to the vowarde, nat how they were all slayne; but he beleued they had ben styll prisoners, thynkynge to recouer them agayne. as ye haue herde. There was a harde batayle and a fyerse, and many a man caste to the erthe: the portugalois had no suche aduantage, but and they had nat fought valiantly, they had ben loste and discōfyted; that saued thē, was their enemyes coude nat come on them but by one narowe waye. There the kyng of Portyngale lyghted afote, and toke an axe in his hande, and dyd marueylous in armes, and beate downe a thre or four with his owne handes, so that he was feared, that none durst approche nere him. I shall shew some parte of the cōdycions of the spayniardes.

Trewe it is, at their first setting on they are fierse and coragyous, and of great aduantage, and hyghe mynded if they haue auantage; they fight well a horsbacke, but as soone as they haue caste two or thre dartes, and gyuen a stroke with their swerde, and se that their enemyes be nat discōfyted therwith, than they feare and turne their horses and flye awaye to saue themselfe that best maye: and at this bataile of Juberoth,<sup>f</sup> they vsed the same playe, for they fōude their enemyes harde and strong, and as fresshe in the batayle as though they had done nothyng of all the daye before, wherof they had marueyle, and also that they harde no tidynges of the vowarde, nor where they were become. There the spayniardes that euenyng were in the harde fortune of batayle and perylous for them; for as many as entred into their strength, were by valyantesse and feates of armes all slayne; they toke no man to rāusom, whatsoever he were, noble or other: so the Lisbonoyes had ordayned, for they wolde nat be charged with prisoners. Ther were slayne of them of Castell suche as foloweth: Sir Dangonnes Nendrece,

<sup>a</sup> Lingnach.

<sup>b</sup> Barege.

<sup>c</sup> Donzack.

<sup>d</sup> Afolege.

<sup>e</sup> Hausane.

<sup>f</sup> Aljubarcta.

Nendreche, sir Digo Persement,<sup>a</sup> sir don Peter of Roseront, sir Marc of Versaux, the great maister of Calestrac<sup>b</sup> and his brother, who was that daye made knight, called sir Dygomor,<sup>c</sup> sir Peter Goussart of môdesque, don Peter Goussart of Sonuyll,<sup>d</sup> don Johan Radigo<sup>e</sup> of Rousell, and a threscore baronnes and knightes of Spaygne. At the batayle of Naders,<sup>f</sup> where the prince of Wales disconlyted kyng don Henry of Castell, there were nat slayne so many noble men of Castell as there was at this batayle of Juberoth,<sup>g</sup> whiche was the yere of grace, a thousande thre hûdred fourscore and fyue, on a saturday on oure lady day in August.

Whan the kyng of Castell vnderstode and sawe howe his menne were thus disconfyted, and howe that his vowe was clene disconfyted without recouery, and that sir Raynalt Lymosin was deed, who was his marshall, and sawe howe all his noble chivalry were lost, as well of his owne realme as of Fraunce and elles where, suchie as were come thider to serue him with their good wylles, he was than sore displeasid, and wyste nat what counsaile to take, for he sawe his mē began to flye on euery syde; and he herde howe some sayd to hym, sir, departe hens, it is tyme, the mater is in a herde case; ye can nat alone disconfyte your enemyes, nor recouer your domages; your people flyeth all about; euery man intendeth to saue hymselfe. Sir, saue youreselfe, and ye do wysely: if fortune be this day agaynst you, another tyme it shall be better. The kyng of Castyle beleued cōsaile, and than chaunged his horse and mounted on a fresshe courser, strong and light, wheron no man had rydden before of all daye. Than the kyng strake the horse with his spures, and tounred his backe towarde his enemyes, and toke the waye towarde saynt yrayne,<sup>h</sup> whyder all suche as wolde saue themselfe fledde. The same tyme the kyng of Castell hadde a knight of his house who bare his bassenet, whervpon there was a sercle of golde and stones, valued to twentie thousande frankes. It was ordayned or they went out of saynt yrayne,<sup>h</sup> that this knight shulde beare it tyll they came to the busynesse, and than to delyuer it to the kyng to weare on his heed; but this knight dyd nat so; for whan they came to the ioyninge of the batayle, the prease was so great, that this knyght coude nat cōe to the kyng, nor also he was nat called for, wherfore he aproched nat to fy kyng; and whan he sawe howe his cōpany were discomfyted, and that the portugaloyes optayned the vyctorie, and sawe howe euery man fledde on euery syde, he feared than the leasyng of such a riche iowell, and set than the bassenet on his owne heed and so fledde, but he toke nat fy way to saynt yrayne,<sup>h</sup> but toke another waye to the towne of Arpent. Thus some fledde this way and some that waye, lyke people sore disconfyted and abashed, but the moost parte fledde to saynt yrayne;<sup>h</sup> and that euenyng thyder came the kyng sore abashed.

At this disconfyture of the spaynierdes at Juberothe,<sup>g</sup> where the Portugaloyes and lisboyns optayned the place, ther was a great slaughter of men, and it had ben gretter if they had folowed in the chase; but thennglishmen, whan they sawe the spayniardes tourne their backs, they sayd to the kyng of Portugale and to his men, Sirs, demaunde for your horses and folowe the chase; and all they that be fledde shal be outhter taken or slayne. Naye, nat so, quod the kyng; it suffyceth that we haue done; oure men be very and sore traueyled, and it is nere hande night, we shall nat knowe whyder to go; and though they flye, yet they be a great nombre, and paraduenture they do it to drawe vs out of our strength, and so to haue vs at their ease: let vs this daye kepe

P 2

them

<sup>a</sup> Some of these names have occurred before, and, from their want of resemblance to Spanish appellations, I had extracted from Mr. Johnes' translation, titles, which in sound at least, appeared more likely to be correct: Mr. J. however, in the passage before us, has retained similar names to those before rejected.

<sup>b</sup> Calatrava.

<sup>c</sup> Diego Moro.

<sup>d</sup> Seville.

<sup>e</sup> Rodrigo.

<sup>f</sup> Najara.

<sup>g</sup> Aljubarçota.

<sup>h</sup> Santarem.

them that be deed, and to morowe take other counsaile. By my faythe, sir, quod Hartesell, an Englysshman, the deed bodyes are easy to be kept; they shall neuer do vs any hurte, nor we shall haue of them no profyte: we haue slayne many good prisoners, and we be straungers, and are come farre of to serue you; therfore we wolde fayne wyne somewhat of these calues that flye without wynges, with their banners wauyng with the wynde. Fayre brother, quod the kyng, they that all coueteth all leseth: it is better we be sure, sythe the honour of the vyctorie is ours, and that god hath sende it vs, rather than to putte ourselfe in paryll whan it nedeth nat: we thāke god we haue ynowe to make you all ryche. Thus in this case the busynesse rested.

Thus, as I haue shewed you, felle of the busynesse at Juberothe,<sup>a</sup> where as the kyng of Portugale optayned the vyctorie; and ther were slayne a fyue hundred knyghtes and as many squyers, whiche was great pytie and damage, and about a sixe or seuyn thousande of other men; god haue mercy on their soules. And all that night tyll on the sōday to the hour of prime, the kyng of Portugale and his men remoued nat fro the place that they were in, nor neuer vnarmed thē, but ate a lytell and drāke euery man as they stode, whiche was brought them fro the vyllage of Juberothe:<sup>a</sup> and on the sonday in the mornyng, after the sonne rysyng, the kyng caused twelfe knyghtes to mount on their horses, and to ryde forthe to sertche the felde, to se if there were any newe assemble; and whan they had rydden here and there, they retourned and shewed how they founde no body but deed men. Well, quod the kyng, of them we nede nat to doute. Than it was publysshed to departe thens, and to go to the vyllage of Juberothe,<sup>a</sup> there to abyde all that day and night tyll monday in the mornyng. So thus they departed, and lefte the churche of Juberothe,<sup>a</sup> and went to the vyllage and there lodged, and taryed out all that sondaye and the nexte nyght; and on the monday in the mornyng they couysayed to drawe towarde Lisbone: than they sowned trumpettes to dislodge, and so in gode order they departed and rode towarde Lisbone; and the tuesday the kyng entred into f̄towne with moche people, glorie, and triumphe, and was receyued with processyon, and so brought to his palays; and in ryding through the stretes, the people and chyl-dren made feest and reuerence, and cryed with high voice, Lyue the noble kyng of Portugale, to whome god hath gyuen that grace to haue vyctorie of the puyssaunt kyng of Castyle, and hath disconfyted his enemyes.

Bi this iourney that the kyng of Portugale had of the kyng of Castyle, he felle into suche grace and loue of his countrey and realme of Portugale, so that all suche as before the batayle dyd dissimule with hym. than came all to hym to Lisbone to do to hym their homage, sayeng, howe he was well worthy to lyue, and howe that god loued hym, in that he had disconfyted a more puissaūt kyng than he was himselfe; wherfore he was worthy to beare a crowne. Thus the kyng gatte the grace of his people, and specially of all the commons of the realme.

Nowe let vs a lytell speke of the kyng of Castyle, who, after he was thus disconfyted, went to saynt yrayn,<sup>b</sup> wepyng and lamentyng for his people, and cursyng his harde fortune, that so many noble mē of his owne countre and of Fraunce were slayne in the felde.

The same tyme that he entred into saynt yrayne,<sup>b</sup> yet he knewe nat the damage that he had, but on the sōdaye he knewe it, for he had sende his haraldes, to sertche out the deed bodyes: and he thought before that the moost parte of all suche as the haraldes foūde deed had bene but prisoners and saued alvue; but they were nat, as it appered: than he was so sore displeased and sorie, that no man coulde comforte hym. Whan he herde

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>b</sup> Santarem.



herde the reporte of the harauldes, and knewe the certentie of them that were deed, than he sayd and sware, that he shulde neuer haue ioye sythe so many noble men were deed in his quarell. And after the thirde daye that the kyng had taryed at saynt yrayne,<sup>a</sup> there came to him his knight with his bassenet, who was called sir Martyn Haren,<sup>b</sup> and deliuered the bassenet to the kyng, whiche was valued as ye haue herde before: and before there had ben herde wordes spoken of hym; some said that falsely he was ronne awaye fro the kyng, and wolde neuer retourne agayne. Than the knight kneled downe before the kyng, and excused hymselfe so largely, that the kyng and his counsaile were well content with hym. Than a fyftene dayes after the kyng of Castyle returned to Bergus<sup>c</sup> in Spayne, and gaue euery man leue to departe. Than after ther was meanes and treaties made bytwene the kyng of Castyle and the kyng of Portugale: than a truce was taken fro the feest of saynt Mychaell to the first day of May, bothe by lande and by see: and the deed bodyes slayne at Juberother<sup>d</sup> were buryed in the church of Juberother<sup>d</sup> and in mother churches there about, and the bones of dyuers caryed by their seruautes into their owne countreis.

*Howe a spyrite, called Orthone, serued the lorde of Corasse a long tyme, and brought hym euer tidynges frō all partes of the worlde.*

## CAP. XXXVII.

IT is great marueyle to consyder one thyng, the whiche was shewed me in therle of Foiz house at Ortayse, of hym that enfourmed me of the busynesse at Juberother:<sup>d</sup> he shewed me one thyng that I haue oftentimes thought on sithe, and shall do as longe as I lyue. As this squyer tolde me, that of trouthe the nexte daye after the bataile was thus fought at Juberother,<sup>d</sup> the erle of Foiz knewe it, wherof I had great marueyle; for the sayd sonday, monday, and tuesday, therle was very pensyfe, and so sadde of chere, that no man coulde here a worde of hym; and all the same thre dayes he wolde nat issue out of his chambre, nor speke to any man, though they were neuer so nere about hym; and on the Tuesday at night he called to hym his brother Arnault Guyllyam, and sayde to hym with a softe voyce, Our men hath had to do, wherof I am sorie; for it is come of them by their voyage, as I sayd or they departed. Arnault Guyllyam, who was a sage knyght, and knewe right well his brothers cōdicions, stode styll and gaue none answer: and than therle, who thought to declare his mynde more plainlye (for long he had borne the trouble therof in his herte) spake agayne more hygher thane he dyd before, and sayd, By god, sir Arnault, it is as I saye, and shortly ye shall here tidynges therof; but the countrey of Bierne this hūder yere neuer loste suche a losse at no iourney as they haue done nowe in Portugale. Dyuers knyghtes and squyers that were there present, and herde hym say so, stode styll and durst nat speke, but remembered his wordes; and within a ten dayes after they knewe the trouthe therof by suche as had ben at the busynesse, and there they shewed euery thyng as it was fortunated at Juberother.<sup>d</sup> Than therle renewed agayne his dolour, and all the countrey were in sorowe, for they had loste their parentes, bretherne, chyldren, and frendes. Saynt Mary, quod I to the squyer that shewed me this tale, Howe is it that therle of Foiz coude knowe on one day what was done within a day or two before, beyng so farre of? By my faythe, sir, quod he, as it appered well, he knewe it. Than he is a deuyner, quod I, or els he hath messengers that flyeth with the wynde, or he muste nedes haue some craft. The squyer

<sup>a</sup> Santarem.<sup>b</sup> "This name," says Mr. Johnes in his translation, "is not mentioned in the printed copies until now." This is an error; it occurs in the edition printed by Veiard at Paris, and also in the Lyons' edition.<sup>c</sup> Bergos.<sup>d</sup> Aljubarota.

squyer began to laughe, and sayd, Surely he muste knowe it by some arte of Nigromansye, or otherwyse. To saye the trouthe, we can nat tell howe it is, but by oure ymaginacions. Sir, quod I, suche ymaginacion as ye haue therin, if it please you to shewe me, I wolde be gladde therof; and if it be suche a thyng as ought to be secrete, I shall nat publysshe it, nor as long as I am in this countrie I shall neuer speke worde therof. I praye you therof, quod the squyer, for I wolde nat it shulde be knowne that I shulde speke therof; but I shall shewe you as dyuers men speketh secretelye, whan they be togyder as frendes. Than he drewe me aparte into a corner of the chapell at Ortays, and than began his tale and sayd:

It is well a twentie yeres paste that there was in this countrey a barone, called Raymon, lorde of Corasse, whiche is a seuyn leages fro this towne of Ortaise. This lorde of Corasse had y same tyme a plee at Auygnon before the pope, for the dysmes of his church, agaynst a clerke curate there, the whiche preest was of Cateloygne;<sup>2</sup> he was a great clerke, and claymed to haue ryght of the dysmes in the towne of Corasse, whiche was valued to a hüdred florens by the yere, and the right that he had he shewed and proued it: and by sentence diffynityue, pope Urbane the fyfte, in consistory general, condemned the knight, and gaue iugement with the preest: and of this last iugement he had letters of the pope for his possession, and so rode tyll he came into Bierne, and there shewed his letters and bulles of the popes for his possession of his dismes. The lorde of Corasse had great indignacion at this preest, and cæe to hym and said, mayster Peter, or maister Marten, as his name was, thynkest thou, that by reason of thy letters, that I wyll lese myne herytage? Nat so hardy y thou take any thyng that is myne; if thou do, it shall coste the thy lyfe. Go thy waye into some other place to get the a benefyce; for of myne herytage thou gettest no parte, and ones for alwayes I defende the. The clerke douted the knight, for he was a cruell man, therefore he durste nat parceyuer. Than he thought to retourne to Auygnon, as he dyde; but whan he departed, he came to the knight, the lorde of Corasse, and sayd, Sir, by force and nat by right, ye take away fro me the right of my church, wherin ye greatly hurte your cöscience. I am nat so strong in this cötreie as ye be; but, sir, knowe for trouthe, that as soone as I maye, I shall sende to you suche a champyon, whome ye shall doute more than me. The knight who douted nothyng his thretnynges, sayd, God be with the; do what thou mayst, I doute no more dethe than lyfe; for all thy wordes, I wyll nat lese myne herytage. Thus the clerke departed fro the lorde of Corasse, and went, I can nat tell wheder, to Auygnon or into Cateloygne,<sup>2</sup> and forgate nat the promyse that he had made to the lorde of Corasse or he departed; for afterwarde, whan the knyght thought leest on hym, about a thre monethes after, as the knyght laye on a nyght a bedde in his castell of Corasse with the ladye his wyfe, there came to hym messangers inuisyble, and made a marueylous tempest and noise in the castell, that it semed as though the castell shulde haue fallen downe, and strake gret strokes at his chambre dore, that the good ladye his wyfe was soore afrayde. The knyght herde all, but he spake no worde therof, bycause he wolde shewe no abashed corage, for he was hardy to abyde all aduentures. This noyse and tempest was in sondrie places of y castell, and dured a longe space, and at laste cessed for that nyght. Than the nexte mornyng all the seruautes of the house came to the lorde whan he was rysen, and sayd, Sir, haue you nat herde this night that we haue done? The lorde dyssymuled and sayd, no, I herde nothyng; what haue you herde? Than they shewed him what noyse they hadde herde, and howe all the vessell in the kechyn was ouertourned. Than the lorde began to laughe, and sayde, yea sirs, ye dremed; it was nothyng but the wynde. In the name of god, quod the ladye, I herde it well. The nexte night there was as great  
noyse

<sup>2</sup> Catalonia.

noyse and greater, and suche strokes gyuen at his chambre dore and wyndowes, as all shulde haue broken in peces. The knyght starte vp out of his bedde, and wolde nat lette to demaunde who was at his chambre dore that tyme of y night; and anone he was aunswered by a voyce that sayde, I am here. Quod the knyght, who sent the hyder? The clerke of Catelloygne<sup>a</sup> sent me hyder, quod the voyce, to whom thou dost gret wronge, for thou hast taken fro hym the ryghtes of his benefyce: I wyll nat leaue the in rest tyll thou haste made hym a good accompte, so that he be pleased. Quod the knyght, what is thy name, that arte so good a messangere? Quod he, I am called Orthone. Orthone, quod the knyght, the seruyce of a clerke is lytell profyte for the; he wyll putte the to to moche payne if thou beleue hym. I pray the leaue hym and come and serue me, and I shall gyue the good thanke. Orthone was redy to aunswere, for he was in amours with the knyght, and sayde, Woldest thou fayne haue my seruyce? Yea, truely, quod the knyght, so thou do no hurte to any persone in this house. No more I wyll do, quod Orthon; for I haue no power to do any other yuell but to awake the out of thy slepe or some other. Well, quod the knyght, do as I tell the, and we shall soone agree, and leaue the yuell clerke, for there is no good thyng in him but to put the to payne; therfore, cōe and serue me. Well, quod Orthon, and sythe thou wylte haue me, we are agreed.

So this spyrite Orthone loued so the knight, that oftentimes he wolde cōe and vysite hym whyle he laye in his bedde aslepe, and outhur pull hym by the eare, or els stryke at his chambre dore or wyndowe, to awake hym: and whan the knyght awoke, than he wolde saye, Orthon, let me slepe. Nay, quod Orthone, that wyl I nat do, tyll I haue shewed the suche tidynges as are fallen a late. The lady, the knyghtes wyfe, wolde be sore afrayed that her heer wolde stande vp, and hyde herselfe vnder the clothes. Thañe the knight wolde saye, Why, what tidynges haste thou brought me? Quod Orthone, I am come out of Englande or out of Hungry, or some other place, and yesterdaye I came thens, and suche thynges are fallen or suche other. So thus the lorde of Corasse knewe by Orthon euery thyng that was done in any parte of the worlde: and in this case he contynued a fyue yere, and coude nat kepe his owne counsayle, but at laste discouered it to the erle of Foiz: I shall shewe you howe.

The firste yere the lorde of Corasse came on a daye to Orthayse to the erle of Foiz, and sayd to hym, sir, suche thynges are done in Englade, or in Scotlande, or in Almayne,<sup>b</sup> or in any other country. And euer the erle of Foiz founde his sayeng true, and had great marueyle howe he shulde knowe suche thynges so shortly. And on a tyme therle of Foiz examyned hym so straitly, that the lorde of Corasse shewed hym all toguyder howe he knewe it, and howe he came to hym firste. Whan the Erle of Foiz herde that, he was ioyfull, and sayd, Sir, of Corasse, kepe hym well in your loue; I wolde I hadde suche a messangere; he costeth you nothyng, and ye knowe by hym euery thyng that is done in the worlde. The knight answered and sayd, sir, that is true. Thus the lorde of Corasse was serued with Orthon a long season. I can nat saye if this Orthone hadde any mo maysters or nat; but euery weke, twyse or thrise, he wolde come and vysite the lorde of Corasse, and wolde shewe hym suche tidynges of any thyng that was fallen fro whens he came: and euer the lorde of Corasse, whan he knewe any thyng, he wrote therof euer to the Erle of Foiz, who had great ioy therof, for he was the lorde of the worlde that moost desyred to here newes out of straunge places: and on a tyme the lorde of Corasse was with the erle of Foiz, and the erle demaunded of hym and said, Sir of Corasse, dyd ye euer as yet se your messangere? Naye, surely sir, quod the knyght, nor I neuer desyred it. That is marueyle, quod the Erle; if I were as well acquainted with hym as ye be, I wolde haue desyred to haue  
sene

<sup>a</sup> Catalonia.<sup>b</sup> Germany:

sene hī; wherefore I praye you desyre it of hym, and than to tell me what forme and facyon he is of: I haue herde you say howe he speketh as good gascone as outhur you or I. Truely, sir, quod the knight, so it is; he speketh as well and as fayre as any of vs bothe do: and surely, sir, sith the ye counsaile me, I shall do my payne to se hym and I can; and so on a night as he laye in his bedde with the lady his wyfe, who was so enured to here Orthon, that she was no more afrayde of hym, than came Orthon and pulled the lorde by the eare, who was fast aslepe, and therwith he awoke, and asked who was ther? I am here, quod Orthon. Than he demaüded, fro whens comest thou nowe? I come, quod Orthon, fro Prage in Boesme.<sup>4</sup> Howe farre is that hens? quod the knyght. A threscore dayes journey, quod Orthone. And arte thou come thens so soone? quod the knyght. Ye, truely, quod Orthon; I came as fast as the wynde, or faster. Hast thou than wynges? quod the knight. Nay, truely, quod he. Howe canste thou than flye so faste? quod the knyght. Ye haue nothyng to do to knowe that, quod Orthone. No, quod the knight, I wolde gladly se the, to knowe what forme thou arte of. Well, quod Orthon, ye haue nothyng to do to knowe; it sufficeth you to here me, and I to shewe you tidynges. In faythe, quod the knyght, I wolde loue the moche better, and I myght se the ones. Well, quod Orthone, sir, sith the ye haue so great desyre to se me, the firste thyng that ye se to morowe whan ye ryse out of your bedde, the same shall be I. That is sufficient, quod the lorde: go thy way; I gyue the leaue to departe for this nyght: and the next mornynge the lorde rose, and the lady his wyfe was so afrayd that she durst nat ryse, but fayned herselfe sicke, and sayd she wolde nat ryse. Her husbände wolde haue had her to haue rysen. Sir, quod she, than I shall se Orthone; and I wolde nat se him by my good wyll. Well, quod the knight, I wolde gladly se hym; and so he arose fayre and easely out of his bedde, and sat downe on his bedde syde, wenyng to haue sene orthon in his owne proper forme; but he sawe nothyng wherby he might saye, Lo, yonder is Orthon. So that daye passed, and the nexte night came; and whan the knyght was in his bedde, Orthon came and began to speke, as he was accustomed. Go thy waye, quod the knight; thou arte but a lyer: thou promysest that I shulde haue sene the, and it was nat so. No, quod he, and I shewed myselfe to the. That is nat so, quod the lorde. Why, quod Orthon, whā ye rose out of your bedde sawe you nothyng? Than the lorde studyed a lytell, and aduysed hymselfe well. Yes, truely, quod the knyght, nowe I remembre me, as I satte on my beddes syde, thynkyng on the, I sawe two straves on the pauement tumblyng one vpon another. That same was I, quod Orthone; into that fourme I dyde put myselfe as than. That is nat ynoughe to me, quod the lorde: I praye the putte thyselfe into some other fourme, that I maye better se and knowe the. Well, quod Orthon, ye wyll do so moche, ȳ ye wyll lese me and I go fro you, for ye desyre to moch of me. Naye, quod the knyght, thou shalte nat go fro me; let me se the ones, and I wyll desyre no more. Well, quod Orthone, ye shall se me to morowe: take hede, the firste thyng that ye se after ye be out of your chābre it shal be I. Well, quod the knight, I am than cōtent; go thy way, lette me slepe. And so Orthone departed; and the nexte mornynge the lorde arose and yssued out of his chambre and went to a wyndowe, and loked downe into the courte of the castell, and caste about his eyen; and the firste thyng he sawe was a Sowe, the greatest that euer he sawe, and she semed to be so leane and yuell faoured, that there was nothyng on her but the skynne and the bones, with long eares and a longe leane snout. The lorde of Corasse had marueyle of that leane Sowe, and was wery of ȳ sight of her, and cōmaunded his men to fetche his houndes, and sayd, Lette the dogges hunt her to dethe and deuoure her. His seruauentes opnyed the kenelles and lette out his houndes, and dyde sette them on this sowe; and at the laste the sowe made a great crye, and loked vp to the lorde of Corasse as he loked out at a wyndowe, and so sodaynely vanysshed awaye, no man wyste howe. Than the lorde

of

<sup>4</sup> Bohemia.

of Corasse entred into his chambre right pensyue, and than he remembered hym of Orthon his messangere, and sayd, I repent me that I sette my houdes on hym; it is an aduenture, and euer I here any more of hym, for he sayd to me often tymes, that if I displeased hym, I shulde lese hym. The lorde said trouthe, for neuer after he came into the castell of Corasse; and also the knight dyed the same yere next folowyng. Lo, sir, quod the squyer, thus I haue shewed you the lyfe of Orthone, and howe a season he serued the lorde of Corasse with newe tidynges. It is true, sir, quod I; but nowe as to your firste purpose: Is the erle of Foiz serued with suche a messangere? Surely, quod the squier, it is the ymaginacion of many that he hath suche messagers; for ther is nothyng done in any place, but and he sette his mynde therto, he wyll knowe it, and whan men thynke leest therof: and so dyde he whan the good knyghtes and squyers of this countrey were slayne in Portugale, at Juberothe.<sup>a</sup> Some saythe, the knowledge of suche thynges hath done hym moche profyte; for and there be but the value of a Spone loste in his house, anone he wyll knowe wher it is. So thus than I toke leaue of the squyer and went to other cōpany, but I bare well awaye his tale.

Nowe I wyll leaue to speke of the busynes of Portugale and of Spaygne, and speke of the busynesse in Languedocke and in Fraūce.

*Howe a siege was layde to Breste in Bretaygne, and howe dyuers englysshe fortresses about the countre of Tholous were recouered and turned frenche.*

## C A P. XXXVIII.

IN the season whyle these aduentures thus felle in Castyle and in farr marchesse, it was ordayned by sir Olyuer of Clysson, constable of Fraunce, to make a bastyde before the strong castell of Brest in Bretaygne, whiche the Englysshmen helde, and had done longe, and wolde nat departe, nother for the frenche kyng nor for the duke of Bretayne, to whom the castell shulde partayne. The duke of Berrey and the duke of Burgoyne, and the frenche kynges counsaile, hadde oftentymes written to the duke of Bretayne, desyryng hym to putte to his payne and diligence to gette agayne his enheritaūce, the castell of Brest, for it was gretly to his preindyce to suffre the Englysshmen to enioye it: and the duke, what for the prayer of the sayde lordes, and also bycause he wolde gladly haue had the possession of Brest in his owne hādes, on a tyme he layd siege therto, but nothyng he wan there, and so departed thens, and sayd, howe he coude do nothyng ther; wherat some knyghtes and squyers murmured and sayde, howe the duke dyd but dissimule, for suche as were ther he tooke theym nat for his frendes, nor wolde nat, for all the Peace that was made, that the castell of Brest shulde be in the frenche kynges handes; for if the frenchmen helde it, he shulde nat be lorde therof; yet he had rather it were in the Englysshemens handes, for the Englysshemen durst nat displease him. Wherefore, all thynges cōsydred, the constable of Fraūce thought that the castell of Brest and the townē were nat mete to be enemy to the realme of Fraunce, and thought it nat honorable for the duke nor for the knyghtes of Bretayne to suffre it as they dyde; therefore he ordayned to laye siege therto, with a great nombre of knyghtes and squyers of Bretayne: and he made chiefe capitaynes of them, the lorde of Malestroyt, the vycount of Barleere,<sup>b</sup> Morfane,<sup>c</sup> and the lorde of Roche Duraunt:<sup>d</sup> these foure valyant men wente and layde siege as nere to Brest as they might, and made a bastyde, and closed it about with pales and stones, and tooke fro Brest all their issues, excepte the see, whiche was nat in their power to close fro them: and often tymes

VOL. II.

Q

there

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>b</sup> De la Belliere.<sup>c</sup> Morfonace.<sup>d</sup> Roche-darrien.

there were scrimysshes and feates of armes done before  $\bar{y}$  barryers, for suche as were without, desyringe dedes of armes, wolde cōe valyantly to the barryers, and they within receuyed them as valyantly, so that often there were dyuers hurt on bothe parties; there were but fewe dayes but that some dedes of armes were done.

The same season there was in the marches of Tholousyn a valyant knyght of Fraūce, called sir Galtier Paschac, a good capitayne of men of warre; he was of the nacyon of Berrey, on the fronters of Lymosyn; and or his comynge, the seneschall of Tholous, sir Roger of Spaygne, and sir Hugh of Frodeuyll, and the seneschall of Carcassone, hadde written into Fraunce to the Constable there of the state of the countre of Tholous and Robestan,\* and howe that dyuers of the companyons aduenturers, suche as were yssued out of Lourde and of Castell Cuylllet, and had made warre for the Englysshmen, helde in their handes the fortresses folowyng: as saynt Forget, the Bassere, the Mesnylle, Purpuron, Cōuall, Rochefort, Thedos Julyen,<sup>b</sup> Naueret,<sup>c</sup> and dyuers other, wherby they had so enuyroned the cytie of Tholous, that the people coude nat yssue oute to labour their vynes and landes, nor go on marchandise, but in great paryll, without they had truce, or patesed with them. And of all these castells, the chiefe capitayne was an expert man of warre of Basque,<sup>d</sup> called Espaigoulllet; he dyd many marueylous dedes in armes; he toke on a tyme, by scalyng, the castell of Armayle, whyle the lorde thereof, sir Raymonde, was gone to Tholous, and he kepte it more than a yere; and in the meane season whyle he kepte it, he caused to be made a myne and a caue, whiche went out of the castell into the felde; and whan the caue was made, he closed vp the entre with stones, so that it coude nat be parceuyed that any waye was there vnder the yerthe: and in the same meane season the lorde Raymonde of Armayle treated with Espaygnollet to haue agayne his castell for money. Whan the caue was finysshed, he agreed with the lorde to deluyer vp the castell for two thousande frankes, and he and all his to departe. Than the lorde entred agayne into his castell, and repayred it where it was in defaulte: and a fyftene dayes after Espaignollet, with his cōpany, in a night came to the wode where the yssue of the caue was, and entred into it; and so at the hour of mydnight they toke the castell, and the lorde lyenge in his bedde, and raunsoned hym agayne at two thousande frankes, and than let hym go; but Espaygnollet kepte styll the castell and a good garison, whiche after sore traueyled the countrey, with other of his alyauce and company.

For these maner of people that robbed and pyllid thus in the marches of Tholous, of Rouergue, and there about, vnder the colour of the Englysshmen, therfore thyder was sente sir Gaultier of Paschac, with a certayne nombre of men of armes, to deluyer the countre fro their enemyes: and so he came to Tholous, and sent for the knyghtes and squyers therabout, and wrote to sir Roger of Spaygne, seneschall of Carcassone, who came to serue hym, for sir Gaultier had a cōmissyon generall ouer all the officers of Languedocke; and so all suche as were sent for came with suche nombres as they might make: sir Roger of Spayne came with a threscore speares and a hundred pauesses, and the seneschall of Rouergue and sir Hugh Frodeuyll came with as many or mo. So whan they were all togyder, they were a four C. speares and a M. pauesses: and also there was the sonne of therle of Tereache<sup>e</sup> with a fayre cōpany, the lorde of barbason, sir Benedic of Faguell,<sup>f</sup> and Willyam Caudron,<sup>h</sup> breton and their cōpanyes: so one day they departed fro Tholous, and came before saynt Forgette, and there rested: and there was capitayne a man of Bierne, a great robber, called the bourge of Taylsacke. Whan these lordes and their companyes were come before Forget, they incontynent

went

\* Rabestan.

<sup>b</sup> Le dos-Julian

<sup>c</sup> Nazaret.

<sup>d</sup> Biscay.

<sup>e</sup> Espaignolet.

<sup>f</sup> d'Esterache.

<sup>h</sup> Faingolles.

<sup>h</sup> Conderon.

went to the assaut, and the genoweyes began sore to shote, so ý scant they within durste apere at their defence; but the frenchmen myst of their purpose at this first assaute, and so there they lodged all night and toke their ease, for they had ynunghe wherwith. In the mornyng betymes they armed them through the host, and sowned their trumpettes to the assaute, and so they came in good ordre to the fote of the dyke; he that had sene than (the men of armes entre into the dykes, with their targettes ouer their heedes, and tasted the dyke with their speares, and passed ouer to the fote of the wall), wolde haue taken great pleasur. When the first were passed ouer the dyke, and had shewed the way to other, than other folowed with great wyll, for it had ben great blame to them if they had than taryed behynde and their cōpany before: and suche as folowed them had matockes and pykes in their hādes to pearse withall the walles, and couered their heedes with targettes to receyue the stones that were caste downe, whiche were no great plentie, for the genoweyes shotte so surely with their crosbowes, that non durste put out their heedes to their defence, for the genoweyes crosbowes shotte so surely, that lightly they myst nat of their leuell, so that ther were many within sore hurte with their quarells, in so moche that they doughted sore the shotte. This saute was so sore contynued, that the mynours ouerthrewe a pane of the walle: than they within were sore abashed, and wolde than haue yelded them, their lyues saued; but their enemyes had no luste therto, for they felle into so good handes, that they were all slayne, for sir Galtier, their capitayne, cōmaūded that it shulde so be: so there were none taken to mercy, but all slayne, nat one that scaped. Thus these lordes of Fraunce at their first comyng had the castell of Forget, and sir Gaultier deluyered it to the owner therof, who loste it the same yere before for lacke of good kepyng, as dyuers other castelles had bene before in Fraunce.

After the takyng of the castell of Forget, and that sir Gaultier had deluyered it to ý owner, the knight newe repayred it where as nede was, for the frenchemen had sore dystroyed it in ý assayling therof or it were won. Than they went to the castell of Basse,<sup>2</sup> of whiche Ernaltō of Batefoyle was capitayn, and had greatly fortified it, for he thought the frenchemen wolde visyte hym, as they dyde: and whan the frenchemen came thyder, they layde siege therto, and than aduysed on whiche parte they might best for their aduantage gyue assaute, and determyned on a place; and so on a day they came to the saut on that parte as they thought moost feeble. There the Genoweyes crosbowes were ordayned to shote, and the assauters behynde thē; and they acquyted themselfe truely in doying of their feate, for they shot so rudely at them within, that none durst shewe thēselfe. Ernaltō of Batefoyle was at ý gate where there was a great assaute, and there he dyde marueylous in armes, so moche, that his enemyes sayd among themselfe, Beholde yonder is a squyer of great herte, on whome his harnesse is well employed, for he valyantly defended hymselfe; it were well done some bodye to shewe hym, that it were best for hym to yelde vp the castell, and to departe some where elles; and to shewe hym, that if sir Gaultier of Paschac wyne hym parforce, ther is no man can saue hym fro the dethe, for he hath sworne as many as he wynneth parforce shall all dye or be hanged. Than the seneschall of Tholous cōmaūded a squyer of Gascoyne, called Wylyyam Alyedell, who knewe ryght well Ernaltō, for he had ben dyuers tymes with hym in armes as his companion, and he was glatte to go, for he was lothe that Ernaltō shulde haue hadde any domage, if he myght do hym any good; and so he came to the assaute, and made token that he wolde speke with Ernaltō for his great profyte; and he answered he was content. Than the saut rested on that syde, but nat on the other parte. Than this Wylliam sayd, Ernaltō, ye are happy, for certayne of yonder lordes haue sende me to you, for they haue pyte

<sup>2</sup> Bassere.

on you; for if ye be taken parforce, there is no remedy but dethe. Oure soueraygne capitayne hath so ordayned, that you nor none of yours shall scape dethe, but to be serued as they were of saynt Forget; therfore they and I also wolde cōsayle you to yelde vp ŷ fortresse, rather than to abyde thaduecture; for of one thyng ye may be sure, we shall nat departe hens tyll ye be taken. Than Ernaltōn sayd, William, I knowe well thoghte at this tyme ye be agaynst me, that ye wolde nat cōsayle me to any thyng to my dishonour. Knowe for trouthe, that if I rendre vp the holde, it shal be so that I and all myne may safely departe, and carye with vs as moche as we maye, and to be safely conducted to the castell of Lourde. On this condycion I wyll herken to you, or elles nat. Sir, quod Wylliam, I haue nat so farre charge to comen with you, but gladly I shal speke for you to my maisters; and so he retourned to the seneschall of Tholous, and shewed hym all these wordes. Than sir Hughe of Frodeuyll sayd, Lette vs go and speke with sir Gaultier, for I can nat tell what he wyll do: sithe I haue gone so farr in the mater, I wyll se what he will do. Than they came to sir Gaultier, who was styll at the saute, and sir Hughe of Frodeuyll sayd, Sir Gaultier, I haue treated with the capitayne of the castel, and he is well wyllynge to yelde vp the castell to vs as it is, so that he and all his maye go quite with all that they maye cary with them, and to be safely conducted to the castell of Lourde; therfore nowe, sir, loke what ye wyll do, if we shulde lese one of our knyghtes or squyers, outhur by shotte or cast of stones, or by any perylous accident it shulde be gretter damage than we can haue any profyte by puttyng of them to dethe whan we haue won them, whiche is nat yet, for or they be won it wyll coste vs some of our people. Sir, that is true, quod the seneschall of Carcassone; suche assautes can nat be without some dethe and sore hurtyng.

To those wordes sir Galtier of paschac sayd, I am well cōtent; cease the assaut; we haue more to do in other places: thus lytell and lytell we shall wyinne the castelles that these pyllers holde, though they departe nowe with a good market. Paradventure hereafter they maye fall agayne in our hādes, and than one tyme they shall paye for all; euer yuell dedes come to an yuell ende. In my dayes I haue hanged and drowned of suche robbers fyue hundred; and hereafter they shall come to the same pricke. Than they that went on this treatie came agayne to the baryers to Ernaltōn Batefoyle: than Wylliam sayd, by my faithe, Ernaltōn, you and all yours maye thāke god and sir Hughe of Frodeuyll, for he hath made your treatie as ye demaunde. Ye may departe safely and all yours, and beare awaye as moche as ye can, and ye shall be safely brought to Lourde. Well, quod Ernaltōn, I am contente, sythe it wyll be no better. Knowe for trouthe, Wylliam, I shall departe fro this fortresse sore agaynst my wyll, for I haue had great profite therby syth I was taken at the bridge at Turnay besyde Maluoysin, by the Burge of spaygne, who had of me for my raūsome two thousande frankes. To saye trouthe, I haue well recouered myself here, and euer haue ben here in these fronters, whiche I loue well; for whan so euer I rode forthe, lyghtly I founde some good aucture, outhur by some marchaūt of Robeston<sup>†</sup> of Tholous, or of Rodes; for the moost parte euer I gatte somewhat. Than Wylliam sayd, sir, I beleue you well; but and ye wyll become frenche, I vndertake ye shal be clene pardoned, and to haue a thousande frākes gyuen you, and I wyll become youre suretie that ye shal be euer good frenche, if ye wyll swere yourselfe so to be. Sir, quod Ernaltōn, I thanke you; but as for that I wyll nat, for I wyll be still as yet Englysshe; as god helpe me, I can nat fynde in my herte to be good frenche. Returne to your company, and shewe them that this daye we wyll order oure busynesse, and to morowe in the mornyng we shall delyuer vp the castell and departe; wherfore se that oure conducte be redy.

So

† Rabestan.



So than ceased the saute, and the frenchemen went to their lodgynges, and so passed the night at their ease, they hadde well wherwith; and in the morryng, whan euery man was redy in the boost, and that they were redy y<sup>e</sup> shulde conducte the cōpanyons to the castell of lourde, than sir Hughe Frodeuyll, seneschall of Tholous, went to take possession of the castell; and whan he came to the castell, he founde Ernallon of Bateloyle and his company redy to departe, and had trussed all that they wolde cary. Than a knight of Lourde, called sir Monant of Salenges, coueeyed thē safely wheder they wolde. Thus the castell of Basse<sup>a</sup> was wonne, and a squyer of the cōuntry had the keyngge therof gyuen hym, and of the cōuntry, who was called Bertram of Montesquyeu. Than these frēchmen went forthe, and came to the castell of Pulpuron, wherof the lytell Mechyne was souerayne capitayn, who had done great damage to the cōntre therabout; wherfore sir Galter of paschac sware by his fathers soule, y<sup>e</sup> non ther shuld be take to mercy nor raūsone, but all to be hanged if he might gette thē; and so there he layd his siege. This castell stode on a rocke, a goodly castell to loke on; and there sir Gaultier sware neuer to departe thens tyll he hadde them at his pleasure: ther were many assautes, but they wan but lytell, for the castell was well defended. Well, quod sir Galtier, I can nat tell howe it wyll be: the frenche kyng is ryche ynough to kepe a sege here, but as for me, I wyll nat departe in one yere, without I haue the castell at my pleasure: and suche as were with hym beleued hym well, and ordred themselfe thereafter; and I shall shewe you howe it fortunod. Whan the capitayns within sawe surely howe the frenchmen wolde nat departe thens tyll they had the castell, whatsoever it cost them, than they douted thē, and aduysed to departe thens, wheder the frēchmen wolde or nat, which they might well do, for they hadde a caue that went out of the castell vnder the groūde into a wode halfe a leage of: so whan Angerot, capiteyne of the castell, sawe the dealyng of the frenchmen, and knewe howe they had promised nat to departe thens tyll they had the castell, outhur by famyne or otherwise, than he doutod and sayd to his companye, Sirs, I se well sir Gaultier of Paschac hath vs greatly in hated, and I feare by longe siege he shulde famyssh vs, and that to do he nedeth nat but to make a bastyde, and let it be kept but with a hūdred speares, so that none of vs than dare departe; therefore I shall shewe you what we shall do. Lette vs take all that we haue, and in the nyght we wyll departe by this caue vnder the erthe, which is fayre and great, and without faut, it shall bring vs into a wode a leage hens; than shall we be out of all paretell, for there is no man in the host that knoweth it. They all agreed to his counsayle; and in a night, whan they hadde all trussed, than they toke torches and fagottes, and entred into the caue, whiche was fayre and clere, and so they issued out therof into a wode halfe a leage from the castell. Than ther were ynowe that knewe the wayes to other forterresses in Lymosin and in Rouergue and some of them, whan they were oute of all paretelles, toke other wayes, and sayd, howe they wolde folowe the warres no lengar. Angerot and fyue with hym wente to a towne and a castell in Piergourt,<sup>b</sup> called Mountroyall, and the lorde therof receyued hym swetely, for he and all his landes were good englysshe, nor he wolde neuer tourne frenche whan other dyd; howbeit, there were dyuers other of his opynion.

Thus they of the garyson of Pulpuron sauod themselfe, and left no persone behynde them, and were nere ther as they wolde be, or the frenchmen knewe of their departyng. The thirde day after their departyng the frēchmen ordayned to gyue assaut, and they had made an ingyn with four stages, and in euery stage there might be twentie crosbowes; and whan all was redy, they set forthe this ingyn, the whiche they named, Passe on before,<sup>c</sup> to the weykest syde of the castell, and the genoways within the ingyn; and whan

<sup>a</sup> Bassere.<sup>b</sup> Perigord.<sup>c</sup> "Passavant."

whan it was there as they wolde haue it, there they slotte agaynst the castell, and no body dyde appere; than anone they perceyued that the castell was voyde, bycause no body came to their defece: than they ceased their shot, because they wolde nat lese their quarelles: than they came downe fro the ingyn, and came to ſ capitayns, who had marueyle what they ment, and than they sayd, Sirs, without fayle there is no body within the castell: Howe knowe you that? quod sir Gaultier: Sir, quod they, we knowe it, for there is none appereth at their defence for all our shot. Than they were ordayned ladders to sette vp agaynst the walles, and they that moued on them passed ouer the walles, and entred into the castell, and founde no creature therin, and than they wente to the gate, and there they founde a great bundell of kayes, and among other they founde the kaye of the gate and opnyed it, and than all the barryers one after another, wherof the lordes had great marueyle, and specially sir Gaultier of Paschac; he wende they had ben departed out of the castell by enchaütment, and than demaunded of them that were about hym howe it might be; the seneschall of Tholous sayd to hym, Sir, surely they can nat be thus gone, without they haue some secrete waye vnder the erthe, which I thyнке there be. Thannc all the castell was sought in euery corner where any suche waye shulde be: there they founde in a Cellar the mouthe of the alley open, and there all the lordes dyde beholde it; and sir Galtier had great marueyle therof, and demaunded of the Seneschall of Tholous if he knewe before of any suche caue: sir, quod he, I haue herde or this therof, but I thought nothyng that they wolde haue thus departed by that waye: By my faythe, quod sir Gaultier, they be gone the same waye; haue the castelles of this countre suche ordynaunce? Sir, quod sir Hughe, there be dyuers suche castelles, as of olde tyme parteyned to Raynalt of Montabon, that hath suche coueyaüce, for whan he and his bretherne kepte warre agaynst kynge Charlemayne of Fraunce, they were made all after this maner by the counsayle and aduse of Maugis theyr cosyn; for when ſ kynge besyged them by puyssaunce, and that they sawe they coulde not resyst hym, then they wolde departe without ony leue takynge, by meanes of these passages vnder the erthe. Surely, sayd syr Brews,<sup>a</sup> I lawde gretly ſ ordynaunce, I can not say yf euer I shall haue any warre agaynst me or not, other by kynge, duke, or by ony other neyghboure that I haue; but as soone as I am retourned into my countrey I shall cause suche a myne to be made in my castell of Pasac. So thus they toke possessyon of the castell, and set therin men of warre to kepe there a garyson: and so then they wente further towardes ſ castell of Conuall, where Espaygnolet of papercaw basque<sup>b</sup> was capytayne, and with hym a good nombre of these pylers and robbers.

So these lordes and theyr company came to the garyson of Conuall, in Rabestan, and layde syege therto, and then syr Gaultier demaunded of the seneschall of Tholous, yf Conuall aunycently perteyned to raynalte of Mountalban; and he sayd yes: then there is a caue vnder the grounde, sayd syr Gaultier: syr, that is true, sayd syr Brews,<sup>c</sup> for by reason therof Espaygnolet wanne it the seconde tyme, and the owner within it. Then syr Gaultier sente for ſ knyght that was owner therof, and sayd to hym, syr, it were good ye enfourmed vs of the myne ſ is out of this castell, and the yssue therof. Then syr Raymonde of Conuall sayd, syr, surely there is a way vnder the grounde, for thereby I was taken, and lost this my castel; it was before of longe tyme decayed and destroyed, but these robbers newe repayred it, and by ſ way they came on me; and syr, the yssue therof is in a wood not farre hence: wel, sayd syr Gaultier, all is well. And so iiii. dayes after he wente to the same wood, and had with hym CC. men wel armed; and when he sawe the hole where the yssue was, he caused the erthe and bushes to be auoyded, and then he lyghted vp many fagottes, and sayd to them ſ were ordeyned to

go

<sup>a</sup> Walter.<sup>b</sup> A Biscayan.<sup>c</sup> Hugh.

go into the caue, syrs, folowe this caue, and it shal brynge you into the hall of Conuall, and there ye shal fynde a dore: breke it vp, ye are stronge ynough so to do, and to fyght with them within: so they entred and came to ſ grece nere to the hall dore in ſ castell, then with grete axes they strake at the dore, and by ſ tyme it was nere nyght they within the castell made good watche, and perceyued howe by the myne they wolde haue entred into the castell, and Espaygnolet was goynge to his rest; then he came thyder, and there they cast stones, benches, and tymbre, before the caue dore, to ſ entente that none sholde entre there, though the dore were broken vp. This was done, for other shyfte had they none of defence; but for all that, they within the myne anone brake the dore all to peces, and yet were nener the nere. for then they had more to do then they had before; and whē they sawe it was impossible for them to entre there, they returned agayne to the oost, and by that tyme it was mydnyght: thē they shewed what they had founde, and howe they of Conuall had perceyued them, and had so fortifyed the caue dore, that it was not possyble to entre by that way into the castell.

*Howe the castelles of Conuall, of Bygore, and of Mesnyll, were taken, and all they within taken, slayne, and hanged.*

## CAP. XXXIX.

THEN syr Gaultyer of Paschat sente to Basse<sup>b</sup> for the grete engyne, whiche was taken downe and brought thyther, and raysed vp on his wheles as it sholde be, and also they apparelled other instrumentes for ſ assawte; and when al was redy, then syr Gaultyer, who gretly desyred to wyne this castell, caused his Trompettes to sowne to the assawte: there was the seneshall of Tholouse with his company on ſ one syde, and syr Roger of spayne, seneshal of Carcassō, on the other syde; also there was the lorde of Barbazan, syr Benedic, and lorde of Benoch, the lorde of the countye of Desterac, syr Raymonde of lysle, and other knyghtes and squyers of the countrey; then they began the sawte, and they within to defende themselfe, whiche was nede, for they sawe themselfe in a harde parte; they knewe wel howe syr Gaultyer wolde take none to mercy, therefore they thought to defende themselfe as longe as they myght, and to sell theyr lyues derely: there the Geneways crossebowes shot sore, and hurte many within, so that there were none within but doubted gretely. And there syr Gaultyer of Paschat dyd meruayles in armes, and sayd to his company, what syrs, shall these rascalles holde vs in hande all this daye thus? yf it were agaynste good men of armes I wolde not meruayle, for in them were mo feates of warre then in these rascalles that be within: it is myne entent to dyne within the castell; nowe it shall be sene yf ye wyll accomplyshe my desyre: with those wordes suche as desyred his good wyl aduauced themselfe forthe, they toke many ladders and set them vp agaynst the wall, where as the engyne stode with the crossebowes, who shot so fyersly that none within durst shew themselfe. Thus by clene assawte ſ Frensshemen entred into ſ castel of Conuall, theyr swordes in theyr handes, chasyng theyr enemyes, and there were many slayne, and the other taken; then euery mā entred in at ſ gates: then it was demanded of syr Gaultyer what sholde be done with thē that were taken: By saynt George, sayd he, I wyll they be all hanged; and incontynent his commaundement was done, and Espaygnolet began fyrst. So the lordes dynd in the castel, and the other people in the towne, and there they taryed all that

<sup>a</sup> "Aux degrés" in the French; i. e. "to the steps."

<sup>b</sup> Bassere.

<sup>c</sup> "The son of the Count."

that day: and syr Gaultyer delyuered agayne to f̄y lorde of Conuall his towne and castell, and then ordeyned to departe thens.

Thus after the takyng of the castell of Conuall, as ye haue herde, the Frensshmen wente to another holde, called Mastull, whiche had done grete damage to f̄y countrey, with other, and there they made assawte, and they win defended themselves, but f̄y was not longe, for by clene assawte they were wonne, and the castell also, and all that was within slayne and hanged vp. And when they of Rotchefort, and of other castelles, knewe howe syr Gaultyer had wonne so many castelles, and that he toke none to mercy, but outhur slayne or hanged, they doubted moche for comyng to the same ende, wherefore they departed in f̄y nyght tyme; I can not tell whether they wente vnder the grounde or aboue, for bytwene f̄y castell of Rochefort, and the castell of Royx, were caues vnder the erthe, for aunccyently they perteyned to Raynolde of Mountalban: So the Frensshmen founde these castelles clene voyde when they came thyder; then they newly re-peopled it with men of warre and prouysyon. Then they toke theyr way towarde Tholous to go into Bygore, for on f̄y fronter of Tarbe there were two castelles, the one called Thedos Julyan,<sup>a</sup> and the other Nauaret,<sup>b</sup> whiche greteuly trauayled the countrey, and f̄y good towne of Tarbe, and the londes of the lorde Danchlyn.

When syr Gaultyer of Pasac, and the lordes of Fraunce, and of Languedoc, had well refreshed them in the Cyte of Tholous, then they departed and toke the waye into Bygore, and so came before the castell of le dos Julyā,<sup>a</sup> and there taryed and sayd they wolde goo no further tyll they had wonne it; thyder came to syr Gaultyer of Pasac, f̄y Seneshal of Nobesan,<sup>c</sup> perteynyng to the Erle of Foys, for syr Gaultyer had sente for hym to helpe to dryue out of the countrey the pyllers and robbers, who had renne as well in the countrey of Nobessan,<sup>c</sup> as in other places; also f̄y Erle of Foyz consented that he sholde so do, or elles he durst not haue done so; they were before dos Julyā<sup>a</sup> xv. dayes or they had it; f̄y castell was stronge, and a good capytayne therin, a squyer of Gascoyn, called Bruer de Brome.<sup>d</sup>

Howbeit, they at the last hadde it, not by assawte, but by treaty, they within departed, theyr lyues and goodes saued; and also they were safely conuayed to Lowrde, by a squyre called Bertram of Moundyghen. And when these lordes of Fraunce had Dos Julyen, then they toke aduise whether they myght kepe it styll, or rase it downe to the erthe; then it was counsayled to bete it downe, bycause of them of Lowrde, who were crafty and subtile, fearyng f̄y whē they sholde be gone, that they wolde wyne it agayne; so it was betten downe, and as yet the stoness lye on a hepe, and lykely neuer to be buylded agayne. Thus became of Dos Julyan.<sup>a</sup> Thē they wente before Nauaret,<sup>b</sup> wherein there was also companyons aduēturers, who had kepte it more then a yere; and when they knewe howe they of dos Julyā<sup>a</sup> were departed, in lyke wyse dyde they, and had a sauconduyte, and wente to lowrde, whiche was theyr chefe refuge, for they knewe well no man wolde seke thē there, without they wolde lese theyr payne, for f̄y castell of Lowrde was impossyble to be taken by force.

When the Frensshemen had rased the castel of Dos Julyā,<sup>a</sup> then they wente to Nauaret,<sup>b</sup> and founde it all voyde; then it was ordeyned to be beten downe, and so it was, wherof they of Tarbe were nothyng myscontent, for f̄y garyson had done thē grete damage; then they wente to the castell of Dauchen,<sup>c</sup> in Bygore, standyng amonge the mountaynes, in the entre of Byerne: and there they were a xv. dayes, and in that season made dyuers assawtes, and wanne the base courte and al theyr horses, but there was a stronge towre on the rocke f̄y coulde not be wonne: and whē the lordes sawe howe they

<sup>a</sup> Le dos-Julian.<sup>b</sup> Nazaret.<sup>c</sup> Donnezan.—*Johnes.*<sup>d</sup> Brunemote.<sup>e</sup> Auch.

they lost there but theyr payne, and ŷ Wyllyam Morenton, who kepte ŷ holde, wolde notyelde it vp, nor sell it, nor herkē to no treatye, thē they departed and retourned to Tarbe: and then syr Gaultyer of Passac gaue leue to all his men of warre to departe, and they were payde of theyr wages, or had suffycient sygnement, so ŷ they were pleased; and he wente to Carcasson, and therabout, and refreshed hym. And whyle he lay there, tydynges came to hym out of Fraunce, and a cōmaundement fro the kyng, that he sholde drawe to the garyson of Bounteuyll Xainton,<sup>a</sup> upon the marches of Burdeloys and Poictou, whiche garyson was kepte by a capytayne called Saynt Foy, a gascoyne: and it was sayd in Fraunce, ŷ syr Johñ Harpedan, seneshall of Burdeaus, made a grete assemble of men of warre at Lyborne, to rayse the bastydes ŷ they of Poictou, and of Xainton, hadde layde before Bounteuyll.<sup>a</sup> To the kynges commaundement obeyed syr Gaultyer, as it was reason, and toke with hym a lx. speres, and a C. crosse bowes, Geneuoy, and so departed fro Carcasson, and passed by Rouergue, Agen, and costed Pierregourt,<sup>b</sup> and so came to Bounteuyll,<sup>c</sup> and founde there the seneshalles of Rochel, of Poictou, of Pierregourt,<sup>b</sup> and of Dagen, and a grete nombre o men of warre.

In farre countres it maye be well meruayled of the noble royalme of Fraunce, therin is so many cytees, townes, castelles, whiche be without nombre, and that as well in farre partyes therof, as in the harte of the royalme; ye shall fynde goynge from the cyte of Tholous, to the cyte of Burdeaus, stondynge on the ryuer of Garon, Fyrst, Langurant, Rions, Caldiac,<sup>c</sup> Bangou, saynt Macayre, the castell of Dorthé, Candoch, Geronde, larull myllant, saynt Basyll, Marmande, Cōmont, Tannus, Lemnas, Dagenes, Montour, Agyllon, Thouars, porte saynt Mary, Clermont, Agen, Ambyllart, castell sarasyn, le Hedo, Verdun, and bell mote; and then takynge the way by the ryuere of Dordone, whiche falleth into Garon, ye shall fynde these castelles, on the one syde and on ŷ other: Brouech, Fronsach, liborne, saynt Milion, Chatellon, the mote, saynt Pēsant, Montremell, and saynt Foy, Bergerach, Mortquinormons, and the castell of teue;<sup>d</sup> and these castels some were Englysshe, and some Frensshe, and so contynewed all the warre season, the Gascoynes wolde haue had it none otherwyse to haue chosen, for in xxx. yere they neuer made othe nor promyse to ony man; true it was of ŷ Gascoynes, Fyrst, by theyr meanes kyng Edward had chefe possession of Gascoyne, and also the prynce his sone, and after they put the agayne fro it, as it is clerely conteyned in this hystory: and by the good wyt and aduise of kyng Charles, sone to kyng Johñ, he drewe to his loue by fayre meanes and grete gyftes, ŷ grettest lordes of all Gascoyne, as ŷ erle of Armynake, and the lorde Dalbret. The prynce lost them by pryde, for I Johan Froysarde, who wrote this hystory, the same season that I was at Burdeaus, and ŷ the prynce wente into Spayne, ŷ Englysshemē were so prowde, ŷ they set nothyng by ony nacyon but by theyr owne: for the gentylmen of Gascoyne, and of Acquitayne, suche as lost theyr goodes in ŷ warre, yet they coulde gete no maner of offyce in theyr countrees, for the Englysshemen sayd they were not worthy nor able to haue ony, wherwith they were sore grudged in theyr myndes, and when they myght they shewed it, for bycause of the hardnes that ŷ Erle of Armynacke, and the lorde Dalbret, founde in ŷ prynce, they forsoke hym and became Frensshe, and so dyde dyuers other knyghtes and squyers of Gascoyne. Kyng Phylp of Frauce, and kyng Johñ his sone, had lost thē by pryde and hyghe mynde; in lyke wyse so dyde ŷ prynce and kyng Charles wyne them by fayrnes, by larges and humylyte, for so wolde Gascoynes be delte withall; and kyng Charles, to the entente that the loue of these lordes sholde the longer contynewe, he made a maryage bytwene the syster of

VOL. II.

R

the

<sup>a</sup> Bouteville in Saintonge.<sup>b</sup> Perigord.<sup>c</sup> Cadillac.<sup>d</sup> These

names agree with those in the Lyons' edition, but differ so materially from Johnes' translation, that it appears impossible to reconcile them together.

the lady Isabell of Burbon, and the lorde Dalbret, and bytwene them were fayre chyldren, and for this cause the loue endured the longer. And on a tyme at Paris, wher as I was, I herde the lorde Dalbret speke a worde, whiche I well noted, but I byleue he spake it but in sporte; howbeit, he spake it in grete sadnes to a knyght of Brytayne, who had serued hym before, for the knyght had demanded hym of  $\hat{y}$  busynes of his country, and howe he was contente to be fressshe; he answered and sayd, I thanke god I do metely well; howbeit, I had more money, and my mē also, whē we made war for the kyng of Englonde, then we haue now, for when we rode forth at aduenture we foude euer some ryche merchaunt, other of Tholous, Condon, or Bergerath: lyghtly there was no day but we gate euer some good pray; then we were fressshe and ioiy, and nowe we be as deed: then the knyght began to laughe and sayd, truely this is a lyfe of Gascoynes, lyghtly they wolde euer haue other mēnes damage. Therefore, I that harde these wordes say, as I thought,  $\hat{y}$  the lorde Dalbret repented hym in  $\hat{y}$  he was become fressshe, as  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Musydent, Gascoyne, who was taken at the batayle of Annet,<sup>a</sup> and sware into the handes of the duke of Aniw,  $\hat{y}$  he wolde come to Parys, and become fressshe euer after; so he came to Paris, and kyng Charles made hym good chere, but for all  $\hat{y}$  euer the kyng dyd,  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Musydent departed agayne fro Parys without ony leue, and wente into his coutry, and became agayne Englysshe, and brake all  $\hat{y}$  promyses  $\hat{y}$  he had made with the duke of Aniw: in lykewyse so dyde the lorde of Rousen, the lorde of Duras, and the lorde of Languerant. Suche is the nacyon of Gascoyne: they be not stable, for they loue yet the Englysshemen better then the fressshemē, for they warre agaynst  $\hat{y}$  Fressshemen were more profytable for them then agaynst the Englysshemen; this is the pryncypall incydent  $\hat{y}$  moost inclyneth them therto.

*Howe the kyng of Cypres was slayne and mured in his bedde by his owne broder by exhortacyon and corrupcyon of the infydelles, for the bowtye and hardnes that was in hym.*

## CAP. XL.

IN this same season there came other tydynges ito Fraūce, for thider came kyng Lyō of Armony,<sup>b</sup> not w<sup>th</sup> no grete company, but as a man chased out of his royalme, wherof he was kyng, by the turkes, and al his royalme was wonne, excepte one castel standyng on  $\hat{y}$  see, called Courthe, whiche was kepte by the Geneuoy, bycause that castel was the key, yssue, and entre, by the see, to go to Alexandria, and into the Sowdans londe: for these Geneuoy gothe a marchaundyse by the meanes of truage  $\hat{y}$  they pay into Rude,<sup>c</sup> and into Prester John's londe, and in euery place they are welcome, bycause of  $\hat{y}$  golde and syluer  $\hat{y}$  they brought thyder, and for other merchaūdyse  $\hat{y}$  they exchange in Alexandria, in Cayr,<sup>d</sup> in Damas,<sup>e</sup> and in other places amonge the Sarasyns, for in suche maner the worlde is gouerned: for  $\hat{y}$  is not in one country, is in another, and therby euery thyng is knowen, and the Geneuoy be those  $\hat{y}$  furthest doth aduenture theyr merchaūdyse; they be lordes of  $\hat{y}$  portes of  $\hat{y}$  se about  $\hat{y}$  Venisiās, and more feared and doubted amonge the sarasyns, thē any other people on the see; they be valyaunt men and of grete entrepryse: a Galy well furnysshed of  $\hat{y}$  Geneuoy, dare well assay iiii. Galeys of the Sarasyns; the turke and Tartaryes sholde do moche damage to chrystendome, yf the Geneuoy were not, bycause they be renomēd to be chefe lordes of the see, marchyng on infydelles; therefore they haue euer i. Galeys

<sup>a</sup> Yurac, or Yuret.—*Ante.*<sup>b</sup> Armenia.<sup>c</sup> India.<sup>d</sup> Cairo.<sup>e</sup> Damascus.

leys and grete shyppes rynnynge on the see, to defende the Iles, as  $\text{ȝ}$  He of Cypres, the Ile of Rodes,  $\text{ȝ}$  Ile dostye,<sup>a</sup> and all the boundes of the see, and Grece vnto Turkye; and they haue the towne and castel of Pere,<sup>b</sup> stödyngge on the see before Constantyne le noble,<sup>c</sup> whiche is kepte at theyr cost and charge, and iii. or iiiii. tymes euery yere it is refreshed with  $\text{ȝ}$   $\text{ȝ}$  is necessary. The Tartaryes and Turkes haue dyuers tymes assayed to gete it, but they coulde neuer attayne therto, for they haue euer lost there more then they haue wonne: for  $\text{ȝ}$  castell of Pere<sup>b</sup> stonddeth on a rocke, and there is but one entre, whiche the Geneuoyes gretely dyde fortifye; also the Geneuoyes haue the towne and castell of Jason,<sup>d</sup> whiche is ryght noble, and a grete profyete to them, and to other nere cuntries of crystendome, for yf Pere,<sup>b</sup> Jason,<sup>d</sup> Stycye,<sup>e</sup> and Rodes, were not with the ayde of the Geneuoyes, the infydelles wolde soone come to Galet, yea, and to Naples, to the porte of Cornet, and to Rome; but  $\text{ȝ}$  sayd garysons, whiche alwayes be well prouyded for with men of warre, and Geneuoyes, with the shyppes and galeys are euer redy to defende them, wherfore the Turkes dare not aduenture on that partyes, but  $\text{ȝ}$  they do is on  $\text{ȝ}$  fronters of Constantyne le noble,<sup>c</sup> and towarde Hungery. Yf the noble kyng of Cypres, Peter of Liesieguen,<sup>f</sup> who was so noble and valyant a prynce, and had conquered  $\text{ȝ}$  grete cyte of Alexādie, and Satalye, yf he had luyed longer he wolde haue gyuen the Sowdan and Turkes so moche ado, that syth Godfrey of Boloyns dayes they had neuer so moche: and  $\text{ȝ}$  ryght wel knewe the Turkes, and Tartaryes, and infydelles, suche as knewe his prowes and hygh dedes, and therefore to haue hym dystroyed they made merchaundyse with the kynges broder, called Jaquet,  $\text{ȝ}$  he sholde slee the kyng his broder; and so he dyd, for he slewe him in his bed, whiche was a fowle dede for bloode, to slee so valyaunt a mā as was the kyng of Cypres, who intended and ymagened nyght and day on none other thyng but how he myght wynne the holy londe, and to haue it out of the handes of  $\text{ȝ}$  infydelles; and syr Phelyp of Maysyeres, chauncellour to Peter of Liesieguen,<sup>f</sup> kyng of Cypres, wrote on his tombe as it foloweth, the copy wherof is in  $\text{ȝ}$  chapytre house of the freer Celestynes, in Paris: Peter of Liesieguen,<sup>f</sup>  $\text{ȝ}$  vi. kyng latyne of Iherusalē, after Godfrey of Boloyn, and kyng of Cypres, who by his grete prowes and hyghe emprise toke by batayle at his cost these Cytees, Alexandrie in Egypte, Triple in Surie,<sup>g</sup> Layas in Armony,<sup>h</sup> Satalie in Turkye, and dyuers other Cytees and castelles on  $\text{ȝ}$  infydelles, and enemyes of the lawe of Ihesu Cryst, (Anima eius requiescat in pace.)

And when the Geneuoyes, who loued hym gretely, as it was reason, when they knewe of his dethe they prepared vii. Galyes, and sente them into Cypres, and toke there perforce the cyte of Samagose,<sup>i</sup> and Jaquet within it, and ouer ranne the best parte of  $\text{ȝ}$  royalme, and wolde haue destroyed the royalme, but bycause there were stronge townes and fortresses to kepe fronter warre agaynst the turkes, therefore they leste them styl in the mennes handes of the cuntrye, excepte the cyte of Samagose,<sup>i</sup> whiche they kepte styl and fortifyed it, but when they wanne it fyrste, they had there grete ryches; and so they ledde with them to Genes<sup>k</sup> this Jaquet, who had murdered his broder. True it was this kyng of Cypres had a fayre sone, whom they maryed, and crowned kyng, and put this Jaquet into straye pryson, and wolde not put hym to dethe, and kepte styl in theyr hādes Samagose,<sup>i</sup> I knowe not yf they kepe it as yet or no. Then within a season after  $\text{ȝ}$  yonge kyng of Cypres dyed in his bed, wherof  $\text{ȝ}$  Geneuoyes were sore dyspleased, but they coulde not amende it; so  $\text{ȝ}$  lande was without ony heyre: I can not tell who governeth it nowe, but the same yere  $\text{ȝ}$  I was in the erle of Foys house, it was shewed me by a knyght of Biern, the lorde of Valenchyn, howe the Geneuoyes had a grete parte of the lande, and helde styl Samagose,<sup>i</sup> and liow they of the cuntry had

R 2

crowned

<sup>a</sup> Johnes calls this Candia.<sup>b</sup> Pera.<sup>c</sup> Constantinople.<sup>d</sup> Jaffa.—Johnes.<sup>e</sup> I have no means of ascertaining what this word means.<sup>f</sup> Lusignan.<sup>g</sup> Tripoli in Syria<sup>h</sup> Armenia.<sup>i</sup> Famagousta.<sup>k</sup> Genoa.

crowned to theyr kyng the sayd Jaquet, for lacke of other heyre: I can not tell by what meanes he came out of pryson, and out of the handes of  $\hat{y}$  Geneuys. When the sayd kyng Lyon of Armony<sup>a</sup> came fyrst into Fraunce,  $\hat{y}$  kyng there and the lordes made hym good chere, as it was reason, for he was come thyder out of a farre cowntre; and so by hym and his was known tydynges of the royalme of Grece, and of the Emperoure of Constantyne le noble,<sup>b</sup> for he was examyned of the puyssaunce of  $\hat{y}$  Turkes, and of the Tartaries, who had put hym out of his royalme; he answered and sayd,  $\hat{y}$  the grete Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie had alway made hym warre, and it was he  $\hat{y}$  had put him out of his royalme. Thē he was demaüded yf  $\hat{y}$  Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie were puyssaunt: ye truely, sayd he, for by his puyssaunce, with the puyssaunce of the sowdan, he hath subdued the emperoure of Constantyne le noble:<sup>b</sup> kepte<sup>d</sup> the lawes of the Tartaries: the kyng answered and sayd nay, but the Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie, and the sowdan, haue longe made warre agaynst the Emperour of Constantyne le noble;<sup>b</sup> at the last he was fayne to make his ende, or elles he coulde haue no peas, whiche emperour of Constantyne le noble<sup>b</sup> was sone to my lady Mary of Burbon, and sone to the emperour Hughes of lesiegnē,<sup>e</sup> whiche emperour was fayne to giue his doughter in maryage to  $\hat{y}$  sone of  $\hat{y}$  Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie; howbeit, the emperour abydeth styll in his crystē lawe, and all is by reason of cōmyctyon of this maryage. Thē it was demaüded of hym what  $\hat{y}$  erle Couiet<sup>f</sup> of Sauoy dyd in  $\hat{y}$  cowntrey, seying he was so valyaunt a mā, and had so grete a puyssaunce: then the kyng answered and sayd,  $\hat{y}$  when the erle of Sauoy was in  $\hat{y}$  empyre of Hügry, and made warre agaynst the turkes and tartaries, there by his valyauntnes he conquered on the Tartaries, and on the Sowdans lande, two good townes, as Calipole,<sup>g</sup> and Lobe-me,<sup>b</sup> and lefte men there to kepe them; and after the retourne of the erle of Sauoy, the townes were kepte styll crystē as longe as the good kyng of Cypres lyued, but as soone as the Sowdan, and the Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie, knew of his dethe, they feared no thyng the Emperour of Constantyne le noble,<sup>b</sup> but raysed an army of a C. M. horsemen, and so came and ranne before Cōstantyne le noble,<sup>b</sup> and fro thens they wente and besyged Calipole,<sup>g</sup> and conquered it perforce, and slewe all the crysten men  $\hat{y}$  were within it, and had made so grete warre agaynst the Emperour of Cōstantyne le noble,<sup>b</sup>  $\hat{y}$  all his puyssaūce coulde not resyst thē; but they forbare hym by reason of his doughter, whom the sone of  $\hat{y}$  grete tacon<sup>c</sup> coueted to haue in maryage, whiche is a harde case for the tyme to come, for the officers of the Tacon<sup>c</sup> be as now in the cyte of Constantyne le noble,<sup>b</sup> so  $\hat{y}$  the grekes therē lyue vnder thē, and by truage; and yf the kynges crysten put not therto a remedy, or at lengthe the matter shall go so euyll,  $\hat{y}$  the Turkes and Tartaries shall conquere all Grece, and tourne it to theyr byleue, for so they make theyr auauntes; they do mocke the popes, wherof one is at Rome, and another at Auignyon; they say  $\hat{y}$  the ii. goddesses of crystendome warreth eche agaynst other, wherby they afferme our lawe to be the more feble, and the lyghter to be destroyed, and condemned; they lay therto reason in  $\hat{y}$  they that sholde exalte the crysten fayth, are  $\hat{y}$  fyrst that mynyslieth it, and dystroy it. Then it was demaüded of the kyng of Armony,<sup>a</sup> whether that the Sowdan, and the Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie, were ii. of the grettest prynces amonge the infydelles  $\hat{y}$  were knowen with the Grekes; the kyng answered and sayd, nay surely, they be not  $\hat{y}$  grettest, for alwayes the turkes are more noble, more greter, more sage, and more redoubted in warre, as longe as they haue a good heed and gournour, as they haue had this C. yere: for thoughē  $\hat{y}$  Tacon<sup>c</sup> of Tartarie holde in subieccyon the Emperoure of Constantyne le noble,<sup>b</sup> yet  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Turkey holdeth in lyke wyse  $\hat{y}$  Tacon<sup>c</sup>; and this lorde of Turkey is called Lamorabaquin,<sup>i</sup> and to say the trouthe he is a valyaunt mā in armes, and a wyse man in his lawe; of Lamorabaquin<sup>i</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Armenia.<sup>b</sup> Constantinople.<sup>c</sup> Cham.<sup>d</sup> "Then the lords asked if Constantinople,"

omitted in this translation.

<sup>e</sup> Lusignan.<sup>f</sup> Count Verd.<sup>g</sup> Gallipoli.<sup>h</sup> Limonia.—*Johnes.*<sup>i</sup> Amurath.—Froissart appears to have formed this strange name from the title Morat beg or Moratbegy, given to this prince by the Turks, according to the Frere Anthoine Geufroy.



I cōplayne me not, for he neuer dyd me hurte, for he hath alwayes kepte his warre agaynst the Emperoure of Hungery. Then ȝ lordes of Fraunce demaunded of hym yf this Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> were so grete, and so feared as he sayd; ye truly, sayd the kyng of Armony,<sup>b</sup> and more then I speke of, for the Emperour of Cōstantyne le noble,<sup>c</sup> and the Emperoure of Hūgery feareth hym: in lyke wyse doth the Sowdan of Babylon, and the Tacon<sup>d</sup> of Tartarie; and as I haue herde say of ȝ Tartaryes, ȝ Tacon<sup>d</sup> wolde or this tyme further haue put vnder ȝ Emperoure of Constantyne le noble,<sup>c</sup> but for doubte of Lamorabaquin; ȝ Tacon<sup>d</sup> knoweth hym and his nature so well, for as some as he knoweth one gretter then hymselfe, he wyll neuer haue ioy tyl he haue put hym vnder, wherfore the Tacon<sup>d</sup> wyll not do to Cōstantyne le noble,<sup>c</sup> ȝ he myght well do yf he wolde. Then he was demaunded yf this Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> had ony grete power of men; ȝ kyng sayd, ye surely, for in xxx.<sup>e</sup> yere, where soeuer he wente he had euer in his company a C. M. horses alwayes lodged in ȝ feldes, and neuer entreth into ony towne, and for his garde he hath euer xx.<sup>f</sup> M. turkes, and where so euer he goeth he hath his fader with hym, and<sup>g</sup> he hymselfe is of a lx. yere of age, and his fader lxxx. and x. and he loneth moche ȝ frenshe language, and suche as cometh thens; he desyeth to se all the grete lordes of ȝ worlde, and ȝ frensshe kyng, and his estate and ordre, and one speke to hym of Fraunce he is well content. Then ȝ kyng was demaunded why ȝ Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> suffred ȝ Tacon<sup>d</sup> in peas, syth he was so grete an Emperour: bycause, sayd ȝ kyng, ȝ the Tacon<sup>d</sup> feareth hym, and dare make hym no warre; and also there be certayne townes and portes in Tartarie ȝ yerely payeth trybute to Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> and also they are all of one lawe, and they wyl not lightly dystroy theyr owne lawe, and he meruayleth gretely of ȝ warre amonge crystē mē howe eche of them dystroyeth other, wherfore he is often in mynde to come into crystēdome, and to wyn all before hym; I wolde he had won my lāde rather thē ȝ Tacon<sup>d</sup>, for it had ben better for me. He was demaunded why; and he answered and sayd: Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> is a lorde of noble cōdycon, and yf he were xxx. yere yonger he were lykely to make grete cōquestes where as he wolde employ his warre; for when he hath wonne a cuntry, towne, or synnory, he desyeth nothyng but truage, and leueth styll euery man in his owne byleue, and he putteth neuer no mā fro his herytage; he desyeth nothyng but the souerayne domynacion; wherfore I saye yf he had conquered ȝ royalmē of Armony,<sup>b</sup> as the Tartaries haue<sup>h</sup> suffered me in peas, and my royalmē styll in our owne byleue, by knowledgyng hym as my souerayne, as other grete lordes do ȝ marche nere hym, as the Grekes and Tracysens, who take hym for theyr souerayne lorde, wherby they are out of doubte of the soueraynte of the Sowdan, and of the Tacon<sup>d</sup> of Tartarie; the lorde of Satalie, and the lorde de la Palice, and the lorde of Hawly lodge, these iii. lordes and theyr landes<sup>i</sup> are in peas, by reason of a truage ȝ they pay to Lamorabaquin:<sup>a</sup> ther is no Turke nor Tartarien ȝ dare do thē ony wronge or domage. Then it was demaunded of ȝ kyng of Armony,<sup>b</sup> yf his lande were so clerly lost that it myght not be recouered agayne: truly, sayd the kyng, it is without recouery, without the puyssaunce of crystendome come thyder stronger thē the Turkes and Tartariēs, for as I haue sayd, the ferther they come forwarde, more they are lykely to cōquere; for excepte one towne, called Courth, which is the fyrst towne of the royalmē of Armony,<sup>b</sup> and is as yet in the crysten mennes handes, al ȝ resydue of ȝ royalmē is in ȝ infydels handes: and where as ȝ chyrches were wonte to be, there they set vp theyr ydolles and theyr mawmettes.<sup>k</sup> Then it was demaunded if the towne of Courth were stronge: ye truly, sayd ȝ kyng, it wyll not be wonne without it be by lōge syege, or elles betrayed, for it standeth nere

to

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.<sup>b</sup> Armenia.<sup>c</sup> Constantinople.<sup>d</sup> Cham.<sup>e</sup> This should be

"ere he was thirty years old."—

<sup>f</sup> x.<sup>g</sup> "How old is he," omitted.<sup>h</sup> "He would."<sup>i</sup> There appears no clue to elucidate this passage; D. Sauvage expresses in a note his inability to discover what places Froissart could have meant by the above names.<sup>k</sup> Mahometts.

to the see in a drye place bytwene ii. rockes, whiche cā nat be approached; for yf  $\int$  Turkes or Tartaries had it in theyr hādes, and another good towne not ferre thens, called Adelphe, all Grece were dystroyed, and Hungery sholde haue moche ado. Then it was demaunded yf Hungery marched nere to Tartarie, and to the Turkes: the kynge sayd, ye truely, and nerer to the Turkes and Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> then to ony other. Then the lordes sayd, it is grete meruayle  $\int$  Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> suffereth hym to be in rest, syth he marcheth soo nere to Hungery, and he beyng so valyaunt a man, and so grete a conquerour. In the name of god, sayd the kynge of Armony,<sup>b</sup> or this tyme he hath studyed as moche as he myght how to haue done damage to the royalme of Hungery, and yf an incydent had not ben or this, he had ben farre in the countrye of Hungery. He was demaunded what incydent it was; and the kynge sayd, I shal shewe you.

*Howe the kynge of Armony<sup>b</sup> was examyned, and howe xxx. M. Turkes were slayne and dystroyed in the royalme of Hungery.*

#### CAP. XLI.

WHEN Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> sawe  $\int$  all  $\int$  lordes  $\int$  marched nere to hym fered and doubted hī, what for his cōquestes and prowes, and how  $\int$  al the boūdes of  $\int$  see to hūgery obeyed to hym; also he saw wel how  $\int$  valyaunt kyng of Hungery, Frederycke, was deed, and how the royalme was fallen to a womā, wherfore he aduysed hym to conquere  $\int$  royalme, and so made a grete somons in Turkye, and suche as he sente for came to hym; and so thē this Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> went forthe and lodged in  $\int$  playnes of Satalie, bytwene Palice and Haulte lodge, to gyue more feare to his enemyes, and his entencyō was to entre into  $\int$  royalme of Hūgery; and bycause  $\int$  Hungery is a royalme and cōtreiy, closed and enuyronned w̄ hygh rockes and moūtaynes, wherby it is  $\int$  stronger, thē he sente before hym his ambassadours and heraldes, w̄ a mulet charged w̄ mylle, and he cōmaunded thē to go into Hungery, to  $\int$  erle of Lazaran, whose lādes lyeth bytwene  $\int$  mountaynes of Melcabe, and of Robee, whiche way he purposed his army sholde pas, and to shewe hym how he cōmaunded hym yf he thynke to lyue in rest, and to haue his lande in peas  $\int$  he obey to vs, in lykewyse as the lorde of Palice, and the lorde of Satalie, and the lorde of Haulte lodge, hath done, and  $\int$  he open and gyue vs fre passage thrughe his landes; and yf he say nay, and be rebell agaynst vs, then shewe hym on our behalfe  $\int$  I shall brynge as many men to dystroy his cōtreiy, as there be graynes of mylle in the sacker. The ambassadours departed wel istricted of  $\int$  they sholde do, and so rode by theyr iourneys tyll they came into Hungery, into  $\int$  lande of the erle Lazaran, and foude hym in a castell of his called Archforme; and the erle lyke a sage lorde, receuyed these ambassadours right swetely, and made thē good chere, but he had meruayle when he sawe entre into his courte the mule charged with a sacker, and wyst not what it was: he thought it had ben golde or precyous stones,  $\int$  Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> had sente to hym, to drawe hym therby to consente to suffre hym to haue fre passage thrughe his cōtreiy; howbeit, he sayd to hymselfe  $\int$  he wolde neuer be corrupted for no maner of ryches  $\int$  sholde be presented to hym. Thē these messāgers came before the erle, and sayd, syr, of Lazaran, vnderstāde we be sente fro the hyghe and redoubted lorde and souerayne kynge, Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> lorde of Turkye, w̄ the apertenaūces, and we say to you on his behalfe  $\int$  he cōmaūdeth you to come to his obey-

saunce

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.

<sup>b</sup> Armenia

saunce, in lyke maner as ye knowe þ̄ your neyghbours haue done, as the lorde de la Palice, þ̄ lorde of Haulte lodge, and the lorde of Satalie, haue done to hym homage: and þ̄ ye open to hym the passages of your country, yf ye thinke to lyue in rest, and in your so doynge ye shall deserue gretely his grace and loue; and yf ye rebell and disobey, we are charged to say to you, þ̄ our lorde Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> wyl brynge into your cōtrey mo mē of armes then there be graynes of mylle in this sacke, and therw̄ they opened þ̄ sac, and shewed hym what was win it: and when þ̄ erle of Lazaran vnderstode þ̄ ambassadoure of Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> and determyned in hymselfe to answere temporarily, and wolde not dyscouer his thought sodaynly, but sayd, close vp þ̄ sacke, I se ryght wel what is therin. and I haue well harde what thyng Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> demaundeth of me: and win these iii. dayes I shall make you an aswere, for his request demaūdeth cōsail: they answered and sayd, syr, ye speke wel: so trustyng to haue an aswere they taryed there iii. dayes. Now shall I shewe you what þ̄ erle of Lazaran dyd in þ̄ space of these iii. dayes: he sent and prouyded into þ̄ castell mo then ii. M. capōs and hēnes, and closed thē vp into a house wout ony maner of mete, so þ̄ in iii. dayes they ete no thyng; and when the daye came that he wolde answere the ambassadours, thē he sent for them into a galary lokyng downe into a courte, and sayd, syrs, come hyder and leane here with me, and I shal shewe you a newe thyng, and so answere you; and they knowynge not what he wolde doo, leaned downe in a wyndowe by hym: then the gates were closed, and the courte was grete; so his men were redy to doo as he had ordeyned: then they opened a chambre dore or ii. where as all the pollayne were þ̄ had eten no mete of ii. dayes before: then the seruauntes toke the grayne þ̄ was in the sacke, and cast it all aboute before the capons and hēnes, so þ̄ within halfe an houre al the corne was etē vp clene, and wolde haue eten more yf they had had it: then the erle sayd to the messāgers, syrs, ye haue sene howe this grayne whiche you haue brought hyder from your mayster is clene eten and deuoured, and brought to nothyng by these pollayne, and yet they wolde ete more yf they had it; þ̄ is true syr, sayd they, wherby speke you þ̄? I say, sayd þ̄ erle, your answere lyeth therin, as by ensāple ye haue sene; Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> sayth, þ̄ yf I obey hym not, he wyl brynge into my lande men of armes without nombre: wherfore say vnto hym fro me, I wyl abyde it, and he shall not brynge so many, but they shal be al deuoured, as this corne is deuoured by this pollayne.

When the ambassadours harde this answere they were ryght pensyue, and so toke theyr leue and departed, and dyde so moche by theyr iourneys þ̄ they came to Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> and shewed hym what the erle sayd, saynge, by semyng he set but lytell by his manassyng: w̄ this answere Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> was sore dyspleased, and sayd, howe the matter sholde not rest so, but whether the erle wolde or not, he wolde entre into his cōtrey, and into hūgery, and how he wolde dystroy the erles country, bycause he answered hym so presumptuously.

Nowe shall I shewe you what the erle dyd, for he sawe well he was defyed of Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> and knew wel he sholde shortly here other tydynges of hym; therfore he made prouysyon to defende hym, and wrote to al knyghtes and squyers, and to other, to come to hym to stoppe the entre of Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> into Hungery, cōmaundyng eury man after the syght of his letters to drawe to hym, certefyng thē howe Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> was as then in þ̄ playnes of Haulte loge: all suche as the erle sente for obeyed wyllyngly, and so came to the erle to defende crystendome; and dyuers came to hym þ̄ were not sente for, suche as harde therof, to exalte crysten faythe, and to dystroy þ̄ infydelles. Also the erle Lazaran caused forestes and hyghe trees to be hewē downe, and layde

trauers

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.

trauers one ouer another, wherby the Turkes sholde not fynde out ony newe way ; and then he with all his power came to a certayne passage, where as Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> sholde passe to entre into Hungery ; the erle had with hym a x. M. men of Hungery, and x. M. crossebowes, and dyd set thē on bothe sides of the way ; and also he had redy ii. M. mē of the cowntre, hauynge grete axes to cut downe the trees when he wolde haue them ; and when al this was done, then he sayd to them ŷ were aboute hym, syrs, without doubte Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> wyl come, syth he sente me worde he wolde do so : therefore syrs, quyte yourselfe well, and valyauntly, to kepe and defende this passage, for yf ŷ Turkes wyne it, al Hungery is in grete peryll to be lost ; we be here in a stronge place, one of vs is worth iiiii. of them ; and also we were better to dye with honoure in defendynge our herytages, and the fayth of Jesu cryst, thē to lyue in shame and seruage vnder the dogges infydels, thoughte Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> be a noble wyse man in his lawe : syr, sayd they, we shall abyde ŷ aduenture with you, let the Turkes come when they wyll, we shall be redy to receyue them. Of this ordenaunce and passage the Turkes knewe nothyng, for the erle of Lazaran, for doubte of spyes, had set men, suche as he trusted, as well as hymselfe, to kepe ŷ passages, ŷ no mā sholde go to the Turkes, nother day nor nyght.

Lamorabaquin<sup>a</sup> forgate not his entrepryse, but sayd how he wolde go vysyte the lande of the erle of Lazaran, to his grete domage, for he wolde not be reputed for a lyer in ŷ he had promysed ; so he toke lx. M. of his mē, and set ouer thē iiiii. capytaynes of his householde, as the duke of<sup>b</sup> Mansyon of Mecque, ŷ keper of Damiet, Alphalori of Samarie, and ŷ prynce of Corde, called Brachyn ; and at theyr departynge he sayd to thē, syrs, go your waye v̄ your cōpany, ye be suffycient to open ŷ passages into Hūgery, and entre into ŷ lāde of ŷ erle of Lazaran, and dystroye it, and as soone as I may know ŷ ye be there, I shal come thyder to you with all ŷ resydue of my people : for I wyl put all Hungery vnder my subiectyon, and after, the royalmē of Almayne :<sup>c</sup> the enchauntours of my cowntrey, and of Egypte, saye it is my desteny to be lorde and kynge of all the worlde ; and the place that I wolde moost gladlyest se is Rome, for auntaryntly it was of our enherytaūce, for our predecessours cōquered and gouerned it dyuers tymes, and there I wyll be crowned, and Galafre of Landas,<sup>d</sup> the Tacon<sup>e</sup> of Tartarye, and the Sowdan of Babylone, shal crowne me : then they who were before hym on theyr knees answered and sayd, syr, we shall accomplysshe your desyre and cōmaundement : and so they departed v̄ a lx. M. Turkes, amonge whom there were xx. M. of the moost experte men of warre, and best armed of all Turkye, and they ledde the vowarde. So longe they iourneyed ŷ they came in amonge the mountaynes of Lazaryn ; they founde no let in the entrynge into ŷ cowntrey ; so ŷ vowarde entred in, and the duke of Mecque, and the duke of Daniuet<sup>f</sup> ledde them, and so this vowarde passed the Erle of Lazaryns enbusshement ; and when the erle and the Hungeryons sawe theyr tyme, they set theyr workemē a worke to cut downe trees, and to stoppe so ŷ wayes ŷ there coulde no mo entre, nor they that were comen in to recule ; they were so closed in ŷ it was not possyble for ony mā to go ony further : so there was thus enclosed a xxx. M. turkes, who were fyersly assayled by the Hungaryons, and so handeled on bothe sydes of the way that they were there all slayne, not one ŷ skaped, and the ii. dukes also slayne ; some thought to haue saued themselfe in the woodes, but they were so chased ŷ they were all slayne : then they of the areregarde tourned backe whē they saw they coulde not entre for the trees ŷ stopped ŷ way : so they retourned to Lamorabaquin,<sup>a</sup> and shewed hym the grete myscheyf ŷ was fallē on his people, wherof he was meruayllous

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.<sup>b</sup> "Of" should be omitted.  
<sup>c</sup> Cham.<sup>e</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Baudas.—*Johnes.*<sup>f</sup> Damietta.

lous sory and displeased; thē he called his cōusayle to know what was best for hym to do, for he had lost ȝ floure of all his chyualry, and so retourned and dyd no more at that tyme.

When ȝ kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> had shewed all this and his owne estate to the frenshe kyng, and to the barons of Fraunce, and to his counsayle, they had of hym grete pyte; and bycause he was come fro so ferre a cōutre as Grece to seke counsayle and ayde there, and bycause he was a kyng and chased out of his royalme, and had as then no thyng to lyue on to maynteyne his estate.

The frensshe kyng, as yonge as he was, sayd, we wyl ȝ the kyng of Armony,<sup>a</sup> who is come hyder to se vs, in hope to haue some cōforte, helpe, and ayde of vs to kepe his estate as it aperteyneth to hym, who is a kyng as wel as we be, and whē we may, we shal ayde hym w men of warre, and helpe to recouer his cherytauce, wherto we haue good wyl; for we are bounde to exalte ȝ crysten faythe. The frensshe kynges wordes were well harde and vnderstande, as it was reason, and there were none ȝ sayd the contrary: the kynges vnles and counsayle were desyrous to accomplysse his entent; so the kyng of Armony,<sup>a</sup> to maynteyne his estate, there was assygned to hym a certayne rente and reuenues out of the chambre of accomptes, and so was well and truely payde euery moneth; his assygnement was a vi. M. frankes by the yere, and he had deluyered hym at the fyrst v. M. frākes, to prouide for his lodgyng, vessel, and other thynges necessary; and his lodgyng apoynted at saynt Andon<sup>b</sup> besyde saynt Denyce, there to kepe his house. Thus ȝ kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> was reteyned by ȝ Frensshe kyng at his fyrst comyng; and dayly he encreased, and not apayred, and was somtyme with the frensshe kyng, and specially at hyghe feestes.

*Howe pope Vrban and pope Clement were at grete dyscorde togyder, and howe the crysten kynges were in varyaunce for theyr lectyons, and of the warres bytwene them.*

## CAP. XLII.

THE same season there came to Auignyon, to se the pope Clement, syr Othes of Bresnyl,<sup>c</sup> to haue money for ȝ warre he had made for hym agaynst ȝ Romainys and Bertram of Aigles,<sup>d</sup> who wrote hymselfe pope Vrban ȝ vi. as it is cōteyned in his hystory here before; and there syr Othes shewed dyuers thynges to the pope and to ȝ Cardynalles, wherin he was well beleued and harde; but as for money he coulde gete none, for ȝ popes chambre was so clene voyded fro golde and syluer, ȝ ȝ Cardynals coulde not haue ȝ money ȝ perteyned to theyr hattes: so this syr Othes of Bresnyll<sup>c</sup> departed fro thē, not wel content. At Auygnyon there was deluyered hym a M. frankes, and he set lytell therby, wherby pope Clementes warre was sore weked, for syr Othes wolde in no wyse medle ony more in the popes warres. Thē Margaret of Duras, who was at Gaicete,<sup>e</sup> and was aduersary agaynst the quene of Naples, wyfe sōtyme to kyng Lewes, duke of Aniw, she sente for this syr Othes to ayde her in ȝ warre ȝ she made agaynst the Napolytanes; and this syr Othes a certayne space excused hymselfe, and dyssymuled and foded forth the tyme as he that wyst not what to do; then some of his counsayle dyde put hym in mynde to go to this Margaret of Duras, who was enherytoure to Naples and to Cycyle, and to helpe to ayde and to defende her heritage, and to take her to his wyfe, for she was contente to mary hym, bycause he was of a noble blood, and

<sup>a</sup> Armenia.<sup>b</sup> Oucn.—*Johnes.*<sup>c</sup> Otho of Brunswick.<sup>d</sup> Bartholomew Priguano.<sup>e</sup> Gaiceta.

of hyghe extraccyon, and was lorde and kynge of the countrey called Daure; and some other of his counsaile counsayled hym contrary, saynge how he myght therby come to an euyll ende, for the chyldre of kynge Lewes of naples, who was crowned kynge in the cyte of Bari, thoughte they were but yonge, yet they had grete frendes and kynsmen, and specyally the frensshe kynge theyr cosyne germayne, who wyl ayde them, and theyr moder, Johan duches of Aniove and of Mayne; al these doubtles some of his counsaile shewed hym; wherfore syr Othes forbare a longe season, and dyssymuled the mater, and toke none of bothe partyes. The same season  $\hat{y}$  sowdyours of pope Clement enclosed in  $\hat{y}$  cyte of Peras<sup>a</sup> pope Vrban, and was besyged by the lorde of Moe-troy, a valiaunt knyght of the countye of Genes<sup>b</sup> and of Sauoy, syr Talebart, a knyght of the Rodes, and syr Bernarde de la sale; and there pope Vrban was sore constrayned and on  $\hat{y}$  poynte to haue ben taken; for, as I was then enformed, for the some of xx. M. frankes, a capytayne almayne,<sup>c</sup> who had a grete company with hym, called the erle Courant,<sup>d</sup> wolde haue delyuered pope Vrban into  $\hat{y}$  handes of pope Clement; wher-vpon syr Bernarde de la sale was sent to Auygnyon to pope Clement for  $\hat{y}$  sayd some of money; but the pope nor the Cardynalles there coulde not make the money, for  $\hat{y}$  popes courte was so poore, that they had no money; and so syr Bernarde de la sale returned euyll content to the syege of Pruce;<sup>e</sup> and so then they dyssymuled the matter, and the Prucyens in lykewyse, and also this erle Courant;<sup>d</sup> and so pope Vrban yssued out of Pruce<sup>e</sup> and out of peryll, and wente to Rome and abode there.

I knowe ryght well that in tyme to come there wolde be had moche of these thynges, howe the churche sholde fall in suche troubles and endure so longe, but it was a plage sent fro god, for the clergy to aduysed and to consydre well theyr grete estate and superfluyte that they were in; but many dyde sette lytell therby, for they were so blynded with pryde, that eche one thought to be as good as another; wherfore it wente euyll, and yf our fayth had not ben confirmed in  $\hat{y}$  handes and grace of  $\hat{y}$  holy goost, who in-lumyned the harte of them  $\hat{y}$  were gone out of the ryght way, and helde them ferme in vnyte, elles our fayth had be gretely defourmed; but the grete lordes of the erthe at the begynnnyng dyd nothyng but laughe at the chyrche, tyl I Cronycled these Cronycles in the yere of our lorde Jhesu Cryst M.CCC.lxxx. and x; moche of the comon people meruayled howe the grete lordes, as the Frensshe kynge, the kynge of Almayne,<sup>c</sup> and other kynges and prynces of crystendome, dyd prouyde no remedy in that case. There was one thyng reasonable to appease the comon people, and to escuse the hyghe prynces and kynges, dukes and Erles, and other lordes; as, by ensample: the yolke of the egge can not be without the whyte, nor the whyte without the yolke, no more maye the Clergy and the lordes be one without another; for the lordes are gouerned by  $\hat{y}$  Clergy, or they coulde not lyue but as beestes, and the Clergy were not: and  $\hat{y}$  Clergy counsayleth and exhorteth the lordes to do as they do: and I say surely I haue ben in my tyme in dyuers partyes of the worlde, what for to accomplysse my pleasure, and to se nouelties in the worlde, and to haue knowledge of the conquestes and aduentures wryten in this boke: and, truely, the season  $\hat{y}$  I wente thus aboute in the worlde, I coulde lyghtly se no grete lorde but that he had a marmoset, or of  $\hat{y}$  Clergy, or a boy of symple lygnage mounted vp to honour, by reason of theyr Jangelyng and raylyng, excepte the erle of Foy: for he had neuer none suche, for he was naturally sage, for his wysdome was better than ony  $\hat{y}$  coulde be gyuen hym; yet I say not that suche lordes as are ruled by suche marmosettes be fooles, but rather more then fooles, for they be sore blynded, and yet they haue two eyen. Whan the knowledge came fyrst to  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kynge Charles of the dyfference bytwene these two popes, he dyd put the matter on  $\hat{y}$  Clergy whiche way he sholde take them: they of the clergy of France de-  
termined,

<sup>a</sup> Perugia.<sup>b</sup> Geneva.<sup>c</sup> German.<sup>d</sup> Conrad.

termyned, and toke pope Clement for the moost suerst parte; and to the Frensshe opynyon acorded the kyng of Castel and the kyng of Scottes, bycause all the season that the scysme was thus in the chyrche, Fraunce, Castell, and Scotland were ioyned togyder by alyauce; and the kyng of Englonde and f̄ kyng of Portyngale were of the contrary oppyuyō agaynst theyr enemyes: the erle of Flaunders neuer inclined in his courage to pope Clemēt ŷ he sholde be ryght pope, bycause Vrbā was fyrst chosen at Rome, who was archebyssshop of Bare. This Clement beyng Cardynall of Geane,<sup>a</sup> wrote lettres vnto the noble Erle of Flaunders, howe there was a pope chosen by due electyon at Rome, and named Vrbā: wherfore he wolde not byleue after on ŷ Clement; and as longe as he lyued he was of that opynyon; so was the kyng of Almayne<sup>b</sup> and all the Empyre, and also ŷ kyng of Hungry. Thus, then, I put in wrytyng the state and dyfferences ŷ I had sene in my dayes in the worlde and in f̄ chyrche; it was no meruayle, though ŷ lordes of the worlde suffered and dyssymuled ŷ matter. This brought to my remembraunce howe ŷ when I was but yonge, and pope Innocent raygned in Auygnyon, he helde in pryson a freer mynoure, called freer Johā Roche Tayllad; this clerke, as it was sayd, and I haue herde it priuely in dyuers places, he shewed and alledged dyuers auctorytes of the incydentes and fortunes ŷ fell after in his dayes in f̄ royalme of Fraunce; and also he spake of the takyng of kyng Johā, and shewed certayne thynges reasonable howe the chyrche sholde suffre moche for ŷ grete superfluytes ŷ he sawe in them: and while he was in prison, it was shewed me what he sayd to the Cardynall of Ostie, called Dearras,<sup>c</sup> and to ŷ Cardynall of Auxere, who wente to vysyte hym and to argue with hym; thē he layde to them an ensample, as hereafter ye shall here.

Lordes, sayd this freer, there was ones a fowle appered in this worlde without any fethers; and when al other fowles knew ŷ he was borne, they came to se hym, because he was so fayre and pleasaunt to beholde. Then they ymagyned amonge them what they myght do for this byrde, for without fethers they knewe well he coulde not lyue; and they sayd they wolde he sholde lyue, bycause he was so fayre: thē euery fowle there gaue hym of theyr fethers, and the fayrer byrde the mo fethers he gaue hym, so that then he was a fayre byrde, and a well fethered, and began to fle: and ŷ byrdes that had gyuen hym of theyr fethers, whē they sawe hym fle, they toke grete pleasure; and whē this byrde sawe hymselfe so well fethered, and that all other fowles honoured hym, he began to waxe prowde, and toke no regarde of them that had made hym, but pycked and spurred at them, and was contrary to them. Then the other byrdes drewe togyder, and demaunded eche other what was best to be done with this byrde that they had made vp of nought and now so dysdayneth them. Then the Pecocke sayd, he is gretly beautyed by reason of my fethers; I wyl take them agayne fro hym: in the name of good, sayd the Fawcon, so wyl I haue myne; and so sayd al the other byrdes: and then they began to take agayne fro hym al the fethers ŷ they had gyuen hym. And whē this byrde saw that, he humbled hymselfe, and knowledged of ŷ welth and honour that he had, not of hymselfe but of them; for he knewe that he came into ŷ worlde naked and bare, and ŷ fethers that he had they myght wel take fro hym agayne whē they lyst: then he cryed them mercy, and sayd, that he wolde amende hymselfe, and noo more be prowde; and so then agayne these gentyll byrdes had pyte on hym, and fethered hym agayne, and sayd to hym, We wolde gladly se ŷ fle amōge vs, so thou wylt be humble as thou oughtest to be; but knowe surely, If thou be any more prowde and dysdaynous, we wyl take from ŷ all thy fethers, and set the as we founde ŷ fyrst.

Thus sayd ŷ freer Johā to ŷ Cardynalles that were in his presence: Sirs, thus shall it fall on you of the chyrche, for the Emperour of Rome and of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> and the other

<sup>a</sup> Geneva.<sup>b</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> Cardinal of Arras.

kynges crystened, and hyghe prynces of the worlde, haue gyuen you the goodes and possessyons and ryches to the entente to serue god, and ye spende it in pryde and superfluyte.

Ye rede not the lyfe of saynt Sylvester, pope of Rome after saynt Peter; ymagyne and consyder howe the Emperour Cōstantyne gaue hym fyrst ȝ dysmes of ȝ chyrche, and on what condycyon. Saynt Sylvester rode nother with CC. nor CCC. horse abrode in the worlde, but he helde hymselfe simply closed in Rome, and lyued soberly with them of the chyrche, when the aungell of god shewed hym how ȝ Emperour Cōstantyne, who was as then but an infydell, sholde sende for hym; in lykewyse the Emperour had it by reuelacyon of an aungell, that Sylvester sholde shewe hym ȝ way of helthe, for he was syke of the lypper, so ȝ his flesshe fell in peces: and whē Sylvester came before hym, he shewed hym the way of baptysme, and so crystened hym; and incontynent he was hole: for the whiche ȝ Emperoure Constantyne bylened in god and all his Æmpeyre, and gaue to Sylvester and to the chyrche all the dysmes,\* for before, the Emperoure of Rome helde them: and besyde that gaue hym many fayre gyftes and grete sygnoryes, augmentynge our fayth and the chyrche; but it was his entencion that the goodes and sygnoryes that he had gyuē hym, ȝ he sholde gouerne it humbly and truly, and not to spēde it in pompe and pryde; but nowe a dayes they of the chyrche do the contrary, wherwith god is dyspleased, and hereafter wyll be more dyspleased, so that the grete lordes of the erthe wyll waxe colde in theyr deuocions, and not be so lyberall in gyuynge ony thynge to ȝ chyrche, but rather to be redy to take fro it ȝ was gyuen before; and I thynke it wyll not be longe or this be sene.

Thus this freer, Johñ of Roche tayllayd, whome the cardynalles helde in pryson in Auignyon, shewed to them these wordes, and dyuers other, wherof the cardynalles were abashed, and wolde gladly haue put hym to dethe yf they myght haue founde ony iust cause agaynst hym; but they coulde fynde none, and so suffred hym to lyue, but they durst not let hym out of pryson, for he shewed his matters so parfyte, and layde for hym hyghe scriptures, that peraduenture he myght haue made many in the worlde to haue arred; Howbeit, suche as toke more hede to his sayenge then I dyde, sawe many thynges fall after accordynge as he sayd and wrote in pryson; and all ȝ he sayd he wolde proue by the apocalyps; the true prowes wherwith he armed hymselfe, saued hym fro brennyng; and also some of the Cardynalles had pyte on hym, and wolde not do theyr vtermoost to hym.

Nowe let vs leue to speke of these narracyons, and retourne to our pryncypall matter and hystory of Spayne, of Portyngale, of France, and of Englonde, and recorde the fortunes that fell in that season, whiche be not to be forgotten.

Ye haue herde here before howe kyng Johñ, otherwyse called mayster denyce of portyngale, bastarde broder to kyng Don Ferant, was in possessyon of the royaume of Portyngale, by the helpe all onely of iiii. Cytees in Portyngale: but as for the nobles and knyghtes of the royaume of Portyngale at the begynnynge acquyted them truly to kyng Don Peter, and to kyng Johñ of Castell, and to his wyfe the lady Beatryce; and yet thoughte some helde the opynyon of that lady, neuerthelesse other named her a bastarde: for she was daughter to a lady in Portyngale, called Elynoure, who had as then her fyrst husbände on lyue, a knyght of ȝ countre, syr Johñ Laurence of Coygne;<sup>b</sup> and ȝ kyng of Portyngale had taken her fro hym, and the kyng maryed her, and put her husbände out of Portyngale, who wente and dwelled with the kyng of Castell: for he durst not dwell in Portyngale for fere of the kyng, who helde his wyfe, and yet he was of hyghe lynnage. These thynges are to be meruaylled at; for kyng Ferant<sup>c</sup> of Portyngale reputed his daughter as lawfully begotten, for he had a dyspensacyon of pope Urban the vi; and then ȝ peas was made bytwene the ii. kynges of Castell and Portyngale,

\* Tithes.

<sup>b</sup> Lorenzo d'Acunha.<sup>c</sup> Ferdinand.



gale, and that a knyght of the royalme of Portyngale, called syr Johñ Ferant Audere, who was chefe of counsayle with the kyng of Portyngale, treated of peas, and made ſy maryage bytwene kyng Ferant<sup>a</sup> of Portyngalles daughter and kyng Johñ of Castell, who was as thē a wydower, and had maryed before ſy daughter of Don Peter, kyng of Aragon, though ſy kyng of Castell and his counsayle dyd cast all these doubttes, and howe they fered lest the kyng of Portyngales daughter sholde not be taken as heyre of Portyngale after her faders dysseas; but to put in suretye therof ſy kyng of Castell, the kyng of Portyngale caused dyuers of the chefe lordes of Portyngale to swere, that after the kynges dysseas to take her as theyr lady, and to tourne the royalme of Portyngale to ſy kyng of Castell: also ſy kyng of Portyngale had bounde certayne good townes to the kyng of Castell, to take hym as theyr kyng, on ſy payne of forfayture of ii. thousande frankes: and thoughe this knyght, Johan Ferant Audere, dyde his busynes for a good entente to make peas and concorde bytwene Castell and Portyngale at ſy instance of his lorde, yet ſy comons of Lyxbone slewe hym, and chase to theyr kyng this mayster Deuyce;<sup>b</sup> for they sayd they wolde not be vnder the subiectyon of them of Castell, they hated them so moche, for they coulde neuer loue togyder; and also they sayd, ſy the crowne of Portyngale myght not go to a woman, and that the quene of Castell was not true herytour, but a bastarde, and worse then a bastarde: for kyng Ferantes<sup>c</sup> luynges, and after his dethe Johan Ferant of Coygne<sup>e</sup> luyed, who was husbunde to that ladyes moder; and therefore they chase this mayster Denyce,<sup>b</sup> and was crowned by these iiij. Cytes, Lyxbone, Vyc,<sup>d</sup> Eure,<sup>e</sup> and the porte<sup>f</sup> of Portyngale: they sayd they wolde haue a kyng amonge them; and one of the chefe incydenttes that moued ſy comons to be agaynst the kyng of Castell was as I shall shewe you. The Spanyardes, whom I call Castelllyans, when the maryage was made bytwene them and Portyngale, and that ſy kyng of Portyngale had graunted, that after his dysseas the royalme sholde go to the kyng of Castell: Euer when the Spanyardes mette out of any of the Portyngales, they wolde mocke thē, and say, syrs, whether ye wyll or not, nowe ye shall come to our daunger; we shall holde you vnder subiectyon and seruage, and kepe you lyke slaues and Jues, and do with you as we lyst; and they wolde answer and saye, they trusted that sholde neuer be, and neuer be vnder subiectyon of any other man luyng excepte god; and for suche causes and wordes reprouable of the Spanyardes, ſy Portyngales toke this mayster Denyce,<sup>b</sup> bastarde broder to kyng Ferant,<sup>a</sup> and made hym kyng. In his broders dayes there was no rekenyng made of hym, nor the kyng,<sup>g</sup> that the comons wolde neuer haue chosen hym to theyr kyng, and forsake his daughter as they dyd; howbeit, often tymes this sayd knyght, syr Johñ Ferant Audere, sayd to the kyng, how that this mayster Denyce,<sup>b</sup> his basterde broder, had gretey the grace of the comons of the royalme; wherfore he sayd it had ben good he had ben put to dethe; but kyng Ferant<sup>a</sup> answered and sayd, howe the comons sholde neuer haue puyssaūce to do any thyng agaynst the wyll of the noble men of his cuntry: and how that his one in lawe, the kyng of Castell, sholde euer be puyssaunt ynough to constraýne them, and to chastyce them yf they rebelled after his dyssease; wherfore he sayd there was noo cause to put his bastarde broder to dethe, nor put hym in pryson: sayng how he was his broder, and a man of relygyon, and had ynough to luye on besyde the crowne of Portyngale; and so he was lefte alyue.

These foresayd poyntes and artycles be true, for I the auctoure of this booke haue ben sufficyently enformed therof by the nobles of Portyngale; it is a thyng to be meruayled at, to make a bastarde a kyng; and they of Portyngale saye, and as yet sayth, that the quene of Castell, the lady Beautyrce, daughter to ſy lady Elynour of Coygne,

<sup>a</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>b</sup> Grand Master of Avis.  
<sup>c</sup> Ourique.<sup>d</sup> Oporto.<sup>e</sup> Lorenzo d'Acunha.  
<sup>f</sup> "Supposed."<sup>g</sup> Coimbra.

Coygne,<sup>a</sup> was a bastarde, therefore they wolde not take her as quene of Portyngale, nor none heyre that came of her: the same opynyon the erle of Foys layde to þy knyghtes of his countrey when they wente into Spayne to ayde the kynge of Castel, for he had ben suffyciently informed in the matter bytwene Portyngale and Castel; wherfore he sayd to the at theyr departyng, Syrs, ye haue nothyng to do to busy yourselfe bytwene Castell and Portyngale, for the quene of Castell, who was daughter to kynge Ferant<sup>b</sup> of Portyngale: it is a warre euyll begon; there maye moche euyl come to them that be busye in that matter; but they answered hym, syth they had receyued wages of suche a man as the kynge of Castell was, they must nedes go and serue hym; and so they wente, and moost parte of them there dyed, as ye haue herde here before.

Nowe let vs retourne to the busynes of Portyngale; for they be not for to be lefte for the grete aduentures that there hathe fallē; and to cronycle al thynges as they haue fallen, to the entente that in tyme to come they sholde be founde wryten and registryed; yf aduentures were not knowen, it were grete damage, and by clerkes þy auntyently haue wryten and registryed the hystories and bookes, therby þy hystories are knowen; there is not so perpetuall a memory as is wrytynge; and truly I saye to you and wyll, that they that come after me sholde knowe, that for to knowe the trouth of this hystory, I haue taken therein grete payne in my dayes, and haue serched many royalmes and countres to knowe the trouthe; and haue had acquayntaūce of many valyaunt mē, and haue sene dyuers bothe of Fraunce, of Englonde, of Scotlande, Castell, Portyngale, and of other landes, Duchyes, and Countyes, suche as they and theyr landes hath ben conioyned in these warres; and with them I haue spoken, and ben instructed and informed, and I wolde not that ony enquest sholde passe vnknown, syth I knewe it to be true and notable. And whyle I was in Byerne with þy erle Gaston of Foys, I was there enformed of dyuers busynesses, suche as fell bytwene Castell and Portyngale; and when I was returned agayne into my countrey in the countye of Heynalte, and in the towne of Valencennes, and that I had refreshed me there a season, then I determyned me to folowe the hystory þy I had begon; then I adused in myne ymagynacyon howe I coulde not suffyciently be instructed by the herynge of them that susteyned the opynyon of the kynge of Castell, but that in lykewyse I ought to here the Portyngales as well as the Gascoynes and Spanyardes that I herde in the house of the erle of Foys: and in the waye goynge thyder and retournyng, I toke noo regarde to the payne or traunyle of my body, but so I wente to Bruges in Flaunders, to fynde there some of þy royalme of Portyngale and of Lysbone, for there were euer some of þy countrey: beholde if myne aduenture were good or no; yf I had sought a season vii. yere, I coulde not haue come to a better poynte then I dyd then; for then it was shewed me, that if I wolde go to Meldebourc<sup>c</sup> in Selande, I sholde fynde there a knyght of Portyngale, a valyaunt man and a sage, and of the kynge of Portyngales counsaile, who was newly come thyder, and was goynge thens by see into Pruce,<sup>d</sup> and howe he coulde iustly and playnly shewe me of the busynes and aduentures of Portyngale, for he knewe and had ben ouer all the countrey. These tydynges reioysynge me, and so I wente fro Bruges with one of Portyngale in my company, who knewe ryght wel this knyght, and so we came to Sluse, and there toke the see, and dyd so moche by the grace of god, that we came to meldebourc<sup>c</sup>; and the Portyngales that were in my company aquaynted me with this knyght, and I founde hym ryght gracyous, sage, honourable, courtoys, amyable, and acquayntable; and so I was with hym vi. dayes or there aboute; and this knyght enformed me of all þy busynes bytwene the royalme of Castel and Portyngale syth the dethe of kynge Ferant<sup>b</sup> tyll the departyng of that knyght out of that countrey; he shewed me euery thyng so playnly and so gracyously, that I toke grete pleasure to here hym

<sup>a</sup> D'Acunha.<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>c</sup> Middleburgh.<sup>d</sup> Prussia.

hym and to wryte it: and when I was enfourmed by hym of all that I desyred to knowe, I toke leue of hym, and he conueyed me to my shyp, and so dyd dyuers other ryche merchautes of his countrey, who were come fro Bruges and fro other places to se hym; and in his company there was the sone of Nauarre<sup>1</sup> in Portyngale, and dyuers other knyghtes and squyers of that royaume; but he had the chefe honoure amonge them; and certaynly by that I coulde se and ymagyne of hym and of his estate he was worthy to haue honour, for he was of noble porte and goodly stature, and lykely to be a valyaunt man: and whē I retourne agayne fro Rome into myne owne countrey, I shall busy me to make relacyon of the wordes of this gentyll knyght, called syr Johñ Ferant Portelet, and shall cronycle all that hathe fallen in Portyngale and in Castell vnto the yere of our lorde M.CCC.lxxx. and x.

*Howe they of Portyngale sent out messageres into Englonde, to shewe tydynge of theyr cōtrey to the kynge of Englonde and to the grete lordes there.*

## CAP. XLIII.

NOWE sheweth the hystory & after this mayster Denys,<sup>2</sup> kyng Johñ of Portyngale had dyscomfyted kynge Johñ of Castell at & batayle of Juberoth,<sup>3</sup> nere to & abbaye called & Cabbase,<sup>4</sup> wher as so many noble knyghtes and squyers of Fraunce, Gascoyne, and Byerne were slayne; and that the kynge of Portyngale, for that fayre and vycoryous journey, was gretely doubted and honoured of the Portyngales, and was receyued after his vycory into Lysbone with grete glory of al the people, and there with grete tryumphe was crowned with lawrell, as auntyently kynges were wonte to be crowned after they had dyscomfyted ony kyng in batayle; and there in Lysbone was grete feest or the departure of suche knyghtes and squyers as were there, and the counsailes of the good townes and cytees of & royaume. Then there was a parlyament and a counsaile holden. howe they might perceyuer in theyr opynion honourably; for certayne of the sages of the royaume sayd howe it was necessary for them to se how they myght fortifye themselfe agaynst & kyng of Castell and his puyssaunce, so & they myght honourably abyde in theyr vycory, and to multiply and exalte. In this parlyament at Lysbone, holdē in the cathedral chyrche of saynt Dominicke, there were many deuyses recyted whiche nede not to be rehersed; but the rest and conclusyon of this parlyament was, that they sholde sende into Englonde to the duke of Lancastre, who claymed of ryght the enherytaūce of Castell, by reason of & lady Constance his wyfe, eldest daughter to kynge Don Peter of Castell, and to wryte to hym that if euer he wolde clayme ony ryght in the royaume of Castell, and to set forwarde his busynes, whiche longe hath hanged in balauce and in aduerture to be lost, & he wolde come into Portyngale with a company of men of armes and archers, for as then it was tyme conuenient for hym so to do. Then the erle of Nauarre,<sup>5</sup> constable of Portyngale, in fayre language sayd, Syth we be agreed to sende into Englonde to the duke of Lancastue, by whome we thynke to be ayded, whiche is the moost profytablest waye for vs, to cause our enemyes to feare vs, therefore let vs aduise in our royaume sage personages and notable to do this message, and to enfourme so & duke of Lancastre and his counsaile to come into this countrey so stronge as to resyst our enemyes with suche ayde as he shall haue of vs; for we may well suppose that the kynge of Castell wyll gete grete ayde of the Frensishe kynge. The Frensishe men of warre wote not where better to employ theyr season, for they haue peas w̄ Englonde vnto the feest of saynt Johñ; and also the Frensshemen haue ferme peas with & Flemynges, who hath occupied them before  
dyuers

<sup>1</sup> Count of Navarre.<sup>2</sup> Master of Avis.<sup>3</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>4</sup> Alcobazar.—*J. J. J.*

dyuers yeris. The erle of Naueres<sup>a</sup> wordes were well accepted, and euery mā sayd howe he spake well to the poynte, and ŷ so they wolde do. Then there were named by sad delyberacyon of counsayle, that the grete mayster of saynt Jaques in Portyngale and Laurence Fongasse, a ryght sage and dyscrete squyer, who coulde ryght well speke ŷ language of Fraunce, howe they sholde goo on this message into Englonde, for they coulde sende none of the counsayle of Portyngale that better coulde doo that message then they. Then there were letters wryten in good Frensshe and in Latyn to the kyng of Englonde, to ŷ duke of Lancastre, and to his bretherne ŷ erle of Cambrydge and Bokyngham; and when these letters were wryten and glosed vp in Frensshe and in Latyn, then they were redde before ŷ kyng and his counsayle there, and well lyked, and so sealed and delyuered to the grete mayster of saynt Jaques and to Laurence Fongasse, who toke on thē ŷ charge to bere them into Englonde, so they myght passe the daungere of the see, and encouteryng of ony enemyes and robbers of ŷ see; for as wel there were robbers on ŷ see as on ŷ lande. So they toke a shyp called ŷ Lyn, whiche wolde sayle with all maner of wyndes more surelyer then ony other shyp: so on a day they toke theyr leue of the kyng, and of the archebyssshop of Conynbres,<sup>b</sup> and of the grete counsayle of Portyngale, and wente to the see, and sayled towarde Englonde, and were iii. dayes on ŷ see without syght of lande, and on the fourthe day they sawe Cornewall.

They sped so well by theyr iourneys, and, by the ayde of god and good wynde, ŷ they costed Cornewall and ŷ boundes of Englonde, and so aryued saufely without peryll in the hauen of Hampton,<sup>c</sup> and there cast ancre, and so yssued out of theyr shyppe, and wente and refreshed them in ŷ towne: and there they were examyned by the baylyffe of Hampton,<sup>c</sup> and suche other as were keepers of ŷ cost, of what couētry they were, and fro whens they came, and whyther they wolde? They answered to all theyr demaundes, and sayd, howe they were of the royalmē of Portyngale, and sente thyder fro theyr kyng and his counsayle. Then they were welcome, and had good chere; and when they had refreshed them there, and prouyded for horses for them and for theyr seruauantes, then they rode to London by guydes, for they knew not the cuntry, and so were lodged at the sygne of the Fawcon, and sente backe agayne theyr horses; and it fortunēd so well for them that ŷ kyng and his vnclēs were at Westmynstre, wherof they were ioyfull; they came to Londō in the fore noone, and so dynd, and after dyner they toke theyr letters and wente to the duke of Lancastre and to the duchess: and when ŷ duke and the duchess knewe of theyr comyng, they were ryght ioyfull, for they desyred to here tydynges fro Portyngale; there had ben shewed thē dyuers tydynges, but gretely they dyd not byleue it, bycause they had no letters therof out of ŷ cuntry. Then ŷ grete mayster of saynt Jaques and Laurence Fongasse entred into the dukes chambre, and the duchess there present; and because ŷ Laurence Fongasse coulde speke Irensshe, he spake fyrst; and when he had made his reuerence to the duke and to the duchess, and delyuered them letters fro Portyngale, ŷ duke toke his, and the duchess hers, and so red theyr letters; and then the duke sayd to the messageres, Syrs, ye be ryght welcome into this cuntry, and to morowe ye shall go to the kyng and we shall do you the ayde we can, as it is reason. Then the duchess drewe Laurence Fongasse aparte, and demaūded of hym tydynges out of Castell and Portyngale: to euery thyng this Laurence answered. Then ŷ duke called for wyne and spyce, and so they dranke, and toke theyr leue and retourned to theyr lodgyng; and in ŷ mornyng they wente agayne to ŷ duke, who had herde masse, and so then they entred into a barge, and wente by water to Westmynstre, where ŷ kyng and the moost parte of his counsayle was. The duke entred into the counsayle chambre, and sayd to  
the

<sup>a</sup> Count of Novaire.<sup>b</sup> Coimbra.<sup>c</sup> Southampton.

the kynge, Syr, here is þ̄ grete mayster of saynt Jaques in Portyngale, who hath brought you letters fro þ̄ kynge; wyll it please you to se them? With a good wyll, sayd þ̄ kynge. Then the ii. messagers kneled downe before the kynge, and Laurence Fongase delyuered his letters: the kynge toke them, and caused them to be redde: also they delynered letters to the erle of Cambrydge and to the erle of Bokynghā; eche of them redde theyr letters. The kyng answered þ̄ messageres ryght swetely, and sayd :

Syrs, ye are welcome into this country; your comynge dothe vs grete ioy, and ye shal not departe without answeere, suche as shall please you and all your busynes; let myne vnclres here haue them in remembrance. So they thanked the kynge and departed out of þ̄ counsaile chambre, and wente downe into the palays, abydyng for the duke of Lancastre, who taryed tyll it was hyghe noone. Then the duke of Lancastre toke his two bretherne with hym to dyner, and wente by water, and these messageres with thē. The erle of Cambrydge knewe ryght well the grete mayster of saynt James and Laurence of Fongase, for he had sene them before in Portyngale; wherfore after dyner he comoned with thē of dyuers thynges in the presence of his other two bretherne, and demanded them of the maryage of Castell, and of her that sholde haue ben his daughter in lawe, the lady Beautyrce. To all his demaundes the ambassadours answered wysely and truly, wherby the lordes were ryght well contente and pleased.

Trewe it was, that before these ambassadours were comen into Englonde, the duke of Lancastre, and the erle of Cambrydge his broder, had dyuers counsailes togyder for the ryght they claymed by theyr wyffes. The Erle of Cambrydge, as ye haue herde before, was not well contente with kynge Ferant<sup>a</sup> of Portyngale, nor with the men of warre there, for they had lodged xv. dayes in the felde before þ̄ Castellyans, and yet kynge Ferant<sup>a</sup> nor the Portyngales wolde neuer fyght with thē; yet the erle the same tyme shewed þ̄ kynge his defaulte, and sayd, syr, I haue here in my company of poore Englysshemē a C. speres and a M. archers; and al we are wylling to fyght with our enemyes, and to abyde the aduenture that god wyll sende vs: but kynge Ferant<sup>a</sup> answered euer that he was not counsailed to fyght; wherfore, when the Erle saw that, he departed thens, and toke with hym agayne his sone out of Portyngale; and when he was departed, then the kynge of Portyngale accorded with kynge Johñ of Castell, and maryed his daughter to hym to make the peas: and this treatye was made by syr Johñ Audre,<sup>b</sup> a knyght of portyngale. The kynge there had all his trust in hym. The kynge of Portyngale demaunded of his daughter whether she had rather haue the kynge of Castell, or the erle of Cambrydge sone? She answered and sayd, howe she loned better Johñ of Englonde then Johñ of Castell. The kynge demaunded why she sayd soo? She answered, bycause Johñ of Englonde was a goodly personage and of her age, and that was the cause she wolde not haue the kynge of Castell; howbeit, her fader, to haue peas with the Spanyardes, made that maryage. Also the erle had sayd to the duke of Lancastre his broder, that kynge Ferant<sup>a</sup> ones deed, he doubted that the comons of the royalme of Portyngale wolde rebell agaynst the lady Beautyrce, for the moost parte of the royalme (for al þ̄ theyr kynge had maryed her moder, the lady Elyanoure of Coygne<sup>c</sup>); yet they helde not the kynges daughter to be borne in lawfull maryage, but reputed her as a bastarde, and murmured theron whyle the erle was there; wherfore he was the gladder to take away his sone thens. The duke of Lancastre, to whom þ̄ matter touched nerer then to the erle of Cambrydge, bycause he had maryed the eldest syster, heyre to Castell, and he had a fayre chylde by the lady Constance his wyfe, wherfore he euer desyred to be truly and iustly enfourmed of þ̄ busynes in those parties, and dyd set his mynde howe he myght exalte and further his tittle; and he sawe clerely that as then he coulde not haue so good an entre into Castell as by the

VOL. II.

T

royalme

<sup>a</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>b</sup> Audere.<sup>c</sup> D'Acunha.

royalme of Portyngale, specyally seyng howe he was desyred and requyred of the kyng of Portyngale, and of the barons and comons of the royalme; and also consideryng howe the kyng of Portyngale that was then, was a noble sage prynce and valyaunt, seyng howe he had dyscomfyt the kyng of Castel in playne batayle and all his puyssaunce, wherby the duke & soner enclyned to go into Portyngale: and also the kyng of Englonde and his counsaile was agreed therto; but to the entente to be iustly enformed of all the busynes, state, and condycyon of the cuntry of Castel, and of the ryght that the lady Beautryce claymed to the crowne of Portyngale, and also of the ryght of kyng Johñ of Portyngale, whomè the comons had crowned to theyr kyng, for this entente, on a daye the duke made a dyner to these ambassadours of Portyngale in his owne lodging, and after dyner he made euery man to departe, and called these ambassadours to hym ryght amorously, and demaunded of them of the busynes of Portyngale; and bycause that Laurence Fongase coulde speke Frenshe, the duke addressed his words vnto hym and sayd, Laurence, I requyre you to shew me, from poynte to poynte, the condycyon and maner of your londe of Portyngale, and what hath fallen there and in Castell syth my broder, the erle of Cambrydge, was there; for the kyng of Portyngale hath wryten to me, that there is no man in Portyngale ȳ can enforme me more iustly then ye can do, and in this ye shall do me a grete pleasure. Syr, sayd ȳ squyer, I shall fulfyll your pleasure: and then began to speke, and sayd in this mauer:

Syr, syth the departure of your broder, the erle of Cambrydge, out of Portyngale, there hath fallen grete trouble and dyscencyō in the royalme, and in grete aduenture to haue ben lost; but, thanked be god, the busynesses there are as nowe in good poynte and fermely stablysshed; but and god had not wrought by his grace, the matter had gone euyll, and all thrughe the defaulte of kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> last dysseased. This is the oppynyō of the moost parte of the royalme; for kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> in his dayes loued sore a lady, wyfe to a knyght of his, called syr Johñ Laurence of Coygne,<sup>b</sup> and bycause of her beautye he wolde haue her by force. The lady withstode the kynges desyre as longe as she myght, but at the laste he had her, and sayd, Dame, I shall make you quene of Portyngale; for though I loue you, it is not for your hurte, but to exalte you, for I wyl mary you. Then the lady on her knees wepyng sayd, syr, sauynge your dyspleasure, I can haue none honour to be quene of Portyngale; for you knowe, and so doth all the worlde, that I haue an husbnde all redy, and haue hadde this v. yere. Elyanoure, sayd the kyng, make none escuse, for I wyl haue none other wyfe but you; but I shall quyte you from your husbnde or I mary you. The lady coulde gete none other wordes of the kyng; and she shewed all the matter to her husbnde; and when ȳ knyght knewe therof, he was sory and malencolyous, and regarded and studyed what were best for hym to do, and sayd to hymselfe, I wyl not thus leue my wyfe; howbeit, he doubted the kyng, and wente out of the royalme of Portyngale into Castell to kyng Henry, who receuyed hym and reteyned hym to be of his house as longe as he lyued, and soo dothe kyng Johñ that nowe is. Thus the kyng of Portyngale, to accomplissh his folysshe pleasure, sente for the knyght and for the lady; but the knyght was goone. Then the kyng sente for the bysshoppe of Connymbres,<sup>c</sup> who was as then chauncelloure of Portyngale, and of the kynges counsaile; and the kyng shewed hym his entent, how he wolde wedde Elyanoure of Coygne;<sup>b</sup> and the bysshop fered the kyng, bycause he knewe hym of an hyghe and a fyerce condycyon; therfore he durst not saye contrary to the kynges pleasure: and also syr Johñ Ferrant Audere, who was chefe of counsaile with the kyng, to please the kyng, sayd to ȳ bysshop, Syr, ye may wed them wel ynoughe, ones ȳ kyng shal make recompence for all; so ȳ bysshop wedded

<sup>a</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>b</sup> Lorenzo d'Acunha:<sup>c</sup> Coimbra.

wedded them, and this lady was crowned quene, and so reputed in al þ̄ grete Cytees in Portyngale, and had as moche honoure and renerence as euer hadde any other quene in the royalme of Portyngale; and the kyng had by her a daughter, who as now is quene of Castell. True it was, that whyle kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> lyued, he sente on a day to Lysbone for all the prelates and noblemen of the cuntry, and for the counsailes of the Cytees, portes, and townes of Portyngale, and this was or your broder the erle of Cambrydge came into Portyngale; and there the kyng made euery man to swere and to promyse, that after his dyssease they sholde take his daughter, the lady Beautyce, who was as then but fyue yeres of aegge, for herytoure of þ̄ royalme of Portyngale: euery man sware whether they wolde or not; howbeit, the moost parte of them þ̄ were there knewe ryght well that she was but a bastarde, and borne in adoutrye: for her moders husbnde was styll lyuyng, called syr Johñ Laurence of Coygne,<sup>b</sup> who lyued in Castell with the kyng there as longe as kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> of Portyngale lyued, and lengar; howbeit, syr, I thinke surely yf the kynges daughter had ben a sone, that all the comonaltye of Portyngale wolde soner haue agreed to hym thē to his daughter; for to her they sayd, they wolde neuer agree, but had rather dye then to be vnder the subiectyon of the royalme of Castell.

For as yet the royalme of Portyngale and the royalme of Castell neuer loued partelyte togyder, but hathe often tymes haryed and made warre eche with other, in lyke wyse as the royalme of Scotlande dothe with þ̄ royalme of Englonde.

Then the duke of Lancastre demanded of Laurence Fongase where kyng Johñ that now is, broder to kyng Ferrant,<sup>a</sup> was in kyng Ferrantes<sup>a</sup> dayes? Syr, sayd the squyer, he was in the royalme of Portyngale, in a house of relygyon, wherin be knyghtes of an ordre in whyte habytes with a reed crosse; and he was souerayne of that house, and was called mayster Denyce.<sup>c</sup> The kyng set lytell by his broder, but made hym ruler of that house of Denyce;<sup>c</sup> nor also kyng Johñ that now is medled nothyng with the busynes of the royalme, nor thought nothyng of the crowne therof; for yf kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> of Portyngale had thought any thyng of that is fallen syth he loued his lady Elyanoure and the lady Beautyce her daughter, he wolde haue slayne his broder, who is now kyng; but bycause he sawe that he kepte his house with the bretherne of his ordre so mekely and duely, he had no suspecte in hym, but so let hym lyue in peas: and, syr, as for the dysseacyon that is now bytwene Portyngale and Castell, surely, syr, to saye the trouthe therin, þ̄ Spanyardes are cause therof. Why so? sayd þ̄ duke. I shal shewe you, sayd the squyer. The Castellyans, when they sawe that kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> had maryed his daughter to theyr kyng, then they began to be prowde, and began to speke grete wordes, whiche sore greued the Portyngales: for the Spanyardes wolde say, O ye Portyngales, rude people lyke beestes, the tyme now is come that we shall haue a good market of you, for ye haue ben and shall be ours; we shall deuyde and set you in companyes, as we do the Jues who dwelleth by truage vnder vs; ye shall be our subiectes: with other venymous wordes; often tymes they sayd thus when they met the Portyngales: and whyle kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> lyued, and had maryed his daughter into Castell, they engendred suche an hate, that they murmured and sayd, it were better to be deed thē to be vnder the daunger and subieccyon of þ̄ Castellians; and so kyng Ferrant<sup>a</sup> fell syke, whiche endured a hole yere; and when he was deed and buryed in the chyrche of saynt Fraunces, a relygyous house of freers in the cyte of Lysbone, then the cytees, good townes, and castelles in Portyngale closed theyr gates, and they sente for the kyng that now is to Lysbone, who knewe ryght well the ententes of the iii. other cytees, as Connymbres,<sup>d</sup> Porte, and Eure.<sup>e</sup> Then they sayd, Mayster Denyce<sup>c</sup> (so he was called as then), we wyll make you kyng of this royalme, though he

T 2

ye

<sup>a</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>b</sup> Lorenzo d'Acunha.<sup>c</sup> Master of Avis.<sup>d</sup> Coimbra.<sup>e</sup> Oporto and Ourique.

ye be a bastarde; but we say that your cosyn the lady Beautyrce, quene of Castell, is borne rather a basterde than you, for as yet lyueth her moders fyrst husbände: and syth it is so that the crowne of Portyngale is fallen in two wayes, we wyll take for vs the moost profytable, and also the moost parte of the royalme enclenyeth to make you our kyng, and that the crowne of Portyngale shall not go to a woman, nor we wyll not be vnder the subieccyon of the kyng of Castell, nor of the Castellyans; we had rather ye sholde take all that we haue, to ayde and to maynteyne vs and our fraunches, thē the Castellyans sholde be maysters ouer vs; wherfore, syr, receyue our gyfte, for we wyl it shal be thus. Then this mayster Denyce,<sup>a</sup> who is as nowe kyng, wolde not receyue theyr offre at the fyrst nor seconde request, but answered and sayd, Good people, I knowe well of good affeccyon and entyer loue ye offre me the crowne of Portyngale, whiche is a grete thyng: and where as ye saye that I haue as grete ryght or more to the crowne as my cosyn the quene of Castell, in lykewyse I thynke the same: for true it is she is a basterde, for as yet lyueth her moders husbände, and is in Castell; but there is one poynte, ye all alone can not do this matter; it behoueth that al the nobles or grete parte of them agre therto. Thē they of Lysbone answered and sayd, syr, we haue ynowe; we knowe all redy the courage of dyuers, and also the oppynyon of them of the iii. chefe cytees of this royalme besyde vs, as Connymbres,<sup>b</sup> Porte, and Eure;<sup>c</sup> then the kyng sayd, let it be as ye wyl, I am content; ye know well that this lady Elyanoure, who is called quene of this royalme, is as yet here in this cyte, and her counsaylloure with her, syr Johā Ferrant Audere, who wyll kepe the crowne of Portyngale and the herytage therof for ſ quene of Castell; for he made fyrst the maryage to make peas bytwene Castell and Portyngale: and peraduenture the kyng of Castell wyll sende for hym hastely, to helpe to subdue his rebelles; wherfore nowe, at the obsequye of my broder, whiche shal be shortly, wherat most parte of the nobles of this royalme and Cytees wyl be, it were good to prouyde for remedy in that behalfe. Then they that were presente sayd, syr, that ye saye is true; we shall prouyde therfore, as we shall here syr Johā Ferrant speke; and so as then theyr counsayle ended.

It was not longe after but that the obsequye was kepte at Lysbone in the freers, where as kyng Ferrant<sup>d</sup> lyeth; and there were many of the nobles of Portyngale, for they were desyred so to be by ſ quene and by syr Johā Ferrant Audere, who gouerned the quene; and there was the kyng that nowe is, with a grete nombre of the comons of the cuntry, and specyally of the thre cytees, Connymbres,<sup>b</sup> Eure, and ſ porte of Portyngale,<sup>c</sup> for they all agreed and consented to them of Lysbone. And when the obyte was done, syr Johā Ferrant Audere desyred, in the quenes name, the nobles that were there presente, that they sholde not departe thens that daye nor the nexte, saynge howe the quene wolde haue theyr counsayles what sholde be done to sende into Castel for kyng Johā and his wyfe, the lady Beautyrce theyr lady, who was herytoure by ryght to the royalme of Portyngale: all the nobles, or a grete parte of them that herde his wordes, made lytel therof, for they doubted sore the comons that were there essembled, for they had herde dyuers of them murmure, saynge how they wolde crowne to be theyr kyng mayster Denyce;<sup>a</sup> also syr Johā Ferrant Audere had herde lyke wordes; therfore he desyred the nobles of the royalme to abyde there with hym, to ayde and susteyne his opynyon; but they fayled hym, for as sone as the kynges obyte was done in the foresayd freers, and ſ quene Elyanour was retourned to her lodgyng, then euery man cryed to horse, and so al or the moost parte mounted on theyr horses, and so departed fro Lysbone; some taryed styll, suche as were on the kynges partye ſ nowe is, and they wente to theyr lodgynges, and kepte themselfe pryuely and dyssyniuled the matter, for they well ymagyned the matter to fall as it fell, as I shall shewe you howe.

When

<sup>a</sup> Master of Avis.

<sup>b</sup> Coimbra.

<sup>c</sup> Oporto and Ourique.

<sup>d</sup> Ferdinand.



When the kynges obyte was done, the comons of Lysbone and of the other thre cytees, suche as were there, returned not shortely to theyr lodgynges, but wente to the cathedral chyrche of Lysbone, called saynt Domynycke, and there they assembled, and mayster Denyce<sup>a</sup> with them; there they had grete counsaile togyder, whiche counsaile endured not longe, for the kyng that nowe is sayd vnto them:

All ye good people, I vnderstande ye wolde make me your kyng; and, surely, I saye it is my ryght; and yf ye wyll perceyuer in that purpose, it is tyme to sette a worke, and to shewe your dede and puyssaunce, for ye knowe ryght well that syr Johñ Ferrant Audere dothe procure the nobles of the royalme to sende for y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Castell, and he sayth and maynteyneth that the crowne of Portyngale perteyneth to the kyng of Castell by the ryght of my cosyne his wyfe; and I saye, yf ye wyll ayde me, it is my ryght rather then hers; ye knowe all the maner, for I am a man, and broder to kyng Ferrāt,<sup>b</sup> and sone to good kyng Peter of Portyngale, who gouerned you valyantly. True it is, my cosyne the quene of Castell was daughter to kyng Ferrant,<sup>b</sup> but that was not by lawfull maryage. Then they of Lysbone sayd vnto hym, Syr, all this is true; we wyll haue none other kyng but you, and we wyll make you our kyng, loke theron who wyll; but ye shall swere vnto vs, that ye shall be good to vs and kepe Iustyce, and ye shall not flatter no more with the grete lordes then with the small people, and ye shall kepe and susteyne with good herte, with the ayde that we shall gyue you, all the ryght perteynyng to Portyngale. Then the kyng answered and sayd, Syrs, all this I swere, but pryncypally I requyre you to go with me to y<sup>e</sup> lodgyng called y<sup>e</sup> Monnoy,<sup>c</sup> where syr Johñ Ferrant Audere is with Elyanoure of Coygne, for I wyll that he be slayne, for he hath deserued it agaynst me, and agaynst you, when he susteyneth and maynteyneth other quarelles agaynst your wylls. Thenne they all with one voyce answered, We wyll that this be done, for surely he is disobeyssaunt and a rebell agaynst you; wherby other of the royalme shall take ensample. Then they departed togyder from the mynstre of saynt Domynycke to the nombre of xv. C. all of one oppynyon, and the kyng that nowe is with them: and soo they wente thurgh the towne to the lodgyng called the Monnoy,<sup>c</sup> where the quene and syr Johñ Ferrant Audere were: and when they came there, they brake vp the gates of the lodgyng, and entred therin perforce, and they wente into the chambre where as the quene was, who was ryght sore afrayde whē she sawe so moche people comyng vpon her; then incontynent she fell downe on her knees before this mayster Denyce,<sup>a</sup> and prayed hym to haue pyte and compassyon vpon her, saynge vnto hym, that she knewe nothyng of any dyspleasure that she hadde done agaynst hym or agaynst any other; and also she sayd vnto hym, howe that as touchyng the crowne and herytage of Portyngale she claymed no parte; but mayster Denyce,<sup>a</sup> I requyre you and all the people here present, to consyde how kyng Ferrant<sup>b</sup> made me quene agaynst my wyl. Then this mayster Denyce<sup>a</sup> sayd, Fayre lady, doubte ye nothyng, for ye shall haue no hurte, for we be not come therfore; but for this traytoure, Johñ Ferrant Audere, he shall dye to begyn withall, and then lette the kyng of Castell reuenge his deth yf he can; he hath ben to longe his proctoure in this countrey: with that worde auanced forth suche as was ordeyned therto, who toke the knyght and put hym to dethe; and more hurte they dyd not to no persone, but so returned to theyr lodgyng, and the kyng y<sup>e</sup> nowe is wente to his.

And after the dethe of Johñ Ferrant, the lady Elyanoure, who had ben quene of Portyngale, toke counsaile and determyned herselfe to go out of Portyngale into Castell to the kyng there, and to the quene her daughter, for she was in suche fray by the dethe  
of

<sup>a</sup> The Master of Avis.<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>c</sup> The Mint.

of her knyght, syr Johā Ferrant Audere, that she thought no lenger to abyde in Portyngale, for she sawe she coulde haue there nother honoure nor rest; then she caused mayster Denyce,<sup>a</sup> now kyng, to be desyred to suffre her to departe: and he lyghtly agreed therto, and sayd, howe that it pleased hym well ſ̄ she sholde departe, for he sayd she had good cause soo to do. The lady departed fro Lysbone with all her company, and she rode so longe by her iourneys that she came to Synyll, where the kyng of Castell and the quene laye; and the same season that this lady came thyder, there were assembled nere all the nobles of Castell, for there they had a grete counsaile on the busynes for Portyngale: for kyng Johā there toke counsaile howe he myght do, seyng the royalme of Portyngale was fallen to hym by successyon, by the dethe of kyng Ferrant,<sup>b</sup> fader to the quene his wyfe, who agreed or he dyed that it sholde so be, and all the countrye in lyke wyse. This lady Elyanoure was receyued with the kyng and with the quene her daughter ryght honourably, as it was reason. Then she was examyned of all the busynes in Portyngale, and she shewed them the trouthe of that she hadde sene and knowen; and also she sayd, howe that it well appered that by all lykelyhode the comons of Portyngale wolde crowne to theyr kyng mayster Denyce,<sup>a</sup> without the kyng of Castell there agaynst made resystence and defence; and for that cause they hadde slayne her knyght, syr Johā Ferrant of Audere, bycause he susteyned, and alwayes he had done, the kyng of Castelles quarell; and in all that this lady sayd she was wel bylenued, for they sawe it well apparent: and also certayne barons and knyghtes of the royalme of Portyngale, suche as hadde better affeccyon to the kyng of Castell themne to the kyng that nowe is, bycause of kyng Ferrantes<sup>b</sup> daughter, and for to accomplysse and fullyll theyr othes that they had made to the kyng of Castell, at the desyre of theyr kyng Johā Ferrant<sup>b</sup> when he gaue his daughter in maryage to the kyng of Castell; therefore, to acqute theyr promyse, they departed out of the royalme of Portyngale and wente into Castell, and lefte theyr owne landes and herytages on the aduerture to recouer them agayne, as the erle Alphons Seroll, ſ̄ grete pryour of saynt Jhāns in Portyngale, syr Delagare<sup>c</sup> his broder, Ange Syluaste of Geneull, Johā Aussall,<sup>d</sup> and dyuers other to the nombre of xxv.; wherby ſ̄ royalme of Portyngale was sore febled, and the royalme of Castell enforced. Then the kyng of Castell made his somons thurghout all his royalme, that all noble men and all other able to bere armure bytwene xv. and xl. sholde in all hast come to hym into the felde of Sebyll; for he sayd he wolde with puyssaunce entre into the royalme of Portyngale, and conquere it as his owne herytage; at his commaundement euery man obeyed as it was reason, for suche as helde of hym, and so they came to the felde of Sebyll,<sup>e</sup> and there assembled to the nombre of lx. M. men of one and other.

And when syr Laurence of Coygne,<sup>f</sup> husbunde to the lady Elyanoure, whome kyng Ferrant<sup>b</sup> of Portyngale toke to his wyfe, and was quene of Portyngale, vnderstode that she was come out of Portyngale into Castell, then he wente to certayne of the kyng of Castelles counsaile, and sayd to them, as in demaundyng of them counsaile: My lordes and my grete frendes, howe shall I do w̄ Elyanoure my wyfe, who is come out of Portyngale into this countrye? I knowe ryght well kyng Ferrant<sup>b</sup> toke her by force agaynst her wyll; and nowe kyng Ferrant<sup>b</sup> is deed, and ye knowe well by reason I ought to haue my wyfe agayne: what counsaile wyll ye gyue me therin? And suche as he spake vnto gaue hym counsaile, and sayd, Johā, we counsaile you to make no semblaunt therof, nor demaunde her not agayne, nor take her not; for if ye do ye shall gretely abate the honoure of the lady, and also blemyssheth the honoure of the quene of

<sup>a</sup> Master of Avis.<sup>b</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>c</sup> Alvarez?<sup>d</sup> These names agree with

those in the Lyons' edition, but bear no resemblance to those in Mr. Jones' translation, which are here subjoined: "Don Pedro Pereyra, grand prior of St. John; Don Henriquez Manuel, count of Cintra; and Don Juan Texeda, chancellor to the queen."

<sup>e</sup> Seville.<sup>f</sup> Lorenzo d'Acunha.

of Castell her daughter, for then ye sholde make her worse then a basterde: ye se how þe kyng of Castell wyll demaunde and thynke to conquere the royalme of Portyngale, as his owne ryghtfull herytage by the ryght of his wyle. Thus ye sholde open clerely whiche is now somewhat in doute and trouble, and without ye take good hede it wyll cost you your lyfe, yf ye make þe quene of Castell a basterde: for they of this countreys susteyne her quarell, and say that she was borne in iust maryage by dyspensacyon of the pope: Well, sayd the knyght, then what is it best for me to do? we shal shewe you, sayd they; the best that we thynke is, y as sone as ye can gete you out of Castell, and go agayne to your enherytaunce into Portyngale, and leue the lady Elyanoure here with her daughter: we se none other sauegarde for you but this; by my fayth, sayd þe knyght, I bylene you well, for ye comsaille me truely, and lyke good frendes. So this syr John Laurence of Coygne<sup>a</sup> tarved not longe after in Castell, but departed and wente to Lysbone, and there he founde mayster Denyce,<sup>b</sup> now kyng, and sayd, how he was come to serue hym, and wolde be vnder his obeysaunce, for he wolde take hym for his kyng. Mayster Denyce<sup>b</sup> had grete ioye, and sayd, howe he was welcome to hym, and so gane hym agayne all his herytage, and made hym capytayne of Lysbone. Thus syr, as I haue shewed you, fell the busynes bytwene Portyngale and Castell.

*Howe Lawrence Fongase, ambassadoure fro the kyng of Portyngale into Englonde, shewed to the duke of Lancastre the maner of the dyscorde that was bytwene the royalmes of Castell and Portyngale.*

## CAP. XLIII.

THE duke of Lancastre toke grete pleasure to here Laurence Fongase speke, he spake so attemperatly, and so good Frensshie, and also because the matter touched hym nere; and to the entent that he wolde come to the botom of his desyre, he sayd, Laurence, speke on hardely, I haue harde no straunger speke this two yere, that I had rather here speke then you, for ye go to þe trouthe of the matter; also the letters that ye haue brought to me fro the kyng of Portyngale, testefyeth howe there is nothyng that hath ben done bytwene Portyngale and Castell, but that ye can iustly informe me therof. Syr, sayd the squyer, Iytell thynge hath there ben done as in dedes of armes, but that I haue ben at them, wherfore I can well speke of them; and syth it is your pleasure and volante y I shall pursewe my wordes, I shall shewe you euery thyng as I knowe: thus as I shewed you before, kyng John of Castell assbled his people as soone as he myght, and so came with a grete puyssaunce and strength towardes Lysbone, or the kyng of Portyngale that nowe is was crowned, to put the Portyngales in feare, and to shewe howe he hadde ryght to the herytage of Portyngale; and so fyrst he came before saynt yrayne,<sup>c</sup> whiche was the entre of Portyngale, and there he rested two dayes: they of the towne with the gouernours therof were in grete feare with his comyng, because of þe grete nombre of men of warre y were with hym, and soo they yelded vp their towne to hym; and after he had taken their possessyon, and lefte men of armes to kepe the towne for feare of rebellyon, then he departed with all his oost, and soo wente tyll he came before the towne of Tuy,<sup>d</sup> whiche was ryght stronge; there he layde his syege: and a grete parte of them of Tuy<sup>d</sup> helde with the quene of Castell, for the lady Elyanoure had it lymytte to her for her dowry, wherfore lyghtely they yelded them to the kyng of Castell, and became his subiectes, and was vnder his obeysaunce; and when the kyng of

<sup>a</sup> Lorenzo d'Acunha.

<sup>b</sup> The Master of Avis, supposed to be the town of Leyria.

<sup>c</sup> Santarem.

<sup>d</sup> This is

of Castell hadde taken possessyon there, he lefte men of armes to kepe it; and when he hadde soo done, he passed the ryuer and wente to the towne of Valencennes,<sup>a</sup> in Portyngale, and thereto layde his syege, and he sente his messagere vnto them that were withyn, that they sholde yelde them and theyr towne vnto hym: and they of Valence<sup>a</sup> answered and sayd, let the kyng of Castell passe forth and go to Lisbonne, and as soone as they myght knowe that he hath woime that cyte outhur by loue, feare, or perforce, that then incontynente they wolde delyuer vp the keyes of theyr towne to hym: this answere pleased ryght well the kyng of Castell, and so departed fro Valence:<sup>a</sup> in lyke wyse dyd they of another cyte, called Serpe,<sup>b</sup> whiche was stronge and fayre; the kyng thought to haue gone thyder, but when he knewe theyr composycyon, he was content and came not there, but so toke the waye to Lysbone, for he knewe yf he myght subdue that cyte, he sholde haue all the resydue of the cuntry at his ease: and where souer he wente he had with hym the quene his wyfe, to shewe thereby to þ Portyngales that the ryght was his, and that by good and iust cause, he wolde conquere his wyues herytage.

Thus kyng Johñ of Castell came with all his oost before Lysbone, and there layde a grete syege, and shewed well by his syege that he wolde not departe thens tyll he had þ cyte at his pleasure, and gretly thretened mayster Denyce,<sup>c</sup> who was within þ cyte, and sayd howe that yf he myght gete hym, he sholde dye an euyll dethe, and all the rebelles with hym; the kyng of Castelles oost was grete, for he had moche people; for the Spanyardes and Frensshemen that were there closed so þ Cyte aboute, that none coule yssue out nor entre, wout he were taken or slayne: and somtyme it fell by skyrmysshes and otherwyse that the Spanyardes toke some Portyngales: then þ Spanyardes wolde put out theyr eyen, or stryke of a fote or an arme, or some other membre, and so sente them in agayne into the cyte, commaüdyng them to saye that they dyd, they dyd in dyspyte of þ Lysbonoys, and of theyr mayster Denyce,<sup>c</sup> whom they wolde make theyr kyng: and also shewe them playnly that we shal holde this syege here so longe that we shall haue them perforce, by famyne or otherwyse, and then they shall all dye an euyll dethe, and set fyre on the cyte without mercy or pyte. And when the Lysbonoys toke any of them, they dyd not so: for the kyng that nowe is of Portyngale made them to be well kepte at theyr ease, and so sent them agayne into the oost without any hurte or damage of theyr persones, wherfore some sayd in þ oost that it was done of a grete gentylnes, for he rendred good for euell. And syr, whyle this syege endured, whiche was an hole yere and more, euery weke there was one or two skyrmysshes and dedes of armes done, and some hurte and slayne on the one parte or on the other: the kyng of Castell helde as well his syege by water as by lande, and had plente of vytaylles, for it came to his oost from all partyes out of Castell; and on a day it happened at a skyrmysshe that was made at one of þ gates, syr Johñ Laurence of coygne,<sup>d</sup> who was capytayne of the Cyte, yssued out of the baryers with his penon of the armes of Coygne<sup>d</sup> before hym, and with hym a good nombre of propre men of warre: and at that skyrmysshe there was done many a propre feate of armes, and many a darte cast. By my fayth, sayd the duke of Lancastre, of all the feates of armes that the Castellyans, and they of your cuntry dothe vse, the castyng of theyr dartes best pleaseth me, and gladly I wolde se it; for as I here say, yf they stryke one aryght, without he be well armed, the darte wyll perce hym thrughe: by my fayth syr, sayd the squyer, ye saye trouthe, for I haue sene many a grete stroke gyuen w̄ them, whiche at one tyme cost vs derely, and was to vs grete dyspleasure: for at þ sayd skyrmysshe syr Johñ Laurence of Coygne<sup>d</sup> was stryken w̄ a darte in suche wyse, that the heed perced all

<sup>a</sup> Valenza d'Alcantara.<sup>b</sup> Serpa.<sup>c</sup> The Master of Avis.<sup>d</sup> Don Lorenzo d'Acunha.

all the plates of his cote of mayle, and a iacke stopped with sylke, and passed thurgh his body, so that he fel downe deed, and thierwith seased the skyrmysshe, bycause of ÿ dethe of ÿ knyght; and so was the lady Elyanoure a wydowe in one yere of bothe her husbandes.

For this syr Johan Laurence of Cygne<sup>a</sup> was made grete mone, for he was a valyaüt knyght, and full of good counsayle: and after his dethe there was chosen to be capytayne of Lysbone, a cosyne of his, a ryght valyaunt mā, called pouuasse of Coyne:<sup>b</sup> he made agaynst ÿ Spanyardes thre or foure yssues, and dyd to them grete domage.

Thus contynued the syege at Lysbone, and surely often tymes they within the towne were sore abashed, for they coulde se no comforte come to them frome ony parte; and when they sawe that none came out of Englonde, wheron lay all theyr trust, thē the kyng that nowe is was counsayled to haue taken a shyp, and so to haue come hyder into Englonde; for syr Johā Vadigothz<sup>b</sup> of passe, syr Johā Cete Dore,<sup>c</sup> and the arche-deacon of Lysbone, whom they had sent hyther into Englonde to the kyng here, and to you, and to the erle of Cambridge your broder, for to haue some cōforte and ayde, when they returned into Lysbone, they brought tydynge howe ÿ ye wolde haue comforted them: in the name of god, sayd the duke, all that is of trouthe, and so had I done, and was redy and at ÿ poynte to haue departed, but as then the warre of Flaundres and of Gaunte dyd let me: for the Gauntoys came hyder for ayde and helpe, and so all suche or the moost parte of them that sholde haue gone w me into Portyngale, wente into Flaundres with ÿ bysshop of Norwyche, syr Henry Percy: and so that letted my iourney into Portyngale: in the name of god, sayd ÿ squyer, it was thought amonge vs that there was some grete let in Englonde, so ÿ you coulde not come hyder; howbeit, we dyd as well as we myght, and maynteyned ourselfe valyauntly agaynst the kyng of Castell and all his puyssaunce, whiche was no small thyng, for he had mo then lx. M. mē by see and by lande, and threatened to byrne, and to exyle vs without mercy: and syr, thus whyle this syege endured, an erle of our cuntry of Portyngale, called the erle of Angouse,<sup>d</sup> dyd vs on a day grete socour, wherby he attayned grete honoure; for he with xx. Galeys, aryued at the porte of Portyngale,<sup>e</sup> with a good nombre of men of armes and prouyson, and so came saylynge by ÿ see before Valence,<sup>f</sup> and thurgh ÿ grace of god he came by ÿ kyng of Castelles army, as they lay at ancre before Lisbone, who were mo then a C. grete vesselles; howbeit, he dyd his entrepryse so graciously, and had the wynde at so good a poynte, that in dyspyte of all his enemyes, he entred saufely without peryll with all his galeys into the hauen of Lysbone, and at his comynge in, conquered iiij. shyppes of his enemyes, and brought them with hym into ÿ hauen, of whose comynge all that were in Lysbone were ryght ioyous, for it cōforted them gretely: by my fayth, sayd the duke of Lancastre. the erle of Angouse<sup>d</sup> at ÿ tyme dyd you a fayre seruyce. But nowe fayre Laurence, shewe me howe was this syege raysed, and by what maner: I wolde gladly here you speke therof: syr, sayd the squyer, I shall shewe you with ryght a good wyll.

As I haue shewed you, the syege endured more then a yere before Lysbone, and the kyng of Castell had sworne and auowed that he wolde not departe frome the syege tyll he had the cyte vnder his obeysaunce, without the puyssaunce of a gretter kyng then he was raysed hym therfro by force; and truly al thynges consydered, the kyng of Castel kepte wel his auowe, for ÿ puyssaunce of a gretter kyng then he was raysed hym, and caused hym to departe; I shall shewe you howe: a pestylence and mortalyte mer-

VOL. II.

U

uaylous

<sup>a</sup> Don Lorenzo d'Acunha.<sup>b</sup> Rodriguez.<sup>c</sup> Testa-dor.<sup>d</sup> The lord d'Acosta.<sup>e</sup> Oporto.<sup>f</sup> Valenza.

uaylous ferefull fell in his oost, in suche wyse, that mē dyed sodeynly, spekyng one to another; there dyed mo then xx. M. persones, wherof ȝ kyng was sore afrayde, wherfore it was counsayled hym to departe thens, and to drawe to saynt yrayne,<sup>a</sup> or to some other parte, and breke vp the svege, and to gyue leue to his people to departe tyll the pestylence were ceased, whiche he dyd sore agaynst his wyll, bycause he had sworne so solelymly to kepe ȝ svege; howbeit, of necessity he was layne to departe. Therfore syr, we say, and hath ben sayd in Portyngale, and it is the comon opynyon, that god dyd sende that pestylence into the kyng of Castelles oost to ayde vs and our kyng that nowe is, for in the cyte wherin we were closed, there dyed nother man nor womā of ȝ sykenes: this grace god dyd for vs. And when the kyng of Castell dyslodged fro Lysbonc, the kyng of Portyngale that nowe is caused all suche as were within the cyte to be armed, and to lepe on theyr horses, and to folowe the trayne of the kyng of Castelles oost; and there we dyd then grete damage, for they dyslodged not in good aray, wherby they lost parte of theyr men and promocyon; but the kyng of Portyngale made a crye, that on payne of dethe no mā to take ony thyng ȝ they founde in the felde, nor to bryng any thyng therof into the cyte, but commaunded euery thyng to be brente, to the entent that it sholde bryng no infeccyon into the cyte: so prouysyon and euery thyng was conuerted into flame of fyre; howbeit, I thinke suche as founde other golde or syluer in money or place brent it not, but saued it as well as they myght. So thus the kyng of castel wente to saynt yrayne<sup>a</sup> at ȝ entre of his countrey, and there taryed a season, and sent for more socour into Fraūce, and specyally into Gascoyne and Byerne, and into ȝ lādes of ȝ erle of Foys; and he sent thyder iii. somers laden w̄ nobles of castel and floreyns, to gyue in prest to knyghtes and squyers, for he knewe well otherwyse he sholde not haue them come out of theyr houses. And when the barons and knyghtes of ȝ royalme of Portyngale, on ȝ partye of ȝ kyng that nowe is, sawe howe the kyng of Castell had rayssed his svege, whiche had endured more then a yere, they toke then grete courage, and so dyd all the comons of the countrey, and specyally they of Porte, Ewre, and Connymbres;<sup>b</sup> then they toke counsayle togyder shortly to crowne to theyr kyng mayster Denyce,<sup>c</sup> whom they had chosen and gyuen hym theyr loue, and sayd how that it was goddes wyll ȝ he sholde be theyr kyng, for he had shewed his vertue agaynst the Spanyardes: then a commaundement was made throughtout all Portyngale, euery mā to come to Cōnymbres,<sup>d</sup> at a certayne daye lymyted, to the Coronacyon of mayster Denyce:<sup>e</sup> all suche as toke his parte came thyder, and accordyng to the puysaunce of that royalme there was moche people; there kyng Johñ of Portyngale was crowned by the bysshoppes and prelates of the royalme with grete solempnyte as it aperteyned, on trynyte sondaye, the yere of our lorde god M. CCC. lxxx. and iii. in the cathedrall chyirche of Cōnymbres,<sup>d</sup> called saynt Maries, whiche daye ȝ kyng made newe knyghtes, what of his owne countrey as of straungers, to ȝ nombre of lx. There was kepte a grete feest ii. or iii. dayes; and there the kyng renewed all homages of Erles, barons, knyghtes, and squyers, and suche as helde of hym; and there the kyng sware to kepe the royalme in ryght and Iustyce, and to maynteyne al theyr iurysdyccyons, and euery man sware to take hym for theyr kyng, and his heyres comyng of hym, male, or female, that to dye in the payne neuer to forsake them. Thus kyng Johñ of Portyngale was crowned kyng.

When the kyng of Castell knewe how the comons of Portyngale had crowned mayster Denyce<sup>c</sup> to theyr kyng, and had sworne to hym faythe and homage, then he was more dyspleased then he was before, for he had thought they wolde not haue done it so sodeynly, bycause he had many of the nobles of Portyngale with hym; then he sayd, I  
se

<sup>a</sup> Santarem.<sup>b</sup> Oporto, Ourique, and Coimbra.  
<sup>d</sup> Coimbra.<sup>c</sup> The Master of Avis.

se well it behoueth me perforce to conquere þ̄ is myne, yf I wyll haue it: there shall neuer be peace bytwene Castell and Portyngale, tyll þ̄ Portyngales haue amended þ̄ they haue done. And so after the kyng was crowned he came to Lysbone, and there taryed and toke grete dylygence to set in a good way þ̄ busynes of his royalme, and to gete therby the grace, good wyl and lone of his people, and sent his knyghtes and men of warre into dyuers garysons, into townes and castelles on the fronters of Spayne, for þ̄ kyng of Castell lay at Sybyll.<sup>a</sup> The kyng of Portyngale sent in garyson to Treutouse,<sup>b</sup> syr Johñ Ferant Porteler, an experte man of armes, a valyaunt knyght, and of hyghe entrepryse, and with hym syr Martyn Vas of Coygne,<sup>c</sup> and his broder syr Wylyā Vas, two experte knyghtes, and they had vnder them CC. speres of good men of warre well horsed; and to þ̄ castell of Lene towarde Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> was sente syr Johñ Radygos,<sup>e</sup> with a l. speres; and to þ̄ cyte of Valence<sup>f</sup> in Portyngale, was sente syr Johñ James of Saulles, to lye in garyson agaynst the stronge towne of Tuy, whiche was as then yelden to þ̄ kyng of Castell whē he came towarde Lysbone; and in Tuy there lay in a garyson a grete nombre of men of armes, Frensshe and Castellyans; and to þ̄ cyte of Serpe,<sup>g</sup> was sente syr Nondech Radygo, a noble knyght, with l. speres; but to Porte, to Ewre, and to Connymbres,<sup>h</sup> was sente no men of warre, for the kyng thought them stronge ynonghe of themselves, and true and faythfull to hym. Thus syr in the same yere þ̄ the kyng was thus crowned, the garysons were well prouyded for, and often tymes there were encountrynges, skyrmysshes, and assawtes, on bothe partyes; one tyme our men wanne, and another tyme they lost, as the aduenture of armes falleth, but specyally there was a sore encountre by them of the garyson of Treutouse, agaynst the Castellyans. A Laurence, sayd þ̄ duke of Lancastre, passe not the matter so breuely, but let me knowe howe it was, and what was done when they mette in the feldes, for I wolde gladly here spekyng of dedes of armes: Syr, sayd the squyer, I shall shewe you what was there done, for at the same rencountre I was present, and bare þ̄ day þ̄ baner of syr Johñ Ferant Porteler, by whom the busynes began, for he was as then capytayne of Treutouse.

The kyng of Castell had prouyded mē of warre on þ̄ fronters of Portyngale, who somtyme do to vs damage, assembled thēselve togyder and toke þ̄ feldes, and somtyme lost and somtyme wanne. And so on a season a vii. capytaynes of Spanyardes, good knyghtes, and of hyghe lyngage, assembled them togyder with the nombre of iii. C. speres well horsed, hauynge grete desyre to do vs damage, as they well shewed: for they came and entred into Portyngale, and toke a grete praye, and many prysoners, and yf they had wolde they myght haue entred agayne into Castell without any encountrynge; but they were soo hyghe mynded and prōwde, that they sayd they wolde goo and se the garyson of Treutouse; they of þ̄ playne countrey fledde before them, soo that tydynges of them came into Treutouse. And when syr Johñ Ferrant Portelere knewe the Castellyans rode abroad, he called for his harneys, and caused the trompettes to be sowned, and so awoke all the knyghtes and squyres in the towne: euery man armed hym in grete haste, and mounted on theyr horses, and yssued out of Treutouse; and when they were in þ̄ feldes they were a CC. and so put thēselve in good ordre, and shewed howe they had grete affeccyon to fynde theyr enemies, and demanded of them that came flyenge into þ̄ towne where theyr enemies were; and they answered and sayd, howe they were not farre thens, and howe they rode but a softe pace, bycause of the grete praye that they caryed with them: with those tydynges syr Johñ Ferrant Portelere was ryght ioyouse, and sayd to his company, as to syr Johñ Martyne of Vas,<sup>i</sup> and

U 2

syr

<sup>a</sup> Seville.

<sup>b</sup> Qy. ?

was before called *Coygne*.

<sup>c</sup> Valenza.

<sup>d</sup> Serpa.

<sup>e</sup> Vasco d'Acosta, according to Johnes—but quere: as d'Acunha

<sup>f</sup> The castle of Leyria near Aljubarota.

<sup>g</sup> John de Percyra.

<sup>h</sup> Oporto, Ourique, and Coimbra.

<sup>i</sup> d'Acosta.—See *supra*.

syr Wylliam Vas,<sup>a</sup> his broder, Syrs, I requyre you let vs auaunce forwarde; I wyll not entre into ony towne or Castell, in Portyngale, tyll I haue sene our enemyes, and fyght with them, and put to my payne and trauayle to recouer the praye and prysoners that they leede with them; and then he sayd to me, Laurence, dysplay my baner, for it is tyme, we shall fynde shortly our enemyes: then I dyd as he comaunded me; and so we rode forthe a good pace, and at the last we sawe where the dust rose with the horses of our enemyes; then we toke the vantage of the sone, and came on them; and when  $\text{f}$  Castellyans sawe vs, they helde themselfe close togyder, and ordred themselfe, and set theyr prysoners and pray on theyr one syde, and we approached so nere togyder that we myght speke to them, and they to vs; and then we sawe howe they had  $\text{iii}$ . baners, and  $\text{iiii}$ . penons, and to our Judgement a CCC. horse: Fyrst, there was syr Johñ Radigo de Castenans, knyght and baron in Castell, syr Syluegrefye of Albenes, syr Adioutall of Tolet,<sup>a</sup> of Cassell, syr Johñ Radigo of Eure,<sup>b</sup> and Diostenses of Angouse: and when we were before thē we lyghted on foote, and in lykewyse soo dyd they, and delynered theyr horses to pages and varlettes, and or we began to cast dartes, or to doo ony feate of armes, the capytaynes spake eche to other; I that was there present herde all the wordes that were spoken on bothe partyes, for my mayster, syr Johñ Ferrant Portelere, whose baner I bare, was one of  $\text{f}$  foremost, and  $\text{f}$  wordes that were spoken were by hym and to hym: Fyrst, he demaunded why they rode in Portyngale, ledyng away such prayes and prysoners as they had taken: then syr Adioutall of Tolet,<sup>a</sup> answered and sayd, they wolde ryde as they lyst, to punyssh them that be dysobeysaunt to the kyng of Castell, to whom the herytage of Portyngale perteyned; and bycause they founde them rebelles, therefore they sayd they ouer rynne  $\text{f}$  cuntrye, and take prayes and prysoners: well syrs, sayd syr Johñ Ferrant, ye shall not lede them longe, for we wyll rescue them, ye haue noo ryght to come and to ouer rynne this cuntrye: ye knowe wel ynoughe we haue a kyng all redy, who wyll kepe his royalme in ryght, and kepe Justyce, and punyssh theues and robbers; therefore we saye vnto you in his behalfe, all that ye haue taken in the royalme of Portyngale, leue it behynde you and departe hens, or elles in our ryght and iust quarell we wyll fyght with you: then the Spanyardes answered,  $\text{f}$  prysoners that we haue taken we wyll not delyuer agayne, but as for  $\text{f}$  other praye we wyll take aduyse. Thē the vii. capytaynes of Castell drewe them togyder, and shewed that for all that they were come to se the garyson of Treutouse, yet they wolde haue ben glad to haue departed without batayle; and when they had counsayled, thē they sayd howe they wolde leue theyr pray behynde them, but the prysoners they wolde lede with them: Nay, not so, sayd the Portyngales, for we wyll ye leue all, or elles ye shall haue batayle, and so wente togyder, and there was a sore batayle, for there were on bothe partyes good men of warre, and the felde where as they fought was fayre and playne; they cast eche at other dartes so sore that who soo euer was stryken, without he were wel armed, was slayne or sore hurte; there were many propre feates of armes done: and there syr Johñ Ferrant Portelere fought with an axe ryght valyauntly, and so dyd his ii. companyons: on the other partye the Spanyardes fought ryght valyauntly. Thus they fought the space of  $\text{iii}$ . houres, whiche was meruayle that mē coulde endure so longe in theyr armure fyghtyng: but the grete desyre that eyther partye had to wyne honoure caused them to endure the more payne: and syr, surely Spanyardes and Portyngales are harde men in batayle, and specyally when they se it is of necessitye. Thus they fought longe that no mā knewe who had the better, theyr batayle was so egall. And syr, thanked be god, there was nother baner nor penon on our syde that day ouerthrowen; but fynally theyr syde began to open, and were beten downe on euery syde, so that the dyscomfyturē fell on them; then theyr pages fled away to saue themselfe; and of the vii. capytaynes  $\text{f}$  were there present,

<sup>a</sup> Toledo<sup>b</sup> Deure.



present, there scaped away but one, and that was by  $\text{ȝ}$  meanes of his page, who brought hym his horse; he dyd his mayster good seruyce that day, and  $\text{ȝ}$  was Adyental Cassell:<sup>a</sup> all the other vi. were slayne, for there was neuer a man taken to ransome. Thus syr Johñ Ferrant Portelere and his company obtayned the victory of theyr enemyes, who were thre agaynst two, and this was on a tuysday,<sup>b</sup> in the moneth of Octobre, nere to Treutouse, in the yere of our lorde M. CCC. lxxx. and iiiii.

*Howe Laurence Fongase shewed the duke of Lancastre the maner of the batayle of Juberoth,<sup>c</sup> bytwene the kyng of Castel, and the kyng of Portyngale.*

## CAP. XLV.

AND after this dyscomfyture on our enemyes, our men mounted on theyr horses, and there we delyuered suche prysoners as the Castellians had taken before, and also gaue them suche pyllage as theyr enemyes had gotten, excepte  $\text{ȝ}$  beestes, whiche were in nombre an viii. hundreth; all those we draue into the garyson of Treutouse, for vy-tayllyng of the towne, as it was reason, and there we were receyued with grete ioye; they wyst not what chere to make vs, bycause we had delyuered  $\text{ȝ}$  cōtrei of theyr enemyes, and rescued that they had lost, wherby we had grete prayse thrughe all  $\text{ȝ}$  townes of Portyngale. And syr, in the same yere our men had another fayre iourney on theyr enemyes in  $\text{ȝ}$  felde of Sybille:<sup>d</sup> but syr, fyrst I shall shewe you the moost happyest iourney that the kyng of Portyngale had, or ony kyng before hym in CC. yere before, whiche was done within iiiii. monethes before that  $\text{ȝ}$  kyng sente vs hyther. Our enemyes were iiiii. agaynst one, of good men of warre, and of hyghe emprise, wherfore our iourney ought to be  $\text{ȝ}$  more prayسد: but syr, I thinke ye haue herde therof al redy, wherfore I thynke best to speke not therof: nay, sayd the duke, ye shall not leue so, ye shall shewe me the hole processe, for I wolde gladly here you speke therof; yet of trouthe I haue an heraulte here with me, called Derby, who was there at the batayle, as he sayth, and he shewed me that suche Englysshemen as were there dyd meruaylles in armes, and more by his reporte thē I bileue was of trouth: for there was no grete nombre of them wherby ony grete feate sholde be done by them, for my broder  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Cambrydge, when he came out of Portyngale, brought agayne with hym suche Englysshemen as wente thyder; but there be many of these Heraultes be suche lyers, that they wyll exalte suche as they lyst beyonde measure; but for all that, the noblenes of them that be good, is not lost nor enpayred, though it be not shewed by them; therefore it is good to knowe it by the reporte of other that knoweth it.

Syr, sayd Laurence, of all the straungers that were at the batayle of Juberoth<sup>e</sup> with  $\text{ȝ}$  kyng of Portyngale, there passed not a two hundred men, Englysshe, Gascoynes, and Almaynes:<sup>f</sup> and the grettest capytaynes that were there of the straungers were two Gascoynes, and one of Almayne,<sup>g</sup> of the duchy of Guerles: the Gascoynes were called syr Wyllyam of Mountferrant, and Bernardon, and  $\text{ȝ}$  Almayne, Albert; of Englysshme there were a certayne archers, but I herde none named, but ii. squyers, Northbery, and Hartecell, and they were called to counsaile with the kyng and other lordes, before the batayle. Well, sayd the duke, prosede forthe, and tell me of that iourney,

<sup>a</sup> Before called, the adjoutal of Toledo.<sup>b</sup> Wednesday.<sup>c</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>d</sup> Seville.<sup>e</sup> Germans.

ney, and howe it was fought, I requyre you: syr, sayd  $\hat{y}$  squyer, with ryght a good wyl; for syr, to shewe you and other howe it was, I am sente hyther fro the kynge my mayster.

Then Laurence Fongase renewed his tale, and spake of the busynes of Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> and sayd thus: syr, ye haue herde by me, and also by other, that after the coronacyon of the kynge of Portyngale at Connymbres,<sup>b</sup>  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Castell, who had rayسد his syege fro Lysbone, for the dethe of pestylence that fell in his oost, and so wente to yrayne:<sup>c</sup> and it was sayd, howe it greued hym sore when he was enfourmed of the coronacyon of my redoubted lorde kynge Johñ of Portyngale; for the kynge of Castell claymed, and yet dothe, ryght in the herytage and crowne of Portyngale, by the tytle of his wyfe, daughter to kynge Ferrant,<sup>d</sup> whiche we denyed, and yet do, for suche cause as I haue shewed you before; so thus the kynge of Castell was counsayled to sende for mē of war where he myght gete them, and specyally into Fraunce, for  $\hat{y}$  frensshmen had alwayes ayded hym and susteyned his quarell, and  $\hat{y}$  kynge his fader in lykewyse; and it was sayd to hym by his counsaile, ye nede nothyng but one iourney agaynst them of Portyngale, for by puysaunce if ye may kepe the felde and fyght with them, thē ye shal come to your entente: for there is grete varyaunce alreedy in Portyngale, as ye se and perceyue well: for there is here with you of the noblest persones of  $\hat{y}$  royaume, and they haue submytted thēselfe vnder your obeysaunce, whiche thyng gretey furdereth your warre; if ye auance yourselfe with puysaūce to fyght w̄ this bastarde of Portyngale, whom  $\hat{y}$  comons haue crowned to theyr kynge, or he gete ayde of the Englysshemen, ye are lyke to ouerthrowe hym; and yf ye wyne the iourney, all the royaume is yours, for it is no grete matter to wyn it after. Soo by suche counsaile and other thynges, Johñ of Castell aunanced hymselfe to sende letters and messāgers into Fraunce, Poicotou, Bretayne, Normandy, Borgon,<sup>e</sup> and into dyuers other places, where as he thought to haue men of armes, knyghtes and squyres, for his money, or for loue, or suche as helde any thyng of hym; and specyally there came many knyghtes and squyres to hym out of Byerne: and so on a daye as he was at saynt yrayne,<sup>f</sup> he auewed his people to  $\hat{y}$  nombre of vi. or vii. C. speres, and xxx. M. spanyardes, all on horsbacke, all hauynge desyre to do vs damage.

Tidynges came into Portyngale to the kynge, and to  $\hat{y}$  lordes there, and to them of the good townes and cytees, suche as were of the kynges partye, and it was shewed there what nombre and puysaunce the kynge of Castell was of, and howe he was fully determyned to come and lay syege agayne to Lysbone. Then the kynge of Portyngale and his counsaile assembled togyder, and there the most notablest persones of his royaume sayd,  $\hat{y}$  the kyng were best to go out of the cyte, and to mete with his enemyes, rather then to be enclosed in any cyte or towne in Portyngale: for yf they were besyged, they sholde haue moche busynes to defende them and theyr cyte, and in the meane season  $\hat{y}$  Castelllyans myght ryde abrode at theyr ease where as they lyst, and conquere townes, Cytees, and Castelles, outhere by force or by loue, and dystroy all  $\hat{y}$  playne cuntrye, and peraduenture at lengthe them within the cyte; wherfore they sayd to the kynge, Syr, yf we go out agaynst them, and take a place conuenient to fyght, we thyaie this were best and moost profytable; for syr, we knowe well ye shall not peasybly enioy the crowne of Portyngale, wherwith we haue crowned you, without it be by batayle, and that at the leest ones or twyse to ouerthrowe your aduersary the kynge of Castell and his puysaunce: and yf we may dyscomfyte hym, then we shal be lordes of the cuntry; and yf we be ouercome, the royaume is in aduenture, but better it were for vs to seke batayle then to be sought on, and more honourable it were for vs; for syr,

it

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>b</sup> Coimbra.<sup>c</sup> Santarem.<sup>d</sup> Ferdinand.<sup>e</sup> Burgundy.

it hath ben often tymes sene that the setters on hath auantage of the defenders; therefore syr, we wyll counsaile you to sende forthe your letters and messāgers to all suche as ye thinke wyll serue you. Then ȝ kynge answered and sayd, syrs, ye speke wel, and I wyll do as ye haue ordeyned. Then ȝ kynge set his clarkes on warke to wryte letters, and wrote to euery man that they sholde come to the porte of Portyngale, or nere there aboute, at a certayne day lymytted; howbeit, all suche as were wrytten vnto came not thyder, for as then all the royalme toke not full parte with hym, but dys-symuled, and taryed to se howe ȝ matters sholde frame at lengthe: and some were gone out of theyr owne cuntry to the kynge of Castell, bycause they sayd that the kynge of Castell had more ryght to the crowne of Portyngale then our kynge had; howbeit, for all ȝ, the kynge my souerayne lorde wente to Connymbres,<sup>a</sup> and there made his assemble of suche men of warre as he coulde gete, and trulye he had with hym ȝ choyse men of all Portyngale, and of moost auctoryte, as of Eres, Barons, knyghtes and squyers, and also he had a xxv. hundred speres of squyers, and a xii. M. foote mē; then he ordeyned a Constable and marshiall: the constable was the erle of Nauare,<sup>b</sup> ȝ marshall syr Alne Perriere,<sup>c</sup> bothe ryght sage knyghtes to conduyte men of warre; then they departed fro Connymbres,<sup>a</sup> and toke the waye to Cabase, that is Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> and rode fayre and easely to ease themselfe and theyr horses, and ȝ theyr prouysyon myght folowe them in good ordre; and they had fore ryders, one before to aewe the demeanyng of the Castellians. At this tyme syr Johā Ferrant Portelere was not come to the kynge, he was at the garyson of Dorech,<sup>e</sup> a v. legges fro Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> and I thinke he knewe not as then that the kynge sholde fyght with his enemyes.

I suppose the kynge of Castell was wel enfourmed howe the kynge of Portyngale was comyng to hymwarde with his puysaunce, and when he knewe it he had therof grete ioy, and so had all his men as they shewed, and anone they determyned to come on agaynst vs, and to fyght with vs: and specyally ȝ gascoynes of Byerne that were there, sore desyred to fyght with vs, for they desyred to haue ȝ fyrst batayle, and so they had: and syr Wylliam of Mounferant, a Gascoyne, who was there on our partye, sayd, surely howe we sholde haue batayle, bycause they of Byerne were agaynst vs, who euer desyretli nothyng but batayle.

Then the kynge of Castell, with all his batayle, came the nexte daye and lodged at the castell of Lerre,<sup>f</sup> a two legges fro Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> and the nexte day we came to the Cabase, and lodged there, and ȝ nyght the kynge of Castel lodged but a lytell legge fro Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> for he knewe well what way we toke, and howe we lodged at Juberoth.<sup>d</sup>

Syr, the Portyngales hath had alwayes grete trust and confydence in god, and in ȝ good fortune of ȝ place of Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> and therefore they at that tyme rested there. Why, sayd ȝ duke, haue they so good hope in that place rather then in another? Syr, sayd the squyer, auncently ȝ grete Charlemayne, who was kynge of Fraunce, and of Almayne,<sup>g</sup> and Emperoure of Rome, who was in his tyme a grete conqueroure, at this place of Juberoth,<sup>d</sup> he dyscomfyted vii. kynges of ȝ myscreauntes, and there were slayne of ȝ infydelles a C.M; this syr is auncently founde in hystories and cronycles, and by reason of that batayle he conquered Connymbres,<sup>a</sup> and all the cuntry of Portyngale, and brought it into crysten fayth: and bycause of ȝ grete victore ȝ he had there agaynst goddes enemyes he founded there an abbaye of blacke monkes, and gawe them grete rente in Portyngale, and in Castell; and also syr, aboute a CC. yere past, there was at the same place a grete batayle and fayre journey acheued by a lorde that was at that tyme

<sup>a</sup> Coimbra.<sup>b</sup> Count of Novaire.<sup>c</sup> Sir Aleyn Pereyra.<sup>d</sup> Aljubarota<sup>e</sup> Ouren.<sup>f</sup> Leyria.<sup>g</sup> Germany.

tyme broder to the kyng of Castell; for before that tyme there was neuer kyng in Portyngale: it was called the countye of Portyngale, and so it was that these ii. bretherne,  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Castell, and the erle of Portyngale, had mortall warre togyder for partycyon of landes, so  $\hat{y}$  there coulde be founde no peas bytwene them but mortall warre togyder. The matter touched soo moche the erle of Portyngale, and the Portyngales,  $\hat{y}$  they had rather to haue ben deed, then to haue ben vnder the subieccyon of the kyng of Castell; and so they toke a day of batayle, and there the kyng of Castell was so puyssaüt,  $\hat{y}$  he was x. agaynst one, so  $\hat{y}$  he set nothyng by the Portyngales, so at the cabase of Juberoth<sup>a</sup> was theyr batayle ryght cruell; and fynally the Portyngales obteyned  $\hat{y}$  vyctory, and the Castellyans dyscomfyted, and the kyng of Castell taken, by whose takyng the erle of Portyngale had peas as he lyst; then the boundes were set of the departing of Castell and Portyngale.

And then bycause  $\hat{y}$  Portyngales saw  $\hat{y}$  god had sente them the vyctory with so smal a nombre agaynst so grete a puyssaunce, then they thought to augment theyr lande and to make it a royalme; so  $\hat{y}$  prelates and nobles of the countrey crowned theyr fyrst kyng at Connymbres,<sup>b</sup> and made hym to ryde throughtout his royalme with a crowne of Lawrell on his heed, sygnifyenge honoure and vyctory, as auncyently kynges were wonte to do, and so euer syth the royalme hath had a kyng; for syr, surely rather then the Portyngales wolde be vnder  $\hat{y}$  subieccyon of the Castellyans, they wolde take one or other that were ferre of fro the blood of  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngale, and the kyng were deed without yssue male: and syr, when  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngale that now is came to the place of Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> all these matters were shewed hym; and thus whyles that the constable and marshalle were orderynge of theyr batayles, there came to the kyng syr Johñ Ferrant Portelere, who came the same morenyng fro his garyson of Dorech,<sup>c</sup> and brought with hym xl. speres:  $\hat{y}$  kyng had grete ioye of his comyng; and when all our bataylles were ordeyned, and that we abode for nothyng but for our enemyes, and that our fore ryders were sente forth to aspye theyr dealyng, the kyng then my souerayne lorde came in amonge his men, and caused sylence to be made, and then he sayd, syrs, ye haue crowned me kyng: shewe nowe your trouth and faythfulnes, for syth I am so forwarde, and specyally in this place of Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> I shal neuer retourne agayne into Portyngale without I fyght w myne enemyes: then euery man answered and sayd, syr, we shall all abyde w you, and knowe for trouthe we shall not flye this daye.

Thus the batayles approached, for the Castellyans had grete desyre to fynde vs, and to fyght, as they well shewed, and we sente forthe our fore ryders, to se and knowe what our enemyes dyd, and they taryed fro vs more then iii. houres, and that we herde no tydynges of the, so that we thought we had lost them; howbeit, at  $\hat{y}$  last they retourned and brought vs sure worde of them, and what nombre they were of by all lykelyhode, and they shewed vs howe theyr vowarde were a vii. M. men of armes, armed cap a pee, as fresshe and as well horsed as coulde be deuysed; and in  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Castelles rewarde, there were a xxx. M. horse, of good mea of armes. And when our kyng and his company knewe the nombre of theyr enemyes, and howe  $\hat{y}$  theyr vowarde were a ii. legges before  $\hat{y}$  kyng, for the Gascoynes and straungers were not well of acorde with the Castellyans, then we determyned to kepe vs close togyder in our strength, and to make ii. wynges to our batayle, and our men of armes, wherof we had but ii. M. and CCCC. speres, to be bytwene the ii. wynges; syr, there myght well haue ben sene good ordre of batayle, and people well recomforted: and then it was comāunded by the kyng on payne of dethe,  $\hat{y}$  no man take that daye no prysoner; this was determyned amonge

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>b</sup> Coimbra.<sup>c</sup> Ourem.

amonge vs for the best: for as  $\hat{y}$  lordes and capytaynes sayd, if we sholde entende to take prysoners, it sholde deceyue vs, and make vs take no hede of  $\hat{y}$  we sholde do, for it was sayd that it were better for vs to fyght wel, then to take hede of takynge of prysoners, and to sel our lyues derely as good people ought to do; this worde was vpholden and obserued; then our enemyes came before vs close togyder lyke good men of warre, and then alyghted on foote and trymmed theyr harneys, and let theyr horses go, and so came and approached vs fyersly; surely there was the flour of chynalry, and that they shewed well: bytwene vs and them there was a lytell dyke, no gretter but  $\hat{y}$  a knyght armed myght well passe ouer; howbeit, to vs it was a lytell auantage, for in  $\hat{y}$  passynge therof, our men  $\hat{y}$  were on bothe wynges w<sup>th</sup> theyr dertes dyd hurte and mayme dyuers, and dyd sore trouble them; and when they were ouer the dyke, then they assembled them agaynst vs, for they thought  $\hat{y}$  the kyng of Castell with his grete batayle had folowed them at hande, but it was not so, for they were all dyscomfyted and slayne or the kyng of Castell came nere hande vs; I shal shewe you by what meanes they were closed in bytwene vs: and the comons of our country, who layde on behynde them with axes, and other wepons, without sparynge, and our men of armes who were fresshe, came on agaynst thē, and caused thē to recule backe, and to fall in  $\hat{y}$  dyke one ypon another: syr, al this was done in lesse then halfe an houre, and there was slayne in the felde of men of armes mo then iiii. M. and none taken to räusome, for whē any knyght or spere of ours wolde haue taken any prysoner, other of theyr cōpany wolde slee thē in theyr hādes.

Thus clerely without recouery the vwarde of our enemyes were dyscomfyted: then came the kyng of Castel with his batayle, wherin he had xxx. M. men, well horsed; but when they approached it was nere nyght, and they knewe nothyng what myschefe was fallen on theyr vwarde, and then they came and mustred themselfe before vs, and a CCCCC. of thē lepte with theyr horses ouer the dike; but syr, al suche as passed ouer neuer repassed agayne, for there was slayne a grete parte of the noble men, suche as desyred feates of armes, and a grete nombre of the barons and knyghtes of Portyngale, suche as were there with  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Castell agaynst vs; and when our people sawe our enemyes so dyscomfyted, then we passed ouer the dyke, for in xl. places  $\hat{y}$  dyke was stopped w<sup>th</sup> deed mē, and toke our horses and folowed  $\hat{y}$  chase; but  $\hat{y}$  was not ferre, for it was nyght; we wolde not folysshly go ferre for doubte of busshmētes, nor also we were not so well horsed as the Castellyans: for surely yf we had, they had receyued more damage then they dyd, and  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Castell taken or slayne, but the nyght came on so darke, saued hym and many other: syr, I shall shewe you the names of  $\hat{y}$  moost parte of the noble men of Fraunce, Gascoynes, and Portyngales, that dyed in the felde at the batayle of Juberoth.\*

First, the erle Don Johñ Alphons Serole, of Portyngale, the grete pryour of saynt Johñs in Portyngale, Don Dilgaures<sup>b</sup> his broder, Ange Saluace of Geneue, Don Johñ Ausalle, syr Dangoues Mēdrich, Dricho Persement, Peter Resermant, Lugeris of Versaunt, the grete mayster of Calestrane,<sup>c</sup> and his broder, called Don Dygo Dygares, Peter Goussart of Seball,<sup>d</sup> Johñ Radigo of Herciers, the grete mayster of saynt Jaques.\*

VOL. II.

X

And

\* Aljubarota.

<sup>b</sup> Alvarez.<sup>c</sup> Calatrava.<sup>d</sup> Seville.

<sup>e</sup> Mr. Johnes' names are irreconcilable with those above mentioned. He enumerates "of Spaniards, Don Pedro of Arragon, son to the Constable; Don Juan, son to Don Tello, and Don Fernando, son to Don Sancho, both brothers in law to the queen; Diego Manrique, president of Castille; the marshall Carillo; the admiral, Juan de Fovar; Pedro Alvarez Pereira, grand master of Calatrava; the grand master of St. James, with others." The singularity of the names here mentioned by Fongase, afterwards excites the risibility of the Duke of Lancaster.

And of Frësshmen, syr Johñ of Rys, syr Jeffrey Ricon, syr Godfrey<sup>a</sup> Pertenay, syr E-paynolet of Spayne, syr Reynolde of Solyere, a knyght called Lymosyn, marshall of the kyng of Castelles oost: and of gascoyns of Bierne, the lorde of Bierne,  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Mortan,  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Bryngoles, syr Raymonde Durach, syr Bertram of Varuge, syr Johñ of Ásolgme, syr Raymonde of Valentyne, syr Adam of mourase, syr menuent of Sarement, syr Peter of Sarembiere, and dyuers other, mo then xii. C. knyghtes and squyers, all gentyllmen. Nowe syr I shall shewe you  $\hat{y}$  names of them that were slayne on our party: Fyrst,  $\hat{y}$  erle of Nauare,<sup>b</sup> cōstable of Portyngale, Galoyes Porteke,<sup>c</sup> Peter Porteke,<sup>c</sup> and Agalype Ferrant Porteke,<sup>c</sup> his broder, Pōnase of Coygne,<sup>d</sup> Egeas Toille of Podich, Dassue and vasse<sup>e</sup> martyne of mielx, and his sone vasse martyne, who was stryken with a darte cleue thrughe his body. Also there was slayne Goussalenas of Merlo, Alue Porie, marshall of  $\hat{y}$  oost, a good knyght, Radigos Perriere,<sup>f</sup> Johñ James of Salues, Johñ Radigo, cosyn to  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Aminoudesque,<sup>g</sup> Radigo Radiges Valeronceaux, mendignes of valconseaux. Then the duke of Lancastre began to laughe, and Laurence Fongase demaunded and sayd, syr, why do you laughe? Why, sayd the duke, there is good cause why; I neuer herde so strange names as I haue herde you reherce. Syr, sayd he, by my fayth all these names we haue in our cuntry, and more straunger; I byleue you well, sayd the duke. But Laurence, what became of the kyng of Castell after this dyscomfytur, made he ony recouery, or dyd he close hymselfe in ony of his townes, or dyd  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngale folowe hym the nexte day? Nay, surely syr, sayd Laurence, we folowed them no furder, but abode styl in the same place where  $\hat{y}$  felde was, all nyght, and the nexte daye tyll noone; then we returned to the castell of Alerne,<sup>h</sup> a ii. lytel legges fro Juberoth,<sup>i</sup> and so fro thens to Conymbres:<sup>k</sup> and  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Castel went to saynt yrayne,<sup>l</sup> and there toke a barge, and xiiii.  $\hat{w}$  hym, and rowed to a grete shyp, and so wente by the see to Sybyll,<sup>m</sup> where  $\hat{y}$  quene was; and his men wente some one way and some another, lyke people dysmayde wout recouery, for they lost moche, and of theyr damage they are not lyke to recouer it of a grete season, wout it be by  $\hat{y}$  puysssaūce of  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng; and bycause the kyng of Portyngale and his counsayle knowe well  $\hat{y}$  the Castellyans wyll purchase ayde out of Fraunce, bycause they be ayened togyder, therefore we be sent into this cuntry to  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Englande, and to you. Then  $\hat{y}$  duke sayd, Laurence, ye shal not departe hens tyl ye bere  $\hat{w}$  you good tidinges; but I pray you shewe me of the other encountryng  $\hat{y}$  your men had in the felde of Sybyll,<sup>n</sup> as ye spake of ryght nowe, for I wolde gladly here of dedes of armes, thoughe I be no good knyght myselfe. Syr, sayd  $\hat{y}$  squyer, with ryght a good wyll I shall shewe you.

After the fayre and honourable iourney  $\hat{y}$  kyng Johñ of Portyngale had at the Cabase of Juberoth,<sup>i</sup> and that he was returned with grete tryumphe to  $\hat{y}$  cyte of Lysbone, and  $\hat{y}$  there was no tydynges of ony newe assembly of  $\hat{y}$  Castellyans or Frensshmen, but helde thē in garysons, then the kyng of Castel departed fro Sybyl,<sup>m</sup> and the quene his wyfe with hym, and wente to Burgus in Castell: and so our men and theyrs made warre togyder by garysons: and so on a tyme the erle of Nauare,<sup>b</sup> constable of Portyngale, entred into Castell, into the feldes of Sybyl,<sup>m</sup> with xl. speres, and came before a towne called Valewyde,<sup>n</sup> within whiche there was a CC. men of armes of castell;  $\hat{y}$  erle of Nauare<sup>b</sup> came to the baryeres, and shewed wel howe he demaunded batayle of thē within, who made no semblaūt to yssue out; howbeit, they armed thē, and when our men had ben there as longe as it pleased thē, thē they returned, and they had not rydden past a legge of  $\hat{y}$  cōtrey, but  $\hat{y}$  they saw thē of  $\hat{y}$  garyson of Valewyde<sup>n</sup> come galopyng after them,

<sup>a</sup> Geoffrey.<sup>b</sup> The Count of Novaire.<sup>c</sup> Portelet.<sup>d</sup> The Pouvasse d'Acunha.<sup>e</sup> Vasco.<sup>f</sup> Pereyra.<sup>g</sup> The "of" is an error—Damirondesque.<sup>h</sup> Leyria.<sup>i</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>k</sup> Coimbra.<sup>l</sup> Santarem.<sup>m</sup> Seville.<sup>n</sup> Valverde.

them, and the capytaynes of thē was Diogenes<sup>a</sup> of Padillo, an experte man of armes, and y grete mayster of saynt Jaques in Galyce: and when our men saw thē so comynge, they lyghted on fote, and delyuered theyr horses to theyr pages, and the Spanyardes, who were a grete nombre, wolde haue set on y pages and varlettes to haue taken theyr horses fro them; some sayd let vs wyn theyr horses, we can not do them a gretter dyspleasure, nor put thē to more payne then to make them retourne on foote: then the mayster of saynt Jaques sayd, naye, let vs not do so, for if we wyn the maysters, we shal soone haue y horses, let vs alyght afote, and fight with thē, they shall not endure agaynst vs: and thus whyle y Castellyans were arguyng, our mē passed ouer a lytell water y was behynde thē, and there toke a grete groude and fortifyed it, and made semblaunt as though they caryed nothyng for theyr horses; and when the Castellyans sawe y they were passed the water, then they repented thē y they had not set on soner thē they dyd; howbeit, they thought soone to ouercome our men, and so came on them and began to cast dartes; and when the Castellyans had employed al theyr artyllery, and had no mo dartes to cast, and had soo contynued theyr assaulte fro noone tyll it was nere nyght: when our men sawe y theyr enemyes had spente al theyr artyllery, then y erle of Nauare<sup>b</sup> made his baner to passe the water, and all his company, and so dassed in amonge the Castellyans, who anone begā to open, for they were sore traauayled, weryed, and chased in theyr harneys, so y they coulde not helpe themselfe, but were all ouerthrowne and dyscomfyted, and the mayster of saynt Jaques slayne, and mo then lx. with hym, and the other fled: and so they saued theyr horses, and wan many other fro the Castellyans. How say you syr, had not our mē y day a fayre aduenture? yes, by my faythe, sayd the duke of Lancastre.

*Howe the ambassadours of Portyngale had answeere of the kyng of Englande, and grete gyftes; and howe they toke theyr leue and wente into theyr countreys.*

## C A P. XLVI.

AND syr, bycause of suche rencountres and dedes of armes y our men haue had on theyr enemyes syth y electyon of kyng Johñ of Portyngale, the Portyngales are entred into grete ioy, and most comonly say y god is for them and theyr ryght; and syr, they say not moche amys to say y god is w thē, for in euery thyng as touchyng ony dede of armes lytell or moche, euer syth the dethe of kyng Ferrant,<sup>c</sup> they haue had the vycory; and y erle of Foys y nowē is, one of y grettest lordes of the worlde, and full of hyghe prudence, as we knowe by them of this countrey, he sayd, y fortune was with vs of Portyngale, and yl the knyghtes of Byerne had byleued hym whā the departed out of his countrey, they sholde not haue armed themselfe agaynst the kyng of Portyngale y nowē is, a wyse and a dyscrete man, and fereth god, and loneth holy chyrche, and exalseth it as moche as he may, and is often tymes in his oratory on his knees in herynge of deuyne seruyce; he hath ordeyned y for what so euer busynes it be, y none speke to hym tyll he be out of his oratory, and is a grete clerke, and taketh lytell hede of ony grete sermones, and speccially he wyll haue iustyce kepte in all his royalme, and poore men maynteyned in theyr ryght.

Thus syr at your request I haue shewed you the maner of our countrey, and all y I knowe of the kyng and all his counsayle, and by thē I was cōmaunded at my departyng fro them to shewe you euery thyng y I knewe; wherfore syr, it maye please you that

<sup>a</sup> Diego.<sup>b</sup> Count of Novaire.<sup>c</sup> Ferdinand.

I myght haue an answe're. Laurence, sayd the duke, or this tyme I haue shewed you, and yet agayne I say it, that your comyng and these tydynges doth me grete pleasure; and ye shall not departe fro me tyll ye be satsfyed of all your requestes, and well answered in that ye be come for. Syr, sayd the squyer, I thanke you. Then the duke called for wyne and spyces, and so toke theyr leue and wente to theyr lodgyng to Arcorch,<sup>a</sup> to the house of f̄ Fawcon in London; there they were lodged with Thomelyn of Colebrunne.<sup>b</sup>

And it was not longe after but that the duke of Lancastre and the erle of Cambridge his broder had counsaile togyder of f̄ busynes of Castell and Portyngale, wherof f̄ erle of Cambridge was well contente, for he had ben in f̄ countrey before more than a yere; and he was glad to here of the condycyons and tytles of the kyng of Portyngale, and of the quene of Castell, and sayd to his broder, syr, when kyng Ferrant lyued, the Chanon Robsart and syr Wylliam Wyndesore, and dyuers other knyghtes f̄ were there with me, shewed me as it is nowe fallen: for they sayd how they had herde dyuers of f̄ same cōtrey murmure on the quene of Castelles tytle to Portyngale; therefore I toke away with me my sone, and had no grete affeccyon to that maryage. In the name of god, sayd f̄ duke, the squyer that is here of Portyngale hath declared all the matter; and I thynke we can not haue so fayre an entre into Castell as by Portyngale, for the royalme of Aragon is ferre of, and also the kyng there and his chyldren haue alwayes ben more fauourable to the freysshe partye thenne to vs; therefore it were not good, syth the kyng of Portyngale maketh for vs this good offre, to refuse it: so on a day for this matter there was a parlyament holden at Westmynstre, and there it was accorded, f̄ the duke of Lancastre sholde haue at the costes of f̄ royalme bitwene a M. and xii. C. speres of chosen men, and ii. M. archers, and a M. of other yomen; and they were all payde in hande for halfe a yere; and therwith all the kynges vnclcs were well contente, and specially the duke of Lancastre, to whom pryncypally f̄ matter touched, and as he f̄ sholde be chefe of f̄ armye: and to dyspatche these ambassadours of Portyngale, the kyng of Englande wrote to the kyng of Portyngale louynge letters, conteynyng grete amyte f̄ he wolde bere to Portyngale, and grete gyftes were gyuē to f̄ mayster of saynt Jaques in Portyngale, and to Laurence Fongase, who was alwayes with f̄ duke of Lancastre and w̄ the erle of Cambridge; and so on a day these ambassadours toke theyr leue of f̄ kyng and his cōsaile, and dnyed f̄ daye w̄ f̄ duke of Lancastre and the erle of Cambridge, and the nexte day they were delyuered; and, as I vnderstode, the duke of Lancastre sente letters to the kyng of Portyngale, and also by credence, f̄ he sholde sende a vii. galeys, and an xviii. or xx. other vesselles, to the porte of Bristowe, on the fronters of Wales, for hym and his company to passe into Portyngale; so the ambassadours departed and wente to Hampton, and there founde theyr shyp f̄ taryed for them, and so entred into the see, and had wynde at theyr wyll, and so entred into f̄ hygh Spaynysshe see, and within v. dayes they were in the hauen of the porte<sup>c</sup> of Portyngale, at whiche tyme the kyng was there, and was ryght ioyfull of theyr comyng.

And there f̄ grete mayster of saynt Jaques in Portyngale and Laurence Fongase shewed f̄ kyng and his counsaile al f̄ they had sene and herde in Englande, as well of f̄ kyng as of his vnclcs, and delyuered theyr letters, whiche certefyed al theyr saynges: then anon after the kyng of Portyngale (who gretely desyred the ayde out of Englande, to f̄ entente to cause his enemyes to haue the more fere), determyned w̄ his cōsaile f̄ mayster Alphons Vietat, chefe patron and mayster of all his shyppes and galeys in Portyngale, f̄ he sholde preparre redy vii. galeys and xviii. other grete shyppes, and to sayle into Englande to fetch the f̄ duke of Lancastre and his cōpany; and so Alphons

<sup>a</sup> In the French, "*en leur hostel coucher*:" i. e. to sleep at their hotel.

<sup>b</sup> Colebrook?

<sup>c</sup> Oporto.



phons was comāunded thus to do, and he incontynent dyd so, and so on a daye departed fro the porte of Portyngale,<sup>a</sup> and in vi. dayes he arryued at Brystowe, at whiche season the lordes of Englande for  $\text{f}$  moost parte were aboute  $\text{f}$  marches of Wales, for the kyng was there. When the duke of Lancastre knewe of the comyng of these slyppes, he was ryght ioyfull. Then knyghtes and squyers, and al suche as sholde go with hym, were sente for; so that in the porte of Brystowe there were CC. vesselles, with the flete of Portyngale redy apparelled for  $\text{f}$  duke and his company: and the dukes entencion was to haue with hym his wyfe and his chyldrē, and to make with them some good maryages in castel and in Portyngale or his retourne agayne into Englande, for he thought not shortely to retourne: for he saw the busynes in Englande lykely to be harde and sharpe, and how the kyng his neuewe was yonge, and had aboute hym peryllous counsaile, wherfore he was  $\text{f}$  gladder to be gone; and or he departed, in the presence of his bretherne, he ordeyned his sone,  $\text{f}$  lorde Henry, erle of Darby, his lieutenant of all  $\text{f}$  he had in Englande, and set aboute hym wyse and sad counsaile; he was a lusty yonge knyght, and was sone to the duches of Lancastre, the lady Blaunche,<sup>b</sup> daughter to quene Phylp of Englande. I neuer sawe ii. better ladies, nor of more noble condycyon, nor neuer shal, thoughc I sholde lyue this thousande yeres, whiche is impossible.

When duke Johā of Lancastre had ordred all his busynes in Englonde, thē he toke leue of the kyng and of his bretherne, and so he wente to Brystowe, and there taryed a xv. dayes, and shydded all his horses and bagages, mo then ii. M. with hay, lytter, and freshe water for them. Then the duke entred into a galey, well apparelled, and had by hym a grete shyp yf nede were for hym, and for the duches Constance his wyfe, who wente in this iourney with a good courage, for she trusted then to recouer her heritage of Castell, and to be quene there, or she returned agayne; and she had with her a daughter, called Katheryne; and by her fyrst husbande,<sup>c</sup> ii. other daughters, Izabel<sup>d</sup> and Phylp, whiche Phylp was maryed to syr Johā Holande, who was constable of  $\text{f}$  oost; and the marshall was syr Thomas Moriaux, who had also in maryage one of his daughters; howbeit, she was a bastarde, and was moder to  $\text{f}$  lady mereell, damoyseil Mary of saynt Hyllary of Hauman; and admyral of  $\text{f}$  dukes nauy was syr Thomas Percy; also there was syr yon fythwaren, the lorde of Lucy, syr Henry Beaumonde, de ponmins,<sup>e</sup> syr Johā of Burnuell,<sup>f</sup> the lorde Talbot, the lorde Basset, syr Wyllyam Beauchamp, syr Wyllyam Wyndesore, syr Thomas Tracon,<sup>g</sup> syr Hughe Spenser, the lorde Wylloughby, the lorde Braston,<sup>h</sup> syr wyllyā Fermiton,<sup>i</sup> syr Johā Dambricourt,<sup>k</sup> syr Hughe Hastynges, syr Thomas Wancestre,<sup>l</sup> syr Mauburnyn Liniers, syr Loys of Rochestre, syr Johā Soustre,<sup>m</sup> syr Phylp Tacyel,<sup>n</sup> syr Johā Bouboufer,<sup>o</sup> syr Robert Clycon,<sup>p</sup> syr Nycholas Trenton, Hugyn of Caurele,<sup>q</sup> Dauyd Houlegiar,<sup>r</sup> Thomas Allerey, Hobequyn Beaucestre, and dyuers other, all with penons; besyde  $\text{f}$  barons, they were a M. speres of knyghtes and squyers of good men of armes, and ii. M. archers, and a M. of other tawle yomē; they had a fayre season as in  $\text{f}$  moneth of May, whiche is lyghtly pleasaunt and peasyble; and so they sayled, coostyng the Ile of wyght and Gernsey, tyll they came open on  $\text{f}$  coost of Normandy; they were CC. sayles, and it was a grete beautye to se the galeys glyde on the see approchyng the laude, full of men of armes and archers, sekyng for some aduentures, for it was sayd to them that the armye of Normandy

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.

<sup>b</sup> This is grossly incorrect; the stop should be after "the lady Blanche," and then the passage ought to be "With his, *i. e.*, the duke's mother, quene Phylp of Englande, I neuer sawe," &c.

<sup>c</sup> This is a mistake: it should be "and by the duke's first wife." <sup>d</sup> "Elizabeth," who was married to sir J. Holland, and not Philippa. <sup>e</sup> "The Lord" omitted. <sup>f</sup> Sir Richard Burley.

<sup>g</sup> Joines calls him Tresham; but, query—Drayton?

<sup>h</sup> Bradestan.

<sup>i</sup> Farrington?

<sup>j</sup> D'Ambrécourt.

<sup>k</sup> Sounder.

<sup>l</sup> Tickell.

<sup>m</sup> This name (which

occurs in Verard's and the Lyon's editions) is omitted by Joines.

<sup>n</sup> Clinton.

<sup>o</sup> Calverley.

<sup>p</sup> Holgrave.

Normandy was on the see; and truly so they were, tyll the Englysshe flete appered before  $\hat{y}$  boundes of Quarentyne;<sup>a</sup> but they knewe by theyr balengers that the armye of Englande was comyng, and therfore they withdrewed themselfe into the hauen of Harflewe.

There is lyghtely nothyng but that it is knowen, and specyally of dedes of armes; for lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, wyll gladly talke togyder therof. When the dyscomfytur was at Juberot,<sup>b</sup> where as the kyng of Castell toke suche losse as ye haue herde, tydynges therof came into Fraunce, as it was reason, for there were many there that had lost at  $\hat{y}$  batayle theyr frendes and kynsmen, and as then there was no warre so lykely to be as in Castell; also they herde true reporte howe  $\hat{y}$  duke of Lancastre claymed as his ryght enherytaunce the herytage of Castell, and howe he had raysted in Englonde a grete armye, to the entente to drawe into Castell or into Portyngale: so then knyghtes and squyers of  $\hat{y}$  low marches, to auaunce theyr honoure, drewe and sente eche to other to determynē howe they myght best drawe into Castell; some cou-sayled to go thyder by lande, to eschewe  $\hat{y}$  perylles of  $\hat{y}$  see, and also to scape fro the encountryng of  $\hat{y}$  Englysshe nauye, and some sayd nay therto, for they sayd  $\hat{y}$  passage by lande was ouer longe; and also they thought  $\hat{y}$  the kyng of Nauare was not clerely fauourable to  $\hat{y}$  frensshe partye, for the frensshmen and he loued but smally togyder: for it was sayd, and true it was, the frensshemen had taken fro hym all his enherytaunce in Normady; howbeit, I can not tell yf his quarel were iust or not: so thus these cōpanyōs doubted gretely the perylles  $\hat{y}$  myght fall by goyng by lande, as well for the kyng of Nauare as for other, and they thought they sholde neuer come there by the way thrugh Aragon; so at last they concluded to go to Rochell as they dyd, and there to take the se; there they rygged an xviii. vesselles, and toke but fewe horses w̄ them; and whē they were all redy, and had wynde at theyr wyll, they entred into theyr vesselles and so sayled towarde Bayon, for  $\hat{y}$  waye, or nere therto, they must nedes passe; and in  $\hat{y}$  company there was  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Coursey, syr Johā Handoy,  $\hat{y}$  vycoūt of Verliere, syr Peter of Vellamines, syr Guy of Baueux, syr Johā of castell Morant,  $\hat{y}$  lorde of saynt Liger, syr James of Fougeres,  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Bellannes, syr Trystram of Langurant,  $\hat{y}$  lorde Barroys of Barres, and dyuers other, so  $\hat{y}$  they were a CCC. knyghtes and squyers of chosen men desyryng armes: thus they sayled by the see, and had wynde and wether as they wolde wysshe, and so aryued without peryl or damage at the porte of saynt Andrewe<sup>c</sup> in Bysquay, in  $\hat{y}$  yere of our lorde M. iiii. C. lxxx. and vi.  $\hat{y}$  xiii.<sup>d</sup> day of the moneth of May.

When these knyghtes and squyers of Fraūce were aryued at saynt Andrewes,<sup>e</sup> there they refreshed them ii. dayes, and in that space they drew out of theyr shyppes theyr horses and bagages; then they set forthe and demaunded where they sholde fynde the kyng of Castell; and it was shewed them howe they sholde fynde hym in the cyte of Burgus in Spayne, where as thē he had a grete counsaile for  $\hat{y}$  busynes of his royalme. These knyghtes and squyers toke theyr way to Burgus, and so came thyder, and the kyng of Castell was ryght ioyfull of theyr comyng, and demaūded of them tydynges of Fraunce, and what way they came thyder? They answered howe they came by the see fro Rochel, and how it was sayd in fraūce  $\hat{y}$  the duke of Lancastre had a grete army of mē of armes and archers to come  $\hat{y}$  same season into Castell or elles into Portyngale; and also how  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngale had sent a nōbre of galeys and other shyppes into Englade for hym. Of these tydynges  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Spayne was more pensyue thē he was before; howbeit, he made no semblaunt, but well he thought he sholde haue sore warre in that season; howbeit, he made good chere to these knyghtes and squyers of Fraunce, and thanked them gretely of theyr comyng; and then he sayd to syr Robert of Braque-  
mont,

<sup>a</sup> Carentan.<sup>b</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>c</sup> St. Andero.<sup>d</sup> The 4th.

mont, and to syr Johñ his broder, Syrs, when ye departed fro me the yere that is past, I desyred you that whensoener ye retourned agayne hyder, that ye sholde bringe with you tenyse balles of Parys for vs to play togyder; howbeit, it had ben better I hadde charged you to haue brought good bassenetes and good harneys, for I thynke we shall fynde the season well to employe them. Syr, sayd the knyght, we haue brought of bothe; syr, alwayes we can not be armed nor alwayes play. Thus the kyng of Castell made them ryght good chere: then they had affeccyon to goo on pylgrymage to saynt James syth they were in ý country, and some of them had anowed so to do; so they rode all togyder for company, and trussed with them all theyr harneys as though they sholde haue gone to batayle; and they dyd wysely in theyr so doyngge, for it stode them in good stede or they retourned agayne, as ye shall here after. Nowe let vs retourne to ý duke of Laucastres armye, who were on the coost of Normandy.

In lyke maner as by cōparyson as fawcons pelegrynes, that haue stande and rested longe on the perche hath grete desyre to flye abrode, in lyke maner the knyghtes and squyers of Englonde desyred to fynde dedes of armes to auance themselves, and sayd eche to other: Why do ye not aryue and go se the boundes and portes of Normandy? there be knyghtes and squyers to awake vs, and to fyght with vs: these wordes multiplyed that it came to ý dukes eyres, and the duke, or he departed out of Englonde, knewe that syr Johñ of Malestroyt, and the lorde of Cambor and Morfonace, and a grete nombre of knyghtes and squyers of Bretayne, lay at the syege in bastydes before the castell of Brest, by the commaundement of the constable of Fraunce. So when ý duke herde of the grete desyre ý his men had to fynde some dedes of armes, then he sayd to his admyrall, syr Thomas Percy, and to the constable of his armye, syr Johñ Holande, commaundyng them to addresse theyr nauy towarde Bretayne, sayenge howe he wolde goo and se the castell of Brest, to vysyte and comforte ý companyons therin, and to loke on thē ý be without in the bastydes: of these tydynges ý Englysshemen were ioyful. Then Alphons Vietat, chefe patron of the nauy of Portyngale, who knew ryght well the way and the entrees into Bretayne, whiche were ryght peryllous and dangerous, he made his Galey to lede the trace, and shewed ý way to other. The season was fayre and pleasaunt, and the see peasyble, soo they sayled towarde the hauen of Brest, and then taryed for the tyde, for they knewe well with the fludde they sholde into ý hauen of Brest: grete pleasure it was to here the trompettes and claryons. The same season syr Johñ of Malestroyt, the vycount of Combor and Morfonace, were syttyng at dyner, whē tydynges came to them how the Englysshe armye was come: then they rose and armed them, for they knewe wel that whē ý duke of Lancastre had taken lande, he wolde fyght with them and rayse theyr bastydes; soo they were all well armed, and of good mynde to defende them yf they were assaylled: they were a CCC. knyghtes and squyers. They Englysshemen were ryght ioyful whē they were in the hauen of Brest, and vnderstode howe ý Bretons helde theyr bastydes, and sayd howe they wolde go and se them and fyght with thē, for they had grete desyre to doo some dedes of armes.

*Howe the duke of Lancastre assayled the lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, that were in the bastydes before brest in Bretayne, and howe they defended themselfe.*

## CAP. XLVII.

THUS the duke of Lancastre and his company toke lande a lytell besyde the castell of Brest, and lefte all theyr horses and prouysyō styl in theyr slyppes; but all the ladyes and damoysselles toke lande to refresshe them: ⁊ fyrst day they dyd nothyng, but apparelled themselfe to lodge on ⁊ erthe for ii. or iii. dayes in paulyons along ⁊ see syde; and so there they lay all ⁊ day and that nyght, and the nexte mornyng ⁊ constable and marshall of the army sowned theyr trompettes to cause euery mā to be armed: and so they dyd, and in good ordre wente towarde ⁊ castell to ⁊ bastydes, whiche were strongly made, in maner to haue endured a ix. or x. yeres; and aboute ⁊ bastydes there were dykes, gates, towres, and good walles, all made of grete tymbre: then the knyghtes and squyers of Englonde, suche as desyred dedes of armes, came to the barryers of ⁊ bastides, and there begā to skyrmysshe w̄ feruent wyl to wyn ⁊ bastydes; and the Bretons, knyghtes and squyers that were within the bastydes were redy to defende them; and to the entente to fyght more at large hande to hande, they dyd put away the barryers of theyr defences, wherin they dyd grete foly, but they trusted to moche in theyr owne chyualry; there was doone many a goodly feate of armes, and herde rencountrynges, and sore foynnyng with speres, and they dyd best that had best breth; howbeit, there were many of ⁊ Englyssmen, and therfore they gaue the Bretons moche ado; and so by clene force of armes the Englyssmen wanne the baylles, so ⁊ within the closure of ⁊ towne there were mo then C. men of armes, so that ⁊ bretons were at the poynte to haue lost all: and when syr Johñ of Malestroyte and the vycount of Combor sawe the maner, then he cryed his crye, and sayd, what, how syrs, shall we lose all thus? on forwarde; in fyghtyng we sholde not faynte, but outhr dethe or honoure. Then the bretons closed togyder with grete courage, and pytched theyr speres and glayues in the erthe, and helde strongly theyr place, and fought couragiously; there were many fayre dedes of ames done, so that by force the Englyssmen were fayne to recule backe, for they were soo wel resysted that they coulde gete no grounde on them, so that they were clene beten out of ⁊ baylles, and so, as on that day they coulde not wyn it agayne; and at another corner of theyr bastydes they had a towre of stone descendyng downe from a rocke, whiche the Bretons helde to theyr aduaūtage for kepyng of theyr bastydes: therat was made a grete assaulte with archers and other, in the meane season, whyle the other men of armes were fyghtyng at the barryers: and there the Englyssmen passed ouer a lytell dyke that was there, and so came to the foote of the towre w̄ pycke axes and mattockes in theyr handes, and so began to myne sore ⁊ towre; and suche as were within defended themselfe and theyr towre valyauntly, but the Englysshe archers shotte soo hooly togyder, that none durst appere at theyr defence without they were sore pauessed; and ⁊ Englyssmen vndermyned so sore the foundacyon of the towre, that it raued clene in sondre, and the one parte fel downe; and they ⁊ were withiin, when they sawe it wolde fall, they drewe them all into the parte that stode: then ⁊ Englyssmen made a grete showte, and by that tyme it was late; then they sowned ⁊ retrayte, for they sayd they had done ynoughe for that daye. So then the Englyssmen departed, and sayd to the Bretons, syrs, abyde there al nyght, and make good watche, for to morow we wyl come and loke on you agayne; ye se well ynoughe what case ye be in there is nothyng before you to shadowe you from vs.

The entente of the Englyssmen was the nexte daye to retourne agayne to assayle the bastydes, and to conquire them and all suche as were within them, whiche was ryght well

well in theyr puyssaunce soo to haue done. So thus the Englysshemen passed the nyght: it is often tymes sayd, moche thynges sholde fall of mennes thoughtes yf there were no coultre thoughtes there agaynst; I say it, bycause thoughe there were in the Englysshe oost subtyll and wyse men of warre, yet the Bretons ſ were within the bastydes were suffyciently prouyded with wysdome, and wel considered what thyng myght auayle them, and what thyng was for theyr damage; they sawe well they must nedes departe thenis, or elles to be taken or slayne; then they determyned to trusse that they myght, and to departe and leue theyr bastyde: as they ordeyned so they dyd, and lepte on theyr horses, and lefte theyr bastydes and toke the feldes, and so toke the way to Hanibout, a iiii. myle thenis; they dyd wysely therin. for they feared no pursute of the Englysshemen, bycause theyr horses were not alande. Thus syr Johā Malesstroyte and his company rode ſ same nyght to Hanibout;<sup>a</sup> they founde it opē; then they feared but lytell the Englysshemen. The nexte daye the trompettes blew, and euery man in the oost armed hym, and drewe towards the assaulte of the bastyde: then they herde tydynges how the Bretons were departed, and had lefte the bastyde voyde; then ſ Englysshmen repented them in that they had not layde a bushesment for them, wherby they sholde not haue lost so theyr pray; then they brake downe the bastyde, and set fyre theron. Thus by the duke of Lancastre ſ bastydes were rayسد before Brest; and the same day the duke and syr Johā Holande, and certayne other lordes, wente to se the castell of Brest, and the ladyes w̄ them, and there they ete and drāke and made chere, and so wente agayne to theyr lodgynges; and ſ nexte day, whiche was ſ iii. day, they refreshed theyr shyppes w̄ fresshe water, and the iiii. daye toke shyppyng and so departed.

The fourthe day after, the duke and his company and the maryners toke counsaile togyder, whiche waye they sholde drawe, and whether they sholde take lande at Lysbone, or at the porte of Portyngale,<sup>b</sup> or in Bysquay, or at Coulongne;<sup>c</sup> and longe they were in counsaile or they were fully determyned; and Alphons Vietat, patron of the galeys of Portyngale, was sente for to them, and ſ questyon was demaunded of hym: and he answered and sayd, Syrs, for this cause I was sente to you out of Portyngale fro the kynge my mayster; and, syr, knowe for trouthe, that wheresoeuer ye aryue in his country, ye shall be ryght welcome to hym, and it shall be ryght ioyfull to hym, for gretely he desyreth your comyng and to se you: so thus the space of an houre they were at a poynte to haue landed at the porte of Portyngale<sup>b</sup> a xxx. myle from Lysbone; howbeit, after, they chaunged theyr purpose, for it was sayd amonge them, that it were ferre more honourable for them to lande in the marches of theyr enemyes then in the lande of theyr frendes, saynge also, that yf theyr enemyes knowe ſ they be landed on them, they shal be the more feared; then they rested to take lande at Coulongne<sup>c</sup> in Galyce; ſ maryners set theyr course that way, and had wynde and wether at wyll; and so after they departed fro Brest, ſ v. daye they came to the hauen of Coulongne<sup>c</sup> and taryed for the fludde, wherfore they sholde not approche nere to the lande.

Nowe shall I shewe you of the knyghtes of Fraunce, as the lorde of Barrois, syr Johā Braquemont, syr Johā of Castell Morant, syr Peter of Bellanes, syr Trystrā, and other that were come in pylgrymage to ſ towne of Compostella, where lyeth the body of saynt James; and whē they had done theyr pylgrymage, and offered, and were in theyr lodgynges, tydynges came to them howe the Englysshemen were on that coost, and by lykelyhode to aryue at Coulongne<sup>c</sup> or they coulde vntrusse theyr harnes and discharge theyr mules. Then they armed them quykely, and determyned to go thyder to defende the porte, castell, and towne there; and suche as knewe ſ country sayd, syrs,

VOL. II.

Y

auaunce

<sup>a</sup> Hennebon.<sup>b</sup> Oporto.<sup>c</sup> Coruna.

avaunce forward shortely, for yf the Englysshemen happen to wyne the towne or Castell of Coulongne,<sup>2</sup> they wyll be lordes of all the cuntrye aboute: these knyghtes dyd suche dyligence, that they came the same nyght to the towne of Coulongne,<sup>2</sup> whiche was a xiiii. longe myles thens, and a cōtrei full wylde to laboure in. They came so to the poynte, that they entred into  $\hat{y}$  towne and Castell the same season that the Englysshmen came into the haven; and of their comyng they of the towne and castell were ryght ioyfull, and all that nyght came after them theyr caryages and somers: and in the mornyng it was grete beautye to beholde entryng into the haven  $\hat{y}$  galeys and shyppes, charged with men and prouyson, and to here the trompettes and claryons sounde; and the trompettes and claryons of  $\hat{y}$  towne and castell dyd sounde in lyke wyse agaynst them; thē  $\hat{y}$  Englysshemen knew wel that men of warre were in the towne and Castell: then they yssued out of theyr galeys and shyppes into  $\hat{y}$  felde, not as then approachyng the towne, for they sawe well  $\hat{y}$  towne was stronge and well prouyded of men of warre: and without the towne there were certayne fissher houses: there  $\hat{y}$  Englysshe lordes made theyr lodgynges, and soo laye styll a iiiii. dayes, doynge none other thyng but dyscharyng of theyr shyppes, they had so grete prouyson: and theyr horses were set a lande, whiche had ben on  $\hat{y}$  see a xv. dayes, sore oppressed what with the furoure of the see and with the nombre of people in every shyppe, yet they had ben well kepte, and had haye, ootes, and fresshe water sufficyent; whā every thyng was voyded out of the galeys and shyppes, then it was demaūded of  $\hat{y}$  duke what he wolde haue done with his nauy? He answered and sayd, I wyll that all the maryners be payde of theyr wages, and then let every man do his owne profyte; I gyue them good leue, for I wyll that every man do knowe that I wyll neuer passe agayne the see into Englonde tyll I haue my full pleasure of the royalme of Castell, or elles I wyll dye in the quarell: then  $\hat{y}$  maryners were payde, so that every man was contente, and so departed when they myght out of the haven of Coulongne;<sup>2</sup> and some wente into Portyngale, and some to Lysbone, and some to Bayon, or to Albay in Bretavgne, or into Englande; soo that none abode there behynde. Thus the duke of Lancastre and his men lodged without Coulongne<sup>3</sup> in suche lytell houses as they founde there, and abode in the felde, in bowers made of grene bowes lyke men of warre.

Aboute the space of a moneth and more the duke laye at Coulongne,<sup>3</sup> and remeued not, without it were a huntynge or a hawkynge, for  $\hat{y}$  duke and other lordes of Englande had brought with them hawkes and houndes for theyr sporte, and sparowe hawkes for the ladyes; also they brought with them in  $\hat{y}$  shyppes mylles to grynde corne and ouyns to bake in: theyr foragers wente dayly a foragyng where as they thought to spede; howbeit, they founde no grete plenty of forage, for they were lodged in a poore cuntrye and a deserte, wherfore they were dryuen to go ferre of for forage: and also they of the garyson of Coulongne,<sup>2</sup> as  $\hat{y}$  barroys of barres, who ryght well coulde take auantage of his enemies if nede were, and his other companions, when they sawe the Englysshe foragers ryde forthe so folysshly, they thought on a daye to be before thē, and to make them pay for all they had before; so on a daye they armed them a CC. and rode by guyde in the nyght aboute the woodes and mountaynes, and so at the brekyng of the day they came to a wood and to a mountayne called the Espynet, and there taryed, for it was shewed them howe the Englysshe foragers rode abroad, and true it was, to  $\hat{y}$  nombre of iii. C.: and when these foragers had ben abroad a ii. dayes, and gotten moche forage, then they retourned towarde theyr oost, and theyr waye laye to passe the pace of the pynet: then they of the bussment brake out on them, and cryed Barroys of barres. Then the foragers were abashed, for the moost parte of them were vnarmed; they had a syxe score archers, who dyd put themselfe in good ordre of defence,

<sup>2</sup> Corunna.

fence, and began to shote, and dyd hurte and wounde men and horses; and when theyr shot was past, they cast away theyr bowes, and fell to other defence with suche wepons as they had, and some hyd them to saue themselfe. What sholde I make longe tale? Of these Englysshe foragers, there were slayne a CC. and the other saued themselfe as wel as they myght in bushes and hedges, where as horsmen coulde not come to them; and suche as fled came to Coulongne,<sup>a</sup> and there shewed how ŷ barroys of barres had ouerthrowen them; then they of the oost began to styrre and to arme them, and syr Thomas Moreaux, marshal of the oost, with a CCCCC. mounted on theyr horses, with the penon of saynt George, and set forth with grete desyre to fynde the frensshemen, and rode soo longe that they came to the Espynet, and there they founde theyr men lyenge deed, and no thyng elles, for the frensshemen were departed; soo they returned without doynge of ony thyng elles, and when they were win halfe a myle of theyr oost, they sawe where the frensshmen entred into theyr garyson of Coulongne:<sup>a</sup> wherwith they were sore dyspleased, but they coulde not amende it; and that day the marshal was sore blamed of some of the oost in that he sente forth or suffered to go forth ony foragers without sure conduyte, consyderynge theyr enemyes beyng lodged so nere them in a sure holde, and of suche nombre able to ouerthrowe v. or a vi. C. foragers; the duke of Lancastre and the Constable so blamed hym, that he was sore ashamed therof; but he excused hymselfe, and sayd howe they had ben forth more then x. tymes before, and had no hurte. Well, sayd the duke, take better hede another tyme, for a case may fall in an houre or in a daye that peraduenture shall not fall agayne in an hundreth dayes.

*Howe the duke of Lancastre and his oost, when they had sojourned a moneth at Coulongne,<sup>a</sup> then they departed and rode towarde saynt James in Galyce.*

## C A P. XLVIII.

AND when the duke of Lācastre had sojourned at Coulongne<sup>a</sup> ŷ space of a moneth and more, then he was cōsalyed to dyslodge thēselfe, and to drawe towards saynt James in Galyce, where was a better countrey and a more plentyfull for men and horses; so he departed and rode in thre batayles; fyrst, the marshal with CCC. speres and vi. C. archers; then the duke, with CCCC. speres, and all the ladyes and damoysselles in his company; and in the arriere garde, the constable syr Johñ Hollande, w̄ a CCCC. speres and vii. C. archers. Thus they rode fayre and easely in iii. batayles, and were rydyng thre dayes bytwene Coulongne<sup>a</sup> and saynt James. The countrey of Galyce was sore afraide of the dukes comynge thyder, for they fered greteley his puyssaūce. The marshall with his vowarde came to Compostella, where ŷ body of saynt James lyeth, and the towne was closed agaynst hym; howbeit, there were no men of warre there in garyson, but men of ŷ towne ŷ kepte it, for there were no frensshmen wolde vndertake to kepe it to the vitteraunce, for it was not stronge ynoughe to be kepte agaynst suche men of warre as the duke had brought thyder. The marshall of the oost sente thyder an heraulde of armes, to knowe theyr ententes what they wolde do: the heraulde came to the barryers, and there foūde ŷ capytayne of ŷ warde, called Alphons of sene: then the heraulde sayde, syr capytayne, here a lytel besyde is the duke of Lancastres marshal, who hath sent me hyder, and he wolde gladly speke with you. Wel, sayd ŷ capytayne, it pleseth me wel; let hym come hyder, and we shal speke w̄ hym. The heraulde returned, and shewed the marshall as they sayd. Then ŷ marshall, w̄ xx. speres w̄  
Y 2
hym,

<sup>a</sup> Corunna.

hym, wente thyder, and fōude at the barryers  $\text{f}$  capytayne and certayne of  $\text{f}$  chefe heedes of the towne; then  $\text{f}$  marshal lyghted on fote, and iii.<sup>a</sup> with hym, and the lorde Basset and syr Wyllya Fremyton; then  $\text{f}$  marshall sayd, ye capytayne and your men: My lorde the duke of Lancaster and my lady, and your lady of Lancaster, doughter to kyng Don Peter, your lorde and kyng, hath sent me hyder to speke with you, to know what ye wyll do or say, outhur to receyue them as ye sholde do your souerayne lorde and lady, or elles they to assayle you and take you perforce; and surely knowe for trouth, if ye be taken perforce, al ye within the towne shall suffre dethe w<sup>t</sup> the swerde, to gyne ensample to all other. Syr, sayd the capytayne, we wyl not vse vs but by reason: we wolde gladly acqyue vs to them  $\text{f}$  we belonge; we knowe ryght well  $\text{f}$  my lady Cōstaunce of Lancaster was doughter to kyng Don Petero of Castel, so  $\text{f}$  if kyng Don Peter had abyden peasibly styl kyng, she had ben then ryghtfull enherytoure of Castell; but the matter chaūged otherwyse, for al  $\text{f}$  royalme of Castel abode peasibly to kyng Henry his brother, by reason of the batayle  $\text{f}$  was at Nätuel,<sup>b</sup> so  $\text{f}$  we al of the countrey sware to holde kyng Henry for our kyng: and he keppe it as longe as he lyued; and also we haue sworne to holde kyng Johñ his sone for our kyng: but, syr, shewe vs what haue they of Coulongne<sup>c</sup> done or sayd to you, for it maye be so, syth ye haue lyne there more than a moneth,  $\text{f}$  they haue made some maner of treaty with you. That is true, sayd the marshal, we are at a treaty w<sup>t</sup> them, or elles they had not scaped as they dyd, and yet the towne of Coulongne<sup>c</sup> is twyse so stronge as is this towne. I shall shew you what treaty they haue made with vs:  $\text{f}$  mē of  $\text{f}$  towne haue pryuely made a composycyon with vs, saynge how they wyll do euery thyng accordyng as ye do; but though ye wyll suffre yourselfe to be assayled and dystroyed, yet soo wyll not they do; for yf the countrey of Galyce do yelde them to my lorde the duke and to my lady, they wyll do in lykewyse, and in this we haue good pledges and suffycient. That is well sayd, sayd the capytayne; we in lykewyse wyll holde the same treatye; there be in the royalme many mo good cytees and townes; ryde on forth, and leue vs in pease, and we wyll do as they do, and in  $\text{f}$  we wyl deluyuer you good pledges and ostages. Nay, syr, not so, sayd the marshall: my lorde  $\text{f}$  duke nor my lady wyll not suffre  $\text{f}$ , for they wyl come and lodge here in this towne, and kepe theyr estates as they sholde do in theyr owne herytage; therefore answeere vs shortely what ye wyll do, outhur to yelde, or to be assayled and taken by force and destroyed. Syr, sayd the capytayne, gyue vs lytell leysure  $\text{f}$  we may speke togyder, and we shal answeere you shortely. I am contente, sayd the marshall. Then the capytayne entred into  $\text{f}$  towne, and caused euery man to come before hym: then wysely he shewed to them, frome poynte to poynte, as ye haue harde before; and fynally they agreed to receyue the duke and  $\text{f}$  duches peasibly as theyr lorde and lady, and to abyde in theyr towne as longe as it pleased them, without the pyssauance of kyng Johñ dyd dryue them thens; and also that whē they had taryed there as it pleased them a yere or ii. longer or shorter, and that when they departed out of  $\text{f}$  countrey, without they lefte there a suffycient garyson to defende them fro their enemyes, elles they to rendre it agayne to kyng Johñ or to his marshall, yf they were soo commaunded, and so they to be quyte of theyr faythe and promyse then made. This treatye  $\text{f}$  marsall, syr Thomas Moreaux, accepted, and sayd, how they sayd as they ought to do, and that the duke and  $\text{f}$  duches desired nothyng elles of them. Then the marshall retourned to his men, and so to the duke, who taryed for hym in the feldes; there he shewed  $\text{f}$  duke this treaty, wherw<sup>t</sup> the duke was content, and soo in good ordre of batayle the duke rode to the towne of saynt James.

Within ii. lytell frensshe myles of saynt James in Galyce, there came in processyon  
all

<sup>a</sup> "Two with him, the lorde Basset and sir William Farrington." Johnes says *twelve* with him.

<sup>b</sup> Montiel.

<sup>c</sup> Coronna.



all the clergy of þ̄ towne, with crosses and relykes, and mē, women, and chyldren, to mete with the duke and the duches; and the men of the towne brought the keys with thē, whiche they presēted to the duke and to the duches, with their good wylls by all semblaunt; I can not say if they dyd it with theyr good hartes or no: there they kneled downe, and receyved theyr lordē and lady, and they entred into þ̄ towne of saynt James; and the fyrst voyage they made, they wente to the chyrche and all theyr chyldren, and made theyr prayers and offrynge w̄ grete giftes. and it was shewed mē þ̄ the duke and þ̄ duches and theyr ii. daughters, Phylp and Katheryn, were lodged in an abbay, and there kept theyr lionse; and þ̄ other lordes, as syr Johñ Holāde and syr Thomas moreaux and theyr wyues lodged in þ̄ towne, and al other barons and knyghtes lodged abrode in þ̄ feldē, in houses, and bowes of bowes, for there were ynowe in the cōtrey; they fōude there flesse and strong wyne ynough, wherof þ̄ Englysshe archers drāke so moche þ̄ they were ofte tymes drōken, wherby they had þ̄ feuers, or elles in þ̄ mornynge theyr heddes were so euyl, þ̄ they coulde not helpe thēselfe all the day after.

And whē þ̄ Barroys of barres and Johñ of Castel morant, and þ̄ other knyghtes and squyers as were in þ̄ castel of Coulōgne<sup>a</sup> herde how þ̄ duke and duches were entred peasybly into saynt James, and þ̄ they were there receyved, thē they toke cōsāyle togyder what was best for thē to do, and sayd it was but foly to tary there ony lenger, for here we can haue no good aducture; let vs go to Burgus to þ̄ kyngē, and se what he wyll do; it can be none otherwyse but that he wyll go agaynst these Englyssshmen; for yf he suffre thē to lodge thus in rest, by lytell and lytell, they shall cōquere and be lordes of Castell; wherfore it is more honourable for vs to go thyder thē to abyde here: this cōsāyle they helde for þ̄ best; so they made thē redy to departe, and trussed þ̄ they had, and so yssued out of þ̄ castell of Coulongne,<sup>b</sup> and toke theyr leue of them þ̄ they fōude there when they entred fyrst; and they toke gydes, suche as knew þ̄ cōtrey, elles they had ben encōtred; so they rode through Bysquay, costyng Galyce, and so came to Lyon in spayne, and as then þ̄ kyngē and the queene were there: þ̄ kyngē there welcomed the frensshe knyghtes, as it was reason, and demaunded of thē tydynges; howbeit, he knew ynoughe alrede; they shewed hym how they entred into coulōgne<sup>c</sup> þ̄ same tyme þ̄ the englyssshmen entred into the hauen, and how the englyssshmen fōude in the hauen vii. galeys and other vesselles of Bysquay, laden with wynes, whiche the englyssshmen had to theyr profyte; the merchautes had some solde it. Ye, sayd the kyngē, so it goth by the warre; they were not wyse to tary when they knew the army of Englonde on the se; they myght haue gone into some other quarter. Syr, sayd þ̄ knyghtes, they were come thyder in trust of saufegarde, for they sayd the wynes and other marchaundyse þ̄ they had sholde go into flaundes, for they had herde wel by þ̄ maryners of saynt Andrewes<sup>d</sup> þ̄ the englyssshmen were on the see, and on the boundes and coast of Bysquay; and true it is, þ̄ kyngē of Portyngale sent to thē galeys and gret shyppes, thynkyng how they wolde haue landed at þ̄ porte<sup>e</sup> of Portyngale or at Lysbone, but they dyd the cōtrary, as it appered, for they entred into Galyce by Coulōgne.<sup>f</sup> Well, syrs, sayd the kyngē, among you knyghtes of fraūce, who knoweth more of dedes of armes thē mē of this cōtrey, for ye haue more haunted and ysed the warre thē they haue: how thynke you by the englyssshmē; how haue they borne thēselfe al this season? Syr, sayd they, they haue borne themselfe lyke good mē of warre, for they be so close and pryny, þ̄ harde it is to knowe what they entende to do; but supposing we thynke þ̄ duke of Lācastre wyl abyde all this nexte wynter in saynt James towne and his people theraboutē, and ouer rynne þ̄ cōtrey of Galyce, and wyn þ̄ small holdes and gete vytayles and prouysions: and tyl somer come by lykelyhōde there shall

<sup>a</sup> Corunna.<sup>b</sup> St. Andero.<sup>c</sup> Oporto.

shall be some treatye made bytwene hym and the kyng of Portyngale, or elles neuer: there is one poynte  $\hat{y}$  causeth vs to byleue  $\hat{y}$  some alyaunces shal be cōcluded bytwene thē, and  $\hat{y}$  is,  $\hat{y}$  duke hath brought out of Englade with hym al his daughters maryed and to mary; he hath ii. to mary, and we thynke  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngale, your aduersary, shal haue one of them. Wel, sayd  $\hat{y}$  kyng, what thyng were best for me to do? Syr, sayd  $\hat{y}$  knyght, we shal shew you: cause al your townes and castels on  $\hat{y}$  fronter of galyce to be wel kepte, suche as be of strēgth: and suche as be of no strength, cause thē to be beten downe: it is shewed vs how men of  $\hat{y}$  cōtrei do fortify minsters, chyrches, and steples, and bryng into thē al theyr goodes. Syr, surely this shal be the losse and confusyon of your royaume; for whē  $\hat{y}$  englysshmen ryde abrode, these small holdes, chyrches, and steples shal holde no while agaynst thē, but they shal be refreshed and nourysshed w̄ suche prouysyon as they shall fynde in them, whiche shal helpe to further them to wyne all  $\hat{y}$  resydue; therefore, syr, we say  $\hat{y}$  and ye do wel cause al suche holdes to be beten downe now whyle ye haue leysure, and make a crye,  $\hat{y}$  w̄out every thyng be auoyded into  $\hat{y}$  good townes and into stronge castelles bytwene this and the feest of all sayntes, and elles let it be forfayte and abandō it to your mē of warre, who-soeuer can catche it, or at the furthest by the feest of saynt Andrewe: it were better your owne mē had the profyte therof rather then your enemyes; and, syr, sende specially certayne persones of your counsaile to  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng, certefyng hym what case you and your cōtrei is in: thus, syr, sende to the kyng and his vnclēs,  $\hat{y}$  duke of Berrey and  $\hat{y}$  duke of Borgoyne, shewyng thē surely  $\hat{y}$  by all lykelyhode in this nexte somer ye shal haue  $\hat{y}$  grettest war  $\hat{y}$  euer was made in spayne, other by  $\hat{y}$  prynce or by any other. Syr, wryte pyteous letters, desyryng the kyng and his vnclēs to cōforte you in this your grete nede w̄ some good mē of armes, to resyst your enemyes and to kepe and defende your royaume; there is grete alyaunces allredy bytwene the frensshe kyng and you, and in lykewyse was by hym and your fader; and, syr, surely in no wyse  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng and the noble royaume of fraūce, whiche may do more in dede thē englande and Portyngale ioyned togyder, in this case wyll not fayle you; for whē  $\hat{y}$  frēsshe kyng and his cōsaile be iustly enformed of every thyng, ye shal wel perceyue they wyll take suche regarde therto,  $\hat{y}$  ye shal take but lytel damage by this war; for knyghtes and squyers of fraūce desyryng to auance theyr dedes, w̄ a lytell worde or cōmaūdement, wyll drawe into these partyes to fynde dedes of armes, for as nowe they wote not where to employ theyr tyme better, for fraūce and flaūders as now be accorded, whiche hath ben at war a long season, and also there is a tūce bytwene fraūce and englade as beyonde  $\hat{y}$  ryuer of Loyre, to endure to  $\hat{y}$  feest of saynt Johñ baptyst; therefore, syr, ye shal se knyghtes and squyers of fraūce come hyder in good nombres, as well to fynde dedes of armes as to se this cōtrei and to mete  $\hat{y}$  englysshmē; but, syr, we cōsaile you for your profyte,  $\hat{y}$  al these smal holdes, chyrches, mynsters, and steples abrode in  $\hat{y}$  cōtrei, let thē be put downe, if ye thynke to haue ioy of  $\hat{y}$  resydue. Thē the kyng of Castel sayd, syrs, ye cōsaile me truly, and thus wyll I do fro hens forwarde; thē, without takyng of any further cōsaile, he cōmaūded al suche holdes as were of no grete strength to be beten downe, and abandoned to  $\hat{y}$  frensshe knyghtes al  $\hat{y}$  they founde in thē, and to se  $\hat{y}$  it were done as they had deuysed. Syr, sayd they,  $\hat{y}$  is wel sayd; syr, we shal se it accōplysshed, and shal helpe to saue all the resydue: this worde  $\hat{y}$  the kyng of Castel sayd to thē of fraūce, and the auctorite  $\hat{y}$  he gauē to thē was wel worth to thē C. M. frankes of profyte, and specially to thē  $\hat{y}$  came fyrst into Castel, whē the duke of Lācastre aryued at coulongne.<sup>a</sup> Thus throughtout al the royaume of Castel al smal holdes, chyrches, and steples, and suche as were not sufficient to be kepte, were put downe, and all  $\hat{y}$  goodes in thē abandoned to the mē of warre; so the people of  $\hat{y}$  cōtrei were trapped and begyled, suche as had fortifyed suche places, and

<sup>a</sup> Corunna.

and put in thē theyr goodes, as wyne, come, flesshe, and other thīges, thyngkyng there to haue kepte thē sure; but it fell the cōtrary, for knyghtes and squyers sente thyder theyr mē, and toke al, and brought suche prouysyon as they fōūde there to theyr maysters lodgynges; but as for golde and syluer, suche as they fōūde, and suche money as they made the vylaynes to pay for theyr owne goodes, ŷ money neuer came to no knowledge, for ŷ they kepte styll in theyr purses; and some of ŷ poore cōpanyons, suche as were more subtyl thē other, moost aduentured, and therby wan moost; often tymes, suche as cometh fro theyr owne howses moost porest, in suche cases be sonest moūted on good horses and genettes, v. or vi. in theyr stable, gyrdelles of chaynes of golde and syluer, and a M. or ii. M. frankes in theyr purse, and whē they were in theyr owne cōutrey, were fayne to go afote or on a nagge: thus ŷ cōpanyons ŷ came fyrst into Castel wan moche ryches, and the poore mē of ŷ cōutrey payde for al, for they were robbed and ryffel w̄ theyr owne mē, for they wolde not ŷ theyr enemyes sholde haue had ony profyte therof: and when these tydynges came into fraūce to other cōpanyons how ŷ pore knyghtes and squyers ŷ were gone into Castell were made so ryche, they were the more eger to go out of theyr houses and to draw into spayne, cōsideryng how they myght there as well pyll and robbe on theyr frendes as on theyr enemyes.

*Of the grete apparell and prouysyon that generally was made in the royalme of fraūce by the kyng there and by his counsayle, for a iourney to be made into Englande; and also of the dethe of Frauncis Atreman.*

#### CAP. XLIX.

THE frensshe kyng and his counsayle were wel enfourmed of ŷ voyage ŷ the duke of Lācastre sholde make into Castel, or he departed, for ŷ voyce fiewe quykely ŷ the royalme of Castel sholde haue moche ado ŷ somer; and to fynde some remedy ther agaynst, the duke of Burgoyne made so lyghtly peas w̄ the gaūtoyse, to ŷ entente to ayde ŷ necessitye of ŷ kyng of Castel, wherto the frensshe kyng and the royalme of fraūce were bounde for dyuers reasons; for by ŷ kyng of Castel, and his men and shyppes on ŷ see, the busynes of ŷ royalme of fraunce were in good state, and also besyde ŷ, the yonge kynge Charles of fraūce had grete affeccyon to go w̄ an army into ŷ royalme of englande: all knyghtes and squyers of fraūce were well agreed therto, and specyally his vnclē ŷ duke of Burgoyne, and the constable of fraunce,<sup>a</sup> for al ŷ he had to his wyfe the syster of kyng Rycharde of englande, and also ŷ lorde of Coucy: these lordes and the most parte of ŷ chualry of fraūce sayd, why sholde we not ones go into Englande to se the countrye and the people there, and teche them the way as they haue done in fraunce; and so in ŷ yere of our lorde M.CCC.lxxx.vi. what to ŷ entente to breke ŷ duke of Lancastres voyage, and to cause hym to retourne out of Castel, and to gyue leare to ŷ englysshmē, grete ordenāuce for ŷ voyage was made in fraūce, and taxes and tallages set and assysed in cytees and good townes, and in ŷ playne countrye. ŷ in a C. yere before there was none suche sene, and also grete apparell made by the see al ŷ somer; tyll ŷ moneth of septembre they dyd no thyng elles on ŷ see coost but grynde corne and bake bysket, and at Tournay, lisle, doway, arras, Amyas,<sup>b</sup> bethune, saynt omers, and in all the townes aboute Sluse, for ŷ frensshe kynges entencyon and his counsayle was to take ŷ see at Sluse, and so to entre into englande to destroy ŷ countrye: they ŷ were ryche men in ŷ royalme of fraūce, to ŷ ayde of this voyage were taxed and tayed

<sup>a</sup> "And the Count de St: Pol"—omitted.

<sup>b</sup> Amiens.

tayled to the iii. and iiij. parte of their goodes, and many payde more thē they were worth besyde, to accōpysshe ȝ payment for men of warre.

Fro Spayne and fro the porte of sybyll<sup>a</sup> to Pruce<sup>b</sup> there was no grete shyp on ȝ see ȝ ȝ frensshemen coulde lay their handes on, nor vnder their owne obeysaunce, but were reteyned for ȝ frensshē kyng and his men: prouysyon came fro al parties and aryued in flauders, both wyne, salte, flesshe, hay in tonnes, otes, onyons, bysket, flour, egges in pypes, and of al maner of thynges ȝ coulde be denyed; so ȝ in tyme to come it coulde not be byleued but by thē ȝ sawe it. Lordes, knyghtes, squyers, and men of war were wryten vnto, and desyred to come and serue ȝ kyng in his iourney, as out of Sauoy, Almayne,<sup>c</sup> and fro ȝ sone goynge downe to ȝ lande of ȝ erle of Arminacke; and so these lordes of farre countreys, as the erle of Sauoy, was reteyned with v. C. speres, also ȝ erle of arminacke, and ȝ dolphyn of Awuergne: and these lordes, though they were of farre cōtreys, and knew not what ende this warre sholde come to, yet they made their prouysyons so grete and costly, ȝ it was gret meruayle to thynke therof, and it was wonder to consider fro whens all suche prouysyon came, what by lande and by see into flauders, as to bruges, to Dan,<sup>d</sup> and to Sluse; and so there was sent for into Holāde, zelāde, meldebouge,<sup>e</sup> zerechyl,<sup>f</sup> dourdest,<sup>g</sup> stonehōne,<sup>h</sup> and to all other townes on ȝ see coast, and to ȝ ryuers entryng into ȝ see for al maner of shyppes ȝ coulde do ony seruyce, and al were brought to Sluse; but ȝ holanders and ȝ zelanders sayd to thē ȝ reteyned thē, yf ye wyl haue our seruyce, pay vs our wages clerly, or elles we wyl go to no parte; so they were payde, wherin they dyd wysely. I trowe, syth god created ȝ worlde, there was neuer sene so many grete shyppes togyder as was ȝ yere at sluse and at Blanquerge;<sup>i</sup> for in ȝ moneth of septēbre in ȝ sayd yere they were nōber a xii. C. lxxx. vii. shyppes at Sluse; there mastes semed in ȝ se lyke a grete wood, and the cōstable of Fraunce shyp was apparellled at Lentregmer<sup>k</sup> in bretagne; also the cōstable caused to be made in bretayne of tymbre a closure of a towne, or lyke a parke, ȝ whē they had takē lande in englāde, to close in their felde, to lodge theri more at their ease. wout waking or skries; and whēsoeuer they sholde remouē theyr felde, ȝ closure was so made, ȝ they myght take it a sonder in peces, and a grete nombre of carpētērs and other receyued in wages to atende theron. I herde not ȝ ȝ duke of bretayne made ony prouysyō to go in this iourney, nor the duke of Tourayne, the kynges yonger broder, nor the erle of Bloys; al myght not go, for some must abyde behynde, to kepe ȝ royalme.

Who so had ben ȝ seasō at bruges, at dan,<sup>d</sup> or at sluse, and sene ȝ busynes there in charge of shyppes w hay, sacking of bysket, and lading in of onyons, peson, benes, barley, candelles, hosen, shoos, spurres, knyues, daggers, axes of war, axes to hew wā, mattockes, nayles, beddes, couches, horse shoos, pottes, pānes, cadelstykke, and al maner of necessaryes for kechyn, botery, and al other offyces, and of euery thyng ȝ coulde be thought of, necessary to serue mā and horse; al was had into shyppes in one thyng or other: whosoever had sene it, if he had bene seke, I thynke he wolde clene haue forgotten al ȝ payne; ȝ cōpanyons of fraūce rekened none otherwyse amonge thēselfe, whē they spake togyder, but ȝ the royalme of englāde sholde clene haue ben lost and exyled wout recouery, and al ȝ men, women, and chyldrē therin slayne and taken and caryed into fraūce in seruytude.

Of this grete apparell thus made to come into englande, ȝ kyng of englāde and his cōsāyle were wel enfourmed therof; and it was surely affyrmed that the frensshmē wolde

<sup>a</sup> Seville.<sup>b</sup> Prussia.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Danne.<sup>e</sup> Middleburgh.<sup>f</sup> Overysseel?<sup>g</sup> Dordrecht.<sup>h</sup> Schoenhöven.<sup>i</sup> Blankenburgh.<sup>k</sup> Treguier.

wolde come thyder, for so they had surely sworne: it was no meruayle, though this grete apparel somewhat at  $\hat{y}$  begynnynge abasshed  $\hat{y}$  englysshmē; and also  $\hat{y}$  matter was shewed moche more then it was in dede, and also  $\hat{y}$  englysshmen were in no sure certaynte whether this preparacyon was to come into Englande, or elles to lay syege to Calays bothe by lande and by see: for the englysshmē knewe wel,  $\hat{y}$  of all the townes in the worlde,  $\hat{y}$  frensshmen most desyred to haue calays; wherfore the kyng of englande sent to Calays grete prouisyon of whete and other cornes, salte flesshe, fysse, wyne, bere, and other thynges; and thyder was sent syr Thomas Holāde erle of kente, syr Hogue Caurell,<sup>a</sup> syr wyllyā Helman, syr Dangouses,<sup>b</sup> syr water of Vurnes,<sup>c</sup> syr Water paille, syr Wyllyā Toucet,<sup>d</sup> syr Loys of Mountalban, syr Colars of Dābrychcourte,<sup>e</sup> and v. C. men of armes, and v. C. archers; and  $\hat{y}$  erle Rycharde of Arūdel, and syr Henry spenser,<sup>f</sup> were ordeyned to kepe the see with xl. grete shyppes wel decked, with men of armes and archers, to  $\hat{y}$  nombre of CCC. men of armes and vi. C. archers.

On the other syde it was sayd in dyuers places in fraunce, in haynalte, and in pycardy,  $\hat{y}$   $\hat{y}$  frēsse armye  $\hat{y}$  was thus apparelled in flāuders, was nother to go into englande nor to Calays, but rather to retourne al  $\hat{y}$  matter, and set on  $\hat{y}$  towne of Gaunte: and as it was enfourmed,  $\hat{y}$  towne of Gaunte  $\hat{y}$  same season doubted gretely  $\hat{y}$  all  $\hat{y}$  apparell was for to come on thē; but they were in a wronge byleue, for  $\hat{y}$  duke of Borgoyne theyr lorde wolde nothyng to thē but good rest and peas, though  $\hat{y}$  Frauncis Atreman were slayne anone after the makynge of the peas at Tournay: for of his deth  $\hat{y}$  duke was nothyng to blame, nor the duke had none euyl wyl to hym, though in  $\hat{y}$  season of war he dyd many feates of armes for  $\hat{y}$  towne agaynst the duke, as it hath ben declared more playnly here before; for though he came to an euyl ende, it was his owne default; for if he had byleued Peter du boys, it had ben otherwyse with hym; for when the peas was made bytwene  $\hat{y}$  duke of Borgoyne and them of Gaunt, when he returned fro Tournay to Gaunt, and  $\hat{y}$  Peter du boys made hym redy to go into Englande with syr Johā Bourser,<sup>g</sup> then Peter sayd to hym, Frauncis, what wyll ye do? wyll ye go into Englande with vs? Then he sayd he wolde abyde styll in Gaunt. Why, sayd Peter, thynke you to abyde here in peas? there is grete hatred agaynst you and me; I wyll abyde for nothyng here; it is not to trust in  $\hat{y}$  comontye; ye haue herde how they of Gaunt slue and mured the valyaunt Jaques of Artuell, who had done so moche good to the towne bothe in counsaile and in armes: and for a lytell cause the vyllaynes slue hym, and the honest men of the towne dyd not saue hym, but rather dyssmuled and was glad of his deth: in lykewyse, Frauncis wyll they do with you and me yf I abyde here; but as for me, I wyll not tary; therfore adue.

Why, sayd Frauncis, the duke of Borgoyne hath pardoned all thynges, and hath retheyned me, yf I wyll, to go with hym, to be as a squyer of his stable, with iiii. horses; and he, and also syr Gny of Tremoyll,<sup>h</sup> sheweth me grete sygne of loue. In the name of god, sayd Peter du boys, I speke not of my lorde  $\hat{y}$  duke of Borgoyne, nor of his knyghtes; I thynke they wyll kepe well the peas; but I speke of the comons of Gaunt; there be some  $\hat{y}$  ye haue not alwayes pleased; remembre ye not of the lorde of Sargelles,<sup>i</sup> whom ye made to be slayne, and other? Knowe for trouth,  $\hat{y}$  these passed hatredes wyl contynue in theyr hartes yf ye abyde amonge thē; yet it were better for you to go and dwell with  $\hat{y}$  duke of Borgoyne. Well, sayd Frauncis, I shall take aduyse; but into Englande I wyl not go. Thus Frauncis Atreman abode styll, and peter du boys wente with syr Johā Bourser:<sup>g</sup> and anone after  $\hat{y}$ , the peas was cryed and publysshed in all the partyes of Flaunders; then there was made a crye that none sholde bere ony armure or sworde after hym: and Frauncis Atremā, who was styll in Gaunt, and had

VOL. II.

Z

kepte

<sup>a</sup> Calverley.<sup>b</sup> The Earl of Angus.<sup>c</sup> Warren.<sup>d</sup> Touchet.<sup>e</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>f</sup> Despenser.<sup>g</sup> Bourchier.<sup>h</sup> Tremouille.<sup>i</sup> De Harselles.

kepte a grete estate the warre durynge, thought to contynue somewhat his honestye; euer where he went he had a iiii. or iiiii. seruauntes waytynge on hym, armed and beryng swordes and other wepons on thē; and when this crye was made in the dukes name, he thought it sholde not rynne on hym nor none of his seruauntes, he thought hymselfe soo well in fauoure with them of the towne: but he was deceyued, for within a vii. or viii. dayes after the cry was proclaimed ŷ dukes baylyffe came personally to hym and sayd, Fraūcis, ye put my lorde the dukes offycers in grete suspecte; why do you go aboute in ŷ towne in harneys, and your seruauntes, beryng swordes and wepons of defence, as though it were in ŷ tyme of war, whiche pleaseth not vs; wherfore we cōmaunde you in the dukes name to lay them downe. Frauncis, who thought none euyl in ŷ he clyd, but to maynteyne his estate, answered and sayd, syr baylyffe, I wyll obey as it is reason, and I thanke god I hate no persone, nor wolde not ŷ ony sholde haue ony hurte for my sake; howbeit, I had thought to haue had that aduātage in ŷ towne of Gaunt. ŷ I myght haue had my seruaūtes were theyr swordes after me. Nay, sayd the baylyffe, not so; for suche of the towne as ye haue done seruyce vnto speke ther agaynste, and haue meruayle therof, and demaunde of me why I do suffre it: they saye it semeth that I wolde renewe agayne the olde warre, whiche they wyll not suffre; wherfore, Fraūcis, I pray you do so that I here no more therof; for yf ye will not obey, I must repute you as an enemy to my lorde the duke and to my lady of borgoyne; and so the baylyffe departed fro hym; and frauncis wente to his lodgyng, and caused his seruauntes to lay downe all theyr armure, and so entred into suche a fantasye, that moost parte after he wente in ŷ towne all alone, or but one with hym, chyldre or seruaunt. So it was on a daye there was a feeste kepte without the towne of Gaunt, in the abbey of saynt Peters, and Frauncis Atreman wente thyder, and but one seruaunt with hym, without armure or wepyn: he was spyed and pursued with a bastarde sone of the lorde of Harzelles, whom he had caused to be slayne before; wherfore thē his sone thought to be reuenged of his faders deth: this bastarde was prouyded for the matter, and pursued Frauncis tyl he came out of the towne and farre fro ony company, and cryed on hym and sayd, A, thou Frauncis Atremā, thou shalte dye; thou caused my fader to be slayne, and I shall slee the; and as Fraūcis tourned hym, the bastarde strake hym on ŷ heed with his sworde so weyghty a stroke, that he claue his heed to the tethe, and so fell downe deed to the erthe; and the bastarde wente his way fayre and easely, no man pursued hym: so this Frauncis Atreman was wel worthy to dye, in that he wolde not byleue Peter du Boys: and when tydynges came into englande, and that Peter du boys knew therof, he toke but smal thought for hym, and sayd, or I departed fro Gaunt I well aduysed hym; let vs se now who wyll amende it; not they that duryng the warre dyd greteley honoure hym: for suche doubtles I byleued syr Johā Bourser,<sup>a</sup> and came into englaunde.

Nowe let vs retourne to the prouisyons that were made at this season at Dan<sup>b</sup> and at Sluse; it is not had in remembraūce of mā, nor by wrytyng, neuer none lyke sene nor herde of: Golde and syluer was no more spared then though it had rayned out of the clowdes, or scomed out of ŷ see: the grete lordes of france sent theyr seruauntes to Sluse, to apparell and make redy theyr prouisyons and shypes, and to furnysshe them of euery thyng nedeful; the kyng hymselfe, as yonge as he was, had more wyl to this iourney then any other, and that he alwayes shewed to the ende therof: euery mā helped to make prouisyō for other, and to garnysshe theyr shypes, and to paynte them with theyr armes; paynters had as then a good season, for they wan and had whatsoeuer they desyred, and yet there coulde not ynow be gotē for money; they made baners, penons, standerdes of sylke, soo goodly, ŷ it was meruayle to beholde thē; also they

<sup>a</sup> Bourcier.<sup>b</sup> Damme.

they paynted theyr mastes of theyr shippes, fro the one ende to the other, glyteryng with golde and deuyses and armes; and specyally it was shewed me,  $\hat{y}$  the lorde Guy of tremouyle<sup>a</sup> garnysshed his shyp rychely; the payntynges  $\hat{y}$  were made cost more than ii. M. frankes; whatsoeuer ony lorde coulde deuise for theyr pleasure made in slyppes: and the pore people of the royaume payed for al, for the tallages were there so grete to fournysshe this voyage, that they  $\hat{y}$  were most ryche sorewed for it, and the poore fled for it.

Al  $\hat{y}$  cuer was done in Fraunce, in flaunders, and other places, for this voyage was wel knowen in Englande, and it was made moche gretter then it was in dede; wherof the people in dyuers places of the royaume were sore abasshed, and there were made general processyons in euery good towne and cyte by prelates and men of the chyirche iii. tymes euery weke, whiche were made in grete deuocyon with the hartes with holy prayers and orysons to god to delyuer them fro  $\hat{y}$  peryll; howbeit, there were in englande a C. M. that desyred hartely that  $\hat{y}$  frensshmen myght come and aryue in englande; and suche lyght companyons, in comforynge of themselfe and of them that were abasshed, sayd, let these frensshmen come; there shall not one tayle of them retourne agayne into fraunce; and suche persons as were in det, and cared not for  $\hat{y}$  payment therof, were gretely reioysed of  $\hat{y}$  comyng of the frensshmen, and wolde say to theyr credytours, when they demaunded theyr det, syrs, holde you styll, they forge in Frauce new floreyus, wherwith ye shall be payde; and in  $\hat{y}$  trust therof they lyued and spente largely; and whē they myght not be trusted, they wolde say, what wolde ye haue of vs? It were better for you that we sholde spende frely the goodes of this royaume, rather thē the frensshmen sholde fynde it and haue it; and so by that means there was spente in outrage in Englande a M. pouēde sterlyng.

In this season  $\hat{y}$  kyng of englāde was in  $\hat{y}$  marches of walles, and w<sup>h</sup> hym the erle of Oxenforde,<sup>b</sup> by whom euery thyng was done in englāde, and wout hym nothyng done; and chefe of  $\hat{y}$  kynges cōsaille were syr Symon Burle,<sup>c</sup> syr Nicholas braule,<sup>d</sup> syr Robert tauylyon,<sup>e</sup> syr Robert beauchamp, syr Johā salwen,<sup>f</sup> and syr mychel de la polle; and also there was named  $\hat{y}$  bysshop of Norwyche and syr wyllyā Neuell, broder to  $\hat{y}$  lorde Neuel: al these, as it was sayd, dyd w<sup>h</sup>  $\hat{y}$  kyng what they lyst; as for  $\hat{y}$  kynges vnclis,  $\hat{y}$  erle of Cambrydge and the erle of Buckynghā, coulde do nothyng, wout it were agreable to  $\hat{y}$  other before sayd: and this trouble and differēce amōge thēselfe was well known in frauce, whiche gretly auanced theyr journey; they wolde haue had  $\hat{y}$  duke of Lācastre to haue withdrawē his journey out of Castell, but he toke no hede therof to let his voyage. Whē  $\hat{y}$  lordes of englāde and the prelates and  $\hat{y}$  people of  $\hat{y}$  good townes and cytees and conons of the royaume were iustly and credyibly enfourmed how  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng was redy to come into englande to dystroy it, then they drew togider to cōsaille; thē  $\hat{y}$  kyng was wryten vnto by his vnclis,  $\hat{y}$  he sholde come to Londō, certefyng hym how  $\hat{y}$  comons of his royaume were not cōtent with hym nor his counsaille;  $\hat{y}$  kyng and his counsaille wolde not refuse  $\hat{y}$  goyng thyder, but so departed fro  $\hat{y}$  marches of wales, where they had ben long and the quene also, and so came to Wyndesore, and there taryed a certayne dayes: and then  $\hat{y}$  kyng lefte there  $\hat{y}$  quene, and so went to Westminster to his palace and there taryed; and thyder came to hym al suche as had to do, and there they toke cōsaille how they sholde be demeaned agaynst this journey of  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng: then the erle of Salysbury, who was a ryght valyaunt and prudent knyght, sayd before  $\hat{y}$  kyng and his vnclis, and before al  $\hat{y}$  prelates and lordes of englande  $\hat{y}$  were there present, syr, my souerayn lorde, and al ye my lordes and other, it ought not to be meruayled of our aduersary  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng wyll come and ryn vpō vs;

Z 2

for

<sup>a</sup> De la Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> Oxford.<sup>c</sup> Burley.<sup>d</sup> Bramber.<sup>e</sup> Tresillian.<sup>f</sup> Salisbury.

for syth  $\text{ȝ}$  deth of the last noble and puyssaunt kyng Edward, of noble memory, this royaume here hath ben in gret aduēture to haue ben lost and dystroyed with  $\text{ȝ}$  vyllaynes of  $\text{ȝ}$  same; and also it is well knowen in fraunce how we be not al of one accorde; wherfore this trouble appereth,  $\text{ȝ}$  whiche is not lytel, for he is but a foole  $\text{ȝ}$  fereth not his enemies; and as longe as the royaume of Englande was in vnyte,  $\text{ȝ}$  kyng with his people and they w $\text{ȝ}$  hym, thē we prospered and reygned vycoryously, nor we sawe nor founde none  $\text{ȝ}$  dyd vs ony grete wronge; wherfore it is now nedeful, neuer more nede appered in englande,  $\text{ȝ}$  we cōferme ourselfe to rest (in) loue and vnyte, if we thynke to come to ony honour; and  $\text{ȝ}$  we ordeyne at  $\text{ȝ}$  portes and hauens of englande suche prouyson and defence that our country receyue no blame nor damage.

This noble royaume of Englande hath ben a louge season in tryūphaunt floure, and euery man knoweth well a thyng  $\text{ȝ}$  is in floure hath more nede to be wel kepte thē whē it is tourned to parfyte fruyte; therfore we ought to se and cōsyder how this royaume is in his flourysshynge floure, for within this lx. yeres knyghtes and squyers therof, bothe within  $\text{ȝ}$  royaume and wout, haue had more honoure then ony other nacyō; therfore let vs put to our paynes  $\text{ȝ}$  as long as we lyue we may kepe this honour; thē euery mā sayd,  $\text{ȝ}$  it were good  $\text{ȝ}$  it were so.

The erle of salysburies wordes were wel herde and accepted as the wordes and counsayle of a noble, valyaunt, and sage knyght: all  $\text{ȝ}$  was sayd by hym, and deuysed among thē, I wyl not long rest theron, for I thynke not to know al: but I know wel  $\text{ȝ}$  the towne of Caleys was kepte as I sayd before; and they ordeyned to kepe  $\text{ȝ}$  hauyns and portes where as they supposed  $\text{ȝ}$   $\text{ȝ}$  frensshmē wolde aryue,  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of salysbury, bycause parte of his lande marched nere to  $\text{ȝ}$  yle of wyght, whiche is ryght ouer agaynst Normandy and the cōūtre of Caulx; therfore he was set there with his mē and archers of  $\text{ȝ}$  cōūtre; and the erle of deuyshyre to be at Hampton<sup>a</sup> with CC. men of armes and vi. C. archers to kepe the hauyn;  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Northūbrelande at Rye with CC. mē of armes and vi. C. archers;  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Cābrydge at douer w $\text{ȝ}$  v. C. mē of armes and xii. C. archers; and his broder,  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Buckynghā, at Sādwyche with vi. C. mē of armes and xii. C. archers;  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of stafforde and  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Penbroke were sent to Orwel hauyn with v. C. mē of armes and xii. C. archers; and syr henry Percy and faulx Percy were at yarmouth w $\text{ȝ}$  iii. C. mē of armes and vi. C. archers; and syr Symon burle<sup>b</sup> was capytayne of Douer castel: al  $\text{ȝ}$  hauyns and portes bytwene  $\text{ȝ}$  ryuer of Humbre and Cornewal were refreshed with mē of war and archers; and on  $\text{ȝ}$  moūtaines and hylles costyng the see on the fronters agaynst flāūders and fraūce were set watche mē and watchers in dyuers maners, I cā not tell how; they had empty pypes, fylled w $\text{ȝ}$  sādē, one set or another, and on the hyght of thē were places for mē to syt on, whiche nyght and day kepte watche lokyngē into the see; and they were charged,  $\text{ȝ}$  yf they saw  $\text{ȝ}$  frensshie nauy approche towarde the lāde, thē to make fyers alofte on  $\text{ȝ}$  hylles to styre  $\text{ȝ}$  cōūtre to drawe to  $\text{ȝ}$  coost where  $\text{ȝ}$  fyers apered; and it was ordeyned  $\text{ȝ}$  they sholde suffre  $\text{ȝ}$  frensshie kyng peasybly to take lande and al his, and to suffre hym to entre into  $\text{ȝ}$  lāde a iii. or iiiii. days, and so they thē to go to  $\text{ȝ}$  see where he landed, and to fyght w $\text{ȝ}$  the shyppes and to wyn them yf they colde, to dystroy thē, and take al theyr prouyson, and thē to folow  $\text{ȝ}$  frensshmē, not incōtynēt to fyght w $\text{ȝ}$  thē, but to hary thē, and to kepe thē wakyngē, and to kepe thē fro goyngē a foragyngē, and to dystroy thē all  $\text{ȝ}$  were abrode in  $\text{ȝ}$  cōūtre, so  $\text{ȝ}$  therby they sholde famysshē thē; this was  $\text{ȝ}$  opynyon and cōūsaile in englande: and Rochestre brydge was broken, where is a grete ryuer rynnynge fro arundel<sup>c</sup> into  $\text{ȝ}$  cōūte of Essex, and entreth into  $\text{ȝ}$  see and into Tamyse<sup>d</sup> agaynst  $\text{ȝ}$  yle of Tenet; this brydge they of Londō bet downe, to be  $\text{ȝ}$  more surer. And

wherreas

<sup>a</sup> Southampton.

<sup>b</sup> Burley.

<sup>c</sup> "from Arundel" appears to be an interpolation.

<sup>d</sup> The Thames.



whereas taxes and tallages were grete in fraunce on þ̄ men of þ̄ townes, in lykewyse they were grete þ̄ season in englāde, so þ̄ þ̄ royalme sorowed it a grete season after; but they were glad to pay þ̄ sowdyours, to be therby defēded: there were redy in englāde a C. M. archers and a x. M. men of armes, besyde þ̄ grete cōpany þ̄ the duke of Lancaster had into castel, of whom now we wyll speke somewhat, and shew of þ̄ aquayntaūce þ̄ was bytwene hym and þ̄ kyng of Portyngale, and then I shal retourne to speke agayne of englande, for þ̄ matter requyreth to speke as wel of þ̄ one as of the other.

*How the kyng of Portyngale wrote amyably to the duke of Lancaster, whē he knew that he was aryued at saynt James in Galyce; and of the socours that the kyng of Castel sent for into fraunce; and how the towne of Ruelles in Galyce was taken by the englysshemen.*

## CAP. L.

YE haue herde before in this hystory how þ̄ duke of Lācastre, with a fayre cōpany of mē of armes and archers, were aryued at Couloung<sup>a</sup> in Galyce; and how by cōpocycyon þ̄ towne, not þ̄ castel, was yelden to hym: thus they sayd they wolde do as other townes in Galyce dyd, and so therby they were not assayled; and thē þ̄ duke, his wyfe, and chyl dren came to the towne of saynt James, called Cōpostella, and there laye, and was in purpose to do tyl he herde other tydynges fro þ̄ kyng of Portyngale, who knewe of a surty þ̄ the duke was at saynt James, wherof he had grete ioy, thynkyng þ̄ bytwene thē they sholde make a goodly war into Castel: thē he wrote letters ryght amyably w̄ grete salutacyons, and sent thē by certayne messagers to þ̄ duke and the duches, who receuyed þ̄ letters ryght ioyously. for þ̄ duke knew wel he sholde haue gret nede of þ̄ kyng of Portyngale: for w̄out hym or his comferte he saw wel he sholde make but smal spede in his busynes in Portyngale or in Castel: then þ̄ duke gaue to þ̄ messagers grete gyftes, and wrote agayne letters w̄ grete salutacyons and amytyes to þ̄ kyng of Portyngale, certefyng hym in his letters þ̄ he desyred gretely to se and speke w̄ hym: thus in the meane season þ̄ letters and messagers wente bytwene þ̄ kyng of Portyngale and the duke of Lācastre, þ̄ tyme passed, and kyng Johñ of Castel fortelyed hym in al þ̄ he myght, and sent oliē into fraunce letters and messagers, desyryng to haue ayde of mē of war to defende and kepe his royalme of Castel: sayng, þ̄ in þ̄ somer folowyng he thought he sholde haue grete war, bycause þ̄ kyng of Portyngale and the englysshmen were ioyned togyder in alyaunce, wherby they sholde be stronge ynoughe to oner ryn þ̄ royalme of castel, w̄out they were withstāded: þ̄ frēsse kyng and his cōsāyle wrote agayne to þ̄ kyng of Castel, byddyng hym to take no thought nor doubte, for within þ̄ moneth of January he wolde gyue englāde so moche a do, þ̄ they sholde not know what to do: saynge, þ̄ when they had dystroyed al Englande, thē in þ̄ somer they wolde take þ̄ see agayne, and so passe into Galyce and into portyngale, and þ̄ if þ̄ englysshmē there and þ̄ portyngales kept þ̄ felde, they wolde cause thē to flee, so þ̄ within a yere they wolde make an ende of al þ̄ warres; so the kyng of castel cōtēted hymselfe with this āswere, for he saw wel he coulde haue none other as at þ̄ tyme; so there came none out of Fraunce to hym but suche as were there before, for al knyghtes and squyers farre and nere wente to Parys and into Pycardy, and so to Lysle, to doway, and to tournay; þ̄ cōūtrei, iiii. myle of length, was ful of mē of warre; þ̄ nombre was so grete, þ̄ suche as had þ̄ rule of the nauy sayd þ̄ they coulde not passe at þ̄ fyrst passage but xl. M. mē: thē it was ordeyned and aduysed, þ̄ they sholde suffre no mā passe without he were a propre mā of armes, and þ̄ euery knyght sholde haue but one varlet, and a baron ii. squyers,

<sup>a</sup> Cerunna.

squyers, and that no horse sholde passe but all onely for þ̄ lordes: and to execute this, there were mē set at Sluse to se ý none other sholde passe; howbeit, there were such a nombre of rascalles in flaūdr̄es and therabout̄e, ý they ete vp al in the countrey; and the pore men of the cōutrey payde for all theyr charges, for they durst not speke agaynst thē; they were worse to þ̄ countrey thē yf englysshmen theyr enemyes had lyen there; and it was grete doute ý the kynge and the lordes ones passed ouer into Englāde, and suche people to abyde behynde, lest they assēbled togyder and dystroy al; and surely so they had done, if the iourney had done amysse. Now let vs retourne to the duke of Lancastre.

In the meane season, whyle the duke of Lancastre, the duches, and his chyldren, with his cōpany, lay at saynt James, knyghtes and squyers of his cōpany lyued at aduenture where they might catche it; and on a day syr Thomas Moreaulx, marshal of the oost, and w̄ hym syr Mauburne of liners,<sup>a</sup> syr Joh̄n dābrychcourte,<sup>b</sup> Tyrry and wyllýa of Sonnayne,<sup>c</sup> and a CC. speres and v. C. archers, rode forth into Galyce, and so came to a walled towne, a vii. myles fro saynt James, called Ruelles; for the vyllaynes ý dwelte therin wolde not tourne to þ̄ duke, but were rebell, and had often tymes ouerthrowen of the dukes foragers as they passed by þ̄ baryers of theyr towne, for they had broken so ý wayes, ý they coulde not repasse none other way but by theyr baryers; and when they sawe a vāutage, they wolde yssue out lyke theues and dystroy foragers or other that passed by; wherof ý cōplayntes came to the marshal, ý he sholde prouyde some remedy acording to his offyce, wherfore he came before this towne of Ruelles; ý watche of ý towne had wel blown theyr comyng, wherby they within closed fast theyr baryers and gates, so ý none abode w̄out, and so moūted vpon the walles: the marshal, whē he saw theyr demeanyng, saw well they wolde abyde the saulte; then he sayd to syr Joh̄n Dābrychcourte<sup>b</sup> and to Tyrry of Sonnayne,<sup>c</sup> syrs, take your horses, and ryde aboute the towne, and beholde wel where we may best assayle ý towne with leest hurtyng of our men; so they mounted on theyr horses, and rode aboute the towne; it was of no grete cyrcute, wherfore they returned agayne the soner, and had wel aduysed euery place, and so came to the marshal, and sayd, syr, in all this towne there is but ii. gates, ý one here before you, and the other ryght ouer agaynst it; syr, we thynke these ii. places are most easy for vs to gyue ony assaulte, for rounde aboute ý towne elles are grete dykes and depē, ryght euyll to go downe, and worse to mounte vp agayne, for hedges and bushes of thorne ý growe therin. I byleue it well, sayd the marshal: you, syr Mauburne, shal haue a certayne cōpany w̄ you, and go to the other gate, and I shall abyde here, and let vs giue assaulte both at ones; I wote not what shal come to vs; but gladly I wolde se yonder vyllaynes ý are lenyng on ý batylmentes of the walles of theyr towne; they lōke on vs to se what we wyll do; they are lyke apes etyng of peres, and chyldren wolde take it fro them.

Of ý marshalles wordes his cōpany laughed and loked vp to ý walles to beholde ý vyllaynes: thē syr Mauburne wente forth w̄ his penō, and with hym C. speres and iii. c. archers, and wente to ý gate and there taryed; so thē anone ý assaulte begā in ii. partes right sharpe and fyers, and the mē withiū the towne were oner ý gates, and threwe downe dartes so fyersly ý it troubled ý archers and crosbowes; but they hurte many of thē with theyr shot. bycause there were none at the barriers to defende thē, for they were al closed w̄in the towne, and defended thēselfe w̄ shot and cast of dartes; so the englyshmē brake vp ý baryers and came to ý gate, and bet and rushed so therat, ý they made the gate to trymble and shake: when they w̄in saw theyr gates lykely to be brokē vp, they went downe fro the walles into ý strete, and bare grete tymbre and wood to the gates; thē womē, chyldren, and al maner of people bare stones and fylled empty tonnes

<sup>a</sup> Liniers.<sup>b</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>c</sup> Soumain.

tonnes and pypes, and set thē agaynst theyr gates, and so set other aboue on thē, and fylled thē in lykewyse one vpō another; and some were styll ouer the gates, and dyd cast downe grete barres of yron, so ŷ none durst aproche nere ŷ gate wout he wolde be slayne: thus the vylaynes of Ruel kepte theyr towne agaynst ŷ Englysshmen, so ŷ they lost but lytell ŷ day; and so the Englyssmē retourned backe a lōge myle of ŷ cōütrei to a towne where was no persone abydyng, and there they lodged tyll the nexte mornynge: ŷ nyght the mē of Ruelles counsayled togyder, to know what they sholde do, and how they sholde maynteyne thēselfe agaynst ŷ englysshmē; and they sent out theyr spyes to se where ŷ englysshmen were: suche as were sent forthe retourned agayne, and reported surely howe they were lodged at the bace towne of senace,<sup>a</sup> and ŷ by al symylytude they wolde retourne agayne to ŷ assaulte the nexte mornynge: thē they sayd among thēselfe, foly it was to begyn, and more foly to contynewe; we can haue no blame though we yelde vs to the duke of Lancastre or to his marshall, for we haue defended our towne an hole daye amonge ourselfe, without counsayle or conforte of ony gentyll man or ony man of warre, and at lengthe we can not endure agaynst them. Now, syth they know the waye thyder, and what we can do, it were better for vs to yelde then to be ony more assayled; for if we be takē perforce, we shal lese our bodyes and goodes; so they were al of this opynyon, ŷ yf the Englysshemen retourned ŷ next day, they wolde treat with thē, and yeide vp theyr towne, theyr lyues and goodes saued.

The Englysshmen in the mornynge retourned, anone vpon the sone rysynge, to go to the saulte: when they of ŷ towne sawe ŷ, they sent out iiij. of theyr men to make theyr treaty; and, as the marshal rode vnder his penon, he saw in the felde these iiij. mē, and sayd, yonder I thynke be of the men of Ruelles, comynge to speke with vs; bryng the hider: and when they were come before ŷ marshal, they kneled downe, and sayd, syr, the mē of ŷ towne of ruelles haue sent vs hider to speke w̄ you; pleaseth it you to here vs? Yes, sayd the marshal, say what ye wyl. Syr, sayd they, we are redy to put you in possession of ŷ towne of Ruelles, so that you wyl saue our lyues and goodes, and we wyl accepte my lorde the duke of Lancastre and my lady the duches for our lorde and lady, in lyke maner as they of Coulongue<sup>b</sup> and saynt James haue done. Wel, sayd the marshal, I am cōtent, and wyl assure you of your prouyson, for it behoueth our men to lyue. Syr, sayd they, ŷ is but ryght; there is prouyson ynough in this cōütrei: syr, pleseth you to tary here a lytell, and we shal retourne into the towne, and shewe what you haue sayd; and, syr, we tryst ye wyl vpholde this couenant. Ye, truly, sayd ŷ marshal; therefore retourne agayne breuely: so they retourned to theyr towne, and shewed howe they had spoken with ŷ dukes marshal, and how they had made with hym suche a treaty, ŷ they sholde be in saufegarde of theyr bodyes and goodes, excepte vytayles: then they of the towne sayd, god graunt it so to be; thē they dyd rydde theyr gates of the tonnes with stones and tymbre ŷ they had set there, and opened the gate wyde, and so came to the baryers with the keyes in their hādes, saying, syr, we know wel ye be hider sent fro my lorde the duke of Lancastre and fro my lady his wyfe; syr, we rendre to you the keyes of this towne, and put you in possyssiō therof on suchē cōdycyon as our men haue made reporte to vs. On the same cōdycyon, sayd the marshal, I receyue it: so he entred into the towne, and he and all his men lodged here and there at theyr pleasure, and there taryed al a day; and or he departed, he sayd to syr maulburyn, syr, I delyuer you this towne for you and your cōpany: ye shal haue here a fuyre garyson. Syr, sayd he, ŷ is true; and I take it w̄ a good wyl, for the garyson pleaseth me well. Then syr Maulburyn of Luners<sup>c</sup> abode in the garyson of Ruelles in Galyce, and had vnder hym a lx. speres and a C. archers; and syr Thomas moreaulx retourned to ŷ duke and to the duches to saynt James.

Howe

<sup>a</sup> Lyrias.—*Johnes.*<sup>b</sup> Corunna.<sup>c</sup> Liniers.

*Howe the duke of Launcesters marshall and his men assayled the towne of Vyleclope,<sup>a</sup> in Galyce, whiche yelded by cōposycyon; and of the ambassadours that the duke seute to the kynge of Portyngale.*

## CAP. LI.

ANONE after  $\dot{y}$  the marshal was returned from the towne of Ruelles, on a daye he rode forthe agayne with a iii. C. speres, and a vi. C. archers, and so rode a lōge dayes journey and came to a towne called Vyleclope<sup>a</sup> whiche was kepte but by suche villaynes as dwelte in it; thē  $\dot{y}$  marshal caused  $\dot{y}$  towne to be auewed, to se if it were pregnable or not; and whē they had wel aduysed it, they sayd it myght be wel won by assaulte; thē they lyghted on fote, and sēt theyr horses backe by theyr varlettes, and deuyded themselfe in iiiii. partes, and made themselfe redy lyke men of warre; syr Thomas Moreaulx had the gudyng of one company; the seconde had syr yon Fythwaren; the thyrde syr Johā Dambrychcourte;<sup>b</sup> and the fourthe had another knyght: and euery partye had fourescore men of armes, and a vii. score archers. Then they approached to the towne, and wente downe into the dykes, for therin was no water, and then mounted vp agayne on the other syde well paussed, and the archers stode on  $\dot{y}$  syde of the dyke, and shot so fyersly that none durst appere at theyr defence; howbeit, for all theyr shot, they within defended themselfe valyauntly, for they were a grete nombre within: they cast out dartes w̄ longe fethers and sharpe heddēs, so rudely  $\dot{y}$  who so euer was fully stryken w̄ thē, without theyr were well armed, they were outler slayne or sore hurt; howbeit, knyghtes and squyres to auancc thēselfe came to  $\dot{y}$  fote of  $\dot{y}$  walles, for al  $\dot{y}$  stones  $\dot{y}$  fel on theyr basenettes, and on theyr bodyes; and the ii. squyers of Haynalte, Tyrre, and Gyllyā of Somayne,<sup>c</sup> dyd dyuers goodly fetes of armes, and made a grete hole thrughe the wall with suche helpe as they hadde, and fought sore hande to hande with them within, and these ii. bretherne wan a vii. dartes that were cast at them thrughe  $\dot{y}$  hole: they pulled them out of theyr enemyes handes: these ii. bretherne were vnder  $\dot{y}$  standarde of  $\dot{y}$  lorde Fythwaren. On  $\dot{y}$  other parte, syr Johā Dambrychcourte<sup>b</sup> shewed valyauntnes lyke a noble knyght, and he had at the foote of the walle his penon pytched in the erthe by hym, and he had a pykeaxe in his hande, and myned therwith to the best of his power to breke the wall; it ought to be meruayled howe these vylaynes were not abashed to se themselfe soo assayled on al partes; howbeit, they coulde not so longe endure, but that they had many handes to defende themselfe withal: but at the last they aduysed them, (when they sawe that the assaulte seased not,) to yelde themselfe. Then  $\dot{y}$  baylyffe of the towne who had caused them so longe to contynue, came and sayd to the marshall, syr, cause your assaulte to sease, for  $\dot{y}$  men of this towne wyll treat with you: well, sayd the marshall, I am contente. Then he caused an heraulde to ryde aboute  $\dot{y}$  towne, who sayd to euery man, syrs, sease your assaulte tyl ye here the marshalles trompet blowe agayne to  $\dot{y}$  assaulte, for he is in treaty with them of  $\dot{y}$  towne; and with those wordes they seased and rested them, and some of them had nede therof, for they were very very with assaylyng. Then they of the towne entred into theyr treaty, and sayd, howe they wolde yelde themselfe, lyues and goodes saued, as they of other townes had done in Galyce. Naye, sayd the marshall, ye shall not scape so good chepe as other haue done, for ye haue put vs in moche payne, and hurte dyuers of our men, and we se clerey that ye can not longe endure agaynst vs; wherfore it must behoue you to bye your pease and our loue, or elles we wyll retourne

agayne

<sup>a</sup> Villeclope.<sup>b</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>c</sup> Soumain.

agayne to the assaulte, and wyne you perforce. Why syr, sayd  $\text{f}$  baylyffe, what raunsome wyl ye aske of vs? In goddes name, sayd the marshall, x. M. frankes. Ye aske to grete a some syr, sayd  $\text{f}$  baylyffe: I shal, yf it please you, cause you to haue ii. M. frankes, for, syr, this towne is but poore, and hath ben sore charged with taxes. Nay, sayd  $\text{f}$  marshal, we wyl not of  $\text{f}$ , we wyl gyue you respyte to take counsaile togyder, for as for iii. or iiiii. M. frankes ye shall nor scape, for al is ours yf we lyst, and also I am blamed of my company to make ony treaty with you; therfore shortely determyne you, outhur to do it or to leue it. Then the baylyffe wente into the towne, and called every man before hym, and sayd, Syrs, what wyl ye do? if we suffre ony mo assautes, the Englysshemen wyl conquire vs perforce, so we shall all dye and lese al our goodes; they demaunded of vs x. M. frankes, and I haue offred them ii. M. I knowe well it is ouer lytell, for they wyl neuer agree therto, therfore we must exalte  $\text{f}$  raunsome a ii. or iii. M. frankes more. Then they of  $\text{f}$  towne, who doubted to lose all  $\text{f}$  they had, and theyr lyues also, sayd, baylyffe, forsake not to marchaundyse with them, for rather then we wyl be ony more assayled, we wyl pay iiiii. M. frankes: than sayd the baylyffe,  $\text{f}$  is well sayd, yet I wyl treat with them. Then he came agayne to the marshall, and as I vnderstande theyr pease was made by paynge of vi. M. frankes. Then the gates were set open, and euery man entred, and were lodged where they lyst, and taried there ii. dayes; and the marshall delyuered the towne to you Fythwaren, with CC. speres, and CCC. archers; and there he lay in garyson more then viii. monethes; but the raunsome of the towne wente to the duke of Lancasters profyte; and the marshall had a M. frankes.

And after that the towne of Vyleclope was yelden vp to the dukes marshall, then he returned to saynt James to the duke, for the duke wolde haue hym aboute hym, and sometyme he rode to the fronters of Castell, and Spayne, to gyue fere to the frensshemen: but as longe as the Englysshemen kepte the felde in Galyce, there were none that came agaynst them, for the kyng of Castell was counsayled not to ryde forth w<sup>o</sup> ony oost, but to kepe warre by garysons, and to abyde for socours out of Fraunce. Then  $\text{f}$  duke of Lancastre was counsayled, and it was sayd to hym, how  $\text{f}$  it were good that he and the kyng of Portyngale myght speke togyder; sayenge also, syr, the wrytyng that rynneth thus bytwene you is good, but that is not ynoughe, for the frensshemen be subtyle, and se ferther in theyr busynes thē ony other people, yf couertly they happen to make a treaty with the kyng of Portyngale; and also, the kyng of Castell hath aboute hym and of his counsaile dyuers lordes in Portyngale, as we be infourmed, and so peradventure by theyr meanes they myght make a pease by mariage or otherwyse, so  $\text{f}$  then by hym ye sholde haue noo comforte; what sholde fall then? ye sholde be then in worse case then euer ye were, for thē the Castellyans wolde set lytell by vs; the Castellyans are the moost subtylest people of the worlde: trowe you  $\text{f}$  the kyng of Portyngale wolde not be contente to be at rest of this busynes, yf the kyng of Castell wolde suffre hym to be kyng of Portyngale all his lyfe, and after hym  $\text{f}$  kyng of castel; syr, it is to be doubted though he haue sente for you, and so or ye coulde tourne backe agayne we myght be ouerthrowen; and also, syr, ye know the state of Englande, whiche hath as now ynoughe to doo to kepe thesselfe agaynst theyr enemyes as wel frensshemen as Skottes: therfore make as good warr as ye cā with suche people as ye haue, for trust not of no comforte nor ayde out of Englande, outhur of men of armes or archers, for surely ye are not lyke to haue ony, ye were two yeres aboute, to gete that ye haue; the kyng your nephewe seeth not all thynges, he is yonge and byleueth yong counsaile, wherby the royalme of Englande lyeth, and is in peryll and grete aduenture: wherfore, syr, approche as soone as ye can to the kyng of Portyngale, and speke with hym, your worde shall do you more profyte then all the letters ye can wryte in iii.

monethes. The duke of Lancastre noted well these wordes, and knew wel  $\hat{y}$  it was true, and that it was truly counsayled; then the duke sayd to them that gaue hym that counsayle, what wyll you that I sholde do? they answered and sayd, syr, sende to the kyng of Portyngale v. or vi. of your knyghtes, and at the leest a baron, and let them shewe the kyng howe ye haue grete desyre to se hym; let them be wyse  $\hat{y}$  ye sende, and let the fynde the meanes that ye maye speke togyder shortly: I am content, sayd  $\hat{y}$  duke. Then there was sente into Portyngale fro the duke,  $\hat{y}$  lorde Poynynges, a grete baron of Englande, and syr Johñ Abruell,<sup>a</sup> syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>b</sup> and syr Johñ Souster,<sup>c</sup> bastarde bretheren to syr Johñ Holande constable of the oost; these departed fro saynt James with a C. speres, and CC. archers.

And on a day, when al these letters were made and sealed, there came to the duke fro the kyng of Portyngale, a knyght and a squyer, with xii. speres, called syr Vase Martyne of Cougne,<sup>d</sup> and the squyer Ferrant Martyne of Merle: they were of the kynges hous, and nere to his persone, they were lodged at theyr ease in the towne of saynt James; then they were brought to the duke and to the duches, and so presented theyr letters, and also they presented to the duke and to the duches and to theyr daughters, fayre whyte mules, well aumblynge, wherof they were glad; howbeit, for all that the journey of the englysshmen to the kyng of Portyngale was not brokē, but they were stopped for a iiii. dayes, and on the v. daye departed, and this knyght and squyer all togyder in company; and the duke sente to the kyng of Portyngale in token of loue ii. lawcons pelegrynes, as good as coulde be deuysed, and vi. englysshe greyhoundes good for all maner of beestes; so the Portyngales and the Englysshmen rode togyder ouer al the lande of Galyce, they were in no fere of  $\hat{y}$  Castellyans, for they were ferre ynoughe of fro them: and on the waye as they rode, syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>b</sup> and Martyn Ferrant, of Merle, fell in talkyng togyder, for before that season the squyer had ben in armes with syr Eustase Dambrychcourte,<sup>b</sup> who was vnclē to the sayd syr Johñ, and was with hym when he dyed at Quarentyne:<sup>e</sup> and as they talked togyder they rode behynde theyr company, they met an heraulde and a varlet comyng fro Connymbres,<sup>f</sup> where the kyng laye, and was rydyng towarde saynt James, to the duke of Lancastre; this heraulte perteyned to  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngale, and was called Connymbres.<sup>f</sup> The heraulte had spoken with the lordes and shewed them suche tydynges as he knewe, and when Ferrant Martyn, of Merle, saw hym comyng, he sayd to syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>b</sup> beholde yonder cometh an heraulte of  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngales, it is longe syth he was in this countrey, I wyl demaunde of hym some tydynges; and when they met togyder,  $\hat{y}$  squyer sayd, a Connymbres,<sup>f</sup> where haue you ben so longe, it is more then a yere syth I saw you, or that ye were in this countrey: syr, sayd he, I haue ben in Englande, and haue sene the kyng and lordes there, and they haue made me ryche with grete gyftes that I haue had of them, and fro thens I retourned by  $\hat{y}$  see into Bretayne, and was at  $\hat{y}$  maryage of the duke of Bretayne, and at the grete feest that he kepte at the cyte of Nautes aboute a ii. monethes past: he hath wedded  $\hat{y}$  lady Jahan of Nauare; and fro thens by the see I went into Irelande, and fro thens to the porte in Portyngale:<sup>g</sup> and as they talked togyder, the squyer behelde a schochyn that  $\hat{y}$  heraulte bare on his brest, wherin were graued and mamyled  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Portyngales armes, and  $\hat{y}$  armes of dyuers othier lordes; then the squyer set his fynger on one of the armes perteynyng to a knyght of Portyngale, and sayd, a, se here  $\hat{y}$  armes of the gentyll knyght syr Johñ Portelet: by my fayth I am glad to se them for they perteyne to a gentyll knyght, who on a tyme dyd me grete profyte: I ought well to remembre it; and ther-

with

<sup>a</sup> In Johnes's translation called *Bancel*, or *Burnel*.  
a bastard brother."

<sup>d</sup> Vasco Martin d'Acunha.

<sup>b</sup> D'Ambreticourt.

<sup>c</sup> Carentan.

<sup>e</sup> "Sounder,

<sup>f</sup> Coimbra.

<sup>g</sup> Oporto.

with he toke iii. floreyns of golde out of his purse, and gaue them to the heraulte, who thanked hym: and syr Johñ Dambrychcourte<sup>a</sup> behelde well the armes, the felde syluer, an endenture gooles, with ii. chanders<sup>b</sup> sables: and so the heraulte departed. Then the squyer sayd, syr Johñ, saw you neuer this knyght that bare f̄ sayd armes, whom I prayse so moche; I can not tell, sayd syr Johñ, but at the leest I praye you shewe me what was f̄ courtesy that ones he dyd to you, I wolde he glad to here it, we haue nothyng elles to talke of; I am contented, sayd the squyer to shewe you, for the knyght is well worthy to be spoken of, then he began his tale thus:

So it fortunede a lytell before the batayle of Juberoth,<sup>c</sup> when the kynge of Portyngale wente fro Connymbres<sup>d</sup> thyderwarde, f̄ kynge sente me into the countrey to warne certayne knyghtes to come to hym to be with hym at that iourney; so I rode forth, and but one page with me; and as I rode I happened to mete a xxv. speres gascoynes, and I was not ware tyl I was amonge them; then they toke me and demaunded whether I wente, and I shewed the I was rydyng to the castell of Ronte; and they demaunded what to do? and I sayd to go seke syr Johñ Ferrant Partelere,<sup>e</sup> to come to f̄ kyng of Portyngale to Juberoth.<sup>c</sup> Why, sayd they, is syr Johñ Ferrant Parteler<sup>e</sup> capytayne of the castel of Ronte, is he not all redy with f̄ kyng of Portyngale? no, surely syrs, sayd I, but shortly he wyll be there, yf he ones knowe the kynges pleasure: well, sayd they, he shall knowe it, for we wyll ryde thyder. So they toke the waye to f̄ castell of Ronte, and when they were within the syght of the castell, the watche of the castell sayd he saw men of armes approchyng towarde the castell; then syr Johñ Ferrant<sup>e</sup> demaunded for what parte they were comyng: f̄ watche sayd they were comyng towarde the porte. A, sayd he, they be then Castellyans, and rydeth at aduenture towarde saynt Irayne,<sup>f</sup> I wyl go and loke on them, they shall tell me tydynges where the kynge is: so he lepte on his horse, and a xx. with hym, and toke his penon before hym, and rode out of the castell a grete galop to come to f̄ Castellyans, who as then were drawn into a busslment, and had made one of theyr company to ryde forthe on a genet; and when syr Johñ Ferrant<sup>e</sup> saw the geneture, he sayd to a squyer of his, galop forth thy genet, and assaye to speke with yonder geneture: then the squyer galopped forth, and folowed hym nere euer lykely to take hym, for he fled but softly before hym to f̄ entente to brynge hym into f̄ busslment, and when he was nere them the busslment brake out at hym, and then he tourned quyckely his backe, and they that chased hym cryed Castell: and syr Johñ Ferrant<sup>e</sup> beyng vnder his penon, seyng his squyer returned in suche hast, sayd, they that chase my squyer be none of our company, they be castellyans; set on them, crye Portyngale, for I wyll fyght with them; then he toke his spere and ranne at them; the fyrst that he met withall wente to the erthe, and the seconde also; of xxv. Castellyans f̄ were there, x. of them lay shortly on the grounde, and the other chased, and some were ouertaken and slayne and hurte, and all this I was glad to se, for I saw my delyueraunce, and in a shorte season I was lefte all alone; then I came to f̄ knyght and saluted hym; and as soone as he saw me he knewe me, and demaunded of me fro whens I came, and what I dyd there? then I shewed hym all myne aduenture, and how the Castellyans chased me and toke me: well, sayd he, and what knowe you of the kynge of Portyngale? by my fayth syr, sayd I, to morowe he shall haue batayle at Juberoth<sup>c</sup> agaynst the kynge of Castel, for he sente me into this countrey to gyue warnyng therof to f̄ knyghtes and squyers that knoweth it not, to the entente that they sholde resorte to hym: to morow? sayd he: ye truly, syr, sayd I, and yf ye byleue not me, demaunde of these Castellyans that ye haue taken. Then he demaunded of them tydynges; they sayd howe surely the nexte day there sholde be batayle

2 A 2

bytwene

<sup>a</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>b</sup> Chaudieres.<sup>c</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>d</sup> Coimbra.<sup>e</sup> Fernando Portelet.<sup>f</sup> Santarem.

bytweue the ii. kynges; of whiche tydynges he was ryght glad, and sayd openly to the Castellians, syrs, for the good tydynges þy ye shewe me, I quyte you of your raun- somes, departe when ye wyl, so ye acquyte this squyer: so thus he caused me to be quyted fro them, and so they departed, and we þy same day retourned to Ronte; and he made hym redy and departed thens at mydnyght, and I in his company; and fro thens to the Cabase of Juberoth,<sup>a</sup> whiche was a vi. myles of þy countrey; and to eschewe encountrynges we rode somewhat out of our waye, and in the mornyng we herde that there sholde be batayle the same daye or we sawe the batayles: and when we approached the batayles were raynged in the feldes, the kyng of Castell on þy one partye, and the kyng of Portyngale on þy other, and at the fyrst we knewe not whiche were Castellians and whiche were Portyngales, tyll at the last syr Johñ Ferrant Partelere<sup>b</sup> sayd, I by- leue surely the gretter oost be the Castellians; then we rode forth fayre and easely tyl we came nere, and then we sawe well it was the Castellians, and I trowe some of the gascoynes brake out agaynst vs; then syr Johñ Ferrant<sup>b</sup> sayd, let vs auance forthe, we se yonder our enemyes comyng on vs; thē we strake our horses with þy spurres, and rode cryenge Portyngale, and they folowed vs; then when our company of portyngales sawe vs, they came forth and rescued vs, and for al that the batayles brake not they aray, and so syr Johñ Ferrant<sup>b</sup> came to þy kyng and acquyted hym that day with þy best. Thus syr I haue shewed you howe he dyd me grete courtesye, for he delyuered me out of pryson, and I had not ben at þy batayle, and he had not ben; therfore syr, dyd he not me a goodly pleasure? yes truely, sayd syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>c</sup> and also by you he knewe of the batayle: þy is true, sayd the squyer; and then they rode forth tyll they had ouertaken theyr company, and came the same day to Connymbres.<sup>d</sup>

And of the comyng of these Englysshe knyghtes þy kyng of Portyngale was ryght ioyfull, and cōmaunded that they sholde be well lodged at theyr ease; and when they were redy, then Martyn of Coygne,<sup>e</sup> and Ferrant Martyn Merle, and the englysshe knyghtes, wente to the kyng, who receyued them iouysly; thē the Englysshemē dyd theyr message, and presented the kyng with the Fawcons and greyhouides, of the whiche the kyng had grete ioy, for he loued houndes and hawkes; then they thanked the kyng on the dukes parte for the goodly mules that he had sente to the duke, and to þy duches; then he sayd that was but a small present, another tyme I wyll sende them gretter gyftes; this was but for aquayntaunce of loue, as lordes ought to do one to another, to nourysshe loue and amyte: then wyne and spyces were brought, and the knyghtes of Englande dranke, and so toke theyr Ieue for that tyme, and retourned to theyr lodgynges to souper; þy nexte day they dynd at the kynges palace, and þy lorde Poynynges, and syr Johñ Bancell,<sup>f</sup> sate at þy kynges table, and syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>c</sup> and syr Johñ Soutlyer,<sup>g</sup> sate at another table with þy barons of that countrey, suche as were there; and there was Laurence Fongase, a squyer of honoure of the kynges, who knewe ryght well all the knyghtes and squyers of Englande, for he had sene them in Englande; he made them þy best chere he coulde, they were well serued at this dyner, and after dyner they were brought into the counsayle chambre. Then þy englysshe knyghtes began to speke to þy kyng, and to ii. erles that were there present, þy erle of Angose,<sup>h</sup> and the erle of Nauare,<sup>i</sup> and sayd, syr, and it lyke your grace besyde all þy recommendacyons that the duke of Lancastre hath sente vnto you, he gaue vs in charge to say to you that he desyreth sore to se you: then the kyng sayd, and I as glad to se hym, and I requyre you that shortely we may se and speke togyder: syr, sayd the erles, it were good that it were so, for tyll ye be togyder, ye shal not loue parfytely, and then

ys

<sup>a</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>b</sup> Martin d'Acunha.<sup>c</sup> Fernando Portelet.<sup>d</sup> Before called Abruell.<sup>e</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>f</sup> Sounder.<sup>g</sup> Coimbra.<sup>h</sup> Count d'Acunha.—*Johacs.*<sup>i</sup> Novaire.



ye may take aduysse togyder howe ye may maynteyne your warres agaynst þe kyng of Castel. Syr, this is true, sayd the knyghtes of Englande: then sayd the kyng, let it be done shortly, for if the duke desyre to se me, in lykewyse I desyre to se hym. So then they fell in other talkynge, for then þe kyng charged his counsaile to agre, and assygue a certayne daye when they sholde mete togyder, and to assure the englysshe knyghtes therof; and so they dyd; and it was agreed that the kyng of Portyngale sholde come to a cyte in his cuntry, called the Porte,<sup>a</sup> and that the duke of Lancastre sholde ryde alonge by þe frontere of Galyce, and so there at the partyng of bothe royalmes to mete and speke togyder; and so on that conclusyon the messagers departed and returned towarde Galyce, and rode as they came tyll they came to saynt James, and there shewed to the duke and the duchesse howe they had sped; of whiche tydynges þe duke was ioyfull, and so he had cause, for his busynes began then to approche.

And when þe season came þe duke of Lancastre sholde departe fro saynt James, he lefte there styll his marshall and al his company, excepte iii. C. speres, and vi. C. archers, and syr Johñ Holande, who had wedded his eldest daughter, with hym, and many other knyghtes and squyers; and the duke rode the frontere of Galyce, and approached nere to Portyngale: and the kyng, who laye at the Porte,<sup>a</sup> knewe well of his comynge, and so departed with vi. hundreth speres and came to the frontere of Portyngale, and lodged at a towne called Mouson, the last towne of Portyngale on that syde, and the duke of Lancastre came to another towne, the fyrst towne of Galyce, ioyning to Portyngale, called Margasse: and bytwene Mouson and Margasse there was a ryuer and fayre medowes, and a grete playne, and a brydge called the mor brydge;<sup>b</sup> and on a thursday in the mornynge the kyng of Portyngale, and þe duke of Lancastre, with all theyr companyes met togyder; there was a goodly and a louyng metynge, and there were lodgynges made in the feldes of the kynges syde, and thyder went the duke of Lancastre to dyner, whiche dyner was well ordred: and there sate at þe kynges table þe bysshop of Connymbres,<sup>c</sup> þe bysshop of Porte,<sup>a</sup> the archebysshop of Burgus,<sup>d</sup> in Portyngale, and the duke of Lancastre; and a lytell byneth sate syr Johñ of Holande, and syr Henry Beaumonde of Englande, and there were plente of mynstrelles, and so were in sperte tyll it was nyght: that daye the kyng of Portyngale was apparelled all in whyte, with a reed crosse of saynt George, for that is the habyte of þe house called Mouson, otherwyse called Denyce<sup>e</sup> in Portyngale, of the whiche ordre the kyng was; and or he was crowned was called mayster therof, but euer after he bare styll that deuysse in the honoure of god and saynt George, and all his men were arayed in whyte and reed: then whē it began to be late they returned to theyr lodgynges tyll the nexte daye. The kyng wente to Mouson, and the duke to Margasse, and bytwene bothe there was no more but þe medowe and the ryuer to passe: then on the fryday whē they had herde masse they toke theyr horses, and so rode agayne to mor brydge,<sup>b</sup> and there they met agayne, there they had goodly lodgynges made; the kyng and the duke had theyr chambres hanged with tapyceryes and curteynes as well as and the kyng had ben at Lysbone, and þe duke at London; and before dyner they counsayled togyder on the state of theyr busynes, and howe they sholde maynteyne theyr war, and when they sholde set forth: then it was determyned that all the wynter þe kyng sholde tary in his owne cuntry, and the duke at saynt James, and to let theyr marshal dele; and in marche the kyng, and the duke, and theyr men, to assemble togyder, and to go and fyght with the kyng of Castel where soeuer he sholde be as thē, for they sayd they sholde be Englysshe and Portyngales togyder a xxx. thousande; and when al this was concluded,

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.<sup>b</sup> Pont de more.<sup>c</sup> Coimbra.<sup>d</sup> Braganza.<sup>e</sup> Avis.—The cross of Avis was green.—Ashmole's History of the Garter, p. 70.

concluded, then the kynges counsaile comoned among themselfe for a maryage for theyr kyng, for it was tyme, and the royalme wolde that he were maryed to his honoure and profyte, and for to haue good alyaunces in tyme to come; and they sayd they knewe not as then where he sholde mary more to his profyte, nor to the welthe of his comons, then in the house of Lancastre, and this they shewed to f̄ duke: and when he sawe the kynges entencion, and howe that he was in the kynges daunger, seyng he was come out of Englande into the fronters of Portyngale to demaunde his herytage of Castell, then he answered smylynge, and sayd to the kyng, who was there presente, syr, I haue in the towne of saynt James two daughters: I wyll gyue you one of them whome it pleaseth you to chose; Syr, sende thyder your counsaile, and I shal sende her to you. Syr, sayd the kyng, I thanke you, ye offre me more then I desyre; as for my cosyne Katheryne I wyll leue her styll with you, but as for Phylp your daughter, her I demaunde and wyl wedde her, and make her quene of Portyngale. And so brake vp theyr counsaile and wente to dyner, and sate as they dyd the daye before: they were serued notably accordynge to the vsage of f̄ countrey, and after dyner the duke returned to Margasse, and the kyng to Mouson.

The saterday after masse they met agayne at the sayd place, and that daye the duke of Lancastre made the dyner for f̄ kyng of Portyngale and his company, and there were chambres and halles hanged with arras and enbrowdery, as rychely as though they had ben at London, and the Portyngales prayed moche the Englysshe maner: and at that dyner there were thre archebysshoppes, and vii. bysshoppes syttyng at the hyghe table; the bysshop of Lysbone, the bysshop of Porte,<sup>a</sup> and the bysshop of Connymbres,<sup>b</sup> the archebysshop of Bargus,<sup>c</sup> and other; and the kyng sate in f̄ myddes of the table, and the duke a lytell byneth the hym, and byneth the duke f̄ erle of Nauare,<sup>d</sup> and the erle of Angosse;<sup>e</sup> and at another table sate fyrst the mayster Denyce,<sup>f</sup> then the grete mayster of saynt James in Portyngale, and the pryour of saynt Johñs, then Don galopes percler,<sup>g</sup> and Johñ Ferrant<sup>h</sup> his sone, the ponnayse of Congne, and Vas Martyn of Congue,<sup>i</sup> f̄ Podych of Senede, Vas Martyn of merle, al barons; the abbot of the cabase of Juberoth,<sup>k</sup> f̄ abbot of saynt mary of Eure,<sup>l</sup> syr Alue Perere<sup>m</sup> marshall of Portyngale, Johñ Radygos desar, and dyuers other knyghtes and squyers of Portyngale: for there sate that daye no Englysshmen, for all knyghtes and squyers of Englande serued, and there were many mynstrelles, and the duke gauē them a C. nobles, and the herauldes as moche: after dyner when all thynges was accomplysshed they toke leue amyably eche of other tyll another season; the kyng returned to Porte,<sup>a</sup> and f̄ duke to Margasse, and toke his way into Galyce, and the erle of Nauare<sup>d</sup> conueyed the duke with a C. speres tyll he was out of all daunger, and then f̄ erle toke his leue and returned into Portyngale, and the duke rode to saynt James in Galyce.

Moche desyred the duches of Lancastre the retourne of f̄ duke her husbande, and to here tydynges what conclusyons were takē: and so the duke was well welcomed home, as it was reason, and the duches demaunded of hym howe he lyked the kyng of Portyngale? By my fayth, sayd f̄ duke he is a gracysous man, and is of body and maners lyke to be a valyaunt man, and I thynke he shall reygne in grete puyssaunce, for he is well byloued of his mē; they say they had no kyng this C. yere that so wel pleased them as he, and he is of age not past a xxxvi.<sup>n</sup> yere: he is a stronge knyght and a hardy accordynge to the nature of Portyngale, and he is well made of body to endure grete payne. Ye, but syr, sayd f̄ lady, what sayth he to ony maryage? I haue agreed to hym,  
sayd

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.<sup>b</sup> Coimbra.<sup>c</sup> Braganza.<sup>d</sup> Novaire.<sup>e</sup> Count d'Acunha.<sup>f</sup> Master of Avis.<sup>g</sup> Portelet.<sup>h</sup> Fernando.<sup>i</sup> Alvarez and Vasco d'Acunha.—*Johnes.*<sup>j</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>k</sup> Estremadura.—*Johnes.*<sup>l</sup> Alvarez or Allen Pereira.<sup>m</sup> xxvi.

said the duke, that he shall haue one of my daughters; I dyd put hym to the choise outhor of Katheryne or Phyllyp; wherof he gauē me grete thāke; howbeit, he rested on Phyllyp. He hath good reason, sayd ſ̄ duches, for my daughter Katheryne is yet to yonge for hym. Thus the duke and the duches passed that daye, and so ſ̄ tyme passed, for wynter approched; howbeit, in ſ̄ countreys of Galyce and Portyngale there is but lytell wynter, for it is alwayes hote, and graynes and fruytes groweth there quyckely; for there be dyuers fruytes rype in marche; benes, peson, and cheryes, and al fresshe erbes groweth in February; and in some place they make wyne by mydsoner, and by ſ̄ tyme haruest is past.

And thoughē ſ̄ the duke and ſ̄ duches taryed in the towne of saynt James and laye styll, yet his men styred abrode, and conquered in the country of Galyce townes and castelles; and howe they were wonne I shal shewe you ſ̄ trouthe and the names of thē, for I was iustely therof infourmed, both by knyghtes and squyers as wel of englande as of Portyngale, suche as had ben present at all theyr conquestes, and specyally by ſ̄ gentyl knyght of Portyngale, of who I haue spoken here before, who ryght amyably at Myddelbourge in zelande, as he came fro his voyage out of Pruce,<sup>a</sup> enfourmed me; I haue here before named the knyght, and yet agayne I name hym; his name was syr Johñ Ferrant Partelere;<sup>b</sup> so it was syr Thomas Moreaulx, marshall of the duke of Lancastres oost, when the duke was returned from the fronters of Portyngale, and was come agayne to the towne of saynt James, he sayd he wolde not sytte styll syth he was in the country of Conquest:<sup>c</sup> but sayd he wolde ryde forthe and set his company aworke, whiche they sore desyred, and so made his assemble, and sayd he wolde entre further into Galyce, to bringe the townes and castelles vnder the dukes obeysaunce; and soo on a day he departed fro saynt James, with a vi. C. speres and xii. C. archers, and toke the way to a good towne in Galyce, called Poccueyed,<sup>d</sup> whiche was rebell agaynst them: they of the towne had knowledge of ſ̄ englysshmennes comyng, for all the comon people fled out of theyr country into the good townes. So they toke cōsayle what they sholde doo, outhor yelde or holde as longe as they coulde endure; so they were not all of one accorde; the comen people wolde haue yelded, but the baylyffe, who was set there by the kyng of Castel, and the ryche men wolde not yelde so sone, for they sayd they sholde nother haue honoure nor profyte in theyr so doynge: so they were in cōsaylyngge togyder whē ſ̄ watche of ſ̄ towne sowned and gauē knowledge of ſ̄ englysshmens approchyng; thē they brake vp theyr counsayle, and euery man went to his defence, and ran to ſ̄ walles, and bare barres, stones, dartes, Jauelyns, and shewed well howe they wolde defende themselfe and not yelde so lyghtly.

When the dukes marshall and his company were come before the towne of Ponceuayde,<sup>d</sup> they lyghted on fote, and delyuered theyr horses to theyr varlettes, and then deuyded theyr companies to gyue assaulte, and the archers araynged thēselfe aboute the towne w̄ theyr bowes redy to shote, and men of armes, well paussed and armed, entrynge into ſ̄ dykes; then the marshalls trompettes sowned to the sawte, and the men of armes then clame vp the dykes, with pykeaxes and mattockes to wyne the walles; and the men of the towne win cast downe stones and other thynges ſ̄ troubled the mynours sore, and had done more and the archers had not ben: but they shot so hooly togyder, that none durst appere on the walles; and they dyd hurte many of them within, and specyally the baylyffe of the towne was strykē with an arowe that persed his basenet and entred into his heed, so ſ̄ he was fayne to be borne out of the place to his lodgyngge; yet ſ̄ euyll people of ſ̄ towne wolde not yelde, for all that the baylyffe was sore hurte, but were ſ̄ rather more angry and more redy to defende them: thus the  
saulte

<sup>a</sup> Prussia.<sup>b</sup> Fernando Portelez.<sup>c</sup> Meaning—an enemy's country.<sup>d</sup> Pontevedra.

saulte endured tyl it was nyght, then they sowned theyr retrayte; there were men hurte on bothe partyes; the englysshmen retourned fro the saulte and wente to theyr lodgynges, and were of entencion  $\hat{y}$  nexte mornynge to retourne to the saulte, and not to leue tyll they had gotten it: the same nyght they of Ponce voyde<sup>a</sup> toke counsaile togyder, and sayd amonge themselfe, we are but folysshe people thus to be hurte and troubled for nothyng; why do we not as Vylopes<sup>b</sup> and they of Coulongne<sup>c</sup> hath done? they are yelded to the duke of Lancastre, and to my lady Cōstaunce, daughter to kyng Don Peter; let vs yelde lyke as other good townes haue done, wherin they were wyse, for therby they sate in rest: well, sayd other, let vs do in lykewyse; but our baylyffe hath counsayled vs the contrary; therefore he hath his payment, for he is lykely to dye: then some of them sayd, yet let vs go to hym, and here what he wyll say, for certainly to morowe the englysshmen wyl retourne; they wyl not let vs be in peas, they wyl outhur haue vs perforce or by loue.

To that counsaile they all agreed, and a xii. of the best of the towne wente to the baylyffes lodgyng, whose name was Dyontable of Lyon, and there they founde hym on his bed, newly dressed of his wounde; and so he made to them that came to hym semblaūt of good chere, whatsoeuer he felte, and demaunded thē of the assaulte, and how they perceyuered therin: then they answered and sayd, how they dyd well, thanked be god; for, excepte your hurte, we haue taken but small damage; but to morowe lyeth our doubte, for we are sure to haue a new assaulte, and we be no mē of defence; we are but symple people, and wote not what it meaneth; therefore we are come to haue your counsaile what is best for vs to do;  $\hat{y}$  Englysshmen sore threteneth vs, that yf we be taken perforce, we shall be put to the sworde, and lese lyues and all  $\hat{y}$  we haue. In the name of god, sayd the baylyffe, ye can haue noo blame thoughe ye yelde; but make a wyse treaty,  $\hat{y}$  they be no rulers in your towne; ye may saye, that ye wyll gladly be vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre and of the duches, in lyke maner as they of Coulongne<sup>c</sup> be, so that no englysshmen come within  $\hat{y}$  towne, but to sende them prouysyon out of the towne for theyr money: thus do, if ye can; I thynke they wyll be glad of the obeysaunce, for they haue many moo townes to wynne in Galyce; wherfore I thynke they wyll the lyghtlyer go hens. Ye say well, syr, sayd they; we shall do thus, syth you counsaile vs to do it: so they were determined on this purpose, and so passed  $\hat{y}$  nyght as well as they myght, and in  $\hat{y}$  mornynge at the sone rysynge they ordeyned certayne mē to go out of the towne, instructed and charged what truce they sholde make with the marshal yf they coulde; there were vii. of them, and they came to the marshal, who was redy to retourne to the saulte, and kneled downe, salutyng hym, and sayd, syr, we be sente hyder to you fro them of the towne of Ponce-voide,<sup>a</sup> who haue commaunded vs to say in theyr names,  $\hat{y}$  gladly they wyll put themselfe vnder  $\hat{y}$  obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre and of my lady the duches, in maner and fourme as they of Coulongne<sup>c</sup> hath done; and as for prouysyon, ye shall haue ynoughe out of the towne, payenge courtysly therfore; and, syr, it is the entencion of them that hath sente vs hyder, that ye sholde not enforce thē ony further, nor you nor none other to entre into the towne with ony army; but yf you and some of your company wyll entre simply, ye shall be welcome. The marshal had an englysshman by hym that vnderstode the speche of Galyce; he shewed the marshal in Englysshe the wordes that they had spoken. The marshal answered and sayd, syrs, shortly retourne agayne to your towne, and cause to come to the baryers suche as sente you hyder to speke there with me; I wyll gyue thē assurañce this day, and to morowe the sone rysynge, without we be agreed: so they departed, and wente to theyr towne, and founde at the baryers the moost parte of them of the towne, and there they made relacyon of theyr message,

sayenge,

<sup>a</sup> Pontevedra.<sup>b</sup> Villeclope.<sup>c</sup> Corunna.

sayenge, howe incontynent the marshall wolde come to ƿ barryers to speke with them; and yf ye be not company yuowe, sende for suche mo as ye wyl haue: so then all the notablest men of ƿ towne drewe togyder; then the marshall, with a xl. speres, came thyder, and alyghted and came to ƿ barryers, and sayd thus:

Ye syrs of Ponce voyde,<sup>a</sup> ye sente to vs vii. of your men, and I byleue surely ye dyd put your trust in them, and they sayd howe ye wolde gladly knowledge my lorde the duke and my lady for your soueraynes, in maner and fourme as they of Coulongne<sup>b</sup> hath done: but ye wyl not haue none other gouernours but yourselfe within the towne. I pray you, what soueraynte sholde they haue ouer you, without they had men set in the towne vnder them? elles when ye wyll, ye wyll be vnder hym, and when ye lyst, forsake hym: surely it is myne entencion, and al my company, to ordeyne you a good capytayne, true and wyse, to gouerne you and to mynystre true iustyce, and to put out al offycers set there by the kynge of Castel; and yf ye wyll not do thus, answeere me, for we are determyned what we wyll do. Then they desyred a lytell to take connsayle togyder, and so they dyd, and then sayd, syr, we haue good trust in you, but we doubt these pyllers and robbers, for we haue ben sore beten w̄ suche people in tyme past, when syr Bertram of Clesquy<sup>c</sup> and the bretons came fyrst into this country: for they lefte vs nothyng, and therefore we fere. Nay, syrs, fere not that, sayd the marshall; there shall noo pyllers and robbers entre into your towne, nor ye shall lese nothyng by vs, for we desyre noo thyng but obeysaunce; and so with those wordes they were accorded: then the marshall and certayne of his men entred into the towne, and the oost abode without in tentes and paulyons; and there was sent out of the towne to the lordes iiiii.<sup>d</sup> somers, laded with good wyne, and as moche brede, polayne<sup>e</sup> grete plenty: the marshal abode all ƿ day in the towne, and set offycers there for ƿ duke of Lancaster; and he made a capytayne there, a Galysyan, who had alwayes ben in Englande with ƿ lady Cōstaunce, with whom they of the towne were well contented, and the nexte day ƿ marshall returned to ƿ oost.

Thē he determined to go to another towne, a vi. myles thens, in Galyce, called Dyghos,<sup>f</sup> and so rode forth thyderwarde; and when they were win ii. myles, they sent a messagere to ƿ towne, to know whether they wolde rebel, or elles yeide thē, as they of Ponce voyde<sup>g</sup> haue done; yf not, they sholde be saulted ƿ nexte daye: they of Dyghos<sup>f</sup> made no care for that message, and sayd, we care for none assaulte; we haue bē assayled or this tyme, and lost nothyng: whē that answeere was sayd to the marshall, he sayd, by saynt George, and they shall be fyersly assayled; are these vyllaynes so proude to gyue suche an answeere? So they passed ƿ nyght, and toke theyr ease; the nexte mornyng at ƿ sone rysyng they dyslodged, and soo came before the towne and lyghted a foote, and set them in ordre to go to the assaulte; and they within made them redy to defende them and theyr towne: this towne was not grete, but it was stronge, and I byleue yf they had had ony good mē of warre in theyr towne, the englysshmen had not so soone haue had thē; for as sone as they within the towne saw how they were assayled, and felte the arrowes of ƿ archers of Englande, and sawe howe dvnners of thē were sore hurte, for they were but enyl harneysed, then they began to be abashed, and sayd, why doo we suffre ourselfe thus to be slayne and hurte for the kynge of Castell? it were as good for vs to haue to our lorde the duke of Lancaster, syth he hath maryed the daughter of kyng Don peter, as ƿ sone of kyng Henry: we know well, yf we be taken perforce, we shall all dye, and we se no comforte fro no parte; it is more then a

VOL. II.

2 B

moneth

<sup>a</sup> Pontevedra.<sup>b</sup> Corunna.<sup>c</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>d</sup> xxiii.<sup>e</sup> Poultry.<sup>f</sup> Vigo?

moneth syth we sent to the kyng of Castel to Burgus in Spayne, and there it was shewed to his counsaile the peryl that we were in, for we knewe well the englysshmen wolde come on vs as they do; and the kyng then spake to the knyghtes of Fraunce, who are of his specyall coisayle, but they gaue hym counsaile to sende noo garyson hyder, nor to noo parte of Galyce; by seymnge, the kyng had as leue all Galyce were lost as saued. He answered to our messagers, syrs, retourne to your towne, and do  $\hat{y}$  best you can for yourselfe; wherby we may well vnderstande that we nede not to suffre ourselfe to be slayne nor taken perforce; and therwith  $\hat{y}$  men of the towne came to the gate, and mounted vp to a wyndowe, and made sygne to speke and to treat; they were herde, and the marshall came thyder and demaunded what they wolde: they answered and sayd, syr marshall, cause your men to cease the assaulte; we wolde yelde vs to you in the name of  $\hat{y}$  duke of Lancastre and of my lady Cōstañce, in lyke maner as other townes in Galyce haue done and shall do; and yf ye wyll haue any prouysyon out of our towne, ye shall haue ryght courtesly to refresshe you, but with an army there shall none entre: this is the treaty that we wyll desyre. The marshall then answered and sayd, I am agreed to vpholde all that ye demaunde; but I wyll ordeyne you a good capytayne to defende you and to counsaile you in all your busynes. Then they answered and sayd, wel, syr, we are content therwith. So the assaulte ceased, and the marshall, syr yon Fythwaren,<sup>a</sup> the lorde talbot, syr Johñ Aburnell,<sup>b</sup>  $\hat{y}$  lorde Poynynges, syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>c</sup> and certayne other knyghtes, entred into the towne to refresshe them, and there taryed al the day; and they  $\hat{y}$  were without had brede and wyne and other vytayles ynoughe out of the towne: thus after  $\hat{y}$  takynge of the towne of Dyghos in Galyce, and that the lordes were well refreshed, then the marshall set there a capytayne, a squyer of Englande, called Thomas Albery, a sage man and a valyaunt, and xii. archers with hym; and then the marshall departed, and entred into the couñtre of Galyce, costynge Spayne and  $\hat{y}$  mountaynes of Castell, to come to a grete towne called Bayon in the Maroll; and when they were a ii. myle thens they lodged, and  $\hat{y}$  nexte day in good araye they came nere to the towne, and then deuyded them in two bataylles, and sent an heraulte of armes to them of the towne to knowe what they wolde do, and whyder they wolde come to obeysaunce without assaylynge or no. The heraulte came to the barryers, and there founde a grete nombre of the vylaynes euyll harneysed, and sayd to them in their language: the heraulte was of Portyngale, and was called Connymbres:<sup>d</sup> syrs, among you in this towne what thyngye thinke you to doo? wyll ye be assayled, or elles yelde you, and be vnder the obeysaunce of my lorde the duke of Lancastre and of my lady? The marshall hath sent me hyder to knowe what ye wyll do. Then the men of  $\hat{y}$  towne drewe to counsaile, and began to murmure, and sayd one to another, what shall we do, yelde ourselfe symply or defende vs? Then an auncyent man, who had sene moo then many other, sayd, syrs, it is nedeful to take shorte counsaile;  $\hat{y}$  englysshmen do vs grete courtesy, syth they suffre vs to take counsaile; ye se well there appereth none ayde fro no parte to comforte vs; and also the knge of Castell knoweth wel what case we stande in, and hath done euer syth the duke of Lancastre aryued fyrst at Coulougne,<sup>e</sup> and he prouydeth nothyngye for vs, nor is not aboute to prouyde: yf we suffre to be assayled, it is of trouth this towne is grete in cyrcute and of small defence, it wyl be harde for vs to attende to enery place; the englysshmen are subtyll in warre, and wyll do moche payne to wyn vs, in tryst of pyllage, for they be couetous, and so be all men of warre, and this towne is reputed to be more rycher then it is indeed; wherfore I wolde counsaile you for  $\hat{y}$  best, to put ourselfe and towne vnder the obeysaunce of the duke and of the duches; let vs not be so rebel

<sup>a</sup> Evan Fitzwaren.<sup>b</sup> Burnell, before called Abruell.<sup>c</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>d</sup> Coimbra.<sup>e</sup> Corunna.

rebel to cause ourselfe to be taken perforce, syth we maye come to peas by a meane: this is the counsaile that I gyue you. Then al the other answered and sayd, we wyl do thus; we byleue you, for ye are a mā in this towne of grete parage, and may do moche; and we desyre you to make the answer to ŷ heraulte. With a good wyll, sayd he; but it were reason ye gaue the heraulte a rewarde; he wyll do vs the more courtesye, and reporte good of vs to the lordes that sente hym hyder.

*Howe they of Bayou yelded them to the duke of Lancastre, and how the marshall of his hoost entred into the towne and toke possessyon therof.*

CAP. LIII.<sup>a</sup>

THEN this auncyent mā came to the heraulte, and sayd, Syr, retourne to your maysters that sente you hyder, and saye to them fro vs, that we wyl amyably put vs vnder the obeysaunce of my lorde the duke of Lancastre and of my lady the duches his wyfe, in lyke maner and fourme as other townes in Galyce haue done and wyll do; and we pray you to be our frende, and we wyll gyue you xx. moryskes of golde. When ŷ heraulte herde hym say so, he sayd, where be ŷ floreyms? there they dyd gyue them to hym, and so he returned to his lordes. Then the marshal demaūded of hym what tydynges; what saye yonder vyllaynes, wyll they be assayed? Nay, truely syr, sayd the heraulte, they haue no wyll therto, but haue sayd to me that ye sholde come thyder, and they wyll amyably receyue you, and put themselfe clerely vnder the obeysaunce of my lorde the duke and of my lady the duches, as other townes haue done. Well, sayd the marshall, so be it; it is better for vs this treaty then the saulte; at the leest our men shall not be hurte. Then the marshall, with all his company, came to ŷ towne, and lyghted on foote, and at the barryers he founde moche people of the towne, but all theyr armure was not worth x. frankes; there they were to see the Englysshmen, and there was the auncyent man to make theyr treatye. As soone as the heraulte sawe hym, he sayd vnto the duke,

Syr, speke vnto yonder auncyent man, who maketh courtesye to you, for he hathe the auctoryte of the towne in his handes. Then the marshall stepte forthe and sayd, syr, what saye you; what wyll ye do; wyll ye yelde you to my lorde of Lancastre and to my lady as to your souerayne lorde and lady. Ye, syr, sayd he, we yelde vs to you in the name of them, and put this towne vnder theyr obeysaunce, as other townes in Galyce haue done; and yf it please you to entre into the towne, ye shall be welcome, paynge for prouysyon yf ye take ony. Wel, sayd the marshall, it suffyseth; we wyll nothing but obeysaunce and loue of the country; but ye shall swere ŷ yf the kyng of Castell come hyder or sende hyder, ŷ ye kepe you agaynst hym and his alyes. Then they answered and sayd, syr, we wyl swere it w good wyll; and yf he come hyder w puyssaunce, or sende, we shal close our towne agaynst hym, and sende you worde therof; and yf ye be stronger than he, we wyll abyde styll vnder you, for ye shall fynde in vs no maner of frawde. That is ynoughe, sayd the marshal; I aske no beiter: or it be a yere to an ende the matter shal be determyned; for the herytage and crowne of Castell, of Spayne, of Cordewayne,<sup>b</sup> of Galyce, and of Syuyll shal abvde with hym that is strongest; for there shall be sene in these countreys or the ende of August many dedes of armes done, and as grete an armye appere in Castell as hathe ben sene there this C. yere past. Well, sayd the auncyent man, let it be as it wyll be, and let the ryght go to

2 B 2

the

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LII.<sup>b</sup> Cordova.

the ryght, we in this countrey of Galyce dare well abyde the aduenteure. Then  $\text{f}$  rebelles<sup>a</sup> were brought forth, and they of the towne sware to gouerne theyr towne well and truely, as subiectes sholde do to theyr souerayne lorde and lady, and to knowledge the duke of Lancastre and his wyfe for theyr lorde and lady, as other townes in Galyce had done. And  $\text{f}$  marshall in theyr names receyued their othes, and sware agayne to kepe and mayuteyne them in peas and good iustyce.

And whē al this matter was done, sworne, and promyse, then they opened theyr gates and baryers, and euery man entred who wolde, and lodged all abroad in the towne, and were there a iiij. dayes to refresshe them and theyr horses, and to abyde for a fayre season, for in iiij. dayes before it neuer seased raynyng; wherfore they were loth to departe, for  $\text{f}$  ryuers were waxed so grete,  $\text{f}$  no man coulde passe without grete daunger; and also in that season they aduysed thēselfe whyder they wolde go to Bezānses,<sup>b</sup> or to Rybadane,<sup>c</sup> another stronge towne, wherin were the moost proudest people and moost traytours of al  $\text{f}$  countrey of Galyce; and on the fyrst day  $\text{f}$  marshal departed fro  $\text{f}$  towne of Bayon in Marol; and when they were in the feldes, they founde  $\text{f}$  ryuers withdrawen, wherof they were ryght ioyful; then they rode forth towards Rybadane,<sup>c</sup> and had with them grete caryage and moche prouysyon, and rode all in peas; there were none  $\text{f}$  stopped them of theyr way, for there were no lordes of Galyce  $\text{f}$  styred, so they rode tyll they came nere to the towne, and then lodged them vnder  $\text{f}$  olyues, in a fayre playne, within halfe a legge of the towne, and there determyned to sende theyr heraulte to speke w̄ them of Rybadane;<sup>c</sup>  $\text{f}$  marshal had well herde howe they were the falsest people and of the merueylest condycyons  $\text{f}$  were in all the royalme, as grete a royalme as it was, for they dyd neuer set by  $\text{f}$  kyng, nor no mā elles, but helde al onely of thēselfe, for theyr towne was strong; so  $\text{f}$  heraulte was sent to them to knowe theyr entencyons: and when he came thyder, the baryers were closed and the gate also; then he began to call and to knocke, but noo man wolde answeere hym, yet he sawe men go vp and downe on the garettes of the gate and walles: but for nothyng that he coulde do, there was no creature wolde speke one worde to hym; so there he stode, callynge and makyng of sygnes more then an houre: then he sayd to hymselfe, when he sawe he coulde haue there nothyng elles, I trowe these men of Rybadane<sup>c</sup> haue spoken with them of Bayon, and are dyspleased that they gaue me xx. floreynes, and dyd so lytell therfore; nowe they wyll make me bye it dere; I fere they wolde haue me tary here tyll it were late, and then take and hange me; and so therwith retourned to the marshall, who demaunded what tydynges; whyder they wolde be assayled or yelde, as other townes had done. Syr, sayd the heraulte, surely I cannot tell; they be so proude, that for ony cryenge and callynge  $\text{f}$  I coulde make, there was none  $\text{f}$  wolde gyue me ony answeere. Then syr Johā Abaurell<sup>d</sup> sayd, sawest thou no persone there? peraduenture they be fled away for fere of vs. Fled away, sayd  $\text{f}$  heraulte; syr, sauynge your grace, they thinke scorne therof; for or ye haue that towne, they wyll put you to more payne then all the other townes in Galyce: syr, knowe for trouthe, therin be men ynowe, for I sawe grete nombre of thē, and called to thē on hyghe, and sayd, syrs, I am an heraulte sent to speke w̄ you, therefore here me; but they helde theyr peas, and loked on me and laughed. A, sayd  $\text{f}$  marshall, the false vyllaynes shall well be chastysed, for I wyll not departe thens tyll I haue brought them to obeysaunce, wout my lorde the duke of Lancastre commaunde me the contrary: let vs ete and drynke, and then go to the assaulte, for I wyll se them a lytell nerer, syth  $\text{f}$  vyllaynes be so proude; and it was done as  $\text{f}$  marshall ordeyned.

And

<sup>a</sup> Relics?—In the French, “fut le saint apporté.”

<sup>d</sup> Burnell.

<sup>b</sup> Betanços.

<sup>c</sup> Ribadavia?



And when they had eten and dronken, they lepte on theyr horses, and sowned theyr trompettes, makyng grete noyes; and within a whyle they came before the towne, and some knyghtes and squyers ran before the barryers, but therē they founde no body, but ouer ȝ gate there were many crosse bowes, and they began to shote, and dyd hurte dyuers horses: then the englysshe archers araynged them before ȝ barryers and on ȝ dykes, and began to shote agaynst the crosse bowes; so there was a sore assaulte, whiche longe endured: true it is, the towne of Rybadane<sup>a</sup> is ryght stronge; it coulde not be wonne on ȝ one syde, for it standeth on a rocke, so ȝ no man can mounte therto; on the other syde, where ȝ saulte cōtynued, was playne groude, but there were grete dykes, drye without ony water, but they were euyll to mounte vpō; knyghtes and squyers auayled downe, and then began to mounte agayne, with targes and pauaises ouer theyr heedes, for defence of stones that were cast downe; and the archers were raynged alonge on the dykes, who shot so hooly togyder that the defendauntes durst not appere abrode; that daye there was a grete assaulte, and dyuers hurte bothe within and without, and at nyght they sowned the retrayte. Then the saulte seased, and the englysshmen drewe to theyr lodgynges, and toke theyr ease, and dressed them that were hurte. And the same daye Thyrry of Sonnayne<sup>b</sup> was stryken with a quarell in the arme, so ȝ in a moneth after he coulde not ayde hymselfe with ȝ arme, but bare it in a towell.

*Howe the duke of Lancastre and the Duches helde them at saynt James in Galyce, and of the conforte that the frensshe knyghtes gaue vnto the kyng of Castell.*

CAP. LIJ.<sup>c</sup>

THE same season ȝ the duke of Lancastres marshal rode abrode in ȝ cōtrei of Galyce, and made ȝ cōtrei to tourne to ȝ obeysaunce of ȝ duke and duches, who lay at the towne of Compostella, otherwyse called saynt James in galyce; oftē tymes they herde tydynges fro ȝ kyng of Portyngale, and ȝ kyng fro them, for they sente and wrote eche to the other wekely; and on the other party, kyng Johñ of Castell lay that season at Valeolyue,<sup>d</sup> and ȝ knyghtes of fraunce with hym, with whom he spake often tymes of his busynes, and demaūded of them counsaile; and somtyme he sayd to thē, Syrs, I haue grete meruayle ȝ there cometh no more ayde to me out of fraūce, for I lese my country, and am lyke to lose, without I fynde some other remedy; the englysshmen kepeth ȝ feldes, and I knowe well that the duke of Lancastre and the kyng of Portyngale haue ben togyder, and myne aduersary the kyng of Portyngale shall haue in maryage one of ȝ dukes daughters, and as sone as they be wedded, ye shal se bothe theyr puyssaunces ioyne togyder and entre into my royalme, and so gyue me to moche to do. Then the frensshe knyghtes answered, to comforte the kyng, and sayd, syr, take no thought therfore; for yf the englysshmen wyn on ȝ one syde, they lese on ȝ other; for we know surely that the frensshe kyng, with mo then a C. M. men of warre, is as nowe in the royalme of Englande, and dystroyeth and conquereth the country; and when they haue done, and brought al Englande in subieccyon, then ȝ frensshe kyng wyl take agayne ȝ se, and, or somer be past, aryue at coulougne<sup>e</sup> in galyce, and wyn agayne more in a moneth then ye haue lost in a hole yere; and the duke of Lancastre shal so be inclosed, ȝ he shal be fayue to fle into portyngale, and so ye shal take vengeaūce of your enemies; for, syr, know surely, ȝ if the busynes of fraūce had not ben so grete as it is for the voyage into englande, ye sholde haue had here or this iii. or iiii. M. speres of frenssh-

<sup>a</sup> Ribadavia.<sup>b</sup> Soumain.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be LIII.<sup>d</sup> Valladolid.<sup>e</sup> Corunna.

frensshmen; for þ̄ frensshe kyng, his vnclcs and cōsāyle, haue grete affeccyon to cōforte and ayde you to bryng your warres to an ende: syr, care not though þ̄ englysshmen nowe kepe þ̄ felde, and wyn a lytel of your countrey: surely, syr, or it be þ̄ feest of saynt Johñ baptyst, they shal al be dryuen away. The kyng toke these wordes for good, and toke cōforte in th̄; and þ̄ frensshe knyghtes sayd nothyng but as they thought was true, for they reputed surely as then þ̄ frensshe kyng to be aryued in Englande; and so it was brewted in all Spayne, Galyce, and Portyngale; and surely the fourth parte of the tydynges þ̄ the englysshmen herde of pylgrymes and merchauntes comyng fro flaunders was not shewed to the duke of Lancastre; and also the kyng of Portyngale, for al that he wrote often tymes to the duke, yet he somewhat dyssymuled, and was not ouer hasty to sende for the lady Phylp to be his wyfe, for his counsaile sayd to hym, syr, surely there is tydynges come out of Fraunce and out of flaunders þ̄ the royalme of Englande is in a grete adniture to be destroyed, and yf þ̄ be so, what sholde it auayle you the comforte of the duke of Lancastre or to wedde his daughter? it sholde nothyng auayle you; wherfore couertly he delayed his busynes, to the entente to se the ende of þ̄ matter; howbeit, by letters and messagers he reteyned styll the duke in loue and faouure. Nowe let vs leue a season to speke of the busynesses of Castell and Portyngale, and let vs treate of the matters of fraunce.

*Of the grete apparell of shyppes and galeys that the frensshmen made on the see to passe into Englāde.*

#### CAP. LIII.<sup>a</sup>

THE apparel of shyppes, galeys, and vesselles that þ̄ frensshe kyng made to passe into Englāde was so grete and sumptuous, þ̄ the eldest man th̄ lyuyng neuer saw nor herde of the lyke: þ̄ knyghtes and squyers reioysed when they departed fro their houses to go w̄ the frensshe kyng into Englande, and sayd, nowe let vs go on these cursed Englysshmen, who haue done so many euylles and persecucyons in fraunce; nowe shall we be reuenged for our faders, bretherne, and kynsmen, whom they haue slayne and dyscomfyted. Surely it was more then xii. wekes a doyinge, the pourueyng of suche prouysyons as the frensshe lordes made; it was so grete that it was merueyle to consyder it; and it was sayd in all flaunders the kyng cometh to morowe: and also men came thyder out of Gascoyne, armynacke, Comynges, Tholowsyn, and fro al the lymyttes of fraunce, and all came and lodged in flaunders and Artoys; and when it came to the myddes of August, and that þ̄ voyage sholde approche, and to the entente to make them of farre countreys to make þ̄ more hast, and to gyue ensample þ̄ the kyng toke his voyage w̄ grete desyre, the kyng toke his leue of þ̄ quene his wyfe, and of quene Blanche, and of þ̄ duches of Orlyauce, and of þ̄ other ladies of fraunce, and herde masse solemly in our Ladyes chyrche in Paris, and his entencion was neuer to retourne agayne to Paris tyll he had ben fyrst in Englande; so the kyng rode to Senlyse; but al þ̄ season the duke of Berrey was styll in his coutrey of Berre; howbeit, prouysyn was made in Flaunders and at sluse for hym as it was done for other; also þ̄ duke of Borgoyne was in his countrey, and so then he toke leue of the duches and of his chyl dren, and determyned to take his leue of his grete aunte the duches of Brabant; so he departed out of Borgoyne, and rode in grete estate, and the admyrall of fraunce in his company and syr Guy of Tremoyle;<sup>b</sup> and so they came to Bruzelles, and there

founde

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LII.

<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.

founde the duches and other ladyes, who receyued hym w̄ grete honour: and ii. dayes he taryed there with them, and then toke his leue, and fro thens he rode to Mons in Heynalte, and there he founde his daughter, f̄ lady of Ostreuant, and duke Aubert, and his sone, syr Wyllyam of Heynalte, erle of Ostreuant, who receyued the duke with grete ioy, and so brought hym to Valencennes; and the duke was lodged in the erles palace, and duke Aubert in the lodgyng of Vycongnēt and the lady of Ostreuant; and fro thens f̄ duke rode to Doway, and so to Arras, and there he founde the duches his wyfe taryenge for hym. Then the frensshe kyng came to Compaygne<sup>a</sup> and so to Noyon, and fro thens to Perone, and to Bapalmes, and so to Arras; and dayly there came downe people fro all partes, so grete nombre that f̄ cōtrey was clene eten vp; nothyng was lefte abroad in the country, but it was taken wout payenge of ony thyng, so f̄ the poore comon people that had gadered togyder theyr cornes had nothyng lefte them but strawe; and yf they spake therof, they were beten or slayne; theyr waters were fysshed, theyr houses beten downe for fyer wood: yf the englysshemen had aryued in the country, they coulde not nor wolde not haue done so grete destruccyon nor hurte then the frensshmen themselfe dyd: and they sayd to the poore men, syrs, we haue as nowe no syluer to pay, but when we retourne we shal haue ynoughe, and then ye shall be clerely payde; but the poore people, when they saw theyr goodes taken and spent away, and durst not speke ther agaynst, they cursed bytwene theyr tethe, sayenge, go into Englande or to the deuyll, and neuer retourne agayne.

*Howe the frensshe kyng and his vnclis aryued at Sluse in Flaunders.*

C A P. LIII.<sup>b</sup>

THE frensshe kyng came to Lysle in flaunders, and his two vnclis with hym, f̄ duke of Borgoyne and the duke of Borbon, for as thē the duke of Berrey was behynde in his owne cōtrey, and ordeyned for his busynes: and with f̄ kyng at Lysle there was the duke of Bare, the duke of Loraïne, the erle of Armyrackle, the erle of Saunoy, the erle Dalphyn of Awuergne, the erle of Geneue, the erle of saynt Poule, the erle of Ewe, f̄ erle of Longueuyle, and other grete lordes of Fraunce, in suche nombre that I can neuer name them all: it was sayd there sholde passe into Englande xx. M. knyghtes and squyers, whiche, to say trouth, is a fayre company; and also xx. M. crosse bowes with the Geneways; and besyde them, other xx. M. of other men of warre: and as then syr Olyuer Clysson was in Bretayne, and ordeyned therfore his busynes and nauye, and sholde bryng with hym f̄ closure of the felde made of tymbre, whiche they ordeyned to be set vp euery nyght when they were ones in Englande; and with syr Olyuer Clysson, constable of Fraunce, sholde come out of Bretayne the best knyghtes and squyers therin, as the vycount of Rohan, f̄ lorde of Rays, the lorde of Beawmanoyre, f̄ lorde de la Vale, the lorde of Rochforte, the lorde of Malestroyt, syr Johñ of Malestroyte, and a v. C. speres, Bretons, chosen men of warre. for it was the constables entencyon that no mā sholde entre into englande without he were a mā of armes chosen; and he gaue charge to the admyral, sayng, take hede ye charge not our slyppes with varlettes and boyes, for they shall do vs more damage then profyte; so that ii. or iii. knyghtes, without they were grete maysters, thoughte they hyred slyppes for theyr money, yet they sholde haue but one horse ouer and one varlet; to say trouthe, they ordeyned al theyr busynesses in good ordre; and it was the opynyon of dyuers, that yf they myght aryue all togyder

<sup>a</sup> Compiegne.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LV.

to gyder in Englande, where as they entended to lande, and that was at Orwell hauen, howe they sholde sore abasshe the countrey; and so they sholde without doubte, for the grete lordes, spyrytuall and temporall, and the people of the good townes were in grete doubte, but the comons and poore companyons cared nothyng therfore, no more dyd pore knyghtes and squyers, for they desyred the warre outhur to wyne or to lose all; and they sayd one to another, god hath sent to vs a good season syth the frensche kyng wyll come into this countrey; he is a valyaunt kyng; we thynke this CCC. yere passed there was not in fraunce a kyng of y courage as he is of; he maketh his men good me of warre: blessyd maye he be, syth he wyll come to vvyssye vs, for nowe we shall dye or elles be ryche, it can be none otherwyse.

*Howe the frensche kyng taryed at Sluse with his grete oost, to the entente to entre into Englande.*

CAP. LV.\*

IF the apparell for this voyage was grete and sumptuous in Flaunders and at Sluse, in lykewyse was it in Englade. I haue shewed you somewhat therof here before, wherfore I passe it ouer breuely; yf the taxes and tallages were grete in fraunce, in lykewyse they were in englande, so that many a man sorowed longe after; but bycause the comons sawe it was nedefull, sayd, it is not agaynst reason though we be taxed nowe, and to gyue of our goodes to knyghtes and squyers, to defende theyr herytages and ours. There was raysed the same tyme in Englande, for the defence of the countrey, more then ii. mylyons of floreyns, and receyuours therof were the archebysshop of yorke, broder to the lorde Neuell, the erle of Oxenforde, syr Nycholas Brambre, syr Myghell Polle,<sup>b</sup> syr Symon Burle, syr Peter Gauloufer, syr Robert Tryuylyen,<sup>c</sup> syr Joliñ Beauchamp, syr Joliñ Salysbury, and other of the kynges pryuy counsaile; as for the kynges vncles, there was nothyng done by them, nor they wolde not medle therwith, nor brynge the royalme into trouble, but they toke good hede to maynteyne the honoure of y royalme, and to kepe y passages and portes, for they hyleued surely to haue y same yere y frensche kyng w<sup>th</sup> his puyssaūce to aryue in Englande: so these sayd lordes and knyghtes receyued the taxes and dyd what they lyst; and the chefe of them, and he that had moost profyte, was y erle of oxenforde, for by hym euery thyng was done, and without hym nothyng done; so that after, whē theyr busynesses were passed, the people made trouble to knowe where y money became, and some of the cytees and good townes of Englande wolde haue accomptes therof, with y ayde of the kynges vncles, as ye shal here after when tyme shall be to speke therof, for it shall not be forgotten out of the hystory.

\* This chapter ought to be LVI.

<sup>b</sup> Michael de la Pole.

<sup>c</sup> Tresilian.

*Howe syr Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> wolde haue had by his counsaile saynt Thomas of Cauntorburyes shryne remoued to the castell of Douer, wherby he acheued grete hate.*

CAP. LV.<sup>b</sup>

SIR Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> was capytayne of the castel of Douer, and he herde often tymes newes out of Calays by the fysshers, for they kepte styll theyr custome of fysshynge, somtyme before Boloyne, and before the porte of Whytsande:<sup>c</sup> and when other frensshe fysshers met with them they wolde tel eche other tydynges, somtyme more then they knewe, for the fysshers of the see what soo cuer warre was bytwene Englande and Fraunce, they dyd no hurte one to another, but were as frendes aydyng eche other, and bought and solde eche with other fysshie, if one sped better then another; for yf they sholde haue made war one w<sup>t</sup> another, there durst none haue gone a fysshynge w<sup>t</sup>out conduyte of men of warre. Thus syr Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> vnderstode by f<sup>y</sup> fysshers, that surely the frensshe kyng wolde passe ouer into Englande, and take landyng at Douer, and at Sandwythe: syr Symon byleued wel those wordes, and thought it was true, and so dyd all Englande: so on a daye he came to Cauntorbury, and wente to the abbaye, and there they demaunded of hym tydynges, and he shewed as moche as he knewe; and by his wordes he shewed that saynt Thomas shryne, whiche is goodly and ryche, was not there in surety, bycause the towne was not stronge, and he sayd that if the frensshemen sholde come thyder, whiche by all lykelyhode they wolde do, for couetyse of wynnyng, the robbers and pyllers wolde robbe that towne and abbey, chyryche and all, and they wyll cary awaye with them the shryne yf they fynde it here: wherfore I wolde counsaile and aduise you to cary it to f<sup>y</sup> castell of Douer; there it shal be in suretye, though al Englande were lost. Then the abbot and all the conuent toke his counsaile, though he ment well, in grete dyspyte and dyspleasure, sayenge, syr Symon, wyll ye depose our chyrche fro our sygnory? yf ye be afrayde make yourselfe sure, for though ye close yourselfe within f<sup>y</sup> castell of Douer for fere, yet the frensshemen shall not be so hardy to come hyder to vs. And so Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> multiplyed so moche in wordes in maynteynyng his request, f<sup>y</sup> the comons of the countrye were sore displeased with hym, and reputed hym not profytable for f<sup>y</sup> countrye; and ryght well they shewed after theyr dyspleasure, as ye shall here in the story. So syr Symon Burle wente to Douer agayne.

The frensshe kyng came to Lysle to shewe that f<sup>y</sup> iourney pleased hym, and to approche the soner to his passage. So the kyng approached, and it was sayd in Flaunders, and in Artoys, they shall take shyping outher on Saterdag, monday, or tuysday, so that in euery day in f<sup>y</sup> weke it was sayd he sholde departe to morowe, or f<sup>y</sup> nexte day after; and his broder the duke of Tourayne, and the bysshop of Beauwoys chauncellour of Fraunce, and dyuers other grete lordes, toke theyr leue of f<sup>y</sup> kyng at Lysle, and they returned to Parys. And it was shewed me howe the kyng had gyuen the gouernyng of the royalm to his broder the duke of Tourayne tyll his retourne agayne, with the ayde of dyuers other lordes of Fraunce, suche as were not ordeyned to go into Englande, as f<sup>y</sup> erle of Bloys, and other; and yet all the season f<sup>y</sup> duke of Berry was behynde, and came but fayre and easely, for he had no grete appetyte to go into Eng-

VOL. II.

2 C

lande,

<sup>a</sup> Burley.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LVII.<sup>d</sup> Wisan.

lande, and his longe taryeng was dyspleasūt to the kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne, and to the other lordes: they wolde gladly he had ben come: styll grete prouysyon was made, whiche was costly and dere; a thyng not worth a franke was solde for iiii. howbeit for all that, money was not spared, for euery man desyred to be well stuffed of euery thyng, in maner of enuy euery mā to be better appoynted then other: and though the grete lordes were well payde theyr wages, other poore companys bought the bergayne, for they were owyng for a monethes wages, and yet coulde gete nothyng; the treasurer of the warres and clarkes of ſ chambre of accomptes sayd, syrs, abyde tyll the nexte weke, and then ye shall be payde, and soo they were answered wekely: and yf ony payment were made to them, it was but for viii. dayes, and were owyng viii. wekes, soo that some when they sawe the maner of dealyng, and howe they were soo euyll payde, they were sore dyspleased, and sayd, surely this voyage shall be but of small effecte, for by all lykelyhode when the money is gadered of ſ taxes, then they wyl breke this iourney and retourne home agayne into theyr owne countreys; suche as dyd cast suche doubtes and provided thereafter were wyse, but the poore knyghtes and companys, suche as were reteyned by ſ grete lordes, spente all that they had: euery thyng was so dere in Flaunders, that harde it was to gete outhre brede or drynke, or yf they wolde sell theyr wages or armure, there was no money to gete: and yf ony were bought it was dere, there was soo moche people aboute Dan<sup>r</sup> Bruges, and Ardenbrughe, and specyally at Sluse; for when the kyng came thyder they wst not where to lodge; and ſ of saynt Poule, the lorde of Coucy, the dolphyn of Auuergne, the lorde Dantoygne, and dyuers other lordes of Fraunce, to lye more at theyr ease, lodgyng at Bruges, and somtyme went to Sluse to the kyng to know when they sholde departe; and ener it was sayd to them within iii. or iiii. dayes, or when the duke of Berrey is come, and ſ we haue wynde to serue vs; so euer the tyme passed, and the day shortened, and began to be foule and colde, and the nyghtes longe, wherwith dyuers of the lordes were not contente to tary so longe, and also theyr prouysyons mynsshed.

*Howe the kyng of Armony<sup>b</sup> passed into Englande in trust to fynde some meane of peas or good appoyntment, bytwene the kyng of Englande, and the kyng of Fraunce.*

#### G A P. LVI.<sup>c</sup>

THUS in abydyng for the duke of Berrey, and for the constable, who were behynde, then kyng Lyon of Armony,<sup>b</sup> who was in Frauce, and had assygned hym by ſ kyng vi. M. frankes by ſ yere to maynteyne his estate, he toke on hym for a good entente to go into Englande, to speke with the kyng there and his counsayle, to se if he myght fynde ony maner of peas to be had bytwene the two royalmes of Englande and Frauce; and so he departed fro his lodgyng of saynt Albeine,<sup>d</sup> besyde saynt Denyce, alouely w<sup>th</sup> his owne company, and with no grete apparel. Soo he rode to Bolyne, and there he toke a shyp, and so sayled forth tyll he came to Douer, and there he founde the erle of Cambrudge, and the erle of Buckyngham, and mo then a C. mē of armes, and a ii. M. archers, who laye there to kepe that passage, for the brute ranne that ſ fresshmen sholde laude there, or at Sandwyche; and the kyng laye at London, and parte

<sup>2</sup> Daname.

<sup>b</sup> Armenia.

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LVIII.

<sup>d</sup> St. Audoin.—*Lyon's* edit. St. Ouen.—*Johans*.

parte of his counsaile with hym, and dayly herde tydynges fro all the portes of Eng-  
 lande. When the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> was aryued at Douer, he had there good chere,  
 bycause he was a straüger, and so he came to the kynges vnclcs there, who swetely re-  
 ceuyed hym, and at tyme couuenient they demaunded of hym fro whens he came, and  
 whether he wolde? the kyng answered and sayd, that in trust of goodness he was come  
 thyder to se the kyng of Englande and his counsaile, to treatre for peas bytwene Eng-  
 lande and Fraunce: for he sayd, that he thought the warre was not mete; for he sayd, by  
 reason of warre bytwene these ii. royalmes, whiche hath endured so louge, the sarazyns,  
 Jewes, and turkes, are waxed proude, for there is none that maketh them ony warre, and by  
 occasyon therof I haue lost my lande and royalme, and am not lyke to recouer it agayne  
 without there were ferme peas in all crystendome: and I wolde gladly shewe the matter  
 that toucheth all crystendome, to the kyng of Englande, and to his counsaile, as I  
 haue done to the frensshe kyng. Then the kynges vnclcs demaunded of hym yf the  
 frensshe kyng had sent hym thyder or noo? he answered and sayd, nay, there is noo  
 man y sent me, but I am come hyder by myne owne mocyon, to se yf the kyng of Eng-  
 lande and his counsaile wolde ony thyng leane to ony treatye of peas. Then he was  
 demaunded where the frensshe kyng was? he answered, I bylenc he be at Sluse, I sawe  
 hym not syth I toke leue of hym at Senlyze. Then he was demaunded howe he coulde  
 make ony treaty of peas, and had no charge so to do? and syr, yf ye be conuayed to  
 the kyng our nephewe, and to his counsaile, and the frensshe kyng in the meane  
 season entre with his puyssaunce into Englande, ye may happen therby to receyue grete  
 blame, and your persone to be in grete ieoperdy with them of the cuntry: then the  
 kyng answered and sayd, I am in suretye of the frensshe kyng, for I haue sente to  
 hym desyryng that tyll I retourne agayne, not to remoue fro Sluse, and I repute hym  
 so noble and soo well aduysed, y he wyll graunt my desyre and that he wyll not entre  
 into the see tyl I be come agayne to hym; wherfore syrs, I praye you in the instaunce  
 of loue and peas, to conuey nie to speke with the kyng, for I desyre gretely to se hym,  
 or elles ye that be his vnclcs, yf ye haue auctoryte to gyue me answer to all my de-  
 maundes. Then the erle of Buckyngham sayd, syr, kyng of Armony,<sup>a</sup> we be or-  
 deynd here to kepe and defende this passage and the fronters of Englande, by the kyng  
 and his counsaile, and we haue no charge to medle ony further with the busynes of y  
 royalme, without we be otherwyse commaunded by the kyng: but syth ye be come for  
 a good entente into this cuntry, ye be ryght welcome; but syr, as for ony ferme an-  
 swere, ye can haue none of vs, for as nowe we be not of the counsaile, but we shall con-  
 uey you to the kyng wout peryll or damage. The kyng thanked them, and sayd, I  
 desyre nothyng elles but to se the kyng, and to speke with hym.

<sup>a</sup> Armenia.

*Howe the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> returned out of Englande, and of the answeere that was made to hym.*

CAP. LVII.<sup>b</sup>

WHEN the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> was refreshed at Douer a day, and had spoken w<sup>th</sup> the kynges vnclis at good leysure, then he departed towarde London with a good conduyte that the lordes appoynted to hym for fere of ony rencountres; so longe he rode that he came to London, and in his rydyng thurgh London he was well regarded, bycause he was a straūger, and he had good chere made hym, and so was brought to the kyng, who laye in the ryall at the quenes warderobe, and his counsaile were in London at theyr lodgynges: the Londonners were sore fortesyenge of theyr cyte when the comyng of the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> was knowen; the kynges counsaile drewe to the kyng, to here what tydynges the kyng brought in that troublous season. When the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> was come into the kynges presence, he made his salutacyon, and then began his processe on the state howe he was come out of Fraunce pryncypally to se the kyng of Englande, whome he had neuer sene before, and sayd howe he was ryght ioyous to be in his presence, trustyng that some goodnes sholde come therby; and there he shewed by his wordes that to withstande the grete pestylence y<sup>e</sup> was lykely to be in Englande, therefore he was come of his owne good wyl to do some good therin if he myght, (not sent fro the frensshe kyng,) wyllyng to set some accorde and peas bytwene y<sup>e</sup> ii. royalmes, Englande and Fraunce: many fayre plesaunt wordes the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> spake to y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Englande, and to his counsaile. Then he was shortly answered thus: syr kyng, ye be welcome into this royalme, for the kyng our souerayne lorde, and all we are glad to se you here; but syr, we saye y<sup>e</sup> the kyng hath not here all his counsaile, but shortely they shall be here, and then ye shall be answered. The kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> was contente therwith, and so returned to his lodgyng: win iiij. dayes after the kyng was counsayled, (and I thynke he had sente to his vnclis to knowe theyr entences, but they were not present at the answeere gnyunge,) to go to the palays of Westmynstre, and his counsaile with hym, suche as were aboute hym, and to sende for the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> to come thyder; and when he was come into the presence of the kyng of Englande and his counsaile, the kyng sate downe, and the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> by hym, and then the prelates and other of his counsaile; there y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> rehersed agayne his requestes y<sup>e</sup> he made, and also shewed wysely howe all crystedome was sore decayed and febllyshed, by occasion of the warres bytwene Englande and Fraūce, and howe that al the knyghtes and squyers of bothe royalmes entended to nothyng elles, but alwayes to be on y<sup>e</sup> one parte, or of y<sup>e</sup> other, wherby the empyre of Constantynoble leseth, and is lyke to lese, for before this warre y<sup>e</sup> knyghtes and squyers were wonte to aduenture themselfe: and also the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> shewed y<sup>e</sup> by occasion of this war he had lost his royalme of Armony,<sup>a</sup> wherfore he desyred for goddes sake that there myght be some treatye of peas had bytwene the ii. royalmes of Englande and Fraunce. To these wordes answered the archebyssshop of Cantorbury, for he had charge so to do, and he sayd, syr, kyng of Armony,<sup>a</sup> it is not the maner, nor neuer was sene bytwene ii. suche enemyes as the kyng of Englande and the Frensshe kyng, y<sup>e</sup> the kyng my souerayne lorde sholde be requyred of peas, and to entre his landes  
with

<sup>a</sup> Armenia.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LIX.



with a puyssaunt army; wherfore syr, we say to you,  $\text{ȝ}$  yf it please you ye maye retourne to the Frensshie kyng, and cause hym and all his puyssaunce to retourne backe into theyr owne countreys; and when enery man is at home, then yf it please you ye maye retourne agayne hyder, and then we shall gladly entende to your treatye. This was all the answer the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> coulde gete there, and so he dyned with the kyng of Englande, and hadde as grete honoure as coulde be deuysed; and the kyng offered hym many grete gyftes of golde and syluer, but he wolde take noone, though he had nede therof, but al onely a ryng to the value of a C. frankes. After dyner he toke his leue and returned vnto his lodgyng, and the nexte daye departed, and was in two dayes at Douer, and there toke his leue of suche lordes as were there, and so toke the see in a passagere, and aryued at Calays; and fro thens wente to Sluse, and there he spake with the frensshie kyng, and with his vnclcs, and shewed them howe he hadde ben in Englande, and what answer he had. The frensshie kyng and his vnclcs toke no regarde to his saycege, but sente hym agayne backe into Fraunce, for theyr full entencyon was to entre into Englande as soone as they myght haue wynde and wether. And the duke of Berre and the constable came to them, the wynde was sore contrary to them, for therwith they coulde neuer entre into Englande, but the wynde was good to goo into Scotlaunde.

*Howe the duke of Berre departed from Parys to come to Sluse; and howe the constable of Fraunce toke the see; and of the wynde that was cōtrary to hym.*

GAP. LVIII.<sup>b</sup>

THUS the duke of Berre herde masse in our Lady chyrche in Parys, and there toke his leue, and sayd how he wolde neuer entre there agayne tyll he hadde ben in Englande; howbeit, for all his wordes he thought the contrary, for he had no desyre therto, for the wynter season was sore come on, and all the waye as he came he had letters fro the kyng, and fro the duke of Borgoyne, in hastynge of hym, certefyng hym howe they taryed for noo thyng elles but for his comynge. Soo the duke of Berre rode alwayes forwarde, but it was but by small iourneys.

And the constable of Fraunce departed fro the cyte of Lentryngyer,<sup>c</sup> standynge on the see syde in Bretayne, with grete nombre of men of armes and prouysyon: he had a lxxii. shyppes, and with hym he hadde the closure of the felde made of tymbre: the constable and his company had good wynde at the begynnyng, but when they approached nere to Englande, the wynde rose fyerse and grete; and at the entre of margate at Tames mouthe, the wynde was so grete that whiether they wolde or not theyr shyppes departed, soo that xx. abode not togyder, and some were dryuen perforce into Tames, and there were taken by the englysshmen; and specyally there was taken<sup>d</sup> iii. or iiiii. shyppes laden with parte of the closure of tymbre ordeyned to close in the felde, and certayne maysters, carpenters, and artificers, with them, and so they were brought to London, wherof the kyng had grete ioye, and so hadde all the Londonncis; and vii. of the constables shyppes were dryuen with the wynde, with all the prouysyon, and taken in zelande; and the constable and other loides with grete payne came to Sluse to the frensshie kyng.

Of the constables comynge and his company the frensshie kyng was ryght ioyfull, and the

<sup>a</sup> Armenia.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LX.

<sup>c</sup> Treguier.

<sup>d</sup> "One

ship which was laden with two or thre parts."

the kyng saide to hym, Syr constable, when shall we departe? certainly we haue grete desyre to se Englande, wherfore I pray you auaunce forth all our busynes in hasty maner, and let vs entre into the see shortly: myne vncler the duke of Berre wyll be here with vs within these two dayes, he is at Lysle: Syr, saide the constable, we can not departe tyll the wynde serue vs, for f̄ wynde is so sore agaynst vs, and soo straynable, that the maryners saye they haue herde none suche of a grete season before. Constable, saide the kyng, I haue ben in my vessell, and it pleaseth me greteley the ayre of the see, I byleue I shall be a good maryner, for the see dyd me no hurte. In the name of god, saide the constable, it hath done hurte to me, for syr, we were in grete peryll comyng fro Brytayne hyder: the kyng demaunded howe soo? Then the constable saide, by fortune of the see, and grete wyndes that rose agaynst vs in the fronters of Englande; and syr, we haue lost of our shyppes and men, wherof I am ryght sorry, yf I myght amende it; but syr, it is without remedy for this tyme. Thus the kyng and the Constable denyed togyder in wordes, and alwayes the tyme passed, and the wynter approached, and the lordes laye there in grete colde and peryll.

The flemynge gladly wolde not haue hadde them retourne agayne thurgh their cuntry, and they saide one to another, why the deuyll dothe not the frensche kyng passe ouer into Englande, why taryeth he so longe in this cuntry? are we not in poertye ynoughe? though the frensshemen make vs no poorer, we thynke they wyll not passe into Englande this yere, for the royalme of Englande is not so easy to be wonne; englysshmē be not of the condycyon of frensshemen; what wyl they do in Englande? when f̄ englysshmē were in Fraunce, and ouer rode their cuntries, thē they hyd themselves in their fortresses, and fled before them as the larke dothe before f̄ hawke; and in the towne of Bruges, where as moost resorte was of the frensshemen, they murmured, and were redy for waggyng of a rysshe to make debate and stryfe, and al began by the frensche lakeys, who had beten and hurte some of the flemynge: so that yf the honest men of the towne had not armed them, and drawn into the market place to appease the ryot, there had not a lorde, knyght, nor squyer, of Fraunce haue scaped vnslayne, for the comon people of the towne bare a grudge in their myndes for the batayle of Rosebeque, where their faders, bretherne, and frendes were slayne by the frensshemen. God sent thyder at that tyme for the frensshemen the lorde of Guystell, who as then was at Bruges: when he vnderstode howe f̄ comons wente to harneys, he fered all sholde be lost without remedy; howbeit, he lepte on his hors, with v. or vi. with hym, and rode into the stretes, and as he met with ony armed goynge to the market place warde, he saide to them, syrs, whether goo you, wyll you lose yourselfe, haue ye not had warre ynoughe, so that ye haue moche a do to gete your lyuynge? retourne into your houses, there is nothyng to do, ye may put yourselfe and your towne in suche ieoperdy that all shall be lost; do you not knowe how the frensch kyng and all his pyssaunce and armye is here in this cuntry? Soo with fayre wordes he appeased them, and caused theym to retourne into their houses, whiche hadde not so lightly haue ben done yf he had not ben there. The frensshemen there were in suche fere that they closed themselves in their lodgynges, there to abyde their aduenture.

*Howe the voyage into Englande was broken by reason of the wyndes and of wynter, and by counsaile of the duke of Berre.*

## CAP. LIX.\*

SO fynally the duke of Berre came to Sluse to the kynge, and the kynge sayd to hym<sup>2</sup> a, layre vnclē, how gretely I haue desyred to se you; why haue you taryed so long? we had ben as nowe in Englande and fought with our enemyes, if ye had ben come: the duke began to smyle and to excuse hymselfe, and shewed not incontynent what laye in his harte; fyrst he thought he wolde se what prouysyon and ordenaunce was made, and to se the nauy that was named so goodly. Soo they were there a vii. dayes, that euery daye it was sayd we shall departe to morowe; howbeit, surely the wynde was soo contrary that in no wyse they coulde sayle into Englande: wynter was well on, it was past saynt Andrewes tyde, it was no good season for so many noble men to take the see: and many of theyr shyppes were redy crossed<sup>b</sup> in a redynes to departe, some were in theyr shyppes to be the foremost sholde passe, as syr Robert, and syr Phylyp Artoys, syr Henry of bare, syr Peter of Nauare, and dyuers other. Then the kynges cōsaille drewe togyder to se howe they sholde perceyuer in theyr iourney, but the duke of Berre brake all, and shewed so many reasons reasonable, that suche as had moost desyre to goo were gretely discouraged; he sayd it was a grete foly to counsaile the frensshe kynge, who in a maner was but a chyldē, to take the see in that season of the yere, and to go fyght with suche people as we knowe not theyr condycyon, nor the way thyder: and as it is sayd it is an euyll cōuntry to make warre in, for thoughē we were al there a lande. yet they wolde not fyght with vs but when they lyst, and we dare not then leue our prouysyon behynde vs, for yf we do it wyl be lost; and they that wyl make suche a voyage so ferre of, hath nede to begyn in the harte of f̄ yere, and not in wynter; call all the maryners togyder, and loke yf they wyl not saye that my wordes be good? for thoughē we be as nowe a thousande and v. hundred shyppes, yet or we come there we shal not be iii. hundred; then beholde what peryll we sholde put ourselfe in! I saye it not bycause I wolde haue the iourney leste, but I speke it by waye of counsaile; and syth that the moost parte of the royalmē enclenyth to this iourney, therefore fayre broder of Borgoyne, I wolde that you and I sholde go, but I wolde not counsaile that the kynge sholde goo, for yf ony mysfortune sholde fall, it shal be layde to vs. Well, sayd f̄ frensshe kynge, who was present at all those wordes, yf none wyl go, I wyl go. Then the lordes began to smyle, and sayd, the kynge hath a couragious wyl; howbeit, they toke counsaile to deferre that voyage tyll Aprell or May nexte after, and theyr prouysyons, as Bysquet, powdred flesshe, and wyne, sholde be kepte saufely tyll then: and there they ordeyned that the lordes and theyr companyes sholde retourne thyder agayne in the moneth of Marche: anone this was knowen, and so brake the voyage for that season, f̄ whiche cost the royalmē of Fraunce a C. M. frankes xxx. tyme tolde.

\* This chapter ought to be numbered LXI.

<sup>b</sup> "Were making cruises."

*Howe kynge Charles of Fraunce and the frensshe lordes retourned enyll contente fro Sluse, and out of Flaunders, where as theyr prouysjons were made, to haue gone into the royalme of Englande; and of the feest that was made at London.*

CAP. LX.<sup>a</sup>

AS ye haue herde before, there was made a grete apparell in Fraunce by the kynge there, and the lordes, with grete cost and charge, with shyppes and galayes, to passe the see into Englande, to make warre there; and howe this voyage was broken by wether, and bycause y<sup>e</sup> wynter was so nere hande. Then it was ordeyned by the counsaile that the kynge and the lordes sholde retourne, euery man to his owne home, and euery thyng to abyde in the same state vnto the moneth of Marche or Aprell, and then euery man to be redy at the kynges commaundement.

Then there myght well haue ben seene lordes and knyghtes soore dyspleased, and specyally suche as were of farre couñtreys, and had sore trauayled theyr bodyes and spente theyr money, in trust to haue had a good season, as the erle of Sauoy, the erle of Armynake, and the erle Daulphyn of Auuergne, and a C. other grete lordes, that departed in grete dyspleasure, bycause they had not ben in Englande; in lykewyse so dyd the frensshe kynge, but as thenne he coulde not amende it.

So thus departed all maner of people, some mery, and some gretely dyspleased and angry; and the offycers abode styll there behynde, for too make shyfte to sell theyr prouysjons for theyr maysters profyte, and to take money for them yf they myght, but they wyst not to whome nor where, for it that coste a hundred frankes, was solde for x. frankes, and for lesse money. The erle Dalphyn of Awuergne sayd vnto me, that by his faythe he hadde there prouysjons, the whiche coste hym ten thousande frankes, and when he retourned homeward agayne he lost all togyther; and soo sayd many kyghtes and squyers, and other people of Fraunce.

And when these tydynges were knowen in the royalme of Englande, some were ryght ioyfull and gladde therof, as suche people that doubted the Frensshe mennes commynge; and some were angry and dyspleased therwith, whiche was suche people as thought to haue some promocyon and profyte by them.

So thenne there was made at the cyte of London a grete feest, and thither came all the lordes, suche as hadde kepte the portes and passages of the royalme of Englande.

And then the kynge helde also a noble feest at Westmynstre on Crystmasse day, and there were thre dukes made.

Fyrste, the erle of Cambrydge was made the duke of Yorke; the erle of Buckyngham his broder, was made duke of Glocestre; and the thyrde was the erle of Oxenforde, and he was made the duke of Irelande. This feest endured with grete reueltees and tryumphes.

So thus the people of the royalme of Englande, (as they thought themselfe,) that they hadde escaped a grete peryll: and thenne dyuers of them sayd amonge themselfe that they wolde neuer sette more by the frensshemen, and they thought that all the assemble of the Frensshemen that was made at Sluse was but to fere the Englysshemen, and to to haue caused the duke of Lancastre and his company to retourne agayne out of Spayne.

*Howe*

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXII.

*Howe a squyer called Jaques le Grys was accused in the parlyament house at Parys before all the lordes there present, by a knyght called John of Carongne, and what Jugement was gyuen vpon them; and howe they Justed at vtterauce in Parys, in a place called saynt Katheryne, behynde the temple; and howe Jaques le Grys was confounded.*

CAP. LXI.<sup>3</sup>

IN this tyme grete brute ther was in Fraunce, and in the lowe marches, of a feate of armes that sholde be done at Parys in vtterauce, for soo the matter was Judged in the parlyament chambre at Parys: the whiche plee hadde endured a yere bytwene these two parties, the one was a squyer called Jaques le Grys, and the other partye was a knyght called Johñ of Carongne, and they were bothe of the lande and housholde of the erle Peter of Alanson, and they were wel byloued of theyr lorde, and specially this squyer Jaques le Grys was byloued, and trysted with his lorde aboue any other persone in his courte or housholde; and bycause that mortall batayle folowed bytwene them, and they beyng bothe of one lordes housholde, euery man hadde grete meruayle therof: soo that out of dyuers countreys grete multytude of people came to Parys at the daye of batayle for to se it. I shall shewe you the hole matter as I was then enfourmed.

Soo it was that on a season this knyght, called Johñ of Carongne, toke an entrepryse vpon hym to goo ouer the see for the auancement of his honoure, wherenvto he hadde ben longe tyme to accomplyshe.

Soo he departed from his lorde the erle of Alanson, to doo his voyage, and also he toke his leue of his wyfe, who as then was reputed a fayre lady and a yonge, and he lefte her in a castell of his owne on the marches of Perche, otherwyse called Argentuell, and so entred into his voyage, and his wyfe laye styll at her castell in a wyse and sage maner.

Soo here beganne the matter by the deuylls temptacyon, whiche entred into the body of the squyer Jaques le Grys, who was with the erle of Alanson his lorde, for he was as one of his counsayle. And so he determyned in his mynde to doo an euyll dede, whiche he derely bought afterwarde; howbeit, the euyll that he dyd coulde neuer be proued in hym, nor he wolde neuer confesse it. This squyer Jaques le Grys sette his mynde on the wyfe of the foresayd knyght Johñ of Carongne, in the absence of her husbände, and he knewe well that she was in the castell of Argentuell, but with her owne company and housholde seruantes.

And soo on a mornynge he toke a good hors and departed from Alanson, and so rode on the spurres with grete haste tyll he came to the ladyes castell; and when he was thyder come, the ladyes seruantes made hym good chere, bycause theyr mayster and he were companyons and felowes togyder, and serued bothe one lorde and mayster; and as for the lady she thought none euyll in hym, for she knewe nothyng of his entente, nor wherfore he was come thither; howbeit, swetely she receuyed hym, and ledde hym into her chambre, and shewed hym parte of her busynes. Then this squyer, Jaques le Grys, to accomplyshe his folysshe appetyte, desyred the lady that he myghte se the dongeon, for he sayd it was a grete parte of his comynge thyder to se it. The lady lyghtly graunted hym his desyre; and soo she and he wente thyder all alone, and nother chamberer nor varlet entred with them, for the lady had noo mystrust in hym of any dyshonoure: and as sone as they were entred into the dongeon, Jaques le Grys

<sup>3</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXIII.

closed the doore after theym: the lady knewe not therof, for she wente on before, and thought that the wynde had shotte the dore; and so when they were togyder thus alone, Jaques toke the lady in his armes and embraced her, and dyscouered to her his entent; the lady was sore abashed and wolde gladly haue gone to the dore, but she coulde not for he was a bygge man, and so layde her downe on the carpet, and so by force dyd his pleasure with her; and when he had done what he lyst he opened the dore and so departed; and the lady sore dyspleased and abashed of y<sup>e</sup> aducture, taryed styl alone in the donicon: but at the knyghtes departed she sayd wypyng, Jaket, Jaket, ye haue not well done thus to shame me, but the blame shall not rest on me, but on you, yf god suffie my husbände ones to retourne home agayne. Soo Jaket toke his horse and departed, and rode agayne to his mayster the erle of Alanson, and was there at his rysyng aboute ix. of the clocke: and at iiii. of y<sup>e</sup> clocke in the mornynge he was sene there before. I shall shewe you why I speke these wordes, bycause of the grete plee that folowed after, for y<sup>e</sup> comyssaryes of the parlyament of Parys had the matter in examynacyon. Thus the lady of Carongne abode styl in her castel after this sorowfull deed was done to her, and dyscouered the matter to no creature, but kepte her sorowe as secrete as she myght, for she sawe wel to speke as then therof, she myght haue more blame then honoure; but she remembred well the day, houre, and tyme, that the dede was doone: and soo after the tyme came that the lorde of Carongne came home from his voyage, the lady his wyfe made hym good chere; the day passed and the nyght came, and the knyght wente to bedde, and the lady wolde not, wherof the knyght had grete meruayle, and often desyred her to come to bedde, and euer she blessyd her, and walked vp and downe the chambre studyenge and musyng; fynally, when all her seruantes were gone to bedde, then she came to her husbände, and fell downe on her knees, and lamentably shewed hym all her aduenture: the knyght coulde not byleue her; howbeit, the lady sayd soo moche that he agreed well that it was so, and sayd, certaynly lady, syth y<sup>e</sup> matter is so as ye shewe me, I pardon you, but the knyght shall dye for his dede, by the aduyse and counsaile of my frendes and youres; and yf your wordes be founde vntreue, ye shall neuer come in my company. The lady euer more and more certefyed hym that it was true. So that night passed. The nexte daye the knyght wrote many letters, and sente them to all his wyffes frendes, and also to his owne, soo that in a shorte tyme they were all come and assembled togyder at the castell of Argentuell; and when they were all in a chambre, then he began to shewe them the cause why he hadde sent for them, and there made his wyfe to shewe them all the matter fro poynte to poynte, wherof they all hadde grete meruayle: so there he demanded of the counsaile; and he was counsailed that he sholde drawe to his lorde the erle of Alanson, and shewe hym all the matter; and soo he dyd. And the erle, who gretely loued this foresayd Jaques le Grys, wolde not byleue hym, and soo gaue daye to the partyes to be before hym at a day lymyted; and also he commaunded that the lady that hadde appeched Jaques le Grys, sholde be there presente, for to shewe the more playnly the trouthe of the matter; and soo she was with a grete nombre of her lynnage; soo the pletynge was grete and longe in the erles presence. And Jaques le Grys was accused of his dede by the knyght the lorde of Carongne, by relacyon of his wyfe, who shewed there the case as it was fallen. Jaques le Grys excused hymselfe, sayenge, howe he was not gylty therin; and the lady layde it sore to his charge, and he euer denyed it, and hadde meruayle by his wordes why the lady dyd hate hym; he proued by them of the erle of Alansons house, that the same daye at foure of the clocke in the mornynge he was sene there in his maysters castell; and his mayster sayd and affyrmed that at ix. of the clocke he was with hym at his vp-rysyng, wherfore the erle sayd it was not possyble for hym to go and come, and to do that dede in foure houres and an halfe, to ryde xxiii. myles;<sup>a</sup> wherfore

<sup>a</sup> Leagues.

wherfore the erle sayd to the lady howe she dyd but dreame it; wherfore he wolde maynteyne his squyer, and commaunded the lady to speke noo more of the matter: but the knyght, who was of grete courage, and well trusted and byleued his wyfe, wolde not agree to that oppynyon, but soo wente to Parys, and shewed the matter there at the parlyament, and there appeled Jaques le Grys, who appered and answered to his appele, and there layde in pleges to accomplysse the ordenaunce of the parlyament.

The plee bytwene them endured more then a yere and an halfe. and they coude not be agreed, for the foresayd knyght helde hymselfe sore of the informacyon of his wyfe: and bycause the matter was so sore publysshed abrode, he sayd he wolde maynteyne his quarell to the dethe; wherwith the erle of Alanson was sore dyspleased with the poore knyght, and often tymes wolde haue had hym slayne, but that the matter was in the parlyament: so longe theyr plee endured, y<sup>e</sup> the parlyament determyned, bycause the lady coude make no proffe agaynst Jaques le Grys but by her owne wordes, that there sholde be batayle at vterance bytwene them; and soo, on a day prefixed, the knyght and his wyfe, and the squyer beyng present, Judgement was gyuen, that the nexte mondaye after, mortall batayle sholde be done bytwene the knyght and the squyer, whiche was in the yere of our lorde god M.CCC.lxxx. and vii; at whiche tyme the frenssh kyng and his lordes were at Sluse, to the entente to passe ouer the see into Englande: and when the kyng herde of that matter howe a daye of batayle was taken to be at Parys. the kyng sayd he wolde se that batayle bytwene the knyght and the squyer: the duke of Berre, the duke of Borgoyne, the duke of Borbone, and the constable of Fraunce, who had also grete desyre to se that batayle, sayd to the kyng. syr, it is good reason that ye be there, and that it be done in your presence. Then the kyng sent to Parys. comaundyng that the iourney and batayle bytwene the squyer and y<sup>e</sup> knyght sholde be relonged tyl his comyng to Parys; and so his comaundement was obeyed.

So the kyng then returned fro Sluse, and holde the feest of Crystmas at Arras, and the duke of Borgoyne at Lysle; and in the meane season all other men of warre passed and returned into Fraunce, euery man to his place as it were ordeyned by the marshalles, but the grete lordes returned to Parys to se the sayd batayle. Thus the kyng and his vnclis and the constable came to Parys. Then the lystes were made in a place called saynt Katheryne, behynde the temple; there was soo moche people, that it was meruayle to beholde; and on the one syde of the lystes there was made grete scaffoldes, that the lordes myght the better se the batayle of the ii. champyons; and so they bothe came to the felde armed at all peaces, and there eche of them was set in theyr chayre: the erle of saynt Poule gouerned Johñ of Carongne, and the erle of Alansons company with Jaques le Grys; and when the knyght entred into the felde, he came to his wyfe, who was there syttinge in a chayre, couered in blacke, and he sayd to her thus: Dame, by your enformacyon and in your quarell I do put my lyfe in aduenture as to fyght with Jaques le Grys; ye knowe if the cause be iust and true. Syr, sayd the lady, it is as I haue sayd; wherfore ye maye fyght surely, the cause is good and true. With those wordes the knyght kyssed the lady, and toke her by the hande, and then blessyd hym, and soo entred into the felde. The lady sate styll in the blacke chayre, in her prayers to god and to the vyrgyne Mary, humbly prayenge them, by theyr specyall grace, to sende her husbände the vycitory accordyng to the ryght he was in: this lady was in grete heynes, for she was not sure of her lyfe: for yf her husbände sholde haue ben dyscomfyted, she was Judged without remedy to be brente, and her husbände hanged. I can not say whether she repented her or not y<sup>e</sup> the matter was so forward, that bothe she and her husbände were in grete peryll; howbeit, fynally she

must as then abyde the aduventure. Then these two champyons were set one agaynst another, and so mounted on theyr horses, and behaued them nobly, for they knewe what perteyned to deades of armes; there were many lordes and knyghtes of Fraunce that were come thyder to se that batayle:  $\hat{y}$  two champyons iusted at theyr fyrst metyng, but none of them dyd hurte other; and after the Justes they lyghted on foote to perfourme theyr batayle, and soo fought valyauntly: and fyrst, Johñ of Carongne was hurte in the thyghe, wherby al his frendes were in grete fere; but after that he fought so valyauntly, that he bette downe his aduersary to the erthe, and threst his swerde in his body, and soo slewe hym in the felde; and then he demaunded yf he had done his deuoyre or not; and they answered, that he hadde valyauntly achened his batayle. Then Jaques le Grys was delyuered to the hangman of Parys, and he drewe hym to the gybet of Mountfawcon, and there hanged hym vp. Then Johñ of Carongne came before the kyng, and kneled downe, and  $\hat{y}$  kyng made hym to stande vp before hym, and the same daye the kyng caused to be delyuered to hym a thousande frankes, and reteyned hym to be of his chambre, with a pencyon of ii. hundred pounce by the yere duryng the terme of his lyfe: then he thanked the kyng and the lordes, and wente to his wyle and kyssed her, and then they wente togyder to the chyrche of our Lady in Parys, and made theyr offerynge, and then retourned to theyr lodgynges: then this syr Johñ of Carongne taryed not longe in Fraunce, but wente with syr Johñ Boucequaut, syr Johñ of Bordes, and syr Loys Grat; all these wente to se and vysyte the holy sepulture, and to se Lamorabaquyn,<sup>a</sup> of whome in those dayes there was moche spekyng; and with them wente Robonet of Bolowne, a squyer of honour with the Frensshe kyng, who in his dayes made many voyages aboute in the worlde.

*How the kyng of Aragon dyed, and howe the archebysshoppe of Burdeaus was sette in pryson in Barcelona.*

C A P. LXI.<sup>b</sup>

THE same season, aboute Candelmas, kyng Peter of Aragon fell syke in his bed; and when he sawe  $\hat{y}$  he sholde dye, he caused his two sonnes to come before hym, Johñ the elder, and Martyne duke of Blasmont in Aragon, and sayd to them, fayre sones, I leue you in good poynte, and all the busynes of the royalme standeth well and clere; kepe peas and loue bytwene you, and kepe fayth and honour eche to other, ye shall doo the better; as for the feates of the chyrche, accordyng to my conscyence, and for the moost sure way, I haue alwayes holden the newtralyte bytwene  $\hat{y}$  ii. popes, and so I wolde ye sholde do, tyl the determynacyon bytwene them apere more clerely. The two sones answered and sayd, syr, gladly we shall obey that ye commaunde and ordeyne, as it is reason: thus in this case dyed kyng Peter of Aragon, who had ben a ryght valyaunt prynce in his dayes, and gretely had augmented the crowne and royalme of Aragon, and had conquered the royalme of Mayiorke,<sup>c</sup> and had anexed it to his owne crowne; and he was buried in the good cyte of Barcelona, and there he lyeth; and when his dethe was knowen in Auygnon with pope Clement and his Cardynalles, they wrote incontynent to  $\hat{y}$  frensshe kyng and to his vncles, to the duke of Barre and to the duches, who was of theyr oppynyon, and they were fader and moder to the yonge quene that sholde be in Aragon, the lady yolent; and also they wrote to her that all these sholde styre and moue the yonge kyng of Aragon to be of theyr oppynyon. The frensshe kyng, the duke of Berre, and the duke of Borgoyne sente into Aragon in legacyon

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXIII.

<sup>c</sup> Majorca.



cyon a cardynall to preche, and to styre the yonge kynge and his broder and the people of that royaume of Aragon to take the oppynyon of Clement: the Cardynall dydde so moche, with the ayde of the lady yolent of Barre, as then quene of Aragon, who gladly enclnyed to that way, bycause she was so instantly requyred therto by her fader and moder, and by the frensshe kynge, and dukes of Berre and Burgoyne her cosyns, soo that she brought the kynge and the royaume to be of the oppynyon of pope Clement: howbeit, the kynge wolde haue ben styl a newter, as his fader was.

In the same season that the kynge of Aragon thus dyed, there was at Barcelona the archebysshoppe of Burdeaus, whome the duke of Lancastre had sente thyder in ambassade. I shall shewe you the cause why.

The prynce of Wales, bycause he was duke and lorde of the cuntry of Acquytayne, and that all his neyghbours doubted hym, as the Frensshe kynge, the kynge of Aragon, the kynge of Spayne, and the kynge of Nauare, yea, and also kynges that were sarazyns, that harde grete spekyng of hym, for the good fortune and noble chyualrye that he was of; and he hadde a certayne alyauce and confyderacyon with kynge Peter of Aragon, whiche leage was sworne and sealed bytwene them, and it was confyrmid by the kynge of Englande, fader to the prynce.

And amonge other thynges it was comprysed, that the kynge of Englande nor the duke and lorde of Acquytayne sholde make ony warre, nor consente to make ony warre, agaynst the royaume of Aragon; for the whiche the kynge of Aragon sware and sealed, for hym and for his ayres, that euery yere he sholde serue the prynce of Acquytayne with the nombre of fyue hundred speres, agaynst whosoouer he hadde to doo withall, or elles to sende vnto hym as moche money as sholde wage fyue hundredth speres.

And soo it was that as then there was x. yerres rynne in arerages, that the kynge of Aragon had payde nothyng, nor done ony seruyce to þe kynge of Englande nor to his deputies; and when the duke of Lancastre wente out of Englande, he hadde with hym letters patentes, sealed with the grete seale of Englande, wherby he was stablysshed to be the kynges Lyeutenaunt in the marches of Burdeaus, Bayon, and Acquytayne; and the kynge gaue hym full puyssaunce and auctoryte royall to demaunde all ryghtes and due accyons, as well of the royaume of Aragon as elles where, and wolde that the duke sholde haue þe profyte without ony excepcyon, and what soo euer he dyd to be ferme and stable: so thus whē the duke of Lancastre had ben a season in the towne of saynt James in Galyce, he remembered hymselfe of the busynes of Aragon, and perceuyed well, by reason of his commyssyon, howe the kynge of Aragon was sore in his det in a grete some of money, longe renne in arerages, whiche he thought if he myght gete it sholde gretely ayde hym in his warres of Castell; and soo he sente to the archebyssshop of Burdeaus and to syr Johñ Harpedan, who was senesshall of all Burdeloys, commaundyng the bothe, or at the best þe Senesshall sholde tary styl at Burdeaus there, and to shewe hym playnly howe he was in grete arerages with the kynge of Englande and with the duke of Acquytayne: the archebyssshoppe and the Senesshall behelde well the duke of Lancastres letters, and soo toke counsaile togyder theron: and there they determynd that it was best þe Senesshall sholde tary styl at Burdeaus, and the bysshop to take on hym the charge of that voyage, and soo he dyd; and he came into Aragon in so euyll a season, that the kynge there laye syke and dyed; and after the kynges dethe, the archebyssshop poursued his cause and folowed the kynges chyl-dren and þe counsaile of the royaume, who came to the kynges enterment to þe cyte of Barcelona; and this bysshop pursued his ambassade so effectuously, that he was set in a courtoyse pryson, so that he coulde not departe when he wolde: when these tydynges came to Burdeaus to þe senesshall there, he sayd, I thought neuer none otherwyse, for þe archebyssshop

archebysshop is hasty and heedly; I thynke nowe it had ben better that I had gone, for I wolde haue spoken moore mekely; there is a maier throughout all the worlde howe to demaunde a mannes ryght: the senesshall sente these tydynges to the duke of Lancastre into Galyce, who was therewith ryght sore dyspleased and euyll contente with the kynge of Aragon and his counsaile that they had put the archebysshop into pryson for doynge of his ambassade: then the duke of Lancastre wrote to the companyons of the garyson of Lourde, that they sholde make warre agaynst them of Barcellona, where as the archebysshope of Burdeaus was in pryson.

Johñ of Byerne, who was capytayne there and senesshall of Bygore, Pier Danchyn, Ernaltou of Resten, Ernaltou of saynt Colombe, and other of the garyson of Lourde, were gretely reioysed when they herde that tydynges, and then began to ryne into the royalm of Aragon, to the portes of Barcelona, so that no merchaunt durst go abrode.

Also in Aragon there was another myschefe, for the yonge kynge Johñ of Aragon wolde haue ben crowned kynge of Aragon, but the good townes wolde not consente therto, without he sware fyrst solemly that he sholde neuer demaunde taye, taxe, nor inposycyon in all þe countrey, and dyuers other thynges that he sholde swere and put it in wrytynge, sealed, yf he wolde be crowned kynge: whiche thyng seamed to hym and to his counsaile to be ryght preiudycyall; wherfore he thretened to make them warre, and specyally to them of the cyte of Barcelona, for the kynge sayd they were to ryche and to powde.

In the same season there was in Languedocke and on the fronters of Auuergue and of Rouergue towarde Pezanas and þe cyte of Duzes, a maner of men of armes called þe Rowtes, and they dayly multiplyed to do yuell, and iiii. men of armes were capytaynes, who demaunded warre agaynst euery man, they cared not agaynst whom; their names were Peter of Mount fawcon, Geffray Chastelyer, Haingue de forge,<sup>a</sup> and the goulent: they had a foure hundred men vnder them, who ryfled and pylled the countrey where as they were conuersaunt; and when they were enfourmed that þe archebysshop of Burdeaux was in pryson in Aragon, and that the duke of Lancastre was not contente with the Aragonoys, and also that the kynge of Aragon was euyll pleased with the good townes of his royalm and countrey; and they were of these tydynges gretely reioysed, for suche people as they were are rather pleased with euyll dedes then with good. They toke counsaile bytwene them, and determyned to approche to Aragon, and to gete some forterers on those fronters, thynkynge then that the duke of Aragon or elles some of þe good townes wolde entreate with thē to theyr profyte: so they rode costeynge the countrey, and set theyr myndes to gete yf they myght the castel of Dulcen,<sup>b</sup> beyng in þe archbysshopyche of Narbone, bytwene the royalm of Aragon and Fraunce, on the departynge of bothe royalmes; they came thyder at suche a poynte and by nyght, that they founde it but simply watched nor kepte; they dyd soo moche þe they wan it, and were lordes therof, wherby al the countrey was afrayde, and specyally they of Parpygnen, for it was but iiii. legges thens; also they of Lourde gate þe same weke a castel in Aragon, a iiii. legges fro Barcelona, called the olde castell of Rollbays, perteynyng to the countesse of Castell Boze,<sup>c</sup> cosyn germayne to the erle of Foys. The lady was gretely abashed when her castell was so taken; she sente to her cosyn, the erle of Foys, desyryng hym for goddes sake to rendre agayne to her the sayd castell, whiche they of his cōtrei of Berne had taken fro her: þe erle sent to her þe she sholde not be afrayde for any thyng, certefyng her þe it was taken but al onely to make war agaynst thē of Barcelona, who helde in pryson for a smal cause þe bysshop of Burdeaus,

<sup>a</sup> Haingue des gorge.

<sup>b</sup> Duren, or Durban.

<sup>c</sup> Castel-bon.

Burdeaus, sayenge, howe she sholde haue it ryght well agayne without ony damage: ⁊ lady was well peased with his answer, and dyssmuled the matter, and went and lay at another castell nere to Roquebertin; and they of the castell of Robbays, and of Dulcen,<sup>a</sup> and of Lourde made sore warre on the fronters of Aragon; and, to say the trouth, the kynge there dyssmuled ⁊ matter, to chastyse therby ⁊ good townes ⁊ were agaynst hym; so that ⁊ good townes were sore dyspleased with the kynge, for they of Barcelona, of Perpygnea, and of other townes, coulde not exercyse theyr merchaundyse, but they were taken and ransomed: then they of Barcelona aduysed to delyuer the archebyssshop of Burdeaus out of pryson, and for his deluyeraunce to speke with the kynge, as it was reason; and soo pryuelly by a meane they treated with the kynges broder, syr Martyne duke of Blasmont, who was gretly in ⁊ grace of all ⁊ people, desyringe hym to be meane to the kynge his broder, ⁊ they myght be in peas w̄ them of Lourde and of Robbays: he promysed them to do his best to kepe them in his faouere, and he dyd so moche with the kynge his broder, that the archebyssshop of burdeaus was deluyered out of pryson and sente into Burdeloys; and anone after the erle of Foys dyd so moche, that the vycountesse recovered agayne her castel, and suche as helde it departed: this scruyce dyd the erle of Foys that yere to the duke of Lancastre.

When the kynge of Aragon sawe that the countesse of castell Boze<sup>b</sup> had soo soone agayne recovered her castel, he sent for her, and she came to hym; then the kynge layde to her charge howe she had suffered ⁊ englysshmen to entre into her castel to make warre to his royalm, saynge how she had done to hym a grete trespase. The lady truely excused her, and sayd, syr, as god knoweth, and by the fayth I owe to you, the day and houre that tydnynges came to me of ⁊ takinge of my castel by thē of Lourde, I neuer had before no treaty w̄ the englysslumē; but, syr, incōtynent I sent to my cosyn, ⁊ erle of Foys, prayng hym for goddes sake to gete me agayne my castel, seyng that they ⁊ had gotten it were of his cōtrey of Byerne, and were yssued out of Lourde; and the erle sente to me, and bad me not doute, sayenge how the taking of it was but to make warre agaynst them of Barcelona. Wel, sayd ⁊ kynge, proue your wordes by your cosyn the erle of Foys, and ye shall enioy peasybly styll your castel. With a good wyl, syr, sayd ⁊ lady: she sent to her cosyn, the erle of Foys, who was at Ortays in Byerne, prayng hym to apease the matter with ⁊ kynge of Aragon. The erle then sent letters to ⁊ kynge by a knyght of his, called syr Cycarte of Saurelyn, desyringe the kynge to suffre his cosyn the vycountes to be in peas and to lyue in rest vnder hym, or elles surely he wolde dysplease hym. The kynge of Aragon toke the excusacyons in gre, and made grete chere to the erles knyght, and sayd howe the countesse had but wel done, syth her cosyn the erle of Foys dyd so largely excuse her. Thus the lady lyued in peas, but the merchautes of Barcelona and of ⁊ fronters there aboute were not in no rest for them of Lourde, but often tymes were taken and pylled, without they were agreed and patesed with them; and so they had dyuers in Castellon and in Aragon: in lykewyse so dyd they of ⁊ garyson of Dulcen,<sup>a</sup> and dyd worse then they dyd before, for they were more egre and ouer ran ⁊ cōtrey of Aragon then they of Lourde dyd, bycause they were poore, they cared not whom they toke, as well officers of the kynges and squyers as merchautes, soo that the kynges counsaile toke adyuce, bycause the good townes murinured and sayd howe the kynge dystroyed them, and he ought to susteyne them.

When the yonge kynge of Aragon vnderstode ⁊ his men murmured and spake of hym otherwyse then they sholde do, bycause of them of the garyson of Dulcen,<sup>a</sup> he was therwith sore dyspleased, bycause he was newly fallen to his faders herytage, who was

so

<sup>a</sup> Duren, or Durhan.<sup>b</sup> Castel-bon.

so well bylouned in his royalme of all his people : then he spake to a cosyn of his, a grete baron in Aragon, syr Raymon of Baghes,<sup>a</sup> and sayd, syr Raymon, I desyre you to ryde to Dulcen,<sup>b</sup> and demaunde of them that be there what thyng they desyre of me or of my royalme. and trete so with them that they may departe thēs, outhy by fayrnes or otherwyse. The knyght departed, and sente to Dulcen<sup>b</sup> an heraulde before hym, shewyng them howe he wolde trete with them. When Mountfawcon and le Goulus<sup>c</sup> and the other capytaynes vnderstode that syr Raymon of Baghes<sup>a</sup> wolde trete with them, then they thought at the leest to gete some money, and sayd to the heraulde, syr, saye to your mayster fro vs, that he maye come to vs surely, for we wyll no hurte to hym. The heraulde retourned to syr Raymon, who vpon his wordes departed fro Paregant,<sup>d</sup> and came to Dulcen,<sup>b</sup> and demaunded of them why they taryed there on ȝ fronters of Aragon. They answered and sayd, we abyde here the army of fraunce ȝ sholde go into Castel to go in copany with them. A, syrs, sayd syr Raymon, yf ye tary therfore ye shall abyde a grete season. The kyng of Aragon wyll not retayne you so longe, nor yet the country suffie you so longe. Well, syr, sayd they, if he wyll not enterteyne vs so longe we can not do withall, yet we must lyue; yf he or the country wyll by this our garyson, we wyll departe, or elles not. Well, sayd syr Raymon, what wyll ye desyre to departe? They answered, lx. M. frankes: we be iiii. capytaynes, that is to echie of vs xv. M. frankes. In the name of god, sayd syr Raymon, that is money ynoughe: I wyll speke with the kyng; and so departed, and sayd it were better for the comon prolyte of ȝ cowntre that the kyng payde that money, then to take a greter damage; and that he sayd to appease them: howbeit, he thought the contrary.

Thus he departed fro them, and gaue them vnderstandyng that they sholde haue as moche as they desyred and more, and rode to the kyng to Perpyghnen, and shewed hym what these pytlers desyred. Well, sayd ȝ kyng, it is behouable that ȝ country be deluyered of them, and that they be payde as thieues and brybours sholde be payde; yf I may gete them, they shall be hanged; other payment gete they none of me; but all the dyffyculte is, how to gete them out of theyr garyson. Syr, sayd syr Raymon, ȝ shall be done ryght well; let them alone. Well, sayd the kyng, doo as ye thynke best; I wyll medle no more therin, but that I wolde they were deluyered out of the country. Then on a day syr Raymon gathered a company togyder of men of armes, a v. hundred speres, secretly, and made a squyer of Gascoyne capytayne, a valyaunt man of armes, called Nandon Seghen, and layde them in a bushment within a lytell myle of Dulcen,<sup>b</sup> and sayd to them, syrs, when they of the garyson yssue out, do so that they may all be taken or slayne, that the country maye be clene ryd of them. Then syr Raymon sente to them of Dulcen,<sup>b</sup> that they sholde lepe on theyr horses and yssue out and rynne before ȝ towne of Perpyghnen, to put the vyllaynes therof in fere, elles they wolde not obey nor gyue nothyng. They of Dulcen<sup>b</sup> were ryght ioyfull of these tydynges, thynkyng that all had ben trouth, and so armed them the same day that the bushment was layde for them, and so departed fro the garyson and rode towarde Perpyghnen, and so came to the baryers and made theyr musters; and in theyr retournyng, thynkyng to haue passed surely in peas, when they were in the myddes of the way, they were sodaynly encountered by Nandon Seghen and his company, to the nombre of v. C. speres, and so dassed in amonge them; then they saw wel howe they were dysceyued and trapped; and then they drewe togyder, and fought as longe as they myght endure, whiche was not longe, for there were many of them were euyll armed, and so shortly they were dyscomfyted. There was slayne Geffray Chastelyer, Hange desorge, Guyot Moresque, Johñ de Guenant, and many other; and there was taken Peter of Mountfawcon, Amlardan of saynt Just, and a xl. other, and brought prysoners

<sup>a</sup> Bachez.<sup>b</sup> Duren.<sup>c</sup> Le Goullent.<sup>d</sup> Perpignan.

prysoners to Perpyghnen; and as they passed thurgh the stretes, they of  $\hat{y}$  towne yssued out of theyr houses, and halowed after them as thoughe they had ben wolues, and so they were set in prysones. The same season the duke of Berre was come to Carcassone, and on  $\hat{y}$  fronters of Aragon; he came fro Auygnyon fro the pope, and there he herde howe they of Dulcein<sup>a</sup> were slayne and taken; then he wrote to the kynge of Aragon, and to his cosyne, yolant of Bare, desyrynge them to sende Peter of Mountfawcon and his company, who incontynent were deluyered and sente to the duke of Berre; that grace  $\hat{y}$  duke dyd to them, or elles they had all dyed.

*Howe a batayle of armes was done at Burdeaus, before the seneshall there and dyuers other.*

CAP. LXII.<sup>b</sup>

THE same season there was at Burdeaus a feate of armes done before the seneshall, syr Joh $\bar{n}$  Harpedon, and other, bytwene the lorde of Rochfoucaulte, a frensslmā, sone to the captall of Buze<sup>c</sup> Suster, and syr wyllyam of Mountferant, an Englysshman, to rymne iii. courses with iii. speres, iii. strokes with a sworde, iii. with a dagger, and iii. with an axe. This dede of armes was done before  $\hat{y}$  lordes and ladyes of  $\hat{y}$  cuntry then beyng at Burdeaus. The erle of Foys sente thyder knyghtes of his house to serue and to counsayle  $\hat{y}$  lorde of Rochfoucaulte, sone to his cosyne germayne; and also he sent to hym good horse and harneys, spere heedes, daggers, swordes, and axes; howbeit, he was ryght well purueyed of them before: on a day these ii. knyghtes armed them wel, accompanied with grete cheualry on eyther partye. The lorde of rochfoucaulte had in his company a CC. knyghtes and squyers, all of his lynnage, and syr wyllyam of Mountferant had as many or mo; with hym was the lorde of Rohen, the lorde of Lespare, the lorde Duras, the lorde of Curton, the lorde of Languran, the lorde de la Barde, the lorde of Mountcroyat in Pyergourt,<sup>d</sup> and all were of his lynnage.

Bycause this feate of armes sholde be done bytwene suche ii. noble and valyaūt knyghtes, many came thyder to se them farre and nere: when these two knyghtes were mounted on theyr horses, w<sup>h</sup> theyr helmes and targes redy apparelled, theyr speres were deluyered them, and ranne togyder fyersly, and encoūtrede eche other on theyr helmes. that  $\hat{y}$  boche brake, and theyr helmes stryken of theyr heedes into the felde, and so passed forth theyr course, bare heeded, excepte theyr coyues.<sup>e</sup> Thē all the lordes and ladyes sayd, and every man to other, howe they hadde nobly encountered at theyr fyrst metynge; then theyr helmes were newe set on and fastened, and so they ranne valyauntly theyr ii. course, and also the iii.; breuely, al theyr feates were nobly accomplisshed, to the grete pleasure of all the lordes and ladyes and other regarders; and every man sayd howe eche of them hadde valyauntly achede theyr feates; and the seneshall of Burdeaus, syr Joh $\bar{n}$  Harpedon, gauē the same daye a supper to them, and to al the lordes and ladyes  $\hat{y}$  were there presente: and the nexte daye every man wente to theyr owne herytages, and the lorde of Rochfoucaulte prepayred hymselfe to go into Castell, for the kynge Joh $\bar{n}$  there had sente for hym, and the season drewe nere: and syr Wyllyam of Mountferant ordeyned to go into Portyngale, for the kynge there had also sent for hym.

In suche a noble hystory as this is, whiche I, syr Joh $\bar{n}$  Froysart, haue pursued hyther-to, and that god hath sent me that grace to lyue so longe to se so many thynges as I

VOL. II.

2 E

haue

<sup>a</sup> Duren.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXV.<sup>c</sup> De Buch.<sup>d</sup> Perigord:<sup>e</sup> Caps under their helmets.

haue done, then it were noo reason that I sholde forgete out ony thyng that I haue knowen to be done: and bycause that by  $\hat{y}$  warres of Brytayne<sup>a</sup> the ii. sones of Charles of bloys, who of longe season called hymselfe duke of Bretayne, by maryage of  $\hat{y}$  lady Jahan of Bretayne, who ought to haue ben ryghtful enherytour of Bretayne, as it hath ben shewed before in this hystory, whose sones were in Englande in hostage for theyr fader; as yet I haue made no mencyon of them where they became, nor how they came out of pryson and danger of the kynge of Englande, wherin theyr fader,  $\hat{y}$  lorde Charles of Bloys, had lefte them: ye knowe wel, and it hath ben wryten here before, howe kynge Edwarde of englande, to make his warre of fraüce the fayrer and stronger, he alyed hymselfe w<sup>th</sup> the erle of Montforde, and alwayes dyd counsayle and ayde hym to his power, and dyd soo moche, that the erle of Monforde came to his entente, and was duke of Bretayne; otherwyse he coulde neuer haue come therto, for in Bretayne  $\hat{y}$  lorde Charles of Bloys of vii. he had euer v. on his party: it hath ben shewed before, howe in the yere of our lorde a M.CCC. and xlviij. there was a grete batayle in Bretayne,<sup>b</sup> before the Ree doryent,<sup>c</sup> where the countesse of Mountfordes party, as syr Jolñ of Harcell<sup>d</sup> and other, dyscomfyted syr Charles of Bloys, and there he was taken prysoner and led into englande, where he had good chere: for the quene of Englande,  $\hat{y}$  good quene Phylp, whos seruauant I was in myne yongth, she was of ryghtfull gouernacyon cosyn germayne to  $\hat{y}$  lorde Charles of Bloys, and she dyd put to her payne for his delyueraüce; howbeit, the counsayle of Englande wolde not that he sholde be delyuered: the duke Henry of Lancastre sayd, and other lordes of englande, that yf he were out of pryson, by hym myght be made many grete recoueraunces for the royalme of Fraunce, for kynge Phylp, as then frensshe kyng, was his vncl; and they affirmed, that as longe as he were kepte in pryson, theyr warre into Fraunce sholde be  $\hat{y}$  easier; howbeit, for all those wordes that was shewed to the kynge, by the good meanes of the noble and good quene, he was set to his fyuaunce to paye CC.M. nobles, whiche was as then a grete some to be payde, for lordes as then lyued in another maner thē they do now: for as nowe men may pay more then theyr predecessours myght haue done, for nowe they taylor theyr people at theyr pleasure, and before they lyued but on theyr rentes and reuenues: for as nowe the duchy of Bretayne win a yere or two is able to pay to helpe theyr lorde ii.<sup>a</sup> M. nobles or more. The lorde Charles of Bloys layde to the kynge of Englande his ii. sones in pledge for  $\hat{y}$  sayd some; and afterwarde the lorde Charles of Bloys had so moche to do in pursuyng his warre for the duchy of Bretayne, and to pay his souldyours, and to kepe his estate, alwayes hopynge to come to a good ende of his warre, so  $\hat{y}$  he was not able to quyte out his sones out of Englande: for  $\hat{y}$  holy man, in pursuyng of his herytage, dyed as a saynt in a batayle in Bretayne before aulroy,<sup>e</sup> by the ayde of the Englysshemen who were agaynst hym: when he was deed yet the warre ended not; but then kynge Charles of Fraunce, who in his lyfe doubted gretly the fortunes of the warres, when he sawe that the erle Mountforde and the Englysshemen seased not, but styll wente forwarde, and wanne townes and fortresses in Bretayne; he fered  $\hat{y}$  yf  $\hat{y}$  erle Mountforde myght come to his entente of the duchy of Bretayne, that he wolde not holde nor do homage to hym, for he had promysed his alleageaunce to the kynge of englande, who ayded, and alwaye hadde done, to maynteyne his warre: then he treted w<sup>th</sup> the erle Mountforde and his counsayle, as it hath ben shewed here before; wherfore I wyll speke no more therof; but  $\hat{y}$  erle of Mountforde abode as duke of Bretayne with that he sholde do homage and holde souerayne of the crowne of fraunce; and by the same trefy  $\hat{y}$  duke sholde ayde and helpe to gete delyuered out of pryson in englande his ii. cosyns, sones to the lorde Charles of Bloys; whiche artycle he neuer dyd accomplysshe, for alwayes he doubted that yf they re-

retourned,

<sup>a</sup> Brittany.<sup>b</sup> La Roche-darrien.<sup>c</sup> Sir Thomas Hartwell.<sup>d</sup> "CC.M."<sup>e</sup> Auroy.

retourned, they wolde put hym to some busynes for þ̄ duchy of Bretayne, and fered lest they of Bretayne wolde receyue them as theyr lordes, for they more enclnyed to thē then to hym; wherfore he wolde not speke for theyr delyuerance. Thus these ii. chyl dren abode so longe in Englande in pryson, somtyme in þ̄ kepynge of the lorde Roger Beawchamp and the lady Sybyll his wyfe, and somtyme with syr Thomas Dambrychcourte:<sup>a</sup> on a tyme the yonger, Guy of Bretayne dyed; then Johñ of Bretayne abode styll in pryson alone; he was often tymes sad of his beyng in pryson, but he coulde not amēde it; and often tymes, when he remembred the losse of his yonge dayes, as he that was of the moost noble generacyon of the worlde, and was lykely to lese, he wolde often tymes wepe, and wysshed hymselfe rather deed then alyue; for a xxxv. yeres, or therabout, he had ben in the daunger of his enemyes in Englande, and coulde se noo maner of meanes of his delyuerance, for his frendes and kynne drewe of fro hym, and the some that he laye for was so grete, that he wvst not how it sholde be payde, without god helped hym; and the duke of Anjou, for all his puysaunce and prosperyte, and that he had wedded his syster germayne, by whom he had ii. fayre sones, Loys and Charles, for all this he dyd nothyng for hym. Now shall I shewe you howe this Johñ of Bretayne was delyuered.

*Howe Johan of Bretayne, sone to syr Charles of Bloys, was delyuered out of pryson, by the meanes of Olyuer of Clysson, the constable of Fraunce.*

CAP. LXXII.<sup>b</sup>

IT hathe ben shewed here before in this hystory how the erle of Buckynghā made a voyage thurgh the royaume of Fraunce, and came into Bretayne; the duke of Bretayne had desyred hym so to doo, bycause parte of his countrey wolde not be vnder his obeyssaunce; there the erle of Buckyngham and his company lay al þ̄ wynter and the begynnyng of somer after, in grete pouerte, before Nantes and Wennes,<sup>c</sup> tyll it was Maye, and then he retourned into englande: and when the erle Thomas of Buckyngham and his company laye before Wennes,<sup>c</sup> in lodgynges without, there were dyuers skyrmysshes bytwene the englysshmen and frensshmen; and thyder came Olyuer Clysson, constable of Fraunce, to se the warre þ̄ was there made, and to speke with þ̄ englysshe knyghtes, for he knewe them well, for in his yongth he was brought vp amonge thē in Englande; and soo he made good company w̄ them in diners maners, as noble men of armes wyl do eche to other, and as frensshmen and englysshmē haue alwayes done; and as then he had good cause so to do, for he entended a purpose which touched hym ryght nere, but he wolde dyscouer his entente to noo man lynyng but al onely to a squyer that was there, who had alwayes before serued þ̄ lorde Charles of bloys; for yf the constable had dyscouered his entente to ony man, he had ben out of all hope to haue sped and brought aboute his purpose, whiche, by the grace of god, he atteyned vnto. The constable coulde in no wyse loue þ̄ duke of Bretayne, nor he hym, longe tyme or they shewed it: and where as he sawe Johñ of Bretayne in pryson in englande, he had therof grete pyte; and whē he sawe the duke of Bretayne in possessyon of the herytage of Bretayne, and when he thought that he was in moost loue with þ̄ duke, then he sayd, syr, why do ye not put to your payne that your cosyng Johñ of Bretayne were out of the kyng of Englandes pryson? Syr, ye are bounde therto by othe and by promyse; for, syr, when all the countrey of Bretayne was in treaty with you, þ̄ prelates, noble men, and good townes, and the cyte of Nantes, and Archebysshop of Reynes,<sup>d</sup>

2 E 2

syr

<sup>a</sup> D'Ambreticourt.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXVI.<sup>c</sup> Vannes.<sup>d</sup> Rennes.

syr Johā Craon, syr Boucequalte, as then marshall of fraunce, treted w̄ you for the peas before Compercorentyne,<sup>a</sup> than and there ye sware ŷ ye sholde do your full puyssaunce to delyuer your cosynes out of pryson; and, syr, ye haue done nothyng in that matter; wherfore be you sure the countrey of Bretayne loueth you the lesse, and oweth you the smaller fauoure. The duke to his demaūde dyssmuled, and sayd, holde your peas, syr Olyuer; where sholde I gete iii. or iiij. M.<sup>b</sup> frankes that is demanded for theyr raunsomes. Syr, sayd the constable, yf the countrey of Bretayne sawe that you were wel wyllinge to the matter, they wolde be contente to pay a taxe or a fowage to delyuer the prysoners, who are lyke to dye in prison, without god helpe them. Syr Olyuer, sayd ŷ duke, as for my countrey of bretayne shall not be taxed for me; my cosynes haue grete prynces of theyr lygnage as ŷ frenssh kyng and the duke of Aniou; they may helpe to delyuer them, for they haue alwayes susteyned the warre agaynst me; and when I sware to ayde to theyr delyueraunce, myne entencyon was none otherwyse but that ŷ frensshe kyng or theyr kynsmen sholde pay theyr raunsomes. The constable coulde gete of ŷ duke none other answeere; thus, as I haue begon to shewe you, the constable sawe clerely howe ŷ erle of Buckyngham and the barons and knyghtes of englande, suche as hadde ben with hym in the voyage thurgh fraunce and so into Bretayne, were nothyng contente with the duke of Bretayne, bycause he wolde not open his townes to them, lyke as he had promysed when he departed out of Englande; but whyles the englysshmen lay before wennes,<sup>c</sup> and in the subbarbes of Hanibont,<sup>d</sup> they endured grete pouerte, for they hadde nothyng to ete, and theyr horses dyed for fawe of foode. The englysshmen were fayne to gather the thystelles in the feldes, and braye them in a mortar, and tempre it with water, and make therof a paast, and so bake it to ete, suche pouerte they endured; and they sayd amonge themselves, the duke doth not acquyte hymselfe nobly agaynst vs, syth we haue put hym in possession of ŷ sygnory of Bretayne; and yf we sholde do well, we sholde take it fro hym agayne, and gete out of pryson Johā of Bretayne his aduersary, and make hym duke; the countrey loueth hym better then he that is now duke: we can not better be reuenged of hym, nor soner to cause hym to lese the duchy of Bretayne. The constable of fraunce knewe ryght well what wordes and sore murmuracions the englysshmen had amonge themselves agaynst the duke of Bretayne, wherwith he was nothyng dyspleased, for every euyll worde that they spake, he wolde it had ben xii; howbeit, he made therof no semblaunt, no more dyd a squyer of Bretayne, to whome he had broken his mynde, to go into englande on his message; this squyer was called Rollant; and so it was, that syr Johā of Harleton,<sup>e</sup> capytayne of Chyrbourge, was with the constable at the castel Josselyn, vnder saufconduyte, and there the constable made hym good chere and to his company, and kepte the englysshmen as good company as he coulde, the rather therby to gete theyr good wylls: then ŷ constables squyer auauaced forth, and spake to syr Johā Harleton<sup>e</sup> before the constable, and sayd, syr Johā, ye sholde do me a grete pleasure to do one thyng for me, whiche shall cost you nothyng. Syr, sayd ŷ knyght, for the loue of the constable, though it be to my cost, I am contente to do that I can for you. What is that I sholde do, syr, sayd the squyer, ŷ I myght be assured to go into Englande to se myne olde mayster, Johā of Bretayne; the gretest desyre that I haue in this worlde is to se hym. By my fayth, sayd syr Johā harlton,<sup>e</sup> it shal not be let for me, but that ye shal go: as soone as I am returned to Chyrbourge, I wyll go into englande, and ye shal go with me; I shal bryng you thyder, for your request is not to be refused. Syr, sayd the squyer, I thanke you, and I repute it for a grete curtoysy. Thus this squyer wente with syr Johā Harlton<sup>e</sup> to Chyrbourge, and when he had made every thyng redy, he departed, and entred into the see, with Johā Rollant in his company, and so came to London, and brought the squyer to ŷ castell where as Johā of Bretayne was, who knewe

<sup>a</sup> Quimper-Corentin.<sup>b</sup> "CCC, or CCCC.M."<sup>c</sup> Charlton.—*Johnes*.<sup>e</sup> Vannes.<sup>d</sup> Hennebon.



knewe hym not at the fyrst metyng; at ȝ last he called hym to his remembraunce, and so spake togyder, and there he shewed Johñ of Bretayne howe that the constable of fraunce dyd and wolde do his payne for his deluyeraunce. Howe can ȝ be? sayd Johñ of Bretayne. Syr, sayd ȝ squyer, I shall shewe you: my lorde the constable hath a doughter to mary; so that yl ye wyll swere and promyse when ye be retourned into Bretayne to take her to your wyfe, he wyll deluyner ye out of englande; he hath founde well the meanes how. Syr, howe say you, wyll ye do thus? Ye, truly, sayd he, ye shall retourne to the constable, and say in my name howe there is nothyng I may doo to be deluyered but I wyll do it; and as for his doughter, gladly I wyll take her to my wyfe. Thus the squyer and Johñ ol' Bretayne departed, and passed out of englande, and retourned into Bretayne, and recorded to the constable all ȝ he had sene and harde; and the cōstable, who desyred the aduancement of his doughter, as to be married so highly as to Johñ of Bretayne, was not neglygent in his busynes, and studyed for a meane in Englande to bryng aboute his purpose: and without he had founde out a meane as he dyd, he sholde neuer haue come to his purpose, whiche was to gete ȝ erle of Oxenforde on his parte, who was most pryvy with ȝ kyng of Englande as then; but this matter was not shortly brought to passe, for as longe as ȝ duke of Lancastre was in englande, and before his iourney into spayne, there was no dyscoueryng to the kyng of the trefye for deluyeraunce of Johñ of Bretayne; for when ȝ erle of Buckingham retourned out of Bretayne, the renome ran thrughe al the royalme how ȝ duke of Bretayne had falsely acquyted hymselfe to the Englysshmen; wherfore was spoken all ȝ euyl that coulde be denyed: and then Johñ of Bretayne was brought into the kynges presence and to his vncles, and then it was sayd to hym: Johñ of Bretayne, yf ye wyll releue and holde the duchy of Bretayne of the kyng of Englande, ye shall be deluyered out of pryson, and set in possessyon of the sygnory of Bretayne, and shall be ryght hyghly maryed in this cuntry, as ye ought to be; for ȝ duke of Lancastre wolde haue gyuen hym to his doughter Phylp in maryage, who was after queene of Portyngale. Johñ of Bretayne answered, ȝ he wolde neuer agree to that trefye, nor neuer wolde be enemye nor contrary to the crowne of Fraunce; he sayd he was contente to take the duke of Lācastres doughter in maryage, soo he myght be deluyered out of pryson and out of englande. Whē they sawe he wolde do none otherwyse, he was set agayne in pryson; and after, the erle of Oxenforde, whom we called duke of Irelande, sawe that the duke of Lancastre was gone out of englande into Castell, and that the trefye of the maryage of his doughter with Johñ of Bretayne was passed, for ȝ duke of Lancastre had his doughter with hym into Castell, then he thought to intrete ȝ kyng of englande to gyue hym in rewarde for suche seruyce as he had done and entened to do, Johñ of Bretayne; for yf he coulde gete hym of the kyng, he was agreed with the constable of Fraunce to haue for his raunsome, at two paymentes, vi. score M. frākes; ȝ fyrst lx. M. to be payde as sone as Johñ of Bretayne were sent and deluyered into ȝ towne of Boloyne, and ȝ other lx. M. to be payde at Parys whersoever he wolde haue it deluyered: ȝ duke of Irelande coueted these floreyne, and dyd so moche with the kyng of englande, ȝ the kyng gaue hym Johñ of Bretayne clerely, wherof many in Englande had grete meruayle; but they that lyst to speke wolde speke; there was none other thyng. The duke of Irelande caused hym to be deluyered into Boloyne, and there the constable had made redy euery thyng for hym, and so he rode to Parys, and there founde the kyng and other lordes of his lygnage, who made hym good chere, and the constable also who brought hym into Bretayne; and there Johan of Bretayne wedded his doughter, as he had promysed: and when ȝ duke of Bretayne knewe that Johñ of Bretayne was retourned into Fraunce, and clene deluyered out of Englande, by the ayde and purchase, to the constable of Fraunce, then he had ȝ cōstable in double hatred, and sayd: what, weneth syr Olyuer of Clesson to put me out of myne herytage? he sheweth wel the tokens therof; he hath deluyered out of pryson Johñ of Bretayne, and hath gyuen

gyuen hym his daughter in mariage, whiche thynges are to me ryght dyspleasunt, and surely that shall I well shewe ones on a daye, howe he hath not wel done, peradventure whē he taketh leest hede therof: he sayd truely, for he shewed it quykely or ſ̄ yere passed, as ye shall here after in the story; but fyrst we wyll speke of the busynes of Castell and Portyngale, and of an armye on the see ſ̄ the englysshmen made to come to Sluse.

Here before ye haue herde how ſ̄ frensshe kynges armye by the see to haue gone into englande was broken vp in the same season, not by ſ̄ frensshe kynges good wyll, for alway he shewed good courage to haue passed into Englande; and when he sawe howe ſ̄ journey brake, he was more dyspleased then ony other, and all the fawte was layd vpon the duke of Berre: howbeit, it was to be thought ſ̄ he saw more depelyer in the matter then ony other, and in his counsayllinge to leue the iourney, was for the honoure and profyte of the royalm of fraunce; for who soo euer enterprysed to doo a thyng, ought to regarde what ende may come therof; and the duke of Berre had ben before so longe in englande, in hostage for ſ̄ kyng his fader, and had ben so cōuersaunt among ſ̄ englysshmen, and had sene so moche of ſ̄ cōuntry, that he knewe by reason what effecte the goynge into englande sholde haue come to; and ſ̄ cause moost excusable not to go was, bycause wynter was so farre ronne: but then it was sayd, ſ̄ the constable of fraunce the nexte somer sholde goo into englande with a vi. M. men of armes and as many crosse bowes, for it was thought by hymselfe, and sayd, howe that nombre was sufficient to fyght with the englysshmen, by reason the constable ought to haue knowen it, for he had ben nouryssed there in his yonge dayes. Whē these lordes were returned into fraunce, thē it was determyned to sende socours into Castell, to ayde the kyng there agaynst the kyng of Portyngale and the duke of Lancastre, for it was thought that shortly there sholde be some dedes of armes, for the englysshmen kepte the felde; and it was considered ſ̄ they<sup>a</sup> coulde sende noo men of warre thyder without grete cost and charge, for the iourney was ferre of, and there was bnt lytell money in the kynges treasury nor in treasurers handes: for the some of money that had ben gadered of the people before in the royalm was spente and wasted, wherfore they studied howe to gete more; and soo a newe tayle and taxe was deuyssed to ryn throughtout all the royalm of Fraunce, to be payde incontynent without delay, noysynge howe it was for the comfortynge of ſ̄ kyng of Spayne, and to dryue the englysshmen out of his royalm. This tayle was publyssed in euery place, and the kynges commysyoners sente into euery good towne and cyte, who sayd to the gouernours of the townes: Syrs, thus moche your towne is taxed at, the whiche ye must pay incontynent. Then the rulers sayd, syrs, we shall gather this some, and then sende it to Parys. Nay, syrs, not so, sayd the commysaryes, we wyl not abyde so longe, we wyll do otherwyse then so: and commaunded in the kynges name a x. or xii. of the best of the towne to goo to pryson, without they payde the some without ony longer delay: the honest men fered the pryson and the kynges dyspleasure; wherfore they drewe them togyder, and payde the money incontynente, and recouered it agayne of the poore mē. Thus they dyd in euery good towne, so that there were so many tayles and taxes one after another, for the fyrst was scante payde when another began: thus in that season the noble royalm of fraunce was gouerned, and ſ̄ poore people ouer ledde, so that many ayoyded out of theyr townes, and forsoke theyr herytages and houses, for they were fayne to sell all that they had, and some wente to dwell in Haynalte and into the bysshopryche of Lyege, where as there ranne no taxe nor tayllage.

<sup>a</sup> i. e. The French.

*Howe the duke of Borbon was chosen to goo into Castell, and dyners other; and howe syr Johan Bucke, admyral of Flaunders was taken prysoner by the Englysshemen.*

CAP. LXXII.<sup>a</sup>

THEN yt was denysed what capytaynes sholde go into Spayne: Fyrst, they apoynted  $\text{ȝ}$  gentyll duke of Borbone,  $\text{ȝ}$  he sholde be souerayne capytayne aboue all other; and or he departed, there was apoynted ii. other capytaynes to be in  $\text{ȝ}$  vowe, and the duke of Borbon in the rereuarde, with ii. M. speres, knyghtes and squyers; these ii. capytaynes  $\text{ȝ}$  sholde be in  $\text{ȝ}$  vowe were syr Wellyam of Lygnac, and syr Gaultyer of Passac: these ii. lordes when they knewe  $\text{ȝ}$  they sholde be the capytaynes of certayne men of armes to go into Castell, they preparayed theselve for  $\text{ȝ}$  iourney. Then knyghtes and squyers were sente for all aboute the royaume of Fraunce to go to Castell, and the passages were opened as well in Nauare as in Aragon. Thenne knyghtes and squyers departed fro Bretayne, Poyctou, Aniowe, Mayne, Torayne, Bloys, Orleauce, Beause, Pycardy, Borgoyne, Berre, and Awuergne, and fro all the boundes of the royaume of Fraunce; euery man toke theyr way to go into Castell: and of all the foremost company syr Wyllyam of Lygnac, and syr Gaultyer of Passac, were leders, and to exalte theyr lionoure they departed in good araye, and all theyr companyes in good ordre.

Thus whyles these knyghtes and squyers of the royaume of Fraunce preparayed thē to goo into Castell, and suche as were fyrst redy fyrst departed, and specyally they  $\text{ȝ}$  were of farre countreys, for there were many  $\text{ȝ}$  desyred dedes of armes; the same season the englysshmen were on  $\text{ȝ}$  bytwene Englande and Flaunders, wherof Rycharde erle of Arundell was admyrall, and in his cōpany  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Denonshyre, and  $\text{ȝ}$  erle of Notyng-hā, and the bysshop of Norwyche: they were a v. C. men of armes, and M. archers: they had lyen at ancre a grete season abydyng some aduēture, and often tymes refreshed thē on  $\text{ȝ}$  cost of Englande, and aboute  $\text{ȝ}$  yles of Cornewall, Bretayne, and Normādy; and they were sore dyspleased in  $\text{ȝ}$  the flete of Flaunders was scaped fro thē, and were gone to Rochell, and specyally  $\text{ȝ}$  the cōstable of Fraunce was gone fro Lentrygner<sup>b</sup> to Sluse, and passed by Calays and met not w<sup>th</sup> hym, for gladly they wolde haue fought w<sup>th</sup> hym: and yet  $\text{ȝ}$  constable had as many shyppes as they, but they passed by thē by reason of  $\text{ȝ}$  wynde and the fludde  $\text{ȝ}$  they had in  $\text{ȝ}$  nyght tyme:  $\text{ȝ}$  englysshe nauy lay at ancre before Mergate at  $\text{ȝ}$  Tames mouthe, towarde Sandwyche, abydyng theyr aduēture, and specyally abydyng for  $\text{ȝ}$  shyppes  $\text{ȝ}$  were gone to Rochell, for they thought they wolde shortly retourne; and so they dyd, for when  $\text{ȝ}$  merchautes of Flaunders, of Rochel, of Haynalte, and other places, who for doubte of  $\text{ȝ}$  englysshmen, were conioyned togyder, departed out of Flaunders, they promysed eche other to go and to retourne togyder, and to take eche others parte; and when they had all done theyr busynes in Rochel, and in  $\text{ȝ}$  cōtrey of Xainton, and had charged theyr shyppes w<sup>th</sup> wyne, then as soone as they had good wynde they dysancred, and departed out of  $\text{ȝ}$  hauen of Rochell, and toke theyr way by  $\text{ȝ}$  see to goo into Flaunders, and to Sluse, and fro whens they departed; they sayled so longe  $\text{ȝ}$  they passed  $\text{ȝ}$  rase saynt Mathewe in Bre-  
tayne

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXVII.<sup>b</sup> Treguier.

tayne without peryll or damage, and so costed base Bretayne, and thē Normandy, and so came ryght ouer ſ̄ Tames mouth, where as ſ̄ englysshe nauy lay; the flemynges perceyued where they laye, and they in the hyghe shyppes sayd to theyr cōpany, syrs, aduysē you wel, we shall be met by ſ̄ englysshe armye, they haue perceyued vs, they wyl take ſ̄ aduaūtage of ſ̄ wynde and tyde, we shall haue batayle or it be nyght: ſ̄ tydynges pleased not well al partyes, and specyally ſ̄ merchauntes of Flaunders, of Haynalte, and of other cōntreys, who had theyr merchaūdyse there aborde, they wolde gladly haue ben thens yf they myght; howbeit, syth they sawe no remedy hut fyght, they ordred thēselfe therto; and they were crossebowes and other mē harneysed defensibly arayed, mo thē vii. C. and amonge thē there was a valyaunt knyght of Flaunders who was theyr capytayne, and was as then admyrall of the see, set there by the duke of Borbone, called syr Johā Bucke, ryght sage and hardy in armes, and had done before grete damage on the see to the englysshmen; this syr Johā Bucke set euery thyng in good ordre, and decked his shyppes wel, and wysely as he ſ̄ coulde ryght wel do it, and sayd, syrs, be not abashed: we are mē ynowe to fyght w̄ ſ̄ englysshe army, and ſ̄ wynde wyl serue vs, ſ̄ euer as we be fyghtyng we shal aproche nerer and nerer to Sluse, we shall coost Flaunders: some toke good cōforte w̄ those wordes, and some not, so they put thēselfe in good ordre and defence, and made redy theyr crossebowes and gonnes.

The englysshe shyppes aproched, and they had certayne galays fournyssed w̄ archers, and they came formest rowyng w̄ owers, and gaue the fyrst assaulte, and archers shotte fyersly, and lost moche of theyr shotte, for the Flemynges couered them vnder ſ̄ deckes and wold not apere, but draue euer forth with the wynde; and whē they were out of ſ̄ englysshe archers shot, then they dyd let fly theyr quarelles, wherwith they hurted many; then approched ſ̄ grete shyppes of Englande, the erle of Arundel w̄ his company, and the bysshop of Norwyche with his, and so the other lordes, they rushed in amonge the flemynges shyppes, and them of Rochell, yet the flemynges and crossebowes defended thēselfe ryght valyaūty, for theyr patron, syr Johā Bucke, dyd euer comforte thē; he was in a gret strong shyp, wherin he had iii. gonnes shotyng so grete stones, that where soeuer they lyghted they dyd grete damage, and euer as they fought they drewe lytell and lytell towarde Flaunders, and some lytell shyppes with theyr merchauntes toke the coostes of Flaunders, and the lowe water, and therby saued them, for ſ̄ grete shyppes coulde not folow them for lacke of water. Thus on ſ̄ se there was a harde batayle, and shyppes broken and sunken on bothe partyes, for out of the toppes they cast downe grete barres of yron, where as they wente to the botom: this was an harde batayle, and well fought, for it endured a iii. or iiiii. houres; and when the day fayled they withdrew eche fro other, and cast ancre, and there rested all nyght, and dressed theyr hurte men; and when ſ̄ fludde came they dysancred, and drewe vp sayles, and retourned agayne to the batayle: w̄ the englysshmen was Peter du Boys of Gaunt, with a certayne archers and maryners, who made the flemynges moche a do, for he had ben a maryner, wherfore he knewe the arte of the see, and he was sore dyspleasēd ſ̄ the flemynges and merchauntes endured so longe; alwayes ſ̄ englysshmen wanne aduaūtage of ſ̄ flemynges, and so came bytwene Blanquenberg and Sluse, agaynst Gagant:<sup>a</sup> there was ſ̄ dyscomfyturē, for they were not scouered by no creature; nor also at ſ̄ tyme there were noo shyppes at Sluse, nor men of warre. True it was there was a squyer, a man of armes at Sluse, called Arnolde the mayre,<sup>b</sup> when he harde howe there was a batayle on the see, bytwene the armye of Englande and them of Flaunders, he toke a barke

<sup>a</sup> Cadsand.<sup>b</sup> Le Maire.

barke of his owne and entred therin, and with hym a certayne men of Sluse, and twenty crossebowes, and rowed by force tyll he came to the batayle: but  $\hat{y}$  was at the poynte of the dyscomfyture, for by that tyme the englysshmen were seased of the moost parte of the flemysse shyppes, and had taken syr Joliñ Bucke theyr capytayne, and his shipp, and all that were within it; and when this Arnolde the mayre<sup>a</sup> sawe  $\hat{y}$  maner of that batayle, he made his crossebowes to shote iii. tymes, and then retourned and was chased into the hauen of Sluse, but the englysshmennes shyppes were so grete that they coulde not approche so nere  $\hat{y}$  laude as the barke dyd, and therby he saued hymselfe and his company.

The men of the towne of Sluse were sore abashed when they harde of those tydynges, so that they wyst not what to do, other to gyue vp theyr towne and forsake all, or elles to entre into the shyppes that laye there, and so defende the hauen. Surely yf the Englysshmen had knowen the case they were in, they had ben lordes of the towne and of the castel, or yf they had byleued Peter du Boys; for he sore counsayled them that they sholde incontynent haue set on the towne of Sluse: they had wonne it yf they had soo done, but the englysshmen had no courage therto, but sayd it were a grete foly for vs to entre into  $\hat{y}$  towne of Sluse, for then they of Bruges, of Dan,<sup>b</sup> and of Ardenbourge, shall come and besyge vs, and so peradventure shall lese al that we haue wonne: it is better for vs to kepe it and to make wyse warre, then folysshly to lese all. Thus the englysshmen kepte styll the see, but they determyned to brenne the nauye of shyppes  $\hat{y}$  lay at ancre in the hauen of Sluse: of suche shyppes as they hadde wonne they toke parte of the, suche as were most olde and drye, and lyghtest, and gresed them wel bothe within and without, and set fyer on them, and so lete them go with the wynde and with  $\hat{y}$  tyde into the hauen, to  $\hat{y}$  entente that they sholde haue fastened, and set fyer on other shyppes  $\hat{y}$  lay there of Spayne, and of other places; howbeit, as god wolde, that fyer dyd noo hurte nor damage to none other shyp.

*Howe the englysshmen aryued, and brente dyuers vyllages.*

### CAP. LXIII.<sup>c</sup>

AFTER that the englysshmen dyscomfyted syr Joliñ Bucke as he came fro Rochell, wherby they had grete profyte, specyally of wyne, for they had a ix. M. tonne of wyne, wherby wyne was the derer all the yere after in Flaunders, Holande, and in Brabande, and the better chepe in Englande, as it was reason: suche are the adventures of this worlde, if one haue damage, another hath profyte. Thus styll  $\hat{y}$  englysshemen lay before Sluse at an ancre, and somtyme with theyr barkes and barges they set a lande on the other syde agaynst Sluse, where as there was but a ryuer to passe, and there they brente a mynstre, and other townes, alonge on the see syde, and on the dygnes,<sup>d</sup> called Torne Hōque, and Murdeques, and toke men prysoners in the country, and were there lyenge a x. dayes, and layde busshmentes bytwene Dan<sup>b</sup> and Sluse, on the way of Coceler: and there was taken Joliñ of Lannay, a man of armes of Tournay, who was come thyder with the lorde of Estrynay, and syr Blanquart of Calomme,<sup>e</sup> came theues<sup>f</sup> on  $\hat{y}$  spurres fro Tournay, with xl. speres: and also syr Robert Merchaunt, a knyght

VOL. II.

2 F

of

<sup>a</sup> Le Maire.

<sup>d</sup> The dykes.

<sup>b</sup> Damme.

<sup>c</sup> Coulougne

<sup>e</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXVIII

<sup>f</sup> This should be "who came there."

of Flaunders, who had to his wyfe a bastarde doughter of the erle of Flaunders, was as then at Bruges, when the tydynges spred abrode of the Englysshmen; so he departed and came to Sluse, and entred into þ̄ castell, whiche he founde in small defence, for yf the englysshmen had taken lande at Sluse, as they dyd on the other syde of the water, they had taken at theyr ease the castell and all the towne: for suche as sholde haue defended the towne were so abashed þ̄ there was no man toke ony hede of defence; then this knyght gaue them harte, and sayd, A, ye syrs, and good men of Sluse, howe maynteyne you your-elfe, by þ̄ ye shewe yourselſe dyscomfyted without ony stroke strykyng? men of valure and of good defence ought not so to do, they sholde shewe forth a good vysage as long as they coulde endure, at the leest tyll they were slayne or taken: therby they sholde attayne to the grace of god, and prayse of the worlde. Thus sayd this syr Robert when he came to Sluse.

In þ̄ meane season whyle þ̄ englysshmen were before Sluse and therabout, al þ̄ cōtrey to Bruges were afraide, for they were euery day abrode a foragyng afoote, for they had no horses, and somtyme they wolde entre far into the countrey; on a day they brente þ̄ towne of Cocesy on the downes,<sup>a</sup> a grete vyllage in the way towarde Ardenbourge, and so to the see syde called Hosebourcke; they dyd there what they lyst, and myght haue done more yf they had knowen what case the countrey was in; and whē they had taryed there at theyr pleasure, and sawe that no man came agaynst them, then they toke theyr shyppes, and drewe vp sayles, and so retourned into Englande with CC. M. frankes of profytc, and so came into Tames streyght to London, where as they were receyued w̄ grete ioy: for the good wyne of Poyctou and Xainton, that was determyned to haue ben dronken in Flaunders, in Haynalte, Brabant, and in dyuers other places in Pycardy, the englysshmen brought all with them into Englande, and was solde and departed at London, and in other places of Englande; wyne was solde then for iiii. pens the galon: and certayne merchautes of Zerecyell,<sup>b</sup> in Zelande, lost parte of the same wyne, but they had restytucyon agayne of all theyr losses, for they of Zerecyell<sup>b</sup> wolde neuer agree to go to make warre into Englande, nor wolde suffre none of theyr shyppes to goo in þ̄ iourney, wherby they atteyned grete loue of the Englysshmen. Syr Johā Bucke was put in pryson curtoysly at London, he myght go where he lyst, but euery nyght to lodge in þ̄ cyte: he coulde neuer come to his raunsome, yet the duke of Borgoyne wolde gladly haue had hym by exchange for a bastarde broder of þ̄ kyng of Portyngalles, whom they of Breuilet had taken on the see comyng to Meldebourc.<sup>c</sup> Thus syr Johā Bucke was prysoner thre yeres in Englande, and there dyed.

<sup>a</sup> "And another great," &c.

<sup>b</sup> Zurich-sec.

<sup>c</sup> Middleburg.

*Howe the duke of Lancastres marshal toke the towne of Ribadane,<sup>a</sup> whiche was strongly kepte.*

CAP. XLIII.<sup>b</sup>

NOWE yt ys tyme that we retourne to the busynes of Castell and Portyngale, and to speke of the duke of Lancastre beyng in Galyce, and of suche busynes as fel in ÿ seasō, whiche were not smal: and also to shewe what ayde and comfōrte ÿ frensshe kyng sent ÿ tyme into Castell, or elles kyng Johñ of Spaynes busynes had but easely gone forwarde. I say surely ÿ same yere ÿ the duke aryued in his countrey he had lost all his lāde, if ÿ ayde of the frensshe kyng had not ben. Ye know wel ÿ tydynges spredeth euer farre: the kyng of Portyngale knewe as soone as ÿ duke of Lancastre, or any other mā, how ÿ frenssh kynges army ÿ lay on ÿ see to haue gone into Englande, brake theyr iourney, for the kyng of Portyngale lay as thē at ÿ cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> a strōge towne, and a hauē wel vsed, by reason of merchautes ÿ resorted thyder: and when he knew of ÿ brekyng of ÿ frensshe kynges army he was glad therof, for it had ben shewed hym before, that all Englande was lykely to haue ben lost, wherfore he somewhat dyssymuled with the duke of Lancastre, dryuyng of the takyng of his daughter in maryage; but styll he draue hym of with fayre wordes and salutacyons, and when he was iustly enfourmed of the departyng of ÿ frensshe kyng fro Sluse, then he called his counsayle, and sayd, syrs, ye knowe well howe ÿ duke of Lancastre is in Galyce, and the duches our cosyue with hym, and it is not vnknown to you howe he was here and had consayle togyder, and howe it was agreed that I sholde haue his doughter in maryage; so it is, I wyll perceyuer in ÿ same estate, and wyll demaunde her honourably, as it is reason, and apertenen to suche a prynce as the duke of Lancastre is, and to me as kyng of Portyngale; I wyll make that lady queene of Portyngale. Syr, sayd they of his counsayle, ye doo in this accordyng to reason, for ye haue so sworne and promysed. Well, sayd the kyng, then let vs sende for her to the duke. Then there was appoynted the archebyssshop of Braschez,<sup>d</sup> and syr Johñ Radyghen of Sar, to go on that ambassade; they were sente for to the kyng, and so they toke on them that voyage, and with them they had a CC. speres.

Nowe let vs speke of ÿ syege that syr Thomas Moreaus, marshall of the duke of Lancastres oost, had layde before the towne of Rybadane,<sup>a</sup> and shewe what became thereon.

I byleue that they of Rybadane<sup>a</sup> thought to haue ben comfōrtd by kyng Johñ of Castell, and by the knyghtes of Fraunce, who lay in ÿ towne of Valeoluyue,<sup>e</sup> or elles they wolde neuer haue endured soo longe; for I haue meruayle howe suche a sorte of vyllaynes coulde endure agaynst suche a floure of archers and men of armes, and were not abashed: for every day they had assaulte, and it was sayd to syr Thomas Moreaus, in maner of counsayle, by the moost valyaunt knyghtes of his company: syr, leue this towne here, then an euyll fyer may brenne it, and let vs go further into the countrey, to Maynes, to Noye, or to Besances;<sup>f</sup> alwayes we may retourne agayne when we lyst: by my fayth, sayd syr Thomas, that shall neuer be sayd that vyllaynes haue dyscomfyted vs: I wyll not departe hens though I sholde tary here ii. monethes, without ÿ duke

2 F 2

<sup>a</sup> Ribadavia.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXIX.

<sup>c</sup> Oporto.

<sup>d</sup> Braganza

<sup>e</sup> Valladolid.

<sup>f</sup> Mamez, Noya, or Betanços.

duke sende for me. Thus the marshalles mynde and oppynyon was to kepe styll there his syege. The kynge of Castell, who laye at Valcolyue,<sup>a</sup> and had sente specyally for ayde into Fraunce, he harde dayly howe they of Rybadane<sup>b</sup> defended themselfe valyauntly, and wolde not yelde: in the name of god, sayd the Barroys of Barres, it gretely dyspleaseth me þ̄ we sent not thyder our frensshmen: they wolde gretely haue recomforted the men of that towne: and also I am not contente that I am not at the syege, for then at the leest I sholde haue the honoure as these vyllaynes haue now, and surely yf I had knowen the trouthe of the strength of that towne, I wolde haue refreshed it, and haue put myselfe at aduenture therin: as well god sholde haue sente me the grace to haue defended the towne as these vyllaynes do. Thus he deuysed in the kynges presence, and before the frenssh knyghtes, who desyred dedes of armes. Then it was sayd to the kynge, syr, sende a C. speres into these townes of Noye and Calongne,<sup>c</sup> for who so hath those ii. castelles, hath the ii. sydes of þ̄ lande of Galyce; and to go thyder dyuers dyd present thēselfe before the kynge, as syr Trystram of Roy, and syr Raynolde his broder, syr Aulberte of Braquemont, syr Trystrā of Galle,<sup>d</sup> syr Johñ of castell Morant, and syr Barroys of Barres. The kynge herde them well, and was contente w̄ theyr offres, and sayd, fayre syrs, I thanke you of your good wylls; howbeit, ye maye not all go, some of you must abyde styll with me, for aduentures that may fall, but at this presente tyme I desyre the Barroys of Barres to take on hym that charge yf it please hym: þ̄ knyght was ryght glad of þ̄ iourney, for he thought he had lyen there to longe, and sayd to the kynge, syr, I thanke your grace, and shall kepe and defende it to my power, and shall not departe thens tyll ye sende for me: so be it a goodes name, sayd the kynge: we thynke to here shortly some tydynges out of Fraunce. As then the knyghtes knewe not of the frenssh kynges departynge fro Sluse, but the kynge knewe it well ynough, for the duke of Borbon had wryten to hym of all the busynes in Fraunce, and howe he was apoynted to come into Castell w̄ iii. M. speres, and before hym to open þ̄ passages sholde come iii. M. speres, vnder the gydyng of syr Wyllyam of Lygnac, and syr Gaultyer of Passac. The frenssh knyghtes desyred þ̄ kyng to shewe them some tydynges out of Fraunce; with a good wyll, sayd the kynge.

Then the kynge sayd, syrs, surely the duke of Borbon is chosen pryncypal capytayne to come into this countrey, for þ̄ frenssh kynge and his counsaile hath apoynted hym to come with vi. thousande speres, knyghtes and squyers, and also two valyaunte knyghtes are chosen capytaynes for to come before hym, as syr Wyllyam Lygnac, and syr Gaultyer of Passac: they shall come fyrst with a iii. M. speres; as for the voyage by þ̄ see in Englande is broken vp for this season, tyll the constable of Fraunce, and the erle of saynt Poule, and þ̄ lorde of Concy, with iii. M. speres, shall goo into Englande this nexte Maye. Howe saye you syrs to this? sayd the kynge. Syr, sayd they, these be ryche tydynges, we can haue no better, for this nexte somer dedes of armes shal be wel shewed in your countrey; yf there be vi. M. apoynted, there wyll come ix. M. we shall surely fyght with the englysshmen: they kepe as nowe the felde, but we shal close them togyder, or it be mydsomer; syr, these knyghtes that come are ryght valyaunt, and specyally the duke of Borbon, and the other are proued knyghtes, and worthy to be governours of mē of armes. Anone was spred abrode in þ̄ towne of Valeolyue,<sup>a</sup> and abrode in Castell, the grete comforte and ayde that sholde come out of Fraunce by the fyrst daye of Maye, wherof knyghtes and squyers were ryght ioyous.

Thus the Barroys of Barres departed with a l. speres, and rode to the castell of Noye. Tydynges

<sup>a</sup> Valladolid.<sup>b</sup> Ribadavia.<sup>c</sup> Corunna.<sup>d</sup> De la Jaille.



Tydynges came to the duke of Lancastres marshall howe the fresshmen were abrode, rydyng with a l. speres to come to reyse the syege before Rybadane.<sup>a</sup> When the marshal harde those tydynges, he byleued it lightly, for they that shewed hym therof affirmed it to be true, saynge, how they had sene them ryde ouer the ryuer of Dorne,<sup>b</sup> and toke theyr lodgyng at y<sup>e</sup> towne of Arpent.<sup>c</sup> Then y<sup>e</sup> marshal was in doute, and toke counsaile, and determyned to sende worde therof to the duke of Lancastre his lorde, and so he dyd: and he sente syr Johñ Dambretycourt, and a heraulde, who knewe all the wayes in Galyce; and then the marshall made cuer good watche and spyal, for he doubted to be ascryed in the nyght; halfe the oost watched euery nyght whyle the other slepte. Syr Johñ Dambretycourt, and the heraulde, came to the towne of saynt James, to the duke and to the duches. When y<sup>e</sup> duke knewe of theyr comynge, he sayd, surely we shall here some tydynges: as soone as they came to his presence, the duke demaunded what tydyng? Syr, sayd they, none y<sup>e</sup> be good, but your marshall hath sente vs hyder to you, to knowe your pleasure what he sholde do, for it is reported to hym for certayne that the fresshmen are assembled togyder in Castel, and ryde fast to passe the ryuer to come and fyght with your men lyenge at syege before Rybadane;<sup>a</sup> syr, these be the tydynges y<sup>e</sup> we haue brought. In the name of god, sayd the duke, these be none euyl tydynges that we shall shortely prouyde for them: he behelde syr Johñ Holande his constable, and his admyrall syr Thomas Percy, and sayd to them, syrs, take a CCC. speres, and CCCCC. archers, and go to your company before Rybadane:<sup>a</sup> they are in a doute y<sup>e</sup> the fresshmen sholde come and assaile them. Then these ii. knyghtes made them redy, and toke with them iii. C. speres, and v. C. archers, and departed fro the duke, and rode soo longe that they came before Rybadane,<sup>a</sup> where they cōpanyons were lodged, who were gretly reioysed of theyr comynge. Then syr Johñ Holand sayd to the marshall, what say they of Rybadane,<sup>a</sup> wyll they not yelde them? By my fayth, sayd the marshal, they are proude people: they se that all the countrye aboute them doo yelde, yet they kepe styll theyr opynions, and yet they be but a many of vyllaynes: there is not amonge them one gentylmā of name. Syr, holde your peas, sayd syr Johñ Holande, for within these iiiij. dayes we shal brynge them to that poynte that they shal be glad to yelde themselfe to ony that wyll take them to mercy; but syr, I praye you do y<sup>e</sup> fresshmen ryde abrode? Ye, surely syr, sayd he, I haue ben well enfourmed howe they ryde to the nombre of v. C. speres in one company, whiche maye well be, for daycly to them there cometh men of warre out of Fraunce, and as I haue knowledge it is the Barroys of Barres: he is in the castell of Noye with l. speres; this is all that we knowe. Thus they were all lodged togyder as well as they myght, and made grete prouysyon that came after them.

Aboute a iiiij. dayes after that Johñ Holande, and syr Thomas Percy, were comen to the marshalles oost, they ordeyned to make a grete assaulte, and caused to be made a grete engyne of tymbre, with wheles, to be remoued with strenthe of men, whyther they lyst, and within it myght easely be a C. knyghtes, and a C. archers, and they had fylled y<sup>e</sup> dykes where as this engyne sholde passe; then began the assaulte, and the engyne to approche with strength of men, and therin archers well prouyded w<sup>th</sup> arrowes fyersly shotynge at them within the towne, and they within castynge out dartes and stones meruaylously: but they byneth were couered w<sup>th</sup> mantelles and oxe hydes to defende thē fro y<sup>e</sup> stones and dartes, and vnder y<sup>e</sup> couerture men of armes approached well paussed w<sup>th</sup> pyke axes to perse the walle, soo that they enpayred the walle, for they within could not defende the walle, bycause of the archers who shotte so holy togyder that none durste appere at theyr defence; so with hewynge they reuersed into the dyke a grete pane of the wall: when they within sawe themselfe in soo grete myschefe, they

were

<sup>a</sup> Ribadavia.

<sup>b</sup> The Duero.

<sup>c</sup> Villalpando.

were gretely abashed, and then cryed out alowde, we yelde ourselfe, we yelde vs: but there were noone that made them ony answeyre; the Englysshemen dyd laughe at them, and sayd, these vyllaynes haue put vs to moche payne, and nowe they mocke vs when they wolde haue vs to take them to mercy, nowe  $\bar{y}$  towne is our owne: some of the Englysshemen answered them within, and sayd, Syrs, we knowe not what ye say, we can not speke no Spanyssh; speke good frenssh or englyssh yf ye wyll that we sholde vnderstande you. Thus they entred and passed forthie, and chased these vyllaynes, who fledde before them, and slewe them by hepes. That daye there were slayne, what of one and other, with the Jewes  $\bar{y}$  were there, moo then xv. hundred. Thus the towne of Rybadane<sup>a</sup> was taken by force, and suche as fyrst entred had there grete pyllage, and specyally they founde more golde and syluer in the Jewes howses then in any other place.

After the takynge of Rybadane,<sup>a</sup> whiche was wonne by pure assaulte, and that the Englysshemen had pylled it at theyr pleasure, then they demanded of  $\bar{y}$  marshall what sholde be done with the towne, yf it sholde be brente or not? Naye, sayd the marshall, we wyll kepe it and newe repayre it; but nowe whether shall we prepayre? and they determyned to drawe to Maures,<sup>b</sup> a good towne in Galyce. Then they were apoynted that sholde abyde in Rybadane<sup>a</sup> and repayre it; there was lefte syr Peter of Clynton, a ryght valyaunt knyght, with xx. speres, and lx. archers, they made grete pronsyson with that they founde there, specyally of porkes and good wynes, whiche were so stronge and myghty that the englysshemen coulde not drynke therof; if they dranke moche they were in that case they coulde not helpe themselfe in two dayes after. Thus they dyslodged fro Rybadane,<sup>a</sup> and rode towards the towne of Maures,<sup>b</sup> and caryed in peeces with them  $\bar{y}$  grete engyne, for they sawe well it dyd good seruyce, and was ferefull to men in the townes. When they of Maures,<sup>b</sup> vnderstode howe the englysshmen were comynge to them warde to haue the towne vnder the duke and duches of Lancastres obaysaunce, and knewe howe Rybadane<sup>a</sup> was taken by force, and how that they brought with them a deuyll instede of an engyne, for it was so grete that it coulde not be dystroyed, they doubted gretly the oost and this engyne; then they wente to counsayle to se what were best for them to doo, outhur to yelde or to make defence; and when they had well counsayled togyder, they coulde se none other thyng but  $\bar{y}$  it was farre better for them to yelde then to defende: for they consydered yf they were taken by force, they sholde lese body and goodes, and no comferte appered to them fro ony parte; they that were sage sayd, Syrs, beholde howe they of Rybadane<sup>a</sup> were taken at theyr defence, and yet they were as stronge as we or stronger, and they were besyged more then a moneth, and yet they hadde nother ayde nor socoure; as we vnderstande the kynge of Castel accompteth at this season al  $\bar{y}$  cuntrye of Galyce lost to the ryuer of Dorne,<sup>c</sup> nor we thynke that this yere there cometh no frenssh men to our ayde: wherfore let vs yelde ourselfe mekely without damage, as no other townes haue done: euery man behelde the same oppynyon, but some sayd howe maye this be done? well ynoughe sayd the sages, we shall go and mete them on the waye, and bere the keyes of  $\bar{y}$  towne with vs, and present them to the englysshemen: they be courtroys people, they wyll do vs no hurte yf we receyue them curtoysly; to this they were all agreed. Then there yssued out of  $\bar{y}$  towne a fylty persones of them  $\bar{y}$  were moost noble, as soone as they knewe  $\bar{y}$  the englysshemen approched they yssued out, and aboute a quarter of a legge of theyr taryed for the Englysshemen.

Tidynges came to the Englysshemen howe they of the towne of Maures<sup>b</sup> were yssued out, not to fyght but to yelde them, and the keyes of the towne whiche they brought w<sup>t</sup> them:

<sup>a</sup> Ribadavia.<sup>b</sup> Muros.<sup>c</sup> The Duero.

them: then ȝ lordes rode on before to se what the matter was, and caused all the archers and oost to tary behynde: then the Galycyens came forth, and it was sayd to them, Syrs, beholde here the lordes of Englande sente by the duke of Lancastre to conquere this countrey, speke to them yf ye lyst: then they all kneled downe, and sayd, Syrs, we be of the poore men of Maures,<sup>a</sup> who wyllyngly wyll be vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre, and of my lady the duches: wherfore we desyre you to accepte vs to mercy, for all that we haue is yours. The iii. lordes of Englande, by cche others aduise, answered and sayd, ye good people of Maures,<sup>a</sup> we shall go w̄ you into the towne and parte of our oost, not al, and there ye shall make promyse and othe, as good people ought to do to theyr lorde and lady: syrs, sayd they, this shall we doo with good wylls. Then sayd the lordes, go your wayes on before and open the gates, for ye are and shall be receyued to mercy. Then they wente to theyr towne and opened theyr gates and barryers, and suffred the constable and the other lordes to entre, and a iiij. C. speres with them, and the resydue of the oost lodged without in the feldes, and had prouysyon out of the towne suffycient: the lordes lodged within the towne, and toke the othes of them of the towne of Maures,<sup>a</sup> as it is sayd before.

*Howe the duke of Lancastre sente for the admyrall and mershal, and his other officers to come to the weddinge of his daughter, and the kynge of Portyngale.*

C A P. LXXIII.<sup>b</sup>

THE nexte daye after the towne of Maures<sup>a</sup> was gyuen vp, and that euery man made them redy to go to the cyte of Besances,<sup>c</sup> there came tydynge and letters fro the duke of Lancastre, commaūdyng them on the syght of his letters, whatsoever estate they were in, to repayre to his presence: certefyng them that he loked in a shorte season for the archebysshop of Braghes,<sup>d</sup> and for syr Johñ Radyghes de Sar, ambassade fro the kynge of Portyngale, who were comyng to wedde his daughter by procuracyon, and to lede her to the cyte of Porte,<sup>e</sup> where the kynge of Portyngale taryed for her. When these lordes vnderstode these tydynge, they retourned theyr waye, and sayd, it was requysyte for the duke to haue his lordes and counsaile aboute hym at ȝ receyuyng of these ambassadours; and so retourned and lefte men of warre in ȝ garysons that they had wonne, and so came to the towne of savnt James, as the duke had commaunded them; and within iii. dayes after thyder came ȝ bysshop of Braghes,<sup>d</sup> and syr Johñ Radyghes de Sar, with a CC. horses; they were all well lodged. Then when they were redy apparelled, ȝ ambassadours and other lordes in their company wente to the duke and to the duches in good aray, where they were receyued with grete ioy, and there declared the cause of theyr comyng: the duke herde them well, and was wel reioyced therw̄ bycause of ȝ auancement of his daughter, and for the alyauce of the kynge of Portyngale, whiche he thought ryght behouable for hym yf he wolde entre to conquere Castell: the bysshop shewed the duke and the duches, and theyr counsaile, howe he had auctoryte by procuracyon personally to wed the lady Phylp of Lancastre, in the name of the kynge of Portyngale; wherwith the duke and duches were well contente. Thus syr Johñ Radyghes de Sar, by vertue of procuracyon wedded ȝ lady Phylp of Lancastre, in the name of ȝ kynge of Portyngale, and the bysshop of Braghes<sup>d</sup> wedded them,

<sup>a</sup> Muros.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXX.<sup>c</sup> Butances.<sup>d</sup> Biaganza.<sup>e</sup> Oporto.

them, and soo were layde curtoysly in bed, as husbände and wyfe ought to be:<sup>a</sup> and the nexte day after the lady with all her company were redy to departe, and so toke leue of her fader, moder, and systers, with ladyes and damoysselles with her, and her bastarde syster, wyfe to f̄marshall, with her: and with her went syr Johñ Holande, syr Thomas Percy, and syr Johñ Dambrychcourte,<sup>b</sup> and C. speres, and CC. archers, and so rode to the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> in Portyngale.

Agaynst the comyng of the yonge quene of Portyngale, yssued out of the cyte of Porte<sup>c</sup> to do her honoure and reuerence, prelates of the chyrche, as f̄bysshops of Lysbone, of Deure,<sup>d</sup> of Connymbres,<sup>e</sup> and of Porte,<sup>c</sup> and of temporall lordes, the erle Dangose, the erle of Nouayre, the erle of Lescal, Galope Ferant Patryke<sup>f</sup> Pymasse,<sup>g</sup> Martyne de Merlo, and mo then xl. knyghtes, and grete nombre of theyr people, and many ladyes and damoysselles, and all the clergy reuested in habytes of processyon. Thus the lady Phylp of Lancastre was brought into the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> in Portyngale, and soo to the kynges palace; there the kyng toke her by the hande and kyssed her, and all the other ladyes and damoysselles that were come with her and brought her into her chambre, and then toke leue of all f̄ ladyes; and the lordes of Englande that were there, lodged at theyr ease, and all theyr men in the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> for it is a grete cyte, and f̄ nyght they kepte the vygyll of the feest to the nexte day, the ladyes daunsynge and passynge theyr tyme that nyght: and on the Tuysdaye f̄ kyng of Portyngale, with the prelates, and lordes of his countrey, were redy in the mornyng, and lepte on theyr horses at the palays, and so rode to f̄ cathedrall chyrche called saynt Maryes, and there taryed for the quene, who came accompanied with ladyes and damoysselles: and thoughte syr Johñ Radyghos de Sar had wedded her before in the kynges behalfe, yet then agayne openly there f̄ kyng wedded her, and so returned to f̄ palays, and there was made a grete feest and a solemne; and after dyner Justes and tournays before the kyng and quene, and at nyght the pryse was gyuen of thē without,<sup>h</sup> to syr Johñ Holande, and of f̄ chalengers, a knyght of the kynges, called syr Johñ Tet-dore had the pryse; so that day and nyght they perceyuered in grete tryumpe and ioye, and the kyng lay with the quene, and as the renome ranne in the countrey and courte, f̄ kyng was as then a clene mayde: the nexte daye the feest renewed and newe Justes, and the pryse of the chalengers had Vas<sup>i</sup> Martyne of Merlo, and of them without<sup>h</sup> syr Johñ Dambretycourte: and f̄ nyght there was grete daunsynge, syngynge, and sportynge, and euery day there were knyghtes and squyers that Justed.

With suche tryumphes, Justes, and sportes, as ye haue harde, the quene of Portyngale was receuyed at her fyrst comyng in the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> and these feestes endured more then x. dayes, and the kyng gaue grete gyftes to all the straungers, so that they were well contente. Then the knyghtes of Englande toke theyr leue of the kyng, and of the quene, and returned to f̄ cyte of saynt James to the duke and duches, who of them demaunded tydynges; and they shewed all f̄ they had sene and harde, and howe the kyng of Portyngale and the quene dyd commaunde them to them, and sayd: syr, the last worde f̄ the kyng sayd to vs was, howe he desyreth you to drawe into f̄ felde when it please you, for in lykewyse so wyl he do and drawe into Castell: these be good tydynges, sayd the duke. Thus aboute a xv. dayes after the constable and admyral were

<sup>a</sup> In Mr. *Johnes's* translation it is the Archbishop who espouses Philippa and is laid in the bed by her: as it does not appear probable, however, that an ecclesiastic, to whom celibacy was enjoined, could act as proxy in such a ceremony (which was a close imitation of the actual marriage) I apprehend Lord Bernalers is right, particularly as he agrees with the *Lyons'* edition.

<sup>b</sup> D'Ambreticourt.

<sup>c</sup> Oporto.

<sup>d</sup> Evora.

<sup>e</sup> Coimbra.

<sup>f</sup> Portelet,

<sup>g</sup> Vasco.

<sup>h</sup> i. e. Strangers.

were retourned fro þ̄ kyng of Portyngales maryage, þ̄ duke of Lancastre prepayred for his journey to go and conquere castells and townes in Galyce, for as then the duke was not lorde of all þ̄ townes in the countrey: and it was ordeyned þ̄ when the duke sholde departe fro saynt James, that the duches and her daughter Katheryne sholde in lyke wyse departe, and goo to the cyte of Porte,<sup>a</sup> in Portyngale, to se the kyng and þ̄ yonge quene theyr doughter; and the towne of saynt James was delyuered to the kepynge of an englysshe knyght, called syr Loys Clyfforde, and xxx. speres with hym, and an C archers.

*Howe the duke of Lancastre and his men rode towardes the cyte of Besances,<sup>b</sup> and howe the towne made composycyon with them.*

CAP. LXXV.<sup>c</sup>

THUS the duke of Lancastre departed and all his mē, and suche as were ordeyned to abyde in garyson abode: and the duke and the duches rode towardes Besances,<sup>b</sup> one of þ̄ last townes bytwene Galyce and Portyngale, the ryght waye to Porte<sup>a</sup> and to Connymbrast:<sup>d</sup> and bycause þ̄ duches of Lancastre and her doughter sholde go to se the kyng of Portyngale, therefore they helde that way: when they of Besances<sup>b</sup> knewe þ̄ þ̄ duke was comynge on them with all his oost, then they drewe to counsayle and were of many oppynyons; fynally, they determyned for þ̄ best, and sent to the duke and duches vi. of the chefe of the towne, to desyre and trete for an abstynence of warre for viii. dayes, and in þ̄ meane season they to sende to the kyng of Castell, shewynge hym without he came soo stronge to fyght with the duke, to yelde vp theyr towne without any other meane. Then there departed fro Besances<sup>b</sup> vi. men, and rode to mete with þ̄ englysshmen; fyrst they encountred with the vowearde whiche the marshall led; there they were stopped and demaunded what they were, and what they wolde? they answered how they were of Besances,<sup>b</sup> and that by appoyntement of the towne they were charged to goo and speke with the duke; the marshall sayd to syr Johā Soustre,<sup>e</sup> syr, go and brynge these men to þ̄ duke in saufgarde, for fere lest our archers do slee them; and then he sayd to them, syrs, goo your wayes, this knyght shal be your guýde. So they rode forthe, and at the last founde out the duke and duches, and her doughter, and syr Johā Holande, syr Thomas Percy, and dyuers other with them, sportynge them vnder the shadowe of the fayre Olyue trees, and they behelde wel syr Johā Soustre<sup>e</sup> comynge to themwarde; then syr Johā Holande demaunded of hym and sayd, syr Johā, are those your prysoners? nay syr, sayd he, they be no prysoners, they are men of Besances,<sup>b</sup> sent by the marshall to speke with my lorde þ̄ duke: as I thinke they wyll make some tretye; the duke and the duches herde al those wordes: then syr Johā Soustre<sup>e</sup> sayd to them, ye good men auauce forth, beholde here your lorde and lady. Then these vi. men kneled downe and sayd, My ryght redoubted lorde and lady, the comon, altye of the towne of Besances<sup>b</sup> haue sente vs to your presence; syr, they vnderstande howe ye are comynge or sendynge your armye agaynst thē; they desyre of your specyall grace to forbere them these ix. dayes, and in the meane season they wyll sende to the kyng of Castell to the towne of Valeolyue,<sup>f</sup> and shewe hym what daūger they be in; and syr, without there come within these ix. dayes suche socoure to them as to fyght

VOL. II.

2 G

with

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.

to be numbered LXXI.

<sup>b</sup> *Johnes* says Entença.—sed quære, Betanços.<sup>d</sup> Coimbra.<sup>e</sup> Sounder.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought<sup>f</sup> Valladolid.

with you, they wyl yelde them vnto your obeysaunce, and yf ye lacke any prouyson of vytayles or any other thyng in the meane season, ye shall haue out of the towne for your money at your pleasure for you and for all your men. Therwith the duke stode styll and spake noo worde, and suffred the duches to speke, because it was in her countrey; then she behelde the duke and sayd, Syr, what say you? Madame, sayd he, and what say you? ye are herytoure her: that I haue is by you, therefore ye shall make them answer. Well syr, sayd she, methynke it were good to receyue them as they haue demanded, for I byleue the kyng of Castell hath as nowe noo grete desyre so shortly to fyght with you. I can not tell, sayd the duke; wolde to god he wolde come shortly to batayle, then we sholde be the soner delyuered: I wolde it sholde be within vi. dayes: wherfore as ye haue deuysed I am contente it so be. Then  $\text{y}$  duches tourned her towarde the vi. men and sayd, syrs, departe when ye lyst, your matter is sped, soo that ye delyuer in hostage to our marshall xii. of the best of your towne for suretye to vpholde this tretye. Well madame, sayd they, we are contente: and syr Johñ Soustre<sup>a</sup> was commaunded to shewe this tretye to the marshal, and so he dyd, wherwith the marshall was well contente, and the vi. men returned to Besances,<sup>b</sup> and shewed howe they had sped. Then xii. men of the moost notablest of the towne were chosen out and sente to the marshall. Thus the towne of Besances<sup>b</sup> was in rest and peas by the fore-sayd tretye. Then they of the towne sente the same vi. men that wente to  $\text{y}$  duke, to the kyng of Castell, and his counsaile: the kyng as then knewe nothyng of that composcyon, nor howe the englysshemen were before Besances.<sup>b</sup>

In the meane season that these syxe men were goyng to the kyng of Castell, the duke ordeyned that the duches and her daughter Katheryne sholde goo to the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> to se the kyng of Portyngale, and the yonge quene her daughter, and at theyr departyng the duke sayd to the duches,

Madame Cōstaunce, salute fro me the kyng, and the quene my daughter, and all other lordes of Portyngale, and shewe them suche tydynges as ye know, and howe they of Besances<sup>b</sup> be at composcyon with me: and as yet I knowe not wheron they gronde themselfe, nor whether that our aduersary Johñ of Trystmor<sup>d</sup> haue made them to make this tretye, or wyl come and fyght with vs or no; I knowe well they loke for grete comforte to come to them out of Fraunce, and suche as desyre dedes of armes and aduaancement of honoure wyl come as soone as they can, wherfore it behoueth me alwaye to be redy and to abyde batayle; this ye may shewe to the kyng of Portyngale, and to his counsaile, and yf I se that I shall haue any thyng to do, I shall shortly sende the kyng worde therof; wherfore saye that I desyre hym to be redy to ayde and to defende our ryght and his, in lyke maner as we haue promysed and sworne togyder. And madame, when ye retourne agayne to me, leue our daughter Katheryne there styll with the quene her syster, she can not be in better kepyng. Syr, sayd the lady, all this shall be doone. Then the duches and her daughter, and all other ladyes and damoyelles toke theyr leue and departed; syr Thomas Percy the admyral accompanied them, and syr yon Fythwaren,<sup>e</sup> and  $\text{y}$  lorde Talbot, and the lorde Johñ Dambretycourte, and syr Namburyn<sup>e</sup> of Lynyers, and a hundred speres, and two hundred archers, and soo came to the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> in Portyngale.

<sup>a</sup> Sounder.<sup>b</sup> Betanços.<sup>c</sup> Oporto.<sup>d</sup> Transtamare.<sup>e</sup> Evan Fitzwarren.<sup>f</sup> Maubrun.

*Howe the duches and her doughter wente to se the kynge of Portyngale and the quene; and howe the towne of Besances<sup>a</sup> submytted them vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre.*

CAP. LXXVI.<sup>b</sup>

WHENNE the kynge of Portyngale vnderstode that the duches of Lancastre and her doughter were comyng to hymwarde, he was therof ryght ioyfull, and sente to receyue them of the grettest mē of his courte; the erle of Angoses, and the erle of No-uayre, syr Johñ Radyghos de Sar, syr Johñ Ferrant Perteke,<sup>c</sup> syr Vas<sup>d</sup> Martyne of Marlo, syr Egeas Colle, and a xx. other knyghtes, who mette with the duches a two grete legges of, and ioyfully receyued them; and the duches made frendly chere to al the lordes and knyghtes, bothe with wordes and countenance. Thus they came to the cyte of Porte,<sup>e</sup> and all fy ladyes and damoysselles were lodged in the palays, and the kynge came and met with the ladyes, and kyssed them all; then after came fy quene, who receyued the duches her moder and her syster ryght honourably, as she that coulde ryght wel do it. All the kynges courte were ryght ioyfull of the comyng of these ladyes and damoysselles: I wyll not speke of all theyr acquayntaūces and good chere, for I was not there present; I knowe nothyng but by the reporte of that gentyl knyght, syr Johñ Ferrant Perteke,<sup>c</sup> who was there present, and he enfourmed me of all that I know in that matter, and of many other. There the duches deuyssed with the kynge of Portyngale when she sawe her tyme, and shewed hym all the wordes that the duke her husbände had gyuen her in charge to shewe. The kynge answered her ryght sagely, and sayd, Fayre lady and cosyn, I am all redy, yf the kynge of Castell come forth into the felde, within iii. dayes I shal haue redy iii. M. speres; they be redy in the felde on the fronters of Castell; and also I haue redy xx. M. of the comons of my royaume, who be not to be refused, for they dydde me good seruyce on a day at the batayle of Jibe-roth.<sup>f</sup> Syr, sayd the lady, ye speke well, and I thanke you therof; and syr, yf ony thyng happen to fall to my lorde and husbände, he wyll incontynente sygnifye you therof: with these wordes and other the kynge and the duches deuyssed togyder.

Nowe let vs tourne to them of Besances,<sup>a</sup> and shewe howe they sped.

When these vi. men of Besances<sup>a</sup> were before the kynge of Castel, they kneled downe and sayd, Ryght redoubted lorde, may it please you to vnderstande that we be sent hyder from your towne of Besances,<sup>a</sup> who are by force in composycyon with the duke of Lancastre and with fy duches, and hath obteyned a sufferaunce of warre for ix. dayes, so that yf ye come or sende suche a strength able to resyst the duches puyssaunce, then fy towne to abyde styll vnder your obeysaunce, elles they are boūde and haue layde hostage to delyuer vp the towne to the duke of Lancastre; wherfore maye it please your grace to gyue vs answere what we shall do in this case. The kynge answered and sayd, syrs, we shall take aduise, and then gyue you answere: therwith the kynge departed from them, and entred into his secret chambre. I can not tell what counsayle he toke, nor howe fy matter wente; but these vi. men were there viii. dayes, and had no maner of answere, nor sawe no more the kynge. Soo the day came that the towne sholde be gyuen vp, and as thē theyr messagers were not returned agayne. Then fy duke of Lancastre sent to Besances<sup>a</sup> his marshall the x. day to speke with them, and to

2 G 2

cōmaunde

<sup>a</sup> Betanços.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXII.<sup>c</sup> Fernando Portelet<sup>d</sup> Vasco.<sup>e</sup> Oporto.<sup>f</sup> Aljubarota.

cōmaunde them to rendre vp theyr towne, or elles to stryke of the heedes of the hostages: f̄ marshall came to Besances<sup>a</sup> to the baryers, and there spake with them of the towne, and sayd, ye syrs of Besances,<sup>a</sup> take hede what I saye: my lorde the duke of Lancastre hath sente me to you, to demaunde why ye haue not brought to hym the keyes of your towne, and submyt you to be vnder his obeysaunce, as ye ought to be; the ix. dayes be past, as ye knowe well, and yf ye wyll not thus do, your hostages shall lese theyr heedes here before you: and after we shall assayle you and take you perforce, and then ye shall all dye without mercy, lyke thē of Ryhadane.<sup>b</sup> Whē f̄ men of Besances<sup>a</sup> herde those tydynges, they gretly doubted, and also fered to lese theyr frendes that were in hostage with the duke, and sayd to the marshall, syr, my lorde f̄ duke hath good cause to say and do as ye haue reported; but, syr, as yet we here no tydynges fro our men, whom we sente to the kyng of Castel for the same cause; we wote not what is become of them. Syrs, sayd the marshall, peraduenture they are kepte there styll for the tydynges they haue brought to the kyng of Castell, whiche are not very plesaunt to hym to here; but my lorde the duke wyl abyde no lenger; wherfore aduyse you to make me shorte answer, elles shortely ye shall haue assaulte. Then they spake agayne and sayd, syr, we requyre you let vs assemble togyder in the towne to take aduyse, and then we shal answer you. I am content, sayd the marshal. Then they retourned into the towne, and, by the blastes of trompettes in euery strete, they assembled togather in f̄ market place; then they declared to all the comonte all the foresayd wordes, and so fynally they accorded to rendre vp theyr towne, and to saue theyr estates f̄ were in pryson: then they retourned to the marshall, and sayd, syr, in al your demaundes we can fynde nothyng but as reason requyreth; we are content to receyue my lorde the duke and my lady the duches into this towne, and to put thē in possession therof: and, syr, here be the keyes, and we shall goo with you to thē to theyr lodgyng, yf it please you to bryng vs thyder. With ryght a good wyl, sayd the marshal. Then there yssued out of Besances<sup>a</sup> a lx. mē, beryng the keyes of theyr towne with them, and the marshall brought them streight to the duke, and shewed hym all theyr ententes. The duke receyued thē, and deluyered thē theyr hostages, and the same day entred into the cyte of Besances,<sup>a</sup> and there lodged, and all his company as many as myght.

*Howe they of Besances,<sup>a</sup> that had ben sente to the kyng of Castell, came home to their towne after it was rendred vp to the duke of Lancastre.*

#### CAP. LXXVII.<sup>c</sup>

A FOURE dayes after that Besances<sup>a</sup> was gyuen vp, the vi. men that were sent to Valeolyue<sup>d</sup> to f̄ kyng of Castell retourned home to theyr towne; then it was demaūded of them why they had taryed so longe: they answered, howe they myght not do therewith nor amende it, sayng howe they had spoken with the kyng, who had promysed thē to take counsaile and then to gyue answer; whiche answer we taryed on viii. dayes, and as yet they sayd they were retourned without answer. Then they were asked no moo questyons, but they sayd howe the kyng of Castell loked for moche people to come out of fraunce, and dyuers were come and lodged abrode in the countrey; but the capytaynes, as syr Wyllya of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac were not as then come; but all suche knyghtes and squyers in Spayne that sholde be vnder the gudyng

<sup>a</sup> Betanços.

<sup>b</sup> Ribadaria.

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXIII.

<sup>d</sup> Valladolid.



guydyng of those ii. capytaynes were redy apparelled: but all suche as were reteyned and apoynted to be vnder the duke of Borbon, were styll in theyr owne houses vpon a redynes. Thus, as ye haue herde here before, syr Wyllyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac passed thurgh the royalme of Fraunce and came into Languedoc; they were mo then a M. speres, knyghtes and squyers of al countreys; they assembled in Carcassone, in Narbonoys, and in Thoulousayne, and as they came soo they lodged in this good countrey; many there were that payde lytell or nothyng for that they toke. Tydynges came to the erle of Foyze, beyng at Ortays, that men of warre of Fraunce approached nere to his coūtrei, and wolde passe thurgh to go into Spayne; and it was sayd to hym, syr, they pay for nothyng that they take, wherfore all the comon people flyeth before thē as though they were englysshmen; and the capytaynes be at Carcassone, and theyr men therabout, and so passeth the ryuer of Garon to Thoulouse, and then they wyl entre into Bygore, and so incontynent into your countrey: and if they do then as they haue done all the way, they shall do grete euyl in your coūtrei of Byerne; therfore, syr, take good hede what ye wyll do in this behalfe: ſ̄ erle of Foyze, who was soone counsayled in hymselfe, sayd, I wyll that all my townes and castelles, as well in Foyze as in Byerne, be prouyded for with men of warre, and all the countrey to be in a redynes to entre into batayle yf nede be; I wyll not hye derely the warre of Castell; my landes be free; yf frensshemen wyll passe thurgh, they shall pay truely for euery thyng that they take, or elles all the passages in my countrey shal be kepte close agaynst them; and, syrs, ye syr Arnalte Wyllyam, and syr Peter of Byerne, I charge you to defende and kepe the countrey. These ii. knyghtes were bastarde bretherne, and ryght valyaunt men in armes: they toke on them this charge. Then in all the erle of Foyze countrey it was ordeyned that euery man sholde haue armure redy, as they were wonte to haue, or better, and to be redy dayly whensoeuer they were commaunded. Then in Byerne, and in Foyze, and in Thoulouse euery man was redy to entre into batayle; and there was sente to ſ̄ cyte of Palmes a C. speres of good men of armes; syr Espayne du Lyon was sent to Sanredun,<sup>a</sup> syr Cycart of saynt Lygyer<sup>b</sup> to Maryzes,<sup>c</sup> and syr Peter of Byerne was with a C. speres at Bellpoint,<sup>d</sup> at the entre of the erldome of Foyze; at saynt Thybault on ſ̄ ryuer of Garon, was sir Peter of Cabestan; and syr Peter Meaus<sup>e</sup> of Noyalles, with l. speres, at Polammuehe;<sup>f</sup> and syr Peter of Toece, at the castell of Mesun;<sup>g</sup> the bastarde of Esperung<sup>h</sup> at Morlens; syr Arnolde Wyllyam, with a C. speres, at Pan; syr Guy de la mote at mounte Marsen; syr Raymon of newe castel<sup>i</sup> at Sauetere; syr yuayne of Foyze, the erles bastardes sone, at Mountesquyu; syr Verdoll of Nenosan, and syr Johñ of saynt Marcell, at Oron; syr Hector de la garde at mounte Garbell; Johñ of Nowe castel<sup>j</sup> at Ertzell: and the erle sente to syr Johñ lane,<sup>k</sup> beyng at the castell of Beawuoyson; to take good hede to all his fronters; and he sent to saynt Gaudēs a cosyn of his, syr Ernaltton of Spayne; breuely, there was nother towne nor castel in Foyze nor in Byerne but were refreshed w̄ newe men of war, and they sayd they were men ynowe to resyst double ſ̄ nombre of other mē of armes, for they were in all to ſ̄ nombre of a xx. M. men of war of chosen men.

Tidynges came to syr Wyllyam of Lygnac beyng at Thoulouse, and to syr Gaultyer of Passac beyng at Carcassone, howe ſ̄ erle of Foyze prouyded men of armes and furnysshed euery garyson; and the renome ranne that he wolde suffre none to passe thurgh his countre, wherof these ii. capytaynes were sore abashed; and then they apoynted to mete in the myd way to speke togyder at the castell of D'aurey, howe they sholde do with the erle of Foyze; then syr Wyllyam sayd, syr Gaultyer, to say truly, it is grete meruayle

<sup>a</sup> This seems to be the name of a captain who was sent with Sir Espayn du Lyon, to command at Palmes.—  
*Lions' edit.*      <sup>b</sup> Before called Luperier, p. 59.      <sup>c</sup> Mozeres.      <sup>d</sup> Bellpuuch.  
<sup>e</sup> Menaux.      <sup>f</sup> Polammich.      <sup>g</sup> Lamesun.      <sup>h</sup> D'Espaing.      <sup>i</sup> Chastel-neuf  
<sup>k</sup> L'Aisne.

meruayle that the fresshē kyngē and his cōsāyle haue not wryten to hym to open peasybly his countrey. Well, syr, sayd syr Gaultyer, it is necessary that ye go and speke with ſy erle, and shewe hym in curtoys maner that we be sente by the fresshē kyngē this way to passe peasybly, and to pay for all that we take: surely the erle of Foyze is so grete and myghty, that yf he lyst we gete noo passage thrughe his countrey, then we must passe thrughe Aragon, whiche is farre of: I can not tell why the erle maketh suche doubtes, nor why he soo fortēfyeth his garysons, nor whether he haue made ony alyauce with ſy duke of Lancastre or no. I desyre you go to hym, and knowe the trouthe; ye se howe our men dayly passe into Bygore. I am contente, sayd syr Gaultyer; and so toke these ii. capytaynes leue eche of other: syr Wyllā of Lygnac retourned to Thoulouse, and syr Gaultyer, with xl. horse, wente and passed ſy ryuer of Garon at saynt Thybault, and there he founde syr Menalte of Nonayles, who made hym grete chere: syr Gaultyer demaūded of hym where he sholde fynde the erle of Foyze? He answered hym, at Ortays. These ii. knyghtes were a season togyder, and comoned of dyuers matters; then syr Gaultyer departed and came to saynt Gaudēs, and there he had good chere: the nexte day he rode to saynt Johā de Ryuyer, and rode all the lawne of Bonc,<sup>a</sup> and costed Mauuoysyn, and lay at Tournay, a close towne, and ſy nexte daye he rode to dyner to Tarbe, and there taryed all day, and there founde the lorde Danchyn and syr Menalte of Barbason, two grete lordes of Bierne: they spake with hym of many thynges, and bycause that the lorde of Barbason was of the partye of the erle of Armynacke, he coulde speke no good worde of the erle of Foyze. The nexte daye he departed and wente to Morlans in Byerne, and there he founde syr Raynolde<sup>b</sup> wyllā, bastarde broder to the erle of Foyze, who receyued hym with good chere, and he shewed syr Gaultyer howe he sholde fynde the erle at Ortays, and howe he wolde be ryght glad of his comyngē. God graunte it, sayd syr Gaultyer; for to speke with hym I am come into this countrey. Soo they dyned togyder, and after dynyr syr Gaultyer wente to his lodgyngē to mounte Gabryel, and the nexte daye, by iii. of the clocke, he came to Ortays, and could not speke with the erle ſy day tyll the nexte daye at afternoone, when the erle accustomed to come abrode.

The nexte daye, when the erle of Foyze knewe that syr Gaultyer of Passac was come to speke with hym somewhat, he made the more hast to yssue out of his chambre. Then syr Gaultyer dyd salute hym; and the erle, who knew as moche of honour as ony knyght, dyd salute hym agayne, and toke syr Gaultyer by ſy hande, and sayd, syr, ye be ryght hartely welcome; what busynes hath brought you into this countrey of Byerne? Syr, sayd the knyght, syr Wylliam Lygnac and I are commytted by the fresshē kyngē to conduyte into Castell certayne men of armes, as ye haue heide or this, and howe ſy ye wyl let our iourney and close your countrey of Byerne agaynst vs and our company. Then the erle of Foyze sayd, syr Gaultyer, that is not soo; for I wyl not close nor kepe my countrey agaynst you, nor agaynst ony man ſy wyl peasybly passe and pay to my people for that they take; whiche fredome I haue sworne to kepe, and to maynteyne, and mynystre to them Justyce, as euery lorde is bounde to do to his subiectes; for that entente lordes haue theyr signoryes; but it hath ben shewed me that ye bryngē with you a maner of Bretons, Barroys, Loraynes, and Borgonyons, who knowe not what payne meaneth; and agaynst suche people I wyl close my countrey, for I wyl kepe my people in theyr fraunches and ryghtes. Syr, sayd the knyght, the entente of me and my companyon is, that none shall passe thrughe your lande without they pay peaseably to the agrement of the poore mē, or elles to be taken and corrected accordyngē to the vsage of your countrey, and they to make restytucyon for euery damage by them done, or elles we to satisfye for theyr trespasses, so theyr bodyes may be delyuered

<sup>a</sup> Laneburg.<sup>b</sup> Arnold.

nered to vs; and without he be a gentyll man, we shal make Justyce to be done of his body before your men, that all other shall take therby ensample; and yf he be a gentyll mā, we shal cause hym to rendre and restore ony damage by hym done, or elles we shall doo it for hym; this crye we shall make with a trompet in euery mannes lodgyng, and also declare it agayne to them or they entre into ony parte of your lande, so that none shall excuse them of neglygence. Syr, may this suffyse and contente you. Then ȝ erle sayd, syr Gaultyer, yf this be done, I am well contente, and ye shall be welcome into this countrey; I wyll be glad to see you; let vs goo to dyner, and then we shall talke more togyder.

Syr, sayd the erle, cursed be ȝ warre bytwene Portyngale and Castel; I ought gretly to complayne of it, for I neuer lost so niche as I dyd at one season in ȝ warre bytwene those two royalmes, for all my chefe men of warre of Byerne were there slayne; and yet I shewed them or they wente that they sholde make theyr warre wysely, for I sayd the Portyngales were harde men to mete withall, and cruell of dedes; yf they haue the ouer hande of theyr enemyes, they haue no mercy: syr Gaultyer, I speke it that when ye and your companyon come into Castell, syth ye two be the chefe capytaynes of them that are passed and shall passe, and peraduenture ye shall be requyred by the kyng of Castell to gyue your counsayle and aduys; he wel aduysed that ye gyue not to hasty cōsayle to aduance to fyght with your aduersaryes, ȝ duke of Lancastre, the kyng of Portyngale, the Englysshemen, or the Portyngales, for all these be famylyer togyder and be all as one: and the englysshemen desyre to haue batayle by ii. reasons; one is, of a grete season they haue had noo profyte; they be poore, and haue wonne nothyng of a longe tyme, but rather spende and haue lost; wherfore they wyll be redy to auance themselfe, in hope to gete some newe profyte; and suche people as be aduenturers desyrynge other mennes goodes, wyll fyght with a hardy courage, and often tymes fortune serueth them well; the other reason is, the duke of Lancastre knoweth surely that he can not come parfytely nor peasybly to the herytage of Castell, whiche he demaundeth to haue by the ryght of his wyfe, whom he calleth ryghtfull enherytoure, but all onely by batayle, for he knoweth well yf he myght haue and obteyne one iourney agaynst the kyng of Castell, that all the countrey then wolde yelde to hym and trymble before hym; and for this entente he is come into Galyce, and hath gyuen one of his doughters in maryage to the kyng of Portyngale, to the entente that he sholde ayde his quarell; and, syr, I saye this to you, for if the matter sholde fall otherwyse then well, ye and your felowe shall bere more blame then ony other. Syr, sayd syr Gaultyer, I thanke you of your good aduertisement; and, syr, my seruyce shall be redy to doo you pleasure, for at this day ye be amonge other crysten prynces reputed for one of the moost sagest and happyest in all your aduentures; but, syr, my companyon and I haue one about vs who is chefe souerayne of all our company; that is the duke of Borbon; and tyll he be come into Castell, we shall make no hast to fyght with our enemyes, whatsoever ony man saye; so they entred into other talkyng, tyll the erle of Foyze demaunded for wyne. Then they dranke, and soo toke leue; the erle entred into his chambre, and syr Gaultyer returned to his lodgyng, well accompanied with the erles knyghtes, and so supped togyder.

The nexte day after dyner syr Gaultyer toke his leue of the erle of Foyze, and besyde other thynges the erle gaue hym a fayre courser and a mule: syr Gaultyer thanked the erle, and so departed out of Ortays, and lay the same nyght at Ercyell and the nexte nyght at Tarbe; he rode that daye a grete iourney, and then he determyned to sende fro thens to syr Wylyam of Lygnac, and soo he dyd, aduertysyng hym howe he had spedde with the erle of Foyze, and desyryng hym to come on forwarde with all  
theyr

theyr companyes and shewyng he howe the countrey of Byerne and all the good townes sholde be open, payenge trewely for that they take, or elles not.

This messagere dydde soo moche, that he came to Tholouse and dydde his message and deluyered his letters.

And when syr wylliam hadde redde the contynewe hereof, he made it to be knowen to all his company that they sholde set on forwarde, soo that as soone as they entred ony parte of the erle of Foyze lande to pay for euery thyng that they sholde take, elles theyr capytaynes to answer for euery thyng; this was cryed by the sounde of a trompet fro lodgyng to lodgyng, to the entente that euery man sholde knowe it; then euery man dyslodged out of  $\text{f}$  marches of Tholouse, Carcassone, Lymousin, and of Narbon, and so entred into Bygore; and syr Wylliam of Lygnac toke his hors, and rode to Tarbe to syr Gaultyer his companyon, and there made good chere togyder, and theyr bandes and rowtes passed by and assembled togyder in Bygore, to ryde in company thurgh the countrey of Byerne, and to passe at Ortays  $\text{f}$  ryuer of Gaure, whiche reneth to Bayon.

At the yssuyng out of the countrey of Byerne is the entre of the countrey of Bysquey, in  $\text{f}$  whiche countrey as then  $\text{f}$  kyng of englande helde grete landes in  $\text{f}$  bysshopyches of Burdeaus and Bayon; there were a lxxx. townes with steples that helde of the kyng of englande; and when they vnderstode of  $\text{f}$  passage of these freyssshmen thurgh theyr countrey, they were in doubte of ouer rynnynge, brennyng, and exylyng, for as then there were no men of war of theyr partye in all that countrey to defende theyr fronters; the sage men drewe togyder, and sente to trete with the freyssshe capytaynes and to bye theyr peas: then they sent to Ortays iiii. men, hauynge auctoryte to make theyr peas. These iiii. men met by the way with a squyer of the erle of Foyze, called Ernallon du Pyn, and shewed hym all theyr matter, desyryng hym to helpe thē to speke with syr Gaultyer of Passac and syr Wylliam of Lygnac when they came to Ortays, whiche sholde be within iii. or iiii. dayes after, and to helpe to ayde to make theyr peas; and he answered, that he wolde do so with a good wyll. The nyght that the capytayns came to Ortays, they were lodged at  $\text{f}$  same squyers house, and there he ayded them of Bysquey to make theyr apoyntment, and they to pay ii. M. frankes, and theyr countrey saued fro brennyng and robberyng. The erle of Foyze gawe a dynere to these capytaynes, and to syr Wylliam of Lygnac a fayre courser. The nexte daye they passed to Sameterre,<sup>a</sup> and entred into the countrey of Bysquey, whiche was redemed; they toke vytayles where as they myght gete it, and so passed thurgh the countrey without doynge of ony other damage, and so came to saynt Johñs de Pye of Porte,<sup>b</sup> at the entre of Nauare.

<sup>a</sup> Sauveterre.

<sup>b</sup> St. Jean Pied de Port.

*Howe syr Johan Holande and syr Raynolde de Roy fought togyder in lystes before the duke of Lancastre in the towne of Besances.<sup>a</sup>*

CAP. LXXVIII.<sup>b</sup>

HERE before ye haue herde howe the towne of Besances<sup>a</sup> was put in composycyon with  $\text{f}$  duke of Lancastre, and howe it was yelden vp to hym, for  $\text{f}$  kyng of Castell dyd comforte hym nothyng; and howe  $\text{f}$  duches of Lancastre and her daughter came to  $\text{f}$  cyte of Porte<sup>c</sup> in Portyngale, to se the kyng and the quene there, and howe the kyng and  $\text{f}$  lordes there receyued them ioyfully as it was reason; and thus whyle the duke of Lancastre sojourned in the towne of Besances,<sup>a</sup> tydynges came thyder fro Valeolyue,<sup>d</sup> brought by an heraulde of fraunce, who demaunded where was the lodgyng of syr Johā Holande: and so he was brought thyder; then he kneled downe before hym, and delyuered hym a letter, and sayd, syr, I am an offyceer of armes, sent hyder to you fro syr Raynolde du Roy, who saluteth you; yf it please you to rede your letter. Then syr Johā sayd, w̄ ryght a good wyll, and thou arte ryght welcome: and opened his letter and redde it, wherin was conteyned howe syr Raynolde du Roy desyred hym in the way of amours and for the loue of his lady to delyuer hym of his chalenge, iii. courses with a spere, iii. strokes w̄ a sworde, iii. with a dagger, and iii. with an axe; and that if it wolde please hym to come to Valeolyue,<sup>d</sup> he wolde prouyde for hym and lx. horse a sure saufoodyte; yf not, he wolde come to Besances<sup>a</sup> with xxx. horses, so that he wolde gete for hym a saufoodyte of the duke of Lancastre. When syr Johā Holande had red these letters, he began to smyle, and behelde the heraulde and sayd, frende, thou arte welcome; thou hast brought me tydynges  $\text{f}$  pleaseth me ryght wel, and I accepte his desyre; thou shalte abyde here in my house w̄ my company, and to morowe thou shalte haue answeere where our armes shal be accomplysshed, outhur in Galyce or in Castell. Syr, sayd  $\text{f}$  heraulde, as it pleaseth god and you.

The heraulde was there at his ease, and syr Johā wente to the duke, and founde hym talkyng with the marshall: then he shewed them his tydynges and the letters. Well, sayd the duke, and haue ye accepted his desyre? Ye, truely syr, sayd he; and I desyre nothyng so moche as dedes of armes, and the knyght hath desyred me; but nowe, syr, where shall it be your pleasure that we doo our armes? The duke studied a lytell, and then sayd, I wyll that they be done in this towne; make a saufoodyte for hym, as it shall please you, and I shall seale it. In the name of god, sayd syr Johā, that is well sayd. The saufoodyte was wryten for hym and xxx. knyghtes and squyers to come saufe and go saufe. Then syr Johā Holande delyuered it to the heraulde, and gaue hym a mantell furred with myneuer, and xii. aungell nobles. The heraulde toke his leue and retourned to Valeolyue<sup>d</sup> to his mayster, and there shewed howe he had sped, and delyuered the saufoodyte: on  $\text{f}$  other parte, tydynges came to the cyte of Porte<sup>c</sup> to the kyng of Portyngale and to the ladyes there, howe that these dedes of armes sholde be done at Besances.<sup>a</sup> Well, sayd the kyng, I wyll be therat, and the quene my wyfe, with other ladyes and damoysselles; and the duches of Lancastre, who was as then there, thanked the kyng in that she sholde at her retourne be accompanied with the kyng and with  $\text{f}$  quene; it was not longe after but the tyme approached. Then the kyng of Portyngale, the quene, the duches and her other daughter, with other ladyes and damoysselles, rode forth in grete aray towarde Besances;<sup>a</sup> and when the duke

VOL. II.

Q H

of

<sup>a</sup> Betanços.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXIV.<sup>c</sup> Oporto.<sup>d</sup> Valladolid.

of Lancastre knew that *ȝ* kyng came thyder, he toke his hors and many other lordes and yssued out of Besances,<sup>a</sup> and met the kyng and *ȝ* ladyes; there *ȝ* kyng and the duke made grete chere togyder, and so entred togyder into *ȝ* towne, and theyr lodgyng apoynted as it aperteyned accordynge to the maner of *ȝ* cuntry, and that was not so easye nor large as though they had ben at Parys.

About a iii. dayes after that the kyng of Portyngale was come to Besances,<sup>a</sup> thyder came syr Reynolde du Roy, well accompanied with knyghtes and squyers; he hadde a vi. score horses, and they were all well lodged, for the duke of Lancastre hadde preyed redy theyr lodgynges. Then *ȝ* nexte daye syr Johā Holande and syr Raynolde Roy were armed and mounted on theyr horses, and soo came to a fayre place, redy sanded, where they sholde do theyr armes, and scafoldes redy made for the kyng and for the ladyes, and for the duke and other lordes of englande, for they were all come thyder to se *ȝ* dedes of armes of these ii. knyghtes; they came into the felde as well apoynted as coulde be deuysed, and there was brought in theyr speres, theyr axes, and theyr swordes, and well horsed: and so eche of them a good dystaunce fro other made theyr tournes and fryskes fresshly, for they knewe well they were regarded; eury thyng was ordeyned at theyr desyre, and all theyr armes graunted, excepte the vtterance;<sup>b</sup> howbeit, no man knewe what sholde fal of theyr bodyes, for syth they were thyder come they must nedes mete at *ȝ* poynthe of theyr speres, and after that with theyr swordes, and then with axes and daggers: loo what daunger they were in to the entente to exhaulte theyr honoure, for theyr lyues lay but in the mysadventure of one stroke: thus they ranne togyder, and met as euen as though they hadde rynne by a lyne, and strake eche other in the vysoure of theyr helmes, so that syr Raynolde du Roy brake his spere in iiiii. peces, and *ȝ* sheuers flewe a grete hyght into *ȝ* ayre, whiche course was gretely praysed: syr Johā Holande strake syr Raynolde in lykewyse in *ȝ* vysoure, but the stroke was of no force; I shall shewe you why: syr Raynolde had the vysoure of his helme made at auautage, for it was tyed but with a small lase; the lase brake with *ȝ* stroke and the helme flewe of his heed, so that the knyght was bare headed, and so passed forth theyr course, and syr Johā dyscharged and bare his staffe fresshly; then eury man sayd it was a goodly course.

Then these knyghtes returned to theyr owne places, and syr Raynolde was helmed agayne and had a newe spere, and so they ranne togyder agayne; they were bothe well horsed, and coulde well guyde thē: they strake eche other on the helmes, so that the fyr flewe out; *ȝ* speres brake not, but syr raynoldes helme agayne flewe of his heed. A, sayd the Englysshmen, *ȝ* frenssheman hath auantage. Why is not his helme as fast boyled as syr Johā of Holandes is? we thynke he dothe wronge; let hym set his helme in lyke case as his companyon hath done his. Holde your peas, syrs, sayd the duke of Lancastre; let them dele in armes; let eury mā take his aduantage as he thynketh best: yf syr Johā Holande thynke *ȝ* the other knyght haue aduantage, let hym set on his helme in lyke maner; but as for me, sayd the duke, and I were in lyke armes as these ii. knyghtes be, I wolde haue my helme as fast boyled as I coulde; and I thynke here be many of the same oppynyon. Then the englysshemen spake no moo wordes: and the ladyes and damoysselles sayd howe the knyghtes had iusted well and goodly; and the kyng of Portyngale sayd the same, and spake to syr Johā Ferant,<sup>c</sup> and sayd, syr Johā, in our cuntry knyghtes iust not in this goodly maner. Syr, sayd he, these knyghtes do iust wel; and, syr, I haue sene or this *ȝ* frensshmen iust before *ȝ* kyng your broder, when we were at Elyres,<sup>d</sup> agaynst the kyng of Castell; lyke iustes I sawe there bytwene syr wyllyam Wyndsoore and another frensshe knyght: but theyr helmes were

<sup>a</sup> Betancos.<sup>b</sup> Combat à l'outrance. "To extremity."<sup>c</sup> Fernando.<sup>d</sup> Elvas.

were faster tyed then this knyghtes helme is:<sup>a</sup> then the kyng regarded agayne the two knyghtes, to se theyr thyrd course.

Thus they ranne togyder *ÿ* thyrd course, and regarded eche other wysely to take theyr aduantage; they myght well so doo, for theyr horses serued them at theyr wyslyng, and so they strake eche other agayne on the helme in suche wyse *ÿ* theyr eyen trembled in theyr heedes and theyr staues brake, and agayne syr Raynoldes helme flewe of his heed, and so eche other passed forth theyr course and demaned themselfe fresshly, so that euery man sayd howe they had nobly iusted; but the englysshmen blamed gretely syr Raynolde du Roy in that his helme was no faster set on his heed; but the duke of Lancastre blamed hym nothyng, but sayd, I thynke hym wyse that can in feates of armes seke his lawfull aduantage; it semeth well *ÿ* syr Raynolde is not to lerne to iust, he knoweth more therin then syr Johā doth, though he haue borne hymselfe ryght well. So thus after theyr courses with theyr speres they toke theyr axes, and dyd theyr armes with them, and gaue eche other iii. grete strokes on theyr helmes, and then they fought with theyr swordes and after with theyr daggers, and when all was done there was none of them hurte. The frensshmen brought syr Raynolde to his lodgyng, and the Englysshmen syr Johā Holande to his. The same day the duke of Lancastre made a dyner to all the frensshmen in his lodgyng, and the duches set at the table by the duke, and syr Raynolde du Roy bynethe her: after dyner they wente into a counsaile chambre, and *ÿ* duches toke syr Raynolde by the hande, and made hym to entre as sone as herselfe; and there she comoned with hym and other of the frensshe knyghtes tyll it was tyme to call for drynke; then *ÿ* duches sayd to the frensshe knyghtes, syrs, I haue meruayle of you, that ye do susteyne *ÿ* wronge oppynyon of a bastarde; for ye knowe well, and soo dothe all the worlde, that Henry that was sometyme called kyng of Castel was a bastarde; therfore what iust cause haue you to susteyne that quarell, and ayde to your power to dysheryte the ryght ayre of Castell? for I knowe well, and soo dothe all the worlde, that I and my syster were daughters by lawful maryage to kyng Peter: wherfore god knoweth what ryght we haue to the royalme of Castell; and the good lady, whē she spake of her fader, she wepte. Then syr Raynolde du Roy made his obeysaunce and sayd, Madame, we knowe ryght well that all is of trouth that ye haue sayd; howbeit, *ÿ* kyng our mayster is of the contrary oppynyon agaynst you, and we be his subiectes, and must make warre at his pleasure, and go where as he wyll sende vs; we maye not say nay. So the duches departed to the duke, and *ÿ* frensshe knyghtes dranke, and then toke theyr leues and wente to theyr lodgyng, and there euery thyng was redy to departe, and then they mounted and departed fro Besances,<sup>b</sup> and rode the same daye to Noy,<sup>c</sup> and there they rested, and then rode forth tyll they came to Valeolyue.<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup> This passage is strangely corrupt; the proper reading is—"I have before seen this frenchman joust against Sir William Windsor before your brother, when we were opposed to the king of Castille at Elvas; he then jouted well, but I never heard that he fastened on his helmet more tightly than he has now done."—*Lions' edit.* <sup>b</sup> Betanços. <sup>c</sup> Noya. <sup>d</sup> Valladolid.

*Howe the kynge of Portyngale and the duke of Lancastre determyned to entre into the royalme of Castell.*

C A P. LXXIX. <sup>a</sup>

AFTER these dedes of armes done, as I haue recorded, the kynge of Portyngale and the duke of Lancastre toke counsaile togyder, and determyned to ryde and to entre into Castell within a shorte space, and that the kynge of Portyngale with all his power sholde ryde on the fronters and so to entre into Castell, and the duke and his rowte to entre on the boundes of Galyce, and to conquere suche townes and fortresses as were agaynst hym; and yf Johñ of Castell dyd assemble his oost agaynst them to make batayle, thē bothe theyr oostes to drawe togyder; it was thought moost necessary to haue theyr oostes asondre tyll nede were rather than togyder, to excheue syknes y myght fall, and to haue the more easier lodgyng and foragyng, in exchewing of debates and dyscordes, for englysshmen be hasty and prowde in y felde, and the Portyngales hote and dysdayful and can not suffre; but it was thought y in a grete journey of batayle they sholde ryght wel agree togyder: this cōsaile was determyned, and the kynge sayd to the duke, syr, as soone as I haue knowledge that ye set forwarde, I shall doo in lyke case, for I and my men be redy, and they desyre nothyng elles but batayle. Syr, sayd the duke, and I shall not longe syt styll: it is shewed me howe as yet there be certayne townes in Galyce y rebell agaynst vs; I wyll goo and vysyte them, and after that I wyll seke out for our enemyes whersoer I can fynde them. Thus the kynge of Portyngale toke leue of the duke and duches, and in lyke wyse so dyd the quene Phelyp and her yonge syster katheryne, for it was ordeyned that the yonge lady sholde abyde al the warre season with her syster the quene at the cyte of Porte<sup>b</sup> in Portyngale; it was thought she coule not be in oyr better kepyng: and y duches returned to saynt Jaques in Galyce: so thus enery body departed thyder as they sholde doo; the kynge to the cyte of Porte,<sup>b</sup> and the duches to the towne of saynt Jaques, well accompanied with knyghtes and squyers; and the duke taryed at Besances<sup>c</sup> and there aboute, and prepayred shortly to set forwarde; he was desyrus to departe, bycause it was in the ioly lusty moneth of Aprell, at whiche season in Galyce the grasse is full growen, and all theyr corne, and herbes, floures, and fruytes redy rype; the countrey is so hote, y in the begynnyng of June haruest is past: the duke thought the season goodly to set forwarde his army.

Nowe let vs somewhat speke of the orderynge of the frensshmen and of kynge Johñ of Castell, as well as we haue done of the englysshmen.

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXV.

<sup>b</sup> Oporto.

<sup>c</sup> Betanços.



*Howe syr wylliam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac came to the ayde of kynge Johan of Castell.*

CAP. LXXX.<sup>a</sup>

HERE before ye haue herde howe syr Wylliam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac dyd so moche by theyr wyse entreatyng of the erle of Foyze, y<sup>e</sup> he suffred them peasybly to passe thurgh his countrey of Byerne to go into Castell; and besyde that, the erle gaue them grete rewardes, for there were noo knyghtes nor squyers, straungers, that came to se hym, but that he wolde largely reward them accordyng to theyr degrees; to some a C. floreynes, to some CC. floreynes, and xxx. or xl; so that this sayd fyrst passage of the Frensshemen cost the erle of Foyze, as his owne treasurer shewed me, the some of a M. frankes, besyde horses and other thynges that he gaue: to say trouth, surely it is grete damage y<sup>e</sup> suche a persone sholde be olde or dye; he had no mermosettes aboute hym to say, syr, take here, and gyue this, and pynche and pyl the people; surely he had none suche aboute hym, he dyd euery thyng on his owne mynde, for naturally he had grete wysdome, and coulde gyue where nede was, and take as it became hym best; and, by reasan of his larges and grete expences, somtyme he trauayled his subiectes, for his renenewes were not suffycyent to bere out his gyftes, whiche were yerely lx. M. frankes, y<sup>e</sup> whiche lyke haue not ben sene nor herde of ony other; yet he assembled his treasure for doubte of all adventures in xxx. yere xxx. tymes a C. M. frankes, and yet for all that his people alwayes prayde to god for his longe lyfe: and I herde it reported, howe when he dyed<sup>b</sup> there were in Foyze and in Byerne x. M. persones that sayd y<sup>e</sup> they wolde gladly haue dyed with hym, wherby it is to be thought that they sayd not so without it had ben for grete loue y<sup>e</sup> they had to their lorde; and surely if they loued hym, they dyd but ryght and accordyng to reason, for he alwayes maynteyned them in theyr ryght and kepte euer true iustyce, for all his lades, and the people therin had as grete lyberte and franchise, and lyued in as good peas as though they had ben in paradyse terrestre. I say not this for flattery, nor for fauour nor loue that I bere hym, nor for the gyftes that he hath gyuen me; but I can well proue all that I haue sayd, for I am sure there be a M. knyghtes and squyers wyll saye the same.

Nowe let vs retourne to syr Wylliam of Lygnac and to syr Gaultyer of Passac, who were capytaynes and souerayne leders of all the frensshie armye; when they were passed the countrey of Bysquey and the pase of Rounceuall, whiche cost them iii. dayes a passyng, the mountaynes were so full of snowe, for all that it was in the moneth of Aprell, yet they and theyr horses hadde moche payne to passe thurgh. Then they came towards Pampylona, and there they founde the royalm of Nauare redy open for to suffre them to passe thurgh, for the kynge of Nauare wolde not doo no dyspleasure to the kynge of Castell, bycause his sone, syr Charles of Nauare, had to his wyfe as then the kynge of Castelles syster; and when the peas was made bytwene kynge Henry and the fader of kynge John of Nauare, they made and promysed grete alyauce togyder, whiche they longe kepte: for the kynge of Nauare was not able to resyst the kynge of Castell, without he had grete alyauce and comfote of y<sup>e</sup> kynge of Aragon, or elles of y<sup>e</sup> kynge of englande.

These capytaynes of Fraunce came to Pampylona, where the kynge of Nauare was,  
who

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXVI.

<sup>b</sup> "When he should die."

who receyued them ioyfully, and made them to dyne with hym in his palays; after dyner he led them into his chambre, and there comoned w̄ them of dyuers thynges, for ȳ kyng there was a wyse man and a subtell and well langaged: and amonge other thynges he shewed them howe f̄ frensshe kyng and his counsayle had ben dyspleased with hym without a cause, and wrongfully had taken fro hym his herytage and landes in Normandy, whiche he ought to haue by successyon of his predecessours, kynges of fraunce and of Nauare, whiche he sayd he coulde not forgete, seyng he had taken fro hym in Normandy, Languedoc, and in the barony of Mountpellyer, the some of lx.M. frankes of yerely reuenues: and he sayd he wyst not to whome to complayne to haue ryght, but all onely to god. Syrs, sayd the kyng, I say not this to you, bycause ye sholde addressse my wronges, for I knowe well it lyeth not in your power, for I thynke the frensshe kyng wyll do but lytell for you in that behalfe, for ye be none of his counsayle: ye be but knyghtes, aduentyrers, and sowdyours, to go wheresoeuer he sende you; but I speke this in maner of complaynte to al knyghtes in Fraunce that passe by me. Then syr Gaultyer of Passac sayd, syr, your wordes be true, yf that you saye that our kyng for all vs wyll nother gyue nor take; for surely, syr, we be not of his counsayle, but redy to go where as he wyll sende vs; but, syr, the duke of Borbon, who is our souerayne capytayne and vncler to our kyng, cometh after vs this same waye; outhur goyng or retournyng ye maye shewe hym your busynes, by hym ye maye be addresssed of all your complayntes; and, syr, we praye to god that he maye rewarde you of the honour that ye haue done to vs; and, syr, we shall shewe your curtoysye to our kyng and to his counsayle when we retourne into fraunce, and also to the duke of Borbone, who is our chefe capytayne, whome we trust to se or we se the kyng; and then wyne was brought, and they dranke and toke theyr leue of the kyng, and ȳ kyng rewardeed them largely, and sente to eche of them to theyr lodgyng goodly horses, wherof they had grete ioye.

Thus these men of warre passed through the royalme of Nauare and came to Groyne,<sup>a</sup> and there demaunded where they sholde fynde the kyng of Castell; and it was shewed them howe he had lyeu at Valeolyue<sup>b</sup> a grete season, but as then they sayd they thought he was at Burgus in Spayne, there makyng his prouysyon; then they toke the way to Burgus, and lefte the way to Galyce, for that way was not sure for them, for the Englysshemen were sore abrode in the cuntrye. Tydynges came to the kyng of Castell howe socoures came to hym out of fraunce to the nombre of ii. M. speres, wherof he was ryght glad, and so departed fro Valeolyue<sup>b</sup> and rode to Burgus with a vi. M. hors. Thus these frenssmen of armes came to Burgus, and lodged theraboute abrode in the cuntrye, and dayly thyder came men of warre; and syr wyllyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac came to the kyng into his palays, who receyued them swetely, and thanked them of the payne and grete traouyle that they had taken for his sake as to come thyder to serue hym. The knyghtes made theyr reuerence and sayd, syr, yf we maye do you ony seruyce to please you, our paynes shall soone be forgotten; but, syr, and it please you to take aduysse howe we shal do, outhur to ryde agaynst our enemyes, or elles to make them warre by garysons tyll suche season as the duke of Borbon be come; and, syr, yf it please you ye maye sende for syr Olyuer of Clysqy,<sup>d</sup> we knowe well he is in his cuntrye, and for syr Peter of Vyllaynes, the Barroys of Barres, Chatell Morant, and the other companyons who haue haunted this cuntrye more then we haue done, for they were here longe before vs; and then let vs al counsayle togyder, and with goddes grace you and your royalme shal haue honoure and profyete. Syrs, sayd the kyng, ye speke wysely, and thus shal it be done. Then clerkes were set aworke, and letters made and messagers sent forthe into dyuers places to the knyghtes and men

of

<sup>a</sup> Logrono.<sup>b</sup> Valladolid.<sup>c</sup> X.<sup>d</sup> Du Guesclin.

of warre there as they were spred abroad in the country; and when they knewe that syr Wyllyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac were at Burgus with the kyng, they were gretely reioyced therof: then these knyghtes and other companions departed fro their garysons, and lefte them in sure kepyng, and so rode to Burgus in spayne; soo that there was a grete nombre of Frensshe men of warre.

Then the kyng of Castel and his lordes and knyghtes of fraunce went to cōsaille togyder, to se how they sholde maynteyne theyr warre, for they knewe well theyr enemyes rode abroad and kepte  $\hat{y}$  feldes; wherfore they thought to prouyde some remedy to the honoure of the kyng and profyte of the royalme of Castell. So there were many matters debated in this counsaile, and then all theyr people were nombred, and it was sayd that of the royalme selfe they myght well bryng togyder a xxx. M. horses, and the men well armed, after the vsage of Castell, with dartes and Janelyns, and foote men castyng stones out of slynges other xxx. M. The frensshe knyghtes amonge themselves consydrad at this, and sayd one to another, this is a grete nombre of people and they were good men of warre, but they be lytel worth, for we haue sene suche slowfulnes in them, that we haue no grete trust to them, as it appered as well in the batayle of Marres,<sup>a</sup> where the prynce of Wales had the vycory as at  $\hat{y}$  batayle of Juberoth,<sup>b</sup> where as the Portyngales and Gascoynes were, and alwaye the Spanyardes were dyscomfyted. Then the erle of Lune,<sup>c</sup> in susteynyng  $\hat{y}$  Castellyans and in excusyng of them sayd, syrs, as to the batayle of Marres,<sup>a</sup> I shall answeyre you; it is of trouthe  $\hat{y}$  syr Bertram of Clesquy<sup>d</sup> and a grete nombre of knyghtes of Fraunce were there and fought valyauntly, for they were all taken or slayne; but ye haue herde, and ye know well, that agaynst them was the floure of all the chyualry of the worlde, bothe in wysdome, valyauntnes, and prowes, the whiche is not nowe with the duke of Lancastre; the prynce at the batayle of Marres<sup>a</sup> had x. M. speres and vi. M. archers; they were suche men that there were a iii. M. of them euery man worth a Rowlande or an Olyuere; but the duke of Lancastre hath none suche; he passeth not a xii. or a xv. C. speres and a iiii. M. archers, and we be a vi. M. speres; nor we shall not fyght agaynst Rowlande nor Olyuer. Syr Johñ Chandos, syr Thomas Felton, syr Olyuer Clysso, syr Hughe Gaurel,<sup>e</sup> syr Rycharde Pountchardon, syr Garsis,<sup>f</sup> the lorde of Ryeux, and syr Rycharde<sup>g</sup> Dangle: I coulde name v. C. suche that were there; they be deed;<sup>h</sup> we shall fynde none suche now; wherfore the matter is not soo peyllous as it was in tyme past, for yf ye wyll byleue me, we shall go fyght with them and passe the ryuer of Derne,<sup>i</sup> it shall tourne vs to grete valyauntnes. The counsaile that the erle of Lune<sup>c</sup> dyd gyue was wel herde, and there were many that helde  $\hat{y}$  same oppynyon. Then syr Olyuer of Clysquy<sup>d</sup> sayd, syr erle of Lune,<sup>c</sup> we knowe well all that ye haue sayd procedeth of your grete wysdome and valyauntnes; but, syr, take it so that we goo and fyght with the duke of Lancastre; yf that were all, we sholde do well ynoughe; but, syr, we leue  $\hat{y}$  grettest matter behynde, as the kyng of Portyngale and his puyssaūce, for, as we be enfourmed, they be xxv. C. speres and xxx. M. of other men of war: for on the trust of the kyng of Portyngale  $\hat{y}$  duke of Lancastre is entred into Galyce, and they haue made a grete alyauce togyder, for the kyng hath maryed the dukes daughter. Nowe, syr, what saye you to this? In the name of god, sayd the erle of Lune,<sup>c</sup> ye knyghtes of Fraunce are suffeycent to fyght with the duke of Lancastre; and the kyng of Castell and the Castellyans, who be as they say xx. M. horse and xxx. M. a foote, they may fyght with the kyng of Portyngale; I dare well abyde  $\hat{y}$  aduenture amonge them. When the frenssshmen sawe how the erle of Lune<sup>c</sup> layde it so sore to theyr charge, sayd, syr, ye be in  $\hat{y}$  ryght

<sup>a</sup> Najara.<sup>f</sup> Du Châtel.<sup>b</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>g</sup> Guiscard.<sup>c</sup> Lerma.—*Johnes.*<sup>h</sup> "Or are now come over to us;" omitted.<sup>d</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>e</sup> Calverley.<sup>i</sup> Ducro.

ryght and we be in  $\hat{y}$  wronge; for, syr, we sholde haue sayd as ye do; and, syr, let it soo be and you wyll; there is none of vs shall saye agaynst your wyll. Syrs, sayd the kyng, I requyre you all counsayle me truely, and not in hast nor by pryde, but by sad aduyse and humylyte, and then let vs take the best waye: I wyll not conclude to accepte this journey; I wyl we mete agayne togyder to morowe in this same chambre; and ye, syr Wylyyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac, who are sente hyder into this cuntry by the frensshe kyng and by the duke of Borbon, I requyre you go togyder and take aduyse, and counsayle me to that shall be thought moost best and honourable to me and to my royalme, for it shall lye in you whether we shall fyght with our enemyes or not. They made theyr reuerence, and sayd they wolde obey his commaundement, and so departed.

Thus euery man that daye departed to theyr lodgynges, and the frenssshmen as they were togyder had grete communicacyon; some sayd, we cannot honourably fyght with our enemyes tyll the duke of Borbon, our souerayne capytayne, be come; we can not tell yf he wolde fyght with them or not: be it soo that we fyght with them and haue the vycory, the duke of Borbon wyll be sore dyspleased with vs, and specyally with vs that be the frensshe capytaynes: and yf the fortune sholde fall agaynst vs, we sholde then bothe lose our bodies and the royalme; for yf we were ouerthrown, there were no recouery in the Castellyans, but that the kyng of Castell were lyke to lese all his royalme for this tyme, and we sholde bere more fawte then any other, for it sholde be layde howe we had caused the batayle and gawe no good counsayle; nor also we be in noo suretye yf the royalme be all sure on the kynges partye or not, or whether they haue couertly sente for the duke of Lancastre and his wyfe or not, who is reputed for heyre of Castell, for she was doughter to kyng Don Peter; all the worlde knoweth that; so that when the people se the duke and his wyfe with  $\hat{y}$  englysshmen in the felde demaundyng the crowne of Castell, affyrmyng how they haue ryght therto, for kyng Johñ, who was kyng as then, was sone to a bastarde, then peraduenture they may tourne to theyr parte, as they dyd in  $\hat{y}$  grete batayle of Maures,<sup>a</sup> and soo sholde we abyde deed in the felde; so we thinke there is double peryll bothe to the kyng and to vs; but suche folysshe people gyue the kyng counsayle to batayle, and are herde before them that sholde speke.<sup>b</sup> Well, syrs, sayd syr wylyyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac,<sup>b</sup> to morowe shall be knowen euery mannes opynyon. So that day and nyght the frenssshmen were at dyuers communicacyons, and in lyke wyse soo were the spanyardes. Suche as loued the kyng wolde not counsayle hym to fyght, for dyuers reasons; one was, if he fought and lost the batayle, he lost his royalme without recouery: the kyng hymselfe thought it not good to fyght; he fered sore the fortune of the warre; nor also he knewe not euery mannes mynde, who loued hym and who dyd not. Thus the matter rested tyll the nexte daye; then euery man returned to the payllys, and the kyng entred into counsayle.

In this counsayle were many opynyons, for euery man to his power wolde truely counsayle the kyng; dyuers counsayled hym that he sholde not encline hastely to batayle, puttyng hym in remembrance of the harde journey that he had at Juberoth,<sup>c</sup> where as the kyng of Portyngale dyscomfyted hym, wherby he had suche damage, that yf suche another chaunce sholde fall, he sholde lese his royalme for euer. When the kyng had demaunded euery man, and herde all theyr oppynyons, then he sayd to  
syr

<sup>a</sup> Najara.

<sup>b</sup> "Such as Sir William of Lignac and Sir Walter of Passac: why have they not spoken? Because, said others, they wish first to know the sentiments of others; but it is hardly possible but that they have been instructed (when they left the council of the king and the duke of Bourbon) as to the course they are to pursue."—*Lions' edit.*

<sup>c</sup> Aljubarota.

syr wylliam of Lygnacke and to syr Gaultyer of Passac: syrs, let me here your opynyons, for by you all shal be ordeyned, seyng ye be the chefe capytaynes of the fresshemen sente hyder by the fresshhe kyng and his counsaile. These ii. knyghtes regarded eche other, and syr Wylliam sayd to syr Galtyer, syr, speke you: and he answered and sayd, may I wyll not; speke you, ye haue vsed armes more then I haue done. Then syr Wylliam aduysed hymselfe, and sayd, syr, and it lyke your grace, me thynke ye ought gretely to thanke the noble chyualry of Fraunce, who are come hyder to serue you soo farre of; and, syr, it hathe shewed well howe they haue none affeccyon nor wyll to be closed in ony cyte or towne, castell, or garyson, that ye haue; but they are and haue ben desyrous to kepe the feldes, and to fynde out, and to fyght with your enemyes, the whiche thyng nowe, sauynge your grace, can not be suffred for dyuers reasons; the pryncypall reason is, syr, we tary for the duke of Borbon, who is our souerayne capytayne, who wyll be here shortly, and he shall gretely enforce vs with newe fressh men; there be many nowe here with vs that were neuer in this countrey before; it were necessary that they lerned the maner of this countrey a two or a three monethes, for it prouctli but seldome well to hastely to fyght with oure enemyes; but lette vs make wyse warre by garysons a two or a three monethes, and let the Englysshemen and Portyngales ryde abrode in Galyce where they lyst; yf they conquere certayne townes, it is but a small matter; as soone as they be departed out of the countrey, they wyll be soone wonne agayne: also, syr, there is one poynte. in armes lyeth many aduentures; syr, let them ryde abiode in the countrey, whiche is hooete and of a stronge ayre; they maye take suche trauaile and sykenes, that they maye happen repente them that they haue come soo forwarde, for they shall not fynde the ayre soo attemperate there as it is in Englande or in fraūce, nor the wynes so pleasaut: for in Galyce the ryuers be troublous and coolde, bycause of the snowes that dyscende downe from the mountaynes, wherby they and theyr horses, after they trauaile all the daye in the hote sone, shall be morfoundred or they be ware; they be not made of stele nor yet of yron, but at lengthe they shall not endure the hote countrey of Castell; they be men as we be: thus I thynke we can not better bete them, but to let them go where they lyst, they shall fynde nothyng in the playne countreys, nor no delectable places to refresshe them, for, as I vnderstande, all the open countrey is allredy dystroyed with our owne men, and I alowe well that aduys; for yf it were to doo, I wolde counsaile the same. Syrs, yf there be ony here can speke better, let hym speke, we shall be glad to here hym; and this syr Gaultyer and I desyre you all thus to doo. Then they all answered with one voyce, lette this aduys be admytted; we can conseyder no better nor more profytable way for the kyng of Castel and his royalme.

So it was there they concluded that they sholde make no countenance of warre tyll the duke of Borbon and all theyr prouysyons were come; but that theyr men of warre to be put into dyuers garysons on the fronters of theyr countrey, and suffre the englysshmen and Portyngales to go in and out into the royalme of Castell at theyr pleasure, sayenge howe they coulde not bere awaye the countrey with them whensoever they retourned. Thus ended the counsaile. The kyng of Castel had the same daye all them at dyner with hym in his palays at Burgus in Spayne, ryght plentyfull after the vsage of Spayne: by the nexte daye at none al the men of armes departed thyder as they were appoynted by theyr capytaynes; syr Olyuer Clysquy, and the erle of Longueuyle,<sup>a</sup> with a thousande speres, wente to a stronge towne on the fronter of Galyce, called Vyllesaunte,<sup>b</sup> and syr Raynolde and syr Trystram of Roie was sente to another garyson a x. legges fro the fronter of Galyce, called Agyllar<sup>c</sup> in the felde, with thre hundred

VOL. II.

2 I

dred

<sup>a</sup> Du Guesclin, Earl of Longueville.<sup>b</sup> Villalpando?<sup>c</sup> Avila?

dred speres; Syr Peter of Bellysme, with two hundred speres, wente to Pouelles;<sup>a</sup> the vycounte of Lune<sup>b</sup> wente to the towne of Marolle;<sup>c</sup> syr Johñ of Barres, with thre hundred speres, was sente to the castell of Noya within Galyce; syr Johñ of castell Morant and syr Trystram of Jayell and dyuers other were sente to the cyte of Palance;<sup>d</sup> and the vycount of Belyer wente to the towne of Rybede, and with hym syr Johñ of Braquen<sup>e</sup> and syr Robert of Braquen.

Thus these men of armes were deuyded, and syr Olyuer of Clysquy<sup>f</sup> was made theyr constable; and syr Wylyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac abode styl with the kyng as Burgus. In this case standyng was the busynes of Castell, abydyng the comyng of the duke of Borbon, who was styl in Fraunce makyng prouysyon for his journey.

Nowe we wyl suffre in rest a season the armye of Castell and of the duke of Lancastre, and also of the kyng of Portyngale, and when the tyme requyreth we shal retourne therto agayne. And nowe lette vs speke of the aduentures that fell in the same season in Fraunce and in englande, the whiche were troublous and peryllous for bothe royalmes, and sore dyspleasaunt vnto the kynges and to bothe theyr counsailes.

*How a grete myscheffe fell in Englande bytwene the gentyll men and comons, for accomplte of suche money as hadde ben reysed of the comons.*

#### C A P. LXXXI.<sup>g</sup>

HERE before ye haue herde howe the Frensshe armye, with shyppes on ÿ se that were assembled at Sluse to haue gone into Englande was dashed and broken vp; yet, to shewe courage and desyre to goo another season into englande, and that it sholde not be sayd that the Frensshemmen were recreaunt to haue made that voyage, therefore it was ordeyned, that incontynent at the entre of May, and that the see myght be layre and pleasaunt, the constable of Fraunce sholde make a journey into englande with iiii. M. men of armes and ii. M. crosse bowes, and they sholde all assemble togvder at a cyte agaynst the fronter of Cornewall, called Lentrygnyer,<sup>h</sup> and ther to be made all theyr prouysyon; and it was ordeyned every man to haue a horse, the more easely to ryde abrode in Englande: for it was thought without horse they coulde make noo warre that sholde auayle them; soo there was assembled at this hauen of Lentygnyer,<sup>h</sup> a goodly apparell of shyppes, barks, Bagengers,<sup>i</sup> and galeys, welournysshed with wyne, salte fleshe, and bysquet, and other thynges so largely, that it was sufficyent for them to lyue by a foure or fyue monethes, without takyng or byenge of ony thyng in the country; for ÿ constable and his company knewe well that as soone as the Englysshemmen knewe of suche a company of men of warre comyng on them, they wolde dystroye theyr owne goodes abrode in the playne country, rather than we sholde haue ony ease therof; therefore the constable made his prouysyon redy on that syde the see: also there was ordeyned another flete of shyppes at the hauen of Harflewe: for the lorde of Coucy, the lorde of saynt Poule and the admyrall of Fraunce sholde there take shyppyng, with two thousand speres, in lykewyse to goo into Englande: and as the brute wente, all this was done to drawe backe agayne the duke of Lancastre and the duches out of Castell. The same season the duke of Borbon was at Parys, and thought surely

<sup>a</sup> Benevento.—*Johnes.*

<sup>e</sup> Braquemont.—*Ibid.*

<sup>f</sup> Treguiet.

<sup>b</sup> Lerma.

<sup>c</sup> Du Guesclin.

<sup>d</sup> Zamora.—*Johnes.*

<sup>d</sup> Valencia.—*Ibid.*

<sup>e</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXVII.

<sup>g</sup> Balengier; *vaisseau corsaire.*—Glossaire de la Langue Romane.—Angl.—*A privateer.*

surely that the duke of Lancaſtre ſholde retourne home agayne into Englande; wherefore he thought he ſholde haue no thyng to doo to go into caſtell, nor to trauaile his body ſo farre forth: ſo it was determyned that in the Conſtables armye ſholde goo Bretons, Angeuyns, Poycteuyns, Manceaus, and Xayngecons, with knyghtes and ſquyers of the lowe marches; and with the lorde of ſaynt Poule and with the lorde of Concy ſholde go Ireſſhmen, Normans, and Pycardes; and with the duke of Borbon ſholde goo two thouſande ſperes of Berrey, Auuernake, of Lymosyn, Borgoyne, and of the baſe marches. Thus in that ſeaſon the matters were concluded in Fraunce, and eury man knewe what he ſholde do, outhur to go into Englande or into Caſtell.

And true it was the royalme of Englande the ſame tyme was in grete peryll, and in a gretter icoperdye then when the vyllaynes of Eſſex and Kent rebelled agaynſt the kyng and the nobles of the royalme, at whiche tyme they came vnto London; I ſhall ſhewe you the reaſon why: at that ſeaſon all the noble men of the royalme toke one parte togyder with the kyng agaynſt the comons, but nowe it is not ſoo; the nobles vary amonge themſelfe. The kyng is agaynſt his owne vnclcs, the duke of yorke and the duke of Gloceſtre, and they were agaynſt hym; and all this varyaunce dyd ryſe by the meanes of the duke of Irelande, who bare all the chefe rule aboute the kyng: and the comons of Englande in dyuers cytees knewe well of this dyscorde; they that were ſage men reputed it for a grete euyl, and fered that moche trouble ſholde growe therby; but ſuche as were lyght perſones made noo rekenyng therof, ſome ſayenge that it was for ennye that the kynges vnclcs hadde agaynſt the kyng theyr nephewe, and bycauſe they ſawe howe the crowne of Englande began to growe farre of frome them; and ſome other ſayd how the kyng was but yonge, and byleued yonge counſayle: and howe that it were better for hym to byleue hys vnclcs, who mente noo thyng to hym but al honoure and profyte, nor to the royalme of Englande, rather then to be ruled by the prowde duke of Irelande, who neuer ſawe ony thyng pertheynyng to honoure, nor neuer was in ony batayle. Thus eury man dyffered from other in the royalme of Englande, whiche trybulacyons were well known in Fraunce; wherefore they made this grete prouyſyon to goo thyder with all theyr puyſſaunce, thynkyng to doo a grete feate; on the other ſyde, the prelates of englande were in hatred one with another, as the archebyſſhop of Cauntorbury, who was of the Neuelles blood,<sup>a</sup> with the archebyſſhop of yorke, and yet they were countrey men borne; but they hated mortally eche other, bycauſe the lorde Neuell hadde the rule and gouernaunce of Northumbrelande, and ſoo to the marches of Skotlande, aboute the erle of Northumbrelande and his chyldren, the lorde Henry and the lorde Raffe of Percy: whiche rule the lorde Neuelles broder<sup>b</sup> had gotten hym, for he was one of the chefe aboute the kyng with the duke of Irelande.

<sup>a</sup> The archbiſhop of York was of the Neville's blood.

<sup>b</sup> "The archbiſhop of York."—*Lyons' edit.*

*Of the grete dyscordes that were in Englande after the brekyng of the Frensshe armye, and how the governours about the kynge were constrayned by the comons of the good townes to make accomptes of suche money as was come into their handes the season that they ruled.*

CAP. LXXXII.<sup>a</sup>

AS sone as the englysshmen knewe that the voyage by the see that the frensshmen sholde haue made beyng at Sluse was dashed and broken, then in Englande began dyuers murmuracyons in sundry places; and suche as loued euyll rule rather then good, sayd, Where be nowe these grete entrepryses and these valyaunt men of englande y were in the dayes of kynge Edwarde the thyrde, and with the prynce his sone? we were wonte to go into Fraunce, and put backe our enemies in suche maner that none durst make baytyle with vs; yf they dydde, they were soone dyscomfyted.

O what a dede was that when the noble kynge Edwarde aryued in Normandy and in Constantyne,<sup>b</sup> and passed thurgh the royalm of Fraunce, and what goodly entrepryse he acheued in his waye; and alter at Cressy he dyscomfyted kynge Phylp and all the puyssaunce of Fraunce, and or he returned he wan the towne of Calays; but as nowe the knyghtes and men of warre in Englande doo none suche feates.

Also the prynce of Wales, sone to this noble kynge, dyd he not take the Frensshe kynge Johñ, and dyscomfyted his puysaunce at Poycters with a smal nombre of people agaynst the people that kynge Johñ hadde? In those dayes Englande was fered and doubted, and we were spoken of thrughe al the worlde for y floure of chyualry; but as nowe no man speketh of vs, for nowe there is noo warre made but at poore mennes purses: therto every man is enclyned; in Fraunce as nowe the kynge there is but a chyld, and yet he hath done more agaynst vs then any of his predecessours; and also he shewed grete courage to haue come into Englande, the lette therof was not by hym, but by his men. The tyme hath ben sene that yf suche an apparell of shyppes had ben made at Sluse, they sholde haue ben foughten withall in their owne hauen: and nowe the noble men of Englande are ioyfull, when they maye sytte at rest and suffre them in peas; but yet for all that, they suffre not poore men to be in rest, but put them to busynes to paye money. The tyme hath ben that grete conquestes haue ben done in fraunce without payenge of ony money; but suche ryches as hath ben gotten there it hath ben spred abrode in the royalm. Where is become y grete fynances and tayles that hath ben gadered in this royalm, with the kynges rentes and accustomed reuenues? outhur they haue lost it or taken fro them: it is behouable that it be knowen howe the royalm of Englande is gouerned, and howe the kynge is ledde; it were not good that it sholde be longe or it were knowen, for this royalm of Englande is not soo ryche nor so puysaunt to bere lyke charges as the royalm of Fraunce dothe.

Also it appereth wel that we in this royalm of englande are febled of wyttes and of grace: we were wonte to knowe euery thyng that was done in Fraunce a thre or foure monethes or the case fell, wherby we myght conueniently make prouysyon and resystance, but as nowe we knowe noo thyng; but the frensshemen knoweth all our secretes and counsayles; we can not tell in whome is the fawte; it wyll be knowen vpon a daye. There be some prey traytours, and it were better it were knowen betymes then to late, for it maye be knowen soo late that it wyll be past remedy.

Thus

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXVIII.<sup>b</sup> The Coutantin.



Thus dyuersely men talked in Englande, as well knyghtes and squyers, as the comons, soo that the royalle laye in a harde case and grete peryll. And the grete assembly that the kyng, and his vnclcs, and his counsaile hadde made with grete expence in dyuers maners to resyst the frensshe kyng, beyng at Sluse, redy to entre into Englande, suche knyghtes and squyers, and other, as were in a redynes, wolde as then be payde of theyr wages: and so for that entente there was a parlyamente somoned to be holden at London by the nobles, prelates, and comons of Englande, and pyncypally it was ordeyned that there sholde be reysed a grete tayle and subsidye thurghout the royalle of Englande, the ryche to bere out the poore. This parlyament was remoued to Westmynstre, and thyder came all suche as were sente for, and many moo, to here tydynges.

There was the kyng and his two vnclcs, Edmund and Thomas, with many other nobles of the royalle. And amonge other thynges yt was sayd that in the kynges treasure there was substance skante to maynteyne the kynges estate soberly, wherfore they of his counsaile sayd howe there must be leuyed a subsidye thurghout all the royalle of Englonde, yf suche costes and charges sholde be payde, as hathe ben done for the defence of the royalle of Englande agaynst the frensshemen. To this agreed well they of the bysshopyrche of Norwycche, and also the archebysshopyrche of Cauntorbury, and the countye of Essex, the countye of Hampton,<sup>a</sup> and Warwykeshyre, and the lande of y<sup>e</sup> erle of Salysbury: they agreed soner then they of fether countreys, as they of the north, and marches of Wales, and of Cornewall; al these rebelled and sayd, We haue not sene none of our enemyes come into this countrey, why sholde we be greued and haue done no fawte? yes, yes, sayd some, let the bysshop of Yorke be spoken withall, and the kynges counsaile, and the duke of Irelande, who hathe lx. thousande frankes of the constable of Fraunce, for the redempcyon of Johan of Bretayne: this money ought to be tourned to the comon profyte of all Englande; ye, and speke with syr Syr Symon Burle,<sup>b</sup> Syr Wylyyam Helmen,<sup>c</sup> Syr Thomas Branbe,<sup>d</sup> Syr Robert Tryuolyen,<sup>e</sup> and syr Johan Beauchampe, who haue gouerned the kyng and the royalle; yf they make a good accompte of that they haue receuyed and delyuer it, the comons shall sytte in rest, and euery thyng payde as it ought to be.

When these wordes came abrode and to the heryng of the kynges vnclcs, they were ryght gladde therof, for that made well for them, for al those before named were agaynst them, nor they coulde bere noo rule in the courte for them; wherfore they ayded the people in theyr oppynyons, and sayd, these good men that thus speketh are well counsayled, in that they desyre to haue accompte, and wyl not paye ony more money: for surely outhur in the kynges treasure, or elles in theyr purses that gouerne hym, there must nedes be grete treasure. Thus by lytell and lytell multiplyed these wordes, and the people begonne to waxe holde to deny to paye ony more money by reason that they sawe the kynges vnclcs of theyr accorde, and susteyned them.

And the archebysshop of Cauntorbury, the erle of Salysbury, the erle of Northumbrelande, and dyuers other lordes of Englande put of this taxe for that tyme, and deferred theyr counsaile to Myghelmasse after, at whiche tyme they promysed to retourne agayne; but the knyghtes and squyers, suche as had thought to haue had money for the arrerages of theyr wages hadde noo thyng, wherfore they were in displeasure with the kyng and his counsaile: they were apeased as well as myght be, and euery man departed. The kyng toke no leue of his vnclcs, nor they of hym.

Then the kyng was counsayled to drawe into the marches of Wales, and there to tary tyll he herde other tydynges; and soo he was contented to doo, and departed fro London

<sup>a</sup> Southampton.

<sup>b</sup> Burley.

Sir Nicholas Bramber?

<sup>c</sup> Or Elmham.—*Carte.*

<sup>e</sup> Tresillian.

<sup>d</sup> Brand.—*Johnes*—sed quere.

London without leue takynge of ony man, and toke with hym all his counsaile, excepte the archebyssshop of Yorke, who wente backe into his owne countrey, whiche was happy for hym: for I thinke yf he hadde ben with the other, he sholde haue ben serued as they were, as ye shall here after; but it is requysyte that I speke as well of Fraunce as of Englande, for the matter requyareth it.

*Howe the constable of Fraunce, and dyuers other lordes and squyers of the royalme apparelled grete prouysions to go into Englande to wynde townes and castelles.*

CAP. LXXXIII.<sup>a</sup>

AND when season of somer was come, and the ioly moneth of Maye, in the yere of our lorde god M.CCC. foure score and vii. in the same season that the duke of Lancastre was in Galyce, and conquered there, and that y kyng of Portyngale with grete puyssaunce rode abrode in Castell without ony withstandynge, thenne was it ordeyned in Fraunce, as ye haue herde before, howe the constable of Fraunce with one army, and the erle of saynt Poule, the lorde of Coucy, and syr Johan of Vyen, with another armye, the one at Lentryguyer,<sup>b</sup> in Bretayne, and the other at Harflewe, in Normandy, sholde the same season make a voyage into Englande with a vi. thousande men of armes, and two thousande crosse bowes, and vi. thousande other men of warre; and it was ordeyned that none sholde passe the see to goo into Englande, without he were well armed, and prouysyon of vytayles for the space of thre monethes, with other prouysyon of hay and ootes for theyr horses: and a daye was prefxed amonge the capytaynes when they sholde departe, and were determyned to lande in Englande in two hauens, at Douer, and at Orwell. Thus the daye approached of theyr departure. At Lentryguyer<sup>b</sup> prouysyon was made and put into the shyppes for them that sholde passe from thens, and in lyke wyse was done at Harflewe; and euery man of war was payde their wages for xv. dayes. This iourney was soo farre forwarde, that it was thought it coulde not haue ben broken.

Nor also it brake not by noo cause of the capytaynes that were ordeyned to goo in that voyage, but it brake by another incydent, and by a meruayllous matter that fell in Bretayne, wherwith the Frensshe kyng and his counsaile were soore dyspleased, but they coulde not amende it, wherfore it behoued them wysely to dyssymule y matter, for it was no tyme then to remedy it.

Also other tydynges came vnto the Frensshe kyng out of the partyes of Almayne,<sup>c</sup> as I shall shewe you hereafter when tyme and place shall requyre it. But fyrst we wyll speke of the matters of Bretayne before them of Almayne,<sup>c</sup> for they of Bretayne fell fyrste, and were worste reputed, though other cost more.

Yf I sholde saye that suche matters fell in that season and not open clerely the mater, whiche was grete, peryllous, and horryble, it myght be a cronycle, but noo hystory: I myght let it ouerpasse yf I lyst, but I wyll not doo soo: I shall declare the case syth god hath the gyuen me the knowledge therof, and tyme and leysure to cronycle the matter at lengthe.

Ye haue herde here before in dyuers places in this hystory howe syr Johñ of Mountforde, named duke of Bretayne, and surely so he was by conquest and not by ryght lyne; howbeit, alwayes he maynteyued the warre and oppynyon of the kyng of Englande, and

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXIX.

<sup>b</sup> Treguier.

<sup>c</sup> Germany:

and of his chylidren, agaynst the frenshe kyng; also he had good cause soo to doo on his partye, for without the ayde of Englande he hadde not atteyned as he dyd, nother before Alroy.<sup>a</sup> nor in other places: also ye haue herde here before howe the duke of Bretayne coulde not haue his entente of all the nobles of his countrie, nor of all the good townes, specially of syr Bertram of Clesquy,<sup>b</sup> as longe as he lyued, nor of syr Olyver of Clysso, constable of Fraunce, nor of the lordes de la Vale, and of Beawmanoyre, nor the lorde of Rase, of Dygnant, the vycount of Rohan, nor of the lorde of Rochforde, for where as these lordes enclnyed, nyghe all Bretayne folowed: they were contente to take parte with theyr lorde the duke agaynst all maner of men, excepte agaynst the crowne of Fraunce, and surely I can not se nor ymagyne by what waye: but that the Bretons pryncypally regarded euer the honoure of Fraunce, it maye well appere by that that is wrytten here before in this hystory; I saye not this by noo corrupcyon nor fauoure that I haue to the erle Guy of Bloys, who hath ben good lorde vnto me, and I haue hadde moche profyete by hym who was nephewe and nexte to the erle Loys of Bloys, broder germayne to saynt Charles of Bloys, and as longe as he lyued he was duke of Bretayne.<sup>c</sup> Truely I saye not this for no cause but all onely to declare the trouthe; and also the gentyll prynce and erle that hathe caused me to wryte this story, wolde in no wyse that I sholde swarue from the trouthe.

Nowe to retourne to our purpose: ye knowe well as longe as duke Johan of Bretayne lyued, he coulde neuer attayne to haue all his men in euery poynte to agree to his oppynyons: and he sore fered them lest at the last they sholde haue taken hym and put hym in pryson in Fraunce: wherfore he departed out of Bretayne, and wente into Englande, with all his household, and ſ lady his wyfe Jahan of Holande, daughter somtyme of the good knyght syr Thomas Holande; and thus a season he became seruaunt to kyng Rycharde of Englande, and afterwarde he wente into Flaunders to ſ erle of Bloys, who was his cosyn germayne, and there taryed more then a yere and an halfe.

Fynally they of his owne cuntrye sente for hym, and soo by good accorde thyder he wente.

And when he came into his cuntrye there were certayne townes closed styl agaynst hym and rebelled, and specially the cyte of Nautes; but all his lordes, knyghtes, and prelates, were all of his accorde, excepte the lordes before rehersed; and to haue the sygnory of them, and to gete the fauoure and good wyll of the good townes and Cytyes, and to put the Frenshe kyng in more fere, bycause he<sup>d</sup> wolde ouerpresse them with taxes and subsidyes, as they dyd in Fraunce and in Pycardye, whiche they wolde not suffie in Bretayne; therefore he sente vnto the kyng of Englande for socoure and ayde of men of warre and archers, promysynge that yf the kyng of Englande wolde come into Bretayne, or elles one of his vnclis, with a grete puyssaunce of men of armes and of archers, howe that his cuntrye of Bretayne sholde be opened redy to receyue hym and his company.

The kyng of Englande and his counsaile were gladdes of those tydynges, and thought hym good, and concluded to sende thyder; the prouysyon was made, and thyder was sente the erle of Buckyngham, with iiii. M. men of armes, and viii. M. archers, who aryued at Calays, and passed throughe the royalme of Fraunce, without ony reysistence, as it hathe ben shewed here before, demaundyng noo thyng but batayle; and so they came into Bretayne, trustynge to haue founde the cuntrye redy open for them to receyue and to refresshe them, for surely they had made a longe voyage; howbeit, they founde

<sup>a</sup> Auray.

<sup>b</sup> Du Guesclin.

<sup>c</sup> "Because he was nephew to the rightful duke of Brittany, and so near that he was son to Count Lewis, brother to Saint Charles de Blois."—*Lyons' edition.*

<sup>d</sup> i. e. The French King.

founde it contrary dysposed, for the duke of Bretayne was soo ledde by his men, and so wysely entreated, that they made a peas bytwene hym and the yonge Charles, kynge as then in Fraunce, but with kynge Charles his fader he coulde neuer haue peas, he hated hym soo sore. The duke of Borgoyne, who was one of the chefe gouernours in the royalm of Fraunce, ayded gretely to make this peas: he was so desyred by the lady his wyfe, bycause the duke of Bretayne was nere of theyr lygnage, soo he was fayne to breke all his promyses with the Englysshmen, for he coulde not be snifred to accomplyshe his couenaunt, for the Bretons wolde not consent to yelde them to the kynge of Englande to make warre agaynst Fraunce; they sayd they were neuer of that oppynyon nor neuer wolde be, so that it behoued the Englysshmen to take theyr lodgynges in y marches of wannes,<sup>a</sup> where they suffered as moche pouerte as euer dyd men for one tyme, and specyally theyr horses dyed for hungre and pouerte; and soo in the tyme of somer they departed out of Bretayne, as euyl contente with the duke of Bretayne as myght be, and not without a cause, and specyally the erle of Buckyngham, and the barons of Englande that were in his company: and when they were returned into Englande, they made grete complayntes to the kynge, and to the duke of Lancastre, and his counsaile. And then it was denyed and ordeyned that Johñ of Bretayne sholde be deluyered, and to brynge hym with pryssaunce into Bretayne, to make warre there agaynst the duke of Bretayne; and the Englysshemen sayd, howe syr Johñ of Mountforde knewe well howe they had put hym in possessyon of the sygnory of Bretayne: for without vs he hadde neuer come therto, and nowe to play vs this tourne to cause vs to traunyle our bodies, and to spende the kynges treasure, it behoueth vs to shewe hym his fawtes; and we can not better be reuenged then to deluyer his aduersary and to brynge hym into Bretayne: for all the countrey wyll deluyer hym townes, Cytees, and fortresses, and put the other duke clene out, that thus hathe mocked and dysceyued vs.

Thus the Englysshe counsaile were all of one accorde; and then Johñ of Bretayne was brought into the kynges presence, and there it was shewed hym howe they wolde make hym duke of Bretayne, and recouer for hym all his herytage of Bretayne, and he sholde haue to his wyfe the lady Phylip of Lancastre, so that he wolde holde the duchy of Bretayne in fayth and homage of the kynge of Englande: the whiche poynte he vterly refused; but to take the dukes daughter in maryage he was contente, but to swere to be agaynst the crowne of Fraunce in noo wyse he wolde consente, but rather to abyde in pryson all his lyfe.

When the kynge and his counsaile sawe that, they withdrewe the grace that they hadde thought to haue shewed to hym, and thenne he was deluyered into the keypyng of syr Johan Dambretycourte, as ye haue herde before. I haue made as nowe relacyon of all these matters, bycause of the incydenes that folowed after, and appered by the duke of Bretayne, for the duke knewe well howe he was gretely out of the faouere of the noblemen of the royalm of Englande, and also of the comons there, and he ymagined that the hatred that they bare to hym was for the voyage that the erle of Buckyngham hadde made thurgh Fraunce to come into Bretayne, wenyng to haue founde the duke there, and countrey open agaynst them, as the duke of Bretayne hadde promysed, whiche the Englysshemen founde contrary.

Also he sawe well howe the kynge of Englande hadde not wryten vnto hym soo amybly as he hadde done often tymes before, and specyally as he hadde done before the erle of Buckynghams voyage.

And also he doubted that the kynge of Englande sholde deluyer Johan of Bretayne, to the entente to make hym warre.

Thenne

<sup>a</sup> Vannes.

Thenne the duke cast his ymagynacyon how he myght fynde remedy in this matter, and to brynge it into a good poynte, and to doo his entente soo secretly that the Englysshemen sholde be well content and pleased with hym: for he knewe well the man in the worlde whome the Englysshmen hated moost was syr Olyuer of Clysson, constable of Fraunce: for indede syr Olyuer of Clysson euer studied nyght and daye howe he myght doo dyspleasure to the Englysshemen; and the duke knewe ryght well of the armye that was made to goo into Englande, bothe at Harlewe and at Lentrygnyer;<sup>a</sup> then he sayd vnto hymselfe, to the entente to please the Englysshemen, and to shewe that he dyd not set moche by the Frensshemen, he founde the meanes to breke that voyage, not in commaundyng his men of Bretayne on payne of lesynge of theyr herytage not to go into Englande, nor to ayde the frensshe partye, this he dyd not, but he shewed outwardly that the warre was for hym, but he dyd his entrepryse more couertly: he caste in his ymagynacyon that he myght not doo more honourably, nor more to his profyite, then to take the constable of Fraunce prysoner, or elles to slec hym: therby he knewe well he sholde please the Englysshemen, for they hated hym: for he thought yf he were out of the waye, he cared not for the resydue of his lygnage, for he knewe well they were not able to make hym warre, for the constable hadde but two daughters, the one was maryed vnto Jolñ of Bretayne, and the other daughter was maryed vnto the erle of Rohans sone: he thought to withstande them wel ynoughe and all his lygnage, for yf he hadde slayne hym, he sayd he hadde slayne but a baron, and that there were none that wolde make hym any warre for his sake.

*Howe the duke of Bretayne sente for all his lordes and knyghtes to come to counsaile vnto wannes,<sup>b</sup> and after counsaile he desyred the constable to goo and se his castell of Ermyne: and howe he toke hym there prysoner, and the lorde of Beaumanoire with hym.*

CAP. LXXXIII.<sup>c</sup>

ON this foresayd ymagynacyon the duke of Bretayne rested, and to come to his entente he somoned his counsaile to come to Wannes,<sup>b</sup> and desyred all the lordes and knyghtes of Bretayne effectuously for to come thyder, and he dyd sende out his letters vnto them, and specially he requyred syr Olyuer of Clysson, Constable of Fraunce, that he sholde not fayle but for to be there, sayenge, howe he wolde gladlyer se hym then any other. The constable wolde not excuse hymselfe, bycause the duke of Bretayne was his naturall lorde, and was gladde to haue his good wyll; and soo he came to Wannes,<sup>b</sup> and soo dydde a grete nombre of other lordes of Bretayne.

This counsaile was longe, and many matters debated therin, touchynge the duke and his cuntrye, without any worde spekyng of the voyage that they were in purpose to make into Englande; the duke dyssymuled the matter. This counsaile was in the cyte of Wannes,<sup>b</sup> in a castell called the Mote.

The duke made all the lordes a grete dyner, and fedde them with fayre lounge wordes tyll it was nere nyght, and then they retourned to theyr lodgynges into the subbarbes withoute the cyte. And the constable of Fraunce, to please the knyghtes and squyers of Bretayne, he desyred them all the nexte daye to dync with hym; some dyd soo, and some departed to theyr owne howses to take lene of theyr wyues and parentes, for the constable was purposed as soone as he departed thens strayght to goo vnto his

VOL. II.

2 K

nauye

<sup>a</sup> Treguier.<sup>b</sup> Wannes.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXX.

nauye at Lentrygnyer;<sup>a</sup> the duke of Bretayne knewe it ryght well, but spake noo worde therof, makyng semblaunte as though he knewe noo thyng. Soo this dyner ended, where as were the moost parte of the barons of Bretayne; and sodaynly vnto them came the duke of Bretayne ryght amorously by senyng, but he thought otherwyse in his harte; none knewe therof but suche as he hadde dyscouered his mynde vnto. As soone as he entred into the constables lodgyng, some sayd, beholde here cometh the duke: then euery man rose, as reason was, and swetely receyued hym, as they ought for to doo theyr lorde, and he delte ryght gētlylly, and he sate downe amonge them, and ete and dranke, and kepte good company, and shewed them more tokens of loue then euer he dydde before: and he sayd vnto them, fayre lordes, my louers and frendes, god sende you well to goo and well to come agayne, and sende you ioye, and that you maye doo suche dedes of armes as maye please you, and that it maye be honourable vnto you all: and when they herde these swete wordes of the duke, they all answered and sayd, Syr, we thanke you, and god rewarde you of your grete kyndnesse, that it pleaseth you to come and se vs at our departyng.

This same season the duke of Bretayne was makyng of a Castell nere to Wanness,<sup>b</sup> called the castell of Ermyne, the whiche as then was nere furnysshed, and to the entente to attrappe the constable: there he sayd vnto hym, and vnto the lorde de la Vale, and to the lorde of Beawmanoyre, and to other lordes that were there, Syrs, I requyre you or ye departe to come and se my newe castell of Armyne: ye shall se howe I haue deuysed it, and also howe I purpose for to doo.

They all agreed vnto hym, bycause they sawe hym come soo louyngly amonge them, for they thought none euyll. And soo the moost parte of them mounted on theyr horses, and rode forth with the duke to the castel of Armyne: then the duke, the constable, the lorde de la Vale, and the lorde of Beawmanoyre, and dyuers other lordes and knyghtes alyghted of theyr horses and entred into the castell, and the duke ledde the constable by ȝ hande fro chambre to chambre, and into euery house of offyce, and made them drynke in the seller; then the duke brought them to the chefe towre, and at the dore therof he sayd to the constable: Syr Olyuere, I knowe noo man on this syde the see that knoweth more in buyldyng then ye doo: wherfore I praye you mounte vp the stayres and beholde the buyldyng of the towre; yf it be well I am contente, and yf ony thyng be amyse, yt shall be reformed after your deuise; ȝ constable thynkyng none euyll, sayd, Syr, with ryght a good wyl: please it you to goo before and I shall folowe you: naye syr, sayd the duke, goo your waye vp alone, and in the meane tyme I wyll talke with the lorde de la Vale. The constable wente vp the stayres, and when he was abone and paste the fyrste stage, there were mē in a chābre layde in a bussment, and they opened the dore, and some wente downe and dyd shote the dore bynethe, and the other wente vp all armed to the constable; there they toke and ledde hym into a chambre, and fetered hym with iii. boltes of yron, and sayd to hym, Syr, pardon vs, for we must nedes do that we do, we be thus commaunded by our lorde the duke of Bretayne: yf ȝ constable were abashed at that tyme it was no meruayle.

The cōstable ought not to haue grete meruayle of ȝ chaunce, for after that the dyspleasure fell bytwene the duke and hym, for ony letters that the duke coulede wryte to hym, or for ony desyre or sauconduyte to come and goo safely, yet for all that the constable wolde neuer come in the dukes presence, for he durste not trust hym, and nowe he is come to his mysfortune, for he founde the duke in grete dyspleasure with hym, and that was well showed: and when the lorde de la Vale, beyng bynethe at the stayre foote, sawe the dore closed, his blood began to trymble, and had grete fere  
of

<sup>a</sup> Treguier.<sup>b</sup> Vannes.

of his broder,<sup>a</sup> and behelde the duke, who waxed pale and grene as a lefe: then he knewe that the matter wente amysse, and sayd, A, syr, for goddes sake haue mercy, what wyll you do? take none euyll wyll agaynst the constable. Syr, sayd the duke, take ye your horse and departe, ye maye goo when ye wyll, I knowe well ynoughe what I haue to do. Syr, sayd the lorde de la Vale, I wyll not departe hens without I haue my broder<sup>a</sup> the constable with me. With those wordes there came vnto them the lorde of Beawmanoyre, whome the duke also hated, and he in lykewyse demaunded to haue the constable: then the duke drewe his dagger and came vnto hym, and sayd, Beawmanoyre, wylte thou be in the same poynte as thy mayster is in? Syr, sayd he, I trust my mayster is in good case. Well, sayd the duke, I demaunde of the yf thou wylte be in lyke case? Ye syr, sayd he. Thenne the duke toke his dagger by the poynte, and sayd, yf thou wylte be in lyke case, it behoueth the to put out one of thyne eyes. The lorde of Beawmanoyre sawe well the matter wente not well, and sawe the duke waxe pale for angre; then he kneled downe on his knee, and sayd, Syr, I repute soo grete noblenes in you that I trust in god and you that ye wyll doo vs ryght: we be at your mercy, and we are come hyder at your request, we trust ye wyll not dyshonour yourselfe to accomplysse ony euyll wyll that ye haue to vs, it sholde be a straunge nouelte. Well, sayd the duke, come on thy waye, for thou shalte haue noo more nor no lesse then he shall haue: soo he was ledde into another chambre, and fetered also with thre payre of yrons. If he were abashed he hadde a grete cause, for he perceyued well the duke loued hym but lytell, nor the constable also, but then he had no remedy.

Anone tydynges spredde ouer the castell, and also the towne, howe that the constable of Fraunce, and the lorde of Beawmanoyre, and also the lorde de la Vale, were taken prysoners, and howe the lorde de la Vale myght departe when he wolde, for the duke demaunded nothyng of hym, wherof the people hadde grete meruayle, and also grete cause why: for euery man sayd howe the duke wolde put them bothe to dethe, he hated them so mortally. The duke was gretely blamed of all knyghtes and squyers that herde therof, and they sayd there was neuer a gretter dyffamacyon on ony prynce, then was on the duke of Bretayne, seyng that he had desyred the constable to dyne with hym and to se his house, and to make hym good chere, and soo to take hym prysoner: they sayd they neuer herde of case lyke, wherfore he was infamed, and neuer man more dyshonoured, nor therby noo man sholde trust in ony prynce, syth the duke had dysceyued these noblemen; what wyll the frensshe kyng say when he knoweth this, for by this his voyage into Englande is broken? there was neuer soo grete a shame ymagyned: but nowe the duke sheweth what laye in his harte, we trowe there was neuer sene in Breytayne case lyke, nor in none other place; yf a poore knyght had done suche a dede he were dyshonoured for euer; in whom sholde a man trust but in his lorde, and y lorde sholde maynteyne hym in his ryght, and doo hym Justyce: who shall make correccyon of this dede? none but the frensshe kyng. Nowe y duke sheweth playnly howe he is on the englysshe parte, and wyll susteyne and holde with the oppynyon of the kyng of Englande, syth he hath thus broken the voyage by the see that sholde haue gone into Englande. What shall become nowe of the knyghtes and squyers of Bretayne when they shall here these tydynges? nothyng, but incontynent come fro their houses, and lay syege to the castell of Armyne, and close the duke within, and there tary tyll they haue taken hym outhur deed or quycke, and lede hym lyke a false prynce to the frensshe kyng. Thus the knyghtes and squyers aboute the marches of Wanness,<sup>b</sup> spake and comoned togyder, and suche as were come thyder to that counsaile with the sayd lordes, and they were in grete doubt that the duke wolde put them to dethe; then some

2 K 2

other

<sup>a</sup> "In law."<sup>b</sup> Vannes.

other sayd, as for the lorde de la Vale is in no ieopardy, he is soo wyse that he wyll tempre the duke in all his busynes; and truly so he dyd, for and he had not ben, the constable had ben deed the fyrst nyght if he had had a M. lyues.

It ought to be byleued that syr Olyuer of Clysson was not at his ease when he saw hymselfe soo taken and attrapped, and fetered and kepte with xxx. persones, and hadde noo comforte by them, for they knewe not the wyll of theyr lorde, soo that he rekened hymselfe but as a deed man, and also he hadde noo hope to lyue tyll the nexte daye: and surely he was in grete daungere, for iii. tymes he was vnfetered and brought to haue ben beheded, or elles drowned; and surely so he had ben yf the lorde de la Vale had not ben; but when this lorde de la Vale herde the dukes straye cōmaundement to put hym to dethe, he kneled downe before hym, lyftyng vp his handes sore wepyng, and sayd, syr, for goddes sake take mercy: aduise you, shewe not your cruelte agaynst the constable, he hath deserved no dethe; syr, of your grace that it may please you to shewe me the cause of your dyspleasure agaynst hym; and syr, I swere vnto you ony trespace that he hath done, he shall make you suche amendes with his body and goodes, or elles I for hym, as ye yourselfe shall demaunde or iudge; syr, remembre you howe in your yongth ye ii. were companyons togyder, and brought vp bothe in one house with the duke of Lancastre, who was soo gentyll a prynce that there was none lyke hym; also syr, remembre howe before his peas was made with the frensshe kyng alwayes he truly serued you; he ayded you to recouer your herytage, ye haue alwayes founde in hym good comforte and cōsayle: yf ye be now moued or enfourmed agaynste hym otherwyse then reason sholde requyre, yet he hathe not deserved dethe. Syr de la Vale, sayd the duke, let me haue my wyll: for Olyuer of Clysson hath soo often tymes dyspleased me, and nowe is the houre come that I maye shewe hym my dyspleasure: wherfore departe you hens and let me shewe my cruelte, for I wyll he shall dye. A, syr, sayd the lorde de la Vale, refrayne your euyll wyll, and moderate your courage, and regarde to reason, for yf ye put hym to deth there was neuer prynce soo dyshonoured as ye shall be; there shall not be in Bretayne, knyght nor squyer, cyte nor castell, nor good towne, nor noo man but he shall hate you to the dethe, and doo that they can to dysenheryte you, nor the kyng of Englande, nor his counsaile, shall gyue you no thanke therfore; syr, wyl you lese yourselfe for the dethe of one man? syr, tourne your ymagynacyon, for this thought is noo thyng worth but dyshonourable, that ye sholde cause suche an honourable knyght as syr Olyuere of Clysson is to dye, comyng vnto you at your owne desyre.

Surely syr this dede sholde be treason and grete reproche bothe before god and the worlde, to desyre hym thus to dyne and he comyng to you, and after that ye went to hym into the towne desyring hym to se your newe buyldynges, and he obeyed in euery thyng to you, and dranke of your wyne: and is this þe grete loue that ye shewed hym to put hym to dethe? there was neuer soo grete blame layde to ony lorde as shall be layde to you; all þe worlde shal reproche you and hate you mortally, and be glad to make you warre: but syr, I shall shewe you what ye shall do syth ye soo sore hate hym; put hym to ransome to a grete some of Floreynes, this ye may well do; and if he holde outhere towne or castell that sholde be yours, demaunde thē agayne and ye shall haue them; and loke, what couenaunt ye make with hym I shall become pledge therfore. And when the duke herde the lorde de la Vale speke so reasonably, and pressed so sore on hym, as in a maner all that nyght he wolde not departe from hym, then the duke studyed a lytell, and somewhat refrayned his euyll wyll, and at last spake and sayd, syr de la Vale, ye be a good meane for hym; howbeit, I wyl ye knowe syr Olyuer of Clysson is the man in the worlde that I moost hate, for and ye were not he sholde not scape without dethe this same nyght: your wordes hath saued hym; go to hym and demaunde yf he wyll paye to me a C. M. frankes incontynente, for I wyll notlier haue hym nor



you to pledge, nor nothyng elles but the redy money: and besyde that to yelde to me iii. castelles and a towne, suche as I shall name, the castell of Breth,<sup>a</sup> the castel of Joselyn, the castel of Blancke,<sup>b</sup> and the towne of Jugon, and put me in possessyon of them or my deputyes: this done I shall delyuer hym to you. This shal be done, sayd the lorde de la Vale; and syr, I thanke you that ye wyl thus do at my desyre; and syr, be you sure all that ye haue demaunded shall be done, these castelles and towne delyuered, and these C.M. frankes payde or he departe.

Then the lorde de la Vale was gretely reioyced when he sawe the constable out of peryll of deth. Then the towre dore was opened, and  $\text{f}$  lorde de la Vale mounted vp and came there as  $\text{f}$  constable was syttyng sore abashed, for he loked for nothyng but for dethe; and when he sawe the lorde de la Vale his herte renyued, and thought there was some trectye in hande: then the lorde de la Vale sayd to them that were thereby, syrs, take of his yrons  $\text{f}$  I maye speke with hym fro the duke, and sayd to hym, syr, howe say you, wyl you do that I shall shewe you. Ye, truely syr, sayd the constable. Then his yrons were taken of, and the lorde de la Vale drewe hym aparte and sayd, Fayre broder, with grete payne and moche busynes I haue saued your lyfe and made your ende, but ye must pay or ye departe hens in redy money a C. M. frankes, and moreouer to yelde vp to the duke iii. castelles, and  $\text{f}$  towne of Jugon, otherwyse ye can haue no delyuerance. Then the constable sayd, I wyl not refuse  $\text{f}$  bargayne, but who shall go to Clysson to fetch this money? fayre broder, sayd the constable, I thinke ye must be fayne to go therfore. Naye syr, not so, sayd the lorde de la Vale, for I haue promysed neuer to departe out of this castell tyll I haue you with me, for I knowe wel the duke is ryght cruell, and peradventure in myne absence wyl repent hym by some lyght informacyon, and so then al were lost. Why who shall go then? sayd the constable. Syr, sayd he, the lorde of Beawmanoyre shall goo, he is here in pryson as wel as ye be, he shal make al this prouysyon. That is well sayd, sayd the constable, go your waye downe, and ordeyne euery thyng as ye lyst.

*Howe the constable of Fraunce was delyuered at the request of the lorde de la Vale, payenge certayne ransome; and howe the constable delyuered to the duke iii. castelles and a towne, and payde C.M. frankes.*

C A P. LXXXV.<sup>c</sup>

THUS the lorde de la Vale wente downe out of the towre to  $\text{f}$  duke, who was goyng to bed, for of all that nyght he had not slepte; then the lorde de la Vale kneled downe and sayd, syr, ye shall haue al your demaunde, but syr, ye must delyuer the lorde of Beawmanoyre that he maye speke with  $\text{f}$  constable, for he must go and fetch this ransome, and put your men in possessyon of the castelles that ye desyre to haue. Wel, sayd the duke, delyuer them out of pryson, and put them into a chambre, and be you the meane of theyr trectye, for I wyl not se them, and retourne agayne to me when I haue slepte and I wyl speke with you. Then  $\text{f}$  lorde de la Vale yssued out of the chambre, and went with two knyghtes thyder where as the lorde of Beawmanoyre was in pryson, who was gretely abashed and doubted sore the dethe: he fered when he herde the dore open, that they were come to haue put hym to dethe, but when he sawe the lorde de la Vale entre, his harte renyued, and more when he herde hym speke, sayenge,

<sup>a</sup> Broc.<sup>b</sup> Le Blanc.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXI.

sayenge, syr of Beawmanoyre, your delyueraunce is made, wherfore ye maye be gladd: then his letters were taken of, and so he wente into another chambre, and then the constable was also brought thyder, and mete and wyne was brought to them, for all the seruauntes of the howse were gladd of theyr delyueraunce, for they were sory of that case; howbeit, they myght fynde no remedy, it behoued them to obey theyr maysters commaundement in ryght or in wronge; and as soone as the castell gate was shote, and the brydge drawen, there entred nor yssued nother man nor woman, for the keyes were in the dukes chambre, and he slepte tyll it was iii. of the clocke: and the knyghtes and squyers that were without abydyng for theyr maysters, were sore abashed, and sayd, nowe our season and voyage by the see is lost and broken, A, constable, what myshap is fallen to you, what counsaile hath dysceyued you? the counsaile y was made and assembled at Wanness<sup>a</sup> was made for none other entente but to attrappe you; ye were wonte to be of the oppynyon that yf the duke had sente for you, and hadde made you a M. assuraunces, yet ye wolde not haue gone nor come at his commaundement, ye doubted hym so sore, and nowe ye wente symply at his desyre: euery man thrughe the duchy of Bretayne complayned for the constable, and wust not what to do nor say; and all knyghtes and squyers sayd, what do we here, why do we not go and enclose the duke in his castel of Ermyne? and yf he haue slayne the constable, serue hym in lyke maner, and yf he kepe hym in pryson, let vs doo soo, that we maye haue hym agayne; there fell neuer suche a myschefe in Bretayne: thus one and other sayd, but there were none that styred forward, but taryed to here other newes. Thus tydynges spred abrode soo that within two dayes it was at Parys, wherwith the kyng and his vnclis, the duke of Berrey, and the duke of Borgoyne, had grete meruayle; as then y duke of Borbon was gone to Auygnyon, to go into Castell, and had sene the pope Clement on his way: these tydynges came to hym as he was at Lyon sure le Rone, and with hym the erle of Sauoy.

And the erle of saynt Poule, the lorde of Coucy, and admyrall of Fraunce, beyng at Harflewe redy to haue entred into the see towarde theyr voyage, when they herde howe the duke of Bretayne hadde taken the constable of Fraunce prysoner in his castel of Ermyne, and the lorde de la Vale, and the lorde of Beawmanoyre with hym; and they that brought those tydynges sayd, howe the bruyte ranne in Bretayne, howe the duke of Bretayne hadde putte to dethe the constable of Fraunce, and the lorde of Beawmanoyre. These were harde tydynges to these lordes, and they sayd, nowe our voyage is broken, lette vs gyue leue to all our men of warre to departe, and let vs goo to Parys to the kyng, and se what he wyll do; then y admyrall sayd, it is good we do soo, but let not our men departe, peradventure the kyng wyll sende them to some other parte, may happen into Castell, for y duke of Borbon is goyng thyder, or elles peradventure he wyl sende them into Bretayne to make warre agaynst the duke: thynke you y y frensshe kyng wyl suffre y matter thus to ouerpas? Nay surely, for y kyng shal receyue by this bergayne damage to the some of ii. C. M. floreyne, besyde y losse and hurte that is done to his constable, yf he scape the lyfe; was there ener case lyke,<sup>b</sup> thus y kyng to breke his voyage, who was in good mynde to haue done damage to his enemies; let vs tary here styll a ii. or iii. dayes, and peradventure we shall here some other tydynges out of Fraunce, or out of Bretayne.

<sup>a</sup> Wanness.<sup>b</sup> "To compel."

*Howe wrytynges were made at the duke of Bretaynes deuynse, for the constable to rendre his towne and castelles to the duke, and to his heyres for euer, and howe they were deliuered to the duke.*

CAP. LXXXVI.<sup>2</sup>

NOWE let vs speke a lytell of the duke of Bretayne, who when he hadde slepte, rose and made hym redy, and then he sente for the lorde de la Vale, who came to hym, and there they were togyder a longe space: fynally, letters were wryten accordynge to the dukes wyll, makynge mencyon ŷ the constable, syr Olyuer of Clysson, renounced clene his tytyle for euer of the sayd towne and castell, and yelded them purely to the duke of Bretayne, and to his heyres for euer; and that these wrytynges sholde be permanent without ony repell. And then ŷ lorde of Beawmanoyre was ordeyned by the constable to goo to these castelles, and to cause them that had the rule of them to departe thens, and to put in possessyon ŷ dukes men; and besyde that to leuy in redy money a C. M. frankes to pay to the duke. When all this was concluded the gates of the castell was opened, and the lorde of Beawmanoyre yssued out charged and ordeyned by ŷ constable to accomplysse all these ordeynaunces, and he was desyred to make al the dylygence that myght be; and with hym wente seruauantes of the dukes, and noysed as they wente howe the constable was sure of his lyfe, and was put to raunsome; all suche as loued hym, knyghtes and squyers, were glad therof, and so therby sate styll, for they were determyned to haue gone and layde syege to the castell of Ermyne, and haue closed the duke therin: they neuer dyd thyng that they wolde haue ben gladder of. So these tydynges ranne abrode with the wynde, so that the lordes and knyghtes beyng at Harflewe herde therof, and had certayne knowledge that the constable had ben deed, and the lorde de la Vale had not ben: and they sayd as for the deliuerance of his towne and castelles, he shall recouer them agayne, or elles othier at tyme and leysure; the frensshe kynge hath ynowe for hym yf he nede; nowe we maye departe fro hens, our voyage is broken, let vs gyue our men leue to departe, and let vs goo to Parys and lerne tydynges there, for we here saye that all suche as were at Lentrygnyer<sup>b</sup> are countermaunded, ŷ whiche is a sygne that we shal go no where at this season. Thus they gaue lycence to al theyr men of warre to departe, and themselfe departed towarde Parys where the kynge was.

The lorde of Beawmanoyre dyd so moche that within iiii. dayes he had set the duke of Bretaynes seruauantes in possessyon of the foresayd castelles, and towne of Jugon, and after he payde the C. M. frankes for the constables raunsome, there as the duke commaunded. When all was done, the lorde de la Vale sayd to ŷ duke, syr, ye haue nowe that you demaunded, the C. M. frankes, the towne of Jugon, the castell of Bourcke, and the whyte castell of Josselyn,<sup>c</sup> therefore syr, nowe deliuer me the constable: I am contente, sayd the duke, let hym goo when he wyll, I gyue hym leue. Thus ŷ constable was deliuered, and he and the lorde de la Vale departed fro the castell of Ermyne; when they were abrode in the feldes, ŷ constable made no longe taryenge in Bretayne, but mounted on a good horse, and his page on another, and so rode that within two dayes he came to Paris, and alyghted at his owne howse, and then wente to the castell of Lowre,<sup>d</sup> to the kynge and his vnclis, the duke of Berrey, and of Borgoyne;

<sup>2</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXII.  
Le Blanc and Josselyn."

<sup>b</sup> Treguier.  
<sup>d</sup> The Louvre.

<sup>c</sup> "Broc, and the castles of

goyne; his men folowed after hym at theyr leysure; the kyng knewe of his delyuerance, but he knewe not that he was so nere, and was glad when he herde therof, and caused the chambre dores to be set open agaynst hym, and so he came into the kynges presence, and kneled downe before hym and sayd: Ryght redoubted lorde, your fader, whome god pardon, made me constable of Fraunce, whiche offyce to my power I haue well and truly exercysed, and yf there be ony excepte your grace, and my lordes your vncles that wyll saye that I haue not acquyted myselfe truly, or done ony thyng contrary to the crowne of Fraunce, I am here redy to cast my gage in that quarell: the kyng nor none other made none answer to those wordes: then he sayd further, ryght dere syr and noble kyng, it fortunyd in Bretayne in doynge of myne offyce, the duke of Bretayne toke me and helde me in his castell of Ermyne, and wolde haue put me to deth without reason, by reason of his fyers courage, and god had not ben, and the lorde de la Vale: so that I was constrained, if I wolde be delynered out of his handes, to delyuer to hym a towne of myne in Bretayne, and iii. castelles, and the some of a C.M. frankes; wherfore ryght dere syr and noble kyng, the blame and damage that the duke of Bretayne hath done, gretely regardeth your mageste royall, for ʒ voyage that I and my company sholde haue made by the see is broken: wherfore syr, I yelde vp the offyce of the constableschyp; syr, prouyde for another, suche as shall please you, for I wyll noo more bere the charge therof, I sholde haue none honoure to do it. Constable, sayd the kyng, we knowe well that ye haue hurte and damage, and is a thyng gretely to the preiudyce to our royalme; we wyll incontynente sende for the peres of Fraunce, to se what shall be best to be done in this case, therfore take ye no thought, for ye shal haue ryght and reason.

Then the kyng toke the constable by the hande, and reysed hym vp and sayd, Constable, we wyl not that ye departe from your offyce in this maner, but we wyll that ye vse it tyll we take other counsayle. Then the constable kneled downe agayne and sayd, Syr, this matter toucheth me soo nere that I can not vse it: the offyce is grete, for I must speke and answer euery man, and I am so troubled that I can answer no man: wherfore syr, I requyre your grace to prouyde for another for a season, and I shall alwayes be redy at your commaundement; syr, sayd the duke of Borgoyne, he offereth ynoughe, ye shall take aduys; it is true sayd the kyng; then the constable arose and wente to the duke of Berre, and to the duke of Borgoyne, and aduysed to shewe them his busynes, and to enforme thē iustely all the matter, seyng the case touched them gretely in that they had the gouernynge of the royalme; but in spekyng with them, and heryng the hole matter, he perceuyed ʒ matter touched not them soo sore as he<sup>a</sup> made of, soo that fynally they blamed hym for goynge to Wannes,<sup>b</sup> sayenge to hym, syth your nauy was redy, and that knyghtes and squyers taryed for you at Lentrygnyer.<sup>c</sup>

And also when ye were at Wannes,<sup>b</sup> and hadde dyned with the duke and returned agayne to your castell of Bourke,<sup>d</sup> what had you then ony thyng to do to tary there ony longer, nor to goo agayne to the duke to the castell of Ermyne? Syr, sayd the constable, he shewed me soo fayre semblaunt that I durst not refuse it. Constable, sayd the duke of Borgoyne, in fayre semblauntes are grete decepcyons: I reputed you more subtel then I take you nowe; go your way, ʒ matter shall do well ynoughe, we shall regarde it at leysure. Then the constable perceuyed well that these lordes were harder and ruder to hym then the kyng was; soo he departed and wente to his owne lodgyng, and thyder came to hym certayne of the lordes of the parlyament to se hym, and sayd to hym that the matter sholde doo ryght well; and also there came to hym to counsayle

<sup>a</sup> "The King's answer."

<sup>b</sup> Vannes.

<sup>c</sup> Treguier.

<sup>d</sup> Broc.—It is

doubtful, however, whether the right sense of the passage be not "and returned again to your lodging in the city."

sayle hym, the erle of saynt Poule, the lorde of Coucy, and the admyrall of Fraunce, and they sayd to hym, Constable, make noo doubt, for ye shall haue reason of the duke of Bretayne, for he hath done agaynst the crowne of Fraunce grete dyspleasure, and worthy to be shamed and put out of his countrey; goo your wayes and passe the tyme at Mount le Herry, there ye shal be on your owne, and let vs alone with the matter, for the peres of Fraunce wyll not suffre the matter to rest thus: the constable byleued these lordes, and so departed fro Parys, and rode to Mount le Herry. Soo the offyce of constableschyp was voyde for a season, as it was sayd that syr Guy of Tremoyle<sup>a</sup> sho de be constable: but it was not soo: he was soo well aduysed that he wolde not take it out of the handes of syr Olyuer of Clysson.

*Howe tydynges came to the frensshe kyng from the partyes of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> the whiche were to hym ryght dyspleasaut, and vnto his vnclis.*

CAP. LXXXVII.<sup>c</sup>

THE same weke that tydynges came to Parys of the takynge of the constable, there came also tydynges frome the partyes of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> whiche were ryght dyspleasaut to the kyng and to his vnclis, I shall shewe you how and wherfore. The duke of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> sone to the duke of Julyers, was alyd with the kyng of Englande to make warre agaynst Fraunce, and hadde taken a pencyon of foure thousande frankes by the yere, whiche pencyon the duke of Julyers his fader hadde in tyme past out of the kyng of Englandes cofers; but or he dyed he renounced it, and then his sone, who was but yonge, toke it agayne at the kyng of Englandes desyre, so that he wolde defye the frensshe kyng, and to make warre agaynst hym; and he was enclyned to take the englysshe parte bycause he had warre with the lady of Brabant, for he sawe well that the duchy of Brabant was faourable to the royalme of Fraunce, for it sholde after retourne to the duke of Borgoyne and to his chyldren: therfore the duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> wolde shewe that the matter touched hym so nere that he wolde doo the damage that he myght to the royalme of Fraunce, and to all theyr alyes; so he sente letters of defyaunce to y<sup>e</sup> frensshe kyng, whiche were nothyng pleasaunt accepted of the kyng nor of his counsayle, as I shall shewe you hereafter in the hystory, when it shal be conuenyent to speke therof, in the shewynge of the warre of Bretayne and of Guerles;<sup>d</sup> the frensshe kyng made noo semblaunt therof, but made good chere to the squyer of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> who hadde brought the defyaunce; howbeit, he was afraide, for when he came to the cyte of Tourney he wolde haue gone no further, but he had shewed the defyaunce to the prouost of the towne, and so wolde haue returned agayne, sayenge, that it was suffycient to declare his message in soo noble a towne as Tourney; but they of the towne were not so contente, but arrested the squyer and put hym in sure pryson, and then they sente worde therof to the duke of Borgoyne to know his pleasure. Then the duke wrote to the prouost of Tourney that he sholde sende to hym y<sup>e</sup> squyer with his defyaūces; and so he was brought to Parys, and he fered lest he sholde dye; but when he came to Parys, the kyng and his vnclis, and the other lordes, dyd noothynge to hym but all courtoysye; and the frensshe kyng gaue hym a goblet of syluer weynge iii. marke, and l. frankes within it, and they gaue hym a sauconduyte to retourne into his countrey. So by reason of these tydynges y<sup>e</sup> courte of fraunce was sore troubled, and

VOL. II.

2 I.

the

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXIII.<sup>d</sup> Gueldres.

the freysshe counsaile was sore troubled when the constable of Fraunce came and made his complaynte of the duke of Bretayne, for they sawe well that trouble and expence began to ryse on euery syde, and they sawe well howe they must employ all theyr wyttes to excheue suche inconuenientes: they thought that the constable who had serued the kyng soo longe in Flaunders and other places, sholde haue some helpe, in that the duke of Bretayne hadde ransomed hym, and taken his castelles, without tytle or good reason, and specyally the lorde of Coucy, and the admyrall, was sore displeased with it.

Nowe let vs retourne to the duke of Lancastre, and to the kyng of Portyngale, who were in Galyce, and made sore warre agaynst the kyng of Castell.

*Howe the duke of Lancastres men assayled the towne of Aurene<sup>a</sup> and toke it, for it gaue vp as other dyd.*

CAP. LXXXVIII.<sup>b</sup>

HERE before ye haue herde how dedes of armes were done bytwene syr Johan Holande, and syr Raynolde of Roy, in the presence of the kyng of Portyngale and his wyfe; and at the kynges departyng he promysed to the duke that as soone as he was returned to the cyte of Porte,<sup>c</sup> that he wolde not tary past vi. dayes, but that his army sholde sette forthe. Thenne the duke sente Constaunce his wyfe to the towne of saynt James, vnder the gudyng of the lorde Fythwater, a grete baron of Englande, with a hundred speres, and two hundred archers; and y<sup>e</sup> duke sayd to her, Madame, ye shall kepe you in the cyte of Compostella, and the kyng of Portyngale my sone, and our people, shall goo into Castell, to seke for our enemyes to fyght with thē whersoer we fynde them, and nowe it shall be sene yf euer we shall haue ony thyng in the royalme of Castell or not. Syr, sayd the lady, as god wyll, so be it. Thus they departed for that present tyme, and syr Thomas Percy, and the lorde Fythwaren, conueyed the duches with two hundred speres out of all daungers, and thenne returned to the duke, who was as then departed fro Besances,<sup>d</sup> towardes a towne in Galyce, named Aurene,<sup>a</sup> whiche rebelled agaynst hym, and wolde not obey bycause it was stronge, and therein a garyson of Bretons, who hadde on theyr pavelles vndertaken to kepe it, and they had well fortifyed it, bycause they hadde knowledge that the duke wolde come thyder. The marshall of the dukes oost hadde well herde howe they of Aurene,<sup>a</sup> in Galyce, wolde not obey, but dayly fortifyed them; he counsailed the constable to goo thyder, and soo euery man drewe to that parte, and soo came and lodged nere to it, the season was fayre, aboute the Ascencyon tyme; then tentes and paulyons were pyght vp in the fayre playnes vnder the Olyues, and soo laye al that fyrst nyght, and the nexte day, without gyuyng of ony assaulte, thynkyng that the towne wolde haue gyuen vp: and indede the men of the towne wolde gladly haue yelded them, but the lordes and capytaynes wolde not suffre thē, who were Bretons and companyons aduenturers; two Bretons were capytaynes, called the bastot of Alroy, and the other the bastarde of Peneforte: they were good men of warre, and that well appeared in that they toke on them to kepe y<sup>e</sup> towne so farre out of all socour agaynst the duke of Lancastre.

On

<sup>a</sup> Orense.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXIV.

<sup>c</sup> Oporto.

<sup>d</sup> Betancos?

On the iii. daye that the Englysshemen were thus lodged aboute the towne, and had well regarded howe they myght at theyr aduantage assayle the towne, thenne the constable, the marshall, and the admyrall, caused theyr trompettes to sounde to the assaulte: and then euery man drewe forth into the felde, and there denyded them into iiij. bandes, to assayle the towne in iiij. partes, and so in goodly ordre approached the towne and taryed on the dykes, wherin there was no water, but it was well fortifyed with pales and hedges; then the assaulte began in iiij. partes; then men of armes and other wente downe into the dykes with axes in theyr handes, and therwith cutte downe the hedges; and they within cast downe dartes and other thynges, that yf they hadde not ben well paussed, there hadde ben many sore hurte and slayne; and also on the edge of the dyke the archers shotte so fyersly that they within durste not appere: the duke of Lancastre came to beholde the assaulte, whiche made it y more fyerser: he sate there on horsbacke the space of thre houres, he had suche pleasure to regarde thē: at this fyrst assaulte the dykes were clenched of all the thycke hedges, soo that men myght goo to the pales; then the retrayte was sowned for that day: thē the duke sayd to the marshal, syr Thomas, our men haue done theyr denyre for this daye, let them withdrawe and ease themselves. Syr, it shal be done, sayd the marshall: so y assaulte was ceased, and euery man wente to his lodgyng, and the hurte to be dressed, and so passed that nyght; they had wynes to drynke plentye, but they were soo hooote and myghty, that it was moche payne to drynke them, and suche as dranke of them without water were in that case y they could not helpe themselves the nexte day.

The nexte day it was aduysed that they sholde make none assaulte, bycause the daye was soo hooote, and theyr men soo very and ouercome with stronge wynes: but determyned that the nexte daye after they sholde begyn theyr assaulte at the sone rysyng, and to endore tyll iii. of the clocke at afternoone; and so euery man was comaunded to take theyr ease tyll they herde the sowne of the marshalles trompet. And the same daye y duke of Lancastre herde tydynges of the kynge of Portyngale, howe he was departed fro the cyte of Porte,<sup>a</sup> and drewe towards the porte saynt yrayne:<sup>b</sup> that waye he was purposed to entre into Castell, and bothe oostes to mete on the ryuer of Derne,<sup>c</sup> besyde y towne of perpyggen, or elles before the towne of Arpent.<sup>d</sup> Thus the Portyngales had deuysed, if the kynge of Castell and the frensshemen dyd not encountre them before, and yf they were lykely so to doo, then to drawe togyder soner. Of these tydynges the duke was ryght ioyous, and gaue the messagere for his tydynges x. nobles.

And in the mornynge whenne it was daye, the marshalles trompet began to sowne before y lodgynges to reyse vp euery man; then knyghtes and squyers began to make them redy, euery man vnder his owne standerde: then the marshall drewe into the felde, and all suche as were ordeyned to goo to y assaulte. They of the towne had knowledge howe the Englysshemen wolde assayle them by theyr watchemen, who had herde the marshalles trompet: then the Bretons reysed vp euery man and woman in the towne, and sayd to them, syrs, shewe yourselfe lyke good men, and be not abashed for nothyng that ye se: we are stronge ynoughe, we haue dartes, and speres, and stones, and other artyllery, suffycient to withstande our enemyes, and if the worste fall, at all tymes they wyll take vs to mercy; worse they can not doo to vs: we haue ben or this in dyuers places farre febler then this is, and yet we haue kepte it without claūger or damage: soo by reason of theyr wordes the Galycyens were encouraged, for of themselves they hadde rather haue yelded them vp, for accordynge to trouthe the

2 L 2

comons

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.<sup>b</sup> Santarem.<sup>c</sup> Duero.<sup>d</sup> *Johnes* says, "Benevento, or Villalpando."

comons in Castell and Galyce are lytell worth in batayle, they are but euyl armed, and small of courage; the gentyllmen are ryght good on horsebacke.

Thus the Englysshemen, redy apparelled to the assaulte aboute the sone rysynge, came into the dykes iuste vnto the pales, and with axes and other wepons bet downe the pales to theyr feete, but yet for all that they were not on the walle, for thenne they hadde another dyke to passe as large as the other was; thenne with moche payne they passed that dyke and came to the walles: and when they within sawe them come soo nere they defended themselfe valyauntly.

Thenne the Galycyens cast out dartes in suche wyse that whomesooeuer they strake were soore hurte, without he were well paussed. Thenne they reysed vp ladders for to mounte vp too the walles; there knyghtes and squyers auanced themselfe to mounte with targyes ouer theyr heedes, and swordes in theyr handes, and so came and fought hande to hande with the Bretons, who defended themselfe ryght nobly, for I repute it for a grete valyauntnes that they wolde abyde the assaulte, for they knewe well they sholde haue as thenne no socoure: for it was determyned bytwene the kynge of Castell and the Frensshemen, to suffre the Englysshmen at that tyme to do what they lyst in Galyce, or elles where, and to passe without batayle. Then some of the englysshemen sayd, yf other townes in Castell gyue vs as moche to doo as this doth, it shall be longe or we wynde the royaume; and thenne other sayd, there is moche pyllage within the towne brought thyder out of all the cuntry aboute, and therefore they are lothe to yelde vp the towne; thenne some demaunded who were capytaynes within  $\text{f}$  towne? and suche as knewe them sayd, two basterdes, Bretons, borne good men of armes, and experte in all syeges: and the one is called the bastarde of Pennefort, and the other the basterde of Aulroy, but what soeuer they be, they be valyaunt men of armes, for they se none apparence of socoure, and yet they wyll not yelde vp; and suche as were mounted vp were beten downe agayne perforce. And when the duke of Lancastre was vp and redy and herde the bruyte of the assaulte, he sayd he wolde goo and beholde them; and soo lepte on a courser and vnarmed rode to the assaulte, and his standerde before hym, with the hole armes of Englande and of Fraunce, and at his comynge the assaulte encreased; thenne euery man auanced hymselfe to gete lawde and prayse: and in lyke wyse they within whenne they sawe that the duke was there, they enforced themselfe to shewe theyr valyauntnes. Thus in assaylynge and defendynge they contynued tyll it was thre of the clocke, and it was not apparent that they sholde haue wonne  $\text{f}$  towne at that assaulte. Thenne the duke demaunded who were capytaynes within the towne, and it was shewed hym; thenne he sayd, I wolde the marshall sholde speke with them, and to know yf they wyll yelde them or not: I thynke they haue not as yet ben demaunded, wherfore byd the marshall come and speke with me. A knyght wente to hym and sayd, Syr, my lord  $\text{f}$  duke wolde ye sholde come and speke with hym: then he came to  $\text{f}$  duke, and the duke sayd, Marshall, knowe ye yf these Bretons wyl put themselfe vnder myne obeysaunce or not? we trauayle sore our men, and there be dyuers of them sore hurte, and we waste our artillery, and we can not tell when we shall haue nede therof, wherfore I praye you goo to them and take some treatye with them: Syr, sayd he, it shall be done, syth ye wyll take them to mercy, it is reason they be herde speke.

Then the marshall wente from the duke to  $\text{f}$  assaulte, and sayd to an Heralte, go thy way and fynde the meanes to speke with  $\text{f}$  capytaynes within the towne, and shewe the how I wolde speke with them? The heralte departed and wente into the dykes with his cote armure on his backe, with the armes of the duke of Lancastre, and soo his company made hym waye by the commaundement of the marshal. The bastarde of Alroy



Alroy sawe wel the heraulte, and so came to the wall, and sayd, Heraulte, what wolde you, I am one of the capytaynes, I thynke ye be sente to me? That is trewe syr, sayd the heraulte, who was called Percy; and syr, the marshall desyreth you to come to the barryers and speke with hym: I am contente, sayd the bastarde, soo that ye cause your men to leue the assaulte, otherwyse I wyll not come: I thynke that shall be soone done, sayd the heraulte. And soo he retourned to the marshall, and shewed hym as ye haue herde.

Then the marshall called his trompet, and caused hym to blowe the retrayte, and soo he dydde; thenne the assaulte seased on all partyes. Thenne the capytaynes came to the barryers, and there was redy the marshal, syr Johā Holande, and syr Thomas Moreaus, and dyuers other Englysshemen; Syrs, sayd the Englysshemen, wyll ye be taken perforce and be vitterly lost and slayne, poore and ryche? we knowe well that the comonte of the towne wolde gladly yelde them to my lorde f duke, and to my lady the duches, for they had gyuen vp this towne or this, and ye had not ben, wherfore yf ye be taken, it is euyll for you; and one thyng ye maye be sure of: we wyll not departe hence tyll we haue it, outhy by fayre meanes or otherwyse, therfore speke ye togyder and aduise you, and gyue me an answeyre, for I knowe my charge. Syr, sayd the basterde, we are agreed allredy togyder, and that is, yf ye wyll cause vs surely to be conduyted to the towne of Arpent,<sup>a</sup> without daunger or peryll, we shall yelde vp the towne to you, soo that the men and women withyn maye lyue in peas and surety vnder the obeysaunce of the duke, in lyke maner as other townes do in Galyce, and none otherwyse; we knowe well ye be the marshall of the oost, and that all treatyes perteyneth to you, and what soeuer ye do the duke wyll agree to the same. That is trewe, sayd syr Thomas, it shall be as ye desyre, soo that ye bere with you nothyng but that is your owne, and not to robbe nor pyll the towne, nor that ye haue wonne in f cuntry, for that may cause ryot to be made bytwene you and our men. Syr, sayd the bastarde, we shall cary nothyng with vs but that is our owne, and yf any of our company haue bought any thyng of any of the towne, and are but euyll payde, yet we shall make noo ryot therfore; I thynke as for mete and drynke syth we came hyder in garyson our men haue payde nothyng. As for that, sayd the marshall, is excepte, take all vytaile in aduantage, for soo wyl our men do: but I say ye shall cary away no mouables. Syr, sayd the barstarde, we be not soo wyse men, but that some of our company wyll take somewhat. Well, sayd syr Johan Holande, let them passe, that is theyr owne is theyr owne, we wyl not go so nere them as to serche theyr males.<sup>b</sup> Soo be it, sayd the marshall. Then there was an abstinence made for that daye, and the nexte daye they sholde departe. Then f englysshmen went to theyr lodgyng and vnarmed them, and toke theyr ease, and f Bretons all that daye trussed and gadered togyder grete pyllage that they had wonne before in f cuntry of Castell, for all was abandoned to them, soo that therby suche as came fyrste into that cuntry wanne grete good; and so in the trussyng of theyr baggage they toke many thynges from the men of the towne, as cloth and fethers, and other stufte, suche as they founde; and when any of f poore men spake to them, sayenge, syrs, that good ye take is none of yours, it is our good, ye brought it not hyder; then f Bretons wolde say agayne, holde your peas ye vyl-laynes, we haue a commysyon of the kynge of Castell to paye ourselfe of our wages: ye wyll not paye vs, and thoughte ye hadde payde vs well and truly, yet we must haue newe wages agayne, therfore this that we take is our owne.

Then the nexte daye the marshall lepte on his horse, and a lx. speres in his company, and soo came to the barryers of the towne, and there taryed a space. Thenne the capytaynes of the Bretons came thyder, and the marshall sayd, Syrs, be ye redy to depart?

<sup>a</sup> Villalpando.<sup>b</sup> Portmanteau.

part? Ye, syr, sayd they, so we may haue conduyte to guyde vs. Whether wyll you go? sayd the marshall. To the towne of Arpent,<sup>a</sup> sayd they. Well sayd, quod the marshall; beholde here them that shall conduyte you: thenne he called forthe a knyght of Englande, called syr Steuen Stebery,<sup>b</sup> and sayd to hym, take x. speres with you, and brynge these Bretons to Arpent,<sup>a</sup> and retourne you to morowe. He dyd as he was commaunded, and soo guyded forthe these Bretons with moche baggage; and whenne they were al departed, thenne the marshall and his company entred into the towne, and the people of the towne made hym grete reuerence, for many of them thought it had ben  $\bar{y}$  duke hymselfe. When the marshall sawe these Bretons departe with so grete caryage, he demaunded of them of the towne yf they hadde taken away any of theyr goodes or not. Ye, syr, truely, sayd they, and  $\bar{y}$  to a grete substaunce. Why dyd you not, sayd the marshall, shewe me  $\bar{y}$  betymes? for I sholde haue caused them to haue rendred it agayne. Syr, sayd they, we durst not, for they thretened to slee vs yf we spake therof: syr, they be cursed people; there is none of them but he is a stronge thefe; it is noo meruayle though they robbe vs, for ech of thē wyll robbe other. The marshal smyled, and then he sente for the chefe men of the towne, and they came before hym; then he made them to swere to holde the towne of Aurene<sup>c</sup> of the duke of Lancastre for euer, in lyke maner and fourme as the other townes in Galyce hadde doone before.

Then he ordeyned newe offycers, and toke of euery man theyr faythes and othes, and soo dranke and returned to the duke into the felde, vnder the shadowe of the Olyue trees, for the hete of the sone, whiche was soo excessyue hooted that man nor horse coude abyde it, nor noo man durst ryde a foragyng till after the houre of iii. for the hete.

The grettest ymagynacyon that the duke hadde, was for that it was shewed hym howe the kyng of Castell was abrode, and with a grete armye comynge agaynst hym to fyght: for he sawe well that he coude not perfytely come to the chalenge of Castell but by force of batayle, and soo he sente out spyes into euery coost; but themme it was surely enfourmed hym by his spyes and by pylgrymes that the kyng of Castell made none assembly for to come into the felde, but kepte hymselfe and his men in gaysons; and also that the duke of Borbon was not as then come into Castell, nor no tydynges there of his comynge. Soo when the duke hadde taryed fyue dayes in the marches of Auranches,<sup>e</sup> he determyned to goo to Noye,<sup>d</sup> and there to assaye by assaulte to passe the brydge ouer the ryuer of Erne.<sup>f</sup>

Then the knyght that had conduyted the Bretons to the towne of Arpent<sup>a</sup> returned agayne, and it was demaunded of hym what company of men of warre were there in garyson. He sayd, howe syr Olyuer of Clcsquy<sup>f</sup> was there with a thousande speres, Bretons and Frensshemen. Then the constable and marshall sayd to the duke, syr, it were well done we wente and scrymyssed with them; peraduenture they wyll yssue out to demaunde dedes of armes, for there be some of them hath grete desyre therto. I am contente, sayd the duke; let vs dyslodge; here we take noo profyte. Then it was ordeyned to dyslodge the nexte mornyng, and to goo to Noye,<sup>d</sup> and thenne after to Arpent.<sup>a</sup>

Nowe lette vs somewhat speke of the kyng of Portyngale, and of the waye that he toke for to entre into the royalme of Castell, and thenne we shall retourne agayne to the duke of Lancastre.

<sup>a</sup> Villalpando.<sup>b</sup> Eastbury.<sup>c</sup> Duero.<sup>d</sup> Orense.<sup>e</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>f</sup> Noya.—*Johnes* says Zamora.

*Howe the kynge of Portyngale brente a towne when he was departed fro Porte,<sup>a</sup> and besyged ii. castelles.*

CAP. LXXXIX.<sup>b</sup>

THE kynge of Portyngale departed from Porte,<sup>a</sup> and lefte there  $\text{f}$  quene his wyfe and her syster, daughter to the duke of Lancastre; and to kepe them and the cyte, he ordeyned  $\text{f}$  erle of Nowar<sup>c</sup> to abyde there with a hundred speres of Portyngales and Gascoynes, suche as were come to serue hym; and then he rode forthe, and the fyrst nyght lodged a thre legges from the cyte of Porte,<sup>a</sup> and the nexte daye departed in thre batayles a fayre softe pace, bycause of his lote men, wherof there were a xii. thousande, with all the caryage; and after, the kynge folowed with a thousande speres; there was with hym Don Galoys, Ferrant Partecke,<sup>d</sup> and Ponnase de Cougne;<sup>e</sup> and Vas Marten de Cougne<sup>f</sup> hare the kynges baner: also there was John Radyghes de Sar, and the mayster Denyce,<sup>f</sup> called Ferrant Radyghes, with other grete barons and knyghtes; and the reregarde ledde the constable of Portyngale, the erle of Angouse, and the erle of Escall, the lytell Dan<sup>g</sup> de Mondest, Radygo Radyghes of Vale Conseaulx,<sup>h</sup> Ange Saluage of Geneue, Johan Ausale of Popelan, and other lordes and knyghtes, to the nombre of fyue hundred speres. Thus they rode forth, and tooke the waye to saynt yrayne<sup>i</sup> by small iourneys, for they toke theyr lodgyng euer by thre of the clocke, and so came to the cabase of Juberoth,<sup>k</sup> and there taryed ii. dayes; and from thens, at two iourneys, they rode to Aurach,<sup>l</sup> in Portyngale, and there rested other ii. dayes; and then they came to saynt yrayne<sup>i</sup> and there lodged; the towne was lefte voyde euer syth the batayle of Juberoth;<sup>k</sup> the people were drawn into Castel, exepte the castelles, wherin were Bretons and Poycteuyns in garyson. The kynge of Portyngale determyned that bothe the castelles sholde be assayled, for he thought with his honoure he myght not passe by without shewyng of some dedes of armes, for the Castellyans hadde wonne the castelles; therfore he thought to assaye for to wynde them agayne. The kynge hadde brought with hym from the cyte of Porte<sup>a</sup> certayne engynes, for he knewe well he sholde haue some assaultes in his waye.

Thus the kynge of Portyngale and his men lodged in the marches of saynt yrayne,<sup>i</sup> whiche was the entre into the royalme of Castell, all alonge by the ryuer of Pese,<sup>m</sup> rynnynge to Syuyll the grete. By this foresayd ryuer myght well be brought into the oost all maner of thynges frome Lysbone and frome Porte;<sup>a</sup> and soo they were a thyrty thousande one and other. The constable and his rowte, with halfe of the comonte, laye before the castell Perrade into the eest parte; and aboute  $\text{f}$  other castell in the west parte, called Tayllydon,<sup>n</sup> lay  $\text{f}$  marshal and his company; in the castell Perrade was capytayne a knyght of Bretayne, called syr Moreys Fouchance, an experte man of armes; and in the castell Tayllydon<sup>n</sup> was syr Jaques of Mountmelyer, a knyght of Poyctou; and eche of them hadde a j. speres. The syege thus lay a xv. dayes without doynge of ony thyng, sauynge there were engynes reysed vp; and they dydde cast x. or xii. tymes a daye grete stones agaynst the walles, but lytell hurte they dyd, but on the couerynge of the houses, for the houses within were well vawted with stone, so that the engynes nor spryngalles dyd the men but small damage. When the kynge sawe that the

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.<sup>d</sup> Fernando Portelet.<sup>e</sup> De Valconsiaux.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXV.<sup>c</sup> D'Acunha.<sup>f</sup> Santarum.<sup>g</sup> Grand Master of Avis.<sup>h</sup> Aljubarota.<sup>i</sup> Callidon.<sup>j</sup> Count of Novaire.<sup>k</sup> Le petit Danede.<sup>l</sup> Ourem.<sup>m</sup> Tagus.

the castelles wolde not be wonne, and that his men began to waxe wery, he determyned then to dyslodge and to entre into Galyce, and to approche nerer to the duke of Lancastres oost, to the entente that they myght determyne togyder what waye were best for them to take: soo on a day they dyslodged, and trussed and departed fro saynt yrayne,<sup>2</sup> at whiche tyme they brente the towne in suche wyse that there was not a place lefte vnbrente able to lodge a horse. When they of the castell sawe them departe, they were ryght ioyous, and sowned theyr trompettes, and made grete chere and melody tyll they were all paste: that daye the oost wente and lodged at Pount Ferrault in Galyce, and the nexte daye in the vale saynt Katheryne, and on the iii. day they came before Ferroull in Galyce, a stronge towne, holdynge on the kyng of Castelles parte, and there they rested.

*Howe the kyng of Portyngale and his oost came before Ferroull, and assaulted it, and it was wonne, and brought vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre.*

C A P. LXXX.<sup>b</sup>

WHEN the kyng of Portyngale and his men were before Ferroull, they founde there a good cuntry; and the constable and marshall sayd it sholde be assaulted, affyrmyng howe it was preynable: they were two dayes without ony assaulte gyuynge, trustynge they wolde haue gyuen it vp, but they dyd not, for within were Bretons and Borgonyons, that sayd they wolde defende it: by the thyrde daye the engynes were reysed vp, and the marshall sowned his trompettes to the assaulte; then euery man made hym redy to approche the towne, and they within, whē they herde the trompettes blowe to the assaulte, they drewe euery man to theyr defence, and women caryed and brought stoones to caste, for in Castell and Galyce women be of grete defence and of grete courage, in maner as grete as the men. The Portyngales came to the dykes, whiche were depe, but there was no water in them; then they boldely entred into the dykes, and clymed vp agayne on the othir syde, but they had moche adoo, sauynge they were well paussed, for they on the walles caste downe stoones, and hurte many, and caused them to recule; also ther was good castynge of dartes, bothe outwarde and inwarde. Thus the assaulte endured tyll it was thre of the clocke, and the men were sore chaced, for the sone was hoote, and they in the dykes hadde none eyre nor wynde, so that they thought they perysshed for hete, soo that therby the assaulte ceased, and all that season the engynes dydde caste into the towne at aduenture. Thenne the marshall counsayled noo moore to assaulte the towne, but styll to let the engynes caste, and to scrymysshe at the baryers, and to shewe some dedes of armes; and so as he deused it was doone, and dayly scrymysshes made; and they within often tymes were closed without the gate, bytwene the baryers and the gate, for to scrymysshe moore at theyr ease.

And whenne the marshall of Portyngale sawe theyr maner, he deused theron, and sayd to syr Johā Ferrant,<sup>c</sup> I se well the sowdyours within at some season are closed bytwene the gate and the baryers; let vs take a v. or vi. C. of our men and laye a bysshment, and with a fewe persones let vs scrymysshe a whyle, and then withdrawe lytell and lytell, and we shall se that they wyll yssue oute on truste to wyne some what of vs; thenne let vs tourne agayne sodaynely to the baryers and busye them some what, and thenne our embusshe of horsemen sodeynly to come on them: and when they se that they wyll forsake theyr baryers, and open the gates to entre, and soo peraduenture

we

<sup>2</sup> Santarem.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXVI.

<sup>c</sup> Fernando.

we may entre with them; and at the leest yf they within open not the gate, they that be without shal be al oures. That is true. syr. sayd syr Johñ Ferrant,<sup>a</sup> Well, sayd the marshall, who was called syr Alue Perreer,<sup>b</sup> do you ý one feate and I shall doo the other: goo you and syr Martyne de Marlo, and Pomas de Congue,<sup>c</sup> and kepe the enbusse, and I shall go and make the scrymysshe, it perteyneth to myne offyce. As they deuyssed so they dyd; there were appoynted out v. C. horsemen for to kepe the enbusse, and so of iii. dayes they made noo scrymysshe, wherby they within of the garyson hadde meruayle, and sayd to the galycyens within the towne, lo. ye vnhappy people. ye wolde haue gyuen vp this towne at theyr fyrste comyng, and we had not ben; We haue gretely preserued the honoure of your towne, for ye shal se the kyng of Portyngale and all his oost shortely departe hens, without doynge any damage to vs.

On the fourthe daye the marshall. as was denysed, began the scrymysshe with a small company, and the horsemen laye styll prynely in theyr busslment; and the Bretons within, when they sawe theyr enemyes in trust to gete some good prysoner, opened theyr gate, and lefte it styll open, to the entente it sholde be the more redyer at theyr retourne, for they trustyd not gretely the Galycyens within the towne: so they came to the barryers, and dyd there as it apperteyned to a scrymysshe: then, when the marshall sawe his tyme. he made semblaunt as though he and his men hadde hen wery, and as halfe dy-comfyted, reculed lytell and lytell; and when the Bretons saw that, they thought to haue wonne all, and opened theyr barryeis all at ones and yssued out, and came out and toke xxv. prysouers, and they hadde so moche haste to gete them into the towne, that they lefte theyr barryers styll open; then the marshall made a sygne to the busshement, and they brake out a v. C. horse, and came more then a galoppe, and entred the barryers; and when the Frensshemen and Bretons sawe that, they wolde haue reculed to theyr barryers, but they coulde not, for the Portyngales entred as soone as they into the towne. Thus was the towne wonne and dyuers slayne, and the sowdyours that were there in garyson were taken prysoners, excēpte suche as saued themselves by another gate, and soo yssued into the feldes and rode to Arpente,<sup>d</sup> where as syr Olyuer of Clysqy<sup>e</sup> was, and a thousande speres with hym: and there they shewed howe the towne of Feroull was lost.

Thus as I haue shewed you fell of this towne of Feroull in Galyce. The Portyngales wanne it, and dydde put it vnder the obeysaunce of the duke of Lancastre, in whose tytle they made that warre. The kyng of Portyngale was gretely reioyced of that his men hadde done soo well, and incontynente he sente worde therof to the duke of Lancastre, shewyng hym howe he hadde increased his herytage, for he hadde wonne hym that towne, and he trusted to wynne moo. The duke was gretely reioyced of those tydynges, who was as thē come before Noy,<sup>f</sup> wherin was the Barroys of Barres, and syr Johñ of Chatelet Monraunte, and syr Trystram de la Gayle, syr Raynolde du Roy, syr Wyllyam of Mongteney, and dyuers other knyghtes and squyers of Fraunce; and when the dukes marshall sawe the castell of Noye,<sup>f</sup> he sayd, loke, as Coulongne<sup>g</sup> is one of the keyes of castell towarde the see, soo is this castell of Noye<sup>f</sup> another keye towardes Castell, for he is no lorde of Castell without he be lorde of Coulongne<sup>g</sup> and of Noye.<sup>f</sup> Lette vs goo loke what compayn there is there; it is shewed me howe the Baroys of Barres, an experte man of armes of Fraunce, is there: I thinke at the entrey of the byrdge we shall haue some scrymyssh. Syr, sayd syr Lamburyne of Luners,<sup>h</sup> and syr Johñ Dambreticourte, that wolde we gladly se. The vaungarde, wherin were a v. C. speres of good men of armes, rode forthe in good ordre, and the duke sente parte of his

VOL. II. 2 M

<sup>a</sup> Fernando.<sup>b</sup> Alvarez Percyra.  
<sup>i</sup> Noya.<sup>c</sup> D'Aenba.<sup>e</sup> Coruuna.<sup>d</sup> Villalando.<sup>h</sup> Maubrun de Luners.<sup>f</sup> Du Guesclin.

company

company thyder to make the gretter mustre, for he knewe well that his marshall wolde shewe there some dedes of armes.

When the watche of the castell sawe the vowearde approche, he sowned alaram: themme the capytaynes knewe incontynente that the Englysshmen came thyder. They armed them and put themselfe in good ordre; they were a hundred men of armes; and some came to theyr baryers with a xii. penons, but syr Barroys of Barres was moost of reputacion.

And also he hadde the chefe charge, and also syr Johan of Chatell Morant was the nexte. And when syr Thomas Moreaus, marshall of the oost, sawe that he was nere the towne, he alyghted afoote and all his company, and delyuered theyr horses to theyr pages, and so came togyder to ƿ baryers with theyr speres in theyr handes, and at euery vi. paces they rested, to kepe themselfe close togyder; it was a goodly syght to beholde them; and so on a fronte they came to the baryers, and there they were receyued valy-auntly, and I thynke yf they had ben in the playne felde there had ben noo goodlyer dedes of armes done then was done there, and yet the baryers was bytwene them; and there the marshall without was matched w̄ syr Johñ of ƿ chateau Morant within, and eche of them sore trauayled to hurte eche other, but theyr armure was so good that noone of them toke damage; and syr Thomas Percy was coped with le Barroys, and Manburyn of Lynyers with syr Wyllyam of Mongteney, and syr Johñ Dabretycourte with syr Reynolde of Roy, and the lorde Talbot with Trystram de le gayle. Thus they were matched and scrymysshed togyder w̄ theyr speres; and when they were wery they rested, and other knyghtes and squyers came and scrymysshed in theyr places: this scrymysse endured tyll hyghe noone: then archers came to ƿ place, but then the gentylmen departed, and set crosse bowes to shote agaynst the englysshe archers and spanyarde with dartes, and they scrymysshed tyl it was past one of the clocke; then came other yomen and varlettes, and soo scrymysshed tyll it was nyght. Then the englysshemen retourned, and they of the castell returned into theyr garyson, and made good watche: aboute halfe a legge frome the castell of Noye,<sup>a</sup> alonge by the ryuers syde, the Englysshemen laye, the whiche ryuer dydde them grete ease for theyr horses, for they had grete lacke of water tyll they came there; there they refreshed them a v. or vi. dayes. and then wente before ƿ towne of Arpente,<sup>b</sup> to se the dealyng of the constable of Castell and of the frensshmen; and there they herde tydynges of the kyng of Portyngale, who laye in the playnes of Feroull and all his oost, and was in purpose to come to the towne of Padron in Galyce, whiche was in ƿ waye towards the duke and the Englysshemen, and there it was ordleyed that the kyng and ƿ duke sholde mete togyder to comon and determyne howe they sholde perceyuer in theyr warre.

They had ben a moneth abrode in the countrey, and hadde nere hande brought all Galyce into theyr obeysaunce, and they coulde here no tydynges of ƿ kyng of Castell nor of ƿ frensshemen; wherfore they hadde grete meruayle, for it was sayd ƿ kyng of Castell had somoned his people at Burgus fro all the partyes of the royalme, as of Castell, Syuell, Cordowayne,<sup>c</sup> Colledé,<sup>d</sup> Spayne, Lyon, Struges,<sup>e</sup> Vale olyue,<sup>f</sup> and of Sury;<sup>g</sup> and ƿ he had lx. M. men and vi. M. speres of pure frensshemen; and howe that thyder sholde come ƿ duke of Borbon, who, as it was sayd, was departed out of Fraunce to come thyder; therefore the Portyngales and the Englysshmen thought to drawe togyder to be the more stronger and redyer yf theyr enemyes come on them, and they byleued these tydynges to be of trouthe; wherfore they were ioyfull, for they wolde gladly haue made an ende by batayle, for otherwyse they sawe well they coulde not atteyne to theyr desyred entrepryse; and syr Wyllyam of Lygnac and syr Gaultyer of Passac were alwayes

<sup>a</sup> Noya.<sup>b</sup> Villalpando.<sup>c</sup> Cordova.<sup>d</sup> Toledo.<sup>e</sup> Asturias.<sup>f</sup> Valladolid.<sup>g</sup> Soria.

wayes aboute the kyng of Castell, and euery weke they had tydynges out of Fraunce what busynes there was there, and of the departynge of the duke of Borbon, and howe he toke in his waye of Auygnyon to se pope Clement and the cardynalles there: euer they counsayled the kyng not to fyght tyll the duke of Borbon were come; and amonge other tydynges they herde of the duke of Bretayne, howe he had taken in the castell of Ermyne  $\text{f}$  constable of fraunce, and ransomed at a C. M. frankes, and of his iii. castelles and towne that was deluyered to the duke of Bretayne, and howe that therby the iourney and voyage into Englande was broken; they had meruayle of this, and to what purpose the duke of Bretayne dyd it; they supposed that the counsayle therof came out of Englande.

Thus, as I haue sayd before, the royalme of Fraunce was brought into trouble, and specially the kynges vncles were sore moued with the defyaunce that came fro the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> for they were fell and rude, and out of the course of other defyaunces, as I shall shewe you when I declare the matter; and also the frenssh kyng and his vncles were sore dyspleased in  $\text{y}$  the duke of Bretayne had broken theyr voyage into Englande by  $\text{y}$  see, and he that was chefe of the entrepryse, taken, that was the constable of fraunce, and ransomed as before is sayd at a C. M. frankes, and taken fro hym iii. castelles and a towne, whiche was a thyng gretely preiudycyall to the kyng and to the royalme of fraunce; howbeit, the kyng soone passed ouer all the matters, for he was but yonge, wherfore he regarded it not so sore as though he had ben of perlyte age; but suche as were auncyent and wyse sayd,  $\text{y}$  by suche lyke matters the royalme of fraunce hath had moche a do in tyme past, as when the kyng of Nauare caused syr Charles of Spayne, constable of Fraunce, to be slayne, for whiche cause kyng Johñ neuer loued after the kyng of Nauare, and toke fro hym all his landes in Normandy. Then some other wolde saye, yf kyng Charles, fader to the kyng that nowe is, were alyue, (he loued the constable soo well), surely he wolde be reuenged, and make warre to the duke of Bretayne, and to take fro hym all his landes, whatsoeuer it cost hym. Thus euery man spake of this deed, and sayd it was euyll done. Then the kynges vncles and the counsayle of the royalme, somewhat to satsfy the people, who were sore dyspleased with  $\text{y}$  duke of Bretayne, deternyned that a prelate and iii. barons sholde be sente to the duke, to speke with hym and to here his reasons, and to commaunde hym to come to Parys to make his excuse of  $\text{y}$  he had done: thyder sholde go the bysshop of Beauuoys, and syr Myles of Dornams,<sup>b</sup> a sage and a ryght valyaunt man, and well langaged, and with hym syr Johñ of Bean,<sup>c</sup> syr Johñ of Beuell, and the Iorde de la Ryuer, who had theyr charge what they sholde saye and do; and the bysshoppe of Beauuoys toke his waye by Mount le herry, where as the constable was, for  $\text{y}$  towne and castell perteyned to hym; kyng Charles had gyuen it to hym and to his heyres: and whyle the bysshop was there a sykenes toke hym, and so lay in a feuer a xv. dayes and dyed: then in his stede was sente the bysshop of Langers, and he toke his waye with the other into Bretayne.

It myght be demanded of me howe I knewe all these matters, to speke so proprely of them. I answer to all suche, that I haue made grete dylygence in my dayes to knowe it, and haue serched many royalmes and countreys to come to the true knowledge of all  $\text{y}$  matters conteyned in this hystory, wryten and to be wryten, for god gaue me the grace to haue the laysure to se in my dayes, and to haue the acquayntaunce of all the hyghe and myghty prynces and lordes as well in Fraunce as in Englande: for in the yere of our Iorde god a M. iii. C. iii. score and x. I had laboured xxxvii. yeres, and as then I was of the age of lvii. yeres; and in xxxvii. yeres, a man beyng in

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> " Miles de Dormaus, Bishop of Beauvais."<sup>c</sup> De Vienne.

strength, and wel reteyned in enery coost as I was, (for after my yonge dayes I was in the kyng of Englandes courte v. yeres with the queene, and also I was welcome to kyng John of Fraunce and to kyng Charles his sone), myght well lerne many thynges; and surely it was alwayes my chefe ymagynacyon and pleasure well enquiryre and to retayne it by wrytyng; and howe I was enfourmed of the takynge of the constable of Fraunce I shall shewe you. A yere after this matter fell, I rode from the cyte of Augyers to Towres in Towrayne: and I laye on a nyght at Beauforte in f̄ vale, and the nexte day I met with a knyght of Bretayne, called syr Wyllyam Dancenys; he was rydynge to se my lady of Mavll in Towrayne, his cosyne, and her chyldren; she was newly a wydowe, and I fell in aquayntaunce with this knyght, and founde hym ryght courtoys and swete of wordes; then I demaunded of hym some tydynges, and specially of the takynge of the constable, whiche matter I was glad to here, and to knowe the trouthe therof; and he shewed me and sayd howe he had ben at f̄ parlement at Vannes,<sup>a</sup> with f̄ lorde of Ancenys his cosyne, a grete baron of Bretayne: and in lyke maner as syr Espayne de Lyon enfourmed me of all thynges that had fallen in Foyze, in Byerne, and in gascoyne, and also as syr Johñ Ferrant parteke<sup>b</sup> shewed me of all the matters of Portyngale and of Castell, in lyke maner this knyght shewed me many thynges, and more wolde haue done, if I had ryden longer in his company. Thus bytwene Mounte le herry and Premylly<sup>c</sup> was iiii. grete leages, and we rode but softly, and in this way he shewed me many thynges, f̄ whiche I bare well in my remembraunce, and specially of the adventures of Bretayne; and thus as we rode, and that we came nere to Premylly,<sup>c</sup> we entred into a medowe: there this knyght rested and sayd: A god haue mercy of the soule of the good constable of Fraunce; he dydde here ones a goodly iourney, and profytable for the royalme, vnder the baner of syr Johñ de Bewell, for he was not as then constable, but newly come out of Spayne; and I demaunded of hym howe it was. I shal shewe you, sayd he, whē I am on horsebacke, and so we mounted; than we rode forthe fayre and easely, and as we rode he sayde:

In the season that I haue shewed you, quod this knight, this countre here was full of Englysshmen, robbers and pyllers of Gascoyne, bretons, and almayns, and aduenturers of all nacions, for all the countre on bothe sydes of the ryuer of Loyre were replenysshed with them: for the warre bytwene Fraūce and Englande was newly renewed, so that all maner of theues and robbers entred into this countrey: for here they assembled and fortified thēselfe, to conquere the castell of Beauforde in the valey, that ye sawe but late, was in their handes and all the countrey about. Thus, to come to my purpose, the Englysshmen and gascoyns had in their handes the towne and castell of Prinulley,<sup>c</sup> and had gretly fortified it; and they helde also other smalle forterresses alonge by the ryuer of Loyre; and whan-oeuer they wolde ryde, they were to the nombre bytwene a thousande and eyght hundred fightynge men. Than sir Bertram, sir Johan of Beull, and the lorde of Mailly, and other knyghtes of this countrey sette their ymaginacions howe they myght deluyer the cōtrey of these people, and gathered tognyder a fyue hūdred speares, and had spyes, and knewe whan the Englysshmen wolde ryde, and were in purpose to come before Samure, for the capytaynes of all their forterresses were assembled tognyder at Prinully,<sup>c</sup> whiche is a lytell here before vs. The frenchemen rode and passed the water that ye se here by vs, and layde thēselfe in a bussiment in a wode, a lytell here besyde on our ryght hande; and in the morynge, at the somme risynge, the englysshmen and other departed from Prinully,<sup>c</sup> and they were a nyne hundred men; and whanne oure men sawe them, they knewe well they must fyght; and there they cōmuned tognyder what crye they shulde call on that daye; some wolde haue cryed the crye of sir Bertrame, but he wolde in no wyse agre therto; and

<sup>a</sup> Vannes.<sup>b</sup> Fernando Portelet.<sup>c</sup> Preully.



and moreouer he sayd, that he wolde displaye no baner that day, but that he wolde fyght vnder the baner of syr Johan de Beull. Than our ennemyes came into this medowe, where as I lyghted right now; and as soone as they were entred, we brake out of our busschement and entred into the medowe; and as soone as they sawe vs they alyghted a fotē, and we in lykewise, and so entred eche within other: ther was sore foynnyng eche agaynst other, and dyuers of bothe parties onerthrowen. Thus our batayle endured a longe space, without knowyng who shulde haue the vycorie: but, to saye f̄ trouth, we were all chosyn men of armes, and many of our ennemyes were but yuell armed, and were but theues and robbers; howbeit, they founde vs woike ynoughe, and oure handes full: but than sir Moris Tresiqued and sir Geffray Richone, sir Geffray Caresnell<sup>p</sup> and Morfonase, folowed sir Bertram at the spures; they came and refreshed vs with a thre score speares of good men of armes, and they rushed in with their horses and brake oure ennemyes so brode, that they coude nat assēble tognyder agayne; and whanne the capytayns of these pyllers sawe that the iourney wente agaynst them, they tooke their horses, nat all, for there abode in the felde a thre hundred slayne and taken; and the chase endured to saynt Mors<sup>b</sup> on the ryuer of Loyre, and there they entred into a bastel; Sir Robert Sem,<sup>c</sup> Robert Herne,<sup>d</sup> Richarde Gylle,<sup>e</sup> and Jacomyne Clerke, these foure saued themselfe, and passed ouer the ryuer of Loyre, and so entred into foure fortresses, that their men helde on that syde the ryuer; but they taryed nat longe there, but rode into Auergne and Lymosyn.

Thus by this iourney all the coūtre here aboute was delyuered, for the robbers nor they assembled no more tognyder after; therefore I saye, that sir Bertram the constable was a valyaunt man, and profitable for the realme of Fraunce. Sir, quod I, it is trewe, he was a valyaunt man, and so is sir Olyuer of Clesquyn;<sup>f</sup> and whan I named hym Clesquyn, the knight smyled, and I demaunded of hym where at he smyled. Sir, quod he, I shall shewe, bycause ye name hym Clesquyn,<sup>g</sup> for that is nat his right name, nor neuer was; though eury man call hym so, yet all we of Bretayne call hym the same; and sir Bertram, while he lyned, wolde gladly haue hadde it reformed, but he coude nat amende it, for the worde is redyer to falle on a mannes tonge than his right name. Than I desyred hym of his courtesy to shewe me if there were any grete difference bytwene his names. Nay, sir, quod he, there is no grete difference; but where he is called Clesquyn,<sup>h</sup> he shulde be named Glaye aquyne; and I shall shewe you, as I haue herde it reported, howe that name came to hym, and it is of trouthe, for ye shall fynde it written in the aunycnt cronycles of Bretaygne. The wordes of this knight greatly pleased me; and I said to hym, Sir, ye shall do me great pleasure to shewe me the mater, and I shall neuer forgete it, for sir Bertram was so valyaunt a knyght, that his dedes ought to be put in remembraunce. That is true, quod the knyght, and I shall shewe you. Thus sir Wylliam of Aunsien<sup>s</sup> began his tale:

In the season whan Charles the great raigned in Francc, who conquered and augmented the faythe, and was Emperour of Rome and kyng of Fraunce and of Almaygne, and lyeth at Ayes the chapell, this kyng Charles, as we rede and fynde in the aunycnt cronycles, for ye knowe well that all the knowlege in the world is knowen by writyng, for we haue nothyng to founde vpon trouthe nor to aproue it but by scripture: this kyng Charles was in Spayne diuers tymes, and at one tyme he was styll there a ix. yere, without retournyng into Fraunce, but styll went forthe on his conquest. In the same season ther was a kyng sarazyn, called Aquyn; he was kyng of Bougie<sup>b</sup> in Barbary, right ouer agaynst spaigne, for Spaygne is a great country, begynnynng at saynt John's  
Pie

<sup>p</sup> Kerimel.<sup>b</sup> Saint Maur.  
<sup>f</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>c</sup> Cheney.  
<sup>g</sup> D'Ancennis.<sup>d</sup> Hervey.  
<sup>h</sup> Bugia.<sup>s</sup> Giles.

Pie du porte: for the realme of Arragon and Nauar, of Bisquay, of Portugale, of Cōnymbres,<sup>a</sup> of Lisbonne, of Ciuyle, of Tollet,<sup>b</sup> of Cordwayne,<sup>c</sup> and of Lyon, all these be inclosed within Spayne and other; and this great kyng Charlemayne cōquerid all these countreis: and in this season that the kyng taryed there so longe, this kyng Aquyn of Bougy<sup>d</sup> in Barbary assembled his mē, and came by see into Bretaygne, and arryued at the porte of Wannes,<sup>e</sup> and he hadde there with hym his wyfe and chyldren, and there he conquered and went forwarde. Kyng Charles was well enfourmed of this viage, and howe kyng Aquyn prospered in Bretaygne; but for all that he wolde nat breke his vyage, and sayd, Lette hym alone in Bretaygne; it shal be but a small mater to delyuer the cōuntry of hym and of his, whan we haue ones subnded his cōuntry here, and brought it into the holy faythe. This kyng Aquyn buylded a towre by the see syde, nat farre of fro Wannes,<sup>e</sup> a goodly and a fayre towre, and it was called Glaye; and there this kyng Aquyn lay moche; and whan kyng Charles had accomplished his vyage, and acquyted all Galyce and Spayne from all the myscreantes, and the kynges Sarazyns deed and slayne, and all the lande turned to the Christen faythe, than he retourned into Bretaygne, and on a daye hadde a great batayle agaynst this kyng Aquyne, and nyghe all the myscreantes slayne; and so this kyng Aquyne fledde into the castell of Glaye, and there he hadde redy at the foote of the towre a shyppes, and therin he entred, and his wyfe and his chyldren; but he and his wyfe made suche haste, he was so nere chased, that they hadde no leysar to take with them a yong sonne that laye and slepte in the towre, of a yere olde. Thus the kyng and his wyfe departed by the see, and this chyldre was founde in the towre of Glaye, and was brought to kyng Charlemayne, who was right ioyouse of hym, and said, howe y chylde shulde be baptyسد, and so he was, and Ronland and Olyuer helde hym over the fonte, and was named Olyuer; and the kyng gauē him all the landes that his father Aquyn had conquered. This chyldre, whan he came to the age of a man, was a good knight, and his men called hym sir Olyuer de Glaye aquyn, bycause he was founde in the towre of Glaye, and sonne to the kyng Aquyn.

Thus I haue shewed you the firste foundacyon of sir Bertram of Clesquyn,<sup>f</sup> who shulde be called Glaye aquyne: and sir Bertram in his dayes, after the puttyng out of kyng Dō peter of Castyle, and had crowned kyng Henry, sayde howe he wolde go into Bougy<sup>d</sup> to demaūde his herytage; and without fayle so he had done, for kyng Henry had lent hym men and shyppes to go into Bougye<sup>d</sup> with a great armye, if a great lette had nat broken his voyage; and that was whaē the prince of Wales made warre vpon the sayde kyng Henry, and dyde put hym downe, and by puisaunce dyde sette into Castyle agayne Dō peter: and than at the batayle of Marres,<sup>g</sup> sir Bertram was taken prisoner by sir Johan Chandos, and was sette to ransome at a hūdred thousande frankes; and at another tyme he was also taken at the batayle of Alroy,<sup>h</sup> and ransomed agayne at a hundred thousande frankes. So thus sir Bertrams purpose was brokenne, for the warres bytwene Englande and Fraunce was renewed; so that they hadde ynough to do. Thus he was lynially discended fro the kyng of Bougy,<sup>d</sup> named Aquyne, whose kyngdome is in Barbarye. Thus I haue shewed you the ryght discente of sir Bertram of Clesquyn:<sup>f</sup> I thanked hym, and so we came to the towne of Priuulley.<sup>i</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Coimbra.<sup>b</sup> Toledo.<sup>c</sup> Cordova.<sup>d</sup> Bugia.<sup>e</sup> Vannes.<sup>f</sup> Guesclin.<sup>g</sup> Najara.<sup>h</sup> Auray.<sup>i</sup> Preuilly.

*Howe the frenche ambassadours came to the duke of Bretayne, vpon the takyng of the cōstable of Fraūce, and of the aunswere that was made to them.*

CAP. XCI.<sup>a</sup>

IF I had ben as longe in cōpany with this knight, sir Guyllyam of Aunsens,<sup>b</sup> as I was with sir Espayn de Leon, whā I rode with hym fro the cyte of Pauyers<sup>c</sup> to Ortayes in Byerne, or elles as long as I had ben with sir Johā Ferent Pertelette<sup>d</sup> of Portyngale, he wolde haue shewed me many thynges; but it was nat so, for after dynere, whan we had rydden a ii. leages, we came to a forked waye; the one way was right to Towres in Towrayne, whether as I supposed to ryde, and the other waye was to Maylly, whether the knyght was determyned to ryde: so at this waye we brake company, takyng leaue eche at other; but bytwene Prinulley<sup>e</sup> and our departyng he shewed me many thynges, and specially of the busynesse in Bretayne, and howe the bysshoppe of Langers was sent in the stede of the bysshoppe of Beauuoys, who died by the waye; and how the bysshoppe of Langers, with sir Johan de Bowyll<sup>f</sup> and other, came to the duke of Bretayne, and of the answere that they had: and on the informacyon of this knyght I toke my foundation, and haue written as foloweth.

Ye haue herde here before howe these ambassadours departed fro Parys, fro the kyng and his counsayle, well instructed what they shulde saye and do; and so long they rode by their iourneys, that they aryued at Nautes: than they demaunded where the duke was; it was shewed thē howe he was about the marchesse of Wānes,<sup>g</sup> wher as most accustomedly he lay: they rode thyder, and so came to the cytie of Wannes,<sup>h</sup> it is but xx. myles bytwene. The duke was in the castell called le Mote: than they came before the duke, who by semblant made to thē good and swete recule. The bysshoppe of Langers, because he was a prelate, began to speke and to make his preposicion well and sagely, and sayde, Sir duke, we are here sente to you fro the kyng our maister and fro his vnclis, the duke of Berrey and of Burgoyne, to shewe vnto you howe they haue great marueyle, in that the voiage that they wolde haue made into Englande is by your meanes broken, and haue taken and ransomed the Constable of Fraunce at so highe a raūsome, that they are ryght sorie therof; and moreouer, ye wyll haue thre of his castelles in Bretaygne, the whiche shal be a great anoyaūce to all the resydne of the cōtre, if they shulde be holde agaynst them, with the ayde of the towne of Jugone, the whiche is pertaynyng to the Constables herytage; therefore we are charged to shewe you, and we saye vnto you as messangers fro the kyng our mayster, and from his vnclis, that ye rendre agayne to the cōstable of Fraūce his herytage, that ye with holde from hym, and sette hym agayne in peasable possessyon, accordyng vnto ryght, in lyke maner as they were before, whan they were delyuered you perforce, and by none other ryght nor tytell that ye haue to them; and also, that ye restore agayne entierlye all the money that ye haue hadde of hym: and this is the commaundement of the kyng and his counsayle, that ye come personally to Parys, or where as it shall please the kyng to assygne you, there to make your excuse; and we repute hym so benygne and pacient with that ye be of the blode royall, that he wyll here your excuse: and if he be nat reasonable, the duke of Berrey and the duke of Burgoyne wyll so temper hym, that ye shal be frendes and cosyū to the kyng, as by reason ye ought to be. Than the bysshopp

toured

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXVII.

<sup>d</sup> Fernando Portelet.

<sup>e</sup> Preuilly.

<sup>b</sup> D'Ancennis.

<sup>f</sup> Bueil.

<sup>c</sup> Paumiers.

<sup>g</sup> Vannes.

toured hym to sir Johan of Beull, and said, Sir, is nat this the kynges pleasure? and he sayde yes, and so dyde sir Johan de Vyen. At these wordes there were no mo present but they foure.

When the duke of Bretaine had herde the bysshoppe of Langers speke, he studyed a lytell, and good cause why, for it was a great matter, and at the laste he sayde, Sirs, I haue well vnderstande your wordes, and it is good reasone that I so do, bycause ye be sent from the kyng and his vnclcs; wherfore in their behalfe I wyll do you all the honour and reuerence that I can do; I am bounde therto; but your demaïde and request requyreth counsaile, wherfore I shall take counsaile with myne, and make you suche answere, that ye shall be contented. Sir, ye saye well, quod they; it suffyceth vs. Than they departed, and wente to their lodgynges. At nyght they were desyred to dyne the nexte daye with the duke. So the nexte daye they came to the duke, and were well receyued, and so washed and went to dyner, and satte downe; firste, the bysshoppe of Langers, bycause he was a prelate, and than the duke, than the admyrall of Fraunce, and thanne sir Johan de Beulle: they hadde a great dyner, and were well serued, and after dyner they entred into a counsaile chambre, and there they talked of dyuers maters, and herde mynstrelsy.

These lordes of Fraunce thought surely to haue hadde an answere, but they hadde none. Than wyne and spyces were brought in, and so made collasyon, and than toke their leaue and departed to their lodgyng. The nexte daye they were apoynted to come to the duke, and so they dyde, and the duke receyued them swetely, and at the laste sayd, Sirs, I knowe well ye looke to be aunswered, for by the wordes that I haue herde you saye, ye are charged by the kyng and his vnclcs to bring them an answere; wherfore I say to you, y I haue done nothyng to sir Olyuer of Glesquyne<sup>a</sup> wherof I shulde repente me, sauynge of one thyng, and that is, That he hadde so good a markette as to escape alyue: and in that I saued his lyfe was for the loue of his offyce and nat for his persone, for he hath done me soo many displeasures that I ought to hate hym deedly: and sauynge the displeasure of the kyng and of his vnclcs, and his couisaile, for all the takynge of sir Olyuer, I haue nat therby broken their voyage by the see. I wyll well excuse myselfe therin, for I thought non yuell the daye that I toke hym. A man ought to take his enney my whersoer he fynde hym; and if he were deed, I wolde thynke the realme of Fraunce to be as well ruled or better than it is by his counsaile; and as for his castelles that I holde, the whiche he hath delyuered me, I am in possession of them, and so wyll be, withoute the puyssaunce of a kyng take them fro me: and as for rendringe of his money, I aunswere, I haue had so moche to do in tyme paste, by the meanes of this sir Olyuer of Glysquyn,<sup>a</sup> that I ranne in dette gretyly therby; and nowe I haue payde them that I was bounde vnto, by reason of this dette. This was the answere that the duke of Bretaygne made to the kynges ambassadours. Than they layde forthe other reasons, to enduce the duke to some reasonable waye; but all his answeres tourned euer to one conclusyon: and when they sawe none other waye, they toke their leaues to departe, and y duke gaue them leaue. Thane they returned, and dyd so moch by their journeyes that they came to Parys, to the house of Beautie, besyde Wynsentes.<sup>b</sup> There was the kyng and the quene, and thyder came the duke of Berrey and the duke of Bourgoyne, hauyng great desyre to knowe what answere the duke of Bretaygne hadde made.

The aunswere ye haue herde here before, I nede nat to shewe it agayne; but the kyng and his counsaile were nat content with the duke of Bretaygne, that his ambassadours hadde made no better exployte: and they sayde howe the duke was a proude man

<sup>a</sup> Clisson.

<sup>b</sup> Beauté, near Vincennes.

and a presumptuous, and that the mater shulde nat so reste in peace, seyng the matter so preiudyciall for the Crowne of Fraunce: and the entensyon of the kyng and his counsaile was, to make warre agaynste the duke of Bretayne; and the duke loked for nothyng elles, for he sawe and knewe well howe he had greatly displeasid the kyng and his counsell; but he hated so mortally the constable, that it toke fro hym the good order of reason, for he repented hym sore that he had nat putte hym to dethe whan he hadde hym in his daunger. Thus the mater contynued a longe season; and the duke of Bretayne laye at Wannes,<sup>a</sup> and lytell and lytell rode ouer his countrey, for he feared greatly embusshmentes. He kepte styll in loue and fauour his cyties and good townes, and made secrete treaties with the Englysshmen, and made his castelles and forteresses to be as well kepte as though he had had opyn warre, and was in many imaginations on the dede he had done. Somtyme he wolde say, he wolde he had nat taken the constable; howbeit, he sayd, euer to stoppe mennes mouthes, that sir Olyner of Clesquyn<sup>b</sup> had sore displeasid hym, so that many a man sayd, that elles he wolde neuer haue done it; therby he brought his cōitre in feare, for it is but a small signorie, if a prince be nat feared and doutid of his menne, for and the worste fall, he maye haue peace whan he lyst.

Nowe lette vs leane to speke of the duke of Bretaygne, and let vs somewhat speke of the busynesse that was in the realme of Englāde, whiche was in the same season, horryble and marueylous.

*Howe the kyng of Englandes vnclis were of one accorde and aliaūce agaynst the kyng and his counsaile, and of the murmurynge of the people agaynst the duke of Irelande, and of the auiswere of the londoners to the duke of Gloucestre.*

CAP. XCII.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe the kyng of Englandes vnclis, the duke of yorke and the duke of Gloucestre, with therle of Salisburie and the erle of Arundell, the erle of Northumberlande, the erle of Notyngham, and the archebysshoppe of Caüterbury, all these were of one alyaunce and accorde agaynst the kyng and his counsaile: for these lordes and other were nat content w<sup>th</sup> the kynges counsaile, and sayd among themselves: This duke of Irelande dothe with the kyng what he lyst, and with all [the realme; the kyng wyll nat be counsayled but by vnhappy men, and of base lynage, and taketh no regard to the great lordes of his realme: as longe as he hath suche counsaile about hym, the busynesse of Englande can nat do well, for a realme can nat be well gouerned nor a kyng well counsayled by suche vngracious people. It is sene, a poore man mouēd into gret estate and in fauoure with his mayster, often tymes corrupteth and destroyeth the people and the realme. A man of base lynage canne nat knowe what parteyneth to honoure; their desyre is euer to enryche and to haue all thēselfe, lyke an Otter in the water, whiche coneteth to haue all that he fyndeth. Who hath any profyte by that the duke of Irelande is so great with the kyng? We knowe full well fro whense he came; yet we se that all the realme is ruled by hym, and nat by the kynges vnclis, nor by none of his blode. This ought nat to be suffred. We knowe well ynoughe that the Erle of Oxenforde had neuer ŷ grace to do any valyaunt dede in this realme; his honour, wysedome, counsaile, or gentylnesse is ryght well knowen, and that was well known ones by sir Johan Chandos, in the prince of Wales house at saynt Andrewes in Burdeaux. Another demaūded what mater was that? I shall shewe you,

VOL. II.

2 N

quod

<sup>a</sup> Vannes.<sup>b</sup> Clisson.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXVIII.

quod the other knyght, for I was there present. There was wyne brought on a day into the princes chambre, where as there were many lordes of Englande with hym; and whan the prince had dronke, bicause sir Johā Chandos was constable of Acquitayne, the prince sente hym his cuppe first to drinke, and he toke the cuppe and dranke, and made therof none offre firste to the Erle of Oxenforde, who was father to this duke of Irelāde; and after that sir Johan Chandos had dronke, a squyer bare the cuppe to the Erle, who hadde suche dispyte that sir Johan Chandos hadde drōke before hym, that he refused the cuppe, and wolde nat drinke, and sayde to the squyer in maner of a mocke, Go to thy mayster Chandos, and bydde hym drinke. Shall I go, said the squyer, he hath dronke all redy? Therefore drinke you, sythe he hath offred it to you: if ye wyll nat drinke, by saynt George I shall cast the drinke in your face. Therle, whan he herd that, douted that the squyer wolde do as he sayde, and so toke the cuppe, and sette it to his mouthe and dranke, or at leest made semblant to drinke. And sir Johan Chandos, who was nat farre thens, sawe well all the mater, and helde hym styll tyll the prince was gone from them; than he came to the Erle and sayde, Sir Aubery,<sup>a</sup> are ye displeased in that I dranke before you? I am Constable of this cōuntry; I maye well drinke before you, sythe my lordē the Prince and other lordes here are cōtente therewith. It is of trouthe ye were at the batayle of Poycters; but suche as were there knoweth nat so well as I what ye dyd ther; I shall declare it.

Whanne that my iorde the Prince hadde made his voyage in Languedocke and Carcassone to Narbone, and was retourned hyther to this towne of Bourdeaux, ye toke on you to go into Englande. What the Kyngē sayde to you at your cōmyngē I knowe ryght well, yet I was nat there. He demaunded of you if ye hadde furnyshed your voyage, and what ye had done with his sonne the Prince. Ye answered, howe ye had lefte hym in good helth at Bourdeaux. Than the kyngē sayde, What and howe durste ye be so bolde to retourne without hym? I commaūded you and all other whan ye departed, that ye shulde nat retourne without hym, on payne of all that ye myght forfayte; and you thus to retourne: I strailly commaūde you, that within four dayes ye auoyde my realme, and retourne agayne to hym, for and I fynde you within this my realme the fift day, ye shall lese your lyfe, and all your herytage for euer. And ye feared the kynges wordes, as it was reason, and so anoyded the realme, and so your advēnture and fortune was good, for truely ye were with my lordē the prince a foure dayes before the batayle of Poycters: and so ye hadde the day of the batayle fourtie speares vnder your charge, and I had threscore. Nowe ye maye se wheder I ought to drinke before you or nat, sythe I am constable of Acquitayne. The erle of Oxenforde was ashamed, and wolde gladlye he hadde ben thens at that tyme, but he was fayne to suffre and to here those wordes. This sir Johan Chandos sayde to hym in oppyn presence, therefore it is nat to be marneyled, thoughē this duke of Irelāde, who is somme to the sayd erle of Oxenforde, be disdaynfull, in folowynge the steppes of his father; for he taketh vpon hym to rule all Englande aboue the kynges vncles. Well, quod some other, why shulde he nat, sythe the kyng wyll haue it so?

Thus the people in the realme murmured in dyners places agaynst the duke of Irelāde; and he dyde one thyng that greatly abated his honour, and that was, he had firste to his wyfe the daughter of the lordē of Coucy, the lady Isabell, who was a fayre Lady and a good, and of more noble biode than he is of; but he fell in loue with another damosell of the quenes of Englande, an Almaygne<sup>b</sup> borne, and dyde so moche with pope Vrbayne at Rome, that he was deuorsed fro the daughter of the lordē Coucy, without any tytell of reason, but by presumption, and for his synguler appetyte, and  
than

<sup>a</sup> His name was *Thomas*.

<sup>b</sup> A German.

than wedded the queenes mayde, and kyng Rycharde consēted therto: he was so blynded with this duke of Irelande, that if he had sayd, sir, this is whyte, though it had ben blacke, & kyng wolde nat haue sayd the contrarye. This dukes mother was greatly displeasid with hym for that dede, and toke into her cōpany his first wyfe, the lady of Coucy. The duke dyde yuell, and therfore at length yuell came to hym; and this was the first princypall cause that he was behated for in Englande: euery thyng that turneth to yuell must haue a begynning of yuell. This duke of Irelande trusted so moche in the grace and fauour of the kyng, that he beleued that no man shulde trouble hym: and it was a cōmon renome through Englāde, that ther shulde be a newe taxe rayسد through the realme, that euery fyre shulde paye a noble, and the riche to beare out the poore. The kynges vnclis knewe well it wolde be a harde mater to bringe about, and they had caused certayne wordes to be sowen abrode in the cyties and good townes of Englande, as to saye, howe the people of Englande were sore greued with taxes and talenges, and howe there was great rychesse rayسد, and that the comon people wolde haue accomptes of the gouernours therof, as the archebyssshop of yorke, the duke of Irelande, sir Symon Burle,<sup>a</sup> sir Mychaell de la Pole, sir Nycholas Brāble,<sup>b</sup> sir Robert Tryuillyen,<sup>c</sup> sir Peter Goloufer, sir Johan Salisbury, sir Johan Beauchampe, and the maisters of the Staple of the wolles. The commons sayd, that if they wolde make a trewe accōpte, there shulde be founde golde and syluer suffycient, without raising of any newe subsidies. It is a common vsage, none is gladde to pay money nor to opyn their purses if they may lette it.

This brute and noyse spredde so abrode in Englande, and specially in the cytie of London, whiche is chiefe cytie in the realme, that all the cōmons rose and sayde, howe they wolde knowe howe the realme was gouerned, sayenge, howe it was longe syth any accompte was made. Firste, these londoners drewe theym to syr Thomas of Woodstocke, duke of Gloucestre, though he were yonger brother than sir Edmonde duke of yorke. The comon people reputed the duke of Gloucestre for a valyant and a sage discrete parson: and when they came before hym they sayde, Syr, the good cytie of London recōmaundeth them to you, and all the people in generall requireth you to take vpon you the gouernynge of the realme, for they knowe well it is nat vnknown to you howe the kyng and the realme is gouerned. The cōmon people complayneth them sore, for the kynges counsayle demaundeth tayles vpon tayles, aydes vpon aydes, so that the realme hath ben more greued with tayles and other subsidies nat accustomed, sythe the kynges Coronacyon, than in fyftie yere before, and it is nat knowne where the richesse is become: wherfore, sir, maye it please you to prouyde some remedy, or elles the mater wyll go yuell, for the commons cryeth out theron. Than the duke answered and sayde, fayre sirs, I haue herde you well speke, but I alone can nat remedy this mater; howebait, I se well ye haue cause to cōplayne, and so hathe all other people; but though I be vnclie to the kyng and sonne to a kyng, though I shulde speke therof, yet nothyng shal be done for all that: for the kyng my nephue hath suche cōsāyle as nowe about hym, whome he beleueth better than hymselfe, whiche cōsāyle ledeth hym as they lyst; but if ye wyll come to the effecte of your desyres, it must behoue you to haue of youre accorde and agrement all the cyties and good townes of Englande, and also some prelates and noble personages of the realme, and so come to guyder into the kynges presens, and I and my brother shal be there; and than ye maye saye to the kyng, Ryght dere sir, ye were crowned very yonge, and yuell ye haue ben counsayled as yet hyther vnto; nor ye haue nat takenne good regarde to the busynesse of this your realme, by reason of the poore and yonge counsayle that ye haue aboute you; wherby the matters of your realme hath hadde but small and yuell effectes, as ye

<sup>a</sup> Burley.

<sup>b</sup> Bramber.

<sup>c</sup> Tresilian.

haue bene and knowen ryght well ; for if God hadde nat shewed his grace, this realme had been loste and destroyed ; therefore, sir, here in the presens of your vnclcs, we requyre youre grace, as humble subiectes ought to desyre their prince, that your grace wyll fynde some remedy, that this noble Realme of Englande, and the noble crowne therof, whiche is descended to you from the noble kyng Édwarde the thirde, who was  $\text{f}$  moost nobleste kyng that euer was sythe Englande was firste inhabited, that it maye be susteyned in prosperyte and honour, and your people that complayneth, to be kepte and maynteyned in their ryghtes, the whiche to do your grace dyde swere the daye of youre Coronacion ; and that it maye please you to call togyther the thre estates of your Realme, prelates and barownes, and wysemen of your cyties and good townes, and that they may regarde if the gouernyng of your realme that is past, be well or nat ; and, sir, if they parceyue that it hath been well, thanne suche as be in offyce to remaygne styll as longe as it shall please your grace ; and if they be founde contrarye, thañe they in courtesse maner to be auoyded from your persone, and other notable and discrete persones to be sette into offyce ; first, by your noble aduyse, and by the consent of my lordes your vnclcs, and noble prelates and barones of your realme ; and, sirs, quod the duke of Gloucester, whan ye haue made this supplicacion to the kyng, he wyll thanne make you some maner of answer. If he saye that he wyll take counsaile in the mater, than desyre to haue a shorte day ; and peyse<sup>a</sup> so the mater before hande, to putte the kyng and suche marmosettes as be about hym to some feare. Saye to hym boldely, that the Realme wyll no lengar suffre it, and that it is marueyle howe they haue suffred it so longe ; and I and my brother, and the bysshoppe of Caunterburye, and the Erle of Salisbury, the Erle of Arundell, and the erle of Northumberlāde wyll be by ; for without we be present, speke no worde therof. We are the greatest personages of Englande, and we shall ayde to susteyne your wordes, for all we shall say howe your desyre is but reasonable ; and whan he hereth vs speke, he wyll agre thereto, or els he dothe amysse, and therypon apoynt a tyme. This is the best counsaile I can gyue you. Than the Londoners answered and sayde, Sir, ye counsaile vs nobly ; but, sir, it wyll be harde for vs to fynde  $\text{f}$  kyng and you and all these lordes toguyder in one place. Nay, nay, quod the duke, it maye well be done ; saynt Georges daye is nowe within this syxe dayes ; the kyng wyll be than at Wyndsore, and ye knowe well the duke of Irelande wyll be there, and sir Symon Burle,<sup>b</sup> and many other, and my brother and I and therle of Salisbury shall be there ; therefore prouyde for  $\text{f}$  mater ayenst that tyme. Sir, quod they, it shal be done ; and so they departed ryght well contente with the duke of Gloucester. Than whan saynt Georges daye came, the kyng and the quene were at Wyndsore, and made there a great feest, as his predece-sours hadde done before, the next daye after the feest of saynt George. Thyder came the londoners, to the nombre of threscore horse, and of yorke as many, and many other of dyuers good townes of Englande, and they lodged in the towne of Wyndsore. The kyng was determyned to departe to a place a thre leages thens, and whan he knewe of the commyng of the people to speke w<sup>th</sup> hym, he wolde the sooner haue ben gone ; he sayde he wolde in no wyse speke with them : but than his vnclcs and therle of Salisbury sayd, sir, ye may nat with your honour thus departe ; the people of youre good townes of Englande are come hyder to speke with you ; sir, it is necessary that ye here them, and to knowe what they demaunde, and there after ye maye aunswere them, or els take counsaile to aunswere them. So thus full sore agaynst the kynges mynde he was layne to tarye. Than they came into his presens in the great hall alowe ;<sup>c</sup> there was the kyng and bothe his vnclcs, and the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury, the bysshop of Wynchester, the Chaunceler, and the erle of Salisbury, the erle of Northumberlande, and dyuers other. There this people made their request to the kyng, and a burges of London spake

<sup>a</sup> *Pezer*, Fr. to weigh or consider.—*Cotgrave's Dict.*

<sup>b</sup> Burley.

<sup>c</sup> *Below.*



spake for them all, named sir Simeon of Subery,<sup>a</sup> a sage man and well langaged, and there declared well and boldely the effecte of thinformacyon that the duke of Gloucester had shewed thē before, as ye haue herde. When the kyng had herde hym well, he sayd, Amonge you cōmons of my realme your requestes are great and long; they are nat ouer soone to be spedde; we shall nat be toguyder agayne a long season, and also great parte of my counsaile is nat here present; therefore I saye vnto you, gette you home agayne, and sytte in reste, and come nat agayne tyll the feest of Myghelmas, without ye be sente for, at whiche tyme our parlyament shal be at Westmynster; than come and bringe your requestes, and we shall shewe it to our counsaile, and that is good we shall accepte it, and that ought to be refused we shall condempne: but sirs, thinke nat that we wyll be rewled by our cōmon people; that shall neuer be sene; as for our gouernynge, nor in the gouernaunce of them y rule vnder vs, we se nothynge but right and iustyce. Than a seuy<sup>b</sup> of them all with one voyce answered and sayde, Right redoubted souerayne, sauynge your gracyous displeasure, as for iustyce in your realme is right feble; your grace knoweth nat all, nor canne nat knowe: your grace nouthir demaundeth for it nor enquereth therefore; and suche as be of your counsaile forbere to shewe it you, bycause of their owne profyte; for, sir, it is no iustyce to cutte of heedes, handes, and fete; suche maner of punysshmentes be nat laudable: but, sir, good iustice is to kepe your people in ryght, and to sette suche wayes and order as they myght lyue in peace, that they shulde haue none occasyon to grudge or to make any commosyon: and, sir, we saye that ye sette vs to longe a daye as to Myghelmas. Sir, we may be neuer so well eased as now; wherfore, sir, we saye all by one assente, that we wyll haue accompte, and that shortely, of them that hath gouerned your realme sythe your Coronacyon; and we wyll knowe where youre Reuenewes is become, with all the taxes, tayles, and subsydies this nyne yeres paste, and wheron they haue been bestowed. If suche as are your treasourers make a good accompte, or nere therunto, we shall be ryght ioyouse, and suffre them to gouerne styll; and if they can nat acquyte themselfe therin trewly, they shal be reformed by youre deputyes establysshed to that purpose, as my lordes your vnclis and other. With those wordes the kyng behelde his vnclis and helde his peace, to se what they wolde saye. Than sir Thomas duke of Gloucester sayde, Sir, in the request and prayer of these good people, the commons of your realme, I se nothynge therin but ryght and reasone. Sir, quod the duke of yorke, it is of trouthe: and so sayde all the other prelates and barons that were there present. Than the duke of Gloucester sayde agayne, Sir, it is but reason that ye knowe where your good is become. The kyng sawe well howe they were all of one accorde, and sawe howe his chefe Marmosettes durst speke no worde, for there were to many gret men agaynst them. Well, quod the kyng, I am content; lette them be rydde awaye, for sommer season cometh on and huntynge tyme, whervnto we wyll nowe entende. Than the kyng sayd to the people, Sirs, wolde ye haue this mater shortely dispatched? Yea, sir, quod they, and that humbly we beseche your grace; and also we beseche all my lordes here, and specyally my lordes your vnclis to be thereat. We are content, quod they, for the apeysyng of all parties, as well for the kyng as for the Realme, for our parte lyeth therin. Than they sayde agayne, We desyre also the reuerende father in god, the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury, the bysshoppe of Lyncolne, and the bysshoppe of Wynchester to be there. They aunswered and sayde, they were content so to be. Than agayn they desyred all other lordes to be there that were there present, as the erle of Salisbury and the Erle of Northumberlande, sir Reynolde Cobham, sir Guy Brian, sir John Felton,<sup>c</sup> sir Mathewe Gourney: and moreouer they sayd, they wolde ordayne that of every good cytie and towne in Englande there shulde be a thre or four notable persons, and they shulde

<sup>a</sup> Sudbury.<sup>b</sup> "Plus de sept"—more than seven.<sup>c</sup> Thomas.—*Johnes*.

shulde determyne for all the hole cōmontie of Englande. Than this mater was determyned, and to assemble the vtas of saint George at Westmynster, and there ail fy treasourers, collectours, and offycers of the kynges to be there, and to make there accomptes before these sayd lordes. The kyng was content therwith, and was brought to it by fayrenesse and nat by force, by the desyre of his vncles and other lordes: it semed to hym behouable to knowe where his treasure was become. Thus amiably euery man departed fro Wyndsores, and the lordes went to London, and the treasourers and other offycers were sende for throughout the realme, to come with their full accomptes, on payne of dishonouryng, and losse of all that they had, and lyfe.

*Howe the day of accompte came, and there the officers appeared in the presence of the kynges vncles and commens of Englade, and howe sir Simou Burle<sup>a</sup> was prisoner i the toure of London, and howe sir Thomas Tryuēt dyed.*

### C A P. XCIII.<sup>b</sup>

THE day prefixed came that all partes apered at westmynster; and suche as shulde make their accomptes apered before the kynges vncles, and suche other prelates and lordes, with other, as were assigned to here thē. This accompte endured more than a moneth; and some there were that made their accomptes nother good nor honourable, and suche were punished bothe by their bodyes and by their goodes. Sir Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> was cast in arerage of ii. C. and l. M. frankes, bycause<sup>c</sup> he was one of the gouernours in the kynges youthe; and he was demaunded where this good was bestowed. He excused hymselfe by the bysshop of yorke and sir Wylliam Neuell, sayenge howe he dyde nothing but by their counsaile, and by the kynges chamberleyns, sir Robert Tryuilyen,<sup>d</sup> sir Robert Beauchampe, sir Johan Salisbury, sir Nycholas Braule,<sup>e</sup> sir Peter Goufer,<sup>f</sup> and other; and whan they were demaūded therof before the counsaile, they denyed the mater, and layd all the faute in hym: and the duke of Irelande sayd to hym priuely bytwene them two, Sir Symon, I vnderstande ye shal be arested and sette in prison, and holde there tyll ye haue payed the sōme that is demaunded; nothyng shal be abated. Go your waye whether soeuer they sende you; I shall right well make your peace, though they had all sworne the contrary. I ought to receyue of the constable of Fraūce thre score M. frankes for the raunsome of Johan of Bretaygne, some to saynt Charles of Bloys, the whiche sōme ye knowe well is owyng to me; I shall present the counsaile therwith at this tyme; and fynally, the kyng is our soueraigne Iorde, he shall pardon and forgyue it you clerely, for fy profet ought to be his and no mannes els. Syr, quod sir Symon Burle,<sup>g</sup> if I thought nat that ye shulde helpe agaynst the kyng, and to beare out my dedes, I wolde departe out of Englande and go into Almayne,<sup>h</sup> and to the kyng of Beame,<sup>i</sup> for thyder I coulde be welcome; and so let the mater ryne a season tyll the worlde be better apeased. Than the duke sayde, I shall neuer sayle you; we are compaynyons, and all of one sect; ye shall take day to pay their demaūde: I knowe well ye maye pay and ye lyste in redy money, more than a hundred thousande frankes: ye nede nat feare the delthe; ye shall nat be brought to that poynte; ye shall se the mater otherwise chaunge before the feast of saynt Michell, whan I haue the l' yng ones at my wyll, wherof I am sure; for all that he dothe now at  
this

<sup>a</sup> Burley.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered LXXXIX.

<sup>c</sup> "Notwithstanding."

<sup>d</sup> Tresillian.

<sup>e</sup> Bramber.

<sup>f</sup> Before called Gouloufer.

<sup>g</sup> Germany.

<sup>h</sup> Bohemia.

this tyme is by force and agaynst his wyll. We muste appease these cursed londoners, and lay downe this slaunder and brute that is nowe raysed agaynst vs and ours.

Sir Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> had a lytell<sup>b</sup> truste on the wordes of the duke of Irelande, and so came before the lordes of Englaunde, dukes, erles, barons, and counsaile of the good towues. Than it was sayde to hyu, Sir Symon, ye haue alwayes ben a notable knight in the realme of Englade, and ye were well beloued with my lorde the prince; and ye and the duke of Irelande haue had in a maner the gouernynge of the kyng; we haue sene all your maters and well examyned them, the whiche be nother good nor faire, which gretly displeaseth vs, for your owne sake. It is clerely determyned by the hole generall counsaile, that ye must go to prison into y<sup>e</sup> towre of London, and there to remaine tyll ye haue brought into this chambre the money of the kynges and of the realmes that ye haue gathered, the whiche, as it apereth by the treasurers rolles, draweth to the some of two hundred and fyfty thousande frankes. Nowe loke what ye wyll say. Than syr Symon was halfe discomforted, and said, Sirs, I shall with a good wyll, and also it behoneth me so to do, to fulfill your comaundement; I shall go where as ye commaunde me; but, my lordes, I require you let me haue a clerke assigned to me, that he maye write all suche expenses as I haue layde oute in tyme past, in Almayne<sup>c</sup> and in Beame,<sup>d</sup> in procurynge the kynges maryage; and if there be any reast, I besече you let me haue the kynges grace and yours, that I may haue reasonable dayes to pay it. Sir, quod the lordes, we are content. Thus syr Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> was in prison in the towre of London.

Than the constable<sup>e</sup> spake of sir Willyam Helmon and of sir Thomas Tryuet, for they were nat greatly in y<sup>e</sup> fauour of some of the barones of Englaunde, nor of the commontie of the realme, for the vyage that they made into Flaunders, for it was sayd that neuer Englysshmen made so shamefull a vyage. The bysshoppe of Norwyche and sir Hughe Caurell,<sup>f</sup> that was as than capitayne of Calais, were excused, and layde to the others charge howe they hadde taken money for the gyueng vp of Burbourcke and Grauelyng. Some sayd, that that dede was trayson. They were sent for, and sir Wylliam Helmon came, but sir Thomas Tryuet was excused; I shall shewe you howe.

The same weke that he was sente for, beyng in his owne house in the Northe partes, he rode out into the feldes vpon a yonge horse that he hadde, and spurred hym so that the horse ranne awaye with hym ouer bushes and hedges, and at laste fell in a dyke and brake his necke, and so sir Thomas Triuet dyed, whiche was great domage, and his dethe was greatlye complayned with many good menne of the realme; yet for all that his heyres were fayne to paye a ceitayne somme of Floreyns to the Counsaile, to the kynges behoue, as they sayde: but the chiefe encytyng of those maters came by the kynges vnles, and by the generall counsaile of the coultre, as it apered after in Englaunde; for of trouthe, though the duke of Gloucestre was the yongest brother in age, yet he was moost auncyent in the busynesse of the realme, for he drewe to that opynion that moost of the noble menne and prelates and the commons helde. Whan that sir Thomas Tryuettes coposicion was made after his dethe, by the maner as ye haue herde here before, therby the penaunce of sir Wylliam Helmon was greatly asswaged; he entered with the counsaile, and by the meanes of the valyantesse of his body, and the good seruyce that he had done dyuers tymes for Englaunde, as well in Bourdeloyes as in Guyen and in Picardy, where he was alwayes proued a good knight, there was nothyng layde to his reproche but takynge of the money for the delyueraunce of Burbourcke

<sup>a</sup> Burley.

<sup>b</sup> "Too much."  
should be "council."

<sup>c</sup> Germany.

<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.  
<sup>f</sup> Calverley.

<sup>e</sup> I apprehend this

borcke and Grauelynge. Than he excused hymselfe with fayre and swete wordes, and made dyuers reasonable reasons, and sayd, My lordes, whosoeuer were in lyke case as we were in  $\hat{y}$  tyme in the garyson of Bourburke. I thinke wolde do as we dyde. I haue herde sir Joln Chandos and sir Gaultier of Manny say dyuers tymes, who were right wyse and of gret valure, howe that a man ought of two or iii. wayes chose the best waye, and wherby most to endamage his enemyes; and thus sir Thomas Tryuet and I, beyng in the garysons of Bourburke and Grauelyng, and sawe howe we were enclosed on all parties, and no conforte aperyng to vs from any parte, and parceyued well howe we coulde nat endure many assautes, for they that laye about vs were as chosen men of armes as euer I sawe, or I trowe any other Englysshemenne; for as I knewe iustely by the reporte of our harraude they were at leest a systene thousande men of armes, knyghtes and squyers, and a xl. thousande of other: and we were nat paste a thre hundred speares and as many archers, and also our garysone was of suche cyrcuyte that we coude nat entēde on euery place, and that we well parceyued by an assaut that was made vs on a daye: for whyle we were at oure defence on the one parte, they caste in fyre on the other parte, wherby we were gretly abashed, and that our enemyes right well parceyued; and therefore, to saye the trouthe, the Frenche kyng and his counsaile wrought by great getylnesse, seyng  $\hat{y}$  case that we were in, to gyue vs trowse; for if they had gyuen vs another assaute the nexte daye, as they were ordayned to do, I thinke they hadde taken vs at their pleasure; yet for all this they courtesly treated with vs, by the meanes of the duke of Bretayne, who tooke great payne in that mater; and where as we shulde haue gyuen theym money for our raunssomes, if we hadde ben taken, as it was lykely, they gaue vs money, wherby we dyde them dommage, and it was in them to haue endamaged vs. We thought we conquered greatly on them whan we had of their money, and departed oureselfe safe and withoute trouble, and hadde with vs all that we had won in all the warre tyme on the fronters of Flaūders. And, my lordes, besyde that, to pouрге me of all blame, if there be any persone in Englande or without, knight or Esquier, except the persons of my lordes the dukes of Lācastre, yorke, and Gloucester, that wyl saye and abyde therby that I haue done any vntrouthe to the kyng my naturall lorde, or accuse me of any trayson, I am here redye to receyue his gauge, and to putte my body in aduenture, by dedes of armes to proue the cōtrarye, as the Judge therto assigned, shall ordayne. These wordes and suche other, and the valyauntnesse of the knyght excused hym greatlye, and saued hym from the parell of dethe; and afterwarde he retourned agayne into his fourmer estate, and was after that a ryght valyaunt knyght, and auansed into the kynges Counsaile: but as at that tyme sir Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> was nat delyuered out of prisone, for the kynges vnclis hated hym gretlye, and soo dyde all the commontie of Englande. The kyng dyde all that he myght to haue hadde hym delyuered all the season that he laye at Shene, but his counsaile said it myght nat be, for his rekenynges were nat clere. Than the kyng departed, and  $\hat{y}$  duke of Irelande in his company, and rode towards Bristowe, and the Quene, with other ladyes and damoselles with her.

<sup>a</sup> Burley.

*Howe the kyng of Englande departed from London, and howe syr Symon Burle<sup>a</sup> was beheded at Lōdou, and his nephue also; and howe the duke of Lancaster was dyspleased.*

CAP. XCIII.<sup>b</sup>

FOR all that the Kyng departed from the marchesse of London, yet the kynges vnclcs nor their counsaile departed nat, but taried styll about London. Ye haue herde often tymes sayde, that if the heed be sicke, all the membres can nat be well; the malady must first be poured. I saye it, because this duke of Irelande was so great with the kyng, that he ruled hym as he lyste. He and sir symon Burle<sup>c</sup> were two of the princypall cōsayaillours that the kyng had, for they hadde a longe season gouerned the kyng and the realme: and they were had in suspecte that they hadde gadered richesse without nombre; and the renoume ranne in dyuers places that the duke of Irelande and sir Symon Burle<sup>c</sup> had a longe season gathered toguyder money and sente it into Almayne,<sup>d</sup> for it was come to the knowledge of the kynges vnclcs, and to the counsaillours of the good cyties and townes of Englande that helde of their partie, howe they had sente out of the castell of Douer by see in the night tyme into Almayne<sup>e</sup> certayne coffers and chestes full of money. They sayd it was falsely and felonously done, to assemble the rychesse of the realme, and to sende it into other straūge cōutreys, wherby the realme was greatly impouerysshed; and y<sup>f</sup> people were soroufull and sayde, that golde and syluer was so dere to gette, that all marchandyse were as deed and loste, and they coulde nat ymagin how it was but by this meanes.

These wordes multiplied in suche wise, that it was ordayned by y<sup>g</sup> kynges vnclcs, and by the counsailes of the good townes that were annexed vnto them, that sir Symon Burle<sup>c</sup> had deserued punissment of dethe; and also the archbysshoppe of Caunterbury sayd, that in the season whan the frēche kyng shulde haue come with his armye into Englande, this sir Symon Burle<sup>c</sup> gaue counsaile that the shrine of saynt Thomas of Caūterbury shulde haue ben taken downe and brought into Douer castell; and the noyse was, that he wolde haue had it so, to tentent that if he had ben in any dāger, to haue taken and stollen it, and conueyed it out of Englād. These maters were so layde to his charge, y<sup>g</sup> none excuse coulde be herde; but on a daye he was brought out of the towre, and beheded lyke a traytour. God haue mercy on his soule. To write of his shamefull dethe ryght sore displeaseth me; howbeit, I must needs do it, to folowe the hystorie. Greatly I complayne his dethe; for whāne I was yonge I founde hym a gentyll knyght, sage and wyse: but by this enfortune he dyed.

His nephewe and heyre, sir Richarde Burle,<sup>a</sup> was with the duke of Lancastre in Ga-lyce the same season that this case fell in Englande, and one of y<sup>g</sup> most renoumed in all his hoost nexte the Constable, for he was as<sup>b</sup> souerayne Marshall of all the hoost, and was chiefe of cōsaile with the duke. Ye may well beleue that whan he knewe of the dethe of his vnclc, he was sore displeased; and also this gētyll knight, sir Richarde Burle,<sup>a</sup> dyed in the same iourney on his bedde, by reason of sicknesse, as many other dyde, as ye shall here after, at place and tyme conuenyent. Whan kyng Rycharde

VOL. II.

2 O

knewe

<sup>a</sup> Burley.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XC.  
<sup>c</sup> Bramber.<sup>d</sup> Germany.<sup>e</sup> Tresilian.<sup>f</sup> "A la fois:" once.

knewe of the dethe of this knyght, as he was in the marchesse of Wales, he was sore dyspleased, and sware howe the matter shulde nat passe, sithe they had so put to dethe his knyght, without good reason or tytell of right. The quene also was sorie, and wepte for his dethe, bycause he fetched her oute of Almaygne.<sup>a</sup> Suche as were of the kynges counsaile douted greatly, as the duke of Irelande, sir Nicholas Brable,<sup>b</sup> sir Thomas Trynilyen,<sup>c</sup> sir Johñ Beauchampe, sir Johan Salisbury, and sir Michael de la Poule: also the kynges vnclcs had put out of offyce the archebysshoppe of yorke, named Wyl-liam Neuell, brother germayne to the iorde Neuell of Northüberlande, whiche byshoppe had longe ben treasurer of all Englande; and the duke of Gloucestre had charged hym to medell no more with the busynesse of the realme, on payne of his lyfe, but that he shulde go to yorke or therabout, wher it pleased hym in his benifyce, and dwell ther and medell no further; and also it was shewed hym howe the honour of his lynage and in that he was a preest, excused hym of many great maters sore preiudiciall to his honour: and also it was shewed hym, that the moost parte of the counsaile of the cōmontie wolde haue had him disgrated and putte to dethe, in lyke maner as sir Symon Burle<sup>d</sup> was.

So he departed fro London, and wente into the Northe to dwell on his benifyce: with this he and all his lynage were sore dyspleased, and thought surely that the erle of Northumbrelande had brought that mater to passe, for all that he was of his lygnage, and were neyghbours. Into his rome was chosen a right valyant, a wyse, and a sage clerke, f̄ archebyssshop of Caunterbury, who was gretely in the fauour of the kynges vnclcs. He was come of the Mountague and Salysburies, and was vnclce to the erle of Salysbury. There was made of the kynges counsaile, by the aduyse of all the comons, therle of Salysbury, the erle Rycharde of Arundell, the erle of Northumberlande, the erle of Deuonshyre, the erle of Notynggham, f̄ bysshop of Norwyche, called syr Henry Spenser; the bysshop of Wynchestre, chauncellour of Englande, abode styll in his offyce, and was with the kynges vnclcs. The most renommed man in f̄ counsaile nexte f̄ duke of Glocestre was syr Thomas Mountague, archbisshop of Caūterbury; and well he was worthy, for he was a dyscrete prelate, and toke grete payne to reforme the royalme and to brynge it into the ryght waye, and that the kyng shulde put from hym the marmosettes that troubled all the royalme. Often tymes he would speke with the duke of yorke in f̄ matter, and the duke wolde saye to hym syr bysshop, I trust the maters shall otherwyse fall lytell and lytell, then the kyng my nephewe, and f̄ duke of Irelāde thinketh: but it must be done accordyng to reason; and to abyde the tyme to be to hasty is no good meane, for surely yf we hadde nat perceyued them betymes, they wolde haue brought the kyng and the royalme in suche case, that it shulde haue ben at the poynte of lesyng. The Frensshe kyng and his counsaile knewe ryght well our dealyng, and what case we were in, and that caused f̄ frensshemen to auance themselves to haue come hyder so puysauntly as they wolde haue done, to haue dys-troyed vs.

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Bramber.<sup>c</sup> Tresillian.<sup>d</sup> Burley.

*Howe the counsaile drewe togyder for the reformacyon of the kyng and of the realme, and howe by the counsaile of the duke of Irelande the kyng was of the accorde too make warre agaynst his vnclcs, and agaynst the cytees and townes.*

CAP. XCV.<sup>a</sup>

IN lyke maner as the kynges vnclcs, and ý newe counsaile of Englande, beyngte at London, deuysed of the busynesse of Englade to reforme it, and to bring it into good estate, so on the other syde the duke of Irelande and his counsaile ymagined nyght and daye howe they myght contynue in their estates, and to condēpne the kynges vnclcs, as ye shall here after. Whanne kyng Richarde was come to Bristowe, and the quene with hym, they kepte themselfe in the Castell there, and men that were farre of beleued that ý kyng laye there for fauour of the duke of Irelande, who said that he wolde go into Irelande, and it was sayd, that the kyng wolde se hym dispatched: it was agreed by the generall cōsaile that if he wolde go into Irelande, he shulde haue at the coste of the realme fyue hūdred men of armes, and fyftene hundred archers, and that he shulde abide there thre yere, and to be well and trewly payde; howebeit, the duke had no great wyll to make that vyage, for he sawe well the kyng was yonge, and as than he myght rule as he lyst: therefore he feared if he shulde go farre of, that the loue and the fauour that he was in with the kyng shulde asswage: also besyde that, he was in suche loue with one of the quenes damoselles, called Lancegrone,<sup>b</sup> ý in no wyse he coude leaue the syght of her; she was a fayre and a pleasaunt damosell, and was come with ý quene out of the realme of Beame:<sup>c</sup> this duke loued her so entierlye that he wolde gladly be deuorsed fro his owne wife, who was daughter to the lorde of Coucy, and dyde sende for that entente to Rome to pope Urbayne: all the good people of the realme had marueyle therof, and dispreysed hym greatly, for that the good lady was daughter to the daughter of good kyng Edwarde, and of ý good quene Phylippe. The duke of Yorke, and the duke of Gloucestre, toke that dede in great dyspyte, but for all their hate the duke of Irelande set lytell therby: for he was so blynded with louynge of this damosell, that he promysed to be deuorsed and to mary her; he doutid nat the popes graunt, so that he myght gette the kynges and the quenes good wyll, for he reputed his wyfe that he had fīche, and brought vp in Fraunce, and so was her father ý lorde of Coucy, and he had made warre agaynst pope Urbayne in the tytell of pope Glemēt, wherfore pope Urbayne loued nat ý blode: therfore he sayde the pope wolde enelyne the lyghtlyer to his deuorse: this mater the duke dyde putte forthe, and promysed to Lācegrone<sup>b</sup> to mary her. This duke had a mother, a wydowe, called the olde countesse of Oxenforde; she agreed nat to the opynion of her sonne, but blamed hym greatly of his folye, and sayde, howe god wolde be sore displeasid with hym, and paye hym one day for all, and thañe it wolde be to late to repente; and she toke the duchesse to her, and kept her styll in her estate, and suche as ought the ladye any good wyll gaue her great thanks therfore.

Thus I haue shewed you parte of the busynesse of Englande that fell in this season, and yet I shalle procede further, as I was enfourmed: ye haue herde howe the duke of Irelande was aboute the kyng in the marches of Wales, and nyght and daye ymagyned on none other thyng but howe he myght bringe about his entent, and so serued the

2 O 2

kyng

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XCI.<sup>b</sup> The Landgravine.<sup>c</sup> Bohemia.

kyng and the queene with fayre wordes to please theym, and caused all other knyghtes and squyers there about to come to Bristowe to se the kyng and þe queene, and made them great sporte in huntyng: the kyng suffred hym to do what he lyst. The same season that the kyng laye at Bristowe on the ryuer of Syuerne, in the marches of Wales, the duke of Irelande tooke great payne to ryde in and out, and specially into Wales, and sayd to suche as wolde here hym, gentylmen or other, howe the kynges vnclis, to haue the soueraygntie of the realme, hadde dismyssed out of the kynges counsaile, noble, valyaunt, and sage personnages, as the archebyssshoppe of Yorke, the byssshoppe of Dyrhame, the byssshoppe of London, sir Mychaell de la Poule, sir Nicholas Bramble,<sup>a</sup> sir Johan Salisbury, sir Robert Tryuilyen,<sup>b</sup> sir Johan Beauchampe, and hymselfe, and hadde putte to dethe a valyaunt knyght sir Symon Burle,<sup>c</sup> so that and they multiplie in their estate they wyll distroye all Englande: this duke of Irelande dyde so moche, and preached so to the people, and to the knyghtes and squyers of Wales, and of the countreis there aboute, that the moost parte beleued hym: and on a daye they came in generall to the kyng to Bristowe, and demaüded of hym if that it were his pleasure, as the duke of Irelande hadde shewed them? The kyng answered and sayd, yea truly, and prayed and commaunded them. as they loued hym, to beleue hym, and sayd he wolde auowe all that he shulde do, affyrmyng how he thought his vnclis were to hygh mynded, so that he feared lest they wolde surmounte hym, and take awaye his realme from hym: and they of the marches of Wales alwayes loued the prince of Wales, father to þe kyng, for by þe tidynges they herde out of the marches of London, they thought iustly that the kyng and the duke of Irelande had good cause, and so demaüded of the kyng what his pleasure was to do? The kyng answered and sayd, howe he wolde gladly that the lōdoners that hadde done hym so great trespasses, that they were corrected and brought to reason, and his vnclis in lykewise. They of Wales sayd, they were bounde to obeye their kyng, nor they ought no fayth nor homage to no man but to hym, for he was their kyng and souerayne lorde: wherfore they sayde they were redy to go whyder soeuer the kyng dyd commaunde them: the kyng was well cōtente with that answer, and in lykewise so was the duke of Irelande. Whan the Duke sawe that the kyng wolde shewe that the busynesse was parteynyng to hymselfe, and that he hadde so good desyre to distroye his aduersaries, and to bringe them to reason, he hadde therof great ioye, and sayde to the of his counsaile, we can nat do better than to retourne to London, and shewe our puissaunce, and so to do, outhr by fayre wordes or otherwyse, to bringe the Lōdoners to their accorde, and to be obeysaunt to the kynges commaundement; alwayes they enfourmed the kyng howe that it was a great losse to a realme whan there be many heedes and chefe gouernours, and howe there coude no good come therby; and the kyng affyrmed þe same, and sayde, howe he wolde no lenger suffre it, but that he wolde fynde suche remedy that other Realmes shulde take ensample by his realme.

Nowe sirs, I reporte me if I haue nat good cause to saye þe realme of Englande in this season was in great paryll and aduenture to haue ben lost without reconery: for the kyng was moued agaynst his vnclis, and agaynst a great parte of all þe great lordes of the realme, and they agaynst hym; and the cytes and good townes one agaynst another; and the prelates hadde great indignacyon one agaynst another, so that none coude remedy it, but al onely god. Whan the duke of Irelande sawe that he had the agreement of the kyng, and of the moost parte of the of the cōtrey of Wales, than he came to the kyng, and sayd, sir, if ye wyll instytute and make me your licutenant. I shall take a xii. or a fyftene thousande men with me, and go to the marches of London, or to Oxenforde, your cyte and myne, and there we wyll shewe our puissaunce agaynst these Londoners,

<sup>a</sup> Bramber.<sup>b</sup> Tresillian.<sup>c</sup> Burley.



Londoners, and your vncles, who haue so great indignacyon agaynst you: they haue putte to dethe some of your counsaile; and sir, outhir by fayre wordes or otherwyse we shall bringe them to reason. The kyng sayde he was content, Sayeng. I wyll and ordayne you to be the cheife souerayne of my Realme, and to reyse vp men where ye can gete theym, and leade them wheder ye thynke best, to augment our sygnorie and realme: and to the cntent that euery man shall clerely se that the hoole Realme parteyneth to me, I wyll that ye beare with you my banners and standerdes, and other abylymētēs of warre, suche as I wolde beare myselle in batayle; and I thynke that if the people se my banners displayed, they shall take corage and hardynesse to susteyne my quarell: and I wyll ye pnysshe suche rebelles as wyll nat obey you, in suche wyse as all other maye take ensample by them: I beleue all suche as shall se my baners waue in the wynde, shall put themselfe vnder them, and shal be alrayde to disobey our cōmaūdemēt. These wordes greatly reioysed the duke of Irelande.

*Howe the kyng of Englande made his sōmons to drave towards London; and howe sir Robert Tryuilyen<sup>a</sup> was taken at Westmynster and beheeded, by the commaūdemēt of the kynges vncles.*

CAP. XCVI.<sup>b</sup>

THE kyng made his assemble in the cuntrye of Wales, and about the frōters of Bristowe, alonge the ryuer of Syuerne. Dyuers lordes and knyghtes were sende for: some excused themselfe laulully, and some came at the kynges commaūdemēt; howbeit, they doubted lest great yuell shulde come of that enterpryce. In this meane season the kyng and the duke of Irelande had a secrete counsaile bytwene them, and determyned to sēde some of their men into the marches of London, to se and to knowe howe the kynges vncles dyd, and what they purposed to do; they studyed whome they myght sende in that busynesse to knowe the trouthe. Than a knyght, cosyng to the duke of Irelande, and of his cōsaile, called sir Robert Tryuilyen,<sup>a</sup> sayd, sir, ye make doute whome to sende that is trusty to London: for the loue of you I shall take on me to do that journey: wherof the Duke thanked hym, and lykewise so dyde the kyng. Therwith this sir Robert Tryuilyen<sup>a</sup> departed from Bristowe, disguised in maner of a poore marchaunt, vpon a lytell Nagge, and so came to London, and tooke his lodgyng where he was vnknewen, and so taryed there a certayne space and lerned what he coule; at last he vnderstode that the kynges vncles, and the newe counsaile of Englande, wolde kepe a secrete Parlyament at Westmynster, wherfore he thought to go and lye there, to lerne what shulde be doone there; and so he came and lodged at Westmynster, the same daye that their counsaile began, and lodged in an alehouse, right ouer agaynst the paly gate: and there he was in a chambre loking out at a wyndowe downe into the courte, and there he myght se them that went in and out to the cōsaile: and he knewe nere hāde euery man, but none knewe hym, bycause of his apparel: at last on a day a squyer of the duke of Gloucesters knewe hym, for he had often tymes ben in his cōpany; and assone as sir Robert Triuilyen<sup>a</sup> sawe him, he knewe him well, and withdrewe hymselfe out of þe wyndowe. The squyer had suspicions therof, and sayd to hymselfe, Me thynke I se yonder sir Robert Triuilyen;<sup>a</sup> and to thentent to knowe the trouthe, he entred into the lodgyng, and said to the wife, Dame, who is that that is aboute in the chambre, is he alone, or with cōpany? Sir, quod she, I can nat shewe

<sup>a</sup> Tresillian.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XCII.

shewe you: but he hath been here a longe space. Therwith the squier went vp, the better to aduise hym, and saluted hym, and sawe well it was true, but he fayned hymselfe, and tourned his tale and sayde, God saue you good man, I pray you be nat myscontented, for I toke you for a farmour of myne in Essex, for ye are lyke hym. Sir, quod he. I am of Kente, and a farmour of sir Johan of Hollandes: and there be men of the bysshop of Caūterburves that wolde do me wrong, and I am come hyther to complayne to the cōsaille. Well, quod the squier, if ye come into þy palys I wyll helpe to make your waye, that ye shall speke with the lordes of the counsaile. Sir, I thanke you, quod he, and I shall nat reluce your ayde.

Than the squyer called for a potte of ale and dranke with him, and payed for it, and badde hym farwell and departed, and neuer ceased tyll he came to the cōsaille chambre dore, and called the vssher to open the dore. Than the vssher demaūded what he wolde, bycause the lordes were in counsaile? He answered and sayd, I wolde speke with my lorde and mayster the duke of Gloucester, for a mater that ryght nere toucheth hym and all the counsaile. Thanne the vssher let hym in, and whan he came before his mayster, he sayde, Sir, I haue brought you great tidynges. What be they, quod the duke? Sir, quod the squyer, I wyll speke aloude, for it toucheth you and all my lordes here present; I haue sene sir Robert Triuylien<sup>a</sup> disguised in a vyllayns habytte, in an alehouse here without the gate. Triuylien<sup>a</sup> quod the duke: Yea truly sir, quod the squier: ye shall haue hym or ye go to dyner, if you please. I am contente, quod the duke, and he shall shewe vs some newes of his mayster, the duke of Irelande; go thy waye and fetche hym, but loke that thou be stronge ynough so to do, that thou fayle nat. The squier went forth and toke foure sergiauntes with hym, and sayd, Sirs, folowe me a farre of, and as soone as I make to you a sygne, and that I laye my hande on a man that I go for, take hym and lette hym nat escape: therwith the squyer entredde into the house where Triuylien<sup>a</sup> was, and went vp into the chambre, and as soone as he sawe hym he sayd, Triuylien<sup>a</sup>, ye are nat come into this countre for no goodnesse; my lorde the duke of Gloucester cōmaūdeth that ye come and speke with hym. The knyght wolde haue excused hymselfe, and sayde, I am nat Triuylien<sup>a</sup>, I am a fermour of sir Johan of Hollandes. Nay, naye, quod the squyer, your body is Triuylien<sup>a</sup> but your habytte is nat; and therwith he made token to the sergiauntes that they shulde take him: than they went vp into the chambre and toke hym, and so brought hym to the palays. Ye may be sure there was great prease to se hym, for he was well knowen. Of his takyng, the duke of Gloucestre was ryght ioyefull, and wolde se hym; and whan he was in his presens the duke sayd, Triuylien<sup>a</sup>, what thinge make you here in this countre, where is the kyng, where lefte you hym? Triuylien<sup>a</sup>, whā he saw that he was so well knowen, and that none excusacion coude aueyle hym, sayd, sir, the kyngge sente me hyther to lerne tidynges, and he is at Bristowe, and hunteth along the ryuer of Syuerne. What, quod the duke, ye are nat cōe lyke a wyse man, but rather lyke a spy: yf ye wolde haue come to haue lerned tidynges, ye shulde haue come in the state of a knyght. Sir, quod Triuylien<sup>a</sup>, if I haue trespassed, I axe pardone, for I was caused this to do. Well sir, quod the duke, and where is your mayster the duke of Irelande? Sir, quod he, of a trouth he is with the kyng. It is shewed vs here, quod the duke, that he assembleth moche people, and the kyngge for hym, wheder wyll he lede that people? Sir, quod he, it is to go into Ireland. Into Irelande? quod the duke of Gloucester: yea sir, truly, quod Triuylien<sup>a</sup>. And than the duke studyed a lytell, and sayde, A, Triuylien, Triuylien<sup>a</sup>, your busynesse is nouthre fayre nor good: ye haue done great folly to come into this countre, for ye are nat beloued here, and that shall well be sene; you and suche other of your affynyte haue done great displeasures to my brother

<sup>a</sup> Tresillian.

brother and to me, and ye haue troubled to your power and with youre yuell counsaile the kyng, and dyuers other nobles of þy realme; also ye haue moued certayne good townes agaynst vs; now is the daye come that ye shall haue your payment, for he that dothe well, by reason shulde fynde it; thynke on your busynesse, for I wyll nother eate nor drinke tyll ye be deed. That worde greatlye abashed Triuylien,<sup>a</sup> for gladlye there is no man wolde here of his ende; he wolde fayne haue excused hymselfe with fayre language, in lowly humblyng hymself, for he conde do nothing to apease the duke, for he was so enfourmed of hym, and of other of the duke of Irelandes secte, that nothing auyced hym. Where to shulde I make lengar the mater: sir Robert Triuylien<sup>a</sup> was delyuered to the hangman, and so ledde out of Westmyenster, and there beheded, and after haged on a gibet. Thus ended sir Robert Triuylien.<sup>a</sup>

*Howe tidynges came to the kyng of the dethe of his knyght, and demaunded counsaile theron. And howe he ordayned the duke of Irelande soneraygne of all his men of warre.*

C A P. XCVII.<sup>b</sup>

SHORTELY these tidynges came to kynge Richarde, and to the duke of Irelande, heyng at Bristowe, howe sir Roberte Tryuylien<sup>a</sup> was shamefully putte to dethe: the kyng toke that mater in great dispite, and sayd and sware, that the mater shulde nat rest in that case, and howe that his vnclis had done yuell without tytyle or reason, to put to dethe his men and knyghtes, and suche as had truely serued hym, and his father the prince, wherby he sayde, it semed that they wolde take fro hym the crown of Englande, and that þy mater touched hym nere. Than the archbysshoppe of Yorke, who was souerayne of his counsaile, and had ben longe, said, Sir, ye demaunde couisaile, and I shall gyue you counsaile: your vnclis, and suche as ben of their accorde, erreth greatly agaynst you, for it semeth by thē they wolde shewe howe ye be couisailed but by traytors; they wolde haue none to beare any rule but themselfe: it is great parrill for all þy realme, for if the cōmons shulde ryse and rebell, gret myschefe shulde fall in Englande, if the lordes and great men be nat frendes toguyder and all one: wherfore sir, I counsaile you fynde remedy with puissaunce: ye are as now here in a country well peopled and named; sende out your cōmaundement to all suche as are boūde to serue you, gentylmen and other; and whan they be all assembled, sende them into the marchesse of London, and make your generall capitayne the duke of Irelāde, who gladly wyll take on hym þy charge, and let no baner nor penon be borne but all onely yours, to shewe thereby that the matter toucheth no man but you: and all the country in goyng thyder wyll tourne and take parte w̄ you, and drawe to your baners, and paraurenture the Londoners wyll take your parte, for they hate you nat, for ye dyde them neuer displeasure: all the harte ye haue had your vnclis haue caused it; Sir, here is sir Nicholas Bramble,<sup>c</sup> who hath ben mayre of Lōdon, and ye made hym knyght, for suche seruyce as he dyde you on a daye, who knoweth and ought to knowe the maner of them of Lōdon, for he was borne ther, and it can nat be but þy he hath good frēdes there; therfore sir, desire his couisaile in this mater þy toucheth you so nere; for sir, by yuell enformacyon and rumoure of the people, ye maye lese your signorye. Than the kyng spake to sir Nicholas

<sup>a</sup> Tresillian.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XCIII.<sup>c</sup> Bramber.

cholas Bramble,<sup>a</sup> and requyred hym to speke; and at the kynges request sir Nycholas sayd, Sir, and it lyke vour grace, and all my lordes here present, I shall speke gladly after the lytell knowledge that I haue: Fyrst, I saye I can nat beleue bat that the moost parte of the londoners oweth loue and fauour to the kyng that here is, for perfetly they loued the priuce his father, and that they well shewed whan the villayns rebelled, for accordyng to þy trouthe if they hadde taken parte with the villayns, they had destroyed the kyng and the realme; and moreouer, the kynges vncles haue as now a good tyme, for they disport themselves among them, and enforce the people as they lyst, for there is none to saye agaynst them; they haue put me out and all the kynges offycers, and haue put in them of their affynite, and haue sente the kyng hyder to one of the borders of his realme; there can no good be ymaged of this, nor it can nat be knowen perfetly what they entende: it is a herde mater, but by that they shewe they wolde putte the kyng out of his realme, for they go all by puyssaunce, and the kyng dothe all by gentylnesse; they haue put to dethe that gentyll knyght sir Symon Burle,<sup>b</sup> who hath doone the kyng moche fayre seruyce in the realme of Englāde and in other places: they layde great falsenesse in hym that he shulde haue delyuered the castell of Douer to the frenchmen, and they enforced the people that he caused the frenchmen to come into Flaūders, and to Sluse, whiche was nothing so; and also in the dispyte of the kyng they haue shāfully slayne sir Robert Triuylien,<sup>c</sup> and so they wyll do other, if they maye atteygne to their ententes, wherfore I saye that it were better for the kyng to vse rygour and puyssaūce than gentylnesse; euery man knoweth thorough the realme that he is kyng, and howe that at Westmynster þy noble kyng Edwarde made euery man to be sworne, bothe lordes, prelates, and all the good towues, that after his dyscease they shulde take the kyng here for the soueraygne lorde, and the same othe made his three vncles: and it semeth to many as men dare speke, that they holde him nat in the state and fourme of a kyng, for he may nat do with his owne what he lyst; they driue hym to his pensyon, and the quene also, whiche is a herde thyng for a kyng and a quene; it shulde seme they wolde shewe that they had no wytte to rule themselves, and that their coūsaylours be traytours; I saye these thynges are nat to be suffred; as for me I hadde rather dye, than longe to lyue in this daūger or peryll, or to se the kyng to be ledde as his vncles wolde haue hym. The kyng thanne sayd, surely it pleaseth nat vs, and I saye, ye haue counsayled me as honourably as maye be, for the honour of vs and our Realme.

At this counsaile at Bristowe it was ordayne that the duke of Irelande shulde be soueraygne of all the kynges men of warre, suche as he coude get, and to go to Lōdon, to knowe the perfyte ententes of the londoners, trustyng that if he myght ones speke with them, to tourne them to his acorde by reason of suche proffes as he wolde make them in the kynges name; and so within a shorte space after, the duke of Irelande with a fyftene thousand men, departed fro Bristowe, and rode to the cytie of Oxenforde, and there aboute he lodged and all his people, and had baners displayed of the kynges armes, and none other, to shewe that all he dyde was in the kynges tytell and quarell. Tydinges came to the kynges vncles, that the duke of Irelande aproched towards Lōdon, with a xv. thousande men, with the kynges bauers displayed; and on a dave all the lordes were at counsaile at Westmynster, and had with thē the chiefe of Lōdon, suche as they trusted best, and there they shewed them how the duke of Irelāde was comyng agaynst them with an armye royall: the londoners who were enclyned to their partie sayde, sirs, let thū come in the name of god; yf the duke of Irelande demaūde of vs batayle, he shall haue it incōtyent, we will close no gate we haue for xv.M. men:

nat

<sup>a</sup> Bramber.<sup>b</sup> Burley.<sup>c</sup> Tresillian.

nat and they were xx. The dukes were right ioyfull with that answere, and incōtyent they sent out knyghtes, squyers, and messangers, to assemble men of warre togyder fro dyuers parties, and suche as were sent for obeyed, for so they had sworne and promysed before. Men came fro ȝ bysshoprike of Caüterbury, and Norwiche, and out of the coüties of Arundell and Sussex, and of Salisbury, and Southampton, and out of all the countreis therabout Lōdon, and so great nombre of people came to Lōdon, and knewe nat what they shulde do.

*Howe the duke of Irelande sente thre knyghtes to London, to knowe some tydynge.  
And howe the kynges vnclis, and they of London, went into the felde to fyght  
with the duke of Irelande and his affynite.*

## CAP. XCVIII.\*

NOWE let vs sōwhat speke of the duke of Irlande, and of his cōsell, being at Oxford, with a xv.M. men; howbeit, the most parte of them were come thyder by constraynt, rather than of good corage: than ȝ duke of Irlande aduised to knowe thentētes of thē of Lōdon, and to sende sir Nicholas Brāble,<sup>b</sup> sir Peter Golofer, and sir Michaell de la Pole, to the towre of London, and to go thyder by water, and to set the kynges baners in the hyght of the towre, to se what the londoners wolde do. These thre knyghtes, at ȝ duke of Irlandes request, departed fro Oxēforde, and the next day they passed the Tēmes, at the bridge of Stanes, and rode to dyner to Shene, ȝ kynges place, and there taryed tyll it was late, and fro thens rode to another house of the kynges, called Kenyngton,<sup>c</sup> and there they lefte their horses, and toke botes, and went downe the water with ȝ tyde, and passed Lōdon bridge, and so came to the towre, and was nat knowen, for no man was ware of theyr comynge: and there they foūde redy the capitayne of ȝ towre, whom the kyng had sette there before, and by hym these knyghtes knewe moche of the dealyng of them of Lōdon, and of the kynges vnclis; and the capitayne shewed them howe they were come thyder to lodge in great daūger. Why so, quod they, we be the kynges seruaūtes, and we may well lodge in his house? Nat so, quod the capitayne, all this cytie and the counsaile wolde gladly be vnder the obeysaūce of the kyng, so that he wolde be ruled by his vnclis, and by none other: and this that I shewe you is of good wyll, for I am boūde to shew you, and to cōsaile you to the best of my power, but I am in dout to morowe whan day cometh, and that it be knowen in London that seruaūtes of the kynges be come hyther, ye shall se this towre besieged bothe by lande and water, by the londoners, and nat to departe hens tyll they se and knowe who is lodged within it; and if ye be founde here, ye shal be incontynent presented to the kynges vnclis, and than ye may well ymagin what ende ye shall come to; I thinke they be so sore displeased agaynst the kynges cōsayle, and agaynst the duke of Irelande, that and ye be taken, ye shall nat escape with your lyues: study well vpon these wordes, for I assure you they be true.

Than these thre knyghtes who had wende to haue done marueyls, were sore abashed, and there determyned to tary all night as secrete as they coude, for feare of spyeng; and the capitayne promysed to kepe them sure for that nyght, and so kept the keyes with hym; and in the mornynge these knyghtes had dyuers ymaginacions and counsailes,

Vol. II.

2 P

sayles,

\* This chapter ought to be numbered XCIV.

<sup>b</sup> Bramber.<sup>c</sup> Quere, Kensington?

sayles, to se howe they shulde deale; and all thynges cōsydred, they durst nat abyde the adventure to be knowen there, they feared greatly to be there beseged; and or day came whan the fludde was come they tooke a barge and passed the bridge, and went to Kenyngton; and whan it was daye they toke their horses and rode to Wyndsore, and there taryed all that nyght, and the nexte day they rode to Oxēforde, and there founde the duke of Irlande and his men, to whom they shewed all these tidynges, and howe they durst nat tary at the towre of Lōdon. The duke was pensyfe of those tidynges, and wyst nat what to say nor do, for he kneve well all the people *ȝ* he had assembled there, were nat all of one corage, wherfore he wyst nat wheder it were better to retourne to *ȝ* kyng, or to abide there; he toke counsayle with his knyghtes, and fynally their counsayle rested, that sythe *ȝ* kyng had ordayned hym to be Constable ouer all his people, and to correcte and to punyssh all rebelles, that he shulde kepe the felde: for if he shulde do otherwyse, it shulde be to his great blame and rebuke, and to bring him into the indignacion of the kyng, and to shewe that his quarell were nother good nor right; and also they said, that it was better for him to dye with honour and to abyde the adventure, than to shewe any false corage; but they counsayled hym to sende worde what case he was in to the kyng to Bristowe; as yet they sayd, blessed be god they kepte the feldes, and none to recoure them. So thus *ȝ* duke sent to the kyng, desyryng hym to sende hym more ayde, whiche the kyng dyde daylye.

Tidynges came to the kynges vncles, being at Lōdon, that the duke of Irlande with his company, were in the marches of Oxenforde: there they toke counsayle what was best for them to do. There was with the kynges vncles the archebysshop of Caūterbury, the erle of Arundell, the erle of Salysbury, the Erle of Northumberlande, and dyuers other lordes and knyghtes of Englāde, and the rulers of London; there it was ordayned by the duke of Gloucester, that without delay they shulde issue out into the feldes, and that the mayre of London shulde putte into harnesse all the people in euery warde, suche as wolde ayde them: Sayeng, surely howe they wolde go and fyght with the duke of Irlande, whersoever they coude fynde hym; the mayre of London was as than a man of armes, he toke chosen men bytwene the age of twentie yeres and xl. and the lordes were<sup>a</sup> a thousande men of armes; they departed fro London, and went and lodged at Braynford, and there about, and the nexte daye at Colebroke, and dayly the nombre increased, and so toke the waye to Redyng, to passe the Temes there aboute, for the bridges bytwene Wyndsore and Stanes were broken, by the cōmaundement of the duke of Irlande; so long they iourneyed that they aproched nere to Oxenforde. Tidynges therof anone came to the duke of Irlande, than he beganne to dout and toke counsayle; than he was cōsayled to take the feldes, and to put his people in order of batayle, and to display *ȝ* kynges baners, sayeng, by the grace of god and saynt George, the iourney shulde be his; as it was deuysed so it was done. Than they sowned their trumpettes, and euery man armed hym and issued out of Oxenforde in order of batayle, with the kynges baners displayed; the day was fayre and clere, and a pleasaunt season.

<sup>a</sup> "Had above."

*How the kynges vncles wan the iourney agaynst the duke of Irelāde, and howe he fledde, and dyuers other of his company.*

CAP. XCIX.<sup>2</sup>

TIDINGES came to the duke of Gloucester, beyng within thre leages of Oxenforde, by a ryuer syde, whiche falleth into the Tēmes, a lytell besyde Oxenforde, howe that the duke of Irelāde was drawn into the felde in order of batayle, wherof the duke of Gloucester had great ioye, and sayde, howe he wolde fyght with hym if he myght passe the ryuer; than trumpettes sowned  $\text{ȝ}$  dislodging, and ordered themselfe redy to fyght; they were within two leages of their enemyes, and sertched to passe the ryuer, and sente oute people to sertche the depnesse of the water, and they foude the ryuer in suche a poynt, that in xxx. yeres before it was nat so base; and so  $\text{ȝ}$  scurers passed at their ease, and rode and aduysed the maner of their enemyes, and than returned to the duke of Gloucester, and sayd, Sir, god and the ryuer is this daye on your parte, for the ryuer is so lowe that it is nat to the horse bely; and sir, we haue sene the maner of the duke of Irelāde, they be redy raynged in the felde in good maner; we can nat saye if the kyng be there or no, but the kynges baners be there with the armes of Englande and of Fraunce, and none other. Well, quod the duke, a goddes name so be it, of that armes I and my brother haue parte; auāuce forward in the name of god and saynt George, let vs go se thē nerer. Than euery man rode forthe with great courage, whan they knewe they myght passe the ryuer at their ease, and so shortlye all their hoost passed the ryuer.

Tidynges came to the duke of Irelād howe the kynges vncles were passed the ryuer of Tēmes, and how they shulde haue batayle brefely; than the duke of Irelāde was abasshed, for he knewe well if he were taken,  $\text{ȝ}$  duke of Gloucester wolde cause hym to dye shamefully, and that nouthur golde nor syluer shulde raunsome hym; than he sayde to sir Peter Golofer, and to sir Mychaell Pole, sirs, surely my corage beareth yuell agaynst this iourney, nor I dare nat abyde  $\text{ȝ}$  bataile agaynst the kynges vncles, for if they take me I shall dye shamefully. Howe the deuyll is it that they be passed the ryuer of Tēmes? it is but a poore token for vs; Why sir, quod the two knyghtes, what wyll ye do? I wyll saue myself, and you also, quod the duke, and the rest saue them who can. Well sir, quod the knyghtes, than lette vs drawe ourselfe out a syde on a wyngge, and so we shall haue two strynges on our bowe: we shall se howe our men do: if they do well, than we shall abyde for the honour of  $\text{ȝ}$  kyng, who hath sent vs hither, and if they be discōfited we shall take  $\text{ȝ}$  felde, and take the aduantage by flyeng, and saue ourselfe where we may. This cōsayle was holden good. Than the duke and these two knyghtes rode along their batayle, and made good vysage, and sayd, Sirs, kepe your batayls in good order, and by the grace of god and saynt George, we shall haue this daye a fayre iourney, for the ryght is ours: it is the kynges quarell, therefore we shall spede the better. Thus they rode vp and downe dissymulyng; at laste they gette themselfe out of the prease, and so came to one of the corners of the batayle and made a wyngge, and therewith there came on the duke of Yorke, and the duke of Gloucestre, and other lordes, with their baners displayed, makyng great noyse with trumpettes. And as soone as the duke of Irelādes company sawe them cōmyng in so good order, and so fiersly, they were so abasshed that they helde none arraye, but

<sup>2</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XCV.

toured their backes and fledde, for þ̄ noyse ran howe the duke of Irelande and his counsaile were fledde and gone: and so than euery man fledde, some hyther and thyder, they wyste nat whyder, without makynge of any defence; and the duke of Irelande and the two knyghtes of his counsaile fledde biforce of their horses, and had no mynde to returne to the towne of Oxenforde, but withdrewe thens as moche as they myght.

Whan þ̄ duke of Gloucester sawe the demcanour of his enemyes, and sawe howe they fledde, he hadde remorse in his consciēce, and wolde nat do þ̄ yuell he myght haue done, for he knewe well that many of them that were there presente were there rather by constraynt and by insytacion of the duke of Irelande than for any good loue; therefore he sayd to his men, Sirs, the iourney is ours; I charge euery man, on payne of dethe, that ye slee no man without he make defence; and if ye gete any knyghtes or squyers, bring them to me. His cōmaundement was done, so that there were but fewe slayne, without it were in the prease, as they rode one ouer another. In þ̄ chase there was taken lytell sir Johan Beauchampe<sup>a</sup> and sir Johan Salisbury, and they were presented to the duke of Gloucester, who was right ioyous of them. Than the duke tooke the waye to Oxenforde, and gaue leaue to all his men of warre to retourne to their owne houses, and thanked them of the seruyce they had done to hym and to his brother, and sayd to þ̄ mayre of London and his company, Sirs, departe you all home agayne; wherof they were all gladd. Thus departed that armye.

*Howe the duke of Irelande and his company fledde; and howe the kynges vnclis were at Oxenforde; and howe sir Nychnolas Brāble<sup>b</sup> was beheeded; and howe the kyng was sent for by the bysshop of Caunterbury.*

#### CAP. C.<sup>c</sup>

NOWE shall I shewe what became of þ̄ duke of Irelande and of sir Peter Golofer and sir Michaell de la Pole. As I shewed before, they saued thēselfe; as it was nede-full for thē, for if they hadde ben taken they had suffred dethe without mercy. I can nat saye if they went to the kyng or nat; if they dyde, they taried nat long, but departed the realme of Englāde assone as they coude, and, as I haue herde reported, they rode through Wales,<sup>d</sup> and toke shyppynge at Carleon, and sayled into Scotlande, and came to Edenborowe, and there they toke another shypppe and sayled, costynge Frise-lande and the yle of Theseley<sup>e</sup> and the cōtre of Hollande, and so came and arryued at the towne of Dondrest.<sup>f</sup> Than were they gladd, and, as I was enfourmed, the duke of Irelāde had long before cōueyed by lōbardes moche golde and syluer to Bruges, for feare of all casueltes; for though he was great with the kyng, yet always he doutid þ̄ kynges vnclis and the cōmons of the realme; wherfore he made prouisyon before hande, of money, to ayde hym whan nede were; and, as it was shewed me, the threscore thousande frankes that he had receyued for the redempcyon of the chyldren of Bretayne, and specially for Jobñ of Bretayne, for Guy was deed, whiche money (as it was sayde) he founde redy there at his cōmyng, and he shulde receyue more, in thre yere, other threscore thousande frankes; wherfore he was nat abashed, for he had substaūce sufficient for a longe space. And whan duke Aubert of Bayner,<sup>g</sup> who had Haynalte, Holland, and zelande in gouernance, vnder the erle Willyam his brother, who as than was lyuyng, whan he vnderstode that the duke of Irelande was come, as a fugetyue  
out

<sup>a</sup> "Sir John Beauchamp called the little,"  
numbered XCVI.  
Scotland."

<sup>b</sup> Bramber.

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be

<sup>d</sup> "Rode through Cumberland, and passed by

Carlisle, and entered into

<sup>e</sup> The Texel.

<sup>f</sup> Dordrecht.

<sup>g</sup> Bavaria.



out of Englande, into the towne of Dordrest,<sup>a</sup> he studied and imagyned a lytell, and thought he shulde nat longe abyde there, seyng that he was fledde out of Englande, and had the yuell wyll of his cosyn germayns, to whome he bare his loue and fauour; and also he consydred howe the duke of Irelande had dalte but yuell with his cosyn germayne, the lady Isabell of Englande, who had been lady of Concy: wherefore he commaunded the duke of Irelande, bycause he hadde displeased his cosyns of Englande, and had broken his lafull mariage, and wolde mary another wyfe, that he shulde departe out of that countrey, and gette hym another lodgyngge, and that he shulde nat be suffered to abyde in no towne of that countrey. When the duke herde that, he douted that he shulde be taken, and delyucred into the handes of his enemyes; and he humyled hymselfe greatly to them that were sente to hym, and sayde he wolde gladly obey the duke Aubertes commaundement: and so payed and trussed, and entred into a vessell and all his, on the ryuer of Mornegue, and dyd so moche by water and by lande, that he came to Berette,<sup>b</sup> whiche towne pertayned to the bysshoppe of Trece;<sup>b</sup> there he was well receyued, and there he taryed tyll he harde other tydinges. Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of hym, and speke of Englande.

After the endyngge of this journey that the kynges vncles had agaynste the duke of Irelade besyde Oxenforde, and that euery man was gone home, the bysshoppe of Caunterbury and the two dukes taryed styll at Oxenforde, I can nat tell howe long; and there was beleededde the lytell Beauchampe and sir Johan of Salisbury: after that iustyce the two dukes retourned to Lōdon, and there taryed a season to here some tidynges fro the kyng; and they coulde here none, but that he was at Bristowe. Thanne the lordes at Westmynster, by the instigacion of the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury, determyned that it shulde be honourable for them to sende to the kyng to Bristowe, and to shewe hym amably that he hath ben a certayne space agaynst the moost parte of his realme, who loued hym better, and are gladder to kepe his honour than suche marmosettes as he hath beleued, by whom his realme hath ben in great trouble and peryll. In this meane season was brought to Lōdon sir Nycholas Bramble,<sup>c</sup> who was taken in Wales, as he fledde from the journey to haue saued hymselfe; of whose takyngge the kynges vncles were right ioyfull, and sayde, howe they wolde make no stoore of hym, but he shulde go the same waye as the other hadde done before: he coude neuer excuse hymselfe but that he must dye. He was beheeded without London. His dethe was sore complayned of some men of London, for he hadde been mayre of London before, and had well governed his ollyce, and dyde one day great honour to the kyng, whan he slewe with his owne handes Lyster, wherby all the rebelles were disconfyted, and for that good seruyce the kyng made hym knyght: but in the maner (as I haue shewed you) he was beheeded, by reason of the ouermuche beleuyngge of the duke of Irelande.

After the dethe of sir Nicholas Bramble,<sup>c</sup> the kynges vncles sawe that all suche as they hated, and wolde haue oute of the kynges counsayle, were deed and fledde awaye. Than they thought the kyng and the realme shulde be brought into good order; for though they had slayne some of the kynges counsayle, and chased theym awaye, yet the coude nat take awaye the signorie of the kyng, but thought to rule the realme in good forme, to the honour of the kyng and his realme. Than they sayd to the byshop of Caüterbury, Sir, ye shall go lyke yourselfe to Bristowe to the kyng, and there shewe hym what case the busynesse of his realme is in, and recōmaunde vs to hym, and shewe hym in our behalfe that he gyue no credence of lyght enformacion agaynst vs: he hath beleued some to moche for his owne honour and for the profyete of his realme:

<sup>a</sup> Dordrecht.<sup>b</sup> Utrecht.<sup>c</sup> Bramber.

realme: and saye also to hym, that we requyre hym, and so do all the good people of London, that he wolde come hyder; he shal be welcome and receyued w̄ gret ioye; and we shall set suche counsaile about hym, f̄ he shal be well pleased; and we charge you retourne nat agayne withoute hym, and desyre hym nat to be displeased, though we haue chased awaye a meny of traytours that were about hym, for by them his realme was in great paryll of lesyngē. The bysshop sayd he shulde do ryght well his message; and so departed and roode forthe lyke a great prelate, and so came to Bristowe, and the kyng was there, but with a priuie cōpany; for suche as were wont to haue ben of his counsaile were deed and fledde awaye, as ye haue herde before. The bysshop was in the towne two nightes and a day or f̄ kyng wolde speke with hym, he was so soore dyspleased with his vnclēs had driuyngē awaye of the duke of Irelande, whome he loued aboue all men, and for sleevingē of his knyghtes: finally he was so entysed, that he consented that the archbysshop shulde come into his presens. Whan he came before hym, he humyled hymselfe greatlye to the kyng, and there shewed the kyng euery worde as the kynges vnclēs had gyuen hym in charge, and shewed hym, that if it were his pleasure to come to London to his palys of Westmynster, his vnclēs and the mooste parte of all his realme wolde be ryght ioyeouse, elles they wyl be ryght sorie and yuell displeased, and sayde; syr, without the comforte, ayde, and accorde of your vnclēs, and of your lordes, knyghtes, and prelates, and of your good cyties and townes of Englāde, ye canne nat come to any of youre ententes. He spake these wordes boldelye, and sayde moreouer, Sir, ye canne nat reioyse so moche youre ennemyes, as to make warre with youre frendes, and to kepe your Realme in warre and myschiefe. The yonge kyng, by reasone of the bysshoppes wordes, beganne to encluyne; howbeit, the beheedyingē of his knyghtes and counsaylours came sore into his courage; so he was in dyuers ymaginacions; but finally he refrayned his displeasure, by the good meanes of the quene, f̄ lady of Boesme,<sup>2</sup> and of some other wise knyghtes that were about hym, as sir Rycharde Stener and other. Thanne the kyng sayd to the bysshoppe, Well, I am content to go to Lōdon with you; wherof the bisshop was right ioyous, and also it was to hym a great honoure that he hadde spedde his journey so well.

Within a short space after, the kyng departed, and lefte the quene styll at Bristowe, and so came towardes London with f̄ archbysshoppe in his company, and so came to Wyndsore, and there the kyng taryed a thre dayes. Tidynges came to London howe the kyng was commynge; euery manne was gladde. Than it was ordayne to mete hym honourablye. The daye that he departed fro Wyndsore, the way fro Braynforde to London was full of people, on horsebacke and a foote, to mete the kyng; and his two vnclēs the duke of yorke and the duke of Gloucester, and Johan, sonne to the duke of yorke, the erle of Arundell, the erle of Salisbury, the erle of Northumberlande, and dyuers other lordes and knyghtes, and prelates departed out of London, and mette with the kyng a two myle fro Braynforde: there they receyued hym swetely, as they ought to do their soueraygne lorde. The kyng, who bare yet some displeasure in his herte, passed by and made but small countenance to thē, and all the waye he talked moost with the bisshop of Lōdon: at last they came to Westmīster: the kyng alyghted at his palis, whiche was redy apparelled for him: there f̄ kyng dranke and toke spycēs, and his vnclēs also, and other Prelates, lordes, and knyghtes. Than some tooke their leaues; the kynges vnclēs, and the archebysshoppe of Caunterburye, with the counsaile, taryed styll there with the kyng, some in the palais, and some in the abbey and in the towne of westminster, to kepe the kyngē company, and to be nere toguyder to commune of their busynesse: there they determyned what shulde be done.

<sup>2</sup> Bohemia.

*Howe by the kyng and his vnclcs all the lordes of Englande were sente for to come to Westmynster, to a generall counsayle there to be holden.*

## CAP. CI.\*

A GENERALL Parlyament was ordeyned to be holden at Westmynstre, and all prelates, Erles, Barons, and knyghtes, and fy counsayles of all the good townes and cytees of Englade were sent for to be there, and all suche as helde of the kyng. The archebysshoppe of Cauntorbury shewed to the kynges vnclcs and counsayle, that when kyng Rycharde was crowned kyng of Englande, and that euery man was sworne and made theyr releues to hym, and that whā he receyued theyr faythes and homages he was within age, and a kyng ought nat to gouerne a royalme tyll he be xxi. yeres of age, and in the meane season to be gouerned by his vnclcs, or by his nexte kynne, and by wyse men. The bysshop sayd this bycause the kyng as then was but newlye come to the age of xxi. yeres; wherfore he counsayled that euery man shulde be newe sworne, and renewe their releues, and euery manne newe to knowledge hym for theyr soueraygne lorde. This counsayle was excepted<sup>b</sup> of the kynges vnclcs, and of all other of the counsayle: and for that entent all prelates and lordes, and counsayles of good cyties and townes were sent for to come to Westminster at a daye assigned. Euery man came thyder, none disobeyed, so that there was moche people in London and at Westminster. And kyng Rycharde was in his chapell in the palys, rycheley apareyled, with his crowne on his heed; and the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury sang the masse; and after masse, fy bisshoppe made a collasyon;<sup>c</sup> and after that the kynges vnclcs dyde their homage to the kyng and kyssed hym, and there they sware and promysed hym faithe and homage for euer; and than all other lordes sware, and prelates, and with their handes ioyned togyder they dyde their homage, as it aparteyned, and kyst the kynges cheke. Some the kyng kyst with good wyll, and some nat, for all were nat in his inwarde loue; but it behoued hym so to do, for he wolde nat go fro the counsayle of his vnclcs: but surely, if he might haue had his entent, he wolde nat haue done as he dyde, but rather haue taken crewell vengeaunce for the dethe of sir Symon Burle,<sup>d</sup> and other knyghtes that they had putte fro hym and slayne, without deseri, as he thought. Than it was ordayned by fy counsayle, that the archebysshop of yorke shulde come and pouрге hymselfe, for he hadde alwayes been of the duke of Irelandes parte, agaynst the kynges vnclcs. Whan fy bysshop of yorke herde of this, he doutyd hymselfe, for he knewe well he was nat in fy fauour of the kynges vnclcs; therfore he sente his excuse by a nephue of his, somme to the lorde Neuell, and he came to London, and came first to the kyng, and shewed hym his vnclcs excuse, and dyde his homage in the bysshoppes behalfe. The kyng toke it well, for he loued hym better than the bysshoppe of Gaunterbury, and so he hymselfe excused the bysshoppe, or elles it had ben yuell with him: but for the kynges loue they forbare hym and toke his excuse; and so he taryed styll in his bysshoprike a longe space, and durste nat lye at yorke, but taryed at Newcastell on the ryuer of Tyne, nere to his brother the lorde Neuell and his cosyns. In this estate was at that tyme the busynesse of Englande, and so of a longe space fy kyng was nat mayster ouer his counsayle, but his vnclcs and other bare all the rule. Nowe we wyll leaue to treat of the maters of Englade, and speke of the busynesse of the kyng of Castyle and of the kyng of Portyn-gale, and of their warres.

\* This chapter ought to be numbered XCVII.

<sup>b</sup> "Accepted."<sup>c</sup> A sermon.<sup>d</sup> Burley.

*Howe the kynge of Portyngale with his puissaūce assembled with the duke of Lancastre and his pryssaunce; and howe they coude nat passe the ryuer of Derne;<sup>a</sup> and howe a squyer of Castyle shewed thē the passage.*

C A P. CII.<sup>b</sup>

IT is reason, sythe the mater so requyareth, that I retourne agayne to ŷ duke of Lācastres journey, and howe he parceyuered at this season in Galyce. I shall begyn there as I lefte, for I haue great desyre to make an ende of that storie. When the duke of Lancastre had won and conquered the towne and castell of Dauranche<sup>c</sup> in Galyce, and brought it vnder his obeysaunce, and refreshed hym there foure dayes, for there he founde well wherwith, than the fyfthe day he departed, and sayde he wolde go to the castell of Noy;<sup>d</sup> and so he dyde, and lay four dayes in a fayre medowe alonge a ryuer syde; but the grounde was dried vp by reason of the heate of the sonne, and the water corrupted, so that their horses wolde nat drinke therof, and suche as dyde dyed. Thanne it was ordayne to dislodge thens, and to tourne agayne to Auranch,<sup>e</sup> for sir Richarde Burle<sup>f</sup> and sir Thomas Morryaulx, marshalles of the hoost, sayd it was nat possible to get the strong castell of Noy<sup>d</sup> but by longe siege, by great wysedome and dispence, and moche artillery: and also tydinges came to the duke of Lancastre, that the kynge of Portugale approched with all his hoost, to the nombre of a thousande speares and tenne thousande able men. So that the two hoostes togyder were lykely to do a great dede, for the duke of Lancastre hadde a fyftene hundred speares, knyghtes and squiers, and a sixe thousande archers. These tydinges reioysed greatly the duke of Lancastre, and so dislodged fro Noy,<sup>d</sup> and wente agayne to Auranche<sup>e</sup> in Galyce; and the duke sente for the duchesse his wyfe and the other ladies and damoselles; for the duke sayd he wolde abyde there for the kynge of Portugale: and so he dyde.

Ye shall knowe, that whan kyng Johan of Portugale and his marshalles had take the towne of Feroull, they rode and approched Auranch<sup>e</sup> to come to the duke of Lācastre; and in their way they founde the towne of Padrone, whiche rebelled against thē; but at their first comyng they yelded them to the kynges obeysaunce. The kynge taryed there and in the marches there about a fyftene dayes, and wasted greatlye the cuntrye of vitayls, and yet they had great plentie comyng dayly fro Portugale. Thus these two great hoostes were in Galyce, and greatly impouerysshed the cuntrye, and the dayes waxed so hote, ŷ no man coude styrre after nyne of the clocke, without he wolde be brent with the sonne. The duke of Lācastre and the duchesse were at Aurāche,<sup>e</sup> and their men abrode in the cuntrye in great pouerte for lacke of vitayls for thēselfe and for their horses. Nothyng that was good or swete coulede growe out of the grounde, it was so drie and brent with the sone; and that grewe was lytell worthe, for the season was so hote, that all was brent; and the Englysshemen, if they wolde haue any thyng for themselfe or for their horses, it behoued them or their seruantes to go a forragyng a xii. sixtene, or twentie myles of, which was great payne and daunger; and the Englysshmen founde the wyne there so stronge, hoothe, and brynning, that it corrupted their heedes and dried their bowelles, and brente their lightes and lyuers; and they had no remedy, for they coude fynde but lytell good waters to temper their wyne nor to refreshhe them, whiche was cōtrary to their natures; for Englysshmen in their owne

<sup>a</sup> Duero.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XCVIII.<sup>c</sup> Orense.<sup>d</sup> Noya.<sup>e</sup> Burley.<sup>f</sup> "Threc."

owne cōutreis are swetely norissed, and there they were brēt both within and without; they endured great pouertie: the great lordes wanted of that they were accustomed vnto in their owne cōutreis.

Than the knyghtes and squyers and other of Englande sawe the daunger and myscheffe that they were in, and were likely to be, what for lacke of vytayle and heate of the sonne, whiche dayly encreased. Than they began to murmure, and to saye in the host in dyuers places, We feare our iourney wyll come to a smal effect and ende; we lye to long in one place. That is true, sayd other; there is two thynges greatly contrarye for vs; we leade in our company women and wyues, who desyareth nothyng but rest; and for one dayes iourney, by their wylles, they wolde reste fyltene: this dystroyeth vs, and wyll do; for as soone as we came to Coulongne,<sup>a</sup> if we had gone forwarde we had spedde well, and brought the countre to good obeysaunce, for none wolde haue ben agaynst vs: but the longe taryeng hath enforced our ennemyes, for nowe they haue prouyded them of men of warre out of Fraunce, and by thē their townes, cyties, and passages be kepte and closed agaynst vs. Thus they disconfyted vs withoute bataille: they nede nat to fyght with vs, for the realme of Spayne is nat so pleasaunt a lande to traueyle in as is Fraunce or Englande, wherin are good villages, fayre cōutreis, and swete ryuers, faire medowes, and attemperate ayre for menne of warre; and here is all the contrarye. What ment oure lorde the duke of Lancastre (if he thought to wynne this countrey), to leade in his company women and children? This is a great let and without reason, for it is knowen in all Spayne, and els where, that he and his bretherne are the true enherytours of the countrey, at leest their wyfes, daughters to kyng Don Peter. As for doying of any conquest or tournyng of any townes, the women do lytell therein.

Thus as I haue shewed you, the people iangled in the duke of Lancasters hoost one to another. Than tidynges came to the duke that the kyng of Portugale aproched nere, wherof he was ioyfull: and whan the kyng was within two leages, the duke with his knyghtes mounted on their horses and rode to mete hym, and there they mette amiably and all their companies. The kynges hole hoost was nat there, but taryed behynde in the guydyng of sixe great lordes of Portugale, as Ponnase of Congne,<sup>b</sup> Vase<sup>c</sup> Martyn de merlo, Posdiche de asne degouse,<sup>d</sup> Saluase de Merlo, sir Aulne Perrier<sup>e</sup> marshall, and Johan Radighes Desar, and dyuers other; and the kyng had with hym a thre hundred speares: so at Aurāche<sup>f</sup> the kyng and the duke were togyder a fyue dayes, and toke counsaile togyder. The fynall conclusyon was, that they shulde ryde togyder and enter into the countrey of Campe,<sup>g</sup> and to go to the towne of Arpent,<sup>h</sup> where syr Olyuer of Clesquyne,<sup>i</sup> constable of Spayne, was: but they wyst nat how to passe ſ̄ ryuer of Derne,<sup>k</sup> whiche was fell and orgulous at certayne tymes, and specially rather in somer than in wynter; for whan the snowe and froste melteth on the moūtayns, by reason of the sonne, than is the ryuer moost depest and most dangerous to passe, for in wynter it is frosyn, and than the ryuers are but base and lowe; yet for all ſ̄ they concluded to ryde into the cōtre of Campe,<sup>g</sup> trustyng at some place to fynde some passage. This conclusyon was publysshed throughe all their hoostes, wherof euery man was ioyfull, for they had lye a long space sore oppressed and in great daunger at Auranche<sup>f</sup> and therabout, and many were sore diseased.

Thus the kyng of Portugale and ſ̄ duke of Lācastre departed fro Auranche<sup>f</sup> and rode togyder, but their hostes were separated into two partes, bycause none of them vnder-

VOL. II.

2 Q

stode

<sup>a</sup> Corunna.  
Pereyra.

<sup>b</sup> The Pouasse d'Acunha.

<sup>c</sup> Vasco.

<sup>d</sup> Dosne degousse.

<sup>e</sup> Alleyne

<sup>f</sup> Orense.

<sup>g</sup> Medina del Campo.

<sup>h</sup> Villalpando.

<sup>i</sup> Du Guesclin.

<sup>k</sup> Duero.

stode other, nor had no maner of aqueyntāce toguyder; and also to eschewe riottes or debates that myght haue fallen bytwene them, for portogales are hote and hastye, and in lykewise Englysshmen be dispytefull and fierse. Thus they were apoynted by the marshals of bothe hostes to lodge and to forrage in diners partes, and nat toguyder. Thus they rode forthe, and were of that pyussaunce able to fyght for a iourney with kynge Johan of Castell and all his adhenrentes. So longe they iourneyed, that they came to the ryuer of Derne,<sup>a</sup> whiche was nat easy to passe, for it was depe and with highe bankes, and full of great broken stones, so that but at certayne bridges whiche were broken, or elles so well kepte, y it was in maner impossyble to passe, they might nat gette ouer. So these two hostes had great ymaginaciōs how they might passe. Than so it fell that sir Johā Holande, who was constable of the Englysshe hoost, and the marshalles sir Richarde Burle<sup>b</sup> and sir Thomas Moreaulx; and their forragers, as they rode before, they encountred a squier of Castell, called Donnage Baugher.<sup>c</sup> He knewe well all the passages of the cuntry, and he knewe where there was one passage that bothe horsmen and fotemen might easelye passe the riuer; and he came ouer at the same passage, and was taken and brought to the sayd lordes, of whom they were ryght glad; and there he was so streitly examyned, and also by the wordes of the constable, who sayde to hym howe he wolde quite his rausome, and gyue hym a good rewarde, if he wolde shewe them where they myght passe surely the ryuer, for they sayde they had herde howe there was one sure passage ouer the ryuer. The squier, who toke but lyght aduysement, and was couetous of the constables offre, and was gladd to be deluyered out of their handes, sayd, Sirs, I knowe well the passage, and I shall shewe it you, and shal be your guyde, where as ye and all youre menne maye passe without any daunger.

Of this the constable and marshalles had great iōye, and so rode forthe toguyder, and sent worde of this tydinges to the duke of Lancastre, and so folowed the vowearde, and the constables and marshalles came to the passage. Than the spanyssh squier entred firste into the ryuer, and shewed them the way; and whan they sawe the passage so pleasaunt they were ryght ioyfull, and so euery man passed ouer; and whan the vowearde was ouer, they lodged there to gyue knowledge to all other that folowed after. Than the constable kepte his promyse with the squier that was their gyde; and so he departed fro them and rode to Medena del campo, where the kynge of Castyle lay, a good towne in the cuntry of Campe. Than the kynge of Portogale and the duke of Lancastre came to the passage, which was called Plasse ferarde, bycause the grauell and sande there was firme and stable, and without parell. There they and their hoostes passed ouer, and the next day the rerewarde, and than they all lay in the cōtrye of Campe. Tydinges came to them of Ruelles, of Cateseris, of Medena, of Vyle arpente,<sup>d</sup> of saynt Phagon, and to other cyties, townes, and castels of the cuntry of Campe and Spayne, howe the englysshemen and portugaloyse were passed ouer the ryuer of Derne,<sup>a</sup> and had founde the passe, wherof euery man had maruayle, and sayd, This can nat be done without trayson, for they shulde neuer haue founde out the passage, but if some of the cōntre had shewed it to them. The kynge of castelles lordes knewe how the squier of Castyle had shewed it them, and was their guyde; therupon he was taken, and knowledged the trowth, as he hadde done: thanne he was inged to dye, and was brought to Vyle arpent,<sup>d</sup> and there beheeded.

<sup>a</sup> Duere<sup>b</sup> Burley.<sup>c</sup> Donage Baghor.<sup>d</sup> Villalpando

*Howe the tydinges spred abrode that the kynge of Portugale and the duke of Lancastre were passed the ryver of Derne,<sup>a</sup> and howe it came to the kyng of Castels knowlege; and howe certayne of the englysshe knyghtes came and rode before Vyle arpenite;<sup>b</sup> and how the king of Portugale and the duke of Lancastre determyned there to tary the cōmyng of the duke of Burbone.*

CAP. CHII.<sup>c</sup>

WHAN the kynge of Castyle knewe howe the kyng of Portugale and the duke of Lancastre were in ȳ feldes with a great puysance and daily aproched, wherof he was sore abasshyd, and called to hym syr Gaultyer of Passac and syr Willyam of Lignac, and sayde, I haue great maruayle of the duke of Borbon, that he cometh nat: our enemyes aproche and kepe the feldes, and none encoütreth them: they waste our countrey, and the people of my realme are yuell contente that we fyght nat with theym; wherfore, sirs, I requyre you gyue me counsaile what is best to do. These two knyghtes, who knewe more of dedes of armes than the kyng dyd, for they had more vsed it, and therfore thyder they were sente oute of Fraunce, they sayde: Syr, surely the duke of Borbon cometh without fayle; and whan he cometh, we shall take counsaile what we shall do; but tyll he come, let vs make no countenance of batayle; let our enemyes go and come whyder as they lyst; lette them kepe the feldes and we shall kepe the townes that be stronge, and well prouyded bothe with men and vytayles: they shall be in the sonne and in great heate, and we shall be in the shadowe and in the fresshe ayie: they shall fynde ȳ countrey wasted and pylled, and the more forewarde that they go, the lesse sustynaūce shall they fynde; and therfore, syr, at the begynnyng, to eschewe all inconuenyentes, all lytell holdes were beaten downe, and maners and churches, suche as men of the coūtrei wolde haue put in their goodes; and this was wysely done, or els nowe your enemyes shulde haue founde places to haue rested in, and as nowe they shall fynde nothyng, without they brynge it with theym, but heate and the sonne on their heedes, the whiche shall burne and slee them; and, sir, all your townes, cyties, and castelles are well garnysshed and prouyded for with good men of armes, artillery, and vytayles. I thynke they shall be skrymysshed withall, for that is the lyfe and norysshyng of men of warre and their passetyme, for they ryde aboute all the worlde to seke aduentures; therfore, sir, be nothyng abasshed, for we truste in this besynes we shall haue no great damage. The kynge, by reason of these knyghtes wordes, was greatly recōforted, for he perceyued well they shewed him the trouth and reason.

Nowe let us speke of the duke of Lancastre and of the kyng of Portugale, who were in the feldes in the countrey of Campe.<sup>d</sup> They wolde gladly haue bene in some towne to haue refreshed theym, for their foragers whersoer they wente coude fynde no thing, and for feare of encountrynges, they rode nat but in great companies; and somtyme, whan they sawe a village on a hyll, or on the playne, than they reioysed and wolde say: Go we thyder, for there we shal be all ryche and well prouyded; and thyder they wolde ryde in great haste; and whan they were there, they founde nothyng but hare walles.

2 Q 2

<sup>a</sup> Duero.

Villalpando.

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered XCIX.<sup>d</sup> About Medina del Campo.

and the howses broken downe, and nother catte nor dogge, cocke nor hen, man, woman, nor childe there; it was wasted before by the frenchemen. Thus they loste their tyme, and their horses were leane and feble, by reason of their poore norrishyng: they were happy when they founde any pasture, and some were so feble that they coulde go no further, but dyed for great heate and pouertie; ye and also some of the great men dyed and were sore dyspleased with hooete feuers, and had nat wherwith to refreshe them; and sometyme by sodeyn coldes that toke them sleping in y nyght. In this case they were in, and specially in the duke of Lancastres hoost, for the englysshmen were of a febler complexion than the portugaloyes, for they coulde well endure the payne, for they be harde and accustomed to the ayre of Castyle. In this case as I haue shewed you the englysshmen were in, and many dyed, and namely suche as had but smale prouyson for themselfe.

Sir Richarde Burle,<sup>a</sup> sir Thomas Moreaulx, sir Thomas Percy, the lorde Fitzwater, syr Maberyne of Linyers, sir Johā Dambreticourt, Thyrray and Guylyam of Soumayne, and with theym a two hundred horsemen, knyghtes and squyers, suche as wolde aunauce theymselfe, and desyringe of dedes of armes, at a tyme mounted on their horses, the beste they hadde, to the entente to ryde to Vyle Arpente,<sup>b</sup> to awake the frēchmen that were therin; for they had herde surely howe sir Olyuer of Clysson<sup>c</sup> was within that towne, who was constable of Castyle, and with hym a great nombre of good men of armes. These lordes with their company rode forthe in a morenyng, and came to a lytell ryner that ranne before the towne and passed ouer. The larome rose in the towne and brute that the englysshmen were come to the baryers: thanne knyghtes and squiers armed them quickly, and came to the cōstables lodginge, and their varlettes saddled their horses and brought thē to their maisters: the constable wolde nat by his wyll haue suffered them to haue issued out agaynste the englysshmen, but he coulde nat let them, their corages were so fierse; and so they issued out well horsed and in good ordre: firste issued sir Johan of Barres, the vicounte of Barlier, sir Johan of Brakemoūt, sir Pyer of Wyllannes, sir Tristam de la gayll, and dyuers other, with great desyre to fyght agaynst the englysshmen: and whan the englysshmen had made their course before the towne, than they passed agayne the ryuer where as they had paste, and drewe togyther on y sandes, and fayre and easely withdrewe fro the ryuer a thre bow shottes: than the frenche knyghtes came cryeng their cryes, enery manne his speare on the thyghe; and whan the Englysshmen sawe them, sodeynly they tourned with their speares in the restes. There was a sore rencōute, and dyuers ouerthrowen on the sandes on bothe parties; and whan that course was done, they lefte nat so, but skrymysshed togyther, but he was hymselfe of the subtyle sandes rose vp so thyecke, that one of them coulde nat se another, nor knowe eche other, so that themselfe nor their horses coulde skant drawe their brethes, their mouthes were so full of dust; so that therby eche party was fayne to withdrawe by their cries. Thus they departed, and no manne slayne nor greatly hurte: and bycause of this course that the englysshe knyghtes made, they paste that daye but one leage fro the towne of Arpente,<sup>b</sup> and so returned to their lodgynges, and sycknesse toke them, heate, colde, and feuers. The duke of Lancaster wyste nat what to saye nor do, for he sawe well howe his men fell sicke dayly and lay in their beddes; and he was hymselfe soo wery and heuy, that gladly he wolde haue layen in his bedde, and it had nat ben for discouragyng of his people: and on a day he spake with the kyng of Portugale, and demaunded counsayle of hym, desyringe hym to gyue his beste aduyse what was beste to do, for he feared great mortalitye to fall in his host. Than the kyng sayd, Syr, it semeth well howe that the spaynyardes nor  
frēchmen

<sup>a</sup> Borley.<sup>b</sup> Villalpando.<sup>c</sup> Du Guesclin.



frēchmen wyll nat fyght with vs at this tyme; they purpose to suffre vs to waste ourselves and our prouysions. Why, syr, quod the duke, and what wyll ye than couſayle vs to do? I shall shewe you, quod the kyng of Portugale: as for this season, whyle the sonne is so hoothe, that ye and your people drawe agayne into Galyce, and let euery man refresch himselfe, and at Marche or Aprill than come to the felde agayne, and do so moch that newe ayde and comforte maye come to you oute of Englande by one of your bretherne. A realme is nat so soone wonne, and specyally to agree with the ayre nat acustomed before. Let your men go and passe their tyme in suchie townes and forteres as ye haue in Galyce vnder your obeysaunce. This may well be, quod the duke; but than maye fortune to fall, as I shall shewe you; that is, Whan our enemyes seeth that we be departed one fro another, you into Portugale and I into Galyce, at saynt Jaques or at Colongne,<sup>9</sup> than the kyng of Spayne wyll ryde with great puyſſance: for I haue herde that he hathe foure thousande speares, frenchmen and bretons, and he shall fynde as many mo in his owne countrey; and also the duke of Burbon, vncl to the frenche kyng, cometh after with two M. speares; and assone as he cometh he wyll set forwarde, so that and we be than at home in oure countreys, or we can assemble togyder agayne, as we be nowe, our enemyes shall do vs great damage. Thanne the kyng sayde, Well: than lette vs kepe styll the feldes in the name of god; as for my men be fresshe ynough, and are of good mynde to abyde the aduenture, and I with them.

Thus they determyned to abyde the cōmyng of the duke of Burbon, to se if they shulde be fought withall thanne or nat, for they all demaūded nothing but batayle. The tyme went euer forwarde and the sonne mounted, and the dayes chafed meruaylously, for it was aboute mydsomer, whan the sonne was in his strength, and specially in Spayne and Granade, and in the farre countreys of Septentryon; nor after Aprell there fell no rayne nor swetnes fro Heuyn, wherby euery thyng was brente on the erthe. The englysshmen eate grapes whan they myght get them, and dranke of the hote wyne; and the more they dranke the more they were set afyre, and therby brente their luyers and longes, for that dyete was contrary to their nature. Englysshmen are norished with good metes and with ale, which kepeth their bodyes in temper; and there the nyghtes were hoothe, bycause of the great heate in the day, and the mornyng meruaylously colde, whiche dysceyued them: for in the nyght they could suffre no thyng on them, and so slepte all naked. and in the mornyng colde toke them or they were ware, and that caste them into feuers and flyxes without remedy; and as well dyed great men as meane people.

\* Corunna.

*Howe the duke of Lancastre gaue lycence to his men, and howe a haraulte was sente to the kinge of Castyle, and howe the knyghtes of Englande went to speke with the king of Castyle for a sauconduct, for the dukes men to passe through his countrey.*

CAP. CIII.<sup>a</sup>

BEHOLDE nowe and se howe fortune tourned ; ye maye well beleue that the duke of Lancastre beyng in the realme of Castyle, coulde neuer haue loste by batayle, nor his men dyscomfeted, nor loste his men as he dyd in that voyage by reason of sycknes, and hymselfe also nygh deed : and sir Johan Holande, who was constable of the hoost, whan he sawe his frendes and men thus infected with this malady without remedy, and herynge the complayntes of one and other, sayeng eche to other, Ah, the duke of Lancastre hath brought vs to dye in Spaygne, cursed be this voyage : he wyll neuer haue Englysshman more to come out of Englande to serue hym : he spurneth agaynst y<sup>e</sup> pricke ; he wolde his men shulde kepe the countrey whan it is wonne, and whan his men be all deed, who shall thanne kepe it ? he sheweth nat that he can any skyll of the warre, sythe he seeth that none cometh agaynst vs to fight in batayle ; why dothe he nat drawe than into Portugale, or into some other place ? than he shulde nat haue the damage nor losse that he hath, for thus we shall all dye without any strokes. Whan sir Johan Holande herde and vnderstode these wordes, for the honoure and loue of his lorde the duke of Lancastre, whose doughter he had maryed, he came to the duke and sayd quickly to him, Sir, it must behoue you to take newe and shorte counsaile : your people be in a harde case, and lykely to dye by sycknesse : if nede shulde fortune they are nat able to ayde you, they be wery and in a harde case, and their horses deed, so that noble men and other are so discouraged that they are nat lyke to do you any good seruyce at this tyme. Than sayd the duke, and what is beste than to do, I wyll beleue counsaile for it is reason ? Syr, quod the constable, me thynke it were beste ye gaue lycence to euery man to departe where as they thynke beste, and yourselfe to drawe outhur into Portugale, or into Galice, for ye are nat in the case to ryde forward. That is trewe, quod the duke, and so I wyll do ; saye you to them howe I do gyue them leau to departe whyder it please the, outhur into Castyle, or into Fraunce, so they make no false treaty with our enemyes, for I se well for this season our warre is paste : and paye euery man their wages, and rewarde them for their costes. Syr, quod the constable, this shall be done.

Sir Johan Holande made it be knowen by a trumpet in euery lodgyng the entencion of the duke of Lancastre, howe he dyd gyue lycence to euery man to departe whyder they lyst, and that euery capytayne shulde speke with the constable, and they shulde be so payed that they shulde be content. This tydynges reioysed some, suche as desyred to departe to change the ayre. Than the barones and knyghtes of Englande toke counsaile howe they myght retourne into Englande ; it was thought impossyble for them to retourne by the see, for they had no shyppes redy, and were farre fro any porte ; and also their men were so sicke with feuers and fluxes, that there were many deed, and so sicke that they coude nat endure y<sup>e</sup> trauayle on the see ; so all thynges considered they thought it best to repayre home thorough the realme of Fraunce. Than some sayde, howe

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered C.

howe maye that be, for we be enemyes too all the realmes that we muste passe through ? First, through Spayne, for we haue made theym open warre: the kyng of Nauar in lykewyse is ioyned in this warre with the kyng of Castyle, and also the kyng of Aragon, for he is ayed with the frenche kyng: and also he hath done to vs a great dyspyte: he hath takē and layd in prison at Barselona the archebysshop of Burdeaux, who wente thyder to demaunde the arerages that the realme of Aragon oweth to the kyng of Englande, our soueraygne lorde; and to sende to the frenche kyng it is harde for vs to do, it is farre of, and peradventure whan oure messenger cometh to the kyng, (he is yonge,) and peradventure his counsaile wyll do nothyng for vs, for sir Olyuer of Glysson, constable of Fraunce, hateth vs mortally: for he wyll say that the duke of Bretayn, his great aduersary, wyll become english. Than some other that were of great wysdome and imaginaeyon said, all thinges consydered, we thinke it best to assay the kyng of Castyle, we thynke he wyll lyghtly condyscende to suffre vs to passe through his cuntry peasably, and to gette a saueconducte fro the kynges of Fraunce, Aragon, and Nauar.

This counsaile was taken, kepte, and herde, and a Haraulde called Derby, was sente forthe to the kyng of Castyle with letters; this haraulde rode forthe and came to Medena de campo, and there he founde the kyng of Castyle, and than he kneled downe and delyuered his letters; and the kyng opened them and redde them, they were written in frenche; whan he hadde well vnderstande them, he turned hym and smyled, and sayde to a knyght of his, go and make this haraulde good chere: he shall be answered to nyght, and departe to morowe. Than the kyng entred into his secrete chambre, and sent for sir Wyllyam of Lygnac, and for sir Gaultyer of Passac, and red to them the letters, and demaunded of them what was beste to do.

I shall shewe you the substaunce of the matter: Syr Johan Holande, constable of the duke of Lancastres hoost, wrote to the kyng of Castyle, desyring hym to sende by the herault letters of safecōducte for ii. or thre englysshe knyghtes to go and come safe, to speke and to treat with hym. Than these knyghtes answered and sayd, sir, it were good ye dyde this, for than shall you knowe what they demaūde. Well, quod the kyng, me thynke it is good. Than there was a safecōducte written, cōteyning that sixe knyghtes might safely go and come at the poynting of the constable: this was sealed with the kynges great seale, and sygned with his hande, and deliuered to the herault, and xx. frankes in rewarde. Than he returned to Anūche,<sup>a</sup> where the duke and ȝ constable were.

The herault deliuered the safecōduct to the cōstable. Than the knyghtes were chosen ȝ schulde go, sir Mauberyn of Linyere, sir Thomas Morell,<sup>b</sup> and sir Johan Dambreticourt; these thre knyghtes were charged to go on this message to ȝ kyng of Castile: and they departed assone as they might, for some thought long, for there were many sicke and lacked phisicians and medicins, and also fresshe vitaylles. These Englysshe ambassadours passed by the towne of Arpent,<sup>c</sup> and there the constable of Castyle, sir Olyuer of Clesquy,<sup>d</sup> made thē good chere, and made them a supper: and the next daye he sent with them a knyght of his of Tynemache,<sup>e</sup> a breton, to bring them the more surelyer to the kyng, for encoūtryng of ȝ bretons, of whom there were many sprede abrode; and so long they rode that they came to Medena de Campo, and there they founde the kyng, who had gret desire to know what they wolde; and whan they were alyghted at their lodgyng, and chaūged and refreshed thē, they went to the king, who made to thē gode semblaunt, and were brought to hī by ȝ knyghtes of his house; than they delyuered

to

<sup>a</sup> Ornese.<sup>b</sup> Moreaux.<sup>c</sup> Villalpando<sup>d</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>e</sup> Johnes names him Tintemach.

to the kyng letters fro the dukes Constable, but none fro hymselfe, for as than he wolde nat write to the kyng: but they sayd, Sir kyng, we be sent hyder to you fro the erle of Huntyngdon, Constable with the duke of Lancastre, acertaynyng you of the great mortalyte and sickenesse that is amonge our men; therfore the constable desyreth you that ye wolde to all suche as desyreth to haue their helthe, opyn your cyties and good townes, and suffre them to entre to refresshe them, and to recouer their helth if they maye; and also, that suche as haue desyre to passe into Englande by lande, that they maye passe without daunger of you, of the kyng of Nauer, and of the Frenche kyng, but pesably to retourne into their owne couñtreis; sir, this is the desyre and request that we make vnto you as at this tyme. Than the kyng answered and said soberly, Sirs, we shall take counsaile and aduise what is good for vs to do, and than ye shal be answered. Than the knyghtes sayd, sir, that suffyceth to vs.

*Howe these thre knyghtes obteyned a sauconduct of the kyng of Castyle for their people to passe: and howe dyuers of theglyssshmen dyed in Castyle: and howe the duke of Lancastre fell in a great sykenesse.*

#### CAP. CV.\*

THUS they departed fro the kyng at that tyme, and went to their lodgynges, and there taryed all þy day, and the next day tyll none; than they went to þy kyng. Now I shall shewe you what answer þy kyng had of his counsaile. This request gretly reioysed the kyng, for he sawe well his enemyes wolde departe out of his realme, and he thought in hymselfe he wolde agre thereto, yet he was counsailed to the cōtrary, but he sent for the ii. frēche capitayns, sir Gaultier of Passacke, and sir William of Lignac; and whan they were come he right sagely shewed thē the desire and request of þy cōstable of the Englysshe host, and herupon he demaūded of them to haue their counsaile: First, he desyred sir Water Passacke to speke; he was lothe to speke before other of the kynges counsaile there, but he was fayne so to do the kyng so sore desyred hym: and so by the kynges cōmaundement he spake and sayde, Sir, ye are come to the same ende that we haue alwayes said, and that was, þy your enemyes shulde wast thēselfe: they are nowe disconfyted without any stroke strikyng; sir, if þy said folkes desyre to haue comforte and refresshyng in your countre, of your gentylnesse ye maye well graūt it them, so that whāsoener they recouer their helthe, they retourne nat agayne to the Duke, nor to the kyng of Portugale, but than to departe the streight way into their owne countreys, and that in the terme of sixe yere they arme them nat agaynst you, nor agaynst the realme of Castyle; we thynke ye shall gette right well a safeconduite for them of the kyng of Fraunce, and of the kyng of Nauerre, to passe peasably through the realmes. Of this answer the kyng was ryght ioyfull, for they counsailed hym accordyng to his pleasure, for he had nat cared what bargeyn he had made, so that he myght haue ben quyte of the Englyssshmen: than he sayd to sir Water Passacke, Sir, ye haue well and truly counsailed me, I thanke you, and I shall do accordyng to your aduise. Than the thre Englysshe knyghtes were sent for.

Whan they were come they entred into the counsaile chābre: than the bysshop of Burgos, chaunceller of Spayne, who was well langaged, sayd: sirs, ye knyghtes of Eng- lād perteyning to the duke of Lācastre, and sent hyder fro his constable, vnderstande that

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CI.

that the kyng here of his pytie and gentylnesse, wyll shewe to his enemyes all the grace he maye; and sirs, ye shall retourne to your cōstable, and shewe hym fro the kyng of Castyle that he shall make it to be knowen through al his hoost by the'sowne of a trumpet, that his realme shal be open and redy to receyue all the Englysshmen hole or sicke, so that at theintre of enery cyte or towne they laye downe their armure and weapons; and there shall they fynde men redy to bring them to their lodgiges, and there all their names to be written and delyuered to the capitayne of the towne, to thentent they shulde nat retourne agayne into Galyce, nor into Portugale, for no maner of busynesse: but to departe into their own countreis assone as they may, and assone as the kyng of Castyle my souerayne lorde hath optayned your safecōducte to passe through the realmes of Nauer, and Fraunce, to go to Calis, or to any other porte or hauen at their pleasure, outhur into Bretaygne, Xaynton, Rochell, Normādy, or Picardy: also ꝑ kynges pleasure is, that all suche knyghtes or squiers of any nacyon what soeuer it be, that entred into this vyage, in any wyse arme nat themselfe for ꝑ space of sixe yere agaynst the realme of Castyle, and that they swere thus to do whan they take the safecōducte; and of this cōposycion ye shall haue letters open to beare to your constable, and to suche cōpanyons as sent you hyder. These knyghtes thanked the kyng and his counsayle of their answer, and sayd, sir, there be certayne artycles in your answer, we cā nat tell if they will be accepted or nat: if they be nat we shall sende agayne to you our heraulte: if he come nat we shall accept your sayeng. Well sirs, the kyng is content, (quod they of his counsayle.) Than the kyng went into his chambre, and sir Water Passacke, and sir Wyllyam Lignacke, kepte styll company with the Englysshe knyghtes, and brought them into a fayre chābre, where their dyner was redy apparelled for thē, and there dyned with them: and after dyner had wyne and spyces in the kynges chambre and toke their leaue; their letters were redy, and they toke their horses and so departed and rode to Vylecoppes, and the next day they came to the towne of Arpent<sup>a</sup> and dyned, and at night lay at Noy,<sup>b</sup> in Galyce, and the next daye they came to Auranche,<sup>c</sup> and there founde ꝑ constable. So it fortunated that in this mean season one of the duke of Lancasters great barous died, a right valyant man, called the lorde Fitzwater; he was greatly bemooned, but agaynst dethe none maye stryue; his enternment was honorably done, the kyng of Portugale, and the duke of Lācastre present. And whan these thre knyghtes were come to the Dukes lodgyng, they shewed all that they had done, and shewed their letters of confirmacion of the same: than some sayde it was a herde couenant. and some sayd nay, holdyng opinyon that it was right courtesse, perfetely consydering the danger that they were in. These tidynges anone sprede abrode in the host how the duke had gyuen lycence enery man to departe who so lyst: than suche as were sycke and feble desyryng a fresshe ayre, departed as soone as they might, and toke their leaue of the duke and of the cōstable, and than they were truly payd their wages as curtesly as might be; and some were content with fayre wordes, and so they departed by cōpanyes, some went to Arpent,<sup>a</sup> some to Ruelles, some to Vilecoppes, some to Noy,<sup>b</sup> sōe to Medena de Cāpo, and other places: and in enery place they were welcome and brought to their lodgynges, and their names presented to the capitayne: the greatest parte of the gentylnen went to Arpent,<sup>a</sup> bycause in that towne there were many straungers, Bretons, Frenchmen, Normayns, and Poicteuyns, ouer whome sir Olyuer de Clesquyn<sup>d</sup> was capitayne: the Englysshemen trusted better in them than they dyde in the Spaynyerdes, and good cause why.

Thus as I haue shewed you the dnke of Lancastres army brake vp at that tyme in Castyle, and euery man sought the best for hymselfe: ye maye well beleue that this dyde greatly trouble the duke of Lancastre, and great cause why, for he sawe his enter-  
prise

Vol. II.

2 R

<sup>a</sup> Villalpando.

<sup>b</sup> Noya.

<sup>c</sup> Orense.

<sup>d</sup> Du Guesclin.

prise sore putte a backe and brought into a herde case; howbeit, lyke a valyaunt sage price as he was, he cōforted hymselfe as well as he myght, for he sawe well it coulede none otherwyse be. And whan the kyng of Portugale sawe howe the matter went, and ȳ their army was broken of, he gaue lycence to all maner of men, except a thre hundred speares that were come to serue hym: he retaygned them styll, and so departed fro Aurāche<sup>a</sup> with the duke of Lācastre, and his wyfe, and rode to saynt Jaques, called Cōpostella; and whan the kyng and the duke were there, the kyng taryed there four dayes, and than departed with all his men, and returned to his country to his wyfe, who laye at Porte,<sup>b</sup> a good cytie in Portugale.

Nowe shall I shewe you what befell of dyuers knyghtes and squyers, suche as were departed fro the duke and gone into Castile: dyuers that were enfecte with sicknesse, for all their chaungynge of newe ayre, and newe medycins, yet they coulede nat scape the peryll of dethe: dyuers dyed in Arpent.<sup>c</sup> In the meane season that the king of Castyle sent to the kyng of Nauerre, and to the frenche kyng, for their sauecōductes to passe pesably, (whiche was nat soone optaygned,) dyuers lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, of Englāde, dyed in their beddes, whiche was gret damage, and a gret losse to their country; in Arpent<sup>c</sup> there dyed thre great barones of Englande, and ryche men; the first was sir Richarde Burle,<sup>d</sup> who had ben marshall of ȳ dukes hoost: another the lorde Ponynges; and the thyrde the lorde Percy, cosyn germaine to the erle of Northumberlande; and in the towne of Noy<sup>e</sup> dyed sir Mauberyn of Lyniers, a poyteuyn, a ryght noble and an expert knyght; and in the towne of Ruelles there dyed a great baron, called the lorde Talbot, so that there died here and there a xii. gret lordes, and a fourscore knyghtes, and two hūdrred squyers; this was a great dysconfetture, without any stroke stryken, and there dyed of other meane men mo than fyue hundred; and I herde it reported of a knyght of Englande, as he returned through Fraūce, (his name was sir Thomas Quynbery),<sup>f</sup> that of fyftene hundred men of armes, and foure thousande archers, that the duke of Lancastre hadde brought out of the realme of Englande, there neuer returned agayn the halfe parte.

The duke of Lancastre fyll in a perylous sicknesse in the towne of saynt Jaques, and ofentymes the brute ranne in Castyle and in Fraunce, howe he was deed, and surely he was in a great aduēture of his lyfe. Thyrrrey of Souuayne,<sup>g</sup> a squyer of honour, and squyer for ȳ dukes body, was taken with sicknesse and dyed at Besances;<sup>h</sup> he was naturally borne of the countie of Heynaulte, and his brother Wyllyam of Souuayn<sup>g</sup> was with hym tyll he dyed, who in likewyse was in great aduēture of his lyfe: of a trouthe there was none so hardy, so ryche, nor so iolye, but that they were in feare of thēselfe, and every day loked for none other thyng but deth; and with this sicknesse there were none infected but al onely the duke of Lancasters cōpany: among ȳ frēchmen there were none sicke, wherby dyuers murmuracyons were among the spanyerdes, sayeng, ȳ kyng of Castyle hath done great grace to these Englysshmen to suffre them to lye and rest them in his country, and in his good townes, but we feare it wyll cost vs greatly: for they haue, or are lyke to bring into this country great mortalyte: than other wolde saye, Ah, they are christenmen as we be: there ought cōpassion and pyte to be taken one of another; this was the cōmunyng among them. And true it was ȳ same season a knyght of Fraūce dyed in Castile, for whom gret sorowe was made, for he was gracuous, courtesse, and hardy in armes, and was brother to sir Johan, sir Raynolde, and sir Launcelotte of Voy,<sup>i</sup> and he was called sir Johā of Voy,<sup>i</sup> but howe he dyed I shall tell you: he was in a towne of Castyle, called Segbome, and laye there in garyson: he had

<sup>a</sup> Orense.<sup>b</sup> Oporto.<sup>c</sup> Villalpande.<sup>d</sup> Burley.<sup>e</sup> Noya.<sup>f</sup> Queensbury.<sup>g</sup> Soumaine.<sup>h</sup> Betances.<sup>i</sup> Roye.

had an Impostume in his body, and he was yonge and lusty, and tooke no hiede therof, but on a day lept on a great horse and rode out into the felde, and spurred his horse, so that by gambaldyng of the horse the impostume brake in his body: and whan he was retourned to his lodgyng he was layde on his bedde sicke, and that semed well, for the fourthe daye after he dyed, wherof his frendes were right soroufull.

*Howe sir Johan Holade, the duke of Lancastres constable, toke his leue of the duke, and he and his wyfe retourned by the king of Castyle, who made hym good chere: and howe sir Johan Dambreticourt wente to Parys to acomplysshe a dede of armes betwene hym and Bouciqualt.*

CAP. CVI.<sup>a</sup>

YE maye well knowe that euery man eschewed this sicknesse that was amonge the Englysshmen, and fledde therfro as moche as they myght. All this season sir Johan Holande, the dukes constable, was still with the duke, and certayne knightes and squyers, seynge the season of warre paste, thynkyng to eschewe the peryll of the sicknesse, sayd to the constable: Sir, let vs retourne and we wyll go to Bayone, or to Burdeux, to take fresshe ayre, and to eschewe this sickenes, for whan so euer the duke of Lancastre wyll haue vs agayne, lette hym write for vs, and we shall soone be with hym, whiche were better than to kepe vs here in daunger and parell; they called so often on hym that on a day he shewed the duke their murmuraycons: than the duke sayde: Syr Johan, I wyll ye retourne and take my men with you, and recomende me to my lorde the kyng, and to all my bretherne in Englande. With right a good wyll sir, quod the constable; but syr, though sycke men haue had great curtesy by the constable of Castyle, as in suffering them to entre to abyde there at their ease tyll they recouer their helthes, yet they maye nat retourne agayne to you into Castyle, nor into Portugale: and if outhere they or we take our waye to Calays through Fraunce, than we must be bounde to beare none armure in syxe yere after agaynst the realme of Fraūce, without the kyng our souerayne lorde be present in propre persone. Than the duke sayd, Syr Johan, ye knowe well that the frenchemen will take on you and on our men, (in case they se them in daunger,) all the vaūtage they can do; therefore I shall shewe you whiche way ye shall passe curtesly through the realme of Castyle: and whan ye come into the entre of Nauarre sende to the kyng, he is my cosyn, and in tyme past we hadde great alyauce toguyder, whiche are nat as yet broken: for sith the warre began bytwene ꝑ kyng of Castyle and me, we haue amiably written eche to other, as cosyns and frendes, nor no warre hath ben made by see bitwene vs; but the frēchmen haue, wherfore I thynke he wyll lightly suffre you to passe through his realme; and whan ye be at saynt Johan Pie de porte, than take the waye to Bisquay, and so to Bayon; than ye be in our herytage, and fro thens ye may go to the cytie of Burdeux without daunger of the frenchemen, and there refresshe you at your ease: and whan ye haue wynde and weder at wyll, than ye maye take the see and lande in Cornwall, or at Hampton, or there as the wynde wyll serue you. Than sir Johan said, your counsaile shal be fulfylled without any faute.

It was nat long after but that the Constable and his company departed, and there taryed with ꝑ duke and duches, no mo but his owne housholde seruauantes: and sir

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CII.

Johan Holande had his wyfe with hym, and so came to the cytie of Camores, and there he founde the kyng of Castyle, sir Gaultier of Passacke, and sir Wyllyam of Lignacke, who made hym good chere, as lordes and knyghtes do whan they mete eche with other. And truly the kyng of Castyle was gladde to se the departyng of the Englysshmen, for than it semed to hym  $\int$  his warre was at an ende, and thought that there wolde neuer issue agayne out of Englande so many good men of warre in the duke of Lancasters tytell, to make warre in Castyle; also he knewe well howe there was great trouble and dyscorde within the realme of Englande. Whan the tidynges sprede abrode in Castile, in the good cyties and townes, (where as the Englysshemen lay sicke, and were there to seke for their helthe,) howe that sir Johan Hollande was come thyder to retourne agayne into Englade, they were ryght gladde therof, and so drewe to hym, to the entent to retourne with hym, as the lorde of Chameulx, sir Thomas Percy, the lorde Lelynton,<sup>a</sup> the lorde of Braseton,<sup>b</sup> and dyuers other, to the nombre of a thousaede horses; suche as were sicke thought themselfe halfe hole, whan they knewe they shulde retourne, their voyage paste was so paynfull to them.

Whan sir Johan Hollande toke leaue of  $\int$  kyng of Castyle, the kyng gaue to hym and to his cōpany great giftes, with mules and mulettes of Spaygne, and payde for all their costes; and than they rode to saynt Phagons and there refreshed thē thre dayes, and in euery place they were welcome and well receyued, for there were knyghtes of the kynges that dyde conducte theym, and payde alwayes for their costes; so longe they rode that they passed Spaygne, and came to Naueret, where as the batayle had ben before, and so to Panyers, and to Groyne,<sup>c</sup> and there rested, for as than they were nat in certayne if the kyng of Nauerre wolde suffre them to passe throughe his realme or nat: than they sent to hym ii. knyghtes, sir Peter Bysset, and sir Wyllyam Norwiche; they founde the kyng at Tudela, in Nauer, and there spake with hym, and spedde so well that they had graūt to passe through Nauer, payeng for that they shulde take by the way: and as soone as these knyghtes were returned, they departed fro Groyne,<sup>c</sup> and so came to Pampylona, and passed the mountains of Roūceaux,<sup>d</sup> and lefte the way into Bierne, and entred into Bisquay, so to go to Bayon; at last thyder they came, and there sir Johan Holande taryed a long space with his wyfe, and other of the Englysshmen rode to Burdeaux. Thus this armye brake vp.

So it was in the season whyle these warres endured in Castile, and that  $\int$  englishmen kepte the feldes, the lorde Bouciqualt, the elder of the ii. bretherne, sent by an herault to sir Johan Dābreticourt, desyryng to do with hym dedes of armes: as thre courses with a spere, thre with an axe, and thre with a dagger, all on horsbacke; the knight was agreed therto: and after that, sir Johan Dambreticourt sent dyuers tymes to accōplysse their feate, but Bouciqualt came nat forwarde; I can nat tell what was  $\int$  cause, nor I wyll nat say but that he was a right good knight, and mete to haue done a greater feate in armes than that was: and whan sir Johan Dābreticourt was come to Bayone, in the company of sir Johan Holāde, he was in dyuers ymaginacions on his chalēge, and thought that honorably he might nat departe out of those partes, (seyng he was chalenged to do dedes of armes, and had graunted therto,) without he fullylled the same: for if he returned into England wout doyng of any thyng, he thought that the frenchmen wolde saye that he departed for feare; than he toke cōsailye of sir Johñ Holāde, and of other, what were best for him to do; he was counsalyed to take the waye through Fraūce, with the safeconducte  $\int$  the duke of Burbon had gotte hym, and so to go to Parys, and there to demaunde for sir Bouciqualt, or els by the way: therby at lest his honour shulde be excused. This counsalye the knight beleued and folowed the

<sup>a</sup> Leluyton?<sup>b</sup> Bradestan.<sup>c</sup> Legrono.<sup>d</sup> Roncevalles.



the same, and so departed fro Bayon, and entred into Biern, and so came to Artoys, and there founde therle of Foiz, who made hym good chere, and at his departing the erle gaue hym ii.C. florens, and a good horse: than he rode forthe through Byern, and entred into the cōtre of Bigore, and so into Tholousin, and into Carcassnois, and in his cōpany was Wylliam of Soumayne,<sup>a</sup> and other squiers of Heynault, retournyng into their countreis; so longe he rode that he came to Parys, and at that tyme the kyng was in Normandy, and sir Boucikal, as it was shewed hym, was in Aragon; than sir Johā Dambreticourt, to acqute his enterprice, presētēd hymselfe before certayne of the great barons of Fraunce, beyng at Parys, and shewed thē howe he was come thyder to acqute hymself of his challenge: and whan he hadde taryed there viii. dayes, he departed and came to Calais, and they of Heynault into their owne countreis. Thus lytell and litell the army ŷ went into Spayne, and into Portugale, brake vp.

*Howe the duke of Burbone departed fro Anygnon to go into Castyle with all his host, and came to Burgus in Spayne, and there foūde the kyng of Castyle: and howe the duke of Lancastrē herde those tidynge; and howe the duke of Burbone departed fro the kyng, and went streyght agayne into Fraunce.*

CAP. CVII.<sup>b</sup>

IT ought to be supposed that the duke Loys of Burbon, (who was at the begynnyng of this enterpryse and armye into Castyle, ordaynedde to be as chefe,) was well enformed howe the maters went: if he had knowen ŷ it shuld haue ben so, he wolde haue made the more haste, for it was long or he entred into Spayne, for he toke a longe waye by Auignon, to se hym that wrote hymself pope Clement, and there taryed a long space: and whan he departed he rode to Mountpelyer, and there taryed a fyue dayes, and also at Besyers and Carcassone, Narbone and Parpinyon, and than entred into the realme of Aragon, to se the yonge kyng there, and his cosyn ŷ queene Yolant of Bare: and so rode to Barselona, and there founde the kyng and the queene his cosyn, and a great nombre of the lordes of the countrey that were come thyder to fest hym; and so they dyde; and whan he had ben there a sixe dayes he went to Valēcensia<sup>c</sup> the great, and there he herde sure tidynge howe ŷ Englysshe armye was withdrawen and passed homewarde, and howe that sir Johan Hollande was in Nauē goyng hōwarde, with a great parte of his cōpany, and howe there had ben a great dethe among them: and also he herde howe his cosyn the duke of Lancastrē laye sicke in Compostella, in Galyce; and in dyuers places it was sayde howe he was deed; howbeit, though there were as thanne but lytell to do in Spayne, yet he thought to passe further, and sende worde of his comyng to the kyng of Castile, who was ryght gladde therof, and to mete with hym, came to Burgus in Spayne, and there prouyded greatly for his receyuyng, and suche as were there with hym of Fraūce were ryght gladde to se the duke of Burbone. Thus the duke passed Valencensia,<sup>c</sup> and Saragosa, and all the portes, and entred into Spayne, and came to Burgus: and there he was well receyued, and there was sir Olyuer of Clesquyn,<sup>d</sup> constable of Castyle, and sir Wylliam of Lignacke, sir Gaultier of Passacke, sir Johan of Barres, sir Johan and sir Raynolde of Roy, and dyuers other knyghtes of Fraunce, who leftē their garysons to come and se the duke of Burbone: for there was as than no doute of the Englyssmen, nor of the Portugalois, for they were all with-  
drawen;

<sup>a</sup> Soumayne.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CIII.<sup>c</sup> Valencia<sup>d</sup> Du Guesclin.

drawen; and the Englysshmen forsoke their garysons that they had won in Galyce, for they knewe well they coude nat resyst the army of Fraunce, seyng their compaignyons were departed dyuers wayes, as ye haue herde before.

Tidynges came into Galyce howe the duke of Burbon was cōe into Spaigne, and had brought with hym great nōbre of knyghtes of Fraūce, brute and noyse was more thanne it was in dede by the one halfe; the cōmons were in great dout that ȳ duke of Burbon wolde haue entred there w̄ great force and puissaunce, but that the duke of Lācastre was there amonge them, who greatly comforted them. Tidynges came to the duke of Lancastre, howe that his cosyng the duke of Burbone was come into Spayne, and was at Burgus with the kyng; and incontyent he sent worde therof to the kyng of Portugale, desyryng hym to gather agayne togyuder his people, for he knewe nat what ȳ frenchemen wolde do, seyng the Englysshemen were auoyded the cōuntry. The kyng of Portugale, by reason of suche alyauce as was bytwene them he consented, and departed fro Lisbonne, and came to Conymbres,<sup>a</sup> and there made his sōmons throughout his realme, euery man to be redy; and than he came to the cytie of Porte,<sup>b</sup> to drawe nere to the cōuntry of Galyce, and to his father in lawe the duke of Lancastre, who was nat as than in good poynte to ryde, for the sickennesse that he had; howebeit, he began to amende. Nowe let vs speke of the duke of Burbon, who was with the kyng of Castyle, who made hym as good chere as he coude, and all other prelates and lordes of the realme: and many counsayles there was bytwene them, to determyne what they shulde do, outhere to ryde into Galyce, or els to returne. The kyng of Castyle, and they of his counsayle, sawe clerely howe the mater shulde beste be for their profyete, and sayd eche to other whan they were togyder: by reason of these frenchemen our landes are wasted and dystroyed: though they be come to kepe it, we haue taken by them great damage, wherfore we thinke it shulde be good to thāke the duke of Borbon for the payne and trauaile that he hath endured in comyng hyder: and lette vs desyre hym louyngly to withdrawe his men of warre, seyng he nedeth nat to tary here for any warre that is aparente, (for as for Galice,) the recouery therof shall be but a small mater for vs. Thus they of the kynges counsayle comuned eche with other; and further they said: if we ones receyue these people they must be payed of their wages; if nat they will pyll and robbe all the realme, for the comon people alledy begynneth to complayne, and therfore we thynke it were best to gyue thē an honest congy to departe. This counsayle was vpholden, and the kyng well consented thereto, for he sawe well it was the most profyete for his people and realme, for they coulde take no hurte but it shulde be to his damage and preiudice; so that one daye in the kynges presence, the archebyssshop of Burgus, to the duke of Burbon, and before many of the knyghtes of Fraunce, shewed and declared to theym their ententes, as ye haue herde before; and the duke of Burbon, and dyuers other knyghtes of Fraunce, who had rather retourne than to abyde there, (for the cōuntry was nat mete for their complexions,) were well contente to retourne, and prepared themselfe therypon: and bycause the duke of Burbone was laste that came, he returned first, and toke his leaue of the kyng, and said, howe he wolde returne by the realme of Nauerre: there were great gyftes gyuen him or he departed, and might haue had more if he wolde haue taken it, but he refused euery thyng except mules and mulettes, and dogges of Spayne. Than it was published that all frenchemen might at their pleasure departe out of Spayne, and retourne into Fraunce; but there taryed styll sir Olyuer of Glesquyn,<sup>c</sup> constable of Spayne, and the marshals, and a thre hundred speares of Bretons, Poicteuyns, and Xayngtons. Thus the duke of Burbone returned: whan he had taken his congy of the kyng and the quene, and of other lordes of Castyle, he was conueyed to Groyne,<sup>d</sup> and so into Nauarre; and where

so

<sup>a</sup> Coimbra.<sup>b</sup> Oporto.<sup>c</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>d</sup> Logrono.

so euer he came he was welcome and well receyued, for the duke of Burbone was gracyous, curteyse, honorable, and well renomèd: and the kyng of Nauer receyued him louyngly, and neuer shewed any maner of yuell wyll towards the frenche kyng, in that he had taken away fro him his enherytaūce of the countye of Eureux, in Normandy; for he sawe well the frenche kyng that was as than nepheue to the duke of Burbon, was in no defaute therof, for whā it was done he was but yonge; but swetely he shewed the duke all his busynesse, desyringe hym to be a good meane bytwene hym and his cosyng the frenche kyng; the duke promysed hym so to be. Than the duke departed, and passed through the realme of Nauer peasably, and all other suche as wolde passe; and thus they passed the mountayns of Rouseaulx,<sup>a</sup> and all alonge the countrye of Bastelles,<sup>b</sup> and so entred into Bierne, and into Saluatterra.<sup>c</sup>

*Howe therle of Foize receyued honourably the duke of Burbon, and of the great giftes that he gaue him; and how sir Wilyyam of Lygnac, and sir Gaultier of Passackes cōpany departed out of Spayne; and of the incydent that fortunied in the towne of saynt Phagon.*

CAP. CVIII.<sup>d</sup>

WHAN the Erle of Foyz, beyng at Ortays, vnderstode that the duke of Burbon was at Saluatterra,<sup>c</sup> he was glad therof, and sente for his knyghtes to be aboute him; and on a day in great araye he rode with a fyue hundred knyghtes and squyers two leagues out of Ortays, and mette with the duke of Burbon, who in lykewyse rode with a great rout of knyghtes and squiers, and there they met amyably, as great prynces ought to do; and whan they had comuned togyther a certayne space, (as it was shewed me,) whan I was at Ortays, the erle of Foize drewe hym a parte in the felde with all his company, and the duke abode styll in another parte; than the Erle sente to the duke thre knyghtes, named syr Espayne de Lyon, sir Peter Cāpestan, and sir Menaunt of Nowalles; and whan they came before the duke, they sayd, Sir, here is a present that my lorde the erle of Foiz hath sent to you at your returnyng out of Spayne, for he knoweth well ye haue been at great dyspence: therefore syr, he dothe gyue you at your entring into his countrye of Bierne, eyght thousande frankes, and this mulette, and two coursers, and two palfreys. Syrs, quod the duke, I thanke the erle of Foyze, but as for the floreyngs, I wyll take none; as for the other presente, I wyll receyue them with a good wyll: thus the florens were refused, and the mules and horses receyued. Than the erle of Foyz came to the duke, and brought hym into the towne of Ortays, and lodged him in his owne place, and all other were lodged in the towne; the duke was thre dayes in Ortays, and had great chere with dyners and suppers; and there the Erle of Foize shewed ŷ duke a great parte of his estate: on the fourthe daye the duke departed, and the erle gaue to ŷ knyghtes and squiers great gyftes: as it was shewed me, the comynge thyder of the duke of Burbon coste the erle of Foize ten thousande frankes. Thus the duke departed and went into Fraunce, and rode by Mountpelyer, and by the cytie of Puy, and by the countye of Forestes, wherof he was lorde by the lady his wyfe.

For all the departyng of ŷ duke of Burbon, (as ye haue herde,) out of Spayne, sir Wilyyam

<sup>a</sup> Roncevalles.<sup>b</sup> Basques.<sup>c</sup> Saueterre.<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CIV.

Willyam Lignac, and sir Gaultier of Passac, departed nat so soone, nor the compaynes to the nombre of a thre thousande speares, and syxe thousande of other men of warre: and lytell and lytell ener they departed; they were many out of wages and wery of the warres, and so returned yuell horsed and yuell apparelled, all to torne and ragged: the metyng with suche people was nothyng profytable, for they vnhorsed whome soeuer they met, and made warre to all marchaūtes, and to men of the churche, and to poore people of the cowntre, where any thinge was to gette. These rutters sayde howe the warre had vndone them, and howe the kynge of Castyle hadde yuell payed them their wages, wherfore they sayde they wolde pay themselfe; and surelyliche cyties, castels, and good townes, as were nat stronge in Castyle, douted them greatly; and agaynst them townes and cyties closed their gates for feare of pannels, for all was hauocke with them, without it were well defended. Suche knyghtes and squyers as came by the erle of Foize to se hym were well receyued, and had gyftes and rewardes gyuen them ryght largely. As it was shewed, the comyng and retournyng of men of warre that passed by therle of Foize for the sayd journey, coste hym the some of xl. thousande frankes.

This season there fell an incydent in the towne of saynt Phagon, in Spaygne, after the departyng of the duke of Burbone, the whiche coste fyue hundred menues lyues. So it was, that whan sir Gaultier of Passac, and sir Willyam of Lignac, entred fyrste into Spayne, their compaynes spredde abrode into dyuerse places in the cowntrey, and aboute the towne of saynt Phagon, whiche was a good plentuous cowntrey; there were many of the bretons, Poicteuyns, and Angeuyns, of Xainton, and men of the lowe cowntreys: and whan they entred fyrste into saynt Phagon, they entred by syxe, ten, fyftene, and twenty, so that at laste there were mo than fyue hundred of one and other, maysters, and seruauantes; and euer as they came they lodged themselfe, and pilld and robbed their hostes, and brake vp cofers and cupbordes, and wolde take what they foūde; and whan the citezyns sawe their demeanoure, to the entent that there shulde no mo entre, whan these straungers were at their reste they cryed alarum in the towne, and the spanyardes were redy for the same all the day before: and so they entred into the lodgynges where the straungers were, and as they were founde they were slayne without pytie or mercye, and happy were they that were sauēd: the same nyght there were slayne mo thanne fyue hundred. The nexte mornyng these tydinges came to the capytayns that were comyng to the same towne warde; than they drewe them togyder to take counsaile, and the capytayns determyned that it was no tyme than to be reuenged, for if they dyde they shulde fynde all other townes and cyties against them, wherof their enemyes wolde be right ioyous: but they sayde that whan their voyage shulde haue an ende, y in their retourning they wolde thanke them accordyng to their desertes; so they passed forwarde and spake nothyng therof, but they thought the more.

Nowe than so it happed that whan euery man returned, except suche as were styll abydinge with the constable, sir Olyuer of Glysson,<sup>a</sup> and specially those of y lowe cowntreys, whan they came togyder, they sayd eche to other: nowe lette vs paye for our welcome that we had at saynt Phagon; lette vs quyte them at our departyng: to this they were all agreed, and so gathered togyder to the some of a thousande lightyng men, and they aproched saynt Phagon, and entred into the towne, (without any mystruste that they of the cytie had to them, for they trusted all thynges had ben forgotten;) the straungers cryed alarum in a hūdred places, and cryed, slee the villayns of the towne, and take all that they haue, for they haue well deserued it; thanne these bretons and other entred into the howses where they thought to wyn moste, and brake vp

cofers.

<sup>a</sup> Du Guesclin.

cofers, and slewe the mē downe in euery place : they slewe the same day mo than foure hundred, and the towne robbed and spoyled, and more than halfe brente, whiche was great damage. Thus these rutters were reuenged for the dethe of their companyons, and than they departed fro saynte Phagon.

*Howe the kyng of Castell and his counsaile were yuell contente with sir Willyam of Lignac, and sir Gaultier of Passackes cōpany ; and howe the duke of Lancastre departed fro saynt Jaques to Bayon.*

CAP. CIX.<sup>a</sup>

TIDYNGES came to the king of Castyle howe these companyons had robbed and pyllled the good towne of saynt Phagon, and slayne the cytezyns to the nombre of a four hūdred, and nigh brente the towne : and it was sayd that if the englysshemen had wonne it with assaute, they wolde nat haue daulte so cruelly as they dyd. The same tyme the two knyghtes were present with the kyng, and they were greatly reposed by the kyng and his counsaile : they excused them and sayd, as god might be their helpes, they knewe nothyng therof ; but they sayd, they had herde howe they were nat contente with them of that towne, bycause whan they entred firste into the realme, and came to saynte Phagon, there were certayne of their company slayne, which grudge by lyklyhode they haue borne euer sythe in their hertes. It behoued the kyng of Castyle to let this mater passe, for it wolde haue coste hym ouer moche to haue hadde it amended : but he bare nat so good wyll to the capytayns after, as he dyd before, and that was well sene ; for whan they departed and toke leaue of the kyng to retourne into Fraūce, if he had ben pleased with them, it ought to be supposed they shulde haue ben better payed of their wages than they were, for the duke of Burbone that came laste, and was firste that departed, he and his company had all the chere, and well rewarded. Thus these people issued out of Castyle by dyuerse wayes, some by Bisquay, and some by Aragon ; suche as were noble and honeste knyghtes and squyers, and lyued well and kepte good rule, they departed pore and yuell horsed : and suche as were hardy and aduentured to robbe and pylle, they were well horsed, and well furnished with gold and syluer, and their males full of baggage. Thus it falleth in suche adventures : some wyn and some lese. The kyng of Castyle was ioyfull whan he sawe he was clene delyuered of suche people.

Nowe let vs somewhat speke of the duke of Lancastre, who laye sicke in his bed in the towne of saynt James, and the duches his wyfe with hym, and his daughter Katheryn ; it is to be thought that the duke day and nyght was nat without anoyauce, for he sawe his busynes in a harde parte, and many of his good knyghtes deed, suche as he with moche payne had brought with him out of Englāde : nor there was none that wolde treate for any composicyon to be had bytwene hym and the kyng of Castyle, nor that he wolde take the duches his wyfe for enheritour of Castell, nor gyue her any parte thereof ; but he herde his men saye, that they were enourmed by pylgrymes that came to saynt Jaques, oute of Flaunders, Brabant, Heynaulte, and other countreis, as they came throughe the realme of Spaygne, they herde the men of warre saye to them : Sirs, ye shall go to saynt Jaques, and there ye shall fynde the duke of Lācastre, who kepeth his chambre for feare of f̄ lyght of the sonne ; recōmaunde vs to hym, and demande of

Vol. II.

2 S

hym

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CV.

hym in oure behalfe if we haue made hym fayre warre, or that he be cōtent with vs or nat? the Englysshmen were wont to say that we coude better daūce than make warre, but nowe is ȝ tyme come that they rest and synge, and we kepe the felde, and our fronters, in suche wyse that we lese nothing, nor take any damage. Suche tales were tolde to the duke, and he toke all in worthe, for he had none other remedy: and as soone as he myght ryde he departed, and ȝ duches and his doughter, fro saynt Jaques: for the kyng of Portugale had sente for hym by the erle of Noware,<sup>a</sup> his constable, with a fyue hi dred speares: and with hym sir Johñ Ferant, the Ponase of Congue,<sup>b</sup> Ageas Coylle, Venase<sup>c</sup> Martyn de Malo, Galope Ferrant, sir Aulde Perre,<sup>d</sup> Jean Nedighes de Fay,<sup>e</sup> Gannes de Falnes, all barons: thus they departed fro Compostella, and so rode tyll they came to the cytie of Porte;<sup>f</sup> there the kyng and the quene of Portugale made them good chere: and anone after, the kyng and the quene departed, and wente to Conymbres,<sup>g</sup> a dayes journey fro thens, and the duke taryed there a ii. monethes. In the meane season he ordayned for all his busynesse, and hadde galyces of the kyng, and they were apparelled, and had with hym the mayster patrone of Portugale, named Alphons Brecart; and whan they sawe good tyme to take the see, ȝ duke and all his entred into their vesselles, and disācred and toke the see, and were within a day and a halfe of Bayon, whiche was more than threscore and xii. leages of: and there the duke toke lādynge, and founde nat there sir Johan Hollande, nor the other Englysshemen, for they were departed and gone to Burdeux, and there toke shippyng, and so into Englande. The duke taryed at Bayon a longe space, and lyued there of the reuenewes of Bayon, and Burdeux, and of the lande of Acquitayne, of all that was vnder the obeysaunce of kyng Richarde of Englande, for he had commissyon suffycient to receyue the profytes of all those landes, and was called duke and gouernour of them.

Nowe lette vs leaue to speke a season of the duke of Lancastre, and of ȝ Englysshmen, and let vs treat of other maters.

*Howe the erle of Armynake toke great payne to treat with the cōpanyons to departe out of the realme of Fraunce.*

#### CAP. CX.<sup>b</sup>

IN this season the erle of Armynake was in Auuergne, and was intreatyng of the companyons, suche as laye in fortresses in garyson, in Auuergne, Quercy, and Lymosyn; this erle hadde great desyre to cause these capitayns to departe out of the realme of Fraunce, and to leaue suche holdes as they were in, for these lādes were sore oppressed by them and greatly impouerished; and so he was in cōmunycacion with them all, except Geffray Teate Noyre, who helde Wenchadore<sup>i</sup> agaynst the erle of Armynake; these sayd capitayns shulde receyue at one payment two hundred and l. thousande frākes, and to paye this sōme the sayde landes were bounde, for they were glad to be deluyered of these people: for otherwise they coude nat labour the erthe, nor occupy their feate of marchaundise, nor do any thyng for feare of these pyllers, without they were patesed by them; and ȝ charge of their patesyng drewe well yerely to the sōme that they shulde pay to haue them deluyered; and thoughte these countreis had warre

<sup>a</sup> Novaire.

<sup>b</sup> D'Acunha.

<sup>c</sup> Vasco.

<sup>d</sup> Alvarez Pereira.

<sup>e</sup> John Radighos de Sar.

<sup>f</sup> Oporto,

<sup>g</sup> Coimbra.

<sup>h</sup> This chapter

ought to be numbered CVI.

<sup>i</sup> Ventadour.

warre with the Englysshmen, yet there were amonge them but fewe of the nacyon of Englande, but there were Gascoyns, Bretons, Almayns, Foyzons, and men of dyuers countreis, who were gathered toguyder to do yuell dedes: and whan the cōposicions of the redempcion was made and agreed, they excepted Geffray Teate Noyre, and his forterers, for he wolde do nothyng for them. Than the erle of Armynake prayed the erle Dolphyn of Auuergne, who was a great capitayne, that he shulde treatre with *ȝ* sayd Geffray, and that he wolde do so moche to go into Fraunce to the kyng and his cōsaiyle, the dukes of Berrey, and of Burgoyne, who as than had the gouernyng of *ȝ* realme, to haue their counsayle and assystence: for without their aduyse and agrement, they durst reyse vp no tayle in the cōuntry: the Erle Dolphyn of Auuergne, at the request of the erle of Armynake, toke his iourney to Paris: as than the kyng was nat there, he was at Roane;<sup>a</sup> thyder rode the erle, and there shewed all the mater to the kyng and his counsayle, but he was nat shortely dispatched, for they doutre the treatre of these people, and said: Sir erle Dolphyn, we knowe well that the erle of Armynake and you wolde right gladly the honour and profyte of the realme, for your parties lyeth therin, ye haue fayre landes there; but we doute greatly that whan these capitayns Gascoyns, Bernoyes, and other, be payed suche sōmes of money as the composicion requyreth, wherby the cōntre shulde be enpouerished, *ȝ* than within thre or four monethes after they shulde retourne againe and make worse warre than they dyd before, and entre agayne into these fortresses. Than the erle Dolphyn answered and sayd, sirs, it is our ententes, the tayle cessed and gadered, that the money shall nat passe out of Cleremonde, or Ryon, tyll we be certyfyed and in suretie of these people. Well, quod the dukes, we are content that the money be leuyed and put in sure keyng in some place in the same cōntre: for at the leest it shall serue to make them warre, if they wyll nat come to some anyable treatre, and that the erle of Armynake, and you, the bysshoppe of Cleremonde, and the bisshoppe of Puy, take ye the charge of this mater, and do so as it may be for your honour, and profite to the cōntre. With right a good wyll sir, quod the erle, and so departed fro the kyng and his vncler fro Roane,<sup>a</sup> and founde the erle of Armynake, his brother, at Cleremont, in Auuergne, with many lordes of the cōntre, taryenge there vpon his commyng; and there he shewed worde for worde that he had with the frēche kyng and his vncler, and the doutes that were made in *ȝ* mater: and howe it was their ententes that the tayle shulde be gadered, and the money therof gadered toguyder and putte in suretie in some certayne place, tyll the very entente of these pyllers might be knowen, who kepeth castels and garisons agaynst the realme. The same is our entencion, quod the erle of Armynake; and sithe it pleaseth the kyng and his counsayle, we shall go further in the mater: but for the more suretie it must behoue vs to haue a good and a sure truse with thē for all the cōuntry, tyll the tayle be cessed and gadered. Than there were ambassadours assigned by the erle of Armynake, to go and speke with Perot le Bernoyes, and Amergot Marcell; these two were as souerayns of the fortresse that they helde on that syde the ryuer of Durdone, and also to speke with the Borge of Compaigne, with Bernarde of *ȝ* Isles, with Olyuer Barbe, abton with Seghewe,<sup>b</sup> the lorde of Laenplayre,<sup>c</sup> and dyuers other: all these capitayns acordred nat toguyder, for that the one wolde, *ȝ* other wolde nat. I shal shewe you the reason why.

They were of dyuers opinyons, and of dyuers countreis; they of Armynake, suche as were vnder the obeysaunce of the Erle of Armynake, were soone agreed, but all the other wolde nat be ruled by hym: for the chefe company of them, and suche as were most renomred to vse grete robbery and pillery were of Bierne, and of the countie of Foiz; howbeit, I saye nat but that the erle of Foiz wolde the honour of the realme of Fraunce:

2 S 2

but

<sup>a</sup> Rouen.<sup>b</sup> Abton Seghin.<sup>c</sup> Or l'Exemple.

but whan he herde first howe the erle of Armynake dyde treate with them for suche fortresses as they helde in Auuergne, in Quercy, and in Lymosyn, as he that desyred to knowe the hole substaunce of the mater, demanded of them that enfourmed hym therof, what the erle of Armynake was mynded to do with þ̄ men that were in the garysons, whan they were departed out of their holdes, and whyder he wolde set th̄ in any busynesse or nat? Than he was answered, and it was said to hym, Sir, the erle of Armynake wolde kepe them in wages, and occupy they into Lombardy: for as ye knowe well his suster is maryed there, and before she had Gascone your soñe: for it is thought there shal be moche ado in Lombardy: whervnto the erle of Foiz gauē none answere, but fell into other talkyng; howbeit, he thought neuerthelesse, (as it apered after,) for he hadled the mater couertly: I shall shewe you howe. The erle of Armynake, for any treatie that he coude do to them that were of the coudre of Biene, or of the teneurs of therle of Foiz, or suche as owed hym any fauour, coude neuer cause any of them to agree to departe out of their garisons, nor wolde nat go nother to the erle of Armynake, nor to Bernarde, his brother in lawe; for therle of Foiz, who was full of great prudence, consydrad that these two lordes of Armynake, and there cosyns, and with the labriciens,<sup>a</sup> were puissaunt men, and sawe howe they gate them frendes on euery parte, he thought they shulde nat be renforced with them that ought to serue hym: and one thyng that was reasonable the Erle of Foiz ymaged, sir Éspayne de Leon shewed it me whan I was at Ortays, and in lykewise so dyde the erle of Compagne, capitayne of Carlot, in Auuergne, and also so dyde the Bourge of Englande: they sayd howe the erle of Foiz regarded howe he had had open warre with them of Armynake, though it were peace bytwene them, (as than.) whiche was but a truese, the whiche was dyuers tymes renewed bytwene theym: therefore he thought that if the erle of Armynake had all those companyons vnder his gouernaunce, his warres shulde be the fayrer, so that the armynakes, and the labricience,<sup>a</sup> with their alyes, myght do hym a great displeasure.

This was the cause that suche as owed fauour to therle of Foiz, wolde nat agre to the erle of Armynake; howbeit, they made th̄ beleue that they wolde, but they dyd but dissemble, for they brake all their apoyntmētēs; howbeit, they rode nat abrode so moche as they dyde before, wherby alwayes the Erle of Armynake thought to haue come to his purpose; they that agreed to hym were Perotte de Bernoys, who helde the stronge castell of Salucette, whiche is chefe and soueraygne of all Auuergne, and Lymosyne, for their patesyng endured to Rochell; and also Guyllyam of saynt Foye, who helde the castell of Bouteuyll, and also Margote<sup>b</sup> Marcell, who helde Loysse, before saynt Flour, in Auuergne, and the Bourge of Compaygne, and the Englysshe Bourge, who helde Carlotte; Margote<sup>b</sup> Marcell sayde he was contente, so that he myght haue in lykewise Perotte Bernoys, and Geffray Teate Noyre, who helde Vādachore,<sup>c</sup> who was souerayne aboue all other;<sup>d</sup> but he dyde but mocke and dissemble the mater, for he disdayned to fall to any treatie of the erle of Armynakes, or of any other: for he thought his castell imprignable, and well prouyded for seun or eyght yeres, for he had a passage or two that coude nat be taken fro hym, but that he myght issue whan he lyst, to refresshe liymselfe and his company. This Geffray wrote hymselfe in his saueconductes, Geffray Teate Noyre, duke of Vandachore,<sup>c</sup> erle of Lymosyn, lorde and soueraygne of all the capitayns of Auuergne, Rouergue, and Lymosyn.

Now let vs leaue to speke of these maters of farre cōūtreis, tyll we haue cause to retume

<sup>a</sup> Partisans of D'Albreth.

<sup>b</sup> Amerigot.

<sup>c</sup> Ventadour.

<sup>d</sup> This passage is mistranslated; it ought to be "He could have Amerigot Marcel when he pleased (as he said,) but he wished to have Perot le Beauois, and Geffrey Tete noir, who occupied Ventadour, and was the seueraign of them all."



turne therto agayne. And nowe I wyll speke of matters nerer home, as of myne owne nacyon, (as it hath ben shewed here before,) whan I treated of the ende of the warre of Flaunders, and of the charter of peace that the duke of Burgoyne, and the duchesse dyde gyue and graunt, and sealed to them of Gaunt, in the good towne and noble cytie of Tournay. Therfore nowe to enforce our mater and history, we wyll speke nowe of the warres of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and of Brabant; and I am quickened so to do, bycause that the Frenche kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne, (to whom the mater greatly touched, by the insydenes that gendred therby,) were fayne to set to their hâdes to the same warre, and to come to the bottom therof. And to contynue at length the true hystorie and mater, I saye thus as foloweth.

*Howe the erle Reynolde of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> who had layde all his landes in guage, and wylt nat what to do, cõe for refnqe to the archebysshophe of Coleygne, his Vncle, who blamed hym: and howe ambassadours wente to Berthaulte, of Malygnes.<sup>c</sup>*

CAP. CXI.<sup>d</sup>

A LONGE season it was that they of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and they of Brabant, had grete hated toguyder, and so dyd the countreis to them adioyninge, by reason of certayne bondes one agaynst another; and the moost hated that the brabanters had to the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and to his heyres, was for the towne of Graue, whiche the dukes of Guerles<sup>a</sup> had holden perforce a longe season agaynst the brabantsoys: for they sayd, bycause y the towne of Graue stode on that syde of the ryuer of Meuse, towards Brabant, that the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> helde it wrongfully; and before y tyme dyuers cõmunicacions had ben, and poyntmentes taken; howbeit, alwayes the guerloys stacke in their hertes. Also y guerloys hated the brabantsoys, bycause of thre fayre castels y were on that syde the ryuer, as Gaulech, Buthe, and Nulle:<sup>e</sup> whiche castelles the duke of Brabāt helde also perforce, and by reasone, (as in redynge I shall begynne at the duke of Guerles,)<sup>a</sup> these hateddes were often tymes renewed bytwene them of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and Brabant; and it was supposed by dyuers knyghtes and squyers that knewe of their dedes of armes, that if sir Edward of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> who was slayne by a marueylous incydent at the batayle of Julyers, by y shote of an archer that was with the duke Vyncelant of Boeni,<sup>f</sup> duke of Lusenbourge, or of Brabante, if he had lyued, (with that that his men had had the victorie,) he hadde come to his entente in getting agayne the thre castelles: for he was so valiant a man and so hardy, that he wolde haue conquered them agayne.

Nowe I wyll declare, (as I haue promysed,) how and in what maner these foresayd castelles came into the signorie of the brabantsoys, and first I wyll begyn with the dukes of Guerles.<sup>a</sup>

In the tyme whan I wrote and ordayned this hystorie, there was an Erle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> called Raynolde,<sup>g</sup> and bycause that Guerles<sup>a</sup> is no riche cowntre, nor so great as the duchy of Brabant, this erle came to his lande a yonge man, and had a fre wyll to dispende largely, and thought full lytell of the ende that myght come after: he cared for nothyng but for to accomplysshe his pleasure, and haunted iustes and tourneys to his gret cost, to gette hym renome; and euery yere he spended four tymes as moche as the value

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Reginald of Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> Mechlin.<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought

to be numbered CVII.

<sup>e</sup> Gambet, Buët, and Mille.—*Johnes.*<sup>f</sup> Wincelous of Bohemia.<sup>g</sup> Reginald.

value of the reuenewes of his landes ; he borrowed of the lombardes in dyuers places, he was so lyberall and outragious ; he ran so in dette, that he coulede nat ayde hymselfe with any thyng that he had, so that his parentes and frendes greatly blamed hym, and speciallye an vncler of his by his mothers syde ; he came of the house of Orlele, and was archebyssshop of Coleygne, who sayde to hym in maner of gyueng hym counsayle : My fayre nepheue Raynolde,<sup>a</sup> ye haue so demeaned youreselfe, that nowe ye are become a poore manne, and your lades lyeth in plege in dyuers places, and through alle the worlde there is but lytell accoupte made of poore lordes ; thynke you that suche as haue hadde these great giltes of you and profite wyll rendre it againe ? as god ayde me, no ; but whan they se you in this poore case, and haue no more to gyue them, they wyll flye fro youre company, and mocke you and youre foule larges : ye shall fynde them no frendes ; thynke nat though I be byssshoppe of Coleygne, that I ought to breke or mynyshe myne estate to helpe you, nor to gyue you of the patrimony of my churche ; surely I wyll nat do it, nor my consyence shall neuer agre therto, nor also ŷ pope nor the cardynals wyll nat suffre it ; therle of Heynault hath nat behaued hymselfe, (as ye haue done,) who hath gyuen Margarett, his eldest doughter, in maryage to the kyng of Almayne, Loys of Bauyers,<sup>a</sup> and yet he hath thre other, he wyll marry them all highly ; yf ye hadde well borne yourselfe, and nat haue layde your herytage to plege, nor put out of your hādes none of your castels nor townes, ye might ryzt well haue fortunited to haue had one of his doughters in maryage : but in the case ye be in now, ye shall neuer come therto ; ye haue, (as nowe,) nother townes nor castels that ye maye endowe any woman withall, nat so moche as a poore lordshyppe. This erle of Guerles<sup>c</sup> was sore abashed with the wordes of the byssshop, his vncler, for he knew well he shewed hym but trouthe, and than for loue and kyndred he desyredde his counsayle. Counsayle, fayre nepheue, quod the byssshop, it is to late ; ye wyll close faste the stable whan the horse is loste ; howbeit, I se in all your busynesse but one remedy. What remedy, quod the erle ? I shall shewe you, quod thē byssshoppe.

Berthaulte of Malyngnes,<sup>d</sup> (who is as nowe renomed the rychest man of syluer and golde that is knowen in any place, by reason of the course of marchaundise that he vsyth, bothe by lande and by see : he occupyeth to Dāmas,<sup>e</sup> to Cayre,<sup>f</sup> and to Alexādre ; his galyes and marchaūdyse are worthe an hundred thousande floreyngs,) hath to plege parte of your herytage ; this Berthault hath a fayre doughter to mary, and he hath no mo chyldren ; great and high barons of Almayne<sup>g</sup> in those marches haue desyred her in maryage for themselues and for their sonnes : this I knowe well, and yet they coude neuer come to their entētes, for some he refused, and some he thought nat worthy ; wherfore I wolde counsayle you ŷ ye shulde treate with this Berthault, desyryng to haue his doughter in maryage, so ŷ he wyll redeme all your landes and paye all your dettes, and bring agayne into your hādes, your townes, castelles, and lordshippes, perteynyng vnto your herytaunce ; and I suppose bycause ye be of an high lynage, and of great signorie, and haue many townes, cyties, and castels, bytwene ŷ ryuers of Meuse and Ryne, that he wyll encline to your request. Sir, quod therle of Guerles,<sup>c</sup> ye counsayle me truly, and I shall so do. Than after, therle of Guerles<sup>c</sup> assembled togider his counsayle and frendes, suche as loued hym best, and discovered his entent to them, and desyred them to go in his name to ŷ sayd Berthault of Malignes,<sup>d</sup> and to treate honorably with hym for that mater. Whan these knyghtes and clerkes came to Berthalt, sent fro the erle of Guerles,<sup>c</sup> he made them good chere, and made them a curtesse answer, and said he wolde take aduysment. And he was riche beyond measure, as worthe a v. or sixe hūdred M.<sup>h</sup> florens, and desyred the aduācement of his doughter, thynkyng that

he

<sup>a</sup> Reginald.<sup>b</sup> "of Germany, Lewis of Bavaria."<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.<sup>d</sup> Mechlin.<sup>e</sup> Damascus.<sup>f</sup> Cairo.<sup>g</sup> Germany.<sup>h</sup> Millions.

he wyst nat where to mary her more highly, thā to therle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> (thought to accept this maryage :) but or he fully assented therto in hymselfe, he had dyuers ymaginacions, and cast many doutes, and sayd to hymselfe: yf I mary my daughter to this Erle, and he haue chyl dren by her, and than she happen to dye, as all thynges fall dayly, than he that shal be made riche with my goodes, and put againe into possessyon of his townes and castelles, happe to mary agayne secondly into some high blode, and haue children agayne by her, those chyl dren than comyng out of noble lynage by their mothers syde, shall be more made of than ŷ chyl dren issued of my daughter: yea, and moreouer lyke to be dysenherytet: wherfore without this be artycl ed, I wyll neuer consent therto; howbeit, I wyll answer these messangers that their comyng pleaseth me greatlye, and that my daughter shulde be happy if she myght cōe to so great a perfection, as to be conioyned in maryage to the erle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> though it shulde cost me right derely, so that ŷ maters were clere; but as nowe euery man knoweth well they be nat clere, but in sore trouble; and also he hath forfayted all his herytage bytwene the ryuers of Meuse and Ryne: wherfore to be quyte of this, euery man maye se clerely he demaundeth my daughter in maryage, and if I gyue her to hym, I wyll knowe howe it shall be; and also, if case that my daughter haue some or daughter by hym, I wyll know if they shal be heyres of Guerles<sup>a</sup> or no, for any other maryage that the erle may happe to haue after; and of this alyaūce I wyll haue good suretie of hym, and of them that be next of his blode, and of suche as haue any ryght to demaunde any successyon in the countie of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and also promyse of the noble men and good townes of the countre. Thus Berthaulte of Malyngnes<sup>b</sup> determyned hymselfe to make answe re to therle of Guerles<sup>a</sup> comyssoners.

The next daye at an hour assigned the erles messangers came to Berthaldes lodgyng, and there he shewed well that he was a ryche man; Berthault mette them in his hall, and swetely reynued thē, and spake to them merilye, and than ledde them into a fayre chambre apparelled and dressed, and it had ben for a kyng, and had there about hym some of his frendes; and whan they were all there assembled, and the doore closed, than Berthaulte desyred them to shewe the cause of their comyng, wherupon he wolde make them a fynall answer, and so they dyd; and the deane of Coleygne, a ryght sage Clerke, and cosyn to the erle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> spake, and there shewed theffecte of their ambassade, in suche wyse that it was ioye to here hym. Of his wordes, nor of his requestes, I nede nat to speke any more, for they haue ben shewed here before, and touched at length. Than Berthaulte answered as he had deuyded in hymselfe the day before, and sayd, Fayre lordes, I repute myselfe gretly honored, and my daughter also, if we might come to so hygh an enterprise as the erle of Guerles<sup>a</sup> desyreth: and whan a mater is begon, it wolde nat be prolōged: I saye this bycause that alyaunce by maryage made bytwene the hyghe prince and redouted lorde the erle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and Mary my daughter, pleaseth me right well: ye make me request that his landes, (whiche at this presente tyme are so sore charged and layde to pledge in the handes of certayne lombardes and other,) by reason of this maryage shulde be quy t, and that I shulde rydde hym out of dette, and all thynges that are nowe darke, I shulde make them clere; I thanke god of his puissaūce that it lyeth in me thus to do, and I am in good wyll so to do; but first or this couenaunt be fully agreed, written or sealed, that I maye be in suretie without trouble or debate, that ŷ chyl dren comyng of my daughter maye be enherytours to the Erldome of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> as the lymites therof do stretche; and that if my lorde therle of Guerles<sup>a</sup> fortune to dye before my daughter, wout issue bytwene them, that than my daughter may enjoye the herytage of Guerles<sup>a</sup> duryng her lyfe, and after her dyscease to returne to ŷ rightfull heyre: and also I saye, if my daughter haue heyre

or

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Mechlin.

or heyres by my lorde therle, and than she fortune to dye, thoughe the erle than remary agayne the seconde tyme, and haue issue by the seconde wyfe, yet for all that my daughters heyre or heyres shall nat be disheryted; howbeit, if it please the erle to remary agayne, I am contente that he make his seconde wyfe a dower of all suche landes as he hath beyond the ryuer of Muse, marchyng to the bysshoprike of Liege and to the duchy of Brabant, and nat to charge the princypall signorie of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> and thus if the erles frendes and parentes, and suche as be next of blode, and haue any challenge to the signory of Guerles<sup>a</sup> with the good townes of the cuntry, wyll seale to vpholde these deuyses and couenautes, than I am cōtent and wyll assent to this maryage. Ye may nowe answer to this, if ye haue any charge so to do. Than the knyghtes answered, whan they had a lytell counsayled toguyder. Than one for them all sayd, sir, we haue well herde your answer, but we haue none auctorite to confyrme nor to grant so far forthe as ye demaunde; but we shall retourne to our lorde therle and to his counsaile, and shewe hym your answer and demaūde, and shortely ye shall here fro hym agayne. Than Berthalte said, sirs, as god wyll, so be it. Thus they departed out of the chambre.

*Howe the erle Raynolde of Guerles<sup>b</sup> was maryed to Mary, daughter to Berthault of Malignes,<sup>c</sup> by whō he had a daughter, and after maryed agayne in Englande, and had issue two sonnes and a daughter; and howe sir Johan of Bloyes wedded theldest daughter of the erle of Guerles;<sup>a</sup> and howe after the couitie of Guerles<sup>a</sup> remayned with therle of Guerles<sup>a</sup> yongest daughter.*

#### CAP. CXII.<sup>d</sup>

YE haue well herde all the answers and demaundes bytwene the foresaid parties, wherfore I speke no more therof; but (as ye haue herde) whan therle of guerles<sup>a</sup> mesangers were returned home agayn, the erle was hooite in the mater, for he sawe well he coude as than do no better thā to mary Berthalt of Malygnes<sup>c</sup> daughter, he was so riche a man. Than the erle and his counsaile made and deuysed writynges sufficient, and therle set to his seale, and his next frēdes and parētes: in lykewise so dyd other knyghtes of Guerles<sup>a</sup> and good townes; and whan all was confyrmed and done as Berthaulte was content, y<sup>e</sup> maryage was made, and the erles dettes payde, and his landes clerey quytte out of daunger. Than the erle toke newe counsaile, and began a newe lyfe and state; if he were called good before, he was named better after, for than he had well wherwith; he lacked nothyng of that Berthault of Malygnes<sup>c</sup> myght ayde hym: the erle bare hym to his wyfe ryght honourably, for she was a fayre lady, good, sage, deuout, and prudent; but they were nat toguyder past a four yeres but that the lady dyed, and she had a daughter called Isabell. Whan therle of guerles<sup>a</sup> was a wydower he was but yong; than he maryed agayne ryght highly: for kyng Edwarde of Englande, father to the good kyng Edwarde, who beseged Tournay and wanne Calis, he gaue to this erle Raynolde a daughter of his, named Isabell: and by her this erle had thre chylidren, two sonnes and one daughter, sir Raynolde and sir Edwarde, and Jane,<sup>e</sup> who afterwarde was duches of Guerlers;<sup>a</sup> for in lykewise as Bertram of Malignes<sup>c</sup> had ymaged in the begynnyng, whan his daughter maryed the erle of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> euyn so it fell, for there was no trouthe kepte to hym; for whan kyng Edwarde of Englande, who was vnclē to the erle of Guerles<sup>a</sup> chylidren, came first into Almayne<sup>f</sup> to the Emperour Loyes of Bauyers,

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

be numbered CVIII.

<sup>b</sup> Reginald of Gueldres.

<sup>c</sup> Joan.

<sup>e</sup> Mechlin.

<sup>f</sup> Berthault of Mechlin.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to

<sup>e</sup> Germany.

Bauyers,<sup>a</sup> whiche Emperour instytuted kynge Edwarde to be his vicar general throughe all the marches of the Empire, as it is conteyned in the begynnynge of this boke: than the countie of Guerles<sup>b</sup> was made a duchy, and the countie of Julyers was made marques of Julyers, to augment their dignities: and, to come to our mater: the duke Raynolde of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> nephue to kynge Edwarde, dyed without issue; and sir Edwarde of Guerles<sup>b</sup> was maryed in Heynault, and had to wyfe the yongest daughter of duke Aubert; but the lady was so yonge, that this sir Edwarde neuer touched her carnally; and so this sir Edwarde also dyed withoute issue, who was a ryght valyaunt knight; he was slayne in the batayle y<sup>e</sup> was bwtwene the duke of Brabant and duke Wincelant<sup>c</sup> before Julyers. His suster Jane,<sup>d</sup> who was maryed to duke Guylliam of Julyers, had chyl-dren; and she, by successyon of her bretherne, said and toke vpon her to be heyre to the duchy of Guerles;<sup>b</sup> and in lykewyse so dyde her eldest suster by the firste maryage; for the two bretherne by the seconde maryage were bothe deed, withoute lafull issue: wherefore she syde, she was enherytoure. Thus fell the difference bwtwene the two susters; and some of the countrey wolde haue the one, and some the other: and the eldest suster was counsayled to mary into some high lygnage, that myght ayde her challenge and defende her herytage. Than there was treatie made by the bysshoppe of Coloygne that was than, to the lorde sir Johan of Bloyes, for therle Loyes his brother as than lyued; and the bysshoppe sayd, that he shulde therby be duke of Guerles;<sup>b</sup> for by successyon of the two bretherne deed without issue male, therefore, by right of marriage, y<sup>e</sup> right shuld retourne to her, for none other coude chalēge any right but she; and sir Johan of Bloyes, who alwayes had ben nourished and brought vp in the parties of Hollande and zelande (for there he had fayre herytage, and had the language of that countrey, and he neuer had wyll to mary in Fraūce) layde his eare gladlye to this treatie, and sawe well he myght therby haue great possessiōs in the marches that he loued beste; and also the knyghtes of Hollande that were of his counsayle counsayled hym therto. So he accepted that maryage; but first or he wolde conclude, he sayd he wolde ryde into Heynault and Quesnoy, to speke with his cosyn the duke Auberte, to se what counsayle he wolde gyue hym: but to saye trouthe, duke Aubert wyst nat what to counsayle hym; and if he dyd, he made no semblaunt therof, but dissymuled the mater a lytell: so that sir Johā of Bloyes wolde no lengar tarye to haue his counsayle, but toke his horse and returned as soone as he coude into Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and wedded this lady, and dyd put her in possession of the countrey; but some there were that wolde nat receyue hym to their lorde nor her to their lady; for the moost parte of the knyghtes and squiers and good townes of the countrey helde with the duchesse of Julyers: for that lady hadde fayre chyl-dren, wherefore they of Guerles loued her the better.

Thus sir Johā of Bloys had his wyfe and possessiōs, whiche cost hym moche after, for the erle Loys his brother dyed, and than he was erle of Bloyes and lorde Dauenes in Heynault, and had all the landes in Hollande and zelande, and had in the sayd counties great herytage: and alwayes his counsayle counsayled hym to pursue for his ryght that he ought to haue by his wyfe in Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and so he dyde to his power; but the almayns are so couetous, they wolde make no warre for hym no lengar than his money endured; and the challenge y<sup>e</sup> he made to the duchy of Guerles<sup>b</sup> dyd him neuer profyete but great damage. Than dyed this gentyll knight sir Johan of Bloyes, in the castel and towne of Eslone Houe,<sup>e</sup> the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and one, in y<sup>e</sup> moneth of June, and was buryed in the freres at Valencenes, besyde sir Johan of Heynault, his grandfather; and than was his brother, sir Guy of Bloyes, erle, and helde all the landes by ryght successyon y<sup>e</sup> his two bretherne had helde,

<sup>a</sup> Bavaria.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> Winceslaus.<sup>d</sup> Joan.<sup>e</sup> Schoonhoven.

as well in Fraunce, Picardy, Heynalt, Hollande, and zelande, as in the countie of Bloyes.

I knowe nat howe many yeres after, the lady dyed, who had ben wyfe to therle Johñ of Bloys: her suster the duches of Juliers abode pesably duches of guerles.<sup>a</sup> It was ordayned, by thaccorde of the countre, and at the request of the knyghtes and good townes of the duchy of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> ȳ they shulde take to their lorde, sir Willyam of Juliers, eldest son to the duke of Juliers, for the lāde came to hym rightfully by succession of his vnclēs; and by reason therof duke Aubert and ȳ duches his wyfe gaue hym there doughter in maryage, who before had ben married to sir Edward of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> thus the lady was doughter of Heynault and duches of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> and whan she married the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> sonne to the duke of Julyers, they were bothe of one age; wherfore the maryage was the more agreable. This yong duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> held hym in his owne countrey, and thelder he waxed, the more he loued dedes of armes, as iustes and tourneys; and alwayes the duke was rather Englysshe than frēche, and that he shewed well as long as he lyued; and alwayes he bare in his mynde the yuell wyll that his predecessours had to the duchy of Brabant, and alwayes he sought occasion how he might make warre there for two reasōs; the one, bycause he was alyed by faythe and homage to kyng Richarde of Englande; the other was bycause Wyncelant of Boesme,<sup>b</sup> duke of Lusēburge<sup>b</sup> and of Brabant, had bought of therle of Mors, a great lorde in Almayne,<sup>c</sup> the thre foresaid castelles, the whiche I shall name agayne to quicken the mater: Gaulech, Buth, and Nulle,<sup>d</sup> on the other syde of the ryuer of Muse, in the lande of Falquemount; whiche castels auncciently parteyned to ȳ duke of guerles,<sup>a</sup> and he was enherytour to thē; and therefore the yōg duke Willyam of Juliers, duke of guerles,<sup>a</sup> was sore displeasid that he might nat recover his herytage. As long as duke Wyncelant<sup>b</sup> of Brabāt lyued, he spake no worde therof. Nowe shall I shewe you howe it fortunēd, to thentent the mater shulde be ȳ clerer to be vnderstanded.

*Howe these castelles of Gaulech, Buth, and Nulle,<sup>a</sup> came to the duke of Brabant; and howe the duke of Juliers susteyned the linfars in his coūtre, who robbed all maner of people; and of the great assemble that the duke of Brabant made to go to Julyers, and howe he was discōfyted.*

#### C A P. CXIII.<sup>b</sup>

SO it was that duke Reynolde of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> cosyn germayne to the prince of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and his brother had before that enguaged the thre forsaid castels for a sōme of florens, to an high baron of Almayn,<sup>c</sup> called therle of Mors: this erle helde these castels a season, and whan he saw ȳ he coude nat get his money that he had lende on them, he was sore displeasid, and sent sufficient sōmonyng to the duke Raynolde of Guerles.<sup>a</sup> The duke made no compte therof, for he had nat wherwith to redeme them agayne; and when the erle of Mors sawe that, he came to ȳ duke of Brabant, and treated with hym to haue agayn his money for the sayde castelles. The duke herde hym well, bycause the castels marched on the lande of Faulquemout, of the whiche lāde he was lorde, for ȳ duke was glad to encrease his enheritaūce, as he that thought wel to ouer lyue ȳ lady Jane,<sup>e</sup> duches of Brabant, his wife: and so he gate ito his possession ȳ said thre castelles; and in the first he set the lorde of Kalle to be as chefe souerayne: and whan this duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup>

was

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Wincelant of Bohemia, duke of Luxembourg.

<sup>c</sup> Germany.

<sup>d</sup> Gambet.

Buet, and Mille.—Johnes.

<sup>e</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CIX.

<sup>f</sup> Joannia.

was deed, than sir Edwarde of Guerles<sup>a</sup> toke on hym the herytage, and sent to ȝ duke of Brabant, ambassadors, desyring hym that he might haue agayne the thre castelles for the money that was payde for thē. The duke wolde make no suche bargayne, but denyed it: with whiche answere sir Edwarde of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was nat content, and dalte hardely with the wydowe, the lady Isabell of Brabant, yonger suster to the duches, whiche lady had wedded the duke Raynolde of Guerles:<sup>b</sup> but thus he troubled her for her dowrie. The lady wente into Brabant, and complayned her to the duke of Brabant her brother and to the duchesse, howe that sir Edwarde of Guerles<sup>a</sup> dyde her great wronge and iniury, and bycause there was a grudge bytwene the Brabansoys and the guerloys for the lande and towne of Grance,<sup>b</sup> which was in Brabant on that syde the ryuer of Muese, therefore the duke and the brabansoys were more enclined to ayde the lady: and on a day there were assembled togyder at the calling of the duke of Brabant a great nōbre of men of warre, a xii. hundred speares: and sir Edwarde of Guerles<sup>a</sup> made his assemble on the other parte, and were in that case that it was likely to haue had a batayle bytwene them; but the duke Aubert, the duke of Mours, and the duke of Jullyers mette togyder by a treatie; and so this assemble departed asondre wout any thyng doying. The same yere ȝ duke Wynclat of Brabant ouerthrew the companions in the cōtrey of Lusenburge,<sup>c</sup> who had greatly wasted that lande, and putte many to exyle: and in the towre of the castell of Lusenburge<sup>c</sup> dyed their souerayne capitayne, called the lytell Meslyn: and also in ȝ same yere sir Charles of Boesme<sup>d</sup> who as than raigned and was kynge of Almayne<sup>e</sup> and emperour of Rome, instytuted duke Wynclāt of Boesme,<sup>d</sup> and made hym souerayne regardar, by an instytucion and ordynaunce called in Almayne,<sup>e</sup> *Le langue fride*; that is to saye, holding the couert and sure wayes; so that all maner of people myght go and come, and ryde fro towne to towne surely and in sauegarde: and the Emperour gauē hym a great parte of the lande and cōtrey of Dauffay,<sup>f</sup> on bothe sydes the ryuer of Ryne, to defende hym therin agaynst the lynfars, who were a maner of people ryght peryllous, and great robbers without pytie: and also the Emperour gauē hym the souerayntie of the good and ryche cytie of Straubourcke,<sup>g</sup> and made him Marques of the holy Empyre, to augment therby his estate: and surely he coulde nat gyue hym to moche, for this Duke Wynclant was lyberall, swete, courtesse, amyable, and noble in armes, and was likely to atchyue many thynges if he hadde lyued long: but he dyed in the floure of his youthe; wherof I that haue written this hystorie make great complaynt for hym that he lyued no lengar but tyll he was a xxiiii. yere of age. The scisme that was in the churche greatly displeased hym, and that he shewed me often tymes, for I was priue of his acquayntaūce: in that in my dayes I traueyled a great parte of the worlde, two great princes I knewe, and non more hūble nor tretable than they were (that was this noble prince one, and the other my good mayster the lorde Guy of Bloys, who cōmaunded me to make this hystorie): these two princes were in my dayes, and were full of humilite, larges, and bountie, without any malyce: they lyued lyberally of their owne, without oppressynge their people, or reysing vp of any yuell customes in their lādes.

Nowe let vs retourne to the pythe of the mater that I haue begone.

Whan ȝ duke of Julyers and sir Edwarde of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> who called thēselfe bretherne and their hertes good Englysshe, for they had ben long ayded with ȝ kyng of Englande, and with loue and fauour had alwayes ayded them in their warres: whan they sawe that the duke of Brabant hadde so hygh a signory as to be lorde and souerayne regardar by the Emperour, and was chiefe correctour of all mysdoers and robbers that he founde lyueng by the highe wayes of Almayne,<sup>e</sup> they had therat indygnacion and enuy; nat

2 T 2

for

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Grave.

<sup>c</sup> Luxembourg.

<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>e</sup> Germany.

<sup>f</sup> D'Aussay.—*D. Sauvage.*

<sup>g</sup> Strasburgh.

for that he dyde well and helde iustyce, and corrected yuell doers; but of that he had the souerayne regarde and signory ouer lague fride, whiche was parte in their lande: whiche offyce was first instytued y<sup>e</sup> marchautes might pesably passe fro Brabant to Heynault, to Flaunders, to Fraunce, or fro Liege to Coleyn, and to other cyties, townes, and fortresses of Almayne;<sup>a</sup> and nother marchautes nor other coulde nat passe nor entre into Almayne<sup>b</sup> by the landes and daungers<sup>c</sup> of the duke of Julyers and y<sup>e</sup> duke of Guerles: and soo it was, that certayne robbers were in the wayes of Linfars, and it were they that had done the vyolence and passyng through the landes of the duke of Julyers. It was shewed me that the duke had lente them horse and castels. Great complayntes came to duke Wyncelant<sup>d</sup> of Brabant and of Luzenbourge, who as than was at Bruselles, howe that the Languefryde, wherof he was souerayne regarder and keper, was broken and violated; and howe they that dyde that vyolence, and robbed the countrey, soiourned and euer retourned into the duchy of Julyers. The duke of Brabante (who as than was yonge and lusty, and puyssaunte of lynage and of landes) toke in great dyspote the offences that his people had complayned of, and said how he wolde fynde some remedy, seyng he had in charge to kepe and defende the Languefryde; he wolde nat that through his neclygence he shulde take any reproche or blame; and to conclude his dede, and to sette reason in their demaunde, and by the counsayle and aduyse that he had, he sente to the duke of Julyers notable persones, as the lorde of Urquon, lorde of Bourgneull, syr Scelar, archedecon of Heynalt, Geffrey de la towre, great rowter of Brabante, and other, shewyng to him in wyse and swete maner the offence, whiche greatly toucheth and is preiudyciall to the duke of Brabante, who is keper and souerayne regarder of the Languefryde. The duke of Julyers fayntely excused hymselfe, for by that he shewed, he had as lefe haue had the warre as the peace; so that the duke of Brabantes messengers were nat well cōtent, and so toke their leaue of the duke of Julyers, and retourned and shewed the duke of Brabant all as they had herde and sene. When the duke herde that, he demaunded what was best to do? He was answered by his cōsayle, sayenge, sir, ye knowe best yourselfe. Well, quod the duke, and I saye y<sup>e</sup> it is my entensyon that I wyll nat slepe so in this blame, nor that it shall be said that for slouth or laynte hert, that I shulde suffre vnder my sauegarde robbers to do vilanyes and robories vnpunysshed. I shewe and wyll shewe to my cosyn of Julyers and to his aydes, that this mater toucheth me nere. This duke cooled nat his entent, but incontynent set clerkes awarke, and sent to them that he thought wolde ayde hym. Some he prayed and some he commaunded, and sente sufficyent knowlege of his mynde to the duke of Julyers and to his allies: boithe these lordes made great preparacion. The duke of Julyers had but lytell ayde, but of his brother syr Edwarde of Guerles;<sup>e</sup> he greatly cōforted him with men and with frendes. These two lordes sent priuily for men farre into Almayne;<sup>f</sup> and bycause that almayns are couetous, desyryng to wyne, and it had bene longe before or they were in any place where they myght get any good aduenture, they wolde haue come in more habundaunce and they had nat knowned that they shulde haue had to do agaynst the duke of Brabante. The duke of Brabante in great aray departed fro Bruselles, and went to Louayne, and fro thence to Trecte<sup>g</sup> on the ryuer of Maese, and there he founde a thousande speares abydinge for hym; and alwayes there came menne to hym fro all partyes, fro Fraunce, fro Flaunders, fro Haynalt, fro Namure, fro Loraïne, and other countreys, so that he had two thousande and fyue hundred speares of good men of warre; and also there came to hym out of Burgoyne the lorde of Geaunt, and with hym a foure hundred speares, but they came to late, for they knewe nat the daye of the busynesse that I shall shewe you, wherwith they were sore dyspleased, whanne they herde that the mater was done without them. The duke

of

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> "Without danger through the lands."  
<sup>c</sup> Maestricht.<sup>e</sup> Winceslaus.<sup>f</sup> Gueldres.



of Brabant beinge at Trect,<sup>a</sup> herde but lytell newes of his enemyes: than he departed fro Trect<sup>a</sup> the wednesdaye, and wente and lodged in the lande of his enemyes, and there lay all that nyght and the thursday tyll he herde certayne tydynges: it was shewed hym by his corours that his enemyes were abrode; than he rode forwarde, and comāunded to burne in the duke of Juliers landes, and the thursday toke his lodginge betymes: and the vowearde kept the erle Guy of Ligney, erle of saynt Pole, and sir Valeran his sonne, who as than was but yong, of a sixtene yere of age, and there he was made knyght. The duke of Juliers came the same thursday, and lay nere one to another; and by all lykelyhode  $\text{f}$  almaynes knewe the demeanour of the brabansoys better than they dyd theirs: for on the fridaye betymes, whan the duke of Brabant had herd masse, and that all were in the felde and thought nat to haue fought so soone, than came redy the duke of Juliers and sir Edwarde of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> well mounted with a great batayle. Than one sayd to the duke of Brabante, syr, beholde yöder your enemyes; put your helmes on your heedes, in the name of god and saynt George. Of that worde the duke had great ioye. The same day he had by him four squiers of great price, worthy to serue an hyghe prince and to be aboute hym, for they had sene many dedes of armes; they were called Johan de Valcon, Baudwyn of Beauforde, Gyrarde of Byes, and Roulande of Colongne. Aboute the duke were the bruselloys, some a horsebacke with their varlettes behynde them, with botelles of wyne trussed at their sadelles, and pastyes of samonde, troutes, and elys, wrapped in towels: these horsemen greatly combed the place, so that there was such prease that no man coude styrr. Than Gyrarde of Bies said to  $\text{f}$  duke, sir, comāunde these horses to auoyde the place; they shall greatly let vs; we can nat se aboute vs, nor haue knowedge of your reregarde nor vowearde, nor of your marshall sir Roberte of Namure. So let it be, quod the duke; I commaunde so. Than Gyrarde toke his glayue in his handes, and so dyd his companyons, and began to stryke on their helmes and on their horses, so that anone the place was voyded of them, for no man was glad to haue his horse slaine or hurte. Than the duke of Juliers and syr Edwarde of Guerles<sup>b</sup> and their company came on thym, and founde the erle of saynt Poule and his sonne in the vowearde, and dashed in so fersely amonge them, that anone they were broken and discomfited, and there were many slayne, taken, and hurte: that was the batayle that had moste to do. There was slayne Guy the erle of saynte Poule, and sir Valeran his sonne taken. The batayle tourned to a herde parte for the duke of Brabante, and for them that were with him; for of men of honour there were but a fewe sauēd, but outhere they were slayne or taken. The duke of Brabant was taken, and syr Roberte of Namure, and syr Loyes of Namure his brother, and sir Willyam of Namure, sonne to the erle of Namure, and many other: also on the duke of Juliers parte there were some slayne and hurte: but ye know well it is a generall rule, the great losse euer resteth on them that be discomfyted; howbeit, for all the damage the duke of Brabant had in that iourney, yet they hadde one great poynte of remedy and comforte, for sir Edwarde of Guerles<sup>b</sup> was wounded to dethe: and this I saye, bycause it was the opinyon of dyuerse, that if he had lyued he wolde haue rydden so forwarde, that with puysaūce he wolde haue come to Bruxelles and conquered all the cōūtreye, for none wolde haue resysted hym: he was hardy and fierse, and hated the brabansoys, bycause of the thre castels that they helde agaynst hym. This iourney and victory had the duke of Juliers in  $\text{f}$  yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hūdrēd and a leuen,<sup>c</sup> on saynt Bartylmewes euyn, on a fridaye.

The duches of Brabant purchased her frendes, and had counsayle of Charles the frenche kyng, who was nephue to the duke of Brabāt and all his bretherne, for they were chyl dren of his suster: she was counsayled by the kyng to go to the kyng of Almayne,

<sup>a</sup> Maestricht.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> 1371.

Almayne,<sup>a</sup> emperoure, brother to the duke of Brabante, for whose sake the duke her husbande had taken all that damage. The lady dyd so, and came to Conualence,<sup>b</sup> on the ryuer of the Ryne, and there founde the Emperoure, and there wysely she made her complaynte. The emperoure herde her well, the whiche he was boüde vnto by dyuerse reasons: the one, bycause the duke was his brother; and another, bycause he had institute hym to be his vycare and souerayne regarder of the Languefyde. He comforted the lady, and sayd, that at the next sōmer he wolde fynde some remedy. The lady returned into Brabante, well comforted; and the emperour, sir Charles of Boesme,<sup>c</sup> slept nat his busynes, but waked the mater, as ye shall here; for as soone as wynter was past, he aproched to the noble cytie of Coloyne, and there made his prouyision, in suche wyse as though he wolde go to conquire a realme of defence, and wrote to his dukes and erles that helde of hym, and commaunded them at the thyrde day of June they shulde be with hym at Ayes, with fyfty horse apece, on payne of lesyng of their landes; and specially he cōmaunded duke Auberte, erle of Haynalte, that he shulde come to Ayes with fyfty horse, and so he dyd. Whanne these lordes were come, there was moche people; and than syr Charles his sonne sayde, that he wolde go and entre into ƒ landes of duke Julyers, and distroy it, bycause of the great outrage that he had done, as in enteryng into the felde with an army against the emperours vycare his brother. This sentēce was gyuen by playne iudgement in the emperours chambre. Than to that mater regarded the archebysshoppe of Treues, the archbysshoppe of Coloyne, the bysshop of Marauce,<sup>d</sup> the bysshoppe of Liege, the duke Aubert of Bauier,<sup>e</sup> the duke Oste<sup>f</sup> his brother, and diuerse other barons of Almayne,<sup>g</sup> (that thought) to dystroy the landes of so valyaunt a knyght as was the duke of Julyers, shulde be yuell done, and also he was nere of their kynne. They sayde it were better fyrste to sende for hym, that he myght come to obeysaunce: that apoyntment was holden for the best, for the loue of bothe partyes. Than duke Auberte and his brother came to Juliers, and founde there the duke, who was abashed, and wyste nat what counsayle to beleue, for it had ben shewed him that the assemble that the emperour had made was to come on hym, without his frendes dyd stoppe it. Whan these lordes were come to the duke he was gladde, specyally by the comyng of his two cosyns germaynes, the duke Aubert of Bauiers and the duke Oste<sup>f</sup> his brother, for he knewe well that they wolde nat his dyshonoure, but rather to gyue hym good cōsāyle, as they dyd. Their counsayle was to shewe hym breuely that he shulde sende some honorable persones for the duke of Lusenburge and of Brabant, whome he helde in curtoyse prison in his castell of Nideque,<sup>h</sup> and so he dyd; and whan he was come, all those lordes dyd hym great honour, as reason was, and than they all departed togyder, and came to Ayes and toke their lodgynges. Than the duke Auberte and his brother, and the foresayd prelates, who were the meanes of this treatye, they sore entreated the emperour and his counsayle, and shewed the emperoure howe ƒ duke of Juliers his cosyn, of his owne free wyll, was come to se hym, and to put hymselfe poorely, without any reseruacyon, into his obeysaunce and commaundement, and to knowledge hym for his soueraygne and liege lorde. These swete and amyable wordes molefyed greatly the emperours ire that he had before. Than the emperoure sayde, Lette the duke come to me; and so he dyde, and kneled downe before the emperoure, and sayde, My ryght redoubted souerayne, I beleue well ye are dyspleased with me, bycause of your brother in lawe the duke of Brabante, whome I haue helde longe in prison, for the which cause I submytte myselfe to abyde your ordre and your counsāyles. To that worde themperour gauē none aunswere; but his sonne sir Charles, who was called kynge of Boesme,<sup>c</sup> aunswered and sayde, Duke of Julyers, ye haue ben to outrageous to kepe our vnclē so longe in prisone; and  
if

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Constance.  
<sup>f</sup> "Of Austria."<sup>c</sup> Bohemia.  
<sup>g</sup> In the original. *Judeque*.<sup>d</sup> Mentz.<sup>e</sup> Bavaria.

if it were nat at the desyre of your well beloued cosyngs, duke Auberte and duke Oste of Bauyers,<sup>a</sup> this busynesse wolde haue ben sorer layd to your charge than it is, for ye haue well deserued to be hyghly punysshed; but change your cople, so that we haue no cause to renewe our yuell wylls agaynste you, for and ye do, it wyll be costly to you. Than the duke of Julyers beyng on his kne before the emperour (where as he sate in his chayre imperiall) sayde, My ryght redonghted souerayne lorde, by your puyssaunt byghnes, I knowlege myselte to haue trespassed youre maieste, in that I with an army came agaynst my cosyng your vycaire of the empyre, and in that I haue helde hym as my prisoner; I delyuer hym vnto you freely and quyte, and I requyre your grace that you nor he beare me any yuell wyll fro henceforthe. Than the prelates and the princes there beyng presente, to helpe forwarde his wordes, sayde, Ryght noble prince, this suffyseth that your cosyng of Julyers hath sayd. Well, quod the emperour, we are content, and so toke hym vp by the haunde: and as it was shewed me, for the confirmacion of more loue, he kyst the duke on the mouth, and also his sonne the kyng of Boesme;<sup>b</sup> and than the duke of Brabante was delyuered out of prison, and all suche as were prisoners under the duke of Julyers, and were nat ransomed before, were delyuered quyte, by reason of the composicion of the treatie; and this done, euery manne returned to their owne; the emperour wente to Prage in Almayne,<sup>c</sup> and the duke of Brabant into Brabante; and whanne the duke of Brabante was returned, than he reysed a newe taylor in his couëtry, to restore to his knyghtes parte of their domages.

*Howe the duke of Brabante dyed, and howe the duke Guylliam of Guerles<sup>d</sup> treated with the duches of Brabante to haue agayne the thre castels, and what answer he had, and how he made alyaiëce with the kyng of Englaunde.*

C A P. CXIII.<sup>e</sup>

I AM yet wyllyng to treate of this matter more at lengthe, to renforce this hystorye, and to brynge it to the poynte that I wolde come vnto, and to declare the trouthe, why Charles the frenche kyng came with a great puyssaunce into Almayne.<sup>e</sup> I might haue shewed this before, but I haue prolonged it, (for all thynges, though the date and season be paste, yet they ought to be shewed in this hystory), for whan I knewe that the frenche kyng and the kyng of Englaunde began to be besy, than I began to wake, to procede this hystorye more than I dyd before; therefore I saye thus: Whan duke Wyncelant<sup>f</sup> was returned into the country, and clerely delyuered out of prison (as ye haue herde before), than he was in wyll to vysyte his landes and castels, as well in the duchy of Luzenbourge as elsewhere, and toke his journey to the good cytie of Strawesbourge, through the lande of Fauquemount, and behelde ¶ thre castels whiche were the occasion of the duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> yuell wyll; he founde theym stronge and fayre; if he loued thē before, he loued them moche better than. and caused them to be newly fortyfied, and set workemen aworke, as masons, carpēters, and dyke makers, to amende euery place; and at his departyng he set a valyaunt knyght to be soueraygne keper of these thre casteles: this knyght was called sir Johan Grosset, who at the dukes commaundemente toke on hym the charge at his parell. The duke passed further, and vysited his couëtry, and at his pleasure returned agayne into Brabante, for there was his abydyng. In this season sir Johan of Bloys had wedded the olde lady and duches of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> for the herytage by right came to hym, by the deth of sir Edward of Guerles<sup>d</sup> his brother, who

<sup>a</sup> "Albert of Bavaria and the duke of Austria."<sup>b</sup> Bohemia.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Gueldres<sup>e</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CX.<sup>f</sup> Wincelous.

who was slayne (as ye haue herde in the batayle of Julyers); but his suster, the duches of Julyers, stroue with hym and made chalenge, and the moste parte of the knightes and good townes inclyned most to the ladyes parte, bycause she had a fayre sonne, who was able than to ryde; and that was well sene, for alway he was in the warres, so that sir John de Bloyse nor his wyfe coulde neuer haue peasable possessyon, but the chalenge of the ryght of his wyfe and the pursute therof coste hym aboue a hundred thousande frankes: for the sonne of duke Wyllyam of Juliers shewed well in his youth that he was noble and hardy, and loued dedes of arms, for he came of noble extractyon, and so was duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and had in mariage the eldest daughter of duke Auberte, who had ben wedded before to sir Edwarde of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> but he had neuer carnally coupyled with her, for she was to yonge. Thus she was maryed to the lorde Wyllyam of Julyers; and he and she were moche of one age; and soo she was styll duches, as she was before. This yonge duke increased in honour, wytte, and prowes, and in great wyll to haüte dedes of armes, and to augment his herytage; and his herte was rather englysslie than frenche, and sayd alway (as yong as he was) that he wolde ayde to susteyne the kyng of Englandes quarell, for he was nerer of blode to hym than to the Frenche kyng. It was shewed hym dyuerse tymes howe the brabansoys dyd him great wronge to kepe fro hym the thre castels. Than he answered and sayd. Let vs suffre a season; euery thyng muste haue his turne: it is no season as yet for me to awake, for our cosyn of Brabante hathe many great frendes, and he is a sage knight; but a tyme may come y I shall awake. Thus the mater stode a season, tyll god toke oute of this lyfe duke Wyn-celante,<sup>b</sup> who dyed duke of Boesme,<sup>c</sup> duke of Lusenbourge, and of Brabante, as it hath ben conteyned before in this hystory. By the dethe of this duke the duches of Brabant loste moche. Than the yonge duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> who was ryght valyaunt, and lykely to dysplease his enemyes, and thought than to get and recouer agayne his thre castelles, bycause of the debate that was and had ben bytwene Brabante and his vncl the lorde Edwarde of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> than he sente to treat with the duches of Brabant, to deluyner his castelles, for the somme of money that they laye in pledge for, alwayes affyrmyng howe they laye but in guage. The lady answered the messangers how she was in possessyon of them, and helde them as her owne ryght and enherytaunce; but bycause she wolde the duke shulde be a good neyghbour to Brabaunte, that he shulde leaue and gyue vp the towne of Graue, the whiche he helde in the duchy of Brabant. When y duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> had herde this aunswere, he was nothyng well contente, and thought great dyspyte therof, and thought and ymaged many thynges: and couertly he treated with the knyght, called sir Johan of Grosselotte,<sup>d</sup> chiefe capitayne of the sayde castelles, to assaye if he coude gette them of hym, by byeng for money or otherwyse. The knyght, who was trewe and sage, wolde in no wyse harken therto, and sente to the duke, desyring hym to speke no more therof; for to dye therfore, there shuld neuer faut be founde in hym, nor that he wolde consente to do any trayson to his naturall lady. And when the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> sawe that (as I was enfourmed) he dyde so moche to sir Raynolde of Dyscōuerte, that he toke for a small occasyon a displeasure agaynst the knyght; so that on a daye he was mette withall in the feldes, and there slayne, wherwith the duchesse of Brabante was sore displeased, and so was all the cōntre; and the castelles were putte in other kepyng, by the agrement of the duches and of the counsaile of Brabant.

Thus the matters stode certayne yeres, and euer there norrished couert hate, what for the towne of Graue on the one parte, and for the thre castelles on the other parte, bytwene the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> and the duches of Brabant and their countreis: and they of the fronter of Guerles<sup>a</sup> bare alwayes yuell wyll couertly agaynst them of Brabant, suche

as

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Wincelaus.<sup>c</sup> Bohemia.<sup>d</sup> or, Grosset.

as marched nere to them, and dyd ener to them as moche dyspleasure as they coude do, and specially suche as were in the towne of Graue: and bytwene the dukes woode and the towne of Graue there was but four leages and a playne countrey, and fayre feldes to ryde in; and they of Guerles<sup>b</sup> dyde alwayes there as great dyspyte to the brabansoys as they myght; and the mater went so forwarde, that ¶ duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> passed the see, and went into Englande to se kyng Rycharde his cosyn, and his other cosyns, as the duke of Lancastre, the duke of yorke, ¶ duke of Glocestre, and other great barons of Englande: he had there good chere, for they desyred to se hym, and to haue his acquayntaunce, for the Englysshemen knewe well that this dukes herte, corage, ymaginacion, and affection was rather Englysshe than Frenche. In this vyage he made great alyauce with the kyng of Englande; and bycause at that tyme he helde nothyng of the kyng of Englande, wherby he shulde beare hym faythe, homage, or sernyce, therfore kyng Rycharde gaue hym in penycon out of his coffers a thousande marke by yere, and was counsayled to assaye to gette his tyght fro the duches of Brabant, and was promysed to haue aide of the Englysshemen, in suche wyse that he shulde take no damage; and by this meanes he sware to be true and faithfull to the kyng and to the realme of Englande: and whan this alyauce was made, he tooke his leaue of the kyng and of his cosyns and other barons of Englande, and returned into his owne countrey of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and shewed the duke of Julyers all that he hadde done, and howe he shulde haue ayde and helpe of the Englysshemen: and the duke of Julyers, who by experyence of his age knewe farther than the duke his sonne dyde, made no countynauce of no great ioye; but sayd, Sonne Wylliam, ye haue done so moche, that bothe you and I maye fortune to repent youre goyng into Englade. Do ye nat knowe howe puyssaunt the duke of Burgoyne is? no duke more myghtie than he; and he loketh for the herytage of Brabant: howe maye ye resyst agaynst so puyssaunt a lorde? Howe may I resyst? quod the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> to ¶ duke of Julyers his fathur: The rycher and myghtier that he is, the better it is to make warre agaynste hym. I hadde rather to haue ado with a ryche man that hath great possessiōs and herytage, than with hym that hath nothyng to lese, for there is nothyng to be cōquered; for one buffet that I shall receyue, I wyll gyue sixe; and also the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> is alyed with the kyng of Englande: if nede be, I shalle haue ayde of hym. Well, quod the duke of Julyers: Wylliam, my fayre sonne, I feare me ye wyll playe the fole; your wysshes and enterprises are more lyke to be vnacomplished than atchyued.

I shall shewe you why the duke of Julyers spake somewhat agaynste the wyll of his sonne the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and made dout in his enterprise. Kyng Charles of Fraunce laste discesed, before this season ¶ I speke of, he dyde as moche as he coude alwayes to gette hym frendes on all partes, for it stode hym in haunde so to do; and for all that, he coude nat do so moche as to make resystēce agaynst his ennemyes; howebeit, he dyde as moche as he coude by gyftes and fayre promyses to sytte in rest and to haue ayde, so that he gate hymselfe many frendes in the Empyre and other places: so that whan the duke of Julyers was quyte delyuered oute of prisone, and was come to the duke of Brabant, the kyng and he were great frendes togyuder: and by the ordynaūce the Emperour of Rome dyde sette, the duke of Julyers wente to Parys to se the kyng: and there he was nobly receyued, and great gyftes gyuen to hym and to his knyghtes; and than he made relefe to the kyng for the signorie of Vyerson, whiche parteyned to the cōttee of Bloys, whiche lande laye bytwene Bloys and Berrey, and was worthe by yere a fyue hundred pounde of money curraunt in Fraunce; and there the duke of Julyers sware ¶ he shulde neuer beare armure agaynst the Crowne of Fraunce; and so as longe as the kyng lyued he kept his othe; for surely as long as kyng Charles lyued

<sup>a</sup> Bois-le-duc<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> Germany.

he dyde hym no maner of damage, nor consented to none to be done to the crowne of Fraunce; but whan kyng Charles was deed, and that Charles his sonne was kyng, by reason of the warres of Flaunders (as it hath been shewed before in this hystorye), and after he tooke his Creacyon at Parys, he hadde so moche to do that he coude nat take hede in euery place. The duke of Julyers than came nat into Fraunce, nor made no relyefe for the landes of Viersone; wherfore the duke of Berrey, who toke hymselfe as soueraygne, sayde, howe the relefes parteyned to hym; and so ceased the landes and toke y profytes therof, and by puyssaūce putte out fro his ryght the Erle of Bloyes; howebeit, the same tyme I sawe them bothe oftentymes togyder, and neuer debate made bytwene them for any of the sayd landes, nor any yuell wyll shewed. There was good cause for theym to be frendes toguyder, for Loyes, sonne to the erle of Bloyes, had in maryage the lady Mary, daughter to the duke of Berrey. The duke of Julyers wolde gladlye haue entred into his herytage, but he regarded his sonne, who shulde be his heyre; therfore he made but lytell counte of the alyauce that his sonne the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> hadde made in Englande; and by this reason he spake the wordes (that ye haue herde here before) to the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> whan he was retourned out of Englande; howebeit, the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup>, who was yonge and coragyous, toke lytell regarde to his fathers wordes, and sayde: Sir, that I haue done I wyll vpholde; for I had rather haue warre with the Frenche kyng than peace, and rather with hym than with a poore man.

*Howe the duchesse of Brabante sent messangers to the Frēche kyng, complaynyng of the duke of Guerles;<sup>a</sup> and howe the kyng and his counsayle were sore busyed with insydenes that fell in the realme of Fraūce, as well for the defyances of Guerles<sup>a</sup> as the busynesse in Bretaygne.*

CAP. CXV.<sup>b</sup>

THE duchesse of Brabant beyng at Bruselles, was well enformed of all these troubles, and howe the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> thretned theym of Brabante to make theym warre. The duchesse feared the same, and sayde, Ah, god assoyle the soule of my lorde and husbände, for if he hadde lyued, the Duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> durst nat haue spoken of any suche matters; but nowe, bycause I am a woman and aged, he wyll make warre agaynst me. Than the lady called toguyder her counsaile, to knowe what she were best to do, for she knewe well the duke was hote, hasty, and coragyous.

The same season whyle this ladye was takynge of counsaile with her frendes, the Frenche kyng was defyed by the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup>, wherof ranne a great brute throughe all the Realme, and in other realmes therto adioynnyng. They had marueyle of these newes, bycause the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was but a small prince to the regarde of other, and but of small landes. Men spake therof in dyuers maners, euery man after his owne opnyon. Thāe the duchesse counsaile sayde, Madame, ye haue nede of counsaile, and we shall counsaile you to sende to the Frenche kyng and to the duke of Burgoyne betymes, for ye haue herde how the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> hath defyed the Frenche kyng and all his alyes. If he be in purpose to make warre to the realme of Fraunce, as the brute ronnet that he wyll, bycause the Englysshemen and the almaynes are of his alyauce, he can haue no better entre into the realme of Fraūce than throughe youre cuntry; wherfore it is good that the kyng and the duke of Burgoyne be aduertysed therof,

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXI.

therof, and that youre castels on the fronters be well fortified and garnysshed: for there is nat so small an enemye but he is to be doubted; we saye nat that ye shulde haue great ned to seke for any ayde or conforte, all onely for them of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> but it is good to regarde the alyances that he maye lightlye gette, as well of Englysshemen as of Almaynes,<sup>b</sup> who alwayes are couetous, and desyretli to make warre to the realme of Fraunce on trust of wyning. Than the duchesse sayd to her cōsaille, sirs, ye saye trouthe, it shal be as ye haue denised. Than suche as shulde go on that message were apoynted out, as the lorde of Bourgneuall, cheife Stewarde of her house, sir Johan Opeyn, a gracyous knyght, a clerke, and a squyer of honoure, the clerke called sir Johan Grauc, and the squyer Nycholas de la Monoy: all four were of the preuy cōsaille with the duchesse of Brabant; they departed fro Bruselles with letters of credēce, and rode to Parys. At that tyme nother the kynge, nor the duke of Burgoyne, was natte there; they were at Rohane,<sup>c</sup> in Normandy; than they went fro Parys to Roane,<sup>c</sup> where the kynge was.

Whan these ambassadours came to Rohane,<sup>c</sup> firste they treated with the duke of Burgoyne, and he made thē good chere, for he knewe them well; they delyuered letters to hym, and he receyued and reed them; than whā tyme was he brought them to the kynge, who for loue of their lady receyued thē loungly: than the kyng reed their letters and herde them speke, and answered and sayde: Sirs, your wordes and requestes demaundeth counsaile: resorte alwayes to our vncl of Burgoyne, and he shall here you, and dispatche youre busynesse, (as shortly as maye be.) Those wordes contented greatly these ambassadours, and so went to their lodgynges. The kynge and his vncl, with other of his counsaile, were dayly toguyder in counsaile, for dyuers causes and insydentes newe fallen: the defyance of the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was nothing pleasaunt to them, nor also they knewe nat what the duke of Bretayne was purposed to do: bycause he had taken the constable of Fraunce prisoner, and set hym to rāsome to a C. M. frankes, and had taken fro him thre castelles, and a good towne, and had greatly fortified with men, vitayls, and artillery, all his garysons and townes, and had sent dyuers tymes letters and messengers into Englande to the kyng, and to his vncl, as for the duke of Lancastre was at that tyme in Galyce. The cōsaille of Fraūce had moche ado to prouyde for euery busynesse, wherby it was the lengar or ŷ duches of Brabantes ambassade had their answer; finally, ŷ duke of Burgoyn made thē an answer, and sayd, sirs, ye shall retourne to your lady our aunte, and salute her fro vs, and delyuer her these the kynges letters and ours, and shewe her ŷ her busynesse is ours: and let her nat be abasshed for any thyng, for she shal be cōforted in suche wyse, that she shall well perceyue that her cōunte of Brabant shall take no damage nor reproch. This fayre answer contented greatly the ambassadours of Brabant. Thus they departed and returned to Parys, and fro thēs to Brusels, and made relacion of their aunswere, (as ye haue herde before,) wherwith the duches was well content.

The same season newes were sprede abrode of holy saynt Peter of Lusenbourge cardynall, whose body dyde myracles in the cytie of Auygnon. This holy cardynall was soune to the Erle Guye of saynt Poule, who dyed in the batayle of Julyers: this holy Cardynall in his tyme was a good man, noble, holy, and deuoute of lyfe, and dyde many dedes pleasaūt to god; he was swete, courtesse, meke, and a mayde of body; a great almesse man in gyuynge to poore people; he kept nothyng to hymselfe of the goodes of the Church, but his bare lyueng; the moost parte of the day and of the nyght he was in his prayers; allwayes he fledde fro the vanyties and superfluyties of the worlde, so that in his yonge dayes god called hym to his company: and anone after

2 U 2

his

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Germans.<sup>c</sup> Rouen.

his discesse he dyde great myracles, and ordayned to be buryed amonge the poore people; all his dayes he vsed humylyte, and was buryed in the chapell of saynt Mychaell. The Pope and the cardynalles, whan they sawe the myracles that his body dyde, daylye encrease and multiplye, they wrote to the Frenche kynge, and specialy to his brother the Erle Valeranne of saynt Poule, desyringe hym to come to Auygnon. The Erle wolde nat excuse hym but wente thyder, and there gaue goodlye Lampes of syluer to hange before his aulter, and hadde great marueyle of the great beleue and visytacion that the people made there dayly. And for to se hym I wente thyder fro the countie of Foize, and daylye his workes encreased, (and it was sayde.) that he shulde be canonised. I can nat tell what fell after.

Nowe y I haue shewed you of his dethe, I shall shewe you of the dethe of another, for I haue nat spoken of the dethe of a kyng, of whome great mencyon hath been made of in this hystorie; howbeit, he dyde many dedes vnreasonable, for by hym and his meanes the realme of Frauce had moche to do in his tyme. This was by the kyng of Nauer.

*Howe by a straunge fortune the kynge of Nauer dyed in the cytie of Pampylona; and howe Charles his sonne was crowned: and howe Vachadore was beseged by the duke of Berrey; and howe the duke of Burgoyne sente to the duchesse of Brabant.*

#### CAP. CXVI.<sup>b</sup>

IT is sayd, and it is of trouthe, that there is nothyng more certayne than dethe. I saye it bycause y kyng of Nauer whan he dyed, thought full lytell that he had been so nere to his ende as he was; if he had knowen therof, paraduerture he wolde haue taken better hede than he dyde. He was in the cytie of Papyllona, in Nauerre: he ymaged howe he wolde reyse a great taylage in his realme, to the some of two hundred thousande florens, and he sente for his counsaile, and said, howe he wolde haue this money reysed: his counsaile durste nat saye nay, for he was a cruell prynce. Than the moste notable persones of other cyties and townes in his realme were sente for, to come to Panpyllona: they came thyder, for they durst nat disobey. Whan they were come all togither into the kynges palays, the kynge hymselfe declared forthe the mater why they were sent for. He was a king ryght subtile, sage, and well langaged, and at the conclusion sayde, howe towards his nedes he must haue the some of CC. M. florens, to be reysed of his subiectes, after this maner: the riche to pay x. frankes, the meane to be cessed at fyue frankes, and all other at one franke. This request abashed greatly the people, for the yere before there had ben a batayle in Nauer, by reason wherof a tayle was raysed to the somme of a hundred thousande floreyns; and besyde that, he maryed his daughter the lady Jane, to duke Johan of Bretaygne, and a great parte of that money as thā nat payde and vngadered. Whan the kynge hadde made his demaunde, he desyred to haue an answer. Than they requyred to take counsaile and to speke toguyder: the king gaue them respite xv. dayes, than the chefe of them to make answer. The brute of this taylage spredde abroad through Nauerre, and euery man was abashed therof. At the xv. dayes ende the moste notable persones of the good cyties and townes returned to Panpyllona, to the nombre of a threscore persones, who had

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXII.



had charge to aunswere for all the hole realme. The kynge was present at their answeere making, whiche was done in a fayre garden, farre of fro any people, and closed aboute with hygh walles. Than they aunswere all with one accorde, and shewed the pouerte of the realme, and alleged howe the former tayle was nat as than all leuyed nor gadred, wherfore they besought him for goddessake to haue pytie of them, for they sayd surely the realme was nat able to beare it. And whan the king sawe that he coude nat easely attayne to his purpose, he was sore dyspleased, and departed fro them and sayd: Sirs, ye are yuell counsayled, take counsayle agayne, and speke yet agayne togyder; and so he went into his chambre, and his counsayle with hym. Than all these good persones were togyder in this garden faste closed in with hygh walles, and the kynge commaunded in no wyse to suffer them to issue out, and to haue but lytell meate nor drinke. Than they were there in great doute of their lyues, and there was none that durste speke for them: and so it was supposed that by constreynt he had his desyre: for he strake of a thre of their heedes, suche as were moste contrary to his entent, to gyue feare and ensample to other. Than there fell a straunge insydence by a marueylous sodayne aduēture, the whiche god sent lyke a myracle. I shall shewe you how, as I was enfourmed in the countie of Foize, at Ortays, at the erles house, by men of Panpylona: it past nat a thre or four dayes iourney thence. It was shewed me howe this kynge of Nauer in his dayes loued well women, and at the same tyme he had a fayre damosell to his louer, for he was a wydower a longe season. On a nyght he laye with her a space, and than returned to his chambre in a feuer, and sayd to his seruantes: *Dresse my bedde, for I wyll rest me a season; and so went to his bed, and tymbled for colde, and coulde take no heate; he was an aged man aboute a threscore yere of age: and of vsage his bedde was wont to be chafed with a bason with hote coles, to make hym swete, whiche often tymes he vsed and dyd hym no hurte; at this tyme his seruātes dyd the same, but outhar as god wolde, or the deuyll, a burnynge flame toke in the shetes in suche maner that or he coulde be reskewed, he was brente to the bowels, he was so wrapped bytwene the shetes, so that he lyued fyftene dayes after in great payne and mysery, in so moche that physyke nor surgery coulde helpe hym, but that he dyed: this was the ende of the kynge of Nauerre.* And so the poore men of the countrey were quyte of their taylage, and delyuered fro payenge thereof by Charles his sonne, who was a noble good knyght, and a yonge, and was kynge of Nauerre, and crowned kynge the same season that I wrote this hystory, anone after the obsequy done of his father, in the ctyie of Panpylona.

Ye haue well herde here before of the treatyes that hadde ben made in the counties of Armynake, and Dolpheny,<sup>3</sup> in Auergne, and Lymozyn, who were enemyes to all their neyghbours; many of them were well content to departe, for they thought they had warred and trauelled the realme of Fraunce longe ynoughe, thynkynge than to goo and robbe and pyll in other places; the duke of Armynake promysed theym to leade them into Lumbardy, but the erle of Foyze, who wolde nat lyghtly be dysceyued, thought the contrary; he helde hymselfe styll to se the ende of that busynesse, and euer dyligently enquiryed howe the treatyes wente forwarde in those parties, and whan these men of warre shulde departe, and whyder they shuld drawe? and the men of his countrey sayde, that the renome was, howe they wolde go and rynne abowte a robberyng and pyllynge. Thanne the Erle caste downe his heed, and sayde: *alwayes newes rynne amonge men of warre; the erle of Armynake, and Bernarde his brother, are yonge, and I knowe well they loue me nat, nor my countrey; these men of warre may happe by his meanes to rynne on me and my countrey; howebeit, I wyll prouyde therefore in*  
suche

<sup>3</sup> Dauphiny.

suche wyse that I truste I shall take no damage; it is sayd, longe prouysion before, maketh sure possessyon. Thus the erle of Foyze sayde to his counsaile, and it was no folysshe imagynacyon, as it apered after, if I maye attayne to the trefyng thetref.

Ye haue herde here before rehersed, how Geoffrey Tete noyr, Breton, who hadde longe kepte the garyson of the stronge castell of Vandachor,<sup>a</sup> in Lymosyn, on the fronter of Auuergne, and Burbonoys, wolde in no wyse departe out of þe castell: for he helde it as his owne propre enherytaunce, and had patysed all the cuntrye there aboute, and vnder their patesyng the people labored in pease and reste. Thus this Geoffrey kepte the estate of a greate lorde; he was a cruell man in his dyspleasure, he hadde no more pyttee to slee a man than a beest: nowe to come to purpose. When the tydynges spred abrode in Auuergne, and Lymozyn, of the tayle that was gathered in the cuntryes, to the entente to avoyde out of the cuntrye these men of warre; than it was brewted that the men of warre in the fortesse of Vandachor<sup>a</sup> shulde departe, and to gyue vp the fortesse to the duke of Berrey. By reason of that tydynges the people were contente to pay this tayle: but whan they sawe the contrary, (for the most hurte that they had was by them of the garyson of Vandachor,<sup>a</sup>) they thought the money that they had payed at the first gatherynge but loste: and sayd howe they wolde paye no more crosse nor mayle, without they of Vandachor<sup>a</sup> were constreyned to departe out of the cuntrye. These tydynges came to the herying of the duke of Berrey, who had all the soueraygne charge of the cuntrye of Auuergne, Lymozyn, and Gelnadan.<sup>b</sup> Than the duke and his counsaile sayde: Surely these poore men haue good cause to saye so, and to be lothe to pay their money for nothings; and more ouer sayde, howe he hymselfe and his counsaile were to blame that they layde nat a siege aboute that fortesse, to kepe them of that garyson fro issuing out. Thanne the duke of Berrey ordeyned at the cost and charge of the cuntrye foure hundred speares of good men of armes, to besiege Vandachor<sup>a</sup> by bastydes. And soueraigne capytaynes of that company was syr Wilyam of Lygnac, and syr Johan Boesme launce,<sup>c</sup> a valyaunt knyght of Burbonoyse; these men of armes and knyghtes, as nere as they myght, layde siege to Vandachor,<sup>a</sup> and made bastydes in foure places, and by men of the cuntrye they made great trenches and defence vpon the straytes, to stoppe their issuing out; but the capytayne Geoffrey set lytell therby, for he knewe well his garyson was well furnysshed with all maner of thynges, though there came no newe vytayle to them in seuen yere; also the castell stode in so strong a place vpon a rocke, that it coude take no damage for any assawte; and for all this siege and bastydes, they within wolde oftentymes issue out by a preuy posterne, whiche opened bytwene two rockes, so that they wolde issue out vnder couerte and ryde abrode in the cuntrye, and toke prisoners: other thyng they wolde bringe none to their fortesse; they coude nat bycause of the straye wayes, and stronge mountaynes that they must passe by; and this issue coude nat be stopped fro them, for the aley vnder couert endured fro their garyson a seuen or eight leages, or they came out into the felde, and whanne they returned agayne, by that tyme they were entered a thre leages, they were as sure there as within their castell. This maner they vsed a longe season. The siege laye more than a yere before the castell.

Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of Vandachor<sup>a</sup> tyll another season, and speke of other newe maters.

The duke of Burgoyne forgate nat the promise that he had made to his aunte, the duches

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.

<sup>b</sup> Gevaudan.

<sup>c</sup> Bonne-lance.

duches of Brabante; he ordayned a foure hūdred men of armes, Burgonyons, and other, and made two knyghtes capytayns, the one sir Guylliam of Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> Burgonyon, the other sir Geruays of Merande, almayne;<sup>b</sup> and the duke sayd to them, sirs, ye shall go to your charge on the fronters of Brabant, and Guerles,<sup>c</sup> there as the duches of Brabante wyll apoynt you, and make to her enemyes as good warre as ye canne: the knyghtes sayde they shulde do their beste to fulfill his commaundement. They made them redy, and gadred their men, and wente forthe as soone as they myght, and drewe into Brabante, and sente worde of their comynge to the duches of Brabante: and so passed through the lande of Lusenburge: and than by the ordynance of the marshall of Brabant they were sente into the thre castels that the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> chalēged, and wolde haue againe, bycause they had ben layde but to pledge, that is to say Butth, Gaulty, and Nulle;<sup>d</sup> there they helde them in garyson, and made good fronter warre, and somtyme rode abrode to encountre their enemyes. The duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> fortified hymselfe agaynste them, and furnysshed his townes and castels agaynst them, for he sawe well the warre was as than open. So it fortunēd that syr Willyam of Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> desyringe to auance hymselfe to do some thyng that myght sounde to his honoure, he set his imaginacion on a day on a towne in Guerles,<sup>c</sup> a foure leages fro his fortesse: this towne was called Seaulle, and he shewed secretlye his entensyon to syr Geruays of Merande, his companion, who lightly accorded to his mynde: so they gathered their company togyder and departed aboute mydnyght, and rode a rounde pase too this towne, and had guydes that brought them to Seaulle, by that tyme it was daylight. Than they rested them and apoynted what they wolde do. And as it was shewed me, syr Geruays with xxx. speares, went on before for to wyñe the gate, and sir Willyam of Tremoyle<sup>a</sup> to folowe after, bycause they feared if they shulde haue rydden all togyder to haue been spyd: but they thought how they of the towne shulde thynke none other, but that they shulde be a certayne nombre of men of armes, sent thyder by the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> to refresshe the garyson. Thus this knyght, sir Geruays, with xxx. speares rode before to the towne of Seaulle; in the mornyng they founde men and women goynge to the towne, for it was markette day; they saluted theym in the langage of Almayne,<sup>e</sup> and rode forthe; the poore men went surely they had been men of the country perteynyng to the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> that were rydng to the garyson. Syr Geruays and his company rode forthe tyll they came to the gate, and founde it open with a small warde, it was so erly that the moste parte of the people were in their beddes; they rested there and were lordes of the gate. Than incontynent sir Willyam of Tremoyle<sup>a</sup> and his route came galopyng thyder as faste as they myght, and entred into the towne, and cryed their cries. Thus the towne was wonne without any defēce, for the men of the towne thought full lytle that the frēchmen wolde haue done such an enterprise, and f̄ moste parte of thē were in their beddes.

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> A German.<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.<sup>d</sup> Gambet, Buet, and Mille.<sup>e</sup> Germany.

*Howe the frenchemen after they had brente and ryfled the towne of Seaulle, re-tourned to their garyson; and of the ioy that the duke of Burgoyne, and the duches of Brabant made for that dede; and howe sir Johan Boesme launce<sup>a</sup> dis-comfyted the englysshmen.*

CAP. CXVII.<sup>b</sup>

THIS enterprise was done on the nyght of saynt Marten in wynter: and a thre dayes before there came thyder a knyght of Englade, with ten speares, and xxx. archers, sente by the kynge of Englande; this knyght was called syr Guylliam Fykaole;<sup>c</sup> whan the larum began he was rysinge out of his bed: he herde that the towne was wonne, and demaüded by whome? he was aunswered that it was done by bretons. Ah, quod the knight, bretons are yuell people, they wyll burne and pyll the towne, and than departe. What crye do they crye? syr, quod they, they crye on Tremoyle.<sup>d</sup> Than the englysshe knyght closed the castell, and helde hymselfe and his company within, to se if any reskewe came: but euery man was so abashed that they fled hyther and thyder; the poore people fledde into ſ mynster, and some auoyded ſ towne by another gate; the frenchemen sette fyre in the towne in dyuerse places; howebeit, there were many howses of stone and bricke, that ſ fyre coulde nat lightly burne them, the moste parte of the towne was brent, pyllled, and robbed, so that nothyng was lefte that was good, and the rychest men of the towne taken prisoners: the englysshe knyght was taken at laste, for whan he sawe that all was lost he opened the howse that he was in, for he douted the fyre, whan he sawe the flames and smoke in euery corner of ſ towne, and so came out with his penon before hym, and his company, archers and other, and there valiauntly defended themselves a longe season: but fynally he was taken and yelden prisoner to sir Guylliam of Tremoyle,<sup>d</sup> and all his company taken, but fewe slayne. Whan the frenchemen had done their wylls with the towne of Seaulle, in Guerles,<sup>e</sup> and their varlettes driuing their pyllage before them, they departed: for they thought it foly too abyde there, and went to their garison fro whēce as they came. Thus the duke of Guerles<sup>e</sup> had the first buffet and damage, wherwith he was sore dyspleased whan he knewe therof, and so came thyder with a great nombre of menne of warre, and thought well to haue founde there the frenchemen, but they were gone; than he newe renpayed the towne, and furnisshed it with newe men of warre, who were more dilygēt to kepe the towne thanne they that were there before. Thus daily the aduētures of warre fell, some loste one daye and some another. The duches of Brabante. and all those of her country were gretly reioysed of this aduerture, and sir Gillyam of Tremoyle,<sup>d</sup> and syr Geruais of Merande, atchyued great grace. Than they of the country sayde, that in the nexte sommer folowyng they wolde wynde it agayne. Whan the duke of Burgoyne herde these tydinges, and howe that his men ſ were in garyson in Brabant dyd well and valyauntly, he was gladdē therof, and to incorage theym he wrote pleasaunt letters oftentimes to syr Guylliam his knyght. Thus they taryed there all that wynter, kepinge well their fronters, and defendynge themselfe fro damage; and after, the castelles and forteresses of Guerles<sup>e</sup> were better taken hede vnto than they were before. Nowe shall I shewe you of another enterprise, that Perote of Bernois dyde in Auuergne, where he gate gret profite, and by what meanes he dyd it I shall shewe you at length.

It

<sup>a</sup> Bonne-lance.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXIII.<sup>c</sup> Fitz-Paul?<sup>d</sup> Trenouille.<sup>e</sup> Gueldres.

It fortunede the same yere and season aboute the tyme of the myddes of Maye, a xl. companyons aduenturers issued out of Caluset, the whiche Perot of Bernoys helde; this fortresse stode in Lymozyn. These companyons rode forth at aduenture into Auvergne, and a Gascoyne squyer was their capytayne, called Geronet Durante,<sup>a</sup> an experte man of armes; and bycause the countrey was alwayes in doute of ȝ men of warre that were on the fronters of Burbonoys, there was a knyght of the duke of Burgoynes, called syr Johan Boesme Launce,<sup>b</sup> a gracyouse and an amorous knyght, hauynge great corage to anounce hymselfe; whyle these englysshemen rode abrode he demaüded what nombre they were of; and it was shewed hym howe they were aboute a xl. speares. What, quod he, it is lytell to regarde for xl. speares; I wyll set as many against them: and so departed fro thence as he was as than, and went there as his chefe charge was, and that was before Vandachor;<sup>c</sup> he gate togyder a xl. or a fifty speares of Lymozyn, and Auvergne, and Burbonoyse, and with hym there was a knyght called sir Loys Dambier, and also sir Loys Dabton, and the lorde of saynte Obyse: and so toke the feldes without kepynge of any high way: they knewe the countrey, and came to a passage where their enemyes muste nedes passe, by reasone of the mountaynes and ryuers whiche were greate and depe, by occasion of the snowe fallynge fro the mountayns; they had nat ben there halfe an hour, but that thenglysshmen came thyder, and was nat of that rencountre: than Boesme launce<sup>b</sup> and his cōpany couched their speares, and came agaynst their enemyes, and cryed their cryes. When the englysshmen sawe howe they must nedes fight, they turned their faces to their enemyes, and defended themselves. There was a sore rencountre, and certayne ouerthrowen on bothe partyes; but to say the trowth the frenchmen were better expert men of armes than the aduenturers, and that semed well, for there were none of the aduenturers that returned agayne without it were the varlettes, who fledde and saued themselves whyle other dyd fyght: there were xxii. taken, and systene slayne on the place, and the capitayne taken prisoner, and thus they departed.

*Howe syr Johan Boesme launce<sup>b</sup> led these prisoners to Moūte Ferante; and howe they of the countrey were glad whan they herde of this enterprise: and howe Geronet and his company were sette to rauisome, and delyuered by the money that Perot of Bierne lente hym.*

CAP. CXVIII.<sup>d</sup>

IN rydyng and ledynge these prysoners Boesme launce<sup>b</sup> aduysed and remembred hymselfe howe that a moneth before he had ben in the towne of Mount ferante, in Auvergne, sportynge amonge the ladyes and damosels there, and howe they hadde desyred hym at a tyme, sayeng: Fayre brother Boesme launce,<sup>b</sup> ye ryde ofentymes abrode into the feldes, may it nat so fortune ȝ at somtyme ye myght rencounter your enemyes? I shall shewe you why, quod one of the damosels, (such one as was in great fauoure with Boesme launce,<sup>b</sup>) Syr, quod she, I wolde fayne se an englysshman; a squyer of this countrey, called Gurdines, hathe shewed me ofentymes howe the englysshmen are experte men of armes, the whiche semeth ryght well to be trewe, for they ryde ofentymes abrode, and do many propre deades of armes, and taketh dyuerse of our castels, and kepeth them. At whiche tyme this gētleman, Boesme launce,<sup>b</sup> answered her and sayd, Dame, if euer it be my fortune to take any, ye shall se hym. Syr,

VOL. II.

2 X

I thanke

<sup>a</sup> Maudurant.<sup>b</sup> Bonne-lance.<sup>c</sup> Ventadour.  
to be numbered CXIV.<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought

I thanke you, quod the damosell. Thus after the foresayde enterprise, whan this promyse came into his mynde, he forsoke than the way to Cleremonte, whiche was nat farre of, and touned to the way to Mountferant, nat farre thence: of his comyng to Mountferant, and of the iourney y<sup>e</sup> he had atchyued agaynst the aduenturers, (who sore troubled the countrye,) all the people of Moutferant were right ioyfull, and made hym good chere; than he toke his lodgyng and vnamed hym: the ladyes and damosels came to make hym chere, and receyued him ryght swetly; he was a sage knyght. Than he thanked them, and sayde to her that had desyred hym before to se some englyssbeman: Dame, I wyll acqnyte me to you; I made you a promyse nat past a moneth ago, that if it myght be my fortune to take any englyssbeman, to shewe hym to you: and as this day god hath gyuen me y<sup>e</sup> grace to mete with some that be ryght valyant, for in armes they haue gyuen vs ynough to do, howbeit, we hadde the victory; they be no englyssbemen naturally borne, they be gascoyns, and make warre for the englyssbimen: they be of Byerne and hyghe Gascoyne, ye shall se them at good teyser, for the loue of you I haue brought them to this towne, and her they shall remayne tyll their raūosomes be payed. The ladyes and damoselles laughed at him, and touned the mater to a great sporte, and sayd to hym, Sir, all we thanke you. And so there he taryed a thre dayes amonge them, and he kept good company with his prisoners, and put them to raunsome, for he sawe well they were but poore companyons aduenturers, and he thought it were better to hange them, drowne them, or raunsome them, rather thanne to suffre so many of them to abyde styll in the towne; and so whan he departed thence, he sayd to Geronet, Syr, ye shall abyde here with a certayne for all the reste of your company, and the other shall departe and go seche your raunsome: and that ye shall paye I shall apoynte them that shall receyue it, and whanne the money is payed ye shall departe; therfore remembre well nowe what I do for you: if any of ours herafter hap to be in lyke case, do in lykewyse. Syr, quod Geronet, I am bounde so to do, and so we be all. Thus Boesme launce<sup>a</sup> departed and returned agayne to the syege of Vandachor,<sup>b</sup> and a twelue of the prysoners taryed styll in Mountferante, and the other departed and went to Galuset,<sup>c</sup> to Perot of Bernois, to haue of hym xxii. hundred frankes: they that taryed styll at Moutferant lay and made good chere, and no great watche layde on them, but they went vp and downe in the towne at their plesure, and so were there a fyftene dayes; and in that season they lerned moche of the state of the towne, the whiche cost after a hūdred thousande frankes.

Whan the capytayne of Galuset<sup>c</sup> was infourmed of the aduerture of Geronet of Maudurant, how that he and his company were ouerthrowen by sir Johan Boesine launce,<sup>a</sup> he made lytell therof, and said to theym that came to hym for the money for their raūosomes, Syrs, ye are come for money for their delyueraunce, howe saye ye it is nat so? Yes, truly sir, quod they, we trust they shall nat be always in this losse, they haue no gages. Well sirs, quod he, as for me I nother care for their pledges, nor yet for their losses, they shall haue nothyng of me: I made them nat to go forthe, they rode at their owne aduēture, therefore ye may shewe them, let aduerture delynner them; thanke you that I wyll employe my money after that sorte? nay surely, I canue haue always cōpanyons ynowe to ryde more sagely than they dyd; as for me I wyll quyte out no man, without he be taken in my company. This was the fynall answeere that they conde gette for Geronet. Than they sayde amonge themselfe, it were best that two or thre of vs retourne agayne to Geronet, and shewe him all the case; so thre of them returned to Mountferante, and as they rode they passed by Cleremout, and sawe well the walles were nat of no great heyght. Than they sayd one to another, this towne is prignable; if we come hyder on a nyght we maye gette it, there is no great watche kepte;

<sup>a</sup> Bonne-lance.<sup>b</sup> Ventadour.<sup>c</sup> Chalucet.

kepte; we muste one tyme bargayne, and another tyme bye: we can nat both bargayne and bye all in one daye. Thus they rode forthe, and rode to Mountferante, and there founde Geronet and his companyons, and there shewed him all the answere that they had of Perot of Bernoys, wherof they were abashed, for they wyste nat howe nor where to gette their raunsome. Thus all a daye and a nyght they were in great dyspleasure: the next daye Geronet sayde to them that had brought those newes, Syrs, I requyre you retourne agayne to our capytayne, and shewe hym fro me y I haue to my power, whyle I was with hym, serued him truely, and wyll do yet if it be his pleasure; and shewe hym if I tourne and become Frenche to delyuer myselte, he shall wyn but lytell therby; and if I do it, god knoweth it shall be full sore agaynst my wyll, and I shall forbear it as longe as I canne; and shewe hym that if he wyll nowe delyuer vs fro hence, that within a moneth after I shal bring hym to suche a botye, that he and his company shall wyne a hundred thousande frankes. With that message the thre companyons returned agayne to Galuset,<sup>a</sup> and shewed Perot their message. Than he studied a lytell and sayd, It maye well be as he sayeth, at aduerture I shall delyuer hym incontynent; and so opened a cofer wherin was more than threscore<sup>b</sup> thousande frankes, nat gathered of his rentes that he hadde in Byerne, but the moste parte of pyllage; for the towne he dwelte in before the warres was but of twelue houses, and the erle of Foiz was chefe lorde therof, and the towne was called Dadam, within thre leagues of Ortays: than he tolde oute xxiii. hundred frankes;<sup>c</sup> at a pynch a frende is knowen, I shall put them in aduerture; he is well able to wyn them agayne and mo, and he wyll. Thus they departed fro Galuset,<sup>a</sup> and returned to Mountferante, it was a xiiii. great leagues bytwene, but they had a good sauecōduct, wherby they passed in and out without daunger.

Whan Geronet knewe howe he and his company shulde be delyuered, he was right ioyfull, and sente for them that shulde receyue the money, and sayde, Syrs, holde, tell your money, here is all that we owe you: so they tolde out xxii. hundred frankes. Than they rekened for their expenses in their lodgynges, and payed every thyng with the largeste, so that every man was contente: and whan all was payed, than Geronet hyred men and horses to bringe them to Galuset.<sup>a</sup> Whan syr Johan Boesme lance<sup>d</sup> was certified of the receyte of the money, I thynke he dyd sende for it, or els left it styll there on trust of the strength of the garyson; for the same season sir Peter of Gyache, as than chauncellour of Fraunce, left ther his treasure, the whiche he lost the same yere all, or most parte. Whan Geronet was returned to Galuset,<sup>a</sup> the companyons made hym good chere; and after a thre or foure dayes Perot le Bernoys called hym and sayde, Geronet, the promise that ye made to my seruantes was cause of your delyuerance, and nothyng els, for I was nat boude to paye your raunsome, seyng ye departed without my leaue; ye rode forthe but at aduerture, therefore nowe holde your promyse, or els there shall be displeasure bytwene you and me, for I wolde ye knowe I haue nat lerned to lese, but rather to wyne. Capytayne, quod Geronet, ye haue reason to say as ye do; and sir, I saye thus to you, that if ye lyste I shall set you in the towne of Mountferant within xv. dayes, in the whiche towne is great treasure and pyllage, for it is ryche of marchaundyse, and ryche villaynes be ther in great plenty: the chauncellour of Fraunce, syr Peter of Giache, as it is infourmed me, hathe great ryches within the same towne, and I knowe well it is the towne most symplest kept, and leste taken hede to of any towne in the realme: Syr, this is that I can saye, and this is the promise that

2 X 2

I haue

<sup>a</sup> Chaluset.

<sup>b</sup> XL.

<sup>c</sup> "And then put them in a purse, and calling the three

"companions, who had come to him for the money, he said, "Here; I give you twenty three hundred

"francs"——omitted.

<sup>d</sup> Bonne-lance.

I haue made. In the name of god, quod Perot le Bernoys, it is well sayd, and I consente therto; ye knowe well the maner of the towne, and howe it is kepte and fortified. This enterprise, dothe it requyre any great nombre? Syr, quod Geronette, a thre or four hundred speares shall well accomplysse our feate, for within the towne there be no men of great defence. Well, quod Perot, I am contente, and I shall singnyfye other capytayns of the fortresses here aboute of the mater, and we shall assemble togyder and go thyder.

*Howe Geronet of Mandurante, with twelue of his company, returned to Mountferant; and howe Perot of Bernoys, with foure hundred speares, went to Mountferant, and wolde nat entre into the towne by none other waye but in at the gate.*

C A P. CXIX.<sup>2</sup>

ON this determynacion Perot sent to the capytaynes nexte aboute hym, and apoynted euery man to mete at Ousac,<sup>b</sup> a castell in the bysshopriche of Cleremount, nat farre thence, wherof somtyme Barbe, a great pyller, a gascoyne, was capytayne. The companyons of seuen fortresses assembled togyder at Ousac,<sup>b</sup> englysshemen, and they were a four hundred speares well mounted, and than they had but sixe leages to ryde: the first that came to Ousac<sup>b</sup> was Perote of Bernoys, to shewe that it was his enterprise, and to take couysayle with the other capytayns, by the aduysse of Geronet, and accordyng to the informacyon that he had gyuen hym. Than Geronet, and a twelue other with hym, arayed theym lyke rude vyllayne marchautes in cotes of fryse, and ledde horses tyed one to another, with baggage on them, acordyng to the custome of the countrey: and thus they departed fro Ousac<sup>b</sup> in the brekyng of the daye, and so rode towardes Mountferant, and lyke marchautes they entred into the towne about noone; there were noue that toke any hede what men they were, they thought full lytell they hadde ben men of warre: they of the towne demed surely they had ben marchautes, come thyder to the fayre to haue bought cloth and dyaper, for they said they came fro Mount Pellier to bye marchaundyse: for against the fayre there was come thyder moche marchaundyse fro other cyties and townes of the realme. Than Geronet and his company wente to their lodgyng to the syne of the Crowne, and sette vp their horses, and toke vp a fayre chambre for the, and kepte theym styll therein without goyng aboute in the towne for feare of spyenge, and so sate and made mery, and thought well they wolde pay nothyng for their expenses.

At nyght they were besy to dresse their horses, and said to their host and osten, that their horses hadde sore trauayled all that day, wherfore they had nede of rest: they prouyded them of plenty of candels, and so went into their chambre, and dranke and made mery, but they wolde nat go to bed; so the host and the hostes wente to their beddes, and lette them alone, and had no suspecte of them. Now shall I shewe you what Perot and his company dyd: the sayd day he and with hym seuen other capytayns, firste Perot le Bernoys as chefe, than the Bourge of Compaygne called Arnaldon, the bourge Anglois, § Bourge of Carlat, Aphon Seguyn, Olyue Barbe, and Bernadon of the isles, and with them there was a great rutter of Byerne, the lorde of Launce playne; by hym, and by the bourge of Compaygne, I was afterwarde enfourmed of this enterprise, whiche was done aboute Candelmas, whan the nightes be long and colde; and all the same nyght it rayned, and the wynde blewe so that it was a stormy season, wherfore the capytayne

<sup>1</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXV.

<sup>b</sup> Donzac.



capytayne of the watche of Mountferant issued nat out that nyght of his lodgyng, but he sent his sonne forth, who was but yonge, of a systene yere of age; and as he wente fro the one gate to the other, he foude four poore men watchinge nygh deed for colde, and they sayd to the yonge man: Syr, take of eche of vs a blanke,<sup>a</sup> and let vs go home and warme vs, it is paste aleuen of the clocke: the yonge man coueted the money and toke it, and they departed fro their watche and wente to their owne houses. Than Geronet and his company watched at their hostes dore, to se when the watchmen shulde retourne; than they sawe when the yonge man came fro the watche, and the watchemen with hym. Than Geronet sayde, the mater goeth well, this is lyke to be a good nyght for vs, euery manne in the towne is as nowe gone to bedde, the watche is paste, we nede to take no care for that; and on the other parte, I am sure Perotte le Bernoys and his company are rydyng hyderwarde as fast as they may; and indede  $\int$  same tyme they were comyng, and came nere to Cleremounte, and mette with Aymergotte Marcell, with a hundred speres, capytayne of the fortresse of Alose, besyde saint Floure. When eche of them knewe other they made good chere, and demanded eche other whyder they wolde, and what they sought in that country: Amergot answered and said, I come fro my fortresse of Alose, and ame goyng to Carlate. In the name of god, sayd two of the capytaynes, the Bourge Angloys, and the Bourge Compaigne: Sir, we be here, wolde ye any thyng speke wyth vs? Yea, quod Amergot, ye haue certayne prysoners of the countie of Dolphyn of Auuergne, and ye knowe well we be in treatyng together by the meanes of the erle of Armynake, wherfore we wolde gladly make an exchange with certayne prysoners that I haue in my garyson; I am sore desyred thus to do by the coites of Dolphyn, who is a right good lady, and is well worthy to be done pleasure vnto. Than the Bourge of Compaigne sayd, Aymergotte, ye are greatly bounde to do some pleasure to that lady, for within this thre yere ye hadde of her syluer thre hundred frankes, for the redemyng of the castell of Mercyer; but, syr, I pray you where is therle Dolphyn at this season? Syr, quod the other, it is shewed me that he is in Fraunce, comunyng vpon the treatie that ye know that we be in hande with the erle of Armynake, and with erle Dolphyn. Than Perot le Bernoys sayde, Sir, leaue this comunyng and come on with vs, and it shall be for your profyte, and yeshall haue parte of our botye. Sir, quod Aymergot, and whyder go you than? By my fayth, sir, quod Perot, we go streyght to Mountferante, for this nyght the towne shall be yelden to me. Than Aymerygot sayd, syr, this is yuell done that ye go aboute, for ye knowe well we be in treatie with the erle of Armynake, and with this couñtre, wherfore all townes and castels rekeneth themselves halfe assured, wherfore we shall be greatly blamed thus to do, and ye shall breke our treatye. By my fayth, quod Perot, as for me I wyll agre to no treatye as longe as I maye kepe the feldes: it behoueth companyons to lyue; come on your way with vs, for ye shall haue nothyng to do at Carlat, for here be the companyons of that fortresse, and suche as be left behynde wyll nat suffre you to entre till their company come home. Well sir, quod Aymergot, with you wyll I nat go, but I wyll retourne agayne into my fortresse syth the mater is thus. Thus they departed one fro another. Perot helde the waye to Mountferant; and when they were vnder Cleremount there they rested them, and imagyned on a newe enterprise, specially certayne of the gascoyns, who knewe nat of the enterprise of Geronet. Than they sayd to the capytayns, Sirs, beholde here this cytie of Cleremonte, the whiche is a ryche cytie, and rather more prignable than Mountferant; we haue ladders here, let vs scale it, we shall haue more profyte here than at Mountferante. To this poynte they were here agreed, but thanne the chefe capytayns sayd, Sirs, Cleremonte is a puissant towne and well peopled, and the men well harnesssed; if they be ones moued they wyl assemble together and put themselfe to defence, it is no doute but we shulde haue no  
great

<sup>a</sup> A small coin.

great aduantage by them : and if we shulde be reculed perforce, and our horse taken or loste, we shulde yuell escape, for we be farre fro home : and if the couñtre than shulde ryse and pursue vs, we shulde be in great daunger ; we thinke it were better to go on forthe and folowe our fyrst enterpryse, for the sekyng of a newe enterpryse peradventure myght cost vs dere.

This counsaile was taken, and so rode forthe without makynge of any noyse, so that aboute xi. of the clocke they were nere to Mountferant. Whan they sawe the towne they stode styll a thre bowe shot of fro ÿ towne : than Perotte sayde, beholde here is Mountferant, our company that went before are within the towne, kepe you all styll here close togyder, and I wyll go downe this valaye to se if I may se or here any newes of Geronet, who hath brought vs to this enterpryse, and departe nat tyll I come to you agayne. Sir, quod they, go your waye, we shall abyde you here. Therwith Perot departed, and four with hym. The wether was so darke that no man coulde se an acre brede fro hym, and also it rayned, blewe, and snewe, that it was a meruaylouse yuell wether: Geronet was as than on the walles and taryed to here some newes ; he loked dowe ouer the walles, and as he thought he sawe the shadowe of some men goynge along by the dyke syde ; than he began a lytle to whystell softly ; and whā they without herde that they came nerer to the wall, for the dykes on that syde hadde no water. Than Geronet demaūded who was there without ? Perot knew his voyce, and sayd, I am Perot le Bernoys ; Geronet, art thou there ? Yea sir, quod he, I am here, make you redy and aproche your men, for I shall lette you in here into the towne, for all those within the towne be aslepe in their beddes. What, quod Perot, shulde we entre here where as ye stande ? god kepe me fro that, I wyll nat entre there ; if I entre I wyll entre in at the gate, and at none other place. No wyll, quod Geronette, and I assure you that lyeth nat in my power to do ; but, syr, bring your ladders hyder and spare nat skcale, for I assure you there is none shall let you. Well, quod Perot, thou haste promysed to lette me into the towne, but surely I wyll nat entre without it be by the gate. Well, quod Geronet, and I can nat amende it, for I can nat lette you in at the gate : it is faste shytte, and the kepers be within, but they be aslepe. Whyle they were at this stryfe, certayne of Geronettes cōpany within went vp and downe vpon the walles to se if they myght here any noyse. A lytell there by there was a poore house at the foote of the wall ; this howse stode alone farre of fro any other house, and a poore man dwelte therin, a taylour, who had watched all the nyght tyll the same tyme, and thanne was goynge to bedde : and as the wynde caryeth noyse farre of, he herde as he thought men spekyng on the walles, for by nyght tyme a man shall here farre of ; therwith he wente out of his howse and wente vpon the walles, and so met with the men ; and as soone as he sawe them he began to crye : than one of them stept forthe and toke him by the throte, and sayd, Vyllayne, thou arte but deed and thou speke one worde ; and soo he helde his peace, for he feared dethe. Than Geronet, (who had herde the noyse,) sayde, Sirs, slee hym nat, for he shall do vs good seruyce ; god hath sent him to vs, for by hym we shall furnysshe all our enterpryse. Than Geronet sayde to Perotte le Bernoys, syr, retourne to your company, and whan ye here the fyrst gate open come forthe, and with youre axes breke downe the gate next you, and shewed him the aduenture of the man that they had taken on the walles. Thanne Perot departed and wente to his company, and shewed them all the mater, (as ye haue herde before.)

*Howe Geronet lette in Perote le Bernoys and his company into the towne of Mount-Jerant, wherof the countrye was afraide; and howe the kynge and his vncler beyng at Parys were therwith sore dyspleased, and also the erle Dolphyn of Auuergne.*

## C A P. CXX.\*

THAN Geronet sayd to the man ȳ they had taken: Without thou fulfyll oure desyre, thou arte but deed incontynente. What wolde you that I shulde do? quod he. I wyll, quod Geronet, that thou go to the gate and awake the porters, and say howe the capytayne wolde haue the gate opened, or els let them delyuer to the the keys, to lette in a certayne marchauntes of Mounte Pellyer, who be without with fardelles of marchandyse to come into the fayre. Sirs, quod the man, What and they wyll nat byleue me? Yes, I warante the, quod Geronet; tell them by the token that he was nat at the watche this last night, but sent his sonne; and without thou do this message well and wysely, I shall slee the with my dagger: and do so that through thy faute I lese nat myne enterprise. When the poore man sawe howe he was manassed, and perceyued howe they were redy to slee him, he was sore abashed, and sayd, Sir, I shall do that ye comaunde to the vttermost of my power: and so he came to the gate, and knocked so longe tyll he awoke the porters. Than they sayd, What arte thou, that wakest ys this tyme of the nyght? I am suche a one, quod he, and named his name: I haue ben all this nyght busy in makyng of certayne geare of the capytayns, and so haue borne it home; and whyle I was there worde came to hym howe certayne marchauntes of Mount Pellier are without the gate with their marchandyse, and are sore trauayled and weate with the fowle wether, wherfore the capytayne commaundes you by me to opyn the gates and let them come in, or els gyue me the keys, and I shall let them in, by the same token that he was nat at the watche himselfe this nyght, but sent his sonne. That is trewe, quod the porters; abyde a lytell, thou shalt haue the keys incontynent. Than one of them rose, and toke the keys hanginge on a pyn, and opened a lytell wyndowe, and delyuered out the keys: the man toke them, and than incontynente Geronet toke them, and at aduenture put in the right key into the locke and opened ȳ gate, and than went to the vtter gate, but in no wyse he coulde open it. Perot and his company were without, taryenge for openyng of the gate. Than Geronet sayd, sirs, helpe yourselfe; auauce forth, for I can in no wyse open this seconde gate; breke it vp with your axes, otherwyse ye can nat entre into the towne. Than they without had redy axes and wedges, and hewed ȳ gate lyke carpenters; and as soone as they coulde gette in a hole, they put in axes and wedges to Geronet, that he and his company shuld hewe asonder the barres of the gate. Than dyuerse men herynge that noyse, arose out of their beddes, and had meruayle what it myght be, for they thought full lytell that the englysshemen shulde haue reysed them out of their beddes at that tyme of the night. Than the kepers of the gate, who had yuell kept their warde, herynge men speke and horses braye and crye, knewe well they were dysceyued, and rose and came to the wyndowes of the gate, and beganne to cry with an hygh voyce, trayson, trayson: than all the towne began to ryse in great feare, and many thought to saue their goodes and themselfe, and fledde to the castell, but ther were but a fewe that entred; for the Chatelyn within the castell, whanne he vnderstode that the englysshemen had wonne the towne, for feare of lesyng of more, he wolde nat lette downe his bridges. Some of his frendes that came first, he lette them come in by meanes of a plauke; and whanne he

\* This chapter ought to be numbred CXXVI.

herde the great brewte in the towne, than he drewe in agayne the planke, and after that he wolde no more put it forthe, but wente aboute to se what defence he shulde make if the castell were assayled. Thus I haue shewed you howe the fyrste gate was opened, and the seconde broken with axes and wedges, and than they entred fayre and easely. These capytayns and their companyons, or they entred into any house, they rode all the streates in the towne togyther, to se if there were any assemble to make any defence; and when they had serched euery place, and founde no man to make any resistance, but a certayne suche as were gone to haue entred into the castell made a lytell defence, but soone they were taken and slayne. What shulde I make longe processe? Thus the towne of Mounte Ferante in Auuergne was taken on a thursday at nyght, the thyr-tenth day of February, by Perot le Bernoys and his company; and when they sawe howe they were lordes of the towne, they toke vp their lodgynges at their ease, without settinge of any house a fyre, or doynge of any other vyolence: for Perot le Bernois had charged, on payne of dethe, no man to vyolate any maner of woman or mayden, nor to sette any house a fyre, nor to take no good nor prisoner, lytell nor greate, tyll he had fyrste knowledge therof; and also, that no man shulde be so hardy to hurte any church or trouble any man of the church, nor to take any thyng out therof. This maner euer Perot vsed whansoeuer he wanne any towne or fortresse; but Geoffery Tete noyre dyd always the contrarye, for he neuer cared for church nor for nothyng els: so that he myght haue it and get good, he cared nat howe.

The same mornynge, whanne tydings of this dede came to the knowledge of them of Cleremounte, whiche was but a small leage thens, they were sore abasshed, and good cause why, for their enemyes were nere them; they wyste nat what to saye or do, but toke good hede to defende their towne. These newes spredde abrode to the castell Neuffe,<sup>a</sup> to Thyon, to Vyc, to Issoire, to Ryon, and fro thence to Auige Perse, and to castell of Mounte Pencyer; and all these townes and countreys that I haue named, the moste parte pertayned to the duke of Berrey. In farre countreys these tydynge spred abrode, howe these englysshemen and gascoyns had wonne and taken the good towne of Mount ferante in Auuergne: as many as herde therof meruayled greatly and were in doute, and the countreys adioyning were halfe afrayde, as Auuergne, Bourbonoys, Forestes, and to Berrey. Whan these newes came to Parys, the kyng and his vncls were sore displeased, whiche was good reasone, for the same tyme the erle Dolphyn was at Parys for the orderynge of that countrey, for he hadde the soueraygne charge of kepyng therof with the erle of Armynake; therefore this dede was greatly to their displeasure, for they thought they shulde beare some blame for that dede, bycause it was vnder their rule: but their excuse was reasonable, for it was well knowen howe they were in treatie with all the companions; wherfore they thought the countre at that tyme hadde ben in good suretie. Than incontynent the erle Dolphyn departed fro Parys to go into Auuergne, to sette an order in the countre, and lefte all his trayne behynde hym, and so rode but alonely with his page, and toke his waye by Moulyns in Bourbonoyes, to go to Auuergne, and changed euery daye fresshe horses; and as he rode in this haste at saynt Pier the mynster,<sup>b</sup> he herde other tidynge, y he hadde nat herde before, as I shall shewe you.

<sup>a</sup> Chateau-neuf.<sup>b</sup> Saint Pierre le Moustier.

*Howe Perot le Bernoys' and his company toke their cōsaile, and determyned nat to kepe the towne of Moutferante; and howe the sayd Perot and his cōpany departed thens by nyght with all their pyllage and prisoners, and went and refreshed thē in the towne of Ousac.<sup>a</sup>*

CAP. CXXI.<sup>b</sup>

WHAN it was Fridaye mornynge after the towne was wonne on the thursdaye at nyght (as ye haue herde here before) and that these Capitayns were lordes of the towne, they boude faste all the men, so that they coude do thē no dommage. Than they serched all aboute, and trussed into fardelles, clothe, naprye, gownes, furrer, and other thynges, suche as they thought to haue any profite by; and thā they toke cōsaile whether they shulde kepe styll the towne or no. Some were of the opynion to kepe it styll and to fortifye it; but the moost parte sayde, that to abyde there it were great follye, for so they shulde be enclosed rounde about, and shulde be farre of fro their socours and forteresses: so that if they shulde be there besieged, they shulde nat be able to withstande their enemyes, and lykely to haue no socours: so that by longe siege they shulde be famysshedde, for thereaboute were many great gentylnen, cyties, and good townes: and also when the duke of Berrey shulde knowe of this enterpryse, he wyll sēde hyther the mareshall of Fraunce, sir Loyes Sanxere; and also the erle Dolphyu of Auuergne and the erle of Armynake wyll come or sende and besiege vs, with many great lordes, as the lorde of the Towre,<sup>c</sup> the lorde Dapthon, the lorde Dapthyer, the lorde of Renell, the lorde de la Palayes,<sup>d</sup> and dyuers other; yea, and specially hyther shall come sir Johan Boesme Lannce,<sup>e</sup> with a great nōbre: all these doutes the sage Perot le Bernoys and Olyue Barbe dyde cast and cōiecte, and sayde: If they were there taken, they shulde lese all they haue, and fayne to delyuer vp all their fortresses. So these capitayns concluded the same nyght to departe, and to take with them all their botye and prisoners, of whom they had mo thane two hundred: than they set a sure garde at the gates, to thentent that none shulde issue out to bewray their entreprice.

Nowe shall I shewe you of a scrymysse that they of Cleremount made with them.

*Howe they of the towne of Cleremont made a scrymysse with these pyllers (that had taken and robbed the towne of Moutferante) at the gates of the towne.*

CAP. CXXII.<sup>f</sup>

WHANNE these tydynges were known at Cleremōt that the Englysshemenne had takenne Moūtferrant, they were soore abashed, for they were nere neyghbours: so they of Cleremont toke counsaile toguyder; and without the towne of Cleremounte, on the

VOL. II. 2 Y waye

<sup>a</sup> Donzac.<sup>d</sup> Palisse.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXVII.<sup>c</sup> Bonne-lance.<sup>e</sup> De la Tour.<sup>f</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXVIII.

waye towardes Mountferant, there was a churche of Friers, as fayre, as stronge, and as well buylded as any was in the realme of Fraunce, whervnto parteyned a great close, enuyroned with stronge hyghe walles, and within the close full of Vynes; for, one yere with another, the friers had therof a sixscore vesselles of wyne. Than some sayde within the towne, that it shulde be best to beate downe the Friers, bycause it ioyned so nere to the gate, or elles it might be to their distruction: some other sayde naye: affrymyng howe it shulde be great pytie and dommage to distroye so goodly a house, and sayde: Sirs, lette vs go to Mountferant, and scrimysse there with our enemyes, and let vs besiege them there: they shall neuer scape vs, for the knyghtes and squyers of this cuntry of Burbonoys and of Forestes wyll drawe hyther, so that within these foure dayes surelye they shal be besieged. Whyle they were thus debatyng of the matter, there were a threscore compaygnions made themselfe redy to departe out of the towne, to go se their enemyes, and to scrimysse with them: there was no man dyde lette them, for of the best of the towne were in that company, desyringe to wyne honoure, and toke with them a xxx. crosbowes, and so rode towardes Mountferant: thanne after them issued out of Cleremounte mo than two hundred men afote, and folowed after: thanne horsemen rode streyght to the barryers of Mountferante. Tidynges came into the towne to the capitaynes, howe that they of Cleremount were come to vysette them, and were before the barryers, of whiche tidynges they were greatlye reioysed; and a hundred armed them and moued on their horses, and opnyed the gate and issued out on a fronte, and cryed saynt George: and whan the cleremotoys sawe them comyng so fierse, they were afrayed, and vanquysshed within themselfe, and beganne to recule without shewyng of any face of defence, and so fledde hyther and thyder; they that were best horsed at the comyng out of Cleremount, and were the formast, sayeng, howe they wolde be the fyrste that shulde make assaute, were than the fyrst that retourned agayne to the towne, and the gascoyns after them: so that if the gascons horses had been as good as the Cleremontoyes, there hadde but a fewe of them entred agayn into their towne; howbeit, they were chased tyll they mette with the fote men, who in lykewise than fledde and kepte none order, and lepte into the vynes and into the dykes to saue themselfe. The crosbowes that came out of Cleremount kepte better array than their company dyde: for they, close toguyder, toke a vyne yarde, and bent their bowes, and made vysage of defence, and kepte themselfe there tyll all the Englysshemenne were withdrawen backe agayne to Mountferant. They of Cleremont lost twetie of their men, sixe slayne and fourtene taken. Thus it fell of that enterpryce; and all that day euery mā trussed and made redy to departe the same nyght after: and by sixe of the clocke euery man hadde trussed vp their baggage, and laded their horses, and sette themselfe a foote: they past nat a threscore on horsebacke, and so sette forwarde in the stretes their somers and caryages; they hadde well a foure hundred horse charged with clothes, naprie, and furies, and other thynges necessary. They founde in the towne cofers and presses full of stuffe, but they lafte them clene voyde: they bounde their prisoners two and two toguyder, and whan they were all redy and that it was nyght, they opnyed the gate and issued out: they had taryed in Mountferant no more but eyghtene houres: they sette their cariage before them, and thā their prisoners and foote men, and the capitayns on horsebacke came after them. The nyght was darke, and the cuntry nat adusyed of their departyng, wherfore they were nat pursued, and about mydnyght they came to Ousacke,<sup>a</sup> fro whens they came the seconde day before: there they rested them.

It was shewed me that they wanne by the same voyage a hundred thousande frankes,  
besyde

<sup>a</sup> Donzac.

besyde their prisoners. Sir Peter of Gyache, chauncelloure of Fraunce, loste for his parte in redy money thyrtye thousande frankes or aboue.

The companyons were well counsayled to leaue Mountferant in Auuergne so soone as they dyde, for if they had taryed there two dayes lengar than they dyde, they hadde nat departed without great daunger, and paraduenteure with losse of their lynes; for all the knyghtes and squiers of the countrey gathered toguyder and came thyder with puyssaunce to haue layde siege to the towne, and the lordes of the countrey (as ye haue herde before named) none taryed behynde; and the erle Dolphyn was come within two dayes iourney; but than he herde tidynges howe the Englysslimen and gascoyns were departed to their owne forteresses, and there the trouthe of the hole mater was shewed hym. Whāne he knewe the trouthe, he rode than more at his ease, and came to saynt Pursayne, and fro thens to Moulins in Burbonoyes; and there he foude the duches of Burbone his daughter, who was sore afrayde of that aduenteure; howebeit, whan she knewe that the aduenterers were gone she was gladde therof, for thanne she thought her countrey more surer than it was before. By my faythe, quod the erle, I wolde it had coste me greatly, that they had taryed styll at Mountferant tyll I had come thyder: for if they were there nowe, they shulde haue an yuell ende: we coulde nat haue had a better enterprise in all Auuergne, wherby to haue recouered all the forteresses that they holde. It semeth well they are skylfull men of warre, that they taryed there no lengar; they are gone to their owne holdes with all their pyllage and prisoners. Thus the Erle and the duchesse his daughter cōmuned toguyder; and Perot le Bernoys and Olyue Barbe, the Bourge of Cōpayne, the Bourg angloys, Aphon Seguyn, and the other capitayns of the forteresses, whan they were cōe to Ousacke,<sup>a</sup> they departed their botye, pyllage, and prisoners; and some they raunsomed, and the other they ledde to their forteresses, some to Carlat and some to Gaslucet.<sup>b</sup> All the countre of Auuergne toke better hede to they holdes than they hadde done before; howebeit, the erle of Armynake and the erle Dolphyn sente to Perotte le Bernoys, sayeng, howe falsely and traytoursly he had taken and stollen the towne of Mountferant and robbed it, and ledde away the prisoners, counsaylynge hym to make therof amendes, consydringe howe they were in treatie toguyder for a peace. Perotte answered and sayde, Sauyng their graces, as for myselfe and seuen other capitayns that were with me at the takynge of Mountferant, were neuer at no maner of treatie with these Erles, nor we toke nat this towne fraudulently nor stole it, but I entred in at the gate, whiche was opyned redy to receyue me. If I and my company hadde been sworne to any treatie, we wolde haue kepte it surely; but we were neuer of that entencyon, nor wyll be. In this case the mater stode, and the lordes coude haue none other answer. Sir Peter of Gyache was sore displeased for the losse that he hadde; and as for them of Mountferant, they recouered themselves as well as they myght. Thus this aduenteure fell.

<sup>a</sup> Donzac.

<sup>b</sup> Chalucet.

*Howe the duke of Berrey maryed the lady Mary his daughter to the erle of Bloyes sonne; and howe the same yere the sonne of the duke of Berrey maryed the lady Mary of Fraunce, suster to the yong kynge Charles of Fraunce.*

## C A P. CXXIII.\*

IN the yere of our lorde God, a thousande thre hūdred fourscore and sixe, in the moneth of August, Guye the erle of Bloyes and the Lady Mary his wyfe departed fro ȝ townne of Bloyes, well acompanyed with knyghtes and squyers, ladyes and damoselles, to go into Berrey; and they had with theym their yonge sonne, who hadde syaunced the yere before Mary, doughter to the duke of Berrey: and the entencyon of the erle of Bloyes and of the cōtesse his wyfe was, that whan they shulde come to Burgus<sup>b</sup> in Berrey to procede to ȝ sayd maryage; in lykewise it was the entencyon of the duke of Berrey and of the duchesse his wyfe. Thus whā all these parties were come togyder, than these two chyl dren were ioyned togider in mariage in the churche of saynt Stephyn in Burgus<sup>b</sup> by a Cardynall: the chauncellour of Berrey and the bysshoppe of Poyters had the yere before ensured theym tougyder. At this maryage of Loyes of Bloyes and of the lady Mary of Berrey, in the cytie of Burgus,<sup>b</sup> was made great feest and tryumphes with iustes and turneyes: this feest endured eight dayes. Whā this was accomplisshed, the erle of Bloyes and the countesse tooke leaue of the duke of Berrey and of the duchesse, and so returned to Bloyes, and hadde with them their yonge doughter: also in the same yere Johñ of Berrey, sonne to the duke of Berrey, called Erle of Mountpensier, maryed the lady Mary of Fraunce, suster to the yonge kynge of Fraūce. In the same yere that these maryages were thus made, in the tyme of lente, the duchesse of Berrey, and Mary of Fraunce her doughter, and her sonne, rode to the townne of Bloyes, to se the Erle Bloyes and the countesse and their chyl dren. They were receuyed into the Castell of Bloyes with great ioie. At all these maters I sir Johan Froissarte was present: and whan they had been there in great feest thre dayes, they departed and toke their way to Poyters; but they went by water by the ryuer of Loyre to Amboyse, and fro thens in chares and on horsebacke tyll they came to Poytou. There the duchesse helde her house moost cōmonly in a good castell and good townne called Chynon. In this yere dyed Mary of Fraunce, beyng yonge, who was wyfe to the erle of Mountpensier: in lykewise soone after dyed, the lady Jane of Armynake, duchesse of Berrey. Thus the duke of Berey and his sonne were to marry agayne (as they dyd) but nat ouer soone; of the whiche maryages, and specyallye of the dukes, I shall shewe you hereafter, whan the mater shall requyre to haue it declared.

Ye haue well herde here before, howe the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> had defyed the French kyng dispytefully, whiche was spoken of far and nere; for as the brute was, it was nat done in no curtesse maner, but out of the style and vsage of all other defyaunces. Trouthe it is, I sawe myselfe certayne writynges in paper, the whiche was sayde to be the true copy; but bycause I sawe it nat vnder seale, nor aproued as such maters ought to be that touche great princes, suche as is the Frenche kyng, therefore I gaue no great credence therto: howebeit, it semed well that this defyaunce was displeasunt to the realme, and wolde haue it amended; and that the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> shulde excuse hym  
of

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CXIX.

<sup>b</sup> Bourges.<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.



of the spytefull wordes that were in the defyaunce. The kynges cōsaille wolde in no wyse that the mater shulde rest so, for the great lordes of Fraunce sayde, Without the kyng founde some remedy, they and all the realme shulde be greatly to blame; and they sayd howe the kyng was yonge and forwarde, and ŷ was well sene in his journey in Flaunders, and if he go nat forwarde nowe to reuenge this dede, men wolde speke dyuerslye of the nobles of the realme of Fraunce, who shulde counsaile the kyng, and are sworne to kepe and defende his honour, and to reſourne all that is mysordred; and to the entent that the kyng nor the realme shulde beare no blame, the lorde of Coucy toke payne in the mater, and shewed well howe the mater touchded hym nere: he knewe the almayns<sup>a</sup> better thā he dyde any other, for he hadde been often in their cōpanyes, as well for the chalenge that he made to the duchy of Austryche,<sup>b</sup> as for other insydentes that he hadde amonge them.

The kynges vnclis sawe well howe all the nobles of the realme were well enclnyed to haue the mater redressed, and specially the duke of Burgoyne hadde great affectyon therto, for the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> haryed and pylled the duchesse of Brabantes cuntry, the whiche enherytaunce shulde retourne to hym after ŷ dethe of the two ladyes, who were right aged, both the duches and her sustre; wherefore he wolde that outhy by warre or other meanes that the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> were apeased; howebeit, fyrst of all it was requisyte to make all the membres of Fraunce one, and of one opinyon: for it shulde be a farre journey for the kyng to go out of Fraunce into Almaygne<sup>a</sup> to conqueere landes and countreis, the whiche the kyng coulde nat do, without he had all his hole puyssaunce with hym: for it was nat knowen whyder the almaynes,<sup>a</sup> who be couetous people, wolde helpe and assyst the duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> or nat: also furthermore, the duke of Burgoyne and the other noble men of Fraunce sawe well howe the duke of Bretayne was in great differēce with the realme of Fraunce, and began marueylously, and shewed by his dedes that he had as lyue haue warre with ŷ realme of Fraūce as peace; and the lordes knewe well howe he prouyded his townes, castels, and cyties with great prouysion of men, vitayls, and artillery, to defende any siege; and besydes that, often tymes he wrote into Englande with louynge treatable wordes to make alyauce for euer: and the Englysshmen were wyllyng therto, to the entent that their warre with Fraunce myght be the better for them after. Thanne the counsaile of Fraūce wolde nat that there shulde be lefte behynde them suche a myst in Bretayne, but that first it myght be putte away by good meanes and condute: they thought they wolde nat putte the realme in that doute. If the kyng shulde go into Almaygne,<sup>a</sup> and leaue the realme destytute (as this the kynges vnclis ymagined), they wyste nat howe to stoppe the duke of Bretayne, for as than suche as they had sent thyder were returned, as the bysshoppe of Lāgers, sir Johan of Vyen, and sir Johan de Beull. They shewed the kyng and his vnclis howe they had done nothing to purpose. Thā the duke of Berry adused to sende to Bretayne, to entreat with the duke his cosyn, the erle of Stampes, who was a sage persone and a treatable. Than the duke desyred hym, and sayde, Fayre cosyn, it behoueth that ye go into Bretaygne, to speke with our cosyn the duke there; if ye fynde hym harde and highe of wordes, chafe nat with hym, treat hym swetely and after a good maner, and speke sagely to hym, and bring hym into good reason and it may be: and shewe hym howe the kyng and I and my brother of Burgoyne wolde nothing to hym but good loue and peace; and if he wyll abyde and holde with vs, we shall alwayes be redy to do hym pleasure: and also shewe hym, that as for the castels that he holdeth of the cōstables, how that for a small occasion he hath ceased them; but and it wolde please hym to rendre them agayne, it shulde be greatly to his honour; and howe that the kyng shall gyue hym as fayre and as good as they be, in any other place where he wyll

<sup>a</sup> Germans.<sup>b</sup> Austria.<sup>c</sup> Guelders.

wyll chose in the realme. Good cosyn, do so moche as to bringe vs some good tydinges, and for any tarieng there departe nat fro hym tyll ye bring some mater to passe; and hauc well in your remembrauce all this busynesse and all his answeyre, and the order of his estate. The erle of Stampes answered and sayde, Sir, all this shal be done right gladly.

After that the erle of Stāpes had this charge fro the duke of Berey to go into Bretayne to the duke his cosyn, he taried nat long, but made hymselfe redy and passed by Chartres and through the good countre of Mayne, and so came to Angers, and there founde the quene of Naples, who hadde ben wyfe to the duke of Aniou, who was called kyng of Naples, of Cicyle, of Hierusalem, and duke of Pole,<sup>a</sup> of Calabre, and erle of Prouence; and in her company her two fayre sonnes, Loyes and Charles. The lady receuyed her cosyn the erle of Stampes ioyfully; and there was Johñ of Bretayne, who loued nat the duke of Bretayne, but he was nat in power to shewe forthe his yuell wyll, nor to amende it. Whan therle of Stampes had ben there a daye and a night, he tooke his leaue and departed and rode to Clasteaulx,<sup>b</sup> and iourneyed so long that he came to the cyte of Nautes, and there refreshed hym; and than he demaüded where the duke was; and it was shewed hym howe he was in the marches of Wēnes;<sup>c</sup> and there foude the duke, who receuyed him ioyously, for they were nere cosyns togider. The erle of Stampes, who right well coude acquyte hymselfe amonge great princes and ladyes (for he had been brought vp amonge theym in his youthe), acquytedde hymselfe right sagely with the duke, and shewed nat the princypall affectyon of his corage at his firste comynge, but dissymuled two or thre dayes: and whan he sawe his tyme, he humyled hymselfe greatlye to the duke, the rather therby to drawe hym to his entent, and than sayd, Sir and my right dere cosyn, ye ought nat to marueyle thoughte I am come so farre of to se you, for greatlye I haue desyred it; and than notably he shewed hym the charge that he hadde to saye to hym, on the behalfe of the duke of Berrey: of the whiche wordes the duke made light; and for resolution of answeyre at that tyme the duke sayde, Cosyn, we knowe well this that ye haue sayde is trewe. I shall remembre me, and ye shall abyde here with vs as long as it shal please you, for your comyng dothe vs great pleasure. Other annswere the erle coulde nat haue as at that tyme. The erle taryed there a fyftene dayes, and the duke shewed hym gret loue, and shewed hym the fayre castell of Ermyñ, whiche was nere to Wannes, the whiche the duke had newly made, and there he toke parte of his pastaūce; and alwayes whanne he sawe a conuentyente tyme, he shewed swetely and sagely the cause of his comyng: and euer the duke answered hym so couertly, that the erle coulde haue no suretie in any answeyre to make any restytucion of a hundred thousande frankes, nor of the castels that he helde of the constables, the whiche yet at the ende he dyd, and that was without request of any persone, whan it was leste loked for (as I shall shewe you hereafter as I was enfourmed.) Whan f̄ erle Stampes sawe that he laye there in vayne, than he thought to take his leaue, and to retourne into Fraunce; and so he dyd. The duke gaue hym leaue, and at his departyng gaue hym a fayre whyte palfrey, aparelled and it had ben for a kyng, and gaue hym a fayre ryng with a stone, well worthe a thousande frankes. Thus the erle departed and retourned by Angers, and there founde the quene of Napoles and Johan of Bretayne, who greatlye desyred to here tydynges, and sayd, Fayre cosyn, I thynke ye haue sped well, for ye haue taryed longe out. Than the erle shewed parte of his busynesse, but fynally howe he had spedde nothyng. Whan he had taryed there a day, he departed and went to Towrs, and at last came in to Berrey, and founde the duke at Mehyn,<sup>d</sup> a castell of his, whiche he had newly made, and had workemen dayly theron. Whan the duke of Berrey sawe the erle of Stampes, he made hym good chere, and demaüded tydinges

<sup>a</sup> Apulia<sup>b</sup> Chantoccaux.<sup>c</sup> Vannes.<sup>d</sup> Mehun-sur-Yèvre.

tydinges of Bretayne. There he declared fro poynt to poynte all that he had sene and herde, and sayde, howe in no wyse he coulde breke the duke of Bretayne fro his purpose. The duke of Berrey passed the mater lyghtly, whan he sawe it wolde be none otherwyse, and so retorned into Fraunce to the king and to the duke of Burgoyne his brother, and shewed them howe he had sente into Bretaygne to the duke his cosyn the erle of Stamples, and declared in euery poynt howe he had spedde. Thus the mater rested, whan they sawe none other remedy.

*Howe after the departynge of the duke of Lancaster, all that ever he had wonne in Galyce, the frenchmen recovered it in lesse than fyftene dayes; and howe the englishmen that had ben there ⁊ that warre defamed and spake yuell of the couñtre of Galyce; and howe the frenche kynge sent for the duke of Irelande.*

CAP. CXXIII.<sup>a</sup>

IT hath been resyted here before in this hystory, howe the englysshmen dyd in Galyce, and howe the duke, and the duchesse, and his doughter, came to ſy<sup>b</sup> Porte<sup>b</sup> of Portyn-gale, and there taryed a season with kynge Johan of Portugale and with the yonge quene, doughter to the duke of Lancaster (as ye haue herde here before): it annoyed greatly the duke, and nat without a cause, in that he had done nothyng for his profyte all that season in Castyle, but that he hadde done was to his great damage; his men deed of sykenes, of the best of his company, knyghtes and squyers, and suche conquest as he hadde made with great payne and cost, he sawe well it shulde be soone recovered agayne by the kynge of castell; and indede so it was: for as sone as he was departed and entred into Portugale, and that the spanyardes and knyghtes of Fraunce, suche as were taryed there with syr Olyuer of Clesquyn,<sup>c</sup> constable of Castyle, sawe that the duke of Lancaster was departed, and that in maner all his englysshmen were departed fro hym, than they sette forwarde to reconquere agayne all that had ben loste of the realme of Castyle, the whiche was sone done, for they of the townes, castels, and cyties in Galyce had rather to haue ben vnder the obeysaunce of the kynge of Castyle than vnder the duke of Lancaster, without he had ben able to haue kepte the felde, to haue defended the countrey; for they of Castyle, Lombardy, and of Italy, of vsage euer they saye (Lyue he that is strongest, and he that wynneth). All that euer the duke of Lancaster had wonne fro the feast of Easter to the begynnyng of July, all was wonne agayne, and refreshed with newe frenchmen and men of Castyle; and the englysshmen that were left there by the duke in garysons (who thought to haue taryed there peasably all the wynter) were sone put out, outhy by fayre meanes or perforce, and some slayne, suche as wolde nat yeld vp, and some returned by sauecōducte to passe by Portugale, and so to Bayon or to Burdeaux: and of all this the duke of Lancaster was well aduertysed, he beyng in the cytie of Porte<sup>b</sup> in Portugale; but he coude nat remedy it, whiche was ryght sore dyspleasaunte, to his herte: it is nat to be beleued the contrary, for the more noble, valyaunt, and sage that a man is, displeasures to hym be the more bytter and paynefull; howebeit, the duke wolde say often tymes (and bare out a good face), If we haue lost this yere, by the grace of god another season shall be for vs: the fortunes of this worlde are meruaylous; they can nat be always permanente: also the kynge of Portugale gaue hym alwayes good comforte, and sayde, Syr, ye may abyde here and kepe your astate, and wryte to youre bretherne and frendes in Englande, that they

maye

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXX.<sup>b</sup> Oporto.<sup>c</sup> Du Guesclin.

maye sende you this nexte Marche a fyue or syxe hundred speares, and two thousande archers : and I shall gather togyder my power and people, who haue good myndes to make warre into Castyle ; and so we shall make a good warre : somtyme one countrye wynneth and another leseth. The duke of Lancastre thanked the kyng of Portugale of his good comforte and offre ; howebeit, for all that the kyng was f̄ dukes sonne in lawe, and had maryed his daughter, and that he sayde was of a good wyll, yet for all that the duke dyscouered nat all his corage : for he knewe well Englande was in trouble and great debate amonge the lordes, and howe the lordes hadde maters ynowe to attende vnto, as well for the kepynge of the fronters agaynst Scotlande, as for to treate with the duke of Bretayne : and the kyng knewe well, than whan the duke came out of Englande, there was ado to sette forwarde his armye ; wherefore he thought it shulde be harde to get any newe ayde thence, seinge the realme at so many great charges allredy ; and also he thought well that suche englysshmen as were retourned wolde no more come thyder agayne, but thought rather that they shulde dyscorage other to come. the duke considered all these maters in his mynde, and whan he had ben a season at the cytie of Porte<sup>a</sup> with the kyng of Portugale, than on a daye he sayd, Syr, it shulde be for my profyete to retourne to Bayon and to the marches of Burdeaux, for dyuerse reasons : he sawe well his beyng in Portugale coulede do him lytell aduaūtage, for there he was nat on his herytage that he desyred ; but he sayde his goynge into the archebysshoppriche of Burdeaux and of Aulose, and so to retourne by Bygore, and so by the lande of the lombrisiense,<sup>b</sup> of the countie of Foyze, and countie of Armynaque, and so by Garonne, Dordone, and entrynge into Piergourte<sup>c</sup> and Querschyn,<sup>d</sup> Rochelloys, Xayntone, Cristynge,<sup>e</sup> Poictou, Auuergne, and Lymosyn, wherin were many garysons and castels holden of the englysshe parte, who wolde all make warre for his sake ; wherefore he sayd it were better for hym to be amonge them to counsaile and encorage them, than to be in any other place : and also he sayde howe Portugale was farre of to here any newes out of Englande ; and also he knewe well f̄ the englysshmen wolde be lothe to come thyder, bycause of the long voyage by see ; and also he knewe well that shyppes of Spayne, of Galyce, and of Castyle were goynge and comynge on the see in and out to Flaunders with their marchandyses, whiche was also great daunger for encounterynge of them. All these thynges consydred, the duke of Lancastre prepared for his departynge, and had shyppes apoynted hym by the kyng, and a patrone, called Alphons Bretat.<sup>f</sup> Whan these galyes were redy, and the wynde good, the duke and the duches and her daughter toke leaue of the kyng of Portugale and of the quene, and so toke shyppyng and entred on the see, abydyng goddes pleasure and wyndes : they had wynde and wether at pleasure, so that they aryued at Bayon, of whose comynge they of the countrye were ioyfull, desyringe sore to se them.

Whan the duke and the duches and their daughter were aryued at Bayon, tydynges therof spredde abrode, and they of Burdeloys were ryght ioyfull therof. Than sir Johan of Harpdame,<sup>g</sup> seneshall of Burdeaux, and the seneshall of the landes,<sup>h</sup> came thyder to se the duke, and so dyd other gentlemen of the countrye, as the lorde of Mucydente, the lorde of Duras, the lorde of Rosem, the lorde of Landuras, the lorde Lespare, the lorde of Neweclasteaux,<sup>i</sup> and other knyghtes and squyers of the countrye. Thus they came dayly, some at one tyme, some at another ; all they offred hym their seruyce, as they ought to do to their lorde. Thus the duke taryed at Bayon, and often tymes sente into Englande to the kyng his nephewe, and to his other bretherne ; but  
for

<sup>a</sup> Oporto.<sup>b</sup> The D'Albrets.<sup>c</sup> Perigord.<sup>d</sup> Quercy.<sup>e</sup> This word Iapprehend to be introduced by mistake : the French edition says, "*en costoyant Poictou*," &c.<sup>f</sup> Before called, Vietat.<sup>g</sup> Harpedon.<sup>h</sup> "The Seneshall des Landes."

; Chastelneuf.

for all his writynge he was nothyng comforted nother with men of armes nor archers: for as the world wente than, the dukes busynesse was lytell taken hede vnto, nor lorde, knyght, nor squyer, to make any haste to auauce forward to the ayde of the duke of Lancastre; for suche as had ben in Portugale made suche reporte through the realme of Englande, that no man had corage to auauce thyder, but euery man said, the voyage into Castyle is to farre of fro vs: it is more profytable for vs to haue warre with Fraunce, for that is a good swete cuntrye and temperate, and good lodgynges and fayre swete ryuers; and in Castyle there is nothyng but harde rockes and mountaynes, whiche are nat good to eate, and an vntemperate ayre, and troubled ryuers, and dyuerse meates, and stronge wynes and hote, and poore people, rude and yuell arayed, farre of fro our maner; wherfore it were folly to go thyder, for if we entre into any great cytie or towne there, wenyng to fynde maruayles, we shall fynde nothyng but wyne, larde, and empty cofers. This is contrarye to the realme of Fraunce, for there, when it is fortune to wyn any towne or cytie, we fynde suche rychesse that we be abashed therof; and it is good to make warre where we may haue profyte. Let vs aduenture there, and leaue the vnhappy warre of Castyle and Portugale, where is nothyng but pouertye and damage. Thus the englysshemen sayde in Englande, suche as had ben in Castyle, so that the lordes perceyued well howe that voyage was out of the fauoure of the englysshemen; also the realme was in trouble, and the iustyce on Triuylyen<sup>a</sup> and outhur but newly done, and the duke of Irelande departed out of the realme, and kynge Rycharde came to the guydynge of newe counsaile, the whiche he hadde nat well lerned: so by reason of suche insydentes the matters abode in harde case for the duke of Lancastre, beyng in the cytie of Bayon, where he helde all that season.

All these busynesses, as well in Castyle and Portugale as in Englande (and of the departyng of the duke of Irelande) was well knowne with the frenche kynge and his counsaile. Than to haue more parfyte knowledge, it was ordayned by the frenche kynge and by his vnclis to sende to Trechte<sup>b</sup> to y<sup>e</sup> duke of Irelande, where as he was, and to gyue hym a sure saueconduct to come into Fraunce, and to tarye there as longe as bothe parties were pleased. It was behouable to sende for hym by speccyall messengers and sure wrytyng fro the kyng, or els the duke of Irelande wolde nat haue come there, for he knewe well that he was out of the loue and fauoure of the lorde Coucy, who was a great baron in the realme of Fraunce, and was of a great lynage: he had no cause to loue hym (as ye haue herde before), for acordynge to the trouthe the duke had nat well acquyted hymselfe to his wyfe, who was daughter to the lorde Coucy; and certainly it was the principall thing that toke awaye the good renome of his honour, bothe in Fraunce and in other places: and in lykewyse he was blamed, defamed, and hated in Englande, as well as in Fraunce. When the frenche kynge had concluded to sende for the duke of Irelande, the lorde of Coucy spake as moche agaynst it as he myght; but there were so many reasons layde to hym (and also bycause the kyng wolde haue it), that he was contente to suffre it. The frenche kynge, who was but yong, desyred greatly to se the duke of Irelande, bycause he was reputed to be a good knyght, and also bycause it was sayd howe he was so well beloued with the kynge of Englande. Than he was sente for by a knyght and a clerke, a notary of the kynges. When the duke of Irelande herde fyrste howe the frenche kynge had sente for hym, he had maruayle therof, and hadde dyuerse imagynacyons for what entente he shulde be sente for into Fraunce; howbeit, fynally he thought he myght go surely into Fraunce to se the kynge, by reason of his saueconduite, and to returne agayne at his pleasure. Than he departed fro Trecht,<sup>b</sup> and rode forth with them that the kyng had sent to hym, and rode so longe that they came to Paris, for as than the kyng was there in his castell of Lowre.<sup>c</sup> There

<sup>a</sup> Tresillian.<sup>b</sup> Utrecht.<sup>c</sup> The Louvre.

the duke was well receyued of the kyng and of his vnclcs; the frenche kyng desyred him to abyde there styll, and apoynted hym a place to kepe his house and astate in, for the duke had ynough so to do, for he had conueyed out of Englande good ynough; and also ¶ constable of Fraunce ought hym certayne money for the raunsome of Johan of Bre- tayne, the whiche was nat all payed as than. Thus the duke wente when it pleased hym to se the kyng, and hadde good chere; and at all feastes, iustes, and triumphes, the duke was alwayes sente for.

*Howe the Constable of France wolde nat acorde that the king shulde go into Al- mayne, bycause of the insydenes of the realme: and howe the duke of Bretaygne founnysshed his garysons and made alyauce with the kyng of Englande, and with the kyng of Nauerre: and of the army made by the englysshemen.*

### CAP. CXXV.\*

YE haue herde before howe the erle de Stampes was sent into Bretayne by the duke of Berrey, thynkyng to haue brought the duke of Bretayne with fayre wordes to his mynde and entensyon; but he coulde nat bryng it aboute, but retourned agayne with- out atteynynge any thyng of his purpose, wherof they in Fraunce were greatly abashed, and specially suche as were of the kynges counsaile: for they knewe well the kyng had great desyre to go into Almayne,<sup>b</sup> to se the landes of his cosyns the duke of Julyers, and to be reuenged of the hygh wordes and cruell defyaunces of the duke of Guerles.<sup>c</sup> The wyse men of the counsaile of Fraunce, suche as conceyued well the mater, imagyned therein great parrill to the realme, for they clerely perceyued howe the duke of Bretayne wolde in no wyse condyscende to reason, but helde styll his purpose; they thought it was greatly preiudycyall to the honoure of the realme of Fraunce, for hym to take the constable of Fraunce, and to sette hym at raunsome at a hundred thousande frankes, and to kepe thre of his castelles, and a good towne; and also they sawe howe the duke of Bretayne was makynge of great alyauces with the kyng of Englande, and knewe well howe the duke fortified greatly his townes and castels in Bretayne, and went aboute to get hym frendes in dyuers partyes, in so moche that many of the noble menne of Bretayne wyste nat what to do, outhur to go into Fraunce, or to abyde there styll with the duke, and to take his parte agaynst the kyng or the realme of Fraunce, the whiche they neuer thought to do, for the moste parte of the knyghtes and squyers of Bretayne were alwayes good frenche; but the counsaile of Fraunce doubted that if the kyng wente out of the realme with his puyssaunce, the whiche he muste nedes do if he shulde goo into Almayne,<sup>b</sup> that than the duke of Bretayne to bring into his coun- trey the englysshmen, outhur at saynte Malowe, at saynt Mathewes, or at Lamballe, or Camperle,<sup>d</sup> or Lantriguier,<sup>e</sup> at Guerrande, or Bownte, or at Wennes,<sup>f</sup> or on the see coste: for the englysshemen coulde nat haue a better entre into Fraunce than by Bre- tayne; so that they knewe nat, (the kynges honour saued,) howe to breke the duke of Bretayne fro his purpose: some of the kynges counsaile sayde, it shall be to the kynges dyshonour if he breke nat the dukes purpose, for ¶ duke is nat lorde peasably ouer his owne cuntry: for we thynke the lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, of Bretayne, wyll nat be agaynst vs, to mayntayne the dukes opynion; therfore in the name of god, lette  
the

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CXXI.

<sup>d</sup> Quimperle.

<sup>e</sup> Treguier.

<sup>b</sup> Germany.

<sup>f</sup> Vannes.

<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.

the kyng kepe on his voyage, and lette the constable and other lordes abyde in their countreys and defende the Realm. This opynyon was well vpholde with many of the kynges counsayle; but than some other sayde naye therto: and sayde, howe the kyng coulde nat well go out of his realme without he had his constable with hym, for he is more wyser, and hathe more experyence in warre than a great nombre of other. Thus they argued. Than some other sayd, lette two of the kynges vnclges go, or one of them at the lest: and layde it to the duke of Burgoyne that he shulde go with two thousande speares, and syxe or seuen thousande of other men of warre, and sayde, it was moste metest for hym to go, for that warre touched hym nere, bycause it moued by reasone of the duchy of Brabante: and that he shulde haue with him them of Brabante, of whome he shulde fynde in nombre to the some of seuen hundred speares, and xx. or thurty thousande of other comons of the countrey of Brabante. Than another sorte sayde, sirs, your opynyons be nat good, for the kyng wyll go; he nameth hymselfe the chyefe of this warre, for he is defyed, wherfore he muste go; consydrynge the charge is his, it is good that he go, for he is yonge, and the more he yuell handelers the warre, the better he shall loue it. Than some other sayd, who is he that is so hardy to counsayle the kyng to go into Almayne,<sup>a</sup> into so farre a countrey, amonge theym that be hyghe and prowde people, and great parrill it is to entre vpon them; and if the kyng were entred, yet it were great daunger the retournynge agayne: for whan they shall knowe the kyng and all the nobles of Fraunce to be entred into their countrey, they wyll than assemble all togyder, and kepe suche a countrey as they knowe, and we nat, and so they maye do vs great damage, for they are couetous people aboute all other: and they haue no pytie if they haue the vpper hande, and are harde and yuell handelers of their prisoners, and putteth them to sondry paynes to compell theym to make their raunsomes the greater; and if they haue a lorde or a great man to their prisoner, they make great ioye therof, and wyll conuey hym into Boesme, or into Austriche, or into Xasenne,<sup>b</sup> and kepe hym in some castell inhabytable; they are people worse than sarazins or paynyms, for their excessyue couetousnesse quenche the knowledge of honoure; lette vs go and put the kyng in daunger amonge these people, and if any thyng happen to fall amysse, as the chaunces of fortune are maruaylous, what shall be sayde than? howe we haue brought the kyng thyder to betray him, and to the destruction of the realme, and nat for the augmentynge therof; God defende the realme fro all damage and parrill; if the kyng go he muste haue parte of his noblemen with hym; and if myssefortune fall, the realme of Fraunce is loste without recouery; therefore loke wysely if it be good to counsayle the kyng to go that voyage into Almayne.<sup>c</sup> Than some other, suche as had wysely coniected all parrilles in their imagynacions, sayd: In the name of god lette nother the kyng go, nor yet sende thyder no puyssaunce; for though the duke of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> who is but yonge, and that youthe of wytte haue made hym to defye the kyng, whiche was nat done by no grete wysdome, nor good counsayle, but rather done by folissh pride of yonge people, who wolde flye or they haue wynges; and sythe he hathe thus defyed the kyng, lette hym alone and suffre hym to pursewe his defyaunce; the realme of Fraunce is great: if he entre into the realme in any maner of wyse, the kinge shall sone be enfourmed therof, and than he shall haue a iuste cause to styrre vp his people, and to go and fyght agaynste hym where so euer he fynde hym, or els to make hym flye, or yelde hym in the felde, and therby the kyng shall haue more honour, and lesse charge than to go into Guerles:<sup>e</sup> for suche as knowe the countrey saye, that or we can come to the duke, if he lyst, we must passe a foure great ryuers, the leste of them as great as the ryuer of Loyre, at Namurs or Charite: also they say it is a fowle countrey, and yuell lodgynges.

2 Z 2

The

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Bohemia, Austria, or Saxony.<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.

The noble men and counsaylours of Fraunce were thus in dyuers imaginacyons on this voyage that the kyng wolde make into Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and surely it had ben auained the soner forwarde, and they had nat douted the venym that myght growe by the occasion of Bretayne, and of the dnke there, that mater drewe them abacke; and indede they had good cause to doute it, for the duke of Bretayne was well informed of the defyaunce that the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> hadde made to the Frenche kyng, and howe that the yonge kyng Charles wolde go into Almayne.<sup>c</sup> The duke loked for nothyng els, but that the kyng shulde be ones departed out of his Realme of Fraunce; he hadde ordeyned and concluded bytwene hym and the englysshemen, to suffre the englysshe army to entre into his country; and also he had by subtile meanes, drawn to his acorde the moste parte of the good townes of Bretaygne, and specyally Nautes, Wennes,<sup>e</sup> Rennes, Lentrignier,<sup>d</sup> Guerrade, Lambale, saynte Malo, and saynte Mathewe de fyn poterne: but the noble men he coulde nat gette to his opynyon. Than the duke imagyned if the lordes shulde go with the constable of Fraunce into Almayne,<sup>e</sup> thanne his warre and entente shulde the soner come to passe; he caused his townes and castels to be well prouyded for with vytayles and artyllary, and he shewed well howe he inclined rather to the warre than to haue pease; also he had great alyauce with Charles, the yonge kyng of Nauerre, and the duke promysed hym, that if he might come to his entent, (to haue puyssaunce of men of armes and archers out of Englade,) he wolde bringe them straight into Normandy, and recouer fyrst the good townes and castels that kyng Charles of Fraunce, vncl to the kyng of Nauerre, had taken fro hym by his men, as the lorde of Coucy, and outhur. Of this the kyng of Nauer had great trust, and by reason therof he helde in humble loue the duke of Lancastre, who was at Bayon, for bytwene theym was great alyauces. And of all this I sawe great apparence, as I shall shewe after.

In the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and eyght, the seuenth daye of Aprell, it was concluded by the kyng of Englande, and his counsayle, and by his vncl, the duke of Yorke, and the duke of Glocestre, that the erle Rycharde of Arundell shulde be heed and chefe of an army on the see: with hym a thousande men of armes, and thre thousande archers, and to be at Hamton the fyfene day of May, and there to fynde his nauy redy apparelled, and euery man that was apoynted to go, to be there redy at that daye. And the kyng of Englande, on saynte Georges daye nexte after, helde a great feast at his castell of Wyndesore; and there were the chefe lordes that shulde go with therle of Arundell, and there they toke their leaues of the kyng, and of the quene, and of all other ladyes, and so came to Hampton at their daye apoynted, and entred into their shyppes the twenty day of May, whiche was a fayre clere day; there was the erle of Arundell, the erle of Notyngham, the Erle of Deuonshyre, syr Thomas Percy, the lorde Clifford, sir Johñ of Warewyke, sir Wyllyam de la Selle,<sup>e</sup> the lorde Cameux,<sup>f</sup> syr Stephyn de Libery, syr Wyllyam Helman, syr Thomas Moreaux, syr Johan Dambreticourt, syr Roberte Sere, sir Peter Mountbery, sir Loys Clombe,<sup>g</sup> sir Thomas Coq,<sup>h</sup> syr Wyllyam Pulle,<sup>i</sup> and dyners other; they were of good men of armes a thousande speares, and aboute a thre thousande archers; they had with them no horses, for they trusted if they might come to their ententes to entre into Bretayne, and there to reffresse them where as they shulde fynde horses ynowe at a good price to serue them. The daye that they departed fro Hampton was so fayre and peasable that it was meruayle; they drewe towards Normady, nat purposyng to lande  
in

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> Shelly.—*Johnes*.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>d</sup> Camois.—*Ibid.*<sup>e</sup> Vannes.<sup>f</sup> Clanbow.—*Ibid.*<sup>g</sup> Treguier.<sup>h</sup> Cook.—*Ibid.*<sup>i</sup> Pault.—*Ibid.*



in any parte, but to passe by the fronters of Normandy, and Bretayne, tyll they herde other newes. They had in their many certayne vessels called Ballengers,<sup>a</sup> who sayled on before to se if they myght fynde any aduventure, in lyke maner as knyghtes do by lande go before the bataylles, to dyscouer the coūtreȳ and enbushes.

Nowe we shall leaue a season of spekyng of this army, and speke somewhat of the busynesse of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and Brabant, and shewe howe the siege was layde to Graue.

*Howe the brabantsoys layde siege to the towne of Graue. And howe the constable of Fraunce toke saynte Malo, and saynte Mathewes, and set there men in garyson: and howe the duke of Lancastre was at Bayon greatly dyscomforted, in that he coulde gette no maner of ayde.*

C A P. CXXVI.<sup>c</sup>

AS it hath been shewed here before of the auncyent dukes of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and howe the eldest sonne of the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> (of whome I treat at this present tyme,) was maryed to the daughter of Berthalte of Malynes,<sup>d</sup> therby to bringe him out of daunger, and to redeme agayne his herytage, the whiche was in sore trouble before, and the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> sonne to the duke of Julyers, to entertayne and to kepe ȳ towne of Graue agaynst the brabantsoys, as he had cause and iuste tytle. When he sawe howe he coulde nat gette agayne his thre castels, Gauleth, Buth, and Nulle,<sup>e</sup> on the ryuer of Muse, pertaynyng to his herytage, and to the country of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> thought than to attrybute the towne of Graue to his herytage for euer. This duke had a bastarde daughter, maryed to the sonne of the lorde Bruke, who was enherytour to the towne of Graue; so there was an amyable treatye bytwene them, as bytwene the fader and the sonne; and there the lorde of Bruke gaue the towne and sygnory of Graue to the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> in presence of the knyghtes of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and Juliers: and for that cause the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> dyd recompence the lorde of Bruke with the landes of Bresde,<sup>f</sup> on the ryuer of Lighen,<sup>g</sup> in the duchy of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> marchyng on the country of Holande, aboue Brabaunte. At this towne of Bresde<sup>f</sup> there was a fayre castell, and the towne great and profytable; howbeit, the towne of Graue was better. This duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> dyd, to the entent to haue a iuste tytle to kepe the towne of Graue agaynst the brabantsoys. The duches of Brabant, and the brabantsoys, said, howe the lorde of Bruke had it but to pledge, and that they myght quyte it out when they wolde: but the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> sayd naye therto; by reason wherof the warre moued; so that in the moneth of May, the brabantsoys came and layde syege to the towne of Graue, with many lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, and with the puyssaunce of other good townes in Brabante: and thyder they brought engyns, springals, and other habylimentes of warre; they were a xl. thousande, one and other, there was skrymysshynge dayly. The towne of Graue standeth on the ryuer of Muese, on the syde of Brabante, and there is a bridge ouer the ryuer to go into the country of Guerles.<sup>b</sup> At this siege euery thyng was plenty, and as good chepe of euery thyng, as though they had been before Brusels. Euery day there was skrymysshynge at the baryers of Graue, of suche as wolde aduventure themselves; sometyme they were put abacke, and sometyme they droue their enemyes into their towne,

as

<sup>a</sup> See ante, p. 242.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXII.<sup>d</sup> Mechlin.<sup>e</sup> Gambet, Euet, and Mille.<sup>f</sup> Breda.<sup>g</sup> Merck.

as chaunce of aduerture fell. The duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was well informed of this siege, he laye a foure leagues fro Nymarse,<sup>b</sup> and wrote oftentimes into Englande, where he trusted to haue socoure by reason of the englysshe army, wherof the erle of Arundell was capytayne on the see, as sone as wynde and wether wyll serue them to come to Guerles,<sup>a</sup> to reyse the syege before Graue. The duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> knewe well that the towne of Graue was strong and well fortyfyed, so that he thought it coulde nat be wonne by none assaute, but outhr by trayson or by treatye; he trusted theym of Graue to be sure and faythfull to hym. Thus the siege endured longe before Graue, and the erle of Arundels army was on the see, and tooke no lande, but styll kepte on the fronters of Normandy, so that the normans fro agaynst Mounte saynt Mychell, and downe alonge to Depe, to saynt Valery, and to Crotoy, were nat well assured wherto they shulde take hede; the portes and hauens of Normandy were refreshed by the frenche kynge, with good men of armes and crosebowes, to resyste agaynste all parelles: and by the marshall of Blankewyll<sup>c</sup> was sette in the towne of Carentyne, standynge on the see, (whiche before of olde tyme pertayned to the herytage of kynge Charles of Nauerre,) the lorde of Ambre, and the lorde Coucy, two gret lordes of Normandy. And the Constable of Fraunce toke the towne of saynte Malo, and the towne of saynte Mathewes. And as soone as they knewe that the englysshemen were on the see, they sette men into those townes in the name of the frenche kyng. In this season they thought surely to haue open warre with the duke of Bretayne, for the knyghtes and squyers sayde, that the armye on the see of the englysshmen were sente thyder for none other purpose, but sente for by the duke of Bretayne to lande in his cuntry; they sayd it was none other lykely, for alwayes the shyppes kepte on the coste of Bretaygne, without force of wether sometyme caused them to departe: yet alwayes breuely they returned agayne to the same coste.

Ye haue herde here before howe the duke of Lācastre was departed out of the realmes of Castyle, and Portugale: the imaginacyons that he had, turned hym to great dyspleasure, for he sawe well his busynesse was sore troubled and darked, as fortune oftentimes falleth in sondrie persons, somtyme good, somtyme yuell, when it is lest thought on: for whan the duke of Lancastre departed out of the realme of Englande, acōpanyed with good mē of armes and archers, he thought than to haue sped otherwise than he dyde: he sawe and herde howe that in xv. dayes he had loste all Galyce, whiche was a long season or he had won it, the space of xvi. wekes; and besyde that his men deed and sparclēd abrode, some here and sōe there, and hoped of no conforte out of Englade, for the Englysshmen were wery of the warre of Spaygne: they thought it ouer long and farre of fro them; so the duke of Lancastre thought his busynesse in a harde case, seyng no conforte: he spake lytell but he thought moche more: in his ymaginacyon he lycōned his journey to the voiage that the duke of Aniou made into the realme of Naples, for whan he departed out of the realme of Fraunce, he was well furnysshed of all maner of thyng, and wente with great richesse, puissaunce, and a great nombre of noble men of armes, knyghtes and squiers, and at the ende all were slayne and lost. Thus the duke of Lancastre reckoned his voyage to come to nothyng, by reason of suche disconforte as he had. The erle of Foiz, who was in his cuntry of Bierne, and was right sage and ymaginatyue, sayd, and accompted the duke of Lācasters vyage but lost, as in recoueryng of the realme of Castyle, whiche he chalenged. The duke of Lācastre, who was a sage and a wise prince, and valyaunt amonge all his disconfytures, yet somtyme he toke cōforte to hymselfe. I shall shewe you howe, and by what means.

He

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Nimeguen.

<sup>c</sup> Blainville.

He sawe well he had a fayre daughter by the lady Custaunce his wyfe, daughter to done Peter, kyng of Castyle, in whose right and clayme he made his warre in Castyle; he thought, though fortune were agaynst hym at that tyme, yet it myght tourne good to his daughter, who was fayre and yonge, for she had ryght to the heritage of Castyle, by reason of her mother, and thought ȳ some valyaunt man of Fraunce wolde be gladde to couet to haue her in maryage, as well for the right that she hadde to the realme of Castyle, as for her hyghe lynage: for it myght well be sayde, that her extraction was of the hyghest lynage of Christendome: wherfore the duke of Lancastre wolde gladly haue had some treatie of mariage with some noblemā of Fraunce; he knewe well the Frēche kyng had a yong brother called the duke of Towrayne, who he thought shulde be able to recouer his daughters ryght in Castyle, for he knewe well that the puyssaunce of Fraunce helde in his aduersaries in the heritage of Castile; wherfore he thought, ȳ if they wolde take his parte, they myght lightly putte his daughter in possession of the realme of Castyle, if he myght marry her to the Frenche kynges brother.

*Howe the duke of Berrey sent letters to the duke of Lancastre to Bayon, and howe the duke sent the cōpye of the same letters into Foiz, and into Nauer, to theuent to haue them publysshed in Spayne. And howe the duke of Bretayn demaunded cōsaille of his men in all his busynesse.*

## CAP. CXXVII.\*

ON this ymaginacyon rested the duke of Lancastre, nat all onely on the duke of Towrayne, but also on the duke of Berrey, for (as ye haue herde here before,) ȳ duke of Berrey and his sonne were widowers, bothe their wyues deed. This mater, I, the auctour of this boke, knewe of suretie; for the same tyme I was on the fronters of Berrey, and Poitou, in the countie of Bloys, with the right honorable lorde Guy erle of Bloys, by whom and at his desyre I folowed the cōtynuaūce of this historie. The duke of Berrey set all his entencion and pleasure to be agayne maryed, and oftē tymes he wolde say among his men, howe that a lorde was lytell worthe without a lady, nor another mā without a wyfe. Than some of his cōsaille sayd to hym, Sir, marry agayne your son, therby your house shal be the more ioyfull. A, sirs, quod the duke, my sonne is yong. Why, sir, quod they, haue ye nat sene howe the Erle of Bloyes hath maryed his sonne, who is as yonge as he, to your daughter? That is trouthe, quod the duke, let se, name a wyfe for him. Sir, quod they, we shall name the duke of Lancasters daughter. With that worde the duke studyed a season, and gaue none answer, and ymaged sore; and than to suche as were of his secrete counsaile, he sayd, ye speke to mary Johan my sonne to my cosyn, the duke of Lancasters daughter; by saynt Denyce ye haue well deuysed, but she shulde be a good wyfe for ourselfe, and shortly I shall write to our cosyn the duke of Lancastre; he is at Bayone, as I am enformed, I wolde sende hym worde howe I shall sende shortly to hym some of my counsaile to treat of this maryage; but I saye, nat for my sonne, I shall marry hym in some other place. Whan his cōsaille herde hym saye so, they smyled. Than ȳ duke demaunded wherat they smiled. Sir, quod they, we laught at that ye had rather haue a good tourne yourselfe than your sonne shulde. By my faythe, quod the duke, and good reason why:

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CXXIII.

why: for my fayre cosyn of Lancastre wyll nat so soone agre to my sonne as to myselfe. Than incontynent letters were written into highe Gascoyne, to Bayon, to the duke of Lācastre, and sente by honourable messangers. When they came to ŷ duke they delynered their letters. The duke toke and reed the, and when he had well parceyued theffecte of the mater, he was right ioyfull and made good chere to the messāgers, and shewed that he was well content therwith, and wrote agayne by them other letters ryght amiably, certifyinge the duke of Berrey howe he was right ioyfull of his letters. These messangers returned, and foūde their lorde in Poitou, preparyng hymselfe to go into Fraunce: for the Frēche kyng and the duke of Burgoyne had sent for hym, for to cōmune of the state of Bretayne: than he opnyed the letters that his cosyn the duke of Lancastre had sente hym, and had ioye of the answeare, and thought surely to pursue the matter to effecte, but he myght nat leaue his voyage into Fraunce, and so went thyder as shortely as he coude. Thanne he wrote to a knyght of his, called sir Helyon of Lignacke, who as than was seneschall of Rochell, and of the countre of Rocheloy, cōmaundyng hym that incontynent on the sight of his letters, he to sette all thyng there in good order, and than to come to hym to Parys withoute fayle. When sir Helyon of Lignac, who was at Rochell, vnderstode those tidynges, and parceyued by the duke of Berreys letters, howe he was sent for in all hast, he made hym redy, and in his absence he made two capitaynes at Rochell, two valyaunt men to be gouerners of all Rocheloy; they were of the countre of Beaulse, the one called sir Peter of yon, and the other sir Peter of Tayllepy. This done, sir Helyon tooke his waye into Fraunce the shortest way he coude, for he knewe nat what the duke wolde do with hym, that he sente for hym so hastely.

Nowe let vs sōwhat speke of the duke of Lancastre, who was at Bayon, and had great ymaginations of ŷ busynesse that his cosyn the duke of Berrey had written to hym of; first, he wolde nat that it shulde be hydden, but rather publysshed abrode, to the entent that his enemyes shulde knowe it, and specially in the house of kyng Johan of Castyle; and so the duke of Lancastre wrote to dyuers, and sent them the cōpye of the duke of Berreys letters, shewyng by his wrytyng that he had great affectyon to treate of the maryage bytwene his daughter and the duke of Berrey; first, he sent his letters to the erle of Foiz, bycause he knewe well ŷ to the erles house prepared all maner of gentylnen, knyghtes and squyers, as well cōmyng and goyng to the kyng of Spayne, as on pylgrimage to saynt James; also he wrote to the kyng of Nauer, who had to his wyfe ŷ kyng of Castels suster, and had by her many chyldren, to thentent that the brute therof shulde the better be certyfyed in the kyng of Castels court, rather than by flyeng wordes; also the duke wrote of this mater to the kyng of Portugale, but he wrote no worde therof ito England, to the kyng, nor to his bretherne, for he knewe well he shulde haue no thanke for his enterpryce, as they were nat content indede, (as ye shall here after) whan ŷ mater requyreth it. In the meane season we shall speke of other maters, as of the duke of Bretayne, the mater lyeth there after.

When the duke of Berrey was come into Fraunce to the kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne, his brother, and to other of his counsaile, as the bysshoppe of Langers, the bysshoppe of Laon, ŷ lorde of Coucy, and other barons of Fraūce, than beyng there of the kynges secrete counsaile, they had many metynges to cōmune toguyder, as well of the state of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> (whyder the kyng had great affection to go,) as of the duke of Bretaygne, whom they coude bring to no reason, nor wolde nat obey, nor wyste nat whom to sende to hym that he wolde beleue, for there hadde ben many valyant men and sage

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

sage with hym, but all that aueyled nothyng, for they coude bring nothyng to passe as they desyred, wherof the kyng and his counsaile was sore troubled: for they vnderstode well that the duke of Bretaygne had all that wynter prouyded and fortified his townes and castelles, and shewed howe by lykelyhode he hadde rather haue warre than peace; and the wysest of the counsaile sayd, we speke of goyng into Almayne,<sup>a</sup> but we ought rather to speke of goyng into Bretaygne, and to putte downe the duke there, who is so highe mynded that he wyll here no reasone, and is alwayes agaynst the crowne of Fraunce, and disdayneth to be obedyent thervnto: we shal haue no reasone of hym without we force him therto, for and if he be suffred he wyll be to presumptuous: he feareth no man, nor he loueth nor prayseth no man but hymselfe; this is a clere case, if the kyng go into Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and leaue his realme bare of men, as he muste do if he go thyder, the duke of Bretaine than wyll suffre the Englysshemen to come into his countrey, and so entre into Fraunce; the apparaunce herof is great, for there is allredy a great army of archers on the see, and they kepe styll on the coste of Bretaygne, for if wynde and wether putte theym of, yet euer they drawe thyder agayne, and lyeth there at ancre, besemyng taryeng tyll the warre be opyn: wherfore we thynke it were good yet to sende agayne to the duke, the bisshophe of Langers, and the erle of saynt Poule, for the duke and the erle haue maryed two susters. Naye, sirs, nat so, quod maister yues,<sup>b</sup> who was a very breton: if ye wyll sende to the duke agayne, ye can nat sende one more agreable to hym than the lorde of Coucy, for in lykewyse they haue maryed two susters, and haue loued marueylously togyder, and haue euer written eche to other, Fayre brother; and with the lorde of Coucy sende whom ye wyll. Well, quod the duke of Burgoyne, Maister yues, sithe ye haue begon, name you the rest. Sir, with right a good wyll, sithe it pleaseth you; with the lorde of Coucy sende sir Johan of Vyen, and the lorde de la Ryuer; these be suche thre lordes as shall bring hym to reason, if he wyll euer come to any. Thus let it be, quod the dukes of Berrey, and of Burgoyne; than they were apoynted and charged what they shulde saye, and wherupon they shulde groude their mater, and to handell hym by fayre wordes: thus they taryed a certayne space or they departed fro Parys. The duke of Bretayne knewe well of their comyng or they departed fro Parys, but he coude nat tell whan: and he sawe well the mater touched highlye in that the lorde of Coucy came; the duke had many ymaginacyons on that mater, and discovered his mynde to certayne of his counsaile, as the lorde of Mountbouchier, and demaunded counsaile of hym and of other, and sayd: Sirs, I here as the brute roneth, that the duke of Lācastre shulde mary his daughter into Fraunce, to the duke of Berrey, and the mater is so forwarde, that sir Helyon of Lignacke is goyng to the duke to Bayon, and the duke greatly enclyneth to this maryage, wherof I haue great marueyle, for my fayre brother of Lācastre hath nat written to me therof, so that I knowe nothyng of the mater but by heryng saye; he was nat accustomed so to do, for in all his maters touchyng Fraunce, he was wont to write to me. Than his counsaile answered and said, Sir, if it be thus, it must behoue you to chaūge your purpose, or els it shal be greatly to your losse and daunger, and bring your cōute into warre, whiche were good to eschewe: for ye nede nat to make warre sythe ye maye be in peace, yea, and desyred therto; also my lady your wyfe is great with chyld, the whiche ye ought to regarde; the kyng of Nauar can but lytell ayde you, for he hath ynoughe to do for hymselfe; also the duke of Lācastre, who is a sage and a valyant prince, (as it is sayd,) shall mary his daughter to the duke of Berrey; this shal be a gret begynnynge to entre into a treatie of peace bytwene Englande and Fraunce, or elles a long truse; and by reason therof ye shall se at the ende the kyng of Castell putte out of his realme, as they haue kepte hym in, and the rather if the duke of Lācastre and the Englysshemen be agreed with hym; and also it is of trouthe, that the lorde Coucy,

VOL. II.

3 A

admyrall

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> "D'Orient"—omitted.

admyrall of Fraunce, and the lorde de la Ryuer, are cōmyng hyder, ye maye well knowe that is for some great cause touchyng the kyng, who busyeth hymselfe for his cōstable, and for his Realme; and by lykelyhode the kyng and his vnclcs wyll knowe presisely what ye wyll do, and wheder ye wyll kepe styll your opinyon or nat; and if ye kepe styll your purpose, it is to be ymaged that the great armye that is prepared for to go into Guerles<sup>s</sup> shall tourne agaynst you: nowe remembre well what conforte ye are likely to haue yf ye haue warre with Fraunce, whiche ye are moost lykely to haue, if the duke of Lancaster marry his daughter into Fraūce, as be semyng he wyll, for he can nat bestowe her better to recouer her herytage; also ye knowe well that the moost parte of the prelates, barons, knyghtes, and squyers, and cyties and good townes, are in maner agaynst you; therfore sir, sith ye demaunde counsaile of vs, we saye that ye had neuer so moche cause to aduyse you, (as ye haue nowe;) therfore putte to your hande to kepe well your herytage, whiche hath cost the shedyng of so moche blode, sweate, and traueyle, and refrayne somewhat your yre and hatred: we knowe well ye beare great dyspleasure to sir Olyuer Clysson; he hath done you many displeasures, and ye hym, and paraduerture may do, though he be nat lyke vnto you; the Frēche kyng and his vnclcs wyll maynteygne hym agaynst you, for he shall be Constable; and if kyng Charles that laste dyed, (who loued hym so well,) hadde lyued, and ye done as ye haue done, we knowe well it shulde rather haue cost the kyng halfe his realme, thanne he wolde haue suffred it; but kyng Charles his sonne is yonge: he taketh nat so good hede to all maters nowe, as he wolde do tenne yeres here after; he cometh on, and ye shall go: if ye entre into a newe warre agaynst the Frenchemen, (besyde all that we haue shewed you,) ye shall do it without our counsaile, and without the counsaile of any man that loueth you; it behoueth you to dissymule whatsoever ye purpose to do here after: what nede you to kepe the thre castelles parteynyng to sir Olyuer of Clyssons herytage, after the maner ye toke them? Wheder it be so ye haue peace or warre, they shall coste you more the keynyng of theym in thre yeres, than they shall profyte you in twelue yeres; Sir, delyuer them agayne out of your handes without any desyre, and whan the renome therof spredeth abrode, (as there is nothyng done but it wyll be knowen,) y without cōstreint ye haue delyuered them of your owne mynde, ye shall therby attemper and molifye euery mannes displeasure, and it shall greatlye please the duke of Burgoyne, who ye knowe well hath nat done so moche agaynst you as he myght, in all your busynesse, and that is by the meanes of the good lady his wyfe, your cosyn; she hath many fayre chyldeyn, who are nexte of blode to you; therfore sir, consyder fro whens ye came and are issued: departe nat farre of fro thens, that ye ought to approche nere, it were follye. In Englande ye hadde neuer thyng to do; also the Englysshmen haue ynough to do amonge themselfe, they shewe you fayre semblaunt of lone, and promyse to do for you all y they maye, but they do it for their owne aduantage and for nothyng elles: ye haue proued them or this; ye were norished amonge thē in your youthe.

<sup>s</sup> Gueldres.

*Howe the duke of Bretayne delyuered vp the thre castelles of sir Olyuer Clisson: and howe he receyued ioyously the lorde of Coucy and his company, ambassadours fro the frēche kyng: and howe the duke of Lūcastre made grete chere to sir Helyon of Liguacke, seneschall of Xaynton, ambassadoure fro the duke of Berrey.*

## CAP. CXXVIII.

WHAN the duke of Bretayne had herde his counsaile speke, and cast so many reasonable doubtis, he was abashed, and stode styll a season without spekyng of any worde: leanyng in a wyndowe loking downe into the courte, his counsaile beyng aboute hym, he stode in a great study; at last he tourned and said, sirs, I se well that ye haue highly counsailed me, and I se well I haue nede of nothyng so moche as of good counsaile, but howe may any loue be norished, where is nothyng but hate? howe maye I loue Olyuer of Clysson, that hath done me so many dyspleasures? wherefore of all the thynges that euer I dyde in this worlde, I moost repente me of that I dyd nat put hym to dethe whan I had hym in my castell of Ermyne. In the name of god, sir, quod they of his counsaile, (if he had ben slayne,) but ye ought nat to haue raunsomed hym, nor taken his herytage, for Johan of Bretayne, and the Vycount of Rohers<sup>b</sup> sonne, be his heyres, and herytours to all his landes, for his daughters are their wyues: wherefore they wolde haue entred into the heritage as their owne, for their resort is into the Parlyament chambre at Parys, for ye haue receyued allredy great blame in Fraunce for that ye haue done, and keypyng of the thre castelles; the constable hath entred his quarell and plee agaynst you in the parlyament house of Parys, and there sentence wyll be gyuen agaynst you, for there is none to answer for you agaynst any artycle that the Constable hath layde agaynst you: than sir Olyuer of Clysson and his heyres shall haue iuste cause and quarell to make warre agaynst you in his owne tytell; and if the kyng with other of your owne cuntry of Bretayne, wyll make you warre, and ayde your enemyes, ye haue nede thañe to haue more puyssaunce to defende you, thañe we can se that ye are lyke to haue; wherefore, sir, while the plee hangeth, ye were best to delyuer agayne the thre castelles and haue thāke, than to abyde the sentence to be gyuen agaynst you: Sir, agre for suche dommages as ye haue done as well as ye canne, therby shall you wade out of all sclaudre, the whiche a prince ought to dout for his dishonour; and sir, cōferme you to peace, and contynue in loue with them that ye ought to do, that is the Frenche kyng, your soueraygne and naturall lorde, and my lorde the duke of Burgoyne, and your cosyngs his chyl dren; ye may take ensample by that ye haue sene in youre dayes; your cosyng germayne therle of Flaunders, who was a myghtie prince and a sage, yet by insydētes in thēde of his dayes there fell to hym suche marueylous adventures, ý without he had humyled hymselfe to the frēche kyng, to his vnclis, and to the nobles of the realme, he had loste his herytage, and by their ayde and helpe he recovered it. Well, sirs, quod the duke, sihe I haue demaunded counsaile it behoueth me to take it, and I accepte your wordes that ye haue spoken.

This mater wente so forwarde, that the duke of Bretaygne, who was in possessyon of the thre castelles of the constables (as ye haue herde here before), he sent for his men that was in them, and rydde his handes cleue of them; and there were stablyshed men in them for the constable: but this restytuicion was nat suffycient in the opynion of the

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXIV.

<sup>b</sup> Rohan.

Frenche kynges counsaile, wout the duke restored agayne the money that he hadde taken of the Constable; and besyde that, the duke to come personally to the kyng to Parys, to make his excuse before all the peres of the realme, and to abyde on the mendes makynge, suche as the kyng and his cōusaile shulde iudge by good delyberacion. And whan the knowledge of the restytucion of these castels was come to the lorde of Coucye and to the other lordes that were apoynted to go into Bretaygne to the duke, than the lorde of Coucy sayde to his company, Sirs, we haue the lesse to do; I belene the duke wyll gyue credence to vs whan he heareth vs speke. I was enfourmed that before these thre barons departed fro Parys, the dukes of Berrey and of Bourgoyne had them in counsaile, and sayde, Sirs, ye muste entreate the duke of Bretaygne with fayre and swete wordes, and nat rigorously, and shewe hym howe f̄ duke of Bourgoyne wolde that he shulde come to Parys to the kyng: but at leest shewe hym howe he muste come to the halfe way to the towne of Bloyes, and there we shall mete with hym and speke togyuder. These thre lordes said they wolde do as they were cōmaūded. They rode forthe and came to the cytie of Rennes in Bretayne, and there demaūded tidinges of the duke; and it was shewed them howe he was at Wannes, and than they rode thyder. Their cōmyng was anon knowen in the dukes court, for they had sent before their herbyggers to take vp their lodgynges. The duke had about hym his counsaile and great lordes, suche as he trusted most, the more honourably to receyue these lordes. Whan they entred into the towne of Wānes they had good chere, and lordes and knyghtes of the dukes mette them, and specially the lorde de la Wall: there they alyghted at their lodgynges and refresshed themselfe, and after mounted on their horses and rode to the dukes castell called la Mote, where they fōude the duke, who came agaynst them and receyued thē right ioyously: and sayd, howe they were all right hertely welcome: and toke the lorde of Coucy by the hande, and made hym good chere, and sayde, Fayre brother, ye be welcome; I am gladd to se you in Bretayne; I shall shewe you sporte of hunting at hartes and flyeng with haukes or we departe asōdre. Sir, quod the lorde of Coucy, I thanke you; I and my company shall be gladd to se it. There was shewed bytwene them great lykelyhode of loue; and the duke brought hym to his chambre, sportyng and talkyng of many ydell matters, as lordes do often tymes whan they mete, and haue nat sene togyuder longe before, they wyll fynde many sondrie pastymes; and specially I knewe four lordes, the best entertayners of all other that euer I knewe: that was the duke of Brabant, the erle of Foiz, the erle of Sauoy, and in especiall the lorde of Coucy; for accordyng to myne aduysse, in all goodly pastymes he was a souerayne maister, whiche brute he bare amonge all lordes and ladyes in Fraunce, in Englande, in Almaygne,<sup>a</sup> in Lombardy, and in all places where as he had ben conuersant; and in his tyme he had been sore traueyled and sene moche in the worlde, and also he was naturally enclined to be gentyll. And thus whyle these lordes were mery talkyng togyuder, there was brought spyes and wyne, and so they dranke, and than toke their leaues and retourned to their lodgynges. Thus the mater went forthe f̄ fyrst day, without makyng of any mencyon of any thyng that they were come for.

Nowe let vs somewhat speke of sir Helyon of Lygnacke, whom the duke of Berrey had<sup>c</sup> sent to the duke of Lancastre. The knyght came to Bayon, and alyghted at his lodgyng, and apparelled hymselfe to go and speke with the duke of Lācastre, who knewe well of his cōmyng, and sent right honourably two of his knyghtes to mete with hym, and they brought hym to the duke; and whan sir Helyon was in the dukes presens he kneled downe, and saluted hym as it aperteyned. The duke receyued hym ryght honourably, and tooke hym vp in his armes, and toke hym by f̄ hande, and ledde hym into his chābre, for he mette hym in the hall: thanne the knyght delyuered his  
letters

<sup>a</sup> Germany.



letters fro the duke of Berrey. The duke reed them, and thanne he drewe to sir Helyon, and the knight declared to him the cause of his cōmyng. Than the duke answered right courtesly, and sayd, Sir, ye be right welcome, and sayd howe the mater was weyghtie that he was cōe for, wherfore it requyred counsaile and delyberacion. Thus sir Helyon taryed at Bayon with the duke of Lancastre more than a moneth, and alwayes he was serued with fayre wordes; and the duke alwayes foded hym forthe and made semblant that he had great affection to treate for this mariage with the duke of Berrey: howebeit, the trouthe was cōtrary, for all that he shewed was but dissymulacion, and the cause that he was helde there so long with hym was for none other thing but that the brute therof myght ronne abrode, and specially into þe realme of Castyle, for there lay all his affection. The duke sayde to sir Helyon, Sir, if I treat with the duke of Berrey to haue my doughter in maryage, thafie he must ioyne with me with all his puyssaunce to encounter myne aduersaries of Spayne, if he wyll recouer the heritage of my doughter, whom he shulde haue to wyfe. Than sir Helyon sayd, Sir, I haue no charge to confyrme any thyng so forwarde; but, sir, if it please you or I departe, ye maye write all your pleasure by me, and I shall returne and shewe my lorde the duke of Berrey all your entent, and I am sure (he hath suche affection to the mater) he wyll agree to euery thyng that he may do by reason. I desyre no more, quod the duke of Lancastre. Thus sir Helyon of Lygnacke taryed a season at Bayon, and had good chere made hym by the dukes cōmaundement.

*Howe the kyng of Castyle sente his ambassadours to the duke of Lācastre to treate for a maryage, to be had bytwene his sonne and the dukes doughter; and howe, at the requeste of the duke of Berrey a truse was made by the duke of Lancastre in the countreys of Tholousyn and Rouergue.*

CAP. CXXIX.<sup>a</sup>

TIDINGES came into the realme of Castyle into dyuerse places, and specyally to kyng Johan of Castyle, and it was sayde to hym, Sir, ye knowe nothyng of the treatye that is bytwene the duke of Berrey and the duke of Lancastre. The duke of Berrey wolde haue in maryage the lady Katheryne, doughter to the duke of Lancastre and to the lady Cōstance his wyfe; and if this maryage take effecte (as it is lyke to do) it shal be a great alyauunce, for the duke of Berrey is nowe as one of the chiefe rulers in the realme of Fraunce, and is vnclē to the kyng: he shal be beleued whatsoeuer he saye or purpose to do (as it is reason), wheder it be by meanes of peace or longe truse. On the other parte, the duke of Lancastre is eldest of all his bretherne, that be vnclēs to the kyng: he shall also be beleued, for he is sage and puyssaūt, and by that it semeth the Englysshmen are very of the warre. This maryage bytwene the Duke of Lancasters doughter and the duke of Berrey is lykely to be a great meane to make a good peace bytwene Fraūce and Englande, and than shal we here sticke styll in the warre: for the duke of Lācastre wyll folowe and pursue his chalenge of the realme of Castyle, and the right þe hath by his wyfe he shall gyue it to his doughter, and so than shall we haue warre bothe with Fraunce and Englande. These doutes were layde to the kyng of Castyle: and at that tyme all the Frenchmen that had serued long in the realme of Castyle were retourned into Fraunce; and the chiefe of the kyng of Castyls counsaile sayd to hym, sir, take hede to vs, ye neuer had so great nede of good counsaile as ye haue at this presente tyme; for, sir, a peryllous myst is lyke to be engendred bytwene you and  
the

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXV.

the duke of Lācastre, and that shall come by the meanes of Fraūce. Howe so? quod the kyng, howe may that be? In the name of god, sir, quod they, the brute and renome spredeth throughe all this countrey and elsewhere howe the duke of Berrey shall marry the duke of Lācasters daughter; and, sir, ye maye be sūre that shall nat be, but by the meanes of a great alyaūce, so that therby here after ye maye be as farre cast behynde by them as ye haue ben auauuced. Whan the kyng of Castyle knewe those tidynges, he was right pensyue, and sawe well howe his counsaile shewed hym the trouthe: than he demaunded counsaile of them that he trusted best, howe he shulde perceuer and deale in all his busynesse; and they counsayled hym well and truely, as the mater requyred, as I shall shewe you.

Ye knowe well (as ye haue herde before in this hystorie) howe kyng Henry of Spaygne made a peace with Peter kyng of Arragone, on the full poyntment that the kyng of Arragon shulde gyue his doughter in maryage to the kyng of Castyle. This was Johan, who is now kyng; and by this coniunction of maryage they were ī peace and their realmes. Of this Johan, sonne to Henry, and of the daughter of Arragon, there came a sonne: than dyed the lady; and after the dethe of kyng Henry of Castyle, this kyng Johan, by the cōsaile of his men, maryed agayne the lady Beatrice, doughter to Fernando kyng of Portugale; and they hadde a sonne called Henry, he was but yonge. Than the counsaile of Castyle sayd to the kyng, Sir, we se in all these doutes but one remedy. What is that? quod kyng Johan. Sir, we shall shewe you, quod they, your yong sonne Henry may well breke this maryage bytwene the duke of Berrey and the duke of Lancasters doughter: for it is to be beleued that the duke of Lācastre and the duchies his wyfe had rather marchant with you and with your sonne than with the duke of Berrey. In the name of god, quod the kyng, ye saye well; I shall herken to this mater; I thynke our people wyll lightly enclyne thervnto: by that mariage we shulde haue peace with Englande, bothe by lande and by water; therefore, sirs, chose out them that were mete to go in our name, to treate on this mater with the duke of Lancastre. Sir, quod they, it is requisyte that they be discrete persones, and that the matter be wisely handeled, and in the secretest maner that maye be, to the entente that ye ronne nat in the indignacyon of the Frenche kyng; for nowe a dayes enuy raynetli greatly, and sooner reporte is made of yuell than of good, and the yuell sooner reysed vp than the good; for if they of Fraūce knowe that ye treate with the duke of Lācastre, the Frenche kyng and his counsaile wyll demāde wherupon ye treate with the duke, by reasone of the great alyaunce made in tyme past bytwene your father and Fraūce; and also the Frenchemen haue alwayes susteyned your warre: wherfore, sir, your treaties must be done secretly; and sende to the duke sage men and secrete, and well enstructed of your busynesse; and sende nat forthe with boost and pride tyll euery thyng be in a sure case. It it true, quod the kyng; namie them that be mete to go on that voyage. Sir, quod they, sende your confessor frere Fernādo of Farre<sup>a</sup> and the bysshoppe of Ghehene, who was sometyme confessor to the kyng your father, and Peter Gardelopes,<sup>b</sup> who is well languaged. I am content, quod the kyng, lette them be sente for, and well enfourmed what they shall say: they wolde or this tyme haue treated for a peace, but we wolde natte here them, for the duke of Lancastre wolde none otherwyse, but that I shulde haue forsaken the Crowne of Castyle, the whiche I wyll neuer do. Than these thre were sent for to Burgus in Spayne, where the kyng was: than it was sayd to them by the kyng and his priuwe counsaile: Sirs, ye muste go to Bayon to the duke of Lancastre: and shewed them all their instructions. They sayde, they were redy to accomplysse the kynges commaūdemēt: and so sette forthe on their journey, nat in no gret estate, but simply, for they wolde nat be knowen that they wente

<sup>a</sup> De Torre.<sup>b</sup> Gardelempos.

to the duke of Lācastre as ambassadours to treate for any alyauce, for they knewe nat howe to spede. Thus they entred into Nauerre and came to Pampylona, and there founde the kyng and the quene. First, they came thyder bycause the quene was suster to the kyng of Castyle: there they hadde good chere, but they nouthier shewed the kyng nor the quene where about they wente, and so passed thorough the cuntry by the mountayns of Roseaulx<sup>a</sup> and entred into Bisquay, and so rode tyll they came to Bayon.

Whaene they were come to the towne of Bayon, sir Helyon of Lignacke was styll there, who was sente fro the duke of Berrey (as ye haue herde here before); but after the cōmyng of the castilyans they taryed nat longe after, for frere don Fernando, the kyng of Castyls confessor, came to the duke of Lancastre, for he knewe hym better than any of the other: he began somwhat to breke the mater, and to shewe the cause of their cōmyng. The duke opyned his eares to his wordes, and was gladde to here those tidynges, and sayde, Frere Fernando, ye be welcome; and the same day sir Helyon of Lignacke was delyuered: and, as I vnderstode, the duke accorded the same tyme to a truse on all partes, for suche as made warre for hym in Acquitayne, Bygore, Thoulous, and other place, to endure vnto the first day of Maye, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and nyne; this truse to contynue all the cuntry to the ryuer of Loyre and no further. This truse was concluded at the request of the duke of Berrey, to the entent that he myght sende in and out to the duke of Lancastre: for before they of the fortress of Mortaygne on y see, of Bouteuyll, of Rouuergue, of Quercyn,<sup>b</sup> of Pyergourt,<sup>c</sup> and they on the ryuer of Garon, were people without mercy; they wolde knowe no manne; wherfore these two dukes accorded to this truse, the whiche was well kepte. Whan sir Helyon of Lignacke departed fro y duke there was grete loue shewed, for the duke said howe the mater pleased him right well: howbeit, the duke sayd playnlye he wolde neuer marry his daughter into Fraunce, without the consent and accorde of the kyng of Englande his nephue, and also by the agrement of the counsaile of Englāde; but he sayd, he trusted so to order the mater, that all shulde do well. Thus sir Helyon of Lignacke departed and returned into Fraunce, and shewed the duke of Berrey his letters that the duke of Lancastre had sent him, and shewed hym by mouthe all the maner howe euery thyng wente, and so y duke was well content.

Nowe lette vs speke of the kyng of Castyls ambassadours, to whome the duke of Lācastre gaue good care, and so dyd the duchesse, for all their hertes and ymaginacions lay euer on their chalenge of Spayn.

The duke made these ambassadours good chere; they came before the duke and the duchesse, and there shewed their message: first they treted for peace, and there the frere preached in the dukes chābre, the duchesse present, and she shewed the duke the entent of all his wordes, for y duke vnderstode hym nat parfytly: the lady vnderstode hym well, for in her youthe she was brought vp in Spaygne. The duke, for all that the mater of their cōmyng was pleasaūt to him, yet he discovered nat to hastely his entente, but sayd, Sirs, it wyll be very harde to make peace in that place, where as great hatreded and warre is resydent, and specially with them that be disheryted and kepte from their herytage: sayeng, howe he wolde nat leaue the warre withoute he myght haue the crowne of Castyle, the whiche he sayde was his right. The frere and the bisshoppe sayd, Sir, bytwene your right and y ryght of the kyng our lorde there is but one meane, and we haue founde it, if it may please you. What waye is that? quod the duke. Sir, quod they, it is this: ye haue by my lady youre wyfe a feyre yonge lady to marry, and  
the

<sup>a</sup> Roncesvalles.<sup>b</sup> Quercy.<sup>c</sup> Perigord.

the kyng of castile, our souerayne lorde, hath a feyre yong sonne; if they two myght mary toguyder, the realme of Castyle shulde be in peace, and all that is your right shulde retourne to you; and, sir, better can ye nat bestowe your heyre, who is discēded of the right lyne of Castyle: the entent ye arme you (lyght, aduenture yourselfe, and traueyle your body) is all onely for the right of your heyre. That is trewe, quod the duke; but than I wyll that the costes ȳ I haue susteyned in the pursute there be recompēsed; for I wyll ye knowe it hath cost me and the realme of Englande syue hundred thousande frākes; wherof I wolde gladly se som recoueraūce. Sir, quod the frere, if our treatie be agreable to you, we trust to fynde such a meane that the mater shall take good effect. Well, quod the duke, ye be welcome; and howsoeuer it be, or howsoeuer it shal be, or I retourne into Englande (outher into Castyle or into Fraunce) I shall mary my doughter, for I haue dyuers offres moued vnto me; but maters of so great a weyght are nat lightly cōcluded at the first tyme: for my doughter whome I repute (as rightfull enheritour to spayne), I wyll knowe him well ȳ shall haue her in maryage. That is but reason, quod the frere. Thus as I haue shewed you this treatie began bytwene the duke of Lācastre and these parties, as well of Castyle as of Fraūce: he made euery partie good chere, and made no full answeere; but in his ymaginacion the treatie of Spayne (the kynges sonne to mary his doughter) semed best to his purpose, bicause in tyme to come his doughter shulde be quene of Castyle; also the duches his wyfe enclyned moost to that treatie.

Nowe let vs leaue to speke of the duke of Lancastre and of all these treatyse, and retourne to speke of the duke of Bretayne.

*Howe the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne departed to go to Bloys; and howe the duke of Bretayne cāe thyder; and howe the dukes dyde so moche that they had hym to Parys in maner agaynst his wyll.*

#### C A P. CXXX.\*

AS I haue shewed you here before, ȳ duke of Bretayne made good chere to the French ambassadours, and specially to the lorde of Coucy; for as I was enformed, he was ȳ chiefe that brake fro his purpose, by reason of his fayre and swete wordes: howbeit, the lorde Johan of Vyē and the lorde de la Ryuer dyde ryght well their deuoyre; but often tymes great princes and lordes wyll soner be entreated by one man rather than by another. Moche payne it was to cause the duke of Bretayne to agre to go to the towne of Bloys, to mete there the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne: but he was brought thyder by fayre wordes; and he sayde, surely he wolde go no further thanne to the towne of Bloys; and the lorde of Coucy sayd he desyred nothyng elles. These thre lordes were with the duke of Bretayne certayne dayes, and than toke their leaues and returned into Fraunce, and shewed the dukes of Berry and of Burgoyne howe they hadde spedde. Thervpon these two dukes made them redy to go to Bloys, to mete there with the duke of Bretayne, and sente thyder before to make prouyson as apertayned. Firste thyder came the duke of Berrey, and he was lodged in the Castell, and there he fonde the countesse, her sonne, and her doughter: they receyued hym honourably. The erle Guye of Bloys was as than in his owne cuntry at the castell Reygnaulte, and made no greate counte of the commynge of the duke of Bretayne; he thought it suffycient that his wife and chyldren were there. Than thyder came the duke of Burgoyne with a goodly trayne, and in his company came sir Wylliam

of

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXVI.

of Heynaulte and his sonne, erle of Ostreunte, and Johan of Burgoyne, sonne to the duke called erle of Neuers: the duke lodged also in the castell, and there helde his estate. Than after came the duke of Bretaygne, with no great trayne other than of his horse: he passed nat a thre hūdred horses, for his entēcyon was, that whan he had onesene the two dukes and spoken with them, to retourne into his owne cōuntry (without goyng any further into Fraunce); but the entente of the other two dukes was otherwise, for they said whyder he wolde or nat he shulde go to Parys.

The duke of Bretaygne hymselfe lodged in the castell of Bloyes, in a chanons house of saynt Sauyour, and his men lodged downe in the towne, and so dyd  $\hat{y}$  other of all the dukes seruauntes; but the lordes laye in  $\hat{y}$  castell, the whiche was fayre, great, and strong, one of the fayrest castelles in all the realme of Fraunce. There these Dukes made good chere togyder, and shewed great loue, and they thanked the duke of Bretayne of his cōmyng to the towne of Bloyes: and the duke answered and sayde, howe he was come thyder for the loue of them with great payne (for he fayned hymselfe nat well at ease). Than these two dukes fell in communynge with the duke of Bretayne, shewyng hym si the he was come so farr forwarde, that he had done nothyng without he went to Parys to se the kyng, who greatly desyred to se hym. The duke of Bretayne began greatlye to excuse hymselfe of that voyage, and layde many reasons, and sayd howe he was nat well at his ease to make so longe a iourney, nor also he was nat accompanied thereafter. Than he was swetely answered, that sayng his displeasure, he shulde nede no great trayne to go se his soueraygne lorde; and as for his rydinge, he shulde lacke nouthur chayre nor lytter to labour at his ease, for they said he was bounde to do homage to the kyng, for as than he had nat done it before. The duke sayd (excusinge hymselfe) that whan the kyng were come to his lauffull age, and had the hole realme in his owne gouernaunce, than he wolde come to Parys (or whyder it shulde please the kyng), and than do his homage acording to reason. The other dukes sayd, that the kyng was of age and wysdome suffycient to receyue homage, and howe that all other lordes of the realme excepte he, had done their homage and made reliefe, affyrmyng howe the kyng was xxi. yere of age. Whan the duke of Bretayne sawe howe his excuses coude nat be taken nor herde (sayde), Well, sirs, if I go to Parys it shal be greatlye agaynst my wyll and to my preiudyce: for whan I come there, I shall fynde and se daylye before me sir Olyuer of Glyssone, whom I can nat lone nor neuer dyde, nor he me (who shall attempte me with rygorous wordes) my lordes, regarde well what inconuenyentes shall ensue of my goyng thyder. Sir, quod the duke of Burgoyne, fayre cosyn, haue ye no dout therin, for we shall swere solempnely to you, that withoute it shall be your owne pleasure ye shall nouthur se nor speke with the Constable, nor with Johan of Mountforde, as longe as ye shall be there. Of this, sir, ye shall be sure: but ye shall se the kyng, who desyreth to se you and other lordes, knyghtes, and squyers of Fraunce, who shall make you good chere; and whanne ye haue done that ye loke for, ye shall retourne agayne without peryll or domage; (wherto shulde I make longe processe). So moche the duke of Bretayne was desyred with faire wordes, that he consented to go to Parys, on the promyse that the Constable nor Johan of Mountforde shulde nat come in his presce, the whiche the dukes sware faithfully to vpholde, and therupon he promysed to go to Parys. A fyue dayes these dukes were at Bloyes, and eche of them feested other ryght nobly, and the cōtesse and her chyldren in lyke maner; and whan euery thyng was accomplisshed, the two dukes toke leaue of  $\hat{y}$  duke of Bretayne and returned to Parys; but sir Wylliam of Heynaulte returned nat to Parys with the duke of Burgoyne his faire father,<sup>a</sup> but rode first w<sup>t</sup> the countesse of Bloyes, who made hym right

VOL. II.

3 B

good

<sup>a</sup> *Beau-pere*: father-in-law.

good chere, and taryed there a thre dayes, and than toke his leaue and retourned into Fraunce by the Castell Dune and Bonyuall.

*Howe Lewes, kyng of Cycyle, entred into Parys in estate royall, and howe the duke of Bretayne entred on the nyght of saynt Johan the Baptist, the yere of grace a thousande, thre hundred fourscore and seyn,<sup>a</sup> and of a dede of armes doone before the kyng at Mountereau faulte yon, bytwene a knyght of Englande, called sir Thomas Harpingham,<sup>b</sup> and a frenche knyght, named sir Johan de Barres.*

C A P. CXXXI.<sup>c</sup>

THE duke of Bretayne rode to Boygency<sup>d</sup> on the ryuer of Loyre, and there he ordered his businesse to go to Parys. The same tyme before þe duke of Bretayne entered into Parys there entred the quene of Cycyll and of Hierusalem, somtyme wyfe to the Duke of Aniou, who was called kyng of those countreis and also of Naples, and with her was her yonge sonne Lewes, who was as thanne (in all Fraunce) named kyng of all the said landes; and in their company was Johan of Bretayne, brother to the lady: she sente worde before of her cōmyng to the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne, aduertysyng thē howe she brought in her company her yonge son Lewes their nephue, desyryng to knowe whether he shulde entre into Paris as a kyng, or elles symply as Lewes of Aniou. The two dukes sente her worde (aduisynge and cōsaying her) that he shulde entre as kyng of Naples, of Cycyle, and of Hierusalem: and sente her worde, that though he were nat as thanne in possessyon of the realmes, yet they wolde entyse the Frenche kyng that he shulde ayde hym to conquire them, for so they sware to do to their brother kyng Lois. After this maner the lady prepared for herselfe, and came and entred into Parys, and made her sonne to ryde through the hyghe stretes by saynt Jaques, so to his lodgyng in the greue, in estate royall, accompanied with dukes, erles, and prelates a great nombre. There the lady taryed with her sonne, and thanne wente to se the kyng at his castell of Loure,<sup>e</sup> abydinge there the commynge of the duke of Bretayne.

*Howe the duke of Bretayne entred into Parys, and came to the castell of Loure<sup>e</sup> to the Frenche kyng.*

C A P. CXXXII.<sup>f</sup>

WHAN the duke of Bretayne aproched nere to Parys, he rested one nyght at the queenes Bourge,<sup>g</sup> and the nexte daye he entred into Paris. Great loking for hym was in Paris, bycause he had before putte in daunger the Constable of Fraunce, and had ben sente for dyuers tymes, and wolde neuer come tyll than. Men spake therof dyuersly; and on a sondaye, beyng Mydsomer daye, at tenne of the clocke aforenoone, the duke of Bretayne entred, the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hūdred fourscore and eight, into Parys, at hell gate,<sup>h</sup> and passed along the strete of þe Harpe, and ouer the bridge

<sup>a</sup> Eight.<sup>b</sup> Hapurgan.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXVII.<sup>d</sup> BeaGENCY.<sup>e</sup> The Louvre.<sup>f</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXVIII.<sup>g</sup> Bourg la Reine.<sup>h</sup> Porte De l'enfer.

bridge saynt Michell, and so before the palais, well accompanied with lordes and knyghtes. There was sir Wylliam of Heynaulte, erle of Ostreuaunt, and his faire brother Johan of Burgoyne, and before him roode sir Wylliam of Namure. Thus he came to the castelle of Loure,<sup>a</sup> and there alyghted: (as he rode through the stretes he was greatlye regarded of the common people); and when the duke was alyghted and entred in at the gate, he remembered what he shulde do and saye; and before hym was the lorde of Coucy, the erle of Sauoy, sir Johñ of Vyen, sir Guye de la Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> sir Johñ of Vernayle, the erle of Meaulx, sir Johan of Voye,<sup>c</sup> sir Johan of Barres: and nere to hym was sir Wylliam of Namure, Johan of Burgoyne, and the erle of Ostreuaunte: and behynde hym the lorde Mountforde of Bretayne and the lorde of Malestroyt; they were of his kynne and priuy cōsaiyle: there was great preace to se hym, and the halle but lytell; and the boordes were couered for the kyng to go to dyner; and the kyng stode there redy before the table, and his iii. vnclcs besyde hym, dukes of Berrey, of Burgoyne, and of Burbone. As soone as the duke was entred, euery man made place, so that ȝ duke myght se the kyng. Firste he made one curtesy, and so passed forthe a tenne or xii. paces; than he made the seconde curtesy, and rose agayne, and so passed forthe tyll he came before the kyng; than the thirde tyme he kneled downe bare headed, and saluted the kyng, and sayd, Sir, I am come to se your grace; god maynteyne youre prosperyte. I thanke you, sir, quod the kyng, and we haue great desyre to se you; we shall se and speke with you at more leysar: and therwith toke hym vp by the armes. Than the duke enclyned hymself to all the other princes eche after other; than he stode styll before the kyng without spekyng of any worde. The kyng sore behelde hym. Thanne the Stewardes and offycers came forthe with water, and ȝ kyng wasshed, and the duke of Bretayne putte his hande to the bason and to the towel: and when the kyng was sette, the duke toke his leaue of the kyng and of his vnclcs, and the lorde of Coucy and the erle of saynt Poule with other lordes conueyed hym into the court where his horses were, and there mounted, and so returned to his lodgyng in the strete of ȝ Harpe, and none taryed with hym of them that conueyed hym but suche as came with hym out of Bretayne to Parys.

After all this the duke of Bretayne spake at leysar with the kyng and his vnclcs, so that euery man was well contente with hym; and he tooke well euery thyng that had ben promysed to hym, for he sawe nouthr the constable nor Johñ of Bretayne. Whan ȝ lordes sawe that euery thyng was in good state, and that they neded nat to doute the duke of Bretayne, seyng they had hym at Paris (for they thought he shulde nat departe thens tyll he had done in maner euery thyng as the kyng wolde), than it was thought good tyme to ordeyne forth for the voyage into Guerles<sup>d</sup> (whyder the kyng had great affection to go) to subdue the duke of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> who had so shamfully defied the kyng (the whiche cōsydred), was nat thought good to be suffred. Than it was ordayned that the lorde of Coucy shulde drawe to the marches of Rennes and Chalons in Champayn, and to regarde for the kynges passage that waye, and to moue the knyghtes and squyers in Bare and in Lorayne to go with him whyder he wolde lede them, nat spekyng of the kyng, but bearyng them in hande that he wolde go to recouer his ryght in Austryche.<sup>e</sup> The lorde of Coucy thus departed fro Parys, and wente to Chalons in Champayne, and there taryed a moneth, and retaygned on all partes knyghtes and squyers i Bare and in Lorayne, in Champayne, and in Retheloy: and the Frêche kyng departed fro Parys whan he had cōmuned with the duke of Bretayne of dyuers maters (and nat fully accomplisshed), for the sute in the courte of Fraunce is longe whan they lyste, and right well they canne foode forthe the people to make them spende moche,

3 B 2

and

<sup>a</sup> The Louvre.<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.<sup>c</sup> Roye.<sup>d</sup> Guedres.<sup>e</sup> Austria.

and bringe lytell to effecte. The kynge came to Moustreau ou faulte yon,<sup>a</sup> in the marches of Brie and Gastenoys, and there he helde his courte, and oftentimes chased hartes and other wyld beestes in the forest of Brie. The same season there was a dede of armes done there, bitwene an Englysshe knight who was there with the duke of Irelande, called sir Thomas Harpyngham,<sup>b</sup> and sir Johan of Barres, wherof great brute was made in Fraunce and other places. Their chalenge was, fyue courses with a speare, fyue strokes with the sworde, fyue with a dagger, and fyue with the axe; and if any of their weapons brake, than they to gette newe, tyll their chalenge were accōplysshed. These two knyghtes on a day lept on their horses well armed, as appertayned (the kynge and all other lordes beyng present and moche people), and ranne toguyder foure courses ryght valiauntly (and as me thought the vsage was thañe, their helmes were tyed but with a lace, to the entente the speare shulde take no holde.) The fyrst course sir Johan of Barres strake the Englysshe knyght on the targe, in suche wyse that he bare hym ouer the horse crope, so that he laye stonyed on the grounde, and moche payne to releue. Than they performed forthe all the reste of their chalenge in so goodly maner, that the kyng and all the other were well cōtent with them.

*Hove the erle of Arundell, beyng on the see more than a moneth, came to the hauyn of Marante,<sup>c</sup> a lytell fro Rochell; and hove he sent a messagere to Perotte le Bernoys, that he and other capitayns shulde kepe the felde.*

#### C A P. CXXXIII.<sup>d</sup>

IT is long sythe I made any mencyon of the Englysshe armye on the see, wherof Rycharde, Erle of Arundell, was capitayne, and w<sup>th</sup> hym many knyghtes, squyers, and archers of Englande. I shall nowe somewhat speke of hym, for the mater requyret it.

Ye haue herde here before of the treatie that the kyng of Englande made with the duke of Bretaygne. This nauy on the see all this season laye euer coostynge the fronters of Bretaygne and Normādy; if wynde and wether draue thē thens, they euer came thyder agayne; and they had in their flete some small vesselles called Balyngers, who wente euer and scoured the see. The flete had layne at ancre more than a moneth agaynst the ysle of Breshatte in Bretaygne, and there they herde tidynges howe the duke of Bretaygne was gone to Bloyes to speke with the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne, and howe they were so agreed that the duke was gone to Parys: and the renōe ranne throughe Bretaygne howe the duke hadde good chere of the Frenche kynge, and was welcome to hym and to all his cōsayle at Parys, and shulde nat departe thens tyll the maters were in good estate. Whanne the erle of Arūdell herde those tidynges, he was pensyue, and wente to counsayle what was best to do, and whyder they were best to drawe to employe their season. Than they determyned to drawe to Rochellois: though they had no castelles there, yet they hadde men ynowe there to kepe the felde, and to abyde all the puyssaunce of Xaynton and of Poyctou, so that they shulde signify their estate into Auuergne and into Lymosynne, so that they myght sende to passe throughe Bretaygne. As than the treuse was nat confyrmed on the ryuer of Loyre, but they were a treatyng to begynne the fyrste daye of Auguste; and sir Helyon of Lignacke  
was

<sup>a</sup> Montrecau sur Yonne.

<sup>b</sup> Harpurgan.

<sup>c</sup> Marans.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be

numbered CXXIX.



was goyng or cōmyng (as the erle of Arundell ymaged) outhur to the duke of Lancastre to Bayone, or elles retournyng into Fraunce. They hadde in their nauye a Breton bretonaunt of the nacyon of Wannes, seruaunt to sir Wyllyam Helmon, who coude speke well foure maner of languages, that is to saye, Bretyssh, Englysshe, Spaynysshe, and Frenche; and gaue hym in commaundement to go a lande, and sayde to hym, Go thou the moost preuyest wayes thou canste (thou knowest all the preuy wayes of the country) and gette the to the garyson of Chaluset, and haue vs all recommaunded to Perotte le Bernoys, and shewe hym fro vs that he sette forth a company of men of armes, suche as be in garysons for the kyng of Englaunde, and make warre in his tytell; thou shalte beare no letters for feare of takyng. Thou mayest go lyke a marchaunt of Rochell to by wynes, and saye to Perot, that he reyse vp these men of warre and kepe the coutreys of Berrey, Auuergne, and Lymosyn in doute, and kepe the felde, for we shall lande in Rochelloyes, and shall make there suche warre, that it shal be herde of and well known. The Breton sayde he shulde do his message, if he hadde no great lette by the waye. He was set a lande on the sandes, and (as he that knewe all the country of Bretayne) went of from all the great townes, and passed by the country of Poyctou and entred into Lymosyn, and so came to Chalucet, wherof Perot le Bernoys was capitayne. The messangere came to the barryers, and gaue knowledge of his cōmyng to them of the garyson: after he had ben examyned at the gate, he was lette in, and so brought before Perotte, and dyde well his message, wherof Perot had great ioye, for he greatly desyred to here tidynges of the army on the see. Than he sayd to the Breton, thou arte welcome: bothe I and all my companions haue great desyre to ryde forthe abrode, and so shall we do, and accomplysshe that thou hast shewed vs.

Thus Perotte le Bernoys made hym prest, and sente to Carlate to the Bourge of Champayne, to the capitayne of Ousacke,<sup>a</sup> Olyue Barbe, and to the capitayn of Aloyse besyde saynt Floure, Aymergotte Marcell, and to other capitayns alonge the country in Auuergne and Lymosyn, desyryng all these to make thē redy, for he wolde ryde oute abrode: for he sawe it than a good season for them, cōmaundyng them to leaue sure men in their garisons tyll their returne. These companyons, who hadde as great desyre to ryde abrode as Perot (for they coulde nat waxe ryche withoute some other loste), made thē redy and came to Chalucet, where they assembled; they were well to the nombre of foure hundred speares; they thought themselfe suffycient to do a great feate; they knewe no lorde in the country as than able to resyste them, nor to breke their enterprice, for the siege of Vandachore<sup>b</sup> of sir Wyllyam of Lignacke, nor of Boesme Laūce<sup>c</sup> was nat defeated as than. Thus they rode forthe, and were lordes of the felde, and passed Auuergne on the ryght hande, and tooke the ryght waye to Berrey, for they knewe well ŷ duke was nat as than there, but was in Fraunce with the kyng at Moütereau or faulte yon.<sup>d</sup>

Nowe lette vs leaue to speke of Perot le Bernoys and of his enterprice, and speke of the erle of Arundell and of his armye on the see, and shewe howe he perceuered after he was departed fro the cost of Bretayne.

Whan the erle of Arundell and suche lordes as were with hym were departed fro the cost of Bretayne, they sayled with good wynd and wether, for ŷ tyme was fayre and pleasaunt, and goodly to beholde ŷ shippes on ŷ see: they were a sixscore one and other, with baners and stremers wayunge in the wynde, glytryng with the lordes armes agaynst the sonne: thus they went saylyng by the see fresshly (like a horse newe cōmyng out of the stable brayeng and cryeng, and lomyng at the mouth): the see was so promp

and

<sup>a</sup> Donzac.

<sup>b</sup> Ventadour.

<sup>c</sup> Bonne-lance.

<sup>d</sup> Montereau sur Yonne.

<sup>e</sup> Marans.

and so agreable to thē, as though by fygure the see shulde haue said to them: be mery, sirs, I am for you, and I shall bring you to good porte and hauen without peryll. Thus these lordes sayled frontyng Poynetou and Xayuton, and cast ancre before Rochell, in ȝ hauen towarde Marant:<sup>a</sup> than some of their cōpany seyng the fludde cōmyng, entred or it were full water into bottes mo than two hundred one and other, and arryued nere to the towne of Marant.<sup>b</sup> The watche of Marant<sup>c</sup> had spied the Englysshe flete, and sawe howe the bottes were comyng to lande warde with the fludde: than he blewe his trūpe and made great noyse, to awake the men of the towne to saue themselves, so that many men and women toke their goodes and wente and saued them in the Castell, the whiche came well to passe for them, or els they had lost all. Whan they sawe the Englysshmen come at their helys, they toke that they had and lefte the rest, and saued their bodies. The Englysshe archers and other entred into the towne and fell to pyllage (therfore they came thyder), but lytell they founde there; sauynge coffers voyde and emptye, all their goodes was withdrawn into the Castell: as for corne, wyne, salte bacone, and other prouision, they fōūde ynouge, for there was more than four hundred tonne of wyne in the towne; wherfore they determyned to abyde there a certayne space to kepe that prouision: it came well to passe for them, for they sayde if they shulde departe thens, all shulde be withdrawn into the forresses, and caryed away by the ryuer to Fountney as moche as they myght, and the reste destroyed: they taryed all that night in the towne; they came thyder in the euenyng, and sente worde to them on the see what case they were in, and the cause why they taryed. The erle of Arundell and the other lordes sayde howe they had done well. This nyght passed; the nexte mornyng, whan the tyde began to retourne, they disancred all their small vesselles, and euery man wente into them, and putte all their harnesse into bottes and barges, and lafte their great shippes styll at ancre, for they coude nat cum nere to the lande for lacke of water; and they lafte an hundred men of armes and two hundred archers styll there to kepe their shippes, whiche laye at the mouthe of the hauyn: thā with their smalle vesselles they arryued at Marant,<sup>d</sup> and toke lande at their leysar, and so lodged all bytwene Marant<sup>e</sup> and ȝ towne of Rochell, the whiche was but four leages fro thens. Tidynges spredde abrode in the country, howe the Englysshemen were arryued at Marante,<sup>f</sup> a four hundred fightyng men: the playne country, the good townes and castelles were afrayde, and made good watche. Than they of the vyllages fledde away, and caryed their goodes into forestes and into other places as shortely as they myght.

*Howe they of Marroys and Rochellois were sore afrayed of the Englysshmen that were a lande, and how they of Rochell made a scrymysshe with them; and howe after the Englysshmen had pylled the countrey about Marant, they dreve agayne to the see with their pyllage whiche was great.*

#### C A P. CXXXIIIIL<sup>a</sup>

IF the Englysshmen had ben furnysshed with horses it had been greatly to their profyte, for ȝ countrey as than was vnprouided of men of warre; namely, of suche as were able to haue mette with them. True it was, the lord of Parteney, the lorde of Pons, the lorde of Lyniers, ȝ lorde of Tanyboton, sir Geffray of Argenton, the lorde of Montendre, sir Aymery of Rochchouart, the vycont of Towars, and dyuers other knyghtes  
and

<sup>a</sup> Marans.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXX.

and squyers of Poictou, and of Xaynton, were as than in the country, but they were nat toguyder, for euery man was in his owne fortresse, for they were nat ware of the Englysshemens commynge thyder; if they hadde knowen a moneth before that the Englysshemenne wolde haue ryued there, they wolde haue prouyded therfore: but they knewe it nat: this fell sodaynly, wherfore they were the more afrayde, and euery man toke hede to kepe his owne, and the men of the country to gette in their cornes, for it was about the begynnynge of Auguste: also there was no heed Capitaygne in the country to bringe menne toguyder. The duke of Berrey, who was cheife soueraygne of Poictou, was but newly gone to Parys. The seneschall of Xaynton was nat in the country, and the Seneschall of Rochell, sir Helyon of Lignacke, was nat at Rochell, nor in the country; he was in great busynesse to ryde in and out bytwene ð duke of Berrey, and the duke of Lancastre; by these reasons the country was the more feble, for where there is defaulte of good heedes, there must nedes be defaulte in the body and in the fote: and he that hath no foote can do nothyng that is worthe. Thus these lordes were in feare two wayes, they had the Englysshmen armed before them that came fro the see; and on the other syde they herde newes fro Berrey, and fro Limosyn, that Perot le Bernoys, rode abrode with fyue or sixe hundred fyghtynge men with hym, and was entred into Berrey; so they wyst nat wherto they shulde take hede, but euery manne to kepe his owne: for the renome wente howe these two hoostes shulde mete toguyder, outhr in the country of Poictou, or Xaynton. This was the opinyon of dyuers.

True it was that in the towne of Rochell, (the same season that the Englysshemen were landed at Marant,<sup>a</sup>) there was two valyāt knyghtes, the one called sir Peter of Jouy,<sup>b</sup> and the other sir Taylle Pie, whome sir Helyon of Lignacke had lefte at Rochell, to kepe the towne and countre therabout. Whan tidynges came to Rochell, how the erle of Arundell, and the armye that had ben so longe on the see were a lande, and lodged besyde Marant,<sup>c</sup> than these two knyghtes sayd to thē that were vnder their charge, (and to the mayre of Rochell, and men of the towne.) sirs, it must behoue vs to go and loke on these Englysshemenne; it is shewed vs howe they be arryued in these parties: I and my companion wyll go and gyue them their welcome, for the whiche they shall paye vs, or els we them, for we shal be blamed if we suffre them to rest in peace, sythe we haue the charge of the keynge of this countre; there is one poynte good for vs, they haue no horses; they are men of the see, and we be well mounted; we shall sende our crosbowes before, they shall wake them, and shote and hurte them, and whan they haue done they shall retourne; than the Englysshemen wyll issue out after them afote, and we shall suffre our crosbowes to passe homwarde, and than we shall receyue our enemyes at the spere poynt; we shall haue of them suche aduaūtage, that we shall do them great dōmage. Euery man that herde these knyghtes speke, reputed thē for noble valyaunt men, and agreed to their counsaile; and there assembled toguyder, what one and other, a twelue hundred: the nexte mornynge at the breakyng of the daye, euery mā was redy and assembled togider, and the crosbowes and men afote issued out and went a great pace to reyse the Englysshmen out of their lodgynges: and in the meane season the horsmen made them redy vpon a iii. hūdred, for there were dyuers knyghtes and squyers cōe to Rochell. Certainly, if by any maner of inspyracion thenglysshmen had knowen of their cōmyng, that they might haue made an embusse, (but of two hundred archers, and a hūdred men of armes.) there had nat one Frenchman returned agayne. Whā they of Rochell came to the Englysshemens lodgynges, it was earely in the morenyng, and their watche was returned to their lodgynges; than the Frenche crosbowes began to shote and entred in among their lodgynges, and hurte many. The Englysshemen

<sup>a</sup> Marans.

<sup>b</sup> Before called Yon.

Englysshemen lyeng on the strawe had marueyle of the noyse, and many were hurte or they knewe that they were Frenchemen. And whan the crosbowes had shotte euery man a sixe shottes, or thereabout, they returned, (as it was before apoynted:) than aproched the horsmen and entred among the lodgynges: therwith the hoost began to styrrre, and knyghtes and squyers drewe togyuder into the felde. And whan the Frenchemen sawe the hoost styrrre and drewe togyuder, they drewe backe and returned towarde Rochell a good pace, for feare of the shotte of the Englysshemen, who folowed them nere to Rochell. Than the Erle of Arundell with foure hundred men of armes folowed after a great pace, euery man his speare in his hande or on his necke; the preace of the Frenche fotemen was great at the entrynge into Rochell, and alwayes the two Frenche knyghtes were behynde, and sette their men forwarde tyll they were within the barriers; and euer the Englysshemen folowed in suche wyse, that  $\frac{1}{2}$  two Frēche knyghtes were in great daūger to be taken or slayn: they were sore sette at, bycause they semed to be the chiefe capitaynes, (as they were indede,) so that sir Peter Jouy hadde his horse slayne vnder hym, and with great payne his men saued hym, and drewe hym within the baryyers; and sir Peter Taylle Pye was stryken through the thye with a glayue, and with an arrowe through  $\frac{1}{2}$  bassenet into the heed, and his horse fell downe deed within  $\frac{1}{2}$  gate. At the entrynge into the towne there were many slayne and hurte, mo than xl: the men of the towne were aboue ouer the gate, and caste downe stones, and shotte out bombardes, so that the Englysshemen durste aproche no nerer.

Thus wente the first scrimysshe bytwene them of Rochell, and the Englysshemen, and whan they hadde scrimysshed nere to noone, the erle of Arundell sowned the retrayte; than they withdrew in good order, and returned to their lodgynges and vnarmed them, and toke their ease, and they had well wherof, they lacked nouthur wyne nor flesshe. The Englysshemen taryed there about a fyftene dayes abydinge all aduentures: but after that, they of Rochell issued no more oute to scrimysshe, for they sawe well the Englysshemen were wise and valyaunt, and also  $\frac{1}{2}$  two capitayns were hurt, wherfore the other had good cause to sytte styll in rest. The Erle of Arundell sent a thre or four tymes abrode into the country of Rochelloys, towarde Bresmure,<sup>a</sup> and into the lande of Towars, and dyde great dōmage, wherof all the country was afrayde: the Englysshmen had done a great enterprice if they had ben furnysshed with horsmen, and in the countre they gatte but fewe, for as soone as they herde of their landyng, euery man caryed all that they hadde into the fortresses: and whan this army had taryed there a fyftene dayes, and were well refreshhed, and sawe that no man came against them, and parceyued the wynde good for thē, they drewe them into their shippes, and caryed with them moche wyne and fresshe flesshe, and so entred into their vesselles, and drewe vp their sayles and toke the see: and the same daye they mette with xii. shippes of Bayon, goynge into Englande, charged with wynes and other marchaūdises, so they ioyned togyuder and made good chere; they gauē to the erle of Arundell two peces of Gascoyn wyne. Thus they sayled forthe at aduētūre.

Nowe lette vs speke of Perot le Bernois, and of the other capitayns that were in his cōpany, howe they drewe agayne into their fortresses.

<sup>a</sup> Bresvire.—*Ligons' edit.*

*Howe Perot le Bernoys and his cōpanyons resorted agayne to theyr holdes with great pyllage: and howe the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> coulde haue no ayde of the Englysshe-men to reyse the siege before Grane: and how the brabausoys made a bridge ouer the ryuer of Meuse, the whiche they of Guerles<sup>a</sup> dyde breke, brinne, and dystroy, as ye shall here after.*

CAP. CXXXV.<sup>b</sup>

THE same seasoone that the Englysshe armye was at Marant, Perot le Bernoys and his route, to the nōbre of four hundred speres, were abrode and passed by Lymosyn, and came to Berrey; and on a daye they tooke all the marchauntes that were in the towne of Blāke, in Berrey, on the whiche daye there was a great fayre, wherby they had great profite and good prisoners, and than passed further and came to Selles, in Berrey, and pylled and robbed the towne. Thus Perot and his companyons rode abrode in the countre, and dyde great dōmage, for there was none that came agaynst them. The countrey was sore afrayde on bothe sydes the ryuer of Loyre, vnto the coultie of Bloys, and of Thourayne; they coude nat ymagin what these two armyes were purposed to do; some sayde they shulde mete togider, but they dyd nat, for the army on the see drewe agayne to the see, and Perot in lykewise to his fortresse: whā they had pylled and wonne great richesse in the countrey, euery man wente to their owne fortresse to saue that they had gotte. There was none other dede of armes done that season in Auuergne, and Lymosyn. Thāne began the truce on that syde the ryuer of Loyre, the whiche shulde endure to the moneth of Marche; but styll the siege endured before Vandachore,<sup>c</sup> by sir Wylliam of Lignacke, sir Johan Boesme Launce,<sup>d</sup> sir Johan Butlere, and other: for sir Geffray Teate noyre was so proude and cruell, that he sette nouthr by truce nor peace, and all on the truste of the strength of his fortresses.

Nowe lette vs leaue speakyng of the siege of Vandachore,<sup>c</sup> and shewe hereafter what ende it toke, and speke now of Brabante, and of Guerles.<sup>a</sup>

Ye knowe well, (as it hath ben cōteyned here before in this hystorie,) the duchesse of Brabant was determyned to make warre agaynst the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and caused the siege to cōtinue before the towne of Graue, with a great puyssaunce of knyghtes and squyers, and other men of the good townes of Brabante: and their entencion was, nat to departe thens tyll they had the towne of Grane at their wyll: and the duchesse, to shewe ȳ the mater touched her nere, she laye at Boyes, a foure leages thens. The hoost was plentifulfull of euery thyng: they were ofentymes refreshed with newe prouisyon cōmyng fro dyuers partes, as well by see, by fresshe water, and by the ryuer of Muse, as by the lande of Brabant. This siege long endured, and they had there great ingyngs before the towne to caste in great stones, whiche dyde great damage; and besyde that, to enfecte the people within; they caste into the towne all deed careyne, (and the wether was hote,) the whiche greatly anoyed them within; the clere ayre was sore corrupted with the yuell ayre. Somtyme the knyghtes and squyers of Brabant wolde come to the baryers and scrinysshe with them of ȳ towne, and there were many feates of armes done, for there were men in the towne, (sette there by the duke of Guerles.)<sup>a</sup>

VOL. II.

3 C

that

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXI.<sup>c</sup> Ventadour.<sup>d</sup> Bouc-lance.

that were redye to shewe forth their prowes whan tyme was. The duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> lay at Nimay,<sup>b</sup> and coude nat remedy the mater, nor reyse the siege, nor yet fight with his enemies, for he had no puissaunce therto: but he hadde sente into Englande, certifiyng what case he stode in, trustyng to haue had socours fro thens, but he had none; for at that tyme there was moche trouble in Englande, for there was sette a newe counsaile about the kyng, by the meanes of his vnclis, and tharchbyssshop of Caüterbury. About the feest of saynt Johan the Baptyst, there was a coüsayle in Englande, to knowe if there shulde be sente any ayde of men of armes and archers to the duke of Guerles,<sup>c</sup> or nat: but euery thyng consydred, they thought it best naye, for renome ran in Englande howe the Frenche kyng made a gret assemble, but no manne knewe whyther they shulde drawe: the Englysshemen by ymaginacyon douted that they wolde cōe to Calais; on the other syde they douted the scottes, wherfore they wolde nat sende their men of armes and archers out of the realme; also they knewe howe there were many menne of warre on the see, wherfore it was cōuenient to kepe their owne realme: therefore the noble men of Englande sayd: Lette the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> alone, he is ryght valyant, and is i a stronge cōuntre, he wyll do well ynoughe agaynst the Brabansoys; also he shal be confortyd by ȝ almayns,<sup>d</sup> if nede be, for they be alyed with hym and his neyghbours; they haue bene with hym or this agaynst the Frenchemen. Thus the maters wente in Englande, but they within the towne of Graue endured the payne, with sautes and sore scrimisshing. They of Brabante deused whyle they laye at the siege, to make a bridge of tymbre ouer the ryuer of Meuse, therby to entre into the duchy of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and to ouer ronne the cōütre, and to kepe that no vitayle shulde come to the towne of Graue, and therby to besege it bothe before and behynde, and on all partes, to kepe it fro vitayling, for they had men ynowe so to do; they sette many carpentars aworke with all dilygence, and they dyde so moche that their worke was so forwarde, ȝ the bridge was nere ouer the water within a speares cast. The duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> had perfit knowledge of the makyng of this bridge, and dyde lette them alone tyll it was nyghe made: but whan he sawe it was nere hande fynished, than he came before it with gonnes and other artillarye, and shotte fyre to the bridge, in suche wise, that the bridge was brente and broken, and the Brabansoys loste all their labour, wherwith they were sore displeased, and than toke counsaile what was best for them to do.

*Howe the Brabansoys passed the ryuer through the towne of Rauesten, ouer the bridge there, and so entred into Guerles.<sup>a</sup> Than the duke departed fro Nimay<sup>b</sup> with three hundred speares, and came agaynst thē and disconfyted them bytwene Rauesten and the towne of Graue.*

#### CAP. CXXXVI.<sup>c</sup>

A THRE lytell leages fro ȝ towne of Graue is the castell of Rauesten, partyeyng to the lorde of Bourne, who was subiecte and helde of the duchy of Brabant; he was desyred by the duchesse counsaile, and by other lordes and knyghtes, that he shulde open the towne of Rauesten, and suffre their hoste to passe through to entre into the cōuntry of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and at their desyres he was content. The duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> lyenge at Nymay,<sup>b</sup> was surely infourmed, (by suche spyall as he had,) howe the lorde of Bourne wolde gyue his enemyes fre passage to entre into his cōuntry, through the  
towne

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Nimeguen.

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXII.

<sup>d</sup> Germans.

towne of Rauesten, wherof he was pensyue and malēcolyous, for he sawe well he had nat men ynowe to resyste the puyssaunce of Brabante, for they were well a xl. thousande meinne, one and other; on this the duke had many ymagynacions; and fynally, all thynges consydrēd, he determyned in his mynde to assemble all his men toguyder, and to take the feldes, and to come towards the towne of Graue, to the entente that if they of Brabant entred into Guerles,<sup>a</sup> than he wolde entre into Brabant, for he thought surely nat to be inclosed within the walles of any towne: than the duke spake to the lorde of Ghesme, a great baron of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> who was his princypall counsaylour, and shewed hym his sayd mynde and entente; and fyrste, this lorde was nat of the opynyon that the duke shulde take the feldes with so small a nombre. Well, quod the duke, and what shall I do than? shall I suffre myselfe to be inclosed in one of my townes, and in the meane tyme they shall brynne and exyle my cuntry? that shulde be ouer dere to me to abyde; I make a vowe to godde, and to our lady, quod the duke, I wyll drawe into the feldes, and resyst my domage as nere as I may; and as he ordeyned so he dyd. The next mornyng he departed fro Nymay,<sup>b</sup> (after he had ben at churche, and made his offrynge to our lady of Nymay):<sup>b</sup> than he and his men dranke a lytell, and so mounted on their horses; he was a thre hūdred speares, rather lesse than mo, and tooke the feldes, and drewe towards their enemyes the next way. Beholde what a great corage this duke was of: some sayd it was a great outrage; howbeit, he lyke a coragious knyght full of comeforte, sayde: on, on forwarde in the name of god and saynt George agaynste our enemyes: for I had rather dye in the felde with honoure, than with dyshonour to be closed within a towne: with hym was the lorde of Ghesme, a valyant and a sage knyght, chyefe ruler of his armye, and the lorde of Hanseberth, the lorde of Huckelin, sir Otez lorde of Vaspre,<sup>c</sup> and dyuers other good knyghtes and squyers of valyaunt corage.

The same daye that the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was in the feldes, early in the mornyng, the seneschall of Brabant, with his men, knyghtes, squyers, and men of the good townes in Brabant, by the consente of the lorde of Bourne, passed the ryuer by the bridge of Rauesten, to the nombre of ten thousande men; the seneschall of Brabante, the lorde of Lygnier, the lorde of Bourgueuall, the lorde of Gence, and other, were ryght ioyfull whanne they sawe they were ouer the ryuer of Meuse; they said than amonge themselfe, howe they wolde go the same day and make a course before Nymay,<sup>b</sup> and burne the mylles, and fawbours, and the villages there about; but soone after that, they herde other tydynges by their fore ryders, suche as they had sent to discouer the cuntry. Than tydynges also came to the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> howe a ten thousande of his enemyes were passed the ryuer of Meuse, at the bridge of Rauesten. Than the duke stode in a staye, and toke counsayle what was beste to do: some were sore abashed because they were but a handfull of men to the regarde of their enemyes, who were thurty or xl. against one: some sayde, howe myght endure thre hundred speares agaynste ten or twelue thousande men? it lyeth nat in our puyssaunce to ouercome them, but it lyeth well in their power soone to ouercome vs: some knyghtes came to the duke, and cōsayled him to drawe towards Graue: thanne the duke sayde he wolde nat, for in no wyse he wolde be closed in any towne that he hadde: but sayde, surely he wolde go and fyght with his enemyes, for his corage he sayd gaue hym to dyscomfyte them, and said, as he dyd before, that rather he wolde dye with honour, than to lyue with shame; we shall, quod he, this day ouercome our enemyes, wherby we shall haue greate profyte and honoure; therefore all that loue me set forwarde and folowe me quykly.

The wordes that the duke spake incoraged all his men, and specyally suche as herde  
 3 C 2 hym,

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Nimeguen.<sup>c</sup> *Johnes says, Naspre.*

hym, and euery man shewed semblante to be of great corage to fight; euery man made hym redy, and lased on his basnet, and gyrt their horses, and set themselfe in good aray togyther, and rode forthe an easy passe to kepe their horses well brethed: there were certayne newe knyghtes made. Thus they rode in good aray towards Rauesten; by that tyme the Brabansoys were ouer the ryuer. Thanne tydynges came to the Seneschall of Brabante, how the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was in the felde, and so nere them that incontyent they shulde mete togyder. Suche as herde those tydynges first had mernayle of that aduecture. Than they beleued surely that for euery man that the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> had, that he had been syxe; than they rested to sette themselfe in ordre, but they had no leysar: for therwith came on them the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> with his route close togyder, as faste as spures wolde dryue their horses, cryenge their cries: our lady of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> with their speares in the restes. There was a squier of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> greatly to be praysed, for the great desyre that he had to exalte his renome; he galoped before all the batayls, and was the firste that iusted, and entred in amonge his enemies; the squier was called Arnolde Morbec,<sup>b</sup> with that course he bare one to the erthe rudely, I canne nat tell if euer he was releued or nat, for the prease was so greate, that harde it was if one were downe to be releued agayn, without it were by great helpe: at this first rencountre there were of the Brabansoys a sixe score borne to the erthe; there were many beaten downe, and small defence made by the Brabansoys, for they were sodenly taken; and so shulde men of warre do that thinke to do damage to their enemies; for the Brabansoys, for all that they were so greate a nombre, and so many great men, yet they were so farre asonder, and out of araye, that they coulde nat gette togyther in ordre of baytaye, but their bataye was pearsed through and sparckled abrode, some here and some there, so that the lordes of Brabante coulde nat come to their owne men, nor their menne to them; and suche as were behynde, whanne they herde the noyse and brewte, and sawe fy dust and powder ryse, it semed to them properly that the voyce of the dyscomfetture came on them, and howe all their company were ouercome; so that the feare therof caused them to tourne and to flye towards Rauesten agayne; and some toke the ryuer at aduecture, bothe a foote and a horsebacke, without sertchyng of the depenese, or without hauynge of any gujde: and as they fledde, they thought euer their enemies had been at their backes; by this dyscomfettyng of themselfe there were drowned and in parell moo than twelue hundred in the ryuer of Mense, for they lepte in one vpon another lyke beestes, without ordre or reason; and some of the great loides and barones of Brabante, whome I wyll nat name, for it shulde be blame to them and to their heyres to be noted to flye away so shamefully, and to seke for their sauegarde nother the right passage of the ryuer, nor yet the hygh way to the towne of Rauesten, but rather other straunge wayes to llye fro their enemies. In this myschyefe fell that daye the chyualrye of Brabante: bytwene the towne of Graue and Rauesten many were slayne and taken, for suche as came to raunsome yelded lightly, and the almayns were gladd to take them, for the profyte that they thought to haue by them; and suche as returned to the lodgynges before Graue, abashed them that were there lyenge at the syege, for they came lyke men clene discomfyted; they came flyenge so faste that they lacked brethe, so that they coulde skante speke any worde; (that they sayde was.) Syrs, gette vs all hence for we be all dyscomfyted, there is no comeforte. When they in the hoost vnderstode the trouthe of the mater, and sawe their company in that case, they were than so abashed and afrayed, that they had no leysar nor puyssaunce to take their owne goodes, nor to take downe their tentes nor paulyons, nor to trusse horse, carte, nor wagon, but sodaynely departed without byddyng adewe, and lefte all behynde: they were so afrayde that they made no countenance of abydyng: they toke with them nother vytayle nor caryage, but suche as hadde horses lepte on them, and fledde awayes

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Hermant de Morbec.



towardes the dukes wodde,<sup>a</sup> or els towardes Houdan, or to the mount saynte Geruays, or to Gertras, and Doidec,<sup>b</sup> they had none other care but to saue themselfe fro their enemyes: and if they within the garyson of Graue had soner knowen of the dyscomfetture, it had ben greatly for their profyte, and had slayne or taken many of their enemyes in their flyenge: but they knewe it nat tyll it was late: howbeit, whan they issued out they foude great plentye of Tentes and panylyons, and prouysion of engyns, gomes, and artillery, which they brought into their towne at good leysar, for there were none to saue them naye. Thus brake vp the siege of Graue to the gret damage of all the Brabansoys, wherof great brute ranne in dyuers countreys, howe that a handfull of men dyscomfyted xl. thousande, and reysed the siege. There was taken the lorde of Bourgueuall, and the lorde of Linyer, and other, to the nombre of seuentene baners: they were hanged before the ymage of our lady of Nymay,<sup>c</sup> for a perpetuall memory.

*Howe the duke of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> after he had dyscomfyted the Brabansoys, he wente agayne to Nymay:<sup>e</sup> and howe tydynges came to the frenche kynge: and howe the kyng sente ambassadours to the kyng of Almayne.<sup>e</sup>*

C A P. CXXXVII.<sup>f</sup>

I HAUE great payne to recorde or to wryte of this shamefull dyscomfyture of the Brabansoys, for blemysshyng of their honoures: but bycause I promysed and said in the begynnyng of my boke, that if I shall write truely this hystory, I must make true relacion of the mater, whosoever it do touche: Nowe to procede further: the yonge duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> had and optaygned this iourney, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and eyght, aboute Mawdlyn tyde, in the moneth of July; and whanne this dyscomfyture and chase was passed, and the felde clene deluyered, (whiche was done within the space of two houres,) than the guerloys assembled togyder in the felde, and made good chere, and were ioyfull; they had good cause so to be for their good aduenture, for they had as many prysoners, or mo, than they were themselfe in nombre. Than their heraudes sought out the deed bodyes of bothe partyes, and amonge other there was slayne a yonge man, sonne to therle of Namure, called Vassyer of Colles, lorde of Balaster, of whose dethe the duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> was sory and sore dyspleased, and that he shewed well, for greatly he complayned his deth, and sayde, howe the dethe of a yonge knyght dyspleased hym greatly: for he was a ryght lusty knyght, pleasaunte and ioly, and also the yere before he had ben in Pruse with the duke of Guerles.<sup>d</sup> Some counsayled the duke to retourne to the towne of Graue, and there to refresshe them, and to bryng thyder their prisoner. Naye, nat so, quod the duke, for at my departyng fro Nymay,<sup>e</sup> I auowed to our lady there, that if I spedde well, to returne thyder to offre to our lady; wherfore I wyll with a mery chere that we all retourne thyder, and thanke our lady, who hath sent vs the victory of our enemyes. No man durste save naye agaynst the dukes mynde, and so they rode thyder a good pace: it was but two good leages fro thence as the batayle was: anone they came thyder. Whan tydynges came to Nymay<sup>e</sup> of the trouthe of that busynes, men, women, and children, were ioyfull, and the clergy issued out and receyued the duke with great ioy. And the duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> incontyent with his knyghtes wente to the church,

<sup>a</sup> Bois-le-duc.<sup>b</sup> Gertruydenburgh, and Dordrecht.<sup>c</sup> Nimeguen.<sup>d</sup> Gueldres.<sup>e</sup> Germany.<sup>f</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXIII.

churche, where the ymage of our lady was, in whome the duke had great affyaunce; and there in the chapell he was vnarmed of all his peeces into his doublet, and gaue all his armure to the churche, in the honour of our blessed lady, thankynge her of the journey that he hadde atchyued; and there all the penons of the lordes that were taken that day were hanged vp before our lady. I came nat tell if they be there as yet or nat. Than the duke went to his lodgyng, and so dyd euery manne with their prisoners, for they thought surely they shulde well paye for their scot, therefore they made good chere.

Great brute spred abroad of this duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> who had thus ouerthrowen the Brabansoys, wherby he was more douted than he was before. The duches of Brabante, (who laye at the dukes wood<sup>b</sup> with her trayne,) whan she sawe howe yuell the mater wente agaynst her, and that the syege of Graue was raysed, she was sore displeasid, and good cause why, for it touched her nere: than she sette a garysone at the dukes wood,<sup>b</sup> to kepe fronter there, and so retourned through Champayne, and came to Bruselles, and wrote ofentymes to the duke of Burgoyne, aduertysynge hym of her astate, for all her hope of recoueraunce was in hym. Ye may well knowe and byleue that this discomforture of the Brabansoys was soone knowen in the french kinges courte, but they made lytell accõpte therof, syth they sawe the kyng had suche affection to go to Guerles.<sup>a</sup> The kynges counsaile wrote to syr Wylliam of Tremoyle,<sup>c</sup> and to sir Geruais of Myrande, who were soueraygne capytayns of the men of warre that the duke of Burgoyne had sente into the cuntry, and to the keepers of the thre castels on the ryuer of Meuse, Butth, Gaulgeth, and Nulle,<sup>d</sup> commaundyng them to kepe well their fronters, and nat to make any issue out wherby to take any damage, tyll they here more: shewynge them surely howe the kyng in propre persone shortly wolde go se the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> in his owne cuntry. This sir Willyam was sore dyspleasid of the aduenture that was fallen on their party, but the tydynges of Fraunce comforted hym agayne, and ordred hymselfe acordynge as he was commaunded.

Nowe lette vs retourne to the counsaile of Fraunce, who had great desyre to go into Guerles;<sup>a</sup> they toke suche dyspleasure with the defyaunce that the duke had sente to the kyng, that they nother regarded the begynnynge, myddes, nor ende, and sayd, what so euer it coste, they wolde make the duke repent his dede and to denye it, or els they wolde distroy and burne his landes, and his fathers also, the duke of Julyers. Dukes, erles, barones, knyghtes, squyers, and all other, were warned euery man to be redy, acordynge as it apertayned for so longe a voyage: and it was ordeyned that one of the marshals of Fraunce shulde abyde styll in the realme, that was syr Loys of Poiteuyr,<sup>e</sup> and he to take hede of the fronters on the other syde of the ryuer of Dordone, to the see, for in Languedoc, bytwene the ryuer of Gyronde, dyscendynge to the ryuer of Loyre, there was truce had bytwene them: and it was ordeyned that the other marshall, syr Moton of Blamuyll, shulde go with the kyng. It was maruayle to thynke of the great prouysyon that the lordes made; Fyrste, for the kyng, and for the dukes of Berrey, Burgoyne, Tourayne, and Burbon, at the cyties of Reynes,<sup>f</sup> Chalons, Troys, and in all the courteys of Champayne, Raynes,<sup>f</sup> in the byshopprike of Laon, and Langers; and cartes and caryages were taken vp in all partyes. It was marueyle to consyder the great aparell that was made for this journey into Guerles.<sup>a</sup> All this season the duke of Bretagne was at Parys, and coulde nat be deluyered by the kyng, who was most parte al that season at Moustreuell Faulte yon,<sup>g</sup> but alwayes he had good chere, and was alwayes serued with fayre wordes and curtesye, and the lordes wolde desyre hym nat to thynke longe,

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Bois-le-duc.<sup>c</sup> La Tremouille.<sup>d</sup> Buet, Gambect, and Mille.<sup>e</sup> It appears this should be "*Sancerre*."<sup>f</sup> Rheims.<sup>g</sup> Montereau sur Yonne.

longe, for shortly he shulde be deluyered: but they shewed hym that the kyng had so moch ado for his vyage into Almayne,<sup>a</sup> that he coulde attende to nothyng els. The duke was fayne to suffre, for he coulde do none other, seyng he was at Parys, and he thought he wolde nat departe without the good wyll of the kyng; there he laye at great coste and charge.

Whan the certayne was knowen of this voyage into Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and tayles reysed through the realme to paye euery man their wages that shulde serue the kyng, many of the wyse men of the realme, as well some of the counsaile, as other, sayd: howe it was a great outrage to counsaile the kyng to go farre of to seke for his enemyes, and that he shulde therby put his realme in a great aduenture: for the kyng was yonge, and greatly in the fauoure of all his people, wherfor it had ben suffycyente for hym to haue suffred one or two of his vnclis to haue gone thyder with the constable of Fraunce, and a sixe or seuen thousande speares, and nat the kyng in propre persone: the kynges vnclis were of the same oppynyon, and oftentymes they counsailed the kyng to forbear his journey hymselfe; but whan so euer they spake to hym therof, he was displeased, and wolde saye: If any of you go without my company, it shall be agaynst my wyll; and besyde that ye shall haue no money. otherwyse I can nat restrayne you. Whan the dukes of Berrey, and of Burgoyne, herde the kynges answeere, and sawe the great affection that the kyng hadde to go that voyage, they aunswered and sayd: Syr, a goddes name ye shall go, and without you we wyll do nothing, therfore, sir, be of good comfort. Than the kynges counsaile regarded one thyng, the whiche they thought ryght necessary, (and that was this:) Bytwene the frenche kyng and the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> of longe tyme there had ben ordynaunces made bytwene them. and that was, that none of them shulde entre with any army into any of their neyghbours landes, nor the frenche kyng to make no warre agaynst the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> nor he agaynst the kyng, on payne to ryn in the sentence of holy church; and therto they were bounde and solemply sworne the day of their coronacyon, to the entente to kepe their realmes in peace and reste; wherfore than it was aduysed that if the kyng shulde go this voyage into Guerles,<sup>b</sup> (the whiche is holden of the kyng of Almayne.)<sup>a</sup> that fyrst he and his counsaile shulde suffycyently informe the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> howe the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> had shamefully defyed the frenche kyng with fell wordes, out of the style and vsage that lordes are woute to defye eche other in warre; and to the entente to cause the duke to denye his dede, and to repente hym, the frenche kyng wyll come into Almayne,<sup>a</sup> nat agaynst the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> nor his signory, but agaynst his enemye, and to seke him out where so euer he can fynde hym. To go on this message was charged svr Guy of Hancorte, a ryght sage and dyscrete knyght, and with hym one of the maysters of the parlyament, called mayster yues Orient; these two were called before the counsaile, and charged to go this voyage to the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and they were well informed what they shulde do and say. Thus they departed and toke their waye by Chalons, in Champayne, and rode with a good travne lyke notable persons, ambassadours fro the Frenche kyng; and they founde the lorde of Coucy at Chalons, who lay there and retayned knyghtes and squiers of Barre, Lorayne, and Champayne, to go in that voyage with hym in the vowarde; he made to these ambassadours good chere, and made theym a great dynere at their lodgyng; and the nexte daye they departed and rode towards saynte Menchout, and towards the couÛtre of Lusenburgh, there to here certayne tydynges of the kyng of Almayne.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.

*How the frenche kyng gaue leaue to the duke of Bretayne to retourne into his cō-trey: and howe the countrey of Brabant wolde nat consente too the kynges passage, nor his avery: and howe the ambassadours of Fraunce sped.*

C A P. CXXXVIII.<sup>a</sup>

WHYLE these frenche ambassadours wente to speke with the kyng of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> in ȝ meane tyme the frenchmen lette nat styll to make their prouysions, and commaundement gyuen, euery manne to be in the felde by the myddes of Auguste, in Champayne, or there aboute, for the kyng wolde be redy by that tyme: they wolde nat tary for any aunswere fro the kyng of Almayn.<sup>c</sup> Than the frenche kyng, and his vnclis, thought it good that the duke of Bretaygne shulde departe home; he was sente for to the kyng to Monstreuell faulte you,<sup>c</sup> and there he had good chere of the kyng, and of the duke of Burgoyne, and of the duke of Tourayne, for as than the duke of Berrey was nat there, he was in his owne countrey assemblynge men togyder, and had sente his cōmaundement into Poyctou, to knyghtes and squyers there, that they shulde drawe into the felde. The kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne, treated amyable the duke of Bretaygne, and shewed hym nothyng but loue. Ye haue herde here before how the duke had rendred agayne to the constable his thre castels, and the towne of Jugon, but as for the hundred thousande frankes that he had receyued, he was lothe to rendre them agayne, for he axed allowaunce for suche prouysions as he had made, and fortifyenge of his garysons, castels, and townes, and retayning of men of warre, and kepyng theym all the wynter, for he thought to haue had warre; but the kyng and his counsaile fedde hym with so swete pleasaunte wordes, that fynally he was agreed to pay agayne the hundred thousande frankes in fyue yere: xx. thousande euery yere tyll it were paid. Than the duke of Bretayne departed ryght amyably, and the kyng gaue hym many fayre iouels; and so he returned to Parys, and there the duke of Burgoyne made hym a great dyner, and there they toke leaue eche of other. Thanne the duke of Bretayne payed for all his dyspenses, and toke the waye to Estampes, and rode through Beaulce, to Bogency, on ȝ ryuer of Loyre: and there his men wente on before and passed through the countreys of Bloys, Mayne, Thourayne, Aniou, and entred into Bretayne; but the duke hymselfe had redy at Boygēcy, his nauy: and there he entred into a layre shyp, and with hym the lorde Mountforde, and the lorde of Malestroit, and so sayled downe the ryuer of Loyre, and passed vnder the bridge of Bloys, and so went alonge the ryuer to Nautes in his owne countrey.

Nowe let vs leaue to speke of the duke of Bretayne, and as farre as I coulde here, he helde well the couenaunte made bytwene the frenche kyng and hym, and dyd nothyng after to be remembred, tyll I closed this boke; I can nat tell what he wyll do hereafter, if he do, I shall speke therof acordyng as I shall knowe. Nowe I wyll retourne to the frenche kyng, who prepared for his iourney into Guerles.<sup>d</sup>

Whan ȝ lorde of Coucy was cōe to the kyng to Monstreu, he shewed the kyng and his counsaile howe he had sped, and howe that all the knyghtes and squyers in Bare,  
in

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXIV.

<sup>b</sup> Germany.

<sup>c</sup> Montereau sur Yonne.

<sup>d</sup> Gueldres.

in Lourayne, in Burgoin, and to the riuers of Ryne, and Some, were redy to go with hym. The kyng had therof gret ioy, and sayd, by the grace of god he wolde the same yere se his cosyns the duke of Juliers, and Guerles:<sup>a</sup> Fyrste, they determyned whiche way they shulde take, for the surest and shortest way, (some sayd,) y<sup>e</sup> the right way was to go by Thyreashe, and to passe by the fronter of Haynalt, and of Liege, and to passe through Brabāt, and so to entre into Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and to passe the ryuer of Meuse, at Trecte,<sup>b</sup> and so to entre into the lande of Juliers, and fro thence into Guerles.<sup>a</sup> Of this determynacion the kyng and his counsayle wrote to the duches of Brabant, and to the country, shewyng them the waye that the french kyng purposed to kepe. It pleased ryght well the duches, but the country wolde nat agre therto, but sayd howe the kyng and the frēchmen shulde haue no passage that way, for it shulde be greatly to their domage. The good townes, and the knyghtes of Brabante, were of y<sup>e</sup> opynyon, and sayd to their lady the duches, that if she cosented to suffre the frenchemen to entre into her country, they wolde neuer ayde nor socoure her agaynst the duke of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> but surely they sayd, they wolde close their townes, and go and defende their landes against y<sup>e</sup> frenchmen, sayeng, howe they shulde lese more by their passinge through their country, than if their enemies were in the myddes therof. When the duches parceuyed the wylls and ententes of the people, as well knyghtes as other, she sawe no remedy, but to dyssymule the mater: than she charged sir Johan Orpen, and syr Johan of Graue, and Nycholas de la Money, to go into Fraunce to speke with the frenche kyng, and with the duke of Burgoyne, to excuse the country of Brabant, that he shuld nat take his voyage that waye: for they of the country thinke they shulde be sore greued and distroyed, if he shulde passe through their country; and she cōmaunded them to saye, that as for herselfe she coude be well content therwith, and had done all that she coulde that it myght so haue ben. They, acordinge to their ladyes mynde, departed fro Brusels, and rode towardes Parys, and dyd so moche by their iourneys, that they came to Monstreau fault yon,<sup>c</sup> where the kyng and his vncles were, and there was nothyng spoken of, but of their goyng into Guerles.<sup>a</sup> The duchesse ambassadours fyrste came to y<sup>e</sup> duke of Burgoyne, and shewed him their letters and their message; and he, at the request of his aunte, was meane to the kyng and to his counsayle: and also the lorde of Coucy dyd what he myght: in so moche that their firste purpose, as passyng through Brabant to entre into Guerles,<sup>a</sup> was broken, and the duches and the country excused. Than it was aduysed that they shulde go along the realme, whiche way they sayd was moste honourable for the kyng, and also for the brabansoys, burgonyons, sauoyns, and other.

Than it was cōcluded, and such named as shulde go in vowarde. There were ordeyned a xxv. hundred hewers of woodes, hedgers, and dykers, to make playne the wayes: the frenchemen had way good ynough thorough the realme tyll they came to Ardayne, than their good wayes began to fayle: than they founde hygh wodes dyuers and sauage, and walles, rockes, and mountaynes: these pyoners were sente before the vangarde with a thousande speares, to aduise the best passage for the kyng, and for the hoost, and for their caryage, wherof they had a xii.M. cartes, besyde other caryages, and they to hewe downe the hygh wodes of Ardane, and to make them playne, and to make newe wayes where neuer none was before, nor no man passed that way. Euery man toke great payne to do their dyligence, and specyally suchie as were aboute the kyng, for they had neuer so great affection to go into Flaunders, as they had than to go into Guerles.<sup>a</sup> And the lorde of Coucy was sent to Auignon, to hym that called hymselfe pope Clement, I knowe nat for what cause, and the vicount of Meanlx, sir

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Utrecht.<sup>c</sup> Montereau-sur-Yonne.

Johan Roy, and the lorde de la Bone, had the gouernaūce of his men tyll he retourned agayne.

Nowe let vs somewhat speke of sir Guy of Hācourte, and of maister ynes Orient, who were sent to the kyng of Almayne.<sup>a</sup> They rode so long that they came to Cōualence,<sup>b</sup> where the kyng was; and whan they hadde refreshed thē, they went towards the kyng, who was enformed of their cōmyng before, and he had great desyre to know what entent they came for: he assembled his counsaile; and than these two lordes came before the kyng of Almayn,<sup>c</sup> and curtesly dyd salute hym, and delyuerd their letters of credēce fro the french kyng: ſ kyng toke and reed them, and than regarded thē, and said: sir Guy, shewe forthe your charge; ſ knyght spake ryght sagely, and by great leysar, and shewed the kyng and his cōsaile how the frenche kyng w his army royall wyll come into the frōters of Almayne,<sup>d</sup> nat to make any warre agaynst hym, but agaynst his enemy ſ duke of Guerles,<sup>e</sup> who had highly defied the kyng their maister with shamefull wordes, and out of the style of all other defyaūces, ſ whiche the frenche kyng nor his cōsaile can in no wyse suffre; wherfore sir, quod they, the kyng requyreth you, as ye be a noble king, and of his blode, and he of yours, as all ſ worlde knoweth. ſ ye wyll nat sustayne, ayde, nor mentayne the pride of this duke, but ye to holde ſ aliances and cōfyrmacions sōtyme done and sworne bytwene thempire of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and the realme of Fraūce, ſ whiche he wyll fermly kepe on his parte. Than ſ kyng answered and said: sir Guy, we are enformed ſ our cosyn, the frēche kyng, wyll assemble togider great nōbre of people: he neded nat for so smal a mater to assemble suche people, and to spende so moche to seke his enemy so farre of: for if he had desyred me, w lesse traueyle I coude well haue caused ſ duke of Guerles<sup>e</sup> to haue cōe to mercy and reason. Sir, quod the knight, we thanke you ſ it pleaseth you to say so: but the kyng our maister regardeth but lytell his expenses, nor trauell of his men: but he regardeth his honour, and to this his cōsaile is agreed; and syth ſ you nor your cōsaile is nat myscontent with our maister, (who wyll in no wyse violate nor breke ſ ordinaūces and confirmaciōs of olde tyme made bitwene ſ two realmes of Fraūce and Almain,<sup>a</sup> but kepe and mentayne it, on the paynes ſ is ordayned, therefore sir, we be sent nowe to you. Well, quod the kyng, I beleue you well, and as for our cosyn, ſ frenche kyng, shal be welcome into these partes; as for me I thynke nat to styrre. Therw the messāgers were ryght ioyous, and thought they had sped very well: thā they desyred to haue letters agayne; ſ kyng said they shulde haue. That day they taryed and dyned with the kyng, and had good chere, and after dyner they wente to their lodgynges. Wherto shulde I make long processe, they sped so well that they had letters, and suche answer as pleased thē well. Than they toke leaue of ſ kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and retourned the same way they came. Nowe let vs speke of the frēche kyng.

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Constance ?<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.

*Howe thesle of Bloys sent to the frenche kyng ii. C. speares; and the duke of Lorraine, and the lorde Henry of Bare, came to the kyng. And howe the dukes of Jullyers, and Guerles,<sup>a</sup> knewe that the Frenche kyng came on them.*

C A P. CXXXIX.<sup>b</sup>

TO accōplysshe this vyage, euery lorde in Fraūce apparelled thēsselfe of euery thyng nedefull;  $\text{¶}$  lordes, knyghtes, and squiers, and other men of warre departed fro their owne places, as well fro Auergne, Rouergue, Quercy, Lymosyn, Poytou, and Xaynton, as fro Bretayne, Normādy, Aniou, Tourayn, and Chāpayn, and fro all the lymitaciōs of  $\text{¶}$  realme of Frāce. Fewest men came out of fardest cōutreis, and  $\text{¶}$  most nōbre out of Burgoyne, Picardy, Bare, and Lorayne: and bicause they of the body of Fraūce were in the waye, therfore they were best trauelled. It was ordayned by  $\text{¶}$  kyng and his cōnsayle,  $\text{¶}$  no man shulde take any thyng in  $\text{¶}$  cōūtre wout payeng therfore, to thētent that  $\text{¶}$  pore men shulde nat be greued; but for all  $\text{¶}$  ordinaūce,  $\text{¶}$  whiche was well known and sprede abrode, and vpon payne of great punisssyon, yet the men of warre olētymes sore trauelled  $\text{¶}$  cōūtreis as they passed through; they coude nat abstayne, for they were but yuell payde of their wages, and they must nedes lyue; that was their excuse whan they were blamed for their pyllage by the constable, marshalles, or capitaynes. The erle of Bloyes was sente vnto, to sende two hundred speares of chosen men, and was promysed well to be payde. I can nat saye howe he was dalte withall, but he sente to serue the kyng two hundred speares, out of the countie of Bloyes, and capitayns of them was, the lorde of Vyenne, sir Guyllyam of saynt Martyne, sir Wyllyam of Chaumont, and the lorde Montigny: these foure had the gouernaunce of the erle of Bloyes bande; they drewe lytell and lytell towardes Chāpayne, thyder they were ordayned to go. Than the Frenche kyng departed from Moustreau Faulte yon,<sup>c</sup> and tookē the waye to Chalons, in Champayne. As than the duke of Berrey was nat come, for or his departyng he loked to here tidynges fro sir Helyon of Lignacke, whom he had sente to the duke of Lancastre, to Bayon, to haue to his wyfe  $\text{¶}$  dukes doghter, as ye haue herde before; but he had her nat, for the duke of Lancastre dissymuled with hym, and helde styll the knyght with hym at Bayon; he treated with two parties, but he rather enclnyed to the kyng of Castyle, than to the duke of Berrey, and in lykewyse so dyde the lady Cōstaunce his wyfe: the duke made good chere to bothe parties, to the entent to enflame them the soner to the maryage of his doghter. The kyng of Castyls messengers sore traueyled in treatyng of this maryage; they rested nat to ryde in and out bytwene the parties; they offered great gyltes to those messengers, but they offred nothyng to sir Helyon of Lignacke.<sup>d</sup> Whan it was known in  $\text{¶}$  realme of Fraūce that the kyng was at Chalons, on his waye towardes the duchy of Guerles,<sup>e</sup> than euery man departed fro their houses, and drewe after the kyng. Than came the duke of Berrey, and lodged at Espinay, and the duke of Burbone at another place, the erle of Marche,  $\text{¶}$  erle Dolphyn of Auergne, the erle of saynt Pole,

and

3 D 2

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXV.<sup>c</sup> Montereau-sur-Yonne.<sup>d</sup> This passage is unintelligible; it ought to be "he (the Duke of Lancaster) held out hopes of success to them, (the Spanish ambassadors,) which he did not do to Sir Helyon de Lignac: in that case, however, he required of them the payment of 600,000 francs within three years, 12,000 francs annually during his life, and the life of the Duchess, and 2,000 more annually to support the Duchess's household."<sup>e</sup> Gueldres.

and the erle of Tourayne: and with the kyng was the duke of Burgoyne, the duke of Loraïne, the duke of Tourayne, the constable of Fraunce, sir Guye of Tremouille,<sup>a</sup> sir Johan of Beull: and the country about Chalous, and Raynes,<sup>b</sup> more than xii. leages all about was clene eaten vp with the men of warre. As than the lorde of Coucy was nat returned fro the pope. Than returned sir Wyllyam of Hâcourt, and mayster yues Orient, and founde the kyng and his vnclis at Chalons: the kyng was ioyouse of their cōmyng. and demaunded tidynges. They shewed the kyng what they had founde and done, and sayd, howe the kyng of Almaygne<sup>c</sup> had made them good chere, and said to the kyng: Sir, whan the kyng had reed the cōpye of f̄ defyaunce that the duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> had sent to you, bothe he and his cōsaile were yuell cōtent therwith, and sayd howe it was done by great presūpcyon and pride: and we can parceyne none other, but he and his cōsaile is well content with your enterpryce, and ye shall haue no let by hym, and the kyng is well content to vpholde and maynteyne the auncient alyauces that is bytwene the empyre and Fraūce; he saythe ye shall haue no dout therof. Herof the Frēche kyng was right ioyfull; howbeit, some sayd, that wheder the kyng of Almayne<sup>e</sup> wolde or nat, the kyng had puissaunce suffeycite to do what he wolde without daūger for all him. Than the kyng ordeyned to departe fro Chalons, in Champayn, and so departed, and toke his way right to great Pre.<sup>e</sup>

Whan the kyng came to great pre,<sup>e</sup> he taried ther a thre dayes; he coude make no gret iourneys, there was so moche people before hym and behynde, and rounde about hym, so that he was constrained to ryde easely to haue good lodgyng, and bicause of the great prouisyon that folowed after the hoost: fro the first company to the last cōtained xxiiii. leages of that country, and styll dayly came people. Therle of great Pre<sup>e</sup> receyued the kyng into his towne and countre, and offred all at the kynges pleasure. The kyng was well cōtent with hym, and therle was apoynted to the vantgard. Thyder came to the kyng f̄ duke of Loraïne, and sir Henry of Bare, with a faire company of men of armes; the duke of Loraïne was ordeyned to be with his sonne the lorde of Coucy, and sir Henry of Bare to abide with the kyng. The pioners were sore besyed in the forest of Ardane, to cutte downe wode, and to make wayes where neuer non was before, they had great payne to fyll the valeys to make the waye playne for the caryage to passe; there were a thre M. that dyde nothyng els. Whan f̄ duches of Brabant knewe surely howe the kyng was on his waye, and approached the foreste of Ardayne, she was therof ryght ioyfull, for she thought at that voyage she shulde be well reuenged of the duke of Guerles,<sup>d</sup> and howe the Frēche kyng shulde bring hym to reason; and also his father the duke of Julyers, who had done to her many anoyances. Than she departed fro Bruselles, and in her company the erle of Samines, in Ardain, the lorde of Bocelairs, and dyuers other, and toke her waye to Lusembourg, to se the kyng, and to speke with hym; she passed f̄ ryuer of Meuse, and the ryuer of Huy,<sup>f</sup> and at laste came to Basconque,<sup>e</sup> and there taried the kyng, for he shulde passe therby, and so he dyde; for whan he departed Graunt Pre.<sup>e</sup> he passed the Ryuer of Meuse, at Morsay, with all his hoost, and rode small iourneys. Than tidynges came into the duchy of Julyers, and into Guerles,<sup>d</sup> that the Frēche kyng was cōmyng on them with a hundred thousande men, and that he had neuer so moche people togyder before; he was nat so great a company whanne he came to Burbourc, where he thought the Englysshe army had ben gretter than he founde theym. The duke of Julyers than began to dout, but the duke of Guerles<sup>d</sup> made nothing therof, but sayde: Lette them come: the further they come, the more weryer shall they be, and they and their caryages shall waxe feble, and their prouisyons shall waste, and wynter shall drawe on, and I

am

<sup>a</sup> La Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> Rheims.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Gueldre.<sup>e</sup> Grandpre.<sup>f</sup> " At the bridge at Huy."<sup>f</sup> Bastoigne.



am in a stronge countrey; they shall nat entre at their ease; they shall recule backe somtyme otherwise than by the sounce of the trompettes; and it shall behoue them to be alwayes toguyder, which they can nat be, if they wyll entre into my cōtre; and if they disrought and be out of ordre, they shall soone be taken vp, wheder they wyll or nat: howbeit, to saye the trouthe, quod the duke, our cosyn of Fraunce is of a good corage; he sheweth and dothe as I shulde do. Thus the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> denyed amonge his knyghtes, but the duke of Julyers was sore abashed, for he sawe well the French kyng wolde his lande were but brente and loste. Than he toke counsaile of his brother, the Archebysshoppe of Cologne, and of his cosyn the bysshop Leige, sir Arnolde of Hornes, howe he shulde do to saue his lande fro brennyng and exylyng. These two prelates counsayled hym and sayd, how it must nedes behoue hym to hūble hymselfe to the Frenche kyng and to his vnclcs. The duke sayde, he was well content so to do.

*Howe sir Helion of Lignacke made his reporte to the duke of Berrey; and howe the lordes of Scottlande assembled toguyder in the cytie of Berdane,<sup>b</sup> and determyned to reyse vp an army to entre into Englande; and of an Englysshe squyer, who was taken by the Scottes, who knewe the secretnesse of both realmes, Englande and Scottlande.*

CAP. CXL.<sup>c</sup>

THAN by the counsaile of the bysshoppe of Trecht,<sup>d</sup> and by the aduise of the bysshoppe of Cologne, the bysshoppe of Liege was sente to the French kyng to treat for the duke of Julyers. The kyng approched, but he passed nat two or thre leages a daye, for his trayne was great bytwene Morsay and oure lady of Amount, where as the duke of Berrey and all his route, with mo than fyue hundred speres was lodged. Thyder came to the duke of Berrey, sir Helyon of Lignacke and sir Wyllyam his brother: sir Wyllyam came fro the siege before Vanchadore,<sup>e</sup> for the duke had sente for hym, and the duke of Burbone had sente for sir Johan Boesme launce;<sup>f</sup> and they had lefte styll at the siege all their companies, and had lefte for capitaynes sir Johan Butlere and sir Loyes Dambier; and sir Helyon of Lignacke came out of Gascon fro Bayon fro the duke of Lancastre. The duke of Berrey made hym good chere, and demanded tidynges. Sir Helyon shewed hym and sayd, Sir, the kyng of Castyle seketh on the duke of Lancastre to haue peace with hym, and treateth sore to haue his soñe the prince of Wales<sup>g</sup> to mary with the dukes daughter. With that worde the duke of Berrey was penyue and sayd, Sir Helion, yet I shall sende you ones agayne to knowe more certayne, and the bysshoppe of Poycters with you: but as at this tyme we haue yough to do: also the same wecke the lorde of Coucy returned fro Auygnon and came to the kyng to Ardane; euery man was glad of his cōmyng.

Ye haue herde here before howe kynge Richarde of Englande had some tronble; he agaynst his vnclcs, and his vnclcs agaynst hym, with other dyuers incydenes, as by the duke of Irelande and other. and many knyghtes in Englāde deed and belaceded, and the archebysshop of yorke, brother to the lorde Neuell, was at a poynte to haue loste his benefyce; and by the newe counsaylers about the kyng, and by the archbysshoppe of Caunterbury, the lorde Neuell (who had ben the chiefe ruler and kepar of the fronters

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Aberdeen.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXVI.<sup>d</sup> Utrecht.<sup>e</sup> Ventadour.<sup>f</sup> Bonne-lance.<sup>g</sup> Galicia.

of Northumberlande agaynst the scottes fyue yeres togyder) was as than put out of wages; he had before euery yere sixtene thousande frankes out of the countie of yorke and bysshoprike of Durham: and there was sette in his stede the lorde Henry Percy, and he hadde to wages by the yere but a xi. thousande frankes; wherof other lordes of his lygnage, though they were of his kynne, yet they hadde therat great enuy and indignacyon one agaynst another; and all this knewe ryght well the scottes. Than the lordes and knyghtes of Scotlande determyned ones agayne to reyse vp an army, and to make a journey into Englande; they sayde it was as than good tyme and houre, for they sawe the Englysshmen were nat all of one accorde; and where as often tymes past they had receyued great buffettes, than they sayd it was good tyme for them to be reuenged; and to the entent that their purpose shulde nat be knowne, they ordayne a feest to be holden on the frontier of the wyld scottes, at a cytie called Berdane,<sup>a</sup> where assembled in maner all the lordes of Scotlande. At this feest they concluded and made full promyse, that in the myddes of August, the yere of our lorde god a thousande three hundred fourscore and eight, they shulde mete all with their pyssaunce on the frontiers of Gales,<sup>b</sup> at a castell in the hyghe forest, called Gedeours:<sup>c</sup> thus at that tyme they departed eche fro other; and of this couenaüt there was none of them that made their kyng priuy therto, for they sayd amonge themselfe, their kyng was no maïne of warre. There came to Gedeours<sup>c</sup> at the day apoynted, first, the erle James Duglas, sir Johan of Morette,<sup>d</sup> erle of Marche and of Donbare, sir Wyllyam de Fif, and sir Stephyn Erle of Monstres,<sup>e</sup> sir Aucebauce<sup>f</sup> of Duglas, sir Robert Auerceque,<sup>g</sup> sir Marke Odremneu,<sup>h</sup> sir Wyllyam Lynsey, and sir James his brother, Thomas of Berry, sir Alysander Lynsey, the lorde of Sechyn,<sup>i</sup> sir Johan of Sobelās,<sup>k</sup> sir Partryke of Döbare, sir Johñ Senclere, sir Partryke of Hoteborne,<sup>l</sup> sir Johan sonne to ÿ lorde Momogomercy,<sup>m</sup> sir Adam of glasdiuyn,<sup>n</sup> sir Wyllyam Reduyn,<sup>o</sup> sir Wyllyam Stonacke,<sup>p</sup> sir Johñ of Halpe breton,<sup>q</sup> sir Alider and sir Robert Lander,<sup>r</sup> sir Stephyn freseyle,<sup>s</sup> sir Alysander Ramsey, and sir Johan his brother, sir Wyllyam Morbereth,<sup>t</sup> sir Maubert Heere,<sup>u</sup> sir Wyllyam of Waleran, sir Johñ Amonstai<sup>v</sup> and Dauy his sonne, Robert Colemaney,<sup>w</sup> and dyuers other knyghtes and squiers of Scotlande. In threscore yere before there was nat assembled togyder in Scotlande suche a nombre of good mē; they were a xii. hūdred speares and xl. thousande men besyde with their archers; but ī tyme of nede the scottes can lytell skylle with their bowes; they rather beare axes, wherwith they gyue great strokes.

Whan they were thus mette togyder in the marchesse of Gedeours<sup>c</sup> they were mery, and sayd, they wolde neuer entre agayne into their owne houses tyll they had ben in Englande, and done suche dedes there that it shulde be spoken of xx. yere after; and to the entent to make sure poyntment, they assigned a daye to mete at a church in a fayre lūde called zedon. Tidynges came into Northumberlande (as nothyng can be hydde if men putte to their diligence to knowe) bothe to thierle and to his chyldrē, to the seneschall of yorke, and to sir Mathue Redman, capitayne of Berwike, of this gret feest that had ben at Bredane;<sup>a</sup> and to thētent to knowe wherfore it was, these lordes sente to serche couertly by heraudes and mynstrels. The scottes coude nat do their maters so secretly, but ÿ lordes of Englāde knewe howe men rose in scotlāde, and how they shulde mete agayne at Gedeours.<sup>c</sup> Brute of this came to Newcastle vpon tyne; and whan the lordes knewe of this, enery man toke good hede to his charge, and provyded

<sup>a</sup> Aberdeen.<sup>b</sup> Cumberland.<sup>c</sup> Jedworth.<sup>d</sup> Earl of Moray.<sup>e</sup> Monteith.<sup>f</sup> Archibald.<sup>g</sup> Erskine.<sup>h</sup> Sir John Gordon.<sup>i</sup> Seton.<sup>j</sup> Sandilands.<sup>k</sup> Hepburn.<sup>l</sup> Monigomery.<sup>m</sup> Simon Glendinning.<sup>n</sup> Rutherford.<sup>o</sup> Stronach?<sup>p</sup> Haliburton.<sup>q</sup> Alexander Lauder.<sup>r</sup> Frazer.<sup>s</sup> Moubay.<sup>t</sup> Robert Hart.<sup>u</sup> Edmonstone.<sup>v</sup> Campbell.I am indebted for all the above corrections to Mr. *Jolnes'* translation.

uyded themselfe redy to assemble if nede were: and this they dyde secretly, bycause their enterpryce shulde nat be broken: eucry man helde hymselfe in their owne houses, and were determyned to mete togyuder as soone as they knewe that the scottes came forwarde, and sayd, If the scottes come forthe, we shall haue knowlege therof; if they drawe towarde Carlyle, we shall entre at another parte into their countrey, and we shall do them more dommage than they can do vs, for their countrey is all open: we maye go where we lyst, and our countre is strong, and the townes and castelles well closed: and the better to knowe the state of the scottes, they sent a gentyman of Englāde, who knewe ryght well the marchesse of Scotlande, and specially the forest of Gedeours,<sup>a</sup> where ȝ scottes shulde assemble; and the Englysshe squyer went so forwarde, that without espeng he came to the churche of zedon, where the scottysse lordes were, and he entred in amonge them lyke one of their seruautes: and there he herde and knewe a great parte of thientemes of the scottes; and at thende of their counsaile the squyer went to a tree where he hadde tyed his horse, and thought to haue foūde him there. but he was gone, for a scotte (who be great theues) had stollen hym awaye: he durste nat speke for hym, but so went forthe afote boted and spurred; and when he was gone from the churche two bowe shotte, than there were two scottysse knyghtes deuysed bytwene themselfe, and sayd one to another: felowe, I haue sene a marueyle; beholde yonder a man gothe alone, and as I thinke he hath lost his horse, for he came by and spake no worde; I wene he be none of our company; lette vs ryde after hym to prove my ayeng. They rode after hym and soone ouertoke hym. Whaife he sawe them cōmynge, he wolde gladly haue ben thens: they came to hym and demaunded whether he wolde and from whens he came, and what he had done with his horse? He began to vary in his sayeng, and answered nat directly to their purpose. They turned hym, and sayde he shulde go and speke with their lordes: they brought hym again to the churche of zedon, and presented hym to the erle Duglas and to other lordes: they examyned hym, and parceyued well he was an Englyssheman: than they sayde they wolde knowe the trouthe why he came thyder. He was yuell wyllynge to shewe the trouthe, but they handled hym in suche wise that he was fayne to shewe all the mater, for they bare hym in hande; withoute he wolde shewe the trouthe, incōtyment he shulde lese his heed; and if he wolde shewe the trouthe, he sholde haue none yuell. There they knew by hym that the lordes of Northumberlande had sente hym thyder, to knowe the estate of their enterpryce, and whiche waye they wolde drawe. Herof the scottes were right ioyous, and wolde nat for a great good but that they had spoken with this squyer. Than they demaunded agayne of hym in what parte the Englysshe lordes were, and whyder there were any aparence that they wolde assemble togyuder, and what waye they wolde take to entre into Scotlande; outhur by the see syde by Berwyke, or els by Donbare, or els the highe waye by the countie of Monstres<sup>b</sup> towarde Strenelyn.<sup>c</sup> The squyer answered and sayde, Sirs, sithe it behoueth me to say the trouthe, I shall.

When I departed from them fro Newcastle, there was none aparence of their assembling, but they be on a redynesse to departe, as well to daye as to morowe; and as soone as they knowe that ye set forwarde and entre into Englande, they wyll nat come to mete with you, for they be nat of ȝ power so to do, nor to fyght with you, sythe ye be so great a nombre as it is sayd in Englande that ye be. Why, quod the erle of Moret, what nombre do they repute vs at? Sir, quod he, it is sayd howe ye be xl. thousande men and xii. hundred speares; and, sir, if ye take the waye into Gales,<sup>d</sup> they wyll go by Berwyke, and so to Dunbare, to Edenborowe, or els to Alquest;<sup>e</sup> and if ye take nat that waye, than they wyll go by Carlyle, and into the mountayns of ȝ countrey. When the lordes herde that, eche of them regarded other. Than the Englysshe squyer was putte

<sup>a</sup> Jedworth.<sup>b</sup> Menteith.<sup>c</sup> Stirling.<sup>d</sup> Cumberland.<sup>e</sup> Dalkeith.

putte to the keypyng of the Constable of Gedeours,<sup>a</sup> and cōmaunded that he shulde be surely kepte; than in the same place they wente agayne to counsaile.

The lordes of Scotlande were ryght ioyfull of that they knewe surely the entent of their ennemyes: and than they demaunded counsaile what waye was best for them to take. The moost wysest and best experte in warre spake fyrst, and that was sir Archanbas Douglas<sup>b</sup> and therle of Fenne,<sup>c</sup> sir Alysander Ramsey, sir Johan Saynt clere, and sir James Lynsey:<sup>d</sup> they sayd, for feare of laylynge of our entent, we counsaile that we make two armyes, to the entente that our ennemyes shall nat knowe wherynto to attende; and lette the moost parte of our hoost and caryage go by Carleon in Galles,<sup>e</sup> and lette the other company (of a thre or four hūdred speares and two thousāde of other, well horsed) drawe towardes Newcastle vpon Tyne, and passe the ryuer and entre into the bysshoprike of Durham, and burne and exyle the countrey: we shall make a great breull in Englande or our ennemyes be prouyded; and if we se that they do folowe vs (as they wyll do), than lette vs drawe all oure companies toguyder, and take a good place and fyght with them; we doute nat but we shall haue honoure: than lette vs be reuenged of the dommages they haue done to vs. This counsaile was accepted, and ordyned that sir Archanbas<sup>b</sup> Douglas, therle of Fenne,<sup>c</sup> the erle of Surlancke,<sup>f</sup> the erle of Monstres,<sup>g</sup> the erle of Mare, therle of Astroderne,<sup>h</sup> sir Stephyn of Freseyle,<sup>i</sup> sir George of Donbare, and sixtene other great lordes of Scotlande, shulde lede the moost parte of the armye towardes Carlyle: and the erle Douglas, sir Orge erle of Mare<sup>k</sup> and of Donbare, and the erle Johan of Morette,<sup>l</sup> these thre to be capitaynes of thre hundred speares of chosen men, and of two thousande other men and archers, and they to go towardes Newcastle and entre into Northuberlande. Thus these two hoostes departed eche from other, eche of them prayenge other, that if the Englysshmen folowed any of their armyes, nat to fyght with them tyll bothe their armyes were ioyned toguyder. Thus in a mornyng they departed fro Gedeours,<sup>a</sup> and toke the felde.

*Howe the erle Douglas wanne the penon of sir Henry Percy, at the barryers before Newcastle vpon tyne; and howe the scottes brente the castell of Pondlen; and howe sir Henry Percy and sir Rafe his brother toke aduysse to folowe the scottes to conquire agayne the penone that was lost at the scrimysse.*

#### CAP. CXLI.<sup>m</sup>

WHANNE the Englysshe lordes sawe that their squier retourned nat agayne at the tyme apoynted, and coud knowe nothyng what the scottes dyd, nor what they were purposed to do, than they thought well y<sup>e</sup> their squyer was taken. The lordes seut eche to other to be redy whansoeuer they shulde here that the scottes were abrode; as for their messenger, they thought hym but lost.

Nowe lette vs speke of the erle Douglas and other, for they had more to do than they that wente by Carlyle.

Whan the erles of Douglas, of Moret,<sup>l</sup> of de la Mare,<sup>k</sup> and Donbare,<sup>o</sup> departed fro the great hoost; they toke their waye, thynkyng to passe the water, and to entre into the bysshoprike of Durham, and to ryde to y<sup>e</sup> towne and than to retourne, brinnyng and exylyng the countrey, and so to come to Newcastle, and to lodge there in the towne in the

<sup>a</sup> Jedworth.

<sup>b</sup> Archibald.

<sup>c</sup> Fife.

<sup>d</sup> Lindsay.

<sup>e</sup> Carlisle in Cumberland.

<sup>f</sup> Sutherland.

<sup>g</sup> Menteilh.

<sup>h</sup> Stratherne.

<sup>i</sup> Frazer.

<sup>k</sup> Mar.

<sup>l</sup> Moray.

<sup>m</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXVII.

the dispite of all the Englysshemen: and as they determyned so they dyde assaye to putte it in vse, for they rode a great pase vnder couert, without doying of any pyllage by the waye, or assautyng of any castell, towre, or house, but so came into the lorde Percyes lande and passed the ryuer of Tyne without any let, a thre leages aboute Newcastle, nat farre fro Brāspathe, and at last entred into the bisshoprike of Durham, where they founde a good country: than they beganne to make warre, to sleepe people, and to brinne vyllages, and to do many sore displeasures; as at that tyme the erle of Northumberlande and the other lordes and knyghtes of that country knewe nothyng of their cōmyng. Whan tidynges cāe to Newcastle and to Durham that the scottes were abrode, and that they myght well see by the fiers and smoke abrode in the country, the erle sente to Newcastle his two sonnes, and sente commaundement to euery man to drawe to Newcastle, sayenge to his sonnes: ye shall go to Newcastle, and all the country shall assemble there, and I shall tary at Nymyche,<sup>a</sup> whiche is a passage that they muste passe by; if we may enclose them we shall spede well. Sir Henry Percy and syr Rafe his brother obeyed their fathers cōmaundement, and came thyder with them of the country. The scottes rode burnyng and exlyng the country, that the smoke therof came to Newcastle: the scottes came to the gates of Durham, and skrymysshed there, but they taryed nat longe, but returned as they had ordeyned before to do, and that they founde by the waye, toke and distroyed it. Bytwene Durham and Newcastle is but twelue leages englyssh, and a good country; there was no towne without it were closed, but it was brente: and they repassed the ryuer of Tyne, where they had passed before, and than came before Newcastle and there rested: all the Englysshe knyghtes and squyers of the country of yorke and bysshoprike of Durham were assēbled at Newcastle, and thyder came the seneschall of yorke, sir Rafe Moubraye, sir Rafe Redmayne, capytayne of Berwyke, sir Roberte Angle, syr Thomas Grey, sir Thomas Holcon, sir Johan Felton, sir Johan Lyerborne, syr Thomas Abyton,<sup>b</sup> the baron of Helcon, sir Johan Copuldyke, and dyuers other; so that the towne was so full of people that they wust nat where to lodge.

Whan these thre scottyshe erles (who were chyefe capytaynes) had made their enterprise in the bysshoprike of Durham, and had sore ouerryne the country, than they returned to Newcastle, and there rested and taryed two dayes, and euery day they skrymysshed. The erle of Northumberlandes two sonnes were two yonge lusty knyghtes, and were euer formaste at the baryers to skrymysshie: there were many proper feates of armes done and atchyued; there was fyghtyng hande to hande; (amonge other) there fought hande to hande the erle Douglas and sir Henry Percy, and by force of armes the erle Douglas wanne the penon of syr Henry Percyes, wherwith he was sore dyspleased, and so were all the englysshmen: and the erle Douglas sayd to sir Henry Percy, syr, I shall beare this token of your prowes into Scotlande, and shall sette it on hyghe on my castell of Alquest,<sup>c</sup> that it may be sene farre of. Syr, quod sir Henry, ye maye be sure ye shall nat passe the boundes of this country tyll ye be met withall, in suche wyse that ye shall make none anaunte therof. Well, syr, quod the erle Douglas, come this nyght to my lodgyng and seke for your penon; I shall sette it before my lodgyng, and se if ye wyl come to take it away: as than it was late, and the scottes withdrew to their lodginges, and refreshed them with such as they had; they had fleshe ynough: they made that nyght good wache, for they thought surely to be awaked for the wordes they hadde spoken: but they were nat, for syr Henry Percy was counsayled nat soo to do. The nexte day the scottes dyslodged and returned towards their owne country, and so came to a castell and a towne called Pouclan,<sup>d</sup> wherof sir Haymon of Alphell was lorde, who was a ryght good knyght; there the scottes rested, for they

VOL. II.

3 E

came

<sup>a</sup> Alnwick.<sup>b</sup> Boynton.<sup>c</sup> Dalkeith.<sup>d</sup> Pentland.

came thyder by tymes, and vnderstode that the knyght was in his castell. Than they ordeyned to assaile the castell, and gaue a great assaute, so that by force of armes they wan it, and the knyght within it. Than the towne and castell was brent, and fro thens the Scottes wente to the towne and castell of Combur,<sup>a</sup> an eyght englysshe myle fro Newcastell and there lodged. That day they made none assaut, but the next mornyng they blewe their hornes, and made redy to assaile the castell, whiche was stronge, for it stode in the maresse: that daye they assauted tyll they were wery, and dyd nothyng; than they sowned the retrayte, and returned to their lodgyng. Than the lordes drew to counsaile to determyne what they shulde do: the moste parte were of the acorde that the next day they shulde dysloge without gyuyng of any assaute, and to drawe fayre and easly towards Carlyle; but therle Duglas brake that counsaile, and sayd, in dyspyte of sir Henry Percy (who sayd he wolde come and wyne agayn his penon), let vs nat departe hence for two or thre dayes; lette vs assaile this castell; it is prignable; we shall haue double honour; and than lette vs se if he wyll come and fetche his penon; he shall be well defended. Euery man acorded to his sayeng, what for their honour and for the loue of hym; also they lodged there at their ease, for there was none that troubled them: they made many lodgynges of bowes and great herbes, and fortified their campe sagely with the maresse that was therby, and their caryages were sette at the entre into the marresses, and had all their beestes within the maresse. Than they appalled for to saute the next day; this was their entensyon.

Nowe lette vs speke of sir Henry Percy and of sir Rafe his brother, and shewe somewhat that they dyd. They were sore dyspleased that therle Duglas had wonne the penon of their armes; also it touched gretly their honours, if they dyd nat as syr Henry Percy sayd he wolde: for he had sayd to the erle Duglas that he shulde nat cary his penon out of Englande, and also he had openly spoken it before all the knyghtes and squiers that were at Newcastell. The englysshmen there thought surely that therle Duglas bande was but the scottes vangarde, and that their hoost was lefte behynde. The knyghtes of the country, suche as were well experte in armes, spake agaynst sir Henry Percyes opinyon, and sayd to hym: Syr, there fortuneth in warre olitentymes many losses; if the Erle Duglas haue wonne your penon, he bought it dere, for he came to the gate to seke it, and was well beaten: another day ye shall wyne as moche of hym or more. Syr, we saye this, bycause we knowe well all the power of Scotlande is abrode in the feldes, and if we issue out and be nat men ynowe to fyght with them, and peradventure they haue made this skrimysshe with vs, to the entent to drawe vs out of the towne, and the nombre that they be of, as it is sayd, aboue xl. thousande men, they maye soone inclose vs, and do with vs what they wyll; yet it were better to lese a penon than two or thre hundred knyghtes and squyers, and put all our country in aduenture. These wordes refrayned syr Henry and his brother, for they wolde do nothyng agaynst counsaile. Than tydynges came to them by suche as had sene the Scottes, and sene all their demeanoure, and what waye they toke, and where they rested.

<sup>a</sup> Otterbourne.

*Howe syr Henry Percy and his brother, with a good nombre of men of armes and archers, went after the scottes to wyne agayne his penon, that the erle Douglas hadde wonne before Newcastle vpon Tyne, and howe they assailed the scottes before Mounberke<sup>3</sup> in their lodgynges.*

C A P. CXLII.<sup>b</sup>

IT was shewed to sir Henry Percy and to his broder, and to the other knyghtes and squyers that were there, by suche as had folowed the scottes fro Newcastle, and had well aduysed their doynge, who said to sir Henry and to syr Rafe: Syrs, we haue folowed the scottes priuely, and haue discovered all the country: the scottes be at Pountclan,<sup>c</sup> and haue taken syr Haymon Alphell in his owne castell, and fro thence they be gone to Ottenburge,<sup>a</sup> and there they laye this nyght; what they wyll do to morowe we knowe nat: they are ordayned to abyde there; and sirs, surely their great hoost is nat with them, for in all they passe nat there a thre thousande men. When sir Henry herde that, he was ioyfull, and sayd, Syrs, let vs leape on our horses, for by the faythe I owe to god and to my lorde my father, I wyll go seke for my penon, and dyslodge theym this same nyght. Knyghtes and squiers that herde him agreed therto and were ioyous, and euery man made hym redy. The same euenynge the bysshop of Durham came thyder with a good company, for he herde at Durham howe the scottes were before Newcastle, and howe that the lorde Percies sonnes, with other lordes and knyghtes, shulde fight with the scottes; therefore the bysshoppe of Durham, to come to the reskewe, had assembled vp all the countrey, and so was comynge to Newcastle; but sir Henry Percy wolde nat abyde his comynge, for he had with hym syxe hundred speares knyghtes and squiers, and an eight thousande fotemen; they thought that sufficient nombre to fyght with the scottes, if they were nat but thre hundred speares and thre thousande of other. Thus they departed fro Newcastle after dyner, and set forth in good ordre, and toke the same way as the scottes had gone, and rode to Ottebourge,<sup>a</sup> a seuen lytell leages fro thence, and fayre way, but they coulde nat ryde faste bycause of their fotemen; and whan ȝ scottes had supped and some layde downe to their rest, and were wery of traauaylynge and sautyng of the castell all that day, and thought to ryse erly in the mornynge in cole of the day to gyue a newe assaute, therwith sodenly the englysshmen came on them and entred into the lodgynges, wenyng it had ben the maisters lodgynges, and therin were but varlettes and seruantes: than the englysshmen cryed Percy, Percy, and entred into the lodgynges; and ye knowe well where suche affray is, noyse is sone reysed; and it fortunod well for the scottes, for whan they sawe the englysshmen came to wake them, than the lordes sente a certayne of their seruantes of fotemen to skrymysshe with the englysshmen at the entre of the lodgynges, and in ȝ meane tyme they armed and aparelled them, euery man vnder his baner and vnder his capytaynes penon. The night was farre on, but the mone shone so bryght as and it had ben in a maner daye; it was in the moneth of August, and the wether fayre and temperate.

Thus the scottes were drawn togyder, and without any noyse departed fro their lodgynges, and went aboute a lytell mountayne, whiche was greatly for their aduantage: for all the day before they had well aduysed the place, and sayd amonge themselfe: If the englysshmen come on vs sodaynly, than we wyll do thus and thus, for it is a

3 E 2

iopeidous

<sup>a</sup> Otterbourne.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXVIII.<sup>c</sup> Pontland.

ioperdous thyng in the nyght if men of warre entre into our lodgynges; if they do, than we wyll drawe to suche a place, and therby outhere we shall wyn or lese. When the englysshmen entred into the felde, at the first they soone ouercame the varlettes, and as they entred further in, alwayes they foude newe men to besy them and to skrymysshe with them. Than sodaynly came the scottes fro aboute the mountayne, and sette on the englysshmen or they were ware, and cryed their cryes, wherof the englysshmenne were sore astonyed. Than they cryed Percy, and the other partye cryed Douglas: there began a cruell batayle, and at the fyrst encountre many were ouerthrowen of bothe partyes; and bycause the englysshmen were a great nombre, and greatly desyred to vanquysshe their enemyes, and rested at their pas and greatly dyd put abacke the scottes, so that the scottes were nere dyscomfyted. Than the erle James Douglas (who was yonge and stronge, and of great desyre to gette prayse and grace, and was wyllinge to deserue to haue it, and cared for no payne nor trauayle), came forthe with his baner, and cryed Douglas, Douglas: and sir Henry Percy and sir Rale his brother, who had great indygnacion agaynst the erle Douglas, bycause he had wonne the penon of their armes at the barryers before Newcastle, came to that parte, and cryed Percy: their two baners mette and their menue; there was a sore fyght: the englysshmen were so stronge and fought so valyauntly, that they reculed the scottes backe. There were two valiaunt knyghtes of scottes, vnder the baner of the erle Douglas, called syr Patryke of Helborne<sup>a</sup> and syr Patryke his sonne; they acquyted themselfe that day valyauntly; the erles baner had ben won, and they had nat ben, they defended it so valyauntly, and in the rescynge therof dyd suche feates of armes, that it was greatly to their recommendacyon and to their heyres for euer after.

It was shewed me by suche as had been at the same batayle, as well by knyghtes and squyers of Englande as of Scotlande, at the house of the erle of Foiz, for anone after this batayle was done I met at Ortays two squyers of Englande, called Johan of Newcastle, and Johan of Caution; also whan I returned fro Auignon I founde also there a knyght and a squyer of Scotlande; I knewe them, and they knewe me by suche tokens as I shewed them of their country, for I, anctor of this boke, in my youthe had rydden nygh ouer all the realme of Scotlande, and I was as than a fyftene dayes in the house of erle Wylliam Douglas, father to the same erle James, of whome I spake of nowe.

In a castell a fyue leages fro Edenborow, in the country of Alquest,<sup>b</sup> the same tyme I sawe there this Erle James, a fayre yonge chyld, and a suster of his, called the lady Blaunche: and I was enfourmed by bothe these parties how this batayle was as sore a batayle fought as lyghtly hath been harde of before of suche a nombre, and I beleue it well; for englysshmen on the one partye and scottes on the other partye are good men of warre: for whan they mete there is a harde fight without sparynge; there is no hoo bytwene them as longe as speares, swordes, axes, or daggers wyll endure, but lay on eche vpon other; and whan they be well beaten, and that the one parte hath optayned the victory, they than glorifye so in their dedes of armes and are so ioyfull, that suche as be taken they shall be ransomed or they go out of the felde, so that shortely eche of them is so contente with other, that at their departyng curtoysly they wyll saye, god thanke you; but in fyghtyng one with another there is no playe no, sparynge; and this is trewe, and that shall well apere by this sayd encounter, for it was as valyauntly foughten as coude be deuysed, as ye shall here.

<sup>a</sup> Hepburn.<sup>b</sup> Dalkeith.



*Howe the erle James Douglas by his valyātnesse incouraged his men who were reculed, and in a maner discomfyted, and in his so doynge he was wounded to dethe.*

C A P. CXLIII.<sup>a</sup>

KNYGHTEs and Squyers were of good corage on bothe parties to fyght valyauntly; cowardes there had no place, but hardynes rayned with goodly feates of armes, for knyghtes and squiers were so ioyned togyder at hande strokes, that archers had no place of nother party. There the scottes shewed great hardynesse, and fought meryly, with great desyre of honour: the englysshmen were thre to one; howbeit, I say nat but englysshmen dyd nobly acquyte themselfe, for euer the englysshmen had rather ben slayne or taken in the place than to flye. Thus as I haue sayd the baners of Douglas and Percy and their men were met echie agaynst other, enuyous who shulde wyne the honoure of that iourney. At the begynnyng the englysshemen were so stronge, that they reculed backe their enemyes: than the Erle Douglas, who was of great harte and hygh of enterprise, seyng his men recule backe, than to recouer the place and to shewe knightly valure, he toke his axe in bothe his handes, and entred so into fy prease, that he made hymselfe waye in suche wyse that none durste aproche nere hym, and he was so well armed that he bare well of suche strokes as he receuyed: thus he wente euer forwarde lyke a hardy Hector, wyllynge alone to conquere the felde, and to dyscomfyte his enemyes; but at laste he was encountred with thre speares all at ones; the one strake hym on the shulder, the other on the breste, and the stroke glented downe to his bely, and the thyrde strake hym in the thye, and sore hurte with all thre strokes, so that he was borne perforce to the erthe, and after that he coulde nat be agayne releued: some of his knyghtes and squyers folowed hym, but nat all, for it was nyght and no lyght but by the shynnyng of the mone. The englysshmen knewe well they had borne one downe to the erth, but they wyst nat who it was, for if they had knowen that it had ben the erle Douglas, they had been therof so ioyfull and so prowde, that the vyctory had ben theirs: nor also the scottes knew nat of that aduventure tyll the ende of the batayle, for if they had knowen it, they shulde haue been so sore dyspayred and dyscourage, that they wolde haue fledde awaye. Thus as the erle Douglas was felled to the erth he was striken into the heed with an axe, and another stroke through the thye: the englysshemen passed forthe and tooke no hede of hym; they thought none otherwyse but that they hadde slayne a man of armes. On the other parte, the erle George de la Marche and of Donbare fought ryght valyantly, and gaue the englysshmen moche ado, and cryed: folowe Douglas, and sette on the sonnes of Percy: also Erle Johan of Morette<sup>b</sup> with his baner and men fought valyauntly, and sette fyersly on the englysshmen, and gaue them so moche to do, that they wyste nat to whome to attende.

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXXXIX.

<sup>b</sup> Moray.

*Howe in this batayle sir Rafe Percy was sore hurte, and taken prysoner by a scottysse knyght.*

GAP. CXLIII.<sup>a</sup>

OF all the bataylles and encountrynges that I haue made mencion of here before in all this hystory, great or smalle, this batayle that I treate of nowe, was one of the sorest and best foughten, without cowardes or faynte hertes: for there was nother knyght nor squyer but that dyde his deuoyre and fought hande to hande: this batayle was lyke the batayle of Becherell,<sup>b</sup> the whiche was valyauntly fought and endured. The erle of Northumberlandes sonnes, sir Henry and sir Rafe Percy, who were chefe souerayne capytayns, acquyted themselfe nobly, and sir Rafe Percy entred in so farre amonge his enemyes that he was closed in and hurte, and so sore handeled that his brethe was so shorte that he was taken prysoner by a knyght of the erle of Morettes,<sup>c</sup> called sir Johan Makyrell.<sup>d</sup> In the takyng the Scottysse knyght demaunded what he was (for it was in the nyght, so that he knewe hym nat): and syr Rafe was so sore ouercome and bledde fast, that at laste he sayd, I am Rafe Percy. Than the scotte sayde, syr Rafe, reskewe or no reskewe, I take you for my prisoner; I am Makyrell.<sup>d</sup> Well, quod sir Rafe, I am contente; but than take hede to me, for I am sore hurte; my hosen and my greues are full of blode. Than the knyght sawe by hym the erle Moret,<sup>e</sup> and sayde, Syr, here I delyuer to you syr Rafe Percy as prisoner; but, sir, lette good hede be taken to hym, for he is sore hurte. The erle was ioyfull of those wordes, and sayd, Makyrell,<sup>d</sup> thou hast well wonne thy spurres. Than he delyuered syr Rafe Percy to certayne of his men, and they stopped and wrapped his woundes; and styll the batayle endured, nat knowyng who had as than the better, for there were many taken and reskewed agayne that came to no knowledge.

Nowe let vs speke of the yonge James erle of Duglas, who dyd maruayls in armes or he was beaten downe. Whan he was ouerthrowne the preace was great about him, so that he coulde nat releue, for with an axe he had his dethes woüde. His men folowed him as nere as they coulde, and there came to hym syr James Lymsey<sup>e</sup> his cosyn, and syr Johan and sir Water saynt clere, and other knyghtes and squiers; and by hym was a gentle knyght of his, who folowed him all the day, and a chapelayne of his, nat lyke a preest, but lyke a valyaunt man of armes: for all that night he folowed the erle with a good axe in his handes, and styll skrymysshed aboute the erle there as he lay, and reculed backe some of the englisshe men with gret strokes that he gaue. Thus he was founde fyghtyng nere to his mayster, wherby he hadde great prayse, and therby the same yere he was made archedecon of Abredan.<sup>f</sup> This preest was called syr Wilyam of Norbernyche;<sup>g</sup> he was a tall man and a hardy, and was sore hurte. Whanne these knyghtes came to the Erle, they founde hym in an yuell case, and a knyght of his lyenge by hym, called sir Roberte Harte; he had a fyftene woundes in one place and other. Than syr Johan Sayncte clere demaunded of the erle howe he dyd. Ryght yuell, cosyn, quod therle; but thanked be god there hath been but a fewe of myne auntyours that hath dyed in their beddes; but, cosyn, I requyre you thynke to reuenge me, for I recon myselfe but deed, for my herte faynteth olten tymes: my cosyn Water  
and

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXL.  
Cocherell.

<sup>c</sup> Moray.

<sup>d</sup> Maxwell.  
<sup>e</sup> North Berwick.

<sup>b</sup> Johnes and D. Sauvage think this ought to be  
<sup>f</sup> Lyndsay.

<sup>g</sup> Aberdeen.

and you, I praye you rayse vp agayne my baner, whiche lyeth on the grounde, and my squyer Dauy Collemnie<sup>a</sup> slayne; but, sirs, shewe nother to frende nor foo in what case ye se me in, for if myne enemyes knewe it they wolde reioyse, and our frendes discomforted. The two bretherne of Saynt clere and sir James Lymsey dyd as the erle hadde desyred theym, and reysed vp agayne his baner, and cryed Duglas. Suche as were behynde and herde that crye, drewe togyther and set on their enemyes valyauntly, and reculed backe the englysshemen and many ouerthrowen, and so draue the englysshemen backe beyonde the place where as the Erle laye, who was by that tyme deed, and so came to the erles baner, the whiche syr Johan Savnte clere helde in his handes, and many good knyghtes and squyers of Scotlande aboute hym: and styll company drewe to the crye of Duglas. Thyder came the erle Morette,<sup>b</sup> with his baner well accompanied, and also the erle de la Mare, and of Donbare; and whan they sawe the englysshemen recule, and their cōpany assembled togyder, they renewed agayne the batayle, and gaue many harde and sadde strokes.

*Howe the scottes wanne the batayle agaynst the englysshemen besyde Otteburge,<sup>c</sup> and there was taken prisoners sir Henry, and sir Rafe Percy: and howe an Englysshe squyer wolde nat yelde him, no more wolde a scottysse squier, and so dyed both: and howe the bysshope of Durlham, and his company, were discomfyted amonge themselfe.*

C A P. CXLV.<sup>d</sup>

TO saye trouth, the englysshmen were sorer trauayled than the scottes, for they came the same day fro Newcastle vpon Tyne, a sixe englyssh myles, and went a great pase, to the entente to fynde the scottes, whiche they dyd; so that by their fast goynge they were nere out of brethe, and the Scottes were fresshe and well rested, which greatly aayled them whan tyme was of their busynesse: for in the laste skrymysshe they reculed backe the englysshemen, in suche wyse, that after that, they coude no more assemble togyther, for the scottes past through their batayles. And it fortuneth that sir Henry Percy, and the lorde of Mountcombre,<sup>e</sup> a valyaunt knyght of Scotlande, fought togyther hande to hande ryght valyauntly, without lettynge of any other, for every man had ynough to do: so longe they two fought, that perforce of armes syr Henry Percy was taken prisoner by the sayde lorde of Mountcombre.<sup>f</sup>

The knyghtes and squiers of Scotlande, as sir Mare Adremench,<sup>g</sup> sir Thomas Auernequyn,<sup>h</sup> syr Willyam, sir James, and sir Alysander Lymsey, the lorde of Faulcon,<sup>i</sup> syr Johan of saynte de Laux,<sup>j</sup> syr Patryke of Donbare, sir Johan, and syr Water Saynte clere, sir Johan Makyrell,<sup>k</sup> sir Guy Steward, syr Johan Halebreton, syr Alysander Ramsey, Roberte Colounnie,<sup>l</sup> and his two sonnes, Johan and Roberte, who were there made knyghtes, and a hundred knyghtes and squyers that I can nat name; all these ryght valyauntly dyd acquyte themselfe. And on the englysshe party before that the lorde Percy was taken, and after, there fought valyauntly syr Rafe Longeble,<sup>m</sup> syr Mathewe Redman, syr Thomas Ogle, sir Thomas Gray, sir Thomas Helcon,<sup>n</sup> sir Thomas Abreton,<sup>o</sup> sir Johan Lyerbon,<sup>p</sup> syr Willyam Walsyngham, the baron of Helcon,

<sup>a</sup> Campbell?<sup>b</sup> Moray.<sup>c</sup> Otterbourne.<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLI.<sup>e</sup> Montgomery.<sup>f</sup> Malcolm Drummond.<sup>g</sup> Erskine.<sup>h</sup> Saltoun.<sup>i</sup> Sandilands.<sup>k</sup> Maxwell.<sup>l</sup> Langley.<sup>m</sup> Holton.<sup>n</sup> Abington.<sup>o</sup> Lilburn.

con,<sup>a</sup> sir Johan of Culpedup,<sup>b</sup> the seneschall of Yorke, and dyuers other fotemen. Wherto shulde I write longe proces: this was a sore batayle, and well foughten; and as fortune is alwayes chaungeable, though the englysshmen were more in nombre than the scottes, and were ryght valyaunt men of warre, and well experte, and that at the fyrste fronte they reculed backe the scottes, yet fynally the scottes optaygned the place and vyctory, and all the foresaid englysshmen taken, and a hundred mo, sauynge sir Mathewe Redman, capytayne of Berwyke, who whan he knewe no remedy nor recoueraunce, and sawe his company flye fro the scottes, and yelded theym on euery syde, than he toke his horse and departed to saue hymselfe. The same season aboute the ende of this dyscomfyture, there was an englysshe squyer called Thomas Veleton,<sup>c</sup> a goodly and a valyant man, and that was well sene, for of all that nyght he wolde nother flye nor yet yelde hym; it was sayd he had made a vowe at a feest in Englande, that the first tyme that euer he sawe englysshmen and scottes in batayle, he wolde so do his deuoyre to his power, in suche wyse, that eyther he wolde be reputed for the best doer on bothe sydes, or els to dye in the payne; he was called a valyaunt and a hardy man, and dyd so moche by his prowes, that vnder the baner of the erle of Morette,<sup>d</sup> he dyd suche valyauntnesse in armes, that the scottes hadde maruayle therof, and so was slayne in fyghtynge; the scottes wolde gladly haue taken hym alyue, but he wolde neuer yelde: he hoped euer to haue been re-cewed; and with him there was a scottysse squyer slayne, cosyn to the kynge of scottes, called Symon Glaudyn;<sup>e</sup> his dethe was greatly complainyd of the scottes. This batayle was fierse and cruell tyll it came to the ende of the discomfyture, but whan the scottes sawe the englysshmen recule and yelde thēselfe, than the scottes were curtes, and sette theym to their raunsome, and euery manne sayde to his prysoner: Syrs, go and vnarme you and take youre ease, I am your mayster; and so made their prisoners as good chere as though they had ben brethern, without doynge to thē any dōmage. The chase endured a fyue englysshe myles, and if ȝ scottes had ben men ynowe there had none scaped, but outhur they had ben taken or slayne. And if Archambault Duglas, and the erle of Fen,<sup>f</sup> the erle Surlant,<sup>g</sup> and outhur of the great cōpany, (who were gone towards Carlyle,) had ben there, by all lykelyhode they had taken the bysshoppe of Durham, and ȝ towne of Newcastle vp on tyne. I shall shewe you howe. The same euenyng that the Percyes departed fro Newcastle, (as ye haue herde before,) the bysshop of Durham, with the rerebande cāe to Newcastle and supped, and as he satte at the table, he had ymaginacion in hymselfe howe he dyd nat acquite hymselfe well to se the Englysshmen in the felde, and he to be within the towne; incontynent he caused the table to be taken away, and cōmaunded to sadell his horses, and to sowne the trūpettes, and called vp men in the towne to arme themselves and to mount on their horses, and footemen to order themselves to departe; and thus euery man departed out of the towne, to the nombre of seyn thousande, two thousande on horsebacke, and fyue thousande a fote, they toke their waye towards Octenbourg,<sup>h</sup> where as the batayle had ben; and by that tyme they hadde gone two myle from Newcastle, tidynge came to theym howe their men were fightynge with the scottes; therwith the bysshoppe rested there, and incontynent came mo flyeng faste, that they were out of brethe: than they were demaūded howe the mater wente? they answered and sayde: Right yuell; we be all disconlyted; here cometh the scottes chasyng of vs. These tidynge troubled the Englysshmen, and began to doute. And agayne the thirde tyme men came flyeng as fast as they might. Whāne the men of the bysshoprike of Durham herde of these yuell tidynge, they were abashed, in suche wise, that they brake their array, so that the bysshoppe coude nat holde togyder the nombre of fyue hūdred. It was thought that if the scottes had folowed them in any

nombre

<sup>a</sup> Holton.<sup>b</sup> Copeland.<sup>c</sup> Felton.<sup>d</sup> Moray.<sup>e</sup> Glendinning.<sup>f</sup> Fife.<sup>g</sup> Sutherland.<sup>h</sup> Otterbourne.

nombre, seyng that it was night, that in thentryng into the towne, and the Englysshmen so abashed, the towne had ben won.

The bysshoppe of Durham, beyng in the felde, had good wyll to haue socoured the englysshmen, and recōforted his men as moche as he coude, but he sawe his owne men flye as well as other: than he demaunded cōsaile of sir Wylliam Lussey,\* and of sir Thomas Glyfforde, and of other knyghtes, what was best to do? these knyghtes for their honour wolde gyue hym no counsaile, for they thought to retourne agayne and do nothing, shulde sowne greatly to their blame, and to go forthe myght be to their great dōmage: and so stode styll and wolde gyue none answeare, and the lengar they stode the fewer they were, for some styll stode awaye. Than the bysshoppe sayd, Sirs, all thynges considered, it is none honour to putte all in parell, nor to make of one yuell damage twayne; we here howe our company be disconfyted, and we can nat remedy it: for to go to recouer them, we knowe nat with whom, nor w̄ what nombre we shall mete; lette vs retourne fayre and easely for this night to Newcastle, and to morowe lette vs drawe togyder, and go loke on our enemyes. Euery man answered, as god wyll so be it. Therwith they returned to Newcastle. Thus a man maye consider the great defaute that is in men ŷ be abashed and disconfyted; for if they had kepte them togyder, and haue turned agayn suche as fledde, they had disconfyted the scottes: this was the opynion of dyuers; and bycause they dyde nat thus, the scottes had the victorie.

*Howe sir Mathue Reedman departed fro the batayle to saue hymselfe; and howe sir James Lynsaye was taken prisoner by the bysshoppe of Durhame: and howe after the bataile, scurrers were sente forthe to discover the cōuntry.*

CAP. CXLVI.<sup>b</sup>

I SHALL shewe you of sir Mathewe Reedman, who was on horsbacke to saue hymselfe, for he alone coude nat remedy the mater; at his departyng sir James Lynsay was nere to hym, and sawe howe sir Mathue departed, and this sir James to wyn honour, folowed in chase sir Mathue Reedman, and came so nere hym that he myght haue stryken hym with his speare if he had lyst: than he said, Ah, sir knyght, tourne, it is a shame thus to flye: I am James of Lynsay: if ye wyll nat tourne I shall stryke you on the backe with my speare. Sir Mathewe spake no worde, but strake his horse with the spurres sorer than he dyde before. In this maner he chased hym more than thre myles, and at laste sir Mathue Reedmans horse foundred and fell vnder hym; than he stepte forthe on ŷ erthe, and drewe oute his swerde, and toke corage to defende hymselfe; and the scotte thought to haue stryken hym on the brest, but sir Mathue Reedman swarued fro the stroke, and the speare poynt entred into the erthe: than sir Mathue strake asonder the speare with his swerde; and whan sir James Lynsay sawe howe he had loste his speare, he caste awaye the tronchon and lyghted afote, and toke a lytell batayle axe that he caryed at his backe, and handeled it with his one hande, quickly and delynerly, in the whiche feate scottes be well experte, and than he sette at sir Mathue, and he defended hymselfe properly. Thus they tourneyed togyder, one with an axe, and the other with a swerde, a longe season, and no man to lette them; finally, sir James Lynsay gaue the knyght suche strokes, and helde hym so shorte, that

\* Lucy?

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLII.

he was putte out of brethe, in suche wyse that he yelded hymselfe, and sayde: Sir James Lynsay, I yelde me to you. Well, quod he, and I receyue you, rescue or no rescue. I am content, quod Reedman, so ye deale with me lyke a good companion. I shall nat fayle that, quod Lynsay, and so putte vp his swerde. Well, sir, quod Reedman, what wyl you nowe that I shall do? I am vour prisoner, ye haue conquered me; I wolde gladly go agayn to Newcastle, and within fyftene dayes I shall come to you into Scotlande, where as ye shall assigne me. I am cōtent, quod Lynsay: ye shall promise by your faythe to present yourselfe within this iii. wekes at Edēborowe, and wheresoeuer ye go, to tepute yourselfe my prisoner. All this sir Mathue sware and promysed to fulfill. Than eche of them toke their horses and toke leaue eche of other. Sir James returned, and his entent was to go to his owne cōpany the same way that he came, and sir Mathewe Reedman to Newcastle. Sir James Lynsaye coulde nat kepe the ryght waye as he came: it was darke and a myst, and he hadde nat rydden halfe a myle, but he met face to face with the bysshoppe of Durham, and mo than v. hundred Englysshmen with hym; he might wel escaped if he had wolde, but he supposed it had been his owne cōpany that had pursued the Englysshmen: whan he was among thē, one demaunded of hym what he was. I am, quod he, sir James Lynsay. The bysshoppe herde those wordes, and stepte to hym, and said, Lynsay, ye are taken: yelde ye to me. Who be you, quod Lynsay? I am, quod he, the bysshop of Durham. And fro whens come you, sir, quod Lynsay? I come fro the batayle, quod the bysshop, but I stroke neuer a stroke there; I go backe to Newcastle for this night, and ye shal go with me. I maye nat chose, quod Lynsay, sithe ye wyl haue it so; I haue taken, and I am taken, suche is the adventures of armes. Whom haue ye taken: quod the bysshop? Sir, quod he, I toke in the chase sir Matlue Redman. And where is he? quod the bysshop; By my faythe, sir, he is returned to Newcastle: he desyred me to trust hym on his faythe for thre wekes, and so haue I done. Well, quod the bysshop, lette vs go to Newcastle, and there ye shall speke with hym. Thus they rode to Newcastle togyuder, and sir James Lynsay was prisoner to the bisshop of Durham.

Vnder the baner of therle de la Mare,<sup>a</sup> and of Dōbare, was taken a squier of Gascone, called Johñ of Newcastle:<sup>b</sup> and vnder the baner of the erle of Moret,<sup>c</sup> was taken his companion Johñ de Gaution. Thus the felde was clene auoyded or the dave apered. The scottes drewe togyuder, and toke guydes, and sente out scurrers to se if any men were in the waye fro Newcastle, to the entent that they wolde nat be troubled in their lodgynges, wherin they dyd wisely: for whan ð bysshop of Durham was come agayne to Newcastle, and in his lodgyng, he was sore pēsye, and wyst nat what to saye nor do, for he herde say how his cosyns ð Percies were slayne or taken, and all ð knyghtes ð were with thē; than he sent for all ð knyghtes and squyers that were in the towne; and whan they were come, he demaunded of thē if they shulde leaue the mater in that case, and sayde: Sirs, we shall beare great blame if we thus retourne without lokinge on oure enemyes: than they cōclūded by the sonne rysyng euey manne to be armed, and on horsbacke, and a foote, to departe out of the towne, and to go to Ottenbourge,<sup>d</sup> to fyght with the scottes; this was warned through the towne by a trumpet, and euey man armed theym and assembled before the bridge; and by the sonne rysyng they departed by the gate towardes Berwyke, and toke the waye towardes Octēbourge,<sup>d</sup> to the nombre of tenne thousande, what afoote and a horsebacke. They were nat gone paste two myle fro Newcastle, whan the scottes were signified that the bysshoppe of Durham was commyng to theymwarde to fyght: this they knewe by their spyes, suche as they had sette in the feldes.

After

<sup>a</sup> Mar, or March.

<sup>b</sup> Chateau-neuf.

<sup>c</sup> Moray.

<sup>d</sup> Otterbourne.

After that sir Mathewe Reedman was returned to Newcastle, and hadde shewed to dyuers howe he had been taken prisoner by sir James Lynsey, than it was shewed hym howe the bisshophe of Durham hadde taken the sayd sir James Lynsey, and how that he was there in the towne as his prisoner: as soone as the bysshophe was departed, sir Mathue Reedman wente to the bysshoppes lodgyng to se his mayster, and there he founde hym in a studye, lyeng in a wyndowe, and sayd: What, sir James Lynsay, what make you here? Than sir James came forthe of the study to hym, and gaue hym good morowe, and sayd: By my faythe, sir Mathewe, fortune lath brought me hyder; for as soone as I was departed fro you, I mette by chaunce f bysshophe of Durham, to whome I am prisoner, as ye be to me; I beleue ye shall nat nede to come to Edenborowe to me to make your lynaunce: I thynke rather we shall make an exchange one for another, if the bysshophe be so contente. Well, sir, quod Reedman, we shall accorde ryght well toguyder, ye shall dyne this daye with me; the bysshop and our men be gone forthe to fyght with your men, I can nat tell what shall fall, we shall know at their retourne. I am content to dyne with you, quod Lynsay. Thus these two knyghtes dynd toguyder in Newcastle.

When the knyghtes of Scotlāde were enformed howe the bysshop of Durham came on them with x. thousande men, they drewe to counsaile to se what was best for them to do, outhur to departe or els to abyde the aduēture: all thynges consydrēd, they concluded to abyde, for they sayd they coude nat be in a better nor a stronger place than they were in alredy: they had many prisoners, and they coude nat cary theym awaye if they shulde haue departed: and also they hadde many of their men hurte, and also some of their prisoners, whōe they thought they wolde nat leue behynde them: thus they drewe toguyder, and ordred so their felde, that ther was no entre but one waye, and they sette all their prisoners toguyder, and made them to promise howe, that rescue or no rescue, they shulde be their prisoners; after that they made all their mynstrels to blowe vp all atones, and made the greatest reuell of the world. Lightlye it is the vsage of scottes, that whan they be thus assembled toguyder in armes, the footemen bereth about their neckes hornes in maner lyke hunters, some great, some small, and of all sortes, so that whan they blowe all at ones, they make suche a noyse, that it may be herde nighe iiii. myles of; thus they do to abasshe their enemyes, and to reioyce themselves. Whan the bysshophe of Durham, with his baner, and x.M. men with hym, were aproched within a leage, than f scottes blewe their hornes in suche wise, that it semed that all the deuyls in hell had been amonge them, so that suche as herde them, and knewe nat of their vsage, were sore abasshed. This blowyng and noyse endured a longe space, and than cessed. And by that tyme thēglysshmen were within lesse than a myle. Than f scottes began to blowe agayn, and made a great noyse, and as long endured as it it dyd before. Than the bysshop aproched with his batayle well rainged ī good order, and came within f syght of f scottes, as within ii. bowe shot or lesse: than f scottes blewe again their hornes a lōge space: f bysshop stode styll to se what the scottes wolde do, and auewed thē well, and saw howe they were in a stronge grounde, greatlye to their aduantage: than the bysshop tooke counsaile what was beste for hym to do; but all thyng well aduysed, they were nat in purpose to entre in amonge the scottes to assaile them, but returned withoute doying of any thyng, for they sawe well they myght rather lese than wyn. Whan the scottes sawe the Englysshemen recule, and that they shulde haue no batayle, they wente to their lodgynges and made mery, and thañe ordayned to departe fro thens: and bycause that sir Rafe Percy was sore hurte, he desyred of his maister that he myght retourne to Newcastle, or into some place where as it pleased hym, vnto such tyme as he were hole of his hurtes; promysyng as soone as he were able to ryde, to retourne into Scotlande, outhur to Edenborowe,

borowe, or into any other place apoynted : the erle of Mare,<sup>a</sup> vnder whom he was taken, agreed therto, and delyuered hym a horse lytter, and sent hym awaye : and by lyke couenaunt dyuers other knyghtes and squyers were suffred to returne, and tooke terme outhur to retourne, or els to paye their fynauce, suche as they were apoynted vnto. It was shewed me by the informacyon of the scottes, suche as had been at this sayd batayle, that was bytwene Newcastle, and Octeburge,<sup>b</sup> in the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and viii. the xix. daye of August, howe y there were taken prisoners of the Englysshie partie M. and xl. men, one and other, and slayne in the felde and in the chase xviii. hundred and xl. and sore hurte mo than a thousande : and of the scottes there were a hundred slayne, and taken in the chase mo than two hundred : for as the Englysshmen fledde, whan they sawe any aduaūtage they retourned agayne and fought ; by that meanes the scottes were taken and none otherwyse. Euery man maye well consyde that it was a well fought felde, whan there were so many slayne and taken on bothe parties.

*Howe the scottes departed and caryed with them therle Douglas deed, and buryed hym in the abbey of Nymays :<sup>c</sup> and howe sir Archambault Douglas and his company departed fro before Carlyle, and retourned into Scotlande.*

#### CAP. CXLVII.<sup>d</sup>

AFTER this batayle thus furnysshed, euery man retourned, and the erle Douglas deed body chested and layde in a chare, and with hym sir Robert Hart, and Symon Glaudyn :<sup>e</sup> than they prepared to departe ; so they departed and ledde with them sir Henry Percy, and mo than xl. knyghtes of Englande, and tooke the waye to the abbey of Nymay :<sup>e</sup> at their departyng they sette fyre in their lodgynges, and rode all the daye, and yet lay that night in the Englyshse grounde : none denyed thē : the nexte daye they dislodged early in the mornyng, and so came that daye to Nymay :<sup>e</sup> it is an abbey of blacke monkes, on the border bytwene bothe realmes ; there they rested, and buryed the erle James Douglas ; the seconde daye after, his obsequye was done reuerētly, and on his body layde a tombe of stone, and his baner hangyng ouer hym. Wheder there were as than any mo Erles of Douglas to whome the lande retourned or nat, I can nat tell : for I sir John Froissart, auctour of this boke, was in Scotlande, in y erles castell of Alquest,<sup>f</sup> Iyueng erle Wyllyam, at whiche tyme he had two chyldren, a sonne and a doughter ; but after there were many of the Duglasses, for I haue sene a v. bretherne, all squyers, bearyng y name of Douglas, in y kyng of Scotlādes house Dauid ; they were sōnes to a knight in Scotlāde, called sir James Douglas, and they bare in their armes golde, thre oreyls goulles, but as for y herytage I knowe nat who had it ; as for sir Archambalt Douglas, of whom I haue spoken before in this hystorie in dyuers places, who was a valyant knight, and gretly redouted of the englysshmen, he was but a bastarde.

Whan these scottes hadde ben at Nymaye<sup>e</sup> abbey, and done there all that they came thyder for, than they departed eche fro other, and wente into their owne countreis, and suche as hadde prisoners, some ledde them awaye with them, and some were rauōsomed and suffred to returne. Thus the Englysshemen founde the scottes right curtesse  
and

<sup>a</sup> Moray.

<sup>b</sup> Otterbourne.

<sup>c</sup> Melrose.

<sup>e</sup> Glendinning.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLIII.

<sup>f</sup> Dalkeith.



and gentyll, in their delyueraunce and raunsome, so that they were well contente. This was shewed me in the cuntry of Bierne, in the erle of Foiz house, by a knyght named Johan of Newcastle,<sup>a</sup> who was taken prisoner at the same iourney, vnder the baner of the erle of Marc, and Donbare: and he greatly praysed the sayd erle, for he suffred hym to passe in maner as he desyred hymselfe.

Thus these men of warre of Scotlande departed, and ransomed their prisoners as soone as they myght, ryght curtesly, and so returned lytell and lytell into their owne countreis. And it was shewed me, and I helue it well, that the scottes had by reason of that iourney two hundred thousande frankes for ransomyng of prisoners; for sythe the batayle that was before Streuelyne,<sup>b</sup> in Scotlande, where as sir Robert of Breuce, sir Wylliam Douglas, sir Robert Versey, sir Symon Freseyle,<sup>c</sup> and other scottes, chased the Englysshmen thre dayes, they neuer had iourney so profytable nor so honorable for the, as this was. Whau tidynges came to the other company of the scottes that were besyde Carlyle, howe their company had distressed the Englysshmen besyde Octeburgh,<sup>d</sup> they were greatly reioysed, and displeased in their myndes that they had nat ben there; than they determyned to dislodge, and to drawe into their owne countreys, seyng their other company were withdrawn. Thus they dislodged and entred into Scotlāde.

Nowe lette vs leaue to speke of the scottes, and of the Englysshemen, for this tyme, and lette vs retourne to the yonge Charles of Fraunce, who with a great people wente into Almaygne,<sup>e</sup> to bringe the duke of Guerles<sup>f</sup> to reason.

Whan the Frenche kynge and all his armye were paste the ryuer of Muese, at the bridge of Morsay, they tooke the waye of Ardayn, and of Lusenbough, and alwayes the pyoners were before beatyng woodes and busshes, and makyng the wayes playne. The duke of Julyers and his cuntry greatly douted the comyng of the Frenche kynge, for they knewe well they shulde haue the fyrst assaute, and beare the fyrst burdone, and the lande of Julyers is a playne cōtrey. In one day the men of warre shuld do moche dōmage there, and distroye and wast all, excepte the castelles and good townes. Thus the Frenche kyng entred into the cōtrey of Lusenbough, and came to an abbey where as Vyncelant,<sup>g</sup> somtyme duke of Brabant, was buried: there the kyng taryed two dayes: than he departed and toke the waye throughe Basconque,<sup>h</sup> and lodged within a leage where as the duches of Brabant laye; she sent worde of her beyng there to the duke of Burgoyne, and he brought her into the felde to speke with the kynge, who receyued her right honourably, and there cōmuned togyder. Than the duches returned to Basconque,<sup>h</sup> and thyder she was conueyed with sir John of Vyen, and sir Guy of Tremoile;<sup>i</sup> and the next daye the kyng went forwarde, aprochyng to the lande of his enemyes, and came to thētryng into Almayne,<sup>e</sup> on the fronters of the duchy of Julyers; but or he came so far forwarde, Arnolde, bisshop of Liege, had ben with the kyng, and had greatly entreated for the duke of Julyers, that the kyng shulde nat be miscontent with hym, though he were father to the duke of Guerles:<sup>f</sup> for he excused hym of the defiaūce that his sonne had made, affyrmyng how it was nat by his knowlege nor consent: wherefore he sayd, it were pytie that the father shulde beare the default of the soune. This excuse was nat suffycient to the kyng, nor to his vnclis; for the entent of the kyng and his cōsaille was, without the duke of Julyers wolde come and make other maner of excuse, and to yelde hymselfe to the kynges pleasure, his cuntry shulde be the first that shulde beare the burdone. Thanne the bysshoppe of Liege, and the lordes of Hasbane, and the counsails of the good townes, offred to the kyng and his counsaille, holly the

<sup>a</sup> Chateau-neuf.  
<sup>f</sup> Gueldres:

<sup>b</sup> Stirling.  
<sup>g</sup> Winceslaus.

<sup>c</sup> Frazer.  
<sup>h</sup> Bastoigne.

<sup>d</sup> Otterbourne.  
<sup>i</sup> La Tremouille.

<sup>e</sup> Germany.

the bysshoprike of Liege, for his armye to passe and repasse, payeng for their expenses, and to rest and refresshe them there as long as it pleased them. The kyng thanked them, and so dyde his vnclcs, and wolde nat refuse their offre, for he knewe nat what nede he shulde haue after.

*Howe the duke of Julyers came and excused hymselfe of the defyaūce that his sōne the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> had made to the Frenche kyng, and so became his subiecte: and of dyners feates of armes done bytwene the frenchmen and the almayns before Rencongne.<sup>b</sup>*

### C A P. CXLVIII.<sup>c</sup>

THUS the bisshoppe of Liege returned to the duke of Jullyers, and to the archebysshoppe of Coloigne, and shewed thē what he had done, and thervpon they toke aduise. The duke of Julyers had great dout of exylyng and wastyng of his countrey, and sent for the knightes of his countrey to haue their counsaile and aduise, and dayly the Frenchmen aproched. The lorde of Coucy, who was in ŷ vowarde, and with hym a thousande speares, and the duke of Lorayne with hym, and the vicount of Meaulx, with two hūdred speares. Whan the Frenchemen aproched the fronters of Almayne,<sup>d</sup> than they rode toguyder in good order and lodged wisely, for there were a thre hūdred speares of lyncars almayns, beyond the ryuer of Ryne, gathered toguyder: and they be noted to be the greatest pyllers and robbers of all the worlde: and they alwayes pursued and coosted the Frenchmen to fynde them dispurneyed, to do them dōmage. The Frenchemen doutid the same, and durst neuer go a forragyng but in great companies. And as I vnderstode, sir Boucequaut the elder, and sir Loyes of Grache, were retayned and brought to Nimay:<sup>e</sup> these sayd almayns rode alwayes couertly, lyke byrdes flyeng in ŷ ayre sekyng for their praye; this made the Frenchemen wyse and to be well ware. Thus whan the Frenche kyng was come so forwarde, as to the entre of the duchy of Julyers, the duke of Julyers, who wolde nat lese his countrey, beleued the cōsaile of the archebysshoppe of Coloyne, and the bysshop of Liege: these two entreated for hym to ŷ kyng, and brought the mater to that poynt, that his lādes were in rest and peace, by meanes of suche condycions as foloweth: These two prelates dyde so moche, ŷ they brought the duke of Julyers into the kynges presēce, and before his vnclcs, and the duke of Lorayne, and other great lordes of Fraunce of ŷ blode royall; and whan he was before the kyng he kneled downe, and wisely excused hym of the defyaūce that his sonne had made, and sayd, howe his sonne was a foole, and that he had neuer counsaile of hym to do as he dyde, but dyde it of his owne wyll: and offred ŷ kyng, sayeng: Sir, to the entent to bring him to ŷ knowledgyng of reason, by your lycence I wyll go to hym and shewe hym his folly, as quickly as I can, and counsaile hym to cōe and make his excuse before youre grace and your counsaile; and if he wyll nat thus do, but do agaynst my counsaile, I shall abandon to you all the townes and castels in my countrey, and to prouyde for men of warre, and to make warre against hym, tyll ye haue taken hym to mercy. Than the kyng regarded his brother, his vnclcs, and his cōsaile, and it semed to hym that this offre was faire and resonable, and so thought dyners other: than the kyng toke vp the duke of Julyers, (who was on his kne whyle he spake to the kyng,) and sayd to hym: Sir, we shall take counsaile and aduise on your promyses

and

<sup>a</sup> Guedres.

<sup>b</sup> Remogne ?

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLIV.

<sup>d</sup> Germany

<sup>e</sup> Nimeguen.

and wordes. Than the duke rose vp and stode styll by the bysshoppes that brought hym thyder. Than the kyng and his vnclis, and suche of his secrete counsaile, drewe toguyder, and debated this mater long, with dyuers opiniōs; the duke of Burgoyne, to whom principallye the mater touched, bicause of the duchy of Brabant, wherin he chalēged to haue great right of enherytaunce, after the dethe of the duches Jane, bycause of the lady Margaret his wyfe, and also, to say the trouthe, he was the chiefe causer of the kynges cōmyng thyder with all ꝑ poussaūce: wherfore he wolde that euery thyng might be for the best, and to thentent that a good peace might be made bitwene all parties, that there shulde be no more occasyon to cōe thyder agayne another tyme, bycause the voyage is long and costly for the realme; than he sayd to the kyng: Sir, and it lyke your grace, and you my brother of Berrey, and to you all, I saye, that in all thynges yuell begone, lyeth great aduysē; we here houe our cosyn the duke of Julyers greatly excuseth hymselfe, and he is so valyant a man, and of our blode, and we of his, that we ought to beleue hym; he offereth to the kyng a great thyng, his body, his country, his townes and castelles, to be at the kynges cōmaundemente, in case that his sonne the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> wyll rebell, and come nat to make amendes of the defyaunce that he hath made; to speke acordynge to reason, it is a great thyng to haue with vs the duke of Julyers: the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> shall be the more feble, and the easier to correcte, and the more he shall dought vs, and soner come to obeysaunce; wherfore I counsaile that his offre be nat refused, for he mekely humyleth hymselfe, and other greate lordes of Almayne<sup>b</sup> entreate for hym. To these wordes there was no contrary opynyon, but all consented by one acorde. Than the bysshoppes of Coloygne, and of Liege, were called to their counsaile, who had ben chyefe entreatours in this busynes, and to them it was declared from poynte to poynte, and from clause to clause, what thynges ꝑ duke of Julyers shulde swere and seale to do, if he wolde haue his landes saued, and to be in reste: Fyrst, that he shulde go to his sonne the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and shewe hym playnely his foly, and the great outrage that he had done, to sende to defye so puysant a prince as the frenche kyng, and specially by suche fell defyaunce, out of the style of ryght or reason; and to cause him to come to reason and mercy; and if he wolde nat thus do, but abyde styll in his opynyon, (through feble wytte and counsaile,) than the duke of Julyers to swere and seale to renounce hym fro all ayde or socoure that he myght do, and to become his enemy, as other be: and to suffre suche as shall be apoynted by the kyng and his counsaile to abyde there all this wynter, to lye in garysons in the country of Julyers, to make frounter warre agaynst the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and there to be well entreated and receuyed.

These two prelates were called to the kynges counsaile, to the entente that they shulde shewe to the duke of Julyers these artycles, and so they dyd; and than the duke sawe well houe that it behoued hym to agree, or els to haue his landes ouer rynn and wasted; wherfore he accorded, and sware, and sealed, to vpholde all the kynges desyre, so that his lande shulde nat be ouerrun nor exyled: and he was contente that his lande shulde vytaile the armye. Thus the duke of Julyers became the frenche kynges man, and made relyefe for his lande of Vierson, beyng bytwene Bloys and Berrey, and supped that nyght at the kynges table. Fyrst, sate the bysshoppe of Liege, and the bysshoppe of Coloygne: than the kyng, the duke of Burgoyne, the duke of Thowrayn, the duke of Juliers, and the duke of Barbone.

Thus the duke of Julyers was in reste and pease by the foresayd meanes, and the kyng and his armye were lodged in his country, the whiche was pleasaunt and plentyfull of all vytayles. Than the duke of Julyers wente towards the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup>

his

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.<sup>b</sup> Germany.

his sonne; but or he came there, there was dyners feates of armes done in the country, for the almayns,<sup>a</sup> who be couetouse, oftentimes by night or by daye wolde ieorparde themselfe, and sette on the frenchemiens lodgynges, to kepe them wakyng, and somtyme they wanne, and somtyme they lost; but for one almayne that was taken, there were euer four frenchmen taken. And on a daye the constable of Fraunce, and the lorde Coucy, the duke of Lorayne, the marshall of Blainuill, sir Johan of Vien, syr Johan de la Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> and a four thousande men of armes came before a towne in Guerles,<sup>c</sup> called Remogne, and shewed themselfe before it in good ordre of batayle. The same tyme fy duke of Guerles<sup>c</sup> was within the towne, and praysed moche their demeanour, but he made none issue out, for he had nat men ynowe, wherof he was ryght sore dyspleased. Thus the frenchemen were there in good ordre of batayle the space of four houres, and whan they sawe that none wolde issue out, they departed and returned to their lodgynges. The same euenyng about the duke of Berreys lodgyng, certayne knyghtes and squyers drewe togyther, to the entent to ryde forthe in the mornyng into the lande of their enemies to seke some aduerture, and promysed eche other to stycke togyther lyke bretherne; they were in nombre aboute a hundred speares: but whan the mornyng came all their purpose was broken: for there was a squyer of Auergne, called Godinos, a valyaunt man of armes, he pertayned to the lorde of Alegre, whan he sawe that they had refused his company, and wolde nat desyre hym to go with them, he was sore dyspleased, and brake his mynde to another sorte of companys, so that they were to the nombre of thyrty speares; they rode forthe togyther, and rode all that mornyng, and coulde fynde none aduerture; and whan Godynos sawe that they shulde retourne without doynge of any feate, he was sore dyspleased, and sayde to his company: Syrs, ryde on fayre and easely, and I with my page wyll ryde aboute this wode, to se if any embusse be hydden therin, and tary me vpon yonder Mountayne; they agreed to hym. Thus he and his page rode forthe costyng the wode; whan he had rydden a lytell waye, he herde one whystell in the wode, and strake his horse with the spores, and came to the syde of the wode, and there he founde an almayne guerloys cuttyng of wode; than Godynos toke his glayue and came rynnynge at this man, wherof the man was sore abashed; than Godynos made sygne to hym that he shulde go with him, and thought that his companys yet shulde se that he had founde somewhat, and thought the same manne shulde do them some seruyce in their lodgynges: and so Godynos rode on before on a lowe hackeney, and the almayne folowed hym afoote with a hewyng axe on his necke, wherwith he had wrought in the wode: Godinos page lepte on his maysters courser, and bare his bassenette and speare, and folowed them halfe slepyng, bycause he had rysen so early: and the almayn, who knewe nat whyder he shulde go, nor what they wolde do with hym, thought to delyuer hymselfe, and came fayre and easely to Godynos, and lyfte vp his axe, and strake hym suche a stroke on the heed that he claue it to the teeth, and so ouerthrewe hym starke deed; the page knewe nat therof tyll he sawe his mayster fall; than the vyllayne fledde into the wode and saued hymselfe. This aduerture fell to Godinos, wherwith suche as knewe hym were sore dyspleased, and specyally they of Auergne, for he was the man of armes that was moste doughted of the englysshmen in those parties, and he that dyd them most damage: if he had been in prisone he shulde haue ben quyted out, and if it had been for twenty thousande frankes.

Nowe lette vs retourne to the duke of Julyers.

<sup>a</sup> Germans.

<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.

<sup>c</sup> Gueldres.

*Howe the duke of Juliers and the archebysshop of Coloygne departed fro the frenche kynge, and wente to Nymay,<sup>a</sup> to the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and howe by their meanes he was reconcyled and brought to peace with the frenche kynge, and with the duches of Brabanue.*

CAP. CXLIX.<sup>c</sup>

YE knowe well, as it hathe ben shewed here before, howe the duke of Juliers made his peace with the frenche king, by meanes of the bysshoppes that treated in that behalfe: and also, to save the trouthe, the duke of Lorayne, his cosyn, toke great payne in the mater: and (as ye haue herde) the duke promysed to go to his sonne the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> and to cause hym to come to the kynges mercy, or els to make hym warre. Thus the duke of Juliers was fayne to promyse, or els all his countrey had ben loste. Thus the duke of Juliers, and the archbysshoppe, toke their journey to go into Guerles,<sup>b</sup> and passed the ryver and came to Nymay,<sup>a</sup> where as the duke was, who receyved his father with great joye as he was bounde to do, for there is nothyng so nere a man as his father and mother. but he was nothyng glad that he herde howe that the duke his father was agreed with the frenche kynge. Than the duke of Juliers, and the bysshop, shewed hym at length the hole mater in what case he and his lande stode in. He made lytle therof, for he was so sore alyed with the kynge of Englande that he wolde nat forsake hym. For his herte was good englysshe, and so excused hymselfe greatly, and sayde to his father: Syr, let me alone, I wyll abyde the aventure, and if I take damage by reason of the frenche kynges comyng, I am yonge ynough to beare it, and to be reuenged hereafter on some parte of the realme of Fraunce, or vpon my neyghbours the Brabansoys; there is no lorde canne kepe warre without some damage, sometye lese, and sometye wyne. Whan his father the duke of Juliers herde hym so styffe in his opynion, he was sore dyspleased with him, and sayd: Sonne Willyam, for whoe make you youre warre, and who be they that shall reuenge your damage? Syr, quod he, the kynge of Englande and his puysaunce; and I haue gret manuaile that I here no tydynges of the englysshe army that is on the see: for if they were come as they haue promysed me to do, I wolde haue wakened the frenchemen oftener thanne ones or this tyme. What, quod his father, do you trust and abyde for the englysshmen? they are so besyed in euery quarter, that they wote nat to whome to entende; the duke of Lancastre, our cosyn, lyeth at Bayon, or at Burdeaux, and is retourned out of Spayne in a small ordre, and hath lost his men and tyme: and he hath sente into Englande for to haue mo men of armes and archers, and he can nat get to the nombre of xx. speares; also the englysshemen haue had but late in playne batayle a great damage in Northumberlande, for all their chyualry aboute Newcastle vpon Tyne were oerthrowen, and slayne and taken, so that as nowe the realme of Englande is nat in good quyete nor reste: wherfore it is nat for you to trust at this tyme on the englysshemen, for of them ye shall haue no comforte; wherfore I couंसayle you to be ruled by vs, and we shall make your peace with the frenche kynge, and shall do so moche that ye shall nouthre receyue shame nor damage. Syr, quod the duke of Guerles,<sup>b</sup> howe may I with myne honoure acorde with the Frenche kynge, though I shulde lese all my hole lande, and go dwell in some other place? surely I wyll nat do it, I am to sore alyed with the kinge of Englande, and also I haue defyed the frenche kynge:

VOL. II.

3 G

<sup>a</sup> Nimeguen<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLV

kyng; thynke you that for feare of hym I shulde renoke my wordes, or breke my seale? ye wolde I shulde be dyshonored: I requyre you let me alone, I shall defende myself right well agaynst them; I set lytell by their thretyunges; the waters, and raynes, and colde wethers, shall so fight for me or the tyme of Janyuer come, that they shall be so wery, that the hardyest of theym shall wysse themselfe at home in their owne houses.

Thus at the begynnyng of this treatie the duke of Juliers, and the bysshoppe of Coloyne, coude nat breke the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> purpose, and yet they were with hym a sixe dayes, and euery day in counsaile; and whan the duke of Julyers sawe no otherways, he began sore to argue agaynst his sonne, and sayd: Sonne, if ye wyll nat beleue me, surely I shall dysplease you, and as for your enherytaunce of the duchy of Julyers, ye shall neuer haue one foote therof, but rather I shall gyue it to a straunger, who shall be of pyssaunce to defende it agaynst you; ye are but a foole if ye wyll nat beleue my counsaile. Whan the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> sawe his father inflamed with ire, than to appease his displeasure, he sayd: Sir, than counsaile me to myne honour, and at your desyre I shall leane therto; for syr, I owe to you all obeysaunce, and wyll do. Than the duke of Julyers sayde: Sonne, nowe ye speke as ye shulde do, and I shall loke for your honour as moche as I wolde do for myne owne. Than it was deuysed by great delyberacion of counsaile, that for to saue the honour on all parties, that the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> shulde go to the frenche kyng, and to do hym honoure and reuerence, as he ought to do to a kyng, and to make his excuse of the defyaunce that he had sente to the kyng, and to say after this maner: Syr, trewe it is there was a letter at a tyme sealed with my seale sente into Fraunce, whiche came to your knowledge, in the whiche letter was contaygned defyaunce, pertaynyng to your grace and to your realme, with wordes vnreasonable, out of the ryght style and vsage that princes and lordes defie eche other, the whiche I wyll nat auowe y euer any suche wordes passed out of my mouthe, nor by my cōmaundement, any worde touchyng or defamyng your name or signory; and syr, to veryfy that this myne excuse is of trouthe, and that it maye be had out of all suspecte, I shall declare the trouthe of euery thyng: Syr, by reason of the great alyauce and seruyce that I haue borne to my ryght redouted lorde the kyng of Englande, at his requeste, and his counsaile, I sente into Englande four of my knyghtes, and delyuered theym my seale to seale to any thyng that they concluded vpon; they sealed this letter and nat I, for I neuer knewe before the sealyng of that letter what was conteyned therein: Syr, I requyre your grace accepte this excuse, for this is trewe: but sir, as for the aliaunce and seruyce that I haue made to my lorde the kyng of Englande I wyll neuer breke it, nor do contrarye to that he commaundeth me; but syr, at his request and cōmaundement I wyll defye you or any other, whan it shall please hym, who so euer they be, excepte myne owne naturall lorde the kyng of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> to whome I am made seruaunte by my mouthe spoken, and by myne handes in his; but syr, for the honoure of you, consyderyng and in recompensyng the paynes and traueyls that ye haue susteyned in your iourney comyng hyder, to knowe the foundation and trouthe of the defyaunce, I shall swere to you and kepe it, that I shall neuer make warre agaynst you nor defye you, but fyrste ye shall be signyfyed therof an hole yere before; and sir, me thynke this shulde suffyce you. To this deuise the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> sayde, I am well contente thus to do; in this there is no dyshonour nor blame to me, as I thynke.

Thus on this poynte departed the duke of Julyers from his sonne the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and with him the archebysshoppe of Coloygne, and so they returned into Julyers, and  
came

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Germany.

came to Endesker; and whan tyme was, they wente to the frenche kynge, and shewed him all the poyntes and artycles before rehersed, and sayd: Syr, loke what ye wyll do with the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> for other than this ye shall nat haue of hym. The frenche kynge greatly desyred to se the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> his cosyn, bycause he had put hym to so moche payne, wherfore the soner he enclenyd to this treatye: and the duke of Burgoyne, who wolde also that the duches of Brabant, and her cuntry, shulde abyde in rest and peace, he toke payne to bringe this treatie to effecte, and y<sup>e</sup> the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> myght come to speke with the kynge: and also there was one thyng that made them the soner agre: wynter aproched, and the nyghtes began to be longe and colde, and also the lordes of Fraunce were enfourmed that Guerles<sup>a</sup> was no cuntry to rest in, in the tyme of wynter: and also dayly they had reporte howe they loste of their men, bothe knyghtes and squyers, by the lyncars almayns, who dayly lay in wayte for them. So many reasons and consideracyons were layde and alledged, that they fell to acorde, and the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> aproched, and the duke of Julyers his father, and the duke of Loraneyne, and the bysshop of Coloigne, brought hym into the kynges tente, where there was with the kynge, his thre vnclcs, and his brother, the duke of Tourayne, and the duke of Bare, the erle of Marche, the erle of saynte Pole, the erle dolphyn of Auergue, the lordc Coucy, and the constable of Fraunce; there the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> kneled downe before the kynge, and as it was infourmed me, the kyng toke hym vp, and there valyauntly and wysely he excused hymselfe of the defyaunce that he had made to the kynge: and moreouer he sware, that if euer he wolde defye the kynge, or make warre to the realme of Fraunce, that he wolde gye the kynge knowlege therof a yere before, and the countreys of Guerles<sup>a</sup> and Brabante to be styll in the same case as they be in at that same presēt tyme. Thus the mater concluded bytwene them; and the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> supped with the kynge the same nyghte at his table: he was greatly regarded, bycause he had put the kynge to so moche payne and coste. This treatie and conclusyon was put in writyng and sealed; and whan all was done, the lordes toke leaue to departe; but or they departed, the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> demaunded of the kynge, that all suche prisoners as the Frenchemen had taken in that warre, that he myght haue them delyuered franke and free: he had his desyre, they were delyuered. Thanne the kynge demaunded of the duke, that all suche prysoners as his men had taken in that voyage shulde be delyuered and rendred agayne. Than the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> excused hymselfe, and sayde: Syr, that I can nat do, I am but a poore man, and whan I knewe of your commynge, I fortified myselfe the best I myght with men of warre, knyghtes, and squyers, fro beyonde the ryuer of Ryne, and other places: and I promysed them that whatsoeuer they wanne in this warre, it shulde be their owne; wherfore I can take nothinge fro them of that they haue wonne: if I wolde, I haue nouthur puyssaunce nor power to do it; for if I wolde shewe rygoure to theym, they wolde make warre agaynst me: wherfore, sir, may it please you to lette it passe, for I canne nat remedy it. The kynge sawe he coulde haue nothyng els, he suffred it to passe, and imagyned that he and his realme were riche ynough to increase poore men, wherfore he let it passe, and spake no mo wordes: and at their departure eche of theym well contented other. Than it was ordeyned to dyslodge, and to retourne the same way they came, and than it was sayd that the frenche kynge shulde be at the cytie of Reynes<sup>b</sup> at the feest of all sayntes, and there to holde a great feest. Thus euery man dyslodged and returned.

Nowe lette vs speke of the englysshe army on the see.

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Rheims.

*Howe the erle of Arundell and the knyghtes of Englande, beyng on the see, by fortune of the wynde, came to the Palyce<sup>a</sup> besyde Rochell, whose beyng there was signified to sir Loys of Xanser: and of the departyng of the erle of Arundell.*

CAP. CL.<sup>b</sup>

IN the meane seasoone whyle the french kyng was in Guerles,<sup>c</sup> the englysshe army was on the see, wherof the erle of Arundell was chefe capytayne, and sometyme sayled forwarde and somtyme backwarde, as the wynde wolde serue them, to seke for aduentures, as it is well knowen. Always lightly bytwene the feest of saynt Remy and all sayntes is a peryllous season for stormes and wyndes on the see, and aboute the same tyme there rose suche a tempeste, that it sperkled abroad the englysshe nauy in suche wyse that the hardyest marynere there was sore abashed, so that perforce they were constryed to seke for lande: and the erle of Arundell, with xxvii. vesselles with hym, whether they wolde or nat, were fayne to caste ancre in a lytell hauen called the Palyce,<sup>a</sup> a two small leages fro Rochell, and y wynde was so streynable on seeborde, that they coude nat departe thence. Whanne tydynges therof came to Rochell, they were in great dought at the fyrste leste the englysshmen wolde come on them and do them great damage, and closed their gates and helde them shytte a day and a halfe. Than other tydynges came to them fro them of Palyce, howe the englysshemen were but xxvii. vesselles, and came thyder by force of wynde and wether, and taryed for nothyng but to departe agayne, and that the Erle of Arundell was there, and the lorde Henry Beaumonde, sir Wyllyam Helmen, and mo than thyrty knyghtes of Englande. Than they of Rochell tooke counsaile what thyng was beste for them to do; and, all thyng consydered, they sayd howe they shulde but easly acyqte themselfe if they went nat to skrymysshe with them. The same season before the castell of Boutenyll was syr Loys of Xansere, marshall of Fraunce, and had besieged within the fortresse Gylliam of saynt Foye, a gascon; and with the marshall a great company of Poictou, of Xayntone, of Piergourt,<sup>d</sup> of Rochell, and of the lowe marches, for all were nat gone into Almayne<sup>e</sup> with y king. This sir Loys was soueraygne capytayne ouer all the frontiers bytwene Mountpellyer and Rochell, tyll the retourne of the lorde Coucy. They of Rochell sent worde to the marshall of the englysshmens beyng at Palyce: whan he herde thereof he was ryght ioyfull, and sent to them that they shulde make redy senen or eyght galees, and to man them forthe, for he wolde come by lande and fyght with the Englysshmen. They of Rochell dyd as they were commaunded, and sir Loys departed fro his siege, and brake it vp, for he thought it shulde be more honorable for hym to fyght with the erle of Arundell and the englysshemen rather thanne to contynewe styll his siege: thus he wente to Rochell, and all knyghtes and squyers folowed hym. I can nat tell by what inspyracyon the erle of Arundell had knowledge howe the marshall of Fraunce, with a greate puyssaunce of knyghtes and squyers, was comyng to fyght with hym at Palyce, whiche tydynges were nat very pleasaunte to the erle of Arundell; howebeyt, the wynde was somewhat layde, and the see aueyled: than the erle wayed vp ancores and sayled into the see in suche good season, that if he had taryed longe after, he had been enclosed in the hauen and euery man taken: for incontynent thyder came the galees of Rochell, well manned and furnysshed with artyllery and gonnes, and came streyght to the hauen of the Palyce,<sup>a</sup> and foude the englysshemen departed; they pursued

<sup>a</sup> La Palice.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLVI.

<sup>c</sup> Guedres.

<sup>d</sup> Perigord.

<sup>e</sup> Germany.



sued after a two leagues in the see and shotte gounnes; howbeit, they durst nat longe folowe for feare of embusshmentes on the see. Than the frenche shippes returned, and the marshall of Fraunce was sore dyspleased with theym of Rochell that they sente hym worde so late. The erle of Arundell toke the way by the ryner of Garon to come to Burdeaux, and therby y siege before Bowtenyll was defeated. for Gillonot of saynt Foy prouided his garyson of that he neded, in the meane tyme y the marshall went to fyght with the englysshemen.

Nowe let vs retourne somewhat to speke of the duke of Lancastre, howe he was in treatie with the spanyardes, and also with the duke of Berrey for the maryage of his daughter. The kyng of Castyle treated with hym for his sonne the prince of Castyle, to the entent to haue a peace with the englysshemen; also the duke of Berrey treated to haue the duke of Lancasters daughter for hymselfe, for he had great desyre to be maryed: and the duke of Lancaster, lyke a sage imagynatyf prince, sawe well howe it was more profitable for Englande and for hym, to mary his daughter into Castyle rather than to the duke of Berrey: for therby he thought to recouer the herytage of Castyle in tyme to come for his daughter; and if he shulde gync her to the duke of Berrey, and the duke fortune to dye, his daughter than shulde be but a poore lady to the regarde of other, bycause the duke of Berrey had chyldren by his fyrst wyfe, who shulde haue all the profyte; also the duchesse of Lancastre enclyned to the kyng of Castyles sonne: so that whan sir Helyon of Lignac was departed fro the duke of Lancastre, and returned to the duke of Berrey, beyng as than in Almayne,<sup>a</sup> than the king of Castyls messagers were well herde, in soche wyse that their wordes were noted and their offers accepted, and the couenaunte made and sworne bytwene Kateryn of Lancastre and the kyng of Castyls sonne, and wrytynges and publike instrumentes and obligatory bondes made and concluded, without reple or repentaunce; so y the duches of Lacastre, after euery thyng set in ordre, shulde bring her daughter Kateryn into Castyle.

All this season the frenche kyng was styll in the fronters of Julyers, concludynge with the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> (as ye haue herde before), and howe they departed: and as the frenchemen returned, it fortunod on the frontieres of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> on a nyght aboute mydnyght, as the mone shone fayre, certayne almayns, robbers and pyllers, that dyd sette nother by peace nor warre, but alwayes sought for their aduantage, some peytaynyng to the lorde of Blaqueuemen and to sir Peter of Gronebech, they were well horsed, and came and aduysed the french hoost, and where they might haue most profyte and aduantage, and so passed by the lodgyng of the vycount of Meaultx, and sawe no styrringe, and returned without any noyse makyng, outhur passynge or retournyng, and came agayne to their embussh. and shewed them what they had sene and founde; and incontynente these almayns came and entred at their aduantage into the frenchmens lodgynges, and ouerthrewe I can nat tell howe many, and toke xiiii. menne of armes prisoners: there was taken the lorde of Viesuille and the lorde of Mountkarell: this aduenture the frenchemen hadde the same nyght, by reason they made but easy wathe and were but yuell ordred. The next day whan these tydinges were knowen howe the lorde of Viesuille and the lorde of Mountkarell were taken, the frenchemen were sore displeased, and toke better hede after. Whan the frenche kyng departed fro the cuntry of Julyers none taryed behynde; euery man drewe to their garysons; sir Guylliam of Tremoyle,<sup>c</sup> and sir Geruays Fierande,<sup>d</sup> and all other; and the brabansoys by the way, euery man wente home: and in the retournyng of the frenchemen, it was ordeyned by great delyberacion of couſayle, that the frenche kyng (who had ben vnder the gouernynge of his vncles euer syth the dethe of the laste kyng his father) shulde  
than

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> La Tremouille.<sup>d</sup> Merande

than take on himselfe the gouernynge and charge of his hole realme, and his vnclcs to cease of the gouernynge, for they had ynough to do in other busynesses. The kynge as thanne was paste twenty yere of age. This was openly publysshed, and every man thought it was resonable. The kynge came to Rennes<sup>a</sup> at the feest of all sayntes, and there helde a great feest, and his vnclcs with hym; and there they had fyrst knowledge that the kynge of Castyle and the duke of Lācastre were cōcluded vpon a peace and vpon a maryage to be had bytwene the kinges soume and the dukes doughter. Than the frenche kyng sported with the duke of Berrey, and sayde, Fayre vnclc, ye haue fayled of your entent; another is lyke to enioy the wyfe that ye wolde haue had: howe say you therto? what sayeth your corage? The duke of Berrey sayde, Syr, I saye nothyng but well; if I haue fayled there, I shall spede in some other place. Than the frenchemen beganne to murmure vpon this maryage, and said, this can nat be done without great alyaūce, whiche shal be a thyng greatly preiudyciall in tyme to come to the realme of Fraūce: and suche as considred the botom of the mater said howe that if Castyle, Englande, and Portugale be all of one alyaūce and accorde, these thre realmes, what by see and by lande, they maye make warre to the realme of Fraunce; wherfore they sayde, it were good that the kynge shulde sende and prouyde remedy by tymes, consydringe that this vnhappy kyng of Castyle hath made alyaūce in maner with a deed man, for the duke of lancastre is as a man without men and puyssaunce; nor also they sayde, howe the kyng of Castyll ought nat to make any aliaūce with any man without the counsaile of the Frenche kynge: if he do, the kynge maye sende hym worde that he wyll make hym as lowe a varlette as he hath made hym a great lorde. Lette the kynge make warre agaynste the realme of Castyle, and putte out the vnhappy kyng, sonne to a bastarde, and lette the kyng gyue the realme to his owne brother, the duke of Thourayne, who as yet hath no great herytage; he shall well and sagely gouerne it. Howe can or dare this kynge of Castyle make or treate for any peace or alyaūce with the duke of Lancastre without the knowledge or cōsent of the Frenche kynge, who hath so moche ayded, honoured, and auansed hym? He had loste his realme, if the puyssaunce and blode royall of Fraunce had nat ben: he hath well marchaundyed, and yet he wyll marchaundyse; but if it be (as it is sayd), lette hym be shamed and dislieryted, and lette hym haue suche punysshment that he may well knowe that he hath yuell done.

These wordes multiplyed in suche wyse, that all thynges consydered, the kynge and his vnclcs and his counsaile determyned to sende into Castyle to kynge Johan, and to shewe hym on the Frenche kynges behalfe that he be well aduysed, and take hede what he dothe, and that he be nat so hardy to make any treatie or alyaūce with the Englysshemen, nor with the duke of Lancastre, in any thyng y<sup>e</sup> shulde be preiudyciall to the Crowne or realme of Fraunce; and if he haue done, or do, or thynketh to do, lette hym be sure that the puyssaunce of Fraunce shall, as moche or more sette hym abacke and hynder hym as it hath auansed hym before, and that the Kynge and the realme shall entende to do nothyng elles hut to distroye hym. Than it was consydrd who shulde do this message; and it was thought, that whosoouer shulde do it ought to be a hardy man and well spoken, and sagely and valiauntly to declare the kynges pleasure. It was thought that a meane and a symple persone ought nat to do that message. Than there were thre persones named, the lorde of Coucy, sir Johan of Vyen, admirrall of Fraunce, and sir Guye de la Tremoyle;<sup>b</sup> of these thre to take one to go into Castyle on this voyage: and all thynges consydrd, sir Johan of Vyenne was apoynted to go. Than the kynge and his counsaile sayd vnto hym, Admyrall, make you redy; ye shall go on this voyage, and ye shall haue none other letters to the kyng of Castyle but of credence;

<sup>a</sup> Rheims.<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.

credence; ye are suffyciētly enstructed of the mater wherupon ye be sente; and saye vnto the kynge of Spaygne, that he aduise well and cause to be aduysed, and to rede and cause to be reed the alyaunces, ordynaunces, and promyses sworne and sealed bytwene hym and vs; and marke well youre aunswere that ye shall haue of hym and of his counsaile, and therypon we shall take our gronde to procede farther. The admyrall aunswere and sayd, it shall be done.

*Howe the Admyrall of Fraunce was ordayned by the Frenche kyng and his counsaile as ambassadour to go to the kynge of Castyle; and howe the Duke of Berrey sente to the erle of Foize to treat for a maryage bytwene the duke of Berrey and the erles daughter of Boulogne.*

CAP. CLI.<sup>a</sup>

THE admyrall of Fraūce taryed nat long at Paris, but made hym quickly redye to departe, and tooke his leaue of the kyng and of his vncles, and tooke his waye by Burgoyne, bycause he wolde go by Auygnone to se the pope and his brother, and so he dyde.

Nowe lette vs leaue spekyng of hym, and speke somewhat of Geffray Tetenoyre, who was enclosed and besieged within the castell of Vandachore;<sup>b</sup> but fyrste we wyll speke of the duke of Berrey, who had great desyre to mary, as he well shewed within that yere. Whan he sawe that he had fayled of the duke of Lancasters daughter, he was enfourmed that the erle of Boulogne had a fayre daughter, named Jane, daughter to the lady Elyanour of Comynges; howebeit, she was nat with her father nor with her moder; she was in the countrey of Bierne with the Erle of Foiz, her great frende and cosyn; she hadde ben there brought vp and nourysshed and well entreated the space of nyne yeres in the Castell of Ortayes, without cost or charge to father or mother: the erle often tymes hadde been desyred to haue had her maryed, but alwayes the erle aunswere that the damosell was to yonge; specially sir Bernarde, brother to the erle of Armysnacke, hadde desyred to haue her, and promysed that if he myght haue her in maryage, the warre shulde ende bytwene them for the chalenge of the lande of Byerne; but for all those promyses the erle wolde nat agree therto, but aunswere ener howe that his cosyn was to yonge; but amonge his owne men he wolde saye otherwyse: for as sir Espayne du Lyon shewed me, he wolde saye howe they of Armysnacke myght well repute hym for a beest if he shulde graunt their desyre, seyng it was to his dōmage: for if he shulde graunt them his cosyn in maryage, he shulde strength them and enfeble hymselfe; sayeng, howe they of Armysnacke helde by force and nat of right the countie of Comynges, the whiche heritage is by his mother and aunte to my cosyn of Boloyn. I wyll well they knowe I shall mary her in so stronge a place and puissaunt to make warre with them for the heritage of Comynges, for as nowe there is none to answere but a deed man.

Thus whan the erle of Armysnacke and sir Bernarde his brother sawe that they coude nat come to their purpose as long as her aunte lyued, than they sayde to the duke of Berrey that this lady shulde be a fayre maryage for Johā of Berrey his sonne: and by their settinge on, the duke sente suffycient and noble messangers into Byerne to the erle of Foiz, desyring hym that all yuell wyll might be sette aparte and euery thyng pardoned of tymes paste, and that he myght haue the damosell of Boulogne for Johan his sonne

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLVII.

<sup>b</sup> Ventadour.

some in mayage: so that the erle of Boulogne, father to the damosell, dyde therto agree and assent. Therle of Foiz made good chere to these ābassadors, but he excused hym for that maryage, and sayd howe the bdy his cosyn was to yonge; and also he sayde, howe that whan the countesse of Boulogne her mother delyuered her into his charge, she caused hym to swere that he shulde neuer mary her in no place without her knowledge and consent; and in no wyse he sayde he myght, nor wolde nat, breake his promyse nor othe, and he sayd none ought to desyre hym thervnto. This excuse the Erle made, for he knewe well that his cosyn of Comynges, who was with the erle of Vrgell her brother in the realme of Aragon, wolde nat agree thervnto. Thus the ambassadors of the duke of Berrey retourned without any thyng doying to their purpos; and whan they were gone (as sir Espayne du L. o. shewid me), the erle sayd, al. the duke of Berrey and his cōsāyle myght well repete me for an ignorant, whan he y olde haue me to enforce myne ennemys. Johan of Berrey is cosyn germain to myn aduersaries of Armynake: that bargayne shall I neuer make; I shall rather mary her to Englande: it hath been spoken of to sir Henry of Lancastre, erle of Derby, sonne the duke of Lancastre. If I thought nat greatly to disp ease the Frenche kyng, there shulde none other haue her but he; and as yet I knowe no what I ynt do, for I shali rather mary her at my pleasure than they of Armynake shulde haue her agaynste my wyll. In me it lyeth to do or to leaue; I nede nat to trouble myselfe in the mater.

Whan the duke of Berrey knewe the certēie that the duke of Lācastre shulde mary his daughter to y kyng of Castyls soñe, and that he coude nat breke that maryage in no wyse, he was a v. or sixe dayes so penyne, that none about hym durst demaide what he ayld: at last he declared his entent to thē of his counsaile. Than they said to hym, sir, if ye haue layled of the duke of Lancasters daughter, ye maye recouer another, as great and as good (as she is); howebeit, she is very yonge for your age; wherfore we can nat tell if the erle of Foiz wyll refuse it for that cause, who hath the lady in his gouernance. Ah, quod the duke, that is the daughter of the Erle of Boulogne: the erle of Foiz hath refused Johan of Berrey; howebeit, in the name of god let vs yet assaye. Than the duke wrote to the Erle of Foiz, signifyeng hym right swetely that he wolde sende to hym four lordes, as therle of Xancere, the lord de la Ruier, sir Guy de la Tremouille,<sup>a</sup> and the Vycount Dessey, to treate with hym to haue for himselfe in maryage the daughter of Boulogne, beyng vnder his kyngdome, so it myght be to his pleasure: and desyred the erle to sende hym an answer in writyng, he hote of his mynde, to thentent that his messengers shulde nat trauyle in vayne, nor lese there payne. The erle of Foiz receyued the messagers that brought the writyng right amynably, and wrote agayne by them to the duke of Berrey, sayeng, howe he was right gladde of those tidynges, and wolde be redy to receiue the sayd lordes, outhere in Foiz or in Byerne, so that the Erle of Boulogne and the countesse, father and mother to the lady, be agreed thervnto: and at their retourne, whan the duke of Berrey herde his answer, he was right ioyfull; and ail that wynter styll he pursued, what here and there, that he myght attayne to this maryage the nexte somer after: he coude nat bring his purpose aboute shortely, for he knewe well the erle of Foiz was no man lightly to be wonne, for he was sure he shulde haue many delays; wherfore the duke thought to worke wysely, and sent specyall messengers to pope Clement, who was cosyn and nere kyn to the damosell of Boulōge. The pope was right ioyouse whā he knewe y his cosyn might so highly be maryed as to the duke of Berrey, vncle to the Frēche kyng. Than the pope wrote to therle of Foiz, signifyeng hym right honorably, and aduysyng hym that he shulde nat vary fro y treatie of that maryage, for therby their lynage shulde be enhaunsed. Thus the erle of Foiz receyued letters fro all parties, and he answered them all, for right well he

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.

he coude dissimule in suche busynesse: he helde all the parties in good loue and fauour, bothe the pope and þe duke of Berrey; yet there was nat the wysest of thē bothe nor of their counsails þe coude knowe perfetely what the erle of Foiz thought surely to do.

Nowe lette vs somewhat leaue speakyng of this mater, and retourne to the siege of Vanchadore.<sup>a</sup>

Ye haue herde here before in this hystorie how sir Wylliam Lignac and sir John Boemlaunce,<sup>b</sup> and dyuers other knightes and squiers of Auvergne and Limosyn, had besieged þe castell of Vāchadore,<sup>a</sup> and Geffray Tete noyre within; but they coude nat wyn it by no maner of assaut, for they within were prouyded of all thynges necessary for vii. yere, though they had no refresshyng. They without ofte tymes wolde come out of their bastydes and scrimysshe: duryng the siege many feates of armes were done, and dyuers hurt on bothe partes; and so it fortunated at a scrimysshe Geffray Tete noyre was there hymselfe, and auāused so forwarde, that he was striken through the bassenet into the heed with a quarell. so that he was fayne to kepe his bedde, wherw all his company was sore displeased; and the season that he lay there was no scrimysshe: of this hurt, if he had ben well kept, he might sone haue ben hole; but he kept hymselfe but yuell, and specially fro lechery, the whiche he derely bought, for it cost hym his lyfe: but or he died, he knewe well before there was no remedy but dethe, for it was p ayntly shewed hym by reason of his yuell rule: he was in ieopardy of dethe, for his hed apostumed; wherfore he was counsayled to declare his wyll, and to make hym redy to god ward; thā he made his testament; first he caused to come before hym all the soueraygne companyons of the garyson, suche as were best expert in armes; than he sate vp in his bedde and sayd, sirs, and derely beloued companyons, I knowe well I am in great daunger of dethe; we haue a long season ben toguyder, and kepte good company: I haue ben your maister and true capitayne to my power; wherfore I wolde gladly in my lyfe dayes se that ye hadde another capitayne, that trewly shulde acqyete hym to you all, and to kepe this fortesse: for I shall leaue it well prouyded of euery thyng necessary parteynyng to a castell of warre, bothe of wyne, vitaylles, and artyllary, and other thynges requysyte; wherfore I demaunde of you all in generall, if ye be aduysed of any capitayne or capitayns metely to be chosen to gouerne you and this castell, as men of warre aduenturers ought to do, for suche hath ben alwayes the warre that I haue vsed. I haue made warre moche vnder the shadowe of the kyng of Englandes quarell; I haue alwayes be desyrous to be there, as somewhat was to be gotten, and so alwayes companyons aduēturers ought to do, suche as desyre feates of armes to aduēture themselves. Here in these fronters is a good cōuntry and frutefull, and great profyte to be goton therein: though the Frenchemen nowe besiege vs, it wyll nat endure alwayes; the siege and their bastydes wyll breke one day. Sirs, answeere me to my demaunde: Haue ye chosen any capitayne amonge you? The companyons stode styll and gaue none answer. And whan he sawe that they spake nat, he beganne to speke agayne with swete wordes, and sayd: Sirs, I thynke surely of this my demaunde ye haue thought before but lytell; wherfore, sirs, as I haue layne here in my bedde, I haue thought and deuysed for you. Sir, quod they, we beleue it well; and it shal be more agreable to vs that it cometh of you rather than of vs; and, sir, shewe it vs, if it please you. Sirs, quod he, I shall declare it to you, and name hym that I meane.

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.<sup>b</sup> Bonne-lance.

*Howe Geffray Teate noyre dyde chose a capitayne over his company, and howe he made his testament. and so dyed, and howe the duke of gueldres<sup>a</sup> departed fro his countre to go into Pruce,<sup>b</sup> and of the incydenche that fell to him in the lande of the duke of Stulpe, where he was taken prisoner and discōfyed.*

C A P. CLII.<sup>c</sup>

FAYRE sirs, quod Geffray. I knowe well ye haue alwayes serued and honoured me, as men ought to serue their soueraygne and capitayne. and I shal be y<sup>e</sup> gladder if ye wyll agre to haue to your capitayne one that is disceded of my bloode. Beholde here Aleyne Roux, my cosyn, and Peter his brother, who are men of armes and of my blode: I requyre you to make Aleyne youre capitayne, and to swere to hym faythe, obeysaunce, loue, and loyalte here in my presence, and also to his brother; howebeit, I wyll that Aleyne haue the souerayne charge. Sir, quod they, we are well content, for ye haue ryght well chosen. There all the companyons made theym seruyaunt to Aleyne Roux and to Peter his brother. Whan all that was done, than Geffraye spake agayne and sayde, Nowe, sirs, ye haue obeyed to my pleasure, I canne you great thanke; wherfore, sirs, I wyll ye haue parte of that ye haue holpen to conquire: I saye vnto you, that in yonder chest that ye se stande yonder, therin is to the some of xxx. thousande frankes; I wyll gyue them accordyng to my conscyence. Wyll ye all be content to fulfyll my testament; howe saye ye? Sir, quod they, we be right well contente to fulfyll your commaundement. Thāne firste, quod he, I wyll and gyue to the Chapell of saynt George here in this Castell, for the reparacions therof, a thousande and fyue hundred frankes: and I gyue to my louer, who hath truely serued me, two thousande and fyue hundred frankes; and also I gyue to Aleyne Roux, your newe capitayne, foure thousande frankes; also to the varlettes of my chambre I gyue fyue hundred frankes; to myne offycers I gyue a thousande and fyue hundred frankes; the rest I gyue and bequeth as I shall shewe you. Ye be vpon a thyrtye companyons all of one sorte; ye ought to be bretherne, and all of one alyauce, withoute debate, ryotte, or stryfe amonge you. All this that I haue shewed you ye shall fynde in yonder Chest: I wyll that ye departe all the resydue equally and truely bitwene you thyrtye; and if ye be nat thus contente, but that the deuyll wyll set debate bytwene you, than beholde yonder is a stronge axe: breke vp the coffer and gette it who can. To those wordes euery man answered and said, Sir and dere maister, we are, and shal be all of one accorde: Sir, we haue so moche loued and douted you, y<sup>e</sup> we wyll breke no coler, nor breke no poynt of that ye haue ordayned and commaunded.

Thus Geffray Teate Noyre made his testament and lyued nat past two dayes after, and was buried in y<sup>e</sup> chapell of saint George within the castell. His wyll was accomplysshed, and the xxx. thousande frankes deuyded as he had ordayned; and Aleyne Roux and Peter Roux his brother were capytayns of the castell of Vachadore.<sup>d</sup> All this season y<sup>e</sup> siege styll endured, but there were but fewe scrimysshes made; howbeit, whan the dethe of Geffray Teate noyre was known in Auuergne and Lymosyn, the knyghtes and squyers there were ryght ioyful therof, and douted lesse than they dyde before; for this Geffray in his tyme was sore douted, for he was a good and a sage capitayne, and expert in all warre.

Nowe

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> Prussia.

<sup>c</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLVIII

<sup>d</sup> Ventadour.

Nowe lette vs retourne to the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and shewe what fell to hym in this season, bycause I haue spoken of hym before, for by his meanes the Frenche kyng, his vnclis, and his brother, and other nobles of Fraunce, came to the entre of the countrey of Guerles;<sup>a</sup> and the kyng departed thens and the duke, hauyng no great dōmage: and whan the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> sawe that all the mē of warre were departed, and that he was appeased with the duches of Brabant and with all his enemyes, by reason of the composition that was made, as to rendre vp the towne of Graue vpon certayne poyntes and artycles, ordayned bytwene ſ̄ duke of Burgone, the duches of Brabant, and the duke of Guerles:<sup>a</sup> than he thought (to thentent to employ his season) to go into Pruce.<sup>b</sup> He made hym redy, and gate hym company of knyghtes and squyers of his owne countrey and other places; and about the vtas of saynt Martyn he rode forthie throughe Almaygne:<sup>c</sup> and in euery place where as he passed he had good chere; and so longe he rode that he came to the lande of Pruce;<sup>b</sup> I knowe nat by what insydence certayne men layde in wayte on hym, and in the feldes set on him or he was ware, and ouerthrewe him and all his men, so that they lost all their horses, armure, vessell, golde and syluer, and were all ledde prisoners to a towne, and there sware faythe and trouthe to paye their raunsomes; and specially ſ̄ duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> became prisoner, and made promyse to pay his raunsome to a squyer called Arnolde; his surname I knowe nat. Than ſ̄ duke and his men were ledde to a stronge towne in the lande of the duke of Stulpe; whether ſ̄ duke was there or nat I was nat enformed therof; but whan the great maysters of Pruce<sup>b</sup> herde howe the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was taken as he was comyng into their countre, they were sore displeased therwith, and sayd: howe the mater shulde nat rest in that case, for they to suffre it shulde be greatly to their blame. Thāne they reysed vp men and departed fro Cōnysbredge,<sup>d</sup> and came with a great strength of men towards the towne and castell where as the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was in prison. Whan the squyer that had taken the duke was enformed of the cōmyng of the great mayster of Pruce,<sup>b</sup> with suche a puyssaunce, he doughted greatly, and determyned nat to abyde their cōmyng to the castell, but thought to departe; but or his departure he came to the duke of Guerles,<sup>a</sup> and sayd to hym, Sir duke, ye are my prisoner and I am your mayster; ye are a gētylman and a true knight; ye haue sworne and gyuen me your faith: wheresoeuer I go, and wyll go, ye ought to folowe me: I can nat tell if ye haue sente for the great mayster of Pruce<sup>b</sup> or nat; he cometh hyder with a great puyssaūce; I thinke nat to abyde hym; tary you here if ye lyst; I wyll cary with me your faythe and promyse. The duke to those wordes gaue none answer; and the squyer toke his horse and departed, and wente to a place stronge ynoughe; and at his departyng he sayde agayne to the duke, Sir, ye shall fynde me in suche a place: he named hym a stronge castell, and oute of all hyghe wayes: and whan he was gone, the great mayster of Pruce<sup>b</sup> came to the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> where as he was, for there was none to lette hym, and so delyuered the duke out of prison; and if he hadde founde the squyer there, surely he had been slayne. Than the great mayster of Pruce<sup>b</sup> returned to Connysbredge,<sup>d</sup> and the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> with hym.

I shall shewe you what fell of this busynesse. True it was, great brute ran in dyuers countreis, and specially in Almaygne,<sup>c</sup> of the takyng of the duke of Guerles;<sup>a</sup> euery man that herde it hadde great marueile therof. Thus whan the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> was come to Connysbredge,<sup>d</sup> and was delyuered, as he haue herde, than he remembered hymselfe howe he was bounde by his faythe to the squyer that tooke hym, and remembered the wordes that the squier spake at his departyng: than he thought in hymselfe that in no wyse he wolde breke his promyse, but truly acquyte his faythe, and sayd to the great maister of Pruce,<sup>b</sup> that he wolde no lengar tary there, but go to the squyer that had his faythe: and so determyned to do for any thyng that the great mayster coulde

<sup>a</sup> Geldres.<sup>b</sup> Prussia.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Koningsburg.

saye or do: nouthur dispensacyon, absolucyon, nor other thyng coude nat cause the duke to absteine, but that he wolde nedes go to ŷ town where as the squyer was, whō he called his maister: euery man that herde therof reputed it for a great valyauntesse. When this came to knowledge of his frendes and kynsmen, than they treated for his delyueraunce; and so he was delyuered by the helpe and meanes of the duke of Stulpe, who toke great payne in the mater; howbeit, the duke of Stulpe, or he cōsented that the duke of guerles<sup>a</sup> shulde be delyuered out of daunger and out of his lande, wolde in any wyse that the duke of guerles<sup>a</sup> shulde swere and seale, that he and his heyres neuer after that daye, nor none other man for hym, shulde take any vēgeaunce for that mater, by waye of dissynulacion or otherwyse. Thus he was fayne to do or he departed. This aduerture had the duke of Guerles<sup>a</sup> that yere.

Nowe let vs retourne to sir Johan of Vyē, admyrall of Fraunce, and shewe what he dyde, and what he sayd to the kyng of Castyle on the Frēche kynges behalfe.

*Howe sir Johan of Vyē dyd his message to kyng Johan of Castyle fro the Frenche kyng and his counsayle, and what answeere the kyng of Castyle made.*

#### CAP. CLIII.<sup>b</sup>

THE admyrall of Fraūce spedde so in his iourneys that he entred into castyle, and demaunded where to fynde the Kyng. It was shewed hym howe he was at Burgus. He rode thyder, and alyghted at his lodgyng and refreshed hym, and than made hym redy to go to the kynges palays; and he was receyued alter the maner of the countrey right honorably, for the loue and honoure of the Frenche kyng; and he was brought into the kynges chambre, and there the kyng receyued hym ioyfully. Than he delyuered the kyng his letters. The kyng reed them, and called his cōsayle aparte; and when they perceyued by his letters that he had credence, than the admyrall was called forth, and was cōmaunded to declare the entent of his cōmyng: and he, who was redy, sayd in fayre language, Sir kyng, and all ye of his cōsayle: the frenche kyng hath sente me to you, bycause it is come to his knowledge howe ye shall marry your somme to the duke of Lancasters doughter; and, sir, ye knowe well that he is ŷ kyng my maysters aduersary. The kyng and his cōsayle haue great marueyle howe ye may here or entende to any treatie in all the worlde for any maryage without their knowledge; for they saye, and true it is, that maryage of chyl dren can nat be withoute alyuaunce and amyte of peace and loue. Sir, he sendeth you worde by me, that ye be well adynsed what ye haue done or are mynded to do, and ŷ in no wyse it be preiudiciall to the kyng nor to ŷ realme of Fraunce, nor therby to breke the boundes and alyuaunces that hath ben sworne and sealed bytwene kyng Henry your father, ŷ prelates and noble cyties of this your realme, and the noble kyng and realme of Fraunce: regarde well that they in no wise be broken, for if they be, and ones openly knowen, ye ryn in the churches sentence, and to be excommunicate on payne vnpardonable; and also to be in the indygnacion of the kyng and of all the nobles of Fraunce, and besyde that, to haue them your great enemyes. Sir, this is the cōmaundement of the kyng and his counsayle that I haue to shewe to you.

When ŷ kyng of Castyle and parte of his cōsayle, suche as were there, had herde the frēch kynges ambassadour speke so quickly they were abashed, and eche of them loked on other; there was none that gaue any answeere, but satte styll; at the laste a bysshoppe

<sup>a</sup> Gueldres.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CXLIX.



bysshoppe spake, and sayde, Sir Johan, ye are newly come into these partes, and the kyng and all we saye howe ye be right hertely welcome: the kyng hath well herde and vnderstāde what ye haue sayd; ye shall haue shortely an aunswere, within a day or two, suche as -hall cōtente you. That is sufficient, quod sir Johan of Vyē, and so tooke his leaue of the kyng and of his counsaile, and wente to his lodgyng; and it was shewed me howe he taryed there more than seuen dayes, without hauyng of any answer; he sawe nothyng but dysymulacion, wherwith he was sore dyspleased, for all that tyme he coulde nat se the kyng, for he kept hym close in his chambre: and whan syr Johan of Vien sawe that he coulde haue none other exployte in his busynes, he spake on a daye to some of the kynges counsaile, and sayd: Syrs, surely I wyll departe without aunswere. They doutēd leste he wolde do as he sayd; and surely so he had done, and they had nat called hym on a day, and made him his aunswere as they dyd. Than it was sayd to hym howe he might well shewe the frenche kyng, and suche as had sent hym thyder, that they shulde haue the kinge of Castyle nor his counsaile in no maner of suspecte, for they had nat done nor wolde nat do any thyng with the kyng of Englaide that shulde breke or adnychiolate in any maner of wayes the alyaunces that hath been sworne and sealed bytwene Fraunce and Castyle; howebeit, thoughē the kyng of Castyle mary his sonne to the daughter of the duke of Lācastre, therby to make a fynall peace, for the chalenge that the duke maketh to the realme of Castyle by ryght of his wyfe, and generally all the realme counsaileth the kyng thereto; and though he assent and wyll do it, yet the frenche kyng nor his counsaile ought nat to be dyspleased therewith, for alwayes the kyng of Castyle and his men wyll be conioyued and alyed with the french kyng and with the realme of Fraunce. This was the substauce of the aunswere that sir Johan of Vien brought into Fraūce fro the king of Castyle, who proceded forthe with the duke of Lancastre in his maryage, and made an amyable peace togyther, by meanes of messengers that wente bytwene them; for the duke laye in the marchesse of Burdeaulx, and came thyder fro Bayon, and the duches and her daughter, where as they were receyued with great ioye, for they were greatly desyred there, and fro Burdeaux they wente to Lyborne.

Whan trewe and certayne tydynges was come into the erle of Foiz house howe the Kyng of Castyle was agreed with the duke of Lancastre, and shulde mary his sonne with the dukes daughter, and to gyue great landes in Castyle, and greute nombre of floreyns, about a two hundred thousande nobles, wherof the erle had great marueyle. This I knowe well, for I syr Johan Froysart was there the same tyme. Than the erle of Foiz sayd, Ah, this kyng of Castyle is vnhappy, for he hath made peace with a deed man, for I knowe well the duke of Lancastre is in that case, and in suche daunger that he can nat helpe hymselfe; but the kyng of Castyle hath mette with a sage and a valyaunte prince of the duke of Lancastre, for he hath valyauntly borne hymselfe all the warre season.

Nowe lette vs somewhat speke of the army on the see. So it was that aboute the feest of Crystmas, the erle of Arundell, who had ben a longe season on the see, costyngē the fronters of Bretaygne, and of Rochell, Xaynton, and of Normandy, and so passed before Karenten; but afore that they tooke laude at Chirbroke,<sup>a</sup> and wolde haue done there some dedes of armes: and y same season there were souerayne capytayns in the towne and garyson of Karentyne, the lorde of Hambrē and the lorde of Coucy,<sup>b</sup> and with them a great nombre of knyghtes and squyers of Normady. Whan the erle of Arundell knewe howe the towne of Karentyne was so well prouyded and furnysshed with good men of warre, than he passed forthe: for he sawe well in assautyng therof he myght rather

<sup>a</sup> Chierburgh.<sup>b</sup> Torcy.

rather lese than wyn. Than he came to another towne therby, called Toraguy,<sup>a</sup> and assayled it, and toke it perforce, and pylled it, and wanne there great rychesse, and toke with theym many prisoners, and than came before the good towne of Bayeux, and came to the barryers, and there they made a skrymysshe and none assaute. Than the englysshmen passed the watches of saynte Clemente, and dyd great damage in the countrey, for they taryed there a fyftene dayes, and no man encountered them: the marshall of Blanniuille<sup>b</sup> was in Normandy, but he knewe nat of their comyng; if he had, he wolde haue prouyded for the mater. And whan the englysshmen had done their enterprise, and done great damage to the countrey of Normandy, as moche as a hūdrēd thousande frankes came vnto, than they drewe backe, and passed agayne the watches, and returned to Chyrbroke,<sup>c</sup> and dyd put all their conquest in suretye and sauegarde into their shyppes; and whan they had wynde and wether, and their shyppes charged, than they entred and dysancered and toke the see, and returned into Englande, and aryued at Hampton. Thus the army of the erle of Arundell on the see concluded in that season.

*Howe syr Loys of Xancere wente to se the erle of Foize at Ortays: and howe before the duke of Lancastre at Burdeaux there were dedes of armes done bytwene fyue frenchemen and fyue englysshmen; and howe the duches of Lancastre wente with her daughter into Castyle to kynge Johan.*

CAP. CLIIII.<sup>o</sup>

IN this seasō sir Loys of Xancer, marshall of Fraūce, was in Languedoc, in the marches of Tholouse and Carcassone, and he knewe well of the treatye that was made bytwene the duke of Berrey and therle of Foiz, for the maryage of the duke of Bowlognes daughter. whome the duke of Berrey wolde haue, though the damosell were right yonge. Than the marshall had affection to go and se the erle of Foyz, as I was enformed by his men at Ortays, for whan he came thyder he founde me there: he came at the sendyng of the frenche kynge, and I shall shewe you why and wherfore. The frenche kyng was a thā yonge, and had desyre to trauayle, and he had neuer ben as than in Languedoc, whiche is a great countrey, and full of cyties, townes, and casteles, and as than nygh all dystroyed and wasted: for the duke of Berry and his counsaile, who had the gouernaūce of that countrey, had greatly empouerysshed and pylled the countrey, by tayles and great oppressyons, the complayntes wherof came to the kynges eares, by reason that he was newly entred into the domynacion of his realme; and the kyng sayde he wolde go into Languedoc to vysite that countrey, and also to go and se the pope, whome he had neuer sene before: and also in that voyage he sayd he wolde se the erle of Foiz, of whome he had herde so moche honour and larges spokē of. Thus the marshall went forthe on his waye, and departed from the cytie of Tholous, with a fyue hundred horse, and rode so longe y he came to Tarbe in Bygore, and fro thence to Morloys<sup>d</sup> in Bierne: and the erle of Foiz, who was signyfyed of his comyng, was ioyfull, and cōmaunded all his offycers that the towne of Ortays shulde be well aparelled to receyue him, for he sayd the marshals comyng pleased hym ryght well. Lodgynges for his men were made redy, and the erle rode out into the felde to mete with hym, and mo than thre hundred horses, and there receyued hym with good chere: and he was at Ortays a syxe dayes; and the marshall sayd to the erle howe the frenche kyng had  
great

<sup>a</sup> Torigny.

<sup>b</sup> Blainuille.

<sup>c</sup> Cherburgh.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CL.

<sup>e</sup> Orthès.

great affection to se the country of Languedoc and to se hym. Than the erle answered and sayd, Syr, the kynge shall be ryght welcome, and gladd I wolde be to se hym. Yea, but sir, quod the marshall, it is the kynges entencion at his comyng playnely to knowe whether ye wyll holde you frenche or englyssh, for alwayes ye haue dissymuled out the warre, for ye wolde neuer arme you for no desyre. A, sir, quod the erle, I thanke you in that ye haue shewed me so moche; for, syr, though I wolde neuer arme me, nor take no parte, there hath been good cause why: as for the warre bytwene Englande and Fraunce, I haue nothyng to do therwith; I holde my country of Biene of no man, but of god and the sworde: what haue I to do to put myselfe in seruyte or in dyspleasure of one kynge or other? yet I knowe well myne aduersaries of Armyne haue done that in them, to bring me in the indygnacion of bothe parties; for or the prince of Wales wente into Spayne, by the informacyon of the erle of Armyne, the prince wolde haue made me warre; he was so sore moued therto, that he had done so and sir Johan Chandos had nat broken his purpose; but I thanke god, alwayes I haue borne myselfe as mekely and as curteysly as I coulde, and shall do as longe as I lyue; and whan I am deed, let the maters go as they wyll. Thus the erle of Foize and the marshall passed the tyme togyder; and at their departure the erle gaue hym a fayre courser, a fayre mule, and another good horse, all thre togyther rychely sadyllid and apparelled; and he gaue to syr Roberte of Challus and to syr Rycharde Dolphyn to eche of them two hundred frankes, and to fyue other squyers to eche of them fifty frankes. Than the marshall toke leaue to departe to Tholous; and I syr Johan Froysart was there the same tyme, and wolde haue departed fro Ortays with hym, but the Erle of Foize wolde nat suffre me, and sayd I shulde nat as than departe; so it behoued me to byde his pleasure. Sir Loys departed fro Ortays and rode to Tarbe; and the lorde Dolphyn of Bygore conueyed him and sir Peter of Cabestan, one of the erle of Foiz knyghtes.

Aboute the same scason there was at Burdeaux a dede of armes done before the duke of Lancastre, by fyue englysshmen of his owne house, and fyue frenchemenne; some of them were of the marshall of Fraunce house: fyrst, by syr Pecton Dallagine, a gascone englyssh, agaynst sir Mores Mannigunte, frenche: seconde, bytwene sir Aragon Raymon, englyssh, agaynst the bastarde of Chaigny, Frenche: the thyrde, bytwene Loys Malapus, capytayne of Agremortes, frenche, agaynst Jaquemyn Corne de Cerfe, englyssh: fourthe, bytwene Archambalte de Villyers, frenche, and the sonne of the lorde of Chanmonte, gascone englyssh: the fyfte, by Wilyam Foucalt, frenche, agaynst the brother of the lorde of Chaumont, englyssh. And to se these armes accomplyshed, dyers knyghtes and squiers of Biene, of therle of Foiz house, toke their way towarde Burdeaux, and I wente with them in company. Bytwene Ortays and Burdeaux is but xxiiii. myle: there we sawe the sayde armes done before saynte Andrews, in the presence of the duke of Lancastre and the duches, their daughter, and other ladyes, and damosels of the couterie: these knyghtes were nat all armed at ones, but euery man by himselfe with his felowe aparte: their armes were thre courses with a speare, thre strokes with a sworde, thre with an axe, and thre with a dagger, and all a horsebacke; and this they dyd in thre dayes, and none of all tenne hurte; but sir Raymon slewe the bastardes horse, wherwith the duke of Lancastre was sore dyspleasid, and blamed greatly the knyght, bicause he bare his staffe so lowe; and the duke gaue the bastarde one of his horses. Whan this was accomplyshed, euery man departed to their owne houses.

Anone after, the duchesse of Lancastre ordayned to go into Castyle, and to leade with her Katheryne her daughter, who shulde haue in maryage the kynge of Castyls sonne: and the duchesse entente was, fyrste, or she wolde entre into Castyle, to go to Mantuell,

Mantuell,<sup>a</sup> where somtyme was þe batayle bytwene kynge don Peter her father, agaynste kynge Henry of Castyle, and of sir Bertram of Clesquyn;<sup>b</sup> and there she purposed to make iuste enquiry where the kynge her father lay buried, and to dygge vp his bones, and to haue them to the cytie of Ciuill, and there to bury them agayne rychly, as it appertayned to a kynge. In the begynnyng of Marche, whanne the sonne beganne to mount, and the dayes to encrease, than the duches of Lancastre was redy with her doughter, and so departed fro Burdeaux, and went to Bayon, and there the duke of Lancastre toke leaue of her, and he retourned to Burdeaux; and the ladyes rode forthe to Dape,<sup>c</sup> and there she was well receyued, for the cyte of Dape<sup>c</sup> was vnder the obeyssaunce of the kynge of Englande; there she rested two dayes, and than passed through the countrey of Basquence,<sup>d</sup> and passed by the passe of Rouceualx,<sup>e</sup> and entred into Nauerre, and came to Panpilona, and there founde the kyng of Nauer and the quene, who receyued the duchesse honourably. The quene of Nauer was suster to the kynge of Castyle. The duches and her doughter were a monethe passyng through the realme of Nauer, for they taryed with the kynge and with the quene a certayne space, and their costes and charges were borne and payed for. Than they entred into Spaygne; and at the entre of the realme they founde of the kynge of Castyls seruantes redy there to receyue them, acordyng as they were commaunded. And than the yonge prince was called prince of Galyce.

*Howe the duches of Lancastre departed fro the kynge of Castyle, and wente to Mantuell,<sup>a</sup> to brynge her fathers bones to Ciuill: and howe the frenche kynge sent ambassadours to the erle of Foize, to treat for the maryage of the duke of Berrey, his vncl, with the doughter of the erle of Boloyne.*

CAP. CLV.<sup>f</sup>

WHAN all these matters were renewed, and the maryage confyrmed, than the duchesse of Lancastre lefte her doughter with the king, and with her yonge husbunde that shulde mary her, who was of the age of eight yeres: the duches toke leaue of þe kynge to go to Mantuell;<sup>g</sup> the kyng sent with her of the greatest men of the courte to accompany her. Thus she came to Mantuell,<sup>g</sup> and dyd so moche that she knewe the trouthe where her father was buried; than he was dygged vp, and his bones washed and bawmed, and wrapped in leade, and brought to the cytie of Ciuill, and there receyued with processyon without the cytie, and the bones brought into the cathedrall church, and there reuerently and solēply his obsequy was done; and there at was kinge Johan, and his yonge sonne the prince of Galyce, and the most parte of prelates and barons of the realme. After the obsequy doone, euery man retourned to their owne places. The kynge of Castyle wente to the vale of Sory,<sup>h</sup> and his soñe, and his yonge wyfe with hym; and the duchesse of Lancastre to Medena de Campo, a good towne, wherof she was lady, by reason of the confyrmacyon of the peace, and there she lay a season.

Nowe lette vs leaue to speke of them; and of Castyle, tyll another tyme, and let vs speke of the maryage of the duke of Berrey, and also of other insydentes that folowed.

The

<sup>a</sup> Monteil.<sup>b</sup> Du Guesclin.<sup>c</sup> Dax.<sup>d</sup> Basques.<sup>e</sup> Roncevalles.<sup>f</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLI.<sup>g</sup> Val di Soria.

The duke of Berrey, who had maryed the lady Jane of Armynake to his first wyfe, after she was dysseased he hadde great imagynacyon to be maryed agayne, and that he well shewed: for whan he sawe howe he had myssed of the duke of Lancastres daughter, he than set clerkes to write, and sent messangers to therle Gaston of Foiz, who had the kepynge of the erle of Boulonges daughter, more than the space of nyne yeres; and bycause the duke of Berrey coulde nat come to this maryage, but by the daunger of the erle of Foize, for nother for pope, father, mother, nor frende, that the damosell had, the erle wolde do nothyng, without it were his owne pleasure, than the duke of Berrey desyred effectuously the frēch kyng his nephue, and the duke of Burgoyne his brother, to helpe and assyst hym in this maryage.

The frenche kyng laught, and had good sporte at the duke of Berrey his vncle, bycause he was olde, and so hote in loue, and said to him; Fayre vncle, what shall ye do with a yonge mayde, she is nat twelue yere of age, and ye be lx.; by my faythe it is great foly for you to thynke therof: speke for my cosyn Johan your sonne, he is yonge, the mater is more mete for hym than for you. Syr, quod the duke, I haue spoken all redy for my sonne, but the erle of Foize wyll in no wyse agree therto, bycause my sonne is of the blode of them of Armynake, who be at warre togyder, and haue ben longe; if the lady be yonge, I shall spare her a thre or four yere, tyll she be a parfyte woman. Well, fayre vncle, quod the kyng, I feare me she wyll nat spare you so longe: but seyng ye haue so great affection therto, I shall ayde you as moche as I may. It was nat longe after but that the kyng ordeyned the lord de la Ryuer, and syr Bureau, his souerayne chamberlayne, to go in ŷ voyage to the erle of Foiz, and with them the erle of Dassy: and the duke of Burgoyne ordeyned to go thyder on his behalfe the bysshop of Authune, and sir Gylliam of Tremoyle:<sup>a</sup> and the duke of Berrey desyred Johan erle of Sanxer, a sage and a valyaunt knyght, to go with the other: these fyue lordes were apoynted to go to the erle of Foize, and to desyre to haue the yonge lady in maryage for the duke of Berrey: these lordes departed, and apoynted to mete togyder at Auignon, with pope Clement: about Candelmas they departed and toke the waye to Nysmes, and so to Auignon; they passed by Mountepellyer, and rode by small iourneys and great expence, and passed by Besyers, and came to Carcassone, and there they founde sir Loys of Xancere, marshall of Fraunce, who receyued them with good chere: and he shewed theym moche of the erle of Foiz estate, for he had ben there within two monthes before: than they departed fro Carcassone, and wente to Tholous, and there rested, and than sente messangers to the erle of Foiz, to Ortays, in Byerne, and there began to treate for this maryage: but it was farre of, for at the begynnyng the Erle of Foyze was colde, bycause the duke of Lancaster had sente to hym to haue the same lady, for his sonne the lord Henry erle of Derby; by reason of this longe taryenge and delayeng of this treatye, it was said and noysed that the maryage shulde nat be, and all their answers that they had fro the erle of Foize, weekly they sente worde therof to the duke of Berrey, who was at Nonnecte, in Auuergne; and the duke, who had none other desyre but to bringe the mater aboute, wrote oftentymes agayne to them with fresshe messangers, desyryng them nat to cease tyll they had brought the mater to passe: and the erle of Foyze, who was sage and subtyle, sawe well the ardent desyre that the duke of Berrey had, and the hote that he was, the colder was he: and he handeled the matter so wysely, that by the full agrement of all partyes, and yet sore desyred therto, he hadde thyrty thousande frankes for the charges of the ladyes expenses for suche yeres as she had been with hym; if he had more demaūded, more he shulde haue had: but he

VOL. II.

3 I

dyd

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.

dyd it so to haue thanke of the duke of Berrey, and that he shulde perceyue that he had done somewhat for hym.

Whan this mater was concluded, and all partyes agreed, thanne the erle of Foiz sente his cosyn the lady to Morlans, accompanied with fyue hundred speares, of whome were capytayns syr Espaigne du Lyon, syr Raynolde Guyllam, syr Peter Cabestan, sir Adam of Cacasse, sir Manalte of Nonnables,<sup>3</sup> and sir Pier of Kees: and in the feldes the lady was delyuered to the frenche ambassadours on the behalfe of the duke of Berrey: there was syr Loys of Xancere with a fyue hundred speares, and other company, who receyued the lady, and there tooke their leaues and departed: they of Foize retourned, and the frenchemen ledde forthe the lady: the duke of Berrey had sente to her chares and chareottes rychely garnysshed, and horse, hackeneys, and apparell for her body and for her heed, as fresshe and as ryche as though it had been for the frenche quene. Thus they rode forthe, and I sir Johan Froysart, auctor of this boke, rode in their company: for oftentimes whan I wolde haue taken leaue of the erle of Foiz, he wolde saye to me, howe I had no nede to make so great haste, and badde me whan I wolde retourne to go in good company; so I retourned in this sayde company. This yonge duchesse of Berrey, (for so I wyll name her fro henceforthe.) and all her company, rode so longe that they came nere to Auignon; there she rested at a towne called Vile Neufe, without the towne of Auignon, in a house of the popes: and the nexte daye aboute nyne of the clocke, all the cardynals that were there at that tyme mette with her, and so passed the bridge of Rosne in gret estate, the lady rydyng on a whyte pallfrey, whiche the pope had sent her; than she came to the popes palays in Auignon, and there alighted and went to se the pope, who sate in cōsistory in a chayre pontyfically; the pope kyst her mouth bycause of lygnage: than the duchesse and her company wente to dyner with many cardynalles, to the house of the cardynall of Thury, nere to the popes palyce; this was on a wedny-daye, and the nexte daye they all dyned in the same house agayne. I may well saye that the comyng of this lady to Auignon cost the pope the some of tenne thousande frankes. The fridaye she supped in the palays, and tooke her leaue of the pope; and the saturday she departed and rode to dyner to Orange, and there lay all night, for her cosyn germayne was princesse therof: the sonday she departed, and her caryage before, and passed to Valance, and than to Vien, and so to Lyon sur le Rone, and there rested two dayes; than fro thens to Bresle, and so entred into the countie of Forestes, and passed through the country, and so came to la Palesse, in Burbonois, and so to Quissy; than to Hanche, and so to Ryon, in Auvergne, and there rested two dayes or the duke of Berrey came thyder, who came thyder on Whytsoncuyn: and on Whytsonday betymes he maryed the lady. This was a noble weddyng, and a gret feest; there was the erle of Boloyn, the erle of Estampes, and the erle Dolphyn of Auvergne: this feest and iustes endured foure dayes. All this, I sir Johan Froysart, auctor of this boke, sawe with myne eyen, for I was there presente.

‡ Nonailles

*Howe certayne wyse men treated for a peace to endure thre yeres bytwene Fraunce and Englande. and all their alyes, as well on the one parte, as on the other, by lande and by see.*

CAP. CLVI.<sup>a</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe there was a treuse taken bytwene all partyes and garysons, bytwene the Ryuer of Loyr, and the ryner of Dordone, and of Geronde, vnto the feest of saynt Johan Baptyst, couēd as than in the yere of grace a thousande thre hundred fourscore and nyne. This treuse duryng there were some great men and sage on bothe partyes, bothe of Englande and of Fraunce, that busyed themselfe to treatre for a peace to endure thre yeres, both by water and by lande; and the entensyon of them f̄ treated in this mater was to comprise in their treatye for the frenche party, all suche as were besyed with their warre: First, to haue comprysed the realme of Castyle wholly, as well by lande as by water, and in lyke maner the realme of Scotlande; and on the englysshe partye shulde be comprised all their alyes, and the kyng and realme of Portugale, and dyners barones of hygh Gascon. These entreatours had moche payne and traauyle or they came to their ententes, for the scottes wolde in no wyse cōsent; for whanne worde therof came to kyng Roberte of Scotlande fro the frenche kyng, his owne persone wolde lightly haue greed therto, for he desyred no warre: on a daye he called before hym all the barones and prelates of Scotlande, suche as ought to gyue counsaile in that mater, for without their knowlege the kyng wolde do nothing: if he had done, they wolde nat haue kepte it; there openly was redde in all their presence, the letters that the frenche kyng had sente thyder to the kyng, and to the realme of Scotlande: the entente wherof was, that the frenche kyng wolde haue them of Scotlande to be comprised with him, and to agre to a treuse for thre yeres, by lande and by water, bytwene Englande and theym: this tydynges was harde to them, and they sayde: the frenche kyng canne do nothyng but to haue treuce, whan it is tyme to make warre; we haue in this yere ouercome the englysshmen, and the season is ryght good, and lykely that we shall ouercome them agayn the seconde tyme; yea, and the thyrd also. There was great debatyng of the matter bytwene them, but in no wyse they wolde consente therto; fynally they acorded to sende a bysshoppe, and thre knyghtes, into Fraunce, to the kyng and to his counsaile, to the entent to breke the treaties, and to shewe the good wyll of the scottes that they had to the warre. The bysshoppe of saynt Andrews, and syr Archambalte Duglas, syr Willyam Lynsey, and syr Johan saynt Clere, these departed as soone as they myght, and toke the see and arryued at Sluse, and than rode to Parys: and before the kyng and his counsaile they shewed their letters of credence, sente in the name of all the barones and prelates of the realme of Scotlade: they were well herde, and the frenchemen perceyued well the great affection that they hadde to procede, and to contynewe the warre agaynste Englande; howbeit, the treatye was so farre past and promysed that it coulde nat be reuoked agayne: than the scottes were swetely answered, howe there was no remedy but that they muste nedes procede to the peace. Thus the frenchemen tooke a treuse, by meanes of suche as treated for the mater; there were dyuers metynges bytwene the partyes at Balingham,<sup>b</sup> bytwene Boloyne, and Calays: so often they mette and debated the maters that a treuce was taken, gyuen, and acorded, bytwene Englande and Fraunce, (for suche as were treaters

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLII.

<sup>b</sup> La Linghen.—*D. Sauvage.* Leulinghem.—*Johnes.*

of the mater, were prelates, gret lordes, and wyse menne, of bothe realmes.) and all their adherentes and alyes, by see and by lande, to endure fermely without dissymulacyon of any shadowe of male engyn, the space of thre yeres. The entreatours of the frenche partye were at Boloyn, as the bysshoppe of Bayeux, the erle Valery of saynt Pole, sir Willyam of Melun, sir Nycholas Bracque, and sir Johan le Mercier : and at Calays, for the Englysshe parte, was the bysshop of Durham, sir Willyam Montague erle of Salisbury, sir Wyllyam Beauchampe capitayne of Calais, Johan Lanon, and Nycholas of Gaberthe, and Richarde Roell clerke, doctor in lawe ; these mette together in the myddes of the waye bytwene Calays and Boloyn, at a place called Balyngham.<sup>3</sup>

In this tyme great brute was in Fraunce, and in other places, of a great feest and iustes that the yonge kyng Charles wolde make at Parys, at the fyrst entryng of Isabell ȝ frēche quene: agaynst whiche feest knyghtes, squyers, ladyes, and damoselles, apperelled them to be at that tryumpe. Of the whiche feest I shall speke more hereafter, and of the charter of the peace that was engrosed and sealed bytwene the parties.

Ye shall knowe that whan I sir Johan Froyssarte, authour of this hystorie, was departed fro Ortays fro the erle of Foiz, as ye haue herde here before, and wente in cōpany with the loide de la Ryuer, and the lorde Guyllyam of Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> who brought the yonge duchesse of Berrey, daughter to the erle of Boulonge, to ȝ duke of Berrey, who wedded her in the towne of Ryon, in Auuergne, as it is conteyned here before in this hystorie, for at all these maters I was present, wherefore I maye well speke therof: and whan I came to Berrey I foude there the gentyll lorde of Coucy, a good lorde of myne, who had newly maryed a yonge lady, daughter to the duke of Lorayne: whiche lorde made me good chere, and demaunded of me newes of the cōuntry of Foiz, and Biern, and of pope Clement, beyng at Auygnon, and of the maryage bytwene Berrey and Boulonge, and of another great frende of myne, and good lorde and mayster, therle Berault dolphyn of Auuergne: and to all his demaūdes I answered all that I knewe, so that he was content. Than he desyred me to go with hym into Cambresys, to a castell that the kyng had gynen hym, called Creuecure, a two leages fro Cūbrey, and nyne leages fro Valensenes. And so I rode in his cōpany. And as we rode by the way he shewed me howe the bysshoppe of Bayeux, and the erle of saynt Pole, and other were at Boloyn, sent thyder by the fiēche kyng, to cōclude the truce: and howe that for kyng Richarde, kyng of Englāde, there were at Calys, the bysshop of Durham, and therle of Salisbury, w̄ other, and howe they had been there the space more thanne a moneth, abydyng for the ambassadours of Scotlande, who were as than newly come thyder; he sayde howe his cosyn the erle of saynt Pole had writen to hym therof, and howe the frenche kyng had sente to the kyng of Scottes, and to his counsaile, that he shulde agree to the truce: for the englysshemen wolde consente to no peace, without the scottes were comprised in the same. Thus we rode tyll we came to Creuecure, and there I was with hym thre dayes. Thā I toke leaue of hym and went to Valencennes, and there I taryed fyftene dayes. Than I wente into Holande to se a gentyll lorde and good mayster of myne, the erle of Bloyes, and founde hym at Estōchoucke;<sup>c</sup> he made me good chere, and demaunded of me some tidynges, and I shewed him such as I knewe: I taryed with hym a moneth there and at Gede.<sup>d</sup> Than I retourned into Fraunce to knowe the trouthe of the cōclusion that was taken bytwene Englande and Fraunce, at Balyngham.<sup>a</sup> Also I purposed to be at the feest that shulde be at Parys at the entre of the Frenche quene, to knowe the trouthe of all these maters; I retourned throughe

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.<sup>c</sup> Schoenhoven.<sup>d</sup> Gouda.



through Brabaunt, and so came to Parys, eyght dayes before the feest began. Than I fell in company with the lordes of Fraunce and of Scotlande, suche as had ben at the makynge of the truce bytwene Englade and Fraunce; and I fell in acqueyntaunce with sir Guillyam of Melyn,<sup>a</sup> who shewed me all the hole mater, and howe the Erle of saynt Pole was passed into Englande to se kynge Rycharde, and to confyrme the truce that was graunted for thre yeres, and that he shulde retourne agayne to be at the said gret feest. Than I demaunded of the said sir Guillyam what lordes of Scotlande had been at the sayd treatie? I demaunded it, bycause in my youthe I had ben in Scotlande, and serched all the realme to the wyld scottes;<sup>b</sup> and while I was there I taried a space in the court of kyng Dauyd of Scotlande, and there I had acqueyntaunce of the most parte of the lordes and knyghtes of Scotfide; therfore I demaunded who had been there: and this sir Melyn answered me and saide, howe there had ben the bysshop of Bredon,<sup>c</sup> and sir James and sir Danyd Lyn-ay, and sir Water of saynt Clere. I bare his sayeng awaye and dyde putte in wrytyng all that I hadde sene and herde, and shall shewe the trouthe what I sawe and knewe of this feest, and of the fyrst entryng of quene Isabell into Parys.

*Of the ordynaunce of the entre of quene Isabell into the towne of Parys.*

C A P. CLVII.<sup>d</sup>

THE sonday the twēte daye of June, in the yere of oure lorde god a thousande three hundred fourescore and nyne, there was people in Paris and without, suche nombre, that it was marueyle to beholde; and the same sondaye in the mornynge there was assēble made in the churche of saynte Denyce, of noble ladyes of Fraunce, suche as shulde accompany the quene, and of suche lordes as shulde assyst the quenes lytters and other ladyes: and there was of the burgesses of Parys twelue hundred an horsebacke, raynged in the felde on bothe sydes of the way, apparelled in gownes of one sute of clothe of Baudkyn, grene and crymosyn. And the olde quene Jane and her daughter, duchesse of Orlyance, entred fyrste into Parys one houre before noone, in a lytter coered, well accompanied with lordes, and passed through the hyghe strete of saynte Denyce, and so rode to the palays, and there taryed for the kynge; that day these two ladyes went no further. Than the frenche quene and the other ladyes set forwarde, as the duchesse of Berrey, the duchesse of Burgoyne, the duchesse of Thourayn, the duchesse of Bare, the countesse of Neuers, the lady of Coucy, and other ladyes and damoselles, all in good ordre; all their lytters were apparelled as richly as myght be, but the duchesse of Thourayne had no lytter: she rode alone vpon a fayre palfrey richly apparelled, and she rode on the one syde by the quenes lytter, and it was assysted with the duke of Thourayne, and the duke of Burbone, at the fore heed on bothe sydes; and in the myddes, on bothe sydes the lytter, were the duke of Berrey and the duke of Burgoyne: and at the fete was the lorde Peter of Nauer, and therle of Ostrevaunt; the quenes lytter was richly apparelled and discouert. Than nexte folowed, on a ryche apparelled Palfrey, the duchesse of Berrey, and she was assisted with the erle de la Marche, and with the erle of Neuers, and she rydinge a softe pace bytwene them bothe. Than she folowed the lytter all discouered and open of the duchesse of Burgoyne, and Margarete of Heynalte her daughter, cōtēsse of Neuers; that lytter was assysted with the lorde Henry of Bare, and

<sup>a</sup> Melun.

<sup>b</sup> The Highlands.

<sup>c</sup> Aberdeen.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought

to be numbered CLIII.

and the yonge erle of Namure, called sir Guylliam. And than ȝ lady of Orlyauce on a pallrey richely apparelled; and the lorde James of Burbone, and the lorde Philippe Dartoys assisted the lady of Orlyauce. Than another lytter with the duchesse of Bare, and the daughter of the lorde of Coucy. Of other ladyes and damoselles that came after in chariottes and palltrayes, and knyghtes that folowed, there was no mēcion made. And as for sergeauntes and offycers of armes had busynesse ynonghe to do to make way, and to breke the preace. There was suche people in the stretes, that it semed that all the worlde had ben there.

At the fyrst gate of saynt Denice entryng into Parys, there was a Heuyn made full of sterres, and within it yonge chyldeyn apparelled lyke angelles swetely syngyng: and amonge them an ymage of our lady holdyng in figure a lytell chyld playng by hymselfe with a lytell myll made of a great nutte; this Heuyn was hyghe and richely apparelled with the armes of Fraunce, with a baner of the soune, shynyng of golde castyng his rayes: this was deuysed by the kyng for the feest of the iustes. The quene and the other ladyes as they passed vnder in at ȝ gate they had great pleasure to beholde it, and so had all other that passed by. Than, whan the Quene and the ladyes were paste by, than they came a softe pace before the fōutayne in a strette of saynt Denice, whiche condyte was couered ouer with a clothe of lync asure, paynted full of Flour de lyses of golde: and the pyllers were sette full of the armes of dyuers noble lordes of Fraunce; and out of this fōutayn there issued in great stremes Pūent and clare;<sup>a</sup> and about this fōutayne there were yonge maydens richely apparelled with ryche chapelettes on their heedes, syngyng melodiously; great pleasure it was to here them; and they helde in their handes Cuppes and goblettes of golde, offryng and gyueng to drinke all suche as passed by: and the quene rested there and regarded them, and had great pleasure of that deuysed, and so dyde all other ladyes and damoselles that sawe it.

Than after vnder the mynster of the Trinite, in the strette there was a stage, and ther-vpon a castell, and alonge on the stage there was ordeyned the Passe<sup>b</sup> of kyng Salhadyn, and all their dedes in personages; the Christenmen on the one parte, and the Sarazins on the other parte; and there was in personages all the lordes of name, that of olde tyme hadde ben armed, and had done any feates of armes at ȝ Passe<sup>b</sup> of Salhadyne, and were armed with suche armure as they than vsed: and thanne a lytell aboute them there was in personages the Frenche kyng, and the twelue peeres of Fraunce, armed with the blason of their armes. And whan the Frenche quenes lytter was come before this stage she rested there a season; thanne the personages on the stage of kyng Rycharde departed fro his company,<sup>c</sup> and wente to the Frenche kyng, and demaunded lycence to go and assayle the Sarazins; and ȝ kyng gaue hym leaue: than kyng Rycharde retourned to his twelue<sup>d</sup> companions: thanne they all sette them in order, and incontynent wente and assayled the kyng Salhadyne and the Sarazins; there in sporte there semed a great bataile, and it endured a good space: this pagiaunt was well regarded. Thanne the quene passed forthe and came to ȝ secūde gate of saynt Denyce: and there was a castell ordayned as was at the fyrste gate, and a heuyn clouded, and full of sterres richely deuysed, and therein the figure of God sytyng in maiestie, the father, the sonne, and the holy goost: and within the Heuyn chyldeyn in figure of angelles swetely syngyng, whiche pagiaunt was greatly prayed. And as the quenes lytter passed vnder the gate of Paradise, there were two angelles came out and came downe holdyng in their handes a ryche crowne of golde, garnysshed with precious stones, and they sette fayre and easely the crowne on ȝ quenes heed, syngyng right swetely this verse: Dame,  
as

<sup>a</sup> Pūent and Claire.  
companions on the stage," &c.

<sup>b</sup> Or *battle*.

<sup>c</sup> "Than King Richard departed from his  
<sup>d</sup> This word is an interpolation.

as ye be enclosed bytwene the Floure de lyces, so ye be quene of the realme of Fraunce: and so drewe agayne into paradyse.<sup>a</sup> Than they passed forth and came before the chapell of saynt James, and there was a scaffolde richely deuysed on the right hande as the quene rode, couered ouer with ryche arras, and drawn aboute with curteyns, in maner of a chambre: and within there were mē playeng vpon orgās ryght swetely; and all the strete of saynt Denyce was couered ouer with clothes of sylke and chamlet, suche plentie, as though suche clothes shulde cost nothyng. And I sir Johan Froissart, authour of this hystorie, was present and sawe all this, and had great marueyle where suche nombre of clothes of sylke were gotten; there was as great plentie as though they had ben ī Alysandre or Damas;<sup>b</sup> and all the houses on bothe sides of the great strete of saynt Denyce vnto the bridge of Parys, were hanged with clothes of Arras of dyuers histories, the whiche was pleasure to beholde. Thus they passed forthe a soft pace, and so came to the gate of the chatelet of Parys, and there the quene rested to see the other goodly deuyses that were there ordayned.

At the gate of the chatelet of Parys there was a castell made of woode and tymbre, as strōgly made as it shuld haue endured xl. yeres, the whiche castell was embatylled; and at every lope there was a man of armes armed at all peces; and in ſ̄ same castell there was a bedde made, richely enconrtreyned and apparelled, as it had been to haue stande in the kynges chambre, and this bedde was called ſ̄ bedde of Justyce: and in this bedde there lay by figure, saynt Anne; in this castell there was a playne, for the castell cōteyned a gret space, and this playne was full of trees, and full of hares, cones, and byrdes, that flewe in and out: for when they were abrode, they flewe thider agayne for feare of ſ̄ people: and out of these trees there issued a whyte Harte, and wente to the bedde of Justyce; and out of the other parte of the wode there issued out a Lyon and an Egle properlye, and fresshly approached the Harte, and the bedde of Justyce; than came there out of the trees a xii. yonge maydens richely apparelled, with chapelettes of golde on their heedes, holdynge naked swordes in their hādes: and they wente bytwene the Harte, the Lyon, and the Egle, and there they shewed them-elle redy to defende the Harte and the bedde of Justyce. This deuysed ſ̄ quene and all other had great pleasure to regarde. Than they passed forth and came to the bridge of Parys, whiche was couered and richely besene; the couerynge of grene and crimosyn full of sterres, and the stretes hanged to our ladyes church. And by that tyme that the quene and the ladyes were paste the bridge, and approached to the church of oure Lady it was late: for all the waye as they wente, they rode but a solte pace: and on the Quene and the ladies entred in: the church of our Lady, they fōude by they waye other playes and pastymes greatly to their pleasure.

Amonge all other there was a mayster came out of Geane;<sup>c</sup> he had tied a corde on the hyghest house on the bridge of saynt Myghell ouer all ſ̄ houses, and the other ende was tyed on the hyghest towre in our ladyes church; and as ſ̄ quene passed by, and was in the great strete called our ladyes strete, bycause it was late, this sayde mayster with two brinnynge candelles in his handes, issued out of a lytell stage that he had made on the hyght of our ladyes towre, and synngng he went vpon the corde all alonge the great strete, so that all that sawe hym hadde marueyle howe it myght be; and he bare stylle  
in

<sup>†</sup> These last words, erroneously translated, form part of the verses, which in the original are:—

“ Dame enclose entre fleurs de Lys,  
Reine êtes vous de Parys,  
De France, et de tout le País.  
Nous en r'allons en Paradis.”

<sup>b</sup> Damascus.

<sup>c</sup> Geneva.

in his hādes ŷ two brinninge cādelles, so that it myght well be sene ouer all Parys, and two myle without Parys; he was suche a tomler that his lyghtnesse was greatlye prayed. And before the churche of our lady the bysshoppe of Parys was reuested with the armes of our lorde Jesu Christ, with all the colledge, and great nōbre of other of the clergy; there the Quene alyghted out of her lytter, and was takenne downe by the four dukes, that is to saye, the duke of Berrey, the duke of Burgoyne, ŷ duke of Thourayne, and the duke of Burbone; and all other ladies in lykewise taken downe by theym that were their assysters, bothe out of their lytters, and fro their horses, and in good order; so they entred into the churche, the bysshoppe and the clergy before thē syngyng in ŷ honour of god and of our blessed lady: the quene was ledde and assysted and brought vp to the hyghe auter, and there she kneled downe and sayde her prayers suche as pleased her, and offred to the tresorie of our lady four clothes of clothe of golde, and the goodly crowne that the angelles dyde set on her heed: and than incontinent sir Johñ de la Ryner, and sir Johan le Mercyer, deluyered the bysshoppe of Parys a more rycher crowne, and the bysshoppe and the four dukes dyde sette it on the quenes heed: thañe they retourned agayne through the churche, and the quene and the ladies sette agayne in their lytters, as they were before: there were mo than fyue hūdred torches brinningg, for it was late. Thus they were brought to the palays of Parys, where the kyng, the olde quene, and the duchesse of Orlyauce her daughter were; there the quene and the ladies lyghted fro their lytters, and eche of theym brought into seuerall chambres: and the lordes went to their lodgynges after the daunsyng was pāste.

The nexte daye Monday, the kyng made them all a dyner at his palis; and at the houre of the high masse the quene was ledde with the foresayd foure dukes into the holy chapell, and there in the masse season the quene was sacred and anoynted as a Quene ought to be, and the archebysshoppe of Roane<sup>a</sup> dyde the obseruauce, who was called sir Wyllyam of Vyar. After the masse songe solempnely, the kyng and the quene retourned into their chābres, and all other ladies, suche as had chambres in the palays. Than anone after, the kyng and the quene retourned into the halle, and all other ladies: the great table of Marble that alwayes standeth styll in the halle, was made lengar with a great plaunche borde of Oke, of foure inches thycke, whiche borde was richely couered; and aboue the great table agaynste one of the Pyllers was the Kynges dressyng borde, standyng full of vessell of golde and syluer, whiche was greatlye coueted of many that sawe it; before the table alonge discendyng downe, there were barryers made of wode with thre alyes, and there were sergeautes and vsshers a great nombre kepyng the entrees, to the entente that none shulde entre but suche as were seruytours of ŷ table, for ŷ hall was so full of people that a man coulde nat tourne hym but w<sup>th</sup> moche payne; mynstrelles a great nombre plesauntly played, every man after his facultie. Than the kyng and the prelates, and the quene and the ladies, wasshed and sate downe at the tables: at the kynges table sate downe as chiefe the bysshoppe of Noyon, than the bysshoppe of Langers, than the kyng, and by the kyng the archebysshoppe of Rohan;<sup>b</sup> the kyng sate in a surcote of scarlette furred with armys, and a ryche crowne of golde on his heed; than the quene, and by her the kyng of Armyne;<sup>c</sup> than the duches of Berry, than the duches of Burgoyne, and ŷ duches of Thourayne: than the lady of Neuers, and the good damosell of Bare: than the lady of Concy, and Mary of Harecourt, no othere sate nat at the high table, sauynge beneth all sate the lady of Sully, wyfe to sir Guye of Tremoyle;<sup>d</sup> and at two other tables alonge downe the hall sate mo than fyue hūdred ladies and damosels. The prease was so great that it was great payne to serue thē with their messes, whiche were

great

<sup>a</sup> Rouen.<sup>b</sup> Armenia.<sup>c</sup> Tremouille.

great and notable. I haue nat to do to make great processe therof: I shall sōwhat speke of the pastymes ŷ were made bitwene the messes, the whiche had been great pleasure for the kyng to haue sene if he had taryed out the hole dyner.

Firste, in the myddes of the palays there was a castell made of tymbre, xl. fote longe, and twentie fote brode, with foure towres, in euery quarter one, and one in the myddes hygher than the other: this Castell was figured for the cytie of Troye, and the towre in the myddes for the palays of yliou: and there were penos with the armes of the Troyans, as of kyng Priamus, Hector his sonne, and his other chyl dren, and also the armes of suche other kynges and princes as were enclosed in Troye with kyng Priam: this castell went vpon wheles, the whiche myght be tourned euery waye properly: this castell came to assayle another sorte that was therby in a paulyon, whiche also wente vpon wheles, so soltely and couertly that the mouyng therof coude nat be parceyued, and there was ŷ armes of the kynges of Grece, and of other suche as were at the siege: also there was a shyppe properlye deuysed, wherin myght well be a hūdred men of armes, and all moued by the crafte of wheles, bothe the Castell, Paulyon, and Ship: they of the Paulyon, and of the Shyppe, assayled euer the castell, and they within the Castell made great defence: but this sporte endured nat longe, for the preace of the people was so sore about them that no man coulde styre. The people were sore chafed with the heate, and putte to moche payne. And there was a table by the parlyament chambre dore, wher at satte many ladyes and damoselles: it was by reason of the preace ouerthrowen to the erthe, and the ladyes caused sodainly to ryse without order, and sore chafed with the preace and heate that was in the palays; the quene herselfe was at the poynt to haue been sore displeased: perforce a backe doore was broken vp to gette fresshe ayre. The ladye of Coucy was sore diseased. Whañe the kyng sawe this mater he commaunded to cease, and the tables in great hast to be taken vp to let the ladyes and damoselles at large; they lefte takyng of wyne and spyces and wente to their chambres. Than some of the ladyes taryed styll in the Palays, and some wente into the towne to their lodgynges to be the more at their ease, for with preace and with heate they had been sore greued. The lady Coucy wente to her lodgyng, and helde her there tyll it was late.

Than about fyue of the clocke the Frenche Quene, accompanied with the foresayd duchesses, departed from the Palays of Parys, and toke their lytters all open, and so wente throughe the stretes to the kynges lodgyng, called saynt Polle, on the ryuer of Sayne; with the quene there were mo than a thousande horses: and the kyng went from the palays to the ryuer of Sayne, and toke there a barge, and wente by water to his house of saynt Polle; and for all that ŷ house was great and large and well amended, yet ŷ kyng had caused in the great court nere to the gate fro the ryuer, to be made a great halle, whiche was couered ouer with clothes of the armes of Normandy, and the walles were hāged with clothes of arras of sondrie hystories; in this hall the kyng gaue the ladyes a supper, but the quene kepte her chābre, she was no more sene ŷ nyght: the other ladies, and the kyng, and the lordes, daunsed and reuelled all that nyght, nerehande tyll it was daye in the mornyng; than euery person departed and went to their lodgynges to slepe, for it was good tyme. Nowe I shall shewe you what gyftes and presētes they of Parys gaue on the Tuesday before noon to ŷ quene and to the duchesse of Thourayne, who was bnt newly come into Fraunce oute of Lombardy, for she was daughter to the duke of Myllayne, and she had the same yere wedded Loyes duke of Thourayne: she was named Valentyne; she had neuer before ben at Parys, thifore the burgesses of Parys gaue her her welcome.

On this Tuesday aboute xii. of the clocke, about a xl. burgesses of Parys of the most  
VOL. II. 3 K notablest

notablest persons of the cytie, all in one sute of clothynge, came to the kynges house of saynt Polle, and brought a present for the quene through the stretes of Parys : the present was in a lytter richely wrought, and borne bytwene two strong mē properly apperelled lyke two auncient sage persones ; the lytter had a celler of a thynne fyne clothe of sylke, so that the iewelles that were in the litter might well be sene through : whan they came to saint Polle, first they cāe into the kynges chambre, whiche was redy apperelled to receyue them, for alwayes suche as bringeth any thyng are welcome : thā these burgesses sette downe the lytter on two trestels in the myddes of the chambre ; than they kneled downe before the kyng and said : Right dere lorde and noble kyng, your burgesses of Parys presenteth your grace these iewelles here in this lytter, in the welcomyng of your grace into the gouernaūce of your realme of Fraunce. Than the kyng sayd, good men, I thāke you, they are right goodly and riche. Than the burgesses rose and drewe backe, and therwith toke their leaue. Whan they were gone, the kyng sayd to sir Wylliam of Lordes, and to Montague, who were by hym : Sirs, let vs go nere to this lytter, and se these presentes more nerer. Than the kyng well regarded them : Fyrst, there were foure pottes of golde, sixe lauers of golde, and sixe plattes of golde, all this vessell wayed a hūdred and fyftie marke of golde. In lyke maner another sorte of burgesses richely apperelled all in one lyuerey, came to the quene and presented her another lytter, whiche was borne into her chambre, shewyng howe the good men of Parys dyde recōmende them to her grace and sent her that present : whiche present was a shippe of golde, two great flagōs of golde, two dredge boxes of golde, two saltes of golde, sixe pottes golde, sixe lauers of golde : xii. Lampes of syluer, two basons of syluer : the sōme was thre hundred marke, what golde what syluer : this present was brought in a lytter bytwene two men, one in semblaunce of a Beare, and the other in semblaunce of a Vnycorne. The thirde present in lykewise was brought into the duches of Thourayns chambre by two men, fygured in the fourme of two blacke Moores richely apperelled, with white towelles about their heedes lyke sarazins ; the lytter was fayre and riche, couered with a fyne clothe of sylke, and brought by xii. burgesses all in one apparell, who gaue this present to the sayd duchesse : in the whiche presente there was a shippe of golde, a great potte of golde, two ewers golde, two great plattes golde, two saltes golde : sixe pottes syluer, two dosyn saucers syluer, two dosyn boules syluer : sōme golde and syluer two hūdred markes : this present greatly reioysed the duches of Thourayne, as it was reason, for it was goodly and riche, and curtesly she thanked them of their gyfte. Thus this Tuesdaye these presentes were gyuen to the kyng, ŷ quene, and to the duchesse of Thourayne. It was greatly to be consydred the valeur of these presentes, and also the puyssaunce of the parisyens : for it was shewed me by one who sawe all these presentes, that they cost the parisiens more than threscore thousande crownes of golde. After these presentes thus delyuered, it was tyme to go to dyner ; but that daye the kyng, and the quene, and other ladyes, dynd in their chambres, ŷ soner to haue done ; for at thre of the clocke at after dyner they shulde drawe into the felde of saynt Katheryne, where as there was ordayned stages and scaffoldes a great nombre, for the kyng, and the quene, and other, to beholde the iustes.

Nowe shall I name by order the knyghtes that were called the kynges knyghtes, of the sonne of golde ; there were thyrtye of thē.

Firste the duke of Berrey, the duke of Burgoyne, the duke of Burbone, the erle de la Marche, sir Jaquemarte of Burbone his brother, the lorde Guillyam of Namure, sir Olyuer of Clysson, constable of Fraūce, syr Johan of Vien, sir James of Vien, lorde of Espaigny, syr Guy of Tremoyle,\* sir Gillyam his brother, sir Phylp of Bare, the lorde

of

\* Tremouille.

of Rocheforde, bretone, the lorde of Raies, the lorde Beamond, syr Johan of Barbencon, the hazle of Fraūce,<sup>a</sup> the lorde of Tourcy, norman, syr Johan of Barres, the lorde of Nantoyllet, the lorde of Rochfoucault, the lorde of Garanciers, sir Johan of Harpedante, the barone Dinury,<sup>b</sup> syr Willyam Marcyell, syr Raynolde of Roye, syr Geffrey of Caryn, syr Charles of Changeet, and sir Gylliam of Lignac: all these knyghtes were armed, and sheldes lyke, therein the sonne raye; and aboute thre of the clokke they were in the place of saint Kateryne, and thyder was come ladyes and damosels; and firste the queene came thyder in a chare rychely aparelled, and all other ladyes in good ordre, and entred into the scaffoldes that were ordeyned for them; than came the frenche kyng redy apparelled to iuste, whiche pastyme he loued ryght well; he was well accompanied. Than the iustes beganne; there were many lordes of dyuers countreys: syr Gylliam of Heynalt, erle of Ostreuant, iusted ryght goodly, and so dyd suche knyghtes as came with hym, as the lorde of Commines, sir Johan of Andregenes, the lorde of Cantan, syr Ansell of Transegynes, and sir Clinquart of Herinno; all dyde well their deuoyre to the prays of the ladyes: also there iusted well the duke of Irelande, who was all that seasoone with the frenche kyng: also there iusted well a knyght of Almayne<sup>c</sup> besyde the Ryne, called sir Seruays of Mirando. These iustes were well contynued, but there were so many knyghtes that one coulde nat rynne for another, and the duste with rynnynge of their horses was so great, that it troubled them sore: the lorde of Concy dyd maruelously well. These iustes contynued tyll it was nyght: than they departed, and the ladyes brought to their lodgynges: the kyng with his company was brought to his lodgyng of saynt Pole, and there was a supper for the ladyes, with suche haboundaūce that it were harde to recorde it, and the feest and reuell with syngynge and daunsyng tyll the next mornynge the sonne rysinge: and the prise of the iustes of the answerers that had best done and lengest contynued, was gyuen to the frenche kyng, by consente of all the ladyes, and iudgement of the harauldes; and of the chalengers, the Halze of Flaunders, bastarde brother to the duchesse of Burgoyne. The knyghtes complayned of the dust, so that some said they loste their dedes by reason therof. The kyng made prouysion for it; he ordeyned mo than two hundred barrelles of water that watred the place, wherby the groude was well amended, and yet the nexte day they hadde duste ynough and to moche. Than the wednysdaye came to Parys the erle of saynte Pole frome oute of Englande; he had made great haste to come to these iustes and feest, and he had lefte behynde him in Englande sir Johan of Chatell Morant, to bringe the charter of the treuce with hym. The erle of saynte Pole was well welcomed of the kyng and of all other lordes, and the Queene and all other were glad of his comynge.

On the wednysdaye after dyner euery man drew to the felde, and the ladyes came thyder in goodly aray, as they had done the daye before, and mounted vpon their stages: than the iustes began fyersly, and was well contynued tyll it was nyght; than euery person retourned, and the ladyes had a great supper at saynte Polle: than the pryses were gyuen by consente of the ladyes and iudgement of the harauldes; of the answerers the prise was gyuen to a squyer of Haynalte, called Johan de Flaron, who was come thyder in the company of therle of Ostreuant; and of the chalengers, the prise was gyuen to a squyer of the duke of Burgoyns, called Johan de Pokerers:<sup>d</sup> and agayne the thursdaye iusted knyghtes and squyers all togyther; euery man payned hymselfe to do well, and it endured tyll nyght; and the ladyes supped agayne at saynt Polle, and there the prise was gyuen of the vtter partie to sir Charles of Armoyes, and of them withyn to a squyer of the queenes, called Lons. The frydaye the kyng made a dyner to all the ladyes and damoselles, and aboute the ende of the dyner there entred into the

<sup>a</sup> Flanders.<sup>b</sup> D'Ury.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Poulceres.

hall (the kyng sytting at the table) the duchesse of Berrey, the duchesse of Burgoyne, the duches of Thourayne, the coūtes of saynt Polle, the lady of Coucy, and a great meny of other ladyes and damosels: they brought in two knyghtes on horsebacke, armed at all peces for the iustes, with their speares on their thyes; the one was sir Raynolde of Roy, and the other sir Bouciquaut y<sup>e</sup> younger, and there they two iusted goodly togyther. Than came thyder other knyghtes, sir Raynold of Troyes, syr Gylliam of Namure, syr Charles of Armoyes, and the lorde of Garancyers, the lorde of Nantoyllet, Lardenoyes of Ostende, and dyuers other; all these iusted there the space of two houres before the kyng and the ladyes: than they returned to their lodgynges. That fryday suche ladyes and damosels as wolde retourne to their owne houses toke their leaues of the kyng and of the quene, and also suche lordes as wolde departe: the kyng and the quene thanked them of the payne they had taken comynge to his feest.

*Howe the lorde of the Chateau Morante, whom the erle of saynte Polle had lefte behynde hym in Englande, returned into Fraūce with the charter of the treuce, sealed by kyng Rycharde and his vnclis, to endure thre yere by see and by lande.*

#### CAP. CLVIII.<sup>a</sup>

AFTER that all these lordes and ladyes were returned from this greate feest to their owne houses, than the lorde of Chastell Morant, whome the lorde of saynte Polle had left in Englande, returned into Fraunce to the kyng and to his counsaile, and shewed forth the charter of the treuce, sealed by kyng Rycharde of Englande, and by his vnclis and other, to endure thre yere, as well by see as by lande; and the wordes in the charter sayd, That whosoer breketh by any maner of cōdicion any poynte or artycle conteyned in that treatie, shulde be taken and reputed as traytours, and to ryne in a mortall punysyon: and because that the lorde of Coucy was souerayne capytayne chosen by the kyng and his counsaile to defende and kepe the outwarde marches bytwene the ryuer of Durdone and the see, and all the countrye of Auergne and Lymosyn, the copy of this treatye was deluyered to hym: to the entente that he shuld publysshe and shewe it to all them that wolde do any thyng to the contrary; and also to the entent that they of Vandachor,<sup>b</sup> of Chalusset, of Dorbesidousac,<sup>c</sup> and of the garysons y<sup>e</sup> made warre for the englysshe tytle, shulde haue knowledge of that treuce, that they shulde make none excuse if they fell in the payne: in lykewyse the marshall of Fraūce, the lorde Loys of Xancer, had also the copy therof, whiche was ryght nedefull, for he was gouernour of the outwarde marches of Languedoc, fro the ryuer of Ronne and the bridge of Amyngnon, and aboute the countreys and signories apendaūt to the ryuer of Dordone, as the coūtreys of Beaucaire, of Carcassone, of Tholous, of rouergue, of Dagen, of Quercy, of Bygore, of Pyergourte,<sup>d</sup> and of Lymogines;<sup>e</sup> and in these countreys were dyuers garysons, that smally regarded or obeyed any peace or truce, but always entended to make warre, as the castell of Cullyer, and the stronge castell of Londre<sup>f</sup> in Bygore, on the fronters of Byerne: they were greatly feared of their neyghbours.

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLIV.

<sup>d</sup> Perigord.

<sup>b</sup> Ventadour.

<sup>e</sup> Lymoges.

<sup>c</sup> Orbessan and Donzac.

<sup>f</sup> Lourdes.



*The maryage of king Loys, sonne to the duke of Aniou, to the daughter of kynge Peter of Aragon; and how he went with the queene of Napoles his mother to Auignon, to se pope Clemente.*

## CAP. CLIX.†

IN this tyme there was a treatye made of a maryage bytwene Loys of Aniove, sonne to the duke of Aniou, who wrote himself kynge of Napoles, of Cicyll, and Jherusalem, and erle of Prouynce, and the daughter of kyng Peter of Arragon. The queene of Napoles went to Auynnone to se pope Clement, and there she founde the lorde of Coucy, and had in her company her yonge sonne Loys. The lorde of Coucy was ryght ioyous of her cōmyng. The queene was receyued ryght honorably of pope Clement and of the cardynalles, as she was well worthy, for she was a noble woman, and a dilygent in all her busynesse. There she desyred the lorde of Coucye to helpe to conuey her sonne Loyes into the realme of Arragone, and to be about him tyll he were maryed. The lorde of Coucye wolde nat refuse it, but ordayned hymselfe so to do, and sayde, Madame, there was no vyage this seyn yere that I wolde be more gladder to accomplissh than to go into the marches of Cicyll and Naples with my lorde your sonne, if I had lycence of the kyng my souerayne lorde. Sir, quod the lady, I thāke you; I se well your good wyll; I doute nat but the kyng wyll be content that ye go with my sonne into Aragon; and the queene of Aragon wyll be glad to se you, for your daughter hath maryed her brother, sir Hēry of bare. The lorde of Coucy agreed to go this voyage. Thus the yonge kynge of Cicyll tooke his iourney, well accompanied, whan he had taken his leaue of the Pope and of his mother, all wepyng: for at the departyng of the mother and the sonne caused their hertes to relente, for they shulde departe farre asōder, and knewe nat whan to se togyder agayne; for it was ordayned, that whan the maryage was accomplisshed, that the yonge kynge and the yonge Quene shulde take the see at the porte of Barcelone, and so to go and arryue at the-porte of Naples, or as nere as they myght.

So longe this yonge kynge Loyes iourneyed, that he passed Mountpellyer and Besyers, and so came to Narbone, where he was receyued ioyfullye of euery man: there they refreshed thē and their horses one day, and than departed and wente to Parpyngnen, the fyrst towne of the realme of Arragon. The cōmyng of this yonge kynge was well known in the court of the kynge of Arragon: he sente menne to mete with hym and to conuey him, as the vycount of Roquebertyn and sir Raymonde of Baighes: so long they rode, that they cāe to the cytie of Barcelone, where the kynge and the Quene and their daughter was: there the yonge kyng was nobly receyued, and specially the queene of Arragon was ryght ioyous of the cōmyng of the lorde of Coucy, and thanked the yonge kynge her sonne that shulde be, for bringyng of hym in his company, and sayd, that all other maters shulde do and atcheue the better. This maryage was confyrmed bytwene these two chyldren: but bycause wynter approached, they delayed their voyage goyng to the see, for in wynter the great sees are perillous: they said they wolde make their prouisyon that wynter to go into Naples the nexte Marche after. The lorde of Coucy beyng in Arragon, receyued letters fro the Frenche kynge, commaundyng hym to retourne: than he toke his leaue of the kynge of Arragon and of the queene, and of the yonge kyng and his wyfe, and of all other lordes suche as were there. and departed; and if he myght haue had leysar, he wolde haue retourned by Auignon to haue  
scene

† This chapter ought to be numbered CLV.

sene the pope and the olde quene of Naples; but he sente to them his excuse, and returned by Auvergne into Fraunce.

Whāne this maryage was made bytwene the yonge kyng Loyes of Cicyll and the daughter of the kyng of Arragon, wherby there was great alyaūces bytwene the parties, and they of Arragon were bounde to ayde and to serue the yong kyng, to bringe hym into the realme of Naples, and nat to leaue hym tyll he had the realme pesably of Naples and of Cicyll, with the appendaūtes, as Pule<sup>a</sup> and Calabre, and the cytie of Gaiet,<sup>b</sup> the whiche Margarete of Duras<sup>c</sup> helde. The aragonoys shulde serue hym as longe as his warre endured with ii. hundred speares at their coste and charge, and a thousande crosbowes, and a thousande bregandiers. When the swete tyme of Marche was come, and that the wyndes were apeased, and ŷ waters swaged of their rages, and the wodes reuerdured, and that their prouysions were made redy at Barcelone, and the galees redy suche as shulde go with the yong kyng, than he and his yonge quene tooke their leaues of the kyng of Aragon and of the quene, who wept at their departyng. Than the quene recomaunded the yonge quene her daughter to the erle of Roodes, a valyaunt knight, and to sir Raymon of Baighes: these two toke ŷ speciall charge, natwithstādinge that the erle of Vrgell and the erle of Lune were there in a great company. In these galees were a fyftene hūdred speares, two thousande crosbowes, and two thousande of other men of warre, with dartes and pausses: they wente thus fortified and well accompanied, to resyst the better if nede were agaynst their ennemyes, and also to resyst all rencōuters vpon the see: for it is a longe waye by the see fro Barcelone to Naples, and Margarete of Duras,<sup>c</sup> their aduersary, myght trouble thē by the way; therfore they thought to go surelye.

Nowe we wyll leaue to speke of this yonge kyng of Cicyll, and speke of other busynesse of the realme of Fraunce.

*Howe the Frenche kyng had desyre to go and visyte the farre partes of his realme; and howe he went fyrst into Burgoyne and to Auygnon to se pope Clement.*

#### CAP. CLX.<sup>d</sup>

AFTER this great feest was accomplishid, and that euery lorde and lady were gone home to their owne houses, as ye haue herde here before, and that the Frēche kyng sawe that he had truce with Englande for thre yere, he hadde than ymaginacion to go and visyte his realme, specially the vtwarde marchesse of Languedocke; for the lorde de la Ryuer and sir Johan Mercier, who were as than chefe of his preyū cōsaille, they exhorted hym to go to Auygnon to se pope Clement and the cardynalles, who desyred to se hym, and also to go to Tholous; for they sayd to the kyng, Sir, a kyng in his youthe ought to visyte his realme, and to knowe his people, and to lerne how they be gouerned, the whiche shulde be greatly to his profyte, and the better to be beloued with his subiectes: the kyng lyghtly enclyned to their counsayle, for he had desyre to traueyle and se newe thynges: and ŷ lord de la Ryuer, who was but newly come out of those marchesse, herde great complayntes of the people of Tholous, of Carcassone, and of Beaucayre, and they desired greatly to se the kyng: for they had ben sore charged with tayles and aydes by ŷ duke of Berrey, by the informacion of a seruauant of his, called Betysache, who had pytie of no man; he so pyllid the people, that nothyng was  
lete;

<sup>a</sup> Apulia.

<sup>b</sup> Gaicta.

<sup>c</sup> Durazzo.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLVI.

leste; therefore he counsayled the kyng to go thyder to prouyde some remedy, and also that the kyng shulde sende for the erle of Foize to come to hym to Tholous. The kyng made him redy to go thyder, and sente afore all the way that prouyson shulde be made for his cōmyng, and sente worde therof to his vnclē the Duke of Burgoyne and to his aūte the duchesse, how he wolde come alonge throughe their countrey, and wolde se his cosyns their chyldeyn, and to bring in his company his brother the duke of Thourayne and his vnclē of Burbone, whiche pleased greatly f̄ duke and the duchesse: and the duke caused to be proclaimed a feest and a iustes, to be holden at Dygnon,<sup>a</sup> and knightes and squiers of Burgoyne, of Sauoy, and of other marches adioyning, were requyred to be at this feest; and so euery man ordred themselfe accordingly.

Thus whyles the kynges prouyson was a makyng to go to Auignon and to Languedocke, the duke of Burgoyne on his parte made great prouyson to receyue the kyng, and so dyde euery man in their marchesse that purposed to be at f̄ feest at Dignon.<sup>a</sup> The same season other maters fell in Fraunce. Ye haue herde howe the duke of Irelande (who was called erle of Oxenforde) was banysshed oute of Englande by the vnclēs of kyng Rycharde, and speciallye the duke of Gloucestre had grettest dyspleasure to hym; so that to saue hymselfe he was fledde into Hollande, and taryed there but a small season in the towne of Dordrecht, for he was fayne to departe thens, for duke Aubert, who was lorde of that towne and of Holande, denyed hym the taryeng in his cōtrey: for he wolde nat kepe hym agaynst the wyll of his cosyns germayns of Englande, for all that the kyng of Englande had written for hym; yet he was fayne to departe and to go to Trechte,<sup>b</sup> a fraunches towne for all maner of people, payeng for that they take; and the duke of Irelande had ynoughe to paye, for besyde that he brought with him, he had threscore thousande frankes out of Fraunce fro the Constable, for the redemption of Johan of Bretayne: and he was come to f̄ Frēche kyng vnder saueconducte, and was there with hym more than a yere. The kyng made hym good chere, bycause he was a straūger; howbeit, trewe it was, though this duke was with the kyng, yet f̄ lorde of Coucy hated hym in his herte, for he had good cause: for though the duke in all affayres was prouyded of wytte, honoure, eloquence, and of great largesse, yet he had greatly trespassed agaynst the lorde of Coucies doughter, who was his wyfe lauffully spoused, and forsoke her without any tytell of reason: but by false and yuell temptacyon and disceyte was disceyued, and toke another wyfe, a damosell of the quene of Englandes, of the countrey of Boeme;<sup>c</sup> and the kyng and f̄ quene of Englande synfully consented therto, and he was dispensed by pope Urbane of Rome, at the instaūte desyre of the duke of Irelande; and bycause the lorde of Coucy, who was of the counsaile of Fraūce, and well worthy so to be, for he had done good seruyce, and was well able to do, he procured so moche by meanes of his frendes, as sir Olyuer of Clysson, and the lorde de la Ryuer, sir Johan Marcyer, and other, that it was sayde to the duke of Irelande that he shulde departe out of Fraunce, and to go and chose hymselfe another place to abyde in, where he lyst, so that it be nat in the realme of Fraūce, and thyder he shulde surely be cōueyed. The duke of Irelande sawe well howe he was dayly in paryll by meanes of f̄ lorde of Coucy and his lynnage; wherefore he thought it shulde be beste for hym to go farre of rather than to abyde nere: than he aduised to drawe into Brabant, and desyred the kyng to write to the duchesse of Brabant, f̄ it wolde pleace her to suffre hym pesably to abyde in her cōtrey. The kyng wrote to his aunte the duchesse of Brabant, and she condiscēded to the kynges desyre. The duke of Irelande was conducted by men of the kynges to Louayne, and there he taryed, and somtyme he went to a castell nat farre of fro the towne of Louaygne, the whiche he had borowed of a knyght of Brabant.

<sup>a</sup> Dijon.<sup>b</sup> Utrecht.<sup>c</sup> Bohemia.

Brabant. With the duke of Irelande was the archebyssshop of yorke, who in lykewise was banysshed out of Englande, all for one cause: this byssshoppe was one of the Neuelles of Englande, who in the cuntry of Northüberlande were puissaunt men, bothe of landes and of lynage. There taryed these two lordes at Louayne or there about, as I herde saye, as longe as they lyued, for they coude never come to mercy nor peace with ȝ kyng of Englandes vnclcs: I can no farther speke of them.

About the feest of saynt Mychell the Frēche kyng departed fro his house of Beautie besyde Parys, and lefte there the quene, and toke his waye by Troy in Champayne to go into Burgoyne, and his vnclc the duke of Burbone, and duke Loyes of Thourayne, and the lorde of Coucy, and many other lordes and knyghtes in his company: the kyng rode so longe that he came to Dignon:<sup>a</sup> the duke of Burgoyne and the erle of Neuers his sonne were come before to the Chatelon on the ryuer of Sayne.<sup>b</sup> Whā the kyng was come to Dignon,<sup>a</sup> the duchesse of Burgoyne and the cōtēsse of Neuers her daughter receyued the kyng ioyfully, and all other lordes for loue of the kyng: and to his welcomyng to Dygnon<sup>a</sup> many ladyes and damosels were come thyder to se hym: there was the lady of Sully, the lady of Vergy, the lady of Pagny, and dyuers other fayre ladies and fresshe, and well apparelled: than began feestyng, daunsyng, and carolyng. These ladyes enforshed themselfe to dance and to syng, and to make ioye for loue of ȝ kyng, and ȝ duke of Thourayne, the duke of Burbone, and of the lorde of Coucy. Monday, tuesday, and wednesday, all thre dayes ther was goodly iustes, and prices gyuen to ȝ best doers. The kyng was eight dayes in ȝ towne of Dignon,<sup>a</sup> in great triūphie and sporte: the x. daye he toke leaue of his vnclc the duke of Burgoyne and of the duchesse and their children. Thentent of ȝ duke of Burgoyne was shortly after to folowe the kyng his nephue, and to go with hym that iourney. The kyng departed fro Dignon,<sup>a</sup> whan he had taken his leaue of all ladyes and damoselles, and rode so long by his iourneys that he came to Vileneufe besyde Auygnon: There his house royall was apparelled for hym, and there was the cardynals of Amyens, of Aigreuell, of saint Marcell, of Chatell neuve,<sup>c</sup> and mo than xiii. other came and mette the kyng in the felde, and all were gladdē of the kynges cōmyng.

The duke of Berrey was come to Auygnon and was lodged in the popes palais, but he cāe to Vyle neuve to the kyng, and laye in the lyuere<sup>d</sup> of arras, called Amontays, in the way to Mountpellyer. The duke of Burgoyne arryued there the next day that ȝ kyng came thyder by the water of Rone, for the duke toke a barge at Lyon sur le rone. Thus the kyng and these four dukes were togyder: than they determyned to passe the bridge of Auignon and to go and se the pope; and about ix. of the clocke in the mornyng the kyng passed the bridge, acompanyed with his brother and his thre vnclcs and xii. cardynalles, and so went to the popes palais, and pope Clement was redy in his chambre of consystorie, syttyng in his chayre of papalyte. Whan the Frenche kyng came into the chambre and sawe the pope he enclenyd hymselfe, and whan he came nere, ȝ pope rose, and the kyng kyst his hande and his mouthe: than the pope sate downe, and caused the kyng to syt downe by hym, on a place purposely prepared for hym: than ȝ dukes kyst the popes hande, and sate downe amōge the cardynals. Anone it was tyme of dyner; than they drewe into the popes great chaumbre, where the tables were redy couered: the pope wasshed and satte downe at a table alone and kept his estate; the Frenche kyng satte downe at another table alone, and the cardynalles and dukes satte downe in order. The dyner was plentyfull, and after dyner they had wyne and spyes. Than the kyng and ȝ four dukes went into their chābres; eche of them had a chambre apparelled in the palais, and there they taryed a certayne  
dayes.

<sup>a</sup> Dijon.<sup>b</sup> Chatillon-sur-Seine.<sup>c</sup> Neufchatel.<sup>d</sup> Hotel.

dayes. The v. day after that the kyng came thyder, ȝ yonge erle of Sauoy, cosyn to the king, and nephue to the duke of Burbone, came thyder: the kyng was right ioyfull of his cōmyng. The Frenche kyng, the duke of Thourayne his brother, and the erle of Sauoye, who were lyght of corage and of spyrite, thoughte they were lodged in the popes palais, nere to the pope and to the cardynalles, yet for all that they wolde nat absteyne to daunce and to caroll, and to make sporte amonge the ladyes and damoselles of Auygnon: and the erle of Genesne,<sup>a</sup> brother to the pope, brought them in aquayntance with the ladyes and damoselles of the towne. The kyng gaue great giftes to the ladyes and damoselles, wherby he had great laude and prayse.

The pope and the cardinals were ryght ioyfull of the kynges beyng there, as it was reason that they shulde so be, for without the loue of the Frenche kyng their porte shulde haue ben but small; for they cōsydred, or ought to haue consydred, that there was no kyng christned that were obedyent to them, except it were for loue and fauoure and alyuance of the Frenche kyng. The kyng of Spaygne and the kyng of Scottes obeyed this pope Clement, and the kyng of Aragon was but newly so determyned, and that made the quene yolande of Bare (who was cosyn germayne to the Frenche kyng): elles he had nat done so, for before, the kyng of Aragon, and his father before hym was as neuter; therefore this pope and cardynalles ought well to feest the Frenche kyng, sayng their puyssaunce and profyte that they lyued by to kepe their estate, came by meanes of the Frenche kyng. Thus the kyng taryed there a certayne season in great ioye and sporte; and for ioye of the kynges cōmyng thyder, the pope opyned his graces to all clerkes beyng in the courte for the space of a moneth: and gaue the nomy-nacions to the kyng, of all colleges and cathedrals: and to euery colledge two prebendes: and reuoked all other graces before gyuen, and wolde that the kynges graces shulde procede before (as they dyd), wherby many of the kynges clerkes were promoted; also the pope gaue graces to the duke of Thourayne, the duke of Berrey, the duke of Burgoyne, and to the lorde Coucy; all other were stopped that had been graunted before. The pope was so curtesse and lyberall, that for loue of the kynges cōmyng he graūted euery thyng that was asked.

Whan the kyng had ben there a certayne space, the pope shewed hym his com-plainnt, howe that the other pope of Rome greatly hyndred his ryght, and made moche trouble and diffrence in ȝ church. The kyng herde hym well, and promysed this pope Clement, that after his returne agayne into Fraunce he wolde entende to none other thyng, but to bringe the church in one accorde. With those wordes the pope was greatly confortyd. The kyng toke his leaue, and returned to Vyle Neufe, and so dyde his brother, and vnclcs of Berrey and Burgoyne: and there on a daye the kyng made a dyner to all the cardynalles and to the erle of Genesne,<sup>a</sup> brother to the pope: after dyner they toke their leaues, for the kyng sayd, that the nexte day he wolde ryde towarde Moūtpellyer, and he thanked them of the reuerēce that they had done to hym. The cardynalles returned to Auygnon. Than it was ordayned that the kyng shulde departe the nexte daye, his brother and the duke of Burbone in his company; and so he dyd, and toke leaue of his vnclcs of Berrey and of Burgoyne, and sayde, howe they shulde retourne into their owne countreis, for they shulde go no further with hym at that tyme: for he sayde he wolde go to Tholous, and sende for therle of Foiz to come thyder. His vnclcs were cōtent therwith, for as than the kyng had suche counsaile about hym, that the duke of Berrey and the duke of Burgoyns voyces were nat herde, without it were in small maters. The gouernyng of Lāguedocke was taken aȝe fro the duke of Berrey, and deuyded into Sencschaunces to the kynges profyte; wherof the

VOL. II.

3 L

countreis

<sup>a</sup> Geneva.

countreys and marchesse of Carcassone, of Besyers, of Narbone, of Fonges, of Bygore, and of Tholous, were greatly reioysed: for before that season they had been sore oppressed with tayles that the duke of Berrey had reysed on them, as ye shall here after whan the mater requyreth it.

Whan the duke of Berey and the duke of burgoyn sawe that the kyng wolde go to Moûtpeyller and visyte Lāguedoc, and wolde nat therē to go in his cōpany, they were sore displeasid therw; howbeit, sagely they dissymuled the mater, and sayde eche to other: the kyng gothe into Languedoc to make inquysycyon on thē that gouerned there, and to make a treatie w̄ therle of Foiz, who is ŷ most proudest erle now luyēg: he neuer loued nor praysid any neyghbour that euer he had, nouthur Frenche kyng, Englande, Spayne, Arragon, nor Nauer. The kyng taketh with him of his counsaile no mo but Ryuer and Mercier, Mōtague, and the Begeh of Villayns. Howe saye you to this, brother? quod the duke of Berrey. The duke of Burgoyne answered and sayd, the kyng our nephue is yonge, and he beleueth yonge counsaile; they shall disceyue hym, for surely the conclusyon shall nat be good, and that ye shall se: it must behoue vs to suffre for this presente tyme, but the tyme shall come that suche as cōsaileth him shall repent and the kyng also: let hym go on goddes name whider it shall please hym, and let vs retourne into our owne countreys; as long as we holde togyuder there is none shall do vs any wronge: we are two of the chefe membres of Fraunce. Thus these two dukes deuysed togyder, and the Frenche kyng departed the nexte day and toke the waye to Nymes, and rode thyder to dyner. The said two dukes taryed styll with the Pope thre dayes, and ŷ lord of Coucy in lykewise; the fourth daye they departed and rode into their owne countreys, and the kyng went fro Nymes and laye all nyght at Lunell.

Whan the kyng departed fro Lunell he went to dyner to Moûtpeyller, it was but thre lytell myles; there he was receyued of ŷ burgesses, ladyes, and damoselles of the towne, for they greatly desyred to se the kyng, and many riche presentes were gyuen to hym, for Moûtpeyller is a puissaunt towne, ryche, and full of marchandise. The kyng prayed the towne moche, and well consydrd their puissaūce; and it was shewed the kyng that the towne hadde ben moche richer before thanne it was at that presente tyme: for the duke of Aniou and the duke of Berrey, eche of them in their tourne, hadde greatlye pyllid them. The kyng was sorie that ŷ good people had endured so moche dōmage, and sayd, how he wolde reforme the cōuntre into a better state. Than it was shewed the kyng that the pouertie of that towne was nothyng to that he shulde fynde forwarde: for that towne of itselfe hath good meanes of recoueraūce by reson of the marchandyse ŷ is there vsed, bothe by lande and by see; but in the marchesse of Carcassone and Tholons and therabout, where as the said two dukes had the gouernaunce, loke on what thyng they had puysaunce to laye on their handes, there was nothyng left, but all taken away; for ye shall fynde ŷ people there so poore, that suche as w̄re went to be riche and puissaunt, nowe they are scant able to labour their vynes nor landes: it is a great pyte to se them, their wyues, and chylidren, for they haue had euery yere fyue or sixe tayles layde on their shulders, and are rāused to the thirde or fourthe parte of their substance, and somtyme to all togyuder: one tayle coude nat be payde but ŷ another was rely on ŷ necke therof; for, syr, as it is well knowen, these two dukes your vnclis, while they ruled in Lāguedocke, they haue leuyed in ŷ cōuntry fro Vyle Neufe into Tholousyn, rounde about to the ryuer of Garon, and retournyng to the ryuer of Dordone, the sōme of xxx. hundred thousande frankes; and specially sythe the duke of Aniou departed, the duke of Berrey hath done the more dōmage, for he founde the playne cōuntry and cōmontie in good case, for the duke of Aniou tooke but of the ryche men, who had wherwith to paye; but the duke of Berrey spared nother  
poore

poore nor riche, for he gadered all before him, specially by one of his counsaile, his treasurer, named Betsache, who is of the nacyon of the cytie of Besyers, as ye shall here by the complayntes of the people that wyll crye out on hym. To these wordes the kyng said, As god haue my soule, I shall prouyde for this mater or I retourne: and I shall punisshie the trespasours, for I shall make an inquyscion of the seruauites and of-fycers of myne vnclcs, suche as had ruled here before in the parties of Languedocke, and suche as haue deserued shall be corrected.

The kyng taryed at Mountpellyer the space of xii. dayes, for the order of the towne and the pastyme of ladyes and damoselles, suche as he foude there pleased hym greatly. To saue troultie, the kyng as at that tyme was in his lusty youthe, and lyght and quycke of spyrite; he daused and caroled amonge the fryscos ladyes and damoselles of y<sup>e</sup> towne somtyme all nyght, and gaue and made bankettes and suppers largely, and wolde gyue to the ladyes and damosels rynges of golde and chaynes to them that he reputed worthy: the kyng dyde so moche that he had great laude and prayse; and some of them wolde that he had taryed there lengar than he dyd, for he kepte reuell, daunsyng, and solas, and every day it was newe to begyn.

Ye haue herde oftentymes said, howe the sporte of ladies and damosels encorageth the hertes of yonge lusty gentylnen, and causeth them to desyre and to seke to gette honour. I say this, bycause with the kyng there was thre gentylnen of highe enterprice and of great valure, and that they well shewed, as ye shall here. Fyrst, there was the yonge sir Boucequaut, the other sir Raynold of Roy, and the thirde the lorde of saynt Pye. These thre knyghtes were chamberleyns with the kyng, and well beloued with him, for they were well worthy; they were fresshe, and serued hym well in armes and in all other maters. These thre beyng at Mountpellier among the ladyes and damosels, they toke on them to do armes the next somer after; and as I was enformed, y<sup>e</sup> pricipall cause that enclyned thē therto was as I shall shewe you. Ye knowe well, as it hath ben rehersed here before in this hystorie, howe that in y<sup>e</sup> dayes of kyng Charles there was an Englysshe knyght, called sir Peter Courtney (a valyaunt knight in armes) cāe out of Englande into Fraūce to Paris, and demaūded to do armes with sir Guy of Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> in the presence of the kyng or of suche as wolde se them. Sir Guy wolde nat refuse his offre, and in the presence of the kyng and of other lordes they were armed on a daye and ran toguyder one course; and than the kyng wolde nat suffre them to ryn agayne toguyder, wherwith thēglysshe knyght was right yuell content, for as he shewed, he wolde haue furnysshed his chalenge to the vttraunce: but he was apeased with fayre wordes; and it was sayde to hym that he had done ynough, he ought to be content therewith. The kyng and the duke of Burgoyne gaue hym fayre gyftes and presentes. Than he retourned agayne towards Calays; and the lorde of Clary, who was a friscay and a lusty knyght, was charged to conuey hym. They rode so longe toguyder that they came to Lucynen,<sup>b</sup> where as the countesse of saynt Poule laye, suster to kyng Richard of Englande. The lady was ioyfull of the cōmyng thyder of sir Peter Courtney, for she hadde maryed fyrste his cosyn the lorde of Courtney, but he dyed yonge, and after she maryed the erle of saynt Poule. The Englysshemen called her madame Courtney, and nat Countesse of saynt Poule.

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.

<sup>b</sup> Lucen.—*D. Sauvage.*

*Howe sir Peter Courteney came into Fraunce to do armes with sir Guye of Tremouyle,\* and howe the lorde of Clary cōueyed hym, and by what occasyon he dyde armes with hym in the marchesse of Calais.*

C A P. CLXI.<sup>b</sup>

THUS as sir Peter of Courtney and the lorde of Clary were at Lucenen<sup>c</sup> in Arthoys with the cōtesse of saynt Poule, who was right ioyouse of their commynge, and as they deuyed of many thynges, the countesse demanded of sir Peter Courtney what he thought of the state of Fraunce. He answered and sayd, Certainly, madame, the states of Fraūce are well and goodly serued; we can nat be so serued in our country. Sir, quod the lady, do the lordes of Fraunce and the maner there contente you? haue they nat made you good chere? Surely, madame, quod he, their chere contenteth me passynglye well; but in the case that I passed the see for, they haue but easely acquyted me therin; and, madame, I wyll ye knowe, that if the lorde of Clary here present hadde come into Englande, and desyred to haue done armes with any man, he shulde nat haue departed or he hadde ben answered at his pleasure; but I am serued to the contrary. Trewe it was, sir Guye de la Tremouyle<sup>a</sup> and I were armed in the felde eche agaynst other, and ranne toguyder but one course: than it was shewed me fro the kynge that we shulde do no more, sayenge, howe he hadde done ynough; wherfore, madame, I saye and wyll say wheresoeuer I be come, that I coulde fynde none to do armes with me, and that was nat in my defeaute, but in the knyghtes of Fraunce. The lorde of Clary noted well his wordes, and helde his pease with great payne; howebeit, he suffred hym, because he had the charge of the cōueyaunce of hym. Than the countesse sayde, Sir, ye departed right honorably fro Fraūce whan ye obeyed to the kynges desyre, for ye coude do no more, sythe it was his pleasure that ye shulde nat.

In cōmyng, returnyng, and doyng as ye haue done, none can laye any faute in you: all suche as shall here thereof on this syde the see or on the other shall repute in you more honour than blame; wherfore, sir, I requyre you be contente therewith. Madame, quod the knight, so I do and shall do; I shall neuer take thought for it. Thus they left that mater and fell in other talkyng. There he taryed all that daye and nyght; the nexte mornynge sir Peter Courtney toke his leaue of the Countesse of saynt Poule, and she gaue hym at his departyng a lytell chayne of golde, and to the lorde of Clary another: thus in the mornynge they departed fro Lucenen,<sup>c</sup> and toke the waye to Bouloynne, and came thyder and there laye all nyght, and the nexte daye rode towardes Margyson<sup>d</sup> to go to Calais.

Bitwene Boloynne and Calais are but seyn or eight leages, and fayre playne waye. Whan they came nere to Calais, there sir Peter of Courtney sayd to the lorde of Clary, Sir, we be nowe in the kyng of Englandes lande, and ye haue well acquyted you in the conueyaunce of me, and of your company I thanke you; the lorde of Clary, who had displeasure in his hert, for the wordes that sir Peter had spoken at Lucenen,<sup>c</sup> in the presens of the countesse of saynt Pole, and other, whiche wordes he thought he wolde nat suffre to reste in that case, for he reputed them to haute and to hyghe agaynst the honour of the chivalry of Fraunce: for he vnderstode hym that he said howe he was come oute of Englaunde into Fraunce to do armes, and how there were none that wolde  
aunswere

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLVII.<sup>c</sup> Lucen.—*D. Savage.*<sup>d</sup> Marquise.



aunsweyre hym. Than the lorde of Clary at their leaue takynge sayde, Sir Peter, ye be nowe in the kyng of Englandes lande, and sir, I haue conueyed you hyder by the commaundment of the kyng my maister and of the duke of Burgoyne; and ye remembre well this laste daye when we were in  $\text{f}$  countesse of saynt Poules chambre, who made vs good chere, ye spake there ouer largely, as me thynketh, to the great preiudyce and blame of the knyghtes of Fraunce; for ye sayde, howe ye came fro the kynges courte, and coude fynde none to do armes with you; by  $\text{f}$  whiche wordes maye be vnderstande that there is no knyght in Fraunce that dare do armes or iust with you thre courses with a speare; wherfore, sir, I wyll that ye knowe that here I offre myselfe, thoughe I be one of  $\text{f}$  moost symplest knyghtes in all Fraunce, and saye and iustifye, that the realme of Fraunce is nat so voyde of knyghtes but that ye shall well fynde ynowe to do dedes of armes with you; and sir, if ye lyste ye shall fynde me redy to aunsweyre you, be it incontynente this nyght or to morowe. I saye nat this for any hatered that I haue to your persone; I do it all onely to maynteyne the honour of our partie, for I wolde nat ye shulde retourne to Calais or into Englande to make youre auaunt that without stroke stryken ye shulde disconfyte the knyghtes of Fraunce. Sir, answeyre me if it please you to my wordes. Sir Peter Courtney was soone couंसayled what answeyre to make, and sayde, Sir of Clary, ye speke well, and I accepte your demaunde: and I wyll that to morowe in this same place ye be armed at your pleasure, and I shall be in lykewise, and than lette vs ryne eche at other thre courses with a speare, and therby ye shall wyinne agayne the honour of the Frenche courte, and ye shall do me a grete pleasure. Sir, quod the lorde of Clary, I promyse you I shall nat fayle to be here at the hour ye haue assigned. Thus these two knyghtes promysed eche other to iust. The lorde of Clary retorned to Marguysen,<sup>a</sup> and there prouyded hym of his armure, shelde, speare, and horse; he hadde anone all that he lacked, for on the fronters of Calays and Boloyn men were soone prouyded: there he made his prouisyon as shortly as he myght, for he wolde natte that ouer many shulde haue knowen therof. In lyke manner sir Peter Courtney, whāne he came to Calays, he forgate nat the promyse that he had made, but prouyded hym of good armure and of euery thyng elles: as for harnesse he had redy, suche as he had caryed with hym out of Englande into Fraunce; as at that tyme sir Johan Bernes<sup>b</sup> was capitayne of Calays; Sir Peter shewed hym the promise  $\text{f}$  was made bytwene hym and the lorde of Clary. Than sir Johan Bernes<sup>b</sup> sayde howe he wolde accompanye hym thyder, and other good felowes of Calays. The nexte daye these two knyghtes came to the place apoynted; the Englysshe knyght came moche better accompanied than dyde the Frenche knyght, for the capitayne of Calays was with hym. When they were come togyder there was but fewe wordes bytwene theym: they knewe well ynough wherfore they were come: they were bothe well armed and horsed, and toke their sheldes: than they toke their speares with sharpe heedes well fylcd, and spurred their horses and ranne togyuder: the fyrst course they fayled, wherwith they were bothe sore displeased; at the seconde iuste they mette so togyuder, that the lorde of Clary strake the Englysshe knyght throughe the targe and throughe the shulder a handfull, and therwith he felle fro his horse to the ertlie. The lorde of Clary passed forthe and keppe his course, and turned and stode styll, for he sawe well howe the Englysshe knyght was unhorsed, and howe that many men were about hym; he thought surely than that he was hurt, for his speare was brokenne in peeces: than he rode to them, and the Englysshemen came to the lorde of Clary, and sayd, Sir, ye be no courtesse iuster. Wherfore? quod the lorde of Clary. Bycause, quod they, ye haue hurt this knyghtes shulder; ye might more curtesly haue iusted. Sirs, quod he, that curtesy laye nat in me, seyng I was apparelled to iuste, for the same case or worse myght haue fallen to me as well as to hym; howebett, sir, I requyre you demaunde of hym, or elles  
wyll

<sup>a</sup> Marquise.<sup>b</sup> Warnes.—*D. Sawage.*

wyll I, whyder he wyll do any more or natte. Than sir Johan Bernes sayde: Nay, naye, sir knyght, ye may departe whan ye lyste, ye haue done ynough. Than the lorde of Clary departed with his company, and the Englysshemen ledde sir Peter Courtney to Calays, to be healed of his hurtes; and the lorde of Clary retourned into Fraunce, thynkyng that he hadde right well done, and that he shulde haue had for that dede great laude and prayse: but I shall shewe you what fell therof.

Whan tidynges came to the Frenche kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne, and to their counsaile, howe that the lorde of Clarye had done armes with sir Peter Courtney, in retournyng to Calais, so that the sayde sir Peter was hurte, and in paryll of dethe, the kyng, and the duke, and specially sir Guye of Tremouyle,<sup>3</sup> were sore dyspleased with the lorde of Clary: and sayde, howe he had done (at the leest) as moche as to lese his landes, and to be bannysshed the realme of Fraunce for euer, without repele: and sōe other, (suche as wolde hym no good wyll,) sayde: howe he hadde done lyke a false traytoure, seyng a straunge knyght vnder the kynges sauegarde, shulde be requyred by hym to do dedes of armes, and by *ȝ* meanes to be brought to the icopardye of dethe; they sayde suche a dede ought nat to be pardoned. The lorde of Clary was sente for: he came to the kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne; there he was examyned and layde to his charge, and demaüded howe he durste be so outrageous to a knyght straunger that was come to the kynges court for good loue and to exalte his honoure, to do feates of armes, and departed thens with good loue and ioye, and the entente that he shulde nat be troubled by the way, in his retournyng was deluyered to hym to conduyt: and than at the departyng of bothe realmes, he to be so bolde to do armes with hym in cāpe or iustes mortall, without lycence of his soueraygne lorde of whom he holdeth his lande; it was shewed hym the trespasse was so great that it was nat to be pardoned, but to be punysshed so highly, that all other shulde take ensample therby. The lorde of Clary, whan he herde those wordes, he was abashed, for he thought he hadde done well, and for to haue had thanke; than he sayde: My lordes, it is of trouthe, sir Peter of Courtney was deluyered to me, to conducte and to kepe hym company tyll he came to Calais, or to the frōters therof: and of all that I hadde in charge I haue well and truely acqyted myselfe, and if nede be I shall proue it by the wytnesse of hymselfe; and trewe it was, that by *ȝ* waye whan we came to Lucyen to the countesse of saynt Poule, who receyued and made vs good chere, there sir Peter Courtney hadde certayne wordes, as I shall shewe you.

The countesse demaüded of hym and sayde: sir Peter of Courtney, howe are ye contente with the Lordes of Fraunce, and with the maner of Fraūce? He answered courtesly and sayd: Madame, the maner of Fraunce is ryght noble and goodlye; as for the lordes of Fraunce I am right well content with their chere, excepte in one thyng, and that is, with great payne and traueyle and great coste, I haue issued oute of Englāde to do dedes of armes, and so came to the frēche kynges court, but there I knew nat with whom to do armes: thus my lordes, whan I herde hym saye so in the presēce of so noble a lady as the countesse of saynte Poule, suster to the kyng of Englande, the wordes were right heuy to me to beare; howbeit, I suffred them for that tyme, bycause I had the charge of the conueyaunce of hym; I neuer made semblaunt therof to hym as longe as we were in company togider within the realme of Fraunce; and at our leaue takyng in the marche-se of Calais, trewe it is, than I layde vnto hym the sayde wordes and sayd, howe they were nat courtesly spoken, nor honorably: for the wordes sounded that the chivalry of Fraunce was so abated, that none durst do dedes of armes with him; than I sayd if he wolde abyde therby, that I was one of the knyghtes of Fraunce, borne

of

<sup>3</sup> Tremouille.

of the nacyon: and I sayd I wolde nat that he shulde make his auaunte in Englande, that he coude nat fynde in Fraūce, nor by the waye, with whome to do armes; therfore I sayde I was redy, and desyred to do armes with hym, and to fulfillle his pleasure and desyre, as to rynne thre courses with a speare, the same daye or the nexte; certaynly my lordes, I sayde these wordes for the honour of the realme of Fraunce, and the chyualry therof: and me thought he had great ioye therof, and accepted to do armes with me the nexte day, and so dyde I; and the nexte day we mette at the same place; he was acōpanyed with them of the garyson of Calais, and with me there were certayne of the fronters there, knyghtes and squyers, as ſy lorde of Mountcarell, and sir Johan of Longuyllers; there we iusted togyder as well as we conde, and the adventure of armes fell so ſy at the seconde course I strake him through the shulder, so that he fell to the erthe; than I retourned againe to knowe if he wolde do any more: than the capitayne of Calis said it was sufficient that was done, and that I myght departe whan I lyst: and than I returned; I beleued I had ryght well done, and well defended the honour of the realme of Fraūce, and of the knyghtes therin. Thus I haue shewed you the very trouthe of this dede, for my well doying of this amēdes shall folowe; I reporte me and wyll abyde the iugement of my lorde the Constable, and my lordes the highe marshalles of Fraūce, and besyde that to the voice and discrecion of the knyght hymselfe sir Peter Curtney, at whose request I dyde these armes; and also I reporte me to all knyghtes and squyers of honour, bothe of Fraunce and of Englande, credably enfourmed of the hole mater.

Whan the lorde of Clary had shewed the mater, and sagely made his excusaciōs, as ye haue herde, it greatlye aswaged the yre and displeasure of them that had complayned of hym; howebeit, for all his wordes and excusacions he coude nat be delyuered, but was cōmytted to prisone, and there taryed a long season in great daunger of lesyng of all his landes, and to be banysshed for euer; but the lorde of Coucy, and the duke of Burbon, they labored sore for his delyueraūce, and with moche payne they made his peace, with the ayde of the countesse of saynt Poule, before whom the wordes were spoken. Than at his deliueraūce it was said to hym: Sir of Clary, ye supposed to haue done ryght well; howebeit, ye dyde shamefully, whanne ye offred to do armes with sir Peter Courtney, who was vnder the kynges sauegarde, and deliuered to you to conducte to Calays by the kynges cōmaundement; ye dyde a great outrage whan ye renewed the wordes, the whiche were spoken but in sport before the cōtesse of saynt Poule; or ye had done it ye ought to haue returned to ſy kyng, and haue shewed hym ſy wordes that shulde haue sowned agaynst the honour of ſy knyghtes of Fraūce, and than what cōsayle the king had gyuen you, ye ought to haue folowed; and bycause ye dyde nat thus, ye haue hadde this payne; beware better another tyme, and thāke the lorde of Burbone, and the lorde of Coucy, of your delyueraunce, for they haue sore labored for you, and also ſy lady of saynt Poule. Quod the lorde of Clary, my lordes, I thāke you all; howebeit I thought I hadde done well. Thus he departed.

*Howe the iustes of saynt Inguelyert, otherwise called Sadyngfelde, were enterprised by sir Reynolde of Roy, the yonge sir Boucyquaut, and the lorde of saynt Pye.*

C A P. CLXII.\*

THE Frenche kyng lay at the good towne of Moūtpellyer in gret myrthe and sport : and at a banket that the kyng made to the Ladies and damoselles of the towne, there was rehersed all this sayd mater of the lorde of Clary, and of sir Peter Courtney. True it was, I began to speke of thre valyaunt knyghtes, of the yonge sir Bauciquaut, sir Reynolde of Roy, and the lorde of saynt Pye : the whiche thre enterprised to do dedes of armes in the fronter besyde Calais, in the tyme of Somer nexte after : abyding all knyghtes and squiers straungers the terme of xxx. dayes, whosoever wolde iuste with thē in iustes of peace or of warre ; and bicause thenterprice of these thre knyghtes semed to the Frēche kyng and his cōsaille to be an high enterprice, there it was said to them, that they shulde putte it in writyng, bycause the kyng wolde se thartycles therof : that if they were to hygh or to outragious, that the kyng might amende them, bycause the king nor his counsaille wolde nat susteyne any thyng that shulde be vnresonable. These thre knyghtes answered and said : It is but reasone that we do thus, it shall be done. Than they toke a clerke and caused him to write as foloweth.

For the great desyre that we haue to come to the knowledge of noble gentlemen, knyghtes and squiers, straungers, as well of the realme of Fraunce, as elswhere of farre countreys : we shall be at saynt Ingylbertes, in the marches of Calays, the twenty day of the month of May nexte comyng, and there contynewe thyrty dayes complete, the frydayes onely excepte, and to delyuer all maner of knyghtes and squyers, gentlemen, straungers of any maner of nacyon, whatsoever they be, that wyll come thyder for the breakyng of fyue speares, outhar sharpe or rokettes at their pleasure ; and without our lodgynges shall be the sheldes of our armes, both on the sheldes of peace and of warre, and whosoever wyll iust, lette hym come or sende the day before, and with a rod touche whiche shelde he please ; if he touche ȳ shelde of warre, the nexte daye he shall iust with whiche of the thre he wyll, and if he touche the shelde of peace, he shall haue the iustes of peace and of warre ; so that whosoever touche any of the sheldes, shew or cause to be shewed their name to suche as shal be there lymtyed by vs to receyue their names : and all suche knyghtes straungers as wyll iuste, to bringe some nobleman on their partye, who shall be instructed by vs what ought to be done in this case ; and we requyre all knyghtes and squyers straungers, that wyll come and iuste, that they thynke nor ymagyn in vs that we do this for any pride, hatred, or yuell wyll, but all onely we do it to haue their honorable company and acquayntaunce, the whiche with our entier hartes we desyre ; nor none of our sheldes shall be couered with yron nor steel, nor none of theirs that wyll come to iust with vs, without any maner of fraudes, aduantage, or male engyn, but euery thyng to be ordered by them that shal be cōmytted by eyther parte to gouerne the iustes ; and bycause that all gentlemen, noble knyghtes and squiers, to whom this shall come to knowlege, in that it shulde be reputed ferme and stable, we haue sealed this present writyng with the seales of our armes : written at Mountpellier, the twenty daye of Nouembre, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and nyne : and signed thus : Raynolde du Roy, Boucyquaut, saynte Pye.

Of

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CLVIII.

Of the high courage and enterprise of these thre knyghtes the french kynge was ryght ioyefull therof, and or the mater went forwarde, euery thyng was well examyned and sene, that no faulte shulde be therin founde. Some of the kinges counsaile thought it was nat reasonable that these armes shulde be doone so nere to Calays, for the englysshemen might take it for a presumpcyon, the whiche wolde be eschewed, bycause of the trence y is taken bytwene Englande and Fraunce, to endure for thre yere; wherfore, they sayde, there ought nothyng to be wrytten nor doone, that shulde be occasyon of any dyscensyon to be had bytwene the realmes. The kynges couisaile rested on this mater a hole day, and wyste nat what to do: they wolde fayne haue broken it. Suche as were sage, sayde, it were nat good alwayes to consente to the purpose of yonge people, for oftentymes therby maye growe incydentis, rather yuell thanne good; howbeit, the kynge who was yonge, inclyned greatly to these knyghtes, and sayd: Lette them do their enterprise, they are yonge and coragious, they haue promysed and sworne to do it before the ladyes of Mountpellyer; we wyll that the mater go forwarde, let them pursewe their enterprise. Whanne euery man sawe that it was the kynges pleasure, there were none durste say agaynst it, wherfore the knyghtes were ryght ioyfull; and so it was concluded and agreed that the matter shulde go forwarde as the knyghtes had wrytten and sealed. Than the kynge sent for the thre knyghtes into his chambre aparte, and said to them: Syrs, in all your doynge regarde wysely the honour of vs and of our realme, and to mayntayne your astate spare nothyng, for we shall nat fayle you for the expence of ten thousande frankes. The thre knyghtes kneled downe before the kynge and thanked his grace.

Thus the frenche kynge toke his sporte in the good towne of Mountpellyer a fyftene dayes, moste parte with ladyes and damosels; and the kynge and his counsaile had partlytely regarded the busynesse and necessyties of the towne, for princypally he was come thyder for the same cause: and by the aduyse of his counsaile euery thyng was well reformed and brought to good astate, and their oppresyons doone awaye, wherby the good people had been sore traueyled. Than the kynge toke his leaue of the ladyes and damoselles, and in a mornyng he departed and wente to dyner to Alipyam, and at nyght lay at Vbere: the nexte day to Besyers, where he was goodly receyued, for the good men of the towne greatly desyred to se hym, and so dyd all the countreys, bothe of Pesenas, of Cabestan, and of Narbone: for they were redy to make complayntes to the kynge of the duke of Berreys offyicer, called Betisache, who had pylled the countreys. This Betysach, fro that tyme the kynge came fro Auignon, he rode alwayes in his company, but no man shewed hym as they thought, for they myght haue gyuen hym warnyng if they had lyst: but they draue hym forth with fayre wordes, and suche promysed hym nothyng but honoure, as thought the contrary. The kynge entred into Besyers bytwene thre and foure at afternoone; he was met with processyon without the towne with all the clergy and burgesses, and ladyes and damoselles: as the kynge came rydyng, they were a bothe sydes of the waye, and dyd their reuerence; so he came to the cathedrall churche and there alyghted at the dore, where there was an auter made, rychely garnysshed with iewelles and relykes; there the kynge kneled downe and dyd his prayers, and than entred into the churche with the bysshoppe of Besyers, and his vnkle the duke of Burbone, and other lordes folowed after: thanne the kynge wente to his lodgyng to the Palyce, whiche was nat farre thence, and his brother the duke of Thourayne, and the duke of Burbone with him: and the other lordes were lodged abrode in the towne, where as they were well and easely lodged, for Besyers is a good cite.

*Of the complaintes made to the kyng by the people of Languedoc, in the towne of Besyers, agaynst Betysach, treasourer to the duke of Berrey, of the great extorcyons that he had made, and of the confession that he made, and of the cruell dethe that he had in the sayde towne.*

## CAP. CLXIII.\*

THRE dayes the kyng was at Besyers in greate ioye and reuell amonge ladyes and damosels, and all that tyme Betysache was nothyng spoken vnto: but the enquisitours who wer ordeyned by the kyng, dyd secretly enquire of his dedes, and they founde by enquest dyuers cases horryble, nat to be pardoned. The fourth day that the kyng had ben there, this Betysache was called before the kynges counsaile in a chambre, and there straytely examyned, and it was sayd to hym: Betysache, aunswer wysely to these writynges that ye se here: there was shewed hym a greate nombre of bylles of complainytes that were put vp to the kyng agaynst hym, makyng mencyon of the extorcyons that he had done to the people: all these bylles of complainytes were redde before hym one after another: to some he aunswered wysely, makyng his excuse, and to some he playnly denyed them, and sayde: I knowe nothyng of those maters: laye them to the seneschalles of Beaucayr, and of Carcassone, and to the chauncellour of Berrey; it partayneth to them to aunswere to those maters: howbeit, fynally it was shewed him that he muste kepe pryson for a tyme, tyll the mater were better examyned; he obeyed bycause he myght nat chuse. As sone as he was in prison the inquisitours wente to his lodgyng, and toke into their handes all suche writynges and acomptes as they founde there, whiche partayned to such maters as he had intermedled withall before, and they auewed them at leysure, and founde in them the rekenynges of great sōmes of money, suche as had ben raysed and leuyed of the people. Than he was demaunded where all that money was become, and whether the sommes were trewe or nat. He aunswered and sayde, as for the sōmes are trewe, and the money delyuered to the duke of Berrey, and so paste throughe his handes and his treasurers, wherof I haue good quyttaunces in my lodgyng in suche a place; the whiche quitaūces were sente for before the counsaile, and there they were redde, and they agreed with the sōmes of his receyte. Than the counsaile and the enquysitours were apeased, and Betysache sente agayne to a curtesse pryson. Than the counsaile cōmuned togyther on that matter, and sayd: it semeth that Betysache is clere of suche causes as are layde to his charge, for the money that hathe been reysed, the duke of Berrey hathe had it, howesoer it hath ben spente.

All thinges consydréd, Betysache excusacyons were lawfull, for the duke of Berrey was the moste couetouse man in all the worlde; so he myght gette good, he cared nat where nor howe he hadde it, and whan he had it he wolde bestowe it but symply, as many lordes do and haue doone in tymes paste. Thus the kynges counsaile sawe no faute in Betysache, wherby he shulde lese his lyfe: some were of that opynyon, and some contrary, and said: Betysach hath done so many cruell dedes, and hathe so sore inpouerysshed the people for to acomplysse the desyre of his lorde the duke of Berrey, that the blode of the poore people cryeth out, and sayeth, howe he hathe deserued dethe: for he that is a manne borne of these partyes, and counsayler with his maister, and  
seyng

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CLIX.

seyng the pouerty of the people, he ought in good maner to haue shewed the trouthe to the duke his mayster; and if the duke wolde nat haue herde hym, than he shulde haue come to the kyng. and to his counsaile, and haue shewed them the pouertie of the people, and howe the duke of Berrey had daulte with them; than he had ben well excused. So Betsache was sente for agayne to the counsaile, and straytely examyned where the money that hadde been gathered was become, for they founde the some of thyrty hundred thousande frankes receyued. He answered therto and sayd: My lordes, it were herde for me to tell where my lorde the duke of Berrey hath bestowed it: moche he hath layde out on byldynges and reparacyons of castels and houses; also he hath bought certayne landes in the countye of Boloigne, and in the countye of Estampes; also he hath spente moche in hyenge of precyous stones and iewelles, the whiche ye knowe well he hath alwayes been desyrus to bye; also he is well stuffed to mayntayne the astate that he hath alwayes kepte; also he hath gyuen suche gyftes and rewardes to Thybault and Morynot, and to his seruautes aboute him, in suche wyse that they be ryche men. Well, Betsache, quod they of the counsaile, and ye haue had for your parte to your synguler profyte a hundred thousande frankes. My lordes, quod he, that I haue hadde was by the consente of my lorde the Duke of Berrey, for he wolde that his seruautes shulde become ryche. Than the counsaile sayde all with one voyce, A, Betsach, that worde is follyshly spoken: that rychesse is nat good nor resonable that is yuell gotten; ye shall retourne agayne into prison, and we shall take further aduise on that ye haue sayd and spoken: ye must abyde the pleasure of the kyng, to whome we shall shewe all your excusacions. My lordes, quod he, all shall be as god wyll. Than he was agayne sette in prisone, and there remayned four dayes or he was sente for agayne.

Whan these tydynges were spredde abrode in the countrey, that Betsach was in prison, and that inquire was made of his dedes, and that it was publyssed that whosoer had any matter to hym shulde come forth; therby moche people came to Besyers, and put vp supplicacions to the kyng of the cruell dedes of Betsach. Some complayned of hym that he hadde dysheryted them without cause or reason, and other complayned of hym that he hadde by force taken their wyues and daughters. Whan the kynges counsaile sawe so many gret causes laide to Betsache, they were very therof; and besyde all these complayntes he was sore behated with the people, and all this came to hym by reason to fyll the duke of Berreys purse; he dyd euer what he wolde haue hym to do. The kynges counsaile wyste nat what to do, for than there was come thyder two knyghtes fro the duke of Berrey, the lorde of Nantouelet and syr Peter Mespy, who had brought letters to the kyng fro the duke: and they in the dukes behalfe auowed all that euer Betsach had doone before, and the duke required the kyng and his counsaile to haue agayne his man and treasurer. The kyng had greate hatred to Betsach, bycause of the yuell name and fame that ranne vpon hym: the kyng, and the duke of Thourayne his brother, inclyned greatly to haue had hym hanged, sayenge howe he hadde well deserued it; but the kynges counsaile durste nat iudge hym for dought of the duke of Berrey: they sayde to the kyng: syr, if the duke of Berrey auowe all his dedes whatsoeuer they be, we canne nat se by no waye of reason that he hath deserued dethe: for the seasoone that he medled in these countreys by cessyng of tayles, subydyes, and aydes, and receyuyng of them, he dyd it at the instance of the duke of Berrey, who had at that tyme there puyssaunce royall, as well as ye haue nowe; but syr, acordyng to the desertes of his dedes ye maye sease into your handes all his mouables and herytages, and leaue hym in the same case as the duke of Berrey founde hym fyrste; and with his goodes make restytucion to suche poore men as be vndone by hym. What shulde I make longe processe? Betsache was at the poynte of his deluyraunce

with the losse of his goodes, tyll at the laste other tydynges came in place. I shall shewe you what.

I knewe nat, nor I coulde nat knowe, but by knowledgyng of himselfe, if he were indede so yuell as he iudged himselfe; he sayd he was an herytyke and had done many horryble dedes: as it was shewed me there came some to hym on a nyght beyng in prisone to put hym in feare, whether they were his frendes or foos I knowe nat; they sayde: Betsach, thou art in a harde case: the french kyng, his brother, and the duke of Burbone, dothe hate you mortally; there be so many complayntes put vp agaynste you fro dyuers places, of suche oppressyons as ye haue doone whan ye had rule in Languedoc, so that they all iudge you to be hanged, for ye canne nat scape with the losse of your goodes, the whiche hath been offred to the kyng; but the kyng who hateth you mortally, hath answered howe that all your goodes are his, and your body also, the whiche he sayeth he wyll nat kepe longe; I shew you this for good wyll, for tomorowe it is thought ye shall be delyuered to be iudged to dye. Those wordes greatly afrayed Betsach, and sayd to them: Ah, saynt Mary, is there no remedy? Yes, quod they, tomorowe, say how ye wolde speke with the kinges counsaile, and than outhen they wyll come to you, or sende for you to them, and whan ye be in their presence, than say thus: My lordes, I knowledge myselfe I haue greatly displeased god, and for the displeasure he hath to me, this false slaunders is reysed on me. Than they wyll demaunde of you wherin. Than ye shall aunswere, howe ye haue a longe season arred in your faythe, and that ye be an herytyke, and kepe styll that opinyon. Whan the bysshop of Besyers shall here that, he wyll than chalenge to haue you in his keynyng; than ye shall be delyuered to hym, for suche causes ought to be declared by the lawe of the churche: thanne ye shall be sente to Auignon: there wyll be none against the duke of Berrey: the pope wyll nat displease hym, and by this meanes ye may be delyuered, and nother lese body nor goodes; but if ye byde styll in the case that ye be in, ye shall nat scape paste tomorowe, but that ye shall be hanged, for the kyng hateth you bycause of the slaunders of the people. Betsache, who trusted on that false infourmacyon, for he that is in parell of dethe knoweth nat well what to do, wherfore he answered and sayde: ye be my frende, and counsaile me truly, wherof god thanke you, and I trust the tyme shall come that I shall thanke you. The next mornyng he called the gayler, and sayde: Frende, I requyre you cause suche menne and suche to come to speke with me; and named suche as were the enquisitours ouer him. The gayler shewed them howe Betsache wolde speke with them. They came to hym and demaunded what he wolde? He aunswere and sayd: Sirs, I haue serched my cōscience; I knowledge myselfe I haue hyghly displeased god, for longe tyme I haue arred agaynst y fayth; I neuer beleued of the Trinite, nor that the sonne of god wolde come so lowe as to come fro Heuen to come into this worlde to take humayn kynde of a woman, for I beleue and saye, that whan we dye there is nothyng of the sowle. Ah, sainte Mary, quod they: Betsach, ye are greatly against holy churche, your wordes demaundeth for a fyre; aduise you better. I canne nat tell, quod Betsache, whether my wordes demaundeth fyre or water, but I haue holden this opinyon sythe I haue had knowledge, and shall holde it tyll I dye. The enquisitours wolde here no more of hym at that tyme, and were gladde to fynde suche a mater agaynst hym therby to put him to deth. Than they cōmaunded the gailer to kepe him strately, and to suffre no man to speke with hym, to the entente that he shulde nat be tourned fro that opinyon. Thanne they wente to the kynges counsaile and shewed them all the mater: than they wente to the kyng and shewed hym all the maner of Betsache, (as ye haue herde,) wherof the kyng had great marueyle, and sayd: We wyll that he be put to dethe: it is an yuell man, he is a false herytyke and a thiefe; we wyll he be brynte and hanged, than  
he



he shall haue as he hath deserued: he shall nat be excused for all myne vncle of Berrey. Anon these tydynges were spredde abrode in the cytie of Besyers, howe Betysache hadde of his owne voluntary wyll, without any constraynt, confessed howe he was an herytyke, and had vsed longe the synne of bowgery, and howe the kyng had sayde howe he shulde be brynte and hanged, wherof moche people were right ioyouse, for he was sore hated. The two knyghtes that were come thyder fro the duke of Berrey were greatly abasshed, and wyst nat what to suppose. Than syr Peter Mesquyn<sup>a</sup> sayde to the lorde of Nantouelet: Syr, I feare me Betysache is betrayed; peradventure some persone hath ben with hym secretly in the prisone, and hathe borne hym in bande that if he holde that horryble erreure, that the churche than shall challenge hym, and so be sente to Auignon to the pope, and therby be delynered: Ah, fole that he is, he is dysceyued, for the kyng sayeth he wyll haue hym bothe biente and hanged; lette vs go to the prisone to hym and reforme hym, and bringe hym to another state, for he is farre out of the waye and yuell counsayled: they wente straye to the prisone, and desyred the gayler that they might speke with Betysache. The gayler excused hymselfe and sayde: Syrs, ye muste pardone me, for I am strately charged to suffer no manne to speke with hym: and also here be four sargeantes of armes sente by the kyng to kepe hym, and we dare nat breke the kinges cōmaundement. Than the two knyghtes sawe well howe they labored in vayne, and howe there was no remedy by all lykelyhode, but that Betysache shulde dye; than they returned to their lodgyng and rekened and payed, and toke their horses and returned to their lorde the duke of Berrey, and shewed hym all the case.

The cōclusion of Betysach was suche, that the nexte daye aboute tenne of the clocke he was taken out of pryson, and brought to the byshoppes palays, and there were redy the iudges and offycers spyrituall; and the bayly of Besyers brought forthe the prisoner, and sayde: Beholde syrs, here is Betysache, whome I delyuer to you for an herytyke, and a synner in bowgery, and if he had nat ben a clerke, he had been iudged or this acordyng to his desertes. Than the offycyall demaūded of Betysach if it were with hym acordyng as he was acused, and to confesse the trouthe there openly before all the people. And Betysache, who thought to haue said well, and to haue scaped by reason of his confessyon, he answered and sayde, that all was trewe. He was demaūded this thre tymes, and at euery tyme he confessed it to be trewe before all the people. Thus ye maye knowe whether he was dysceyued or nat, for if he had made no suche confessyon he had been delyuered: for the duke of Berrey had fully auoued all his dedes, the whiche he had doone at his commaundement in the cuntry of Languedoc; but it was to be supposed that fortune played her toune with hym, for whanne he thought to haue been moste assuredest on the heyght of fortunes whele, he was tourned vp so downe fro her whele, as she hathe doone a hundred thousande mo sythe the worlde began. Than Betysach was delyuered agayne by the spyrituall iudge to the bayly of Besyers, who vnder the kinge ruled the temperalte, the whiche Betysache without delaye was brought to a place before the palays; he was so hasted forwarde that he had no leysure to aunswere nor to saye nay, for whan he sawe a fyre redy prepared in ¶ place, and sawe that he was in the handes of the hangman, he was sore abasshed, and sawe well than that he was dysceyued and betrayed: than he cryed out aloud, requiryng to be herde; but than was no hede taken to his sayenge, but the hangeman sayde: it is ordeyned that ye shall dye, for your yuell warkes hathe brought you to an yuell ende. He was hasted forwarde to his dethe, and the fyre made redy: there was also reysed a payre of galowes, and therto tyed a chayne of yron, and at the ende therof a coler of yron, the whiche was put aboute his necke, and than the chaine drawn vp a hye,

<sup>a</sup> Mespín.

hye, and tyed rounde aboute the galowes: than he cryed and sayde, Duke of Berrey, they cause me to dye without reason; they do me wronge. As sone as he was tyed to the galows, there was sette rounde aboute drye segge, rede, and fagottes, and fyre put therto, and incontynente the fagottes were afyre: thus Betysache was hanged and brente, and the frenche kyng out of his chambre myght well se hym if he wolde. To this poore ende came Betysache, and so the people were reuenged of hym; and for to save the trouthe, he had doone many extorcions and domages to the people whyle he had the gouernynge of the country of Languedoc.

*Howe the frenche kynge beyng at Tholouse sente for the erle of Foiz, who came thyder and dyd homage to the kynge for the countie of Foiz.*

C A P. CLXIII.<sup>a</sup>

AFTER this cruell iustyce the french kyng taryed nat longe after at Besiers, but departed and toke the way to Carcassone; and always sithe his departure fro Auygnon, his marshall, sir Loys of Xancere, rode in his company. The kynge rode so longe by his iourneys, that he vysited the countreys and kepte nat the right hyghe wayes: he was at Cabestan, at Narbone, at Lymous, at Mounte Royall, and at Fougaux, and than he returned to Carcassone, and there taryed foure dayes: than he rode and passed Vyle Franca, Auygnollet, and Mongiscarte, and so came to Tholouse; and the burgesses there, who greatly desyred to se the kynge, receuyed hym ioyfully, and mette the kyng without the towne, all in a lyuery, and so with greate solempnyte he was brought to the castell of Tholouse. They of the cytie gaued the kinge many fayre presents, wherwith the kynge was greatly reioysed. When the kynge had been there thre dayes, than he was counsayled to sende for the erle of Foiz, who was come out of Byerne into the countie of Foiz, and was in the towne of Masiers,<sup>b</sup> four leages fro Tholouse, for he knew of the kinges state and ordynaūce. The marshall of Fraūce and the lorde de la Ryuer were apoynted to go for the erle of Foiz. They departed on a wednysday, and laye at a cytie in Thoulosyn, called Jordayn, and the next day they came to Nasyers.<sup>b</sup> The erle of Foiz, who knewe well of their comynge, receuyed them nobly for the loue of the Kyng, and also he knewe the lordes well, he had sene them before. Syr Loys of Xancere had the wordes, and said, Syr, my lorde of Foiz, the kynge our soueraygne lorde hath sente vs to you, cōmaundyng you to come to se hym at Tholouse, or els he wyll traueyle so farre that he wyll come and se you in your owne country, for he greatly desyret to se you. The erle of Foyze answered and sayd, Syr Loys, I wolde nat the kynge had so great traueyle to me; it is more mete I haue it for hym; wherfore, if it please you, ye shall shewe hym that I shall be at Tholouse within foure dayes. That is well sayde, syr, quod they; we shall returne and shewe him these tydynge from you. So be it, quod he; howebcit, ye shall abyde here all this daye and refreshe yourselves, and to morowe ye shall departe: they obeyed and taryed that daye and the nyght at their pleasure; and the erle deuysed with theym sagely and craftely, for he was a man, by reason of his fayre langage, to drawe out by one meanes or other the secretes of ons herte: the nexte daye they toke leane eche of other, and rode so long that the same day they came to Tholouse, and founde the kinge playenge at chesse with his vncl the duke of Burbone. Than the kynge demanded of them alowde and sayde, Syrs, howe saye you? wyll the erle come or no? Yes, sir, quod the lorde de la Ryuer, he hath gett affection to se your grace; he wyll be here with you within

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLX.

<sup>b</sup> Mazeres.

within these foure dayes. Well, quod the kyng, and we wyll gladly se hym. The two knyghtes departed fro the kyng, and lefte hym playeng and went to their supper and to reste them, for they had rydden that daye a great journey. The erle of Foiz, who was at Nasyers,<sup>a</sup> remembered well the voyage that he had to do: he made hym redy, and sente before to Tholous for his prouisyon acordyngly: he had sent into Bierne for knyghtes and squiers, for mo than two hundred, to serue and to accompany hym that voiage.

The daye that the erle of Foiz had apoynted, he entred into the cytie of Tholous with mo than syxe hundred horses, and well acompanyed with knyghtes and squyers: there was with hym Bōnuquell and sir Johā his brother, sir Roger of Spaygne his cosyn, the lorde of Courase, ſ lord of Valētyne, the lorde of quare, the lorde of Baruge, sir Espaygne du Lyon, the lorde of Roquepayre, the lorde of Lane, the lorde of Besache, the lorde of Perle, sir Peter of Cabestayne, sir Monaunt of Noualles,<sup>b</sup> sir Richarde de la Mecte,<sup>c</sup> sir Arnolde of saynt Basyll, and dyuers other; sir Peter of Byerne and sir Arnolde his two bretherne, and his two bastarde sonnes, sir Jobbayne<sup>d</sup> and sir Gracyen of Foiz. The entencion of the erle was to enherite those two his sonnes into the moost parte of all the lande of Bierne, of the whiche laude he myght do therwith at his pleasure, for he helde it frāke and free, holdyng of no man but of Godde. Thus the erle toke his lodgyng at the Freers preachers; there he kept his house, and his men lay as nere there about as myght be. The burgesses of Tholous made him great chere, for they loued him well, for alwayes he had been their good neyghbour, curtesse and trefable, for he neuer suffred any of his cōpany to do them any displeasure nor vyolēce, wherfore they loued hym moche the better: they gaue him many fayre presentes of wyne and other thynges, so that he was well contente: he entred into Tholous when it was nere nyght; the nexte daye, about ten of the clocke, he toke his horse, and suche other of his company as pleased hym, mo than two hundred knyghtes and squyers men of honour; and in that estate he rode along through the stretes to the castell where the kyng was; than he alyghted in the fyrst court entryng into the castell; than the erle mouēd vp the greces into the great hall; the frēche kyng was come out of his chambre into the hall, and there taryed for the Erle, and had great desyre to se hym, for his great valure and renome that ran on hym. Therle of Foiz, who was a goodly prince and of a formall stature, beare heeded entred into the hall; and when he sawe the kyng and other lordes of Fraunce, the kynges brother and his vncl, he made his reuerence to the kyng and to none other, and kued downe on his one knee; than he arose and passed forthe, and at the thirde tyme he kneeled nere to the kyng. The kyng toke hym by the hande and embrased him, and toke hym vp and sayde: Erle of Foiz, my fayre cosyn, ye be right welcome; your cōmyng greatlye reioyceth vs. Sir, quod the erle, I thāke your grace that it please you to say so. There the kyng and the Erle talked togyder, the whiche wordes I herde nat all; thañe the kyng went to dyner: at the kynges table at the vpper ende sate tharchebysshop of Tholous, than the kyng and his vncl the duke of Buibone, than nexte the erle of Foiz, than sir Johā of Burbone erle of Marche and of Vandone;<sup>e</sup> at that table sate no mo: at the seconde table satte sir Johan de la Brethe<sup>f</sup> erle of Harcourte, sir Phylippe of Bare, and foure knyghtes of the erle of Foiz: and at another table there sate the marshall sir Loyes of sanxere, sir Roger of Spayne, and eyght other knyghtes of the erles. This was a great dyner and well stuffed of all thynges; and after dyner and grace sayd, they toke other pastymes in a great chābre, and heryng of instrumentes, wherein the erle of Foiz greatlye deltyed; thañe wyne and spyces was brought: the erle of Harecourt serued the kyng of his

<sup>a</sup> Mazereš.<sup>b</sup> Nouailles.<sup>c</sup> La Motte.  
<sup>d</sup> D'Albret.<sup>e</sup> Evan.—Johnes<sup>f</sup> Vendôme.

his spyce plate, and sir Gerrarde de la pyer serued the duke of Burbone, and sir Monnaunt of Nonnalles<sup>a</sup> serued the erle of Foiz. Thus about four of the clocke the erleooke leauc of the kyng and of the other lordes; he issued out of the hall, and in the courte were his horses redy and his men: the erle mouëd, and all suche as accompanied hym, and so returned to his lodgyng. and was well contente with the chere that hadde ben made to hym and his, and praysed it moche to his knyghtes.

Thus bytwene the Frenche Kyng and the Erle Gascoyne of Foiz beyng at Tholous, there was dyuers treaties and apoyntmentes of loue, and the marshall of Fraunce and the lorde de la Ryuer dyde their payne to helpe it forwarde. The erle of Foiz made a dyner to the duke of thourayne and to the duke of Burboue, to therle de la Marche, and to other great Lordes of Fraunce: this dyner was great and sumptuous, and syttyng at the tables mo than ii. hundred knyghtes; and or the dyner was fullye ended, the Frenche kyng, who had dyned in the castell, and with hym sir Charles de la Brethe<sup>b</sup> and sir Philyppe of Bare, and his two cosyn germainys, than the kyng sayde, Go we thyder; and so he dyde but with xii. in his company. The erle of Foiz was greatlye reioysed in that it pleased the kyng to cōe to his lodgyng, and so was all the company. There was sporte after dyner of wrestlyng and castyng the barre, the stone, and the darte, bytwene the Frenchemen and the Gascoyns: thus they passed the tyme tyll it was nere hande nyght; than the kyng and the other lordes returned. The erle of Foiz gaue the same daye to the kynges knyghtes and squyers, and to ʒ duke of Thourayne and to the duke of Burbone, mo thā threscore coursers, palfrayes and mulettes, all with whyte sadels redy drest to apoynt; also he gaue to the kynges mynstrelles and other two hundred crownes of golde, and to the heraudes and offycers of armes other two hundred crownes; so that euery man praysed the larges of the erle of Foiz. The fourthe daye after, the erle came to the kynges palais, well acompanied with lordes and knyghtes of Byerne and of Foiz, to se the kyng and to do as he was requyred; that is to saye, to do his homage for the countie of Foiz, with the appendautes, reseruyng the lande of Bierre. Before that secretlye there had been great treaties bytwene the kyng and the erle of Foiz, by meanes of the lorde de la Ryuer and sir Johan Mercier, and the bysshoppe of Noyon, who was newly come thyder fro Auygnon. It was sayd, that the erle desyred of ʒ kyng that his sonne Jobbayne<sup>c</sup> of Foiz myght after the erles discease enheryte the countie of Foiz; by that, the erle, whansoever he dyed, shulde leaue to the kyng a hūdre thousande frankes in money; and sir Gasyon his brother to haue the lande of Ayre in Bierre with the cytie and the Mounte of Marcen, and all other landes that the Erle of Foiz hadde bought in Bierre shulde retourne to the herytaūce of the vycount of Castyllon:<sup>d</sup> these assignementes were in debate and in dyfference bytwene the erle and the barones and knyghtes of his country. Some sayde he coude nat do thus with a general consent of all Byerne and Foize; and bycause that the meane homage of the countie of Foize was dewe to the Frenche kyng, therefore the kyng sayde to the Erle and to the barons of Foiz: Sirs, I holde in my handes the homage of the lande of Foiz; and if it be so in our dayes that the lande of Foiz be vacant by the dethe of our cosyn the erle of Foiz, than we shall so determyne and apoynt, by the aduise of good counsaile, that Jobbayns<sup>e</sup> of Foiz, and all other men of the cōutie of Foiz, shall holde thē content. Those wordes well cōtented therle of Foiz, and the other lordes and knyghtes of Foiz that were there present: these ordynaunces written and sealed, the erle toke his leaue of the kyng and of all other great lordes; but that daye he dyned with the kyng and than went to his lodgyng: the nexte day he departed fro Tholous, and lefte his furiers<sup>e</sup> behynde hym to paye for euery thyng. The erle passed the ryuer of Gyronde by ʒ bridge of Tholous, and returned into his countrye by the mount of Marsen, and

sg

<sup>a</sup> Nouailles.<sup>b</sup> D'Albret.<sup>c</sup> Evan.<sup>d</sup> Chateau-bon.<sup>e</sup> Purveyors.

so to Ortayes. Than he gauē leane to euery man to departe, sauynge his ordynarye. It was shewed me, and I beleue it well, that the cōmyngē of the frenche kyng into Lāguedocke, into Tholous, and into those marches, cost the erle of Foize more than thre-score thousande frankes. The erle was so lyberall, that whatsoeuer it cost hym he payde it wyllingly.

*Of the feate and conenaunt that was don bytwene the kyng and the duke of Thourayn his brother, whiche of them shulde sonest come to parys fro Mouÿpellyer, whiche is a hūdred and fyftie leagues asoude, eche of them but with one knyght.*

CAP. CLXV.<sup>a</sup>

THE Frenche kyng being at Tholous, he ordred all his businesse, and remoued and renewed seneschales and officers, and reformed the cōuntry into good estate, so that euery mā was well contented; and on a day the kyng (present his brother, his vnclē of Burbone, and the lordes of Fraūce and Gascoyne, to thentent to haue a perpetuall memorie) gauē to his cosyn germayne, sir Charles de la Brethe,<sup>b</sup> for the augmentation of his honour, two quarters of armes of Fraūce, with floure delices: for afore ȝ lordes de la Brethe<sup>c</sup> bare alwayes in their armes a felde of goules playne without any other thyng; nowē they be quartred with the armes of Fraūce, whiche thyng the lorde de la Brethe<sup>b</sup> toke for a great gyfte; whiche lorde made the same daye a great dyner, whiche cost hym more than a thousande frankes; and he gauē to heraudes and mynstrels ii. hundred frankes. Anone after, it was ordayned that the kyng shulde departe fro Thoulous to retourne into Fraunce: euery man made hym redy and toke leane of the kyng, the bysshop of Tholous, the seneschall, and the burgesses, and lordes and damoselles of the towne: the kyng departed and rode that nyght to the newe castell of Alroy, and so forwarde euery daye, so that he came to Mouÿpellyer, where he was ioyfully receyued, and there taryed thre dayes, for the ladyes and damosels there pleased hym moche. Than he had gret desyre to returne to Paris to se the quene: on a daye as he cōmuned in sporte with his brother of Thourayne, he sayd, Fayre brother, I wolde that you and I were at Paris, and all our estate here styll as it is, for I haue great desyre to se the quene and your<sup>c</sup> fayre suster of Thourayne. Than the duke sayde, Sir, we can nat be there with wysshing; it is a farre journey hens. That is true, quod the kyng; yet I thynke I might be soone there, and I wolde. Ye, quod the duke, with helpe of good horses; for so coude I be, but my horse must beare me. Well, quod the kyng, laye a wager you and I who shall be there sonest. I am content, quod the duke; for he was euer redy to wyu money of the kyng. The wager was layde bitwene ȝ kyng and the duke, that whosoever of thē twayne came sonest to Paris shulde wyn fyue thousande frākes of other, and to departe the nexte day all at one hour, and eche of them to take but one knight or seruānt with them: there was no man that durst breke their wager; ȝ nexte day they departed as it was ordayned: the lorde of Garāciers rode with the kyng, and the lorde of Viefuyll was with the duke of Thourayn. Thus these four rode night and day, lyke yong lusty galātes; they chāged many horses; thus they rode in post: ȝ duke of burbone retourned by Puy in Auergne, and rode to se his graūtfather by the way, therle Dolphyn of Auergne, and the countesse and their chyldeyn, of whō there were to the nōbre of eight, what sōnes what daughters, all bretherne and susters to ȝ duches of Burbone his wyfe: but that was by reason of two maryages. Thus the frenche

VOL. II.

3 N

kyng

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXI.<sup>b</sup> D'Albret.  
of Tourayne.<sup>c</sup> " And you, my fair sister-in-law

kyng and his brother the duke of Thourayne rode in great hast, eche of thē to wyn the wager. Cōsyder well the great payne of these two great and riche lordes: youthe and lybertie of corage made thē to do that enterpryce: their estates abode behynde. The frenche kyng made it foure dayes and a halfe or he came to Paris, and the duke of Thourayne no more but four dayes and a quarter of a day, they folowed eche other so nere: ⁊ duke wan the wager, by reason ⁊ the frenche kyng rested himself about viii. of ⁊ clocke at Trois in Chāpayne, and the duke toke a barge in ⁊ ryuer of Seyne, and went alonge the ryuer to Melyn:<sup>a</sup> and there toke his horse and rode so tyll he came to Paris, and so wente to saynt Poule to the quene and to his wyfe, and demaunded tidinges of the kyng, for he wyst nat wheder he were come or nat; and whan he knewe ⁊ the king was nat come he was ioyfull, and said to the quene: Madame, ye shall shortly here tidynges of ⁊ kyng. He sayd trouthe, for the kyng cāe soone after. Whan the duke of thourayn herde that the kyng was come, he went and met hym, and sayd, sir, I haue won my wager; let me be payd. It is reason, quod the kyng, and so ye shall. There they shewed before ⁊ ladies all their iorney, and how ⁊ in four dayes and a halfe they were cōe fro Mountpellier to Paris, whiche was a C.l. leages asondre. The ladyes tourned all the mater to sporte and laughing, but they well iuged that they had endured moche payne: and iuged that youthe and corage of herte caused thē to do it: and the duke of thourayn was truly payd for his wager.

*Of the dethe of pope Vrbayne of Rome, called the Antepape; and howe pope Clement wrote to the Frenche kyng and to his vnclcs, and to the vniuersite; and of the election of pope Boniface by the cardinalles of Rome.*

C A P. CLXVI.<sup>b</sup>

ABOUT the sayd season dyed at Rhome pope Vrbane the vi: the romayns were sore displeasid with his dethe, for he was well beloued: he was buryed in the church of saynt Peter, and after his obsequy done well and reuerētly, than the cardynalles went into the conclaue to chuse a newe pope, and so they dyde, or that pope Clement knewe therof in Auynon, for it was ten dayes past or they knewe it: and assone as pope Clement and his cardynalles knewe therof, they assembled togyder at the popes palays, and had great cōmuncacion togyuder, and were in great hope that the busynesse of the church shulde leue and be concluded, and to come to a full vnyon, for the errour had longe endured: they thought that the cardynals at Rome shulde nat agre so soone to entre into conclaue, but rather to submitte themselves to pope Clemēt at Auignon; they sent also worde to the frēche kyng of ⁊ dethe of Vrbān, called the ante-pape, and desyred hym (the soner to come to their purpose) that he wolde write to his cosyus the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> and the kyng of Hungy,<sup>d</sup> to therle of Vertues, and to the duke of Austrych,<sup>e</sup> who had euer holden with pope vrbane, that they shulde nowe cease, and helpe to make rest and peace in ⁊ churchie: and to shewe them by his letters that in our faythe there ought to be no varyacion: for as there is but one god in heuyn, so ther ought to be but one god in erthe. The same season ⁊ duke of burgoyne was with the kyng at Parys, to whō pope Clement and the cardynals wrote in lyke maner: than the kyng shewed his vnclc these newes, and was right ioyfull, and saide: Fayre vnclc, we haue had gret desyre to go w<sup>t</sup> great puissañce to Rome to distroy theufidels; but as nowe our iourney is well shorted, for Vrbane the antepape is deed, as Clement hath written

to

<sup>a</sup> Melun.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXII.

<sup>c</sup> Germany

<sup>d</sup> Hungary.

<sup>e</sup> Austria.

to vs: and he thynketh that the cardynals wyll nat entre into cōclauē to chuse any newe pope, but rather to come to Auignon and to submyt thēselfes vnder pope Clemēt; and we are desyred by hym and by the cardynals at Auignon, for the more suretie, to write pleasaut letters to our cosins ŷ kyng of Almayne<sup>a</sup> and to his brother the kyng of Hügry, and to ŷ erle Vertues and to ŷ duke of Austriche.<sup>b</sup> What cōsaille wyll ye gyue me to do? The duke of Burgoyne sayd, Sir, trewe it is pope Vrbaue is deed, but as yet we knowe nothyng of the state of the cardynals at Rome, nor of the Romayns, nor whether they wyll kepe their olde opynion or nat: I feare it wyll be harde for them to leaue it, for the Romayns are maysters ouer the cardynalles: by force they made them to chuse the archebysshoppe of Bare, and made hym pope, and so maynteyned hym to thende; and so if nowe by perforce they cause the cardynalles to entre into conclaue, and to chuse a Pope at their pleasure; wherfore, sir, ye shall nat nede to entre so farr into the mater, as to desyre them that wyll do but lytell for you, as they haue shewed yet hydervnto. Suffre, sir, tyll ye here other newes: and paraduenture it maye so be that the cardynalles at Rome shall nat be all of one accorde, and paraduētūre wyll dissymule with the Romayns, and chuse none other pope but Clement; and to apease their furour, to promyse them to cause Clement to come to Romē, whiche he wyll do right gladlye on that condycion; and if the mater go so, than shall it be tyme for you to write to all ŷ princes cristed that are of the opynion cōtrarye to you, in the best maner ye canne to auoyde the Scisme, and to bring the churchē to an vnyon and peace, as by reason euery man ought to do; but as yet ye be nat sure howe the mater gothe; it is best ye abyde the aduētūre therof; it shall nat be longe or we here other tidynges.

Whan the duke of Burgoyne hadde sayde these wordes to the kyng and to his cōsaille, there was none that spake contrarye therto. The kyng thought his wordes were resonable, and sayd, Fayre vncle, we beleue it is good reason that ye saye: ye se more clerer in the mater thā we do; and as for the busynesse of the Churchē, we wyll do nothyng therin but by youre counsaile and aduyse: thus they cessed of that cōmunycacion. Great murmuracyon there was amonge the clerkes of the Vniuersite of those tydynges, wherby they cessed to rede or to studye, and entended to nothyng but to herken and to knowe howe the Cardynalles of Rome maynteyned themselfe; wheder they wolde electe a newe pope, or els to retourne to the pope at Auignon. They dyde cast many doughtes, and argued one with another: they knewe well howe Clement had written to the kyng, and to the duke of Thourayne, and to the duke of Burgoyne, and to the kynges counsaile; in lykewise letters were written generally to the vnyuersite, ŷ they shulde conclude to an vnyuersall peace in the churchē: thus the clerkes deuyed amonge themselfe, and suche as wolde the aduancement of Clement sayde: Nowe it is tyme that the kyng and the lordes of Fraūce write to the great princes of Christendome, as to the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> the kyng of Hungry, the lorde of Myllayne, and to the duke of Austriche,<sup>b</sup> and to suche other as are of our opynion, to thentent ŷ they shulde retourne to the same state: suche writyng maye moche auelye. In thre dayes, thre tymes the notable clerkes of the vniuersyte of Parys assembled togyder, and at last came to saynt Poules to speke with the kyng and his cōsaille, to desyre hym to set to his hande to oppresse the Cysme of the churchē, and to entende to the ordynaūce of pope Clement, who had humbly written to hym; but whan they cāe to saint Poules they were nat answered; the kyng dissymuled the mater with thē, so that they were yuell cōtēt: finally, the kyng contented thē: sayeng howe shortly they shulde here other newes; and so they dyd, for the cardinals of Rome entred into the cōclauē and made a newe pope, the cardynall of Naples, a noble and a valyant clerke; he was called Bonyface. Whan the Frenche kyng and his cōsaille herde therof they were pensyue, for

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Austria.

than they well ymagined howe that þ̄ cysme was lykely to endure longe. Than the duke of Burgoyne sayde to the kyng, Sir, nowe regarde wheder your writynges hadde nat ben loste or no: it is nowe fallen, as I savd. Fayre vncle, quod the kyng, ye save trouthe. Thāne graces were opnyed to all clerkes at Rome by Bonyface, and all promyses certified there, of suche as were vnder his obeysaūce; and suche as wolde receyve suche graces wente towards Rome; and whan they approached the marchesse of Danconne,<sup>a</sup> they rode in great paryll, for sir Bernuarde de la Salle, who kepte the fronters there, and made warre to the Romans in the quarell of pope Clement, toke suche clerkes as paste by, and dyde them moche trouble, and many slayne and loste.

Nowe lette vs leave spekyng of these popes, and tourne to other maters.

*Of the yeldyng vp and takyng of the stronge castell of Vanchadore<sup>b</sup> in Lymosyn, of olde parteynyng to syr Geffray Tete Noyre.*

### CAP. CLXVII.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe sir Geffray Tete Noyre, who had ben longe capitayne of the castell of Vanchadore<sup>b</sup> in Lymosyn, raigned valiauntly: and howe he helde his fortesse agaynst all men as longe as he lyued, and in his lyfe dayes had patesed the coūtrei more than xxx. myle long about hym; also ye haue herde howe he dyed, and by what incidence: and howe on his dethe bedde he ordayne his ii. nephues, Alayne Roux and Peter Roux, to be capitayns of that castell of Vanchadore<sup>b</sup> after his dethe, and caused in his presence all the companyons of that garison to swere faythe, trouthe, and homage, seruyce and trewe obeysaunce to the sayd two capitayns: and alter þ̄ dethe of this Geffraye Tete Noyre, these two bretherne raigned there a certayne space, and held alwaye the coūtrei in warre and in composicion of patesyng; and bycause that castell parteyned to the herytage of the duke of Berrey (for he had bought it of the erle of Moūtpensyer, and his sonne Johan of Berrey bare his name therby), therefore the duke was sore displeased that it was out of his handes, but he coude nat amende it: yet he had layd siege therto dyuers tymes by bastides and none otherwyse; but they within sette lytell therby, for they wolde issue out and ryde abroad in þ̄ countrey at their pleasure. This Alayne nor Peter wolde in no wyse obey any peace or truce that was taken bytwene Englade and Fraunce. They sayde they were nat bonnde to obey, but wolde make warre at their pleasure: wherby the countreis of Auergne and Lymosyn were sore trauevled: and the duke of Berrey, to resyst them, caused sir Wylliam Butler, a gentyll knyght of Auergne, and sir Johan Boesme Launce,<sup>d</sup> and sir Loyes Dabier, with dyuers other knyghtes and squyers of Auergne and Lymosyn, to laye siege by bastydēs to the castell of Vanchadore,<sup>b</sup> and laye there at the cost of the countrey: there they laye a longe season.

So it fell the same season as it was shewed me: Alayn and Peter Roux toke their aduyce toguyder, and denyed to attrappe and to take by crafte sir Wylliam Butler and sir Johan Boesme Launce,<sup>d</sup> who hadde done them dyuers displeasures: these two bretherne ymagined bytwene thē, and sayde one to another, howe they wolde secretly say howe they wolde yelde vp their fortesse for a certayne sōme of floreyns: and to say howe they are wery and wyl kepe the garison no lenger, but to retourne into their owne countreis; to the whiche deuysē, they sayde, surely the duke of Berrey wyl gladly

<sup>a</sup> Ancona.

<sup>b</sup> Ventadour.

<sup>c</sup> Bome-lance.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXIII.



gladly leane vnto: also they deuysed to demaunde no more but tenne thousande frākes, bycause that somme myght soone be made; and also they sayde they wolde haue agayne their money and the two knyghtes also prisoners, by reason of a busshment that they wolde laye in a great towre. Beholde nowe what a folissh ymagination these two Bretons were of to betray these two knyghtes, and to haue their money: if any iuell came to them therby, it ought nat to be cōplayned. Vpon this determynacion they putte out of the castell one of their varletes, and sayde to hym: Go thy way to the Frēche bastydes, and suffre them to take the; thā requyre to be brought to sir Wyllyam Butler and to sir Johan Boesme Launce;<sup>a</sup> than delyuer them this letter fro vs, and demaunde for an answer, for the mater toucheth vs and them also greatly. The varlet sayd it shulde be done, for he thought none yuell: and so went to the Frenche bastides; and whan he came nere to the bastydes he was demaūded what he wolde: he answered and sayd he wolde gladly speke with sir Wyllyam Butler or with sir Johan Boesme Laūce.<sup>a</sup> He was brought to them, for as than they were toguyder: whan he sawe them, he made his reuerence and drewe them aparte, and delyuered to them the letter that Alayne and Peter Roux had sente them. Of that tydinges they had great marueyle, and so toke the letter and reed it, and therin they founde how that Alayne and Peter Roux wolde speke with them for their profite. Whan they herde that, they had more marueyle thane they had before, and douted of trayson; howbeit, they sent them worde, that if they wolde come out of the castell, and speke with them without, they wolde assure them to entre agayne into their fortresse without daunger or trouble. This was the answerē ȳ the varlet brought to their maister. Thanne Alayne and Peter roux said, we thynke we may be sure ynough by these wordes, sythe their faythes and seales be at the writing; they are true knyghtes, and also we shall speke with them for a treatie, wherunto we thynke they wyll gladly entende. The nexte mornyng they opnynd a wycket ioynnyng to the gate, and aueyled downe a planche borde hangyng by two chaynes, and issued out and stode on the planche. Than sir Wyllyam Butler and sir Johan Boesme Laūce<sup>c</sup> came thyder and lyghted of their horses, and made their menne to drawe abacke. Than the two capitayns within said, Sirs: may we surely come out and speke with you? Ye, surely, quod the knyghtes: shall we be as sure agayne of your parte without trayson? Ye, sir, surely, quod they, without doute. Than Alayne and Peter Roux passed the bridge and came to thē; so they four were toguyder without other company. Than the two Frenche knyghtes said, Sirs, howe saye you? what cōmunicacion wyll ye haue with vs? are ye in mynde to yelde vp your Castell to vs? Ye, truly, sirs, quod they, on a condycion: and that is, to gyue vs ten thousande frākes for ʒ prouisyons that is in the castell, for we are very of ʒ warre; we wolde drawe into Bretayne. These two knyghtes were ryght gladdē of those wordes, and sayd, Ah, ye speke to vs of marchandyse, and we shall here you gladly; but as nowe we haue nat here the money redy: we shall prouyde for it. Well, sirs, quod they of Vanchador,<sup>b</sup> whan ye are redy gyue vs knowledge, and we shall kepe couenaunt: but, sirs, kepe this mater secretly and sagely, for if it were knowen amonge myne owne company, they wolde take vs perforce and slee vs; than shulde bothe you and I fayle of our ententes. Syr, quod they, doubt nat therof; we shall so conuey the mater ʒ ye shall take no damage. Therwith they departed one fro another: the bretons entred into Vanchador,<sup>b</sup> and the frenche knyghtes returned to their bastydes.

Sir Willyam Butler and syr Johan Boesme laūce<sup>c</sup> in this mater thought nothyng but good, supposyng that the bretons wolde nat dysceyne them, as to haue their money and to betraye them also: incontynente they wrote to the duke of Berrey, who was as  
than

<sup>a</sup> Bonne-lance.<sup>b</sup> Vanchadour.

than at Ryon in Auuergne: they sent with the letter a gentleman named Guyomell of saynte Wydall, and infourmed hym of all the mater, thynkyng howe it shulde be ioyouse tydynges to the duke, for he greatly desyred to haue that castell. This squyer tooke the letter and departed fro the bastydes, and rode so longe through Lymosyn and Auuergne that he came to Ryon, and there he founde the duke of Berrey, and delyuered hym his letters fro the two knyghtes. The duke reed the letters, and whan he had well vnderstande the contentes therof the duke was gladd: and anone after the duke called his counsayle and his treasurers, and said, Sirs, beholde here is newe tydynges; our knyghtes that kepeth the bastydes before Vanchador<sup>a</sup> haue written to vs that they are in certayne treatie with the capytayns within the castell: they offer to yeld vp the forresse for the some of tenne thousande frankes: that is no great some, for euery yere it coste them of Lymosyn and of Auuergne to kepe warre against them more than threescore thousande frankes: we wyll accepte their offre betymes, leste they repente them hereafter; therefore, my treasurers, make vp the some of tenne thousande frankes; we wyll lende them to the country, and whan I am in possession of the castell, I wyll rayse a tayle in Lymosyn and in the fronters, whiche were vnder their patesynge; they shall pay me the double. Sir, quod the treasurers, it shall be made redy within these fyue or syxe dayes. Well, quod the duke, I am contente. Thus that matter was concluded. The tresurers made redy the money in crownes of the sonne, and put it into foure cofers. The same daye that the money shulde haue been sente, there came to Ryon to the duke of Berrey the Dolphyn of Auuergne and the lorde of Reneyll, for certayne maters touchynge themselves: they were welcome to the duke, and the duke was so ioyfull of the treatie for Vanchador,<sup>a</sup> that he coude nat kepe it secrete, but shewed to these two knyghtes the letters sente to hym fro syr Wyllyam Butler and syr Johan Boesme Launce.<sup>b</sup> Whan they herde it they studyed a lytell: than the duke sayde, syr, wheron do ye muse? se you any suspectiousness in this mater? I pray you shewe me or I sende the money. Syr, quod the erle Dolphyn, ye know well howe therle of Army-nake and I were ordeyned to by and to gette agayne as many fortresses as we coude in the couÿtreys of Auuergne, Carnesyn,<sup>c</sup> Rouergue, and Lymosyn: with dyuers we made treatyes, but for all y euer we coulde do, we coulde neuer brynge them of Vanchador<sup>a</sup> to herkyn or to leane to any maner of treatie, nother to gyue it vp nor to selle it: whan we spake therof they wolde skante make vs an aunswere; and syr, I knowe if they nowe wyll make this treatie with you; it is nat for defaute of vitayles, for if none came to them this eyght yere, yet they haue ynough; wherfore we haue maruayle what shulde moue them therto at this presente tyme; therefore it maketh vs to doute of trayson: for men of warre inclosed in fortresses are sore imagyners, and whan their imaginacion inclyneth to any yuell dede, they wyll craftely colour it; wherfore, sir, take good aduysse. Well, syrs, quod the duke, ye haue sayd well; we shall prouyde for the mater more substancially than I thought to haue done.

Thanne the duke of Berrey called to hym one of his knyghtes, called syr Peter Mespyyn, and sayde to hym: Syr, ye shall go with this money to the bastydes before Vanchadore,<sup>a</sup> and saye to syr Wyllyam Butler and to syr Johan Boesme launce,<sup>b</sup> that in the mater they wrote to me of, that they deale therein substancially, and that they trust nat to moche in the bretons within Vanchador;<sup>a</sup> and shewe them that we haue herde more tydynges than they be ware of; wherfore lette them be well aduysed of all poyntes. Thus this knyght departed fro Ryon with the money; he rode with his company tyll he came to the bastydes, whyther he was welcome: the somers with the money were dyscharged and put in sauegarde. Than syr Peter Mespyyn opened his message and  
said:

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.<sup>b</sup> Bonne-launce.<sup>c</sup> Cahorsin.

said: Syrs, my lorde the duke of Berrey sendeth you worde by me, that as touchyng the treatye that ye are in hande withall, touchyng the garyson of Vanchador,<sup>a</sup> he comaundeth you to worke wysely, that ye lese nat bothe your bodies and the money that he hath sent you; also he sayth he hath herde tydynges that pleaseth hym nothyng; wherefore he wyll ye take good hede and be well aduysed, for he douteth of trayson; he sayeth that oftentimes the couÛtre of Anuergne and Lymosyn wolde haue gyuen for the fortesse of Vanchadore<sup>a</sup> threscore thousande frankes, and nowe to offre it for ten thousande, causeth my lorde the dnke and his counsaile to haue suspecte. The two knyghtes, whan they herde that, they were pensyue, and answered and sayde, We se well double wytte is better than syngle: ye say well; we thanke you of your aduysce, and ye shall abyde here styll with vs, and helpe to counsaile vs as it is reason; within these two daies we shall se howe y<sup>e</sup> mater shall come to passe: he sayde he was contente so to do: thanne anone after these two knyghtes sente a varlet to the castell of Vanchador,<sup>a</sup> for it was as than treuce bytwene the parties, and signyfyed to Alayne Roux and to Peter Roux, that the tenne thousande frankes were redy, and desyryng theym to kepe their promesse: and they answered the varlet, that they wolde kepe their promesse surely, and that whansoeuer they wolde come, to sende theym worde therof.

Alayne and Peter Roux, who thought no good, as it was knowen and proued whan their purpose was broken and knowen, for they had deuysed to haue taken sir Willyam Butler and syr Johan Boesme launce,<sup>b</sup> as they shulde haue entred into the castell of Vanchador,<sup>a</sup> by reasone of a great towre that was within the castell, the whiche was always able to heate the castell. These two knyghtes bretons, who entended nothyng but mallesse, layde in busschement in this towre thyrty men in harnesse, to the entent that whan the frenchemen were entred into the castell, thynkyng to be lordes therof, that in the night these thyrty shulde issue out, and slee and take the frenchemen at their pleasure. Whan they had thus ordayned, than they sente to syr Willyam Butler and to sir Johan Boesme launce,<sup>b</sup> that they shulde come and bringe with them their money, and they shulde haue the castell opened. Of these newes the frenchemen were ioyous, and sayd to the messanger: Retourne to your maysters, and shewe them that to morowe in the mornyng we shall come thyder. The messanger returned, and shewed this to his maysters. The frenche knyghtes wente to counsaile togyder, and dyd cast more doutes than they dyd before, by reason of the wordes that the duke of Berrey had sente them by sir Peter Mespyn: than they ordeyned and concluded to lay a busschement of their men nere to the castell, and than they with thyrty of their men harnessed vnder couert shulde go before and entre into the castell, and to regarde wyselye the castell within, and to cast all maner of doutes: and than if they se any thyng to suspecte, than one of them to blowe a horne, and to kepe the bridge and gate open: and at the sowne of the horne the busschement to come to the gate as faste as they came, and to entre and take season of the castell. Thus as it was ordayned so it was done. The next mornyng every man was redy, and the busschement layde of a syxe score speares; and the two knyghtes, with thyrty in their company couertly armed, came to Vanchador,<sup>a</sup> and syr Peter Mespyn was with them, with the money trussed properly in thre panyers vpon two somers: they founde the two bretons redy at the baryers, who opened the baryers agaynste their comyng: whan they were entred and within the gate, than the two bretons wolde haue closed the gate after them, but the frenche knyghtes said, Nay syrs, be ye true marchauntes or nat? ye knowe well ye muste yelde vp to vs this castell for the payeng of the some of tenne thousande frankes, the whiche is here redy; ye maye se them here vpon this somer; if ye kepe trouth with vs, so shall we do with you.

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.<sup>b</sup> Bonne-lance

you. With those wordes Alayne and Peter Roux wyste nat what to say; but to bringe the frenchemen out of suspecte, they answered, Syrs, ye saye well; we are contente as ye please. Thus they wente forthe and lefte the baryers open, for if it hadde ben closed the busslement coulede nat haue entred to haue come tyme ynough to haue resysted the false turne that the bretons had deuysed: for ymagyners shulde haue euey thyng as they lyst, and if there were nat counter ymaginers agaynst thē. Bothe the frenchemen and bretons entred in at the gate; than Alayne and Peter Roux wolde haue closed the gate, but than the frenchemen sayd, Syrs, let the gate alone; we wyll haue it open; it is reason; we are redy to delyuer you our money acordinge to our promesse. Well, syrs, quod the bretons, lette se laye forthe the money. With a good wyll, quod the frenchemen. There they layde forthe a couerlet, and the florens layde abroad: in ſ̄ meane season, whyle Alayne and Peter Roux behelde the fayre some of floreice, the frenche knyghtes went aboute to se the maner of the castell: thanne syr Peter Mespyn came to syr Willyam Butler, and sayd, syr, cause this great towre to be opened or ye paye all your money, for there may be within it a busslemente, wherby we maye be atrapped and lose bothe our bodyes and the money also. Than syr Willyam sayd to Alayne, Syr, open this towre; we wyll se it open or we delyuer our money. Syr, quod Alayne, I canne nat do so; the keyes be lost. With those wordes the frenche knyghtes had more suspecte in the mater than they had before, and said: Alayne, it can nat be that ye shulde lese the keyes of the soueraygne towre of this castell; open it with fayrenesse, or els we shall open it perforce, for ye haue promised and sworne to rendre to vs the castell as it is, without fraude or male engyn, and therefore you to haue ten thousande frankes, the whiche some is here redy to be delyuered. Than Alayne answered agayne and sayd, I wyll nat open it tyll I haue receyued ſ̄ money, and layde it in sauegarde; than whan I haue receyued the money, I shall serche for ſ̄ keys. Sirs, quod they, we wyll nat abyde so longe; we se clerly by your wordes that your meanyng is nat good, for you wyll dysceyue and betraye vs; wherfore we lay our hādes on you Alayne and on your brother Peter, in the name of the kyng our soueraygne lorde and the duke of Berrey; we wyll haue this towre incontynent opened perforce, and serche euey place within this castell, bothe aboue and beneth, to se if ye haue layde any busslemente or nat; and if we fynde in the castell any thyng done by you, that ought nat to be done, ye are loste without redempcyon or pardone, for reasone wyll so; and if we fynde the castell as it ought to be, we shall kepe our bargayne with you well and truely, and shall conducte you whyder ye lyste; to the gates of Auignon, if ye wyll. Whan Alayne and Peter Roux sawe howe the mater wente, and that they were arested, they were sore abasshed, and were as halfe deed, and repented them that they had doone so moche, for they sawe well they were dysceyued. Than the frenche knyghtes perceyued well howe they were culpable, and that the mater was nat well: than they made a signe to hym that bare the horne to blowe, and so he dyd: whan the french busslement berde it, they came to ſ̄ castell as faste as their horses coulede ryn, and sayd, Go we to Vanchadore;<sup>2</sup> they blowe for vs; it semeth our men hath nat founde the castell acording as it was promysed; we thynke there be some trayson: anon they were come to the castell, for they were nat farre of; the baryers were open and kept by the frenchmen, for the bretons within were nat maysters of the castell, for their busslemente were within the towre. The Frenchemen entred, and founde the capytaynes in the courte, commynge with the bretons.

Than Alayne and Peter were sore abasshed, seyng so many of their enemyes aboute them; and as for them that were within the towre knewe nothyng of the besynesse, nor

<sup>2</sup> Ventadour.

nor coude se nor here nothyng, the towre was so thicke. Some that were within sayde: Harke, syrs, me thynke I here moche murmuryng without; we may be dysceuyed; frenchemen be subtile; we thought to take, but I feare we be taken; our capitayn Alayne is dysceuyed and we to; I feare we shall nat issue out without their congye. Thus whan the frenchemen sawe howe they were lordes of the castell, they were than bolder than before, and tooke and put vp agayne their floreyns, and sayd to Alayne, delyuer vs the keyes of this towre, for we wyll se what is within. The bretons prolonged the mater and sayde, Syrs, begynne fyrste to serche in other places, and thā returne to this towre. The frenchmen answered, Alayne, ye do but prolōge the mater, for we wyll begynne here fyrst: and outhar at ones delyuer the keyes, or els thou shalt be slayne with these daggers. Whan the two bretherne herde that they douted the dethe; they fledde fro it as longe as they myght; howbeit, to saye the trouth, it had been more honorable for them to haue been slayne there than to haue taryed any lenger, for afterwarde they dyed a shamefull dethe, as ye shall here. And Alayne Roux beyng in this daunger, yet practysed another crafte, if it wolde haue serued, and sayd: Syr Willyam and ye syr Johan, it is of trouth that within this toure are thirty men in harnesse; my brother and I dyd sette them there with moche payne, for we knewe well they wolde neuer agree to our apoyntement, therefore we haue closed them within this towre to be sure of them, tyll we haue the full possession of the castell, and there ye may haue them and ye wyll; they are all good prisoners: and delyuer vs our money as ye haue promysed, and lette vs go our wayes. Whan the french knyghtes herde that they were somewhat better content than they were before, and studyed a lytell: than sir Willyam Butler saide, howsoeuer it be, or we delyuer our money we wyll haue knowledge of all the keyes of this castell; therefore shew vs where they be. Whan Alayne sawe it wolde be none otherwyse, he sente for them into his chambre: whan they were brought to the place, than it was demaūded whiche keyes serued for y<sup>e</sup> towre. Alayne, full sore agaynste his wyll, shewed forthe the keyes of the great towre: than they opened the towre, and founde within the thyrty companions in harnesse hydde priuely within the towre. Alayne and his brother were sore abashed whan they sawe the frenchmen entre into the towre, and harde the wordes that sir Willyam Butler sayd, whiche were these: Syrs, issue out fayre and easely one by one; if nat, ye are all but deed; we take you as prisoners: feare nat the dethe, ye shall haue no hurte, so ye wyll shewe the trouth of that we shall demaunde of you. Whan they sawe the frenchemen, and vnderstode that they shulde nat be slayne, but taken as prisoners, they layde downe their weapons and harnesse, and yelded themselves, for they sawe well defēce coulde nat aueyle them. There the thyrty men were taken and put aparte and examyned, and there they iustifyed the trayson before Alayne and Peter Roux, who coulde nat denye it. Than the knyghtes of Fraunce sayde to them, Syrs, it greatly dyspleaseth vs to fynde you in this default; we canne nat punyssh the mater, the cause is so weighty; we shall put it to the discrecyon of the duke of Berrey; if he wyll haue pytie on you we shall be gladd therof; we trust he wyll, for the ioye that he wyll haue for the recouring of this castell, for it was the place that he most desyred to haue agayne of all the worlde. These wordes somewhat comforted them: they were put into a chambre vnder sure kepyng, and other into dyuers chambres and towres. Than the castell was serched aboue and beneth; there they founde great prouysyon, and lefte it all there styll, and toke away nothyng therof at their departyng; and as for golde, syluer, and harnesse, therof was made a boty, and euery man had his parte: and the prisoners, the knyghtes had them for their parte.

Thus as I haue shewed, the stronge castell of Vanchadore<sup>a</sup> was taken by the frenche-  
VOL. II. men

men in this season; and than syr Wyllyam Butler sette there a capytayne, a squyer of Lymosyn, a valyaunt man, called Pier Madych, and with hym a thyrty speares of good men of warre; and they ransomed their prysoners, suche as were worthy to be ransomed; and suche as were great pyllers and robbers, and frenchmen borne, they strake of their hedes and hanged them vpon gybettes, newe made before the castell gate. Than the frenche knyghtes departed to go to Ryon to the duke of Berrey, and toke with them Alayne and Peter Roux. Tydinges sprauge abrode howe the stronge castell of Vanchadour<sup>a</sup> was taken, wherof the cuntry of Auvergne and Lymosyn and those marchesse were greatly reioysed, for the castell had been out of the frenchemennes handes more than fyftene yere, and duryng that season that garysone had done great damage to the cuntry. Sir Wyllyam Butler founde in the castell a yonge squier of Bretayne, a fayre yong man named Monadich, and was cosyn to Geffray Tete noyre, and he was but newlye come thyder to lerne to exercyse dedes of armes; he had ben brought vp in an abbaye in Bretayne, and was come out of the house bycause he wolde be no monke. The frenchemen wolde haue stryken of his heed amonge other, but sir Wyllyam Butler had pytie on hym, and saued his lyfe, with that he wolde become frenche and serue hym. Thus the frenchmen rode to the duke of Berrey, and brake vp their bastydes: the men of armes departed and went euery man to their owne, and fy capytaynes came to Ryon to the duke of Berrey, and led with them the bretons, who desyred thē on the waye y they shulde nat enfourme the duke of Berrey to sore agaynst them. The frenchmen promysed to fulfyll their desyre. So longe they rode that they came to Ryon, and there founde the duke and the duchesse, who receuyed them with great ioy, for he rekened it to be a gret acte the conquering of the castell of Vanchadore,<sup>a</sup> and gaue them fayre gyftes and presentes. Than they demaunded of the duke what his pleasure was shulde be done with Alayne and Peter Roux. He answered, he wolde take aduysse in that matter; and so toke counsaile: and there it was determyned that he shulde sende them to the kyng; and so they were delyuered to the seneschall of Auvergne, and he cōueyed them to Parys, and there they were put in prison in the castell of saynte Anthony, in the kepyng of the vycount of Asser, who as at that tyme had the kepyng of y castell; and they had nat ben longe there but that they were delyuered to the prouost of Parys, and put into the chatellet, and there iudged to dye as traytours and robbers of the realme of Fraunce. Than they were delyuered to the hangman, and fast bounde and layde in a carre, and brought with trompettes to the place of execucion, named y halles,<sup>b</sup> and there set on the pillery, and turned four tymes aboute in the syght of all the people: and there was openly red and publysshed all their dedes, and thā beheaded and quartered, and their quarters sent to the four chiefe gates of the cytie. Thus Alayne and Peter Roux lost shamfully their lyues and the castell of Vanchadore.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.<sup>b</sup> Les halles.

*Of the dedes of armes at saint Ingylbertes contynnyng thyrty dayes agaynste all comers of the realme of Englande and other countreys: every man thre courses.*

C A P. CLXVIII.<sup>a</sup>

IN this season and in the meane tyme that the treuse was thus bytwene Englande and Fraunce, bothe by lande and by see, though the kinges and their subiectes helde well the peace, yet was there certayne pyllers and robbers in Auvergne, who made warre to the poore men on bothe sydes the ryuer of Dordone; but the capytayns that had gyuē vp their fortresses by reason of that treatie dyssymuled the matter: by reason of their dissymulacion the cōtrey of Auvergne receyued great damage, so ȳ the complaintes therof came to Parys; than the french kyng was counsayled to sende to the kyng of Englande, signyfyenge hym of the state of these robbers that made warre thus in the country, vnder coloure of their patesyng, the whiche ought nat to be done. I thinke the king of Englande excused hymselfe of the mater, and to prouyde therfore. The same season the thre foresayd knyghtes, that is to say, the yonge Bouciquant, Raynolde of Roy, and the lorde of saint Pye, who had enterprised to do armes about the marches of Calays, nere to saynte Ingilbertes, made them redy to acōplysse their desyre, and to fulfill their promesse and the right of armes: for it was openly declared and published, and specyally in ȳ realme of Englande, in the which realme there were knyghtes and squyers quyckened to the mater, and were in gret imagynaciōs to knowe what they might best do. Some said it shulde be greatly to their blame and reproche, such an enterprise taken so nere to Calays, without they passed the see, and loke on those knyghtes that shulde do armes there. Suche as spake most of the mater was, first, syr Johan of Holande erle of Huntynghdon, who had great desyre to go thyder; also syr Johan courtney, syr Johan Traicton,<sup>b</sup> syr Johan Golouffer, syr Johan Russell, syr Thomas Shyrborne, syr Willyam Clyfton, syr Willyam Clynton, syr Willyam Taylboys, syr Godfrey Seta, syr Willyam hacquenay, syr Johan Vobeas, syr Johan Dambretycourt, syr Henry Beamond, and dyuers other, mo than a hūdred knyghtes and squiers, all these sayd: Let vs prouyde to go to Calays, for the knyghtes of Fraunce hath nat ordayned that sporte so nere our marches, but to the entent to se vs there; and surely they haue done well, and do lyke good companions, and we shall nat fayle them at their busynes. This mater was so published abrode in Englande, that many suche as had no desyre to do dedes of armes theymselfe, yet they sayd they wolde be there to loke on them that shulde. Suche as thought to be there, sent afore to Calays to make prouysion to kepe their astate, and sente over their horse and harnes bothe for peace and warre. When the day aproched, sir Johā Holāde, brother to the kyng of Englāde, fyrst passed the see, and mo than lx. knyghtes and squiers with hym, and aryued at Calays, and there toke vp their lodgynges.

At thentryng in of ȳ ioly fresshe moneth of May these thre yong knyghtes of Fraūce, suche as shulde do dedes of armes at saynt Ingilbertes, thus first they cāe to Boloyn and taryed there a season, and than came to thabbay of saint Ingilbertes. Than they vnderstode how there were a great nōbre of knyghtes and squyers cōe out of Englande to Calays, wherof they were ryght ioyfull; and to the entent that the brute shulde cōe to Calays, they ordavned in a fayre playne bytwene Calays and saynt Ingilbertes thre fressh grene paulyōs to be pyght vp; and at the entre of euery paulyon there hanged

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXIV.<sup>b</sup> Drayton?

two sheldes with the armes of the knyghtes; one shelde of peace, another of warre; and it was ordayned that suche as shulde ryne and do dedes of armes shulde touche one of the sheldes, or cause to be touched, whiche as pleaseth them, and he shulde be deluyered acordyng to his desyre. To speke of this mater, I shall shew you: the xxi. day of the moneth of May, acordyng as it had ben published, these thre frēch knyghtes were redy in the place to furnishe their interprice; and the same day knyghtes and squyers issued out of Calays suche as wolde iust, and also suche other as had pleasure to regarde that sporte: and they came to the sayde place apoynted, and drewe all on y one parte: the place to iust in, was fayre, grene and playne. Syr Johan Holande first sente to touche the shelde of warre of sir Boucyquaut, who incontynent issued out of his pauylyon, redy mounted, with shelde and speare: these two knyghtes drewe fro other a certayne space: and whan eche of them had well aduysed other, they spurred their horses and came togyther rudely; and Boucyquante strake the erle of Huntyngton through the shelde, and the speare heed glente ouer his arme and dyd hym no hurt: and so they passed forthe, and tourned and rested at their pase: this course was greatly prayed; the seconde course they met without any hurte doynge; and the thyrde course their horses refused and wolde nat cope. The erle of Huntyngton, who had gret desyre to iust, and was somewhat chafed, came to his place, abydyng that sir Boucyquaut shulde take his speare: but he dyd nat, for he shewed that he wolde no more rynne that day agaynst therle; and whan the erle sawe that, he sent his squyer to touche the shelde of warre of the lorde of saynt Pye; and he that wolde nat refuse, issued out of his pauylyon, and toke his horse, shelde, and speare; and whan the erle sawe that he was redy, he spurred his horse, and saynt Pye in lykewyse; they couched their speares, but at the metyng their horses crossed, but with the crossyng of their speares the erle was vnhelmed: than he returned to his men, and incontynent he was rehemed and toke his speare, and saynt Pye his, and than ran agayne, and met eche other with their speares in the myddes of their sheldes, so that nere hande they were bothe borne downe to the erthe; but they gryped fast their horses with their legges, and so saued themselves, and returned to their places and toke their brethes. Syr Johan Holande, who had gret affection to do honorably, toke agayne his speare and spurred his horse; and whan the lorde of saynt Pye sawe hym comyng, he dashed forth his horse to encountre hym; eche of them strake other on their helmes, that y fyre flasshed out: with y ataynt the lorde of saynt Pye was vnhelmed: and so they passed forthe and came agayne to their owne places. This course was greatly prayed; and both frenche and englysshe said that those thre knyghtes, the erle of Huntyngton, sir Bouciquaut, and the lorde of saynt Pye had ryght well done their deuoys, without any damage eyther to other: agayne the erle desyred, for loue of his lady, to haue another course, but he was refused: than sir Johan Holande went out of the renke, to gyue place to other, for he had ronne all his sixe courses well and valyaūty, so that he had laude and honoure of all parties. Than stept forth a gentle knight of Englāde, called the erle Marshall; he sent to touche the shelde of warre of sir Raynolde of Roy, who issued out of his pauylyon, armed at all peces, and toke his horse, shelde, and speare; and whan these two knyghtes were asonder, they spurred their horses and came fyersly togyther: the first course they fayled, by outragyng of their horses, wherwith they were sore dyspleased; at the ii. course sir Raynolde was stryken and the spere broken; the iii. course, eche strake other on their helmes w suche force, y the fire flewe out, and therle Marshall was vnhelmed, who passed forthe and returned to his place and iusted no more y day, for he had done ynough: than cae forth y lorde Clyfford, a right apt and a valyāt knight of Englāde, cosyn germain to sir Johñ Chādos, who was a noble valiant knight in his dayes; he sent to touche the shelde of warre of sir Bouciquaut; incontynent the knight issued out of his pauylyon w shelde and spere: these two knyghtes came rudely togider, and strake eche



eche other on  $\hat{y}$  helm, that the fyre sparclde; their speares brake nat, nor the knyghtes lost no styropes: so passed by, and came to their places, and made thē redy to ryn the ii. course, and so came togyder wout any sparing: sir Bouciquaut brake his spere, but he was vnhelmed and yet fell nat; they passed forthe and came to their places. Sir Loyes Clifforde made hym to iust agayne, but Bouciquaut dyd nat put on agayne his helme;  $\hat{y}$  seyng, the lorde Clifforde aduysed to performe his course with another. Than he sente his squyer to touche  $\hat{y}$  shelde of warre of  $\hat{y}$  lorde of saynt Pye, who came forthe redy to iuste: they ran togyuder, and met eche other;  $\hat{y}$  lorde Clifforde brake his spere in thre peces on  $\hat{y}$  lorde of saynt Pyes shelde; and the lorde of saynt Pye strake the lorde Clyfforde on the helme, so that he was dishelmed: and so passed forthe: eche of them drewe to their place, and the lorde Clifforde ran no more that day, for it was shewed hym howe he had right honorably borne hymselfe that daye. Than came forth a noble knight of englāde, called sir Hēry Beamōde; he caused to be touched sir bouciquantes shelde of warre, who was soone redy to answeere; they ran togyder; the lorde Beamōde crossed, and Bouciquaut strake hym so rudely, that he bare hym to therthe and passed forthe:  $\hat{y}$  knight was releued by his men, and set agayne on horsbacke, and so ran agayn togyder two other courses without any dōmage. Thā sir Peter Courtney, who had great desyre to ryn sixe courses, caused his squyer to touche all thre sheldes of warre, wherof  $\hat{y}$  frēchmen had marueile, and demaunded what he entēded therby: he answered, that it was his pleasure to ryn with eche knight ii. courses, without he were lette by the way. His desyre was graunted. Than sir Raynolde du Roy ran first; they came togider with good aduysēmet; howbeit, the first course they fayled, for their horses refused at  $\hat{y}$  cope,<sup>b</sup> wherwith they were sore displeased; they fayled nat at  $\hat{y}$  ii. course, but sir Raynold dishelmed the englysshe knyght, and passed forthe and returned to his place and held hi styll, for he had ron his two courses. Than  $\hat{y}$  lorde of sait Pye cāe forthe to iust, and ran eche agaynst other and brake their speres; and the ii. course the lorde of saint Pye strake sir Peter Courtney across, and sir Peter strake hym on  $\hat{y}$  helme and vnhelmed hym, and so cāe to their owne places: than sir Bouciquaut, to acōplisshe sir Peters desire, came forthe, and ran and met eche other in  $\hat{y}$  myddes of their sheldes so rudely,  $\hat{y}$  both their horses stakered in the place; more hurt there was nat;  $\hat{y}$  ii. course they vnhelmed eche other. These vi. courses done, sir Peter Courtney desyred to ryn one course more with one of  $\hat{y}$  thre knyghtes which as pleased thē; but he was refused, and it was sayd to hym  $\hat{y}$  he had done ynough for  $\hat{y}$  day; so he rested. Than preced forthe a gētylman of Englāde, called sir Johñ Gouloufer; he sent to touche  $\hat{y}$  shelde of sir Raynolde du Roy, who was redy to answeere: they ran frely togyder, and ataynted ech other of the helmes, without dishelmyng or brekyng of their speres, and so passed by: the secōde course their horses refused to mete: the iii. course they met in their sheldes and brake their staves: the fourth course they mist: the v. course they vnhelmed eche other and returned to their places. Than a valiant knight of Englāde, called sir Johñ Rosseau,<sup>a</sup> who was a well trauelled knight and well knowen, he touched the shelde of  $\hat{y}$  lord of saint Pye:  $\hat{y}$  knight was redy to answeere: they ran togyder and met so rudely  $\hat{y}$  their horses stayed with  $\hat{y}$  cope:<sup>b</sup>  $\hat{y}$  ii. course their horses swarued asyde and myst eche other, wherof the knyghtes were displeased: and the iii. course they met and strake ech other in  $\hat{y}$  viser of their helmes, so  $\hat{y}$  they were botle vnhelmed: the englysshe knyght returned to his cōpany and iusted no more. Than came forthe sir Peter Shirborne, a yong knight, and touched  $\hat{y}$  sheld of sir Bouciquaut;  $\hat{y}$  knight was redy, and ran togider and myst by outraging of their horses; they taried nat long, but ran togider agayne the ii. course, and strake eche other in the syght of their helmes: sir Bouciquantes spere brake; thenglysshe knyghtes spere helde; so  $\hat{y}$  therby

<sup>a</sup> Russell.<sup>b</sup> "Coup:" stroke.

therby sir Boucyquaut was vnhelmed so rudely,  $\text{ȝ}$  the blode ran out at his nose, and so he returned to his pauylyon and ran no more that day, for it was nere night; but sir Peter shirborne wolde nat leue so, but wolde ryn out his iii. course; he sent to touche the shelde of the lorde of saint Pye, who was incōtinent redy: they ran togider, and tainted eche other on  $\text{ȝ}$  helmes, but their speres grated nat; if they had, by moost lykelihood they had taken hurte: the ii. course they strake eche other on  $\text{ȝ}$  sheldes, and brake their staves in thre peces, and thēgylisse knight was borne to therthe: they ran no more  $\text{ȝ}$  day, for it was nere night. Than the englyssshmen drewe togider, and departed and rode to Calays, and there deuysed that nyght of that had ben done that day: in lykewise the frēchmen rode to saynt Ingylbertes, and cōmuned and deuised of  $\text{ȝ}$  had ben done  $\text{ȝ}$  same day.

The tuesday after masse, all suche as shulde iust that day, or wolde gyue the lokyng on, rode out of Calis and came to the place apoynted: and the Frēchmen were redy there to receyve thē: the day was fayre and hote. Whan thenglyssshmen were armed, than sir Wyllyam Clylton, an expert knight of Englande, caused his squier to touche the targe of sir Boucyquaut; incōtinent the knight issued out of his pauylyon, armed at all peces: the two knightes came togider, and taynted eche other on the shelde, and passed by without brekyng of their speares: the ii. course they crossed on their helmes: the iii. course they encountred ech other so on  $\text{ȝ}$  sheldes,  $\text{ȝ}$  their horses stode styl: the ii. course was well employed; they vnhelmed eche other: the englysshe knight ran no more; it was said to hym he had done ynough. Than on thēgylisse parte came forthe a lusty yong knight, called sir Nicholas clynton; he touched  $\text{ȝ}$  lorde of saynt Pies shelde; the knight anon was redy: they met togider so eyn  $\text{ȝ}$  eche of thē brake their speres in iii. peces, with suche force  $\text{ȝ}$  the knightes were in dāuger to haue taken damage; but they passed by and cāe to their places: the ii. course they tainted eche other on  $\text{ȝ}$  helmes and passed by:  $\text{ȝ}$  iii. course their horses crossed and fayled:  $\text{ȝ}$  iii. course  $\text{ȝ}$  lorde of saynt Pye vnhelmed the englysshe knight, who ran no more  $\text{ȝ}$  daye, for men said he had well and valiantly done and quited hymselfe, and how other must haue place to iust. Thā a kynsman of therle of Hūtingdon cāe forthe, called Wyllyam Stamert; he caused to touche  $\text{ȝ}$  shelde of sir Raynold of Roy; they ran togider  $\text{w}$  fre wyll, and tainted eche other;  $\text{ȝ}$  englysshe knight lost his spere: the ii. course they met, but thēgylisse knight swarued aside; I can nat tell wheder the faut was in the knight or in  $\text{ȝ}$  horse; but sir Raynolde strake hym so rudely on  $\text{ȝ}$  targe,  $\text{ȝ}$  he sore reuersed, and so passed by, and made thē redy to ryn the third course: and so tainted eche other on  $\text{ȝ}$  helmes,  $\text{ȝ}$  the fire sprang out and lost both their speres:  $\text{ȝ}$  iii. course they ataynted ech other in  $\text{ȝ}$  sight of their helmes;  $\text{w}$  that course sir Wyllyam stamert was dishelmed and nigh borne to therthe; howbeit, he fell nat, and returned to his cōpany and ran no more  $\text{ȝ}$  day. Than another squyer of Englade cāe forth, called Lācastre; he sent to touche  $\text{ȝ}$  shelde of sir Boucyquaut: they ran togider, and tainted ech other on  $\text{ȝ}$  helmes  $\text{ȝ}$  the fire flew out, and marueyle it was  $\text{ȝ}$  they had nat ben vnhelmed: it was nat long tyll they ran the ii. course, but their horses crossed: the thirde course they were both vnhelmed; and the Englysshe squyer iusted no more  $\text{ȝ}$  day. Than a yonge knight, called sir Johā Taylboise, iusted with the lorde of saynt Pye, and encoūtrede eche other on  $\text{ȝ}$  sheldes, and brake their staves: the ii. course their horses crossed; and the iii. course they were both vnhelmed: the Englysshe knight ran no more that day. Than stepte forthe sir Godfray of Seca,<sup>a</sup> a gentyll knight and a good iuster, and that was well sene by hym; he encoūtrede with sir Raynolde du Roy: they came right togider and mette in their sheldes; the speres were good and wolde nat breke, so  $\text{ȝ}$  it made their horses to recule, and than recouered and kepte styl their speres, and than ran agayne the seconde course; the ressed in faute of the horses and nat of the knyghtes, and they lost bothe their staves: they ran agayne the iii. course; the Englysshe knight strake sir Raynolde

<sup>a</sup> Before called *Seta*.

Raynolde on the helme that he was vnhelmed: and sir Raynolde strake  $\hat{y}$  Englysshe knight on the targe so rudely and with suche strength, (for he was called one of the best iusters in all the realme of Fraunce: also he lyued in amours with a yong lady, whiche aueyled hym in all his businesse,) that he perced the $\hat{g}$ lissmans targe clene through, and the speare heed entred into the arme, and the spere brake, and the tronchon stacke styll in  $\hat{y}$  shelde and in the knyghtes arme: yet for all  $\hat{y}$ , the knyght made his turne, and came to his place fresshly: than his cōpany drewe out the tronchyon, and bounde his arme, and sir Raynolde retornned to his cōpany.

Of that course sir Raynolde du Roy was greatly prayed on bothe parties, for all  $\hat{y}$  hurtyng of the knight, for suche is the aduētures of armes: to some good, to some yuell. Than came forthe an Esquier of Englande, called Blaquet, and sent to touche the shelde of the lorde of saynt Py, who was redy to answeere: they couched their speares and ran toguyder:  $\hat{y}$  first course they taynted eche other on their helmes, and loste their stauers; they toke their stauers agayne, and in  $\hat{y}$  aprochyng their horses crossed, and so passed by, and retornned agayne to their places: they taryed nat long, but ran eche at other: with  $\hat{y}$  course Blaquet strake  $\hat{y}$  lorde of saynt Pye a hie on  $\hat{y}$  helme, and gaue hym a sore stroke, and saynt Pye strake him in the sight of the helme a sorer stroke, so that therwith he was so vnhelmed, that  $\hat{y}$  bocle behynde brake, and the helme fell to the groude: than Blaquet retornned to his cōpany, and iusted no more that day: and  $\hat{y}$  lorde of saynt Pye sate styll on his horse abyding other comers. Than a gentyll knight of Englande, called sir Johā Bolcas, touched the shelde of the lorde of saynt Pye, who was there redy to answeere: they strake eche other on the shelde that it was marueile they were nat perced, for their speeres were strong; howbeit, they passed by, and lost their speares without any other dōmage: the ii. course they taynted on the helmes without any hurte, and passed by:  $\hat{y}$  iii. course they crossed: the iiiii. course the lorde of saynt Pye vnhelmed rudelye sir Johan Bolcas: after that course the englysshe knight ran no more. Than a yong knyght of Englande, richely armed, named Thomelyn Massydone, he touched  $\hat{y}$  shelde of warre of sir Bouciquaut: he was incontynent answered: the first course they crossed on the helmes: the ii. course they met, and Thomelyn brake his spere in trōchions, and Bouciquaut strake hym so sore that he bare hym to the erthe ouer his horse backe; than his cōpanyon toke hym vp and he iusted no more. Than another squier of Englande, called Nauerton, touched the shelde of sir Bouciquaut, sayeng howe he wolde reuenge his company, whom Bouciquaut had ouerthrowen in his presence, who was redy to answeere: the first course they strake eche other in the viser of their helmes, without any other dōmage: the ii. course they strake eche other in their sheldes, so  $\hat{y}$  their horses reculed, and brake their speares in thre peces: than they retornned to their places, and toke newe speares, and met agayne togyder: sir Bouciquaut receyued a great stroke on  $\hat{y}$  shelde, but he strake Nauerton in suche wyse that he was vnhelmed, who ran no more that day, for euery man sayde he had well acquyted hymselfe. Than another squyer, called Sequaqueton,<sup>2</sup> an experte man of arnes, sente to touche the shelde of sir Raynolde du Roye; the knyght was redy to answeere, well mouēd with shelde and speare: they mette so rudely that Sequaqueton<sup>2</sup> bare hymselfe well fro fallynge, for he had suche a stroke that he sore reuersed; howbeit, he releued and passed forthe, but he lost his spere: the next course they mette rudely on their helmes, so that the fyre flashed out: the iii. course Sequaqueton<sup>2</sup> was vnhelmed, so that bothe he and his horse were astonyed and retornned to his company, and iusted no more that day, nor no man els, for the night aproched. Than the Englysshemen retornned to Calys, and the frēchmen to saynt Inglybertes.

Ye

<sup>2</sup> Swinnerton ?—*Johnes*.

Ye may well knowe that Charles the frenche kyng was sore desyrous to be at those iustes; he was yonge and lyght of spiryte, and glad to se newe thynges; it was shewed me, that fro the begynnyng he was there present, dysgyssed as vnknowne, so that none knewe hym but the lorde of Garāsyers, who cāe also with hym as vnknowne, and every day returned to Margison.<sup>a</sup> Than on Ʒ wednesday the englysshmen rode fro Calais, and came to the place of Ʒ iustes: than a squier of Englande, called Johā Sauage, sente to touche the shelde of warre of sir Raynold of Roy: the knight was redy in his paunlyon, and issued out and mouēd on his horse; thā they came togider with great randon, and strake eche other on their sheldes, in suche wyse that if their sheldes had nat broken, outhur one of the men or bothe had ben stricken to Ʒ groūde; this was a goodly and a daungerous course; howbeit, the knyghtes toke no damage; their speres brake to their hādes, and the heedes stacke styll in their sheldes; euery man fered they had ben hurt: so euery partie cāe to their cōpany: and when it was knowne that they had no hurt, euery man was ioyfull and sayd, howe they had done ynough for that day; but those wordes pleased nothyng Johan Sauage, for he sayd he was nat come ouer the see to ryn but one course. Those wordes were shewed to sir Raynolde du Roy, and he answered and sayd: it is reason that he be answered, outhur by me or by some of my cōpany. Than they toke newe sheldes and speares, and ran agayne togyder, but at the cope their horses crossed and so fayled ech other, wherwith they were sore displeased, and for angre cast away their speres and toke newe; and at the thirde course they taynted eche other in the syght of their helmes, in suche wyse that bothe were vnhelmed; euery man praysed that course. The englysshemen came to Johan Sauage, and said, howe he had ryght honorably acquyted hymselfe that daye, and howe he had done ynough, for there were other to ryn. He obeyed and ran no more, and alyghted of his horse, and lept on a small hackeney to se other rynne.

Than a Squyer of Englande came forthe, cosyn to the erle Marshall, called Wyllyam Basquenaye: he touched the shelde of sir Bouciquaut; the knyght was redy to answer. They came togyder as streyght as they coude deuyse, and strake eche other in the syght of the helmes, in suche wyse Ʒ bothe were vnhelmed; they passed forthe their course frāke and frely: anone, they were agayne helmed, and ran togider and strake eche other on their sheldes, and brake their speares withoute any other dōmage; the thirde course they crossed, wherwith they were sore displeased; the fourthe course Wyllyam Basquenay was agayne vnhelmed, and so ran no more that daye. Than another Englyssh squyer, called Scot, ran agayne the lorde of saynt Pye; the fyrst course they encoūtrede so rudely, Ʒ their horses stakered, and the speres helde, yet they lost their speres; than they made them redy to ryn the seconde course: and they met in suche wyse Ʒ the lorde of saynt Pye was vnhelmed, and the squier moche praysed for that course: agayne the thirde course they encoūtrede eche other on Ʒ sheldes, in suche wyse that Johā Scot was stryken downe ouer his horse croupe; thus the lorde of saynt Pye was reuēged; thēglyssh squyer was releued and brought to his cōpany, and ran no more that day. Than another englyssh squyer, called Bernarde Stapleton, he touched the shelde of Ʒ lorde of saynt Pye; they came togider and taynted eche other on their helmes Ʒ the fyre flashed out, and so passed by without any other dōmage, and kepte styll their speres; the ii. course they mette in their sheldes rudely, yet they kept their horses, and so passed forth their course: the thirde course they vnhelmed eche other: thenglyssh squyer ran no more that day. Than stepte forthe a gentyll knyght of Englande, yonge and fresshe, a iolly daūcer and synger, called sir Johā Arudell: he ran agayne

<sup>a</sup> Marquise.

agayne sir Raynold du Roy; at the first course they mette rudely, and strake eche other on their sheldes, but they helde themselves without fallynge, and passed forthe their course, but they lost their staves: the ii. course they attaynted eche other on their helmes, that sparkes of fyre flewe out without other dōmage: the iii. course they crossed and loste their staves: the iiij. course they taynted on their helmes: the v. course they brake their speres on their sheldes, and than sir Johā Arūdell ran no more that day. Than another squyer of Englāde, called Nicholas Seon,<sup>a</sup> a proper man of armes, ran agaynst sir Bouciquaut: the first course they strake eche other on their helmes a great attaynt: the ii. course they strake eche other on their sheldes, in suche wyse that their horses were astonved, and they lost their speares: ⁊ iii. course they strake eche other on the helmes, and Nicholas Seon<sup>b</sup> was vnhelmed, and ran no more. Than another squyer came forthe, called Johā Marshall, and ran agaynst sir Bouciquaut, for he was redy lokyng for nothyng but to iust; he toke his speare and couched it in the rest: the first course they mette rudely on their sheldes, and lost their staves: the seconde course they taynted on their helmes: and the third course they aduved well eche other and met rudely; Johan Marshall brake his staffe in thre peces, and sir Boucyquant strake hym on the helme, in suche wyse that he was vnhelmed, and so returned and ran no more ⁊ day. Than cāe forthe a lusty yonge knight of Englande, who desyred greatly to wyn honour, called sir Johā Clinton:<sup>b</sup> he bare sylner broken with azure, a molet syluer in ⁊ chefe; he touched ⁊ shelde of sir Reynold du Roye, who was redy to answer, and was gladd of the cōmyng of that knyght; they came to their places and toke their speares: the fyrst course they taynted on the helmes and passed forthe: the seconde course they strake eche other on their sheldes, and passed by and lost their staves: the thirde course they taynted on their helmes, so that the fyre flewe oute: the fourth course they crossed: the fyfthe course was well employed, for eche of them brake their speares: the two knyghtes were sore chafed, and shewed well howe they had gret desyre to proue their selves: the sixte course eche of thē vnhelmed other; that course was greatly praysed: the Englysshe knight ran no more that daye, for he had done ynoughe.

Thanne Roger Leau, another Englysshe squyer, auanced forthe: he bare syluer and sables quarterly, in the myddes a crosse goules, he touched the shelde of the lorde of sūt Pye: the first course they encountred so rudely that their horses were astonied, for their speares helde: the seconde course they taynted on their helmes and passed forthe: at the thirde course Roger Leau was vnhelmed, and ranne no more.

Than auauised forthe a ryght gentyll knight of the nacyon of Heynaulte, in the marchesse of Ostreaunt, but fro his youthe he had been brought vp in the courte of the noble kynge Edwarde of Englande; this knyght was called sir Johan Dambretycourt: he was brother to the good knyght sir Eustace: he bare in his armure partie Golde and Ermyne; he touched the shelde of sir Raynolde du Roye. The fyrste course they taynted on their helmes, that the fyre folowed: the secōde course they entred so rudely, that it was marueyle howe they scaped without dōmage, for eche of thē were noble Justers, and feared nother payne nor dethe: the thirde course sir Raynolde du Roye was rudely vnhelmed, and sir Johan Dambretycourt passed forthe his turne and came agayne to his place; and sir Raynolde du Roye retourned to his company, and shewed howe he wolde no more iuste that daye. Than the Englysshe knight desyryng to iust more, sent to touche the shelde of sir Boucyquant: they ran toguyder so fiersly, and strake eche other in their sheldes, that it was marueyle they had nat ben pearced through: the seconde course they taynted on their helmes, and passed forthe and lost

<sup>a</sup> Stone.<sup>b</sup> Clifton.

their speares : the thirde course they mette so rudely, that eche of thē was vnhelmed. Than the Englysshemen drewe toguyder and sawe that it was nerehande nyght, toke their leanes and departed towarde Calais. That nyght there was none other cōmynge but of the iustes that hadde ben done that day. The Frenchemen wente to Margyson,<sup>e</sup> and deuysed there at their pleasure.

On the thursdaye the fourthe day of the weke, the Englysshemen being at Calais, assembled togider all suche as had nat iusted, and were come ouer the see for that entent ; they cocluded to returne agayne to saynte Inglybertes to do armes ; so they moued on their horses and rode out of Calays, and came to ŷ place where as the iustes shulde be done ; there was redy the thre knyghtes of Fraunce in their panyllions, and suche other as shulde serue them. Fyrst, there came into the place a knight of Englade, called sir Godfray Eustace : he touched ŷ shelde of sir Boucyquaut, who incontynent issued out of his panyllion redy to answer : the knyghtes adyused eche other, and ran toguyder and taynted on their helmes, and passed forthe their course, and kept styll their staues : the seconde course they strake eche other in the myddes of their sheldes, and their speares brake without any dōmage, and passed forthe and came agayne to their places : the thirde course eche vnhelmed other : the Englysshe knight iusted no more, for it was sayd to hym he had right valyauntly acyquyed hymselfe, and also that he must suffre other to inste.

Than an Englysshe squier came forthe to iuste, called Alayne Borowe :<sup>b</sup> he touched the shelde of the lorde of saynt Pye : the knyght was redy to answer : the fyrste course they taynted on their helmes that the fyre flewe out, they passed forthe their course and returned agayne to their places : ŷ seconde course they brake bothe their staues : the iii. course they vnhelmed eche other : the Englysshman ran no more, for it behoued other to iust after. Than another Englysshe squyer, called Scrope, touched the shelde of sir Boucyquaut : the fyrste course they crossed : the seconde course they taynted on their helmes : the thirde course Scrope was ouerthrowen ; thā he was releued and brought to his company, and ran no more.

Than a knyght of Behaygne,<sup>c</sup> one of the quene of Englandes knyghtes, called Herchaunce, who bare in his armes syluer, thre Gryffens fete sable armed azure, he was demaunded with whome he wolde iuste ; he answered with Boucyquaut. Than they made them redy and ran toguyder, but the knyght of Behaygne made a forfaite, wherof he was greatly blamed ŷ he demeaned his course so yuell ; the Englysshemen sawe well howe he had forfaite his armure and horse, if the Frenchemen wolde. Of this course there was great cōmunycacyon bytwene the parties, but fynally it was pardoned, the better to please the Englysshemen. Than Herchaunce requyred agayne to iuste one course : he was demaunded against whome he wolde ryn : he sente to touche the shelde of sir Raynolde du Roy, and he was redy to answer : the fyrst course they mette in the myddes of their sheldes, and sir Raynolde du Roye, who was one of the best iusters in ŷ realme of Frauce, strake thother knight cleue fro his horse, in suche wyse, that menne thought he had ben deed. Herchaunce, with moche payne was releued and broght to his company. The Englysshemen were nat displeasid in that he was ouerthrowen, bicause he ran the fyrste course so vngoodly. So he ran no more that daye.

Than came in a squyer of Englande, called Robert Storborne, he touched the shelde  
of

<sup>a</sup> Marquise

<sup>b</sup> In the French edition, "*Bouch.*"

<sup>c</sup> Bohemia

of þe lorde of saynt Pye, who was redy to answeere : the fyrst course they taynted on their helmes : the secōde course they strake in their sheldes and lost their speares : the thirde course eche vnhelmed other : the Englysshe squyer ran no more. Than Johā Morlande touched the shelde of sir Raynold du Roy, who was redy to answeere : the first course they taynted on their helmes : the seconde course they encountred eche other that their horses were astonyed, and loste bothe their stauens : the thirde course Johan Morlande was stryken to the grounde, he was releued and iusted no more. Thanne another squyer, called Johan Moten, he touched the shelde of Bouciquaut : the knyght was redy : the first course they taynted and passed forthe : the seconde course they taynted on their helmes and lost their stauens : the thirde course Johan Moten was vnhelmed : he ranne no more that daye, but gauē place to other.

Than Jaqueuyne Scrope touched the shelde of the lorde of saynt Pye, who was redy mounted : the fyrst course their horses crossed, wherwith they were sore displeased : the seconde course they taynted on their helmes, that the fyre flewe out, and lost their speres ; the thirde course Jaqueuyne Scrope brake his speare, but the lorde of saynt Pye strake hym so rudely þe he fell ouer his horse crope to the erthe : he was releued and ranne no more that daye. Than another squier cāe forthe, called Guyllyam Maquelee, he ran agaynst sir Boncyquaut, who was redy to answeere : the first course they taynted on their helmes, that the fyre flewe out ; þe course was prayseed of euery partie : the seconde course they strake eche other in the sheldes and loste their stauens : the thirde course they vnhelmed eche other, so that bothe sate bareheaded in their coyfes ; they ran no more that daye, for they had done ynough. Than another Squyer of Englande, called Nycholas Leau, he touched the Shelde of the lorde of saynt Pye, he was redy to answeere : the first course they strake eche other so sore on þe sheldes, that if their stauens had nat broken, it had ben to their great dōmage, but they helde theselues well fro falling : the secōde cope they attaynted eche other on the helmes, that the fyre flewe oute, for their strokes crossed, and so passed by : the thyrde was a goodly course, for they strake eche other so euin in þe sight of their helmes, that eche of them vnhelmed other so clerely, that their helmes flewe into the felde ouer their horse cropes. The iusters ceased for that daye, for there was none Englysshemā that offred to iust any more that day. Than the erle of Huntyngdon, and the erle Marshall, and the lorde Clyfforde, the lorde Beamont, sir Johan Clynton, sir Johan Dambretycourt, sir Peter Shyrborne, and all other knyghtes that had iusted those four dayes with the french knyghtes, thanked them greatly of their pastaunce, and said : syrs, all suche as wolde iuste of our partie haue accomplisshed their desyres, wherfore nowe we wyll take leaue of you : we wyll returne to Calays, and so into Englande ; and we knowe well that who soeuer wyll iust with you shall fynde you here these thyrty dayes, acordynge to the tenoure of your chalenge ; and we ones come into Englande, such knyghtes as desyre to do dedes of armes, we shall desyre them to come to vysite you. The thre knyghtes thanked them, and said : they shall be right hertely welcome, and we shall deliuer them acordynge to the ryght of armes, as we haue done you ; and moreouer we thanke you of the curtesy þe ye haue shewed to vs. Thus in curtes maner the englysshemē departed fro saynte Ingilbertes, and rode to Calays, where they taryed nat longe : for the saturdaye after, they toke shyppynge and sayled to Doner, and was there by noone : and the sondaye they rode to Rochester, and the nexte day to London, and so euery man to his owne. The thre frenche knyghtes kepte styll their place at saynt Ingilbertes. The frenche kinge, and the lorde of Garancyers, who had ben there all that season, was vnknewen, (whan the englysshemē were departed,) they neuer seased rydyngē tyll they came to Crayll. on the ryuer of Oyse, where the quene was at that tyme. After that the Englysshemē came into Englande, I herde nat that any mo

came ouer to do any dedes of armes at saynte Ingylbertes; howbeit, the thre frenche knyghtes helde styll their place tyll their thyrty dayes were accomplysshed; and than at their leysar they retourned euery manne, and came to Parys to se the kyng, and the duke of Thonrayne, and other lordes that were at Parys at that tyme, who made them good chere, as reason requyred: for they had valyauntly borne themselfe, wherby they atcheued gret honour of the kyng, and of the realme of Fraunce.<sup>a</sup>

*Of the enterpryse and voyage of the knyghtes of Fraunce and Englande, and of the duke of Burbone, who was chefe of that army, at the requeste of the genouoys, to go into Barbary, to besiege the strong towne of Auffryke.*

### C A P. CLXIX.<sup>b</sup>

I SHALL nowe declare the maner of an hygh and noble enterprise that was done in this seasō, by knyghtes of Fraūce, of England, and of other countreys, in the realme of Barbary. Syth I haue concluded the armes that was doone at saynt Ingylbertes, nowe wyll I shewe of other maters, for to me it is great pleasure to declare them: for if pleasure had nat inclined me to write, and to enquire for the trouthe of many matters, I had neuer come to an ende as I haue done. Nowe sayeth the texte of the mater that I wyll procede on. ¶ In this season newes spredde abrode in Fraunce, and in dyuers other cōtreys, that the genouoys wolde make an army to go into Barbary, with gret prouy-sion, as well of bysquet, as fresshe water and wyneger, with gales and vesselles for all knyghtes and squyers that wolde go in that voyage: the cause that moued them thus to do, I shall shewe you. Of a longe tyme the affrycans had made warre by see on the fronters of the genouoys, and pylled and robbed their Ilandes, suche as were obeysant to them, and also the ryuer of Genes<sup>c</sup> lay euer in parell and daunger of them of Auffryke, whiche was a stronge towne on ſ parties, garnysshed with gates, towres, and hyghe and thicke walles, depe dykes: and lyke as the stronge towne of Calays, is the key, wherby whosoouer is lorde therof may entre into the realme of Fraunce, or into Flaunders, at his pleasure, and maye by see or by lande sodenly inuade with great puyssaunce, and do many great leates; in lykewyse by comparyson this towne of Auffryke is the key of the barbaryns, and of the realme of Auffryke, and of the realmes of Bougne,<sup>d</sup> and Thunes, and of other realmes of the infydeles in those parties. This towne dyd moch dyspleasure to the genouoys, who are greute marchauntes: and by them of Aufryke they were ofentymes taken on ſ see, as they went or returned fro their feate of marchaundyses. Than the genouoys, who were ryche and puyssaunt bothe by lande and by see, hauyng great sygnories, they regarded the dedes of the affrycans, and also considred the complayntes of suche isles as were vnder their obeysaunce, as the isle Dable,<sup>e</sup> the isle of Syre,<sup>f</sup> the isle of Guerse,<sup>g</sup> the isle of Bostan, the isle of Gorgennem,<sup>h</sup> and vnto ſ Gulfe of Lyon, and to the isles of Sardonne,<sup>i</sup> and Finisse,<sup>k</sup> and vnto the isle of Maylloke,<sup>l</sup> whiche thre isles be vnder the obeysaunce of the kyng of Aragon. Than the genouoys by comon acorde agreed to sende into the frenche courte,

and

<sup>a</sup> Lord Berners, in his translation of the account of these jousts, has omitted various circumstances of minor interest, which are to be found in the French copies: such as the arms borne by several knights: the exact manner in which the strokes of the tillers were aimed and received, &c.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXV.

<sup>c</sup> Genoa.

<sup>d</sup> Bugia.

<sup>e</sup> Elba?

<sup>f</sup> Cyprus.

<sup>g</sup> Corsica?

<sup>h</sup> Gorgona?

<sup>i</sup> Sardinia.

<sup>k</sup> Cape Finisterre?

<sup>l</sup> Majorca.



and to offre to all knyghtes and squyers that wolde go with them to besiege this towne of Aufryke, to fynde them galees, and other vessels, charged with bysqut, swete water, and wyneger, at their coste and charge: so that one of the frenche kynges vnclcs. or els his brother the duke of Thourayn, who was yonge and lusty, and lykely to conquere honour, shulde be capytayne generall: and the genouys furthermore promised xii. thousande crosbowes genouys well furnysshed, and eyght thousande of other with speares and pausses, at their cost and charge. This the genouys dyde, bycause they knewe that there was a trewe bytwene Englande and Fraunce for thre yere, wherfore they supposed that knyghtes and squyers, as well of Fraūce as of Englande, wolde be glad to be doynge in some parte.

Whan tydynges came first into Fraūce of this voyage, the knyghtes and squyers of the cuntry were right ioyfull; and the messengers fro Genne<sup>a</sup> were answered that they shulde nat departe tyll they were well herde, and so to haue socour, their request was so reasonable, as to the augmentynge of the crysten faythe. Thus they were caused to tary a season at Parys, there to debate that mater, and to se who shulde be chefe souerayne of the armye for that voyage, and to whome euery man shulde obey. The duke of Thourayne of his owne volūtary wyll offred hymselfe to go: but the kyng and his vnclcs wolde in no wyse agree therto, sayenge, howe it was no voyage for hym, and they consydred well howe y genouys desyred outhere to haue him, or els one of the kynges vnclcs. Than it was agreed that the duke of Burbone, vnclc to the kyng, shulde be soueraygne and chefe of that armye, and shulde haue in his company the lorde of Coucy. Whan the ambassadours of Gene<sup>a</sup> were answered, that it was concluded without fayle y they shulde haue ayde of knyghtes and squyers of Fraunce, and the kynges vnclc, the duke of Burbone, to be souerayne and chefe capytayne: wherof these ambassadours were well contente, and toke their leaue of the kyng and of his counsaile, and retourned into their owne coutrye. Tydinges anon spred abroad in y realme of Fraunce of this voyage into Barbary. To some it was plesaunt, and to some nat delectable, and many that wolde haue gone, wente nat: there was none that went but on their owne charge and coste: no lorde sente any but of their owne seruauntes. Also it was ordeyned that none shulde passe of the nacyon of Fraunce, without lycence of the kyng, for the kyng wolde nat that so many shulde haue gone, to leaue the realme destitute of knyghtes and squyers. Also it was agreed that no varlettes shulde passe, but all gentlemen, and men of feate and defence. Also to please all other nacyns, knyghtes and squyers, straungers, had fre lyberty to come and to entre into this honorable voyage, wherof all knyghtes straungers greatly prayed the frenche kyng and his counsaile for that dede. The duke of Burbone, who was one of the chefe of the realme, sent incontynent his officers to Gennes,<sup>a</sup> to make prouysyon acordinge to his astate. The gentle erle of Auuergne sent also to Gennes<sup>a</sup> to make his prouysions, and the lorde of Coucy was nat behynde; also syr Guy de la Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> and sir Johan of Vyen, admynrall of Fraunce, and all other lordes and knyghtes, suche as were ordeyned to go in that voyage, sent to make their prouysions, euery man after his degree; also so dyd sir Philippe de Arthoys, erle of Ewe, and sir Phylip of Bare, the loide of Harcourt, sir Henry Dantoinge. Also out of Bretayne and Normandy, many lordes and other apparelled themselves to go into Barbary. Also of Haynalt, the lorde of Ligne, the lorde of Haureth, and for thē of Flaunders there was great prouysion made. Also the duke of Lācastre had a bastarde sonne, called Henry of Lancastre: he had deuocion to go in y same voyage, and he prouyded him of good knyghtes and squyers of Englande that acompanyed hym in that voyage. The erle of Foiz sent his bastarde sonne, called

Jobbayne

<sup>a</sup> Genoa.<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.

Jobbayne<sup>a</sup> of Foiz, well prouyded with knyghtes and squiers of Bierne. Euery man prouyded themselves nobly, and eche for other: and about the myddes of May, they y prouydest furthest of fro Gene,<sup>b</sup> set forwarde to come to Gennes,<sup>b</sup> where as y assemble was apoynted, and where as all their galees and vesselles were assembled: it was a moneth or they coude all assemble there. The genouoys were right ioyfull of their comyng, and gaue great presentes to the chiefe lordes, the better therby to wyinne their loues: they were nombred whan they were togyther by y marshals xiiii. hundred knyghtes and squiers. Than they entred into the galees and vesselles that were prouyded for them, well furnisshed of all thynges necessary. Thus they departed fro the porte of Gennes<sup>b</sup> aboute the feest of mydsomer, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and ten.

Great pleasure it was to beholde their departyng, and to se their standurdes, getorns, and penons, wauyng in the wynde, and shynyng against the sonne, and to here y trompettes and claryons sownyng in the ayre, with other mynstrelsy: the fyrste night they lay at ancre at the entryng into the high see; all varlettes and horses abode behynde; a horse that was worthe fyfty frankes at their departyng was solde for ten frankes, for there were many knyghtes and squiers that wyste nat whan they shulde returne; they coude nat haue fyue horses kept at Gennes<sup>b</sup> for a franke a daye, and therfore at their departyng they made money of them, and that was but lytell. There were a hüdred galees garnisshed with men of warre, crosbowes, and pausseses, and mo than a C. of other vesselles laden with prouysion and other necessaryes. The next day at the breke of the daye they weyed ancrs, and rowed all that day by force of owers, and the nyght solowyng, costyng the läde. The thyrde day they came to Portesyn, and there cast ancre, and taryed there all that night: and the next day they came to another porte and towne, called the porte Vēder,<sup>c</sup> and there taryed and refresshed them. The next day they passed further into the gret see in the name of god and our lady, and saynte George; and firste they founde the isle of Dable,<sup>d</sup> and than y isle of Guerfe,<sup>e</sup> the isle of Argenen,<sup>f</sup> and the isle of Sardyns, and passed the Gulfe of Lyon, which was a daungerous and a doutfull passage, but they coude nat eschewe it the waye y they toke: they were there in great parell all to haue ben lost; the season was so troublus, and tempestes so terribble, that y wysest maryner y there was coude gyue no cōsaile but to abyde the aduēture, and the wyll of god, wherby the flete departed asonder, some here and some there, they wyst neuer where: this tempest endured a day and a night. Whan this tēpest was sest, and y wyndes pacified, than the patrons and pylottes set their courses to drawe to the isle of Cōmeres,<sup>g</sup> a xxx. myle fro Auffryke, and fro the towne thyder as they entended to go; for at the goyng out of the Gulfe of Lyon, the patrones sayde one to another, if it fortune that we be driuen asonder by force of wynde and wether, than lette vs drawe to the isle of Cōmeres, and there lette vs tarye eche for other: and as they hadde denyed so they dyd, for the fyrst that came thyder taryed tyll the last came, and or all coude assemble there togyder it was a nyne daies. This isle of Cōmeres is a pleasūt isle, though it be nat gret: there the lordes refresshed theym, and thanked god whan they sawe they had loste none of their company. Thanne the lordes and patrons toke counsaile what was best for them to do, consideryng they were so nere y towne of Auffyke.

Nowe I wyll leaue to speke of these lordes of Fraunce for a season, and speke of other maters that was done in that season in Fraūce, and specyally in the country of Auergne, in the marches of the lande of the erle Dolphyn, who was forthe in the sayd voyage.

*Of*

<sup>a</sup> Evan.

<sup>b</sup> Genoa.

<sup>c</sup> Porto-Venere.

<sup>d</sup> Elba.

<sup>e</sup> Corsica.

<sup>f</sup> Gorgona.

<sup>g</sup> Query ?

*Of a capytayne, a robber and a pyller of the countrey, called Aymergot Marcell, who helde a stronge castell in the marches of Rouergue, called the Roche of Vandois: and howe it was besieged by the vicount of Meaulx, and of the takynge therof; and howe Aymergotte was taken and brought to Paris.*

CAP. CLXX.<sup>a</sup>

IN this season whyle this assëble was a making to go into Barbary for a good entente, as to exalte the cristen faythe, certayne robbers and pyllers in Auvergne, and Rouergue, and in Lymosyn, were of contrary myndes: for though the couëtreis thought themselfe in suretie, by reason of the chartre of the treuce that was taken bytwene Englande and Fraunce, whiche had ben proclaymed and publysshed in all fortresses, and before all the capitayns that made any warre, or helde any fortresses of the englisshe parte: and an artycle there was, that whosoever brake or violated any poynt or artycle comprised in the treaty shulde receyve punysshon of dethe, without hope of any remysson: and specially Perot le Bernoys, capytayne of Caluset,<sup>b</sup> Amergot Marcell, Olyue Barbe, capytayne of Dousac,<sup>c</sup> in the marches of Auvergne, were enclosed by name in the charter of the treuse, to the entent that if they or any of theirs, dyd or consented to do any thyng contrary, y they shulde nat excuse themselfe: some of the capytayns that feared to dye a shamefull dethe, or to rynne into the indygnacion of the frenche kynge, helde surely all the poyntes of the charter; but some dyd nat so, whiche they dercly bought, as ye shall here after.

Ye shall knowe, as it hath ben here before rehersed, howe Johan, erle of Armysnake, and Bernarde, dolphyn of Auvergne, and therle Clermounte, were in treatie with certayne capytayns that helde fortresses in the said couëtreys agaynst the frenche kynge; these sayd lordes made suche dylygence that they brought dyers of these capytayns to composycion, and to the sellynge of their fortresses. Their treaty and composycion was y they shulde renounce the warre bytwene Englande and Fraunce, and duryng the treuce they to go with the erle of Armysnake into Lombardy, or whyder as he wolde leade them, to ayde hym in his warre agaynst the lorde Galeas erle of Vertues, who had disheryted his cosyn germayns, chyl dren to his vncl e the lorde Barnabo, as it hath ben shewed here before; and so, what to haue their ayde, and to auoyde the countrey of these robbers and pyllers, (who had done so moche hurte in the countrey, bothe to men and women,) the sayd erle of Armysnake, and the erle Dolphyn his cosyn, toke gret payne in that mater: and at the instant requestes and prayers of the good menne of the cyties and townes of the playne countreys aforesayd, so that there was a tayle gadred in Auvergne, Guynaldan,<sup>d</sup> Rouergue, Carnosyn,<sup>e</sup> and in Lymosyn, to y some of two hundred thousande frankes, so that poore and riche payed so moch, that dyers solde, and layde to pledge their herytages, and were glad so to do to lyeue at reste in their countreys; and the good men thought by reson of payng of this money, and adnoyding of the sayd fyue robbers and pyllers, that they shulde than haue ben qynte for euer of them: but it proued nat so in dyers places, and specially of Aymergot Marcell, and of his men; for after that the castell of Aloys was yelden vp and solde by Aymergot Marcell,

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXVI.

<sup>b</sup> Chalucet.

<sup>c</sup> Donzac.

<sup>d</sup> Gevaudan.

<sup>e</sup> Cahorsin.

Marcell, to the erle of Armynake, whiche fortresse stode in the herte of all Auuergne, this Aymergot was well worthle in redy money a hūdred thousande frankes, whiche he had gotten by robbery and pyllage, and by raunsominge of men, and patesyng of the cuntry, and he had kept y<sup>e</sup> rule more than ten yere. Therle of Armynake desyred gretly to haue in his company the sayd Aymergot Mercell, and thought nat to leaue him behynde him for two reasons; one was, bycause he wolde gladly haue the counsaile and aduise of hym, for he was experte and subtile in all feates of armes, both in sautynge, scalyng, and stealyng of fortresses: the seconde reason was, the erle feared that if this Aymergot shulde abyde behynde in the cuntry, though he hadde solde to hym the fortresse of Aloyse, and other fortresses, yet he might do moche damage in the cōtrey of Auuergne, and Rouergue: wherfore therle made great labour to haue hym; but alwayes Aymergot dissymuled the mater, and said: Whan I se the certayne of the erle of Armynakes departyng, than I knowe myne owne wyll is so good y<sup>e</sup> I wyll nat byde behynde: othre aunswere the erle coulde nat get of hym. The erle of Armynake laye at Commyng, and aboute Tholousyn, in his cuntry, and there made his assemble, whiche voyage had been more hastid, and the voyage into Auffryke hadde nat been, that letted hym a season: for dyuers knyghtes and squyers that went in that voyage had promysed hym, and this voyage into Barbary came so sodenly, that it hyndred his voyage. Whan tydynges was knowen in Fraunce of the treaties that the erle of Armynake had made with the sayde capytayns in Auuergne, there was made as moche haste as myght be to pay the money to the capytayns.

Aymergot Marsell was sore dyspleased with hymselfe in that he had solde and deliuered the stronge castell of Aloyse: for he sawe his owne auctorite therby greatly abated, and parceyued well howe he was the lesse feared: for all the season that he kept it, he was doubted and feared, and honoured with all men of warre of his parte, and had kept a great astate alwayes in the castell of Aloyse: the patesyng of cōtreyes that he helde vnder subiection was well worth yerely twenty thousande florayns. Whan he remembered all this he was soroufull; his tresour he thought he wolde nat mynysshe; he was wonte dayly to serche for newe pyllages, wherby encreased his profyte, and than he sawe that all was closed fro hym. Than he sayde and imagyned, that to pyll and to robbe, (all thyng consydered,) was a good lyfe, and so repented hym of his good doing. On a tyme he said to his olde companyons: Sirs, there is no sporte nor glory in this worlde amonge men of warre, but to vse suche lyfe as we haue done in tyme past; what a joy was it to vs whan we rode forthe at aduenture, and somtyme foude by the way a ryche priour or marchaunt, or a route of mulettes of Mountpellyer, of Narbone, of Lymons, of Fongans, of Besyers, of Tholous, or of Carcassone, laden with clothe of Bruselles, or peltre ware, comyng from the fayres, or laden with spycery fro Bruges, fro Damas,<sup>a</sup> or fro Alysāuder;<sup>b</sup> whatsoeuer we met all was ours, or els raunsomed at our pleasures; dayly we gate newe money, and the vyllaynes of Auuergne, and of Lymosyn, dayly prouyded and brought to our castell whete mele, breed redy baken, otes for our horses, and lytter, good wynes, beffes, and fatte mottions, pullayne, and wyldle foule: we were euer furnysched as though we had ben kinges: whan we rode forth all y<sup>e</sup> cōtrey trymbled for feare, all was ours goyng or comyng. Howe toke we Carlaste, I and the Bourge of Compayne, and I and Perot of Bernoys tooke Caluset<sup>c</sup> howe dyd we scale with lytell ayde the stronge castell of Marquell, pertaynyng to the erle Dolphyn? I kepte it nat past fyue dayes but I receyued for it on a fayre table fyue thousande frankes, and forgaue one thousande for the loue of the erle Dolphyns chyl dren? By my faythe this was a fayre and a good lyfe, wherfore I repute myself sore disceyued

in

<sup>a</sup> Damascus.<sup>b</sup> Alexandria.<sup>c</sup> Chalucet.

in that I haue rendred vp the fortes of Aloys: for it wolde haue ben kepte fro all the worlde; and the daye that I gane it vp, it was founnysshed with vytayles to haue been kepte seuen yere without any reuytaylynge: this erle of Armynake hadde dysceyued me; Olyue Barbe, and Perot le Bernoys, shewed me howe I shulde repente myselfe: certayne I sore repent me of that I haue done. And whan suche of his companions as had serued hym longe, herde hym speke those wordes, they parceyued well howe he spake them with all his herte vnfayned: than they sayd to hym: Aymergot, we are all redy yet to serue you: lette vs renewe agayne our warre, and lette vs gette some stronge holde in Auuergne, or in Lymosyn, and let vs fortifye it, and than syr we shall soone recouer our domages; we shall make a goodly flyght in Auuergne, and in Lymosyn, for as nowe the erle Dolphyn, and Hugh his brother, are out of the cuntry, and dyuers other knyghtes and squyers in their company into the voyage of Barbary, and specially the lorde of Coucy, who hath the souerayne regarde vnder the kynge of all those marches; therefore we shall nat nede to feare hym, nor the duke of Berrey, for he is at Parys, so thus we shall haue nowe a good season. Well, quod Aymergot, I haue good wyll thus to do, sauynge I aue by name expressed in the chartre of the treuce. What for that syr, quod his company: ye nede nat care therfore if ye lyst; ye are nat subiecte to the frenchie kynge, ye owe hym nother faythe nor obeysaunce: ye are the kynge of Englandes manne, for your herytage (whiche is all dystroyd and lost) lyeth in Lymosyn; and syr, we must lyue; and though we make warre to lyue, the englysshmen wyll nat be myscontent with vs, and suche as be in our case wyll drawe to vs: and syr, we haue nowe good tittle to make warre, for we be nat now in Auuergne, where the couenaunte was made that we be bounde vnto: lette vs sende to the vyllayns of the vyllages whanne we be ones in a stronge holde, and commaunde them to paye vs a truage, or els to make theym sore warre. Well syrs, quod Aymergot, fyrst lette vs prouyde for a stronge place to abyde in, and to drawe vnto whan we nede. Some of theym sayde, syr, we knowe where there is a stronge holde, with a lytell newe fortifyenge, pertaynyng to the herytage of the lorde of the Towre:<sup>a</sup> no man kepeth it: lette vs drawe thyder and fortifye it, than may we at our ease ryne into Auuergne, and Lymosyn. Where lyeth this place, quod Aymergot? Syr, quod they, within a leage of the Towre, and it is called the Roche of Vandoyes. It is trewe, quod Aymergot, I knowe it well: it is a mete place for vs, lette vs go thyder and fortify it. Thus on this purpose they concluded, and on a day assembled togyther and wente to the Roche of Vandoyes. Than Aymergote auewed the place to se if it were worthe the fortifyenge therof: and whan he had well auewed the sytuacion therof, and the defences that myght be made there, it pleased hym ryght well. Thus they toke it and fortifyed it lytell and lytell, or they began to do any dyspleasure in the cuntry: and whan they sawe the place stronge sufficiently to resyst agaynste syege or assaute, and that they were well horsed, and well prouyded of all thynges necessary for their defence, than they beganne to ryde abrode in the cuntry, and tooke prisoners and ransomed them, and prouyded their holde with flesshe, meale, waxe, wyne, salte, yron, and stele, and of all other necessaryes; there came nothyng amysse to theym without it hadde ben to heuy or to hote: the cuntry all aboute, and the people, wenyng to haue ben in reste and peace by reason of the truce made bytwene the two kynges and their realmes, they began than to be sore abashed: for these robbers and pyllers toke them in their houses, and where so euer they founde them, in the felde laboyng; and they called themselves aduenturers. Whanne the lorde of the towre<sup>a</sup> knewe that he had suche neyghbours so nere hym, he was nat well assured of hymselfe, but fortifyed and made good watche in all his townes and castelles. The countesse of Dolphyn, a ryght valyaunt lady, and of great prudence,

VOL. II.

3 Q

beinge

beinge with her chyldren in a good towne and stronge castell of hers, called Sardes, she was nat well assured of herselfe whan she herde that Aymergotte and his company had fortified y Roche of Vandoy; she sent incontynente to all her castell, and furnysshed them with men of warre, as Marquell, Ondable, Chyllac, and Blere, and into other places, to the entente they shulde nat be surprysed, for she greatly douted this Aymergot, bycause he hadde of her before at one paymente fyue thousande florayns: surely all the countrey of Auvergne. and Lymosyn, began greatlye to be afrayde. Thanne the knyghtes and squyers, and men of the good townes, as of Cleremount, of Mounte Ferante, and of Ryon, determyned to sende to the frenche kinge: and so they dyd.

In the meane season, whyle the sayde countesse, and the other good men of the countrey, dyd sende to the frenche kinge, and to the duke of Berrey, who as than were at Parys, Aymergot and his company fortified greatlye the Roche of Vandoy: first, they made a lodgyng for their horses. Whan all other aduēturers, who were discharged out of wages herde howe Aymergot made warre agayne, they were ryght ioyfull therof, and many came to hym: anone, he had mo of these robbers and pyllers than he wolde haue; they demaunded no wages of hym, but all onely that they myght be of his bande, for all suche as myght be of his company, they knewe well they shulde lyghtly wynde somewhat, for they were habandoned to robbe and to pill. Thus they rode vp and downe and made themselfe to be knowen in dyuers places: there was no spekyng in Auvergne, and Lymosyn, but of them of Roche Vandoy: the cōtrey was sore afrayde: they of Caluset,<sup>a</sup> (wherof Perotte le Bernoys was capytayne,) helde and kepte fermely the treuce that was made; and whan he sawe that Aymergot Marcell ouerranne so the countrey, he was sore dyspleased with hym, and sayde howe he dyd yuell, and sent hym worde that he nor none of his shulde come into Caluset,<sup>a</sup> nor into none other place where he had any rewle. Aymergot cared nothyng for that, for he hadde places ynowe to drawe vnto; besyde that he had menne ynowe, and dayly encreased, for suche as were mynded to do yuell, drewe to hym dayly. Perot of Bernoys charged suche as were vnder his reule, on payne of their lyues that none shulde ryde out to do any damage to his neighbours, for he sayde he wolde surely kepe the treuce. Olyue Barbe, capytayne of Ousac,<sup>b</sup> dyssembled the mater, sayeng, howe he wolde kepe the treuce; howbeit, as it was shewed me, some of his men somtyme wolde ryde forthe secretlye, and what they wanne, he wolde haue the profyte therof. The men of the countreys of Cleremount, of Mount Ferant, and of Ryon, who were goynge in message to the frenche kynge, and to the duke of Berrey, they sped so in their iourneys that they came to Parys, and there founde the kynge, the duke of Berrey, the duke of Thourayne, and the constable of Fraunce, sir Olyuer of Clysson; they came fyrste to the duke of Berrey, and to his counsaile, and shewed the cause of their comyng; howe Aymergot Marcell made warre, and dystroyed the countrey of Auvergne, and howe the yuell people daily multiplyed, wherfore they desyred for goddessake to haue some remedy; sayenge, if these yuell people shulde longe contynewe, they wolde dystroy the countrey of Auvergne, and the fronters of Lymosyn. Whan these tydynges came to the kynge and to the duke of Berrey, they were sore dyspleased, for they had thought all had ben in peace by reason of the treuce: than the kynge demaunded if they of the garyson of Caluset,<sup>a</sup> and Ousac,<sup>b</sup> dyd any yuell or nat? They answered and sayd, they complayned of no man, but al onely of Aymergot Marcell, and of his company, who hath fortified the Roche of Vandoy. Thanne the kynge and the duke of Berrey answered and sayd: Syrs, ye good people take good hede to yourselves, and we shall prouyde shortly

<sup>a</sup> Chalucet.<sup>b</sup> Donzac.

shortely a remedy, that ye shall well perceyue; retourne to your places, and shewe this aunswere to theym that sente you hyther. These good men of Auuergne were well content with their aunswere, and taryed there two dayes, and thanne returned and toke their leaue, specyally of the duke of Berrey, and so departed.

The frenche kyng and his counsaile forgate nat these tydynges, nor the duke of Berrey, whome the matter touched greatly, bycause he helde great herytages in Auuergne: therefore he auanced the busynesse. Ye haue herde here before howe the lorde of Coucy was ordayned by the kyng and his counsaile to be capitayne, and to haue the soueraygne rewle of all the countrey, fro the see by Rochell, vnto the ryuer of Dordone, and to Burdeaux, on the ryuer of Geron; as than the lorde of Coucy was nat in the countrey, he was goynge in the voyage to Barbary, with other lordes of Fraunce, and of other countreis; howbeit, at his departynge he ordayned his cosyn sir Robert of Bethune, Vycount of Meaulx, to be his lyeutenaunt in the sayde countrey. Than the kyng sayde, howe it was moost metest that the vycount of Meaulx shulde haue the charge of that voyage to go into Lāguedocke, rather thane any other persone; he was at Coude,<sup>a</sup> on the ryuer of Marne: the kyng wrote to hym: the messangere founde hym with his wyfe at Coude,<sup>a</sup> and there he delyuered his letters fro the Frenche kyng. The vycount receyued theym, and whaie he knewe what they mente, he sayde he wolde obey the kynges commaūdemēt: he prepared hymselfe, as soone as he myght, and departed fro Coude,<sup>a</sup> and rode so long that he cāe to Parys, where he founde the kyng and his counsaile, who sayd vnto hym: Vycount, make you redy, assemble the men of warre of your retynue, for ye must go into Auuergne; there be of the pyllers and robbers, of whome Aymergotte Mercell is chiefe, as we be enfourmed, who distroyeth and sore traueyleth the good people there; do ye so moche as to driue them out of that countrey; and if ye maye attrap the sayde Aymergotte bring hym to vs, and we shall haue great ioye therof; it is ordayned that there shal be delyuered to you suche sommes of money at Cleremount, that shall suffyce for your men of warre: and to go fro hens thider speke to oure treasurers, and they shall delyuer you for your expenses; make haste, for it requyreth diligence. The Vycount aunswered howe he was redy, and so went to his lodging, and there he wrote letters to knyghtes and squyers in Fraūce, and Picardy, of his acquayntaunce and retynewe, that they in all hast shulde mete with hym at Charters, and there to make their musters: such as he wrote vnto obeyed, they loued the Vycount, for they helde hym for a good capitayne; so they came to the cytie of Charters at their day prefixed. There assembled a two hūdrēd speares of good men of warre: whaie they were assembled they departed fro Charters, and tooke the waye towards Auuergne, and so came into Burbonoys. Tidynges came into Auuergne, howe socours was cōmyng to them out of Fraunce, wherof all the countrey was reioysed.

It was nedeful that these men of warre came thyder so soone as they dyde, for and they hadde taryed but sixe dayes lengar, Aymergot Marcell and his bande had thought to haue onerronne the playne countrey bytwene Cleremount and Mouiferante, and about Ryon, to Ganape:<sup>b</sup> and if they had made that voyage they hadde done great damage to the countrey, more to the valewe than a hundred thousande frankes: for in those marchesse laye the rychesse of Auuergne, and no man shulde haue resysted the, for the countrey as thane was voyde of any man of warre; and also the brute was, that Aymergotte Mercelles company was farre mo in nombre thane they were indede. Aymergotte was redy to haue made this iourney, but tidynges came to hym howesoer it

<sup>a</sup> Condé.<sup>b</sup> Gannat.—*Johnes.*

was by pylgrimes or by espyes, that the vycoūt of Meaulx with a great company was comyng agaynst hym to make hym warre, and to putte hym out of his fortesse of the Roche of Vandoys: these newes letted his enterprice, and kepte hymselfe within his holde, and thought they shulde be besieged. Than Aymergot Marcell began to dought, and repented hym of that he hadde done, for he knewe well if that he were takenne, there shulde no raunsome go for hym. Thanne he sayd to some of his company, I am shamed; I haue beleued yuell comsayle; couytousnesse shall distroye me, without I haue conforte. Thañe they sayde to hym, Sir, why dought ye thus? we haue sene you the hardyest man of armes of all these marchesse; we haue a good garyson and well prouyded, and we are men of defence, and loue as well to defende oure bodyes as ye do to defende yours; ye can lese nothyng hut we must lese also: if by aduenteure ye be taken, ye shall make your fynaunce accordyng to reason; ye haue good ynoughe, and we haue nothyng: if we be taken, it lyeth on our heedes, we gette none other remission; we shall sell our lynes dere. Lette vs defende ourselfe as well as we can; be nat abasshed with any thyng that we here or se: we thinke we shall natte nede to care for any sieg: lette vs warre wisely. Thus these companions confortd Aymergot Marcell.

The Vycounte of Meaulx with his company came forward tyll they came to Moyleyn<sup>a</sup> in Burbonoys; there the duchesse of Burbone, daughter to the Erle Dolphyn, receyued the Vycount and his knyghtes ryght honorably, and made them to dyne: than they passed forthe and laye that nyght at saynt Pursant, and fro thens to Ganape,<sup>b</sup> and so to Argre Prose,<sup>c</sup> and than to Ryon, and fro thens to Cleremount, where they were well receyued with the bysshoppe and with theym of the towne: there the men of warre had money, for there was a tayle gadered and delyuered at Cleremont: thanne they passed forthe and came to our lady of Dorcinall, a four leagues fro the Roche of Vādoys; there the Vycount rested, and sente for the knyghtes and squyers of Auuergne and of Lymosyn; there they assembled; they were than to the nombre of foure hundred speares one and other, and about a hundred crosbowes of genowayes: there was with the Vycounte of Meaulx the lorde of Montague, Vermendisyens,<sup>d</sup> and his brother the lorde of Dommart, and sir Bernard de la Ryuer, sir Guyllyam Butler, the lorde of Domme, the lorde de la Roche, the lorde of the Towre,<sup>e</sup> sir Loys Dambyer, the lorde of saynt Ampysse, and sir Robert Dalphyn, and dyuers other: and capitayns of the genowayes were two valyaunt squyers, the one named Aubert of Nespynolle, and Gallynace: and as than chefe Stewarde with the Vycount of Meaulx, was a gentyll squyer called Loyes of Lesglynell: these genowayes and crosbowes were armed at all peces, elles they shulde nat haue past wages with the Vycount.

Whañe Aymergot Marcell and Guyot du Sall his vncl, vnderstode that these men of war of Fraunce, of Picardy, of Auuergne, and of Gene,<sup>f</sup> were come to our Lady of Dorcinall, and were mynded to come and laye sieg to their holde of Roche vādoys, than they aduysed what was best for them to do to make defence: firste, they consydred well that it was nat for them to kepe any horse, seyng they shulde be besieged. Nat farre of fro the Roche of Vandois there was another stronge holde, called saynt Souperye, vnder the rule of Aymergotte Mercell, and there was his wyfe, and thyder he sente all his pages and horses and the moost parte of all his rychesse. This roche of Vandoys was well fortifyed, and it stode in a stronge gronde: The lorde of the Towre<sup>f</sup> was sore blamed of them of the countrey that he had lefte that place vnfortifyed and vnprovyded:

<sup>a</sup> Moulins.<sup>b</sup> Gannat.—*Johnes.*<sup>c</sup> Aigue-perses.<sup>d</sup> From the Vermandois.<sup>e</sup> De la Tour.<sup>f</sup> Genoa.



nyded: it was cōmonly sayde in Auuergne, ȳ they myght thanke the lorde of the Towre<sup>a</sup> for all the dōmage they had taken, bicause he might well haue kepte the Roche of Vandoyis; or if he wolde nat haue kepte it for cost, he myght haue delynered it to the men of the countrie, ȳ they myght haue rased it in suche wyse that it shulde nat haue ben tenable; but he left the walles hole and entyer as he founde them. This Roche of Vandoyis is sette amonge highe mountayns, and that rocke standeth aparte, and on the one syde the walles be of a rocke: they had so fortified it, that it coude nat be assailed but on the fore parte by scrymsshynge. The Vycount of Meaulx departed fro our lady of Dorcynall, and knyghtes and squyers, and genouoys crosbowes, and so came before the Roche of Vandoyis; there, lyke good men of warre, they layde their siege, and lytell and lytell amended their lodgynges. Whāne the countesse of Allyne,<sup>b</sup> beinge at Sardes, knewe the trewe tidynges that the Roche of Vadoys was besieged, she was right ioyfull; and bycause that she thought that the Vicount of Meaulx was come so farre (as out of Fraūce and Picardy), that he had brought with hym no tentes nor pauiylons, she ordayned for hym two fayre and good tentes, parteyning to the le Dolphyn, and sente them to the Vycount, by maner of lendynge of them to hym, duryng the siege. The vycount toke the present in good gree, and recōmaunded hym hertely to the countesse, thākyng her for the tentes that she had sente hym, for they shulde do hym good seruyce. The lorde of the Towre<sup>a</sup> was in his owne cōuntry, and was within a myle of a castell of his owne, so ȳ he lacked nothing: other knyghtes and squiers made prouision as well as they myght; they had vitaylles plentie fro all partes at a reasonable price: the season was fayre, drie, and hote, as in ȳ moneth of August: the knyghtes and other cōpanyons refreshed theymselves vnder the gene bowes. Than tidynges came into the hoost that dyde put the lordes and their companyons in dout: it was shewed them that the garisons of their enemyes, as of Calucet<sup>c</sup> and of Donsacke, assembled togyder, and were determyned in a morenyng to awake the hoost or they were ware, and to reyse the siege. Than the vycount of Meaulx and his knyghtes toke counsaile togyder, and determyned to sende a heralde to Perot of Bernoys, capitayne of Calusette,<sup>c</sup> and to Olyne Barbe, capitayne of Donsac, to knowe their myndes, to the entent that they were nat surprised, but that they myght be assured of the Englysshe garysōs; and accordyng as they had aunswere agayne, therafter to prouyde for themselves. They sente an heralde, and enstructed hym what he shulde do and saye. The heralde departed fro the hoost, and rode to Caluset,<sup>c</sup> and there by aduenture founde Perotte at the baryers with many of his company, who were there sportyng and casting the stone. Than the messenger lyghted from his horse and demaunded for the capitayne: he was brought to hym, and whan he came before hym, he dyde his message fro poynt to poynt. Than Perot le Bernoys sayde: Heraude, saye to youre maysters, that we wyll holde and kepe as affermely and trewly the treuce that is taken bytwene Englande and France, in lyke maner as we wolde they shulde kepe with vs; and if we knowe any of ours that wyll breke or vyolate the peace by any maner of incydent, if we maye take them, we shall do suche correctyon as aparteyneth to be doone, as we haue promysed; and we wyll that ye saye to youre maysters, that loke what Aymergotte hath done, was without our counsaile, for he neuer shewed vs of his purpose: we dyde charge hym and all his that he shulde nat medyll in our seignorie; if he dyde, he shulde haue an yuell ende. The heralde was hadde into the fortesse, and there dnyed. Than he tooke leaue, and there was gyuen hym ten frankes; than he departed, and demaūded the way to Don-acke, and founde there Olyne Barbe, capitayne of that fortesse. The heralde spake to hym in lyke maner as he hadde doone to Perot le Bernoys. Olyne Barbe answered, that in no wyse he wolde breke the treuse, bycause he  
wolde

<sup>a</sup> De la Tour.<sup>b</sup> Dauphin.<sup>c</sup> Chalucet.

wolde nat be dishonored; and there he gauē hym ten frankes: and than departed and returned to his mayster before *ŷ* roche of Vandoyes. Than the knyghtes were sore desyrous to here tidynges; they drewe about the vycōūt: there the heraude shewed how he had ben at Calyset<sup>a</sup> and at Donsacke, and what answeere he had of the capitayns. Than the Vicount praysed moche Perotte le Bernoyes and Olyue Barbe, and was as than out of doute, and so contynned their siege.

The siege beyng before the Roche of Vandoyes, every day there was scrimyssing, and oftentimes some hurte with shotte of the genouoys crosbowes, for the genouoys were good shoters: thus the siege cōtynued a nyne wekes: thenterprice of the garyson was greatlye to the aduantage of them within; I shall shewe you the maner howe. At certayne places they might issue out at their pleasure, in dispyght of all their ennemyes, for and they shulde haue kepte them fro their issues, they had nede to haue had mo than sixe M. men. Thus duryng the siege Aymergot was ryght ymaginatif, and consydrd all thynges, and sawe well howe he had nat done well; but to tourne his dede in good maner, and to thentent that the Roche of Vandoyes shulde styll remayne w̄ hym, he sent into Englande a varlet of his, with letters of credence to the kyng of Englande and to the duke of Lancastre; and of this purpose he brake his mynde to an vncle of his, called Guyot du Sall, a man of a threscore yere of age, who had greatlye vsed dedes of armes, and knewe moche of *ŷ* worlde. Whan Aymergote had shewed hym the maner howe he wolde sende into Englade, this Guyotte was well agreed therto, and sayde howe to sende a wyse man thyder coulde do no hurte. Than they sente a varlet, who had ben brought vp among them. Aymergot instructed hym and sayde: we shall sette the out of this house in safe garde out of all peryll, and thou shalte haue golde and syluer ynoughe: thou shalte go into Englande with these letters, one to the kyng, another to the duke of Lācastre, and the thirde to the kynges counsaile; and all these letters are of credence: than they will demaunde of the the occasyon of thy cōmyng thyder; and after thou hast made thy recōmendacion, thou shalte saye, *ŷ* Aymergot Merzell, their poore soudyour and subiecte, and redy with good wyll to do them seruyce, is enclosed and beseged in a lytell fortresse parteyning to the feaultie of Lymosyn, belongyng to the kyng of Englandes herytage; and they that lye at the siege traueyleth and taketh great payne daylye to wyn vs that dothe defende the fortresse: and the capitayne of them without is a lorde, cosyng to the lorde of Coucy, called sir Robert vycount of Meaulx, set there by the Frenche kyng; therfore desyre the kyng and his counsaile, and specially the duke of Lancastre, who hath the souerayne gouernaunce in Burdeloys, and of the kyng of Englandes heritage in these parties, that it wolde please them to write and to cōmaunde the vycount of Meaulx to departe fro the siege and to reyse his army; and to write to the Vycount that he is about to breke the peace that was taken at Balyngbam,<sup>b</sup> bytwene Boloygne and Calays; and bycause I am in doute what answeere the vicount wyll make to these letters (for he is somewhat stronge and frowarde); therfore desyre that I maye haue in lykewyse letters fro the kyng and his counsaile, and fro the duke of Lancastre to the duke of Berrey; for if the duke of Berrey wyll, incontynent the siege shall be rayسد; and for the more suretie, desyre to haue with *ŷ* some knight of honoure of the kynges house or of the duke of Lancasters, suche one as the duke of Berrey knoweth, and the other lordes of Fraunce, and shewe hym fro me that I shall gyue hym a C. frankes. Remembre all these wordes, and do thy message acordingly, and shewe thē that thou spekest withall, that this lytell fortresse that I haue fortified, if it maye abyde styll Englyssh, it shall come well to poynthe, and specially to thē that wyll make warre in these parties for the kyng of Englande;

<sup>a</sup> Chalucet.<sup>b</sup> Leulinghem.

lande: for the fortresse stādeth on the frōters of the countrey, for therby maye be won at a season in Auuergne and Lymosyn two thousande frankes.

Whan Aymergot Marcell and Guyot du Sall his vnclē had well enstructed this varlet, and that the letters of credence were written and seald and delyuered, the varlet departed by nyght, and was well accompanied and conueyed afote to another fortresse parteynyngē to Aymergot, called saint Soupery; there he toke a horse, suche as he wolde chose, for he hadde a great iourney to ryde: he rode forthē through the realme of Fraūce lyke a Frencheman of Auuergne, and so came to Calais and acquaynted hymselfe with the Capitayne, sir Johan Beauchampe, and shewed hym parte of his busynesse, to the entent to haue the soner passage, as he had; so he came to Douer and than toke his iourney to Lōdon: and it was his fortune that the kyng of Englande and his two vnclēs, and the duke of Lancastre and the kynges cōsaille were the same tyme at the palais of Westmyenster in comsaying for maters of Northumberlande: for the scottes helde nat well the truese, as complayntes were made. The same tyme Aymergottes varlet came to Lōdon, and there toke his lodgyngē, and shewed his host parte of f̄ cause of his commyngē. His host brought hym to Westmyenster, and caused hym firste to speke with the duke of Lancastre, who was in his chambre; it was or he went to the counsayle; there f̄ varlet delyuered hym his letters: the duke toke and reed them: than he drewe hym aparte, and demaunded what credence he had. Than the varlet shewed hym all the hole mater, as ye haue herde here before. The duke herde hym well, and demaunded if he had any mo letters; and he sayd that he had letters to the kyng and to his counsayle. That is well, quod the duke; I shall cause the to haue audyence: than the duke went to the counsayle. and whan he sawe the hour and tyme he moued the varlettes mater, and by the dukes aduancement the varlet was sente for: than he delyuered to the kyng and to his cōsaille the letters; they were opyned and reed; and than he was demaunded what was his credēce; and the varlet, who was hardy and nat abashed, shewed the busynesse of Aymergot Marcell right sagely, and the better assured bycause euery man gaue hym good audicēce: whan he had said as moche as he wolde, thā he was answered, that the kyng wolde take cōsaille in the mater and make an answer. Than he went out of the counsayle chambre, and taryed tyll he had an answer.

The answer was, that the kyng wolde write to the vycount of Meaulx and also to the duke of Berrey, accordyng as Aymergot had requyred, and in lykewise so promysed the duke of Lancastre; and whan the letters were writen, there was a gentyman of the duke of Lancastres apoynted to bere these letters: so they passed the see, and with them went Derby an heralde, the better to forther the mater, bycause he was aquaynted with the lordes of Auuergne, and specially with the duke of Berrey. The gentyman of the duke of Lancastres, named Herbery,<sup>a</sup> went with the better wyll, bycause the varlette promysed hym in the behalfe of Aymergot a hundred frākes. Thus they thre departed and came to Douer, and fro thens at a tyde to Calis; and whan their horses were vnshypped they toke the waye to Boloigne, and so through Picardy, and went to Parys, and fro thens into Auuergne; and whan they approached nere to Lymogines,<sup>b</sup> and to the cōtre where the roche of Vadoyes was sette, they rode about the more secretly to come thyder.

Thus as I haue shewed you these messangers dyde so moche that they came nere to the roche of vadoyes: whanne they were nere where the siegē laye, the squyer and the heraulde

<sup>a</sup> Cherbury.

<sup>b</sup> Limoges.

heraulde thought it for the best nat to entre into the towne at that present tyme; but they sent the varlet into the towne, sayeng they wolde do well ynough without his company: for they sayd if he shulde be sene with them. they at the siege wolde suppose that he had ben sente into Englande for thē. The varlet obeyed, and in the night he entred into þ̄ towne without dauger. Than Aymergot Marcell and Guyot du Sall made hym good chere, and had marueyle that he had spedde his iourney in so short a space: there he shewed howe he had spedde, and howe a squier of the duke of Lācasters and a heraude was come with him, with letters fro the kyng and fro the duke of Lancastre, bothe to the Vycount of Meaulx and to the duke of Berrey, if nede were. And why, quod Aymergot mercell, are they nat come hyder into this castell? Sir, quod the varlet, they sayd they two wolde do their message well ynough, nor they wold haue no man sene in their cōpany that shulde come fro you. They are the wyser, quod Guyot du Sall; therby it shall seme that the mater toucheth the kyng of Englāde and the duke of Lancastre. Sir, it is trewe, quod the varlet. Of those tidynges Aymergot was ioyfull, and sayde to the varlet: Thou hast well and diligently spedde thy maters, and that in a shorte season; I shall well rewarde the for thy labour. Thus the squyer and the heraude came streight to the siege, and demaūded for the Vycōutes lodgyng: they were brought thyder, and there they founde the vycount beholding men castyng the stone: than they kneled and saluted hym, and he them agayne. and demaūded fro whens they came: they answered and said, howe they cāe out of Englande, sent thyder by their kyng and by the duke of Lancastre. Ye are welcome, quod the Vycount: what mater hath brought you into this wyldre countrey? Sir, quod the heraude, beholde here this squier of the duke of Lācasters, who hath brought to you letters fro the kyng of Englande and fro the duke of Lancastre, if it please you to rede thē; and bycause I sōwhat knewe the countrey I am come in his company: than the squyer delyuered his letters, and the vycount receuyed them, and behelde the seales, and knewe well they came out of Englande: than he tooke one aparte that coude rede, and there he reed the letters fro poynt to poynt two or thre tymes, tyll he knewe well what they ment: thā he studyed and regarded well the kyng of Englandes writyng, who sayd in his writyng, that he had marueyle that he wolde lodge, slepe, and reste hym, with an army of men of warre on his herytage; and that he dothe daylye all that he can to breke the peace, whiche he ought in no wyse to do, for it is greatly preiudiciall to them that haue sette to their seales to the confirmacion of the peace; and the conclusyon of the letter was, howe the kyng cōmaūded them incontynent after the sight of his letters, that he and his company shulde departe and reyse their siege, and suffre Aymergot Marcell pesably to enioye the house parteyning to his heritage, whiche hath cost hym great goodes the fortifieng. These wordes and suche other were enclosed in these letters, all to the ayde of Aymergot Marcell. In lyke maner as the kynges letters spake, the duke of Lancaster sauge the same note, commaūdyng lyke the excellent duke of Aquitayne and of all that duchy; and whan the vicount of Meaulx had well aduysed hymselfe, he sayde, Fayre syrs, these tidynges that ye haue brought requyreth counsaile and aduys; I shall take cōsaille, and than ye shall be answered. Than they were made to drike of the vycountes wyne: in the meane tyme the vycount toke counsaile, for he sent for the lorde of the Towre,<sup>3</sup> and for sir Guyllyam Butler, sir Robert Dolphyn, sir Loyes Dābyer, and also for the lorde Montagny, and for sir Berat de la Ryner, who was of his house; and whan they were all toguyder, he renewed the wordes, and shewed them the cause why he had sent for them, and there caused þ̄ letters to be reed before them. Whan these lordes herde that, they had great marueile how these letters coude be brought out of Englāde, for as than they had nat layne at the siege past a moneth. I shall

<sup>3</sup> De la Tour.

shall shewe you, quod the vycount, what I suppose. Aymergot Marcell is a subtell man: as soone as he sawe that he shulde be besieged, I thynke he sent incōtynt some messenger into Englande to attayne these letters, the whiche I maye obey if I lyst: but I shall answer them shortely; but as in that the kyng of England and the duke of Lancastre cōmaundeth me to do, I wyll nothyng obey their cōmaundementes, for I am nat bounde to obey thē, but all onely the Frenche kyng, by whose cōmaundement I am sent hyder. Call forthe the squier and the heraude; I shall make them their answer: they were brought forthe. Than the vycount began to speke as foloweth:

You Derby and Tomelyn Herbery,<sup>a</sup> thus ye be named accordyng to the tenour of your letters, and as it apereth ye be sent hyther fro the kyng of Englande and fro the duke of Lancastre: they are enfourmed, I can nat tell howe, outhur by Aymergot Marcell or by some other that wolde ayde him, and hath ben in Englande in his name, howe I am at this present tyme with an army of men of warre lodged on the herytage of the kyng of Englandes; and he commaundeth me to departe and reyse my siege, and to suffre Aymergot Marcell peasably to enioy this lytell fortresse, whiche hathie coste so moche the fortelyng; and also they sende me worde howe I do put myselfe in parell of dyshonoryng, in that I shulde consent to breke the peace, sealed and confermed to endure thre yeris bytwene the two kynges and their alyes. Fayre sirs, I say vnto you, that I wyll do nothyng that shall be against the charter of peace; I wyll kepe the treuce, and do nothyng agaynst it; and though I am lodged here, it breketh no peace nor treuce: I am subget to the frenche kyng, who hath sent me hyther, and hath admytted me as his marshall of this small armye: for it came to the knowledge of the kyng my mayster and his counsaile, by greuous complayntes of the noble men and other of the countrey of Auerngne and Lymosyn, howe they had taken great domages and losses, by the meanes that Aymergot aduysed a strong place bytwene the cōtreyes, which was voyde and nat inhabyted; he toke and fortifyed it, and hath nat made it a house of peace or solace, but a stronge fortresse and a resortyng place for theues, robbers, and murderers; wherupon I am cōmaūded to be here to defende the countrey, and to the entent that suche as be assembled in this fortresse shulde nat multiply in their wickednesse, but to punyssh them by suche sentence as apartayneth to their trespase; and for that entente I do put to my payne, to take them if I can; the whiche cōmaundemente of my mayster I wyll obey, and shall do my deuoyre to acquyte me truly; and fro hence I wyll nat departe whatsoeuer cōmaundemente I haue tyll I haue the fortresse and them that be withiu: and if Aymergot Marcell wyll say that I am auanced to breke the peace, lette hym come forthe and he shall be fought withall, with one that is better than he, and shal cause to be proued by dyuers povntes and artycles, that he hymselfe breaketh the peace. Sirs, all thynges consydred, I make you this answer: ye maye retourne when it plecth you; and whan ye come there as ye wolde be, say none otherwyse nor no lesse than I haue sayde to you: for oftentymes reportes nat truly set, enfourmeth lordes oftentymes otherwyse than the trouthe is in dede. Syr, quod the squyer, we are come hyther for none other purpose but to reporte the trouthe of that we here and se; and sylhe ye wyll none otherwyse do, we nede no lenger to abyde here, and so toke their leaue: and there was gyuen to the haraulde ten frankes, for the honour of the kyng of Englande and the duke of Lancastre.

Whan they were departed they toke the hyghe way to Cleremount, and sayd they wolde agayne to Parys; and whan they were halfe a leage on their way, than they began to entre into their mater, and sayd: As yet we haue done nothyng; it behoueth

<sup>a</sup> Cherbury.

vs to go to the duke of Berrey into Auuergne, who is lorde of this country, for he writeth hymselfe duke of Berrey and of Auuergne: the vycounte of Meaulx dare nat displease the duke if he cōmaunde hym to departe; and we haue letters fro the kyng our mayster and fro the duke of Lancastre to hym; wherfore it is reason that we deliuer them, and that we maye knowe his entente: they concluded on that purpose, and so rode to Cleremounte; thyder they were welcome, for the haraulde knewe the country; and whan they were demaūded what they were, they answered that they were messengers sent fro the kyng of Englande: and than they demaūded where the duke of Berrey was; and it was shewed them that the duke and the duchess was in a castell of theirs, named the Nonecte. The haraulde knewe it well; he had been there before. Than they departed fro Cleremount, and rode to Vyore, and fro thens to Nonect: there is a hyghe mountayne to passe or one come to the castell; whan they came there, ȳ duke of Berrey with many other was sportynge without the gate: the harauld was known with dyuers: than they were brought to ȳ duke, who for the loue of the kyng of Englande and of the duke of Lancastre, made them good chere. The squyer deliuered his letters to the duke, who receyued them, and opened and red them at length two tymes ouer; than he studyed a lytell, and answered them curtesly and sayde, Syrs, for the loue of our cosyns in Englande we shall gladly do our power. Of the whiche answeere the squyer and the haraulde were ryght ioyouse, and thought than howe they had sped all their mater; but it was nat so, as ye shall here after; howebeit, the duke of Berrey at the begynnynge dyd his deuoyre to haue rayed the siege, to please therby the kyng of Englande and the duke of Lancastre, who desyred that the siege myght be reysed before the Roche of Vandoys, and that the lytell fortresse myght abyde styll to Aymergot Marcell; and if he haue done any thyng to dysplease the frenche kyng or his cousayle, the kyng of Englande wolde se that there shulde be amendes made; and the duke of Berrey, bycause he wolde acqyite him truely to the englysshe mennes desyres, suche as were in his house, he wrote incontynente letters well endyghted to the vycount of Meaulx, and these letters were red or they were sealed before the englysshemmen, who thought them well ordayne: these letters were sente by a notable squyer of the duke of Berreys to the vycount of Meaulx, who receyued them and opened them: than the vycount caused them to be redde before suche lordes as were there with hym, whyle the messenger was a drynkyng, for they made hym good chere, for the loue of the duke of Berrey, as it was reason. Sirs, quod the vycounte, we shall nat be in rest syth the duke of Berrey wyll beare Aymergot, who is the man of the worlde that this twelue yere hath moste greued and traueyled the cōtrei of Auuergne: I had thought that the duke had hated hym greatly, but it semeth nay, sythe he hath expressly cōmaūded that I shulde departe fro hence; but by my faythe at this tyme I wyll nat obey this letter, but I wyll make excuse by reason of the kyng and his cōsaiyle, who sent me hyder: and at my partyng fro Parys he straitly cōmaūded me that for any cōmaūdemente fro any persone, and if it were nat fro the kyng hymselfe, that I shulde nat departe fro hence tyll I had taken the stronge holde of the Roche of Vandoys, and Armergot therin, whiche I wyll do if I canne; and nowe the duke of Berrey cōmaūded me the contrary, for he chargeth me incontynent, his letters sene, that I shulde reyse the syege. By my faythe I wyll nat do it. Syr, quod they that were aboute hym, ye speke royally and truely, and we shall abyde with you; but we suppose the occasion that the duke of Berrey writeth thus for Aymergot is, that the englyssh squier and the haraulde hath thus desyred hym to write; we thinke also they haue brought letters to hym fro the kyng of Englande and fro the duke of Lancastre, as they brought to you this other day. Ye say well, quod the vicounte; and I shall knowe it if I canne. Than the duke of Berreys squier was sent for to haue his answeere, and the vycount sayd to him: Pyer, I wyll well that ye knowe that I owe obeysaunce to the duke of Berrey, for he is so nere a kynne to the kyng

kyng that I dare nat dysplease hym; but I and my companyons, who haue ben here these fyue wekes at this siege to wyn this fortesse, and to take the theues that be within it, by the straye cōmaundement of the kyng and his counsaile, and we haue great marueyle (and good cause why) howe my lorde of Berrey dothe commaunde vs and maketh requeste for his enemyes that we shulde reyse our siege; by reason of that we say generally that we shal gyue ensample to all theues and robbers, suche as wyll ouerron the realme to do the worst they canne; wherefore, Pyer, ye shall say to the duke of Berrey fro vs all, that we are and shall be redy inclyned to do any thyng that he commaundeth vs to do; but as in this case I am so straytely enjoyned and cōmaunded by the kyng and his counsaile to kepe this siege, and to contynewe it tyll I haue the fortesse and them within at my pleasure, whiche cōmaundement I dare nat breke; and say that surely I wyll obey to no cōmaundement but alonely to the kynges, whose subget I am, and by whome I am sente hyther. But, sir, I requyre you shewe me one thyng if ye can: who hath made this request for Aymergotte Marcell, who hath done so moche yuell and anyouaunce to the cōuntry of Auergne and Lymosyn: and nowe he is atrapped lyke as a traytoure shulde be, and is nere come to an yuell ende, whiche he hathe well deserued, for he hath erred and done contrary to his othe. Syr, quod the squyer, there came to my lorde the duke of Berrey two men of Englande, an haraulde and another, who brought letters to my lorde fro the kyng of Englande and fro the duke of Lancastre, and they made greate request for Aymergotte. I beleue you well, quod the vycounte; it was Derby the haraulde and a squyer called Herbery; they brought me this other daye lyke letters; wherefore I suppose that the kyng of Englande and the duke of Lancastre wrote to the duke of Berrey in this mater; wherefore shewe to my lorde of Berrey that I desyre him to consydre all thynges well, for all these requestes that are come fro the other syde of the see are but desyres purchased by our enemyes, to the which no lorde on this syde the see (if he loue the honoure and profyte of the realme of Fraunce) shulde encline nor condyscende. Sir, quod the squyer, I shall forget nothyng of that ye haue shewed me, for I loue nat Aymergot; I had rather se his punysshment thanne his de-lyueraunce: so the squyer departed and rode to Nonecte, where he founde the duke of Berrey, and dyd his message ryght sagely; the conclusyon was, that the vycounte of Meaulx sayde, surely he wolde nat departe fro the siege before f Roche of Vandoy, without the kyng sente hym straye cōmaundement so to do. With this aunswere the duke of Berrey was nat well contente; he had thought that as well his cōmaundement shulde haue been obeyed, specyally in Auergne.

Whan the englysshe squyer and Derby the haraulde herde of the answer that was made to the duke of Berrey, and howe that the siege was nat raysed, they were sory, and sawe well they traueyled in vayne; than they sayde to the duke: Syr, what wyll ye counsaile vs to do? shall we thus departe frome you without spedynge of any thyng to purpose. The kyng of Englande and the duke of Lancastre haue great truste and affyaunce in you, that ye shulde cause this siege to be reysed, bycause the Roche of Vandoy is vnder our signoury. Syrs, quod the duke, suffre a season; Aymergot Marcell is in a stronge place, he nedeth nat to feare takyng, without a great vnhappe: and shortly I purpose to goo into Fraunce to the kyng, and thanne I wyll speke with the kyng and his counsaile: and for the loue of my cosyns of Englande I shall do the beste I canne to bringe the matter to passe, and ye shall go with me and se howe I shall spede. With those wordes the squyer and the haraulde were contente. Than the fourth day after the duke departed fro Nonecte, and lefte there the duchesse his wyfe with a gret parte of his householde, and so the duke rode to Ryon in Auergne, and

\* Cherbury.

there he taryed more thanne eyght dayes, for the erle of Sanxere and the lorde Rule,<sup>a</sup> who were gone to Auignon aboute the dukes busynesse; and whan they were come they departed fro Ryon all togyther, and toke the waye through Burbonoys, and at laste came to Bourges in Berrey, and there the duke taryed two dayes; than he rode to Mehun on the ryuer of yeure to a castell, one of þe fayrest houses of the worlde; as thanne the duke had newly bylte it, and it had coste hym thre hundred thousande frankes; there the duke taryed fyftene dayes, wherwith the Englyssh messangers were sore troubled; howbeit, they coude fynde none other remedy. The duke as than, made lytell force for the deluyeraunce of Aymergot; I shall shewe you howe and by what meanes. So it was the erle of Sanxere and the lorde of Rule<sup>a</sup> who were chefe of the dukes counsaile, with syr Peter Mespyn, they in fayre maner blamed the duke, and sayde howe he hadde nothinge to do to medell with the busynesse of Aymergot, sayenge that his lyfe hathe been alwayes dyshonourable, and howe that he was but a false palyarte, and alwayes agaynste the crowne of Fraunce: and had doone many vyllayne dedes and robories in Auuergne and in Lymosyn, and how that he was no mete parsonne to be entreated for; wherfore, syr, quod they, suffre the kyng and his counsaile to deale with hym as they lyst. These wordes and suche other refrayned the duke of Berrey to speke any further in the mater; howbeit, the two englysshemen dyd their best to remembre the duke; and the duke dissymulynge, answered them curtesly, and sayde, Syrs, suffre a season; we shall be shortly at Parys; but for all his wordes he taryed styll at Mehun more thanne thre wekes, deuysynge with his mayster workeman, as keruers and paynters, for therin he had great fantasy: he had a mayster workeman called maister Andrew,<sup>b</sup> as than one of þe best workemen of the worlde, an Englyssheman borne, but he dwelte in Fraunce and in Haynalte a long season.

Nowe shall I shewe you what fortunod of Aymergot Marcell, and of the roche of Vandoys. This Aymergot was a farre castynge man; and whan he sawe that þe siege was nat reysed, he thought well that the kyng of Englandes messangers coude nat spede of their sute: than he thought on another turne, as to departe thens, and to ryde nyght and daye to speke with the capitaynes of Piergourt<sup>c</sup> and Pyerguyse, and with Guyot of saint Fayth,<sup>d</sup> and Ernalt of saynt Colombe, and Ernalt of Rostem, Johñ of Morsen, Pier Danchin, and Remonet of Cōpayne, and with dyuers other gascoyns and bernoyse in the englysshe garysons: and he thought that with his fayre wordes he shulde cause them to assemble togyther, and to come into Auuergne on truste to wynne great botyes; and so on a mornynge or in the night to come and reyse the siege before Vandoys, and to take there the frenchemen prisoners, whiche shulde be worthe to them a hundred thousande frankes, besyde other botyes. Thanne he shewed his vnclē, Guyot du Sall, all his purpose; who answered him, and said, Sir, I se in this nothyng but good, for otherwyse we can nat be deluyered fro these frenchemen. Well, vnclē, quod Aymergot, I shall do this message myselfe, syth ye counsaile me therto; but I shall desyre you of one thyng or I departe. What is that? quod he. It is so, quod Aymergot, that whatsoeuer skrymysshe that the frenchemen do make, issue you in no wyse out of the gates, nor open nat your baryers, for and ye do, ye may rather lese than wynne. Sir, quod Guyot, I shal be ware ynough therof; we shall kepe ourselves close here within tyll your retourne, or that we here tydynge from you. Well, fayre vnclē, I requyre you

so

<sup>a</sup> De Renel.—*Johnes*.<sup>b</sup> I am sorry that the French copies forbid me to recognize this "master workman" as a countryman: the proper sense of the passage is, "He (the Duke) planned with his master workman, Andrew Beau-neveu, various improvements in painting and sculpture, in which he had great taste; for this master Andrew was unrivalled for his many fine works in France, in Hainault (*of which he was a native*), and in England.<sup>c</sup> Perigord.<sup>d</sup> St. Foix.



so to do, for they canne nat displeas vs none other wayes; as for their assautes or skrymysshes ye nedē nat feare, so ye kepe yourselfes close within. Thus within thre dayes after, Aymergote departed fro the Roche of Vandoyis, all onely acōpanyed with a page; he passed forth without daunger of the frenchemen: his entensyon was to bryngē thyder companyons aduenturers to rayse the siege. Many of them that were within the house knewe nothyng of his departure, for he myght departe whan he lyst without knowledge. Every day there was skrymysshynge and assautes at the barryers, and within a fyue or sixe dayes after ʒ departure of Aymergot there was a greāt assaute made by the frenchemen in thre partes. This Guyot du Sall was a good man of armes, and longe tyme had vsed the exercisyng therof; howbeit, as on that day he fortunēd yuell, by reason of a lytell pryde: for he brake the ordynance that his cosyn Aymergot had set, or he departed, for he had charged hym that for any maner of assaute he shulde nat issue out of the barryers: at this assaute there were thre squyers of the french party, two of Auuergne and one of Bretayne, who were skrymysshing valyauntly vpon a pane of a wall nere to the fortresse: these thre squyers aboue all other, that daye dyd moste valyauntly; they of Auuergne were called Rycharde de la Violecte, and Lubinot of Rochfort; and the breton was named Monadyke, who was taken before in Lymosyn in the castell of Vanchador,<sup>a</sup> and was parteynyngē to sir Wyllyam Butler. The assaute endured tyll nyght. These thre squyers atcheued there great laude and prayse; but for all their traueyle and payne they wan nothyng. Than at another assaute the vicount of Meaulx made a bussment of twelue men of armes and their companyes, and layde them in an olde house without the fortresse, and commaūded another sorte to go and skrymysshe at the barryers, sayenge: I thynke surely we shall se them within issue out, for they are couetouse to wyn; if they do so, than withdrawe yourselfe lytell and lytell tyll they be past our bussment, than they shall brecke out, and also retourne you agayne; thus they shall be enclosed and taken or slayne. This is the best way that I can se for our aduantage. Thus as the vicount had denyed and ordeyned it was done; they were named that shulde lye in the bussment, as Loys of Lesglynell, Robert of Bertencourte., Guylliam de Saulsoy, Pyer du saynt Vydall, Guyonet Villeracque, Pier of Colle, and John Salmage, with other, to the nombre of twelue: they layde themselfe in an olde house without the fortresse, and another sorte went and skrymysshed at ʒ barryers, as Belynot<sup>b</sup> of Rochfort, Rycharde of Violecte, and the Monadyke, with other: they were freshly armed and aparelled, to thentent that they within shulde haue the more corage to issue out to them; they were also twelue alonly: whan they came to the barryers they began to skrymysshe but faintly, and lyke suche persones as coulde but lytell skylle of feates of armes; wherfore Guyot du Sall made lytell force of them, but issued out and sayde to his companyons: by saynt Marcell we wyll issue out, for at the barryers be a sorte of yonge cōpanyons, for by that they shewe, they knowe but lytell of dedes of armes, but we shall teche them to knowe it; they shal be all our prisoners; they can nat escape vs: therwith they opened the barryers and issued out, fyrste Guyot du Sall, and remembered nothyngē the charge that Aymergot had gyuen hym at his departure; for the great desyre that he had to do dedes of armes. and to wynne somewhat, made him to begyn the skrymysshe. Whan the frenchemen sawe that Guyot du Sall and his company were come out of their barryers they were ryght ioyfull; than they began to drawe backe lytell and lytell, and they of the fortresse pursued them, and they wente so farre that they passed the bussment: and whan they sawe their tyme they brake out of their bussment bytwene them and the fortres, cryeng, Coucy the vycount: thus they of the fortresse were inclosed both before and behynde. Whan Guyot sawe that, he knewe well he had doone amysse, and sawe well it was harde for hym to scape  
than

<sup>a</sup> Ventadour.<sup>b</sup> Before called Lubinot.

than he reculed to get agayne to his garyson, but the frenchemen were in his waye. Whervnto shulde I make longe processe? They were all taken, nat one escaped; they were brought to the vycountes lodginge before the knyghtes, who hadde great ioye of their takynge.

Thus by the counsaile of the vycount of Meaulx, Guyot du Sall and his company were atrapped and taken and brought before the lordes of Fraunce and Auuergne. When the vycount sawe Guyot du Sall, he demaunded where Aymergot Marcell was, and charged hym to save the trouthe, for he thought he had ben still in the fortesse. Gnyot du Sall aunswered, howe he coulde nat tell where he was, for he was departed a twelue dayes paste. Than the lordes thought surely that he was gone to purchase some ayde. Than the prisoners were comaunded aparte, and the vicount demaunded of the knyghtes of Auuergne what were beste to do with Guyot du Sall and with his company: sayenge howe he wolde vse hymselfe acording to their counsaile. Then syr Willyam Butler aunswered and sayde: Syr, quod he, I suppose that Aymergot is gone for socour and to rayse vp the companyons in the garysons of Pyergout<sup>a</sup> and Pyerguyse, for he shall fynde some alwayes there to come vpon vs earely or late or we be ware of theym, wherby they maye do vs damage for any peace or trefwe that is taken: This Aymergot is a subtile man. Syr, let vs do one thyng: shew vnto Guyot du Sall and his company, that without they cause the fortesse to be rendred into your handes, that ye wyll stryke of all their heedes incontynente, and without they do thus let it nat be spared. This counsaile is good, quod the vycounte, for in dede the chefe occasyon that we be come hyder for is to haue this fortesse; and though we can nat haue at this tyme Aymergot Marcell, another season shall fortune ryght well. Than the vycount and the lorde of the towre,<sup>b</sup> syr Roberte Dolphyn, and other, came before the fortesse as nere as they myght aproche; and thyder was brought Guyot du Sall and his company. Than the vycount spake, and sayd to Guyot du Sall: Guyot and all other of your company, knowe for trouthe that incontynent all your heedes shall be styken of, without ye yelde vp the fortesse of the Roche of Vandoys; and if ye wyll rendre it vp, we shall suffre you to go quyte. Nowe aduise ye well what way ye wyll take, other lyfe or deth. Of those wordes Guyot and his company were sore abashed; at last they thought it was best for them to saue their lyues. Than Guyot answered and sayde, Syr, I shall do the best I canne that the fortesse may be yelden to you. Than he came to the barryer and spake with them that were within, who rekened themselves clene dyscomlyted, seyng they hadde lost their two maysters and the best of their company: as soone as Guyot hadde spoken with them, and declared what case they stode in, they agreed to yelde vp the fortesse condicionally, y they myght departe with bagge and baggage as moche as they coulde cary, and to haue respyte for a moneth to withdrawe them whither they lyst: all this was graunted to them, and a sure saue-conducte made and sealed. Thus the frenchemen had the Roche of Vandoys delyuered, by reason of their good fortune of their last skrimyshe; wherfore it is comenly sayde, that all fortunes good and yuell falleth often tymes in armes to them that foloweth warre.

When the Roche of Vandois was yelded vp to the lordes of Fraunce and Auuergne, they of the countrey were ryght ioyous therof, and the lordes helde well and truly the promesse that they had made to Guyot du Sall. When they had caryed away as moche as they coulde do, than they departed with good assurance for a moneth to go whyder it pleased them. Than the vycount of Meaulx abandoned the Roche of Vandoys

<sup>a</sup> Perigord.

<sup>b</sup> De la Tour.

doys to the men of the country, who incontynente dyd raise it downe, in suche wyse that they lefte no wall hole, nor house, nor stone vpon stone, but all was reversed to the erthe. The frenchemen that were ther in the kynges seruice with the vycount, toke their leues of the knyghtes and squyers of Auvergne: so they departed, and they of Auvergne and Lymosyn went to their owne houses. The vycount of Meaulx gaue leaue to parte of his company, and he went to Rochell and lodged at saint Johans Dangle,<sup>a</sup> to kepe there the frontier, for in the cōtrey there were some pyllers and robbers that ran sometyne into Xantoigne when they sawe their aduantage. In the maner and fourme as I haue shewed you,  $\bar{y}$  fortesse of the roche of Vandoys was cōquered and rased downe, wherof all the country was ioyfull, for than they were in better suretie than they were before; for to say the trouth, if it had cōtynued, it wolde haue done them many displeasurs. Tydynges of this dede came to the knowledge of the duke of Berrey to Cantelton, a place of his owne, standynge bytwene Charters and Mount le Herrey, a nyne leagues fro Parys: he cared nothing for it, for he was as than but colde to axe any grace of the kyng for Aymergot. Whan Derby the haraulde was informed by some of the dukes knyghtes howe the Roche of Vandoys was taken and beten downe, than he sayde to the squyer that came thyder with hym: syr, ye haue lost a hundred frankes that Aymergot had promysed to you. Howe so? quod the squier. Surely, quod the harauld, the Roche of Vandoys is gyuen vp and rendred; the frenchemen haue wonne it; therefore lette vs take our leaue of the duke of Berrey, and retourne into Englande; we haue nothyng here to do. Well, quod the squyer, sythe it is so, I accorde therto. Than they toke their leaue of the duke. Than the duke wrote to the kyng of Englande and to the duke of Laucastre, and gaue to the haraulde at his departynge xl. frankes, and to the squyer a horse: thus they departed, and toke the next waye to Calays, and so into Englande. Than tydynges came to Aymergot Marcell, where he was purchasynge of frendes to haue reysed the siege before the fortesse of Vandoys, that it was gyuen vp. Whan he herde therof he demaunded howe it fortunèd: it was shewed hym howe it was by reason of a skrymysshe, and by the issuing out of his vnclè Guyot du Sall vnaduyssedly. Ah, that olde traytour, quod Aymergot; by saynte Marcell, if I had hym here nowe, I shulde sle hym with myne owne handes; he hath dyshonoured me and all my companions: at my departynge I strately enioyned hym that for no maner of assaute or skrymysshe made by the frenchemen he shulde in no wyse open  $\bar{y}$  baryers, and he hath done the contrary: this damage is nat to be recouered, nor I wote nat whether to go; they of Caluset<sup>b</sup> and they of Donsac wyll kepe the peace, and my companions be spredde abroad lyke men dyscomfyted; they dare neuer assemble agayne togyther; and though I had them togyther, yet I wote nat whyder to bring them: thus, all thyng consydred, I am in a harde parte, for I haue gretly dyspleased the french kyng, the duke of Berrey, and the lordes of Auvergne, and all the people of the country, for I haue made them warre the peace duryng; I had trusted to haue won, but I am nowe in a great aduenture to lese, nor I wotte nat to whom to resorte to axe counsaile. I wolde nowe that I and my goodes with my wyle were in Englande; there I shulde be in surety; but howe shulde I get thyder and cary all my stufe with me? I shulde be robbed twenty tymes or I coulde gette to the see, for all the passages in Poitou, in Rochell, in Fraunce, in Normandy, and in Pycardy are strately kept; it wyll be harde to scape fro takynge; and if I be taken, I shall be sente to the Frenche kyng, and so I shall be loste and all myne. I thynke the surest way for me were to drawe to Burdeaulx, and lytell and lytell to get my good thyder, and to abyde there tyll the warre renewe agayne, for I haue good hoope that after this treuce warre shall be open agayne bytwene Englande and Fraunce. Thus Aymergot Marcell debated the matter

in

<sup>a</sup> St. Jean d'Angely.<sup>b</sup> Chalucet.

in hymselfe; he was heuy and sorowfull, and wyste nat what weye to take, outhur to recouer sōe fortresse in Auuergne, or els to go to Burdeaux, and to sende for his wife thider, and for his goodes lytell and lytell secretly: if he hadde done so, he had taken the surest weye; but he dyde contrary, and therby lost all, lyfe and godes. Thus fortune payeth the people when she hath sette thē on the highest parte of her whele, for sodainly she renersech them to the lowest parte, ensamble by this Aymergotte. It was sayde he was well worthe a hundred thousande frakes, and all was lost on a daye; wherefore I may well saye that fortune hath played her pagiaunt with hym, as she hath done with many mo, and shall do. This Aymergot in all his trybulacios, remēbred hymselfe howe he had a cosyn germayne in Auuergne, a squyer named Tournemyne, and determyned to go to hym and to shewe hym all his trouble, and to take counsayle of him: as he deuysed, so he dyd: he and his page all onely came to ſ castell where Tournemyne was, thynkyng to haue ben there in suretie, bicause of lynage; but it proued contrary, for this squyer was nat in the duke of Berryes grace nor fauor. When he sawe his cosyn Aymergot in his house, he aduysed to take hym prisoner and to aduertise the duke of Berrey, ſ if he wolde forgyue hym his displeasure and yuell wyll, he wolde send hym Aymergot mercell, to do with hym his pleasure: and as he had deuysed so he dyde, for whan Aymergot was within his cosyns castell, and brought to a chābre, than he layde by his swerde and chaunged his aparyll; than he demaūded of the seruautes and sayd, Where is my cosyn Tournemyne? as yet I haue nat sene hym. Sir, quod they, he is in his chambre; please it you to come and se hym? With ryght a good wyll, quod Aymergotte; and the seruautes knewe ryght well their maysters pleasure. Whan Aymergot had chaunged his aparell, and doone of a Cote of defence that he was wont vsually to weare, and layde awaye his swerde, than he sayd, Sirs, lette vs go; I wolde se my cosyn Tournemyne; it is long sihe I sawe hym. They brought him streight to Tournemyne, and whan he came to hym, Aymergot dyde salute hym, as he that thought none yuell. Than Tournemyne answered and saide: Howe is it, Aymergotte? who sente for you to come hyder? ye wolde dishonour me; wherefore I take and arrest you as my prisoner; otherwyse I shulde nat acqute myselfe truly to the crowne of Fraūce, nor to my lorde the duke of Berrey, for ye are a false traytour; ye haue broken the truce, wherto ye must answere; and for your cause my lorde of Berrey hateth me deedly; but nowe I shall make my peace by you, for I shall delyuer you to hym, outhur quycke or deed: with the whiche wordes Aymergotte was sore abashed, and saide, Howe so, sir? I am youre cosyn: is this for certayne ye shewe me, or do you speke it to assaye me? I am come hyder on the great trust that I haue in you, to shewe you my businesse, and you to make me such cruell chere and to gyue me so harde wordes, I haue great marueyle therof. I can nat tell, quod Tournemyne, what ye wyll say; but this that I haue said I shall fulfyll: and so layde hādes on hym: and his seruautes, knowynge their maisters pleasure, toke Aymergot without any deffce makynge, for he was without weapon or armure, and also enclosed in the castell; for any wordes that he coulde saye, there he was taken, and yrons putte vpon his legges and layde in a towre, and sure keeps about hym.

Whan this was done he caused the castell gate to be shytted, and toke the keyes hymselfe, and commaunded all his seruautes, on payne of their lyues, none of them to be so hardy to go to the gate without he sent them thyder. His cōmandement was vpholde. Than he wrote letters at his pleasure, dyrected to the duke of Berrey, certifying hym howe he hadde Aymergot Marcell in prisone, and that if he wolde pardone hym his yuell wyll, he wolde delyuer Aymergot into his handes. Whan this letter was written and sealed, he commaunded one of his seruauntes, suche as he trusted, to go into Fraunce to the duke of Berrey, and to delyuer hym his letter, and to recōmende hym

hym lowly to hym, and nat to retourne without an answer. The varlet toke the letter, and moūted on a good horse and so departed, and rode so longe that he came to Parys, where the duke of Berey was, and there delyuered to hym his maisters letter. The duke toke ȝ letter and reed it and smyled therat, and sayd to suche knyghtes as were about hym: sirs, wyll ye here newe tidynges? Aymergot marcell is taken prisoner; his owne cosyn germayne, Tournemyne, hath taken hym: ȝ knyghtes answered and sayd: sir, it is good tidynges for the countrey of Auuergne and of Lymosyn, for they haue had of hym a longe season an yuell neyghbour; he hath done so moche yuell, that if it please you he were worthy to peyse the gybet; he ought to haue none other raunsome nor pardon. I can nat saye, quod the duke, what the kyng and his counsaile wyll saye therto; I wyll speke with them therin. It was nat longe after but that the duke of Berrey toke a barge on the ryuer of Seyne, and so came to the castell of Lour,<sup>a</sup> where the kyng and his coūsaile was; he shewed there these newes; he caused the letter that Turnemyne had sent hym to be reed, of the whiche tidynges euery man was ioyfull, and the lordes saide, it is well sene that suche maner of robbers and pillers can neuer cōe to a good ende. Than the duke of Berey was desyred to sende for hym by the seneschall of Auuergne, and to be brought to Paris, and to be put in ȝ castell of saynt Antonies: furthermore it was ordayned, that Tournemyne, for the good seruice he hadde done to the crowne of Fraunce, that all displeasures shulde be clene forgyuen hym; and therypon letters patentes were made and sent to hym by his seruaunt, wherof he was well content, and trusted on those letters. Than within a shorte space after, the seneschall of Auergne, by a cōmission fro the dnke of Berrey, came to the castell of Tournemyne, and there Aymergot Marcell was delyuered to hym, wherof Aymergotte was sore abashed whan he sawe hymselfe in the cōpany of his enemies. Wherto shulde I make lōge processe? the seneshall caried hym with men of armes along through the countrey, and passed the ryuers of Seyne and Marewe,<sup>b</sup> by the bridge of Charenton, and so fro thens to the castell of saynt Antonies; there the Vicount Darchy was charged with hym, who as thañe was capitayne of that castell; he kepte hym nat long, but ȝ he was delyuered to the prouost of the Chatelet of Parys: and trewe it was, Aymergot offred for his raunsome threscore thousande frankes, but it wolde nat be taken; he was answered, the kyng was riche ynough: after that he was sente to the Chatelette, he was nat long kepte there, but that he was iuged to dye shamefully lyke a traytour to the Crowne of Fraunce; and soo on a daye he was caryed in a chariot to a place called the Halles, and there sette on the pylary; than all his trespasses were reed before hym: and by hym was sir Wylliam of Trune, who spake moche to hym: it was thought ȝ it was to knowe the state of certayne capitayns in Auuergne, and whether they were consenting to his dedes or nat. The lordes knewe well, but I conde neuer haue knowlege therof. Thus he was executed, his heed stryken of, and his body quartred, and the quarters sette at euery gate of Parys. To this ende came Aymergotte Marcell: as of his wyfe and of his goodes I knewe nat what becāe further of them.

<sup>a</sup> The Louvre.<sup>b</sup> Marne.

*Howe the chrysten lordes and the genowayes beyng in the ysle of Conymbres<sup>a</sup> at ancre, departed thens to go and laye siege to the strouge cytie of Aufryke in Barbary, and howe they maynteyned the siege.*

GAP. CLXXI.<sup>b</sup>

WHEREAS I haue spoken at length of the lyfe of Aymergot Mercell, it was to furnysshe this hystorie: for the condicions bothe of yuell and good ought to be alwayes treated in a hystory. and specially whan it toucheth any great feate, for ensample of other, and to gyue mater and occasion to do well: for if Aymergotte had ledde his lyfe in good vertues, he had ben a man of great valure: and bycause he dyde the cōtrary he came to an yuell ende.

Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of hym, and let vs retourne to the hyghe enterpryce that the Christen knyghtes of Fraunce and other nacvons dyd in that season in the realme of Aufryke, and I wyll begyn there as I lefte. The sayd lordes assembled in the ysle of Conymbres,<sup>a</sup> after they had passed the tempestes and paryls in the Goulfe of Lyon; there they taryed eche for other, for there were in the cytie of Aufryke a xxx. thousande: in this ysle of Conymbres<sup>a</sup> they were a nyne dayes, and refreshed them; and there the patrons of the galées sayde to the lordes: Sirs, we be in the lande next aprochying to the marchesse of Aufryke, whider by the grace of god ye are purposed to go and laye siege: wherfore it is behouable to take cōsāyle eche of other, howe we maye entre into the hauen, and to take lāde; to saue ourselfe, it is best we sende fornast our lytell shyppes, called Brigandyns, and let vs tary in the mouthe of the hauyn. ¶ first day that we approche and all the nyght after: and the nexte monyng to take lande, by the grace of god at our leysar, and than lodge ourselfes as nere the cytie as we maye, without the shotte of their artillery; and let vs sette our crosbowes genouois in order, who shal be redy to defende all scrimysshes; and we suppose well, that whan we shall take lādyng ye haue here ī your cōpanyes many yong squyers, who to enhaūce their honours wyll requyre to haue the order of knighthode: instructe them wisely and swetely howe they shall mentayne themselves; and, my lordes, knowe for trouthe, that all we seemen shall acqute vs vnto you well and truly, and alwayes shewe you by what maner of order we shall moost greue our enemyes; and we shall take payne and study howe the cytie of Aufryke may be won, for ofte tymes they haue done vs great dōmage: for on that coste it is the chiefe key of Barbary and of the realmes that foloweth: first, the realme of Aufrike, of Mallorques,<sup>c</sup> and of Bougy;<sup>d</sup> and if god of his grace wyll consent that we maye wyn this cytie of Aufrike, all the Sarazyns wyll tymblye, to the realme of Liby<sup>e</sup> and Sury,<sup>f</sup> so that all the worlde shall speke therof; and by the ayde of other christen realmes and ysles marchyng nere to Aufrike, we shall alwayes be refreshed with vitayls and newe men: for this is a cōmon voiage, for euery man wyll desyre dayly to do dedes of armes, and specially on goddes enemyes: and thus in the cōclasion of their processe the patrons said, lordes, we say nat this by no presūpcion, nor by maner as to teche you what ye shuld do; but this that we haue sayd is all onely for loue and by humylite, for ye be all noble men sage and valyant, and can better order euery thyng than we can deuise and speke. Than the lorde of Concy said: sirs, your good counsaile and aduysē ought gretly to content vs, for we se nothing therein but good; and, sirs, be ye sure that we shall do nothing without your cōsāyle, for ye haue brought vs hyder to do dedes of armes.

Thus

<sup>a</sup> Before called Commeres. According to *Johnes*, Commino.  
numbered CLXVII. <sup>c</sup> Morocco. <sup>d</sup> Bugia.

<sup>b</sup> This chapter ought to be  
<sup>e</sup> Lybia. <sup>f</sup> Syria.

Thus in the presence of the duke of Burbone, the lordes and other cōsāyled toguyder in the ysle of Conymbres,<sup>a</sup> how they myght aproche ſy strong towne of Aufryke. Whan euery thyng was well aduysed and sette in good order by the admyrall and patrons of the galees, and that wynde and wether serued them, euery lorde entred into his galee amōg their owne men, hauyng great desyre to encōūtre with their enemyes the sarazyns. Than the trūpettes blewe vp at their departyng: it was great pleasure to beholde their ores, howe they rowed abrode in the see, whiche was peasable, calme, and fayre, so that in maner the see shewed herselfe that she had great desyre ſy the christen men shulde come before the stronge towne of Aufryke. The christen nauy was goodly to regarde and well ordred, and it was great beautie to se the baners and penons of silke, with the armes and badges of ſy lordes and other, wauyng with the wynde, and shynyng agaynst the soñe; and within an hour of noone the christen men perceyued ſy hygh towres of the towne of Aufrike, and the farder they sayled the nerer it shewed to their syghtes; wherfore euery man reioysed, and good cause why, seyng all they desyred to cōe thyder: they thought thā in a maner their paynes released and their voyage accomplysshed. Thus as they aproched to thentre of the realme of Aufryke, they cōmuned and denyed among themselves; and in lyke maner the sarazyns that were within the towne of Aufryke spake and deuysed and were sore abasshed whan they sawe their enemyes aproche with suche a nombre of sayles, and sayde, that surely they were lykely to be besieged; howbeit, they thought their towne so strōg with towres and walles and with artillery, that therwith they reconforted and toke corage: and to gyue warnyng to the country (as soone as they sawe their enemyes on the see on the hyghe towres, they sowned tymbres and tabours, accordyng to their vsage, in suche wyse, that the men abrode in the country drewe toguyder. Suche men of Barbary as had ben sente thyder by the kyng of Aufryke, and by the kyng of Thunes and Bougy,<sup>b</sup> whan they knewe of the Christen mennes cōmyng, by reason of the noyse of the tymbres and tabours, to thent that they shulde nat entre to farre into their cōūtreis, every man tooke hede to his charge, and sente certayne of their capitavns to the see syde, to se the aprochyng of ſy Christen men, and to beholde their dealyng that nyght; also they prouyded to defende the towres and gates about the haun of Aufryke, to the entent that by their negligēce the towne of Aufryke shulde take no dōmage, whiche towne was so strong, that it was nat lykely to take great hurte without longe siege. And I, Johan Froyssart, auctour of this cronycle, bycause I was neuer in Aufryke, and bycause I myght truely write the maner and fascion of this enterpryce, alwayes I desyred suche knyghtes and squyers as had ben at ſy same voyage to enforme me of euery thyng; and bycause I had been oftentymes in ny dayes at Calays, I demaunded also of suche there as had ben at the sayde voyage; and it was shewed me of a suretie that the sarazyns amonge themselves sayde, howe the Christen men that were there were expert and subtyle men of armes; wherupon an auncyent sarazyn sayd to all his company: Sirs, all thynges cōsydred, it is best that the Christen men at the begynnyng se nat our strength and puisaunce, nor also we haue nat men suffyciēt to fyght with them, but daylye men wyll cōe to vs; wherfore I thinke it best to suffre thē to take lide; they haue no horses to ouer ron the country; they wyll nat sprede abrode, but kepe togyder for feare of vs: the towne is stronge ynoughe and well prouyded, we nede nat feare any assautes: the ayre is hote, and wyll be hotter: they are lodged in the sonne, and we in the shadowe; and they shall dayly wast their vitaylles, and shal be withoute hope to recouer any newe and they lye here any long season; and we shall haue plētie, for we be in our owne country; and they shall oftētymes be awaked and scrimysshed withall, to their dōmage and to our aduantage: lette vs nat fight with them, for otherwyse they can nat disconfyte vs; they haue nat ben vsed with the ayre of this country, whiche is contrary to their nature: I thinke this the best waye.

<sup>a</sup> Comino.<sup>b</sup> Tunis and Bugia.

To the saieſſe of this auncient knight sarazyn all other agreed: thañe it was cōmaunded on payne of dethe that no man shulde go to the see syde to scrymysshe with the Christen men without they were cōmaunded, but to kepe themselfe close in their lodgynges, and suffre the cristen men to take lande. This determynacion was vpholde, none durst breke it: and they sent a certayne of their archers into the towne of Aufryke, to ayde to defende it. The Sarazyns shewed themselves nothyng, as though ther had been no men in the countrye. The Christen men lodged all that night in the mouthe of the hauyn of Aufryke, and the nexte mornyng the wether was fayre and clere, and the ayre in good temper, and the sonne rose, that it was pleasure to beholde: thañe the Christen men began to styrre, and made thē redy, hauynge great desyre to approche the towne of Aufryke, and to take lande. Than trumpettes and claryons began to sowne in the Gallees and vesselles, and made great noise; and about nyne of the clocke whan the christen men had taken a lytell refreshynge with drinke, than were they reioysed and lighted; and accordyng as they had apoynted before, they sent in fyrst their lyght vesselles called Brigandyns, well furnished with artyllary: they entred into the hauyn, and after them came the armed Galees, and the other shyppes of the flete in good order: and tournynge towards the lande by the see syde, ther was a strong castell with hyghe towres, and specially one towre whiche defended the see syde, and the lande also; and in this towre was a bricoll or an engyn whiche was nat ydell, but styll dyde cast great stones amonge the Christen mens shyppes; in lykewise in euery towre of the towne agaynst the See syde, there were engyns to caste stones; the sarazyns had well prouyded for their towne, for they loked euer longe before whañe they shulde be besieged. Whan the Christen men entred into the hauyn of Aufryke to take lande, it was a pleasant syght to beholde their order, and to here the claryons and trumpettes sounde so hyghe and clere; dyuers knyghtes and valyaunt men of the realme of Frauce sprede abrode that day their baners, with dyuers other newe made knyghtes: the lorde Johan of Lignye was there firste made knight, he was of the countrye of Chauny:<sup>a</sup> he was made by the handes of a cosyn of his, named sir Henry Dantoygne, and there he sprede abrode first his baner, the felde golde, a bende of goules; and in his companye was his cosyn germayne the lorde of Hauret, in Chauny.<sup>b</sup> Thus the lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, with great desyre auauuced them, and toke lande and lodged on the lande of their enemyes in the sight of the false sarazyns, on a wednisdaye in the euenyng of Mary Magdaleyne, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande, thre hundred, and four-score,<sup>c</sup> and as they toke lāde they were lodged by their marshalles. The sarazyns that were within y<sup>e</sup> towne prayed moche the christen mēnes order, and bycause that the great Galees coulde nat approche nere to the lande, the men yssued out in bottes, and toke lande and folowed the baner of our lady.

The Sarazins that were within the towne, and suche as were abrode in the countrye, suffered the Christen men pesably to take lande, for they sawe well it shulde nat be for their aduantage to haue fought with them at their landyng. The duke of Burbone, who was as chefe of the christen armye there, was lodged in the myddes of his company ryght honorably, his baner displayed, poudred, full of Floure du Lyces, with an ymage of our Lady in the myddes, and a scochynne with the armes of Burbone vnder the fete of the ymage.

Fyrste, on the ryght hande of the duke there was lodged his brother sir Guyllyam of Tremoyle,<sup>c</sup> with his penon, and the lorde of Bordenay with his baner, and sir Helyon of Lygnacke with his penon, the lorde of Tours with a penon; and than the Henouars with the standerde of the lorde Wyllyam of Heynaulte, as than erle of Ostreaunt, eldest

<sup>a</sup> Hainault.<sup>b</sup> 1390.<sup>c</sup> Tremouille.



eldest sonne to the duke Aubert of Bauyere, erle of Heynaulte, of Hollande, and of Zelande: the deuyse in  $\bar{y}$  standerde was a Herse<sup>a</sup> golde, standyng on a bell<sup>a</sup> goules; there was the lorde of Haureth w<sup>h</sup> his baner, the lorde of Lige with his baner, and than sir Philyppe Dartoys erle of Ewe with baner, the lorde of Matefelon with baner, the lorde of Calam with penon, the Seneschall of Ewe with penon, the lorde of Lynyers with baner, the lorde of Thune<sup>b</sup> with baner, the lorde of Ameuall with baner, sir Water of Champenon with penon, sir Joh<sup>n</sup> of the Castell Morant with baner the marshall of Sanxeres brother with penon, the lorde of Coucy with baner beste apoynted nexte the duke of Burbone. sir Stephyne of Sanxere with penon: than the Frêche kynges penon with his deuyce, and therby was sir Johan of Barroys, with the penon of his armes: than sir Guyllyam Morles with baner. and the lorde of Lögueuall with penon, sir Johan of Roys with baner, the lorde of Bourse with penon, the Vycount Dausney with baner, the lorde admyrall with baner, called Johan of Vyen.

Nowe here after foloweth they on the dukes lyfte hande.

On the lyfte hande of Loyes duke of Burbone were lodged as foloweth: First, the lorde of Ausemont of Bauyere,<sup>c</sup> and sir Johan of Beauforde, bastarde sonne to the duke of Lancastre, with his baner displayed, sir Johan Butler Englysshe with a penon, sir Johan of Crama with a baner, the Souldyche of Lestrade with penon, sir Johan Harcourt with baner, and  $\bar{y}$  lorde Beraulte erle of Cleremount, and the Dolphin of Auergne with baner, and sir Hugh Dolphyn, his brother, with penon, the lorde of Bertencourt with penon, the lorde Pyer Buffyer with baner, the lorde of saynt Semere with baner, the lorde of Louuart, marshall of the hoost, with baner, the lorde Begue of Beausse with penon, the lorde of Louuy with baner, sir Gerarde of Lymosyn, his brother, with penon, the lorde of saynt Germayne with baner; and than the penon and stāderde with the deuyce of the duke of Burgoyne, sir Philyppe of Barre with baner, sir Geffray of Charney with baner, sir Loyes of Poicters with penon, sir Robert of Calobre with penon, the vycount of Ses with baner, the lorde Montague with baner, the lorde of Vyle Neufe with penon, sir Wyllyam of Molyne with penon, the lorde of Lōgny with penon, sir Angorget Damboysse with penon, sir Aleyne of Chāpayne with penon: all these baners and penons were sette in the front before  $\bar{y}$  towne of Aufryke; and besyde that, a great nombre of other knyghtes and squyers, ryght valyaunt men and of highe corage, were lodged abrode in the felde, I can nat name them all, also it wolde be to long a wrytyng: there were a fourtene thousande all gentylmen: it was a companye to do a great feate, and to susteyne a great batayle, if the sarazyns had come forthe to haue gyuen them batayle, whiche they dyd nat, for as on  $\bar{y}$  day they shewed no maner of defence, but castyng out of their towres great stones.

Whan the Christen men were lodged as well as they myght, and refreshed themselves with suche as they had brought with them, for they myght nat ryn abrode in the cuntry to gather bowes of trees to make with all their lodgynges, for it had ben to their damage if they had aduentured themselfe abrode; the lordes had tentes and pauilliōs that they had brought with them fro Geane.<sup>d</sup> Thus they lodged in good order; the crosbowes of the genouoys were lodged on the wynges, and closed in the lordes; they occupied a great space of groūde, for they were a great nombre; all their prouisyons were in the galees, and all the day the maryners conueyed their stuffe to lande by bottes; and whan the christen ysles adioynyng, as Naples, Cicyll, and also the mayne landes, as Puylle,<sup>e</sup> and Calabre, whan they knewe howe the Christen men had besieged the strong

<sup>a</sup> A Harrow, or, on a field gulch.

<sup>b</sup> Thim.

<sup>c</sup> "With a baner."

<sup>d</sup> Genoa.

<sup>e</sup> Apulia.

strong castell of Aufryke, they dyd what they coude to vitayle the christen army, some to haue aduantage therby, and some for loue and affection that they had to the genouoys; fro the ysle of Cande<sup>a</sup> came to them the good malueysies in great plenty, without whiche confort they coude nat longe haue endured, for they were a great nombre, and good drinkers and good eaters; howebeit, their prouisyons came nat alwayes to thē in lyke maner, for somtyme they had plentie, and some season they wanted.

Nowe I shall somwhat speke of the sarazyns, as well as I haue done of the christen men, as it is reason to cōclude all thynges.

Trewe it was that they of Aufrike, and of Barbary, knewe longe before howe the genowayes hadde thretned them, and they loked for none other thyng, but the same yere to be besieged, as they were indede: they hadde made prouisyon to resyst agaynst it; and whan the tidynges were sprede abrode in the cōuntry howe that the christenmen were come to Aufryke they were in dout, for he is nat wise that feareth nat his ennemyes, though they be neuer so fewe; howebeit, the sarazyns reputed the christen men right valyant and good men of warre, wherfore they greatly douted them; and to the entent to resyst and to defende the fronters of their cōntreys, they assembled to-guyder of dyuers parties, as they of the lande and seignorie of Aufrike, and of the realme of Maroche,<sup>b</sup> and of ʒ realme of Bougye,<sup>c</sup> the best men of warre in all those cōntreis, and suche as leest feared dethe. Thus they came and lodged on the sandes agaynst the christen men, and they had behynde them an highe wode, to thentent that they shulde receyue on that syde no dōmage by meanes of bussmentes or scrimysshes; these sarazyns lodged themselfes right sagely and surely: they were of men of warre a xxx. thousande good archers, and ten thousande horsemen, and mo; howebeit, the Christen men coude neuer knowe surely what nombre they were, for they supposed they had a greater nombre lodged in the woodes, whiche myght ryght well be, for they were in their owne cōūtre, and might go and come into their host at all houres, without paryll or dommage at their owne lybertie: they were oftentymes refreshed with newe vitayls brought to them on somers and camelles. And the secōde day that the Englysshemen had been a lande, in the mornyng at the breke of the day, and that the same nyght the lorde Henry Dantoygne had keppe the watche with two hundred men of armes, and a thousande crosbowes genowayes, the sarazyns came to awake and to scrimysse with theym, whiche endured the space of two houres; there were many dedes of armes atchyned, but ʒ sarazyns wolde nat ioyne to fyght hande to hande, but they scrimysshed with castyng of dartes and shotyng, and wolde nat folysshely aduenture theselles, but wisely and sagely reculed. The christen hoost than appalled them to go to the scrimysse, and some of the great lordes of Fraunce came thyder to se the demeanour of the sarazyns, therby to know another tyme their maner in skrymysshyng. Thus the sarazyns drewe to their lodgyng, and the crysten men to theirs: and duryng the siege the crysten men were neuer in suretie nor rest, for outhere cuenyng or mornyng the sarazyns wolde awake them and skrymysse. Amonge the sarazyns there was a yonge knyght called Agadingor Dolyferne, he was alwayes well mounted on a redy and a lyght horse, it semed whan the horse ranne, that he dyd flye in the ayre; the knyght semed to be a good man of armes by his dedes: he bare alwayes of vsage thre fedred dartes, and ryght well he coulde handle them, and acordyng to their custome he was clene armed with a long whyte towel aboute his heed: his aparell was blacke, and his owne coloure browne, and a good horseman. The crysten men sayde they thought he dyd suche dedes for the loue of some yonge lady of his cōuntry; and trewe it was that he loued entyrelly the kynge of Thunes doughter, named the lady Azala: she was en-

herytour

<sup>a</sup> Candia.<sup>b</sup> Morocco.<sup>c</sup> Bugia.

herytour to the realme of Thunes, after  $\bar{y}$  discease of the kyng her father: this Agadngor was sonne to the duke of Olyferne: I can nat tell if they were maryed togyther after or nat, but it was shewed me that this knyght for loue of the sayd lady duryng the siege dyd many feates of armes. The knyghtes of Fraunce wolde fayne haue taken hym, but they coulde neuer atrape nor enclose him, his horse was so swyft and so redy to his hande,  $\bar{y}$  alwaies he skaped.

The crysten men wolde gladly haue taken some sarazyn, to the entente to haue knowne the state of the towne and cuntry, but for all their skrymysshynge they coulde neuer gette none. The sarasyns toke good hede to themselfe, and dyd puaesse themselfe agaynst the crosebowcs genouoys: they were nat so well armed as the cristen men, it was nat their vsage, nor they had no armorers, nor metall to forge harnesse withall, for most comenly they lacke yron and steele: they be euer armed in lether, and beare targettes aboue their neckes couered and made of Cureboley<sup>3</sup> of Capadoce, no wepen can perce it and the lether be nat hote, so that whan they come nere to their enemyes they cast their dartes all at ones; and whan the genouoys do shote at theym, than they couche themselfe lowe and couer them with their targes, and whan the shotte is paste, than they caste agayne their fedred dartes. Thus the space of nyne wekes duryng the siege they oftentymes skrymysshed, so that dyuers were hurte on bothe parties, and specially suche as lightly without auysement aduentured themselfe. Thus the crysten men toke good hede to themselfe, and so dyd the sarazyns on their parte, and the lordes of Fraunce, and suche other as were come thyder to their ayde, gladly regarded the dealynge of the sarazyns: to saye the trouthe to lordes of astate, and to gret men, all newelities are dylectable, and if the crysten men hadde pleasure to beholde them, the sarazyns had as great pleasure to regarde the maner of the crysten men: amonge them there were yonge lusty knyghtes, who had great pleasure to beholde the armure, baners, standardes, and penons, with rychesse and noblenesse that was amonge the crysten men, and at nyght whan they were at their lodgynges they spake and deuyssed: but as it was shewed me there was one thyng amonge them to be marueyled at, I shall shewe you what.

The sarazyns within the towne of Aufryke had great marueyle by what tytell or instance  $\bar{y}$  the crysten men came thyder so strongly to make them warre; it was shewed me howe they toke aduise amonge them howe to knowe the trouthe therof, and determyned to sende to the crysten men to knowe their myndes, and so toke a truchman<sup>b</sup> that coulde speke Italian, and commaunded hym to go to the crysten host, and to demaunde of them in what tytle and instance they are come to make vs warre, and why they become so strongly into the empyre of Barbary, and into the laude of Auffryke, and saye howe we haue in nothyng trespassed them; of a trouthe afore this tyme there hath ben warre bytwene vs and the genouoys, but as for that warre by reason ought nat to touche the crysten men of farre countreys of; as for the genouoys are our neyghbours, they take of vs and we of them, we haue been aunyciente enemyes and shall be, excepte whan treuce is bytwene vs. With this message the trucheman<sup>b</sup> departed, and rode to the crysten army, and mette fyrst with a genoway, and shewed hym howe he was a messenger sent fro  $\bar{y}$  sarazyns to speke with some lorde of Fraunce. The genoway had to name Anthony Marthy, he was a centurion of the crosebowes: he brought this messenger to the duke of Burbon, and to the lorde of Coucy, who gladly herde hym speke, and the wordes that he spake in his owne langage, the centurion genoway expounded them

<sup>2</sup> Boiled hydes.—“His jameux were of cuirbouly.”—Chaucer’s ‘Rime of Sire Thopas.’

<sup>b</sup> Interpreter.—*Minshcu.*

theym in frenche. Whan this messanger had declared his message, he desyred to haue an answer. The lordes of Fraunce sayde he shulde haue, but first they wolde take aduysse in the mater. Than a xii. of the greatest lordes drewe togyder to counsaile in the duke of Burbons tent, and concluded, and so sent for the messanger; and the genouoy made him his answer in al their names; Sayeng, howe the tytle and quarell that they made warre in was, bycause the soune of god, called Jesu chryst, and trewe profyte, by their lyne and generacyon was put to deth and crucyfyed: and bycause they had iudged their god to deth without tytell or reason, therfore they wolde haue amendes, and punyssh that trespase and false iudgement that they of their lawe had made; and also bycause they beleued nat in the holy baptyme, and are euer contrary to their faythe and lawe; nor also bycause they beleued nat in the virgyn Mary, mother to Jhesu Cryst: for these causes and other, they sayd, they toke the sarazyns and all their secte for their enemyes, and sayd howe they wolde reuenge the dyspytes that they had doone, and dayly do to their god and crysten faythe. With this answer the treuchman returned without parell or damage, and shewed to his maysters all as ye haue herde. At this aunswere the sarazyns dyd nothinge but laugh, and sayd howe that aunswere was nothyng reasonable, for it was the iewes that put Chryst to dethe, and nat they. Thus the siege styll endured, euery party making good watche.

Anone after, the sarazyns toke counsaile togyder, and determyned that a seuen or eight dayes togyther they shulde suffre the crysten men in reste, and nat to make any maner of skrymysshe with them, and than sodaynly on a nyght about the hour of mydnyght to sette on the hoost, trustyng therby to do a great feate: as they ordayned so they dyd, and an eyght dayes togyther they made no skrymysshe; and on the ix. day about mydnyght they secretly armed them with such armure as they were accustomed to, and so came close togyder without any noyse nere to the lodgynges of the crysten men, and had enterprysed to haue done a great feate, and to haue entred, nat on that side that their watche was on, but on the other parte of the felde, where there was no watche kept; they had come to their ententes, and god properly had nat ben agaynst them, in shewyng of apparante myracles: I shall shewe you howe.

As the sarazyns aproched, they sawe sodenly before them a great company of ladyes and damosels, all in whyte colour, and one in especyall who in beauty without comparison exceded all the other, and there was borne before her a baner all of whyte and reed within; with this syght the sarazyns were so abashed, that they lacked spyrite and force to go any further, and so stode styll, and the ladyes before them. Also it was shewed me that the Genouoys had a great dogge in their company that they brought with theym, but they knewe nat fro whence he came, there was none that chalenged the dogge to be his, whiche dogge dyd theym great seruyce, for the sarazyns coulde neuer come so pryuely to skrymysshe, but the dogge wolde bay and make suche brewte that he wolde nat rest tyll such as were aslepe were awaked; euery man knewe whan they herde the dogge baye, that the sarazyns were comyng to skrymysshe with them, wherby euer they aparmed themselves to resyst them: the genouoys called the dogge, our ladies dogge. The same season that the sarazyns stode styll in a traunce, and the ladyes before them, this dogge was nat ydell, but he made gret brute, and ranne bayeng fyrst to the stande watche; the lorde of Coucy, and sir Henry Dantoigne, kept the watche that nyght. Whan euery man herde this dogge make suche brute, they rose and armed them redy, for they knew well that the sarazyns dyd aproche to awake them: and trewe it was that the vyrgyn Mary and her company was before them, to defende

defende the crysten men fro all parelles, so that they toke that nyght no maner of damage, for the sarazyns durst nat approche, but returned to their lodgynges: and after that, the crysten men toke better hede to their wache.

The sarazyns knyghtes and squyers, suche as were in þæt towne of Aufryke, and specially suche as had sene these ladyes, were so abashed that they wyste nat what to thynke: and the crysten knyghtes and squyers that lay at the siege, studied day and nyght howe they myght wyn the towne; and they within studied agayne howe to defende their towne. The season was hote and drye, for the sonne was in his moste strength, as in the moneth of August, and the marches of Aufryke are ryght hote, by reason of the sande, and also they be nerer to the sonne than we be: and the wynes that the crysten men had, came fro Pulle,<sup>1</sup> and Calabre, and they be hote and drye, farre fro the nature of the french wynes, wherby many fell into hote feuers: and to consydre acordinge to reason, I can nat tell howe the frenchemen, and other of lowe countreys, coulde endure the payne of the hote and grose ayre that they founde there. without refreshyng of good, swete, and fresshie water, whiche they lacked there: yet they made fountaynes and wellis in the sande, whiche dyde theym great pleasure, for there they founde fresh water; howbeit, oftentymes the water was sore chafed by reason of the heate; and also oftentymes they had great defaute of vytaylles, and some season they had ynough comyng fro Cicyll, and fro other isles adioynng: suche as were hole, comforted them that were dysseased, and suche as had vytaylles, departed with theym that lacked, otherwyse they coulde nat haue endured, they dalte eche with other lyke bretherne and frendes. The lorde of Coucy speccially had the chyefe resorte of gentlemen, he coulde behaue hymselfe swetely amonge them, moche better than the duke of Burbone, for the duke was somewhat of an high corage, proude, and presumptuous, nor spake nat so swetely nor so humbly to knyghtes, squyers, and straungers, as the lorde of Coucy dyd: moste comenly the duke of Burbone wolde sytte all daye without his tente with his legges acrosse, and whosoener wolde speke with hym, it behoned him to haue a procurer, and to make great reuerence; he consydréd nat the state of poore men so well as the lorde Coucy dyd, wherfore he was more in the grace and loue of the people, thanne the duke of Burbon was: and as it was shewed me by dyuers knyghtes and squyers straungers, that in their opynions if the lorde Coucy had ben soueraygne capytayne alone, they had sped otherwyse than they dyd, for by reason of the pride of the duke of Burbon, many feates and enterprises were lefte vndone: it was the opynion of many that he kepte hymselfe sure ynough fro takyng.

This siege enduryng before the towne of Aufryke, whiche contynued a lx. dayes and one, there was many skrymysshes made on bothe parties, abrode and at the baryers of the towne: it was nedefull for them within to make good defēce, for against them was the floure of chyualry and squyry. The knyghtes adenturers sayd one to another: If we maye get this towne with assault or otherwyse, than we may refresshe ourselfes in it all the wynter, and at somer some great armye of crysten men wyll come hyther, for therby we and they shall haue a goodly entre into the realmes of Barbary, Aufryke, and Thunes; than other dyd say: wolde to god it were so, for thanne suche as shulde be lodged here shulde lye honorably, for dayly they shulde be redy to do dedes of armes. They that were within the towne doubted greatly the mater, wherfore they tooke great payne to defende themselves: the great heate and brimnyng of the sonne dyd put the crysten men to great payne and traueyle, for whan they were in harnesse, by reason of the heate, it brente them within their armure: marueyle it was

<sup>1</sup> Apulia.

that any skaped the dethe by reason of the heate, for about the myddes of August the ayre was sore corrupted. Besyde that there fell another marueylous incydente, whiche if it had longe endured, they had ben all deed without stroke: so it was that by reason of the great heate and corrupcyon of the ayre, there fell amonge them suche a sorte of great flyes, that they couered all the hoost, for no man wyste howe to defende hymselfe, and euery daye a weke togyder they increased, wherof euery man was adashed; howebeit, by the grace of god and the vyrgyn Mary, to whome euery man auowed themselfe, on a day dyd sende a remedy; there fell suche an hayle and lyghtenynge fro heuen that it slewe all the sayde flyes, and by reason of this hayle the ayre was brought into a good temperatenesse, wherby  $\int$  knyghtes and sqnyers were in a better astate than they were before.

Whosoener had been in the case that these crysten men were in at  $\int$  tyme, it  $\int$  must haue behoued them to take euery thyng in gree, they coulde nat haue had euery thyng with wysshynge, nor at their demaunde; whan any fell sicke it behoued them to be well kepte, or els they shulde haue dyed: but they were come thyder with so good wylles and affection, that they purposed honourably to accomplysshe their voyage, whiche mynde greatly supported thē to endure payne and traueyle; all thynges that was mete for their complexions they wanted, for nothyng came to them out of the realme of Fraunce. tydynges nor other, nor in Fraunce they knewe no more of them; somtyme there came to the army fro the cytie of Barcelone, in the realme of Aragon, in a galey, prouysion, wherin was mo oranges and pomegarnettes, than any other thyng; these frutes yet refreshed greatly the appetytes of the crysten men, but whansoener any galey came to them, it returned nat agayne, what for doute of the encoūtryng of the sarazyns on the see, as for to abyde there to se the conclusyon of the siege. The yonge kyng of Cicyll oftentymes sente to the hoost vytaylles, for he was the nexte crysten prince adioynynge. If the sarazyns had ben of that strength to haue stopped the passage of the see fro them, and to haue kepte fro them suche vytayls and prouysions as came to the armye fro Pule,<sup>a</sup> Calabre, Naples, and Cicyll, the crysten men had been deed without any stroke stryking; but they made no warre but by lande, nor also they be nat of suche puyssaunce on the see, nother in galees nor in other vessels, as the genouys and venysians be; for if the sarazyns be on the see it is but by stelthe, for they dare nat abyde the crysten men, without they haue farre the aduaūtage; a galey with crysten men well armed, wyll discomfyte four galees of sarazyns. Trewe it is, the turkes are of greater force, and better men of armes. outhur by lande or by see, than any other secte of the myscreantes contrary to our beleue, but they dwell farre of fro the lande of Auffyke, the affrikans can nat be ayded by thē; the turkes had certayne knowledge howe the towne of Auffyke was besyged by the crysten men, they wysshed them oftentymes there.

The crysten men studyed howe to do damage to the sarazyns, and in lykewyse so the sarazyns agayn st the chrysten men, studyed howe to delyuer their couētre of them. And on a day Agadingor Doliferne, Madefer de Thunes, Belyns Madages, and Brahadyng of Bongy,<sup>b</sup> with dyuers other sarazyns, deuysed amonge themselves, and sayd: beholde here the crysten men our enemyes, who lye here before our faces in our owne countrey, and yet we can nat discomfyte them, and they are but a handefull of men, as to the regarde of vs; howebeit, we thinke veryly they haue some great confort of some valyaunt men out of their owne countreys, for at no maner of skrymyssh that we can make, and for all that euer we can do, we can take neuer a prisoner: for if we  
myght

<sup>a</sup> Apulia.<sup>b</sup> Bugia.

myght take one or two of their valyaūt men, it shulde be greatly to our honour, and by them to knowe their demeanour and puyssaunce, and what they purpose to do. Syrs, quod Agadingor, let se what counsaile is best in this case: as for me I am one of the yongest, yet I speke fyrst. We are contente therwith, quod all the other, say what ye wyll. Syrs, quod he, I desyre greatly to do some dede of armes with some crysten man, and I thynke verly if I were matched with one to dyscomfyte hym in playne batayle; and syrs, if ye wyll do so that we myght fynde a xx. or xxx. valyaunt men amonge vs, I shall cause and I canne, the crysten men to sette forthe as many; our quarell is good, for they haue no cause of reason to make warre against vs, and I thynke what by reason of our iuste quarell, and the good corage that we be of, shall gyue vs victory. Than Madyser of Thunes answered and sayd: Syr, in your wordes is no thyng but honour; to morowe if ye wyll ryde and be in the former fronte of the batayle with a trucheman with you, and make some token that ye wolde speke with some crysten man, and than do you somoche as to offre the batayle of x. of yours agaynst ten of theirs, than shall ye here and se what they wyll answer, and yet howe so euer they answer we may be aduysed what we wyll do: at leste the crysten men shall repute vs the more valyaunt. They all agreed to that apoyntement, and so passed that nyght; the next mornynge they rode forth to skrymysshe with their enemyes, and Agadingor foremost, mounted on his good horse, and his trucheman with him. The daye was clere and bright, and a lytell before the sonne rysynge the sarazyns set themselfe in ordre of batayle. The same nyght sir Willyam of Tremoyle<sup>3</sup> had kept the watch on ÿ crysten parte, and with hym sir Guy his brother. Than the sarazins apered before the cristen men within a thre crosbowe shot, and Agadingor had his truchman by him: he rode on before all his cōpany, and made token to speke with some crysten man, on the one wyng of the felde: and a gentle squyer, called Affrenall, seyng the sarazyn, and the sygnes that he made, rode fro his company, and sayd: Syrs, stande styll here, and I wyll go and speke with yōder sarazyn, and torne agayne to you: he hath a truchman with hym, he cometh to speke with some man: this squier came to ÿ sarazyn, who taryed for him. Than the truchman said, ye crysten man, are a noble man and a man of armes, and redy to gyue aunswere to our demaunde? I am suche a one. quod Affrenall: say what it please you, ye shal be harde and reueyued. Than quod the trucheman: syr, beholde here a gentleman and a nobleman of ours, who demaundeth the batayle to fyght with you hande to hande, and if ye wyll haue mo, we shall fynde to the nombre of sixe of ours redy to fyght with vi. of yours, and the quarell of our men shal be this; they say and wyll iustifye that our faythe is better and more of valure than yours, for our faythe and lawe hath ben written syth the begynning of the worlde: and as for your lawe was foude out by one man, whome the iewes hanged on a crosse. Ah, syr, quod Affrenall, speke no further of that mater; it appertayneth nat to the to speke or dispute our fayth and lawe; but say to this sarazyn, that he swere by his fayth and belene to afferme the batayle, and let hym bringe to the nombre of x. all gentlemen of name and armes, and within this thre houres I shall bringe as many to try the mater. The truchman resyted those wordes to the sarazyn, who be semynge had gret ioy to accept and afferme the batayle. Thus they toke this enterprise bytwene them twayne and departed, and returned to their owne companies. Tydinges herof came to sir Guy of Tremoyle,<sup>3</sup> and to syr Willyam, his brother, and when they met with Affrenall, they demaunded fro whence he came, and what he had done with the sarazyn. Than Affrenall shewed hym all the hole mater, and how that he had taken the batayle, wherof the sayd two knyghtes were ioyfull, and sayd: Affrenall speke to other; for we two shall be of the nombre of the ten. Syr, quod Affrenall, as god wyll, so be it: I trust I shall fynde ynowe that wolde

3 T 2

<sup>3</sup> Tremouille.

be glad to fyght with the sarazyns. Anone after, Affrenall mette with the lorde of Thune,<sup>a</sup> and shewed hym the aduenture, and demaunded if he wolde be one of the company. The lorde of Thune<sup>a</sup> wolde nat refuse, but gladlye graunted to be one of their company: for euery one that Affienall dyd gette he myght haue goten a C. if he had wolde. Sir Boucyquant the yonger, syr Helyons of Lingnac, syr Johan Russell englysshe, sir Johan Harpedon, Aleys Bodet, and Bochet, all these accepted the batayle: Whan the nombre of ten were accomplished, euery man drewe to their lodgyng to arme them incontynent to do batayle: whan this was knowen in  $\frac{1}{2}$  hoost, and the knyghtes named that had taken on them that enterprise, than all other knyghtes and squyers sayd: a these ten knyghtes were borne in a good houre, that haue founde this day so happy an aduenture; wolde to god, quod dyuers, that we were of  $\frac{1}{2}$  nombre. Every knight and squyer was ioyfull of this enterprise, and greatly praised the aduenture, sauynge the gentle lorde of Coucy, who was nat cöteute therwith.

The lorde of Thune<sup>a</sup> was of the company of the lorde of coucy; he shewed him the couenante he had made with Affrenall, to be one of the ten to fight with ten sarazyns. As many as herde therof prayed greatly that aduenture; but the lorde of Coucy spake against it and sayd: Ah, sirs, ye yonge people  $\frac{1}{2}$  knowe but lytell of the worlde, but rather exalte a folysshe dede than a wyse dede: in this enterprise I can se no reason, for dyuers causes; one is, that ten knyghtes and squyers of our men, all gentlemen of name and blode, must fyght agaynste as many sarazyns: howe shall our men knowe whether they be gentlemen or no? if they lyst they may set agaynste our men ten rybauldes or varlettes, and if they hap to be dyscomfyted, we shall wyn nothyng but ten varlettes, and yet we shall be neuer the nerer to wyn  $\frac{1}{2}$  towne of Aufryke, but we shall thus put our good men in aduētūre; peraduenture they wyll set a bussment, and whan our ten men be in the felde to tary for their men, they wyll close them rounde about, wherby we shall lese them, and be so moche the febler. There I say, quod the lorde of Coucy,  $\frac{1}{2}$  Affrenall hath nat wrought wysely in this mater, for at the first whan the sarazyn dyd defye him he shulde than haue made another maner of aunswere than he dyd: he shulde haue sayd howe he was nat the chefe heed of that army, but rather one of the poorest; and where as ye blame our faythe and byleue, ye are nat mete to haue an answer made you therof by me; but if ye lyst I shall brynge you to the great lordes of our armye, and I shall take you vnder my saue conducte, that ye shall go and returne in sauegarde and suretie, and ther ye shall here the lordes speke. Thus Affrenall shulde haue ledde the sarazyn to the duke of Burbone and to the counsayle, and there he shulde haue been herde at leyser, and answered by good aduysse; suche defyaūce in armes for suche quarell ought nat to passe without great deliberacion of good cōsayle; and than if the batayle had ben agreed vnto by vs, yet it wolde haue ben known of them what men by name and surname shulde accomplyssh the batayle; therupon we to haue chosen other of our men for our honour and profite, and therupon to haue had of the sarazyns suretie and hostage, and they of vs. This had ben a more metely maner to haue vsed; wherfore, if this treatie might be withdrawn with reason, it shulde be well doone, and I wyll go and speke with the duke of Burbone, and to take counsayle with the lordes of the armye, and to knowe what they wyll say therto. Thus the lorde of Coucy departed fro the lorde of Thune,<sup>a</sup> and wente to the Duke of Burbons tent, where all the barons assembled togyder to take cōsayle in that mater: for all that the lorde of Coucy had sayde these wordes to the lorde of Thune,<sup>a</sup> by maner of good counsayle and aduysse, yet for all that he lefte nat, but armed hymselfe, and so came forth with other of his company redy to fight with the sarazyns, and sir Guy of Tremouyle<sup>b</sup> the foremost knight.

Thus

<sup>a</sup> Thim.

<sup>b</sup> Tremouille.



Thus the lordes of Fraunce were in cōsaille in the duke of Burbons tent: some thought this defiaunce to be reasonable, and susteyned greatly the wordes and opinyon of the lorde Coucy, sayeng howe it were better to make another maner of treatie; and some other, as specyall the lorde Loys erle of Arthoys, and sir Philip of Bare sayd: Syth the armes be taken and accepted on our parte, it shulde be great blame to let it; wherefore in the name of God and our lady let our knyghtes and squyers furnyssh their enterprise. This purpose was holden and susteyned; but than, all thynges consydred, it was thought for the best that all the hole host shulde be armed, and be in ordre of batayle, to thentent that if the sarazyns wolde do any falsnesse, they shulde be redy to resyst them. This was accomplysshed, and euery man well armed, and drewe into f̄ felde in good ordre of batayle redy to fyght, the genouys crosbowes on the one syde, and the knyghtes and squiers on the other syde, euery lord vnder his baner or penon of their armes; it was a goodly syght to beholde them. The crysten men shewed well howe they had great desyre that the sarazyns shulde haue come and fought with them: and the ten crysten knyghtes and squiers were redy in the felde alone of fro their company, abydyng for the ten sarazins that shulde haue fought with them; but it semed well they had no wyll therto: for when they sawe howe the crysten men ordred themselves and were redy in batayle, they doutted them and durst nat come forwarde, for all that they were thre tymes as many men as the crysten men were. The sarazyns wolde often tymes come well mounted and skrymyssh before the crysten mennes batayle, and than returne againe; and this they dyd of pure malice to put the crysten men to payne and traueyle. This day was so hote with the sonne, that before nor after there had been no suche sene, so that they that were moste lusty and fresshe were so sore chafed in their harness that they were nere ouercome for faute of ayre and wynde: and always the x. crysten men taryed aparte for the ten sarazyns, but they nother sawe nor herde tydynges of any: than they aduysed to aproche the towne of Aufryke and to assaile it, seynge they were all redy armed and redy in batayle: and all day to kepe their honour the ten knyghtes kept the felde tyll it was nyght: there went to the assaute knyghtes and squyers, desyryng to do dedes of armes; they were hote and sore chafed, and yet they traueyled themselfe more and more: and if the sarazyns had well knowen what case f̄ crysten men were in, they might haue done thē great dōmage, and a reysed the siege, and by lykelyhode to haue had the victory; for f̄ crysten men were so wery and so sore traneyled, that they had but lytell strenght; howbeit, they conquered by assaute the first wall of the towne where no man dwelte; than the sarazyns retrayed into the seconde fortresse, skrymysshynge without takynge of any great damage; but the crysten men had damage ynough, for in skrimisshing and assautynge they were in the heate of the sonne and in the duste of the sandes tyll it was nyght, whereby dyuers knyghtes and squiers toke their dethe, whiche was great pytie and damage: by the said occasion there dyed, first, syr Wyllyam of Gacill, and sir Guissliarde de la Garde, syr Lyon Scalet, sir Guy de la saluest, syr Wyllyam of Staple, syr Wilyam Guyret, syr Geoffrey of f̄ chapell, the lorde of Pierbuffier, the lorde of Bonet, sir Robert of Hanges, sir Stephyn Sanxere, sir Aubert de la mote, sir Alaine of Champayn, sir Geoffrey Sresiers, sir Rafe of Conflan, the lorde of Bourke, atysion,<sup>a</sup> sir Johan of Crey bastarde, sir Bertram de Sanache, syr Pyncharde of Morlayne, sir Trystram his brother, syr Ayme of Cousay, syr Ayme of Tourmay,<sup>b</sup> sir Foukes of Stanfours, sir Johan of Chatenas; all these were knyghtes: and there dyed of squiers, Foucans of Liege, Johan of Isles, Blondelet of Areton, Johñ de la Mote, Bouberis floridas of Roque, f̄ lorde of Belles, brother<sup>c</sup> to Wyllyam Fondragay, Water of Canforus, Johan Morillen, Pier of Malues, Gyllot Villaine, Johñ of Lound,<sup>d</sup> Johñ Perier, Johan menne,<sup>e</sup> Johan of Lanay, and Wyllyam

<sup>a</sup> From Artois.<sup>b</sup> Tonnay.<sup>c</sup> The lorde of *Bellefresces*.<sup>d</sup> De la Lande.<sup>e</sup> Le Meine.

Willyam of Parke. There dyed mo than a lx. knightes and squyers, whiche, wysely to consider, was a great losse; and if ȝ lorde of Coucy had ben beleued, this had nat fortunyd, for and they had kepte their lodgynges as they dyd before, they had receyued no suche damage.

*Howe after this aduenture and damage that fell to the crysten men by reason of this assaute before the towne of Aufryke. and that so many knightes and squyers were deed they mayntayned themselfe more wysely after than they dyd before, and cōtynued their siege a longe season after.*

## C A P. CLXXII.\*

OF this foresaid aduenture the knightes and squiers of the host were sore displeasid and abasshed; euery man bewayled his frēdes: at nyght they drewe to their lodgynges and made gretter watche than they had made before, for dout of the sarazyns: they passed that nyght without any other dōmage. Of this aduenture the sarazins knewe nothyng, for if they had knowen what case the Christen men had been in, they might haue done them great dōmage; but alwayes they feared the Christen men; they durst neuer aducture to auaiūce thē-else, but by scrimysshing and castyng of their dartes. They that were moost renomid in armes of their partie was Agadyngore of Olyferne, for he loued the doughter of ȝ kyng of Thunes, wherby he was moost bresshest and ioly in dedes of armes. Thus contynued ȝ siege before the towne of Aufryke. In the realme of Fraunce and Englande, and in suche countreys as these knightes came fro, they herde no maner of tidynges of them, wherof their frendes were sore abasshed, and wyst nat what to saye nor thynke. In dyuers places, bothe in Englande, Heynalte, and in Fraūce there were processyōs made, to pray to god for the prosperite of these christen men. Thentencion of the christen men beyng at the siege, was to abyde there tyll they had cōquered the town of Affrike, outhr by force, famyne, or treatie. The kyng of Cicyll wolde gladly it had ben so, and so wolde all other Christen yles adioynyng, for this towne of Affrike was their vtter enemye; and specially the genouoys toke great payne to serue the lordes to their pleasure, to thētent they shulde nat be anoyed by reason of their long siege. To speke properly, it was a marueylous enterpryce, and came of an highe corage of the christen knightes and squyers, and specially the Frenchmen, who for all the losse of their knightes and squiers, and pouertie that they endured, yet they cōtynued styll the siege at their great costes and charges without ayde or cōforte; and the genouoys, who were ȝ first setters on that enterpryce, began than to faynt and dissymule, for as the brute ran than, they wolde haue ben gladde to haue made a treatie with the Sarazyns, and to haue lefte the knyghtes of Fraunce and Englande, and of other Christen countreys styll in that busynesse, as I shall shewe you hereafter as it was enforced me.

Nowe at this present tyme lette vs leaue to speke of this siege of Aufryke, and speke of a fest that the kyng of Englande made the same season in London.

\* This chapter ought to be numbered CLXVIII.

*Of a feest and iustes made by the kyng of Englande in Lōdon, whyle the Christen knyghtes and squyers were at the sege before the towne of Ansfryke agaynst the sarazyns; and howe this feest was publisshed in dyuers countreys and landes.*

CAP. CLXXIII.<sup>a</sup>

YE haue herde before in this hystorie what a feest was holdē at Paris whā quene Isabell of Fraunce made there her first entre, of the whiche feest tidynges sprede abroad into euery cōutre: than kyng Richarde of Englande and his thre vnclēs, heryng of this goodly fest at Paris, by ȝ reportes of suche knyghtes and squyers of their owne as had ben at the same fest, ordayned a great fest to be holden at the cyte of Lōdon: where there shulde be iustes and lx. knyghtes to abyde all cōmers, and with thē lx. ladyes freshely apparelled to kepe thē company: and these knyghtes to iust two dayes besyde sonday, and the challenge to begyn the next sonday after ȝ fest of saint Michaell, as than in the yere of our lorde god M.CCC. fourscore and ten, whiche sonday the said lx. knyghtes and lx. ladyes at two of ȝ clocke at afternoon shuld issue oute of the towre of London, and so to cōe along the cytie through Chepe, and so to Smythfelde: and that daye xii. knyghtes to be there redy to abyde all knyghtes straūgers suche as wolde iust. This sō-day was called the sonday of the fest of challenge; and on the mōday next after, the sayd lx. knyghtes to be in the same place redy to iuste, and to abyde all cōmers curtesly to ron with rokettes; and to the best doer of the out syde shulde be gyuen hym for a price a riche crowne of golde; and the best doer of the in syde, duely examyned by the ladyes in the quenes chambre, shulde haue for a price a riche gyrdell of golde: and the tuesday folowyng the knyghtes shulde be agayne in the same place, and to abyde all maner of squyers straūgers and other, suche as wolde iust with rokettes; and the best iuster on the out syde shulde haue for his price a courser saddled; and the chiefe doer of the in syde shulde haue a faucon. The maner of this fest was thus ordayned and deuised, and herauldes were charged to crye and publysshe this feest in Englande, in Scotlande, in Almayne,<sup>b</sup> in Flaūders, in Brabant, in Heynalt, and in Fraunce; the herauldes departed some hider and some thider: these tidynges sprede abroad into dyuers cōtreys: the herauldes had daye and tyme suffycient. Knyghtes and squiers in dyuers cōtreys apparelled themselves to be at this feest, some to se the maner of Englande, and some to iuste. Whan these tidynges came into Heynalt, sir Wyllyam of Heynault, erle of Ostreaunt, who was yonge and lyberall, and desyrous to iuste, purposed in hymselfe to go to the feest in Englāde, to se and to honour his cosyns, kyng Rycharde of Englande and his vnclēs, whome he had neuer sene before: he hadde great desyre to be aquaynted with them, and desyred other knyghtes and squyers to kepe hym cōpany, and specially the lorde of Gomegynes because he was well acquaynted with Englysshemen, for he had ben dyuers tymes among them. Thanne sir Wyllyam of Haynaulte purposed whyle he made his prouision to go into Hollande to se his father Auberte, erle of Heynaulte, Hollande, and zelande, to the entente to speke with hym, and to take leaue to go into Englande: he departed fro Quesnoy in Heynault, and rode tyll he came to Haye<sup>c</sup> in Hollande, where the erle his father was at that tyme, and there he shewed his father his purpose that he was in to go into Englande to se the cōuntry and his cosyns, whome he had neuer sene. Than therle his father answered and sayd: Wyllyam my fayre son, ye haue nothyng to do in Englāde, for nowe ye be by couenant of maryage

alyed

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXIX.<sup>b</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> The Hague.

alyed to the realme of Fraunce, and your suster to be maryed to the duke of Burgoyne; wherfore ye nede nat to seke none other alyauce. Dere father, quod he, I wyll nat go into Englande to make any alyauce; I do it but to feest and make myrthe with my cosins there, whom as yet I never sawe, and bycause the feest whiche shal be holden at London is published abrode; wherfore, syth I am signified therof and shulde nat go thyder, it shulde be sayd I were proude and presumpuous; wherfore in the sauynge of myne honoure I wyll go thider; therefore, dere father, I requyre you agree therto. Sonne, quod he, do as ye lyst; but I thynke surely it were better that ye taryed at home. Whan the erle of Ostreuaunt sawe that his wordes contented nat his father, he wolde speke no more therof, but fell in other comunicacion; but he thought well ynough what he wolde do, and so dayly sent his prouisyon towards Calais. Gomegynes the heraulde was sente into Englande fro therle of Ostreuaunt, to gyue knowlege to kynge Rycharde and to his vnclis howe that he wolde come honorably to his feest at London. Of those tidynge the kynge and his vnclis were ryght ioyouse, and gaued to the heraulde great giftes, whiche after stode hym in great stede, for after in the ende of his dayes he fell blynde; I can nat tell if god were displeased with hym or nat; in his dayes he lyued marueylously; wherfore in his olde dayes, and that he hadde loste his syght, there were but fewe that were sorie therof. Thus the erle of Ostreuaunt departed from Haye<sup>a</sup> in Hollande, and toke leaue of his father, and so returned to Quesnoy in Heynaulte to the couësse his wyfe.

This noble feest wherof I make mēcyon was pablysshed and cryed in dyuers places, wherby knyghtes and squyers and other aduansed themselves to go thyder. The erle Walleran of saynt Pole, who as than had to his wyfe kyng Rycharde of Englandes suster, he prepared greatly to go into Englande, and so came to Calys; and also the erle Ostreuaunt departed fro Heynaulte, well accompanied with knyghtes and squyers, and so passed through the cuntrye of Arthoys, and came also to Calis, and there he founde the erle of saynt Poule, and the shyppes passagers of Douer were there redy; and whan the shippes were charged and the wynde good, these lordes tooke the see; howbeit, as it was shewed me, and I thynke it true, that therle of saynt Poule passed first into Englande before the erle of Ostreuaunt; and whan he came to London he founde there the kyng, and his brother in lawe sir Johan Hollande, and other lordes and knyghtes of Englande, who receyued hym with great ioye, and demaunded of hym tidynge of the realme of Fraunce. He answered well and wysely. Than therle of Ostreuaunt passed ouer on a thursdaye and so cāe to Canterbury, and on the fridaye he visyted saint Thomas shrine, and offred there in the mornynge, and laye there all that daye, and the nexte day rode to Rochester; and bycause he had so gret a company and cariages, he rode but small iourneys, to ease his horse; and on the sondaye he rode to dyner to Dertforde, and after dyner to London, to be at the feest, whiche began the same sonday.

On the sonday nexte after the feest of saynt Michaell, this feest and triūphe shulde begyn, and that daye to be done in Smythfelde, iustes called the chalenge: so the same sonday, about thre of the clocke at afternoone, there issued out of the towre of London, first, threscore coursers apparelled for the Justes, and on euery one a squier of honour ridyng a softe pase: than issued out threscore ladyes of honour mounted on fayre palfreys, ridyng on the one syde, richely apparelled; and euery lady ledde a knight with a cheyne of syluer, which knyghtes were apparelled to iust: thus they cam ridynge alonge the stretes of London with great nombre of trumpettes and other mynstrelles,  
and

<sup>a</sup> The Hague.

and so came to Smythfelde, where the quene of Englande and other ladies and damoselles were redy in chabres richely adorned to se the iustes, and the king was with the quene: and whan f̄ ladyes that ledde the knyghtes were come to the place, they were taken downe fro their palfreys, and they mouēd vp into chambres redy apparelled for thē: than the squiers of honour alighted fro the coursers, and the knyghtes in good order mouēd on them; than their helmes were sette on and made redy at all poyntes: than thyder came the erle of saynt Poule, nobly accompanied with knyghtes and squyers, all armed with harnesse, for the iustes to begynne the feest, whiche incontynent begame; and there iusted all knyghtes straungers, suche as wolde and hadde leysar and space, for the nyght came on: thus these iustes of chaleng began, and cōtynued tyll it was nyght: than knyghtes and ladyes withdruē themselves, and the quene was lodged besyde Poules in the bysshoppes palace, and there was the supper prepared. The same euenyng came therle of Ostreuaunt to the kyng, who was nobly receyued.

Nowe for these iustes on the sonday: for the answerer without, the erle Walleran of saynt Poule had the price; and of the chalengers, the erle of Huntyngdon. There was goodly daunsyng in the quenes lodgyng, in the presence of the kyng and his vncles, and other barons of Englande, and ladyes and damoselles, contynuyng tyll it was daye, whiche was tyme for euery persone to drawe to their lodgynges, except the kyng and the quene, who lay there in the Bysshoppes Palays, for there they laye all the feestes and iustes duryng.

On the nexte day, whiche was mondaye, ye myght haue sene in dyuers places of the cytie of London squyers and varlettes goyng aboute with harnesse, and doynge of other busynesse of their maisters. After noon kynge Richarde came to the place all armed, richely apparelled, accompanied with dukes, erles, lordes, and knyghtes; he was one of the inner partie. Than the quene, well accompanied with ladyes and damosels, came to the place where the iustes shulde be, and mounted into chabres and scaffoldes ordayned for thē: than came into the felde the erle of Ostreuaunte, well accōpanyed with knyghtes of his couētre, and all were redy to iuste: than came the erle of saynt Poule and other knyghtes of Fraunce, suche as wolde iuste: than began the iustes; euery man payned hymselfe to gette honour; some were stryken downe fro their horses. These iustes contynued tyll it was nere nyght: than euery person drewe to their lodgynges, knyghtes and ladyes, and at f̄ hour of supper euery man drewe to the couite: there was a goodly supper and well ordayned. And as that day the price was gyuen to the erle of Ostreuaunt for the best iuster of the vter partie, and well he deserued it; the price was gyuen hym by the ladyes, lordes, and herauldes, who were ordained to be iudges: and of the inner partie a knyght of Englande, called sir Hughe Spenser, had the price.

The nexte daye, Tuesday, there was iustes agayne in the same place, of all maner of squyers, whiche endured tyll it was nyght, in the presence of the kyng, quene, lordes, and ladyes: than euery man drewe to their lodgynges, as they had done the dayes before, and at supper they returned to the bysshoppes palays, where the kyng, the quene, and the ladyes were. There was a goodly and a costely supper, and after, great daunsyng, contynuyng all nyght. The wednesdaye after dyner they iusted in the same place, all maner of knyghtes and squyers suche as wolde iuste: that was a sore and a rude iustes, enduryng tyll nyght, and than wdruē, and at the hour of supper they resorted where they supped before. The Thursdaye the kyng made a supper to all knyghtes and gentylmen straungers, and the quene to all ladyes and damoselles. Than on the friday the duke of Lancastre made a dyner for all knyghtes and squyers straungers, whiche was

a goodly dyner: and on the Saturdaye the kyng and all the lordes departed fro Lōdon to Wyndstore; and thre of Ostreuaunt and the erle of saynt Poule, with all other knyghtes and squyers straungers, were desyred to accompany the kyng to Wyndstore; euery mā rode as it was reason to the castell of Wyndstore. Than there began agayne great feestes, with dyners and suppers gyuen by the king: and specially the kyng dyde great honour to the erle of Ostreuaunt his cosyn, whiche erle was desyred by the kyng and his vnclcs that he wolde be content to take on hym the order of the garter. The erle answered, howe he wolde take cōsāyle in that mater: than he cōsāyled with the lorde of Gomegines and with Fierabras of Vertan bastarde, who in no wyse wolde discourage nor counsaile hym to refuse the order of the garter: so he toke it on hym, wherof the knyghtes and squyers of Fraūce suche as were there had great marueyle, and murmured sore therat among thēselfe, sayeng: the erle of Ostreuaunt sheweth well that his courage enclyneth rather to be Englysshe than Frenche, whan he taketh on hym the order of the garter, and weareth the kyng of Englandes denyse: he sheweth well he regardeth nat the house of Fraunce, nor the house of Burgoyne: the tyme wyll come he shall repent hymselfe: all thynges cōsydred, he knoweth nat what he hath done, for he was wel beloved with the frenche kyng, and with the duke of Thourayne his brother, and with all the blode royall, in suche wyse, that whan he came to Parys or into any other place to any of them, they euer made hym more honour than any other of their cosyns: thus these Frenchemen euyll accused hym without cause: for that he had done was nothyng contrary nor hurtfull to the realme of Fraunce, nor to his cosyns nor frendes in Fraunce; for he thought none otherwyse but honour and loue, and to plecth his cosyns in Englande, and to be therby the rather a good meane bytwene Fraūce and Englande, if nede were: nor the daye that he toke on hym the order of the garter and his othe, euery man maye well vnderstande that he made none alyauce to do any picydyce to the realme of Fraunce: for that he dyde was but for loue and good company; howebeit, no man canne let the enuyous to speke yuell.

Whan they had daūced and sported them a certayne space in the castell of Wynsore, and that the kyng hadde gyuen many fayre gyftes to ƿ knyghtes and squyers of honour of the realme of Fraunce and Heynaulte, and specially to the yonge erle of Ostreuaunt; than euery man toke leaue of the kyng and of the quene, and of other ladyes and damoselles, and of the kynges vnclcs: thane the erle of saynt Poule and the Frenchemen, and the Henowayes<sup>a</sup> and almaygues<sup>b</sup> departed. Thus ended this great feest in the cytie of London, and euery man went to their owne. Than it fortunēd, as anone brute roneth farre of, the Frenche kyng, his brother, and his vnclcs, were enfourmed by suche as hadde ben in Englande at the sayde feest, of euery thyng that hadde been done and sayd: nothyng was forgotten, but rather more putte to, in the exalyng of yuell dedes, than fortheryng of good dedes: it was shewed the kyng playnly how the erle of Ostreuaunt had ben in Englande, and taken great payne to exalte and to do honour to the Englysshemen, and in helpynge forwarde the feest holden at London: and howe he hadde the chiefe prise and honoure of the iustes aboute all other straungers, and howe he had spoken so fayre to the Englysshmen that he was become the kyng of Englandes man, and had made seruyce and alyauce with hym: and taken on hym the order of the Garter in the chapell of saynt George in Wyndstore, whiche order was fyrste stablysshed by kyng Edwarde the thirde and his sonne prince of Wales; and howe that no man myght entre into that confrary or company, without he make seruyce or othe, neuer to beare armoure agaynste the crowne of Englande; whiche promyse they sayd the erle of Ostreuaunt had made withoute any reseruacyon. With these tidynges the Frenche kyng, his brother, and his vnclcs were sore troubled and greuously displeased with the erle of Ostreuaunt: than the Frenche kyng sayde, Lo, sirs, ye maye se  
what

<sup>a</sup> Hainaulters.<sup>b</sup> Germans.

what it is to do for hym; it is nat yet a yere paste sythe he desyred me that his brother myght be bysshoppe of Cambray; and by these tidynges that gyfte were rather precydyal to the realme of Fraunce than auancement: it hadde been better we had gyuen it to our cosyn of saynt Poule: the heynoways dyd neuer good to vs, nor neuer wyll, for they be proude, presumptuous, and to fiers; always they haue owed better good wyll to the Englysshemen than to vs; but a daye shall come they shall repent them: we wyll sende to the erle of Ostreuaunt, cōmaūdyng hym to come to vs, to do vs homage for the cōūtie of Ostreuaunt, or els we shall put hym fro it and annexe it to oure realme. They of his counsaile answered and sayde, Sir, ye haue well deuysed; lette it be done as ye haue sayde. It maye well be thought that the duke of Burgoyne, whose doughter the erle of Ostreuaunt had to his wyfe, was nothyng content with those tidynges, for alwayes he had auansed his sonne of Ostreuaunt towards the kyng and his cōsaile. This mater was nat forgotten, but incontinent the Frenche kyng wrote sharpe letters to therle of Ostreuaūt, who was at quesnoy in Heynaulte, cōmaūdyng hym to come to Parys to do his homage before the kyng and the other peeres of Fraunce for the contie of Ostreuaūt, or els the kyng wolde take it fro hym and make hym warre. When the erle had well ouersene these letters, and parceyued howe that the Frenche kyng and his counsaile were displeasid with hym, to make his answer he assembled his counsaile, as the lorde of Fountayns, the lorde of Gomegynes, sir Wyllyam of Hermes, the lorde of Trassegines, the bayly of Heynaulte, the lorde of Sancelles, sir Rafe of Montigny, the abbot of Crispyne, Johan Sulbart,<sup>2</sup> Jaquemart Barrier of Valencennes: these wyse men connsayled togider what answer might be made to the kynges letters: there were many reasons alleged; at last, all thynges consydred, they thought it for the best to write to the Frenche kyng and to his counsaile, to take a daye to answer clerely to all maner of demaundes, by the mouthe of certayne credyble persons, and none by writyng; and in the meane season they sente certayne notable personages to the erle of Heynaulte and duke Aubert of Holāde, to haue their cōsayailes what answer to make: thus they dyde: they wrote swetely and courtesly to the kyng and to his counsaile, so that with those fyrst letters the kyng and his cōsaile was well content. Than therle and his cōsaile sent into Hollande the lorde of Trassegines, and the lorde of Sancelles, Johan Semart, and Jaques Barrier: they rode to the erle of Heynault, and shewed hym the state of the countie of Heynault, and the letters that the Frenche kyng hadde sent to his sonne the erle of Ostreuaunt. The erle of Heynaulte had marueyle of that mater, and said, Sirs, I thought neuer otherwyse but that it shulde come thus to passe: Wyllyam my soñe had nothyng to do to go into Englāde; I haue delyuered hym the rule and gouernance of the cōūtie of Heynaulte; he might haue done and vsed hymselfe accordyng to the counsaile of the country. Sirs, I shall tell you what ye shall do: Go to my fayre cosyn the duke of Burgoyne, for it lyeth well in his power to regarde and to sette an order in all thynges demaunded by the Frenche kyng; I canne gye you no better counsaile. With this answer they departed out of Hollande and came into Heynault, and there shewed what answer they had; wherwith the erle and his counsaile were content. There was assigned to go into Fraūce to the duke of Burgoyne, the lorde of Tressegines, sir Wyllyam of Hermyes, sir Rafe of Montigny, Johan Semart, and Jaques Barrier: to shewe and declare all þe processe and sute that they made at the Frenche courte shulde be over longe to resyte; but finally, all thynges concluded, for all þe duke of Burgoyne coulde do, there was non other remedy but that the erle of Ostreuaunt must come personally to Parys, and to knowe his homage due to the Frenche kyng for the countie of Ostreuaunt, or els surely to haue warre. The lorde of coucy

<sup>2</sup> *Johnes* calls him Semart: and see below.

and sir Olyuer of Clysson toke great payne for the erles sake, but sir Johā Mercier and the lorde de la Ryuer labored on the contrarye syde as moche as they might.

Nowe let vs leaue any more of this mater, and retourne to speke of the lordes and knyghtes of Fraunce, who were at the siege before the strong towne of Auffyke agaynst the sarazyns.

*Howe and by what incydent the siege was reysed before the towne of Auffyke, and by what occasyon and howe, every man retourned to their owne countreis.*

CAP. CLXXIII.<sup>a</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe the christen men had besieged the stronge towne of Auffyke by lande and by see, setting all their ententes howe to conquere it: for they thought if they might wyn it, the brute therof shulde sounde to their great honours and prayse, and howe they myght there kepe themselfe toguyder and to resyst agaynst their ennemyes, sayenge: howe they shulde alwayes haue confort of the Christen men, and specially of the Frenche kyng, who was yong and desyrus of dedes of armes, consydring howe he had truce with the Englysshmen for two yeres to cōe: the sarazyns feared the same; wherefore dayly they made prouysyon for the towne, and refreshed alwaies their towne with newe fressh men, hardy aduenturers, accordynge to their vsage. Thus the season passed on, and after the christen men hadde suffred the great losse of their companions with lytell wynnyng or aduauntage on their partye, all their hole hoost were in a maner dyscomforted, for they coulde nat se howe to be reuenged. Than many of them beganne to murmure, sayenge: we lye here all in vayne; as for the skrymysshes that we make, therby shall we neuer wyn the towne of Auffyke, for if we slee any of them, for eche of them they wyll gette agayne ten other: they be in their owne countrey; they haue vytayles and prouysyons at their pleasure, and that we haue is with great daūger and parell. What shall we thinke to do? if we lye here all this wynter, longe and colde nyghtes, we shal be morfounded and frosen to dethe: thus we shall be in a herde case by dyuers wayes: first, in wynter no man dare take the see for the cruell and tyrryble wyndes and tempestes of the see, for the sees and tempestes are more fierser in wynter than in somer: and if we shulde lacke vytayles but eight dayes togyther, and that the see wolde suffre none to come to vs, we were all deed and lost without remedy: secondly, though it were so that we had vytayles and all thynges necessary without daunger, yet howe coulde our watche endure the payne and traueyle contynually to watche every night? the parell and aduerture is ouer herde for vs to beare. for our enemyes who be in their owne countrey, and knowe the countrey, may come by nyght and assaile vs to their great aduauntage, and do vs great damage, as they haue done allredy: thyrdly, if for faute of good ayre and of swete fresshe meates, wherwith we haue been norysshed, that mortalyte hap to fall in our hoost, we shall dye every man fro other, for we haue no remedy to resyst agaynst it: also furthermore, if the genouys turne agaynst vs, which are rude people and traytours, they may be nyght tyme entre into their slyppes, and so leue vs here to pay for the scotte: all these doutes are to be consydrd by our capytaynes, who lye at their ease, and regarde nat the case we be in: and also some of the genouys spared nat to speke, and sayd in raylynge to the crysten men: What men of armes be ye frenchemen? whan we departed fro Genne<sup>b</sup> we thought that within fyltene dayes that ye had layen at siege before the towne of Auffyke

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXX.

<sup>b</sup> Genoa.



fryke ye shulde haue conquered it: and nowe we haue ben here mote thanne two monthes, and as yet we haue done nothyng; as for such assautes and skrymysshes as ye make, the towne nedeth nat to feare this yere, nor yet the nexte: by this maner of meanes ye shall neuer conquere this realme of Aufryke, nor yet of Thunes. This comunynge spred so abrode in the hoost, that it came to the knowlege of the gret lordes and capytaynes of the armye, and specyally the lorde of Coucy, who was sage and discrete, and to whose counsaile the chefe parte of the host inclyned euer vnto: he sayd to himselfe and considered howe all these doutes were greatly to be feared; and to the entente to ordayne hastely remedy, he assembled secretly all the great lordes of the hoost togyder in counsaile, bycause wynter aproched. This counsaile was kept in the duke of Burbons tente, and the conclusyon was to dyslodge for that season, and every man to retourne the same way as they came; the lordes prepared secretly for this. Than the patrons of the galees were sente for, and their purpose was shewed vnto them, and they wyst nat what to say to the contrary; at laste they sayde: My lordes take no doute nor suspecte in vs; we haue made you promesse, wherfore we wyll acquyte vs truely to you: for if we wolde haue enclined to the treaties of the affrykans, they wolde haue desyred to haue had peace with vs, but we wolde neuer gyue helyng to them: we wyll kepe our faythe to you, syth we haue promysed so to do. Sirs, quod the lorde of Coucy, we repute you for good and trewe and valyaüt men, but we haue consydered dyuers thynges; wynter aprocheth, and we are destytute of vitayles and other prouisions. By the grace of god, we ones returned into the realme of Fraunce, we shall so enfourme the kynge, who is yonge and lusty, and desyrous to knowe the maner of these marches, and seyng that he hath treuce with the englysshemen, we thynke small counsaylynge wyll cause hym to come hyther with a puyssaunce royall, as well to ayde the king of Cicyll as to make some conquest vpon the sarazyns; wherfore, syrs, we requyre you make redy your galees and all other vessels, for we wyll departe within shorte dayes. The genouoys were nothyng content with the frenchemen, in that they wolde departe from the siege before the stronge towne of Aufryke; but they coulde fynde none other remedy, wherfore it behoued them to suffre. A generall brute ran through the hoost, howe the genouoys were aboute to bargayne with the sarazyns, and take their parte, and to betray f̄ crysten men. The crysten men beleued this to be true, and some said one to another: our souerayne capitayn, as the duke of Burbone, the erle Dolphyn of Auvergne, and the lorde Coucy, syr Guy de la Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> syr Johan of Vyen, and syr Phylippe of Bare, they knowe surely howe euery thyng gothe, and therfore we shall thus sodaynely departe from the siege. Their departure was publysshed throughe the hoost, and every man cōmaunded to conuey euery thing into their shyppes. Than saruaütes and varlettes were redy to trusse all maner of baggages, and to cary it into their vessels lyenge at ancre: whan euery thyng was cōueyed, every man entred into suche shyppes as they came in, and dyuers barones and knyghtes made couenaüt with their patrons and maysters of their shyppes, some to sayle to Naples, some to Cicyll, some to Cyper,<sup>b</sup> and some to Rodes, to the entent to go to Iherusalem. Thus they departed from the siege of Aufryke, and toke the see in the syght of the sarazyns that were within the towne. Whan they sawe their departure, they made gret noyse with blowing of hornes and sownynge of taburs, and shoutynge and cryeng, in suche wyse, that the host of sarazyns that lay abrode knewe therof: than ye shulde haue sene the yonge sarazyns mouë on their horses, and came to the place where the siege had layne, to se if they coulde haue founde any thyng there; Agadingor of Olyferne, and Brahadyne of Thunes foremost; and there they sawe howe the christen men were so clene departed that they had lefte nothyng behynde that they myght cary: there the sarazyns rode

vp

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> Cyprus.

vp and downe more than two houres, to se the maner howe the crysten men had lodged theymselfe at the siege; they greatly prayed the crysten mennes subtyltie, in that they had made so many pyttes in the erthe to haue therby fresshe water; and whan they hadde been there a certayne space, and well regarded the galees and shyppes on the see, some of theym entred into the towne of Aulryke, to se their frendes and alyes, and other departed agayne to their lodgynges, and made bose of their voyage: sayenge howe the crysten men durst abyde there no leugur: and sayd howe their puissaunce was nothyng to regarde, and that they wolde neuer more sette so moche by the frenchemen nor by the genouoys as they had done before: and of this they sayd trouth; I shall tell you howe and wherfore.

After that this siege was thus contynued, as I was enfourmed, ſ̄ sarazins waxed proude, for they sawe well howe the genouoys had done their full power to hurte and to anyo them, and they sawe that this voyage was to their great coste, and yet had won but lytell, whiche was of trouthe: and all that season the sarazyns kuewe nothing of the deth of so many crysten knyghtes and squyers as were slayne at the great skrymysshe; but the same day that the crysten men departed they had knowledge therof, and I shall shewe you by what meanes. The sarazyns founde in the felde a varlet of the genouoys, lyenge on the grounde sore sycke of the hote feuer, and was nat able to go to the galees whan his felowes depaied; and of the fyndyng of this varlet the sarazyns were ryght ioyfull, and brought him before their lordes, and shewed howe they had founde hym; than a trucheman was set to here his examynacion: in the begynnyng he wolde shewe nothyng, for he rekened himselfe but deed, and he desyred the sarazyns incontynent that they wolde put hym to deth. Than the lordes of the hoost, as Agadingor Dolyferne, Brabadyn of Thunes, and dyuers other, thought if they shulde cause hym to dye they shulde wyn nothyng therby, yet rather to saue his lyfe, so ſ̄ he wolde shewe the trouthe of that he shulde be demaunded: than it was shewed hym, that if he wolde without lyenge shewe the trouth, his lyfe shulde be saued, and to be delyuered franke and free, and sent into his owne coūtrei by the first shyp that shulde come thence, outhur into the lande of Geneue or Marcyll,<sup>a</sup> and also that he shulde haue gyuen to hym a C. besantes of golde. Whan the varlet, who feared dethe, herde this promesse, he was well comforted, for he knew well whatsoeuer the sarazyns promyse by their faythe shulde be truely kepte, and also ye knowe well naturally euery man is lothe to dye. Than he said to the truchman, cause the lordes to swere on their lawe to vpholde all that ye sayd, and than shall I aunswere you to all that I shal be examyned of, as farre forth as I knowe. The trucheman shewed this to the lordes, and they made faythfull promesse by their fayth to fullfyll their promesse. Than ſ̄ varlet sayd, nowe demaunde what ye wyll, and I shall answere. Than firste he was demaunded of whence he was: he answered and sayd, he was of Portuances. Than they demaunded of hym of the feates of the frenchemen that had been at the siege: he named to them dyuers, for he hadde kepte often tymes cōpany with harauldes, by whome he had lerned dyuers of their names. Than they desyred to knowe ſ̄ occasion why they departed so sodaynely fro the siege: wherto he answered wysely and sayd: as for that I cannat tell, but by supposyng, and acordyng as I haue herde spoken in our host; as for me, I was neuer a counsaile with the lordes; but, as the brute went, the frenchmen were in doute of the genouoys that they shulde betray them; and the genouoys denyed it, and sayd they neuer thought it, nor neuer wolde, and blamed the frenchmen ſ̄ they shulde so slaunder them: also it was sayd, that parte of the occasyon of their departure was bycause the wynter drue nere, and they were afrayde of taking of suche damage as they had receuyed

<sup>a</sup> Genoa or Marseilles.

ceyued before. What damage was that? quod the lordes. Syrs, quod he, the same daye that ten of our men shulde haue fought with ten of yours, they lost about a lx. knightes and squiers of name and armes; the genouoys sayd, for that cause they departed. They belened well y varlet, of whiche newes the lordes sarazyns had great ioye: they enquired of hym no further, but vphelde to him all their promesses; and so he returned to Portnances and to Geane,<sup>a</sup> and shewed all this aduenture, and what he had said and herde, and he receyued no blame therof. Than the sarazyns sayd amonge themselfe, they shulde nat nede to care for the frenchemen nor for the genouoys of a longe season after, and said, howe before the towne of Aufryke they had taken no profyte; howebeit, they sayde they wolde take better hede to their portes and hauens and the see costes of their realmes, and specyally to the straytes of Marroke;<sup>b</sup> they set sure watche, that the genouoys nor venysians shulde nat passe that wayes into Englande nor into Flaunders with their marchaundyses without payenge of a great trybute, and yet that to be by greate grace and lycence. Thus the sarazyns assembled and alyed them togyther of dyuers realmes, as of Aulryke, Thunes, Bogy,<sup>c</sup> Marroke,<sup>b</sup> Belmarny,<sup>d</sup> Tremessyans,<sup>e</sup> and Granade: all agreed togyder to kepe straytly their portes and passages, and to sette galees armed on the see to a great nombre, to the entent to be lordes and maisters of the see; and all this they dyd for the great hatred that they had to the frenchemen and genouoys, bycause they had ben at the siege before Aufryke: thus they dyd great trouble to the goets and commers on the see, so that moche yuell and myschefe grewe therby: for by meanes that the sarazyns were thus lordes of the see, suche marchaundyses as came fro Damas,<sup>f</sup> fro Cayre,<sup>g</sup> fro Alexaander, fro Venyce, fro Naples, and fro Geane,<sup>a</sup> were in y season so dere in Flaunders and so scarce, that many thynges coulde nat be gotte, nouthur for golde nor syluer, and specially all spycery was wonderfull dere and gayson.

Ye haue herde here before howe the crysten men departed fro the siege of Aufryke: they all passed the see, but all aryued nat at one porte, for some were so sore tourmented on the see, that they returned in great daunger; howebeit, some of them returned to Geane.<sup>a</sup> Processyons were made in Fraūce for their good spede, for there was no tydynges herde of them. The lady of Coucy, the lady of Sulley, the lady Dolphyn of Auuergne, and other ladyes of Fraūce, who had their husbandes in this voyage, were in great sorowe as longe as the voyage endured; and whan tydynges came howe they were passed the see, they were ryght ioyfull. The duke of Burbone and the lorde of Coucy returned priuely, and lefte behynde them all their caryage and trayne, and so they came to Parys aboute saynte Martyns tyde in wynter. The frenche kynge was ioyouse of their comynge, as it was reason, and demanded of them tydynges of Barbary and of their voyage: they shewed al that they knewe and had herde and sene. The kynge and the duke of Thourayne were glad to here them speke: than the kyng sayd, if we can bringe it aboute to make peace in the churchie, and bytwene vs and Englande, we shall gladly make a voyage with an army royall into those parties, to exalte the crysten faythe, and to confounde the infydels, and to acqyute the dedes of our predecessours, as kyng Philip and kinge Johan: for they bothe, eche after other tooke on them the crossey, to haue gone to the holy lande, and they had gone thyder if y warres had nat fallen in their realme; in lykewyse we wolde gladly make suche a voyage. Thus the Frenche kynge comuned with these lordes, and so the day passed; and lytell and lytell men came home fro their voyage, and the kynge helde hymselfe that season most comenly at Parys, somtyme at y castell of Lowre,<sup>b</sup> and another tyme in the howse of saynt Powle, where the quene most comenly laye. So it fell in the same season,

aboute

<sup>a</sup> Genoa.<sup>b</sup> Morocco.  
<sup>f</sup> Damascus.<sup>c</sup> Bugia.  
<sup>g</sup> Cairo.<sup>d</sup> Benamarine.  
<sup>b</sup> The Louvre.<sup>e</sup> Tremesen.

aboute the feest of saynt Andrewe, and that all knyghtes and squyers were returned fro their voyage into Barbary. wherof all þ̄ worlde spake. Than in the frenche kynges court there was a mocyon moued for a newe iourney to be made thyder; and because that the frenche kyng had gret affection to dedes of armes, he was counsayled and exorted thereto, and it was sayde to hym: Syr, ye haue deuocyon and great ymaginacion to go ouer the see, to fyght agaynst the infydels, and to conquire the holy lande. That is trewe, quod the kyng; my thought nyght and day is on none other thyng. And, as I was enfourmed, it was þ̄ lorde of Tremouyle<sup>2</sup> and sir Johan Mercier that had these wordes to the king. for they owed their fauour to pope Clement beyng at Auignon; and loke, what they two sayd þ̄ kyng wolde agre to them, for they were most speciall in fauour: than they sayd to the kyng, Syr, ye can nat with good conscience take on you this voyage, without first the church be all one: syr, begyn first at the heed, than your enterprise shall take good conclusyon. Why, quod the kyng, where wolde ye haue me to begyn? Syr, quod they, at this present tyme ye be nat charged with any great busynesse; ye haue treuce with the englysshemen for a longe space; wherfore, syr, if it please you this peace duryng, ye myght make a goodly voyage; and, syr, we can se no better nor more honourable a voyage for you thanne to go to Rome with a great puyssaunce of men of armes, and pull downe and dystroy that ante-pape, whome the romayns by force hath created and set in the seate cathedrall of saynt Peter: if ye wyll, ye maye well accomplysse this voyage, and we suppose ye can nat passe your tyme more honorably; and, syr, ye maye well know, that if this antepape and his cardynals knowe ones þ̄ ye be mynded to come on them with an army, they wyll yelde themself, and aske mercy. The kyng remebred hymselfe a lytell, and sayd, howe he wolde do as they had deuysed, for surely he said he was moche bounde to pope Clement: for the yere past he had ben at Auignon, where as the pope and his cardynals made hym ryght honourable chere, and had gyuen more than was demaunded, bothe to hymselfe, to his brother, and to his vncles; wherfore the kyng sayd it hadde deserued to haue some recompence; and also at his departure fro Auignon he had promysed the pope to helpe and to assyst hym in his quarell: at that season there was at Parys with the kyng the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne. Than it was agreed and concluded, that the nexte Marche after, the kyng shulde departe fro Parys, and take the way towards Sauoy and Lombardy, and the erle of Sauoy to sende his cosyn Germayne with hym: and the kyng to haue vnder his charge the duke of Tourayne his brother, with four thousande speares, and the duke of Burgoyne with two thousande speares, and the duke of Berrey two thousande, the constable of Fraunce two thousande speares, with the bretons, xaintoners and lowe marches, the duke of Burbon a thousande speares, the lorde of saynt Poll and the lorde of Coucy a thousande speares; and all these men of armes to be payed in hande for thre monethes, and so fro terme to terme: and whan those tydynges were knownen in Auignon, pope Clement and his cardynals were greatly reioysed, and thought in a maner their enterprise atcheden; also the kinge was counsayled nat to leaue the duke of Bretayne behynde hym, but to sende and to desyre hym to prepare hymselfe to go with him in this voyage: the kyng wrote notably to hym, and sent his letters by a man of honour, an offycer of armes, signyfenge the duke in his letters the state of this voyage. Whan the duke had red these letters, he turned hymselfe and smyled, and called to hym the lorde of Mountboucher, and sayd: Syr, larke and regarde well what the frenche kyng hath written to me; he hath enterprised to departe this next Marche with a great puyssaunce to go to Rome, and to dystroy suche as take parte with pope Bonyface. As god helpe me his iourney shall tourne to nothyng, for in shorte space he shall haue more flax to his dystaffe than he can well spyne; I thinke he wyll leaue

soone

<sup>2</sup> De la Tremouille.

soone his folyssh thought; and also he desyreth me to go with hym with two thousande speares; howbeit, I wyll honour him as I ought to do, and I wyll write to him ioyously, bycause he shall be contente, and shewe hym, howe if he go in this voyage he shall nat go without me, seyng it pleaseth him to haue my company; howbeit, sir, of Mountboucher, I say vnto you, I wyll nat traueyle a man of myne for all þe kyng hath purposed and sayd: nothyng shall there be done in that behalfe. The duke of Bretayne wrote goodly letters and swete to the frenche kyng, and the officer of armes returned with theym to Parys, and deliuered them to the kyng, who redde them, and was well contented with the aunswere.

*Of the Englysshe knyghtes that were sente to Parys to the Frenche kyng, fro the kyng of Englande and his vnclis, to treat for a peace.*

C A P. CLXXV.<sup>a</sup>

THE wyll and purpose of the frenche kyng none wolde breke, for it pleased greatly all the knyghtes and squyers of Fraunce, bycause they wyst nat where better to employ their season, and every man prepared towards that voyage; and namely the clergy of all the prouynces of the realme, ordayned and graunted a taylor, to sende at their costes and charges men of warre with the kyng; howbeit, this voyage tourned to nothyng, as the duke of Bretayne had sayd before, and I shall shewe you by what incidence. About þe feest of Candelmas, came other tydynges to the Frenche kyng, and to his counsaile, whiche they loked nothyng for. Certayne of the kyng of Englandes counsaile, and suche as were of his priuy chambre, were sent nobly to Parys to the frenche kyng; and they that were chefe of this legacyon was, syr Thomas Percy, syr Loys Clyfforde, and sir Robert Briquet, with dyuers other knyghtes in their company, but I herde as than no mo named. When these thre knyghtes were come to Parys to hym, than the frenche kyng was desyrous to knowe what it myght meane, that the kyng of Englande dyd sende so hastely of his counsaile to hym. These knyghtes of Englande, syr Thomas Percy, and other, alyghted in Parys, in the strete called the Crosse, at the signe of the castell: the frenche kyng as than lay in the castell of Lowre,<sup>b</sup> and his brother the duke of Tourayne with hym, and his other thre vnclis in other lodgynges in the cytie, and the cōstable syr Olyuer Clysson: it was nere hāde noone when the englysshemen came to Parys, and they kept their lodgyng all that day and nyght after, and the next day aboute nyne of þe clocke they lept on their horses ryght honorably, and rode to the castell of Loure<sup>b</sup> to the kyng, where he with his brother and vnclis, the Erle of saint Poll, the lorde of Concy, the constable of Fraūce, sir Johan of Vien, and sir Guy de la Tremoyle,<sup>c</sup> with dyuers other barons of Fraunce, were redy to receyue the englysshe ambasadours, who alyghted at þe gate and entred in: and there receyued them the lorde de la Ryuer, syr Johan Mercyer, sir Lyon of Lignach, sir Peter Villers, sir Willyam of Tremoyle,<sup>c</sup> and syr Marcell; there they receyued them honourably, and brought them into the chambre, where the kyng taryed for them: than they dyd of their bonettes and kneled downe. Syr Thomas Percy hadde the letters of credence that the kyng of Englande had sente to the frenche kyng; he deliuered them to the kyng, who tooke them, and caused the knyghtes to stande vp: than they stepte somewhat

VOL. II.

3 X

what

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXXI.<sup>b</sup> The Loure.<sup>c</sup> Tremouille.

what backe. The kyng opyned the letters and red them, and sawe well that they had credence; than he called to hym his brother, and his vnclcs, and shewed them the letters. Than his vnclcs sayd: Syr, call forthe the knyghtes, and here what they wyll say. Than they aproched, and were comāunded to declare their credence. Than sir Thomas Percy spake, and sayd: Dere sir, the entencion of our souerayne lorde the kyng of Englande is, that he wolde gladly that suche of his speccyall counsaile, as his vnclcs, dukes of Lancastre, Yorke, and Glocestre, and other prelates of Englande, suche as his speccyall trust is in, might come into your presence, and to your counsaile, as shortely as myght be, to treatre for a maner of peace: so that if he and you togyther myght couenably and resonably be conioyned, and meanes founde to haue a conclusyon of peace, he wolde be therof right ioyfull: and for that entente he wolde nouthre spare his owne payne and labour, nor yet none of his men, nother to come hymselfe, or to sende suffyciente persones ouer the see to the cytie of Amyence, or to any other place assigned; and syr, we be come hyder for this entente to knowe your pleasure in this behalfe. Than the kyng answered and sayde: Syr Thomas Percy, you and all your company are ryght hertely welcome, and of youre comynge and wordes we are ryght ioyfull; ye shall tary here in Paris a season, and we wyll speke with our counsaile, and make you suche a couenable answer or ye depart, that it shall suffice you. With this answer the englysshemen were well content. Than it was nere dyner tyme, and the englysshemen were desyred to tary to dyne: and so the lorde of Coucy brought them into a chambre, and the lorde de la Ryuer; there they dynd at their layser: and after dyner they retourned into the kynges chambre, and there had wyne and spycys, and thanne toke their leaue of the kyng, and wente to their lodgyng.

The comynge of syr Thomas Percy and his company into Fraūce, and the tydynges that they brought, pleased greatly the frenche kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne, and dyuers of his counsaile, but nat all, and specially suche as ayded to sustayne pope Clementes quarell: for they sawe well by these tydynges, that if the frenche kyng enclnyed to this treatie, that it shulde greatly let and hynder the voyage that was mynded to go to Rome, to distroy pope Bonyface and his cardynals, or els to bringe them to the beleue of pope Clemente; but the mater of treatie of peace was so hygh, and touched so moche the welthe and profyete of all crystendome, so that no persone durst speke against it; the duke of Burgoyne and his counsaile, with the kyng and his brother, and the duke of Burbone, were all of one acorde. The kyng made good chere to sir Thomas Percy, and to the englysshemen, but amonge them there was one knyght, called sir Robert Briquet, whome the frenche kyng loued nat; he was a frencheman borne, but alwayes he helde himselfe outhre naueroys or englysshe, and as than he was one of the kyng of Englandes priuy chambre; the frenche kyng dissymuled with hym sagely, for whan he spake to theym, alwayes the kyng wolde tourne hisselle to syr Thomas Percy, or els to syr Loys Clyfforde, and sayd: Syrs, we wolde gladly se this peace to be had bytwene vs and our aduersary the kyng of Englande, for the quarell and warre hath to long endured bytwene vs; and one thinge I wyll ye knowe, ȳ it shall nat be hyndred on our parte, though it be gretly to our cost. Sir, quod they, the kyng our souerayne lorde, who hath sent vs hyther, hath great affection to haue peace, and saythe, that it shall nat be let on his parte, and hath marueyle that the warre and dyscensyon bytwene your landes hath endured so longe, and that no good amiable meanes hath been had or this tyme. Than the frenche kyng answered and sayd: we shall se the good affection that he hath therunto.

These englysshemen taryed at Parys vi. dayes, and euery day dynd with one of the dukes

dukes of Fraunce; and in the meane season it was determyned that the frenche kynge, his vnclcs, and his priuy counsaile, shulde be at Amyence, by the myddes of Marche next alter, there to abyde the coming of the kynge of Englande, his vnclcs, and his counsaile, if they wolde come thyder; and the englyssh knyghtes sayd, they made no doute but at the lest the kynge of Englandes vnclcs shulde be at the day assigned at Amyence. This was the conclusyon of this treatie. The daye before that they shulde departe out of Parys, the kynge came to y palays where his vnclcs were, and there he made a dynner to the Englyssh knyghtes, and caused sir Thomas Percy to sytte at his borde, and called hym cosyn, by reason of the Northumberlandes blode, at which dynner there was gyuen to sir Thomas Percy, and to the englyssh knyghtes and squiers great gyftes and fayre iewels: but in the gyuynge of them, they ouer slypte syr Robert Briquet; and syr Peter Villers, chefe steward with the frenche kynge, delyuered the gyftes, and he said to syr Robert Briquet: Sir, whan ye haue done suche seruyce to the kynge my maister, as shall please hym, he is ryche and puisaunt ynough to rewarde you. With whiche wordes sir Robert Briquet was sore abasshed, and parceyned well therby that y kyng loued hym nat, but he was fayne to suffre it. After dynner mynstrels began to play; that pastyme ones past, sir Thomas Percy cāe to the kyng and sayd: Sir, I and my company haue great marueyle of one thing: y ye haue made vs so good chere, and gyuen vs so great gyftes, that sir Robert Briquet hath nothyng, who is a knight of our maisters preuy chambre; Sir, we desyre to knowe the cause why. Therto answered the frenche kyng, and sayd: Sir Thomas, the knyght that ye speke of, syth ye wyll knowe y mater, he hath no nede to be in batayle agaynst me, for if he were taken prisoner his ransome shulde soone be payde: and therwith the kyng entred into other cōmunycacion. Than wyne and spyces were brought forth, and so tooke leaue and returned to their lodgyng, and made a reconyng and payde for euery thyng. The nexte daye they departed and spedde so in their iourneys that they arryued in Englade, and shewed the kyng and his vnclcs howe they had spedde, and greatly prayded the frēche kyng, and the chere that he had made them, and shewed of the gyftes and iewels that he had gyuen them.

Nowe lette vs leaue a lytell to speke of the Englysshemen, and somewhat shewe of kyng Johan of Castyle.

*Of the dethe of kyng John of Castyle, and of the crownyng of kynge Henry his soune.*

### C A P. CLXXVI.<sup>a</sup>

YE haue herde here before in this hystorie, how peace was made bytwene the kynge of Castyle, and the duke of Lancastre, who chalenged to haue ryght to the realme of Castyle, by reason of the lady Cōstaunce his wyfe, daughter to kyng Dōpeter: and by meanes of a fayre daughter y the dnke of Lancastre had by the sayde lady Cōstaunce, the peace was made and conyrmēd: for the sayde kynge Johan of Castyle had a soune to his heyre, called Henry, who was prince of Galyce;<sup>b</sup> this Henry was maryed to the duke of Lancasters daughter, wherby good peace was made bytwene Englande and Castyle; and within two yeres after this maryage kyng Johan of Castyle dyed, and was buried

3 X 2

<sup>a</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXXII.

<sup>b</sup> Galicia.

buried in Burgus, in Spaygne. Anone after his dethe, the prelates and lordes of Spaygne drewe togynder, and determyned to crowne the yonge herytoure the prync of Galyce:<sup>a</sup> this prync Henry was crowned the nyynth yere of his age, and his wyfe daughter to the duke of Lancastre, was a fyftene yere of age. Thus the dukes daughter, by the lady Cōstaunce, was quene of Castyle, and lady and heritour to all the landes and seignories that kyng Dompeter,<sup>b</sup> kyng Henry, and kyng Johan helde, excepte that the duke of Lancastre her father, and his wyfe her mother, had duryng their lyues, whiche was a penyoun of a hundred thousande floreyns by yere: and foure of the best erles of Spayne were pledges and dettours for the same. Thus the duke of Lancastre sawe his two daughters, (one quene of Spaygne, the other quene of Portugale,) bestowed.

Nowe lette vs speke of the yonge erle of Armynake, and of the voyage he made into Lombardy, for the matter requyreth it, and we shall leaue to speke of the kyng of Castyle.

*Of the army of the yonge erle Johan of Armynake, and of the ryage that he made into Lombardy, and howe he dyed at the sieg before the towne of Alexandre.*

#### CAP. CLXXVII.<sup>c</sup>

IT hath been shewed here before what great affectyon the yonge Erle of Armynake had to go into Lombardy with menne of warre, to ayde and assyste his suster germayne, and his brother in lawe her husbände, the lorde Barnabo, eldest sonne to the lorde Barnabo, whome the duke of Myllayne had caused to be slayne marueylouslye: and this duke of Myllayne was erle of Vertues, and named Galeas, whose daughter the duke of Orlyançe<sup>d</sup> hadde to wyfe. This sayd lady, who was daughter to the olde erle of Armynake, and suster to the yonge erle, was greatly abashed and discomforted, and had no truste but on her brother; she signified to hym all her estate, her pouertie and necessyte, and dōmage that she suffred, and humbly requyred her brother that he wolde helpe to kepe and defende her agaynste the tyraunt the erle of Vertues, who wolde disheryte her without any tytell of reason. And to the request of his suster the erle of Armynake condescended, and sayde: That whatsoeuer it shulde coste hym, he wolde do his denoyre to ayde his suster; and all that he promysed he accōplished in dede: for he had, by the ayde of the erle Dolphyne of Auuergne, made dyuers treaties in Auuergne, Rouergue, Quercy, Lymosyn, Piergourte,<sup>e</sup> Engoulmoys, and Agenoyes, and had bought certayne fortresses whiche had been kepte by the Englysshemen, gascoyns, and bretons, suche as hadde made warre agaynste the realme of Fraunce, vnder colour of the kyng of Englande: and all suche as he hadde agreed withall, hadde their pardons of the Frenche kyng, and besyde that, the kyng gaue golde and syluer to be gyuen amonge them: but they were all bounde to the erle of Armynake, to go with hym into Lombardy to ayde hym in his warres there; and euery man shewed hymselfe therto well wyllynge, and euery man drewe to the ryuer of Rosne, and to ÿ ryuer of Sosne. The duke of Berrey, and the duke of Burgoyne, suffred them in their countreys to take vitaylles at their pleasure, for they wolde gladly haue had them clene delyuered out of the countre. And in ÿ season vnder the kyng there ruled in the Dolphyryn, the lorde

<sup>a</sup> Galicia.

<sup>b</sup> Don Pedro.

<sup>c</sup> Afterwards duke of Touraine.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXXIII.

<sup>e</sup> Perigord.



lorde Engueram Durdyn, and the kyng had written to hym, commaundyng that these men of warre parteynyng to the erle of Armynake, shulde pesably passe throughe the countrey, and to haue that they neded for their money.

Whan the erle of Foiz, beyng in Byerne, in his castell of Ortays, vnderstode howe the erle of Armynake assembled men of warre togyuder, he began to muse, for he was a man greatly ymaginatif: well he had herde howe the brute was, that the erle of Armynake made this assemble to go into Lōbardy, agaynst the lorde of Myllaygne; but bycause in tyme past the erle of Armynake, and his predecessours before him, and his brother Bernarde of Armynake, had made hym warre, therefore he doutted lest the sayde assemble shulde tourne agaynst hym: wherfore he thought he wolde nat be vnprouyded, but prepared his fortresses with men of warre, and made suche prouysion, that if he were assayled, to resyt it with all his puissaunce. But the erle of Armynake, nor his brother, were nothyng of that purpose, but thought surely to vpholde y treuce that was bytwene them, and to atcheue his enterpryce into Lombardy. There were many knyghtes and squyers Englysshe, gascoyns, bretons, and other, that were bounde to serue the erle of Armynake in his warres; but if he shulde haue made warre agaynst the erle of Foiz, they wolde haue taken the erle of Foiz parte, and haue forsaken the erle of Armynake, the erle of Foiz was so wel beloued with all men of warre, for the wyse-dome, largesse and prowesse that was in hym. And whaie the duchesse of Thourayne was enformed howe thierle of Armynake was redy to passe ouer the mountayns, to entre into Lombardy, with puissaunce of men of warre, to make warre agaynst the duke of Myllayne her father, and howe that the Frēche kyng, and his vncles, the dukes of Berrey, and Burgoyne, consented therto, bycause they wolde haue their countreis clene auoyded of the cōpanyons and routes of pyllars, suche as had oftentimes greued sore their cōtreys, this lady thought nat to forgette the matter, but wrote to her father the duke of Myllayne, all that she knewe, to the entente that he shulde take hede to hymselfe, and to his countrey. The lorde of Myllayne was well enformed of the busynesse, and prouyded for menne of warre where he might gette them, and refreshed his townes, cyties, and castelles, with vitayle, and other munysiōs of warre, and loked surely to haue warre with the erle of Armynake, as they hadde indede.

About the myddes of the moneth of Marche, the moost parte of these cōpanyons were assembled togyuder in the marchesse of Auignon, all alonge the ryuer of Rosne, to the nombre of fytene thousande horses, and passed the ryuer, and so entred into the Dolphynny of Vyen, and lodged abrode in the vyllages: and some passed forwarde, to haue the more easy passage thoroughe the mountayns, whiche were peryllous to passe, bothe for man and horse. The erle of Armynake, and his brother, with certayne other knyghtes, wente to Auignon, to se hym that was called pope Clemente, and the cardynalles there, and offred their seruyce to the pope, to ayde hym agaynst the tyrantes the lombardes, for whiche offre they were thanked; and whan they had ben there an eight dayes, and that great parte of their company were paste forwarde, they tooke their leaue of the pope, and of the cardynalles, and prepared to folowe their men: there the two bretherne departed asondre, the erle Johan of Armynake, and sir Bernarde his brother. Than the erle sayde: Brother, ye shall retourne backe to Armynake, and kepe our herytage, of Comynges, and Armynake, for as yett alle the fortresses be nat deluyered fro the companyons; there is as yett the garyson of Lourde, where as Peter Arnaulte kepeth vnder the kyng of Englande, and also the garyson of Bouteuyll, whiche is kepeth by sir Johan of Granley,<sup>a</sup> sonne to the Captall of Buse;<sup>b</sup> and thoughte it be so that

as

<sup>a</sup> Greilly.<sup>b</sup> Buch.

as nowe we haue peace with the erle of Foiz, yet it is good to doubtte hym, for he is cruell and hastye; his thought is vnknownen, therfore it is good that our landes be nat dyspurueyed: wherfore Brother, for these causes and other, ye shall retourne home, and ye shalle here often fro me, and I fro you. Sir Bernarde lightlye agreed to this purpose: the deuyse semed good to hym; nor also he had no great affectyon to go forthe in that iourney. Than at his departyng the erle his brother sayde to hym: Brother, in youre retournyng, ye shall go to our cosyn Raymonde of Thourayne, who holdeth lande of the pope in the countie of Venus, and maketh warre agaynst hym, and my cosyn hath maryed his daughter to the prince of Orenge: and shewe hym howe I am desyred of the pope to requyre hym to go with me in this voyage, and I shall make hym my companyon in euery thyng, and I shall tary for hym at the cytie of Gappe, bytwene ȝ mountayns. Sir, quod Bernarde, I shall do your message. Thus the two bretherne departed asondre in the fælde, and neuer mette toguyder agayne alter. The erle of Armynake toke the waye to the cytie of Gappe, in ȝ lande of Gauos, and Bernarde his brother went to the castell of Bolougne, where sir Raymonde of Thourayne was, who receyued his cosyn ioyously. Than sir Bernarde shewed hym the message that he had to saye fro his brother the erle of Armynake, with as fayre wordes as he coulde deuise, the rather therby to encline hym therto. Than sir Raymonde answered and sayd: Fayre cosyn, or your brother the erle of Armynake be entred fare into Lōbardy, and hath besieged any towne, I shall folowe hym, but as yet it is to soone for me and my men to go forwarde: write vnto your brother my cosyn, ȝ aboute the moneth of Maye I shall folowe hym, and by ȝ tyme I trust to haue an ende of the war bytwene myne vncler pope Clement, and the cardinals at Auignon and me, who as yet wyll do me no ryght, and kepeth awaye fro me perforce, that myne vncler pope Gregorie gaue me; they wene to wery me, but they shall nat: they desyre knyghtes and squyers, and gyueth theym pardons to make warre agaynst me, but they haue no lyst therto, for I canne haue mo men of warre for a thousande Floreyns in one daye, than they can haue for all their absolucions in seuyr yere. Fayre cosyn, quod sir Bernarde, that is trewe; kepe on your purpose, I wolde nat counsaile you otherwyse; and as ye haue answered me, so shall I write to my brother therle of Armynake. So be it, quod sir Raymonde. Thus they were toguyder all a hole daye. Thāñe sir Bernarde departed and passed the ryuer of Rosne, at the bridge Saynt Espyrite, and so returned into Quercy, and into Rouergue, by the mountayns, and so came thyder as he wolde be, and lefte the erle of Armynake his brother alone with his warre, agaynst the duke of Myllayne, erle of Vertues. Or he departed fro Bolougne, he wrote to his brother all the newes that he knewe, and the answer of sir Raymonde of Thourayne. The erle of Armynake receyued the letters in the waye goyng to the cytie of Gappe: he redde the letters, and so passed forthe and made no great force of the matter.

We wyll contynue to speke of the yonge erle of Armynake, and shewe his feate, or I speke of any other mater. And thus I say, the good loue and great affection that he had to confoite his suster and brother in lawe her husbunde, whom the erle of Vertues, who called hymselfe lorde of Myllayne, falsely disheryted withoute cause or tytell, caused the erle ioyously to passe in his iourney as farre as Pyemount, in Lombardy. There was two great reasons that caused the erle of Armynake to assemble, and to make that iourney at that tyme: The fyrste was, that the realme of Fraunce therby was cleder rydde of the routes of these companyons, that hadde done moche hurte in the realme, and therby the countreys better assured than they were before. The seconde reason was, to ayde his suster, for he had great pytie that she and her husbunde shulde lese their herytage, wherby they shulde lyue and maynteyne their estate: and for these conyderacions he toke on hym this enterprice. The capitayns of the companyons sayde

one to another: Lette vs ryde forthe merily agaynst these lombardes: we haue a good quarell, and a iuste tytell, and we haue a good capitayne, wherby our warre shal be moche the better; and also we shall go into the best cuntry of all the worlde, for Lombardy receyueth fro all costes the fatnesse of the worlde; and these lombardes be naturally euer riche and cowardes; we shall attayne agaynst them moche profyte; there is none of vs that be capitayns, but that shall retourne so ryche, that we shal neuer nede to make warre more agaynst any man. Thus the companyons deuysed one with another, and whan they came into a plentuous cuntry, there they wolde tary a season to refresshe them and their horses.

In the same season the good aduēturous knight of Englande, sir Johan Hacton,<sup>a</sup> was in the marchesse of Florēce, and made warre agaynst the florētyns, in the quarell of pope Bonyface of Rome, for they were rebell agaynst the popes cōmaundement, and so were also the Perusyns.<sup>b</sup> The erle of Armynake thought that if he might get this Englysshe knyght to take parte with hym, he shulde haue a great treasure of hyn, bycause of his wysedome and valyauntnesse: the erle wrote to hym, signyfieng hym all the hole mater of his enterprice, desyringe hym of his ayde; whiche letter was sente by a discrete person to sir Johan Hacton,<sup>a</sup> beyng in the marchesse of Florence, and had a two thousande syghtyngē men. He receyued the letter and redde it, and whan he hadde well vnderstande all the substance therof, he was ryght ioyfull, and answered and sayde: That his owne warre ones atchyned, he wolde do nothyng after, tyll he were in the company of the erle of Armynake. The messangere sayde: Sir, ye saye well: I requyre you write your mynde to my lorde the erle of Armynake, he wyll the better beleue it. With ryght a good wyll, sir, quod the knight, it is reason that I so do. Than the Englysshe knyght wrote, and delyuered the letter to the messangere, who returned and came agayne to his lorde, and founde hym as than in the marchesse of Pyneroll, where was gret treatie bitwene hym and the Marques of Saluces, who shulde be ayded with hym, to ayde him in his warre agaynst the duke of Myllayne, erle of Vertues.

The tidynges that the erle of Armynakes Squyer brought to hym fro sir Johan Hacton,<sup>a</sup> and of the wordes that were written within the letter, the erle was greatly reioysed, and sayde: that he trusted to make suche warre to the duke of Myllayne, that he wolde bring hym to reason, or elles to dye in the payne. Whan all his company were passed the straytes of the mountayns, and were in the good cuntry of Piemounte, nere Thouraygne,<sup>c</sup> than they rode abrode, and dyde moche hurte in the vyllages, suche as coulde nat holde agaynst them. Than the erle layde siege before Asti, in Pyemount, and entended to tary there for sir Johā Hacton.<sup>a</sup> Prouisyon came to them fro all partes, and also the companyons wan certayne small holdes, and toke the vitayls that was within them. The cuntry of Pyneroll, and the landes of the Marques Mountferat, were opnyed and apparelled to delyuer vytayles, and other thynges necessary for ſ̄ hoost, bothe for men and horse; and also great prouisyon came to them out of ſ̄ Dolphyne, and out of the countie of Sauoy. Many folkes greatly enclyned to the erle of Armynake, bycause they sawe his quarell was good and iust, and also bycause the erle of Vertues had caused to be slayne his owne vnclē, sir Bernabo, for enuy, to sette agayne the lordes of Lombardy into their herytages, and disheryted his cosyn germainys, wherof many great lordes, though they spake but lytell therof, yet they hadde great pytie of the case. Whyle the erle laye thus at siege before Asti, he herde tidynges of sir Johā Hacton,<sup>a</sup> wherof he was greatlye reioysed. The tidynges was, that  
the

<sup>a</sup> Hawkwood.<sup>b</sup> Perugians.<sup>c</sup> Turin.

the florentynes were come to the popes mercye, and also the Venisyens, and howe that the sayd sir Johñ shulde haue threscore thousande Floreyns for hym and his company, and that money ones payde, receyued, and delyuered, where as it shulde be departed, than he promysed with a fyue hundred speares, and a thousande brigans afote, to come into the fronter of Gēnes,<sup>a</sup> and to passe ouer the ryuer, wheder their enemyes wolde or natte, and so to come to the erle of Armynake, wheresoouer he shulde be. These tidynges greatlye reioysed the erle of Armynake, and all his company, for the ayde of this sir Johñ Hacton<sup>b</sup> was right pleasaunt. Than the erle of Armynake was counsailed to departe thens, and to go and laye siege before a great cytie called Alexandre, at the entryng of Lōbardy, and whāne they had won that, than to go to Bresuell,<sup>c</sup> whiche was also a good cytie and a fayre.

Thus the erle of Armynake and his company layde siege before the cyte of Alexaundre, standyng in a fayre countrey and a playne, at the departyng out of Pyemount, and at the entrynge of Lombardy, and the way to go to the ryuer of Gēnes;<sup>a</sup> these men of warre passed the ryuer of Thesyn,<sup>d</sup> and lodged at their ease at large, for the countrey was good and pleasaunt there aboute. The lorde Galeas lorde of Myllayne, and erle of Vertues, was as than in a towne called the cytie of Pany,<sup>e</sup> and daylye herde tidynges what his enemyes dyde: but he had marueyle of one thyng, howe therle of Armynake coude gette the rychesse to pay wages to so many men of warre as he hadde brought with hym; but his counsaile answered hym and sayde: Sir, haue no marueyle therof, for the men that he hath, be suche companyons, that desyret to wyne and to ryde at aduerture; they haue vsed longe to ouerron the realme of Fraūce, and to take holdes and garysons in the countrey, so that ÿ countrey coude neuer be delyuered of them; and so it is, that nowe of late the duke of Berrey, and the Dolphyn of Auuergne, to whose cōtreyes these rutters dyde moche dōmage, for they kepte them there against the lordes wylls, and ouerranne the best parte of their herytages, and made theym warre: and they caused the Erle of Armynake to treat with these companyons, so that the Frenche kyng shulde suffre thē to come into this your cōtrey to make warre: and therby, and by meanes of certayne money gyuen to them, they are auoyded out of all the forteresses in the countrey; and also besyde that, the Frenche kyng hath pardoned all suche as made warre agaynst hym, on ÿ cōdycion that they shulde serue the erle of Armynake in his warres, and all that they coude get shulde be their owne; they demaunde none other wages; and suche be named men of armes amonge theym, with a fyue or sixe horses, that if they were in their owne countreys they wolde go afoote, and be but as poore men. It is great parell and iopardy to fyght agaynst suche men, and also lightly they be all good men of warre: wherfore sir, the best counsaile that we can gyue you, is to kepe your townes and fortresses: they be stronge and well prouyded for, and your enemyes haue none artyllary nor engyns, for the saute to be regarded; they maye well come to the baryers of your townes and scrimysshe: other dōmage they can do none; and this appereth well, for they haue ben in your cōtrey this two monethes, and as yet haue taken no fortresse lytell nor gret. Sir, let them alone, and they shall wery thēselle, and be distroyed at the ende, so ye fyght nat with them; and whan they haue distroyed the playne countre, and haue no more to lyue by, they shall than be fayne to returne for famyne, without any other yuell fortune fall on them in the meane tyme: and it shall be well done that your men of warre in your fortresses kepe togynder to ayde eche other in tyme of nede: and sir, sende to suche places as ye thinke your enemyes wyll besiege to resyst thē, for townesmen haue but small dēfēce: for they be nat so vsed nor accustomed to warre, nouthre to assaut nor to defende as men

of

<sup>a</sup> Genoa.<sup>b</sup> Hawkwood.<sup>c</sup> Brescia?<sup>d</sup> Ticino.<sup>e</sup> Pavia.

of armes, knyghtes and squyers be, who are norished and brought vp therin; sir, sende your men of warre to the cytie of Alexandre, therby ye shall haue double profyte; your cytie shal be defended, and your people shall loue you the better, whan they se ye do ayde and confort them: and sir, therto ye be boude sithe ye haue gouernaunce ouer them, and that they paye to you their rentes, subydyes, and aydes, that ye haue demaunded of them dyuers tymes: your enemyes can nat be so strong in the felde before Alexaundre, that the towne shulde be closed in rounde about: they haue no suche nombre to do it, wherfore your men shall entre into the towne at their ease; and whan they of the towne shall se themselfe refreshed with your men of warre, they shall haue y more corage, and loue you moche the better, and shall putte out of their hertes all maner of treatie with your ennemyes. To this counsaile the lorde of Myllayne agreed; and incontynent he assembled togyuder his men of warre a fyue hundred speares, and he made capitayne of the anuncient knight, called sir Jaques of Byerne,<sup>2</sup> an expert man of armes, and they rode through the cōtrey priuely, and so on a nyght they entred into the towne of Alexaundre: they of the towne were greatly reioysed of their cōmyng, and good cause why: bycause the erle of Armynake sawe no menne styrryng in the towne, therefore thre dayes togyuder they santed and scrimysshed at the barriers, and yet with the small nombre that were there, the armynakes were so well resysted that they wan nothyng. Whan sir Jaques de la Byerne,<sup>3</sup> and his company were entred into the strong cyte of Alexaundre, and were lodged and refreshed, the gouernour of the cytie and other came to vysite the in their lodgyng. Than sir Jaques demaunded of them the state of the cyte, and the demeanour of their enemyes, to take cōsayle ther-vpon. The anuncient men and most sagest answered and sayd: Sir, sithe the erle of Armynake hath layde siege before vs, every daye we haue had assautes and scrimysshes before our baryers. Well, sirs, quod the knyght, tomorowe we shall se what they wyll do; they knowe nat of my cōmyng, I wyll make a secrete issue, and lye in an enbusse for them. Ah, sir, quod they, ye haue nede to beware what ye do, for they are a sixtene thousande horses, and if they discouer you in the felde without any bataille, they shall reyse suche a dust with their horses agaynst you and your company, that ye shal be clene disconfit among yourselfe. Well, quod the knyghtes, tomorowe we shall se howe the mater shall go; we must do some feate of armes sithe we be come hyder. Than euery man returned to their lodging, and the knight gaue knowledge to his cōpany, howe that the next mornyng secretly he wolde issue out of the cytie and lye in a bussment in the felde, and cōmaunded euery mau to be redy.

The nexte mornyng sir Jaques de la Bierne<sup>3</sup> armed hym and all his company, and issued out secretly, and with hym a foure hundred, halfe a myle oute of the towne, and assembled in a valey, and caused other two hundred to abyde at y barriers: and cōmaunded them, that if their enemyes came to assaile them, that they shulde make but faynt defence, and recule backe thyderwarde, where as they wolde lye in y busschement. The daye was fayre and clere, and the erle of Armynake, who was yong and lusty, after he had herde masse in his pailyon, armed hym and displayed his penon, and toke with hym but a hundred men, thynking that no man shulde encountre hym, and so came with his company before the baryers lytell and lytell: some folowed hym and some satte styll and sayd: What nede we to arme vs? whan we come to the baryers we shall se no man there; and so satte styll eatyng and drinkyng, and therle of Armynake went to scrimysse before the baryers, and there began to scrimysse one with another; and within a shorte season the defenders beganne to recule lytell and lytell, tyll they came to their enbusse. Whan sir Jaques de la Bierne<sup>3</sup> sawe his enemyes cōe before

VOL. II.

3 Y

hym,

<sup>2</sup> De la Berme.

hym, he discovered hymselfe, and set on the armynagoys, who valyauntly defēded themselfe, for alwayes lytell and lytell socour came to them; there was many a feate of armes done; it was on saynte Christofers daye, and the daye was so hooote that suche as were in their harnes thought verily they had ben in a furnes, the wether was so faynt without wynde, so that the lustyest ther had moche a do to do any feate of armes: the partye of Myllayne were thre agaynst one: the duste and the powder was so great that they coulde scante se one another, and specially they of the erle of Armysnakes parte. There fell to the erle a great aventure: he was so oppressed with heate, that he was so feble that he coulde scant helpe hymselfe, so that he drewe aparte out on the one syde of the fēkle, and no man with him, and there founde a lytell ryuer; whan he felte the ayre of the water he thought he was in paradyse, and sate downe alone besyde the water, and with moche payne dyd of his basenet and sate bareheded, and washed his face, and dranke of f̄ water, wherby he was worse than he was before, for the coldnesse of the water coled so his blode that he was faynter thanne he was before, and fell in a paluesy, so that he lost the strength of his body and speche, and his men had loste hym: there were many taken. After, a knyght of the duke of Millayns foude the erle of Armysnake; whan he sawe hym, he had meruayle what he was: he parceyued wel he was a knyght and a man of honour; than the knyght said, Sir, who be you? yelde you, ye are my prysoner. The erle understode hym nat, nor he coulde nat speke, but he helde vp his hande, and made token to yelde hym. The knyght wolde haue hadde hym to ryse, but he coulde nat; the knyght taryed styll with him whyle other dyd fyght, in the whiche batayle many a feate of armes was done.

Whan syr Jaques de la Bierne,<sup>a</sup> who was a sage knyght, sawe howe the journey was good for his party, and howe that a great nombre of his enemyes were taken and slayne, and also sawe well that his owne men waxed very, and that his enemyes began to multiply with freshe men, than he reculed towarde the cytie skrymysshynge and defendynge. The knyght that had taken the erle of Armysnake, thought nat to leaue hym behynde, for he thought surely he was some man of honoure, and desyred his company to ayde hym to beare his prisoner into f̄ towne, promysynge them to haue parte of his raunsome: they dyd so, and with moche payne brought him into the cyte, and he was vnarmed and layde in a bedde. Than syr Jaques de la Bierne<sup>a</sup> entred into the cytie, and toke his lodgyng, and vnarmed hym, and refreshed him and his company. And whan the erle of Armysnake was myst in the hoost without, they were sore dysmayed and wyst nat what to say nor do, and some came to the place where the batayle had ben to seke for hym, and returned agayne clene dyscomfyted. The knyght that had taken the erle of Armysnake, had great desyre to know what man his prisoner was, and came to another squyer that was in lykewyse taken prisoner, a gascon, desyryng his mayster to suffre hym to go with hym to his lodgyng; so they went togyder: the lombarde knyght led the squyer of Fraunce into a chambre, and brought hym to the bedde where the erle of Armysnake lay sore complaynyng, and caused torches to be lyghted vp, and than said to the french squyer: Sir, knowe you nat this man? The squyer regarded hym well and sayd: I knowe hym well, for I ought so to do, it is our capitayne the erle of Armysnake. With the whiche wordes the lombarde was ioyfull, but the Erle was so sycke that he vnderstode nothyng that was sayd to hym. Than his mayster sayd, go we hence, let hym rest. Thus they left him, and the same nyght he dyed, and passed this transitory lyfe. The next day whan it was knowen that the erle of Armysnake was deed in Alexaunder in his bedde, syr Jaques of Bierne<sup>a</sup> wolde nat that his dethe shulde be ynknownen, but caused it to be publysshed in the hoost, by suche prisoners

<sup>a</sup> De la Berne.

prisoners as he had, to se what his enemyes wolde do. They of the host were sore dyscomfyted as they well shewed, for as than they had no capitayne to drawe vnto, for they were but companyons gadred of all partes: than they sayd, let vs returne and saue ourselfe, for we haue lost our tyme. Anon it was knowen in the Cytie, howe the armynois were discōfyted, and had no capytayne; than they armed them, and issued out a horsebacke and afoote, and set on the hoost cryenge: Pauy<sup>a</sup> for the lorde of Myllayne: there they were taken and slayne without defence. The conquest and botye was great with the companyons that were come thyder with syr Jaques of Bierne.<sup>b</sup> The Armynois yelded themselfe without defence, and caste away armure and fledge, and were chased lyke bestes. Lo what a harde aduerture therle of Armynake and his company had, and where as his entente was to do well, it tourned hym to great yuell. If he had lyued fyue dayes lenger, syr Johan Acton<sup>c</sup> had come to hym with fyue hundred speares, and a thousande brigandyns afoote, wherby he myght haue done many feates of armes, and all lost by harde aduerture.

Whan the duke of Myllayn knewe the truth that his enemyes were slayne and taken, and specially the erle of Armynake slayne, he was ioyfull therof, and loued syr Jaques de Bierne<sup>b</sup> the better in his herte, and made hym soueraygne ouer all his chyualry, and made him chefe of his cōsaille. The duke of Myllayne, to auoyde his cuntry of his enemyes, gaue to euery prysoner that was a gentylman a horse, and to euery other man a florayne, and quyted them clene of their raunsomes: but at their departyng he caused them to swere that they shulde neuer after arme them agaynst hym. Thus these companions departed out of Lombardy, and Piemount, and entred into Sauoy, and into the dolpheny, and had suche pouertie that it was marueyle, for as they passed euery towne was closed agaynst them. Anone, euery man had spent his florayn; some had pytie of them, and dyd gyue them almes for charite, and some rebuked and mocked them, sayenge: Go your wayes, seke out your erle of Armynake, who is drynkyng at a well before Alexaundre: yet they were in more myschiefe whan they came to the ryuer of Rone; they had thought lightly to haue passed ouer into the realme of Fraūce, but they dyd nat, for the frenche kyng hadde cōmaunded all the passages to be closed and kept agaynst them, wherby they fell in great daunger and pouertie; after that they coulde neuer assemble togyther agayne. Thus the yonge erle of Armynakes army brake asonder, and his suster abode styll in as yuell case as she was in before. Than y<sup>e</sup> duke of Myllayne sent for a bysshop of his cōtrei, and for suche as were most next to the erle of Armynake, as had ben there with hym at that iourney: and the duke cōmaunded that therles body shulde be baumed, and sente to his brother syr Barnarde, who was ryght sorrowfull of those tydynges, and good cause why, but there was no remedy. Than the erle of Armynake was buryed in the cathedrall church of Rodays, and there he lyeth.

It ought to be knowen, as it hath ben containd here before in this history, how syr Thomas Percy was sent by kyng Rycharde of Englande, into the realme of Fraūce, and shewed well howe he had gret affectyon to haue a ferme peace bytwene Englande and Fraunce, and specially two of the kynges of Englandes vnclis, as the duke of Lancastre, and the duke Edmonde of Yorke; but the kynges other vnclis, the duke of Glocestre, and constable of Englande, wolde in no wyse acorde to haue any peace with the frenchmen, without it were to the kynges honoure and theirs, and that there myght be rendred agayne all suche cyties, townes, castels, landes, and sygnories, whiche had been gyuen to the kynges of Englande, and to his heyres, whiche falsely had ben taken away by the frenchmen

3 Y 2

<sup>a</sup> Pavia.

<sup>b</sup> De la Berme.

<sup>c</sup> Hawkwood.

frenchmen without tytell or reasone. and besyde that the sōme of four<sup>a</sup> thousande frankes, whiche was owyng whan the frenchmen began the warre agayne; and of this opynyon was dyuers lordes of Englande, sayenge, that to ȳ dethe they wolde iustifye the same: many sayd that the duke of Glocestre had good ryght and reason to sustayne that opynyon; but they dissymuled the mater couertely, bycause they sawe ȳ kynges mynde and affection enclyned greatly to haue peace; but the poore knyghtes and squyers and archers of Englande rather enclyned to haue warre, suche as had susteyned their estates by reason of the warre. Consydre well than howe peace, loue, or acorde might be had bytwene these parties: for the frenchemen in their treatie demaunded to haue Calays beaten downe, and to haue the sygnorie of Guysnes, Hammes, Marke,<sup>b</sup> and Oye. and all the landes of Froyton,<sup>c</sup> and the dependantes of Guysnes, vnto the lymyttes of the water of Grauelyng; and the frenche kyng offered to delyuer to the crowne of Englande as moch landes in valure in Acquytayn; against whiche artycle ȳ duke of Gloucestre helde and said: The frenchmen wyll paye vs with our owne, for they knowe well ynough howe we haue charters sealed by kyng Johan and all his chyldren, that all hōle Acquytayn shulde haue been delyuered to vs, without any resorte or soueraynte to any man; and all that euer they haue doone sythe, hath ben by fraude and false engyn, and nyght and day entende to no other thyng but to disceyue vs: for if Calays and suche landes as they demaunde were delyuered into their handes, they shulde be lordes of all the see coste, and than all our conquestes were as nothyng: I shall rather neuer agree to peace as long as I lyue.

*How syr Peter of Craon fell in the french kynges displeasure and in the duke of Thourayns, and after he was receyued by the duke of Bretayne.*

#### CAP. CLXXVIII.<sup>d</sup>

IN this said seasō there was a knyght of Fraunce of the countrey of Aniou, a gentle knight and of noble extraction, called syr Pyer of Craon, marueylously well beloued, and specially with the duke of Thourayne, for aboute the duke nothyng was doone but by hym; also this knyght helde a gret astate about the duke of Aniou, who was called kyng of Naples, Cicyll, and Iherusalem, and also he was ryche. A sclander was brought vpon hym through the realme of Fraūce, howe he had robbed the yonge kyng of Cicyll, duke of Aniou: for the whiche brute the sayd sir Peter absented himselfe fro the yonge kyng and fro his mother, who had ben wyfe to the olde duke of Aniou; howbeit, he delte so that he was welbeloued with the frenche kyng, and with his brother the duke of Thourayne: also the same season syr Olyuer of Clysson, as thanne constable of Fraūce, was greatly in fauour with the kyng and with the duke of Thourayne, whiche fauour he had get by reason of the good seruyce that he had done in armes, as well in Fraūce as els where, in the kynges dayes and in his fathers dayes kinge Charles; and sir Olyuer of Clyssons daughter had wedded Johan of Bretayne, brother germayne to the quene of Iherusalem; and this syr Olyuer Clysson, by reason of the alyuance that he had by the maryage of Johan of Bretayne, was greatly in the duke of Bretayns indignacion, insomoch that the duke helde him for his mortall enemy, and Johan of Bretayne in likewyse: and the duke of Bretayne repented hym that he had nat slaine sir Olyuer of Clysson whan he had hym in prisone in his castell of Ermyn. This syr Peter of Craon was in suche fauour with the duke of Bretayne,  
that

<sup>a</sup> 1,400,000.

<sup>b</sup> Merle.

<sup>c</sup> Frctin.

<sup>d</sup> This chapter ought to be numbered CLXXIV.



that he myght do with him what he lyst; he was his cosyn: and whyle he was in faour with the frenche kynge and with the duke of Thourayn, he wolde gladly haue brought out of the kynges faoure syr Olyuer of Clysso the constable, if he coulde haue brought it aboute.

Thus the enuyous whiche couertely always hath reigned in Fraunce, dissymuling their maters tyll they come to an yuell conclusion. The constable of Fraunce had alwayes ben so true in all his dedes to þe crowne of Fraunce, that euery manne loued hym, except the duke of Burgoyne, who loued him nothyng: the hatred came by the duches of Burgoyne, who was a lady of hygh corage, for she coulde nat loue the Constable, for the duke of Bretayne was nere of blode to her: and all that her father the erle of Flaunders loued she loued, and suche as he hated she dyd the same; she was of that condycion. This syr Peter of Craon, whyle he was in the frenche court, and great with the duke of Thourayne, he wrote often tymes to the duke of Bretayne secretly euery thyng that he knewe, and the duke wrote agayne to hym: theffecte of their writynges I coude nat knowe; howbeit, I Johan Froysart, auctor of this hystory, on a tyme whan I was at Parys, on a night whan a great myschefe was lykely to haue fallen vpon sir Olyuer Clysso, constable of Fraunce, by a marueylous enterpryse of syr Peter of Craon, as I shall hereafter more playnly declare, whan tyme shall requyre; and by-cause I sawe the mater darke and obscure, and lykely to be great trouble and daunger, I dyd all the payne I coulde to knowe the grounde and occasyon of the mater, why syr Peter of Craon was so sodaynly banysshed fro the frenche kynges loue and the duke of Thourayns. Suche serche I made, and suche enquiry of them that knewe the mater, that some of them enfourmed me of the trouth as the fame and renome ran: fyrst, the duke of Thourayn was dyspleased with this syr Peter of Craon through his owne faute, for he dysclosed the secretnesse that was bytwene the duke of Thourayne and another lady. If he dyd so, he dyd yuell.

The duke of Thourayne as than had suche faour to syr Peter of Craon, that he toke hym as his companyon, and ware euer lyke apparell, and had hym alwayes with hym wheresoeuer he wente, and shewed hym all his secretes. This duke of Thourayn as than was yonge and amorous, and gladly wolde company with ladyes and damosels, and spote hym amonge them, and specially as it was shewed me, he loued entierly a fayre lady of Paris, yonge and fressh: his loue and secretes were knowen in suche wyse that it turned to great dysplesure to the duke, and he wyste nat whome to blame but syr Peter of Craon, for the duke had shewed hym all his secretes in that mater, and had taken hym in his company whan he wolde secretly speke with the said yonge lady. The duke on a tyme promysed the sayd lady a thousande crownes of golde, so that he myght haue his pleasure of her; but the lady as than refused it, and sayd, howe she loued hym nat for his golde nor syluer, but pure loue enclyned her to beare hym her good wyll; but as for golde or syluer she wolde nat sell her honoure. All these wordes and promesses were knowen by the duches of Thourayne, who incontyent sent for the said yonge lady into her chambre; than she called her by her name, and in gret displeasure sayd: Wylte thou do me wronge with my lorde my husbände? The yonge lady was abashed, and all wepyng sayd: Nay, madame, by the grace of god I neuer dyd thynke it, nor neuer wyll. Than the duchesse sayd: Thus it is, I am enfourmed that my lorde my husbände loueth you, and you him, and the mater so farre gone bytwene you, that in suche a place and at suche a tyme he promysed you a thousande crownes of golde to haue his pleaser of you; howbeit, ye dyd refuse it as than, wherin ye dyd wysely, and therefore as at this tyme I pardon you; but I charge you, as derely as ye loue your lyfe, þe ye commune nor talke no more with hym, but suffre  
hym

hym to passe, and herkyn nat to his comynge. Than whan the yonge lady sawe herselfe accused, of trouthe she answered and sayd : Madame, I shall deliyuer me fro him as sone as I can, and shall so deale that ye shall haue no cause of dyspleasure in this mater: therwith the duchesse gaue her leaue to departe, and so she returned to her lodgyng. The duke of Thourayne, who knewe nothyng of this mater, and as he y<sup>e</sup> entirely loued this yonge lady, fortunod on a day to come where as she was. Whanne she sawe hym, she eschewed his company, and made hym no maner of semblant of loue, but dyd clene cotrary to that she had vsed before, for she durst nat, and also she had sworne and promysed to the duches. Whan the duke sawe her countenance he was pensyue, and thought he wolde knowe why she delte so straungely, and demanded of her the cause of her straungnes. The yonge lady all wepyng sayd : Syr, ye haue bewrayed your loue, and the secrete promesse and offre that ye made me to my lady your wyfe, or els some other; remembre you wel to whom ye haue shewed your secretnesse, for, syr, I was in great daunger by my lady your wyfe, and by none other; and I haue sworne and promysed her that after this tyme I wyll neuer cōpany nor talke with you, wherby she shulde haue any ielousy. Whan the duke herde y<sup>e</sup>, they were sore wordes to him, and greatly to his displeasure, and said : Ah, my fayre lady, I swere to you by my faythe, that rather than this mater shulde haue ben shewed to my wyfe, that I had loste a hundred thousande frankes; sythe ye haue sworne, kepe your promesse, for whatsoeuer it coste me I wyll knowe the trouthe who hath bewrayed our secretes.

Thus the duke departed fro the yonge lady, and made no sēblant as than, but pacyently suffred; howbeit, he thought the more, and at nyght came to his wyfe to supper, and shewed her more token of loue than euer he dyd before; and he dyd so moche with fayre wordes, that the duchesse shewed him all the matter, and howe that she knewe it by syr Peter of Craon. Than the duke spake no more at that tyme. That nyght passed, and the nexte day, about nyne of the clocke, he toke his horse and rode fro the howse of saynte Poll to the castell of Lowre,<sup>3</sup> where he founde the kyng his brother heryng of masse. The kyng swetely receyued hym, for he loued hym enterly, and the kyng sawe well by the dukes maner that he had some dyspleasure in his mynde, and said : Ah, fayre brother, what is the mater? it semeth ye be troubled. Syr, quod he, good cause why. Wherefore? quod the kyng: I praye you shewe me. The duke, who wolde hyde nothyng fro the kyng, shewed lym all the hole mater, and complayned greatly agaynst syr Peter of Craon, and sayd : Syr, by the faythe that I owe to god and to you, if it were nat for your honour, I wolde slee hym. We shall do well ynough, quod the kyng; he shall be warned by our counsaile to auoyde our house and seruyce, and in lyke wyse cause him to auoyde your house and company. I am well content with this, quod the duke. The same day the lorde de la Ryuer and sir Johan Mercyer sayd vnto syr Peter of Craon, on the kynges behalfe, that he shulde auoyde the kynges courte and seruyce, and go where he lyst: in lykewyse syr Johan of Buell and the lorde of Deraualx, seneschall of Thourayne, gaue hym lyke commaundement on the duke of Thourayns behalfe. Whan syr Peter of Craon sawe this, he was abashed, and tooke it in great dyspyte, and coude nat ymagyn why it shulde be; and trewe it was, he desyred to come into the kynges presence and the dukes, to knowe the cause of their dyspleasure; but he was aunswered, that nother the kyng nor the duke wolde nat here hym speke. Whan he sawe none other remedy, he apparelled hymselfe and departed out of Parys in great displeasure in his hert, and so rode into Aniou to a castell of his owne called Sable, and taryed there a season sore troubled

<sup>3</sup> The Louvre.

troubled in his mynde; he sawe well he was chased out of the frenche courte and out of the house of Thourayn, and also out of the house of the queene of Naples and Iherusalem: than when he perceyued these thre howses closed fro hym, he thought to go to the duke of Bretaygne his cosyn, and to shewe hym all his adventures: so he dyd, and rode into Bretayne, and founde the duke at Wannas, who made hym good chere, and knewe somewhat before of his trouble; and than this syr Peter shewed hym all the case. When the duke of Bretaygne had well herde all the mater, he sayde: Fayre cosyn, recomforte yourselfe; all this is surely brought aboute by syr Olyuer of Clysso.

This rote and foundacion of hatred multiplyed greatly after, as ye shall here in this hystory. Syr Peter of Craon taryed so longe with the duke of Bretaygne, that he for-gate Fraunce, for the constable, syr Olyuer of Clysso, and the kynges counsaile were agaynste hym; and also they were nat contente with the duke of Bretayne in that he kepte sir Peter Craon in his house: as for the duke of Bretayne he cared nat greatly neyther for the good wyll nor yuell wyll of the Frenche kyng; he prouyded suffy-ciently for his cyties, townes, and castelles, in suche wyse that he loued as well warre as peace; and all that euer he dyd was well knowen in Fraunce and with the kynges counsaile: and suchie as were nexte aboute the kyng repute the duke of Bretayne prowde and presumptuous, and thretened him greatly: but the duke dyde sette lytell therby, and sayde, that he wolde make warre agaynste the erle of Pointhieur<sup>a</sup> in a iuste quarell, for the erle of Pointhieur<sup>a</sup> our cosyn wryteth and nameth hymselfe Johan of Bretayne, as though he were herytour of this cuntry: I wyll he be called Johan, for that is his name, and erle of Pointhieur;<sup>a</sup> and I wyll he put out of his armes the Er-myns, and write hymselfe Johan of Bloys, or of Chatellon, and none other; and if he wyll nat do thus, I shall cause him to do it, and take fro hym his lande, for he holdeth it by faythe and homage of vs: as for the herytage of Bretayne he hath nothyng to do therwith, so that it shulde returne to him, for I haue bothe sonnes and daughters that shall be myne heyres: let hym purchase hym landes in some other place, for as of this he hath fayled. Thus often tymes the duke of Bretayne wolde deuise with sir Peter of Craon, who wolde nat repleye agaynste his pleasure, but rather dyd further it, and all for the yuell wyll that he bare to the constable syr Olyuer of Clysso and to the counsaile of Fraunce.

Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of this mater, and treate a lytell of another pytuous mater concernyng the Erle Guy of Bloys, of whom mencyon is made here before in this hystory.

*Of the dethe of the yonge erle Loyes of Chastelone, sonne to the erle Guy of Bloys.*

#### CAP. CLXXIX.<sup>b</sup>

IT hath been shewed here before in this hystory, whaen I spake of the alyaūce and maryage of Lois of Chatellon, sonne to the erle of Bloys, maryed to ȝ lady Marye, daughter to duke Johan of Berrey; and at the confyrmacyon of this maryage the duke of Berrey prouyded greatly for his daughter, for she was assigned for her dowry in the couētie of Bloys the somme of sixe thousande pounde money corante in Fraunce, to be payed in florayns: if the foresayd Lois of Bloys dyed before his wyfe, than all the  
countie

<sup>a</sup> Penthièvre.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CLXXV.

countie of Blois to be boude to pay these foresayd syxe thousande frankes. And so it fortunod that about the feest of saint Johan the Baptyste, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and aleuen, this yonge Loys of Bloys, sonne to the erle Guy, departed fro his father fro the castell of Moltz<sup>a</sup> in Bloys to go into Haynalt to se his mother and wyfe; and whan he came to Beaumonte in Haynalt he fell sycke of a feuer, by reason that he had rydden great iourneys, and the season was hoote, and he was but yuell kepte, and but tendre of age, as of xiiii. yeres, by whiche sykkenes he dyed without helpe, for the physycions coude nat put away his hote feuer. Ye maye well knowe that the father and mother were ryght soroufull whan they knewe of the deth of thier soune and heyre; in lykewyse so was his wyfe, the yonge lady of Berrey, who loned hym entierly, and thought herselfe hyghly maryed; specyally the trouble of the father was right gret, for he ymagyned that the duke of Berrey was ryght couetouse, and feared lest he wolde entre into the countie of Bloys, and put him out for the dowry of his daughter. Thus the duke of Berreys two daughters were bothe wydowes in one yere; the eldest, called Boesme,<sup>b</sup> was countesse of Sauoy, and her husbande the yonge erle of Sauoy, called Ame,<sup>c</sup> dyed the same yere ryght marueylously, of whose deth there came great busynesse: and it was layde to sir Othe of Grauntsome,<sup>d</sup> in suche wyse that he was fayne to flye out of Sauoy and out of France and Almayne,<sup>e</sup> and so wente and dwelte in the realme of Englande.

*Of the sodayne deth of the Erle Gascon of Foiz, and howe the erle of Chastellon came to thenherytauce.*

CAP. CLXXX.<sup>f</sup>

THE same seasone also dyed the noble and gentle erle of Foiz ryght marueylously: I shal shewe you by what incydente. Truely of all sportes this Erle loned hūtyng with houndes and greyhoundes, and of them he was well prouyded, for alwayes he had at his cōmaundement mo than xvi. hundred: the erle as than was at Barrey,<sup>g</sup> in the marches of Orthays, and wente dayly a huntynge into the woodes of Saluatera,<sup>h</sup> the way to Panpylona in Nauerre; and the same daye that he dyed he had hunted and kylled a beare, and by that tyme it was high noone; than the erle demaunded of them that were aboute hym where his dyner was prouyded: it was shewed him at the hospytall of Ryon, a two lytell myles fro Ortays; and so thyder he rode to dyner, and so alyghted there and went into his chambre, the whiche was strawed with grene herbes, and the walles sette full of grene bowes, to make the chambre more fressh, for the ayre without was marueylously hote as in the moneth of May: whan he felte that fresshe ayre, he sayd: A this fresshnesse dothe me moche good, for the daye hath been very hoote: and so sate downe in a chayre: than he talked and deuysed with syr Espayne du lyon of his houndes whiche had romne best; and as he thus deuysed, there cāc into the chambre sir Jenbayne<sup>i</sup> his hastarde sonne, and sir Peter of Cabestan, and the tables were redy couered in the same chambre: than water was brought forthe to wasshe,<sup>k</sup> and Cotandon<sup>l</sup> of Spaygne toke a syluer bason and sir Tybaulte toke the towel; than the erle rose and put out his handes to wasshe, and as sone as the colde water fell on his fyngars

<sup>a</sup> Moutils.

<sup>b</sup> Bona.

<sup>c</sup> Amadeus.

<sup>d</sup> Grandson.

<sup>e</sup> Germany.

<sup>f</sup> Chapter CLXXVI.

<sup>g</sup> Bearn.

<sup>h</sup> Sauueterre.

<sup>i</sup> Evan.

<sup>k</sup> "And two

squyers came forward, Raymonet de Lasne and Raymonet de Compagne," omitted

<sup>l</sup> Johnes

calls him *Ernaudon*.

fynghars he waxed pale in the face, and sodainly his herte fayled hym, and so fell downe, and in the fallynge sayd, Ah, I am but deed; God haue mercy on me. He neuer spake worde after; howbeit, he dyed nat so soone, but laye in great payne. The knyghtes that were about hym were sore abasshed, and so was his sonne: they tooke hym in their armes, and layde hym on a bedde and couered hym, trustyng that he was but in a traunce. The ii. knyghtes that had gyuen hym water, to the entent that it shulde nat be sayde that they had enpoysoned hym, toke the bason and the ewer, and sayde: Sirs, here in your presence beholde here this water, the whiche we toke assaye of and yet wyll do; and there they drake therof, so that euery man was cōtent with them. They put into the erles mouthe drinke and spyces, and other thynges comfortable, but all that aueyled nothyng, for in lesse than halfe an houre he was deed, and yelded vp his brethe swetely. God of his pytie haue mercy on him. All such as were there were greatly troubled and abasshed; than they closed the chambre doore, to the entent that his dethe shulde nat be so sodainly knowen abrode. The knyghtes behelde sir Jenbayne<sup>e</sup> his soune, who wepte pituously and wrang his hādes; and the knyghtes that were with hym sayde, Sir Jenbayne,<sup>a</sup> ye haue nowe loste youre father; we knowe well he loued you entierly: leaue your sorowe, and leape on your horse and ryde to Orthayes. Take you possessyon of the castell and of your fathers treasure that is within it, or euer the dethe of your father be knowen abrode. Sir Jenbayne<sup>e</sup> enclined to those wordes, and sayd, Sirs, I thanke you of your good counsaile, the whiche I shall deserue; but thañe lette me haue some token that is on my father, or elles I shall nat be suffred to entre into the castell. That is trewe, sir, quod they; take sōe token fro your father. Than he toke a rynge fro his fathers finger, and a knyfe that he bare alwayes about hym: these tokens the porter of the castell knewe well: if he hadde nat brought them, he shulde nat haue entred in there.

Thus sir Jenbayne<sup>a</sup> of Foiz departed from the hospytall of Ryone, and thre with hym, and rode in haste to the castell of Orthayes; he rode through the towne, no man mystrusted hym, and so came to the castell and called the porter, who answered and sayd: sir, what wolde you haue? where is my lorde your father? He is at the hospytall of Ryon, quod the knyght, and hath sent me for certayne thynges that is in his chambre, and than I must returne agayne to him; and to the entent that thou shuldest beleue me, beholde here his rynge and knyfe. The porter opnyed a wyndowe and sawe the tokyns, which he knewe well; than the porter opnyed the wicket and he entred in, and his varlettes dyd set vp his horses. As soone as he was entred, he sayde to the porter, Close agayne the gate; than he toke the porter and sayd, Delyuer me the kayes, or els thou arte but deed. The porter was abasshed, and sayde, Sir, why say ye thus? Bycause, quod he, my father is deed, and I wyll haue ſ possessyon of his treasure, or any other come here. The porter obeyed, for he durst do none otherwise, and he loued sir Jenbayne<sup>e</sup> as well as another. The knyght knewe ryght well where the treasure laye, whiche was in a stronge towre, wherto belonged thre stronge dores, surely bolted and barred, and dyuers kayes parteynyng to them, whiche kayes he coude nat fynde redely, for they were in a cofer of stele, and locked with a lytell kaye of stele, whiche kaye the erle euer bare on hym whersocuer he wente, in a lytell purse aboute his necke, whiche (after sir Jenbayne<sup>e</sup> was departed fro the hospytall) was founde by the knyghtes that were about the deed corse: thā they marueyled what kaye it shulde be that the erle bare so priuely about hymselfe. Than therles chapelayne, called sir Nicholas of Escail, who knewe all the erles secretes (for the erle loued hym well, and euer whan he went in to his treasure house he had his chapelayne with

<sup>a</sup> Evan.

hym) sayde: As soone as he sawe the kaye, Ah, sir Jenbayne<sup>a</sup> hath but lost his payne, for this is the kaye of a lytell cofer, wherin are all the kayes of the Towre and cofer, wher all the Erles treasour lyeth. Than the knyghtes sayde, Sir Nicholas, Go and ryde you to Orthayes, and beare hym the kaye. Sirs, quod he, sythe ye gyue me the counsaile, I shall do it, for it were better he had his fathers treasoure than another; and also I knowe well his father loued hym entierly. Than he tooke his horse and tooke the kaye and rode to the castell of Orthayes; and all that season sir Jenbayne<sup>a</sup> was sertchyng all aboute for they kayes, and coude nat fynde thē, nor wyst nat howe to get the towre dore opyn it was so stronge, nor also he hadde no instrumentes to breke it opyn withall: and in this meane season the men of the towne hadde soone knowledge, by varlettes or women that came fro the hospytall, howe therle shulde be deed: these were harde tidynges to them, for the erle was welbeloued with all his people. They of the towne assembled toguyder in the markette place, and sayde one to another, suche as hadde sene sir Jenbayne<sup>a</sup> passe through the towne alone: We haue sene sir Jenbayne<sup>a</sup> passe through the towne alone towards the castell, and it semed by his countynance he was nat content: surely there is somethyng amysse, for he was nat woute to cōe home before his father. Thus as they were cōmunyng toguyder, there came into the towne the Erles chapelayne: thañe the men of the towne came aboute hym, and demaüded newes of therle their lorde; it hath been shewed vs that he is deed; is it so or nat? Nay, quod the preest, he is not deed, but he is sore sicke, and I am come home before to cause thynges to be dressed for hym, and than I muste retourne agayne to hym; and so therwith he passed foith to the castell, and dyde so moche that he entred: of whose commyng sir yuan had great ioye, for without the kaye that he brought he coude nat haue entred into the Towre where as the treasour was. Than the men of the towne hadde great suspecte of the Erles dethe, and sayde: It is nere hande nyght, and as yet we here nothyng of our lorde, nor of none of his offycers, and sir yuan and his chapelayne are entred into the castell suspeciously: let vs watche the castell this night, and to morowe we shall here other tidynges: lette vs sende secretly to ÿ hospittall, than shall we knowe howe the mater gothe; also we knowe well the moost parte of the erles treasour is within the castell, and if it be stollen awaye by crafte we shal be blamed for it; ignoraunce shall nat excuse vs: they all thought it was best for them so to do. Thañe the men of the towne drewe about the castell, and kepte the gates of the towne surely, that none shulde entre nor issue without lycence: thus they watched all nyght, and in the mornyng they had parfyte knowledge of the dethe of their lorde. Than euery man, woman, and chylde cryed out and wepte pituously, for the Erle was welbeloued: than the watchman doubled and increased in harnesse aboute the castell.

Whan sir yuan of Foize sawe the maner of the men of the towne, and sawe well howe he was perceyued, and that they knew the certayntie of the dethe of his father, than he sayde to sir Nycholas: Sir, I haue layled of myne entēt; I se well I can nat departe hens without lycence: the men of the towne haue knowledge of my fathers dethe, and they assemble in great nombre before ÿ castell: it behoueth me to humble myselfe to them, for force can nat auerle me. Sir, ye saye trouthe, quod the preest; ye shall wyn more by swete and fayre wordes than by rude and frowarde dealyng: go your waye and speke with them. Than sir yuan went into a towre nere to the gate, and opyned a wyndowe ouer the bridge, in the whiche towre he was brought vp in, tyll he maryed the lady Jane of Boloyne,<sup>b</sup> who afterwarde was duchesse of Berry, as ye shall here

<sup>a</sup> Evan.

<sup>b</sup> This is erroneous: the passage ought to be, "in which tower was brought up, till she married, the lady Jane of Boulogne."

here after in this hystorie. Sir yuan opnyed the wyndowe, and spake to them that were the princypals of the towne, who cæ on the bridge nere to the windowe, to here what he wolde saye. Than he spake aloude and sayde: O ye good people of Orthays, I knowe well the cause of your assëby; it is nat wout a great occasion; howbeit, I requyre you as derely as ye loued my lorde and father, that ye be nat displeased with me, though I haue aduauanced myselfe to entre into this castell first, or any other shude entre, and to take possession therof, and of suche goodes as be within it, for I wyll do nothing but good: ye knowe well, my lorde, my father loued me as well and entierly as his owne sonne, and wolde fayne haue foude the wayes to haue made me his enherytour; and nowe it hath pleased god to call hym to his mercy, without accomplysshing of any thyng of myne aduancement; and nowe he hath lefte me amonge you, where I haue been brought vp, and lefte nowe as a poore knyght, bastarde sonne to the erle of Foize, without I haue your ayde and helpe; wherfore, sirs, I requyre you in goddes behalfe to haue pytie on me, wherin ye shall do great almesse; and I shall open the castell and suffre you to entre; I wyll nat kepe it agaynst you. Than they answered and sayde: Sir yuan, ye haue spoken so nobly, that it ought to suffice; and, sir, we saye that we wyll abide with you, and our entent is to kepe this castell and goodes with you; and if the Vicount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> your cosyn, who is next enherytoure to this country of Byerne, as nexte parente to your father, come hyder to challenge his herytage and mouables, or he haue it he shall knowe well howe we shall defende you and your right, fro hym and fro your brother sir Gracyen;<sup>b</sup> but we suppose, that whaene the Frenche kyng was laste at Tholous, and my lorde youre Father with hym, that some order was takenne, as touchyng your fathers enherytance; and this can sir Roger of Spaygne your cosyn tell; no man better than he: we shall write to him, and shewe hym of the dethe of the erle your father, and desyre hym to come hyder to helpe and counsayle vs in all thynges concernyng the landes of Bierne and of Foiz, and also for the mouables, and for thentierment of my lorde youre father; and this we promyse you faithfully to vpholde. With this aunswere sir yuan was well contente, and thanne opnyed the gate of the castell of Orthayes, and suche entred as wolde: and the same daye the Erles body was brought thyder. At the metyng of the corse men and women wepte pituously, in the remembraunce of his noblenesse and puysaunt estate, his wytte and prudence, his prowesse and largesse, and the great prosperyte that he lyued in; for there was nouthre Frenche nor Englysshe that durste dysplease hym. Moost parte of the people sayd: Nowe our neyghbours wyll make vs war; where as we were wonte to lyue in peace and fredome, nowe shall we be in bondage, in misery, and subieccyon; nowe there is none to ayde vs.

Ah, Gascone, Gascone,<sup>c</sup> fayre soñe, why dyde ye euer so dysplease your father, ý it coste you your lyfe? If ye had ben lefte with vs, it shulde nowe haue ben to vs a great cõforte, but we lost you to yong, and your father hath taryed to short a season with vs; he was but threscore and thre yeres of age; he myght haue lyued, for any age, many a yere lengar: it was no great age for suche a prince, hauyng eury thyng at his ease and wysshe. Ah, thou lande of Bierne, destytute and without conforte of any noble herytour, what shall become of thee? Thou shalte neuer haue agayne suche another as was this gentyll erle of Foiz. With suche lamentacions and wepynges the body of this noble Erle was borne throughe the towne of Orthayes by eight noble knyghtes. The first, the Vycounte of Brunyquell, and agaynst hym the lorde of Compayne; the thirde, sir Roger of Spaygne, and agaynst hym sir Raymonde of Laysne; the fyfthe,

3 Z 2

sir

<sup>a</sup> Chatillon.

<sup>b</sup> "We shall defend your right for you and your brother Sir Gracien."

<sup>c</sup> Gaston.

sir Raymonde de la Mote, agaynst hym the lorde of Besache; the seuenthe, sir Menault of Noualles, and agaynst hym Rycharde of saynt George; and behynde was sir yuan his bastarde sonne, the lorde of Corase, the lorde of Barantyne, the lorde of Baruge, the lorde of Quere, and mo than threscore other knyghtes of Byerne, who were soone come to the hospytall of Ryone whan they knewe of the Erles dethe. Thus he was caryed w open vysage to the freers in Orthayes, and there he was enbaumed and layde in leed, and so lefte vnder good kepynge vnto the day of entierment; and nyght and daye withoute cease there was brimynge aboute his body four and twentie torches, borne by eight and fourtie yomen: foure and twentie in the nyght, and foure and twentie in the daye.

The dethe of this noble erle of Foiz was anone knowen in dyuers countreis, and mo were rather sorie of his dethe than gladde, for he had in his dayes giuen suche gyftes so liberally that it coulede nat be eschewed; wherfore he was beloued of euery man that knewe hym. Pope Clement, whan he knewe of his dethe, was right soroufull for hym, because<sup>a</sup> he had taken great payne in fortherynge of the maryage of his cosyn Jane of Bolyogne, who was duchesse of Berrey. The same season there was at Auignon the bysshop of Palmes, who durst nat com at his benifyce for a displeasure that the erle of Foize had to hym, and yet he was of his lynage: the cause was, the bysshoppe wolde haue exalted his iurisdiction and abated therles; for all that therle made hym bysshop. Than the pope sente for the bysshoppe to come to his palais: and whan he was cōe the pope sayde: Sir bysshoppe of Palmes, your peace is made; the erle of Foiz is deed. Of those tidynge the bysshoppe was glad, and within a shorte season after, he departed fro Auignon, and wente to his bysshoprike into the countrey of Foize. Tidynge of the dethe of this erle was anone come into Fraunce to the kyng and to his counsayle: the Frenche kyng and his brother and the duke of Burbone were sorie of his dethe, because of his noblenesse. Than the counsayle saide to the kyng: Sir, the cōtie of Foiz is yours by right successyon, seying the erle of Foiz is deed without heyre of his body lauffully begotten; no man canne debate with you therin; also they of the countie thinke the same: and, sir, there is one thyng that helpeth gretlye your tytell; ye haue leude thereon fytye thousande frankes: Sir, sende and take possessyon of your guage, and kepe it as youre owne enherytaūce, for they of the same cōtrey desyre to be vnder youre hande: it is a fayre countre, and shall come to you to good purpose, for it marcheth nere to the realme of Arragone, and also to Chattelone:<sup>b</sup> and paraduente hereafter ye may happe to haue warre with the kyng of Arragon, than the countie of Foiz shal be a good fronter, for therin be many fayre and stronge castelles to kepe in men of warre and to make good garysons. The kyng herde well those wordes, and anone enclined to their counsayle, and sayde: Sirs, lette se, whome shall we sende on this message. Than it was determyned to sende f̄ lorde de la Ryuer, because he was knowen in that countrey, and with hym the bysshoppe of Noyon: these two lordes prepared themselfe to go on this legacyon; and whāne they departed they rode at leysar by small iourneys, and toke their waye by Auignon.

In this meane season worde was sente to the Vicount of Chastellon,<sup>c</sup> beyng in the realme of Arragon, of the dethe of his cosyn the erle of Foiz. Than he rode tyll he cāe into Biernie streyght to Orthays: they of the towne made hym good chere; howbeit, they toke him nat as than for their lorde, and saide: howe all the countrey was nat assembled, and that first they must assemble togynder the prelates, lordes, and men of  
the

<sup>a</sup> "Notwithstanding he had taken pains to obstruct the marriage of his cousin Jane," &c.

<sup>b</sup> Catalonia.

<sup>c</sup> Chatêl-bon.



the good townes, and to counsaile toguyder what they shulde do, sayeng: that is a good cōuntry that holdeth of hymselfe, and the lordes that dwelleth therein, and hath herytages to be free. Thāñe it was adynsed for the best; first, to make the entierment of the erle Gascone of Foiz at Orthays, and to sende for all the nobles of Bierne and of Foize, suche as wolde come, and than to take counsaile whō they shulde accepte for their lorde. Than all barones and prelates and heedes of good townes of Bierne and of Foiz were sent for: they of Bierne cāe thyder, but they of Foiz refused to come there, and sayde: they wolde kepe their cōuntry, for they herde saye the Frenche kyng wolde sende thyder to chalēge they countre of Foiz; howbeit, the bysshop of Palmes was desyred to come to Orthais, bycause of lynage, and so he came thyder in good array, as to hym apparteyned.

The day of the obsequy of the gentyll erle, Gaston of foiz, last erle of that name, done in the freres in the towne of Orthays, the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and a xi. on a monday, there was moche people of the cōuntry of Bierne and of other places, bothe lordes, knightes, and other prelates: there were four<sup>a</sup> bisshoppes; the bysshop of Palmes, who sayd the masse, and the bysshoppes of Ayre, of Auron, and of Tennes in Bierne;<sup>b</sup> there was a goodly herse and well ordred; and duryng the masse tyme there was holden before the aulter by four knightes, foure baners, with the armes of Foiz and of Bierne: the first helde sir Raymon of Newcastle;<sup>c</sup> the seconde, sir Espaygne du Lyon; the thirde, sir Peter deguier;<sup>d</sup> the fourthe, sir Menaute of Noualles: sir Roger of Spaygne offred the sworde, bytwene the Bomge of Campaigne<sup>e</sup> and Pier of Arnaulte of Bierne, capitayne of Lourde: the shelde bare the Vicount of Bruniquell bytwene sir Johan of Newcastle<sup>e</sup> and Johñ of Chanteron: the helme offred the lorde of Valētyne of Bierne, bytwene Arnalton of Rostem and Arnalton of saynt Colombe: the horse was offred by the lorde of Corase. bytwene Arnalton of Spayne and Raymonet of Campaygne.<sup>e</sup> This entierment was honorably done, accordyng to the vsage of ȝ cōuntry; and there were the two bastarde sōnes of the erle of Foiz, sir yuan and sir Gracien. and the Vicount of Chastellon,<sup>f</sup> and all the barons of Bierne and some of Foiz; but assone as the seruyce was done, they of Foiz departed and rode the same daye to dyner to Herytell, two myles fro Orthais; and ȝ next day betymes the bysshoppe of Palmes departed; he wolde nat be at the generall parlyament whiche was the same daye amonge them of Bierne. Thus the erle was buryed in ȝ freers before the lyghe aulter: so there is no more mencion made of hym; god haue mercy vpon his soule.

Nowe let vs speke of the order that was taken at Orthais.

As it was informed me, it was said to the Vycount of Chatellon,<sup>f</sup> Sir, we knowe well that as next of blode ye ought to succede in the herytage, as well of Bierne as of Foiz; but as nowe we can nat receyue you as oure lorde, for therby we myght bring the lande of Bierne into great trouble, warre, and daunger: for as we do vnderstande, the Frenche kyng, who is our good neighbour, dothe sēde hyder of his cōsaile, we knowe nat for what entent, tyll we here them speke. We knowe well, and so do you, that our lorde the erle, whome god pardone, was this last yere at Tholous with the frenche kyng, and had secrete cōmunicacion toguyder, the whiche firste liath nede to be declared; for if he haue gyuen and released to the Frēche kyng, Foiz and Bierne, the kyng than with puissaūce wyll haue and optayne it; wherfore, or we do any thing, we wyll know the artycles, for we of Byern be in other case and of other cōdyccion than they of Foiz; we

<sup>a</sup> "Three."

<sup>b</sup> "Of Ayre and of Oleron who held of Bearne."

<sup>c</sup> Châtelnouf.

<sup>d</sup> De Quer.

<sup>e</sup> Cōpane.

<sup>f</sup> Châtel-bon.

be all fre without homage or seruytude, and the countie of Foiz is holden of the Frenche kyng; and also the people of Foiz, their hertes be so Frenche, that lightly they wyll receyue the frenche kyng to their lorde and soueraygne, for they haue sayde, sithe the erle was deed, he hath none herytour of his body laulfully gotten; wherefore the countie of Foize they saye shulde parteyne to the ordynauce of the Frenche kyng; but, sir, we shall kepe our holde, and we wyll serue no lorde but suche as we ought to do, wheder it be the frēch kyng or you; but, sir, we wyll counsaile you to worke wysely in this busynesse, by treatie or otherwyse. Than the Vycount said: sirs, by what meanes wyll ye counsaile me to worke, for I haue promised to worke by your aduise in euery thyng accordyng to reason. Sir, quod they, we wyll aduise you to desyre sir Roger of Spaygne, your cosyn, to kepe you company, at your cost and charge, and go into the countie of Foiz and treatue with the prelates and noble men, and with theym of the good townes, that they wolde receyue you to their lorde, or elles to sytte styll and dissymule the mater tyll ye haue apeased f̄ french kyng, and taken with hym some cōposicion, by meanes of golde and siluer, that ye might haue the enheritaunce in rest and peace: if ye do thus, than do ye wisely; and if ye maye be herde with them that be sente fro the Frenche kyng into the countie of Foize, though it cost you a hundred thousande or two hūdred thousande frankes, ye shall fynde ynoughe to paye it with all, for the erle that is deed hath lefte ynoughe behynde hym; howbeit, sir, in any wyse we wyll that his two bastarde sonnes haue parte largely of his goodes. Than the lorde answered and sayde: Sirs, I am content as ye wyll; and here is my cosyn, sir Roger of Spaygne, and in all youre presences, I desyre hym to ryde with me in this iourney. Than sir Roger answered and said: Sir, I am content to ryde with you to be as meane bytwene bothe parties; but if the Frenche kyng my souerayne lorde or his ambassadours desyre me to be of their counsaile, or els cōmaūde me nat to medell, than I must nedes leaue you. The Vycount was content, and saide: Cosyn, I trust they wyll nat agaynst your will take you fro me; and if I may haue you nere me, I thynke to make a good ende of all my busynesse.

Than (as I was enformed) the Vycount of Chastellon<sup>2</sup> made a request before thē all to borowe fyue or vi. thousande frankes to performe his iourney; also the two bastardes made their request that they might haue parte of their fathers richesse. Than the counsaile toke aduise togider, and at last acorded that the Vicoūt shulde haue fyue thousande frankes, and the two bastardes of Foiz eche of them two thousande frankes; and incōtynent the tresourers were cōmaūded to delyuer the money. All offycers that were in the Erles dayes were suffred to occupy styll without any chaungyng; and than kepers were sette to kepe the castell of Orthais and the richesse that was within it. The Vicount at his first cōmyng to Orthais gaue pardon to all the prisoners within the castell, wherof there were a great nombre, for the erle of Foiz was a cruell man, and wolde spare no man, but to punyssh at his pleasure, though he were neuer so great a personage: he had ones in prisone the said Vycount of Chastellon,<sup>3</sup> in the botome of a dongion, eight monethes, for all that he was his cosyn germayne; and whā he delyuered him, he sette hym to raūsone at xl. thousande frankes, whiche was truly payde; and also as longe as he lyued he loued hym neuer after, so that the Vicount durst neuer come in his sight; for if the erle had lyued two yeres lengar, the Vicount shulde neuer haue had any parte of f̄ heritage of Foiz or of Bierne.

Thus this counsaile at Orthays brake vp, and euery man departed and lefte the Vycount to prepare for his iourney, who made hym redy as soone as he might, and desyred certayne

\* Châtel-bon.

certaine knightes and squiers to go with hym: thus he departed fro Orthais with a two hundred horse, and rode to Morlens, a good towne on the fronter, bytwene Byerne and Bygone, a four myles fro Pau and a sixe myle fro Tarbe; and the seconde day he rode to saynt Gaudens, another good towne at the entre of the coütie of Foiz on the ryuer of Garone; and there tidynges came to hym howe the bysshoppe of Noyon, and sir Buryaulx de la Ryuer, and other of þ̄ Frenche kynges counsaile, were cōe to Tholous. Than the Vycount tooke counsaile of sir Roger of Spayne what was best for him to do. Sir Roger answered and sayd: Sithe we haue herde tidynges of them, let vs tary here and se what they wyll do; I thinke they wyll sende shortly to vs: and so there they taryed, for indede they coulde go no further into the countie of Foiz, for all the good townes, castelles, and passages were closed agaynst them; as Calumuche,<sup>a</sup> Casteres, Moutisqueu, Carthas, Ortyngas, Fossat, the cytie of Palmes and the castell,<sup>b</sup> Montaunt, and all the castels on the fronter of Aragon. They of the countie of Foiz sayd, that no straüger with any puissaunce shulde entre into no castell nor towne of their cōuntry tyll the mater were determyned; and as they of the cōuntry shewed themselves they were better mynded to be Frenche, and to be gouerned by a seneschall (as the cōuntre and cytie of Tholous was, and Carcasson and Beauuoyre),<sup>c</sup> rather than to be vnder any other ruler; howbeit, the mater went otherwyse, as ye shall here; for whan the Frenche kynges cōmyssaries were come to Tholous, they demanded newes of the archebysshoppe, and of the seneschall of Foiz and of Bierne, and of other, suche as had ben at Orthais at the buryeng of the erle of Foiz: there they were enformed in what case the cōuntre stode in: than they toke aduyse togyder, and determyned to sende for sir Roger of Spayne, bycause he was the Frenche kynges man by faythe and homage, and his offycer, as seneschall of Carcassone. They sct a credable persone with a letter to hym: the messenger rode to saynt Gaudens, a xii. myle fro thens; than he delyuered to sir Roger of Spayne his letter. Sir Roger toke and reed it, and sayd to þ̄ squyer: Sir, ye shall tary here all this day, and to morowe ye shall departe; I thinke ye shall nat go without company. Than sir Roger and the Vycount counsailed togyder: than it was thought for the beste that sir Roger of Spayne shulde ryde to Tholous, and speke there with the bysshop of Noyon and with the lorde de la Ryuer, to knowe what they wolde say. The next day sir Roger of Spayne and the messenger rode forth togyder, and came þ̄ same nyght to Tholouse: syr Roger toke vp his lodgyng, and the messenger went to his maysters: than the cōmyssioners said, to morowe we shall here tydynges, seynge sir Roger is come. The next day after masse syr Roger drewe to the bysshop and to the lorde de la Ryuer, and made good chere ech to other, bycause they were all of aquayntaunce, and there comuned the cause of their cōmyng. Than the kynges cōmyssioners shewed forth the kynges procuracions, and howe they were set and stablshed to take possession and season of the countie of Foiz. And whan syr Roger had well herde them at length, he replyed with swete wordes, and sayde: Lordes, I am nat so nere of þ̄ kynges cōsaile as ye be; and if I were, sauynge your correction, I wolde counsaile the kyng that he shulde take agayn his money and somewhat more; (trewe it is he hath lente money on the herytage of Foize, to be reysed after the dethe of the erle), yet let the kyng leane the ryght of the enherytance to the nexte enherytoure of the blode: this shall be for the kynges profyte, honour, and saluacyon; and in this that I saye, I shall laye dyuers reasons, if ye wyll here it: there is one thyng whiche is clere: the erle of Foiz layde his lande to pledge by fraude, for as for golde and syluer he had ynough: for that he dyd was for nothyng but to dysheryte the Vycount of Chastellon<sup>d</sup> wroȝfully, bycause he hated hym without cause: also as touchyng the kynges profyte, I ensue you the keepyng of the lande of Foize shulde coste the

kyng

<sup>a</sup> Palaminich.<sup>b</sup> "Which was under the guard of the townsmen."<sup>c</sup> Châtel-bon.<sup>d</sup> Beaucaire.

kyng more than the rentes or renennes cometh vnto; and thyrldly, the kyng shall lese therby the homage and seruyce of suche a man as is able to do him good seruyce: this ought to be well regarded; also it shulde be a great charge to the kynges consyence to dyssheryte any persone without a reasonable cause: for if the herytage of Foiz shuld haue ben bought and solde, fyrste all suche as claymeth any ryght therein shulde haue ben agreed withall and sathyfyed, whiche was nat so; wherfore, my lordes, these reasons well consydréd, seyng ye be great wyse men and counsaylours to the kyng, take good hede what ye do, or ye pronounce any thyng that shulde tourne to the kynges sclauder or hurte to his consyence; if ye do otherwyse it were great synne, and as yet there is tyme suffycyente to fynde remedy. My cosyn the Vicount of Chastellon<sup>a</sup> hathe sente me lyther to you to shewe you this mater, and ryght effectuously desyretH you, and so do I in his name, to take regarde in this behalfe: it is nat good nor conuenient, a man to take every thyng by force that he maye take. When he had sayde, than the bysshoppe and the lorde de la Ryuer loked on eche other; at laste the bysshop sayde: Syr Rodger, we se and knowe well that all that ye haue sayd is for good entente; but our cōmyssyon stretcheth nat so farre to quyte the bargayne that was bytwene the kyng and therle of Foize; howebeit, for the loue of you, and to bringe the matter somewhat to good purpose, and that all partyes myght be cōtent, we shall put this mater in suffraunce, and ye shall take the payne to ryde with vs into Fraunce to the kyng and to his counsayle, and than shewe there your reasons as ye shall thinke best; and if by your meanes ye can cause the vycount of Chastellon<sup>a</sup> to enioy the herytage of Foiz, who is enherytoure therto, as ye saye, we shall be ryght gladde therof, for we wyll dyssheryte no person. Syrs, quod syr Roger, I am well contente with your sayenge; if it please you to abyde here a season, your costes shall be borne of the good that is in the castell of Orthays.

The thyrde day sir Roger of Spayne tooke leaue of the kynges cōmyssyoners, and sayde: Syrs, I thinke to bringe this mater to a good purpose, I must be fayne to make a iourney into Fraunce; if I tary longe, I pray you be nat myscontent, for it shall nat be in my faulte, and I shall sende you daily messengers and letters. Thus they departed: they taryed at Tholous, and sir Roger rode to saynt Gaudens to the Vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> and shewed him all the mater. The Vycount was ioyfull of those tydynges, and sayd: Fayre cosyn syr Roger, all my trust is in you; the mater toucheth me nere; it is for thenherytaunce wherof I beare the armes; I can nat tell whome to sende into Fraunce but all onely you, to shewe my tytle to the kyng and to his cōsayle; wherfore, sir, for the loue of me, and for that I may deserue to you in tyme to come, take on you the charge of this voyage. Syr Roger sayd: Syr, for the loue of you and of your lynage I shall do it. Than sir Roger prepared for his iourney to ryde into Fraunce, and so toke the way to Rodes, and the shorter way, for as than truce was bytwene Fraunce and England: or els the way that he toke had nat been sure for hym, for on the fronters of Rouergue, Quercy, and Lymosyn, there were many fortresses that made warre for the Englysshemen.

Nowe I wyll leaue for a season spekyng of syr Roger of Spayne, and speke of the frenche kyng and of the duke of Bretayne.

<sup>a</sup> Châtel-bon.

*How the treatie of peace was renewed at Towers, in Thowayn, bytwene the Frenche kyng and the duke of Bretayne: and of the mariage of the doughter of Fraunce, to the some of Bretayne, and of Johan of Bretayne, erle of Ponthieur,<sup>a</sup> and the doughter of the duke of Bretayne.*

CAP. CLXXXI.<sup>b</sup>

YE haue herde here before in dyuers places in this hystory, howe the duke of Bretayne and syr Olyuer of Clysson, as than constable of Fraunce, hated mortally eche other: and besyde the hatred that the duke had to syr Olyuer, he had great enuy that he was so great with the kinge, and so secrete of his counsaile, and gladly he wolde haue troubled him, but he doughted  $\hat{y}$  kynges displeasure; and oftentimes the duke repented hym that he had nat slayne hym whan he had hym in prisone in the castell of Ermyn, for he thought if he had slayne hym than, he shulde neuer haue had more trouble by hym; the yuell wyll that he had to hym caused hym to be harde mynded to be obedyente to the crowne of Fraunce; howbeit, he knewe well he dyd yuell, therefore he suffred all thyng to passe at aduenture, and helde in his loue the englysshemen, and prouyded suffyciently his townes and fortresses with artyllery and vytayles, and sent priuely into Englande for men of armes and archers, and dyd set them in his garysons, and made to be beleued that he loked to haue warre, but his men knewe nat with whome; howbeit, all that euer he dyd was knowen in Fraunce, and many spake largely against him. He knew well that certayne lordes of Fraunce were nat contente with hym, but he dyd set lytell therby, but so passed on his tyme: he had great affyaunce in his cosyne the duchesse of Burgoyne, as it was reason, for he had of her a specyall supporte and ayde: for the lady bycause of lynnage loued hym, and bycause that the erle of Flaunders her father, who was cosyn germayne to the duke, had always loued and comforted hym in all his trybulacyons; this lady of Burgoyne was a good lady, so that the duke her husbande wolde nat gladly displease her, and good cause why, for  $\hat{y}$  duke by her helde great herytages, and had by her fayre chyldren; all the realme of Fraunce was bounde to loue her; and she had nat ben, great dyscensions had moued bytwene the parties, for natwithstandyng that the duke of Bretayne had ben at Paris with the french kyng, and made to hym homage, yet I can nat well say if it was with good herte or no: for as sone as the duke was retourned into Bretayne, there apered in hym but small amendemente; he had sworne obeysaunce and to be obedyent to the pope at Auignon, but he was nat, for rather he dyspedd hym in his wordes: nor also he wolde suffre no man to be promoted in his countrey by that popes bulles, but helde hymselfe newter in dyuers thynges, and wolde gyue the benefyces hymselfe; no clerke coulde atteygne to any promocyon of any benefyce in his countrey, without he had ben well pleased therwith: also any comãdementes that came out of the parlyament chambre of Parys, he sette nothyng therby: the prelates and bysshoppes of Bretayne lost great parte of their iurisdictions by this duke, so that great complayntes therof was made in the parlyament of Parys, but they hadde small remedy; and whan he was sent for to come to Parys, or els to sende thyder some able personages to make annswere to suche matters as shulde be alledged agaynste hym, and whan any of the kynges officers came into Bretayne to somon hym to apere, thanne he wolde nat be spoken withall, but euer made sondry scuces; and whan the kinges officers dyd departe againe thens, than he wolde say: I

VOL. II.

4 A

wyll

<sup>a</sup> Penthievre.<sup>b</sup> Chapter CLXXVII.

wyll go to Parys to se what ryght I shall haue there: it is nat yet thre yeres sence I was there, to se what ryght I shulde haue, but I coulde se nor here of no ryght there mynystred; the lordes of the parlyament tourne euery thyng as they lyst; they reken me very yonge and ignorante to be ledde as they lyst, but I wolde they knewe that if all my men of the duchy of Bretayne were all of one accorde, and obedyent to my pleasure, as they ought to be, I wolde gyue the realme of Fraunce so moche to do, that I wolde bringe them that be vnreasonable to reason: and suche as hath done trewly shulde be rewarded acordyngly, and suche as haue deserued to haue iustyce shulde haue as they haue deserued, and suche as wolde haue right, shulde haue it. Thus many complainytes were made oftentymes to the kyng, and suche as were of his secrete counsaile said: This duke is ryght presumptuous and proude, sythe he wyll be brought to no reason, and if he shulde be thus suffred in his lewde opinyon, it shulde greatly enfeble the noblenesse of this realme, for by hym other lordes shall take ensample to do yuell, and therby the iurysdiction of the realme lytell and lytell shall be loste. Than it was deuysed to withstande, and to fynde remedy for suche inconuenyentes, and to sende swetely to hym to come to Towrs, in Thourayne, and there to mete with the french kyng, and with the duke of Berrey, and the duke of Burgoyne, the bysshop of Charters, the bysshoppe of Dothune;<sup>a</sup> these four were specyally named, bycause the duke loued them best aboue all other lordes of Fraunce, excepte the erle of Estampes, and the lorde Coucy.

Thus there was sente into Bretayne to the duke, the erle of Estampes, and mayster Jue of Noyent:<sup>b</sup> they toke great payne and traueyle to moue the duke to mete with the frenche kyng at Towrs; they spake so fayre with fresshe coloured wordes, armed with reason, that the duke agreed to go to Towrs, but further he sayd in no wyse he wolde go, and also that he shulde nat se his enemy syr Olyuer of Clysson in no wyse: all this was accorded and agreed, or he wolde come to Towrs. These ambassadours returned into Fraunce, and shewed the kyng and his counsaile howe they had spedde. They were contente therwith, sythe they coulde bryng hym to none other purpose. The kyng and his counsaile made them redy to go to Towrs, and to tary there a two or thre monethes, for they thought their treatie with þe duke of Bretayne shulde nat sone be acomplished. Thus the frenche kinge, the duke of Thourayne his brother, the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne, and Johan of Burgoyne his sonne, the duke of Burbon, the lorde Coucy, the erle of Marche, the Erle of saynte Poll, and other of the counsaile of Fraūce, came to Towrs, in Thourayn: also thyder came the constable of Fraūce, and Johan of Bretayne his sonne in lawe, and their counsailes, for they hadde maters there to do. And a fyftene dayes after, thyder came the duke of Bretayne; or he came it was sayd he wolde nat come, for he had thre tymes sent to excuse hymselfe, sayenge, he was sycke and coude nat ryde; howbeit, finally he came, and was lodged at his ease. There was syr Roger of Spaygne to haue ben aunswered, but the kyng and the counsaile had so moche to do with the duke of Bretayns maters, that they coulde entende to nothyng els. This syr Roger was there more than two monethes or he coulde be aunswered, but daily he was answered þe he shulde be herde, but it was longe fyrste. Also the same tyme there fell another let, for thyder came fro kyng Rycharde of Englande, syr Johan Clapam,<sup>c</sup> one of the kynges counsaile and of his chaumbre, and Rycharde Choall,<sup>d</sup> clerke and doctour of lawe, to speke with the Frenche kyng and his counsaile, for the same matter that syr Thomas Percy, and the lorde Clyfforde, had ben at Parys for with the kyng; whan the englysshemen were come to Towrs, all other treaties were closed vp and entended to their deluyeraunce. It was shewed me that they brought

<sup>a</sup> Anton.<sup>b</sup> Jues D'Orient.<sup>c</sup> Clanbow.<sup>d</sup> Johnes calls him *Rowhall*.

brought letters of credence to the kynge, and to the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne: they were herde: their credence was, that the kynge of Englande and his Vncles wolde knowe if the frenche kynge and his counsaile were in wyll and mynde to kepe their metyng at Amyence, to treatre for a peace to be had bytwene the two kynges, their alyes and confederates. The frenche kynge, (who as he shewed,) desyred nothyng so moche as peace, and answered and said, that he was redy to accomplysse all promesses, sayenge, that as soone as he had deliuered the duke of Bretayne, and were departed fro Towrs, he wolde entende to nothyng els tyll he were come to Amyence, and there to abyde for the englysshe ambassadours, and there to make them as good chere as he coude: herewith the englysshe ambassadours were well cōtent, and were a fyue dayes at Towrs with the kynge, and than tooke their leaue of the kynge, and of the other lordes. The kynge gaue them great gyftes, and their costes there payed for, and so departed; and all that season they sawe nat the duke of Bretayne, nor spake nat with hym, for the duke wolde nat, lest the frenchemen shulde haue any suspecte in hym. Thus the englysshmen returned to Calays, and so to Douer, and to London, and founde the kynge and his counsaile at Westmynster, and there shewed what they had done, herde, and sene. The answer that they brought pleased well the kynge and his counsaile, and ordeyned for their iourney to go to Amyence.

Nowe let vs somewhat speke of the messagers that were sente to the frenche kynge, fro the Vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> out of Foize and Bierné.

Sir Roger of Spayne, and sir Espayne du Lyon, who were sent into Fraunce fro the Vicounte of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> they toke on theym great payne and traueyle to pursewe their cause, for certayne clerkes and knyghtes of the kinges counsaile, aduysed the kynge to take the countie of Foiz, and to attrybute it to the crowne of Fraunce, sythe they of the cuntry wolde agree therto. The kynge enclyned well therto, but the duke of Burgoyne, who was sage and ymagynatyue, wolde nat agree therto, but sayd alwayes: Let the kynge take agayn his money, and somewhat more; howbeit, as it was shewed me the duke of Burgoyne coule nat be herde, but the duke of Berrey toke the busynesse on him, by meanes as I shall shewe you. Ye haue herde here before what fell bytwene hym and the olde Gaston erle of Foize, whan the duke sente into Bierné to the erle suche notable perones, as was the erle of Sanxere, the vicount Dassey, the forde de la Ryuer, and syr Wyllyam of Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> to treatre for the maryage of the lady Jahan of Boloyne, whome the erle of Foize had in kepyng: and at that tyme the erle was well content with the maryage that y duke of Berrey shulde haue her, so that he wolde pay thyrty thousande frankes for the kepyng and bringyng vp of the lady; and the duke payed the said some, and so had the lady to his wyle. The duke of Berrey remembered the mater than, and sente for syr Roger of Spayne, and for syr Espayne du Lyon, to come speke with hym in his chambre: and so secretly he sayde to them: Syrs, if ye wyll come to a good conclusyon in your sute, ye shall attayne therto by my meanes; but fyrst I wyll haue agayne the thyrty thousande frankes whiche I payed to the olde erle of Foiz whan I had my wyle: I haue alwayes ymagyned that if I myght ouer lyue the erle of Foiz, to haue the money agayne. Whan these two knyghtes herde the duke say so, they regarded eche other and spake neuer a worde. Than the duke sayd agayne: Syrs, to say trouthe I haue taken your wordes fro you; speke togyther and aduise you well; without this treatie ye shall nat attayne to your purpose, for my brother of Burgoyne wyll do as I wyll haue hym: he hath the gouernaunce of the cuntry of Picardy, and I of Languedocke: agaynste my wyll no man wyll speke; the Vycount of Chastellon<sup>a</sup> shall fynde good ynough, for the erle that is deed had more rychesse than the

4 A 2

kynge

<sup>a</sup> Châtel-bon.<sup>b</sup> De la Tremouille.

kyngre hath in his treasour. Than syr Roger of Spayne sayde: sir, though we wolde agre to your demaunde, yet we haue nat here with vs the treasure to contente you withall. Ah, syr Roger, quod the duke, that shall nat let nor hyndre the mater: and ye promyse the dette on your faythe and wrytynge, I wyll beleue you, and if it were in a greater mater than that is. Syr, quod the knyght, I thanke you, we shall speke togyder, and tomorowe gyue you an answer. It pleaseth me well, quod the duke. They departed fro the duke and went to their lodgyngre, and toke counsaile togyther whether they shulde retourne agayne home without agrement, or els acorde to the dukes demaunde: so that the heritage might clerely remaine and abyde with the Vycount of Chastellon.<sup>a</sup> The nexte daye they returned to the duke and offered hym all his demaunde: and so there syr Roger of Spayne, and syr Espayne du Lyon, became detours to the duke of Berrey for xxx. thousande frankes, on the condicion that he shulde be meane that the kyngre shulde take agayne the some of money that he had lente to the erle of Foize, and that the Vicount of Chastellon<sup>a</sup> might peasably enjoy the herytage. Well, quod the duke, lette me alone, I shall do it, I truste. After that day the duke of Berrey, (who desyred to haue these xxx. thousande frankes.) was so good an aduocate for the vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> that he concluded his busynesse at his owne wyll. The kyngre and his counsaile put all the mater to his pleasure, and so these two knyghtes had letters sealed of the confyrmacyon of the countie of Foiz, to be the trewe enherytance of the Vicount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> with letters therof adressed to ȝ bysshop of Noyon, and to the lorde de la Ryuer, beyngre at Tholouse. The tenour of the letters as I was enformed by suche credyble persones as went on the same legacyon, was as foloweth:

Charles, by the grace of god kyngre of Fraunce: we sende and comende vs to the ryght reuerende bysshoppe of Noyon, and to our knight and chambrelayne the lorde de la Ryuer. We wyll that ye suffre the vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> enherytour of Foiz and of Bierne, to enjoy and possede his heritage of the countie of Foiz, with the purtenaunces, so that ye take into your possessyon the some of lx. thousande frankes at one payment: and the money payed, than our seneschall of Tholouse to make a sure quytaunce of the receyte therof. Also at another paymente I wyll ye receyue twenty thousande frankes for your costes and charges in goynge and retournyng, and that money payed, than make quytaunce therof vnder the seale of offyce of Tholouse. Also we wyll that syr yuan, and syr Gracyen of Foiz, bastarde sonnes to the erle Gaston of Foiz, haue parte and reasonable assignement bothe in landes and goodes of that was their fathers, by the aduyse and dyscrecyon of syr Roger of Spayne, and of the vicount of Brunyquell, syr Raynolde of Newcastle,<sup>b</sup> and the lorde of Corase, to whome we shall write that they maye so aquyte them to dyscharge our consyence, for we made suche promyse to the erle their father. And if there be any faute in these four lordes, or any rebellyon in the Vycount, than we disanull all this sayde treatie, and wyll that it stande as voyde. In wytnesse herof to these letters we haue sette to our seale, in our cytie of Towrs, the xxii.<sup>c</sup> yere of oure reygne, the twenty day of the moneth of Decembre.

These letters made and sealed and delyuered, the knyghtes of Foiz returned fro Towrs, their leaue taken. This season syr Loys of Sanxere, marshall of Fraunce, lay in the marches of Carcassone, as soueraygne gouernour there, instytuted by the kyngre. The bysshoppe of Noyon, and the lorde de la Ryuer, sent for hym to Tholouse, and whan he was come thyder they sayde to hym: Syr marshall, the vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> (reputeth

<sup>a</sup> Châtel-bon.<sup>b</sup> Chateau-neuf.<sup>c</sup> xii.



(reputeth hymselfe to be enherytour of the county of Foiz,) and we haue sent into Fraunce to the kynge to knowe what he and his counsaile wyll saye in that mater, wherfore be ye redy with meene of armes on the fronters of Foiz; and as soone as syr Roger of Spayne, and syr Espayne, be returned, or that we haue other message from the kynge, that they agree nat on any peace, and that the king wyll haue the lande of Foiz, than entre you incontynent and take possessyon acordinge to y<sup>e</sup> right and puyssaunce that the kynge hath gyuen vs in that quarell. Thus the marshall was redy prouyded, and euery day looked for aunswere from the kynge.

Nowe we wyll leaue speakyng of this mater, and shewe somewhat of the duke of Bretayne.

Ye haue herde here before what treatie was at Towrs, in Thourayn, bytwene the frenche kyng and the duke of Bretayne, the whiche duke dyde put the kynge and his counsaile to moche payne, for he wolde fall to no reason. It was sayde the kynge demaunded of hym and he refused: in lykewyse he demaunded, and the kynge refused. Moche treatie there was, but no conclusion taken. The duke he was redy to serue the kynge and to do hym homage, as farre forthe as he was bounde to do. Thanne the kynges counsaile sayd to hym: Sythe ye knowledge yourselfe to be the kynges liegman, why wyll ye nat than obey to reason? Why syrs, quod he, wherin am I rebell? Than they layde to him dyuers poyntes: Fyrste, in the beleuyng on the pope at Auygnon, whome they sayde the kynge toke for the trewe pope: ye dyffer therfro and dyssymule the mater, for ye wyll obey none of his comaundementes, but gyue all the benefyces yourselfe in Bretayne, and suche as bryng any bulles from the pope, ye wyll nat knowe theym; this is agaynste the magesty royall, and great synne to your conscyence and soule. Than the duke answered and sayde: as for my conscyence there is no man ought to speke therof nor iudge it but all onely god, who is soueraygne iudge in all suche causes, and sythe ye argue and oppose me in that mater, I shall aunswere you: As for these popes who are indyfferent, there is no sure declarasion made of them, and the season that the first tydynges came of the chosynge of pope Vrbayne, I was in the towne of Gaunt, with my cosyn the erle of Flaunders: and there he receyued letters sealed with the popes seale, as than called Robert of Quesne cardynall, and in his letter he certifyed to the erle my cosyn, that by the grace of god and by the deuyne inspyrasyon he was chosen pope, and hadde to name Vrbayne; howe than canne this be vndone agayne? me thynke it were harde to do. I wyll nat argue agaynst the kynges maieste, for I am his cosyn and lyege man, and shall well and trewly serue hym whan-soeuer I be requyred, as farre forthe as I am bounde to do, but I wyll speke agaynst them that counsaile nat the kynge well. Why syr, quod they: shewe vs who they be that do nat counsaile the kynge as they ought to do, and we shall fynde remedy for them. Syrs, quod he, ye knowe them better than I do, for ye company with them oftener than I do: but as touchyng the benefyces of my cuntry, I am nat so haute nor so cruell agaynst suche as desyre them, but that I suffre the clerkes of my cuntry to enjoy them by the bulles of pope Clement; but suche clerkes as be nat of the same cuntry I refuse them, and the cause why I shall shewe you: They wolde beare away the rychesse of my cuntry out therof, and deserue it nat, whiche is agaynst ryght and consyence, wherfore I can nat agree therto; and whereas ye saye that I am rebell and hawte agaynst the kynges offycers, whanne they come into my coutry, that is nat so, nor wyll nat be; ye ought to knowe, and if ye do nat lerne it, the fee of the duchy of Bretayne is of so noble a condycion, that soueraygnely there ought none to enterprise any mater there, but al onely their owne naturall lorde, that is to say, the duke of Bretayne holdeth his court open to here all ryghtes, and his offycers to execute all ryghtes in the lande of Bretayne, and to do acordinge to their offyce; and if I haue any offycer  
that

that do the contrary to ryght, that onther straunger or other haue cause to complayne, I punnysshie them and shall do, that other shall take ensample by them: moreouer I say that some of the kynges counsaile do so that they ought to be reprovod, for they do as moche as they maye do, to norysse warre and hatred bytwene the kyng and me, the cause why is clere ynough; they suffre my cosyn Johñ of Bloys to do two thynges agaynst me vnreasonable: the fyrste is, he writeth hymselfe Johan of Bretayne: by reason of that name it semeth he entendeth to attayne to the herytage of Bretayne, of the whiche he is without and shall be, for I haue chyldren, sonne and daughter that shall succede after me: Secondely, he beareth the ermyns whiche are the armes of Bretayne, but of trouthe to do me dyspleasure withall; sir Olyuer Clysso mayntayneth him in that opinyon, and as longe as he is in that case I wyll agre to no treatie with the kyng: as for warre I wyll make none to the kyng, bycause he is my naturall lorde, but if by yuell informacyon ſ kyng make me warre, I shall defende me, and he shall fynde me in myne owne countre. All this I wyll that the kyng knowe.

Thus the treatie bytwene the kyng, and the duke of Bretayne, contynued rygorously, for the duke was lorde and mayster of his counsaile, but the frenche kyng was nat so of his, but was ruled by syr Olyuer Clisson, and the Begue of Vyllains, syr Johan Mercyer, and by syr Willyam of Montague; the duke of Burgoyne, who had clere vnderstandyng of every thyng, suffred the duke of Bretaynes reasons and defences to be layde in place, and couertly he susteyned them, and had the duke of Berrey of his opynyon: for he hated inwardly them of the kynges priuy chambre, bycause they had dystroyed his treasurer Betsache shamfully, by iustyce at Besyers, (as ye haue herde here before,) but he suffred it, for he sawe no tyme to be reuenged. In this dyfference the duke of Bretayne taryed at Towrs thre monethes, that their treatie coulede come to no good conclusyon, and were at the poynte to haue departed, and the kyng was in wyll that as soone as he was retourned into Fraunce, to make a great assemble, to make warre the next somer after into Bretayne agaynst the duke, and suche of his acorde, and to leaue all other busines: but the dukes of Berrey, and of Burgoyne, the lorde Coucy, therle of saint Poll, sir Guy of Tremoile,<sup>a</sup> the chancellor of Fraūce, and dyuers other prelates and high barons of Fraūce, suche as were there, ymaged to withstāde this rigorous rebellios, and spake togider, and said to the kyng: sir, we that be the souerayn lordes and piers of your realme, and be nere of your lygnage, we shulde haue a treatie this next lent for a peace to be had at Amicce with thenglysshmen; wherfore sir, ye had nede to make haste, and leaue this yuell wyll bytwene you and the duke of Bretayne, for if the duke departe hens without any agrement made bytwene you, thenglysshmen wyll be ſ harder in all their treaties, for they wyll thynke thē to be ayded and cōforted by the duke of Bretayne, and by his countrey, for the duke hath thenglysshmen at his hande when he wyll; and if we haue warre at ones, bothe with the Englysshmen and Bretons, as we haue had or this, they wyll put vs to great payne. These lordes dyde so moche with the kyng and his cōsaile, that at last they founde a meane bytwene the kyng and the duke: I shall shewe you what it was: and surely without the same meane had ben founde, they shulde haue come to no conclusion of good acorde: So it was, ſ frenche kyng had a daughter, and the duke of Bretaine had a sonne, there was a maryage made bytwene this soñe and this daughter; in lykewise Johñ of Bretayne had a soñe by the daughter of sir Olyuer of Clysso, and the duke of Bretayne had a daughter, and it was thought to make sure peace, ſ the mariage bytwene thē two were necessary; these maryages were agreed and concluded; howbeit, for all thesealya unces, yet Johñ of Bretayne shulde leaue the armes of Bretayne, and

bear

<sup>a</sup> De la Tremouille.

beare them of Chastellon: and bycause he was extracte by his mother syde of a duke of Bretayne, (for his mother was daughter to a duke of Bretaygne.) therefore he was allowed to bere in his armys a border of ermyne, with thre labels goulcs, on the heed of a schochyn of ermys. Thus he bare these deuises, and euery thyng was apesed. So the duke of Bretayne gate the loue of the kyng and of his vnclcs, and dyned with the kyng: and so Joln of Bretayne was erle of Ponthieurs,<sup>a</sup> and thus shewed great loue togyder by meanes of these mariages; howbeit, the duke in no wyse wolde se nor speke with sir Olyuer of Clysson, he had suche displeasure to hym; howbeit, sir Olyuer made lyght therof, for he hated the duke also with all his puissaūce. These mariages thus acorded, and the lordes sworne and bounde to fulfill thē, whan the chyldren shulde be sōwhat of more age. Than these lordes determyned to departe fro Tourse, and to drawe to Parys, for the tyme aproched that they shulde be at Amyence personally; the frenche kyng, his brother, his vnclcs, and his cōsaille, to mete there with the kyng of Englande, his vnclcs and counsaile, who shulde be there. So the duke of Bretayne toke leaue of the Frenche kyng, and of his brother and vnclcs, and of suche other as he loued best, and so departed fro Tourse, and went into his owne cōūtre; and in lykewise so dyd all other lordes. The duke of Berrey, the duke of Burgoyne, and the lorde Coucy taryed there styll, I shall shewe you why.

*Howe therle of Bloys, and Mary of Namure his wyffe, solde the countie of Bloys and all their landes to the duke of Thourayne, the frenche kynge's brother.*

#### CAP. CLXXXII.<sup>b</sup>

YE haue herde here before in this hystorie, howe Loys of Bloys, sōne to therle Guy of Bloys died whan he was yonge, in ȝ town of Beaumont, in Heynalt, wherby the lady Mary daughter to the duke of Berrey, was a widowe, and therby she lost her welthe of this worlde, for the chylde was a gret enheritour, and if he had lyued he had ben a gret lorde. I speke of it bycause it shulde be knowen in tyme to come, thenheritance to whome it went out of the right lyne, and by what maner. Therle of Blois, and Mary of Namure his wyffe, were nat in ȝ case to engēdre children togider, for by great drikyng and moche eatyng of swete and delycate meates, they were ouergrown with fatnesse, so that the erle coude nat ryde, but was always caried in a lytter fro one place to another, or whan he wolde go a huntyng or haukyng, whiche sporte was gretly vsed w the lordes of Fraūce. The same season, whyle the Frenche kynge was at Tourse, the duke of Thourayne had an ymaginacion whiche he brought to effect, as I shall shewe you. The duke of Thourayne knewe well he had moche rychesse lying by hym, paraduventure a myllion of Floreyns, whiche he had by reason of his mariage with the lady Valentyna of Myllayne, daughter to the erle of Vertus; he wust nat howe to employ these florens: than he remēbred howe the erle Guy of Bloys had great herytages, and that after his dethe they were likely to go to dyuers persones. The erldome of Bloys shulde retourne to Johan of Bretayne, for he was the erles cosyn germaine, and the landes of Heynault shulde go to the duke of Julyers, and to the duke of Lancastre, except Chimay, whiche shulde go to them of Conflans by homage, and the cōūtie of Soissons, whiche parteyned to therle of Bloys, and was aūciently alyed to hym; the lorde of  
Coucy

<sup>a</sup> Penthièvre.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CLXXXVIII.

Coucy was enherytour therof, by reason of his delyueraūce out of prisone in Englād. Also the landes of Drages, and Monny,<sup>†</sup> shulde retourne to other heyres; and the landes of Holande, and Zelande, shulde retourne to the erls of Heynaulte. Thus these layre herytages shulde be sparclod abrode; and this knewe well the lordes of Fraūce, wherfore the duke of Thourayn, who had money lyeng by hym, thought to bye these lādes, if he might haue any resonable bargayne; thā he thought to entreate the kyng to moue therle of Blois in this mater, and specially at the lest to bye the countie of Bloys, whiche was a fayre and a noble cuntry, and well lyttinge for hym: for the countie of Bloyes marched on the duchy of Thouraygne, and to the Countie of Bloys parteyned many goodly fees. This duke of Thourayne rested styll on his purpose, and seased nat tyll he spake with ŷ kyng his brother, and ŷ duke of Burbone, and with the lorde of Coucy, bycause he was great with ŷ erle of Blois, and had to wyfe the daughter of his cosyng germayne the duke of Loreyne. The duke of Thourayne, and the other lordes of his affynite, kept this mater secretly fro ŷ duke of Berrey; I shall shewe you why. The lady Mary his daughter was endowed in all the countie of Bloys to the sōme of vi. M. frankes by yere, and the duke of Berrey trusted by reason of his daughters dowrie, ŷ the countie of Bloys shulde be his after the erles dethe; this duke of Berrey was a marueylous couytous prince. The duke of Burgoyne in lykewise trusted the landes of Hollande, Zelande, and Heynalte, to be his, bycause that Margarete his eldest daughter was married to Wylliam, soñe to therle of Heynalte: wherby he thought outhr by bieng, or by sōe other incident, ŷ those landes shulde returne to his soñe erle of Ostreuant, otherwise called Johñ of Burgoyne, who as than had married Margarete, eldest daughter to therle of Heynalte. Thus the kyng and these said lordes purposed ŷ at their departyng fro Tourse, in Thourayn, to ryde by Blois to se their cosyng therle Guy of Bloys, who was an eight myle fro Tourse, in a castell of his owne called ŷ Castell morant, and there to treatre of this marchādise with hym and with his wyfe, the lady Mary of Namure, who was a couytous lady. So it was, there was a valiant knight and of great prudence, bayly of Blois, called sir Raynolde of Sens, who had parfyte informacion of all this busynes, by what meanes I knowe nat; whan he knewe it he had gret pyte therof, for loue of therle his lorde, for he thought by reason of his sale of his lādes, he shuld be dishonored for euer, and disherite the true rightfull heyres, whiche shulde be damnacion to his soule; he thought to lette this mater if he coude, and so rode fro Blois, and spake with therle, and said: sir, the frenche kyng, and the duke of Thourayn, the duke of Bourbon, and the lorde Coucy, cometh hyder to you: ŷ is true, quod therle, why speke you that? Sir, quod he, I say it bycause ye shal be requyred to sell your enheritaūce, wherfore ye haue nede to take good aduise therin. Of those wordes therle had great marueyle, and said: I can nat let men to speke and make requestes, but or I make any suche bargayne to sell myne enherytaūce, or to disheryte myne heyres to my shame and rebuke, I shall rather sell or ley to pledge all ŷ plate I haue. Well sir, quod the knight, remēbre well the mater whan tyme is, for this that I haue shewed you is without dout. Bayly, quod the erle, I am nat so yong nor folysshe to enclyne to any suche treaties. Thus the bayly departed fro therle and rode againe to Blois, for he wolde nat be sene there at the kynges cōmyng. Whan the kyng and these said lordes cāe to the castell, the erle made them good chere, as it was reason. The erle and the countesse were right ioyfull that ŷ kyng wolde visyte them in their owne castell. Than the kyng to drawe the erle to his loue, and to bring him to his entent, sayd: Fayre cosyng, I se well ye be a lorde of our realme garnysshed with honour and larges, and haue ben at great cost: and to ayde you, and somewhat to recōpence you, we wyll you gyue and ayde, that shall be well worthe to you twentie thousande

<sup>†</sup> Argies and Nouvion.

thousande frākes in the countie of Blois. Therle thanked the kyng of his gyfte, but he had neuer profite therof, for he had neuer nothyng. Than the kyng began to treat the Erle to sell the countie of Bloyes to the duke of Thourayn. The kyng and the duke of Burbone spake fyrst, and founde therle very colde and farre of in that mater. Than the lordes drewe to the countesse of Bloyes, and shewed her so many colored reasons, and she hers, that after her husbandes dethe, she was lyke to be but a poore lady; wherfore they said it were moche better for her to be a ryche lady, and a puissaunt of golde and syluer, and iewelles, than to be poore; sayeng, howe she was lykely to ouerlyue her husbāde, therfore they desyred her to counsayle her husbande to make this marchaundyse. The countesse, who was a couytous lady, and for loue to haue the floreyus, she enclnyed to their desyres; and she dyd so moche with the helpe of other, as the ayde of a varlet of the Erles chambre, called Sohier, borne at Malynes,<sup>s</sup> sonne to a weyuer of clothes, but he was so great w<sup>t</sup> the erle of Bloyes, that all thyng was done by hym, and without hym nothyng done; and the erle had gyuen hym in fees and herytages more than fyue hundred frankes by yere. Beholde and consydre what myschefe great lordes be brought vnto by meane of seruauūtes. This Sohier had nother wytte nor reason, to be greatly alowed, but it was al onely the folysshe loue that his maister hadde to hym. In lykewise the duke of Berrey the same season had one with hym, called Jaques Thybaulte, who was of no reputacion, yet the duke at dyuers tymes had gyuen hym the sōme of two hundred thousande frankes, and yet all was but loste. This Sohier coulde nor can nat excuse hymselfe, but that if he had lysted he myght well haue broken that marchādise y<sup>t</sup> therle his mayster made; but to please the kyng, the duke of Thourayne, the duke of Burbone, the lorde of Coucy, and the cōtresse, who was agreed therto by couitousnes of the florens, he rownded so in his maisters eare, that the Erle wente from his promyse that he had made to his bayly; and so there the reuercion of the countie of Bloyes after his discease was solde for the somme of two hundred thousande frankes, and the duke of Thouraygne to delyuer to the lady of Dunoyes for her dowrie, whiche was assygned to her, sixe thousande frankes: and furthermore he shulde haue made another sale of all his landes in Heynaulte, and the duke of Thourayne to haue payde for that two hundred thousande frankes; howebeit, therin the erle of Bloys reserued to knowe the erle of Heynaultes pleasure therin, who was his naturall lorde, to whom he owed faythe and homage for those landes; howebeit, y<sup>t</sup> kyng and the duke of Thourayn toke that charge on them, and to discharge the erle whatsoever shulde fall after. Thus or they departed, thay bounde the erle by promyse and by wrytynges sealed, as they might well and easely do, for he had there none of his cōsayle, saue Sohier, who neuer was at scole, nor knewe no letter on the boke. Moche after this maner went this marchandise; and I haue written this mater as iustely as I coude, to thentent that hereafter in tyme to come, by reason of wrytyng, the trouthe shulde be knowen; for the erle Guye of Bloys, my lorde and mayster, as he that was ignorant and yuell counsayled, more by his wyfe, and varlet Sohier, thā by any other, made this yuell bargayne. And when these maters were concluded and surely made by the kyng, the duke of Thourayne, and their counsayle, than the lordes toke their leaue and returned into Fraūce. Great brute was made of these sales in dyuers countreis.

<sup>s</sup> Mechlin.

*Howe sir Roger of Spaygne, and sir Espaygne du Lyon, spedde with the frenche kyng and his counsayle, for the Vicount of Chastellons<sup>a</sup> busynese: and howe he was sette in possession of the countie of Foiz: and of the money that he payde.*

CAP. CLXXXIII.<sup>b</sup>

NOWE let vs sōwhat speke of sir Roger of Spaygne, and of sir Espaygne du Lyon, and shewe how they spedde, after they were returned fro Tourse, to go to Tholous, to the bysshop of Noyon, and to the lorde de la Ryuer. So longe they journeyed that they came thyder; they were welcome, for their cōmyng was sore desyred; there they shewed their letters, and howe they had spedde. By semblaunt the bysshoppe, and the lorde de la Ryuer, were ioyouse of that the herytaūce shulde abyde with the Vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> on suche condycions, (as is before written). Than sir Roger and his cōpanyon thought to take some more payne, as to ryde to ȝ Vycount of Chastellon,<sup>a</sup> and to the counsayls of Foize, and of Bierne, to se that euery thyng be sette in good order; than they departed fro Tholous, and rode to saynt Gracyens. The Vicount was nat there, but he was at the entre of Berne, in a fayre castell called Pau, and there they founde hym, who was ioyfull of their cōmyng; and whan he knewe that the Frenche kyng had gyuen vp his tytell of the byeng of the coūtie of Foiz, he was gladder than he was before: as for the money ȝ he shulde paye, he wyst well ynoughe where to haue it, and moche more.

*Of the great assemble that was made at Amyence, of the Frenche kyng and his counsayle, and of the kyng of Englandes vnclis, on the treatie of peace.*

CAP. CLXXXIII.<sup>c</sup>

I THYNKE I haue sufficiently treated of the busynesse of Bierne, and of Foiz, for if I shulde reherse all thynges, it wolde requyre long writyng: therfore I wyll leaue spekyng therof, and treat of other maters. Thus all thynges cōcluded, the vicount of Chastellon<sup>a</sup> was erle of Foiz, and lorde of Berne, in lyke maner as the olde erle helde it, and all suche as ought so to do made homage to hym: and he departed largely with sir yuan, and sir Graciē, tholde erles bastarde sōnes, in suche wyse that they were content, and payde to the Frēche kyng all suche money as was promised to be payde. This mater was nat sone done: somer was first well onwarde, and ȝ bisshop of Noyon, and ȝ lorde de la Ryuer taryed styll at Thoulous tyll euery thyng was set in good order, accordyng as they were charged. Nowe let vs speke of thassemble of the lordes of Fraūce and of Englande, in the good cyte of Amyence, on the treatie of a pece or of a truce, as than beyng the yere of our lorde M. CCC. lxxx. and xi. in the myddes of lent: great prouision was made ther for these lordes or they cāe thider: First, for the frenche kyng and for his estate, and for his thre vnclis, and also for other great lordes of Fraūce, euery man after his degre, for it was said that kyng Richard of Englāde shulde be there: wherfore

<sup>a</sup> Châtel-bon.<sup>b</sup> Chapter CLXXIX.<sup>c</sup> Chapter CLXXX.

wherfore many desyred to se him, such as had neuer sene him before; howbeit, he came nat there, yet he cāe to Douer, to thentent to haue passed the see, and his thre vnclcs with hym, ŷ is to say, ŷ dukes of Lācastre, Yorke, and Glocester; and when they came to Douer, they tooke aduysē whyder it were mete for the kyng to passe the see or nat. All thynges cousydred, the counsaile of Englande was of opinyon that the kyng shuld byde at Douer, and the duke of Glocester w̄ him; and the duke of Lancaster, the duke of Yorke, therle of Hūtyngton, therle of Derby, sir Thomas Percy, the bysshops of Durham and London, and other of ŷ kynges cōsaile, to passe ouer: so they came to Calais: and when the day aproched ŷ they shulde mete at Amycē, they departed fro Calys mo than xii. C. horse; it was a goodly syght to se thē ryde in good order. The frenche kyng had ordayned, that after thenglyssmen came out of Calis, both goyng, abyding, and returnyng, all their costes and charges were borne of the frenche kynges charge, as mete, drike, lodgyng, and horse mete. With ŷ duke of Lācastre, and the duke of Yorke, there cāe their cosyn, daughter to their suster, and to ŷ lorde Coucy, who was a faire yōg lady, called ŷ lady of yrelāde, for she was wedded to the duke of yrelāde; this lady cāe to Amyens to se ŷ lorde her father, ŷ lorde Coucy, for she had nat sene hym moche before, wherfore she hadde great desyre to se hym: she came lyke a noble widowe, hauyng but small ioye in her corage.

The Frenche kyng had ordayned to make the Englyssshemen as moche honour as coude be deuysed: and so the foure dukes, that is to saye, the duke of Thourayn, the Frenche kynges brother, and the dukes of Burbon, of Berrey, and of Burgoyne, lepte on their horses and rode out of the towne to mete with the englyssmen, acōpanyed with many other great lordes: Fyrst, mette with thē the duke Loys of Thourayn, well acōpanyed, and honorably he receuyed his cosyns of Englande, and there cōmūned a certayne space with thē: than he toke his leaue and departed agayne with all his company, and so rode streight to the cytie to the kyng his brother; and the other thre dukes, ŷ kynges vnclcs, Berrey, Burbone, and Burgoyne, mette with the Englysshe dukes in the felde, and made great chere and honorable eche to other, that ioye it was to se. Than the gētyll erle Dolphyn of Auuergne, who had ben as an hostager in Englande, and moche in the duke of Lācasters company, and loued hym very well, he came and humbly saluted the duke of Lancaster. When the duke sawe him, he enbraced hym in great token of loue, and spake togyder a lytell. Than the dukes of Berrey, and Burgoyne, came to them: and the duke of Burbon, the lorde Coucy, and therle of saynt Poule, came to the duke of Yorke, the erle of Huntyngton, and to sir Thomas Percy, and so rode talkyng togyder with amorous wordes, tyll they aproched the cytie of Amyence. Than the duke of Lancaster rode bytwene the duke of Berrey, and the duke of Burgoyne: thus they rode all thre in a front, makyng honour eche to other, tyll they came to the bysshoppes palais, where the kyng and the duke of Thourayne was; there they alighted, and the two dukes ledde the duke of Lācastre vp the steres, and the other dukes and lordes folowed: than the Frenche lordes came into the kynges presence, and made their reuerence, and lefte the Englysshe dukes standyng alone: than a lytell they enclined themselfe to the kyng: than the kyng cāe to them and toke them by the handes, and lyfte them vp, and spake swetely to them, and they to hym, and other lordes of Fraunce fell in talkyng with the other lordes of Englande; and when they had cōmūned a season, they toke their leaue of the kyng, his brother, and vnclcs, and departed, amd were conueyed to their lodgynges by the cōstable of Fraunce, the lorde Coucy, the erle of saynt Poule, sir Johan of Vyenne, and other lordes of the realme of Fraunce. Than they toke their leaues, and departed agayne to the kyng: and the lady of Irelande, daughter to the lorde Coucy, was lodged in her fathers lodging, and all her cōpany.

It was ordayned by the frēche kyng and his counsayle, before thenglysshe lordes came to the cytie of Amyence, (whiche ordynaūce was publissed and proclaimed openlye, to thentent that no persone shulde be ignorant therof, but every man to beware of brekyng of any artycle in the proclamacion, on payne of lesyng of their heedes): First, that no maner of person make any riot, or gye any riotous wordes to any Englysshman; and also that no knight nor squier speke or make any chalenge of armes to any englysshman, on payne of the kynges highe displeasure, and they to company with them w̄ swete wordes and goodly behaunour, in ȝ towne, lodgynges, or felde; nor that the Freuche pages make any debate nor riotte in any place on payne of dethe; and whatsoeuer any englysshman demaūdeth, to suffre them pesably to haue it; and that no host nor vitayler demaunde any money, outhur for meate or drinke, nor for other suche cōmen charges. Also it was ordayned that no knight nor squyer of Fraunce shuld go by night tyme without torche or torches, and that the englysshmen shulde go at their pleasure without any cōtrolement; and that if any Frēchman mete any Englysshman in the night in any strete, ȝ they shulde swetely and gently conuey him or thē to their lodgyng, or to their company. Also it was ordayned that in four places of the cyte four watches to be set, of a thousande men in euery watche, and that if any fyre hadde to fall in the nyght by any incydence, the watche in no wyse to remoue for no maner of cause: but at ȝ sownyng of a bell, all other people to drawe to quēche the fyre. Also it was ordayned ȝ no frēch knight nor squier for no maner of cause shulde presume to speke to the king, wout ȝ kyng fyrst dyde call hym. Nor also that the knightes nor squyers of Fraunce shulde talke nor cōmune toguyder, as long as any of the Englysshemen were present, but to fynde cōmunyng and pastyme with theym. Also it was ordayned, that all hostes, and their seruautes, in any wyse, shulde nat conuey or hyde any bowes or arrowes, or any other thyng partynyng to the Englysshemen, without makinge of large amendes, without it were gyuen them by the Englysshmen of their curtesy; than to take it, or els nat. All these thynges were determyned by delyberacyon of good counsayle, to do the Englysshemen the more honoure, for they trusted of a good conclusyon of peace. Nighe every day, a fystene dayes toguyder, these lordes were in counsayle, and brought nothyng to cōclusyon, for their demaundes were greatly different. The Frenchemen demaunded to haue Calais rased and beaten downe, in suche wyse, that no persone shulde dwell there after. The Englysshemen wolde in no wyse agree to that treatie, for it ought to be beleued, that Calais was ȝ towne of the worlde that the cōmons of Englande loued best; for as longe as they be lordes of Calais, they sayde, they bare the kayes of Fraunce vnder their gyrdell. Though the lordes departed euery daye vnagreed, yet they departed asōder right amiably, for euery daye they poynted to mete agayne the nexte day, bothe parties trustyng at last to cōclude on some good poynt. The freuche kyng made thenglysshmen in ȝ space thre notable dyners at his palais. In lykewise so dyde the duke of Thourayne, the duke of Berrey, the duke of Burgoyne, the duke of Burbone, the lorde of Coucy, and the erle of saynt Poule; eche of these made the Englysshemen a great dyner; and for euery thyng that the Englysshmen toke in the towne was payd for, and clerkes apoynted by the kyng and his counsayle to write euery thyng, and euery man apoynted for their money to the chambre of accomptes. It ought to be knowen that Johan duke of Lancastre, and his brother the duke of Yorke, for all that they were come thyder on trust of peace, yet they had charge of the kyng of Englande, and of his counsayle, that whatsoeuer treatie they made, in no wise they shulde nouthur gye nor take any maner of thyng.

Many were of the opynion, that the cōmynaltie of Englande rather enclyned to warre than to peace: for in the tyme of good kyng Edwarde the thirde, and of his soñe the prince



prince of Wales, they had so many fayre and highe vycories on ý frenchemen, and so great conquestes, with so moche money for raunsonies, sellyng and patesyng of townes and countreis, that they were become marueylous riche: for many suche as were no gentylmen of byrthe, by reason of their hardynesse and valyaunt aduentures, wan and conquered so moche golde and syluer that they became noble, and rose to great honour: and so such as folowed after wolde folowe the same lyfe; howbeit, after ý dayes of the sayd kyng Edward, and ý prince his sonne, by the wysdome and highe enterprice of sir Bertram of Clesquy,<sup>a</sup> and by the ayde of other good knyghtes of Fraüce, the Englysshmen were than agayne sore put backe. The duke of Gloucestre, sonne to the sayde kyng Edward, and vncle as than to kyng Richarde, than beyng at Amyence, and dyuers other lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, were of the same opynion that the cōmons were of in Englande, and enclyned rather to the warre than to peace, to the entent therby to susteyne their estate. By the occasion therof the peace was the harder to driue; yet the kyng and the duke of Lancastre wolde fayne haue hadde peace, for by their meanes that metyng at Amyēce was apoynted; howbeit, they wolde nat displease the cōmens of Englande: the Englysshmen wolde gladlye haue hadde a peace, so they myght be restored agayne to al suche landes as was agreed on at the treaty before Charters, and that the Frenchemen shulde paye fourtene hundred thousande frākes, whiche was vnpayed whan the warre began to renewe.

In this season thus great cōmunycacion there was at the cytie of Amyence on treatie of peace, and the lordes that were there on bothe parties toke great payne in the cause. It myght well be marueyled why this peace toke none effecte, for specially the duke of Burgoyne dyd what he coude for the Frenche partie, and the duke of Lancastre for the Englysshe partie, sayung the charge that he had, whiche he durst nat passe. Whan these lordes sawe that they coude come to no good conclusyon, than the frenchemen somewhat to apease and to please the englysshmen, and the rather therby to fall to some reason, it was offred to them to enioy styll peasably, all that euer they were as than in possessyon of in Acquytayne, and nyne dyoces to be quite delyuered without any resorte, so that Calays myght be beaten downe; and also they offred to paye in thre yere after, the somme of xiiii. hundred thousande frankes. Than the duke of Lancastre and the englyssh counsaile answered and sayd: Syrs, we haue taried here a longe season, and haue concluded nothyng, nor we canne nat conclude tyll we be retourned into Englande, and than we shall shewe all your desyres and offers to the kyng our souerayne lorde, and to the thre estates of the realme: and of one thinge be you sure, that as moch dyligence as I and my brother of Yorke can do, shall be doone to bringe your desyre to passe, except ý beatyng downe of Calays; we dare nat speke therof, for if we dyd, we shulde ryn in the indygnacyon and hatred of ý most parte of all the realme of Englande, and yet were we better to speke no worde therof. These wordes somewhat contented the french kyng and his cōsaile, and desyred them, that whan they were returned into Englande to do their dyligence in the mater; and they said they wolde do what they coude for the french party, sayeng howe the warre had endured ouer longe, and many yuell inconuenyentes hath ensued therby in the worlde. Than it was considered bytwene the parties, bycause the truce fayled the next mydsomer after, bytwene Englande and Fraunce, to contynue it lengar the space of an hole yere, bothe by lande and by see bytwene them, their alyes, and adherentes: and therto the lordes of Englande were agreed. Than the french kynges counsaile desyred to sende two french knyghtes to go with them into Englande, and at their retourne to bringe worde what case they shulde fynde the realme of Englande in. The duke of Lancastre, and ý duke of Yorke, were

<sup>a</sup> Du Guesclin.

were contente therwith. It was shewed me, and also the apparaunce was great, howe that the frenche kynge desyred greatly to haue peace, for as than great brute ranne through Fraunce and other places, howe that Lamorabaquyn<sup>a</sup> was entred with great puissance of turkes into the realme of Hungry. Syr Boucyquaut thelder, marshall of Fraunce, brought those newes, and syr Johan of Charon,<sup>b</sup> who were newly returned fro the partyes of Grece and Turkey; wherfore the frenche kynge in his youthe had great affectyon to go in voyage, and to go and se the sayd Lamorabaquyn,<sup>a</sup> and to recouer the realme of Armony,<sup>c</sup> whiche the turkes had wonne fro the kynge Lyon of Armony,<sup>c</sup> who was the same tyme at Amyence: and he shewed the cause of his comynge thyder to the duke of Lancastre and to the duke of yorke. They knewe hym well, for they had sene him before in the realme of Englande; he was in Englande to treat for the peace whan the frenche kynge was at Sluse. And consyderynge the kynge of Armonyes<sup>c</sup> busynesse at the ende of their parlyamente, the frenche kynge sayde to the duke of Lancastre: Fayre nephewe, if peace maye be had bytwene vs and the kynge of Englande, we might than make a voyage into Turkey, comfortyng the kynge of Hungry and the emperour of Constantynople, whome Lamorabaquyn<sup>a</sup> dothe moche trouble: and let vs recouer the realme of Armony,<sup>c</sup> whiche the turkes kepe. We here saye that Lamorabaquyn<sup>a</sup> is a valyaunt man and of great enterprise, and agaynst suche persones as are contrary to our beleue, and daily dothe trouble and greue vs: we ought to enclyne ourselfe to defende our crysten faythe; wherfore, fayre nephewe, helpe you to proude for this voyage in the realme of Englande. The duke of Lancastre promysed to do his deuoyre in that behalfe: thus they toke leaue eche of other.

This counsaile at Amyence endured a fyftene dayes; than the Englysshemen departed, and had with them in wrytyng the cōclusion of their treatie, to shewe to the kynge of Englande and his counsaile. Than the duchesse of Irelande departed fro Amyēce, and toke leaue of her father the lorde of Coucy, and returned with the englysshe lordes: and fro that tyme that they departed fro Calais tyll they came thyder agayne they spent nothyng without they lyst, for the french kynge made euery thyng to be payed, bothe for themselfe and for their horses. The duke of Burgoyne than returned into Arthoys to the cytie of Arras, and there he founde the duchesse his wyfe, who had vysited the cōuntry of Flaunders. The duke of Thourayne, the duke of Berrey, and the duke of Burbone taryed with the kynge, and the kinge purposed to go to Beauoys and to Gysors, to sporte hym there in the waye to Parys. With the duke of Lancastre and the duke of yorke certayne knyghtes of Fraunce wente into Englande, as syr Johan of Castell Morante and sir Taupyns of Cantmell, to bringe aunswere agayne out of Englande; and sir Raynolde du Roy, the lorde of Moncaurell, and fy lorde of the olde towne,<sup>d</sup> conueyed them to Calays, and than toke their leaue, and the englysshemen passed ouer the see to Douer, and there founde the kynge and the duke of Glocestre taryeng for them. Whan the kyng sawe them, he had great comynge with them of the state of the parlyamente of Amyence: the kynge was well content with that his vnclis had done; but than the duke of Glocestre, who was alwayes harde agaynst the treatie of peace, sayd: howe there coulde no good conclusyon be taken in this treatye tyll the mater were brought to Westmynster to a general counsaile of all the thre astates of the realme, and than to folowe their aduyses and none otherwyse. The duke of Glocesters wordes were well herde; no manne wolde saye agaynst hym, for he was greatly in the loue of the realme. Than it was shewed to the knyghtes of Fraunce that they muste go with them to London, otherwyse they coulde haue none answer. The two knyghtes obeyed, as it was reason. Than the kynge toke his way  
and

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.<sup>b</sup> Caronge?<sup>c</sup> Armenia.<sup>d</sup> Vieuville.

and the lordes with him to London. Whan the kynge came to Dartforde, he tooke his waye to Eltham, and refreshed him there with the queene, and than came to Shene, and wente agaynst saynte Georges feest to Wyndesore, and there the knyghtes of Fraunce were answered; but or I shewe you their aunswere, I wyll somewhat speke of the frenche kynge.

After that this assemble and cōsaille had been at Amyence, the Frenche kynge, for lacke of good gydyng, fell sycke of the feuer, wherfore he was counsayled to chaunge the ayre: so he was layde in a lytter, and caryed to Beauuoys, and there taryed in the byshops palays tyll he was hole and recouered; his brother the duke of Thourayne with him, and his vnclcs the dukes of Berrey and Burbone; there he helde his Easter: and after, whan the kynge was stronge and myght well ryde, he rode to Gysors, the entryng into Normādy, to haue there the sporte of huntynge, for therabout were many fayre wodes. The kyng beyng there, sir Bernarde of Armynake, who was brother to Johan of Armynake, came to the kynge in good array, and the Dolplyn of Auergne in his company, whome he founde at Parys in his waye. There the erle of Armynake and the Erle of Rodays made their reliefe and homage to the kynge, accordinge to the custome as other lordes of Fraunce made their relyefe for suche landes as they helde in fee of the kynge: and whan euery thyng was writen and regestred, they toke their leaue and returned to Paris togyther, and fro thence to their countreys, to Auergne and to Languedoc; and about the feest of Ascensyon tyde the frenche kynge returned to Parys in good helthe, and lodged at his house of saynte Poll, the whiche was ordeyned for hym; and thyder was come the frenche queene and the duches of Thourayne.

Nowe let vs speke of syr Johan of Castell Morante, and of syr Taupyn of Cantmell, who were in Englande taryenge for an answere of the kyng and his counsayle. They were at Wyndesore at saynte Georges feest, where was the kynge, his vnclcs, and other great lordes of Englande: there these lordes counsayled togyther on suche promyse as they had made to the frenche kyng and his counsayle at Amyence, and determyned to delyuer the two Frenche knyghtes that dayly called on them for an aunswere. Than these knyghtes were sente for on a day, and it was sayde to them thus: Syrs, be contente, for, all thinges consydrēd, ye canne haue of vs no full answere at this tyme, for it wolde be harde as nowe to assemble togyther the thre estates of the realme vntyll the feest of Mychelmas, at whiche tyme they muste nedes be at the parlyamente at Westminster: and to excuse you we shall write letters for the same purpose, at whiche season if you or any other for the partie of Fraūce wyll traueyle so farre as to come thyder they shall haue a reasonable answere, suche as generally the hole counsayle of the thre astates shall agre vnto. Whan the frenche knyghtes sawe what answere they had, and coulde haue none other, they aunswere and sayd: Syr, we are contente with that ye haue sayd; lette vs haue our letters, and we shall retourne. Than their letters were delyuered to them, and so toke their leaue of the kynge and of other lordes, and so came fro Wyndesore to London, and made thē redy to departe. The kyng of Englande caused all their costes and charges to be payed for, and conueyed to Douer, and there taryed a fyue dayes for lacke of wynde, and on the sixte day they departed and aryued at Bolyne; and whanne their horses were vnshypped they rode to Amyēce by small iourneys and so to Paris, and there they founde the kynge and his lordes: it was aboute the feest of Penthecost: their letters were redde, wherby they vnderstode the ordynaūce of the englysshmen. As it was shewed to me, the kynge nor his counsayle toke lytell regarde to the mater, for within a season after they had moche ado in other places.

*Howe syr Peter of Craon, through yuell wyll, by subtyle crafte, beate downe syr Olyuer of Clysson, wherwith the Kyng and his counsaile were sore displeased.*

C A P. CLXXXV.<sup>a</sup>

YE haue well herde here before how sir Peter of Craon, who was a knyght of great lynage, but he was farre out of the frenche kynges grace and the duke of Thourayns: if he dyd so moche to cause them to be displeased with him, he dyd yuell. Ye haue herde also howe he was gone into Bretayne to the duke, who shewed hym that the yuell wyll that the kyng bare hym was by the meanes of syr Olyuer of Clysson. It may well be that he was so enfourmed, in that he hadde so great hate to the constable sir Olyuer of Clysson, for he studied euer after howe to dystroy hym. Thus whyle syr Peter of Craon was with the duke of Bretayne they wolde often tymes comune togyder, and deuise howe they myght bringe syr Olyuer of Clysson to dethe, for they sayd that and he were ones deed, there was none y wolde greatly reuenge his dethe. The duke repēted hym that he had nat slayne hym whan he had hym in prisone, and wolde as than that it had coste hym a hundred thousande frankes that he had hym agayne at his wyll. Whan syr Peter of Craon sawe that the duke had suche hatred to syr Olyuer of Clysson, he purposed a marueylous ymaginacion in himselfe, for by apparaūce men shulde gyue iudgement. This knyght thought howesoouer it were that he wolde slee the constable, and thought to entende to nothyng els tyll he had slayne hym with his owne handes, or caused hym to be slayne, and afterwarde entreat for peace. He doutyd nothyng Johñ of Blois, nor the sonne of the Vicounte of Rohan, who had wedded two of the constables daughters; he thought to do well ynough with theym as longe as y duke was on his parte: for he sawe well the strengthe and puyssaunce of Bloys was greatly febllysshed, for the Erle Guy of Bloys had solde the herytage of Bloys to the duke of Thourayn, whiche shulde haue ronne by successyon to therle of Pointhyeur<sup>b</sup> Johan of Bloys, wherby he thought that the duke of Thourayne shewed hym but small loue nor alyauunce of lynage to bye away his enherytaunce; wherfore this syr Peter thought if syr Olyuer of Clysson were deed sone to ouercome the kynges yuell wyll and the duke of Thourayns, and therby sone to ouercome the lorde de la Ryuer and syr Johan Mercyer, Montagu, the Begue of Villayns, and syr Johan of Bulle, and other of the Kynges chambre, suche as susteyned the constable: for he knewe well that the duke of Berrey and the duke of Burgoyne loned them nothyng inwardely, whatsoever they shewed outwardly. Thus sir Peter of Craon perceyuered styll in his opynyon, and deuyed in his ymaginacion by the entysyng of the dyuell, who neuer slepeth, but waketh and embraseth their hartes to do yuell that enclyneth to his exortacion. Thus the dyuell dayly layde the mater before this knyghtes eyen, or he put the mater to excusyon; but if he had iustly ymagyned the doutes and parelles, and myscheuousnesse that myght fall by his yuell dede, reasone and wyse atemperance shulde haue caused hym to haue done otherwyse; but it is often tymes said, that the great desyre that a man hath to haue the excusyon of that thyng or it be fallen, often tymes quenbeth reason and wysdome: therefore often tymes vyces are maysters and vertues vyolate and corrupted; and for bycause that specially this syr Peter of Craon had so great affection to the dystrucyion of the constable, therefore he lyghtly enclyned to the temptacion to do outrage and folly, and thought that if he myght slee the constable and returne agayne safely into Bretayne,

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CLXXXI.

<sup>b</sup> Penthièvre.

Bretayne, that no man wolde seke hym there; if they dyd, he trusted that the duke wolde excuse hym; and that if the worste fell, that the Frenche kyng came thyder with a great puyssaunce, than in a nyght to entre into a shyppe, and so to go to Burdeaux, to Bayon, or into Englande, and there he thought well he shulde nat be pursued: for he knewe well that the englysshemen hated the constable, bycause of the cruelties that he had doone and consented to be done sythe he was tourned frenche; howebait, before that, he had done many notable seruyces to the englysshemen, as it hath ben rehersed here before in this hystory.

Sir Peter of Craon, for to accōplyssh his desyre, had longe studyed in his mynde howe to brynge his purpose to passe, and kepte his purpose close and secrete; I knowe nat if he shewed it to the duke of Bretayne or nat: some thought yes, bycause after the dede done by hym and his company, he toke the next way he coude into Bretayne, and tooke for his sauegarde the duke of Bretaygne; and also before the dede done he solde his castelles and herytage that he had in Aniou to the duke of Bretaygne, and renyed his homage to the frenche kyng, and sayd howe he wolde go ouer the see. Of all these maters I passe breuely; but I shall declare the dede, for I syr Johan Froysart, acoutour of this hystory, whan this vnhappy dede was doone by syr Peter of Craon agaynste syr Olyuer of Clysso, I was the same tyme at Paris: wherfore I ought to be well enformed of the mater, acording to the enquiry that I made therein to knowe the trouthe. The same tyme this syr Peter had in the towne of Parys a fayre house standyng in the churche yarde of saynt Johans, as dyuers other lordes had in the cytie for their pleasure: in this house there was a keper. Syr Peter of Craon had sent of his seruautes to Parys, and they prouyded largely in the house with wyne, corne, flesshe, salte, and other prouysons; also he had writen to the keper that he shulde bye certayne armure, as cotes of stele, gauntletes, stoles, and other harnesse for xl. men; and that doone, to sende hym worde therof, to thentente that he wolde sende for them, and secretly all this to be done. The keper, who thought none yuell and to obey his maysters cōmaundement, bought all this marchaūdyse: and all this season he was in a castell of his owne in Aniou, called Sablé; and he sent one weke thre or four seruautes to his house in Paris, and so wekely, tyll he had there a xl. and shewed them nothyng for what cause he sent them thyder; but he charged them to kepe themselfe close in his howse in any wyse, and whatsoever they lacked the keper of his house shulde prouyde for it; and on a daye I shall shewe you the cause why I sende you thyder before, and ye shall haue good wages. They dyd as he commaunded them, and came priuely to Parys, and entred into the house by nyght and in the mornynge, for as than the gates of Parys nyght and daye stode open. There assembled in that house so many togyther, that they were a xl. companyons hardy men and outragous; howebait, there were some that if they hadde knowen wherfore they came thyder they wolde nat haue come there, yet they kepte themselfe secrete. Than at ȳ feest of Pentecost syr Peter of Craon came to Paris secretly, and entred into his howse, dysguysed lyke a seruaunt: than he called for the porter that kepte the gate, and sayd: I cōmaunde the, on payne of thy lyfe, let no man, woman, nor chylde entre into this house, nor none to go out without my cōmaundement. The porter obeyed, as it was reason, and so dyd the keper; and he cōmaunded the kepers wyfe and her chyldren to kepe her chambre, and nat to issue out therof; wherin he dyd wysely, for if the woman and chyldren had gone abrode in the streates, the comyng thither of syr Peter Craon had been knowē, for chyldren and women naturally are harde to kepe counsaile of that thyng a man wolde haue kepte secrete. Thus syr Peter and his company were secretly in his howse tyll the day of the holy sacramente, and euery day syr Peter had abrode his spyes that brought him worde of the state of syr Olyuer Clysso; and tyll that daye he coulede fynde no tyme to exe-

ecute his enterprise, wherwith he was sore displeased in hymselfe. The said day the frenche kynge kepte a feest with open courte with all the lordes that were there; also the quene and the duches of Thourayne were there in great ioy and solace. The same day after dyner the yonge lusty knyghtes were armed and iusted valyauntly in the presence of the kynge and of the quene and other ladyes and damosels, and contynued tyll it was nere nyght: and by the iudgement of the ladyes and harauldes the price was gyuen to syr Gillyam of Flaunders, erle of Namure: and the kynge made all the lordes and ladyes a great supper, and after supper daunced tyll it was one of the clock after mydnyght; than euery man departed to their lodgynges, some to one place and some to another, without feare or doute of any thyng. Syr Olyuer of Clisson, who as than was constable of Fraunce, departed from the kynges place last of all other, and had taken his leaue of the kynge, and than went through the duke of Thourayns chambre, and sayde to hym: Syr, wyll ye tary here all nyght, or els go to your lodgyng of Poullayne: This Poullayn was the dukes treasurer, and dwelte a lytell besyde the sygne of the Lyon of syluer. Than the duke sayde: constable, I can nat tell as yet whether I do tary here or els go thyder: go ye your waye to your lodgyng, for it is tyme. Than syr Olyuer toke his leaue of the duke, and sayd: syr, god sende you good nyght: and so departed, and in the streate he founde his seruantes and his horse, an eyght persones, and two torches: than he rode forthe to entre into the hygh streate of saynt Kateryns.

Sir Peter of Craon had the same night layde good spyall on syr Olyuer of Clisson, and knewe well that he was bydden behynde his company with the kynge, and that his horse taryed at the kynges gate for hym: Than he moued on his horse and all his company well armed couertly, and there past nat sixe of his company that knew his entent; and whan he came into saynte Katheryns streate there he taryed, and abode priuely for the contables comyng; and as sone as the constable was issued out of the streate of saynt Powle, and came into the hyghe streate, and his torches besyde hym, and came rydyng, talking with a squyer of his, sayenge: To morowe I must haue at dyner with me y<sup>e</sup> duke of Thourayne, the lorde Coucy, syr Johan of Vyen, syr Charles Dangers, the barone of Vrey,<sup>a</sup> and dyuers other, wherfore speke to my stewart that they lacke nothyng; and sayeng of those wordes, syr Peter Craon and his company came on hym, and at the first they strake out the torches; and whan the constable herde the russhyng of the horses behynde hym, he thought it had been the duke of Thourayne that had folowed and sported with hym, and sayde: Ah, syr, it is yuell doone; but I pardon you; ye are yonge, and full of play and sporte. With those wordes syr Peter of Craon drewe out his sworde and said: slee the constable, slee hym, for he shall dye. What arte thou, quod Clysson, that spekest those wordes? I am Peter of Craon, thyne enemye: thou hast so often tymes dyspleased me, that nowe thou shalt make amēdes: and therwith strake at the constable; and syr Peters men drewe oute their swordes and strake at the constable, who had no wepon but a shorte knyfe of two foote of length, and defended hymselfe as well as he myght, and his men were without armure, and sone put abrode fro their mayster. Than syr Peters men sayd, shall we slee them all? Yea, quod sir Peter, all suche as make any defence. Their defence was but small, for they were but eight persones, and without armure. Sir Peter demaunded nothyng but the dethe of the constable. Some that were there, whan they knewe it was the constable, they gaue him but faynte strokes, for a thyng doone by trayson is doone cowardly, without any hardynesse. The constable defended hymselfe valyauntly with that wepyn that he had; howebeit, his defence hadde vayed hym but lytell,

<sup>a</sup> Ivry.

lytell, and the great grace of god had nat ben; styll he sate on his horse tyll he had a full stroke on þy heed, with whiche stroke he fell fro his horse ryght agaynst a bakers dore, who was vp and busy to bake breed, and had left his dore halfe open, whiche was happy for the constable; for as he fell fro his horse he fell agaynste the dore, and the dore opened, and he fell in at the dore, and they that were a horsebacke coule nat entre after hym, the dore was to lowe and to lytell. God shewed great grace to the constable, for if he had fallen in the streate as he dyde in at the dore, or if the dore had been shytt he had ben slayn without remedy; but they that were a horsebacke durste nat alyght: and also they thought, and so dyd syr Peter, þy on the stroke that he had on the heed, that at laste it shulde be his dethes wounde. Than syr Peter sayd: go we hence; we haue done ynough; for if he be nat deed, he wyll dye on the stroke that he hath on the heed, for it was a great stroke: therwith they departed, and rode awaye a good pace to the gate of saynte Anthony, and rode out therat, for as than the gate was open, and had ben ten yere, sythe the frenche kyng returned fro the batayle of Rosebeque, and that the sayd constable put downe the malles of Parys, and punysshed them for their rebellyons.

Thus syr Olyuer of Clysson was left in this case, as a man halfe deed and more, in the bakers house, who was sore abashed whan he knewe it was the constable: as for his men had lytell hurte, for syr Peter and his men loked for nothyng but to haue slayne the constable. Than syr Olyuers men assembled togyther, and entred into the bakers house, and there founde their mayster, sore hurte on the heed, and the blode rennyng downe by his vysage, wherwith they were sore abashed, and good cause why: there they made great complayntes; fyrste they feared he had ben deed. Anone tydings hereof came to the kynges lodgyng, and it was sayde to the kyng, as he was goynge to his bedde: Ah, syr, we canne nat hyde fro you the great myschiefe that is nowe sodenly fallen in Parys. What myschiefe is that? quod the kyng. Syr, quod they, your constable syr Olyuer of Clisson is slayne. Slayne, quod the kyng; and howe so, and who hath done that deed? Syr, quod they, we canne nat tell; but this myschefe is fallen on hym here by in the streate of saynt Kateryn. Well, quod the kyng, light vp your torches; I wyll go and se hym. Torches anone were lyghted vp. The kyng put on a cloke and his slyppers on his fete: than suche as kept watche the same nyght went forthe with the kyng, and suche as were abed and herde of these tydynges rose vp in hast and folowed the kyng, who was gone forthe with a small company: for the kyng taryed for no manne, but wente forthe with theym of his chambre, with torches before him and behynde him, and had no mo chamberlayns with hym but sir Gaultier Martell and syr Johñ of Lygnac. Thus the kyng came to the bakers house and entred, and certayne torches taryed without. Than the kyng founde his constable nere deed, as it was shewed him, but nat fully deed, and his men had taken of all his geare to se his woundes, howe he was hurte; and the fyrst worde that the kyng sayd was: Constable, howe is it with you? Dere syr, quod he, ryght febly. Who hath brought you in this case? quod the kyng. Syr, quod he, Peter of Craon and his company traytoursly, and without defence. Constable, quod the kyng, there was neuer dede so derely bought as this shall be. Than physycions and surgeons were sent for on all partes, and whan they came, the kyng sayd to his owne surgyons: Syrs, looke what case my constable is in, and shewe me the trouthe, for I am sory of his hurte. Than they serched his woundes in euery parte. Than the kyng demanded of them and sayd: Syrs, howe saye you? is he in any parell of dethe? They all answered and sayd: syr, surely there is no ieeperdy of dethe in hym, but that within these xv. dayes he shall be able to ryde. With that aunswere the kyng was ryght ioyous, and sayd: thanked be god these be good tydynges; and than sayd: Constable, be of good chere and care nothyng,

for there was neuer trespas sorer punysshed than this shall be vpon the traytours that haue done this dede, for I take this mater as myne owne. The constable, with a feble voyce, answered: Sir, god rewarde your grace for your noble vysytacyon. Than the kyng toke his leaue, and departed and returned to his lodgyng, and incontynent sente for the prouost of Paris, and by that tyme that he came it was clere day lyght: than the kyng cōmaunded hym and sayd: Prouost, get you men togyther well horsed, and pursewe that traytour syr Peter of Craon, who thus traytorously hath hurte nygh to the dethe our constable: ye can nat do to vs a more acceptable seruyce thanne to pursewe and take hym and bring hym to vs. Than the prouost answered and sayd: syr, I shall do all y lyeth in my puyssaunce to do: syr, canne your grace knowe whiche waye he is gone? Enquyre, quod the kyng, and do your dylygence.

*Howe in great dylygence the prouost of Parys pursewed syr Peter of Craon.*

### C A P. CLXXXVI.<sup>a</sup>

AS at that tyme the four souerayne gates of the cytie were euer kepte opyn nyght and day, whiche ordynauce was made euer sythe the batayle of Rosebeque, where the Frenche kyng disconfited the flemynges, and that the parisyece wolde haue rebelled, and that the malettes were laide downe, to the entent to kepe vnder the parisynce; and by the counsaile of sir Olyuer of Clysson all the chaynes in the streates were layde downe, and the gates taken of their hokes. In this case the cytie was in a ten yere, so that euery man myght entre nyght or daye into Parys who so lyst. Lo, it maye be well consydred what fortune is. The cōstable gadred the rodde wherwith hymselfe was beaten: for if the gates of Parys had ben closed and the chaynes lyfte vp, sir Peter of Craon durst neuer haue done that he dyde, for if he had, he coude nat haue gone out of the towne as he dyde; but bycause he knewe well he might issue out at all houres, that made him execute his yuell purpose. Whā he departed fro the Constable, he thought surely he had ben slayne; howbeit, he was nat, wherwith he was sore displeased. Whan he issued out of Parys it was about one of the clocke after mydnyght, and passed by the gate saynt Anthony; and some sayd he passed the ryuer of Seyne at the bridge of Charenton, and than toke the waye to Charters; and some sayde he issued out of Parys at the gate of saynte Honour, vnder Mount marter, and passed the ryuer of Seyne at Ponthieur:<sup>b</sup> wheresoeuer he passed, he was by eight of the clocke at Charters; and suche as were well horsed with hym all folowed hym nat, but brake asondre for lesse suspeciousnesse and for feare of pursute: and whan this sir Peter of Craon came first to Parys, he had lefte at Charters, with one of the chanons there, who had ben a seruaunt of his beforetyme, a twentie fresshe horses: it had ben better for the chanon he had neuer knowen hym; howbeit, of his purpose nor of the executynge therof he knewe nothyng therin. Whan sir Peter was returned to Charters, he dranke and chaūged his horses and dyde of his harnesse, and toke the waye to Mayne, and rode so fast y he came to a castell of his owne, called Sable, and there rested hymselfe, and sayde he wolde go no further tyll he herde tidynges of sir Olyuer of Clysson, and howe the mater went. Ye maye be sure that the same fryday, after the dede was done, great brute ran all about the cytie of that dede, and many blamed greatly sir Peter of Craon. The lorde of Coucy, as soone as he knewe therof, in the mornyng lepte

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CLXXXII.

<sup>b</sup> Ponthon in the Lyons' edition.—Query, Pontoise?



lepte on his horse, with eyght persones with hym, and rode to the Constables lodgyng to visyte hym, for they loued entierlye togyder, and called eche other brother in armes: his visytacion dyd the Cōstable gret good. In lyke maner other lordes acording to their tourne came and visyted hym, and specially the duke of Thourayne, who was sore displeased for that dede; and the kyng and he, sayd bothe, howe that sir Peter of Craon had done that dede in dispyte of theym, and howe it was a thyng prepensed by false traytours to put the realme to trouble. The duke of Berrey, who as thañe was at Parys, dissymuled the mater, and made no great busynesse in the cause: and I sir Johan Froissarte, auctour of this cronycle, as I was credably enformed of this adventure, there had ben nothyng done if the duke of Berrey had lyste: for if he had wolde, he myght well haue broken that enterprise; I shall shewe you the reason howe.

The same thursday, Corpus Christy day, there came to the duke of Berrey a clerke, secretorie to sir Peter of Craon, and sayde to hym in secrete maner: sir, I wyll shewe you a thyng in secretnesse, whiche is lykely to come to a poore cōclusyon; and, sir, ye are more lykelye to remedye it than any other. What mater is that? quod the duke. Sir, quod he, I shall shewe you; but I wolde nat be named the bringer oute therof. Spare nat, quod the duke, I shall beare out the mater well ynoughe. Well, sir, quod the Clerke, I doubte me greatlye that sir Peter of Craon wyll slee or cause to be murdered the constable sir Olyuer of Clysson; for he hath assembled togyder into his house, within the Churchye yarde of saynte Johanes, a great noumbre of menne, and hath kepte them there covertlye euersyth the feest of Whitsontyde; and, sir, if they shulde do that dede, the kyng wyll be sore dyspleased, and bringe the realme into great trouble; therefore, sir, I shewe it to you, for, sir, I am abashed therof myselfe, though I be sir Peters seruaunt, and haue made seruyce to hym, yet I dare nat consente to this outrage; and, sir, and ye prouyde nat for the mater, there is none can do it; and, sir, for goddessake take hede to this that I haue shewed you; and, sir, to eschewe that maye falle, I dare nat retourne to hym. The duke herde hym well, and said: Abyde here with me this nyght, and to morowe be tymes I shall enforme the kyng therof: it is nowe far forthe dayes, I wyll nat trouble the kyng therwith; but to morowe without faute we shall prouyde for the mater, sithe that sir Peter of Craon is in the towne, I knewe nat therof before. Thus the duke draue of the matter, and in the meane tyme this myschiefe felle. Than the Prouost, with mo thañe threscore horses, issued oute of the cytie at the gate of saynt Honour, and folowed the tracke of sir Peter of Craon, and came to Ponthieur,<sup>a</sup> to passe the ryuer of Seyne, and demaüded of the kepar of the bridge if any horses passed that waye that mornynge; and he sayd yes, howe that there passed about a twelue horse, but I sawe no knyght nor persone that I knewe. What waye toke they? quod the Prouost. Sir, quod he, the waye towarde Wannas. Ah, quod the prouost, it maye well be; I thynke they wyll ryde to Chierbourge. Thañe the prouoste tooke that waye and lefte the waye to Charters, and therby he loste the iuste pursute of sir Peter of Craon; and whanne he had rydden tyll noone, than he mette with a knyght of the cōuntry, who had been a hunting of the hare, and he shewed hym howe that he sawe the same mornynge about a fyftene men a horsebacke, trausersyng the feldes, and (as he thought) toke the waye to Charters. Than the prouost and his company entred into the waye to Charters, and so rode tyll it was nere hande nyght, and than came to Charters; and there it was shewed hym howe sir Peter of Craon hadde been there with the chanon aboute eyght of the clocke, and there vnarmed hym and toke fresshe horses: than the prouost sawe well he had lost

his

<sup>a</sup> Ponthon, or Ponthoise.

his payne, and shulde do, to folowe hym any further, sayeng, seyng that he was so farre past; than the Saturdaye he retourned to Parys, bycause the certentie whiche waye sir Peter of Craon toke was nat knowen at Parys; therfore the kyng and the duke of Thourayne, who had a great affection to haue sir Peter of Craon taken, sente sir Johñ of Barrois with a threscore horse out of Parys to serteche for hym; and they issued out at the gate saynt Anthony, and passed the ryuers of Marne and Seyne at the bridge of Charenton, and rode all about the countrey and came towards Estampes, and finally at dyner they came to Charters, and there herde sure tidynges: and whāne the Barrois knewe f̄ sir Peter of Craon was gone, and sawe that he shulde but traueyle in vayne to folowe any further, than he retourned agayne the sondaye to Parys, and shewed the kyng what he had done, and in lykewise so had the prouost done. The saturdaye there was founde in a vyllage as they went a sertchyng, two squyers and a page, parteynyng to sir Peter of Craon; they were taken and brought to Parys and sette in prisone, and on the Mondaye beheeded: first they were brought to f̄ place where the dede was done, and there eche of them had their right hande striken of, and than to the halles<sup>2</sup> and there beheeded and hanged on the gybet; and the wednesday after, the kepar of sir Peter of Craons house in Paris was executed and beheeded: many men said he had wrong; but bycause he shewed nat the cōmyng of sir Peter into Parys he was put to dethe: in lykewise f̄ chanon at Charters, with whō sir Peter dyde refresse hym and changed his horse, he was accused and taken and put in the bysshoppes prisone, and toke fro hym all that he had, and depriued hym of all his benefyces, and was condempned to perpetuall prisone, to lyue with breed and water; all the excusacyons that he coude make auayled hym nothyng: he was reputed in the towne of Charters to be a noble wyse man. Sir Peter of Craon beyng in his castell of Sable, was sore displeased whan he knewe that sir Olyuer of Clysson was nat deed, nor had no hurte, but that within sixe wekes he shulde be hole: than he consydrated that he was nat in good suretie in that castell, and feared to be enclosed in suche wyse that he shulde nat issue whan he wolde. Thāne he tooke a certayne with hym and issued out secretly, and rode so longe that he came into Bretaygne, and there foūde the duke, who receyued hym and knewe all the mater, and howe the constable was nat deed; than he sayde: Ah, sir Peter of Craon, ye are vnhappy that coude nat slee the Constable whan ye had hym vnder youre handes. Sir, quod sir Peter, the deuyll was on it; I thynke all the deuylls in hell dyde helde hym out of my hādes and out of my companyons; I am sure there was stryken at hym mo thanne threscore strokes, with swordes and iauelyns: and whāne he fell fro his horse, indede I thought surely he had bene deed; and so he had been, and it had nat ben his fortune to fall in at a bakers dore, the whiche stode halfe opyn, for if he had fallen in the strette he hadde neuer rysen alyue. Well, quod the duke, as nowe it wyll be none otherwyse; I am sure I shall here shortly some newes fro the frenche kyng, and I thynke I shall haue warre with hym (as ye haue). Kepe you priuely with me, f̄ mater shall nat thus rest; and sithe I haue promysed to ayde and susteyne you, I wyll kepe promyse.

<sup>2</sup> Les Halles.

*Of the great army and viage that the Frenche kynge purposed to make into Bretayne agaynst the duke, bycause he susteyned sir Peter of craon; and howe in that viage the kynge fell sicke, wherby the viage brake.*

## CAP. CLXXXVII.\*

TIDYNGES came to the Frenche kynge as he laye at Parys that the duke of Bretayne hadde receyued sir Peter of Craon: than the kyng was counsayled by suche as were of his priiue counsayle that he shulde incontynent sende into Bretaygne to the duke, cōmaundyng hym on his faythe and homage that he ought to the crowne of Fraunce, to take the traytour sir Peter of Craon, and to sende hym to Parys: these letters were written, sealed, and delyuered to a squier; and he rode so long that he came into Bretayne, and fōude the duke at his castell of Ermyne, and there delyuered his letters: the duke toke and reed them; than he said to the messenger, that he wolde write agayne to the kyng, and so dyd in excusing of hymselfe, sayeng: that as of sir Peter of Craon he knewe nothyng, nor where he was, nor wolde nat knowe, nor it aperteyned nat to hym to knowe; nor as for the hatered nor warre that was bytwene sir Olyuer of Clysston and sir Peter of craon, he toke no regarde therto, for it touched him nothyng; and therefore in those maters he prayed the kyng to holde hym excused. This letter was sealed and delyuered to the kynges messenger, and so he returned agayne to Parys, and there fōude the kyng and his cōsāyle, who were sore desyrous to here tidinges out of Bretaygne. Than the messenger delyuered his letters to the kynge, who toke and reed them: than the kynge sayd to his brother and to his counsayle: This excusacion of the dukes is nat suffycient: it semeth well the duke of Bretayne hath caused all this busynes: this dyspyte and outrage is so great, that it ought nat to be suffred, for it toucheth gretlye myne honour. The same season the duke of Berrey was at Parys, and often tymes the kynge wolde speke to hym of this trespasse; and the duke sayd: Sir, surely he hath done a great outrage: if he myght be founde, it were reasone he made amendes. Fayre vncle, quod the kynge, he is in Bretayne with the duke; we wyll go and seke hym there, and ye shall go with vs. The duke dissymuled the mater, and sayd: Sir, as it shall please you; but ye must haue also my brother of Burgoyne with you. We wyll haue hym with vs, quod the kyng, for without hym we wyll make no voyage: we wyll go into Bretayne with suche an armye, able to resyst all our ennemyes: we maye se nowe openly that this duke loueth nor setteth by vs but lytell; he is proude and presumptuous, and we shall entende to nothyng tyll we haue brought hym to reasone. Thus the Frenche kyng denised with the duke of Berrey, and manysshed greatlye the duke of Bretayne and his assysters. The duke of Berrey accorded to all his sayeng, but he dissymuled, for he thought the contrary.

The Frenche kyng hadde great affection to be reuenged of the dyspyte that was done to his cōstable; wherfore he prepared hymselfe to go into Bretayne, and fyrst to go into Aniou to distroye and beate downe sir Peter of Craons castelles, for all that the duke of Bretayne sayd he had bought them; yet the kyng and his counsayle sayd it was no poynt of the dukes heritage, but that the duke sayde so to excuse and to susteyne sir Peter of Craon; wherfore personally he was in the kynges indignacyon; yet in the same season a treatie of maryage was had bytwene the duke of Bretaynes sone and the kynges daughter.

In

In the meane season whyle this voyage was thus ordred, and great brute therof spoken througher all Fraūce, there returned to Paris the bysshoppe of Noyon and the lorde de la Ryuer fro Foize and Bierne, and there shewed the kyng and his counsayle howe they had spedde. They were well herde; but the voyage into Bretayne busyed so the kyng and his counsayle, that they had no leysar to entēde to any other mater; and the kyng wolde gladly that the constable had ben hole, that he might be able to ryde: and or the kyng went fro Parys he cōmaunded to be beaten downe sir Peter of Craūs house, that stode in the churchle yarde of saynt Johans, and than the kynge dyde gyue the grōude to make a churchle yarde of to burye in deed bodyes. The Frenche kyng made his prouision in the waye to Aniou, to Mayne, to Bretayne, and into Thourayne on the ryuer of Loyre, to the entent to go into Bretayne; none durst speke the contrary.

Renome was throughout all Paris and (it was well knowen) that sir Olyuer of Clisson, cōstable of Fraūce, whan he laye thus sicke of his hurtes, made his testament, to the entente that his heyres shulde knowe ŷ trouthe of euery thyng that he had, and where it was: his heyres were two doughters: the one was maryed to Johan of Bretayne, erle of Ponthieur;<sup>4</sup> it was he that sir Olyuer had quytte out of prisone in Englāde, and payde for hym sixscore thousande frankes to the duke of Irelande, as it hath ben shewed here before in this hystorie: and his seconde doughter was, or shulde be, vicoūtes of Rohan by reason of her husbāde. The somme of the testament mounted to the sōme of seuyntenc hundred thousande frankes, besyde his herytage. Euery man ŷ herde therof had great marueyle howe he shulde gather togyder suche richesse, and specially the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne and their counsails had great marueyle therof, and spake largely and sayd: What the deuyll! howe maye it be that the constable hath gadered togider so many floreyens and suche mouable goodes? the kyng hymselfe hath nat so moche: it maye well be beleued and knowen that he hath nat won all this by no iust meanes. Thus the mater passed; but suche as loued hym nat, thought neuerlesse. Thus all suche as the kyng had written vnto prepared themselfe to go with hym into Bretayne. This voiage pleased nothyng the duke of Burgoyne: he sayd this was a warre without reason, and that the conclusion therof coulde take no good ende: nor the realme of Fraunce, nor the duchy of Bretayne, nor the lordes, knightes, and squyers, in thē, had nothyng to do with the warre bytwene sir Olyuer of Clysson and sir Peter of Craon. What nede they, quod he, to take payne or traueyle to make warre in their quarelles? we shulde rather suffre them and their owne mē to greue and make warre eche vpon other. The duke of Berrey was of the same opinyon; but they coude nat be herde nor beleued, for the kyng was cōsayled contrary to their opinyons, by suche as the kyng loued better than them. These dukes coude nat tell howe to breke that enterprice; and whan they sawe none other remedy, they obeyed, but that was slouthfully; howebeit, by the promocyon of the duke of Burgoyne, the erle of Ostreuaunt was written vnto by the kyng to go with hym in this iourney with thre hūdred speares. The erle, who loued dedes of armes, prouyded hym to go with the kyng, and whāne he was redy, and had assembled togyder his company to his great cost and charge, than he was countermaunded agayne, and that in no wyse he shulde styrr.

<sup>4</sup> Penthievre.

*Howe the duke of Thourayn, brother to the kyng, resigned the duchy of Thourayne into the kynges handes; and howe by exchange the kyng gaue hym the duchy of Orlyauce, and so euer after he was called duke of Orlyauce.*

CAP. CLXXXVII.<sup>a</sup>

IN the same season that the kyng was thus nyght redy to departe out of Parys, to shewe that he toke that busynesse as to hymselfe, there was an exchaūge made of landes gretly to the prolyte of the duke of Thourayne: for he resynged into the kynges handes the duchy of Thourayne, and the kyng gaue hym the duchy of Orlyauce, in lyke maner as aūciently duke Philyp of Orlyauce helde it, whiche was four tymes better in value than the other was; so thus for hensforthe in this hystorie I shall name hym that was duke of Thourayne, duke of Orlyauce.

Whan sir Olyuer of Clysston was all hole, and that he might ryde, the Frenche kyng was right ioyfull, and said, howe he wolde tary no lengar; and so on an euenyng he toke his leaue of the quene Isabell his wyfe, and of the newe duchesse of Orlyauce, and of all other ladyes and damoselles, and so dyde the duke of Orlyauce in lykewise; than they departed and rode to supper to Mōtague,<sup>b</sup> and the duke of Burbone, the erle of Namure, and the lorde of Coucy with hym: there the kyng laye and dyned there, and after dyned they departed and laye all nyght at saynt Germainys, and there laye a seuynd dayes; and as than *ſ* kyng was somewhat diseased, and his phisicions wolde haue had hym to haue rested hymselfe: but *ſ* kyng was so wyllyng in his journey, that he sayde howe he was moche better at his ease than he was in dede, whiche he dyde to gyue corage to his men to set forwarde: for as thā his two vncles, the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne, were behynde, and shewed well by their maner that the same journey greued them, nor they wolde nat haue gone by their good wylles; howebeit, they hadde made their assemble, and to saue their honour they obeyed and folowed.

Whan the Frenche kyng hadde rested hym a fyftene dayes at saynt Germainys, and that his armye was assembled, than he departed and passed the ryuer of Seyne, and toke the waye to Charters, and so to Annens,<sup>c</sup> a good towne and a castell partyning to the lorde de la Ryuer, as herytage of his wyues. With the kyng was his brother the duke of Orlyauce and the duke of Burbone. The lorde de la Ryuer receyued the kyng honorably, and there taryed thre dayes, and than rode to Charters, where as Montague was bysshoppe: the kyng was lodged in the bysshoppes palais, and the two dukes; and the seconde daye after, thyder came the duke of Berrey and the erle of Marche in his cōpany; and the fourth daye thider cāe the duke of Burgoyne, wherof the kyng was ryght ioyfull: and people came dayly, and the kyng sayd he wolde nat retourne to Parys tyll he hadde brought the duke of Bretayne to reason, who so often tymes had put hym to payne and trouble. The kynges counsaile hadde so sette hym on that warre, that the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne wolde gladly haue moderated *ſ* mater, but they coulde nat be herde, wherwith they were sore displeased, and so were suche as were of their cōsayls; and they said eche to other, that surely the mater coude nat long endure in that state, for it is full lykely that the kyng and the realme shall haue some busynesse to do, sith the kyng refuseth the counsaile of his vncles, and leaneth to other at his pleasure, who be nothyng lyke to thē. Whan the kyng had taried at

VOL. II.

4 D

Charters

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CLXXXIV.<sup>b</sup> "The house of."<sup>c</sup> Johnes says, *Aunau*.

Charters a seyn dayes, than he departed and toke y waye to Mans, and his men followed, some fro farre partes, as out of Arthois, Beauuoys, Vermandois, and Picardy; and some said one to another: Ah, this duke of Bretayne maketh vs to haue moche to do, and putteth vs to great payne and traueyle; he hath ben alwayes harde and higherted agaynst the crowne of Fraūce, nor he neuer loued nor honored it; and his cosyn the erle of Flaunders and the duchesse of Burgone (who haue alwayes borne hym and as yet do) had nat ben, he had ben destroyed long ago, for euer syth the lorde Clysson tourned Frenche, he neuer loued him. Surelye by all likelyhode he is culpable of this dede, for he hath alwayes susteyned syr Peter of Craon agaynst the kyng and agaynst the Constable. Than other sayde: Lette the kyng alone, for as at this tyme he hath y mater so at his hert, that he wyll bring the duke to reason, or he retourne. That is trewe, quod other, if there be no trayson; but we feare that all suche as go with the kyng be nat enemies to y duke, as it may be well sene (if we durst speke it) by some tokens; for there be some that nyght and daye do what they can to counsaile the kyng to breke his voyage, whiche so troubleth the kyng that he can scant gette hymselfe any helthe or recouery of his laste sicknesse. Thus knightes and squiers deuised among thēselfe as they rode in their cōtreys: styll the kyng aproched to the cytie of Mans, and there the kyng lodged in the castell and his lordes in y cytie, and his men of warre abrode in the country: there the kyng taried a thre wickes, for he was sore vexed with the feuer, and his phisicians sayde to his brother and to his vnclcs: My lordes, we ensure you ye do yuell to traueyle y kyng, for he is in no good state to ryde; rest were farre better for hym, for sythe he came fro the cytie of Amyens he hath nat hen in so good helthe as he was before. They shewed this to the kyng, but he had so great affection to go in this journey, that he wolde nother beleue them nor yet his phisycions, but sayde: howe he founde more ease in trauelyng than in restyng; therefore whoseouer counsaile me the contrary shall nat please me, nor he loueth me nat. Other answerd they coulde nat haue of the kyng. Euery day the kyng wolde sytte in the myddes of his counsaile tyll it was none, to thentent that none shulde laye any lette of his journey. Thus the kyng being at Mans, and somwhat to acomplysshe the desyers of his vnclcs, he sent four notable knightes to the duke of Bretayne, as sir Raynolde du Roy, the lorde of Vareniers,<sup>a</sup> the lorde of Castell morant, and sir Tāpyne of Cautenell,<sup>b</sup> chateleyne of Gysors; and they were charged to shewe the duke, howe the kyng and his counsaile reputed that he dyde great offence to susteyne the kynges enemy and the realmes, and to make amendes, that he shulde sēde sir Peter of Craon to Mans to the kyng, wherby meanes shulde be fōude that he shulde take no dōmage nor his country for all the kynges voyage. Thus they departed fro Mans with a xl. speres, and passed through the cyte of Angiers, and at last came before the cytie of Nautes, and entred, and there founde the duke, who made them good chere, and on a daye made them a dyner, and than they dyde their message, and declared y kynges entent and his counsaile; whervnto the duke answered wisely and sagely, and said: Howe it shulde he harde for hym to delyuer sir Peter of Craon; and sayd, as god myght helpe hym in all his busynesse, he knewe nat where he was; wherfore he desyred them in that case to holde hym excused; but he sayde he had well herde of hym a yere past, that he loued nat sir Olyuer of Clysson, but wolde make him mortall warre to his power, whatsoever ende came therof; and at that tyme I demaunded of hym if he had gyuen sir Olyuer knowledge therof; and he sayd he had vterly defyed and wolde slee hym if he coude, outher by daye or by nyght, wheresoener he coude fynde hym. Of his dedes I knowe no further; wherfore I haue marueyle that the kyng wyll make warre agaynst me for his cause; for as to the couynautes of maryage bytwene our chyldren, by the grace of

God,

<sup>a</sup> Q'. Gaumsiers ?<sup>b</sup> Cantemelle.

God, shall nat be broken on my parte: wherfore I haue done nothyng to hym nor to his counsaile, that he shulde make warre agaynst me. This was the aunswere that the duke made to the Frenche kynges messengers; and so when they hadde taryed a daye at Nautes, than they toke their leaue and departed, and returned to Mans to ꝑ kyng, who thought longe tyll he herde their aunswere: and as ye haue herde before, they declared it to ꝑ kyng and his counsaile. The dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne were well cōtent with ꝑ aunswere, and sayd it was reasonable: but the kyng by reason of suche enformacion as he had, sayde the contrary; and sayd, sihe he was so forewarde in his journey, he wolde nat returne agayne into Fraunce, nor to Parys, tyll he had brought the duke of Bretayne to reason. Gladly the two dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne wolde haue moderated that voiage, but they might nat be herde, for the kyng had taken suche displeasure with the duke of Bretayn, bicause he susteyned sir Peter of Craon, that no excusacion coulde be taken. The same tyme a brute ranne in Fraunce, that the quene of Aragon, my lady yolant of Bare, cosyn germayne to the frenche kyng, had in prison in the cytie of Barcyloña, a knyght that no man knewe his name: men supposed it had ben syr Peter of Craon: this quene had writen right amynably to the kyng, sygnifyenge hym that the fyfte day of the moneth of July, a knyght in good estate and aray came to Barcyloña, to haue past the see, and had hyred for his money a slyppe, (as he sayd,) to haue sayled into Napoles; and bycause we kepe our passages that no straunger shall passe without he be knowen what he is, and this knyght wyll nat shewe his name, therfore we kepe hym in prisone, and by the abasshment that we se in him, we thynke surely it be the same person ye wolde so fayne haue; therfore we write to you thierof, that ye shulde sende some person hyther, suche as knoweth sir Peter of Craon, to se if it be he or nat: for whatsoever he be, he shall nat be delyuered tyll we haue aunswere fro you; and I wolde that these tydynges might be agreable to you and to your counsaile, as knoweth the holy goost, who preserue you. Writen at Parpygnan, the mynth day of July, by yolante of Bare, quene of Aragon and of Maiolles,<sup>a</sup> and lady Sardyne and Sardane.<sup>b</sup> And on the superscrypcion, to the redouted kyng of Fraunce.

These tydynges somewhat moderated dyuers mennes hartes, so that they were nere at the poynte to haue broken their voyage; howebeit, suche as were sir Olyuer of Clyssons frendes sayde, that those tydynges were but fayned tales, made and deuysed to breke the kynges voyage, sayenge: that sir Peter of Craon was in none other prisone, but with the duke of Bretayne, who hath susteyned hym and dothe. Of the quene of Aragons lettre the kyng made but lyght, sayenge it was but trayson and fables. Than the duke of Burgoyne sayd: Syr, yet at leste to apease my nese the quene of Aragon, and for the delyueraunce of the knight that is there in prisone, who peraduenture is nothyng gylty of this trespas, sende vnto her that she may be contente with you and with vs. I am content therewith, quod the kyng, to please you: but I beleue surely the traytour syr Peter of Craon is in none other Barcyloña nor prisone, but aboute the duke of Bretayne: and by my faythe that I owe to saint Denyce, he shall ones make acompt therof. There coulde no man turne the kyng fro the opinyon but that syr Peter of Craon was with the duke of Bretaygne. The duke of Bretayne, who was well enformed of all this busynesse, thought hymselfe nat well assured, for he sawe well the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne coulde nat bring their purpose aboute, for syr Olyuer of Clyssons frendes led the kyng as they lyste. Than the duke prouyd for to kepe his townes and garysons; howebeit, he durst kepe no towne except Wannes, Campell, Doll, Camper,<sup>c</sup> Lermyn, Corätyne,<sup>d</sup> and Susement;<sup>e</sup> and he wrote to suche knyghtes

4 D 2

and

<sup>a</sup> Majorca.<sup>b</sup> Lady of Sardinia.<sup>c</sup> Quimperlec.<sup>d</sup> Quimper-corentin.<sup>e</sup> Succinio.—*Johnes.*

and squyers as he thought shulde ayde him, but they all dissymuled with hym, bycause they knewe that the french kyng was so sore displeased with hym; and also they thought it was nat a thyng couenable for the duke to susteyne syr Peter of Craon agaynst the constable of Fraunce as he dyd. The duke in a maner repented hym that he had done so moche; howbeit, his corage and herte was so hygh that he dysdayned to speke it, but sayde if the kyng came into Bretayne, as it semed he wolde do, at the begynnynge he wolde let hym alone, and thanne shall I se who be my frendes or foos; I wyll nat be to hasty to make him warre, and whan he weneth to be at most rest, than wyll I awake hym, if I can nat be agreed with hym by loue. Thus the duke deuysed somtyme with his counsayle, and thought surely he shulde haue warre; howbeit, he had nat, for the maters tonrned otherwyse to his great aduantage; therefore it is an olde prouerbe: he is nat poore y is happy. This duke was fortunate, by reason of a pytuous incydenche that fell sodaynly on the frenche kyng, for otherwyse the duke was nat lykely to haue scaped all daügers, and to haue lyued in peace as he dyd.

Whan the Frenche kyng had taryed the space of thre wekes in the cytie of Mans, and the knyghtes returned that he had sent into Bretayne: Than he sayd, syth he had herde the dukes answer, he wolde no lenger tary there, for he sayd the taryenge there greatly displeased him, and wolde passe forthe into Bretaygne to se his enemys, that was the duke of Bretaygne, who susteyd the traytour syr Peter of Craon; the entencyon of the kyng was, that if any knyghtes and squyers came agaynst hym, or that he founde any townes closed, he wolde put downe y duke for euer, and set a gouernour in the countrey tyll the dukes chyl dren were of lawfull age, and than rendre to them the herityage, and the duke neuer to haue any parte therof. This opynion the king helde styll, and no man coude put hym therfro; and thus on a fayre daye aboute ten of the clocke the kyng departed fro the cytie of Mans, and had comaunded his marshalles the nyght before to cause all his armye bothe before and behynde to dysloge and to drawe to Angers, and sayde that he wolde nat retourne tyll he had ben in Bretayne and destroyed the traytours that had put hym to so moche payne and trouble. The marshalles dyd the kinges comaundement. The day that the king departed was marueylous hooete, for the sonne as than naturally was in his cheife force: and to the entent to declare the trouthe of euery thyng, the same season that the kyng lay at Mans, he was sore traueyled with dayly syttynge in counsayle, and also he was nat perfyately hote nor had nat ben all that season; he was feble in his brayne and heed, and dyd eate or drinke but lytell, and nygh dayly was in a hooete feuer, so that he was gretly anoyed and payned: and also for the dyspleasure that he had for the constables hurte, he was full of malencoly, and his spirytes sore troubled and traueyled: and that his physicions spyed well, and so dyd his vncles, but they coude nat remedy it, for no man durste counsayle hym to breke his voyage into Bretaygne: and as it was enfourmed me, as he rode forwarde in the forest of Mans, a great signyfycacyon fell to hym, by the whiche if he had doone well, he shulde haue called his counsayle aboute hym, and well aduysed hymselfe or he had gone any further. Sodaynly there came to the kyng a poore man, bare heeded, bare legged, and bare footed, and on his body a poore whyte cote: he semed rather to be a foole than wyse, and boldly sodaynly he toke the brydell of the kynes horse in his handes, and stopped the horse, and sayd: Syr kyng, ryde no further forward for thou arte betrayed. Those wordes entred into the kynes heed, wherby he was worse dysposed in his helthe than he was before, so that his herte and his blode was moued. Than the kynes seruauantes strake so the poore man that he lette the kynes horse go, and made no more of his wordes than of a foolles spekyng, whiche was foly, as dyuers men sayde: for at the leste they shulde haue better examyned the man, and to haue sene if he had ben a naturall foole or no, and to haue knowen fro whence he came; but they



they dyde nat so, but lefte hym behynde, and he was neuer sene after to any mannes knowledge: but suche as were nere to the kyng herde hym speke these wordes. The kyng passed forthe, and aboute twelue of the clocke the kyng passed out of the forest, and came into a great playne all sandy: the some also was in his heyght and shone bright, whose rayes were marueylously hote, wherby the horses were sore chafed, and all suche persons as were armed were sore oppressed with heat. The knyghtes rode togyther by companies, some here and some there, and the kyng rode somewhat aparte bycause of the duste: and the duke of Berrey, and the duke of Burgoyne, rode on his lefte hande talkyng togyther, an acre brede of lande of fro the kyng; other lordes, as the erle of Marche, sir Jaques of Burbone, syr Charles de la Brethe,<sup>a</sup> syr Phylippe Darthois, sir Henry and sir Phylip of Bare, syr Peter of Nauet, and other knyghtes, rode by companies; the duke of Burbon, the lord Coucy, syr Charles Dangers, the baron Dyury, and dyuers other, rode on before the kyng, and nat in his company, and they deuised and talked togyther, and toke no hede of that fell sodaynly on the chefe personage of the company, whiche was on the kynges owne persone: therefore the workes of god are marueylous, and his scourges are cruell and are to be douted of all creatures. There hath been sene in the olde testament, and also in the newe, many fygures and examples therof; we rede howe Nabugodonosor, kyng of Assyryens, who reyned a season in suche tryumphant glory, that there was none lyke hym, and sodaynly in his greatest force and glory, the souerayne kyng our lorde god kyng of Heuen and of erthe, fourmer and ordeyner of all thynges, aparelled this sayd kyng in suche wyse that he lost his wytte and reygne, and was seuen yere in that estate, and lyued by acornes and mast that fell fro the okes, and other wylde appels and frutes, and hadde tast but as a bore or a swyne; and after he had endured this penaunce god restored hym agayne to his memory and wytte; and than he sayde to Danyell the prophet, that there was none other god, but the god of Israell; nowe the father, the sonne, and the holy goost, thre persones in one god, hath ben, is, and euer shall be as puissaunt to shewe his warkes as euer he was, wherfore no man shulde marueyle of any thyng that he dothe. Nowe to the purpose why I speke all these wordes. A great influence fro heuen fell the sayd daye vpon the frenche kyng, and as dyuers sayd, it was his owne faute: for acordyng to the dysposicyon of his body, and the state that he was in, and the warnyng that his physicyons dyd gyue hym, he shulde nat haue rydden in suche a hoothe day, at that houre, but rather in the mornyng and in the euenyng in the fresshe ayre: wherfore it was a shame to them that were nere aboute hym, to suffre or to counsaile hym to do as he dyd. Thus as the frenche kyng rode vpon a fayre playne in the heate of the sonne, whiche was as than of a marueylous heyght, and the kyng had on a iacke couered with blacke veluet, whiche sore chafed hym, and on his heed a syngle bonet of scarlet, and a chapelet of great perles, whiche the quene had gyuen hym at his departure, and he had a page that rode behynde hym, bearyng on his heed a chapewe of Montaban, bright and clere shynyng agaynst the sonne: and behynde that page rode another bearing the kynges speare. paynted redde, and frynged with sylke, with a sharpe heed of steele; the lorde de la Ryuer had brought a dosyn of them with hym fro Thoulouse, and that was one of them: he had gyuen the hole dosyn to the king, and the kyng had gyuen thre of theym to his brother the duke of Orlyaunce, and thre to the duke of Burbon; and as they rode thus forth, the page that bare the speare, whether it were by neclygence, or that he fell aslepe, he lette the speare fall on the other pages heed that rode before hym, and the heed of the speare made a great classhe on the bright chapewe of steele: the kyng, (who rode but afore them,) with the noyse sodaynly started, and his herte trymbled, and into his imagynacion ranne the impressyon of the

wordes

<sup>a</sup> D'Albret.

wordes of the man that stopped his horse in the forest of Mans, and it ran into his thought, that his enemyes ranne after hym to slee and distroy him: and with that abusyon he fell out of his wytte by feblenesse of his heed, and dashed his spores to his horse, and drewe out the sworde, and touned to his pages, hauynge no knowledge of any man, wenyng in hymselfe to be in a batayle inclosed with his enemyes, and lyfte vp his sworde to stryke, he cared nat where, and cryed and sayd: On, on vpon these traytours! When the pages sawe the kynge so inflamed with ire, they tooke good hede to themselfe, as it was tyme; they thought the kynge had ben dyspleased because the speare fell downe: thanne they stepte away fro the kynge. The duke of Orleauce was nat as thañe farre of fro the kynge. The kynge came to hym with his naked sworde in his hande; the kynge was as than in suche a fransey, and his herte so feble, that he nother knewe brother nor vncl. When the duke of Orlyauce sawe the kynge commynge on hym with his sworde naked in his hande, he was abasshed, and wolde nat abyde hym; he wyste nat what he mente, he dashed his spures to his horse and rode awaye, and the kynge after hym. The duke of Burgoyne, who rode a lytell waye of fro the kynge, when he herde the russhyng of the horses, and herde the pages crye, he regarded that waye, and sawe howe the kynge with his naked sworde chased his brother the duke of Orlyauce, he was sore abasshed and sayd: Out, harowe, what myschife is this, the kynge is nat in his ryght mynde, god helpe hym; flye away nephewe, flye away, for the kynge wolde slee you. The duke of Orlyauce was nat well assured of hymselfe, and fledde awaye as faste as his horse myght beare hym, and knyghtes and squyers folowed after, euery man began to drawe thyder: such as were farre of, thought they had chased an hare or a wolfe, tyll at last they herde that the kynge was nat well in his mynde. The duke of Orlyauce saued hymselfe. Than men of armes came all aboute the kynge, and suffred hym to wery hymselfe, and the more that he traueyled the febler he was: and when he strake at any man, they wolde fall downe before the stroke; at this matter there was no hurte, but many ouerthrowen, for there was none that made any defence. Fynally, when the kyng was well weryed, and his horse sore chafed with swete and great heate, a knyght of Normandy, one of the kynges chamberlaynes, whome the kynge loued very well, called Gyllyam Martell, he came behynde the kyng sodaynely and tooke hym in his armes, and helde hym styll; than all other aproched, and toke the sworde out of his handes, and tooke hym downe fro his horse, and dyd of his iacke to refresshe hym: than came his brother, and his thre vnclis, but he had clene lost the knowledge of them, and rolled his eye in his heed marueylously, and spake to no man. The lordes of his blode were sore abasshed, and wyste nat what to say or do. Than the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne sayde, it behoueth vs to retourne to Mans, this voyage is doone for this tyme; they sayde nat as moche as they thought, but they shewed it ryght well after when they came to Parys, to suche as they loued nat, as ye shall here after.

Reasonably to consydre all thinges acordinge to the trouthe, it was great pytie that the french kyng, (who as at that tyme was reputed for the moste noble and puyssaunt kynge in all crystendome,) fell so sodaynly out of his mynde without remedy, but as god wolde: than the kynge was layde in a horse lyttoure, and so brought backe agayne to the cytie of Mans. Than the marshalles gauē knowledge to all the armye that they shulde retourne, and howe that the voyage was broken as at that tyme: some had knowledge why, and some nat. The nyght that the kynge came to Mans, the physicyons had moche ado with hym, and the lordes of the blode royall had great trouble. Euery man spake than in dyuers maners: some sayd that suche as hadde the rule aboute the kynge had poisoned hym, to bryngue the realme of Fraunce into shame and trouble. These wordes multiplyed in suche wyse that the duke of Orlyauce and his vnclis, and other lordes

lordes of the blode royall noted them, and spake together and sayde: Howe saye you syrs, haue ye nat herde these wordes, and howe nienne do murmure in dyuers places vpon them that hath had the gouernaunce of the kyng? some saythe he shulde be poysoned: lette vs serche howe this maye be knowen. Than some of them sayde howe it shulde be best knowen by the physycyons: they ought to knowe it, for they are acquainted with his complexeyon. The physycyons were sent for and examyned. They answered howe the kyng of longe tyme had engendred the same malady, for we knewe well the wekenes of his brayne wolde sore trouble hym, and at laste shewe itselfe; we haue sayde as moche before this tyme. Than the duke of Burgoyne sayde: Syrs, it is trewe, and therein ye dyd well acquyte yourselfe, but he wolde neyther beleue you nor vs, his affectyon was so sore sette vpon this voyage: it was denyssed in an yuell tyme: this voyage hath dyshonoured vs all: it had been better that Clysston, and all those of his affynyte, had ben deed many a daye agone, rather than the kyng to haue taken this malady: these tydynges shall sprede abrode in many places, and seyng þ̄ he is but a yonge man, the blame shall be layde in vs that be his vncles, and of his blode; men wyll saye that we shulde otherwyse haue counsayled hym; thus we shall be laide in the faute without cause. But sirs, quod the duke, yesterday whan he wente to dyner, were ye with hym? The physycyons aunswered and sayd yes. Dyd he eate his meate well, quod the duke? No certaynly, quod they, he dyd eate and drinke but lytle, but sate and mused. And who gaue hym drinke last, quod the duke? Syr, quod they, we came nat tell you that, for as soone as the table was taken vp, we departed and made vs redy to ryde, but his chamberlayns or butlers canne tell that best. Than Robert de Tullis, a squyer of Pycardy, was sent for, and demaunded who gaue the kyng drinke laste? Syrs, quod he, syr Robert of Lygnac. Than he was sent for. Than he was enquiryed where he had the wyne that the kyng dranke last of in his chambre whan he wente to his horse? Syr, quod he, here is Roberte of Tullis and I: we toke the saye<sup>a</sup> in the presence of the kinge. That is trewe, quod Roberte of Tullis, ye nede nat doute therein, nor haue no suspiciounesse, for as yet there is of the same wyne in the flagons, wherof we wyll drinke and assaye before you. Than the duke of Berrey sayd, this nede nat, for surely the kyng is nat poysoned; his malady procedeth of yuell counsayle; it is no tyme to speke of this mater now, let all alone tyll another season.

Thus after this maner these lordes departed eche fro other that nyght, and went to their lodgyng. Than the kynges vncles had ordeyned four knyghtes of honour to wayte aboute the kyng, as syr Raynolde du Roy, syr Raynolde of Toye,<sup>b</sup> the lorde Grauseers,<sup>c</sup> and sir Guylliam of Martel,<sup>d</sup> and the kynges vncles sent comaundement to the lorde de la Ryner, and to syr John Mercver, to Montag, to the Begne of Vyl-layns, to syr Guylliam of Bordes, and to syr Helyon of Lygnac, that they shulde in no wyse come aboute the kyng tyll he were in better estate. The nexte daye the kynges vncles came to se the kyng, and founde hym ryght feble; than they demaunded what rest he had taken that nyght. They were answered, but small rest. That is poore newes, quod the duke of Burgoyne. And than to them came the duke of Orlyance, and so went all togyder to the kyng, and demaunded of hym howe he dyd. He gaue none aunswere, and loked straungely on them, and had loste elene the knowledge of them. These lordes were sore abissed, and comuned togyder and sayde: We haue no more here to do, the kyng is in an herde case, we do him more trouble than ayde or good; lette vs recoomaunde hym to his chamberlayns and physycyons, they canne best take hede to hym: lette vs go study howe the realme maye be gouerned, or els thinges wyll

go

<sup>a</sup> i. e. First tasted it.<sup>b</sup> De Trie.<sup>c</sup> Garenriers.<sup>d</sup> Martel.

go amyse. Than the duke of Burgoyne sayd to the duke of Berrey: Fayre brother, it is best we drawe to Parys, and ordayne to haue the kyng easily brought thyder, for better we shall take hede on hym there than here in these partyes: and whan we be there let vs assēble all the counsaile of Fraunce, and ordeyne who shall haue the gouernaūce of the realme, the duke of Orlyance or we. That is well sayde, quod the duke of Berrey: it were good we studied where were best to haue the kyng to lye that he myght the soner recouer his helth. Than it was deuysed that he shulde be brought to the castell of Crayell, where is good ayre, and a fayre cuntry on the ryuer of Oyse. Whan this was ordeyned, than all the men of warre had leane to departe, and were cōmaunded by the marshalles euery man to retourne peasably into his owne cuntry, without doynge of any vyolence or damage to the countreys as they shulde passe through; and if any dyd, their lordes and capytayns to make amendes. And the kynges two vnclis, and the chauncellour of Fraunce, sente anone soundry messangers to the good cyties and townes of Fraunce, that they shulde take good hede to kepe well their townes, consyderynge that the kyng was nat well dysposed in his helthe. Their cōmaundementes were luffylled. The people of the realme of Fraunce were sore abashed whan they knew howe the king was fallen sycke and in a fransey, and menne spake largely agaynste them that counsayled the kyng to go into Bretaygne: and some other sayde, howe the kyng was betrayed by them that bare the duke of Bretaygne, and syr Peter Craon, agaynst the kyng. Men coule nat be lette, but that they wolde speke: the mater was so hygh that wordes ranne therof dyuersely. Thus fynally the kyng was brought to Crayell, and there leste, in the keypyng of his physicyons, and of the sayde four knyghtes. Than euery man departed. And it was commaunded to hyde and to kepe secrete the kynges malady fro the knowlege of the quene for a season, for as than she was great with chylde; and all of her court were cōmaunded to kepe it secrete on payne of great punysshement. Thus the kyng was at Crayell, in the marches of Seulis and of Compyen, on the ryuer of Oyse, and kept by the sayd knyghtes and physicyons, who gaue hym medicyns, but for all that he recouered but lytell helth.

*Howe the dukes of Burgoyne and Berrey, vnclis to the kyng, had the gouernaunce of the realme: and howe they chased and toke suche as governed the kyng before.*

#### CAP. CLXXXIX.<sup>a</sup>

IN this season there was in ſ̄ realme of Fraunce a wyse and a sage physicyon; the brewte was, that there was none lyke hym, and he was well beloued with the lorde Coucy, he was natyue of his cuntry; as at that tyme his abyding was in the cyte of Laon: he was called mayster Guylliam of Harsley; whan he knewe fyrste the kynges malady, and by what accydent he fell sycke, he sayd, as he that thought hymselfe to knowe the kynges complexyon, howe this maladye is fallen to the kyng through faute: his complexyon holdeth to moche of ſ̄ moyster of the see.<sup>b</sup> These wordes were reported to the lorde Coucy, who was as than at Paris with the duke of Orlyance, and with ſ̄ kynges vnclis: for as than the cōsaile of Fraūce, the noble men and prelates, were at Paris, to determyne who shulde haue the gouernaunce of the realme as longe as the kyng shulde be in ſ̄ malady, outhier his brother the duke of Orlyance, or his two vnclis,

or

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CLXXXV.

<sup>b</sup> This is a ridiculous error.—In the original the words are “il tient trop de la moïteur de mere” mother.

or one of the: vpon this cōmunicacion they were a xv. dayes or they agreed. Fynally it was concluded, bycause the duke of Orlyauce was very yonge to take on hym so great a charge, that the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne shulde haue the gouernance of the realme, and specyally the duke of Burgoyne: and that the duches of Burgoyne shulde be aboute the quene, and to be as seconde person. Thus as I haue sayde before, the lorde of Coucy shewed to the kynges vnclcs the great wysdome and practyse of the sayd physycion, mayster Guyllyam Harseley. When the dukes herde that, they sente for hym, and so he came to Parys; and than the lorde of Coucy presented hym to the kynges vnclcs, and sayd: My lordes, beholde here is mayster Guyllyam Harseley, that I shewed you of. He is ryght welcome, quod the dukes; they receyued him and made him good chere, and ordeyned hym to go to Crayell to vysyte the kyng, and to abyde aboute hym tyll he hadde recouered his helthe. Than the sayd mayster at their cōmaundement went to Crayell to the kyng, and had the chiefe ouersyght of mynstryng any thyng to the kyng: and he sawe well the kynges malady was curable, and sawe howe he had taken it by reasone of feblenesse of his herte and liced, and through faute, therfore he dyd his dylgence to recouer his helthe.

The tydynges of the kynges malady spred farre abrode, but whosoener was sorye, ye maye well knowe the duke of Bretaygne, nor syr Peter of Craon, wepte neuer a deale, nor had no great sorowe. Also whan pope Bonyface of Rome, and his cardynals, knewe the trouthe, they were right ioyfull, and drewe togyther in consistory, and sayde howe their greatest enemy the Frenche kyng was beaten with a cruell rodde, seyng god had taken fro hym his wytte; and sayde howe that influence was sente to hym fro heuen to chastyce hym withall, bycause he had so moche susteyned the pope at Auignon: therfore this cruell plage was sent to hym to cause the hole realme to be better aduysed, therfore they sayd their quarell was the stronger: and truly to haue wysely consyded euery thyng it was a great token to haue caused the cardynalles at Auignon to haue been aduysed, but they made but lytell force therof, nother to the honour of god, nor to the realme: for the pope at Auignon and his cardynalles sayde: howe by reasone that the kyng was yonge, and wolde haue his owne wyll, therby he is fallen into this malady through faute: for suche as haue had the rule aboute hym, haue nat doone their duetic, but haue suffred hym to rynne on the bridell, and to ryde nyght and daye excessyuelly in traueylunge of his body out of measure; therfore suche as bath had the rule ought to be charged therwith, and none other, for it is through their faulte: for if they had ordred hym in his youthe, and so contynued by a reasonable regement, and haue folowed the counsaile of his vnclcs, this syckenesse had nat fallen to hym now; also he hath broken his promesse against reason, for he promysed the yere passed and sware by the wordes of a kyng, that he wolde so ordayne to dystroy the antepape at Rome, and his cardynals, and to subdue the sysme of the churche, and to sette the maters that be in trouble in good estate, whiche is nothyng doone, but bathe doone contrary to his promesse, wherwith god is dyspleased, and to cause hym better to aduise himselfe, he hathe punysshed hym with this cruell rodde; and if he retourne to helthe, as he may well do, than it shall behoue vs to sende to him sufficient legates, to shewe hym wysely the defaute and brekyng of his promesse, that he forgette it nat by reason of our neclygēce.

Thus the pope and his cardynalles at Auignon spake and cōmuned toguyder, and layde the defaute of the kynges malady on the counsaile of Fraūce, and on suche as were about the kyng in his chambre. Of the same oppinyon were many other folkes in the realme of Fraunce. They that were about the kyng sente the kynges offryng

to a towne called Aresnecke,<sup>a</sup> in the countie of Heynaulte, bytwene Gambrey and Valencennes; in the whiche towne there was a Churchie, parteyninge to an abbey of saynt Waste in Arrasce,<sup>b</sup> wherin there lyeth a saynt, called saint Acquayre, of whom there is a shrine of syluer, whiche pylgrimage is sought farre and nere for the malady of frāsey: thyder was sente a man of waxe, representyng the Frenche kyng. and was humbly offred to the saynt, that he myght be meane to God, to asswage the kynges malady, and to sende him helthe. In lykewise the kynges offryng was sente to saynt Hermyer, in Romayes,<sup>c</sup> whiche saynt had meryte to heale the fransey. And in lykewise offrynges were sent ito other places for ÿ same entent. Whā the tidynges were come into Englande, the kyng and his counsaile were sore troubled therwith, and specially the duke of Lancastre: and he sayd to suche knyghtes and squyers as were aboute hym: Syrs, surely it is great pytie of the Frenche kyng, for he semed to be a man of great enterpryce, and of great desyre to do well: he sayde to me at Amyeue whan I departed fro hym: Fayre cosyn of Lancastre, I desyre you hertely to do your dylygence, that a ferme peace maye be made bytwene our nephue the kyng of Englande and vs, and onre realmes, to the entent that we myght go togyder agaynst Lamorabaquyn,<sup>d</sup> who hath conquered the realme of Armony,<sup>e</sup> and dothe that he can to dystroye Christendome; by our goyng thider our faithe shulde be exalted, and we are all boude therto; and nowe by the Frenche kynges malady the mater is sore letted and hyndred, for he shall neuer be of the credence he was of before. All that herde the duke sayde: It was trewe, and that it was lyke to be great trouble in Fraunce.

Thus all maner of people, bothe farre and nere, spake and deused of the kynges maladye: and the kyng laye styll at Crayle, in the kepyng of the foresaid knyghtes, and of maister Guyllyam of Harsely; and no man spake with the kyng, nor entred into the castell, but suche as were ordayned therto. Somtyme the duke of Orlyauce, and the duke of Burbone, came thyder to visyte the kyng, and the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne, laye styll at Parys, and had done nothyng of newe; but they were in purpose shortely to do somewhat agaynst suche as they loued nat, bycause they hadde been alwayes harde to them before: and the duke of Berrey said to the duke of Burgoyne: Brother, le Ryuer, Clysson, le Mercyer, and the Begue of Villayns, whan they were with the kyng in Languedocke, cruelly they punysshed to dethe my treasurer and good seruaunt Betysache by enuy: and for all that I coude do or saye, I coude nat gette hym out of their handes, nor saue his lyfe; therefore nowe let them beware of me, for I shall paye them agayn with the same money, forged in ÿ same forge. In lykewise the duke of Burgoyne coude nat loue them that gouerned the kyng, for euer whāie he had any busynesse to do in the courte, they were euer agaynst hym. Also the same tyme the duchesse of Burgoyne, who was a cruell lady, was about the quene as chefe ruler, and non spake with the quene but by her meanes.

This lady hated mortally sir Olyuer of Clyssone, for loue of the duke of Bretayne, for he was nere of blode to her: and oftentimes she spake to the duke her husbāde, sayeng howe he was greatlye to blame to beare so moche sir Olyuer of Clisson, agaynst so myghtie a prince as the duke of Bretayne. And the duke of Burgoyne, who was a colde, a sage, and an ymaginatyue prince, and dyde his busynesse alwayes at length, and wolde nat wylling bringe the realme of Fraunce into trouble, but alwayes wylling to kepe all parties in loue and peace, as nere as he myght; and also as he ÿ was neuer wylling to displease any of ÿ great lordes, answered right sagely and wysely to his wyfe: Dame,

<sup>a</sup> Haspres-Johnes.<sup>b</sup> Arras.<sup>c</sup> Rouais.<sup>d</sup> Amurath.<sup>e</sup> Armenia.

Dame, quod he, it is good in all tymes sōwhat to dissymule a mannes displeasure: true it is our cosyn of Bretayne is a great lorde, and hath seignorie and puissaunce ynough agaynst sir Olyuer of Clysson; if I hadde taken his parte agaynst Clysson, it shulde greatly haue weakened the realme of Fraunce, for sir Olyuer of Clyssone saythe and sustayneth, that all the hate that he hath to the duke of Bretaygne, is to sustayne vp the realme of Fraunce, wherin we haue great parte; and also this is the cōmon renome in Fraūce: also, (as yet,) I haue sene no artycle wherin I shulde take parte with my cosyn of Bretaygne agaynst sir Olyuer of Clysson: therefore it hath behoued me to dissymule, or elles I coude nat haue had the good wyll of ȝ kyng. nor of the realme, wherto I am more bōude by faith and seruyce, than to ȝ duke of Bretaygne: nowe it is so that the kyng is nat in good case, (as ye knowe well,) and all this is agaynst the lorde Clisson, and shal be; and to suche as haue gyuen cōsāyle agaynst vs. my brother of Berrey and me, that the kyng shulde procede in his iourney to Bretaygne, the rodde is gadered wherwith they shall be shortly beaten and corrected, as ye shall breuely here, if ye wyll take a lytell paciēce. Dame, dame, there is no season but at last is payde; nor no fortune, but that somtyme tourneth; nor herte troubled, but somtyme agayne reioyceth; nor none that is ioyfull, but somtyme is sorie and troubled. Clysson, le Ryuer, Montague, le Mercyer, and le Vyllayns, they haue done yuell, and that shal be shewed them breuely. With suche lyke wordes the duke of Burgoyne, and the duchesse his wyfe, sported thē togyuder.

On a daye it happed that ȝ duke of Burgoyne, and the duke of Berrey, cōmuned secretly togyder, and sayde: It were tyme that we began to distroye them that haue dishonored our nephue the kyng, and haue ledde hym at their wylls; and first let vs begyn at the cōstable, he is ȝ grettest and hath most to lese, for this other daye he made his testament of seyntene hūdrē thousande frankes. Where the deuyll hath he gadered togyuder all that richesse? and yet the maryage of his daughter to Johan of Bretayne, whom he delynered out of prison in Englād, and payde for his rāusome two hūdrē thousande frankes of Englande. Let vs se what poyntes we can lay to him by reason, for our nephue the duke of Orleauce beareth hym greatlye, and so do dyuers other barones of Fraunce; howbeit, and we stycke therto, we shall finde mater ynough to him by lawe and parlyament. That is trewe, quod the duke of Burgoyne; and the first tyme that he cometh to speke with me, (and that I thinke wyll be or tomorow at night,) I shall so receyue hym that he shall well knowe that I loue hym nat: and if he come to you good brother of Berrey, do lykewise. That shall be done, quod he, and so departed at that tyme.

So it fortunated that the lorde of Clysson, who knewe nothyng but that he had been in good grace with the sayde dukes: and certayne knightes and squiers, (suche as hadde been in the sayd voyage with the kyng,) came to the constable, and were sente by the chaunceller and treasurers to hym to pursue for money for their wages. Wherupon in a mornyng he came to ȝ house of Arthois, in Parys, to shewe the state of ȝ busynesse to the duke of Burgoyne, and to none other, bycause he hadde the hole gouernance of the realme of Fraunce: whā he came thyder he entred into the court, for the porter had lette hym in; than he alyghted and mounted the steares into the hall, al onelye acompanyed with one squyer, and in the hall he foude ii. squyers of the dukes: than he demaunded if he might speke w the duke or nat. Sir. quod they, we can nat tell you: tary here and we shall go and knowe his pleasure. The squiers entred into the dukes chambre, and foude hym at good leysar. talkyng with an heraude, who was come fro a great feest that had ben holden in Almaine: than the squiers sayd: Sir, the Constable is in your hall, and saythe he is come to speke with you if it be your pleasure.

pleasure. A goddes name, quod the duke, lette hym come in, we be at good leysar to here what he wyll say. One of the squiers went into the hall and said to the constable, sir, cōe on, my lordle wyll haue you to cōe in. The cōstable entred, and whan the duke sawe hym he changed colour, and repented in that he had caused hym to come into his chambre, and yet he had gret desyre to speke with hym. The Constable dyde of his hatte and made his reuerence to the duke, and sayde: Sir, I am come to you to knowe of the state and gouernaunce of the realme, and howe euery thyng shal be ordred: for by reason of myne offyce I am dayly called vpon, and as nowe you and my lordle of Berrey haue the rule, therefore it may please you to shewe me what I shall do. The duke lightly answered and sayde: Clysson, Clysson, ye haue nothyng to do to busye you with the gouernynge of the realme: ye haue medled therwith to long, and in an yuell tyme: Howē the deuyll haue ye gadered suche rychesse, as ye made your testament of but late? the kyng, nor my brother of Berrey, nor I, haue nat so moche: Go youre waye, departe out of my presence, and lette me no more se you, for and it were nat for my shame, I shuld putte out your better eye. And therwith the duke departed and lefte the lordle Clysson alone, who issued out of the chambre and hanged downe his heel, and so passed through the hall, and in the courte toke his horse with his company, and retourned priuely into his lodgyng without spekyng of any worde.

*Howe sir Olyuer of Clysson, Constable of Fraunce, departed out of Parys, after the answer that the duke of Burgoyne had made hym, and wente to Mount-le-Henry, and fro thens into Bretayne.*

#### CAP. CXC.\*

WHAN the lordle of Clysson was retourned to his lodgyng, he was in many ymagynacions to remembre what was best for hym to do; for he perceyued wel the maters went but yuell for hym, nor he wyste nat to whome to make his complaynt, nor to declare his busynesse, for the duke of Orlyaanee was at Crayell: and though he hadde been at Parys, yet it laye nat his power to defende hym, and he feared lest the duke of Burgoyne wolde haue caused hym to be arested, and to spoyle his house: wherefore he durst nat abyde that aduenture, but shortly made hym redy, and shewed to certayne of his seruauntes what he wolde do; and agaynst nyght he wente out of his lodgyng priuely on the backesyde, and but thre persones with hym, and issued out of Parys at the gate of saynt Anthony, and passed the ryuer of Seyne, at the bridge of Charenton, and roode so longe that he came to a castell of his owne, a seyn leages fro Parys, called Mount le Henry, and there taryed tyll he herde other tidynge.

The same daye that the duke of Burgoyne had spoken with the Constable, the duke of Berrey and he mette togyuder, for they assembled at the palays to commune togyuder of certayne maters touchyng the realme: than the duke of Burgoyne shewed his brother what he had sayde to sir Olyuer of Clysson. The duke of Berrey answered and sayd, ye haue done well, for we must haue a begynnyng to entre vpon them, for surely Clysson, le Ryuer, Mercier, and Mōtague, haue robbed the realme of France: but the tyme is come that they shall leaue all, yea, and lese their lynes, and I maye be beleued.

The



The same proper daye that the Constable departed, Montague in likewise departed secretly by the gate saynt Anthony, and toke the waye to Trois, in Champayne, and into Burgoyne, and sayd he wolde nat rest tyll he came to Auygnon: for thyder he had sent before the chiefe of his rychesse, and lefte a certayne with his wyfe to kepe her estate curtesly. for he sawe well sithe the kyng had lost his wytte, that all maters shulde go but yuell for hym. for he sawe howe the dukes of Burgoyne and Berrey wolde nat speke to hym. Sir Johan Mercier in lykewise wolde layne haue ben gone and he myght, but there was suche wachte layde on hym, that he coude nat go out of his lodgyng. without knowledge; and suche of his goodes as he hadde saued before, stode hym in right good stede afterwarde: for as moche as coude be founde of his, was departed bytwene the dukes of Burgoyne and Berrey, and he was cōmytted by them to prison into the castell of Loure.<sup>a</sup> And in lykewise so was cōmaunded the Begue of Vyl-layns erle of Rebydewe,<sup>b</sup> in Spayne. There were men sente to the house of Montague, but he was nat founde, nor no man knewe where y he was become. In lyke case<sup>c</sup> to the Constables house to haue had hym to prison, but he coude nat be founde. for there was no man there but the kepar, who knewe nothyng where he was become: and within two dayes after it was knowen that he was at his castell of Mount le Heury. Whan the dukes that loued hym nat, knewe that, they ordayne the Barrois of Barres, sir Johñ of Castell Morant, the lorde of Concy, and sir Wyllyam of Tremoyle,<sup>d</sup> with three hundred speares to go thyder, and cōmaunded them to beseige the towne and castell, and nat to departe thens tyll they had brought sir Olyuer of Clysson to the, onther quicke or deed. These knyghtes dyde as they were cōmaunded, they durste do none otherwise, for the two dukes had the admystracion of the realme. So they departed fro Parys with a three hundred speares, but nat all at one tyme, but in fyne partes, to the entent to be the lesse knowen; but god ayded so well the Constable, and he had so good frendes of some in that company, that he had suche warnyng that he toke no damage, for he and his company departed and rode by covert wayes through woodes, and lefte closed townes, so that at laste he came surely into Bretaygne, and entred into a castell of his owne, called the castell Joselyn, and there taryed to here other newes. For all that, the Barrois of Barres, and the other knyghtes in his company, lette nat to do their enterpryce at they were charged, but came to Mount le Heury, and entred into the towne, and besieged the castell, and taryed there all a nyght, wenyng that the Constable hadde ben within: but he was gone, as ye haue herde: and the nexte mornyng they thought to assaute the castell. The seruañtes within the castell sente out to knowe what they wolde haue, or what they demaunded. They sayde they wolde haue sir Olyuer of Clysson, and therfore they were come. They answered and said, that he was departed thens foure dayes passed, and offered to open the gates to serche for hym. The knyghtes went into the castell with all their company armed, for feare of embussment within the castell; they serched highe and lowe, and founde for trouthe that he was nat there. Thāñ they departed and retourned to Parys, and shewed howe they had sped.

Whan the dukes of Burgoyne and Berrey knewe that sir Olyner of Clysson was scaped, they were sore displeased, and the dukes of Orlyauce and of Burbone ryght ioyfull. Than the duke of Burgoyne sayde: It semeth well that he douteth hymselfe, seynge he is fledde awaye: yet for all y he is so quytte, we shall cause hym to come agayne shortly, or elles he shall lese all that he hath that we can sette our handes on: for

<sup>a</sup> The Louvre.

<sup>b</sup> Ribadéo.

<sup>c</sup> "They sent to inquire if Oliver of Clisson were in Paris, with orders, if he were found, that he should surrender himself a prisoner in the Louvre."

<sup>d</sup> La Tremouille.

for we haue to laye to his charge dyuers artycles vnreasonable, whiche requyre iudgement of punisyon; and if suche as be great be nat corrected, the maters shall nat be equally proporcioned, for suche as be but small personages shall grudge, and saye they haue wrong to be punysshed, and the great to scape: therfore iustyce ought to be equall, and to spare nother gret nor small, wherby any ensample shulde growe. Thus the duke of Burgoyne deuysed of sir Olyuer of Clysston, who was in Bretaygne, in his castell called Joselyn, whiche fortresse was well prouyded for of all thynges necessary. When the Barrois of Barres was returned to Parys, and had shewed that sir Olyuer of Clysston was departed fro Mount le Heury, and gone to the castell of Joselyn, in Bretayne, thā he was cōmaunded to go to Amyence,<sup>a</sup> and there to take the lorde de la Ryuer: the next day he rode with his companye to Amyence,<sup>a</sup> a fayre fortresse besyde Charters, whiche the lorde de la Ryuer helde by right of his wyfe, the lady of Mans;<sup>c</sup> he had greatly amended that castell, and was welbeloued of the men of his cuntry, for he loued alwayes nothing but trouth. Than the dukes cōmissyoners came thyder, and dyde as they had in charge, and founde the lorde de la Ryuer there, and his wyfe and his chyldren; the knight loked for nothyng els, for he might haue ben gone before if he had lyste, for he had knowledge that sir Johan Mercyer, and the erle of Ribydewe,<sup>b</sup> were in prisone, and that the Constable was fledde into Bretaygne; and he was counsayled before by one of his frendes, who said to hym: Sir, saue yourselfe, for the enuyous do nowre reygne, and fortune as nowre is on their sydes. He aunswered and sayde: Here and elsewhere I am at the pleasure of god; if I shulde flye or hyde myselfe, I shulde yelde myselfe gyltie, where I knowe myselfe clere; God hath gyuen me that I haue, and he maye take it fro me when it is his pleasure; the wyll of god be fulfilled; I haue serued kynge Charles, and nowe his sonne well and trewly; my seruyce hath ben well knowen with them, and they haue greatlye rewarded me, and seyng that I haue so truely serued at their cōmaundements, and traueyled for the busynesse of the realme of Frāce, I dare well abyde the iudgement of the parlyament chambre in Parys, and if they can fynde any faute in my dedes or wordes, lette me be punysshed. Thus the lorde de la Ryuer sayd to his wyfe and to his cōsayle: this he sayd or the dukes cōmyssioners cāe to his castell. At laste one shewed hym and sayd: Sir, here cometh suche men, and suche with a great armye; howe saye you, shall we opyn the gates or nat? Yea, quod he, what elles? they are welcome. Therwith he went and mette them, and receyued them one after another right honorably. Thus they all entred into the castell of Mans.<sup>c</sup> Than the Barroies of Barres, when they were within the hall, executed his commaundement, and arrested the lorde de la Ryuer, who obeyed mekelye. Thus he was prisoner in his owne castell of Mans:<sup>c</sup> it may well be thought that the good lady his wyfe was sore discōfyted, whan she sawe fortune tourne her whele agaynst her lorde and husbunde, and also she douted the conclusyon.

Thus the lorde de la Ryuer was prisoner in his owne castell of Mans:<sup>c</sup> and anone after he was sente for by them that had the governaunce, bothe of the temporaltie and of the spiryтуaltie, for pope Clement of Auignon had nothyng in the realme of Francke, but by their meanes. The lorde de la Ryuer was brought to Parys, and set in prison in the castell of Loure.<sup>c</sup> Many men in the realme of Francke had great pytie on hym: howebet, they durst nat speke but priuely: the people cared nat so moche for the trouble of sir Johan Mercyer, as they dyde for the lorde de la Ryuer, for he was alway swete, curtesse, meke, pacyent, and gentyll to poore men, and a good meane always for them that myght nat be herde. It was sayde daylye in Paris, that these prisoners shulde lese their heedes: and a sclandre ran vpon them, howe they were traytours  
against

<sup>a</sup> Auneau.<sup>b</sup> Ribadéo.<sup>c</sup> The Louvre.

against the crowne of Fraunce, and pyllid the realme, and therby kepte their great portes and estates, and made fayre houses, castelles, and buyldynges: and other poore knyghtes and squiers, suche as had aduentured their bodies and membres in dedes of armes, and serued trouely the realme of Fraunce, and had solde and layde to pledge their herytages, and yet coude nat be payde for that they had serued, nother by the cōstable nor by none of them that were in prisone, nor by Mōtague that was fledde; the enuyous condempned and iudged them to dye; so by reason of this they were in great daunger: and also it was sayd, that by their counsaile the kyng toke on hym the iourney into Bretaygne, wherby he fell into that maladye of fransey, and had gyuen hym drinkes of poyson at their pleasure, and howe that the kynges physicions coude nat be herde nor beleued, by reason of them. Suche maters were layde to the lorde de la Ryuers charge and to syr Johan Mercyer, that they were deluyered out of the castell of Loure<sup>a</sup> into the handes of the prouost of Paris, and putte into the castell of saynt Anthony. in the kepyng of the Vicount of Achy, who as than was Chateleyne there. When it was knowen that they were there, thā the cōmon brute ran that they shulde be executed to dethe; but to saye trouthe, there was no cause why to trouble them; for suche as hated them, coude fynde in their conseyence no cause why they ought to dye; but euery daye they were borne in hande, and it was sayd to theym: Sirs, thynke on youre soules, for as for your bodies are but loste, for ye are iudged to dye, and for to be beheded. In this case they were in prisone a greate space. The Begue of Vyllayns, a ryght valyaunt knyght in armes, of the cōuntry of Beauce, who was in prisone also for the same cause, he had suche frendes and was so ayded that he was deluyered out of prison, and was clene pardoned of all thynges: and suche as were of his lynage, as sir Barroys and other, counsayled hym to go into Castyle, where as he had fayre herytages, by reason of his wyfe, countesse of Ribydewe,<sup>b</sup> and as he was counsayled so he dyde, and as soone as he might departed out of Fraunce and went into Castyle; and the other two knyghtes remainyd styll in prison, in daunger of losyng of their lyues.

All the mouable and ynmouable godes and possessions partyninge to sir Johan Mercyer within Parys and without, in the realme of Fraunce, that myght be layde hande on, was taken as goodes forfaite, and gyuen to other persons. His fayre house of the bridge of Auburne,<sup>c</sup> in the dioces of Laon, whiche had cost hym a great good, was gyuen to the lorde Coucy, with all the appurtenaūces. I knowe nat wheder the lorde of Coucy desyred it or nat; but sir Johan Mercier was disheryted, he and his heyres for euer: also the lorde de la Ryuer was sore handled. Trewe it was, all his mouables was taken awaye, and suche landes as he had bought, reseruyng to the lady of Mans<sup>d</sup> his wyfe, all her herytages, whiche came by her by father and mother: also he had a yonge damosell to his daughter of x. yere of age, who was maryed to a yonge gentylman called Jaques of Chastellon, sonne to sir Hugh of Chastellon, who had ben before maister of the crosbowes of Fraunce: and he was heyre to his father, and had fayre herytages, and was lykelye to enioye more; howebeit, agaynst the yonge mannes inynde he was dismayed, and maryed agayne to another gentylwoman, at the pleasure of the duke of Burgoyne and of the lorde de la Tremoyle,<sup>e</sup> who toke on them that quarell: moreouer, the lorde de la Riuer a sonne to his heyre, whiche sonne was maryed to the daughter of the erle Dampmartyne; and the erle had no mo children, nor was nat lyke to haue, whiche doughter was his heyre: and the duke wolde haue broken that maryage, and haue maryed her vnto an heyre of blode; but the erle Dampmartyne, lyke a valyaunt knight, wolde nat, but sayd: as long as the lorde de la Ryuers sonne hadde

<sup>a</sup> The Louvre.<sup>b</sup> Ribadéo.<sup>c</sup> Pont á Louvion.—*Johnes*.  
<sup>e</sup> Tremouille.<sup>d</sup> Auneau.

hadde lyfe in his body, his doughter shulde haue none other husbunde: and sayde, he wolde putte her herytage into suche mēnes handes, that he trusted suche as wolde wrōgfully haue it, shulde nat attayne therto. Whan the erles mynde was knowen, they let hym alone: so that maryage stode styll, but the fyrst maryage was broken, and pope Clement made a dispensacyon wheder he wolde or nat, for as at that tyme the pope had no more puissaunce in Fraunce, than suche as the gouernours wolde consente to, the churche was so subiecte, what by reason of the Scisme, and by them that gouerned Fraunce. Many men, specially in the realme of Fraūce, excused greatly the lorde de la Ryuer; but all that wolde nat serue, for none durst speke, thoughe they sawe the mater neuer so clere, except all onely the valyāt lady Jane of Boloynne, duchesse of Berrey. Often tymes the good lady wolde fall on her knees before her husbunde, holdynge vp her handes, and sayeng: Ah, sir, ye suffre to moche the enuyous to enforme you so wrongfullye agaynst the valyaunt knight. The lorde de la Ryuer he hath clerely wronge; there is none that dare speke for hym but I: and, sir, I wyll ye knowe that if he dye thus, I shall neuer haue ioye in this worlde, but I shall alwayes contynue styll in sorowe and heuynesse, for he is a trewe and a valyant knight. Ah, sir, ye cōsider but lytell the fayre seruyce that he hath done to you or this tyme, ŷ paynes and traueyle that he hath hadde for you and for me, to bring vs togyder in maryage: I saye it nat for any thyng of bostyng of myselfe, for I am but lytell worthe in comparyson to you; but whan ye wolde nedes haue me, ye remembre howe harde the erle of Foiz was to you, with whom I was brought vp: and if the swete wordes and wyse demeanour of the lorde de la Ryuer had nat been, I had neuer come into your company, but I had ben rather as nowe in Englāde, for the duke of Lācastre wolde haue had me for his sonne the erle of Derby, and the erle of Foiz enclyned rather that waye thā to you. Right dere sir, ye ought to remēbre this, for all that I say is true; wherfore I requyre you right hūbly that this gentyll knight, who brought me to you, haue no dōmage of his body nor of his membres. The duke of Berrey, who sawe his wyfe fayre and gentyll, and loued her with all his hert, and also knewe well that all she had sayd was true, it molified greatly his herte towards the lorde de la Ryuer: and to apease his wyfe, bycause he sawe she spake with good herte, sayd vnto her: Dame, as god helpe me, I wolde it had cost me xx. thousāde frankes, on the condycion the lorde de la Ryuer had neuer made forfette to the crowne of Fraunce, for before this malady came to the kynge I loued hym entierly, and tooke hym for a wyse and a sage knyght; but sythe ye desyre so effectuously for hym, I wyll do no dyspleasure to hym; he shall fare moche the better at your instance: and for your sake I shall do as moche for hym as my power may extende, and rather at your desyre than and all the realme had spoken for hym, for surely I se well it is almes to helpe hym, and I beleue he hath no aduocate but you. Thus the lady was well pleased with her lordes wordes, for surely and she had nat ben he had been deed; but for her sake the duke of Berrey dyssymuled the mater, and that was happy for syr Johan Mercyer, for he and the lorde de la Ryuer were accused for one cause, wherfore the dukes had consyence to cause one to dye and nat the other; howebeit, for all the promesse that was made to them, yet they thought themselfe nat well assured of their lyues as longe as they were in prison: for they sawe well they had as than many enneymes, who as thā reyned and were in their prosperyte, and some were right angry that they were saued so longe, and they coulde amended it. Syr Johan Mercyer beyng in prisone, wepte so contynually that he had almost lost his sight: it was pytie to se his lamentacyon.

Whyle these two knyghtes were thus in prisone more than a yere, and no man knewe what ende shulde come of them, than the dukes and their counsayle dyd all that they coulde to haue taken sir Olyuer Clysson, and to haue put hym fro his honoure and of-  
lyce:

fyce: they had rather haue had hym than all the resydewe: but he kepthe hymselfe out of their handes, wherin he dyd wysely, for if he had ben taken, they had so ordeyned for him that he shulde haue had iudgement of deth without remedy, and all for enuy to haue pleased therby his aduersary the duke of Bretaygne, who neuer dyd good in the realme of Fraunce. When the lordes sawe y he was scaped their handes, they toke other aduise, and dyd as ye shall here. They somoned hym to apere in the parlyamēt chamber at Parys, to answere to such articles as he was accused of, on payne to lese his honour and to be banysshed the realme of Fraunce: certayne cōmyssioners were sent into Bretaygne to sōmon hym to apere: they that were sente rode into Bretaygne, and demaūded where as they came where syr Olyuer of Clysson was, and sayd howe they were sente by the kynge to speke with the constable, wherfore they desyred to knowe where he was. The men of suche townes and garysons as helde of the constable were determyned before what answere to make, and sayd: syrs, ye be welcome; and if ye wyll speke with the constable, ye muste go into suche a place; there we thinke ye shall fynde hym without faute: so the cōmyssioners were sente from towne to towne, but they coude nat fynde him; and so longe they sought that they were wery, and so returned to Parys, and declared what they had sene and founde. Suche as had accused hym were gladd that he dalte so, for than they sayd his falsnesse was playnly shewed, and therby acordyng to reason they said he shulde haue as he had deserued. Than by the course of the parlyament they proceded to all his sōmonynges, to thentent that suche as loued hym shulde nat say he had any wronge by enuy or hatred: and when all his xv. sōmonynges were accomplishhed, and that they coulde here no tydynges of hym, nor of his aparauce, and that he had been openly called at the parlyament chambre dore, and on the steyres, and in the courte, with all other seremonyes therto belongynge, and no answer made for hym, he had processe made agaynst hym cruelly in the parlyament; there he was openly banysshed the realme of Fraunce as a false traytour agaynst the crowne of Fraunce, and iudged to pay a hūdred thousande marke of syluer for the extorcions he had doone, and for that he had so craftely in tyme paste occupied the offyce of the constabulary of Fraunce, and therefore to lese for euer without recouery the sayd offyce. At the gyueng of this sentence the duke of Orleauce was desyred to be present, but he wolde nat, and excused hymselfe; but the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne were there, with many other great lordes of the realme of Fraunce. Thus a man may see the warkes of fortune, howe ferme and stable they be, seyng howe this good and valyaunt knyght, who in his dayes had so moche traueyled for the realme of Fraunce, and as than was put to so moche shame as to be dysgraced fro honour and goodes; howebeit, he was happy he appered nat at their sōmonyng, for if he had, surely he had shamfully loste his lyfe: as than the duke of Orlyance durst nat speke for hym; if he had, it shulde haue doone hym no good. It is nat to be doutd but that the duke of Bretaygne and syr Peter of Craon were right ioyfull of those tydynges; howebeit, they were sory that he was nat prisoner in Parys as well as sir Johan Mercier and the lorde de la Ryuer. Of this shamfull banysshing great brute ranne therof in the realme of Fraunce and elswhere; some compleyned secretly, and sayd that he had wronge; and some other said he was worthy to be hanged, and that he had well deserued it; and moreouer sayd, howe the dyuell coulde he assemble togyder so moche rychesse as a myllyon and an halfe of florasyns? he coulde neuer gette that by ryghtwyse meanes, but rather by pillyng and robberyng, and retaynyng to hymselfe the wages of the poore knyghtes and squyers of the realme of Fraunce that had deserued it, as it may well appere in the chauncery or treasury, where euery thyng is written and registred, in the voyage that the Kynge made into Flaunders: there and than he reysed great payte to his owne vse, and also in the voyage to Almayne: for all maner of tayles and subsidyes that were reysed in the realme to paye men of warre passed through his

handes; he payed where as it pleased hym, and the rest he kept to hymselfe, and none durste speke agaynst it. In this maner syr Olyuer of Clysson was accused in many mennes mouthes. It is sayde in an olde prouerbe: He that hath mysfortune, euery man offereth hym wronge. If the frenche kyng, the duke of Berrey, and the duke of Burgoyne had nat ben, the duke of Bretayne had ben able to haue subdued syr Olyuer of Clysson, seyng he was in the dukes countrey, but he suffred hym for a season to se howe the maters shulde procede; also he sawe well that syr Olyuer of Clysson was set on the heyght of fortunes whele, and as than agayne he sawe howe he was cast downe and lyke to lese his offyce. Thus the duke of Bretayne and syr Peter of Craon were set vpon their fete, and all by the workes of fortune, whiche is neuer parmanent, but nowe vp, nowe downe. The constable syr Olyuer of Clysson, the lorde de la Ryner, and syr Johan Mercyer were principally accused for the chefe causers of the kynges malady; and suche as loued them nat sayd howe they had poysoned the kyng; howbeit, euery man maye consydre by reason that it was nat so, for they were the persones that shulde lese moste by the kynges malady, wherfore it is to be thought they sought moste for his helthe, but they coulde nat be belened: so the two knyghtes remainyd styll in prison in daüger openly to haue loste their heedes, and by all lykelyhode so they had done if the kyng had nat recouered his helth, and by the meane of the duchesse of Berrey, who made instante labour for the lorde de la Ryner: and the lorde Clysson was styll in Bretayne, and made sore warre agaynst the duke there, and the duke agaynst hym, whiche warre cost many a mannes lyle, as ye shall here after in this history.

Trewe it is this sycknesse that the kyng tooke in the voyage towardes Bretayne greatly abated the ioye of the realme of Fraunce, and good cause why, for whan the heed is sicke the body canne haue no ioye. No man durste openly speke therof, but kepte it priuy as moche as myght be, and it was couertly kept from the quene, for tyll she was delyuered and churched she knewe nothyng therof, whiche tyme she had a daughter. The physycion, mayster Guyllyam, who had the chefe charge of healyng of the kyng, was styll aboute hym, and was ryght dyligent and well acquyted hymselfe, wherby he gate bothe honour and profyete: for lytell and lytell he brought the kyng in good estate, and toke away the feuer and the heate, and made hym to haue taste and appetyte to eate and drinke, slepe and rest, and knowledge of euery thyng; howbeit, he was very feble, and lytell and lytell he made the Kyng to ryde a huntynge and on hawkyng: and whanne tydynge was knowen through Fraunce howe the kyng was well mended, and had his memory agayne, euery man was ioyfull and thanked god. The kyng thus beyng at Crayell, desyred to se the quene his wyfe and the Dolphyn his sonne; so the quene came thyder to him, and the chyld was brought thyder: the kyng made them good chere, and so lytell and lytell, through the helpe of god, the kyng recouered his helthe. And whan mayster Guyllyam sawe the kyng in so good case he was ryght ioyfull, as reasone was, for he had done a fayre cure, and so delyuered hym to the dukes of Orlyance, Berrey, Burgoyne, and Burbone, and sayd: My lordes, thanked be god the kyng is now in good state and helth, so I delyuer hym, but beware lette no man dysplease hym, for as yet his spyrytes be nat fully ferme nor stable, but lytell and lytell he shall waxe stronge: reasonable dysporte, rest, and myrthe shall be moste profytable for hym; and trouble hym as lytell as may be with any counsailes, for he hath been sharply handeled with a hote malady. Than it was consyded to reytayne this mayster Guyllyam, and to gyue hym that he shulde be contente with all, whiche is the ende that all physicions requyre, to haue gyftes and rewardes: he was desyred to abyde styll about the kyng, but he excused hymselfe, and sayd howe he was an olde impotent man, and coulde nat endure the maner of courte, wherfore he desyred

syred to returne into his owne country. Whan the counsaile sawe he wolde none otherwyse do, they gaue him leaue, and at his departing gaue him a thousande crownes, and retayned hym in wages with four horses whansoeuer he wolde resorte to the courte; howbeit, I beleue he neuer came there after, for whan he returned to the cytie of Laon there he continued and dyed a ryche man: he lefte behynde hym a xxx. thousande frankes. All his dayes he was one of the greatest nygards that euer was; all his pleasure was to get good and to spende nothyng, for in his howse he neuer spent past two souses of Parys in a day, but wolde eate and drinke in other niennes howses, where as he myght get it. With this rodde lyghtly all physicyons are beaten.

*Howe the truce whiche was acorded bytwene Englande and Fraunce for thre yeres was renewed.*

## CAP. CXCI.

AS ye haue herde here before in the bokes of this hygh and excellent hystory, at the request of the ryght hygh and myghty prynce, my dere lorde and mayster, Guy of Chastellone, erle of Blois, lorde of Auesnes, of Chymay, of Beaumont, of Streumehont,<sup>b</sup> and of the Gode:<sup>c</sup> I Johan Froysart, preest and chapeleyn to my said lorde, and at that tyme treasurer and chanon of Chymay, and of Lysle in Flaunders, haue enterprised this noble mater, treatynge of the aduentures and warres of Fraunce and Englande, and other countreys conioyned and alyed to them, as it maye apere clerely, by the treatie therof made vnto the date of this present day, the whiche excellent mater, as longe as I lyue, by the helpe of god, I shall cōtinue, for the more I folowe and labour it, the more it pleaseth me: as the noble knyght or squyer louynge the feates of armes, do perceyuer in the same, and be therby experte and made parfyte, so in laborynge of this noble mater I delyte and take pleasure.

It hath ben here before conteyned in our hystory howe truce was made at Balyng-ham,<sup>d</sup> to endure thre yere, bytwene Englande and Fraunce, and for that purpose the erle of saynt Poll, the lorde of Castell Morant, and syr Taupyn of Cauteuell,<sup>e</sup> ambassadours of Fraunce, had ben in Englande with the duke of Lancastre and the duke of yorke, for to vnderstande the kinges pleasure, and the opynion of the cōmons of Englande: for at the comunycacyon and parlyamente at Amyence they were at a poynte of agreement of peace, vpon certayne artycles specified, reseruyng the agreement therto of the cōmons of Englande. Thus these ambassadours were returned into Fraunce, and were answered howe that at the feest of saynt Mychell nexte ensuyng there shulde be a Parlyament at Westmyenster of the thre estates of Englande, at whiche tyme the mater shulde be declared, and a full aunswere made. Whan tydynges was come into Englande of the frenche kynges sycknesse, that matter was greatly hyndred; howbeit, kyng Rycharde of Englande and the duke of Lancastre had great affection to haue had peace, so that if they might haue had their ententes, peace had ben made bytwene Englande and Fraunce; but the cōmynalte of Englande desyred warre, sayenge howe warre with Fraunce was more conuenyent for them than peace; and of that opynyon was one of the kynges vnclis, Thomas duke of Glocestre, erle of Perces,<sup>f</sup> and constable of Englande, who was welbeloued in the realme: he enclyned rather to warre than to peace; and of his opynyon were the yonge gentylmen of the realme, suche as desyred feates

4 F 2

of

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CLXXXVII.<sup>b</sup> Schoenhoven.<sup>c</sup> Turgow.<sup>d</sup> Leulinghem.<sup>e</sup> Cantemelle.<sup>f</sup> Exeter.—*D. Sawage.*

of armes; but his brother the duke of Lancastre, bycause he was eldest and of most puissance in Englande, he thought and said that the warre bytwene Englande and Fraunce and endured longe ynough, and that peace were more mete: for by the warre cristen-dome was sore febled, for the great turke Lamorabaquyn<sup>a</sup> was with greate puyssaunce on the fronters of Hügeri; wherfore he sayd it shulde be honorable to all yonge lusty knyghtes and squyers to take their way thyder, and ther to exercyse dedes of armes.

Lette vs wysely consydre the duke of Lancasters wordes, who spake them of good entent, for he had greatly traueyled in the warres of Fraunce, and conquered but lytell, and sore traueyled his bodye, brent and dystroyed the playne countreys in his waye, and after his retourne it sone reconered agayn: he sawe this warre drewe neuer to none ende, but rather increased; also he sawe that if fortune shulde turne agaynst y<sup>e</sup> englyssh party, that great dōmage therof shulde ensue, and perceyued well that the kyng his nephue was enclined moche rather to the peace than to the warre. I Johan Froysart, auctoure of this hystory, canne nat well saye whether this dukes opinyon was good or nat; but it was shewed me, that bycause the duke of Lancastre sawe his two daughters maryed in higher degree than hymselfe, and out of the realme of Englande, the one was quene of Spaygne, the other Quene of Portugale, this caused him gretly to enclyne to the peace: for he knew well that the kyng of Spaynes sonne, who had maryed his daughter, was as than but yonge, and in daunger of his owne subgiettes: and knewe well that if he shulde peasably enioye the herytage of Spaygne, it was conuenyent that the englysshemen shulde kepe the peace with Fraunce, for if the peace shulde be broken by any incydent, than the Frenchemen myght shortly be reuenged of the realme of Spayne; for they had open entrees as well through Aragon and Chathalone,<sup>b</sup> as Bierne and Byskay, for the lady yolant of Bare was quene of Aragone, and she was good frenche, and gouerned Aragon, Chathalone,<sup>b</sup> Bierne, and Byskay: for the Vycount of Chatellon,<sup>c</sup> who was heyre to therle of Foiz, had so sworne and promysed the frenche quene, wherby the frenchemen hadde many fayre entrees into Spaygne without daunger of the kyng of Nauer, who wolde nat wyllingly dysplease the frenche kyng his cosyn germaine: for as than syr Peter of Nauerre his brother was with the frenche kyng, who alwayes apeased the frenche kynges ire and dyspleasure whan he had any to his brother the Kyng of Nauer, for he was a true frencheman, and neuer founde the contrary. All these imaginacions the duke of Lancastre had in hymselfe, and shewed his mynde to his sonne the erle of Derby, though he were but yonge, yet he was of great wysdome, and lykely to come to great honour, whiche erle had thre sonnes, Johan, Humfrey, and Thomas, and two daughters by the lady his wyfe, daughter and heyre to the Erle constable of Englande, erle of Herforde<sup>d</sup> and Northampton, by whiche lady he helde great herytage.

The conclusyon of the parlyament holden at Westmyenster by the thre estates of the realme, a trewece was taken by see and by lande, bytwene Fraunce and Englande, their frendes and alyes, to endure fro the feest of saynt Mychell to the feest of saynt Johan Baptyst nexte after; and suche cōmyssioners as the frenche kyng had sent to this parlyament were dyspatched, and the charter of the truce sent by them sealed, whiche trewece was well vpholden on all partyes. The Frenche kyng was sore febled by reason of his sykkenesse, and the physicyon, mayster Guyllyam Harselay, was as than deed, but whan he departed fro Crayell fro the kyng, he ordeyned many receytes for the kyng to vse, wherby in the wynter season he recouered his helth, wherof all his louers

<sup>a</sup> Amurath.<sup>b</sup> Catalonia.<sup>c</sup> Chatel-bon.<sup>d</sup> Hereford.



Jouers and frendes reioysed, with the hole cōmynalte of Fraūce, for he was well be-  
 louned; and so he and the quene came to Parys, and helde their household most parte  
 at saynt Powle, and somtyme at Loure,<sup>a</sup> and the longe wynter nyghtes they passed the  
 season with daunsynge and carollynge, and other reuels and dysportes. The quene  
 was accompaned with the duchesse of Berrey, the duchesse of Orlyance, and other ladyes.  
 The same season the Vycount of Chastellon<sup>b</sup> was come to Parys, who was newly entred  
 into the herytage of the erledome of Foize and of Bierne as ryght heyre: and he releued  
 the sayde erledom of Foiz, and dyd his homage to the kyng, but nat for Bierne, for that  
 cōtrey helde themselfe of so noble condycion, that they helde seruyce to no man lyu-  
 ynge; howbeit, the prince of Wales said to the erle of Foiz that last dyed, that he  
 ought to releue of him, and to haue his resorte to the Duchy of Acquitayne; but al-  
 wayes the sayd erle denyed and defended it: and it is to be thought, that the chalenge  
 that the prince of Wales made thervnto, was by the settinge on and mouyng of Johan  
 erle of Armynake, as it hath ben shewed here before in this history, wherfore as nowe  
 I wyll ouer passe it. Whan this vicount of Chastellon<sup>b</sup> (called fro hensforth the erle  
 of Foiz) was at Paris with the frenche kyng, he had there in his company with hym his  
 cosyn syr yuan of Foiz, bastarde sonne to the laste Erle of Foize, who was a goodly  
 knyght. The erle of Foiz, or he dyed, wolde haue made hym his heyre, with another  
 of his bastarde sonnes, called Gracian, who dwelte as than with the kyng of Nauer, but  
 the knyghtes of Bierne wolde neuer consent therto; therfore the mater rested as it dyd,  
 and the erle dyed sodaynly (as ye haue herde before). Whan the Frenche kyng sawe  
 this yonge knyght syr yuan of Foiz, he lyked hym marueylous well: also the kyng and  
 he were moche of one age, and by reason of the fauour that the kyng bare to this yonge  
 knyght, the erle of Foiz had the shorter spede, and was deluyered of all his businesse,  
 and than departed into his owne countrey; and syr yuan abode styll with the Kyng,  
 and retayned as one of his knyghtes of his chambre, with xii. horses, and all other  
 thynges therto belongynge.

*Of the aduventure of a daunce that was made at Parys in lyknesse of wodehowses,<sup>c</sup>  
 wherin the Frenche kyng was in perell of dethe.*

C A P. CXCII.<sup>d</sup>

IT fortuneth that sone after the retaynyng of this foresayd knyght a maryage was  
 made in the kynges house, bytween a yonge knyght of Vermandoys and one of the  
 quenes gentywomen; and bycause they were bothe of the kynges house, the kinges  
 vnclis and other lordes, ladyes, and damoselles made great tryumphe: there was the  
 dukes of Orlyaunce, Berrey, and Burgoyne, and their wyues, daunsynge and makynge  
 agaynst nyght. The kyng made a great supper to the lordes and ladyes, and the quene  
 kepte her estate, desiryng eury man to be mery: and there was a squyer of Normandy,  
 called Hogreymen<sup>e</sup> of Gensay, he aduysed to make some pastyme. The daye of the  
 maryage, whiche was on a tuesday before Candelmas, he prouyded for a mummy  
 agaynst nyght: he deuysed syxe cotes made of lynen clothe, couered with pytche, and  
 theron flaxe lyke heare, and had them redy in a chambre: the kyng put on one of  
 them, and therle of Jouy, a yonge lusty knyght, another, and syr Charles of Poicters the  
 thyrde, who was sonne to the erle of Valentenoy, and to syr yuan of Foiz another,  
 and

<sup>a</sup> The Louvre.

<sup>b</sup> Chatel-bon.

<sup>c</sup> Savages

<sup>d</sup> Chapter CLXXXVIII.

<sup>e</sup> Joines calls him *Hogonin*.

and the sonne of the lorde Nanthorillet<sup>a</sup> had on the fyfte, and the squyer hymselfe had on the syxte; and whan they wher thus arayed in these sayd cotes, and sowed fast in them, they semed lyke wyld wodehouses,<sup>b</sup> full of heare fro the toppe of the heed to the sowle of  $\tilde{y}$  fote. This deuyse pleased well the frenche kyng, and was well content with the squyer for it. They were aparelled in these cotes secretly in a chambre that no man knewe therof but such as holpe them. Whan syr yuan of Foiz had well aduysed these cotes, he sayd to the kyng: Syr, cōmaunde strately that no man aproche nere vs with any torches or fyre, for if the fyre fasten in any of these cotes, we shall all be brent without remedy. The king answered and sayd: yuan, ye speke well and wysely; it shall be doone as ye haue deuysed; and incontynent sent for an vssher of his chambre, cōmaundyng him to go into the chambre where the ladyes daüsed, and to cōmaunde all the varlettes holdinge torches to stande vp by the walles, and none of them to aproche nere to the wodehouses<sup>b</sup> that shulde come thyder to daunce. The vssher dyd the kynges cōmaundement, whiche was fulfilled. Some after the duke of Orlyance entred into the hall, accompanied with four knyghtes and syxe torches, and knewe nothyng of the kynges cōmaundement for the torches, nor of the mummery that was cōmyng thyder, but thought to beholde the daunsyng, and began hymselfe to daunce. Therwith the kyng with the fyue other came in; they were so dysguysed in flaxe that no man knewe them: fyue of them were fastened one to another; the kyng was lose, and went before and led the deuyse.

Whan they entred into the hall euery man toke so great hede to them that they forgate the torches: the kyng departed fro his company and went to the ladyes to sporte with them, as youth requyred, and so passed by the quene and came to the duchesse of Berrey, who toke and helde hym by the arme to knowe what he was, but the kyng wolde nat shewe his name. Than the duchesse sayd: ye shall nat escape me tyll I knowe your name. In this meane season great myschefe fell on the other, and by reason of the duke of Orlyance; howebeit, it was by ignoraunce, and agaynst his wyll, for if he had consydred before, the myschefe that fell, he wolde nat haue done as he dyd for all the good in the world; but he was so desyrous to knowe what personages the fyue were that daunced, he put one of the torches that his seruautes helde so nere, that the heate of the fyre entred into the flaxe (wherin if fyre take there is no remedy), and sodaynly was on a bright flame, and so eche of them set fyre on other; the pytche was so fastened to the lynen clothe, and their shyrtes so drye and fyne, and so ioynyng to their flesshe, that they began to brenne and to cry for helpe: none durste come nere them; they that dyd, brente their handes, by reason of the heate of the pytche: one of them, called Nanthorillet,<sup>a</sup> aduysed hym howe the botry was therby; he fled thyder, and cast hymselfe into a vessell full of water, wherin they rynsed pottes, whiche saued hym, or els he had ben deed as the other were, yet he was sore hurt with the fyre. Whan the quene herde the crye that they made, she douted her of the Kyng, for she knewe well that he shulde be one of the syxe, wherwith she fell in a sowne, and knyghtes and ladyes came and comforted her. A pyteous noyse there was in the hall. The duchesse of Berrey deluyered the kyng fro that parell, for she dyd caste ower him the trayne of her gowne, and couered him fro the fyre: the kyng wolde haue gone fro her. Whyder wyll ye go? quod she; ye se well howe your company brennes. What are ye? I am the kyng, quod he. Haste you, quod she, and gette you into other apparell, that the quene maye se you, for she is in great feare of you. Therwith the kyng departed out of the hall, and in all haste chaunged his apparell, and came to the quene; and the duchesse of Berrey had somewhat comforted her, and had shewed her howe she shulde se the  
kyng

<sup>a</sup> Nantouillet.<sup>b</sup> Savages.

kyng shortely: therwith the kyng came to the quene, and as soone as she sawe hym, for ioy she embrased hym and fell in a sowne; than she was borne into her chambre, and the kyng wente with her. And the bastarde of Foiz, who was all on a fyre, cryed euer with a loude voyce: saue the kyng, saue the kyng. Thus was the kyng saued. It was happy for hym that he went fro his company, for els he had ben deed without remedy. This great myscheife fell thus about mydnyght in the hall of saynt Powle in Parys, where there was two brente to dethe in the place, and other two, the bastarde of Foiz and the erle of Jouy, borne to their lodgynges, and dyed within two dayes after in gret misery and payne. Thus the feest of this maryage brake vp in heynesse; howbeit, there was no remedy; the faulte was onely in the duke of Orlyauce, and yet he thought none yuell whanne he put downe the torch. Than the duke sayde: Syrs, lette euery man knowe there is no man to blame for this cause, but all onely myselfe; I am sory therof: if I had thought as moche before, it shulde nat haue happened. Than the duke of Orlyauce went to the kyng to excuse hym, and the kyng toke his excuse. This case fell in the yere of oure lorde god a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and twelue, the tuesday before the feest of Candelmas: of whiche fortune great brute spredde abrode in the realme of Fraunce, and in other countreys. The dukes of Burgoyne and of Berrey were nat there present at that season; they hadde taken their leaue before of the kyng, and were gone to their lodgynges.

The next daye these newes spredde abrode in the cytie, and euery manne had merueyle therof; and some sayd howe God had sente that token for an ensample, and that it was wysedome for the kyng to regarde it, and to withdrawe hymselfe fro suche yonge ydell wantonnesse, whiche he had vsed ouermoche, beyng a kyng. The cōmons of the cytie of Parys murmured and sayd: Beholde the great myshappe and myschiefe that was lykely to haue fallen on the kyng; he myght as well haue ben brent as other were. What shulde haue fallen than of the kynges vnclen and of his brother? they myght haue ben sure none of them shulde haue scaped the dethe; yea, and all the knyghtes that myght haue been founde in Parys. As soone as the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne herde of that aduenture, they were abashed and marueyled greatly; they lepte on their horses and rode to the kyng, and cōforted and counsayled hym, whiche was necessary, for he was sore troubled, and the paryll that he was in was styll in his ymaginacion: he shewed his vnclen howe his aunt of Berrey had saued hym; but he sayde he was very sorie for the dethe of the erle of Jouye, of sir yuan of Foiz, and of sir Charles of Poicters. His vnclen reconforted hym and sayde: Sir, that is loste canne nat be recouered; ye muste forgette the dethe of them, and thanke god of the fayre aduenture that is fallen to your owne persone, for all the realme of Fraunce by this incydent myght haue ben in great daunger of lesynge, for ye maye thynke well that these people of Parys wyll neuer be styll: for God knoweth, if the mysfortune had fallen on you, they wolde haue slayne vs all; therefore, sir, aparell you in estate royall, and lepe on your horse, and ryde to our lady in pylgrimage, and we shall accompany you, and shewe youreselfe to the people, for they desyre soore to se you. The kyng sayde he wolde so do. Than the kynges vnclen toke aparte the duke of Orlyauce, and in curtesse maner somewhat blamed hym of his yonge dede that he had done. He answered and sayde, howe he thought to haue done none yuell. Than anone after y kyng and his company lepte on their horses, and rode through the cytie to apease the people, and came to our lady Church,<sup>a</sup> and there herde masse and offred, and thanne retourned agayne to the house of saynt Poule, and lytell and lytell this mater was forgotten, and the obsequyes done for the deed bodyes.

Ah,

<sup>a</sup> Notre Dame

Ah, erle Gascoyne<sup>a</sup> of Foiz, if this had fortun'd in thy lyfe dayes, thou shuldest haue had great displeasure, and it had been harde to haue pea-ced the, for thou louedest hym<sup>b</sup> entierly. All lordes and ladyes through the realme of Fraunce and elsewhere that herde of this chaunce had great marueyle therof.

*Howe pope Bonyface and the cardynals of Rome sent a frere, a wyse clerke, to the frenche kyng.*

G. A. P. CXCHII.<sup>c</sup>

POPE Bonyface beyng at Rome with his cardinales, reioysed of this said aduenture, bycause the Frenche kyng was agaynst thē. The pope sayde it was a token sente fro God to the realme of Fraunce, bycause they supported the pope at Anygnon, who was proude and presumptuous, and neuer had done good in all his lyfe, but disceyued the worlde. The pope at Rhome and his cardynalles were in counsayle, and concluded to sende to the frenche kyng secretly a man of prudence, a frere mynor, a great clerke, and he wisely to preche and to counsayle the kyng to solowe f̄ waye of reason; for they said the kyng toke a wrōg waye, seyng he was named to be the chiefe kyng of Christendome, by whom holy church ought to be illumyned and ayded; wherfore they charged this frere to go into Fraunce, and delyuered hym instructions of the effecte that he shulde saye and do. This was done, but it was by leysar, for the Frere had farre to go, and also knewe nat whether he shulde haue audyence whanne that he came thyder or nat.

Nowe lette hym go on his iourney, and we shall somewhat speke of the busynesse of Fraunce.

Natwithstandyng for all these aduētures, the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne and their counsails lefte nat to pursue to haue destroyed f̄ lorde de la Ryuer and sir Johan le Mercier, who were in prisone in the castell of saynt Anthony, in the keypyng of the vy-count of Archy; and it was said that they shulde be put to dethe, and delyuered to the prouost of the Chattelet; and it was ordayned, that as sone as they shulde come into his handes, that they shulde be beheded openly as traytours agaynst f̄ crowne of Fraunce; and so they had been, if God had nat prouyded for them, and at the speciall instaunce and request of the duchesse of Berrey: for and she had nat ben, their dethe had been hasted; specially she prayed for the lorde de la Riuer, for by his meanes she was brought into Fraunce, and the maryage made bytwene the duke of Berrey and her. She sayde on a tyme to the duke her husbnde, all wepyng: Sir, that is layd to the lorde de la Ryuer is but a false sclaudre, and done for enuy; and, sir, remembre what payne and traueyle he toke to bring vs togyder; ye rewarde hym but smally to cōsent to his dethe. Though he all his landes and goodes be taken fro hym, yet lette hym haue his lyfe, for and he dye in this opyn shame I shall neuer haue ioye in my herte. Sir, I saye nat this of fayned corage, but that I say is with all my holē hert; wherfore, sir, I requyre you prouyde for his delyuerance. Whan the duke herde his wyfe speke so effectuously, and also knewe well that she sayde but trouthe, than he had pytie and swaged his displeasure; and the lorde de la Ryuer had been the soner delyuered and sir John Mercier had nat been, for they sought all the wayes that myght be  
to

<sup>a</sup> Gaston.

<sup>b</sup> "Thy son."

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CLXXXIX.

to haue putte hym to dethe, whiche they coude nat do, without bothe shulde haue dyed.

This sir Johan Mercyer hadde wept so moche in prison that his sight was therby sore febled: if they had folowed the duchesse of Burgoyns counsayle, they had ben putte to execucion longe before shamefully, without fauour, for she hated them, bycause they and sir Olyuer of Clysson had counsayled the kyng to go into Bretaygne, to warr agaynst her cosyne the duke; also she sayde that Clysson, le Ryuer, and Mercyer, were causers of the kynges maladye; howebeit, the kyng was well recouered and in good estate. The dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne kepte styll the gouernaunce of the realme of Fraunce, for they had great profyte therby: they had apoynted suche persones as them pleased to be about the kyng.

In those dayes the kyng bare the name of a kyng, but as touchyng the busynesse parteynyng to the crowne of Fraunce he was but lytell obeyed, for the dukes wolde se and knowe howe euery thyng paste. The duchesse of Burgoyne was nexte persone to the Quene, wherewith the Duchesse of Orlyauce was nothyng pleased, for she wolde haue hadde the honoure and preemynence: and she sayde to suche as were secrete with her: What, the duchesse of Burgoyne ought in no condycion to go before me, nor is nat so nyghe to the crowne, as I am. My lord my husbnde is brother to the kyng, and it myght so fall that he shulde be kyng and I quene; I wotte nat why she shulde take on her this honour, and putte me behynde. Thus some enny was amonge these ladyes.

Nowe lette vs leaue speakyng of them, and retourne to sir Olyuer of Clysson.

Ye haue herde howe he was sommoned fyftene dayes to apere in the parlyament chambre, and how certayne knyghtes were sente into Bretaygne to seke for him, as sir Philyppe of Sauoises and other, who wente into Bretaygne and sertched for hym in all places, but they founde hym nat, for he hidde hymselfe so couertly, that they coulde neuer speke with hym, for if they hadde they wolde haue rested hym. At their retourne into Fraunce they made relacyon of their voyage: than it was iudged by the lordes of the parlyament that sir Olyuer of Clysson, Constable of Fraunce, hadde forfayted landes, lyfe, and goodes, and so iudged hym to be banysshed for euer out of the realme of Fraunce, and to lese all his offyces and herytages within the realme; and bicause he had nat sente the Martell, whiche is the token of the offyce of the Constabulary as he was sommoned to do; therefore the offyce was vacant and voyde. Than the dukes and their counsayles, suche as were agaynst syr Oliuer of Clysson, thought necessarye to prouyde some persone to occupye the sayd office, which was so noble and of so great renom, that it might nat long be without a gouernour for the incidents that myght happe to fall. They aduyced that the lorde Coucye was a mete man for it, and layde it to hym: but he excused hymselfe, and sayd: that in no wyse he wolde medyll therwith, he wolde rather forsake the realme of Fraunce. Whan they saw he wolde nat medyll therwith, than the dukes tooke other aduyse.

*Howe the maryage was treated of the lordie Phylip of Arthoys, Erle of Ewe, and the lady Mary of Berrey, Wydowe, daughter to the duke of Berrey; and howe he was admtyttd Constable of Fraunce.*

C A P. CXCHIII.<sup>a</sup>

IN this same sesone there was a tretie of mariage to be had betwen the lordie Philippe of Arthois and the yong widow lady of Berrey, somtym called coëtresse of Duno,<sup>b</sup> and wyfe to Loyes of Bloys. The Frenche kyng wolde gladly haue had this maryage auansed, but the duke of Berrey was natte wyllynge therto, for he thought the erldome of Ewe but a small thyng as to the regarde of her fyrste husbunde; wherfore he thought to mary her more highlyer: indede the ladi was bewtifull, and endued with all vertues y shulde apertayne to a noble lady; howebeit, finally the duke of Berrey was lothe to displease the kyng, yet he had many offers made hym for his daughter, as by the young duke of Lorayne, by the erle of Armynake, and by the sonne and heyre of the Erle of Foiz. The kyng brake of all these maryages, and sayd to his vncl: Fayre vncl of Berrey, we wyll nat that ye shall putte oure cosyn your daughter, come of the Floure de lyce, into so farr cuntries; we wyll prouyde for her a maryage mete, for we wold gladly haue her nere vs; it ys right mete that she be with our aunt your wife, for they be moche of one age. Whan the duke sawe the kynges entente, he refrayned hymself of makynge of any promyse to any person for his daughter: and he sawe well that the kyng enclyned his fauour to his cosyn the lordie Phylippe of Arthois, who was a yonge lusty knyght, and of highe corage, and had endured many traueyls in armes beyond the see and other place, and had atchyued many voyages to his great laude and honoure. Than the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne agreed bytwene thē, that if the kyng wolde gyue to theire cosyn Phillippe of Arthoys the office of constabulary of Fraunce, whiche as than they reputed voyde, by reason of the forfeiture of syr Olyuer of Clysso, than they two agreed at the kynges pleasur i this sayde maryage: for the duke of Berrey thought that if he were constable of Fraūce, he wulde than haue sufficient to maynteyne his estate. On this the two dukes deternyned to speak to the king, and so they dyd, and sayd to hym: Sirs, your counsaile generally are all agreed that the lordie Phillip of Arthoys be preferred to the offyce of constableschyp of Fraunce, whiche is now voyde; for by iudgment of your parlyament Olyuer of Clysso hath forfayted y offyce, whiche may not be long vacant, but it wulde be preiudice to the realme; and, syr, both you and we also are bounde to auance and promote our cosyn of Arthoys, for he is nere of bloode and of lygnage to vs; and, sir, seinge the offyce is voyde, we can not tel wher ye shulde better employ it than on hym; he shall right well exercise it; he is wel beloued with knyghtes and squyers, and he is a man without ennye or couetousness. These wordes pleased well the kyng, who answered and said: Vncl, yf it be voyde, we had rather he had it than another. The kyngs vnclcs sued styll for the lordie Phillip of Arthoys, for y duke of Berrey hated sir Olyuer of Clisson, bycawse he consented to distroye Betysache hys seruante; and the duke of Burgoyne hated hym bycawse he made warre agaynst the duke of Bretayne, and yet the duchesse hated hym worse: fynally, the king assented, so that the duke of Berreÿ wolde agre to the maryage bytwene hys daughter and the lordie Phylippe of Arthoys; and yet, to satsyfy the kinge and the duke of Orlyauce, who bare syr Olyuer of Clisson in that offyce, they

sente

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CXC.

<sup>b</sup> Dunois.

sente syr Guyllyam of Bourdes and syr Guyllyam Martell, both knyghtes of the kynges chamber, and syr Phylippe of Sauoises, a knyght of the duke of Berreys, into Bretayne, to speke with syr Olyuer of Clysson. These knyghtes tooke theyre iourney and rode to Angers, and there they foude the queene of Hierusalem and Johan of Britayne, who receyued them right honorablye for the honoure of the Frenche kyng; ther they taryed two dayes, and demaunded newes of syr Olyuer of Clysson, sayeng: they had curteise leters and messag fro the Frēch kyng to hym, and fro none other persone: and they were answered, no man coulede tel where he was, but that he was suerly in Bretayne in one of his fortresses; but they said he was so fflytting fro one place to another, that it was harde to fynde hym. Than these knyghtes departed, and toke leue of the quen and of her sonne Charles the prynce of Tharent,<sup>a</sup> and of Johan of Bretayne, earle of Pothieu,<sup>b</sup> and rode to Rennes: and the duke of Bretayne and the duchesse were at wannes, and rode nat lightly forthe out of the town, for he euer douted the bussmentes of his ennemye syr Olyuer of Clysson. There was so harde warre made bitwen them that ther was no mercye but deth: and thoughhe the duke was lorde and souerayne of the cuntry, yet there was nether barone, knyghte, nor squyer in Bretayne that wolde arm them agaynst sir Olyuer of Clysson, but dyssymuled and sayde, that their warre touched them nothyng; wherfore they satte styll: the duke coude not haue none other confort.

Whanne these Frenche knyghtes were at Rennes, they enquired where to fynde sir olyuer of Clysson, but they coude here no certayntye of hym: thanne they werre counsayled to drawe to the castell of Joselyn, where syr Olyuer of Clyssons men receyued them well, for the loue of the French kyng. Than they demaunded where they myght here of syr Olyuer of Clysson, sayeng, they had to speke withe him fro the frenche kyng and from the duke of Orlyauce, and from none other persones; but his men coulede tell nothyng of hym, or els they wold nat tell; but they sayde: sirs, suerly it wyll be harde to fynde hym, for this daye he is in one place and to morow in another; but yf yt please you, ye may ryde ouer all the duchye of Bretayne, and serch ouer al hys fortresses and howeses, none shall be closed agaynst yow. Whan they sawe they coulede haue none other answer they departed thence, and rode and vysyted all the fortresses great and small, parteynyng to the lorde Olyuer of Clyssone: thane they came to wannes, and there thei found the duke of Bretaïe and the duchesse, who receyued them, and there they taryed but halfe a daye, and dyscouered nat to the duke the secret mater that they came thither for, nor also the duke examined them nothyng of the mater; also they could nat se there syr Peter of Craon.

Thus they toke leaue of the duke and of the duchesse and retourned to Parys, wher they foude the kyng and the lordes, and there reported to the kyng and to the duke of Orlyauce how they hadd sought al the places and townes parteynyng to sir Olyuer of Clysson, but in no wyse they coulede fynde hym. The dukes of Burgoyne and Berrey were right glad of these newes, and wolde not it had ben otherwise: than anon after, proceded the maryage bytwene the lorde Philip of Artloys and the lady Mary of Berrey; and so thys lorde Philippe was Constable of Fraunce, and vsed the offyc with all proffytes and aduantages therto belongyng of annycnt ordynaunces, yet the lorde Olyuer of Clysson had not renouced the offyce, nor delyucred vp the Martell, whiche is the token of the Constable of Fraunce: for he contynued, and sayd he wolde abyde styll Cōstable, and had done no cause why to lese it nouthur to the kyng nor to the realme: he knew well the erle of Ewe was profered to haue the offyce of the Constable,

<sup>a</sup> Taranto.<sup>b</sup> Penthièvre.

and to enioye the proffytes therof, by consente of the Kynge and how he hadd maryed the daughter of the duke of Berrey, the lady Mary. He toke but lytell regarde to all this, for he knewe hymselfe true to the kynge and to the crowne of Fraunce, and knewe well all that was done agaynst hym was through enuy and hatred that the dukes of Burgoyne and Berey had against hym. Thus the lorde of Clysson lette the mater passe, and contynued styll his warre agaynst þe duke of Bretayne, whiche warre was right fierse and cruell, without mercy or pytie. The lorde of Clysson rode ofte abroad and layde bushmentes than the duke dyde; and all other lordes of Bretayne sattu styll and wolde nat medyll. The duke dyde sende for the lordes of his cuntrye, and they came to speke with hym and to knowe his entent: than the duke requyred them of their ayde and helpe agaynst his ennemy sir Olyuer of Clysson. Than the lordes of Bretayne, as the vicoût of Rohan, the lorde Dignan,<sup>a</sup> the lorde Hermen of Lyon, and dyuers other excused them, and sayd: they knewe no cause why, nor they wolde nat make no warre agaynst the lorde Clysson, but they said they wolde right gladlye endeuour themselves to bringe them to a peace if they coude. When the duke sawe he coude haue none other confort of them, and parceyed well howe he lost and was lykely to lese mo men in that warre than sir Olyuer of Clysson, than he consented that the sayde lordes shulde go to sir Olyuer of Clysson and treate for a peace, and to bringe hym vnder saueconducte to Wannas to speke with hym, at whiche time he sayd he shulde be founde treftable, and to agre to all reason: and if syr Olyuer had done hym any displeasure, that he myght haue amendes accordyng to their aduyse. These lordes were well agreed thus to do, and so they all thre wente to the lorde Olyuer of Clysson, and dyde so moche that they spake with hym (as I was enformed) in the castell of Joselyn, and shewed him the dukes entent; and moreouer to bringe them to a peace (for they sawe well warre was nat fyting bytwene them, but greatly noyed the noble men, marchautes, and cõmons of Bretaygne) they sayd to the lorde Olyuer: Sir, if it wyll please you to go to þe duke, we shall bynde vs to abide here in this castell tyll your retourne; and we doute nat, ye beyng ones in his presence, ye shall lynde him so reasonable that peace and good accorde shal be had bitwene you. Sir Olyuer sayd: Sirs, what shall it profyete you if I were deed? thynke you that I knowe nat the duke of Bretayne? he is so cruell and so haute, that for all his saueconducte, or whatsoever he saythe, if he sawe me in his presẽce he wolde neuer cease tyll I were deed; and thañe shulde you dye lykewise, for my men here wolde soone slee you without mercy; wherefore it is best that bothe you and I saue our lyues, rather than to putte vs in that daunger: I shall kepe me fro hym and I can, and lette hym kepe hym as well fro me. Thañe the lorde Charles of Dignan<sup>a</sup> sayde: Fayre cosyn, ye may saye as it please you: but we thynke surely thoughte he sawe you, he wolde do you no displeasure: this that we offre you is of good affection, and to bringe you to accorde, and we praye you that ye wyll thus do. Than þe lorde Clysson sayde: Sirs, I belue surely ye meane well; but I ensure you vpon this assuraunce I shall neuer go to hym; but sith ye medell in the mater bytwene vs, ye shall nat thynke that I shal be vnreasonable; I shall tell you what I wyll do. Retourne you agayn to the duke, and saye that I wyll nat take you for no pledge nor hostage; lette hym sende me his sonne and heyre, who is maryed to the daughter of Fraũce, and he shall abyde here in this castell with my men tyll I retourne agayne. This way I thynke more surer thã the other, for if ye shulde abyde here (as ye offre) who shulde thañe entremedell in the busynesse bytwene þe duke and me? for without a meane we shall neuer come to accorde.

When these lordes of Bretayne sawe they coude haue non other answeere, they tooke  
their

<sup>a</sup> Dinant.



their leaves and returned to Wānes to the duke, and shewed hym what they had done: but in no wyse the duke wolde consente to sende his somme to the castell of Joselyn: so their warre contynued styll, wherby no persone durst ryde abroad, and marchaundyse was layde downe, thorough whiche the people of good townes and cyties were sore hindred, and poore laborers lette laboringe of the erthe. The duchesse of Burgoyne couertly ayded her cosyne the duke of Bretayne w<sup>th</sup> men of armes, as well of Burgoyne as of other places, for the duke conde get none of his cuntry to take his parte in that quarell agaynst sir Olyuer of Clysson: they alwayes dissymuled the mater, except suche as were of his owne house. The duke of Orlyauce on the other parte loued well the lorde Olyuer of Clysson, and secretly socoured hym with men, and sente hym horses. Sir Olyuer of Clysson roode oftter abroad than the duke dyde; and it fortunod on a day he encountred two squyers of the dukes, the one called Bernard and the other yuonet: they were taken and brought to sir Olyuer, who was gladd of them: he knewe them well; one of them hadde done hym seruyce in tyme past, and the other nat, but he had done hym displeasure. Than sir Olyuer said to yuonet: Remembrest thou nat howe in the castell of Emyme thou sheweddest me but small curtesy; and thou Bernarde haddest pyte on me, and dydest putte of thy gowne and putte it on me whā I stode in my doublet on ŷ pauement, the whiche kepte me fro colde: I wyll now yelde thy curtesy to the; thy lyfe shal be saued: but thou false knaue and traitour yuonet, thou myghtest haue done otherwise thā thou dydest, therefore thou shalte repent it; and therwith drewe his dagger and strake hym to the herte. Another tyme ŷ lorde Clisson rode, with thre hundred speares in his cōpany, towarde the castell of Alroy,<sup>a</sup> where the duke and duchesse of Bretayne were: this was aboute Mydsomer, and by fortune he encountred a fourtie of the Dukes seruauntes, who hadde tyed their horses to the trees, and had sickels in their hādes, and were cuttyng downe the corne, and makyng trusses to cary to their lodgynges lyke forragers. When the lorde Olyuer came on them they were sore afraide, and the lorde Oliuer said: Sirs, howe dare ye come into the feldes to steale and to take awaye poore mēnes corne? ye neuer sowed them, and yet ye cutte theym downe or they be ripe; ye begyn haruest to soone: Leape on your horses and take youre sickels, for this tyme I wyll do you no hurt; and saye to the duke of Bretayne, who is in Alroy,<sup>a</sup> that if he wyll come or sende his men to driue me away, here he shall fynde me tyll the sonne goyng downe. These poore men were gladd they were so delyuered; they feared to haue ben slayne: so they returned to the castell of Alroy<sup>a</sup> to ŷ duke, and shewed hym what they hadde herde and sene; but the duke nor none of his men issued out of ŷ castell. Many scrimysshes were made in Bretayne bytwene the duke and sir Olyuer of Clysson, and they of the countre medled nat bytwene them.

Nowe we wyll leaue to speke of the duke of Bretayne and of sir Oliuer of Clysson and of their warre, and speke of the busynesse bytwene Englande and Frāce.

<sup>a</sup> Auray.

*Of the forme of the peace made bitwene the Frenche kyng and the kyng of Englande, by meanes of the four dukes, vncles to bothe kynges.*

CAP. CXCv.<sup>3</sup>

YE haue herde here before, howe the parliamēt was holden in the cytie of Amyence, and howe the Englysshe lordes departed, and vpon what artycles: and howe the Frenche kyng sent alter into Englande to the duke of Lancastre, and the answere that they hadde of the Englysshmen, who were harde to be brought to any peace: for it laye nat all onely in the kyng nor in the dukes of Lancastre and Yorke, for great parte laye in the commens of Englande and archers, and other seruyng men; they sayd howe they had rather haue warre than peace, and many yong knightes and squiers were of ÿ same opynion, for by reason of the warre they had maynteyned their estates; howebeit, perforce they were fayne to obey as the kyng and his vncles wolde. The duke of Lācastre bycause his ii. daughters were quenes, the one of Spaygne, the other of Portugale, and also bycause he sawe the kyng his nephue enclnyed to haue peace, he sayd the warre had endured longe ynoughe, and sayde he wolde take payne therin, so it myght be for the honour of the kyng and the realme. On the other partie the duke of Burgoyne dyde all ÿ he myght do to haue peace, consydring howe he was greatly charged w̄ the busynesse of Fraunce, and that his two nephues, the Frenche kyng and the duke of Orly-auce, were yonge of age and of discrecion; also he consydred howe he was enherytour to the duchy of Brabant, and thought that if euer Flaunders and Brabant shulde vary agaynst the crowne of Fraūce with the ayde of Englande, as they had other tymes done before, that the realme of Fraunce shulde than haue ouer moche to do. The duke of Burgoyne was a wyse and a farre castyng prince, and depely regarded his busynesses: this duke of Burgoyne, and the duke of Lancastre, tooke great payne to haue a parlyament agayn to be holden at Balynggham,<sup>b</sup> whiche was agreed, and bothe partyes suffyciently prouyded with full auctorites to conclude a full peace; and this counsaile to be holden at Balynggham,<sup>b</sup> in the moneth of May than nexte after, in the yere of our lorde god, a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and xiii. and all suche as shulde be at this assemble were named and apoynted.

Firste on the party of kyng Rycharde kinge of Englande were apoynted his two vncles, the duke of Lancastre and ÿ duke of Gloucestre, who were greatly in faouure with all the cōmons of Englande, and with all such ÿ loued better to haue warre than peace, and with them shulde be the archebyssshop of Yorke, the byssop of London, and other clerkes of the lawe. It was apoynted that these lordes shulde come to Calays, (as they dyd), aboute the myddes of Aprill, anone after the feest of saynte George, holden at the castell of Wyndesore, by the kyng and other knyghtes of the ordre of the garter. And on the frenche party there was assygned the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne to be there, and other counsaylours of Fraūce, and it was ordeyned that they shulde come to the towne of Boloyne, and the frenche king, who (as he shewed had great affection to haue peace bytwene Englāde and hym), sayde to his vncles, that he wolde come as nere to the parlyament as he myght, wherypon it was aduysed where the frenche kinge shulde lye, the parlyament duryng at Balynggham:<sup>b</sup> some sayd at saynt Omers, and some sayd at Thourayne, and some at Mutterell or Abuyle.<sup>c</sup> But all thynges consy-  
dred,

<sup>2</sup> Chapter CXCI.<sup>b</sup> Leulinghem.<sup>c</sup> Montreuil, or Abbeville.

dred, it was aduysed that the kyng shulde lye at Abuyle, bycause the towne was stronge and well fournysshed, and there euery man shulde be well lodged. Whan this was determined, prouysyon was made there for the kyng, and he to be lodged in the abbay of saynt Peters, an abbay of blacke monkes, and thyder came the kyng and the duke of Orlyauce, and their counsayle, and the lorde Reynolde of Corby, chauncellour of Fraunce. The dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne, and suche other as were in their cōmyssion, were at Boloyn. And the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucestre, and other, were at Calays. It was goodly to beholde to se the ordre of this parlyament that was holden at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> bytwene the frenchemen and englysshmen. There were tentes and pauilyons pyght vp to refreshe bothe partyes, and twyse or thyrse a weke the cōmyssioners mette there in a fayre tente, ordayned for that purpose, aboute nyne of the clocke in the forenoone, and there cōmuned vpon many artycles. At whiche tyme I Johan Froysart, (auctour of this booke), was at Abuyle, and desyrous to knowe the effecte of this treatie, I enquired the trouth of suche lordes and other as I thought shulde knowe the certayntie; as it was shewed me, whan they entred into comunycacion, and had sene eche others auctoryte, and perceyned that they had full power to conclude a peace, bothe by lande and see. bytwene Fraunce and Englande, and all their alyes: than one of the firste demaundes y<sup>e</sup> the frenchemen desyred, was to haue Calays rased downe, in such maner that there shulde be neuer after any habytacion there. Therto the dukes of Lancaster and Gloucestre answered and said, how they had no suche auctorite to cause Calays to be beaten downe, but y<sup>e</sup> Englande shulde holde it in his demayne and trewe heritage; and sayd, that if they purposed to entre any further in treatye of peace, to seace of that demaunde, and to speke no more therof. Whan the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne herde their two cosyns of Englande answeere so quyckly in that case, they ceased to speke any more of that mater, for they sawe well their traueyle shulde be but in vayne, and so than spake of other matters. Than the englysshe men demaunded to haue restytucion of all suche landes as had ben delyuered to kyng Rycharde their soueraygne lorde, or to kyng Edwarde the thyrde, or to any of their deputies or cōmyssioners, and also to haue fully payed the sōme of florayns that was lefte vnpayed at the tyme whan the warre renewed bytwene Englande and Fraunce: and this the englysshe clerkes and lawyers proued reasonable and lawfull to be had. The lordes and chauncellours of Fraunce argued to the contrary, and sayd: as to retourne all the landes agayne to the gouernynge of the kyng of Englande and his successours, was imposyble to be done: sayenge howe suche landes, cyties, townes, castels, lordeshyppes, and homages, as the Englysshemen demaunded, were gyuen awaye whan the peace was concluded at Breytigny, and after confermed and sealed at Calays, wherby they were clene put awaye fro the kyng of Englande, whiche peace and grauntes was made in the yere of our lorde god, a thousande, thre hūdred, threscore and one;<sup>b</sup> and therupon the frenche kyng graunted to suche landes great lyberties by his othe, writynge, and promesse, whiche in no wyse came be broken agayne nor reuoked; wherfore they sayd that if the Englysshemen purposed to haue peace, they shulde drawe to some nerer poynt. Than by delyberacyon of the foure dukes, it was deuysed that the frenchemen, as well as the englysshmen, shulde put all their demaundes in writynge, and the same to be delyuered to eyther partye, that they might be regaided at length on bothe partes: and suche as were vnreasonable to be rased and cancelled, and such as were good to be vpholden. This ordynaūce semed to all parties good and reasonable. Before this ordre was taken, y<sup>e</sup> four dukes had to moche busynesse to do, specially the englysshmen had moche payne to here and to vnderstande the frenchemen, who were full of subtyle woides, and cloked perswacions and double of vnderstandynge, the whiche the frenchemen

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.<sup>b</sup> 1360.

men wolde tourne as they lyst to their profyte and aduantage, whiche englysshemen vse nat in their langage, for their speche and entent is playne; and also the englysshmen were enfourmed that the Frenchemen had nat alwayes vpholden the artycles, promyses, and condycyons, ratyfyed in the artycles of peace: yet the frenchmen wolde euer fynde one poynte or other in their wrytynge, by some subtile cloked worde, affermyng that the englysshemen had broken the peace, and nat they; wherfore whan the englysshemen sawe or herde in the frenchemens wrytynge any darke or cloked worde, they made it to be examyned by suche as were profoundly lerned in the lawe, and if they founde it amysse, they caused it to be cancelled and amended, to the entent they wolde leaue nothyng in trouble: and the englysshmen to excuse themselfe, wolde say, that frenchemen lernynge suche subtylties in their youth, muste nedes be more subtile than they. Somtyme suche frowarde wordes bytwene the parties greatly draue of the tyme of treatie. The frenchemen helde themselfe fre, and thought they shulde nat be charged with no suche demaundes, as to make restytucyon of all the landes, with the apendances pertaynyng to the duchy of Acquytayne, with the arerages of that hath ben leuyed syth the warre renewed, to  $\text{¶}$  whiche they wolde neuer acorde. The frenchemen offred to rendre the countre of Tarbe, and of Bygore, and the countye of Piergourt<sup>a</sup> and Pyergyns, and the countie of Agen and Agenoys; but Kaours, Rouergue, Quercy and Lymosyn, they wolde in no wyse delyuer, nor the countie of Ponthyeur, nor of the couñtie of Guynes, more than the englysshmen hadde in their handes at the same tyme. Thus these lordes contynued a fyltene dayes and made no conclusyon, but these dukes determined to sende worde to the two kynge, to gyue them knowledge what they had done. The frenche dukes rode to Abbeuyle, and shewed the kynge all the mater, and howe they had desyred their cosins of Englande to write the hole treatie to the kynge of Englande, and so they sayd they had promysed to do. And as I was enfourmed, on the englysshe party the duke of Glocestre was harder to entreat than the duke of Lancastre: and bycause the commons of Englande knewe somewhat of his entent, therfore they agreed that he shulde be sent to this treatie, for they knewe well that nothyng shulde passe hym without it were for the honour of the realme. Thus these four dukes amyably departed eche fro other, and concluded to mete there agayne the nyynth day after. Thus these englysshe lordes retourned to Calays, and the frenche lordes to Boloyn, and so to Abuyle. That tyme in Abuyle there was a fayre garden, closed with the ryuer of Somme, where as ofentymes the frenche kynge passed the tyme; he sayd to his brother of Orlyanuce, and to his counsaile, that his beyng at Abbeuyle dyd hym moche good in his helthe. There was there the same season with the kynge, the kynge Lyon of Armony,<sup>b</sup> newly come thyder out of Grece; and out of those marches, into his owne couñtre he durst nat entre, for the turkes had conquered it, except the stronge towne of Conych, standynge on the see syde, whiche the genoways helde and kepte for doute of the turkes: for if the turkes had gotten that porte, they shulde haue doone moche yuell by the see to the cyprians and to the Rodes, and other boundes of crysendome: the kyng of Armony<sup>a</sup> wolde gladly haue hadde peace bytwene Englande and Fraunce, in trust that all yonge knyghtes and squyers shulde go into Grece to helpe to conquere agayne his realme of Armony.<sup>a</sup> Whan the frenche kynge yncles were come to Abbeuyle, the kynge was gladd and made them good chere, and demanded howe they had spedde; and they shewed hym all the hole processe, and vpon what poynte they departed, wherof the kynge was gladd, for he shewed to be glad to haue peace. In lyke maner the englyssh dukes, whan they came to Calays, they wrote to the kynge of Englande all the poyntes and artycles of that treatie; and shortly they had agayne a good aunswere, cōmaundyng them to procede for a peace, sayenge, the warre had contynnewed

<sup>a</sup> Perigord.<sup>b</sup> Leo of Armenia.

rynnewd longe ynoughe, and that crystendome therby was sore dōmaged. Thus at the daye prelyxed, the dukes mette agayne at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> and with the frenche lordes came the kyng of Armony,<sup>b</sup> to shewe to the lordes of Englande his busynesse and necessity; he was well knowen with the duke of Gloucestre, for he had ben in Englande whan the frenche army was ordeyned at Sluse, to haue gone into Englande; the duke of Gloucestre the same tyme receyued the kyng of Armony,<sup>b</sup> and made hym good chere at a fayre place of his in Essex, called Plasshey. At Balyngham<sup>a</sup> also the dukes of Englande made the kyng of Armony<sup>b</sup> good chere, and was glad to here hym speke; and they answered hym that gladly they wolde ayde hym, wherof the kyng was ryght ioyfull. Many thynges were treated in this parlyament. And all this season the cardynall of Line<sup>c</sup> lay at Abbeuyle, who was sente thyder in legacyon, by hym that called hymselfe pope Clemente, for maters concernyng the church. The frenche dukes at this assemble at Balyngham<sup>a</sup> wolde haue had certayne artycles comprised in their treatie, concernyng the church, and susteynyng the opynions of this pope Clemente, Robert of Geneue. But whan the Englyssh dukes harde that, they sayd to their cosyns of Fraunce: Cosyns, and ye wyll that we shall fall to any poynthe of conclusion, speke no more of that cardynall: we haue nothyng to do with hym, his matter is a busynes without profyte or effecte; we are determyned vpon a pope to whom we wyll obey: we wyll here no spekyng agaynst hym; if the other medle any thyng with vs we shall departe and goo hence, and leaue all togyder. After that tyme there was no mo wordes of that cardynall, he taried styll at Abbenyle. Than these lordes proceded in their treaties; the duke of Lancastre was well enclyned to haue peace. The Frenche kyng the yere before hadde sore desyred hym to be a good meane to entreate for a peace, and so he promysed to do; howbeit, his brother the duke of Gloucestre was harde to agre, for he layde forth the frenchemens dysceytes and colored wordes that they vsed alwayes in their wrytynges, sayenge: howe the frenchemen wolde alwayes wrestell with their armes dyscouered, whiche was euer perceyued. On a daye there came a squyer of honour, a frenchman, called Robert the hermyte, to ð duke of Gloucestre, he was one of the frenche kynges priuy chambre; whether he was sente to the duke of Gloucestre, or came on his owne heed, I can nat tell, but as the duke shewed me in Englande at Plasshey, this squyer sayd to him: Syr, for the loue of god be nat agaynst this treatie of peace, for ye se howe the lordes of Fraunce do their dylligence to bringe it aboute; ye shall do an almesse dede, for the warre hath to longe endured, and sythe that bothe kynges are content to haue peace, all their subgiettes ought to obey therto. Than the duke answered hym, as he sayd: Roberte, I am nat agaynst it, nor wyll nat be: but ye frenchemen amonge you, ye haue so many coloured wordes, so darke and obscure to our vnderstandyng, so that whan ye wyll it is warre, and whan ye lyst it is peace, thus haue ye ledde vs vnto this presente daye; but if the kyng my soueraygne lorde had beleued me, and suche other of his realme as are boūde to serue hym, peace shulde neuer haue been bytwene Englande and Fraunce, tyll restytucyon had ben made to vs of all that is taken fro vs without cause, by subtylte and crafte, as god and all the worlde knoweth; but sythe the kyng my soueraygne lorde enclyneth to the peace, it is reasone that we agree to the same; and therefore if we make a peace acordyng to the desyres of bothe kynges, sythe we be here assembled, let it be well holden on your syde, for it shall be well kepte on our partye. And thus the duke shewed me that this Roberte the Hermyte departed fro hym, and went to his company. And so these lordes contynued styll their treatie.

I wyll make no further processe, but come to conclusyon. These foure dukes that  
 VOL. II. 4 H were

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.

<sup>b</sup> Armenia.

<sup>c</sup> De Luna

were at this assemble, and had full power and auctorite of their kynges to take a trewece, and to make a peace, they dyd so in suche wyse, that a generall voyce and renome ranne through the towne of Abbeuyle, that a peace was taken vpon certayne artycles bytwene the two kynges, their alyes and confyderates. But I sir Johan Froysart, auctour of this hystory, beyng the same tyme in Abbeuyle, coulde nat lerne the certaynte of the artycles comprised in that peace; howbeit, I knewe that a peaece was taken to endure four yeres, to be kepte ferme and stable, bothe by see and by lande. And it was concluded and agreed, that within the sayde space of the four yere shulde be delyuered to the kyng of Englande for euer, and perpetually to all kynges of Englande and to his comysioners, all the landes and sygnories in the cuntry of Languedoc, and to be as of the demayne and herytage of the crowne of Englande. And this doone and accomplished, it was agreed by the same ordynauce, that certayne capitayns and their men that helde some holdes and fortresses in the realme of Fraunce, shulde auoyde and departe, all suche as made warre, and do make any warre, vnder the shadowe and coloure of the kyng of Englande and the Englysshemen, of what nacyon so euer they were. To all these artycles, these lordes that were as than at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> were bounde in writynges sygnd and sealed, and the cotypes therof sent to bothe kynges. Than the dukes of Lancastre and Gloucestre sent an harauld, called Marche, with letters to the kyng of Englande, shewyng and declaryng all the hole processe and ordynauce concluded in their treatie, vpon the forme of peace. Thus this harauld departed with his letters, and rode to Calys, and passed ouer to Douer, and rode forthe tyll he came to the kyng, who was at a manoure of his owne besyde London. Whan he came in the kynges presence he delyuered his letters. And whan the kyng had redde them, he was ryght ioyouse, and gaue to the haraulde, for his good tydynges bryngyng, great giftes, as the same harauld shewed me after at leysare, as I rode with hym into the realme of Englande. These foure dukes of Fraunce and of Englande were styll at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> and sojourned there in fayre tentes and paulyons, and well and dylygently perused and examyned the artycles of their treatie, and wolde passe nor seale to none tyll all darke and obscure wordes were clerely declared and made perfyte. Nowe in the same season there happed to fall a great lette and trouble in this matter, wherby all was nyghe at a poynte to haue been broken and made voyde; and it is reason I tell you the cause, to the entent that the hystory be playne and trewe.

Ye haue herde here before howe the frenche kyng had great pleasure to lye at Abbeuyle, and also to be nere to here dayly howe f̄ treatie wente forwarde at Balyngham:<sup>a</sup> and whan the four dukes were at a poynt, (as ye haue herde), at the conclusyon of the mater, the dukes of Lancastre and Gloucestre sayd, howe that it was the entensyon of kyng Rycharde, kyng of Englande, and his counsaile, that pope Bonyface beyng at Rome, (whome the Romayns, Almayns, Hungaryons, Lumbardes, Venysyans, and all the nacyons of the worlde chlystened, helde to one pope, and he that named hymselfe Clement degraded and condēpned), that they shulde desyre the frenche kyng to take the same way. Whan the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne vnderstode those wordes, the duke of Burgoyne, (to the entent somewhat to please his cosyns of Englande, and to the entente that their treatie of peace shulde nat be hyndred therby), sayd: Fayre cosyns, we desyre you to haue some respyte to take counsaile vpon that mater, whiche was graunted them: and therupon they toke counsaile, and than answered. and the duke of Burgoyne spake and sayd: Fayre cosyns, the mater and questyon of the two popes, is nat couenable to be moued nor spoken of here amonge vs, and we marueyle why ye put this mater in cōmynycacion, for at the fyrst begynnyng of our treatie, ye refused to

sc

<sup>a</sup> Laulinghem.

se or to speke with the Legate de la Lyne,<sup>a</sup> who is as yet in Abbeuyle, wherefore we rest vs on that. When the cardynalles at Rome dyd chose pope Vibayne, and after his dyscease pope Bonyface, none of our party nor yet of yours were called to that electyon, and in lykewyse we saye of Clement, who is at Auygnon; we saye nat agaynst, but that it were great almes to apease theym, and to vnyte the church, who so myght entende to do it; but lette vs leaue that mater, and lette the vnyuersites and clerkes determyne it; and whan all our busynesse is concluded, and a ferme peace ratified, than by the counsaile of our cosyn the kyng of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> we shall entende therto gladly on our partye, and in lykewyse do you on your partie. With this aunswere the dukes of Englande were well content, for it semed to them reasonable. Than they answered and sayde: Fayre cosyns, ye haue sayde very well, we are content with the same. Thus that mater rested. Than there fell another great lette and trouble, for the frenche kyng who had layne at the towne of Abuyle a great season, bycause of the great disportes, pleasure, and pastyme that he foude there, sodaynly he fell agayne into his maladye of fransy, in lyke maner as he had ben the yere before. He that fyrst perceued it was syr Willyam Martell, a knyght of Normandy, who was alwayes nere to the kynges persone in his priuy chambre. The same season the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne were at Boloyn, or at Balyngham,<sup>c</sup> vpon thende of their parlyament, and they had in a maner all concluded for that season. And as soone at the duke of Orlyauce, brother to the kyng, knewe of this chaunce of the kynges sycknesse, and that he had sene hym, he sente a secrete squyer of his, named Bonyface, to his vnclis to Boloyn, aduertisyng them secretly of the kynges dysease. Whanne the dukes knewe that, they were ryght sorye and departed, for they had allredy taken their leaues of their cosyns of Englande, who were also departed to Calays, and taryed there to here tydynges fro the kyng of Nauerre, and fro the duke of Bretaygne: for they hadde moued in their treatie that the castell of Chyerbourge, standyng on the see syde, vpon the close of Constantyne,<sup>d</sup> in Normandy, whiche the kyng of Englande had in gawge and in keypyng, as I was enfourmed, for the some of threscore thousande nobles of Englande, that the frenche kyng shulde paye the sayd somme, and the castell to retourne to the kyng of Nauerre, and also the stronge castell of Brest that the englysshemen helde, shulde retourne to the duke of Bretaygne. The dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne abode nat the conclusyon of that matter, but came to Abbeuyle, and founde the kyng in ryght yuell estate of his helthe, whereof they were sory: the kynges sycknesse was kepte secrete as longe as it myght be, but it was nat very longe, for suche aduentures are soone spredde abrode. Thus all the lordes that had been in Abbeuyle departed one after another, euery man home to his owne howse. Than it was determynd that the kyng shulde be caryed in an horse lytter to the castell of Crayll, vpon Oyse, where he had ben before: thyder he was conueyed by nyght tyme, and the daye tyme he rested, for the heate of the sonne. The duke of Berrey, and the duke of Orlyauce, rode to Crayell with the kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne rode into Arthoys, and into Flaunders, vysytyng his countreys, and founde the duchesse his wyfe at the castell of Hedyn. As than there was no mo wordes spoken of the lorde de la Ryuer, nor of syr Johan Mercyer, they were as than all forgotten; no man spake of their greuaunce, nor of their delyueraunce. This seconde malady that Charles the frenche kyng was fallen in, dyd put away greatly the spekyng of the people. The wyse and sage men of Fraunce feared before greatly this chaunce, for they sawe the kyng was lykely to fall into that malady, by reason of the great excesse that he had vsed in tymes paste, and through the feblenesse of his heed. Mayster William of Harsley was as than

<sup>a</sup> De Luna.<sup>b</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> Leulinghem.<sup>d</sup> Coutantin.

newly deed, and suche as were nere about ſy kyng coude nat tell where to haue a good ſure phisicyon to wayt vpon ſy kyng; howbeit, they that were about him dyd ſy beſe they coude deuise.

*Of the dethe of pope Clement at Auygnon, and of the lectyon of pope Benedic.*

C A P. CXCVI.<sup>a</sup>

IN that tyme in the moneth of Septembre, passed out of this worlde at Auygnon, Roberte of Geneue, named pope Clement; and it came by hym as he had alwayes said before, whan any man spake of the peace and vnyon of the church, he wolde say alwayes, howe he wolde dye pope, and so he dyd, in maner as ye haue herde here before, wrongfully or ryghtfully I wyll nat determyne. Than the Cardynalles there were sore abashed, and studyed whome they myght chose to be pope. The same tyme the Frenche kynge retourned agayne to his helth, wherof all suche as loued him had great ioye, and specyally the good quene, who had gyuen moche almesse, and done many pylgrymages for the kynge, and caused generall processyons to be made in Parys. As I was enfourmed ſy cardynals at Auygnon dyd electe and chose to be pope the cardynall de la Line.<sup>b</sup> To speke truely this cardynall was an holy manne and of good lyfe. This electyon was made condycionally, that if the frenche kynge and his counsaile were content therwith, or els nat. Nowe regarde and conside the great subiectyon that the church was in, in that, where the church shulde be free, they submytted them to be vnder suche as shulde haue ben ordred by theym. Thus this cardynall de la Lyne<sup>c</sup> was chosen pope, and named Benedic; he gaued generall graces to all clerkes that wolde come to Auygnon, and by the coūsaile of his bretherne the cardynalles, he wrote of the creacyon of his papalyte to the Frenche kynge: but as I was enfourmed the kynge toke lytell regarde therto, for as than he was nat determynd whether he shulde take hym for very pope or nat, and thervpon the kynge sent for the greatest clerkes of the vnyuersyte of Paris, to haue their aduyse and counsaile. Than mayster Johan of Gygencourte, and mayster Pyer Playons, (who were in prudence and lernyng, the greatest clerkes in Parys), sayde to the kynge in the name of all the hole vnyuersyte, howe that the cysme of the church corrupted the crysten fayth, and howe that it myght nat longe endure in that estate, without all crystendome shulde repent it, and rynne in great daunger, and specially the prelates and preestes of the church. They of the vnyuersyte were determynd to sende no rolles to Auygnon, for any clerkes to haue any graces of this pope Benedic. The frenche kynge sawe well their opynyons were reasonable, and wolde haue none of his clerkes enrolled to seke for the popes graces, tyll the mater were better determynd. Thus that mater abode styll in that estate; howbeit, the duke of Berrey exalted greatly this pope Benedic, and sent his roll, wherby moche people were purveyed of graces of this Benedic. The duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse dyssymuled the mater with the kinge, and so dyd the duke of Orlyauce, with many other great lordes of Fraunce: and some for faouere helde them to this pope Benedic, who denyed no man his graces, to the entent that his courte at Auygnon shulde be full, and to haue the more reputacyon. The duke of Bretaygne folowed the frenche kynges opinyon, for he was before tyme so abused by the enfor-macyon of his cosyne the erle of Fiaunders, that his herte wolde neuer encline to be-  
leue

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CXCII.

<sup>b</sup> De Luna.



leue on pope Clemente, though the clerkes of Bretayne beleued and helde hym for pope. So whan any promocyon was voyde in Fraunce, the kynge promoted his clerkes, without gyuyng any knowledge therof to this pope Benedic, wherwith he and his cardynalles at Auygnon were sore abasshed, and douted lest the frenche kynge wolde restrayne suche rentes and profytes as they were wonte to haue of the benefyces gyuen in the realme of Fraunce. Than they determyned to sende a legate into Fraunce to speke with the kynge and his counsaile, to knowe howe he wolde ordre hym agaynst the church, and to shewe hym howe that he that is chosen pope is vnder this condycyon, that if he be pleased, than he to abyde styll as pope, or els they to put hym out of his papalyte, and the cardynals to entre agayne into conclaue, and chose one after the kynges pleasure. At this tyme was come to Paris, and was about the kynge, the freer mynour a meke man, who was sente into Fraunce by pope Bonyface of Rome: the frenche kynge herde gladly this freers prechyng. Than came into Fraunce the legate fro Auygnon, who was a great and a subtyl clerke, and well langaged. Than the hole vnyuersyte counsayled the kynge, and sayde howe it were well done that eyther Bonyface, or els Benedic, to be put oute of their papalyte, and all his cardynalles to be putte out of their cardynalties, and in stede of them to be chosyn good clerkes, wysemen, and of good consyence, as well of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and Fraunce, as of other nacyons, and they to be sette togyder by good delyberacyon and counsaile, without fauour or yuell wyll, to sette the church therby at one poynt with one pope. They sayde, they sawe well there was none other waye to bringe it to a good conclusyon, bycause pride and enuy so reygned in the worlde, that the princes and lordes eche helde their owne partie. This preposycion that the vnyuersite hadde made before the kynge, pleased right well the kynge, and the dukes of Orlyauce and of Burgoyne; and the kyng sayd he wolde write and sende messengers to the kynge of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and of Boesme,<sup>b</sup> and of Hungry, and to the kyng of Englande, and he thought hymselfe sure ynough of the kynges of Castyle, of Nauer, of Aragon, of Cicyle, of Naples, and of Scotlāde, that they wolde obey to suche a pope as he and his realme obeyed vnto: and vpon this the frenche kyng sente his letters and messengers to these sayde kynges. There was good leysar in doing of this, bothe in goyng and cōmyng agayne with answer. And in ȝ meane tyme there passed out of this worlde at Parys. the noble clerke mayster Johan of Gygencourt, of whose dethe the kynge and the lordes, and ȝ hole vniuersyte were right sorie, for he laste nat his felowe behynde him, and he had in his dayes taken great payne to reforme the church, and to haue brought it into a perfyte vnyte.

*Of a clerke named mayster Johan of Warenes.*

CAP. CXCVII.<sup>c</sup>

THE same season there was a great clerke at Auignone, bothe of Scyence and of prudence, doctor in the lawes and auditor of the palais of the nasion of Rēnes,<sup>d</sup> called maister Johan of Warenes: and by reason of suche seruice as he had done to pope Clement and to other, he was greatly auauāced and promoted with benefices, and he was at ȝ poynt to be a bysshop or a cardynall; he had been chapelayne with one at Auygnone,

<sup>a</sup> Germany.

<sup>b</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CXCIII.

<sup>d</sup> Rheims.

none, called saynte Peter of Lusenbource: the same maister Johan Warēnes for all his promociōns he resigned thē all, and retayned to hymselfe but a small lyueng, and that was the sexteuery of our lady churchē in Renes,<sup>a</sup> worthe by yere, if he be resydent, a C. frankes, and in absence but xxx. and so departed fro Auignon, and came to dwell nere to Renes, in a village called saint Ley: and there he ledde an holy lyfe, and preched ſy worde of god, and exalted moche the pope at Auygnon, and conaēpned in his wordes the pope at Rome: he was visited of moche people of all countreis that came to se hym, and to se ſy holy lyfe that he ledde: he fasted every day: some people sayd that ſy cardynals at Auignon, by crafte and subtylte, hadde sent hym thider to exalte and to colour their opinyon, or els he was come thider to shewe his holy lyfe; he wolde in no wyse be called the holy man of saynt Ley, but the audytor; he had alwayes in his cōpany his mother; he sayd masse every daye deuoutly, and all that was gyuen him, he wolde gyue it agayne for goddessaake; he wolde aske nothyng of no man.

Nowe lette vs leaue spekyng of hym, and speke of other busynesse, as the mater requyret.

*Howe the kyng of Englande gaue to the duke of Lancastre and to his heyres for euer the duchy of Acquytayne, and howe the kyng prepared to go into Irelande, and the duke into Acquytayne.*

#### CAP. CXCVIII.<sup>b</sup>

YE haue herde here before in this hystorie, howe trewece was taken bytwene Englande and Fraunce, and there adherētes and alyes, bothe by see and by lande; for all that, yet there were robbers and pyllers in Languedocke, whiche were straungers and of farre countreis, as of Gascoyne, of Bierne, and of Almaygne,<sup>c</sup> and amonge other sir Johan of Grayle,<sup>d</sup> bastarde, (sonne somtyme of the Captall of Beufes,<sup>e</sup> a yonge and an experte knyght,) was capitayne of the stronge castell of Bouteuyll; these capitayns of the garysons in Bigore, and marchynge on the realme of Arragone, and on the fronters of Xaynton, and in the marchesse of Rochell, and of the garyson of Mortaygne, were sore displeased that they myght natte ouer rynne the countrey, as they were accustomed to do: for they were straitlye commaunded on payne of greuous punysshment, to do nyng that shulde soude to the reproche of the peace.

In this season it was agreed in Englande, consyderynge that the kyng was yonge, and that he hadde peace with all his ennemyes farre and nere, excepte with Irelande, for he claymed that lande of enherytaūce, and his predecesours before him, and was written kyng and lorde of Irelande; and kyng Edward, graunfater to kyng Rycharde, made allwayes warre with the Irysshemen: and to the entente that the yonge knyghtes and squyers of Englande shulde employe themselfe in dedes of armes, and therby to augment and encrease the honour of the realme, it was concluded that kyng Rycharde of Englande shulde make thyder a voyage with puyssaūce of menne of warre, and so to entre into Irelande, and nat to retourne agayne without they hadde an honourable composycion or conclusyon. The same season it was concluded, that the duke of Lancastre, who had greatlye traueyled bothe by see and by lande, for the augmentacyon and honour of the realme of Englande, shulde make another voyage with fyue hundred

<sup>a</sup> Rheims.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CXCIV.

<sup>c</sup> Germany.

<sup>d</sup> Greilly.

<sup>e</sup> Buch.

hundred menne of armes, and a thousande archers, and to take shyppe at Hampton, or at Plommouthe, and so to sayle to Guyane,<sup>a</sup> and to Acquitaygne. And it was the entencion of kyng Rycharde, and by consent of all his counsaile, that the duke of Lancastre shulde haue for euer to hym and to his heyres, all the countrey of Acquitayne, with the purtenaunces, as kyng Edwarde his father had, or any other kynges, or dukes of Acquitayne, before tyme had holden and optayned, and as kyng Rycharde at y tyme had: reserued always the homage that he shulde do to the kyng of Englande, and to any kynges to come after; but as for all the obeysaunces, rentes, lordshyppes, and reuenues, shulde parteygne to the duke of Lācastre, and to his heyres for euer: of this the kyng made to hym a clere graunt, and conyrmed it vnder his writyng and seale. With this gyfte the duke of Lācastre was well cōtent, and good cause why, for in that duchy are landes and countreis for a great lorde to maynteygne his estate withall. The Charter of this gyfte was engrosed and dewly examyned, and paste by great delyberacyon, and good aduise of counsaile; beyng present the kyng and his two vnclis, the dukes of Yorke, and the duke of Gloucestre, the erle of Salisbury, the erle of Arundell, the erle of Derby, sonne to the duke of Lancastre, and also therle Marshall erle of Rutlande, the erle of Northūberlande, the erle of Nottyngham, the lorde Thomas Percy, the lorde Spensar, the lorde Beamonde, the lorde Willyam of Arundell, the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury, and the archebysshoppe of Yorke, and the bysshoppe of London, and other, all these were presente, and dyuers other Prelates and barownes of Englande. Thanne the duke of Lancastre purposed to make his prouisyon to passe the see to go into Acquitayne, to enioye the gyfte that the kyng hadde gyuen hym. In lykewise great prouisyon was made for the kynges voyage into Irelande and lordes and other were apoynted, suche as shulde passe the see with the kyng, and had warnyng to make thē redy.

*Of the dethe of Quene Anne of Englande, wyfe to kyng Rycharde, daughter to the kyng of Boesme,<sup>b</sup> and Emperour of Almaygne.<sup>c</sup>*

GAP. CXCIX.<sup>d</sup>

THUS, (as I haue shewed), great preparacyons was made at the portes and hauyns, where as the kyng shulde take shyppe for to go into Irelande; and in lykewise there as the duke of Lancastre shulde passe to go into Acquitayne. Their voyage was lette and taryed y space of two monethes lengar than it shulde haue ben, and I shall tell you why.

The same season that all these preparacyons was made, the Quene named Anne toke a sickenesse, wherby the kyng and all his lordes were ryght sore troubled, for she was so sore sicke that she passed out of this worlde at the feest of Penthecost, the yere of our lorde god a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and fourtene, of whose dethe the kyng and all that loued her, ladyes and damoselles, were sore troubled, and in great heuynesse: she was buryed at Poules, in London, and her obsequies done after at good ley-sar, for the king wolde haue it done sumptuously, with great habūdauce of waxe, tapers, and torches, so that the lyke hadde nat ben sene before. The kyng wolde haue it so, bycause she was the Emperours daughter of Rome, and kyng of Almaygne.<sup>c</sup>

The

<sup>a</sup> Guienne.

<sup>b</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>c</sup> Germany.

<sup>d</sup> Chapter CXCIV.

The kyng loued her so entierly. They were maryed yonge; howbeit, she dyed without issue. Thus in one season the kyng, the duke of Lancastre, and the erle of Derby, were wydowers; and there was no spekyng of remaryeng, nor the kyng wolde here no spekyng therof. Thus the kynges voyage into Irelande was somewhat retarded and let; howbeit, the prouisyon, and other lordes, suche as shulde go with the kyng, passed ouer the see and landed at Duuelyn,<sup>a</sup> whiche was alwayes Englysshe, and there is an archebischoppe who was with the kyng. And anone after Mydsomer the kyng departed fro the marchesse of London, and toke the waye through Wales, hunting and sportyng hym, to forgette the dethe of his quene, and suche as shulde go with the kyng sette forwarde. Two of the kynges vnclis, Edmonde duke of Yorke, and Thomas duke of Gloucestre, constable of Englande, sette forwarde in great arrave, so dyde other lordes, as the erle of Rutlande, soune to the duke of Yorke, the erle marshall erle of Salisbury, the erle of Arundell, the lorde Wyllyam of Arundell, the erle of Northumberlande lorde Percy, lorde Thomas Percy his brother, great Seneschall of Englande, the erles of Deuonshyre and Notyngnam, and great nombre of other knyghtes and squiers, suche reserved, as abode behynde to kepe the marchesse agaynst the scottes, who were suche people as neuer kepte no truce nor promyse. The lorde Johan of Hollande, erle of Huntyngton, was as than on his waye to Jerusalem, and to saynt Katheryns mount,<sup>b</sup> and purposed to retourne by the realme of Hungry, for as he passed through Frauce, (where he hadde great chere of the kyng, and of his brother and vnclis,) he herde howe the kyng of Hungry, and the great Turke, shuld haue batayle togyder, therefore he thought surelye to be at that iourney: on the other syde the duke of Lancastre came to Plomouthe, where his shippes laye redy; and whan his men were come, and his vesselles all charged, and had wynde at wyll, they toke shippyng and disancred and sayled towardes Burdeaux, on the ryuer of Garon.

Nowe lette vs speke of the kyng of Englande, who had in his cōpany four thousande men of armes, and thyrtye thousande archers; they shipped at thre places, at Bristowe, at Holyheed, and at Herforde,<sup>c</sup> they passed ouer daylye. And in Irelande all redy there was a valyaunt knyght of Englande, called erle of Ormonde: he helde landes in Irelande, and so dyde his predecessours, but it was as than in debate. The erle Marshall of Englande hadde the vwarde with fyftene hundred speares, and two thousande archers. The kyng of Englande and his two vnclis toke shypinge at Herforde<sup>c</sup> in Wales. Thus the army passed ouer without dōmage, and than they were lodged in Irelande, by the apoyntement of the duke of Gloucestre, cōstable of Englande, and by the marshals, all abrode in the cōuntry, beyond y cytie of Duuelyn,<sup>a</sup> a xxx. myle, for the cōuntry was as thañe inhabytale; howbeit, they laye wysely and surely for feare of the yrisshemen, as nede was, or els they myght haue taken great dōmage; and the kyng and his vnclis were lodged in the cytie of Duuelyn,<sup>a</sup> and as it was shewed me all the whyle they were there, they were largely prouyded of vitayls, for the Englysshemmen are suche men of warre as can well forrage and take aduaūtage, and makē good prouisyon for therselue and their horses. And what fell of this voyage I shall shewe you here after, as I was enformed.

<sup>a</sup> Dublin.<sup>b</sup> St. Catharine of Mount Sinai.<sup>c</sup> Haverford-west ?

*Howe sir Johau Froissart arryued in Englande, and of the gyfte of a boke that he gauē to the kyng.*

CAP. CC.<sup>a</sup>

TREWE it was, that I sir Johau Froissart, (as at that tyme treasurer and chanon of Chymay, in the erldome of Heynaulte, in the diocese of Liege), had great affectyon to go and se the realme of Englande, whan I had ben in Abbenyle, and sawe that trewece was taken bytwene the realmes of Englande and Fraunce, and other countreis to them conioyned, and there adherentes, to endure four yeres by see and by lande. Many reasons moued me to make that voyage; one was, bycause in my youthe I hadde been brought vp in the court of the noble kyng Edwarde the thyrde, and of quene Philyppe his wyfe, and amonge their chyldren, and other barones of Englande, that as than were alyue, in whome I founde all noblenesse, honour, largesse, and courtesy; therefore I desyred to se the countre, thynkyng therby I shulde lyue moche the lengar, for I hadde nat been there xxvii. yere before, and I thought, though I sawe natte those lordes that I lefte alyue there, yet at the leest I shulde se their heyres, the whiche shulde do me moche good to se, and also to iustifye the hystories and maters that I hadde written of them: and or I toke my journey, I spake with duke Aubert of Bauyere,<sup>b</sup> and with the Erle of Heynaulte, Hollande, Zelande, and lorde of Freese,<sup>c</sup> and with my lorde Wyllyam erle of Ostreuaunt, and with my right honourable lady Jahane duchesse of Brabant and of Lusenbourge, and with the lorde Engerant, lorde Coucy, and with the gentyll knyght the lorde of Gomegynes, who in his youthe and myne had been toguyder in Englande in the kynges courte; in lykewise so had I sene there the lorde of Coucy, and dyuers other nobles of Fraunce, holden great housholdes in London, whan they laye there in hostage for the redempcion of kyng Johan, as than Frenche kyng, as it hath been shewed here before in this hystorie.

These sayd lordes, and the Duchesse of Brabant, counsayled me to take this journey, and gauē me letters of recommendacyon to the kyng of Englande and to his vnclcs, sauynge the lorde Coucy: he wolde nat write to the kyng bycause he was a Frenche-man, therefore he durste nat, but to his daughter, who as than was called duchesse of Irelande; and I had engrosed in a fayre boke well enlumyned, all the matters of amours and moraltees, that in four and twentie yeres before I hadde made and compyled, whiche greatly quickened my desyre to go into Englande to se kyng Rycharde, who was sonne to the noble prince of Wales and of Acquitayne, for I hadde nat sene this kyng Rycharde sythe he was christened in the Cathedrall church of Burdeaux, at whiche tyme I was there, and thought to haue goone with the prince the journey into Galycia in Spayne; and whaie we were in the cytie of Aste,<sup>d</sup> the prince sente me backe into Englande to the Quene his mother.

For these causes and other I hadde great desyre to go into Englande to se the kyng and his vnclcs. Also I hadde this said fayre boke well couered with veluet, garnysshed with clapses of syluer and gylte, therof to make a present to the kyng at my fyrst comynge to his presence; I hadde suche desyre to goo this voyage, that the payne and trayeyle greued me nothyng. Thus prouyded of horses and other necessaries, I passed

VOL. II.

4 1

the

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CXCVI.<sup>b</sup> Bavaria.<sup>c</sup> Friezland.<sup>d</sup> Dax.

the see at Calais, and came to Douer, the xii. daye of the moneth of July; whāne I came there I founde no man of my knowledge, it was so longe sythe I had been in Englande, and the houses were all newly chaūged, and yonge children were become men, and ŷ women knewe me natte, nor I them; so I abode halfe a daye and all a nyght at Douer; it was on a Tuesday, and the nexte daye by nyne of the clocke I came to Canterbury, to saynt Thomas shrine, and to the tombe of the noble prince of Wales, who is there entered ryght richely; there I herde masse, and made myne offrynge to the holy saynt, and thanne dynded at my lodgyng; and there I was enformed howe kyng Richarde shulde be there the nexte daye on pylgrimage, whiche was after his retourne out of Irelande, where he had ben the space of nyne monethes or there about: the kyng hadde a deuocyon to visyte saynt Thomas shrine, and also bycause the prince his father was there buryed: than I thought to abyde the kyng there, and so I dyde; and the next daye the kyng came thyder with a noble company of lordes, ladies, and damoselles: and whan I was among them they semed to me all newe folkes, I knewe no persone; the tyme was sore chaūged in xxviii. yere, and with the kyng as than was none of his vnclis; the duke of Lācastre was in Acquitayne, and the dukes of Yorke and Gloucēstre were in other busynesses, so that I was at the firste all abashed, for if I had sene any auncyent knyght that had ben with kyng Edward, or with the price, I had ben well reconforted and wolde haue gone to hym, but I coulde se none suche. Thāne I demaunded for a knyght called sir Rycharde Seury,<sup>a</sup> whyder he were alyue or nat? and it was shewed me yes, but he was at London. Than I thought to go to ŷ lorde Thomas Percy, great seneschall of Englade, who was there with the kyng: so I acquaynted me with hym, and I founde hym right honorable and gracyous, and he offred to present me and my letters to the kyng, wherof I was right ioyfull, for it behoned me to haue some meanes to bringe me to the presence of suche a prince as the kyng of Englande was; he wente to the kynges chambre, at whiche tyme the kyng was gone to slepe, and so he shewed me, and badde me retourne to my lodgyng and come agayne, and so I dyde; and whan I came to the bysshoppes palays, I founde the lorde Thomas Percy redy to ryde to Ospring, and he counsayled me to make as than no knowledge of my beyng there, but to folowe the court: and sayd he wolde cause me euer to be well lodged tyl the kyng shulde be at the fayre castell of Ledes, in Kent. I ordered me after his counsayle and rode before to Ospring; and by aduēture I was lodged in an house where was lodged a gentyll knyght of Englande, called sir Wyllyam Lysle; he was taryed there behynde the kyng, bycause he had payne in his heed all the nyght before: he was one of the kynges preuy chambre; and whan he sawe that I was a straunger, and as he thought, of the marchesse of Fraunce, bycause of my langage, we fyll in acquayntaunce togyuder: for gentyllmen of Englande are curtesse, treatable, and gladd of acquayntaunce; than he demaunded what I was, and what busynesse I had to do in those parties; I shewed hym a great parte of my cōmyng thyder, and all that the lorde Thomas Percy hadde sayd to me, and ordred me to do. He than answered and sayde, howe I coulde nat haue a better meane, and that on ŷ Friday ŷ kyng shulde be at the castell of Ledes; and he shewed me that whan I came there, I shuld fynde there the duke of Yorke the kynges vncl, wherof I was ryght gladde, bycause I had letters dyrected to hym, and also that in his youthe he hadde sene me, in the courte of the noble kyng Edward his father, and with ŷ queene his mother. Than on the Friday in the mornyng sir W<sup>l</sup>liam Lysle and I rode togyuder, and on the waye I demaunded of hym if he had been with the kyng in the voyage into Irelande. He answered me yes. Than I demaunded of hym the maner of the hole that is in Irelande, called saynt Patrykes purgatorie, if it were trewe that was sayde of it or nat. Than he sayde, that of a suretie  
suche

<sup>a</sup> Stury.

suche a hole there was, and that he hymselfe and another knyght of Englande hadde ben there whyle the kyng laye at Duelyn,\* and sayd howe they entred into the hoole and were closed in at the sonne goynge downe, and abode there all nyght, and the nexte mornynge issued out agayne at the son risynge. Than I demaūded if he had any suche strāge sightes or vysions as were spoken of. Than he sayd, howe that whan he and his felowe were entred and past the gate ȳ was called ȳ purgatorie of saynt Patryke, and that they were discended and gone downe thre or four paces, discending downe as into a cellar, a certayne hoothe wapure rose agaynst them, and strake so into their heedes, that they were fayne to syt downe on the steeres, whiche are of stone; and after they had sytte there a season, they had great desyre to slepe, and so fell aslepe and slepte there all nyght. Than I demaūded that if in their slepe they knewe where they were, or what visyons they had. He answered me, that in slepyng they entred into great ymaginacyōs and in marueylous dremes, otherwyse than they were wont to haue in their chambres: and in the mornynge they issued out, and within a shorte season clene for-gate their dremes and visyons, wherfore he sayde he thought all that mater was but a fantasy. Than I lefte spekyng any further of that matter, bycause I wolde fayne haue knownen of hym what was done in the voyage in Irelande: and I thought as thā to haue demaūded what the kyng had done in that iourney; but than company of other knyghtes came and fell in communicacion with hym, so that I lefte my purpose for that tyme. Thus we rode to Ledes, and thyder came the kyng and all his cōpany, and there I founde the lorde Edmonde duke of Yorke. Than I went to hym and delyuered my letters fro the erle of Heynaulte his cosyn, and fro the erle of Ostreaunt. The duke knewe me well, and made me good chere, and sayde: Sir Johan, holde you alwayes nere to vs, and we shall shewe you loue and courtesy: we are boūde therto for the loue of tyme past, and for loue of my lady the olde Quene my mother, in whose courte ye were, we haue good remembrance therof. Than I thanked hym as reason required. So I was aduansed by reason of hym and sir Thomas Percy, and sir William Lysle; by their meanes I was brought into the kynges chambre, and into his presence by meanes of his vnclē the duke of Yorke. Than I delyuered my letters to the kyng, and he toke and reed thē at good leysar. Than he sayd to me that I was welcome, as he that hadde ben and is of the Englysshe courte. As on that daye I shewed nat the kyng the boke that I hadde brought for hym, he was so sore occupied w̄ great affayres, that I had as than no leysar to present my boke. The kyng was sore busyed there in counsaile for two great and nightye maters: First was, in determynynge to sende sufficient messangers, as therle of Rutlande his cosyn germayne, and the erle Marshall, the arch-bysshoppe of Dublyn, the byssshoppe of Ely, the lorde Loys Clyfforde, the lorde Henry Beaumonde, the lorde Hughe Spensar, and many other, ouer the see to Charles the Frenche kyng, to treat with hym for a maryage, to be hadde bytwene the kyng of Englande, and the Frenche kynges eldest doughter, named Isabell, of the age of eyght yeres. The secōde cause was the lorde de la Barde, the lorde of Taryde, the lorde of Pyntherne, the lorde of Newcastle,<sup>b</sup> the lorde of Nesque,<sup>c</sup> the lorde of Copane, and the counsaylours of Burdeux, Bayon, and of Daxe, were come into Englande, and had quickly pursued their mater, sythe the kynges retourne out of Irelande, to haue an answer, of the requestes and processe that they had put forth to the kyng, on the gyfte that the kyng had gyuen to his vnclē the duke of Lācastre, of the landes, seignories, lordshippes, and baronies in Acquytayne, whiche they verified to pertaygne to the kyng and realme of Englande; they hadde alleged to the kyng and his counsaile, that his gyfte myght nat passe so, bycause it was vnprofytable and inutyle: for they sayd all those landes helde of right and of the demayne of the crowne of Englande, wherfore

\* Dublin.

<sup>b</sup> Château-neuf.<sup>c</sup> De l'Évesque.

they sayde, they wolde nat disioyne nor disceuer thē fro the crowne: they alleged furthermore many other reasonable causes, as ye shall here after in this processe: but thus to haue cōsaille of those two great matters, the kyng had sente for the moost parte of the prelates and lordes of Englande to be at the feest of Maudelyntyde, at a manner of the kynges called Eltham, a seuyn Englysshe myles fro London; and whan they had taryed at Ledes a four dayes, the kyng returned to Rochester and so to Elthame, and so I rode forthe in the kynges company.

*Of the refuge of them of Acquytayne made to the duke of Lancastre; and howe they sent into Englande to the kyng and his counsaile, shewyng hym the wyll of the hole cōtrei of Acquytayne.*

### CAP. CCI.<sup>2</sup>

IN rydyng the waye bytwene Leades and Eltham, I demaunded of syr Willyam Lysle and of syr Johñ of Graily, capitayne of Bouteuyll, ʒ cause why the king drewe to London warde, and why that great counsaile shulde assemble at Eltham: they tolde me, and specially syr Johan Graily rehersed to me playnly why ʒ lordes of Gascon were come thyder, and the counsaylours of the good townes and cyties. Thus I was enfourmed by this knight, who knewe the trouth, for he was often tymes amonge them; they and he were in a maner all of one countrey and fronter; he sayde thus: Surely whan the Duke of Lancastre came fyrst into Acquytayne, suffyciently fournysshed with charters and wrytinges, engrosed and sealed with the great seale of Englande, and enrolled and fermely decreed with full accorde of all prelates and lordes of Englande, and also by consente of the duke Edmonde of yorke and Erle of Cambridge, and of Thomas duke of Gloucestre, though the sayd herytages might by succession haue come to them, for Kyng Rycharde of Englande their nephue had as than no chyl dren, and these sayd two dukes were brethern germayns of father and mother to the duke of Lancastre: whiche duke, anone after he was come into Acquytayne, sente some of his counsaile to the cytie of Burdeaux, to shewe to the Mayre and counsaylours of the towne the fourme and tenoure of his request, and for what cause he was come into the countrey. Whan they herde this they greatly marcyled; howebeit, they ioyfully receyued the kynges and dukes cōmyssioners, for the honoure of the kyng, to whome they ought their seruyce and obeysaunce. Than they desyred to take cōsaille, and so they dyd: than after they aunswered and said, that the duke of Lancastre, sonne to kyng Edward, who had ben their lorde, was welcome amōge them, and none otherwyse; for they sayde, they had nat so farre forthe taken counsaile as to receyue hym to their souerayne lorde, for they sayd that to kyng Rycharde their soueraygne lorde they had done feaultie and homage, and as than he had made them no qytāce. Than answered the cōmyssioners and said: Syrs, feare nat but that ye shall haue suffyciem dyscharge in that behalfe, so ye take the duke to your souerayne lorde, for ye shal: se by the content of the kynges charters that there shall neuer questyon be made therof in tyme to come. Whañe they of Burdeaux sawe they were so nere touched, they founde theym another socoure, and said: Fayre lordes, your cōmyssion extendeth nat all onely vpon vs, but in lykewyse to them of the cytie of Bayon, and to the prelates and barones of Gascoyne, and to all that be vnder the obeysaunce of the kyng of Englande; ye shall drawe you towards them, and as they do and ordre thē we shall folowe the same. Other aunswere

<sup>2</sup> Chapter CXCVII.



swere the cōmyssioners coulde nat haue at that tyme of them of Burdeaux: than they departed and rode to Lyborne, where the duke of Lancastre laye.

Whan the duke herde their aunsweres, he imagyned in hymselfe that the busynesse that he was come thyder for, shulde nat be so sone atcheued as he trusted it shulde haue ben. Than he sent his cōsaille to the cytie of Bayon; and as they sped in Burdeaux so they dyd there; other answere coude they haue none: and fynally all the prelates and noble men, counsaylours of cytes and good townes in Gascoyne, vnder the obeysaunce of the kyng of Englande, conioyned them togyder, and concluded in the forme and manner as I shall shewe you. They sayde they wolde gladly receyue þe duke of Lancastre into their cyties, townes, and castelles, as the soune of kyng Edward, and vncle to kinge Rycharde of Englade, so that at his entringes he shulde solemply swere that pesably and in good maner he and his shulde entreat the people without enforsynge of any thyng, and to pay reasonably for euery thyng that they shulde dispende, and also to swere that he shulde nat oppresse nor cause to be oppressed the iurysdictyon of the crowne of Englande, by no maner of waye nor accyon. The duke aunswered to this and sayd, that he was nat come into the country to greue or oppresse the people, but wolde rather kepe and defende them agaynst all men as his herytage: and desyred and requyred theym that the cōmaundement of the kyng of Englande myght be obserued and acomplished. Than the hole country by a comune voyce sayd, þe in no wyse they wolde departe fro the crowne of Englande, and that it was nat in the kyng of Englandes power to gyue them away to another lorde, nor to put them fro the crowne of Englande. These demaundes and denyenges were longe a debatyng bytwene the duke of Lancastre and the lordes and townes of Gascon; and whan the duke sawe none other remedy, than he made request to the country that the prelates and noble men and cōsailours of the good townes shulde sende suffycient personages to the kyng of Englande and to his counsaile, and howe he wolde sende in lykewyse notable persones of his counsaile; and loke whatsoeuer the kyng and his counsaile shulde determyne in that cause, he promysed surely to abyde therby, whether it were with hym or agaynst him. Than they of Gascon consyded well that his request was reasonable, and agreed to do as the duke had desyred. Than the duke rode to Burdeaux, and was lodged in the abbey of saint Andrewes, where he had ben lodged before tyme. Than they of the cytie of Bayon and Dax apoynted suffycient personages to sende into Englande, and the barons of Gascon vnder the kinges obeysaunce sent in lyke wyse. Also ye shall knowe, that whan þe frenche kyng and his vnclen vnderstode that the duke of Lancastre was pesably entred into the cytie of Burdeaux, and knewe nat for what entent, nor whether he wolde kepe or breake the trewce, than he and his counsaile determynd to sende to hym, to knowe somewhat of his entent. There was apoynted to go, the lorde Boucyquaut, marshall of Fraunce, the lorde Johan of castell Morante, and Johan Barres of Barrois, and they to haue with them a thousande speares: thus they rode forth tyll they came to the cytie of Agen, and there taryed: than they sent harauldes and messuagers to Burdeaux to the duke of Lancastre, shewyng hym howe they wolde gladly speke with hym. The duke made these messengers good chere, and wrote agayne to these lordes, certifyng them, that where as they had great desyre to speke with hym, in lyke wyse he had the same to speke with them; and bycause they shulde take þe lesse payne, he promysed to come and mete with them at Bergerate.<sup>3</sup> And whan the frenche lordes sawe this letter, they gaue credence therto, and ordred them there after; and as sone as they knewe that the duke was come to Bergerate<sup>3</sup> they departed fro Agen and rode thyder: there they were receyued and lodged in the towne, and their

company

<sup>3</sup> Bergerac.

company in the subbarbes. These lordes spake with the Duke, and shewed hym their message. The duke receyued them swetely, and answered and sayd, howe he wolde be a good and a kynde ueyghbour to the frenche kyng and the realme, and to kepe and mayntayne the twrece taken bytwene the two kynges: for he sayde he hymselfe was one of the principalles that ayded to make and ordayne that truce; wherfore he sayd he ought nat nor wolde nat breke it, therof they myght be well assured. The dukes aunswere greatly pleased the lordes of Fraunce. Thus the duke and they were louingly togyder, and the duke gaue them a great dyner and supper, and after, they tooke their leane, and the duke retourned to Burdeaux and the frenchemen into Fraunce: they founde in their waye the duke of Berrey at the cytie of Poycters, and they shewed hym what they had doone. The duke of Berrey thought the duke of Lancasters answer reasonable, and so dyd y<sup>e</sup> frenche kyng and the duke of Burgoyne, and so the mater abode styll in this estate; and for this cause, quod sir Johan Graily, the duke of Lancastre hath sent hyther into Englande of his counsaile, as syr Wylliam Perreer and syr Peter Clyfton, and two clerkes lerned in the lawe, as mayster Johan Huche and mayster Johan Rycharde of Leycettour,\* to treat and to plete his maters before the kyng and his vnles; and for this cause the kyng rydeth to Eltham, and shall be there on thursday nexte, that shall be Mary maudelyn daye; but what shal be done as yet I knowe nat; but as I am enfourmed of some englysshemen that knowe somwhat, the duke of Gloucestre will be princypally of the opynion y<sup>e</sup> his brother the duke of Lancastre shulde abyde in Guyen rather than to retourne agayne into Englande, because he was so great with the kyng: for I ensure you this duke of Gloucestre is a marueylous mynded man, proude and presumptuous; he wolde rule all hymselfe, and he is so beloued of the comynalte, that whatsoeuer he saythe they wyll encline to him. He caused the valyaunte knyght the lorde Symon Burle,<sup>b</sup> and the duke of Irelande, the archebysshoppe of yorke, and many other knyghtes, and other of the kynges counsaile, to dye for hatred and yuell wyll, duryng the seasons that the duke of Lancastre was beyond the see in Castyle: he is more dred in Englande than beloued.

Nowe lette this mater passe, quod syr Johñ Graily, and I shall shewe you nowe the seconde busynesse that the kyng hathe to do, as I am enfourmed. The kynges pleasure is to be maryed, and hath sertched ouer all for a wyfe. If the duke of Burgoyne or the erle of Haynalte had any daughter to mary, the kyng wolde gladly haue had one of them; but they haue none but suche as be maryed. It hath ben shewed the kyng that the kyng of Nauarre hath bothe susters and daughters, but he wyll nat entende y<sup>e</sup> wayes. The duke of Gloucestre hath a daughter able to mary; he wolde gladly that the kyng shulde haue had her, but the kyng wolde nat, for he said she was to nere of his kynne, for she is his cosyn germayne. The kyng enclyneth moste his mynde to the Frenche kynges daughter, wherof all the countrey hath great marueyle that he wolde take his enemies daughter. The kyng is nat the beste beloued prince of the worlde with his people, but he setteth lytell therby; he sheweth always how he had rather haue warre with any other realme than with Fraunce, wherfore he wolde haue a good peace bytwene the frenche kyng and hym and their realmes: for the kyng wyll often tymes saye that the warre hath endured to longe bytwene them, and that many valyaunt men are deed therby on bothe parties, wherby the christen faythe is sore mynysshed and febled: and it is nat pleasaut to the realme of Englande that he shulde mary with Fraunce; and it hath ben shewed hym that the daughter of Fraunce is ouer yonge, and that this fyue or syxe yere she shall nat be able to kepe hym company: therto he hath answered and saythe, that she shall growe ryght well in age, and though

he

\* Leicester?

<sup>b</sup> Burley.

he faste a season, he shall take it well a worth, and shall ordre her in the meane season at his pleasure, and after the maner of Englande; sayenge also howe he is yet yonge ynough to abyde tyll the lady be of age: no man canne breke the kynge out of this purpose, and or ye departe ye shall here moche of this matter; and thus for these causes the kynge rydeth now to Eltham.

Thus this gentle knyght syr Johan of Graily and I deused together as we rode bytwene Rochestre and Dertforde: this knyght was capytayn of Bouteuyle, bastarde sonne somtyme to the Captall of Beufz,<sup>a</sup> and I herde his wordes gladly, and dyd put them in memory; and all the way bytwene Leades and Eltham I rode most parte in his company and with syr Wylliam Lysle. Thus the kynge came to Eltham on a tuesday, and on the wednysday the lordes of all costes began to assenble: thyder came the duke of Gloucestre, and the erles of Derby, Arundell, Northumberlande, Kent, Rutlande, and the erle Marshall, and the archiebysshoppes of Caunterbury and yorke, and the bysshoppes of London and Wynchester; and on the thursday, aboute the houre of thre, they assembled togythier in the kynges chambre in the kynges presence: than the knyghtes of Gascoyne were sent for, and the counsailours of the good townes, and also the Duke of Lancastres counsayle was sent for: I was nat presēt, nor might nat be suffred; there were none but the lordes of the counsayle, who debated the mater more than four houres; and after dyner I fell in acquayntaūce with an auncyent knyght, whome I knewe in kynge Edwardes dayes, and he was as than of kynge Rychardes priuy counsayle; he was called syr Rycharde Sury;<sup>b</sup> he knewe me anone, and yet in xxiii. yeres he had nat sene me before, whiche was at Colbridge, and at Bruselles, in the house of duke Wyncelante<sup>c</sup> of Brabant, and of the duchesse Jahan of Brabant. This knyght syr Rycharde Sury<sup>b</sup> made me good chere, and demaunded of me many thynges; and I answered hym as I knewe: and as I walked vp and downe with hym in a galery before the kynges chambre, I demaūded hym questyons of that counsayle, and desyred hym to tell me if he myght, what conclusion was taken: he herde me well, and paused a lytell, and afterwarde sayd: syr Johan, I shall shewe you, for it is no mater to be hydden and kept secrete, for shortly ye shall here theym pablysshed all openly. Ye knowe well, quod he, and I ame sure ye haue herde rehersed howe the duke of Lancastre is gone into Acquytayne, to reioyce the gyfte that the kynge my soueraygne lorde hath gyuen hym, for the loue that he hath to hym, for he hath doone the kynge ryght good seruyce, and the crowne of Englande; therefore in rewarde the kynge hath clerely gyuen to hym and to his heyres for euer the hole duchy of Acquitayne, so as it extendeth in metes and lymtacyons, seneschalles, baylyages, sygnories, and wasselages: and clene quyteth all them that holde of hym by faythe or othe, and in all homage the resorte reserued: more the kynge hath reserued to the crowne of Englande in tyme to come; and this gyfte is so sufficyently conformed, that all the kynges other vnclcs and all the counsayle of Englande hath acorded therto, and the kynge hath gyuen specyall commaundement to all his subgiettes in the sayd lymtacyons of Acquytayne, to obey in all poyntes without any other meane, his dere and well beloued vnclc, duke Johan of Lancastre; and after  $\bar{y}$  syght of his letters to holde and to take hym to their souerayne lorde, and to swere to hym faythe and homage, and to holde of hym truely, as they haue auncyently done and helde at the date of those letters, gyuen by the kyng of Englande or his deputies or comysioners; and whosoer that rebelleth or speketh agaynst this the kynges graūt, of what condycyon soeuer he be, to answeres therto within thre dayes. The kynge gaue to his vnclc of Lancastre and to his comysioners full power and puyssaunce to correcte them, and to put them out of all hope to haue

<sup>a</sup> Buch.<sup>b</sup> Stury.<sup>c</sup> Wincelant.

haue any other retourne or resorte; yet notwithstandinge all these letters and straye commaundement of the kynge, the good townes and cyties of Gascoyne, vnder the kynge of Englandes obeysaunce, and all other lordes, knyghtes, and gentlemen of the cuntry are conioyned together to kepe their townes close agaynste the duke, and wyll nat, nor are nat in mynde to obey the duke in this case; for they say, and haue sayd, and yet susteyne at this houre, that the gylte that the kynge hath gyuen to his vncler of Lancastre is nat suffycient nor profitable, and out of the ordre of reason: and y<sup>e</sup> duke, who wolde nat wyne them but by gentylnesse, herde pacyently their defences: and that no further inconuenyentes shulde ensue, therfore his counsaile and their counsailes are come hyther to debate and to declare the cause why they do nat obey the kynges commaundement: and surely, as this day they haue right wysely shewed their answer, and layde forth certayne artycles of reason, and they haue ben well herde: and they haue layde suche reasons, that in a maner the kynge and his counsaile thinke they haue cause to abyde by their quarell; I shall shewe you howe, but I wolde ye kepe it secrete tyll it be knowne further abrode: and I answered, I wolde so do. Well, quod the knyght, one (as me thought was offyciall of Burdeaux) spake for all his partie, and first shewed forthe his procuracyon and auctorite, to the entent he myght the better beleued: and than beganne and sayde, that the cytie of Burdeaux, and the cyties of Bayon and Dax, and all the sygnories and lorshyppes that be appendaunt to the lymyttes of the sayd cuntryes and cyties, are of so noble condycyon, that no kyng of Englande by no maner of accyon or dede may put away or dysceuer them fro the demayns of the crowne of Englande, nor to gyue or alienate them to chylde, vncler, nor brother, by reasone of maryage or otherwise; and to veryfie this, we say that the aboue named townes, cyties, and sygnories are suffyciently priueleged by kynges of Englande, who haue sworne faithfully to holde and to kepe vs so, without revocasyon: for as soone as any Kyng of Englande entreth into the possession of the herytage of the Crowne of Englande, he swereth suffyciently on the euangelystes to holde this, ferme and stable without breakynge; and ye ryght dere syr, as kyng of Englande, haue made lyke othe: and, syr, to veryfie this to be of trouthe, beholde here these writynges; and therewith he shewed forth letters and charters vnder the sygnes of notaryes imperyalles, and sealed with the great seale of Englande, gyuen by the same kyng Rycharde there beyng present; and there openly he redde it frome clause to clause. The charter was well herde and vnderstande, for it was bothe in laten and in Frenche, and it named in the ende many wytnesses of prelates and great lordes of Englande, who were for the more suretie testes of that dede, at the leste to the nombre of xi. Whanne the kynges counsaile herde this, they behelde eche other, and loked on the kyng: there was no man spake a worde nor made no replycacion: whan he had redde it ouer, he folded it and put it vp, and spake further, addressynge his wordes to the kyng, and sayde: Ryght dere syr and redouted soueraygne lorde, and you my ryght dere lordes and other: at my departynge out of the cuntry I was charged to shewe you by the counsaillours of the good cyties and townes of Gascoyne, beyng vnder the obeysaunce of the crowne of Englande, who hath well ouersene the fourme and maner of your commaundement, sent vnto them vnder your seale, whiche they knewe right well, yet they thinke and say that this commaundement may nat be obeyed, for if so were that the cyties and good townes of Guyen wolde encline to receyue the duke of Lancastre to their lorde, and acqute for euer the homage and obeysaunce that they owe to you, it shulde be greatly to the preiudyce of the crowne of Englande: for thoughte it were so that at this tyme presente the duke of Lancastre is the kynges vncler and subgiert, and well beloued, and wolde holde and kepe all poyntes and artycles belongyng to the crowne of Englande, yet it maye so hap that suche loue and tenure may lightly be lost, by chaunge of heyres, by reason of maryages that are made bytwene lordes and ladyes, in chaungynge fro one to another,

though

though they be nere of lynnage, by dyspensacyon of the pope: for sometye it is of necessity that maryages be made of hyghe Princes or of their chyldren one with another, to holde their landes and sygnories in loue and anyte; and so it myght fall that suche heyres as myght dyscende of the Duke of Lancastre shulde conioyne theym by maryage to the chyldren of some kyng in Fraunce, or of dukes of Berrey, Bretayne, or erles of Foize, or Armynake, or kynges of Nauarre, or dukes of Aniou or of Mayne; and than they beyng beyonde the see, peradventure in the parties of Fraunce, shulde clayme their enherytaunce, and therby put the countrey of Guyen in dyscorde, and to bring it to be agaynst the crowne of Englande: wherby the kyng of Englande than reynnyng, and the realme also, shulde haue peradventure ouer moche payne to reconer it agayne: and so the ryght to be put farre of fro thence wherunto it shulde retourne and be, as of the demayne of the crowne of Englande: wherfore, ryght dere syr and redouted lordes and noble counsayllours, please it you to consydre all these poyntes and artycles which I haue purposed in your presence, and determyne it as ye shall seme best; for syr, the full opynion of all the countrey is, they saye they wyll abyde styll in the obeysaunce of you, ryght redouted lorde and kyng, and in the demayne of the noble crowne of Englande: therwith this offyciall helde his peace, and the prelates and lordes eche of them regarded other. Than they drewe together and aproched to the kyng, fyrste his two vnclcs, and the erles of Derby and Arundell: than they of Acquytayne were cōmaunded to departe tyll they were called agayne: they departed, and also the two knyghtes that were come thyder fro the duke of Lancastre. Than the kyng demanded counsayle what shulde be done, and what aunswere shulde be made. The prelates tourned the aunswere to the kynges vnclcs, bycause the mater touched them rather than any other: at the fyrst they excused them, sayeng they myght nat well aunswere, for the mater was cōmune, and ought to be debated by cōmune counsayle, and nat by lynnage nor fauour. Thus they bode a good space, but fynally the aunswere was layde on the duke of Gloucestre, and he was prayed and requyred to saye his aduise. Than he answered and sayde, howe it was a herde thyng to take away or to dysanull the gyfte of a kyng, confermed and sealed by the acorde of all his subgiettes, and by delyberacyon of his specyall counsayle; wherfore he sayde his subgiettes shulde be rebell that wolde nat obey, for in that they wolde make that the kyng shulde nat be lorde of his owne enheritaunce, if y he myght nat do with his owne what it pleased hym. Some glosed those wordes, and some thought in their corage that the aunswere was nat reasonable, but they durst nat saye agaynst it, the duke of Gloucestre was so sore dred; and the erle of Derby, sonne to the duke of Lancastre, was there presente, who furthered those wordes, and sayde: Fayre vnclc, ye haue well sayd; I am of your opynion: therwith the counsayle began to breke, and some murmured one with another, and they of Guyen nor yet the duke of Lancasters knyghtes were nat called agayne at that tyme. When the kyng sawe all the mater, he dyssimuled a lytell, and it was his entensyon that they shulde assemble togyther agayne in counsayle after dyner, to se if any other propre way myght be taken for the honoure of the crowne of Englande: than the kyng caused the bysshop of Caunterbury to speke of that he had gyuen hym in charge in the mornyng to speke of: that was vpon the state of his maryage, and to sende into Fraunce. The lordes were of accorde, and named them that shulde go, whiche were the archebyssshoppe of Duuelyn,<sup>a</sup> the erle of Rutlande, the Erle Marshall, the lorde Beaumonde, the lorde Hughe Spenser, the lorde Loys Clyfforde, and twenty knyghtes and xl. squyers: these were sent into Fraunce to treat for the maryage of the frenche kynges daughter Isabell, of eyght yere of age, and yet she was allredy promysed to the duke of Bretayns sonne, by a treatie y

<sup>a</sup> Dublin.

was made in Towrs in Thourayne. Nowe beholde howe this myght be broken, for the Frenche kynge and his vnclcs hadde sealed with the duke of Bretayne: yet for all that thenglysshe ambassadours had their charge gyuen vnto them; and so they departed out of Englande and aryued at Calays, and there taryed a fyue dayes, and than departed in great araye, and tooke the waye to Amyence: and they sente before Marche the haraulde, who had brought to them saueconducte goynge and comynge, and besyde that the lorde Moncheuerell was sette to be their guyde, and to se them serued of all thynges necessary.

Nowe we shall leaue to speke of them, and retourne to our fyrste purpose.

Nowe as I haue shewed you before, the counsaylours of the cyties and good townes of Acquytayne prayed the kynge and his counsaile, to whome they were boude, to mayntayn their lyberties and fraunches, as in the demayne of the crowne of Englande, as he was sworne to do: affermyng that surely they wolde kepe their aunycyente lyberties, and wyll nat breke it for no maner of cause or condycion; and in holdynge thus their opynyon, foure partes of the counsaile and the comune voyce of the cuntry reputed theym for valyaunt and worthy men; but the duke of Gloucestre was of another opynyon, for he wolde that his brother the duke of Lancastre shulde haue bydden styll in Acquytayne, for he thought he was ouer great in Englande, and to nere the kynge: as for his brother the duke of yorke he cared nat, for the duke of yorke was a prince that loued his ease and lytell busynesse; also he had a fayre lady to his wyfe, doughter to the erle of Kent, on whome was all his pleasure; but the duke of Gloucestre was subtyle, and euer demaunded somewhat of his nephue kynge Rycharde, yet he was but poore, for all that he was a great lorde and constable of Englande, and erle of Hertforde and of Perces.<sup>a</sup> and of Bokyngham; and also he had yerely out of the kynges cofers foure thousande nobles, and neuer rode on the kynges busynesse nor for the realme one daye, without he knewe why and wherfore; for these causes he was nat indyfferent for the maters of Acquytayne, for he wolde haue had his brother of Lancastre to haue bydden still in Acquitayn for euer, for than he thought he wolde haue shyfted well ynoughe in Englande: as soone as he had sayd his sentence (as ye haue herde before), and that he sawe some murmured in the kynges chambre, and that the prelates and lordes talked togyther two and two, he issued out of y<sup>e</sup> chambre, and the erle of Derby with hym, and came into the hall at Eltham, and made a clothe to be layde on a table, and so sate downe to dynner, and lefte all other styll talkynge togyther. When the duke of yorke knewe that he was at dyner, he went to kepe hym company, and after dyner, whiche he made shorte, the duke of Gloucestre dyssymuled the mater, and tooke his leaue of the Kynge syttyng at the table, and so departed, and toke his horse and rode to London; and the erle of Derby abode styll with the lordes that daye and the nexte daye. Thus they of Acquytayne coulde haue none expedicyon nor deliuerance.

I haue delyght to write this mater at length, bycause to enfourme you of the trouthe: for I that am auctour of this hystory was presente in all these maters, and this valyaunt knyght syr Rycharde Surye<sup>b</sup> shewed me euery thyng; and so it was, that on the sonday folowyng all suche as had ben there were departed, and all their counsaylours, except the duke of yorke, who abode styll about the kynge; and the lorde Thomas Percy and syr Rycharde Surye<sup>b</sup> shewed my busynesse to the kynge. Than the kynge desyred to se my booke that I had brought for hym: so he sawe it in his chambre, for I had layde it there redy on his bedde. Whanne the kynge opened it, it pleased hym well, for it was fayre enlumyned and written, and couered with crymson veluet, with ten botons of syluer

<sup>a</sup> Exeter?

<sup>b</sup> Stury.

syluer and gylte, and roses of golde in the myddes, wyth two great clapses gylte, rychely wrought. Than the kyng demaunded me wherof it treated, and I shewed hym how it treated maters of loue; wherof the kyng was gladd and loked in it, and reed yt in many places, for he coude speke and rede French very well; and he tooke yt to a knyght of hys chambre, named syr Rycharde Creadon, to beare it into hys secrete chambre: and the same sonday I fell in acquayntaunce with a Squyer of Englede, called Henry Castyde, an honest man and a wyse, and coud well speke Frenche: he companied wyth me, bycause he saw the kyng and other lordes made me good chere, and also he had sene the boke that I gaue to the kyng; also syr Rycharde Sury<sup>a</sup> had shewed hym howe I was a maker of hystories. Than he sayd to me as herafter foloweth.

*The denyse, and of the conqueste that kyng rycharde had made in Irlūd; and howe he brought into his obeysaunce foure kynges of that country.*

C A P. CCII.<sup>b</sup>

SYR Johan, quod he, haue ye nat founde in the kynges courte sythe ye came hyder no man that hath tolde you of the voyage that the kyng made but late into Irlande, and in what maner the foure kynges of Irlande are come into the obeysaunce of the kyng of Englede? and I aunswered, no. Than shall I shewe you, quod the squyer, to the entent that ye maye putte it in perpetuall memorie, whan ye retourne into your owne country, and haue leysar therto. I was reioysed of his wordes, and thanked hym. Than he began thus, and sayd: Syr Johan, yt is not in memorie that eyther any kyng of Englede made such appareyle and prouision for any iourney to make warre agaynst the yrisshmen, nor suche a nombre of men of armes nor archers. The kyng was nyne monethes in the marchesse of Irlande to hys great cost and charge to the realme, for they bare al his expēs; and the marchaūtes, cyties, and good towne of the realme thought it well bestowed, whan they sawe the kyng retourne home agayne with honour. The nombre that he had thyder, gētylmen and archers, were foure thousande knyghtes and xxx. thousand archers, well payed wekely, that euery manne was well pleased; but I shewe you, bycause ye should knowe the trouth, Irlande is one of the yuell countreis of the world to make warre vpon, or to bring vnder subiection, for it is closed strongly and wydely with highe forestes, and great waters and maresses, and places inhabytable; it is harde to entre to do them of the country any dōmage, nor ye shall fynde no towne nor persone to speke wall, for the men drawe to the woodes, and dwell in caues and small cotages, vnder trees and among busshes and hedges, lyke wylde sauage beestes; and whan they knowe that any man maketh warre agaynst thē, and is entred into their cōtreis, than they drawe toguyder to the straytes and passages, and defend it, so that no man can entre into them; and whan they se their tyme, they wyll some take their aduauntage on their enemyes, for they knowe the country and ar lyght people: for a man of armes beyng neuer so well horsed, and ron as fast as he can, the yrisshmen wyll ryn afote as faste as he and ouertake hym, yea, and leape vp vpon his horse behynde hym, and drawe hym fro his horse: for they are stronge men in the armes, and haue sharpe weapons wyth large blades w two edges, after the maner of darte heedes, wherwyth they wyll slee theyr enemy; and they repute not a man ded tyll they haue cutte his throte and open his bely and taken out his herte, and cary it

awaye  
4 K 2

<sup>a</sup> Stury.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CXCVIII.

away wyth them: som saye, suche as knowe their nature, that they do eate it, and haue great delyt therin: they take no man to raunsome; and whanne they se at any encountre that they be ouermatched. than they wyll departe asonder, and go and hyde themselves in bushes, woodes, hedges, and caues, so that no man shall fynd theym: also syr Wyllyam of Wyndsores, who hath moste vsed the warres in those parties of any other englyssheman, yet he coude neuer learne the maner of fy countrey, nor know their condycions. They be herde people, and of rude engyn and wytte, and of dyuers frequentacyons and vsage; they sette nothyng by iolyte nor fresshe apparell, nor by noblesse: for though their realme be soueraynly gouerned by kynges, wherof they haue plentie, yet they wyll take no knowledge of gentylnesse, but wyll contynewe in their rudenesse, acordynge as they are brought vp. Trouthe it is, that foure of the princypall kynges and moste puyssaunt, after the maner of the countrey, are come to the obeyesauce of the kyng of England by loue and fayreness, and not by batayle nor constraynte. The erle of Ormonde, who marcheth vpon them, hath takē great payne, and hath so treated with them, that they came to Duuelyn<sup>a</sup> to the kyng, and submyted them to hym, to be vnder the obeyesauce of the crowne of England; wherefore the kyng and all the realme reputeth this for a great and honorable dede, and thynketh this voyage well bestowed, for kyng Edwarde of good memory dyd neuer so muche vpon them as kyng Rycharde dyde in this voyage: the honour is great, but the profyte is but lytell, for though they be kynges, yet no man can deuise nor speke of ruder personages.

I shall shewe you somewhat of their rudenesse, to the entent yt maye be ensample agayne people of other nacyns; I knowe yt well, for I haue proued it by themselves: for when they were at Duuelyn<sup>a</sup> I hadde the gouernance of them about a moneth, by the kynges commaundement and his counsaile, to thentent that I should lerne them to vse themselves accordyng to the vsage of Englande, and bycause I coude speke their language as well as Freuche or Englysshe, for in my youthe I was brought vp amonge them; I was with the erle of Ormonde, father to the Erle that nowe is, who loued me right well, bycause I coud as than ryde and handell an horse metely well; and it fortunēd one tyme that the sayde erle (who as than was my maister) was sent with thre hundred speares and a thousande archers into the marches of Ireland, to make warre with the yrisshemen, for alwayes the Englysshmen haue had warre with thē, to subdue and putte them vnder; and on a daye as the sayd erle went agaynst thē, I rode on a goodly horse of hys, lyght and swyfte: thus I rode and folowed my mayster, and the same day the yrisshemen were layde in a busschement, and whan wee came nere theym they opnyed their busschement; thanne the Englysshe archers began to shote so egrely, that the yrisshemen could not suffre it, for they are but symply armed, therefore they reculed and wente backe: thanne the erle my mayster folowed in fy chase, and I that was well horsed folowed hym as nere as I coude: and it fortunēd so that my horse was afraid, and toke his bridell in his tethe and ranne away with me, and whether I wolde or not, he bare me so far forth amonge the yrisshemen, that one of them, by lyghtnesse of ronnyng, lepte vp behynde me, and enbrased me in his armes, and dyde me none other hurt, but so ledde me out of the way, and so rode styll behynde me the space of two houres, and at the laste brought me into a secrete place, thycke of bushes, and there he founde his company, who were come thyder and scaped all daungers, for the Englysshemen pursued not so farre: than as he shewed he had great ioye of me, and ledde me into a towne and a stronge house amonge the woodes, waters, and myres. The towne was called Harpely, and the gētilman that toke me was called Brine Costeret; he

was



was a goodly man, and as it hath ben shewed me, he is as yet alyue; howbeit, he is very aged. Thys Bryne Costeret kepte me senyn yere wyth hym, and gaued me liys doughter in maryage, of whom I hadde two doughters. I shall shewe you howe I was deluyered.

It happened at the seinin yeres ende one of their kynges, named Arthur Mackemur,\* kyng of Lynster, made an armye agaynst duke Lyon of Clarence, sonne to kyng Edwarde of Englande, and agaynst sir Wylliam of Wynsore: and not farre fro the cytie of Lynster, the Englysshemen and yrisshemen mette togyder, and many were slayne and taken on bothe parties, but the Englysshemen obteyned the vyttorie, and the yrisshemen fledde, and the kyng Arthur saued hymselfe, but Brine Costeret, my wyues father, was taken prisoner vnder the duke of Clarence baner: he was taken on the same courser that he toke me on; the horse was well known among the erle of Ormondes folkes; and than he shewed howe I was alyue and was at his maner of Harpelyn, and howe I had wedded his doughter, wherof the duke of Clarence, sir Wylliam Wynsore, and the Englysshemen, were ryght gladd. Than it was shewed hym that if he wolde be deluyered out of prison, that he shulde deluyere me into the Englysshemennes hādes, and my wyfe and chyl dren; with gret payne he made that bargayne, for he loued me well, and my wyfe his doughter, and our chyl dren; whan he sawe he coulde make his fynauce none otherwyse, he accorded therto, but he reiteigned myne eldest doughter styll with him; so I and my wyfe and our seconde doughter returned into Englande, and so I went and dwelte besyde Bristowe, on the ryuer of Syuerne: my two doughters are maryed, and she in Irelāde hath thre sonnes and two doughters, and she that I brought with me hath foure sonnes and two doughters; and bycause the langage of yrishe is as redy to me as the Englysshe tong, (for I haue alwayes cōtynued with my wyfe, and taught my children the same speche), therfore the kyng my souerayne lorde and his counsaile, cōmaunded me to gyue attendaūce on these four kynges, and to gouerne and bringe them to reason, and to the vsage and customes of Englāde, seyng they hadde yelded them to be vnder his obeysaunce, and of the crowne of Englāde, and they were sworne to holde it for euer; and yet I ensure you for all that, I dyde my power to ensygne and to lerne them good maner, yet for all that, they be ryght rude and of grose engyn: moche payne I hadde to make them to speke any thyng in fayre maner: somewhat I altdred them but nat moche, for in many cases they drew to their naturall rudenesse. The kyng my soueraygne lordes entent was, that in maner, countenaunce, and apparell of clothyng, they shulde vse accordyng to the maner of Englande, for the kyng thought to make them all four knyghtes: they had a fayre house to lodge in in Duuelyn,<sup>b</sup> and I was charged to abyde styll with them and nat to departe; and so two or thre dayes I suffred them to do as they lyst, and sayde nothyng to them, but folowed their owne appetytes; they wolde sytte at the table and make countenaunce nother good nor fayre. Than I thought I shulde cause thē to chaunge that maner: they wolde cause their mynstrelles, their seruantes, and varlettes, to sytte with them and to eate in their owne dysse, and to drinke of their cuppes; and they shewed me that the vsage of their cowntre was good, for they sayd, in all thynges, (except their beddes,) they were and lyued as cōmen. So the fourthe day I ordayned other tables to be couered in the hall, after ŷ vsage of Englande, and I made these four kynges to sytte at the hyghe table, and thre mynstrels at another borde, and their seruantes and varlettes at another byneth them, wherof by semyng they were displeased, and behelde eche other and wolde nat eate, and sayd howe I wolde take fro them their good vsage, wherin they hadde been norished. Than I answered them smylyng to apeace them, that it was nat honourable

for

\* Mac Murrough ?

<sup>b</sup> Dublin.

for their estates to do as they dyde before, and that they must leaue it, and vse the custom of Englande, and that it was the kynges pleasure they shulde so do, and how he was charged so to order them. When they harde that they suffred it, bycause they had putte themselfe vnder the obeysaunce of the kyng of Englande, and parcerued in the same as long as I was with them; yet they hadde one vse whiche I knewe well was vsed in their cōtre, and that was they dyde were no breches; I caused breches of lynen clothe to be made for them. Whyle I was with them I caused them to leaue many rude thynges, as well in clothyng as in other causes. Moche ado I had at the fyrst to cause them to weare gownes of sylke furred with Myneure and gray: for before these kynges thought themselfe well apparelled whan they hadde on a mantell. They rode always without sadelles and styropes, and with great payne I made thē to ryde after our vsage. And on a tyme I demaunded thē of their beleue, wherwith they were nat content, and sayd howe they beleued on god and on the trynite, as well as we. Than I demaūded on what pope was their affection. They aunswered me on hym of Rome. Thāñe I demaūded if they wolde nat gladly receyue the order of knyghthode, and that the kyng of Englaunde shulde make thē knyghtes, accordyng to the vsage of Fraūce and Englaunde, and other countreis. They aunswered howe they were knyghtes allredye, and that sufficed for theym. I asked where they were made knyghtes, and howe and whan. They answered, ȳ in the age of seyn yere they were made knyghtes in Irelande, and that a kyng maketh his sonne a knyght, and if the sonne haue no father alyue, than the nexte of his blode maye make hym knyght, and thāñe this yonge knyght shall begyn to iuste with small speares, suche as they maye beare with their ease, and rynne agaynst a shelde sette on a stake in the felde, and the more speares that he breaketh, the more he shal be honoured. I knewe their maner well ynough, though I dyde demaūde it. But than I sayd, that the knyghthode that they had taken in their youthe, sufficed nat to the kyng of Englaunde, but I sayde he shulde gyue theym after another maner. They demaūded howe. I aunswered, that it shulde be in the holy church, whiche was the moost worthyest place. Than they enclyned somewhat to my wordes. Within two dayes after the erle of Ormonde came to thē, who coude right well speke the langage, for some of his landes laye in those parties; he was sente to them by the kyng and his cōsaille; they all honoured hym and he them: than he fell in swete communyacion with them, and he demaūded of them howe they lyked me. They aunswered and sayde, well, for he hath well shewed vs the vsage of this countrey, wherfore we ought to thanke him, and so we do. This aunswere pleased well the erle of Ormonde. Than he entred lytell and lytell to speke of the order of chivalry, whiche the kyng wolde they shulde receyue; he shewed it them fro poynt to poynt, howe they shulde behaue themselfe, and what parteyned to knyghthode. The erles wordes pleased moche these four kynges, whose names were these: Fyrst, the great Anele, kyng of Mecte;<sup>a</sup> the seconde, Brine of Thomōde, kyng of Thomonde; the thyrde, Arthure of Mackequemur, kyng of Lynster; the fourthe, Conhue, kyng of Cheueno and Darpe;<sup>b</sup> they were made knyghtes by kyng Richarde of Englaunde, in the Cathedrall church of Duelyn,<sup>c</sup> dedycate of saynt Johan Baptist: it was done on our lady day in Marche, as than it fell on a Thursday. These four kynges watched all the night before in the church, and the nexte daye at highe masse tyme, with great solēpnite they were made knyghtes, and with them sir Thomas Orphen, sir Joatas Pado, and sir Johan Pado his cosyn. These kynges sate that day at the table with kyng Rycharde; they were regarded of many folkes, bicause there behauyng was straunge to the maner of Englaunde, and other cōtreis, and euer naturally men desyre to se newelties. Than I sir Johñ Froissart sayde: Henry, I beleue you well, and I wolde it had cost me largely that I had

<sup>a</sup> O'Neal, king of Meath?<sup>b</sup> O'Connor, king of Counaught?<sup>c</sup> Dublin.

had been there : and surely this yere past I hadde come hyder and it hadde nat been for that I herde of the dethe of queene Anne of Englande, whiche dyde lette me : but one thyng I wolde desyre of you to knowe, howe these four kynges of Irelande came so soone to the kyng of Englandes obeysaunce, whan kyng Edwarde the kynges graunfather, who was so valyaunt a prince and so redouted ouer all, coude neuer subdue them nor putte them vnder; and yet he had alwayes warre with thē; and in that they are subdued now, ye sayd it was by treatie, and by the grace of god; indede the grace of god is good, who so can haue it, it is moche worthle; but it is sene nowe a dayes, that earthely princes getteth lytell wout it be by puissaūce. I desyre to know this, for whan I shall cōe into Heynalt, of which countrey I am of, I shal be examyned of this and many other thynges, bothe by duke Aubert of Bauier,<sup>a</sup> erle of Heynalt, of Holande, and of Zelande, and also by his sonne Wylliam of Bauyere,<sup>a</sup> who writeth hymselfe lorde of Frese,<sup>b</sup> whiche is a great countrey and a puissaunt, whiche cōtreie the sayd duke and his sonne claymeth to haue by ryght successyon, and so dyde their predecessours before them : but the Fresons wolde neuer fall to any reason, nor come vnder obeysaūce, nor as yet do nat vnto this day. Than answered sir Henry Christall<sup>c</sup> and sayd : Sir Johan, to shewe you the very trowth I can nat, but as many a one saythe, and it is to suppose, ŷ the great puissaūce ŷ the kyng had ouer with him, and varyed there in their countrey nync monethes, and euery man well payed, abasshed the yrisshemen : also the see was closed fro them on all partes, wherby their lyuēges and marchaūdises myght nat entre into their countreys, though they that dwell farre within the realme cared lytell for it, (for they knowe natte what marchaundyse meaneth, nor they lyue but grosely and rudely like vnto beestes;) yet suche as lyueth on the marches of Englande, and by the see coost, vse feate of marchaundyse with vs, and into other places. Kyng Edwarde of noble memorie, in his tyme had to answere so many warres, what in Fraūce, Bretayne, Gascone, and Scotlande, so that his people were deuyded in dyuers places, and sore occupied, wherfore he coude nat sende no great nombre into Irelande; but whan the Irysshemen sawe ŷ great nombre of men of warre that kyng Rycharde hadde in Irelande this laste iourney, the yrisshmen aduysed themselves and came to obeysaūce; and indede of olde tyme there was a kyng in Englāde named Edwarde, who is a saynt and canonysed, and honoured through all this realme: in his tyme he subdued the Danes, and disconfyted them by batayle on the see thre tymes: and this saint Edwarde kyng of Englande, lorde of Irelande, and of Acquitayn, the yrisshmen loued and dredde hym moche more than any other kyng of Englande that had been before: and therefore our souerayne lorde kyng Richarde this yere past, whan he was in Irelande, in all his armories and deuyses, he left the beryng of the armes of Englande, as the lybardes, and flour delyces quarterly, and bare the armes of this saynt Edwarde, that is a crosse patent, golde, and goules, with four white martennes in the felde: wherof it was said the yrisshmen were well pleased, and the soner they enclyned to hym; for of trouthe ŷ predecessours of these four kynges obeyed with faithe and homage to ŷ sayd kyng Edwarde, and they repute kyng Richarde a good man and of good cōscience, and so they haue done to hym faithe and homage, as they ought to do, and in like maner as their predecessours sōtyme dyde to saynt Edwarde. Thus I haue shewed you the maner how the kyng our souerayne lorde hath this yere accomplysshed and furnysshed his voyage in Ireland; put it in your memoriall, to the entent that whan ye shall retourne into your owne countrey, ye may write it in your cronicle, with many other hystories that depende to the same matter. Than I thanked hym, and sayd it shulde be done. So I toke leaue of hym. Than I mette with Marche the heraulde, and I demaīded of hym what armes this Henry Christell<sup>c</sup> bare; and I shewed the heraulde howe this sir

Henry

<sup>a</sup> Bavaria.<sup>b</sup> Friesland.<sup>c</sup> Before called Castide.

Henry had shewed me the maner of the kynges jorney in Irelande, and the state of the foure kynges, who had ben, (as he sayd,) in his gouernynge, more than fyftene dayes at Duuelyn.<sup>a</sup> The heraulde answered me and sayd: Sir, he beareth in his armes Syluer, a cheuerner goules, thre besans goules. All these thynges I dyde putte in writynge, bycause I wolde nat forgette them.

Thus I taryed in the kyng of Englandes courte, as longe as it pleased me, nat always in one place, for the kyng oftentymes remoued, to Eltham, to Ledes, to Kyngstone, to Shene, to Charsey, or to Wyndesore, aboute the marches of London. And I was enfourmed of a trouthe that the kyng wrote to his vncler the duke of Lancastre, for they of Acquitayne spedde so in their busynesse, that their countrye abode styll to the crowne of Englande. Thā it was concluded by generall counsaile of Englande, that the gyfte that the kyng hadde gyuen to the duke of Lancastre, must nedes abyde styll as his owne; howbeit, the duke of Gloucestre wolde that his brother myght haue enioyed the kynges gyfte, but his saying coude nat be herde in that case: for they of the realme of Englande, (bycause of doutes and casualtyes in tyme to come,) herde well the wordes of theym of Burdeaux, and of Bayone, and consydred well that yf the herytage of Acquitayne were putte fro the crowne of Englande, it shulde be in tyme to come a great preiudice to the realme, whiche they wolde in no wyse shulde fortune: for alwayes Burdeaux and Bayon, and the frōters and marches of Gascon, had kept and augmented greatly the honour of the realme of Englande. These thynges were well cōsydred of the wyse men of the kynges cōsaile, y<sup>e</sup> duke of Gloucestre absent, for before hym no man durst speke. So the mater abode in this case.

We shall leaue of this matter, and speke of the kyng of Englandes ambassadours, as the erle of Rutlande, and therle marshall, and other, that were sente into Fraunce to treate of the maryage bytwene kyng Rycharde their lorde, and the daughter of Charles, Frenche kyng, who was but eyght yeres of age: and I shall shewe you howe they spedde.

*Of the ambassade that the kyng of Englande sente into Fraunce to treate of the maryage bytwene the lady Isable, the Frēche kynges eldest doughter, and hymselfe; and of the louyng answeere they had.*

#### CAP. CCIII.<sup>b</sup>

THESE Englyssh lordes rode fro Calais to Amyence, and to Clermount, in Beauosyn, and so to Parys, and i<sup>n</sup> euery place they were well receyued by the cōmaundement of the frenche kyng; they were lodged about y<sup>e</sup> crosse of Tyrouer;<sup>c</sup> they were a fyue hundred horses. The Frenche kyng was lodged at the castell of Lour,<sup>d</sup> and the queene and her chyldren at the house of saynt Poule, vpon the ryuer of Seyne; the duke of Berrey at the house of Nesle; the duke of Burgoyne at the house of Arthoys; and the duke of Burbone in his owne house; the duke of Orlyāuce, the erle of saynt Poule, and the lorde of Coucy, at their owne houses. The kyng had assembled there all his counsaile, to the entent to make the better answeere to thembassadours of Englande. The kyng had cōmaūded that enery day there shulde be delyuered to these ambassadou<sup>r</sup>s two hundred crownes of Frāce, for their small expences, and for their horses. And

<sup>a</sup> Dublin.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CXCIX.

<sup>c</sup> Croix du Tiroir.

<sup>d</sup> The Louvre.

And the chiefe of these Englysshe lordes, as the erle Marshall, and therle of Rutlāde, were oftentimes with the kynge, and dyned with hym; they had as good chere as coulde be deuysed, for the loue of the kynge of Englāde. These lordes desyred euer to haue an answer, and they were euer fedde forth with fayre wordes, for the noblemen of Fraunce had great marueyle of the requestes of the Englysshemen, and that the kynge of Englande wolde marry with Fraunce, seyng that the warre had ben so cruell, and so long endured: and some of the Frenche kynges counsaile sayd, howe maye our kyng agree to gyue his daughter in maryage to his aduersary, or this treatie shulde be made; we thynke we shall haue peace with Englande by some other wayes, though it be nat by the meanes of maryage. And as at y tyme there was a valyaunt knyght of the Frenche kynges counsaile, called sir Raynalt of Corby; he was a farre castyng man, and consydrd what myght fall in tyme to come. Thāne he sayd to the kyng and to his vnclcs: My lordes and maysters, a man shulde entre in at the ryght dore into a house: it semeth that kyng Richarde of Englāde wolde nothyng to you nor to the realme, but loue and all fauour, seyng that by reason of maryage, he wolde alye hym to you; two tymes your counsaylours and his haue mette toguyder at Amyence, and at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> to treate for a peace, and yet they coulde neuer take no good conclusyon, but on the state of a truce: and sir, it is well known that Thomas duke of Gloucestre, kyng Richardes vncl, is of a cōtrary opinyon, against y king and his other two vnclcs, the dukes of Lūcastre and of Yorke: the kyng nor other can nat make hym agre wyllingly to haue peace; howebeit, his puissaunce canne natte resyst the kynges power: therfore sir, after myne opinyon, receyue this offre and refuse nat this treatie, and let these lordes haue suche aunswere as maye cōtent them. Than the kyng and his vnclcs agreed therto, and specially the duke of Burgoyne, for he was so sore charged by reason of the warres, y gladly he wolde haue peace; and the pricypall cause was, bycause of Flaunders, wherof he claymed to be lorde by reason of his wyfe, bycause that country marched vpon Englande; and also the hertes of the Flemynges were rather Englysshe than Frenche, bycause of the entrecourse of marchaundyse bytwene England and Flaunders, by see and by lande.

Than it was concluded by the Frenche kynges counsaile, that there shulde be as good chere made to the Englysshmen as was before: and whether it was by dissymulacyon or otherwyse, the frenchemen were determyned to make a good and a swete aunswere to the englysshemen, and to put them in hope that the kynge of Englande shulde haue his desyre. The quene and her chyldren laye at the house of saynt Powle, and where as the Englysshe lordes desyred to se them, it was graunted to them, and specially to se her for whome their treatie was. Than it was shewed them that they muste be content howe so euer they founde her, for they sayde she was but a yonge chylde of eyght yere of age, wherfore they sayd, there coulde nat be in her no great wysdome nor prudence; howebeit, she was indoctryned well ynough, and that the lordes founde well whan they sawe her. The Erle Marshall, beyng on his knees, sayde to her: Fayre lady, by the grace of god ye shall be our lady and quene of Englande. Than answered the yonge lady well aduysedly, without counsaile of any other persone: Syr, quod she, and it please god and my lorde my father that I shall be quene of Englande, I shall be glad therof, for it is shewed me that I shall be than a great lady. Than she toke vp the erle Marshall by the hande, and ledde him to the quene her mother, who had great ioy of the answer that she had made, and so were all other that herde it. The maner, countenance, and behaouure of this yonge lady, pleased greatly the

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.

the Ambassadors, and they sayd amonge themselfe, that she was lykely to be a lady of hygh honoure and great goodnesse. Thus whan these lordes of Englande had ben at Parys a twenty dayes, and their costes and charges payed for by the frenche kynge, a reasonable aunswere was gyuen them, so that they were put in great hope to bringe aboute that they came for; howebeit, the frenchemen sayd, it coule nat be doone shortly, bycause the lady was so younge, and also she was fyansed to the duke of Bretayns eldest sonne: wherfore they sayd they must treate to breke that promesse, or they coude procede any further in that mater, and therupon the frenche kynge and his counsaile shulde sende into Englande the next lent after, to shewe howe the matter wente; and whan the dayes begyn to encrease and waxe fayre, than the kynge of Englande to sende agayne into Fraunce whome it shulde please hym, and they shulde be welcome. With this aunswere the englysshemen were contented, and toke leaue of the quene and of her daughter, and of the kynge, and of all other, and departed fro Paris, and toke the same way they came, and so returned to Calays, and than into Englande, and the two erles rode in post before their company, to bringe tydynges to the kyng; they rode fro Sandwiche to Wyndsore in lesse thanne a daye and an halfe. The kynge was ryght ioyouse of their comynge, and was well contente with the frenche kynges aunswere; he set the mater so to his herte that he toke great pleasure therin, and tooke hede to none other thyng, but studyed howe he myght bringe it aboute to haue the frenche kynges daughter to wyfe.

On the other syde the Frenche kynge and his counsaile studyed daye and nyght, howe they myght make this maryage with Englande to the honour of the realme of Fraunce. There were many in the realme of Fraunce that sayd, that if they had been called to these treatyes, and our wordes herde, the kynge of Englande shulde neuer haue the daughter of Fraunce, for any maner of peace: What good shulde it be for Fraunce, seyng the trewce bytwene them endured but for two yere to come, and than shall we fall agayne in warre, and eche of vs hate other as we haue doone before; the dukes of Berrey and Orlyance were of the same opynion, and dyuers other lordes of Fraunce; but the king, the duke of Burgoyne, and the chauncellour of Fraunce, enclyned to this maryage, and gladde to haue peace, reseruyng alwayes the honour of the realme. The same tyme there was a squier in Fraunce, of the nacyon of Normandy, in the countrey of Caulx, he had in his dayes ben sore traueyled in farre parties, and as than he was newly returned into Fraunce; his name was Robert le Menuot, but as than he was called Robert the Hermyte: he was relygyous and of good lyfe, of the age of fyfty yere: he had been at the treaties that was holden at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> at whiche tyme he was well herde, and howe he entred than into that treatie I shall shewe you.

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.

*Of a squyer named Roberte the Hermyte, howe he was sente to the treaties of the peace holden at Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> and howe he was after sente into Englande, to kyng Rycharde and his vnclis.*

CAP. CCIII.<sup>b</sup>

SO it was, whan this Roberte the Hermyte returned into Fraūce out of the parties of Surey,<sup>c</sup> and toke shyping at Baruth, whyle he was vpon the see a great tempest of wynde rose, in suche wyse that they feared to be perysshed, and euery man fell to make his prayers to god; and at the ende of this tempest, and that the wether began to waxe fayre and clere, there apered to Robert f̄ Hermyte an ymage more clere than crystall, and sayd thus: Robert, thou shalt issue and escape this parell, and all thy company, for loue of the: for god hath herde thyne orisons and prayers, and he sendeth the worde by me, that thou shuldest make hast into Fraunce, and go to the kyng and shewe him thyne aduerture, and say vnto him, that in any wyse he enclyne to haue peace with his aduersary kyng Rycharde of Englande; and amonge them that be treaters of the peace, preace thou forthe and shewe them thyne aduysyon, for thou shalt be herde: and say that all suche as be of the contrary opynion against the peace, shall bye it derely in their lyfe tyme in this worlde; and therwith f̄ clerenesse and voyce vanysshed away. Than Robert abode in a great study, but he remembred well what he hadde sene and herde, by the deuyne inspyracyon; and after this aduerture they had fayre wether and the wynde at their wysshynge, and than aryued in the ryuer of Gennes,<sup>d</sup> and there Robert the Hermyte toke leaue of his company, and went by lande fro thence tyll he came to Auygnon. And the fyrst thyng he dyd he went to the churche of saynt Peter, and there foude a good vertuous man a penytenser, and of hym he was cōfessed, and shewed hym all his aduerture, and demaunded counsayle what was best to do. Than his goostly father charged hym in any wyse that he shulde speke nothyng of this mater tyll he had shewed it fyrste to the frenche kyng, and loke what counsayle the kyng dyd gyue him, so to do. This Robert folowed his counsayle and arayed hymselfe in symple habyte all in gray, and so poorely departed fro Auygnon, and iourneyed so longe that he came to Parys, but the kyng was at Abbeuyle, and the treatie beganne at Balyngham,<sup>e</sup> bytwene the Frenchemen and Englysshemen, (as ye haue herde before). Than this Robert came to Abuyle and drewe to the kyng, and a knyght of his acquayntaunce brought him to the kyng, whiche knyght was of Normandy, and was called sir Willyam Martell, he was of the kynges priuy chambre. Than Roberte the Hermyte shewed the kyng all his hole iourney and aduēture. The kyng herde hym well, and bycause the duke of Burgoyne, and syr Raynolde Corby, chauncellour of Fraunce, (who were of the kynges opynion to haue peace,) were at Balyngham,<sup>f</sup> in f̄ treatie holden there, the kyng sayd to Robert: Our counsayle as nowe is nat here, they be at Balyngham:<sup>g</sup> ye shall abyde here with me, and when they be retourned I shall speke with myne vncl of Burgoyne, and with our chauncelloure, and than we shall do in this mater as they shall aduise me. Syr, quod this Robert, as god wyll, so be it.

The same weke the Frenche kynges counsayle returned fro Balyngham<sup>h</sup> to Abbeuyle, and brought with them the artycles of the maner of the peace, whiche the englysshemen, had

4 L 2

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.<sup>b</sup> Chapter CC.<sup>c</sup> Syria.<sup>d</sup> Genoa.

had deuysed: and the maters were so weyghty that the treatie was put ouer tyll another daye, vnto suche tyme as bothe kynges were aduertysed of eche others demaundes, and their pleasures therein to be knowen. Than on y<sup>e</sup> frenche partie the frenche kyng drewe aparte his vncler of Burgoyne, and the chauncellour, and shewed them what enfourmacyon Robert the Hermyt had made vnto him, and the kyng demaunded of them if it were a thyng lysesytte and lawfull to belene. They studied a lytell, and at last sayde: Syr, we requyre youre grace lette vs se this hermyte and here hym speke, and therupon we wyll take aduysse. Than he was sent for. When he came before the kyng he made his reuerence. Thanne the kyng sayd: Roberte, shewe vs here at length all the hole mater, as ye enfourmed me before. Sir, quod he, gladly. Than as he that was no thyng abashed, rehersed all the hole mater, as ye haue herde before. When he had doone he departed. Than the kyng asked of his vncler what was best to be done. Syr, quod he, the chauncellour and I shall take aduysse agaynst tomorowe. Well, quod the kyng, so be it. Than the duke and the chauncellour counsayled togyther on this mater; they sawe well the kyng greatly enclyned to this Robertes wordes: therfore they thought it good to aduysse the kyng to ioyne this Robert in comysion with them to go agayne to Balyngham<sup>a</sup> to the treatie of peace, for they thought his langage so fayre and so swete, that he shulde styrre the hartes of them that shulde here hym speke, to haue peace, and to shewe the deuyn vysyon that he had, to the lordes of Englande; this they thought lawfull ynough to be done, and the nexte day they shewed this to the king: and than after whan the duke and the chauncellour wente agayne to Balyngham,<sup>a</sup> they had this Roberte with them. And whan all the lordes, frenche and englysshe, were assembled togyder in counsaile, than this Robert came before them, and there well and wisely he declared all the vysyon that he hadde on the see, and affermed that it was inspyracyon deuyn sente by god, bycause he wolde it shulde be so. Some of the lordes of Englande toke good hede to this mater and enclyned therto, as the duke of Lancastre, the erle of Salysbury, the lorde Thomas Percy, and other, the bysshops of Lyncolne and London; but the duke of Gloucestre, and the erle of Arundell, toke no hede nor set nothyng therby; whan they were in their lodgynges they sayd, they were but fantasies, and wordes fayned by the frenchemen to abuse them all: howebeit, they determyned to write to kyng Rycharde the maner and sayenge of this Robert the Hermyte, and therupon sent a knyght, called Rycharde Credon, to kyng Rycharde, who he founde in Kent, at the castell of Leades, and deliuered him letters sent fro his ambassadours in the marches of Caleys, wherin was conteyned the hole sayenge of this Robert. The kyng tooke great pleasure in these letters, and sayd howe he wolde gladly speke with this Robert the Hermyte: he beleued this vysyon to be of trouthe. Than the kyng wrote agayne to the duke of Lancastre, and to the erle of Salysbury, that if it myght be by any meanes, that a good peace myght be taken bytwene hym and the frenche kyng, their realmes and alyes: for he sayde, surely he thought that the warre had ouerlonge endured, and that it was tyme to haue peace; and ye haue herde here before howe the treaters bare them, and how the lordes departed one fro another, and howe the treuce was taken to endure for foure yere. This was the entent of the lordes of the englyssh party, except the duke of Gloucestre, for he thought whansoeuer he came into Englande, neuer to agree to any peace bytwene Fraunce and Englande; he dyssimuled as moche as he might, to thentent to please the king, and his brother of Lancastre. Thus by this meanes Roberte le Hermyte came to knowledge.

And as ye haue herde here before how the erle of Rutlande, the erle Marshall, the archebysshop of Duelyn,<sup>b</sup> the lorde Hugh Spenser, the lorde Lewes Clyfforde, and other,

<sup>a</sup> Leulinghem.

<sup>b</sup> Dublin.



other, had been sent into Fraunce to treate for kynge Rychardes maryage, and were retourned agayne into Englande, and brought the kynge good tydynges, so that the kynge was well pleased, as ye haue herde before. Than Mychelmas came, and the generall counsaile began, suche as englysshemen call the terme, wherin all maters be debated; and at the begynnyng of the sayd terme the duke of Lancastre returned out of Gascon into Englande, and had nat ben receuyed there as he thought he shulde haue been (as ye haue herde before): so whan the duke of Lancastre was retourned, the kyng made hym good chere. Tydynges anone came into Fraunce howe the duke of Lancastre was retourned into Englande: than the frenche kynge and his counsaile deternyned to sende Robert the Hermyte into Englande with letters to the kynge, who desyred to se hym: and that the erle of saynt Poll shulde acquaynte hym with y<sup>e</sup> kyng and with the lordes, that they myght here hym speake of the busynesse of Surey<sup>a</sup> and Tartary. and of the greate Turke and Turkey, where he had ben longe: for it was thought that the lordes of Englande wolde gladly here speakyng of suche maters. Than this Robert the Hermyte was warned to make hym redy to go into Englande in comysson, wherof he greatly reioysed, bycause he had neuer been there before: so he had letters deluyered hym, dyrected to the kyng of Englande and to his vncles. Thus Robert departed fro Parys with seven horses, at the cost and charge of the frenche kynge, and rode tyll he came to Boloyne, and there tooke the see and aryued at Douer, and spedde so in his iourneys that he came to Eltham and founde the kynge there, and the duke of Lancastre, the erles of Salysbury and Huntyngdon, and the lorde Thomas Percy; and for the honour of the frenche kynge he was well receuyed, and specyally of the kynge, who desyred greatly to se hym. Than he deluyered his letters of credence, whiche were redde ouer by the kynge and the other lordes. The duke of Gloucestre was nat ther, he was in Essex, at a castell of his called Plasshey. Whan this Robert had been with the kynge and with the duke of Lancastre at Eltham a fyue daies, he departed thens to go se the duke of Gloucestre, and so toke leaue of the kynge and of the lordes and came to London: and the next day rode fyftene myle fro London to a towne called Brendwode, and the next day to Plasshey, and there he founde the duke and the duchesse and their chyldren, who ryght goodly receuyed hym acording to his degre. Than Robert deluyered hym his letters sent fro the frenche kyng; and whan the duke sawe they were of credence, he drewe this Robert aparte, and demaunded what credence he had. Robert aunswered hym and sayd: syr, I shall shewe theym to you at good leyser; I am nat come to departe agayn so soone. Well, quod the duke, ye be welcome. This Robert knewe well ynough that the duke of Gloucestre was a sore dyssymulyng prince, and contrary to any peace, and thought it harde to breke hym fro his opinyon, for he knewe well he was alwaies contrary to the peace, whiche was well sene at the treaties of Balyngham,<sup>b</sup> for he neuer demaunded but to haue warre; yet for all that Robert the Hermyte spared nat to speke to the duke on the forme of peace; alwayes he founde the duke colde in answers, and sayd the mater lay nat in hym, for he had two elder bretherne, the duke of Lancastre and the duke of yorke, to whome the mater partayned rather than to hym; and also that if he wolde consent therto alone, peradventure the other lordes, prelates, and counsaylours of good townes wolde nat accepte it. Well, quod Robert the Hermyte, for the loue of our lorde Jhesu Christ, be ye nat contrarye to the peace, for ye maye do mochie: and also ye se well howe the kyng your nephue enclyneth to the peace, and wyll by maryage haue the Frenche kynges daughter, by whiche coniunctyon shal be gret alyauce of peace and loue. Than the duke aunswered and sayd: What though ye be beleued and herde at this tyme, with the kynges and lordes of bothe realmes, and that ye haue good audyēce

with

<sup>a</sup> Syria.<sup>b</sup> Leulinghem.

with them and with their counsaylours, the mater is so hygh and weyghty, that it is conuenient that greater personages than ye shulde medle therwith: I haue tolde you, and often tymes I haue said, that I shall neuer be contrary to the peace, so it be to the honoure of the kyng and the realme of Englande. In tyme paste, peace was taken bytwene the king our father and our brother the prince of Wales, and kinge Johan of Fraūce. and the frenche party sworne and bounde vpon payne of sentence of the pope; and yet it helde nat, for the frenchmen fraudulently haue broken all couenauntes, and haue taken agayne possessyon of all the landes and lordeshyppes that were yelded and delyuered at the peace makyng to our sayd souerayne lorde and father, and to our predecessours: and moreouer of the sōme of xxx. thousande<sup>a</sup> frankes, that the redempcyon mounted vnto, there is yet to paye syxe hūdred thousande frankes; wherfore, such maters (to remembre) troubleth sore our corages, and we and many of this realme marueyle greatly howe the kyng our souerayne lorde leaneth to so yonge aduyse and counsayle, and regardeth none otherwyse the tyme passed and the tyme present: but enclineth to alye hym by maryage with his aduersary, and by that alyauce dysheryte the crowne of Englande, and his successours to come, of † clayme of Fraunce. Ah, ryght dere lorde, quod Robert: our lorde Jesu Christ suffered passyon on the Crosse for vs all synners. and pardoned his dethe to them that crucyfyed him; in lykewyse a man must pardon that wyll come to the glory of heuen; and, sir, all yuell wylls, hates, and rancoures, were pardoned the daye that the peace was made and sealed at Calays by our predecessours: and nowe warres haue been agayne newly renewed bytwene your men and ours, I thynke surely through faulte on bothe parties: for whan the prince of Wales, duke of Acquytayne, was returned out of Spayne into Acquytayne, there were a certayne maner of people calling themselves companyons, wherof the moste partye were englysshemen and gascons, holdyng of the kyng of Englande and of the prince of Wales; these people assembled them togyther, and entred into the realme of Fraunce, without any tytell of reason, wherby ensued mortall and cruell warre, greater than was before: these companyons called the realme of Fraunce their chambre; they were so set to do yuell dedes, ‡ they coude nat be resysted. And whan † realme of Fraūce sawe and felte them so harmed by this people, and sawe well the lengar they contynued the more they multiplyed and more hurte they dyd, than kyng Charles of Fraūce, sonne to kyng Johan, was counsayled by his subgyettes to resyst and subdue suche enemyes, outhur by warre or otherwyse; and many great barons of Gascoyne came to the frenche kyng, suche as said they were sore ouerlayde with their lorde the prince of Wales, and many iniuries done to thē, whiche they shewed to the frenche kyng they might nat nor wolde nat suffre no lenger; and so they beganne the warre bycause of their resorte to the prince of Wales. Than this kyng Charles, by counsayle of them and of his subgyettes, enhardyed himselfe to the warre with these barones of Gascoyne for to mete against these companyons: and in this newe warre many lordes returned to the frenche kyng, and dyuers lordeshyppes, cyties, townes, and castels, for the great oppression that the prince of Wales dyd to thē, and consented to be done by his cōmyssioners. Thus the warre was renewed, wherby many great myschefes haue fallen, to the destruction of moche people and countreys, and the faythe of Christ sore febled and decayed, and the enemyes of god ryssen and coraged, and haue allredy conquered moche parte of Grece. The emperour of Constantynople hath nat the power to resyst the pyussāuce of the great turke, called Basant Lamorabaquyn,<sup>b</sup> who hath conquered the realme of Armony;<sup>c</sup> excepte all onely a towne standyng on the see syde, called Courche, whiche the venysians and genouoys kepe agaynst † turke; and the emperour of Constantyne the noble, who is of your blode, he was somie to the emperoure

<sup>a</sup> 3,000,000.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet, son of Amurath.<sup>c</sup> Armenia.

emperoure Hugues of Luzignen and of my lady Mary of Burbon, cosyn germayne to my lady the quene your mother; he shall nat be able of longe to resyst the puyssaunce of this gret turke; and if peace maye be had bytwene Englande and Fraunce, as I trust by the grace of god it shall be, than knyghtes and squyers, suche as demaunde for dedes of armes for their aduancement, shall drawe them to that parte, and shall helpe kyng Lyon of Armony<sup>a</sup> to recouer agayne his herytage and to put out the turkes: for surely the warre hath ouer longe endured bytwene Fraunce and Englande, and surely whosoever it be that is or wyll be against the peace shall derely aunswere therto, outhr quycke or deed. Howe knowe you that? quod the duke of Gloucestre. Syr, quod Robert, all that I say cometh by dyuine inspyracion, and by a vysione that came to me vpon the see, as I returned fro Baruth, a porte in Surey,<sup>b</sup> besyde the isle of Rodes. Than he declared all his hole vysion, the rather therby to moue the dukes herte to pytie and reason; but this duke was herde herted agaynst the peace and kept styll his opynion. and by his wordes condempned and dyspyed greatly the frenchemen, for all þeuer Robert the Hermyte coude say; but bycause that this Robert was a straüger, and shewed by his wordes and werkes that he wolde all were well, and also bycause the duke sawe that the kyng his nephue enclyned to haue peace, he dyssymuled and spake fayre, whatsoeuer his herte thought. Two dayes this Robert taryed at plasshey with the duke and had good chere, and the thyrde day departed and returned to London, and fro thence to Wyndesore, where the kyng made hym good chere for loue that the frenche kyng had sent him thyder, and bycause he was wyse and eloquēt, and of swete wordes and honest. It is nat to be doubted but that the kyng demaüded of hym howe he founde his vncler the duke of Gloucestre: and Robert answered him well to the poynte. The kyng knewe well his vncler of Gloucestre enclyned rather to warre than to peace; wherfore he fauoured moche better his other two vnclers, dukes of Lancastre and yorke. Whan Robert the hermyte had ben a moneth with the king he toke his leaue, and at his departyng the kyng gaue hym great gyftes, and so dyd the dukes of Lancastre and yorke, and the erles of Huntyngdon and Salysbury, and the lorde Thomas Percy. The kyng caused hym to be conueyed to Douer, and there passed ouer into Fraunce; and he founde the frenche kyng and the quene and his vnclers at Paris, and there shewed the kinge all his voyage, and what good chere he had in Englande. Thus dayly messengers went in and out bytwene these two kynges, and amyable letters sent bytwene them. The kyng of Englande desyred nothyng so moche as to come to this maryage, and semblably the frenche kyng had lyke desyre, for he thought his daughter shulde be a great estate if she might be quene of Englande.

*Of the delyueraunce of the lorde de la Ryuer and of syr Johan le Mercyer; and howe they were put out of prisone.*

#### C A P. CCV.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe þe lorde de la Ryuer and sir Johan le Mercyer were in ieeperdy of their lyues, and removed fro prison to prison, and at laste delyuered to the prouost of the Chatelet of Parys, and were at the poynte to lose their lyues, and all for hate and enuye that the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne and their counsaille had to them: they were in this daunger more than two yere: the kyng socoured thē, for always he stopped the execusion; and that the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne sawe well, and

<sup>a</sup> Leo of Armenia.

<sup>b</sup> Syria.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCI.

and also they perceyued that the duke of Orlyauce ayded them as moche as he might; also the duches of Berrey was a good meane for them, and specially for *ŷ* lorde de la Ryuer: and also the one coulde nat be condempned without the other, for they were accused all for one cause. The prayers of good folkes and their ryght togyther ayded them. Than it was regarded by many of the high barones of Frauce who had pytie on them, and sayd they had suffred prisonement ouer longe, and that it was tyme to shewe them grace, for this Johan le Mercyer had so moche wept in prison *ŷ* his syght was sore decayed, so that he coude scant se: the brute ranne through the realme that he was blynde. Than at last they had sentence gyuen them of grace by the kyng, and there the lorde de la Ryuer was restored agayne to all his landes and castels, as *ŷ* fayre castell of Aniou:<sup>a</sup> but he was charged on payne of his lyfe, that whan he was ones in his castell of Aniove,<sup>a</sup> that he shulde neuer after repasse the ryuer of Sayne, without he were cōmaunded by the kynges owne mouthe: and syr Johan le Mercyer to retourne to Poūte de Nonnon,<sup>b</sup> into his fayre house in Laonnys, and he nat to repasse the ryuer of Oyse, of Marne, nor of Seyne, without he were in lykewyse called by the kynges owne mouth. Thus they bounde themselfe to take this prisonement, and thought they had a great grace to scape so well, and were ryght ioyouse whan they were delyuered fro the Chatelet. They trusted whan they came out of prison to haue spoken with *ŷ* kyng, and to haue thanked hym of his grace; but they coulde nat be suffred, but were cōmaunded to auoyde out of Parys, and to resorte thyder as they were cōmaūded. Thus they were delyuered, wherof their frendes had great ioy.

*Of the peace that was hadde bytwene the duke of Bretayne and sir Olyuer Clisson.*

C A P. CCVI.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde howe the duke of Bretayne and syr Olyuer of Clisson warred longe togyther mortally, for bytwene them they toke none to mercy: and surely syr Olyuer of Clisson and his partie bare them so valyaütly, that of thre he had twayne: for the lordes of Bretayne dyssimuled with the duke, and men of the cyties and good townes sayde, howe they must nedes lyue and vse their marchaundyse, whatsoever warre was bytwene the duke and syr Olyuer of Clisson, for they sayd it touched them nothing, wherfore they wolde nat entermedle bytwene them; but euer the Vycount of Rohan, the lorde de Leon, and the lorde of Dignan<sup>d</sup> treated for a peace to be had bytwene them. So moch they pursewed that the duke promysed to be entreated, so that he myght se syr Olyuer in his presence and speke with hym: and thervpon these lordes on a day rode to a forresse of syr Olyuers to speke with him, and there they shewed him for what cause they wer come thyder, and howe they had got graüt of the duke to sende to him a safeconducte, safely to go and come to speke with hym, sayeng, *ŷ* surely they thought if he were ones in his presence, all the yuell wyll and displeasures shulde be clerly pardoned. Than sir Olyuer sayd: Sirs, ye are all my frendes and louers, and I trust greatlye in you, and beleue that the duke hath promysed as you saye, and I thynke he wolde gladly se me in his presēce; but so god helpe me and saynt yues, vpon his worde and promise I ensure you I wyll nat ones issue out of my house; but I shall tell you what ye shall saye to hym; that if he wyll haue me to come to hym, let hym sende hyder in pledge his eldest sonne, and whan he is here, thañe I wyll go and speke with hym, and suche ende as I shall make, his sonne shall make; yf I retourne, he sha I do in lykewyse

<sup>a</sup> Auneau.

<sup>b</sup> Pont de Louvion.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCH.

<sup>d</sup> Dinant.

lykewise; and if I abyde, he shall abide. When these lordes sawe they coude haue none other ende, they tooke their leaue and returned to Wannas, where the duke was, and shewed euery thyng as they had herde. The duke coude haue none other waye. This sir Olyuer bare hymselfe so valyauntly in this warre, that he wanne more than he lost: he toke two tymes all the dukes vessell and plate of golde and syluer, and dyuers other iewelles, wherof he hadde great profyete.

The conclusyon of the warre and hate bytwene the duke of Bretayne and sir Olyuer Clysson was thus: The duke of Bretayne (lyke a great lorde as he was) sawe well he coude nat come to his entent of sir Olyuer of Clysson, and that he had ouer many frendes in Bretayne: for sauyng their alegiauce to y<sup>e</sup> duchy of Bretayne, all the bretons, knyghtes, squyers, prelates, and men of the good cyties and good townes enclyned more to the lorde Clysson than to the duke: and the highe barons dissymuled, and had aunswered the duke that they wolde nat entremedle them with that warre, but sayde they wolde gladly sette a peace and accorde bytwene thē: also the duke of Orlyauce specially confortyd couertly in many maner of wayes sir Olyuer of Clysson, and he was alwayes ioyous whan he herde of his good spede in any of his entreprices. The duke of Bretayne, who was a subtyle prince and ymaginatyfe, and had endured moche payne duryng this warre, and sawe well he was nat very well beloued with his owne people, as the chyldren of the lorde Charles of Bretayne were, the one called Charles of Bloyes, who was slayne at the batayle of Alroy,<sup>a</sup> and Johñ of Bretayne, erle of Ponthieux<sup>b</sup> and of Lymogines, who had to wyfe the daughter of sir Olyuer of Clisson, and the lorde Henry of Bretayne his brother, and their suster the quene of Naples and of Hierusalem; also the duke sawe that he began to waxe olde, and that his chyldren were but yonge, and parceyued well he had no frendes in Fraūce, except the duke of Burgoyne and the duches his wyfe; and he sawe well his chyldren shulde haue as fewe, for by their mothers syde they came and were issued of the membres and braunches of Nauer, whiche generacion was nat ouermuche loued in Fraunce, for the great myscheues y<sup>e</sup> kynge Charles of Nauerre, father to the duchesse of Bretayne, had done in tyme past in Fraunce, wherof the remembrance as than endured; and the duke sawe that if he dyed in that estate, bothe with sir Olyuer of Clisson and with the erle of Ponthieux,<sup>b</sup> he than doutyd that his chyldren that were so yonge shulde haue ouer many great enemyes; and also he sawe that the alyauce bytwene hym and Englande began to waxe colde, for he was enfoimed that the kynge of Englande shulde haue to wyfe the daughter of Fraūce, the same lady that was promysed to hym for his sonne and heyre. The duke dyde cast all these doutes. Thañe all thynges considered, he ymagined to breke his herte without dissimulation, and make a ferme peace with sir Olyuer of Clysson and with Johan of Bretayne, and wolde putte hymselfe at their pleasure; to make amendes for all wrathes, forfaytes, and dōmages that euer they dyde to hym or to his men duryng the warre, he wolde desyre nothyng, but that they shulde take hym for duke of Bretayne, and his chyldren after hym, accordyng to the artycles of the peace before made bytwene hym and the chyldren of sir Charles of Bloyes, whiche charter of peace he wolde nat breke, nor any artycle comprised therin; and also to kepe and vpholde euery thyng that he had promysed to Johñ of Bloyes his cosyn, erle of Ponthieux,<sup>b</sup> and if he hadde nat his parte of the herytage of Bretayne sufficient, he wolde putte the ordryng therof without any dissimulation to the vicount of Rohan, and to the lordes of Dignan,<sup>c</sup> of Leon, of Lauall, and of Beaumont, and of the lorde Johñ of Harpeden. When the duke of Bretayne had aduysed in hymselfe all this purpose, without makynge of any man of his counsayle, he called to hym his secreta-

<sup>a</sup> Auray.<sup>b</sup> Penthievre.<sup>c</sup> Dinant.

torie : and in a chābre they two alone, he caused hym to write a letter to sir Olyuer of Clysston, as swetely and amiably as coude be deuysed, desyryng hym that they might speke toguyder secretly, on trust to haue good peace bytwene thē. When this letter was made, deuysed, and sealed, than he toke a secrete person, cōmaundyng hym to go to the castell of Josselyn, and sayde : I do sende the to speke with my cosyn sir Olyuer of Clysston : and salute hym for me and deluyer hym this letter, and bring agayne an answer : and on payne of thy lyfe kepe this secrete, and shewe no creature whider thou gost, nor who dothe sende the. He tooke his journey and spedde hym so well, that he cāe to the castell Josselyn. The porters had marueyle whan they herde hym saye that he cāe fro the duke to speke with their maister, they wente and shewed their lorde therof. Than he cōmaunded that the messenger shulde cōe to hym, and so he dyde, and well and wisely declared his message, and deluyered his letter sealed with the dukes seale, whiche sir Olyuer knewe ryght well, and opnyed and reed the letter two or thre tymes, the better to vnderstande it : and in the redyng he had great marueyle of the swete wordes, tretable, and amyable, that was comprised in the letter : he studied a season, and at last sayd, howe he wolde take aduysse and write agayne. Sir Olyuers men hadde great marueyle of this, for before he had forborne no man of the dukes, but outhere he was slayne, or putte in prisone. Thāñe sir Olyuer wente into his secrete chambre, and began to muse and ymagyn vpon these newes ; at last he apesed his yuell wyll, in that ð duke humyled hymselfe so moche towards him, and that he wrote so swetely ; yet he thought in hymselfe to proue the duke further, or he aduentured hymselfe to go to the duke, for he thought if he toke any hurte, no man wolde bewayle hym, if he lost hymselfe by folly. Than he wrote a letter to the duke ryght swete and tretable, but the conclusyon was, that yf he wolde haue hym to come and speke with hym, that he shuld sende his soñe and heyre to lye in hostage for hym tyll his retourne. This letter was deluyered to the dukes varlet, who returned therwith to Wannas where the duke was, and there deluyered his letter. The duke reed it, and studied a lytell and sayd, I shall do it, to the entente to treate louyngly with hym. Than the duke wrote a letter to the vycount of Rohan, who was at the castell of Cayre. When the vycount sawe the dukes letter, he came incontynent to Wannas. Than the duke shewed all his purpose and entencyon, and sayd : Vycount, you and the lorde of Mountbursier shall leade my soñe to the castell Josselyn, and leaue hym there, and bringe with you the lorde Olyuer Clysston, for I wyll agree and make peace with hym. The vicoūt sayd it shulde be done gladly : so they toke the dukes sonne and heyre, who was about the age of eight yere, and ledde hym to ð castell Josselyn, to the lorde Olyuer Clysston, who receyued them ryght honorably ; and whan he sawe the chyld and the good affection of the duke, he humyled and apesed his herte greatlye : and with that the knyghtes tolde hym, and sayd : sir, ye se the good wyll of the duke, he hath spoken nothyng but his hert dothe agre to the same. I se it well, quod sir Olyuer, and for that I se and perceyue his good wyll, I shall put me so far forthe, that I shall yelde me vnder his obeysaunce ; and it semeth ye be ryght nere to hym, seyng he putteth his affiaunce and trust in you, to deluyer you his heyre to bringe to me to lye in hostage tyll I be returned ; I wotte nat if he haue shewed you what he hath written to me, sygned and sealed with his seale. The lordes answered and said : Sir, he hath well tolde vs, that he hath ryght great desyre to come to a peace and accorde with you : in this ye maye right well beleue vs, we be of your blode. Thāñe sir Olyuer went for the letters that the duke had sent hym, and reed them. Sir, quod they, all that is conteyned in this letter he hath said vnto vs, and vpon the same estate he hath sent vs hyder. Than sir Olyuer ordaygned hym to departe with the sayd lordes, and toke the dukes sonne agayne with them, and said : howe they shulde bringe agayne the chyld to his father, sayeng that he trusted right well his promyse, cōsydring that he had proued hym so farre, and that he had shewed suche humilyte,

milyte, he doutyd nat but that his herte was in vnyte: so they came to Wannys. The duke had apoynted that sir Olyuer shulde tary at a Freres without the towne of Wannys, and there the duke shulde come and speke with hym: as it was ordayned so it was done. And whan the duke sawe that sir Olyuer had brought agayne his sonne and heyre, he reputed it for a great curtesy, and was well content therw. Thus the duke and sir Olyuer mette in the Freres, and there they two alone entred into a chambre, and comūned toguyder a season, and after issued out through a gardeyn and came to the ryuer syde, and there they entred into a bote, and fro thens entred into a shyppe that laye at ancre; and so whan they were farre of fro all people, they comūned a longe season toguyder. What their wordes were I knowe nat, but their dealyng was as I shall shewe you.

Their men had went they hadde been styll in the Freres: but as it was shewed me they were thus in the shyppe more than two houres, and there made a good peace bytwene them, and sware faythe and trouthe eche to other without dissymulacyon. Than they called agayne ſy boteman, and he brought them agayne where he had them, and so entred agayne by the gardeyne syde into the Freres. Than anone after the duke cæ out and ledde sir Olyuer of Clysso by ſy hande, and so went into the towne of Wannys, and into the castell called le Mote. Of this peace euery man was greatly reioysed, and to se them so amiably toguyder, and so was all the cuntry. At the makyng of this peace Johñ of Bloyes erle of Ponthieux<sup>2</sup> lost nat, for his reuenewes was therby augmented of twētie thousande crownes of golde by yere for euer to hym and to his heyres. And at this peace a maryage was ordayned for ſy duke of Bretaynes daughter, to confyrme the better the loue and alyaunces bytwene them; great newes ran through Fraunce and Englande of this peace.

Ye haue herde here before howe sir Peter of Craon fell in the frenche kynges displeasure, and of the duke of Orlyauce, bycause of sir Olyuer of Clysso, in that he wolde haue slayne hym on a nyght as he went to his house warde: and howe the duke of Bretayne susteyned hym in his house, by whiche occasyon the frēche kyng wolde haue made warre agaynst the duke, if the sickenesse that tooke hym had nat been, by whiche incydetes the kynges army brake vp: and also ye haue herde howe the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne bare great displeasure to all suche as counsayled the kyng therto, as sir Olyuer of Clysso, the lorde de la Ryuer, the lorde Johan le Mercyer, Montague, and other, who afterwarde endured therby great prisonment; and howe the two dukes had the gouernaūce of the realme, as long as the kyng was in his sickenesse. Also it hath ben shewed what mortall warre was bytwene the duke of Bretayne, and sir Olyuer of Clysso: and also howe the lordes de la Ryuer, sir Johan Mercyer, and Montague, were delyuered out of prisone, whiche Montague had nat so moche trouble as the other had, for as soone as the kyng was returned to his helth, he toke Mōtague agayne about hym, and made his excuse: so by reason of these sōdrie sickeneses that the kyng had dyuers tymes gretly troubled the realme of Fraūce, and moche abated the kynges puissance, so that he had nat euery thyng done accordyng to his wyll. In this season sir Peter of Craon was nothyng displeasid with the kynges sickenesse, nor with the trouble that they of his counsayle hadde; howbeit, than he made sute to retourne agayne into the kynges fauour and loue, and the duke of Burgoyne, and the lorde Guy of Tremouille,<sup>3</sup> were his aduocates to treatre for hym: and lightly his peace had been made, and the duke of Orlyauce had nat ben, for he letted all that treatie: for as longe as the hate endured bytwene sir Olyuer Clysso, and the duke of Bretayne, sir Peter

<sup>2</sup> Penthievre.<sup>3</sup> De la Tremouille,

of Craon coude come to no peace nor accorde; but whā it was surely knowen that there was a peas made bytwene the duke and sir Olyuer, thā the quarell agaynst sir Peter of Craon was molyfied and well appeased. The same season quene Jane of Naples and Hierusalem, and duches of Aniou, had a plee in parlyament agaynst sir Peter of Craon, for ŷ some of a C. M. frākes; this lady lay styll at Paris, the better to entende to her busynesse: sir Peter of Craon ŷ sawe hymselfe in ŷ dāger, and that he was in sute in the parlyament, and knewe nat howe his busynesse shulde passe, outhur with hym or agaynst hym, for the ladies partie was strong, and had good profe of whom he had receyued the money, in the dayes of kyng Loyes her husbāde; all these thynges cōsydred, he ymagyned ŷ it was nat easy for him to beare; and also he knewe well he was in hate with the frenche kyng, and with the duke of Orlyauce: but the duke and duchesse of Burgoyne cōforted and ayded hym as moche as they myght; he gate suche grace that he was at Paris secretly, in the house of Arthoys, with the duches of Burgoyne.

Nowe we shall leauē to speke of hym at this tyme.

*Howe the kyng of Hungry wrote to the Frenche kynge the state of the great turke, and howe Johan of Burgoyne, eldest sonne to the duke of Burgoyne, was chefe and heed of the army that went thider.*

#### C A P. CCVI.<sup>3</sup>

IN this sayd season Hēry<sup>b</sup> kyng of Hūgry, sent swete and amyable letters to ŷ frēche king, by a notable ambassade, a bysshop and ii. knightes of Hungry. In the same letters was cōteyned a great parte of ŷ state and doying of the great turke, and how that he had sent worde to the kyng of Hungry, ŷ he wolde come and fight with hym in ŷ myddes of his realme, and wolde go fro thens to the cytie of Rome, and wolde make his horse to eate otes vpon the high auter of saynt Peter, and there to holde his see imperyall, and wolde bringe the emperour of Constantyne the noble in his cōpany, and all the great barons of the realme of Grece, and eche of thē to kepe styll their owne lawe: for he desyred nothyng but the tytell and signorie. Thus the kyng of Hūgry in his letters, prayed the Frenche kyng to entende to ayde and socour him, and that this busynesse in farre cōutreis might be publissed abrode, to thentent that all knightes and squyers myght prouyde to come into Hungry, to resyst agaynst Lamorabaquy,<sup>c</sup> the great turke, to thentent ŷ Christendome shulde nat be violated by him, and that his pride and bost myght be abated. In these letters were conteygned many wordes of great loue, as kynges and cosyns write eche to other in case of necessity; and they were sente by sufficient personages, who dyde so moche that the Frenche kyng enclyned his hert therto, and was the gladder to sette forwarde the treatie of ŷ mariage of his daughter to the kyng of Englande. Than anone these newes of Hungry were publissed abrode, and writen into many cōutreis, to moue the hertes of gentylnen, knightes, and squiers, suche as wolde auance them to get honour. The same season that these newes were brought to the kyng, there was at Parys the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse, and Johan of Burgoyne their sonne and heyre, erle of Neuers, who as than was no knyght, and the lorde Guye of Tremoyle,<sup>d</sup> and the lorde Wyllyam his brother, and many lordes and other of the realme of Fraunce. Than the duke of Burgoyne enclyned sore to this viage,

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCIII.

<sup>b</sup> Sigismond.

<sup>c</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>d</sup> De la Tremouille.



viage, and specially that his soñe shulde enterpryce the sayd voyage, so he myght be cheife heed and leader of the army that shulde go in that viage. This Johan of Burgoyne was but a yonge man of the age of xxii. yeres, wyse, curtesse, trefable, humble, and wel beloued of knyghtes and squyers of Burgone, and of other nacyons, suche as knewe hym; he had to wyle the daughter of duke Aubert of Bauier,<sup>a</sup> erle of Heynalte, Hollande, and Zelâde, a good lady, wyse and deuont, and had two chyl dren full lykely to come to great maryages. One shewed this Johan of Burgoyne howe the Frenche kyng wolde sende hym in this voyage into Hungry, to se what he wolde saye. Than he sayd, if it plecthe the kyng and the duke my father to sende me as cheife of this armye, it shall please me ryght well, for I haue great desyre to auance myselfe. Well, sir, quod they, ye were best to speke with the duke youre father that he maye speke to the kyng, for without his good wyll ye can do nothyng.

It was nat long after but that this Johan of Burgoyne spake to his father, prayeng hym humbly to consent y he myght go in this voyage into Hungry, and at the same tyme there was by hym sir Gnye and sir Wylliam of Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> and other, and they said to the duke: Sir, this request that your sonne maketh is but resonable, for it is tyme he take the order of knighthode, and more nobly he can nat take it, than in goyng the journey agaynst the enemyes of holy Churche: and if the kyng wyll sende any personage in that voyage, he can nat sende a more honorable man thane his owne cosyng germaine your sonne, and ye shall se many knyghtes go with hym, as well for their owne auâncementes as for your loue. Than the duke said, well, so be it; I shall nat lette the good wyll of my sonne, I shall speke to the kyng therin, and shall se what answer he wyll make. And anone after, the duke spake to the kyng therin, and the kyng incontentynent enclenyed therto, and sayd, howe it shulde be well done that he went, and we wyll that he shall go, and we wyll make hym as cheife of that iourney. Than y tydynges was shewed throughe all Parys, and without, that Johan of Burgoyne, with a great company of knyghtes, shulde go into Hungry to se the puyssaunce of the great Turke; and that iourney atchyued, thanne the Christenmen to go to Constâtyne the noble, and to passe ouer the arme of saynt George, and so to entre into Surrey,<sup>c</sup> and to delyuer Hierusalem out of the panymys handes. Than awaked suche knyghtes and squyers as desyred aduancement. Whan the duke of Burgoyne sawe that his sonne shulde go in this voyage, and that he shulde be cheife of the army, he honored than the more the ambassadours of Hungry, who whan they sawe the kynges good wyll, the dukes, and the Frenchmens, they were gladde, and toke their leaue of the kyng and of the other lordes of Fraunce, and so returned to their countrey, and made relacyon to y kyng of Hungry howe they had spedde: wherwith the kyng was greatly reioysed, and made great prouision agaynst the cōmyng of the Frenchemen, and sent these ambassadours to his brother the kyng of Almaine,<sup>d</sup> to open his passages, and also to his cosyng the duke of Austriche,<sup>e</sup> for throughe the straytes of Austriche<sup>e</sup> he muste nedes passe; and by all the wayes he caused great prouision of vitayle to be ordayned: and also he wrote letters to the great mayster of Pruce,<sup>f</sup> and to the Rhodes, certifiyng them of the cōmyng of Johan of Burgoyne, with a thousande knyghtes and squiers of valyant men, to the entent to entre into Turkey, and to resyst the great bost of kyng Basant,<sup>g</sup> called the great turke.

In this season the lorde Coucy was come to Parys, and was but newlye returned fro a voyage, where he hadde ben a hole yere, whiche was on the fronters of Gēcs.<sup>h</sup> And there

<sup>a</sup> Bavaria.

<sup>b</sup> De la Tremouille.

<sup>c</sup> Syria.

<sup>d</sup> Germany.

<sup>e</sup> Austria:

<sup>f</sup> Prussia.

<sup>g</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>h</sup> Genoa.

there were certayne great men genowayes, that had enformed ÿ duke of Orlyauunce, that the hoolle Duchy of Geane,<sup>a</sup> desyred to haue to their chiefe lorde some noble persone, discended of the lynage of the flour delyce; and for as moche as the duke of Orlyauunce had wedded the daughter of the lorde of Myllayne, and that the launde and duchy of Geane<sup>a</sup> shulde be ryght mete for hym, at the duke of Orlyauunce instaunce the lorde of Coucy with thre hūdred speares, and fyue hūdred crosbowes, passed ouer into Sauoye, and to Pyemont, by the accorde and consent of the erle of Sauoye, and came into Aste, in Pyemont, by the consent of the lorde of Myllayne, and came to a cytie called Alexandria: and so came to the fronters and marchesse of the genowayes, and there fell in treatie with them to know more playnly their entēcyons, for perforce he coulde do nothyng, without he had had greater puissaunce than he had. And whan the lorde of Coucy came first vpon the fronters of the ryuer of Geane,<sup>a</sup> where the entrees are stronge to conquire, if there he made any defence, some lordes of the genowayes, suche as faouered the lorde Coucy, and had enformed the duke of Orlyauunce, wherby he sente thyder the lorde of Coucy, they entreated him amiably and brought hym to their cōtreis, and offred to hym their castels. The lorde of Coucy, who was sage, subtyle, and ymaginatyfe, and knewe right well the nature of the lombardes and genowayes, wolde nat trust them ouer moche, nor haue to great confydence in their offers and promyses, but alwayes wysely he helde them in loue and amyte, as longe as he was amonge them, and ledde them forth with fayre wordes and treaties; they had many cōmunycacyons in the felde toguyder, but neuer in no fortresse, and euer the more he comuned with theym, the lesse he conquered or gate: the genouoys made to him sygne of loue, and promysed hym many thynges, and wolde haue had hym to haue gone into the cytie of Gennes,<sup>b</sup> or to Porte Vender,<sup>b</sup> but the lorde of Coucy durst neuer assure hym in their offers. The conclusyon of his voyage was suche that he gate nothyng: and whan he sawe that he coulde nat atheue his busynesse, he signyfyed his estate to the duke of Orlyauunce: wherupon he was remaunded, and so he retourned to Parys, and came thyder the same season that all the busynesse was for the iourney goyng into Hungery. The duke of Burgoyne reioysed greatly of his retourne, and he and the duchesse sente for hym to their house of Arthoys, in sygne of great loue; than they sayd to him: Syr, we trust moche in you: we haue caused Johan our sonne and heyre to take on hym an enterprise in ÿ honour of god and of all christendome, and we knowe well that aboue all other knyghtes of Fraunce, ye are the moste vsed and expert in all thynges; wherfore derely we requyre you that ye wolde be companion with our sonne in this voyage, and his chyefe counsaylour, wherof we shall thanke you, and deserue it to you and yours. Than the lorde of Coucy said: my lorde, and you madame, your wordes and requestes ought to be to me a cōmaundement: in this voyage I shall go if it please god, for two causes: First, for deuocyon to defende the faythe of Jhesu Christ: Secondly, in that ye do to me so moche honour, as to gyue me charge of my lorde Johan your sonne, and I shall acquyte me truely to him to my power; howebeit, of this dede ye may well dyscharge me, and to charge specyally his cosyn and nere kynesman, my lorde Phylippe of Arthoys, erle of Ewe, and constable of Fraunce, and his other cosyn the erle of Marche; bothe two ought to go with hym in this voyage, for they be both nere of his blode. Than the duke sayd: My lorde of Coucy, ye haue moche more sene than these other twayn haue, and knowe better the orderynge of an army in straunge countreys, than outhur our cosyn of Ewe or of March: therefore we charge you and praye you to execute our requestes. Than he answered and sayd: my lorde, your prayer is to me a cōmaundement, and I shall do it, sythe it pleaseth you, with the ayde and helpe of my lorde Guye of Tremoyle,<sup>c</sup> and of my lorde Guillyam his brother,

<sup>a</sup> Genoa.<sup>b</sup> Porto Vener.<sup>c</sup> De la Tremouille.

brother, and of the admyrall of Fraunce. Of this answe're the duke and duchesse had great ioye.

These lordes prepared themselves to go in this iourney into Hūgery, and lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, were desyred to go in their company, and many desyred themselves to go. Some were retaygned, and some went without maysters, and some, consideringe the voyage into Hungery, and fro thence into Turkey to be ouerlonge, and chargeable for them, beyng nat retaygned, waxed colde in their enterpryse. For the settinge forwarde of this yonge Johan of Burgoyne, nothyng was spared, horse, harnesse, fresshe clothes, riche vessell, and plate of golde and syluer, and offycers apoynted to do their attendaūce, and money delyuered and werkemen payed. Than all barones, knyghtes, and squiers, for the honour of Johū of Burgoyne, and also for the auancement of their bodies, enforced them to make them redy. The lorde Phylippe of Arthoys ordeyned hym so puyssantly that nothyng was spared, and wolde go in that voyage as Constable of Fraunce; and the frenche kynge who loued him entierlye, helped hym moche towarde his charges, and so he dyd to the lorde Boucyquant marshall of Fraunce. The duke of Burgoyne considered that this voyage of his sonnes shulde coste ouer moche synaunce, and he thought it conuenient that the state of his sonne shulde be mayntayned: and to fynde syluer to mayntayne it withall, he foude out subtelly a backe tayle;<sup>a</sup> for by a former tayle all the countreys, cyties, and fortresses, had ben tayled, and the said backe tayle<sup>a</sup> mounted in Burgoyne of the chyualtry, syxe hundred thousande crownes of golde: and agayne, the duke made it to be tolde to all knyghtes and ladyes that helde of him in fee, yonge and olde, that they shulde go into Hungery in their owne propre persones with his sonne, or els to paye a taxe of syluer; so they were taxed, some at a thousande poude, the other at fyue hundred frankes, and eche man after his goodes and valure of his landes. Ladyes and auneynt knyghtes remembre the traueyle of their bodyes, and were nat shapen nor made to endure suche payne, compoude and payed at the wyll of the Duke. The yonge knyghtes and squyers were forborne payng of any money, but it was said to them that they shulde go with the lorde Johan at their owne coste and charge, and otherwyse nat. Of this backe tayle the duke reysed lx. thousande crownes, and so none was forborne.

The tydynges of this voyage spredde abrode, and whan it came into the countrey of Haynalt, knyghtes and squyers, suche as desyred auancement, spake togyther and sayde: A, this were a mete voyage for my lorde of Ostrenant, who is yonge, and for his brother the erle of Neuers, and if any of them wente, we myght well go in their company. The erle of Ostrenant beyng at that tyme at Quesnoy, vnderstode what the knyghtes and squyers of his countrey sayde, and he thought no lesse thā they dyd, and had great affectyon to go in this voyage; and whan he herde any spekyng of that mater, he wolde answer but lytell, but dyssymuled the mater, but he was in good entencion to speke with duke Aubert of Bauyer erle of Haynalt, and to do as he wolde counsayle hym. Within a whyle after the Erle of Ostrenant came into Hay,<sup>b</sup> in Holand, where his father was with the duchesse his wyfe; than he sayd to his father: my lorde, suche tydinges rynneth abrode that my fayre brother of Neuers hathe enterprised this sōmer to go into Hungery, and fro thens into Turkey, where by all lykelyhode great dedes of armes shall be atchyued; and syr, as at this tyme I wotte nat where better to employe myselfe in any dede of armes, wherin I wolde gladly knowe youre pleasure; I wolde go in that honourable voyage with a hundred knyghtes, and beare company with my fayre brother; the duke of Burgoyne, and my lady the duchesse shall can me gret thanke, and  
many

<sup>a</sup> "Arrière-taille," reserved tax.

<sup>b</sup> The Hague

many knyghtes and squyers of Haynalt, wyll gladly holde me company. Than duke Aubert, as a man redy purueyed of aunswere, sayd: Gnylliam, what haste or wyll haue you to go in this voyage into Hungery, and into Turkey, to seke armes vpon people and cuntry that neuer dyd vs any forfeyte; thou hast no tytell of reason to go, but for the vayne glory of the worlde: lette Johan of Burgoyne and our cosins of Fraunce do their enterprise, and do thy dedes aparte, and go thou into Frese<sup>a</sup> and conquer our herytage, that these fresones by pride and rudenes do witholde fro vs, and wyll come to none obeysaunte, and to do this I shall ayde the. The wordes of the father to the sonne lyghtened greatly the herte of therle of Ostreuant, who answered and sayd: My lorde, ye saye well, and if it please you that I shall do that voyage, I shall do it with ryght a good wyll.

*Howe the erle of Ostreuant enterprised to go into Frese.\**

C A P. CCVII.<sup>b</sup>

THESE wordes bytwene the father and the sonne multiplyed so moche, lytell and ytell, that the voyage into Frese<sup>a</sup> was taken and enterprised, and one thyng helped moche the matter forward, and that was, the erle of Ostreuant had at that tyme aboute hym, and nere of his counsaile, a squyer of Haynalte, called Ferebrase, otherwise called the bastarde Vertayne, a wyse man and a subtyll in feates of armes, so that whan he herde of this he said to the erle: Syr, my lorde your father speketh well, it is better for your honour that ye make this voyage rather than into Hungery, and ordayne you therto, and ye shall fynde knyghtes and squyers of Haynalt, and elsewhere, that wyll be gladde to kepe you company, and shall ayde you to their powers to do this enterprise: and if ye haue mynde thus to do, I wyll counsaile you to go into Englande, and to signyfy your enterprise to the knyghtes and squyers there: and pray the kynge of Englande your cosyn, that he wyll gyue lycence to knyghtes, squyers, and archers, to go with you into Frese,<sup>a</sup> at your wages: englysshemen be men of dedes, and if ye haue them ye shall do your busynesse the better; and if ye may haue by prayer your cosyn therle of Derby in your company, your voyage shall be moche the fayrer, and your enterprise the more renommed. The erle enclined to those wordes, for it semed to hym that his counsaile was good. In lykewyse the lorde Gomegynes gaue hym counsaile, and so dyd dyuers other. These wordes anone spredde abrode in Haynalte. Than there was a commaundement made to all knyghtes and squiers in Heynalt, that none of theym shulde go out of the coultre, to go into Hungery, nor into no place els, bycause the erle of Ostreuant shulde occupy them another waye, and shulde leade them into Frese.<sup>a</sup> We shall leaue speakynge of this busynesse, and retourne to the voyage into Hungery.

Thus knyghtes and squiers in many parties had cause to awake, and to take corage, for y warres that were towarde in that season, as well for the voyage into Hungery as into Frese.<sup>a</sup> The erle of Neuers auanced his journey, and all knyghtes and squyers were named and written that shulde go with him: prouision was great and well ordeyned, and for that he wolde be renommed in this voyage he was lyberall, and made great larges to many knyghtes and squyers that shulde go in his bande, for the voyage was longe and  
costely,

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CCIV.

costely, wherfore it was nedefull for thē to haue some ayde towardes their charges; and the other lordes, as the constable of Fraūce, and the erles of Ewe and Marche, the lordes Henry and Phylippe of Bare, the lorde of Coucy, the lorde Guy of Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> the lorde Johan Vyē admirall of Fraunce, Boucyquant marshall of Fraunce, and Raynolde du Roy, the lordes of saynt Powle, of Mutterell,<sup>b</sup> and of saynte Pye, the Hasell of Flaunders, the lorde Loys of Brese his brother, le Bourge of Montquell, and other, they were to the nombre of a thousande knyghtes, and a thousande squyers, and all valyaunt men; euery man departed fro their owne houses about the myddes of marche, and so rode forth by companyes, and alwayes they founde the wayes open, for the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> had comaūded through all his realme of Almayne,<sup>c</sup> and Boesme,<sup>d</sup> that they shulde haue all thynges necessary, and that no vytayle shulde be withholden fro them. These lordes of Fraūce thus rode forwarde to the ayde of the kyng of Hungery, who shulde haue batayle with the great turke, puyssaunce agaynst puyssaunce, the twenty day of the moneth of May. These lordes passed Lorayne, the countie of Bare, the countie of Mountbelyart, and the duchy of Burgoyne, and entred into Ausay, and passed the cōutrey and the ryuer of Ryne, in many places, and the countie of Fierte,<sup>e</sup> and so entered into Austriche,<sup>f</sup> whiche is a great cōutrey, and the entres and issues stronge, and great desertes: but they went with so good wyll and corage, that payne and traueyle greued them nothyng. The duke of Austriche<sup>f</sup> made capytaynes in his countrey, suche as made the lordes good chere, and specyally to Johñ of Burgoyne, who was chiefe of that army. All these lordes were apoynted to assemble in a cytie in Hungery, called Bode.<sup>g</sup>

Nowe let vs speke of other maters.

Ye haue herde here before howe the kyng of Englande had sente in the same season sufficient ambassade to the frenche kyng and to his counsayle, to haue to his wyfe Isabell the daughter of Fraunce, whiche ambassadours were the archebysshop of Duuelyn,<sup>h</sup> the bysshoppe of Wynchester, the erle Marshall, the erle of Rutlande, sonne to the duke of Yorke, the lorde Henry Clyfforde, the lorde Beamonde, the lorde Spenser, and many other: the frenche kyng had made them good chere, and all his vnclcs and counsayls, whiche ambassade were returned into Englande vpon good hope to atayne to their desyres. The kyng of Englande for his parte, all the wynter folowyng, oftentimes sent to the frenche kyng, consernyng the sayd maters, who was well enclined to haue peace, and to haue ende of the warre, whiche had ouer longe endured. These pursutes and treaties toke suche effect, and the two kynges had writen so solemply eche to other, that their maters drewe nere to a poynte: so that suche ambassadours as were fyrst sent out of England into Fraunce, were than sente agayne, and came to Parys, and were lodged at the crosse of Tyroner,<sup>i</sup> and their men in the streat there aboute. They were to the nombre of syxe hundred. Thus they sojourned at Parys more than thre wekes.

<sup>a</sup> De la Tremouille.  
Austria.

<sup>b</sup> Montorel.  
<sup>\*</sup> Buda.

<sup>c</sup> Germany.  
<sup>h</sup> Dublin.

<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.  
<sup>i</sup> Croix du Tiroir.

<sup>e</sup> Ferrete.

*Of the iudgemēt made in the parlyament for the quene of Napoles agaynst syr Peter of Craone.*

CAP. CCIX.<sup>a</sup>

THE same seasoone that the Englysshemen were at Paris, quene Jane, duches of Aniove, who wrote herselfe quene of Napoles and of Jherusalem, was at Parys, and pursued dylygently her busynesse; she was a lady of great corage: she pleted in parlyament for two causes: The fyrst was for the herytage of the countie of Roussey, agaynst the Erle of Brayne,<sup>b</sup> for Loys the duke of Aniou, her lorde and husbände, had bought it and payed for it, to a lady that was cōtesse of Roussey, somtyme wyfe to the lorde Loys of Namure, but afterwarde she was denorsed fro hym for a reasonable cause, as it was sayde. The seconde sute this quene had was agaynst syr Peter of Craon: she demaunded of hym the sōme of a hundred thousande frankes, whiche she was redy to proue that he had receyued it in the name of his lorde and mayster, Loys kyng of Napoles, Cysyll, and Jherusalem, her husbände, which money was delyuered hym to haue payed into Powell,<sup>c</sup> and or it was payed he herde howe his sayd mayster my husbände was deed; than he iourneyed no further, but returned agayne into Fraunce, and kept styll the sayd sōme of money to his owne proflyte, and neuer made acompte to the sayde quene therof, nor to her chyl dren Loys and Charles, but spent and wasted the money in pride and bobban. The quene layde to hi- charge that for faute of payment of the sayd money, the realme of Napoles was loste and conquered by Margarete of Duras,<sup>d</sup> and by the heyres of the lorde Charles de la Paix,<sup>e</sup> by reason that suche soudyours as her husbände had to mayntayne his warres in Puell<sup>f</sup> and Calabre, were nat payed their wages, wherby many tourned to the Erle of saynt Seuyre,<sup>g</sup> and to Margarete of Duras,<sup>d</sup> and other departed and lefte the warres. All these causes were put into the Parlyament chambre at Parys, where all causes were preposed, shewed, and demaunded, and all the defences and aunsweres herde on all parties. Their plee had endured the space of thre yeres, and though syr Peter of Craon were absent fro the parlyament, yet his aduocates defended his cause, and sayd, though he had receyued the sayd sōme in the name of his lorde and mayster, yet his mayster was as moche bounde to him as that sōme came to and more, for the good seruyce that he had done to him. This plee had endured so longe that it was necessary to haue a conclusyon, and the lady made importunate sewte to haue iudgement. The lordes of the parlyament consydred all thynges, and sayd they wolde gyue no iudgement, without both parties were present: and syr Peter of Craon durste nat well apere in Parys, bycause of the kynges dyspleasure, and the duke of Orlyance, for the offence that he had doone to syr Olyuer of Clysston constable of Fraunce: and without he were present they wolde gyue no sentence defynityue; wherypon the sayd lady pursued to set hym clere in Fraunce, and by her meanes he was pardoned, so that he myght ryde and go where he lyst without any daunger, except the sute that was bytwene her and hym for the sayd sōme of money. So he was clerely dyscharged of all other charges, and lordes and ladyes made hym good there: I wote nat whether it were by dissymulacyon or otherwyse. Thus he was agayne at Parys holdyng as great estate as euer he dyd. The same tyme he was apoynted to be one of theym to receyue and bringe the englysshe ambassadours to the kyng, for he was a knyght

<sup>†</sup> Chapter CCV.

<sup>b</sup> Brianne.

<sup>c</sup> Apulia.

<sup>d</sup> Durazzo.

<sup>e</sup> St. Seuerino.

knyght that hadde sene moche, and knewe moche honoure. Than the daye was prefixed that the iudgement concernynge the queenes maters shulde be determyned, at whiche day there were present in the parlyament great nombre of the lordes of Fraunce, to the entent that the maters shulde be the more autentike: there was the quene of Cicyll and Jherusalem, and her sonne Charles, prince of Thaurant,<sup>a</sup> and Johan of Bloys, called Johan of Bretaygne, erle of Ponthyeure and of Lymogynes, and the dukes of Orlyaunce, Berrey, Burgoyne, and Bubone, and the erle of Brayne,<sup>b</sup> and the bysshoppe of Laon; and before theym the lady was herde to laye her tytell for the countie of Roussey: and on the other parte there was syr Peter of Craon, and many of his lynnage. Fyrste iudgement was gyuen for the countie of Roussey, and that was, the herytage was remysed and iudged into the handes and possession of the erle of Brayne,<sup>b</sup> and to the heyres that shulde dyscende of the ryght braunche of Roussey, reserued that the quene shulde haue agayne repayed to her all the money that kynge Loys her husbunde hadde payed to the countesse of Roussey laste deed. Of this iudgement the enherytours of the countie of Roussey, to whom the herytage pertayned, thanked greatly the lordes of the parlyament. Than suche as were ordayned to gyne the seconde sentence arose vp and sayde: howe that by the sentence of the parlyament, sir Peter of Craon ought to pay to the quene of Napoles duchesse of Aniove, the somme of a hundred thousande frankes in redy money, or els his body to go to prysone tyll she were contented and satsfysed. Of this iudgement the sayd lady thanked the lordes of the parlyament, and incontynent at the cōplaynte of the lady, handes was layde on him by the kynges commaundement, and so was ledde to the castell of Loure,<sup>c</sup> and there surely kepte. So the lordes departed fro the parlyament. Thus these two iudgementes were gyuen by the princypall occasyon of this lady, duchesse of Aniou.

*Of the conclusyon of the maryage taken at Parys, bytwene the kynge of Englande, and Isabell eldest daughter to the frenche kynge: and howe the duke of Lancastre remaryed.*

#### CAP. CCX.<sup>d</sup>

THE ambassadours of Englande were with the frenche kynge at Parys a xxii. dayes, and they had as good chere as coulde be deuysed, and their maters tooke suche effecte, that it was agreed that the kyng of Englande shuld haue in maryage Isabell the eldest daughter of kynge Charles: and by vertue of procuracyon the erle Marshall fyaunced and espoused her in the name of the kinge of Englande, and so she was called fro thensforth the quene of Englande. And as I was enformet it was a goodly syght to se her behaour: for all that she was but yonge, ryght plesauntly she bare the porte of a quene. Than all this mater concluded, the englysshemen tooke their leaue of the Frenche kynge and of the quene, and of their daughter quene of Englande, and of all other lordes, and so departed fro Parys, and returned to Calays, and so into Englande. The kynge and other of his opynyon were glad of their retourne. But who so euer was gladd of that maryage, the duke of Gloucestre, vncke to the kynge, made no ioye thereof, for he sawe well that by reasone of that maryage and alyauce, peace shulde be bytwene the kinges and their realmes, whiche greued hym, without it shulde be greatly to the honour of the kynge and the realme of Englande, and that the Englysshemen

4 N 2

myght

<sup>a</sup> Taranto.

<sup>b</sup> Brienne.

<sup>c</sup> The Louvre.

<sup>d</sup> Chapter CCVI.

myght be in the same case or better in the parties of Gascoyne, as they were, or the warres renewed agayne; and of this matter he wolde oftentymes speke with his brother the duke of Yorke, and drewe hym as moche as he coulde to his opynions, for he was but a softe prince: but to the duke of Lancastre his eldest brother, he durste nat speke ouer largely, for he sawe well he was of the kynges opynion, and was well pleased with the kynges maryage, princypally for the loue of his two daughters, the quene of Spaygne and the quene of Portogale. The same season the duke of Lancastre remaryed agayne the thyrd tyme, to a lady, daughter to a knyght in Haynalte, called syr Paon of Ruette; he had ben in his tyme with the noble quene Phyltp of Englande, who was of the nacyon of Haynalt: she was called Katheryn, and was brought vp in her youthe in the duke of Lancasters howse, with the duchesse Blaunce of Lancastre; and after the dethe of this lady Blaunce, the duke maryed the lady Cōstaunce of Spaygne, and in her dayes the duke keppe to his concubyne this lady Katheryne of Ruet, who hadde maryed a knyght of Englande, who was as than deed:<sup>a</sup> and the duke had by her thre<sup>b</sup> chyldren, two sonnes and a daughter, the eldest called Johan, otherwyse lorde Beauforde of Lancastre, the duke loued hym entyerly: the other was called Thomas, the duke brought him vp at Asque:<sup>c</sup> he was a good clerke and connyng in bothe lawes, he was a great iuryst and legyst, and was afier bysshope of Lyncolne; the duke of Lancastre, for the loue he had to his chyldren, he wedded their mother the lady Katheryn of Ruet, wherof there was moche marueyle bothe in Englande and in Franunce, for she was but of a base lynage, in regarde to the two other wyues. And whan the knowledge of the maryage of the duke to this lady Kateryne of Ruet was come to the great ladyes of Englande, as the duchesse of Gloucestre, the countesse of Derby, the countesse of Arundell, and other ladyes, dyscended of the blode royall of Englande, they marueyled moche, and layd gret blame to the duke for that dede, and sayde, howe the duke of Lancastre was greatly to dyspraye to mary his concubyne; for by reason therof she shulde be the seconde person in honoure in Englande, wherby they sayd the quene shulde be shamefully accompanied, and sayde, howe surely they wolde nat come into no place where she shulde be presente; and moreouer they sayde, it shulde be a great shame for them, that suche a duchesse, come of so base a blode, (and concubyne to the duke in his other wyfes dayes), shulde go and haue the preemynence before them: they sayde their hertes shulde breke for sorowe: bothe the duke of Gloucestre, and the duchesse his wyfe, spake of this mater, and sayd howe the duke of Lancastre was nat wyse. but fowle ouer-sene to marry his concubyne, and sayde they wolde neuer do her honoure, nor call her suster. The duke of Yorke passed it ouer lyghtly ynough, for he was euer lyghtly resydente aboute the kyng and with the duke of Lancastre. The duke of Gloucestre was of another maner, for he sette by no man, though he were yongest brother; he was orgulous and presumptuous of maner, and therto he enclnyed his nature, and alwayes agaynst the kynges opynions and his counsaylours. Thus this lady Kateryne of Ruet was duchesse of Lancastre, and was as the seconde persone in Englande, and was moche aboute the kyng, as she that knewe moche honour, for in her youth and all her dayes she had ben brought vp therin: and the duke loued greatly the chyldren that he had by her, and that he shewed well in his lyfe and after his dethe.

Ye haue herde here before howe iugement of the parliament was gyuen agaynst syr Peter of Craon, and howe he was condempned in a hundred thousande frankes, to be payed to the Quene of Napoles. Whan the sayde syr Peter sawe howe he was condempned he was sore abashed, for outhere he muste paye the sōne, or els abyde styll prisoner. Than he was counsayled by the duke of Burgoyne and by the duchesse, y

he

<sup>a</sup> Sir Hugh Swinford.

<sup>b</sup> According to Sandford, the duke had four children by her.

<sup>c</sup> Oxford.



he shulde requyre the yonge queene of Englande to be meane for hym to the queene of Napoles, that he myght be released oute of prysonne fyftene dayes to go abrode in Parys, to sewe to his frendes to pay his fynauce, or els to fynde sureties for him tyll he myght go into Bretaygne to gather amonge his frendes the same some. So at the desyre of the yonge queene of Englande, the queene of Napoles was contente that he shulde go all the day abrode in Paris, and at nyght alwayes to yelde hymselfe prisoner into the castell of Lowre,<sup>a</sup> and there to remayne all the night. After this rate he went abrode and sewed to many of his blode and frendes, but he coulde fynde none that wolde abyde there prisoner for hym, the some was so great. And at the ende of the fyftene dayes he was fayne to returne prisoner bothe day and nyght, and was kept streyghter than he was before at his cost and charge.

Nowe lette vs a lytell speke of the journey of therle of Neucrs, and the lordes of Fraunce, and what they dyd the same somer in Hungery: and after we shall speke of the goynge into Frese,<sup>b</sup> of the erle of Haynalte, and the erle of Ostreuaunt. The erle of Neucrs and his company, with many valyaunt men that he had of Fraunce, and of other countreys, whan they were come into Hungery into a great cytie called Bode,<sup>c</sup> the kyng of Hungery made them good chere, and well they desrued it, for they were come farre of to se him. The entensyon of the kyng was, that or he sette forwarde with his puyssaunce, and with the ayde of Fraunce to entre into the felde, to here fyrste some newes fro the great turke called Lamorabaquy,<sup>d</sup> who had sent hym worde in the moneth of February, that surely he wolde be in Hungery or the ende of the moneth of Maye, and that he wolde passe the water of Dunce:<sup>e</sup> of whiche message many had great marueyle. And some sayde that there is in a maner nothyng but that man maye do it, consydyryng that the turke is valyaunt and puyssaüt, and desyreth moche dedes of armes; therefore sythe he hath said it, by all lykelyhode he wyll do it: and if he passe nat the Dunce<sup>e</sup> to come hyther to this syde, than lette vs passe ouer and entre into Turkey with puyssaunce: for the kyng of Hungery with suche ayde as he hath of straungers, shall well make an hundred thousande men, and suche a nombre of suche men are well able to conquere all Turkey, and to go into the empyre of Perce;<sup>f</sup> and if we may haue one journey of vycctory vpon the great turke, we shall do after what we lyst, and shall conquere Surey,<sup>g</sup> and all the holy lande of Jherusalem, and shall delyuer it fro the handes of the Sodayne,<sup>h</sup> and the enemyes of god: for at the somer nexte comynge, the Frenche kyng, and the kyng of Englande, who wyll conioyne togyther, shall reyse vp a great nombre of men of armes and of archers, and shall fynde the passages open to receyue them; than nothyng shall abyde before vs, but all shall be conquered and put in oure obeysaunce, whan we shall go all togyther. Thus deuysed the Frenchemen that were in the realme of Hungery.

Whan the moneth of May was come, trustyng to here tydynges of Lamorabaquy<sup>d</sup> the greate Turke, the kyng of Hungery sent to the passages of the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>e</sup> and sent throughout his realme to assemble his puissaunce togyder; and the lordes of the Rodes came to hym strongly, and all the moneth of May they taryed for the comyng of the sarazyns, but no tydynges coulde be herde of them. Than the kyng of Hungery sente suche as knewe the country beyonde the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>e</sup> to serche to haue some tydynges of the great turke. Suche as wente serched all the country beyonde the Brase of saynt George,<sup>i</sup> and to the marches of Alexaundre, of Damas,<sup>k</sup> and Antyoche, but they coulde here no newes of Lamorabaquy,<sup>d</sup> nor of none army towarde. Than they

<sup>a</sup> The Louvre.<sup>b</sup> Friezland.<sup>c</sup> Buda.<sup>d</sup> Bajazet.<sup>e</sup> Danube.<sup>f</sup> Persia.<sup>g</sup> Syria.<sup>h</sup> Sultan.<sup>i</sup> "Le Bras St. George"—the Hellespont.<sup>k</sup> Damascus.

they retourned and shewed the king what they had herde and sene. Than the kyng assembled his counsaile, and called the lordes of Fraunce, who desyred to do dedes of armes. The kyng shewed them howe he had sente men into Turkey to haue knowlege what his enemies dyd, and howe they coulde here no tydings of Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> nor no lykelyhode of his aprochyng, for all þy promesse he had made to passe the Dunce,<sup>b</sup> and to entre into Hügary to fight with the Crysten men or mydde May shulde passe, wherefore the kyng demaunded what counsaile they wolde gyue hym to do. Than the lorde of Coucy for all the other, sayd: Syr, though Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> come nat forwarde acordynge to his promesse, and maketh but a iape therof, yet that ought nat to lette vs to do dedes of armes, and to pursue our enemyes, seyng we be assembled to þy purpose. Thus all the frenchemen, almayns,<sup>c</sup> and other straungers, shewed well howe they had great desyre to seke out Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> to fyght with him, whiche was to their great honour. The lorde of Coucyes wordes were affirmed by all the straungers: it was all their opynyons howe they coulde employe their season and tyme no better. Than it was ordened by the kyng and by his marshalles, that euery man shulde prepare hymselfe to be redy to sette forwarde at a daye assygned, whiche was the vtas of saynt Johan the Baptyst. Than offycers and other seruauentes aparelled for their maisters all thynges necessary, and the Frenchemen thynkyng to be fresslie and gay, spared nouthur golde nor syluer. Their departure fro Bode,<sup>d</sup> the soueraygne cytie of Hungery, was goodly to regarde. The constable of Hungery had the vowe, with a great nombre of hungaryons and almayns<sup>e</sup> with him, bycause he knewe the countreys; and nexte after hym rode the frenchemenne with the constable of Fraunce, the erle de la Marche, the lorde of Coucy, syr Henry and syr Phylippe of Bare, and dyuers other; and with the kyng rode the great lordes of his countrey, as reasone was, and besyde the kyng rode Johan of Burgoyne, and oftentimes deused with the kyng: they were in the felde a threscore thousande horse, they hadde but fewe a foote, sauynge suche as were folowers. The company of the crysten men were noble and well ordred, and of Hungery there were many crosbowes a horsebacke: the army iourneyed so longe that they came to the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>b</sup> and passed ouer in shyppes and barges, and suche bridges as they had ordened for that purpose: it was eight dayes or they were all passed ouer, and as they passed they lodged them, euery company taryenge for other. This ryuer of Dunce<sup>b</sup> departeth þy realmes of Hungery and Turkey asonder.

Whan the cristen men were all ouer, and nothyng taryed behynde, and were in the frōters of Turkey, they greatlye reioysed and desyred greatly to do dedes of armes; there they toke counsaile, and determyned to go and ley siege to a towne in Turkey, called Coniecte;<sup>e</sup> and as they ordained so they dyde, and besieged it as they myght well do, for it stode in a playne countrey, and a ryuer ioynyng to it with shyppes theron, called Mecte,<sup>f</sup> the heed cōmyng out of Turkey, and lallyng into the see at the ryuer of Dunce;<sup>b</sup> the ryuer of Dunce<sup>b</sup> is a great ryuer of thre hundred myles in length, fro the begynnynge tyll it entre into the see, whiche were the moost profytable ryuer in all the worlde for the realme of Hügary, if the shyppes that be theron myght issue out therof into the see, but they can nat: for in the mouthe therof, whan they shulde issue into the see, there is in the ryuer a moūtaine whiche departeth the ryuer in two partes, and maketh suche brute and noyse, that it maye well be herde seuy n myle of, and for that cause there is no shyppes þy dare aproche nere to it: alonge by this ryuer syde there be fayre medowes and pastures, wherby all the countrey is well serued, and dyuers vynes, whiche in seaseone make good wynes, whiche the Turkes do make and putte into  
 goot

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Danube.  
supposes this to be Nissa.<sup>c</sup> Germans.<sup>d</sup> Morava—Johnes.<sup>e</sup> Buda.<sup>f</sup> Mr. Johnes

goot skynnes, and selleth it vnto Christen men; for accordyng to their lawe they dare drinke no wyne to be knowen, it is defended them on payne of lyfe: but they eate the reysynges, and they haue other good frutes and spyces, wherof they make drinke, and vse greatly to drinke gootes mylke, whiche refressheth theym in the hote season. Thus the kyng of Hungry and his hoost lodged before the cytie of Coniecte<sup>a</sup> at their ease and pleasure, for no manne troubled their siege. And whan they came before the cytie they fōude the frutes rype, the whiche was great pleasure to them; they made to this cytie dyuers assautes, and they within defended themselfe, trustyng dayly to haue ayde and socour of Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> their lorde, to reyse the siege with puyssaunce: but he dyde nat, wherby the cytie was taken by force of assaute, and distroyed with great slaughter of men, women, and chyldren, for the christen men that entred hadde no mercy nor pytie. Whañe this cytie was thus wonne, the kyng of Hungry dislodged and wente forwarde into Turkey, and was determyned to go and ley siege to a great cytie called Nicopoly; and as they rode they fōude in their waye the towne of Quayre,<sup>c</sup> and layde siege to it fyftene dayes or it was won, but finallye it was won by assaute, and clene distroyed, and so passed forthe; and in their waye they founde another towne and a stronge castell, called Brehappe, and a knyght of Turkey was lorde therof, and was within the castell to defende it; the kyng and his army were lodged within a myle where was a fayre ryuer, and about the towne there was none; there the erle of Neuers was made knight and reysed his banner, and with hym were made mo than thre hundred knyghtes, and all they and their companies went before Brehap, and besieged it, and wan the towne perforce within four dayes, but nat the castell, it was so strong: the lorde of Brehap saued moche of his people by force of the castell, who was called Corbodas, a right valyant knyght, and he had other thre bretherne, one named Maladius, another Balachus, and the thirde Rufyn. After this towne was won, the christen men were before the castell seyn dayes, and made dyuers assautes, but they loste more than they wanne. The foure knyghtes bretherne y were within shewed well by their defence that they were valyant men. Whan the Frenchemen hadde consydred well the force of the castell, and the valyaunt ordryng of the turkes within, and the defence that they made, they sawe well thañe they loste their payne, and so dislodged, for they had knowledge howe the kyng of Hungry wolde go and laye siege to the stronge towne of Nicopolye. Thus the siege before Brehap brake vp, and they within the castell were in peace, but the towne was clene brent. Than the erle of Neuers, and all the lordes of Frañce resorted to the kynges armye, ordryng thēselse to go to Nicopoly.

Whañe Corbodas of Brehappe sawe the siege brokenne vp, he was right ioyfull, and sayde to his cōpany: We nede no more to fere this season, though my towne be brent and exiled, I shall right well recouer it agayne: but of one thyng I maueyle greatly, and that is, that I can here no newes fro my lorde the kyng Besant,<sup>b</sup> called Lamorabaquy:<sup>b</sup> for the last tyme that I sawe hym in the cytie of Nicopoly, he sayde vnto me, that this May tyme he wolde be in this cōuntry, and had entencion to passe with a great puyssaunce the brase of saynt George,<sup>d</sup> and to go into Hūgry to fight with the christen men, and so he sent worde to the kyng of Hungry, and yet he hath done nothyng, and therupon they of Hūgry be fortified, and haue as nowe great socour out of Frañce, and haue passed the ryuer of Duncce,<sup>e</sup> and are entred into Turkey, and haue and do distroye the cōuntry, for there is no resistance made against thē, and they thinke surely to go and lay siege before Nicopoly; the cytie is stronge ynoughe to resyst the siege a longe season, if it be well defended and kepte; we are here four bretherne and knyghtes of the lynage of kyng Besant:<sup>b</sup> we ought and are bounde to defende his ryght, therefore

<sup>a</sup> Nissa.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Laquaire.<sup>d</sup> The Hellespont.<sup>e</sup> Danube.

therefore lette vs order oureselfe as I shall shewe you ; I and my brother Maladyus, we shall go to the cytie of Nicopoly, to ayde, to helpe and defende it, and my brother Balachyus shall abyde here to kepe this castell of Brehap, and my brother Rufyne shall passe the brase of saynt George,<sup>a</sup> and go seke out Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> and shewe him euery thyng that is past and done, and aduyse hym for his honour to entēde to defende his herytage, and to come with suche puysaunce that maye resyst the christen men, and to breke their purpose, or els he shall lese y<sup>e</sup> realme of Armony,<sup>c</sup> whiche he hath conquered, and his owne countrey also: for by all ymagynacyon the kyng of Hungry, and the Christen men are gadered to thentent to do some great enterpryce. His thre bretherne agreed to his sayeng. On this apoyntment they prepared themselfe to departe.

So in this season siege was laid before Nicopolye, and Corbodas of Brehappe, and Maladyus his brother, came and entred into Nicopoly, wherof they of the cytie were ryght ioyfull, and Balachyus abode styll at Brehappe to kepe the castell: and Rufyn whan he sawe tyme, be nyght he passed the Christen army, for he knewe well the countre, and passed ouer the brase saynt George,<sup>a</sup> and serched for Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> and the same season he was at Quayre,<sup>d</sup> with the soudane of Babylone, to haue ayde of men of hym ; Rufyn foude this turke there, and whan kyng Besant<sup>e</sup> sawe hym he had marueyle, and thought surely he shulde here some newes out of Turkey. Than he demaunded what tidynges. Sir, quod Rufyn, all the cōtrey desyareth sore to se you there, for y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Hungry with puysaunce hath passed the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>e</sup> and is entred into Turkey, and hath done great dōmage, and hath brent and assayled a fyue or sixe of your closed townes ; and whan I departed fro Brehappe, he was in purpose to go and leye siege to Nicopoly ; Corbodas and Maladyus my brother, with suche men of warre as they haue, are entred into Nicopoly to helpe to defēde the towne, and my brother Balachyus is styll at Brehappe, to kepe the castell there: and sir, of a suretie there is in the company with the kyng of Hungry, the goodlyest armye and best apoynted come out of Fraunce that euer was sene: wherfore, sir, it behoueth you to assemble your hoost and frendes, and retourne into Turkey, to cause your enemyes to retourne agayne ouer the ryuer of Dūce;<sup>e</sup> and ye do it nat with gret puysaūce, it wyll be harde to bring it about. What nombre be they, quod Lamorabaquy.<sup>b</sup> Sir, quod he, they be mo than a hundred thousande, and the goodlyest men of the worlde, and best armed, and all on horsbacke. Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> gaue none answere, but entred into the Soudans chābre, and shewed the Soudane all the hole mater, as his knyght had shewed hym. Than the soudane sayd: we must prouyde for it, ye shall haue men ynowe to resyst thē. Nedes we must defēde our lawe and our herytage. That is true sir, quod Lamorabaquy.<sup>b</sup>

Nowe my desyres arre come to passe, for I haue alwayes desyred none other thyng, but that the kyng of Hungry with his puysaunce myght ones come ouer the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>e</sup> and entre into Turkey ; in the begynnyng I wyll suffre a season, but at the ende they shall paye for the scotte: of all this I hadde knowledge four monethes paste, by my great frende the lorde of Myllayne, who sente me Goshaukes, Gerfaucons, and faucons, to the nombre of xii. whiche were the best and fayrest that euer I sawe, and with this present he wroto to me by name, all the heedes and chiefe capitayns of the barones of Fraunce, suche as shulde come to make me warre ; in the whiche letters was also conteyned, that if I myght get them in my daunger, they shulde be worthe to me a myllyon of floreyngs ; and also howe there shulde be in their company of the lymytees of

<sup>a</sup> The Hellespont.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Armenia.<sup>d</sup> Laquaire.<sup>e</sup> Danube.

of Fraunce, mo than fyne hūdred knyghtes, valyaunt men of armes: also the duke of Myllayne wrote, that surely they wyll gyue me batayle: wherfore I wyll prepare to mete with them by arte, aduise, and good ordynauce, for they are men of great feate and so valiaunt in armes, that they wyll nat llye nor recule; they are worthy of thanke to issue out of their owne nacyon by valyauntnesse to fynde dedes of armes; and I truste to accōplysse their desyres within thre monethes, so that they shall haue nynghe to do.

To cōsydre these wordes, one ought greatly to marueyle that the lorde Galeas, erle of Vertues and duke of Myllayne (who was reputed to be a christen man, baptysed and regenerate after the Christen lawe) wolde seke or requyre loue or alyauce with a kynge myscreant, out of our lawe and faythe, or to sende hym gyftes and presentes, as he dyde euery yere, as dogges, haukes, and fyne lynen clothes, whiche are ryght plesaunt to the Sarazins, for they haue none but that cometh fro our parties: also the great Turke sent to hym agayne other presentes of ryche clothe of golde and precyous stones, wherof the Sarazins haue great plentie: but in those dayes the erle of Vertues, duke of Myllayne, and sir Galeas his father, reygned as tyrantes, and so helde their signories.

It is marueyle to thynke of their dedes, and fyrste howe they entred and opteygned the signorie of Myllayne: so it was there were thre bretherne, the lorde Manfres,<sup>a</sup> the lorde Galeas, and the lorde Barnabo. They hadde an vnclē, who was archebysshoppe of Myllayne; and so it fortunēd that whan ȝ lorde Charles of Lusenbourge, kyng of Boesme<sup>b</sup> and of Almayne,<sup>c</sup> and emperour of Rome, who reigned after kyng Loyes of Bauyer,<sup>d</sup> who opteygned to the Empire by force, for he was neuer taken as Emperour by ȝ churchē, but excōmunicate and acursed by pope Innocent, who reygned as thañ: for this Loyes of Bauyer<sup>d</sup> went to Rome, and made hymselfe to be crowned emperour by a pope and xii. cardynalles that he made; and as soone as he was crowned he made the Almayns<sup>c</sup> to be payed their wages, to ouerryn Rome, and to robbe and to pyll it. This was the rewarde that the romayns had for receyuyng of hym, wherfore he dyed excōmunicat and in that sentence. The pope and cardynalles that he made, without any constreynt, came after to Auignon, and submytted themselves to pope Innocent, who reigned before Vrbayne the fylthe, and there, were assoyled of their errors.

Nowe to purpose howe the lordes of Myllayne came fyrste to that signorie, I shall shewe you howe.

So it was, the archebysshoppe of Myllayne at a tyme receyued kyng Charles of Boesme<sup>b</sup> emperour into ȝ cytie of Myllayne nobly and tryumphantlye, after the Emperour had been before Axe the Chapell,<sup>e</sup> and had accomplysshed there his xl. dayes, accordyng to the vsage in the case partyeyning: and for the great chere that he made to the Emperour, and for a hundred thousande ducates that he lent to the Emperour, he made the bysshoppycoūt of Myllayne, and his nephewes after hym for euer, to holde the lande and signorie of Myllayne free at his wyll, vnto the tyme that the Emperour hadde payde agayne at one tyme the sayd sōme of a hundred thousande ducates; and so after the bysshoppe dyed, and ȝ lorde Manfres<sup>a</sup> his nephue, by the accorde of the Emperour and for loue of his vnclē, was receyued into the signorie of Myllayne. Than his two bretherne, who as than were nat very riche, the lorde Galeas and the lorde Barnabo counsayled togyder and determyned to reigne, and to holde the landes of Lōbardy

VOL. II.

40

bytwene

<sup>a</sup> Matthew.<sup>b</sup> Bohemia.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Bavaria.<sup>e</sup> Aix-la-chapellē.

bytweue thē, and to cōioyne thē by mariage to some great lordes to maynteyne their estates, and to cause men to feare their displeasures; and so they caused their brother Māfrese<sup>a</sup> to be slayne by venyme or otherwyse, alter whose dethe they reygned puissauntly by force and polycy; all their dayes they lyued in good accorde toguyder, and departed the cyties of Lombardy bytwene them. The lorde Galeas hadde tenne, bycause he was the eldest, and the lorde Bernabo nyne; and the cytie of Myllayne was gouerned one yere by the one brother and another yere by the other brother: and to the entent to reigne puissauntly, they sought the wayes to gader great rychesse by raysinge vp in possessyons, subsydies, and gabelles, and many other yuell customes, wherby they gadered great store of golde and syluer: and they caused their townes and cyties to be kepte with soudyours, straungers, as Almaynes,<sup>b</sup> Frēchemen, Bretons, Englysshmen, and of all other nacyons, excepte their owne countreymen, for they hadde no trust nor affiaunce in them, for feare of rebellyon agaynst thē: and these soudyours were payed fro moneth to moneth, wherby they were so douted and fered of the people, that none durste displease them, for if any dyd ryse or dyde any thyng agaynst them, there was cruell vengeance taken vpon them: they destroyed many a one in their dayes, to gyue ensāple to other.

In all their signories no man hadde any thyng but atte their pleasure: they wolde taylor a ryche man thre or foure tymes in a yere. They sayd that lōbardes were ouer proude and presūptuous in their richesse, wherfore it was behouable to kepe them vnder subiection; no man durst saye nay to any thyng that they cōmaunded.

These two bretherne maryed them hyghlye, and bought their wyues with the goodes and substaunce of their people. The lorde Galeas hadde to wyfe the suster of the good erle of Sauoye, named Blaunche, and payde to the erle for her a hundred thousande ducates. The lorde Barnabo maryed hym in Almayne<sup>b</sup> to the suster of the duke of Bresnyche,<sup>c</sup> and payde no lesse money than his brother dyd. These two bretherne hadde many chyl dren, and maryed them highly and richelye, to atteyne therby great alyaunces. The lorde Galeas had a soñe called Galleas: and as than the father vnderstode that whā kyng Johan of Fraunce was come out of Englande, and put to rāisome to xxx. C thousand frankes, and they of Fraunce wyst nat howe to reyse the fyrste payment, thañe he treated with the Frenche kyng and his cōsayle to haue one of his daughters for Galeas his sonne. The kyng and his cōsayle entended to this treatie, bycause they knewe well this lorde Galeas was grounded in richesse, and thus he bought the kynges daughter for sixe hundred thousand frankes, whiche were tourned in payment to the Kyng of Englande; and so his sonne maryed kyng Johans daughter, and to hym was gyuen the countie and erldome of Vertues in Champaygne. Of that sonne and daughter issued a daughter, whiche by force of golde and syluer was maryed to the seconde sonne of kyng Charles of Fraunce, called Loyes duke of Orlyauce, erle of Bloyes and Valoyes. The maryage cost the erle of Vertus, father to the sayde lady, tenne hundred thousande frankes; and the countie of Bloyes was bought of the erle Guye of Bloyes, as it hath ben conteyned here before in this historie. Thus these lordes, Galeas and Barnabo, acorded right well toguyder all their lyue dayes; they neuer varyed nor their people toguyder, therfore they reigned in great puissaunce; no man coude haue reason nor right of them, Pope, cardynalles, nor other, that made any warre agaynst them, sauynge alonely the marques of Mōūterant: and that was by the meanes of the lorde Johan Hacon<sup>d</sup> and the Englysshmen with the routes of the companyons, whiche Johan Hacon<sup>d</sup> brought them out of Prouynce into Lombardy, and made there great warre.

Than

<sup>a</sup> Matthew.

<sup>b</sup> Germans.

<sup>c</sup> Brunswick.

<sup>d</sup> Sir John Hawkwood.

Than at last dyed this lorde Galeas, and after hym reigned his sonne erle of Vertues, named Galeas, in great puyssaūce; and at the begynnyng of his reigne he gate him great loue in Lombardy, and ordred hymselfe after a goodly maner, and like a wyse man: he put downe all suche yuell customes as his father had reysed in Lōbardy; he was so well beloued and of so good renome, that euery man sayd well of hym; but at laste whāne he sawe his tyme, he spytted out his venyme, whiche he had longe borne in his hert: for he made on a day in ȝ feldes a great busschement, wherby the lorde Bernabo his vnclē was takē, who thought none yuell, nor kewe nat but that he was wel-beloued and in great fauour with his nephue; and at his takyng it was sayd to hym: One lorde is ynough to reygne in Lombardy; he coude haue none other grace, for it laye nat in hym as thāne to make resystence: so he was ledde to a castell, and there his nephue caused hym to dye, but in what maner I can nat shewe you. This sir Bernabo had two fayre chyldren, of whom the Frenche quene was doughter to one of his doughters, whiche was wedded to the duke of Ostrenaut of Bauyere.<sup>2</sup> This Galeas putte in prisone all his vnclēs chyldren, suche as he coude gette, and tooke possessyon of all his vnclēs seignories, and ioyned thē to his owne, and so reigned in great puyssaunce and richesse: for he reysed vp suche maters, wherby he gathered toguyder great rychesse, as imposycions, gabels, subsydies, dysmes, and all other extorcyons, wherby he was moche more dreed than beloued. He helde the errour and opynyōn of his Father (that was) howe one shulde nother honoure nor worshyppe god: he tooke fro abbeyes and priories moche of their reuēwes, and toke them to hymselfe: he sayd the monkes were to delyciously norisshed with good wyne and delycious metes; by whiche superfluyteis (he sayd) they coude nat ryse at mydnight, nor do their seruyce as they shulde do: he sayde, saynt Benet helde nat the order of his relygion after that maner; and so (he said) he wolde make them to lyue with egges and small wyne, to clere their voyces to syng the higher. These lordes in their dayes lyued lyke popes; they dyde great dispytes in their tyme to men of holy churche; they sette nothyng by the popes curse, and specially after ȝ cisme began, and that there was two popes; that the one cursed, the other assoyled. The lordes of myllayne dyde but mocke at their doynge, and so dyd many other lordes through ȝ worldē. The doughter of this lorde Galeas, duke of Myllayne, was duches of Orlyāuce, whose condycions were lyke to her fathers and nat to her mothers, who was doughter to kyng Johan of Fraunce; this lady was of high mynde, enuyous and couytous, on the delytes and state of this worldē: gladly she wolde haue sene the duke her husbāde to haue attaygned to the crowne of Fraunce, she had nat cared howe: a generall fame and sclaunder ran vpon her, that all the infyrmitēis the kyng had, whiche no phisycion coude remedye, came all by her sortes and artes: and the chiefe discouerynge of her workes, wherby she was had in great suspecte, was this:

This duchesse of Orlyāuce, named Valantyne, had a sonne by the duke her husbāde, a fayre chyldē of the age of the Dolphyn, sonne to the kyngē. On a tyme these two chyldren were playeng toguyder in the duchesse of Orlyāuce chambre, and so-daynly there was caste downe an apple full of poyson on the pauement, on the same syde ȝ the dolphyn was on, to thentent that he shulde haue taken and eaten it; but as grace was he, dyd nat, for the duches sōne ran after the apple and toke it, and ete therof, wherwith he was poysoned and dyed, nothyngē coude saue hym: and suche as hadde Charles the yong dolphyn to kepe, toke hym thens, and he neuer came after in the duches chambre. Of this aduētūre great brute and murmuracyōn ran throughe all the cytie of Parys and in other places. Thus it was sayde by her of all the people, so that

\* Austria and Bavaria.

the duke her husbände perceyued it well, for brute ranne through Parys, that if her husbände dyde nat putte her awaye out of the kynges courte, they wolde fetcher awaye by force, and cause her to dye: for the people said she wolde empoysen the kyng and his chyldren, and that she hadde enchaunted the kyng, for the kyng in all his infyrmyteis wolde nat se the quene, nor none other woman, but all onlye this duchesse of Orlyauce: upon whiche sayeng, and for doute therof, her husbände had her awaye, and put her out of the house of saynt Poule in Parys, and sente her to a castell besyde Parys vpon the waye of Beauoyes, called Asnyers, and there she was kepte a longe season, and neuer wente out of the castell; and at last she was sent fro thens to Newcastle<sup>a</sup> on the ryuer of Loyre; and § duke of Orlyauce had great displeasure to her, bycause of the aduētūre of § dethe of his son; but by reason § he had other chyldren by her, sōwhat it brake his displeasntre. These tidynges came to Myllayne, and the lordē Galeas was enfourmed howe his daughter was in trouble and in great daunger, wherof he was sore displeasnt with the Frenche kyng and his counsaile. Than he sent a sufficient messenger, as sir Jaquemont of Weryne<sup>b</sup> and other, to Parys to § kyng and his counsaile, in excusyng his daughter. sayeng, that if any persone wolde accuse her of trayson, he shulde be fought withall at viterauce in that quarell. Whan these messengers cāe to Parys, the kyng was in good helth, but he tooke no hede of those messengers, nor of their excuse; and so they were shortly aunswered nothyng to their pleasure: so they retourned into Lombardy, and declared to the duke of Myllayne all that they had sene and done. Than the duke was in gretter displeasure than he was before, and reputed it a great iniury, and than sent his defyaunce to the Frenche kyng, and to all the hole realme of Fraunce; and whan his defyaunces were brought to Parys, the lordes and knyghtes with the Frenche armye were as than in Hūgry, and entred into Turkey; and for § dyspyte and hate that the duke of Myllayne had to the Frenche kyng and to some of his counsaile, therfore he helde in amyte and alyauce the great Turke, and shewed hym of the secretes of Frauce.

Nowe we shall leaue spekyng of the duke, and speke of the great Turke and of the barons of Fraunce, and of other Christen knyghtes, that were as than in Turkey.

*Howe the great turke desyred the soudan, and many other kynges sarazyns, to ayde hym with meene of warre, to resyst agaynst the christen men; and howe many valyant sarazyns came to hym out of farre countreis.*

#### C A P. CCXI.\*

IT was nat longe after but that the great Turke departed fro Quayre<sup>d</sup> fro the Soudan, who promysed to sende hym shortly great ayde of the best men of armes of all his signories, to resyst agaynst the puissaunce of the kyng of Hungry and the Frēchemen: and the great turke sente into all realmes and countreis, where as he thought to haue any ayde and socour: for he consyded and sayd, that if the Frenchemen conquered Turkey, all other realmes adioyning shulde trimble for feare of them, and therby their faythe and beleue shulde decaye, and become vnder the subiection of the Christen men, whiche they had rather dye: and thus at the desyres of the Soudan and the great turke, many kynges sarazyns enclyned vnto their desyres, as in Perce, in Mede,<sup>e</sup> and in Trace,

\* Neufchâtel.

<sup>b</sup> De la Berme.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCVII.

<sup>d</sup> Cairo.

<sup>e</sup> Persia and Media.



Trace,<sup>a</sup> and also out of the Septentryon, and out of the realme of Lecto, and to the boundes of Puce:<sup>b</sup> and for asmoch as they were enformed that their enemyes the Christen men were flour of chualry, these kynges sarazins and other lordes of their lawe dyde chuse out among thē the best traueylynge and experte men of armies in all their countreis. This assembly coude nat be sodaynly done, nor their puryaunces so soone done. The great Turke set hymselfe forwardes into the felde, alwayes abyding for his people that came to hym fro farre countreis, and specially out of Tartary, Mede, and Perce.<sup>c</sup> There assembled many valyant sarazins out of all countreis; they were desyrus to proue their strengthes agaynst the Christen men.

Nowe lette vs speke of the christen men beyng before Nicopolye.

*Howe the lorde of Coucy and other lordes of the christēmen, about a v. hundred speares, discifted a fyftene thousande turkes, duryng the sieg before Nicopoly.*

C A P. CCXII.<sup>d</sup>

THEY that were besiege within the strong towne of Nycopolye defended themselves right valyantly; howbeit, they were sore abasshed that they herde no tydings fro the great turke. The Emperour of Constantyne the noble had written vnto thē that he was in the parties of Alexandre, and was nat as than passed ȝ brase saynt George;<sup>e</sup> so the crysten men helde their syege styll before Nycopoly: they had vytayles plentye and good chepe, that came out of Hungery and other marches nere adioynnge: and on a day the lorde Coucy and other frenchemen tooke pleasure to ryde forthe at aduventure to go se the countrey further in: so they departed fro the sieg about the nombre of fyue hundred speares and as many crosbowes and archers, all horsemen. The lorde Coucy was capytayne of that iourney, and the lorde Raynolde of Roie, and the lorde of saynt Pye in his company, and the Chateleyne of Beauoyre, the lorde of Mount Caurell, and the Bourge of Mountquell, with dyuers other; and they had guydes with thē suche as knewe the countrey, and they had certayne foreryders well mounted to discouer the countrey before them. The same weke there was an armye of the turkes assembled togyther to the nombre of twenty thousande men, for they were enformed howe the chrysten men were abroad dystroyenge their countrey; in resystance therof, they assembled togyder and came to a straye whiche the crysten men must passe, and they wolde entre into the playne of Turkey, and they coude nat well entre no waye; and there the turkes taryed a two dayes and coude here no tydynges of the crysten menne, and so the thyrde daye they thought to haue returned. Than the crysten menes foreryders came to Brechault, nere where the turkes were; and when the turkes saw them aproche they stode styll close togyther, to se the dealyng of the crysten men, and made no token nor sygne to skrymysshe with them. These crysten men aproched nere to the turkes, and sawe well they were a great nombre, and yet they coude nat aduise them all; and when they had well auewed them they reuled backe, and came to the lorde Coucy, and shewed hym what they had sene; of whiche newes ȝ crysten men were ryght ioyfull, and the lorde of Coucy said: It is mete that we go and se theym more nerer: sythe we be come so farre forwardes, we shall nat departe without fyghtyng with them; if we shulde, it shall be to our blame and great rebuke. That is true, quod all the other knyghtes that herde hym. Than euery man prepared hymselfe and

<sup>a</sup> Denys Sauvage and Mr. Johnes call this *Tartary*.

<sup>d</sup> Chapter CCVIII.

<sup>b</sup> Prussia.

<sup>e</sup> The Hellespont.

<sup>c</sup> Persia.

and his horse and rode towarde the place where the turkes were; and bytwene them and the turkes there was a lytell wode: whan the crysten men came to the wode syde, the lorde of Coucy said to the lorde Raynolde of Roy, and to the lorde of saynt Pye: Syr, myne aduysse is, (to the entent to drawe the turkes out of their strēgh), that ye two shall take two<sup>a</sup> hundred of our speares, and I with the rest wyll abyde here in this wode: and ryde ye so nere them that ye may cause them to come out, and than retourne you, and suffre them to chase you tyll ye be paste vs in this wode, and than sodaynly tourne vpon them, and we shall close theym in behynde, and so we shall haue them at our wyll. To this aduysse all the knyghtes enclyned. Than two<sup>a</sup> hundred of them that were best horsed rode forthe, and the rest, who were an eyght hundred, enbusshed themselfe couertly in the wode, and there taryed. The other rode forthe, and came to the place where the turkes were: whan they sawe the crysten men come, they were ryght ioyouse, wenyng there had been no mo, and so came out of their holdes into the playne felde; and whan the crysten men sawe tyme they turned and fled, and made the turkes to chase them: they were so well horsed, y<sup>e</sup> the turkes coulde nat ouertake them, and they chased so longe that they passed the wode where as the enbusshment was. Whan the turkes were passed the crysten men issued out, and cryed: our lady be with the lorde of Coucy: and so dashed in behynde them and made great occision. The turkes helde them close togyther, whan they sawe how they were beset before and behynde, and dyd put themselfe to defence as well as they myght, but they kept none ordre, for they were nat ware of the reregarde: and whan they sawe themselfe so sodaynly sette on they were abasshed. The Frenchemen dyd quyte themselfe lyke valyaunte men of armes, and slewe the turkes at their pleasure in their flyenge: there were many slayne, the chrysten men toke none to mercy; happy were they that coulde escape and retourne fro thens as they came. And than the cristen men that had done that dede returned to their hoost before Nycopoly. Than tydynges ran ouer all the hoost, howe the lorde of Coucy by his wysdome and valyauntnesse had dyscomfyted mo than xv. thousande turkes. Many spake well therof, but the erle of Ewe praysed nothing his dede, sayenge howe it was doone but by pride, and howe that he had put the crysten men (and specyally his bande) in great aduerture and parell, sayenge, that with an handfull of men he fought folysshely with the route of twenty thousande turkes; he shulde rather (seyng he was in wyl to do dedes of armes, and that the turkes were on the felde) haue gyuen knowlege before he assayed his enemyes, to his hed capitayne the lorde Johan of Burgoyne, that he myght haue had the renome and honour of that enterprise. Besemyng, the erle of Ewe spake those wordes by enuy that he had to the lorde of Coucy, for all that voyage he had no loue to him, bycause he sawe how the lorde of Coucy had the lone and fauour of all his company and of other straügers, whiche he deserued ryght well to haue, for he was ryght nere of the frenche kynges blode, and bare in his armes floure de lyces, and also he was cōstable of Fraunce. Thus there engendred a great hate and yuell wyll couertly bytwene the erle of Ewe and the lorde Coucy, whiche hatred at last apered clerely, wherby great myscheffe fell the same seaseone vpon the crysten men, as ye shall here after.

Nowe we shall leaue to speke any more at this tyme of this mater, and retourne to speke of the Kynges of Englande and of Fraunce.

<sup>a</sup> One hundred.

*Howe the peace bytween Englande and Fraunce contynned; and of the maryage of the kyng of Englande with the daughter of Fraunce.*

CAP. CCXIII.<sup>a</sup>

YE haue herde here before of the mariage of the french kynges daughter with the kyng of Englande, the whiche tyme aproched nere, and bothe parties well wyllynge, excepte duke Thomas of Gloucestre; he was nothyng ioyfull therof, for he sawe well that by that maryage there shulde be great confyderacyons and alyaunces bytwene the two kynges and their realmes to lyue in peace, whiche he was lothe to se, for he desyred rather to haue warre. The same season the duke had aboute hym a knyght called syr Johan Baquegay, a secrete man, and he set alwayes y<sup>e</sup> duke to haue warre. The same season also the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> came into Englande to se the kyng and his vnclis, and offred hymselfe to do any lawfull seruyce to the kyng that he myght do; he was bounde therto by faythe and homage, and he wolde gladly that the kyng shulde haue had warre rather than peace. This duke and the duke of Lancastre had great cōmynycacyon togyder of the voyage that the erle of Haynalt and the erle of Ostreuant his sonne wolde make into Frese.<sup>c</sup> The same tyme Fyerebrase of Vertayne was in Englande, sente thyder fro the erle of Ostreuant to gette men of armes and archers to go in that voyage to Frese.<sup>c</sup> The erle of Derby was desyred to go in that voyage, in aydinge of his cosyns of Heynalt. The gentle erle hadde therto good affectyon, and sayde howe he wolde ryght gladly go in that voyage, so that it pleased the kyng and his father. Whan the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> came fyrst into Englande, the Duke of Lancastre demanded of him what he thought of that voyage into Frese.<sup>c</sup> He answered and sayd, that it was a parylous voyage, and y<sup>e</sup> Frese<sup>c</sup> was a country nat lightly to be wonne, sayenge: howe in tymes past there had been dyuers erles of Holande and Heynalte that haue claymed their right there, and gone thyder to haue put them in subiectyon, but they haue always loste their lyues there, affyrmyng howe the fiesons are people without honour, and haue no mercy; they prayse nor loue no lorde in the worlde, they be so proude; and also their country is stronge, for they be enuyroned with the see, and closed in with isles, rockes, and marysshes, no man can tell howe to gouerne them but themselfe. I haue ben desyred to go in that voyage, but I wyll nat, and I counsaile my cosyn your sonne the erle of Derby nat to entre into that voyage; it is no iourney for hym. I thynke my fayre brother of Ostreuant wyll go, for he hath great desyre therto, and wyll haue a bande of haynowayes with hym; it shall be an aduenture if euer they retourne: whiche wordes caused the Duke of Lancastre to thynke that his sonne shulde nat go in y<sup>e</sup> voyage, and so shewed his sonne his entente, and badde hym delaye that mater, for the kyng nor he wolde nat that he shulde go. Thus the duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> dyd lette the ayde that the erle of Haynalte shulde haue had of the erle of Derby. Many thought it was nat well counsayled, nor yet for none of their honours. The duke of Guerles<sup>b</sup> all his lyfe naturally was enuyous, presumptuous, and proude; yet for all that Fierebrase of Vertayne lette nat his sute to gette ayde, and dyd so his dylygence that he gate knyghtes and squyers and a two hundred archers: but the erle of Derby excused hymselfe, whiche excuse he was fayne to take in gree, and sawe well that his wyll was good to go, if the kyng and his father had nat been. Than the kyng, for the auancement of his cosyns of Haynalte, made to be ordeyned in the ryuer

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCIX.<sup>b</sup> Gueldres.<sup>c</sup> Friesland.

ryner of Thamyse vesselles and shyppes for the men that shulde go in that voyage of Frese,<sup>a</sup> to aryue at Encuse,<sup>b</sup> a towne in the countie of Haynalt, at the entre into Holande. This towne standeth on the see, within twelue leages by water of the realme of Frese.<sup>c</sup>

The same season was sente into Englande fro the frenche kyng, the erle Valeran to saynt Powle, with certayne artycles concernynge the treatie of the peace, and with him was sent Robert the Hermyte, whome the kyng of Englande was gladd to here speke. The erle of saint Powle founde the kyng of Englande and his bretherne, the erles of Brenne<sup>e</sup> and of Huntynghdon, and the duke of Lancastre, the kynges vncl, at the manour of Eltham. The kyng receyued him ioyously, and herde well his message, and sayd to hym aparte: Fayre brother of saynt Powle, as to the treatie of peace bytwene me and my fayre father of Fraunce, I am right well enclyned therto, but I all alone canne nat promote that mater. True it is my bretherne and my two vncl of Lancastre and yorke enclyne ryght well therto; but I haue another vncl, the duke of Gloucestre, who is ryght paryllous and a marueylous man, he letteth it as moche as he can, and dothe what he canne to drawe the Londoners to his opynyoun, I feare me to make a rebellyon in my realme, and that he shulde reyse the people agaynst me, whiche is a great paryll, for if the people of Englande ryse agayne agaynst me, and haue myne vncl of Gloucestre on their parte, and suche other barones and knyghtes of the realme as be of his opynion, my realme were loste without remedy, for myne vncl of Gloucestre is so secrete that no man canne knowe his mynde. Syr, quod the erle of saint Powle, it behoueth you to wyne hym with fayre, swete, and louynge wordes, and gyue hym great gyftes; if he demaunde any thyng, graunt it him: this is the way wherby ye shall wyne him; ye must flatter hym tyll the peace be made, and that ye haue your wyfe brought hyther to you, and that doone than ye maye take other counsayle; ye shall be than of the puyssaunce to oppresse all your rebelles, for the frenche kyng, if nede be, shall ayde you; of this ye maye be sure. In the name of god, ye saye well, and thus shall I do.

The erle of saynt Powle was lodged at London, and oftentimes went to Eltham to se the kyng and the duke of Lancastre, and had oftentimes cōmunicacion on this maryage. Therle of saint Poule sayde howe the frenche kyng shulde come to saynt Omers and his vncl, and bring with hym his doughter, so that the kyng of Englande wolde come to Calais; and so bytwene saynte Omers and Calais the two kynges shulde mete and speke togyther, wherby by reason of syght and speakynge togyther shulde encrease loue and amyte; and there these two kynges and their vncl shulde speke togyder without any other companie on the forme of the peace; and if they conclude nat on some peace, yet at leste the trewce myght be relonged to endure for thyrty or xl. yere bytwene the two realmes and their allies. This deuyse semed right good to the kyng and to his counsayle, and hervpon the kyng and other lordes sente to Calais to make prouysyon, and the kyng desyred his vncl the duke of Gloucestre to go with hym in that iourney, and the duches his wyfe and his chyldren, and in lyke wyse the Dukes and duchesses of yorke and Lancastre; and so whan euery thyng was redy, the kyng and the erle of saynt Powle departed fro Eltham and rode towards Caunterbury, and after them folowed all other lordes, suche as shulde go in this voyage, and suche as had ben desyred. The erle of saynt Powle passed the see fyrst, to the entent to aduertise the Frenche kyng, and so passed to Boloyne and so to Paris, and there declared to the frenche kyng and to his vncl howe he had spedde; wherwith they were well content,

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.<sup>b</sup> Enckhuysen?<sup>c</sup> Kent.

content, and so departed fro Paris, and lytell and lytell aproched to the cytie of Amyence, and the kynge of Englande and his vncles came to Calais, with many lordes and ladyes; and the duke of Burgoyne, one of the frenche kynges vncles, came to saynt Omers; and by the meancs of the Erle of saynt Powle and Robert the hermyte, the duke of Burgoyne came to Calays, to se the kynge of Englande and his vncles, where he was nobly receyued, and there they cōsayled togyther on certayne artycles of the peace, wherto the kynge of Englande lyghtly enclyned; and, for to say trouth, he cared nat what he dyd, so he myght haue his wyfe.

Whan the duke of Burgoyne had ben at Calais two dayes, and had cōmuned with the kynge of Englande on the artycles of the peace, the kynge sayd howe he wolde sende all the processe of the artycles ouer the see into Englande, to be shewed and declared there to the people: for he sayde that nouthur he nor all the lordes that were there of Englande coulde nat conclude fermely on no peace, without the generall consentment of the people of Englande; and moreouer the kynge sayde howe that he must fyrst go ouer agayne hymselfe, and so retourne, and therby make but one iourney. That is well said, quod the duke of Burgoyne, for than at youre retourne euery thyng shall be concluded and performed. Thus the duke of Burgoyne and the erle of saynt Powle departed fro Calays, and returned to saynt Omers, and fro thens to Amyence, where they fōude the kyng and the quene, and their daughter, who shulde be quene of Englande: the same tyme there was the dukes of Bretayne and of Berrey in great araye; and the kynge of Englande and his vncles and other lordes returned into Englande, and their wyues taryed styll at Calays tyll their retourne.

In this meane season the voyage was made into Frese<sup>a</sup> by them of Haynalte: fyrst, the erle of Heynalte, Holande, and of zelande, and his sonne the erle of Ostreuaunt, as ye shall here after in this hystorie.

*Howe the erle of Heynalt and the erle of Ostreuaunt his sonne made a great army of men of armes, knyghtes and squyers, to go into Frese.<sup>a</sup>*

C A P. CCXIII.<sup>b</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe duke Auberte of Bauer,<sup>c</sup> and Gylliam his sonne, erle of Ostreuant, had gret desyre to go into Frese<sup>a</sup> to conquere that countrey, wherof the sayde duke Aubert, by ryght succession of herytage, shulde be erle and lorde therof: and to auance the same iourney, the erle of Ostreuant had sent Fyerebrace of Vertayne to haue some ayde of the englysshemen, who spedde hym so well that kynge Rycharde of Englande, for the honour of his cosyns, sent certayne men of armes with two hundred archers, vnder the guydyng of thre gentlemen: one called Cornewayle, another Colleuyll, knyghtes, the thyrde a squyer, I knowe nat his name, but I was well enfourmed that he was a valyaunt man of armes; he hadde his chynne cutte of in a fray lytell before, and he had a chynne made of syluer, tyed aboute his heed with a lase of sylke. These englysshmen came to Encuse<sup>d</sup> at their tyme prefyxed. This duke Auberte and his sonne had a valyaunt man of their cōsayle, called Gylliam of Croenbourge, who greatly exorted theym to the warre, for he hated greatly the fresones, and had doone them many dyspyghtes, and dyd after, as ye shall here: thus the duke Aubert departed fro the Haye<sup>e</sup> in Holande with Gylliam his sonne, erle of Ostreuant, and so came into

VOL. II.

4 P

his

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.<sup>b</sup> Chapter CCX.<sup>c</sup> Bavaria.<sup>d</sup> Enckhuysen.<sup>e</sup> The Hague.

his countrey of Haynalte, to the towne of Mons: and there he assembled togyther the thre estates of the countrey, and there shewed vnto them the great desyre that he had to go into Frese,<sup>a</sup> and the rightfull occasion that he had so to do: and caused there to be openly shewed certayne letters patentes apostolykes and impervyalles ryght noble and autentyke, sealed vnder leade lyole and entre,<sup>b</sup> by the whiche apered eydently the ryght and tytell that he had to  $\hat{y}$  signory of Frese;<sup>c</sup> and than he sayd openly: Lordes and valyaunt men my subgettes, ye knowe well that euery man ought to kepe and defende his herytage, and that a man may lauffully moue warr to recouer his lande and herytage; ye knowe also  $\hat{y}$  fresons ought by right to be our subgiettes, and they be inobedyent and rebell agaynst vs and our sygnory, as people without lawe or faythe; and therefore good and dere frendes, ye know well that without your ayde, bothe with bodyes and goodes, we canne natournysse to bringe to execusyon so hygh an enterpryse: wherfore we desyre you in this busynesse to ayde vs, that is to say, with money and with men of warre, to the entent that these inobedyent fresons maye be subdued and brought to obedyence. These wordes, or suche lyke, spoken by the duke, the thre estates by a comune acorde grauted their lordes petycyon and request, lyke suche people as greatly desyred and alwayes had done to do obedyent seruyce and pleasure to their lorde and prince: and as I was enfourmed, they caused him to haue in redy money mountante to the some of thyrty thousande pounde, besyde the towne of Valencenes, who in lyke wyse dyd their deuoyre, and also in the towne of Mons. These thynges thus concluded, the valyaunt princes, the good duke Auberte and Gullyam his sonne, erle of Ostreuant, seyng the good wylls of his men, was ryght ioyfull, whiche was no meruayle, for he sawe well that he was well beloued with his subgiettes, and shulde be well furnysshed with money. Than he had counsaile to sende to the frenche kyng, and to shewe him the enterpryse of his voyage, and to desyre ayde of hym: and thyder was sent two valyaunt and wyse men, that is to saye, the lorde Lygne and the lorde of Jeumont, who were two ryght valyaunt knyghtes, and well beloued with the frenchemen, and specially the lorde Lygne: the kyng had made hym one of his chamberlayns, and had hym in good fauoure; he spake with the kyng, and shewed hym the dukes entent and request: to the whiche the kyng and his counsaile fauourably agreed, and specially the duke of Burgoyne, bycause his daughter was maryed to therle of Ostreuant, wherby he thought that in tyme to come after it shulde be to their profyte and to their heyres; howbeit, many great lordes and other spake of this iourney in dyuers maners: some sayd, to what purpose dothe these haynowayes desyre the kyng of ayde, they haue ben in Englande and sought for ayde there? hath nat the erle of Haynalte of late taken on hym the blewe garter to tie his legge withall, which is  $\hat{y}$  ordre in Englande? it semyth therby he hath no great affectyon to Fraunce. Than other that were ryght wyse answered and sayd: Syr, ye do wronge to say thus; though the erle of Ostreuant haue taken the ordre of the garter, yet for all that he is nat alyed with the englysshemen, but he is fermly alyed with Fraunce: bath nat he in maryage the lady Katheryne, doughter to the duke of Burgoyne, whiche is a farre greater alyance than is a garter? therefore neuer say but that he wyll loue and do pleasure to Fraunce, by reason of his maryage, rather than to Englande for  $\hat{y}$  garter; wherfore the kyng shall do right honourably to ayde hym. Thus the frenchemen deuysed amonge themselves, and spake in dyuers maners both of that iourney and also of the iourney into Hungery and into Turkey, agaynst Lamorabaquy<sup>c</sup> and the turkes.

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.<sup>b</sup> Whole and entire.<sup>c</sup> Bajazet.

*Of the army that the french kyng sente into Frese<sup>a</sup> in the ayde of his cosyns, and the lorde Valeran Erle of saynt Powle and the lorde Charles de la Brete<sup>b</sup> were capytaynes.*

CAP. CCXV.<sup>c</sup>

THE frenche kyng assembled an armye of fyue hūdred speares, as well of pyrcardes as of frenchmen, and made capytayns ouer thē, the lorde Valeran, erle of saynt Powle, and the lorde Charles de la Bret,<sup>b</sup> who were valyaūt knyghtes and well expert in armes: and they were apoynted to leade this company to the towne of Encuse<sup>d</sup> in base Frese, wher as the assemble shulde mete, and there to take the see to entre into high Frese<sup>a</sup> (as they dyd.) Whan these two knyghtes, the lorde Lygne and Jumont, sawe the kynges good wyll, and that these men of warre were dyspatched and their wages payed, they came to the kyng and thanked him, and toke their leau and returned into Heynalt to their lorde the duke Aubert and to the lorde Gillyan his sonne, to whome they were right welcome, for they had well sped: there they shewed the good answeere and good chere that they had with gyftes of great presentes. Whan duke Auberte knewe that the Frenche kyng had sente hym fyue hundred speares, than he assembled all his noble men, knyghtes, squyers, and other of Haynalt, as the lorde of Vertayne, seneschall of Haynalte, who was a valyaunt man and greatly renomēd in armes, the lordes of Lygne and Gomygyne, who was made marshall, and the lordes of Haureth, of Nychelet, of Lalayne, of Hordayne, of Chyne, of Cautan, of Quesnoy, of Fleron, and Johā his brother, the lordes of Bouset and of Jeumont, who were fresshe knyghtes on their enemyes; also there was Robert le Roux, and the lordes of Mothiaux, of Foutayns, of Seuls, and of Sars, William of Hermes, Pynchart his brother, the lordes of Lens, of verlamont, of Ansealx, of Traseignes,<sup>e</sup> Octes Seausines, Gyrarde his brother, the lorde Dyctre, and Johan his brother, Bridaulx of Montaguy, Damaulx de la powle, and Guy his brother, the lorde of Mastynge, syr Floridas of Villyers, who was a valyaunt man, and had doone many dedes of armes amonge the turkes and sarazins, and sir Eustace of Vertayn, Fierebras of Vertayne, who was newly come out of Englande, syr Rase of Montigny, the lorde of Rorsyn, sir Johan Dandregines, and Persant his brother, and dyuers other knyghtes and squiers; all these assembled at Mons, and desyred them to go with hym, and euery man to bringe with hym company acordyng to their degrees, and that they wolde auance them to the towne of Encuse in base frese<sup>d</sup> and therabout, and so to go with hym by see into hyghe Frese<sup>a</sup> about the myddes of August next after; there he sayd he wolde tary for them, for he wolde go thyder before to moue the holanders and zelanders to serue hym in lyke maner. Than these sayd knyghtes and esquyers of Haynalt, without any contradictyō accorded to his desyre, pronynginge to do hym seruyce as his trewe subgiettes, whiche they fulfilled in dede, and dyligently prepared for the same, so that by the begynnyng of the moneth of August, in the yere of our lorde god a thousande thre hundred fourscore and systene, they were all redy apparelled and assembled by companies at Anners,<sup>f</sup> there to take the water, and fro thence to Encuse,<sup>d</sup> where the hole assemble shulde mete.

Nowe whyle this assemble was thus made in Haynalte, it were to be demanded if the ladyes and gentlewomen and other were ioyouse of this iourney. We ought to say naye, for than they sawe their fathers, their bretherne, their vncles, their husbands, and their

4 P 2

louers

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.<sup>b</sup> D'Albret.<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXI.<sup>d</sup> Enckhuysen, in Lower Friezland<sup>e</sup> Trasseignes.<sup>f</sup> Antwerp.

louers and frendes departe to þ̄ peryllous warre: for some of them knewe well howe that in tyme paste the haynowayes wente with their lorde into Frese,<sup>a</sup> and neuer retourned agayne; wherfore they feared leste it shulde hap so than to these as it dyd on their predecessours. The duchesse of Brabant had defendede all men in the cuntry of Brabant, no man to be so hardy to go oute of the cuntry in that iourney. The ladyes and gentewomen of Haynalt desyred often tymes their frendes and louers to leaue that iourney, but they coulde nat lette the mater; howebeit, they were sore displeased in their myndes with the basterde of Vertayne, Fierebrase, for they said he was one of the chyefe setters on of that busynesse. Thus after that the duke Aubert and Guillyam his sonne had herde the aunswere of his men of Haynalte, than he went into zelande, shewynge them his busynesse; and they assented to his request, by the chiefe settinge on of the lorde de la Vere, and syr Floris de Boesell, Floris Dabell, the lorde of zenembirge, syr Clays de Boysell, Phylp Corteen, and dyuers other gentlemen; all these and other made themselves redy, in suche wyse that it apered well by their dylygence that they had great desyre to auance themselfe to that iourney.

In lyke wyse the duke and his sonne went into Holande and made there lyke requestes to þ̄ lordes and good townes, as they had done in zelande. The holanders were therof ryght ioyouse, for of all men they hated the fresons, for they were euer at warre togyther, specyally on the see and on the borders of their cuntry; and therfore the lordes of Holande, suche as the lorde Darterell, and dyuers other noble men, knyghtes, and squyers, herynge the requestes of their lordes duke Aubert and the erle of Ostreuant, they offred themselfe, promysynge comforte and ayde to the best of their powers; and that they well shewed, for incontynent they made them redy, and auanced forwarde: in lyke wise dyd the men of the good townes and of the cuntry. They sent forth with these lordes a great nombre of crosbowes and morispykes and other men of warre; so daylye men assembled at the towne of Encuse,<sup>b</sup> and shyppes and vesselles came thyder in suche wyse that the maryners were estemed to the nombre of xxx. thousande. It was sayd, that there came out of the towne of Harle<sup>c</sup> xii. hūdred, whiche shyppes were well prouyded of all thynges necessary: and of a trouthe, if the ladyes and other damoselles were soroufull in Heynalt, in lykewise so were they of Hollande and zelande. Sir Danyell of Marebed and Guillyam of Cruenbourge they durst nat apere before the ladyes and gentywomen, for they had sore sette forwarde the busynesse, for they hadde great wyll and desyre to be reuenged of the Fresons, bicause of a batayle that hadde been there before, wherin the Erle Wyllyam was pitouslye slayne, and lost xxxiii. cotes of armes of his lynage: wherfore these two knyghtes wolde neuer take any freson to mercy nor raūsome. So within a certayne space euery man was come to Encuse.<sup>b</sup> Fyrst came the Englysshemen, and than the henous, and their capyten was the seneschall of Jumont and the lorde of Gomegynes, who was marshall; than came hollanders and zelanders: the frēchemen came nat so soone: so they taryed a xi. dayes for the Frenchemen, in whiche season there fell a debate bytwene the hollanders and the Englysshemen; and if the erle of Ostreuant had nat ben, all the Englysshmen had ben slayne; whiche stryfe was apesed, and than the frenchmen came. Than there was great ioye made, and cōmaundement gyuen that euery man shulde entre into suche shyppes as they were assygned vnto before, whiche was done; and whan they were all shyped, they hoysed vp sayles and sayled forthe: the wether was fayre; it semed as it was disposed to do the pleasure. There were so many shippes, that if they had be araynged one after another, they wolde haue stretched fro encuse<sup>b</sup> to the boundes of Condren,<sup>d</sup> whiche was in highe Frese,<sup>a</sup> where they purposed to aryue (as they dyde) whiche was xii. leages by water, but they sayled a front right ordinatly.

Nowe

<sup>a</sup> Friezland.

<sup>b</sup> Enckhuysen.

<sup>c</sup> Harlaem.

<sup>d</sup> Kuynder.—*Johnes.*



Nowe wyll we leaue spekyng of them, and speke of the Fresons, who (as I was enformed), were aduertysed long before of duke Aubertes cōmyng, with great puyssaunce on them.

Whan the fresons knewe and vnderstode that they shulde haue warre, all the wysemen of the countre assēbled toguyder, to take counsaile and aduysse what they shulde do; whan they had long debated the mater, their entēcion was to fyght with their enemyes, as soone as they myght knowe that they were entred into their countrey, sayeng: howe they had rather dye as fre Fresons, thā to be in seruage vnder any kynge or prince, or vnder subiectyon; and therfore they sayd, to dye in the quarell they wolde fight with their enemyes; and concluded amonge themselves to take no man to raunsome, howe great soeuer he were. Amonge them there was one man farre excedyng in greatnesse aboute all other: he was hygher than any other man in that countrey by the heed: he was called Juye<sup>a</sup> Jouer, and some called hym the great Fresone; this manne was greatly commended in Pruce,<sup>b</sup> in Hungery, in Turkey, in Rodes, and in Cypres; he hadde done many noble feates of armes, so that he was greatlye renomēd; whāne he harde the opynions of ȝ Fresons, howe they wolde fight with their enemyes, he answered and sayde:

O, ye noble and free Fresons, knowe for trouthe there is no chaunce but maye tourne; though by your valyantesse ye haue or this tyme disconfyted ȝ heynowayes, the hallanders, and the Zelanders, knowe for trouthe, that suche as come nowe vpon you, are people more experte in ȝ warre thanne they were before; and beleue verily, they shall do otherwise than their predecessours dyde; they wyll nat gyue it vp, they wyll menteyne their dedes; therfore I wyll counsaile you to suffre them to entre, and let vs kepe our forteresses, and lette them kepe the feldes, where they shall beate themselves; our countrey is nat to susteyne thē long; we haue many dykes; they canne nat go farre in the countrey; they canne nat ryde abroad in the countrey, and full yuell they maye go afoote, wherby they shal be so werye, that they shall waste theymselves, and so retourne agayne; the moost they can do is to brenne a tenne or xii. vyllages, whiche shall natte greatly greue vs; they shall be soone made agayne if we shulde fight with them. I feare me we be nat stronge ynough to fyght with them at ones, for as I am enformed they be to the nombre of an hundred thousande armed heedes: whiche was of a trouthe, they were as many or mo. To his wordes consented thre other knyghtes of the Fresons, the fyrst named sir Fewe of Dorekerque, the seconde sir Gerarde of Canny,<sup>c</sup> and the thirde sir Tiny of Walturge: but the people wolde in no wyse consente to that deuyse, no more wolde other noble men called the Elyns, that is to saye, the gentylnen or iudges of the causes; they replyed so with this great freson, that he wōcluded with them, that as soone as they knewe their enemyes entred into their countre, they shulde go and fyght with them; they abode all on that opynion, and so made themselfe redy. But to saye the trouthe, they were but poorelye armed; many had no armure but their cootes of wadmoll, and course grose clothe; some armed with lether, and some with rustye mayle, and some there were ryght well armed.

Thus they armed them; and whan they were redy they wente to their churches, and toke ȝ crosses and baners, and made thre batayls, and in euery batayle ten thousande fyghting men, and came to a narowe passage well diked, nere to ȝ place where their enemyes shulde lande: and they sawe well howe their enemyes were come, and had great desyre to take lande, whiche was on saynt Bartylmewes daye on a sonday, in the foresaid yere; and whan ȝ Fresons sawe thē aproche, they issued out vpon the dikes a  
sixe

<sup>a</sup> Ives.<sup>b</sup> Prussia.<sup>c</sup> Cavin.

sixe thousande, to haue lette the landyng of their enemyes. Among the fresons ther was a woman apparelled all in blewe, who all in a rage went fro the fresons and came nere to the heynowes, within the shotte of a bowe; than she tourned her backe towarde ſ heynowes, and plucked vp her clothes and shewed her bare arse, cryeng in her langage: syrs, take this to your welcome. As soone as they sawe the leudnesse of this woman, they shot at her arowes and quarels, so that she was stryken in the legges and loynes, the arowes came flyeng at her as thicke as snowe; than some lepte out of their shippes into the water, and ran after this folysshe woman w̄ their s̄werdes and ouertoke her, and hewed her into small peces. Thā euery man issued out of their vessels, and so came agaynst the fresons, who receyued them right valyantly, and putte them of with longe pykes, and longe staues bounde with yron. To saye ſ trouthe, in takyng of lande there was many dedes of armes done on bothe parties, and many slayne and sore hurte: but biforce of the Englysshe archers, and crosbowes, of Heynaulte, Hollande, and Zelande, they wanne the dyke agaynst the fresons, and vpon that dyke they araynged their baners in good order, taryeng for their cōpany; their renke was more than halfe a myle longe. Than the Fresons that were putte fro the dykes came to their cōpany, who were mo than xxx. thousande, closed togyuder in a grounde dyked rounde aboute with a great depe dyke, and it was nat so farre of, but they myght well se their enemyes, where they were raynged on the fyrst dyke. Thus they contynued tyll all the heynowayes were a lande, and all their baggage, and certayne tentes reyred vp; there they rested them that sondaye, and the mondaye, aduysyng the Fresons their enemyes, in whiche two dayes dyuers scrymisshes were made, and on the Tuesday bothe parties were redy. Than certayne newe knyghtes were made, and it was ordayned to fight with the fresons. Than they aunced forwarde in good order of batayle, and their archers before them and amonge them, and than sowned trumpettes and clarions, and so cā a fayre pase to passe ouer the dike. Than the fresons came to defende the passage, and the archers shotte agaynst them fierly, and the fresōs couered themselves with targes, and with the erthe of the dyke that was bytwene them and their enemyes; lowebait, they were so nere aproched that certayne of the holanders entred into the dyke, and made bridges with speres and pykes, and so with valyant corage began to enuade the fresons, who defended their force right valyantly, and gaue suche strokes against them that wolde moūt vp out of the dyke, that many were ouerthrowen downe agayne: but the Heynowayes, Frenchemen, Englysshemen, Hollanders, and Zelanders, were so well armed, that the fresons coude do them no dōmage nor hurt, but cast them downe to the grounde; there were suche noble dedes done and atchyued, that it were impossible to shewe it: the newe made knyghtes dyde nobly their deuoyre, and the Fresons defended marueylously; they were great and bygge men, but they were yuell armed, many were barelegged and barefoted. In this assaut the lorde Lygne, the seneshall of Heynault, and the lorde Jumout, and dyuers other, as they wente aboute this dyke, they founde a way wherby they passed ouer the dyke, and so came on the fresons with the poyntes of their speres, wherof the Fresons were sore abashed, so that dyuers of them lepte the dyke; so perforce the Fresons were fayne to opyn and sparle abroad here and there. In this batayle the great freson was slayne, and the other began to flye. The chase was horryble and cruell, for none was taken to rāusome, and specially the holanders slewe all they myght attayne vnto, in so moche that suche as were taken by the Heynowes, Frenchemen, or Englysshemen, the Hollanders slewe them in their handes. Amonge the hollanders, the lorde Wylliam of Cruenbourge and his two sonnes, Johā and Henry, (who were made knyghtes the same mornyng), acquyted themselves marueylously well, and slewe many Fresons, for it semed well by them, that they loued but litell the fresons. Thus finally the Fresons were discōfyted, and the moost

parte slayne in the felde, but fewe were takenne prisoners, and caryed to Haye,<sup>a</sup> in Hollande, and there were kepte a long season after. The lorde of Cundren,<sup>b</sup> (who was lorde of that couñtre, where the felde was), was the mondaye before yelden to the duke Aubert and his two sonnes, and yet for all that they were in ð felde with the fresons; the two sonnes were longe after with ð duke. After this disconfyture they entred into the country of Condren,<sup>b</sup> and toke townes and fortresses; howebeit, they cōquered but lytell, for the Fresons dyde thē great dōmage by preuy encoūtrynges; and when they shulde take any prisoners, they wolde neuer yelde, but fought to the dethe, sayeng, they had rather dye free Fresons, than to be vnder the subiectyon of any prince or lorde: if any prisoners were taken there coude no raunsome be gotten for them, for their frendes wolde nat quyte them out, but rather suffre them to dye in prisone; they wolde neuer quyte none of their people, withoute it were to delyuer man for man; and if they sawe that there were none of their people in prisone, they wolde slee all their enemyes, and take no prisoner. Thus about the ende of v. wekes, and that the heynous and other had taken and beaten downe certayne townes, vyllages, and fortresses, of no great valure. The season beganne to waxe colde marueylously, and rayned nere hāde euery day, ad the sees full of tempestes and wyndes. The duke Aubert and his sonne, consydringe the season, purposed to returne into base Frese,<sup>c</sup> fro whens they came, and so into Hollande, the more easy to passe the colde wynter: so they departed and came to Encuise,<sup>d</sup> and there gaue lycence to euery man to departe, and specially to the straūgers, and payde thē truely their wages, and thāked them of their good ayde and seruyce. Thus brake vp the journey of Frese,<sup>c</sup> and had cōquered but lytell all that season. But within two yere after, the sayd two noble princes assembled agayn the seconde tyme a great armye, and wente into Frese,<sup>c</sup> and made a great cōquest, and dyd there many noble dedes of armes, as ye shall here after. But as nowe we shall leaue spekyng therof, and declare ð maner of the maryage of the kyng of Englande to the daughter of Fraunce.

*Howe the mariage of the kyng of Englande to the daughter of Frāce was ordred, and howe the Frenche kyng delyuered his daughter to the kyng of Englande in his tente bytwene Arde<sup>e</sup> and Calys.*

#### C. A. P. CCXVI.<sup>f</sup>

YE haue herde howe the kyng of Englande was returned fro Calis into Englande, and there was tyll Michelmas that the parlyament at Westmynster shulde begyn. And in the meane season great prouision was made at Calais and at Guynes, for the kyng and for other lordes sent for the portes of Englande on that cost, and great prouision was had out of Flaunders, all came by see to Calais. In lykewise for the Frenche kyng, and for his brother, the duke of Orlyauce, and his vnclis, and other prelates and lordes of Fraunce, great prouision was made at saynt Omers, at Ayre, at Tyrwyn,<sup>g</sup> at Arde,<sup>e</sup> at Mountoyre, and at all other houses and abbeyes there about; there was nothyng spared on bothe parties, and specially the abbey of saynte Bertyne was well replenysshed of all thynges to receyue these kynges. This parlyament at Westmynster began at Mychelmas, and it was ordeyned to endure xl. dayes, but it was abridged, for the

<sup>a</sup> The Hague.

<sup>e</sup> Ardres.

<sup>b</sup> Kuynder.

<sup>c</sup> Lower Friezland.

<sup>d</sup> Enkhuysen.

<sup>f</sup> Chapter CCXII.

<sup>g</sup> Terouenne.

the king wolde nat tary there but v. dayes, wherin he declared the thynges most necessary parteyning to the realme, and specially that mater that touched hymselfe, and the cause why he cāe fro Calais. That done he returned towards Calais agayne, and with hym his two vnclēs of Lancastre, and Gloucestre, and other prelates and lordes of Englande, suche as were comāunded to go with him; they spedde them so in their iourney that they came agayne to Calais: the duke of Yorke taryed styll in Englande, and the erle of Derby, to gouerne the realme in the kynges absence. Whan the kyng of Englande was thus returned to Calais, the lordes of Fraunce beyng in Picardy, were aduertised therof. Than the duke of Burgoyn, and the duchesse his wyfe, came to saynt Omers, and were lodged in the abbey of saynt Bertync. As sone as the frēche kyng knewe that the kyng of Englande was come agayne to Calais, he sente to hym thirle of saynt Poule, to shewe hym what order was taken in Fraunce, concernyng his maryage, whiche the kyng of Englande was gladde to here. Thāne the duke of Lancastre, and his sonne Beauforde of Lancastre, the duke of Gloucester, and Affren<sup>a</sup> his sonne, the erle of Rutlande, the erle marshall, erle of Huntynghton, the kynges chamberleyne, and many other lordes, knyghtes, squyers, and ladyes, rode with the Erle of saynt Poule to saynt Omers, where they were well receyued of the duke of Burgoyne, and of the duchesse: and thyder came the duke of Bretagne, and had leftē the Frenche kyng at Ayre, and his doughter with hym.

Ye maye well knowe all the chere <sup>ȝ</sup> coude be deuysed was made to the Englysshe lordes and ladyes, and other at saynt Omers, and the duchesse of Burgoyne made them a great dyner; there was the duchesse of Lācastre, and her sonne and two doughters; there was great gyftes gyuen of plate of golde and syluer, nothyng was spared, in so moche that the Englysshemen hadde marueyle therof, and specially the duke of Gloucestre, and sayd to his cotūsayle: I se well there is great rychesse in the realme of Fraunce. There was moche gyuen to hym, to the entente to abate and to molyfie his rancour that he hadde agaynste Fraunce: the lordes of Fraunce knewe well that he was alwayes harde to agre to the peace, wherfore they shewed hym as moche token of loue and honour as they coude do; he toke euer all their gyftes, but alwayes the rancour abode styll in his hert; for all that euer the Frenchemen coude do, they coude nat molifye his fell stomake, for alwayes he made herde answers as they treated for any peace. The Frenchemen be substyle, yet for all that they coude gette no hold of hym, for his wordes and aunswers were alwayes so couert, that they wyst nat howe to vnderstāde them. Whan the duke of Burgoyne sawe his maner, he sayde to his counsaille: We lese all that euer we do to this duke of Gloucestour: for as longe as he lyueth there shal be no sure peace bytwene Fraūce and Englande, for he shall alwayes fynde newe inuencyons and accydentēs to engender hate and stryfe bytwene bothe realmes, for he entēdeth nor thynketh none other thyng; if it were nat the truste that we haue in the kyng of Englande, wherby hereafter to fare the better, the kyng shulde nat haue to his wyfe our cosyū of Fraunce.

Whan the duke and duchesse of Burgoyne, the cōtēsse of Neuers, the countesse of saynt Poule, and the other lordes and ladyes of Fraunce, hadde greatly feested the lordes and ladyes of Englande, than there was cōmunicacion howe these two kynges shulde mete and speke toguyder, and howe the lady shulde be deluyered: thervpon apoyntment was made, and leaue taken on all partes: the Englysshe partie returned to Calis to the kyng, and shewed what chere they had, and what presentes had ben gyuen them. These newes pleased well the kyng, for he was gladde whan he herde any honour spoken of the

<sup>a</sup> Humphrey.

the Frenche kyng, he was so in loue with hym bycause of his daughter, whome he trusted to haue to his Quene. Than anone after the Frenche kyng came to saynt Omers, and was lodged in the abbey of saynt Bertyne, and dislodged all other that were there before, and had the duke of Bretayne in his company; and than it was ordayned that the dukes of Berrey, of Burgoyne, and of Burbone, shulde go to Calis to speke with the kyng of Englande.

So they came to Calays, and were ioyously receyued, and had as good chere as coulde be deuysed. These thre dukes had secrete communicacion with the kyng and his counsaile, so that many, bothe of Fraunce and of Englande, reputed that there was a peace concluded bytwene Fraunce and Englande: and indede it was nere at a poynt, and the duke of Gloucester agreed well therto, as at that tyme, for the kyng of Englande hadde promysed hym, if he wolde agree to the peace, to gyue his son Äffren<sup>a</sup> the erldome of Rochester in herytaūce, and to make hym spende yerely in reuenewes two thousande pounce sterlyng, and to gyue to hymselfe as soone as he came in Englande in redy money fyfte thousande nobles: so that by reason of these gyftes, the duke of Gloucestours hardnesse was well aleyed. So that the lordes of Fraunce sawe well his opynions were nat so obstynate as they were before, for they founde hym than swete and meke. Whāne euery thyng was ordeyned of that they came for, they tooke leaue of the kyng and other, and retourned to saynt Omers to the Frenche kyng, and shewed howe they hadde spedde. Than the Frenche kyng wente to the bastyde of Arde,<sup>b</sup> and the duke of Burgoyne to Mountoyre, and the duke of Bretaygne to the towne of Esque, and the duke of Berrey to Balyngham;<sup>c</sup> and in euery parte all aboute there were pyght vp tentes and pauilyons, and all the country full of people, what of Fraūce and of Englande. The kyng of Englande came to Guysnes, and the duke of Lancastre with hym, and the duke of Gloucestre to Hāmes. Thus on a Fridaye, beyng the euyng of Symon and Jude, in the yere of oure lorde god, a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and sixtene, about tenne of the clocke in the forenoone, the two kynges departed oute of their tentes, the which were pyght nat farre asondre, and came afoote, the one to ŷ other, and met at a certayne place that was apoynted. And on the one syde there was araynged four hundred knyghtes of Fraunce, armed with their swerdes in their hādes; and on the other parte foure hundred Englysshe knyghtes in lyke maner: so the two kynges passed through them: the dukes of Lācastre and of Gloucestre ledde the Frenche kyng, and the dukes of Berrey and of Burgoyne ledde the kyng of Englande. Thus they came foreby the sayd eight hundred knyghtes: and whan the two kynges came iust toguyder, all the eyght hundred knyghtes kneled downe to the grounde, and many of them wepte for ioie. Thus the two kynges mette toguyder bareheaded, and a lytell enclyned and tooke eche other by the handes. Than the Frenche kyng ledde the kyng of Englande into his tente, whiche was noble and ryche, and the four dukes tooke eche other by the handes and folowed the two kynges, and other knyghtes after, the Frenchemen on the one syde, and the Englysshemen on the other syde: and so they stode regardyng eche other in good and humble maner tyll all was done. Thāne it was ordayned, that on the same place where as the two kynges tooke eche other by the hande, that there shulde be made and founded a chapell in the honoure of our Lady, and shulde be called our lady of Grace. I can nat tell whether it were made or nat.

So the two kynges, hande in hāde, entred into the Frenche kynges tente; than the foure dukes kneled downe before ŷ kynges and they reysed them vp, and so talked toguyder. Than the two kynges wente a lytell aparte, and talked a certayne space; in

VOL. II.

4 Q

the

<sup>a</sup> Humphrey.<sup>b</sup> Ardres.<sup>c</sup> Leulinghem: but Johnes says *Tournehem*.

the meane tyme wyne and spyces were brought; the duke of Berrey serued the Frenche kyng of spyce, and the duke of Burgoyne of wyne; and the dukes of Lācastre and Gloucester serued the kyng of Englād. Thā other knyghtes and squiers serued all other prelates and lordes, so ſ̄ euery man win ſ̄ tent hadde parte, and in the meane tyme the two kynges cōmūded togyuder. This busynesse done and paste, the two kynges tooke leaue eche of other, and so returned to their tentes, and tooke their horses and rode towardes Calais, the kyng to Guysnes, the dukes of Lancastr and Gloucester to Hāmes, and the other to Calais. The Frenche kyng rode to Cordre,<sup>a</sup> and the duke of Orlyauce with hym: the duke of Berrey to Dornam,<sup>b</sup> and the duke of Burgoyne to Mountoyrs. So there was no more done that day; all their tentes stode styll in the feldes.

Than on the Saturdaye on the feest of saynt Symon and Jude, aboute a xi. of the clocke, the kyng of Englande and his vnclis, and other lordes, cāe to the Frenche kyng into his tent; they were receuyed right honorably, and euery manne talked with his felowe meryly: than tables were sette vp, and the two kynges sat at one table alone, the Frenche kyng on the ryght hande; the dukes of Berrey, of Burgoyne, and of Burbone, serued the two kynges: thā the duke of Burbone caste forthe many iestyng wordes to make the kynges to laugh, and suche as were before the table, for this duke was a mery man, and sayd openly, addressyng his wordes to the kyng of Englāde: Sir, quod he, ye ought to make good chere, for ye haue all that ye desyre; ye haue your wife or shall haue her deliuered to you. Than the Frenche kyng sayd: Burbonoys, we wolde that our daughter were of ſ̄ age that our cosyn of saynt Poule is, on the condicyon that it cost me a great good, than she shulde take my sonne with the better good wyll. The kyng of Englande herde well those wordes, and answered, spekyng to the duke of Burbone, (bycause the Frēche kyng hadde compared his daughter to the erle of saynt Poules daughter), and sayd: Sir, the age that my wyfe (that shall be) is of, pleaseth you right well; we loue nat so moche her herytage than I do the loue of you and of our realmes: for we two beyng of one accorde, there is no kyng, christen nor other, that are able to anoye vs.

This dyner thus done in the Frenche kynges tent, and after wyne and spyces taken, than the yonge quene was brought forthe, acompanyed with a great nombre of ladyes and damoselles, and there she was deliuered to the kyng of Englande. Whan ſ̄ was done euery man toke their leaue to departe. The yonge quene was sette in a ryche lytter, and there wente no mo frenche ladyes with her, but the lady of Coucy; there were the ladyes of Englande, the duchesses of Lancastr, of Yorke, and of Gloucestre, and of Irelande; the lady of Namure, and the lady Poynynges, and a great nombre of other ladyes, who receuyed the quene with great ioie.

Thus the kyng of Englande, and the yonge quene and his company, rode to Calais the same nyght, and the frenche kyng and his cōpany to saynt Omers. Than the Tuesdaye after, whiche was Allhalowen day, the kyng of Englande maryed the sayd lady Isabell of Fraūce, in the churche of saynt Nicholas in Calais; the archebysshop of Cāuterbury wedded theym, at whiche tyme there was a great feest and great largesse. The Thursdaye after, there came to Calais the dukes of Orlyauce and of Burbone to se the kyng and the quene; and on the friday they tooke their leaue and departed, and rode to saynt Omers to the Frenche kyng. And the same day in the morning the kyng and the quene toke their slyppe and hadde fayre passage, they were ouer within thre houres; the kyng laye in the castell of Douer, and the nexte daye to Rochestre, and than to Dartforde, and so to Eltham. Thāñe all lordes and ladyes toke their leaue, and a fif-

tente

<sup>a</sup> Ardres.<sup>b</sup> Tournhem.

tene dayes after the queene was brought to the cytie of London, accompanied with many lordes, ladyes, and damosels, and laye the fyrst nyght at the towre of London, and the nexte daye coueyed along throughe the cytie with great solempnyte to the kynges palais of Westmyuster, and thier the kyng was before redy to receyue her. The same daye the Londoners gaue to the queene great presentes. Than was thers ordayned a great iustes to be holden in the cytie of Lodon of xl. knyghtes and squyers chalēgers, to be holden at Candelmas nexte after, whiche was deluyered to the Heraldes to publysshe on bothe sydes of the realme, to Scotlande. And whan the Frenche kyng was cōe to Parys after the maryage of his doughter, and euery lorde departed home, there ranne than a great brute through the realme, howe the frenche kyng was in purpose at the begynnyng of Marche, to go with a great army into Lombardy, to dystroye the lorde Galeas duke of Mylayne; the kyng had suche displeasure agaynst hym that no man coulde tourne hym but that he wolde make that voyage, and the kyng of Englande had promysed to sende hym syxe thousande archers, and the duke of Bretaygne had offered to go with hym with two thousande speares bretons: great prouysyon was made for this iourney in the Dolphenry of Vyen, and in the countie of Sauoy. Whan the duke of Bretayne departed from the frenche kyng to retourne into his countrey, syr Peter of Craou, who was condempned to paye to the queene of Jherusalem a hundred thousande frankes, and was in prison in the castell of Loure,<sup>2</sup> in Parys, at the request of the duke of Bretaygne, the duke of Burgoyne dyd so moche to the kyng, that by his good meanes the duke of Bretayne had syr Peter of Craou with hym. I thynke he promysed to pay the sayd sōme at certayne dayes to the foresayd queene. I wyll nowe leaue this mater, and speke of the aduētures of Turkey.

*Howe the sieg before Nycopolis in Turkey was reysed by Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> and howe the Freuchemen were dyscomfyted, and howe the hungaryons fled.*

C A P. CCXVII.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe the kyng of Hungery, and the lordes of Fraunce, were passed the ryuer of Duncce,<sup>d</sup> and were entred into Turkey: and all the sōmer after the moneth of July they had done many enterprises, and had brought dyuers townes to their subiection, for there was none that resysted them, and had besieged y<sup>e</sup> towne of Nycopolis, and hadde nere brought it to a small estate, nigh redy to yelde, for they coude here no newes of Lamorabaquy.<sup>b</sup> Than the kyng of Hungery said to the lordes of Fraūce, and to other: Syrs, thanked be god, we haue had a fayre seasoene, we haue dystroyed parte of Turkey; I reken this towne of Nycopolis ours whan we lyst: it is so sore ouerlayde that it canne nat longe holde, wherfore all thynges consydrd, I cōsayle (this towne ones won), that we go no further at this season; we shall drawe agayn ouer the Duncce<sup>d</sup> into the realme of Hungery, where I haue many cyties, townes, and castelles, redy furnysshed to receyue you, as reason is, seyng ye be come so farre to ayde me to make warre agaynst the turkes, whome I haue founde herde and cruell enemyes; and this wynter we shall make newe prouysion agaynst the next somer, and sende worde to the frenche kyng what case we be in, so that this nexte sōmer he maye refresshe vs with newe men; and I beleue whan he knoweth what we haue done, and howe euery thyng standeth, he wyll haue great affection to come hyther in his owne person, for he

4 Q 2

is

<sup>2</sup> The Louvre.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXIII.<sup>d</sup> Danube.

is yonge and couragous, and loueth dedes of armes; and whether he cometh or nat, by the grace of god, this next sōmer we shall wynne the realme of Armony,<sup>a</sup> and passe the brase of saynt George,<sup>b</sup> and so into Surrey,<sup>c</sup> and wynne the portes of Japhes,<sup>d</sup> and Baruth, and conquere Jherusalem, and all the holy lande; and if the sowdan come forewarde we shall fyght with hym, for he shall nat departe without batayle.

These or lyke wordes sayd the kyng of Hungery to the lordes of Fraunce, and re-nened Nycopoly as their owne; howebeit, fortune fell otherwyse. All that season the kyng Basaach,<sup>e</sup> called Lamorabaquy, had reysed an army of sarazyns, some out of farre countreys, as out of Perce,<sup>f</sup> many great men of the sarazyns came to ayde Lamorabaquy,<sup>e</sup> to dystroy crystendome: they were passed the Brase saynt George,<sup>b</sup> to the nombre of two hūdred thousand men. To say the truth, the chrysten men were nat acertayned what nombre they were of. This kyng Basaache<sup>e</sup> and his men aproched nere to Nycopoly by couerte wayes: they kweue in feates of warre as moche as myght be, and this kyng was a valyaunt man, whiche shewed well by reason of his polycy: he ordered his bataylles thus: All his hoost was in a maner as wynges, his men comprised well a great myle of grounde, and before the hoost to shewe a face redye in a bande an eyght thousande turkes; the two wynges of the batayle were open a forefronte, and narowe behynde, and Lamorabaquy<sup>e</sup> was in the herte of the batayle; thus they rode all in couerte. These eyght thousande Turkes were ordeyned to make a face, and ý as sone as they shulde se the crystenmen aproche, than they to recule lytell and lytell into the herte of the batayle, and than the two wynges, whiche were open before, (the crystenmen beyng ones entred bytwene them), to close togyther and ioyne into one company, and than to fyght with their enemies. This was the ordre of their batayle.

Thus in the yere of oure lorde god a thousande, thre hūdred, fourscore, and systene, the monday before the feest of saynt mychell, about ten of the clocke, as the kyng of Hungery sate at dyner at the siege of Nycopoly, tydynges came to the hoost howe the turkes were comyng: and the scoutes that came in shewed howe they had sene the turkes, but their reporte was nat trewe, for they had nat rydden so forwarde, that they had aewed the two wynges, nor the batayle behynde; they had sene no mo but ý fore ryders and vowarde, for as soone as they had sene theym they retourned. The same season the greatest parte of ý host were at dyner: than tydynges was brought to the erle of Neuers, and to all other in generall by their scurers, who said: Syrs, arme you quckly, that ye be nat surprised, for the turkes are comyng on you. These tydynges greatly reioysed the crystenmen, suche as desyred to do dedes of armes. Than every man rose fro their dynners, and put the tables fro them, and demanded for their harnesse and horses, and they were well chafed before with drynkyng of wyne. Than every man drewe into the felde, baners and standerdes dysplayed, every man to his owne baner. Than the baner of our lady was dysplayed; therwith the valyaunt knyght sir Johan of Vien, admyrall of Fraunce, and the frenchemen were the fyrst that drewe into the felde freshely aparelled, makynge small accompte of the turkes; but they knewe nat that they were so great a nombre as they were, nor that Lamorabaquy<sup>e</sup> was there in his owne persone. As these lordes of Fraunce were into the felde, there came vnto theym the kyng of Hungeryes marshall in great hast, who was a valyaunte knyght, called Henry of Ostenlenyhall, vpon a good horse, with a penon of his armes, of syluer, a crosse sable ancored, called in armure, the yron of a mylstone:<sup>g</sup> whan he came before the baner of our lady he stode styll, and (to the moste parte of the barones of Fraunce),

<sup>a</sup> Armenia.<sup>b</sup> The Hellespont.  
<sup>c</sup> Persia.<sup>c</sup> Syria.  
<sup>e</sup> Cross Moline.<sup>d</sup> Jaffa.<sup>e</sup> Bajazet.



Fraunce), he sayd openly: Syrs, I am sent hyther to you fro the kyng of Hungery, and he desireth you by me, that ye set nat on your enemyes vntyll suche tyme as ye haue worde agayne fro him, for it ought to be doughted lest our scoutes haue nat brought the certaynte of the nombre of the turkes: but within these two houres ye shall here other tydynges, for we haue sent other foreyders forth to auewe our enemyes more substantially than the first dyd; and syrs, ye maye be sure the turkes shall nat indomage vs, if ye tary tyll all our hole puyssaunce be togyder: Syrs, this is the ordre that the kyng and his counsaile hath ordered; I muste retourne agayne to the kyng. When he was departed, the french lordes assembled thē togyder, to knowe what was best for them to do. Than it was demaunded of the lorde Coucy what he thought best to be done: he answered and said: I wolde counsaile to obey the kyng of Hungeryes cōmaundement, for that ordre semeth to be good. And as it was enfourmed me, syr Phylippe of Arthoys, erle of Ewe, and constable of Fraunce, was nat contented that the aduise had nat fyrst haue ben demaunded of hym; than he for pride and dispyght helde the contrary oppynon, and sayd: ye syr, ye, the kyng of Hungery wolde haue the floure and chiefe honour of this iourney; we haue the vowarde, he hath graunted it to vs, and nowe he wolde take it fro vs agayne: beleue hym who wyll, for I do nat; and than he sayd to the knyght that bare his banner, in the name of god and saynt George, ye shall se me this daye a good knyght. When the lorde Coucy herde the constable speke these wordes, he toke it done of a great presumpcyon. Than he loked on syr Johan of Vyen, who bare the standarde of our lady, and demaunded of hym what he thought best to be doone. Syr, quod he, where as wyse reasone canne nat be herde, than pride muste reygne, and sythe that the erle of Ewe wyll nedes set on, we must nedes folowe; howebeit, we shulde be the stronger and if our puyssaūce were hole togyther. Thus as they deuysed in the felde, styll the turkes aproched, and the two wynges, eche of lx. thousande men, beganne to aproche and to close, and had the chrystenmen bytwene them, so that if they wolde haue reculed they coulde nat, for they were closed in with the sarazyns, the wynges were so thicke. Than dyuers knyghtes that were well expert in armes, sawe well the iourney shulde be agaynst them; howebeit, they auanced and folowed the baner of our lady, borne by the valyaunt knight syr Joliñ of Vien; every knyght of Fraunce was in his cote armure, that enery man semed to be a kinge, they were so fresshly apparelled. As it was shewed me when they began fyrste to fyght with the turkes, they were nat past a seuen hundred men. Lo, beholde the great foly and outrage, for if they had taryed for the kyng of Hungery, who were threscore thousande men, they had been lykely to haue doone a great acte: and by them and by their pride all was lost, and they receyued suche dōmage, that sythe the batayle of Rounseualx,<sup>a</sup> where as the xii. peres of Fraūce were slayne, crystendome receyued nat so great a dōmage; howebeit, or they were dyscomfyted a great nombre of turkes were slayne, for the frenchemen dyscomfyted the fyrst batayle of the turkes, and had them in chase tyll they came into a valey, where Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> was with his hole puyssaunce; than the frenchmen wolde haue retourned to their hoost, but they coulde nat, for they were closed in on all partes; there was a sore batayle, the frenchemen endured longe. Than newes came to the kyng of Hungery, howe the frenchemen, englysshmen, and almayns,<sup>c</sup> were fyghtyng with the turkes, and had broken his cōmaundement and counsaile gyuen thē by his marshall, wherwith he was sore dyspleased, and nat without good cause; than he sawe well howe he was lykely to lese that iourney: than he said to the great mayster of the Rodes, who was by hym: Syr, we shall this day lese the iourney by reason of the pride of the frenchmen, for if they wolde haue beleued me, we had been stronge ynough to laue fought with our enemyes: and therwith the kyng of Hungerye

<sup>a</sup> Roncesvalles.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Germans.

Hungerye loked behynde hym, and sawe howe his men fled awaye and were discomfyted in themselves: than he sawe well there was no reconery, and suche as were aboute hym cryed and sayd: Saue yourselfe, for if ye be slayne all Hungerye is loste: ye shall lese the felde this daye by reason of the pride of the frenchemen, their valyauntesse turneth to folyssh hardynes, for they shall be all slayne or taken, none is lykely to scape: therefore syr if ye beleue vs, saue youreselfe, and scape this daunger.

The kynge of Hungerye was sore dyspleased whan he sawe howe he had lost ȝ journey by dysorderyng of the frenchemen, and sawe no remedy but to flye, or els be taken or slayne: great murder there was, for in flyenge they were chased and so slayne: they of Hungerye fledde without ordre, and the turkes chased them; howebeit, god ayded the kinge of Hūgery, and the great mayster of the Rodes, for they came to the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>a</sup> and founde there a lytell barge parteynyng to the Rodes: they entered into it but with seuen persones, and so went of the shore, or els they had been slayne or taken, for the turkes came to the ryuer syde, and there slewe many a crystenman, suche as had folowed the kynge to saue themselves.

Nowe lette vs speke of the frenchemen and almayns,<sup>b</sup> who fought valyauntly. Whan the lorde of Mount caurell, a ryght valyaunt knyght of Arthioys, sawe that the dyscomfyture ranne vpon them, he had by hym a sonne of his, a yonge man: than he sayde to a squyer of his: Take here my sonne and leade hym away by yonder wyng whiche is open, and saue hym, and I wyll abyde the aduerture with other of my felowes. Whan the chyld herde his father say so, he sayd howe he wolde nat depart: but the father dyd so moche that perforce the squyer led hym away out of parell, and came to the ryuer of Dunce,<sup>a</sup> but there the chyld had suche care for his father that he tooke small regarde to hymselfe, so that he fell into ȝ ryuer bytwene two barges, and there was drowned without remedy. Also syr Wyllyam of Tremoyle<sup>c</sup> fought in that batayle valyauntly, and there was slayne and his sonne by him, and syr Johan of Vyen bearynge the baner of our lady was slayne, and the baner in his handes. Thus all the lordes and knyghtes of Fraūce that were there were destroyed, by the maner as ye haue herde. Syr Johan of Burgoyne erle of Neuers, was so rychely besene, and in lykewyse so was syr Guy de la Ryuer, and dyuers other lordes and knyghtes of Burgoyne, that they were taken prisoners. And there were two squiers of Picardy, ryght valyaunt men, called Gyllyam Dewe, and the Bourge of Maytequell:<sup>d</sup> these two by valyauntesse two tymes passed through the felde, and euer returned in agayne and dyd marueyls, but fynally there they were slayne. To say the trouthe the frenchemen and other straūgers that were there acquyted themselves valyauntly, but the frenchmens pride lost all. There was a knyght of Pycardy, called syr Jaques of Helly, who had dwelte before in Turkey, and had serued Lamorabaquy,<sup>e</sup> and coude somewhat speke the langage of Turkey: whan he sawe the batayle loste he yelded hymselfe, and the Sarazyns, who are conetous of golde and syluer, toke and saued hym. Also a squyer of Tornasys, called Jaques dn Fay, who had before serued the kynge of Tartary, called Taubury,<sup>f</sup> as soone as this Jaques knewe ȝ the frenchemen came to make warre in Turkey, he toke leaue of the kynge of Tartary and departed, and was on the sayd felde, and taken prisoner by the kyng of Tartaries men, who were there in the ayde of Lamorabaquy,<sup>e</sup> for kynge Taubury<sup>f</sup> of Tartary had sent to hym great nombre of men of warre.

The frenchmen were so richely arayed that they semed lyke kynges, wherby they were

<sup>a</sup> Danube.<sup>b</sup> Germans.<sup>c</sup> De la Tremouille.  
† Tamerlane.<sup>d</sup> Montquell.<sup>e</sup> Bajazet.

were taken and their lynes saued, for sarazyns and turkes are couetous; they trusted to haue great raunsons of these that were taken, and reputed them greater lordes than they were. Sir Johan of Burgoyne, erle of Neuers, was taken prisoner. In lykewyse were the erles of Ewe and de la Marche, the lorde Coucy, syr Henry of Bare, syr Guy de la Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> Bouciquant, and dyuers other: and syr Philyp of Bare, syr Johan of Vyeu, Wyllyam of Tremoyle,<sup>a</sup> and his sonne, slayne, and dyuers other. This batayle endured three houres fyghtyng, and the kyng of Hungery lost all his baggage, and all his plate and iowelles, and was gladde to saue hymselfe, but with seuen persons with him in a lytell barge of the Rodes, els he had been taken or slayne without reconery. There were mo men slayne in the chase than in the batayle, and many drowned, happy was he that might scape by any maner of meanes.

Whan this dyscomfyture was doone and passed, and that the turkes, suche as were sent thyder by the Sowdan, were withdrawn into their lodgynges, whiche was into tentes and pauilyons that they had conquered, whiche they founde well replenysshed with wyne and meate redy dressed, wherwith they refreshed them, and made ioy and reuell, lyke suche people as had ateygned vycctorye on their enemyes. Than Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> with a greate nombre of mynstrelles, acording to the vsage of their country, came to the kyng of Hungeryes chefe tent, whiche was goodly aparelled and hanged with riche stuffe: and there he toke great pleasure, and glorified in his herte of the wynnyng of that iourney, and thanked their god acordinge to their lawe. Than he vnarmed hym, and to refresshe hym he sate downe on a tapyte of sylke, and caused all his great lordes to come to him to iangle and to talke with them; he made as great myrthe as myght be, and sayd howe he wolde shortly with great puyssaunce passe into the realme of Hungery, and cōquere the countrey, and after, other countreys vpon the crysten men, and to bringe them to his obeysaunce: for he sayd he was content that euery man shulde lyeue after their owne lawes; he desyred nothyng but the signory, but he sayd he wolde reygne lyke Alysaunder of Masydone, who was twelue yere kyng of all the worlde, of whose lynage he sayde he was dyscended. All ÿ herde him agreed to his sayenge. Than he made thre cōmaudemētes: The fyrst was, that who so euer had any prisoner crysten, to bringe hym forthe the seconde daye after into his presence: the seconde was, that all the deed bodyes shulde be vysyted and sertyched, and such as were likely to be noble men to be layde aparte by themselfe in their raymentes tyll he came thyder hymselfe, for he sayd he wolde se them: the thyrde was to enquire iustly if the kyng of Hungery were deed or alyue. All was done as he cōmaunded.

Whan Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> had well refreshed hym, than to passe the tyme he went to ÿ place where the felde was, to se the deed bodyes, for it was shewed hym that he had many of his men slayne, and that the batayle had cost hym greatly, of the which he had great marueyle, and coulde nat byleue it. Than he mounted on his horse, and a greate nombre with him: he had with hym two of his bretherne, called Basaache, and Sur-basaach,<sup>c</sup> as some people sayd, but he wolde nat be knowen of them, for he sayd he had no bretherne: whan he came to the place where the batayle was, he founde it of trouthe that there were many deed and slayne: he sawe ÿ for one crysten man deed, he founde xxx. turkes slayne, wherwith he was marueylously dyspleased, and openly sayde: here hath been a cruell batayle and marueylously defended of the crystenmen, but I shal make them that be alyue to bye it derely. Than the kyng went to his lodgyng, and so passed that nyght in great furour of hert; and in the mornyng or he was vp, moche people came to his tente to knowe what they shulde do with the chrysten prisoners, the renome

<sup>a</sup> Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Ali Bashaw, and Soli Bashaw.

renome ranne that they shulde all be put to dethe without mercy. Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> (for all his dyspleasure), ordeyned that suche crystenmen as were in the batayle in great aray, and lykely to be great men, shulde be all sette togyther in one parte, for it was shewed hym that they myght well pay great raunsomes. Also there were dyuers sarazyns and panyms, of Perce,<sup>b</sup> of Tartary, of Arabye, and suryens, that had many prisoners, by whome they thought to haue great aduantage, as they had indede: they hyd them out of the way so that they came nat to knowledge. Amonge other syr Jaques of Helley was brought before Lamorabaquy:<sup>c</sup> he that had him durst nat hyde hym no lenger; syr Jaques de Helley was beknowen with some of the kynges seruautes, who toke hym fro them that had him, whiche was happy for hym, as ye shall here after, for many crysten men were afterwarde cruelly slayne and put to dethe.

Kynge Basaach<sup>d</sup> had cōmaunded to enquiry whiche were the greatest of the crysten men, and that they shulde be set asyde, to the entent to saue their lyues; so they were tried out and set aparte: fyrst, the lorde Johan of Burgoyne Erle of Neuers, who was chiefe aboue all other, and than syr Phylippe of Arthoys erle of Ewe, the erle of Marche, the lorde Coucy, syr Henry of Bare, syr Guy of Tremoyle,<sup>e</sup> and other, to the nombre of eyght persones; and Lamorabaquy<sup>f</sup> went to se and to speke with them, and behelde them a longe season, and he coniuered these lordes by their faythe and lawe, to saye the trouthe, if they were the same persones that they named themselfe for; and they sayde ye: and yet to knowe the more certaynte he sente to them the frenche knyght syr Jaques of Helley, to knowe them, for he had serued Lamorabaquy<sup>g</sup> before, therefore he had his lyfe graüted hym: he was demanded if he knewe the frenche knyghtes prysoners. He answered and said: I thynke if I se them I shall knowe them. Than he was cōmaunded to go and auewe theym, and to shewe playnely their names. He dyd as he was cōmaüded; and whan he came to them, he shewed them his aduerture, and howe he was sente thyder to knowe surely their names. Than they sayde: Ah, syr Jaques, ye knowe vs all, and ye se well howe fortune is agaynst vs, and how we be in daunger of this kynge, therefore to saue our lyues make vs rather greater than we be indede, and shewe the kyng that we be suche men able to pay great raunsomes. Syrs, quod he, so shall I do, for I am boude therto. Than this knight returned to Lamorabaquy,<sup>h</sup> and to his counsayle, and sayd howe those knyghtes whiche he hadde spoken with, were of the greatest men in all Fraunce, and were of the kynges lygnage, and said they were able to pay great raunsomes. Than Lamorabaquy<sup>i</sup> sayd, howe their lyues shulde be saued, and all other prisoners to be slayne and hewen all to peces, in example of all other. Than the kynge shewed hymselfe before all the people that were there assembled, to whome they all made lowe reuerence; they made a lane for hym to passe thorough, euery man with his sworde naked in his hande, and so came thyder where the sayd lordes of Fraunce stode togyther: than the king wolde se the correction of the other, whiche thyng the sarazyns were desyrous to do.

Than they were all brought before Lamorabaquy<sup>j</sup> naked in their shyrtes, and he behelde them a lytell and than tounred fro them warde, and made a sygne that they shulde be all slayne, and so they were brought through the sarazyns that had redy naked swordes in their handes, and so slayne and hewen all to peces without mercy. This cruell iustyce dyd Lamorabaquy<sup>k</sup> that daye, by the whiche mo than thre hūdred gentlemen of dyuers nacyons were tourmented and slayne for the loue of god, on whose soules Jesu haue mercy. Amonge other was slayne syr Henry Dantoigne, of Heynalt: and so it was, the lorde Boucyquate, marshall of Fraunce, was one of theym that was brought naked

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Persia.<sup>c</sup> De la Tremouille.

naked before the kynge, and had ben slayne with other, and the erle of Neuers had nat espyed hym; as sone as he sawe hym he went streyght to the kynge and kneled downe, and desseyred hym effectuously to respyte fro the dethe that knyght syr Boucyquaut, sayenge howe he was a great man in Fraunce, and able to pay a great raunsome. Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> condyscended to the request of the erle of Neuers, and so syr Boucyquaut was sette amonge them that shulde be saued. Thus cruell iustyce was done that day vpon the crysten men, and bycause that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> wolde that his victory shulde be knowne in Fraunce, he apoynted out thre of the french knyghtes to come before hym, wherof syr Jaques of Helley was one. Than the kyng demaunded of the erle of Neuers whiche of the thre knyghtes he wolde chose to sende into Fraunce to the kynge, and to the duke of Burgoyne his father. Than the erle of Neuers sayd: syr, and it please you, I wolde that this knyght, syr Jaques of Helley, shulde go thyder fro you and fro vs. So syr Jaques taryed with Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> and the other two knyghtes delyuered to dethe and so slayne, whiche was pytie. Than Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> was well apesed of his furoure, and vnderstode howe the kyng of Hungery was scaped away alyne: than he determyned to retourne into Turkey to a cytie called Bursa, and so he dyd, and thyder all ȝ prisoners were brought, and than his army departed, and specyally suche as were of farre cōtreys, as Tartary, Perce, Mede, Sury,<sup>b</sup> Alexandre, and of Lecto. Than syr Jaques Helley was delyuered to retourne into Fraunce, and he was cōmaunded to retourne throughe Lombardy, and to recommaunde Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> to the duke of Myllayne, and also he was streyghtly cōmaunded that in euery place as he passed, to manifest and publisse the victory that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> had vpon the crysten men. The Erle of Neuers wrote to the frenche kynge for hymselfe, and all his company, and to his father the duke of Burgoyne, and to the duchesse his mother: whan this knyght had his charge as well by writyng as by credence, he departed and toke his way towards Fraunce: or he departed he was sworne and promysed as soone as he had done his message in Fraunce, incontynent to retourne agayne thyder, whiche othe and promesse he acōplysshed lyke a trewe knight. Nowe we wyll leaue speakyng at this tyme of Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> and of the lordes of Fraunce prisoners, and we wyll speke of other maters that fell the same season.

*Of the pouertie and mysery that the crysten knyghtes of Fraunce and other nacyons endured, in the commyng home to their countreys.*

C A P. CCXVIII.<sup>c</sup>

AFTER this great dyscōfytur that the turkes had vpon the cristen men, suche knyghtes as coulde saue themselfe, dyd. The same mondaye there was a thre hundred knyghtes and squyers that were gone a foragyng, and were nat at the batayle. for whan they knewe, (by them that fledde), that the batayle was doone, they had no desyre to retourne agayne to their lodginges, but fledde as well as they myght, and toke dyuers wayes to flye fro ȝ turkes: ther fled bothe frenchmen, englysshmen, almayns,<sup>d</sup> scottes, flemynges, and of other nacyons, and they came into a countrey ioynnyng to Hungery, called Blacqy;<sup>e</sup> it was a countrey replenysshed with dyuers people, they were conquered vpon the turkes, and tourned perforce to the crysten faythe; the keepers of the

VOL. II.

4 R

portes,

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Syria.<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXIV.<sup>d</sup> Germans.<sup>e</sup> Wallachia.

portes, townes. and castels, suffered these crysten men to entre and to lodge, but the nexte mornynge at their departure they tooke fro these knyghtes and squyers all that they had, and gaue them poore cotes, and a lytell syluer to passe therwith one dayes journey; this grace they shewed to the gentlemen; and as for other yeomen and varlettes they were spoyled all naked, and sore beaten, and yuell entreated, without pytie. So they passed through the coütrei of Blacquy<sup>a</sup> in great pouertie, and through Hügeri: they coude scant get breed for goddessake, nor lodgyng at nyght: they endured this daunger in passynge tyll they came to Vyen in Austrich,<sup>b</sup> there they were receyued more swetely, and refresshed and newe cladde, and so through the realme of Boesme,<sup>c</sup> for if they hadde founde the Almaynes<sup>d</sup> so harde, they had neuer tourned agayne, but rather dyed for colde and hunger. Eucry man that herde them tell of that aduenture hadde pytie on them. So finally they came into Fraunce to Paris, and there shewed their aduentures; at the begynnynge they coude nat be beleued: some in Parys sayde: it is pytie these vnthriftes be vnchanged or drowned, for tellyng of suche lies; howebeit, these tidynge dayly multiplied w<sup>th</sup> resortyng of newe men. When the frenche kyng vnderstode that these newes dayly renewed, they were nothyng pleasaunt to hym, for it was a great dômage of the losse of the noble men of his blode, and of other good knyghtes and squyers of the realme of Fraüce: than he cōmaunded no man to be so hardye to speke any more of that mater, tyll he were better enfourmed of the certentie: and cōmaunded that all suche as were come oute of Hungery, shulde be taken and put in prisone tyll the trouthe were known; so there were many putte into prison: and the kyng hadde ordayned, that if the newes were nat trewe, that they shulde be all drowned and putte to dethe.

*Howe the trewe tidynge of the batayle in Turkey was known in the Frenche kynges house.*

#### C A P. CCXIX.<sup>e</sup>

SO it was on Christēmas daye, sir Jaques of Helley about the houre of noone entred into Parys, and so toke his lodgyng, and demaunded where the kyng was; and it was shewed hym that he was at saynt Poules on ſ<sup>r</sup> ryuer of Seyn: than he went thyder. There was with the kyng the duke of Orlyauce his brother, the duke of Berrey, the duke of Burgoyne, the duke of Burbone, and therle of saynt Poule, and dyuers other noble men of the realme of Fraunce, as the vsage was for suche noble men to be with the kyng at suche highe feestes. So sir Jaques of Helley entred into the court boted and spurred; as than he was nat beknowen, for he had of long tyme hauēd farre countreis; he dyd so moche that he came to the kynges chambre, and sayd, howe he came fro Lamorabaquy,<sup>e</sup> oute of Turkey, and hadde ben at the batayle before Nicopolye, where the Christen men had lost the iourney: and sayd he hadde letters fro the erle of Neuers, and fro other lordes of Fraunce, suche as were prisoners. Than he was brought to the kyng: he kneled downe, and wisely declared his message, as well fro Lamorabaquy,<sup>f</sup> as fro the erle of Neuers, and other lordes of Fraunce prisoners in Turkey. The kyng gaue hym audyence, and was swetely examyned of all the hole mater: and to euery thyng he answered so discretely, that ſ<sup>r</sup> kyng was well content with hym, and was ryght soroufull for the dômage that ſ<sup>r</sup> kyng of Hügry and they had susteyned; howebeit, they were

<sup>a</sup> Wallachia.

<sup>b</sup> Vienna in Austria.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXV.

<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>e</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>f</sup> Germans.

were gladdē that the kyng of Hungery was scaped without dethe or prisonment; for they sayde he shulde recouer ryght well agayne the losse and dōmage that he had receuyed at that tyme: also they were ryght ioyfull that the erle of Neuers, and the other lordes, were escaped the dethe, and were but as prisoners; and they sayde there was no doute but they shulde be ransomed and delyuered; for sir Jaques of Helley sayd, there was no doute but that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> wolde within ȳ yere put them to rāsome, for he loned golde and riches; and that sir, Jaques sayd, he kewe well, because he had long ben conuersaunt in Turkey, and serned Lamorabaquyes<sup>a</sup> father more than thre yere. Thus the kyng ryght well receyved this knyght, and so dyde all other lordes, suche as were there: and enery man sayd he was happy in this worlde to be in suche a batayle, and to haue the acquayntance of suche a hethan kyng as Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> was, sayenge it was an honour for him and for all his lynage. Than the kyng cōmaunded all suche as were in prison to be delyuered, wherof they were gladdē.

Thus these newes that sir Jaques of Helley had brought, spredde anone abrode in Fraunce, and in other places; many were right soroufull for the losse of their fathers, bretherne, husbandes, and chyldren, and nat without good cause, and specially ȳ gret ladyes of Fraunce, as the duchesse of Burgoyne for her sonne, the erle of Neuers, and her daughter Margarete of Heynault was soroufull for the erle her husbande; in lykewyse was dolorous Mary of Berrey countesse of Ewe, for her husbande the lorde Philippe of Arthoise constable of Fraunce; and in lykewise so was the countesse of Marche, the lady of Coucy, and her daughter of Bare, the lady of Sully, and many other ladyes, as well of Fraunce as of other places: and when they had wepte ynowghe, than they reconforted themselfe, in that they were natte slayne but prisoners; but suche as knewe their husbādes, fathers, bretherne, chyldren, and hīdes deed, their lamētacions endured long in Fraūce. The duke of Burgoyne made moche of this knyght sir Jaques of Helley, who had brought hym worde that his sonne was alyne, and gaue hym many ryche gyftes, and reteyned hym as one of his knyghtes with two hundred ponde of reuenewes yerely during his lyfe. The Frenche kyng and all other lordes gaue largely to this knight. Thā he shewed howe he must nedes returne agayne to Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> for that was his promyse at his departyng, for he stode but as prisoner, and sayd, howe he hadde nat retourned, but to do this message fro Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup>. The kyng and other thought it but resonable that he shulde kepe his promyse. Than the kyng and other wrote to these prisoners; and it was concluded by counsaile, that the Frenche kyng shulde sende a knight of honour to Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> to thentent that he myght retourne agayne to bring newe tydynge, in what case the prisoners were in: there was apoynted to go in this voyage sir Johñ of Castell morant, who was a wyse knyght and well languaged. Than it was demanded of sir Jaques what iowelles or presentes the kyng myght best sende to Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup>; and that shulde best please him, to the entent that the prisoners shulde be the better entreated. The knight answered, that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> toke gret pleasure in clothes of arras, made of olde auncyent hystories; and also he sayd, he had great delyte in these whyte Faucons, called Gerfaucons; also he sayd, that fyne linnen clothes, and fyne scarlettes, were moche made of there, for of clothe of golde and sylke they hadde plentie. This pleased well the Frenche kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne, whose myndes were sette to please Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup>. Thus a xii. dayes sir Jaques of Helley taryed at Parys, and enery man was gladdē to here hym reporte of ȳ aduentures of Turkey, and of the maner of Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup>.

Whan he departed to retourne, the kyng sayd to hym: Sir Jaques, take your way;  
4 R 2 and

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.

and make but small iourneys at your ease; I thinke ye wyll returne by Lombardy, and speke with the duke of Myllayne, for there is great anyte bytwene hym and Lamorabaquy;<sup>a</sup> but whiche waye so euer ye go, we wyll that sir Johan of Castell Morant abyde in Hungry, tyll ye haue gote hym a saueconducte to go to Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> with suche presentes as we shall sende hym, to the entent that he shulde be the more favorabile to the prisoners. Sir, quod he, all this shal be done: so he departed and tooke the same waye he came. Anone after his departure, the kyng and the duke of Burgoyne, dyde prepare for these presentes, and sir Johan of Castell Morant dispatched, and had his charge: he had with hym sixe sōmers laden with presētes, two of them with clothes of arras, of the goodlyest that coude be gote, wrought with the storic of Alexandre, of his lyfe and conquestes, ryght pleasaunt to beholde; other two sōmers were charged with lyne scarlettes whyte and reed; and also with moche payne the kyng gate of these whyte gerfauchons. Thus sir Johan of Castell morant departed fro Parys with his presentes and charge, a fyftene dayes after that sir Jaques of Helley was departed. In this mean season the kyng of Hungry retourned into his cōtre, wherof all his people were right ioyfull; for they loued hym, and so came and comforted hym, and sayde: Sir, though ye haue hadde dōmage at this tyme, another tyme ye shall right well recouer it. Thus the kyng bare his dōmage as well as he myght. On ÿ other parte, Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> returned into his cōtre, and came to a towne called Bursa, and thyder were all the prisoners brought, and there sette vnder sure keypyng; they were nothing there at their ease, the heate of the cōtre and dyette sore chaunged them, for they hadde ben vsed before to swete and delycate metes and drinckes, and had their owne cookes and offycers that dyde prepare their meates accordyng to their dyettes: and there in Turkey they were sarued all contrarye, with grose meates, flesshe yuell sodden and dressed: they had spyces ynoughe, and bredde made of mylke, clene fro the nature of Fraūce; they had wyne, and that was with great daunger; though they were all great lordes, they were but smally regarded there: the turkes had as lyue they had been sicke as hole, and deed as alyue, they wolde they had ben all putte to excusyon. So these prisoners comforted eche other within themselves for they sawe none other remedy; so some of thē their nature chaunged and fell into sicknesse: he that made the best chere and cōtynuaunce was the Erle of Neuers, and that he dyde to conforte his companyons: also sir Bouciquaut, and the erle of Marche, and sir Henry of Bare, were of good conforte, and tooke euery thyng paciently, sayeng, that the honours in armes, nor the glorie of this worlde, coude nat be hadde without payne, and somtyme with metyng of harde aduentures: for they said that there was neuer so valyaunt and happy, that had alwayes euery thyng as they wyshed; they sayde they were bounde to thanke god that he hadde saued their lyues, consydringe the displeasure that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> and his counsayle were in, for the losse of their men. for it was ones determyned that we shulde all generally haue been putte to dethe. Than Bouciquaut sayd, I ought aboute all other to thanke god of my lyfe, for I was at the poynt to haue bē hewen all to peces, as other of my company were: but at the request of my loude here, the erle of Neuers, I was saued; this aduenture call I good, and sithe god hath delyuered vs fro this paryll, he wyll and it please hym delyuer vs fro a greater, for we be his soudyers, and for his sake we haue this payne: for by reason that sir Jaques of Helley is gone into Fraunce, I trust within a yere we shall haue good conforte, and be delyuered; the matter can nat abyde thus; the Frenche kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne, wyll nat forgette vs, but by some meanes<sup>b</sup> ransomed and delyuered.

Thus sir Boucyquaut reconforted hymselfe, and tooke euery thyng in good pacyence,  
but

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>b</sup> "We shall be."



but the lorde Coucy coude take no cōforte, whiche was marueyle: for before that tyme he was a lorde of great wysdome and of great conforte, and neuer was abashed: but be- yng thus in prison in Bursa, in Turkey, he was more discomforted than any other, and in more malencoly, and sayd, he was sure he shulde neuer retourne into Fraūce: Sir Henry of Bare comforted hym as moche as he myght, and blamed hym of his discom- forte, sayeng, howe he ought to gyue conforte to all other; howbeit, the same sir Henry was sore abashed in hymselfe, and oftentymes remembered his wyfe, and wolde wepe pitously: and in lykewise so dyd sir Philyppe of Arthoise, erle of Ewe, and constable of Fraunce: sir Guye of Tremoyle<sup>a</sup> was of good conforte, and so was the erle of Marche. Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> was content somtyme that they shulde haue some pastyme, and somtyme he wolde go hymselfe and se them, and tangle and bourde with them right graciously, and wolde that they shulde se parte of his estate and puyssaunce.

Nowe lette vs leaue somewhat to speke of them, and speke of sir Jaques of Helley, and sir Johñ of Castell Morant, who were bothe ryding towards Hungry.

Sir Jaques of Helley taryed in the cytie of Bode,<sup>c</sup> in Hungry, about a ten or xii. dayes, abydinge for sir Johan of Castell morant: and whan he was cōe sir Jaques was ioyfull, for he was desyrus to passe forthe into Turkey. to acquyte hym of his faythe and promyse, and to se the erle of Neuers, and the lordes of Fraunce, and to comforte them. Whan the kynge of Hungry sawe sir Johñ of Castell morant, he made him good chere for the loue of y<sup>e</sup> frenche kynge, and he vnderstode that the frenche kyng had sent by hym gret presētes and iowels to Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> wherwith he was sore displeased in his mynde, but he dissymulēd the mater, and kepte it couert tyll sir Johan Heley was departed into Turkey ward; but he said to suche of his priuye counsayle as he disco- uered the mater vnto, howe that the miscreant dogge, his aduersary Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> shulde haue no presētes out of Fraunce, nor fro no place els, if it laye in his power to lette it: Sir Johñ Helley was departed, and promysed to gette of Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> a saueconducte for sir Johan Morant to passe into Turkey and repasse: so long he traueyled with guydes, that he came into Turkey to the cytie of Bursa, but as than Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> was in another cytie called Poley; and where so cuer he went the prisoners were caryed with hym, excepte the lorde Coucy, who taryed styll at Bursa. for he coude nat endure to ryde he was so sicke. and with hym taryed a cosyn of his of Grece, a right valyant barone, disceded of the lynage of the dukes of Austriche,<sup>d</sup> who was called Mathelyn. Whan sir Jaques was come to Poley. Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> was gladd to se hym, bycause he was come out of Fraunce; than sir Jaques right humbly said to him: Right dere and redouted sir, beholde here your prisoner; to the best of my power I haue don your mes- sage y<sup>e</sup> ye gaue me in charge to do. Than Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> sayd, thou arte welcōe, thou hast trewly acquyted thyselfe, and therfore I acquyte the of thy ransome and prison, so that thou mayst go, retourne, and tary at thy pleasure: wherof sir Jaques right hübly thāked hym. Than he shewed howe the frenche kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne, had sente a knyght of honoure embassade to hym with credēce, and had brought with hym certayne presentes of pleasure fro the Frenche kyng. Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> demaunded what they were, and if he had sene them or nat. The knyght answered, sir, I haue nat sene them, but the knyght that hath y<sup>e</sup> charge to do the message is at Bode,<sup>c</sup> in Hun- gry; and sir, I am come before to shewe you therof, and to haue a saueconducte for the sayd knyght to come and to retourne safely. Than Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> sayd: we wyll that he haue one, as thou wylte deuise, wherof the knyght thanked hym. So they departed as at that tyme. Another tyme sir Jaques spake with Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> and kneled downe  
before

<sup>a</sup> De la Tremouille.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Bada.<sup>d</sup> Austria.

before hym, and humbly requyred that he myght se the lordes and knyghtes of Fraunce, for he had dyuers thynges to saye to them out of their countre. Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> studyed a lytell or he answered, and at laste sayd: thou shalte speke with one of them, but with no mo: and so sent for the erle of Neuers alone; and whan he was come, sir Helley kneled downe to hym. Therle was glad to se hym, and demaunded howe the frenche kyng, and the duke his father, and the duches his mother dyde. The knyght shewed hym all that he knewe, and all that he was charged to saye to hym; howbeit, they had nat so good leysar to talke togyder as they wolde haue had, for Lamorabaquyes<sup>a</sup> men that were there present badde them haue done, for they sayd they had other thynges to do than to stande there and wayte vpon them. Than sir Jaques demaunded of the Erle howe all the other lordes of Fraunce dyde. The Erle said they were all in good case, except ȝ lorde of Coucy, who was somewhat diseased, and was at the cytie of Bursa. Than sir Jaques shewed hym howe sir Johan of Castell morant was come out of Fraunce fro the kyng, and fro the duke of Burgoyne, in ambassade to Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> and to asswage his yre he hath sent hym ryche iewelles and presentes, but he is at Bode,<sup>b</sup> in Hungry, with the kyng there, and I am come before for a sauecōduct for hym to come and go, the whiche Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> hath graunted, and I thynke I shall retourne to hym shortly. Herof therle was right ioyous, but he durst make no semblant for feare of the Turkes, but said: sir Jaques, I vnderstande by you that ye are quyte of your ransome and prison, and that ye maye retourne whan it pleaseth you into Fraūce; whan ye come there, I praye you shewe the kyng and my father, that we all desyre them to treate as shortly as maye be for our delyueraunce, by some marchauntes genowayes or venisyons, and agree at the fyrst worde to that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> shall desyre for our rāsome: for if they shulde make long treatie w̄ hym, we shal be lost for euer, for I vnderstāde Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> istrewe of his worde, curtesse and shorte in all his maters, so he be taken at the poynt.

Thus the erle of Neuers and sir Jaques departed. Whan the saueconducte was redy it was delyuered to sir Jaques. Than he toke his leaue of Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> and of other of his courte of his aquayntaunce, and rode so longe by his iourneys that he arryued at Bode,<sup>b</sup> in Hungry: than he drewe to sir Johan Moraunt, who thought longe for hym. Than sir Jaques sayd: sir, I haue brought you a saueconducte to go into Turkey, and all youre company, and to retourne agayne at your pleasure. I am gladde therof, quod the knyght: lette vs go to the kyng of Hungry and shewe hym therof, and than tomorrowe betymes lette vs departe, for I haue taryed here longe ynoughe. Than they bothe togyder wente to the kyng into his chambre, and shewed hym all the mater. The kyng then answered and sayde: Sir Johan Moraunt, and ye Helley, ye be welcome, ye shall go at youre pleasure, for the loue of my cosyns of Fraunce, to whom I wolde be gladde to do pleasure, and to you also; ye maye go and come throughe my realme at your pleasure, and also into Turkey if ye please, but as for your presentes that you sir Johan haue brought out of Fraūce, I wyll nat agree that ye shall conuey them to that hell hounde Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> he shall neuer be enryched therwith; it shulde tourne to our great shame and rebuke, if he shulde make his auant that bycause he hath had victorie on vs, and hath in daunger and prison certayne lordes of Fraūce, that for feare therof there shulde be sente to hym riche presentes; as for the Gerfaucōs I care nat for, for foules flye lightly oute of one countre into another, they are soone gyuen and soone lost: but as for riche hangynges of arras are thynges to be sene and to endure for euer: wherfore sir Johan Morant, if ye wyll passe into Turkey with your gerfaucōs, go whan it please you, but as for any other thyng ye shall haue non with you. Thā the knyght

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Buda.

knyght answered and sayd: certaynly, sir, it shulde nat be myne honour, nor pleasāt to the Frenche kyng, nor to the lordes that haue sente me hyder, without I myght acōplysshe my voyage as I haue in charge. Well, quod the kyng, ye shall haue none other waye of me at this tyme. So the kyng went fro them and lefte the two knyghtes spekyng toguyder: they were sore troubled with the abusyon on the kyng of Hungry: than they counsayled toguyder what was best for them to do: than they determyned to sende hastye messengers to the frēche kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne, sith the kyng sawe they coulde haue none other remedy; they wrote letters to the kyng, and to the duke of Burgoyne, that they shulde prouyde for the mater: they sente their letters by poste, to make the more hast, and taryed styll themselves at Bode,<sup>a</sup> with the kyng of Hungry, abyding the retourne of their messenger.

This messenger spedde so well, and made suche dilygence, that he came to Parys, and there founde f̄ kyng and the duke of Burgoyne, and there shewed his letters, and they were reed at length, with the whiche they were nothyng pleased. and had marueyle that the kyng of Hungry wolde nat suffre his presentes to passe throughe his countre into Turkey. The duke of Berrey excused the kyng of Hungry, and sayde: howe he had good cause to do as he dyde, for it is a thyng to humbly done for the kyng to sende suche presentes to an hethan thyng: the duke of Burgoyne, bycause the mater touched hym, he was of the contrary opinyon, and said it was a thyng reasonable so to do, sith that fortune hath ben so fauorable to him to haue the vyctorie in suche a batayle, and hath hadde the kyng of Hungry in chase, and hath taken prisoners all suche noble men as were agaynst hym in that iourney, wherfore the frēdes of those prisoners may well fynde the meanes howe to comforte them for their deluyeraunce. This dukes wordes were vpholden with the kyng, and with dyuers of his counsayle. Than the kyng demaunded of his vnclē of Berrey, Sayeng, fayre vnclē, if Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> the soudan, or any other hethan kyng, sende you a ruby or a ryche iewell, wheder wyll ye receyue it or nat. Sir, quod he, I wolde take aduysē. Than f̄ kyng sayd, it passeth nat yet tenne yere sythe the soudan sente you a ruby whiche cost twentie thousande frankes. So the kyng of Hungries dede was nat susteygned, but it was sayd that he had yuell done to stoppe the goyng of these presentes, and that it shulde rather hynder the prisoners than auance thē. Than the kyng was cōsayled to write to f̄ kyng of Hungry amyable letters, desyringe hym nat to stoppe his knyght, but suffre him to passe into Turkey with his presētes and message. Than letters were written, sealed, and deluyered agayne to the same messāger, and so he departed to retourne into Hūgry.

<sup>a</sup> Buda.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.

*Howe the duchesse of Orlyauunce, daughter to the duke of Myllayne, was had in sus-  
pecte of the Freuche kynges syckenesse.*

## CAP. CCXX.\*

YE haue harde here before howe the Frēche kyng lightly euery yere was sore en-  
clyned to fall into a frāsey, so that there was nother phisycion nor surgion that coude  
remedy hym : many said they wolde helpe hym, but whāne it came to the poynt all their  
labour was in vayne, for the kynges sickenesse wolde nat cease nother for prayers nor for  
medyciuns, tyll it had ron his full course : some of his phisycions, and arioles,<sup>b</sup> and char-  
mers, whan they sawe no remedy, than they said surely howe the kyng was poisoned  
or bewycthed, by crafte of sorcerye, whiche noyse made the lordes and other to haue  
many in suspecte ; and some of these nigromancers affirmed that the kynges sickenesse  
came by reason of sorcery and charmes ; and to make thē beleue it was so, they said  
they knewe it by the spyrites, who had shewed it to them. Of these deuins, arioles,<sup>b</sup>  
and charmers, there were certayne brente at Parys, and at Auignon ; they spake so  
moche, and sayd, that the duchesse Valentyne of Orlyauūce, daughter to the duke of  
Myllayn, hadde witched the kyng, to the entent to attayne to the crowne of Fraunce ;  
they had so sclaudred this lady, ŷ brute ran through the realme, that she vsed suche  
craftes of sorcery, sayeng, that as long as she was about the kyng, and that he myght se  
her, the kyng shulde nat amēde ; so it behoued this lady to auoyde this sclauder, and  
to flye fro the paryll therof, to departe fro Parys : and so she wente to Asners, a fayre  
castell nere to Pontoysse, parteyning to her husbände the duke of Orlyauūce, and after-  
warde she went and dwelt at Newcastle,<sup>c</sup> on the ryuer of Loyre, parteynyng to her  
husbände, who was sore displeased in his hert that suche a brute ran vpon his wyfe ;  
howebeit, he dissymuled the mater as well as he myght, nor dyd nat absent hymselfe  
fro the court, for he had moche busynesse for the maters of the realme. The duke of  
Myllayne, called Galeas, was well enformed howe his daughter the duchesse of Or-  
lyauunce was accused, wherof he was sore displeased, and he sente twyse or thrise am-  
bassadours to the Freuche kyng and his cōsayle, and offred to fynde a knyght to fyght  
at vtraūce, with any man that wolde accuse his daughter of any trayson ; and the mes-  
sāgers in a maner thretned that ŷ duke wolde make warre into Fraunce, bycause the  
freuche kyng beyng in good helthe, (at Balynggham,<sup>d</sup> bitwene saynt Omers and Calis),  
said, that assone as he were returned into Fraūce, he wolde entende to nothyng, but  
to make warre vpon the duke of Myllayne : and also the kyng of Englande, who as thau  
called hymselfe his sonne, bycause he had maryed his daughter, promysed to sende hym  
a thousande speres, and sixe thousāde archers, wherof the freuche kyng was right ioy-  
full. Prouisyon was made for the Freuche kyng in the countie of Sauoy, and in ŷ  
Dolphenry. The kynges mynde was, to entre that waye into Lombardy, to make warre  
on the duke of Myllayne : but that iourney toke none effecte, for whan tidynges was  
brought into Fraunce of the disconfyture of the batayle before Nicopoly, in Turkey,  
and of ŷ dethe and takynge of the lordes of Fraunce, the kyng and the duke of Bur-  
goyne, were so charged and busyed in that behalfe, that the iourney into Lombardy was  
defeted : and also they sawe well ŷ the duke of Myllayne was in faouure with Lamora-  
baquy,<sup>e</sup> so that they durst nat displease hym, and so lette hym alone.

*Howe*

\* Chapter CCXVI.

<sup>b</sup> Sorcerers.

<sup>c</sup> Neufchâtel.

<sup>d</sup> Leulinghem.

<sup>e</sup> Bajazet.

*Howe the duke of Burgoyne, and the duchesse his wyfe, toke great dyligence to fynde the meanes to redeme out of prisone the erle of Neuers their sonne, and the other prisoners beyng in Turkey.*

CAP. CCXXI.<sup>a</sup>

THE duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse studied all the wayes they coude deuise, by what maner or trefye they myght gette their sonne out of prysone; they knewe well or they coude haue hym they shulde be fayne to pay for hym a great ransome; they mynished their housholde and kept a meaner estate, and gathered as moche golde and syluer as they coude, for without that they coude nat bringe aboute their purpose; and they gate theym acquayntaunce with marchautes, venciencie, and genouoys, and suche other, for they thought by their meanes they shulde the rather come to their purpose. The duke of Burgoyne lay styll at Paris with the kyng his nephue, and had the chiefe gouernance of the realme, wherby his busynesse had the better effecte. The same seasoone there was at Parys a marchaunt of Turkey, who had all the doynge for all other Lombardes; he was knowen and spoken of throughout all the worlde, his name was called Dyne of Responde, and by hym all exchaunges were made; he was in good fauour with the kyng and other lordes, before this iourney in Turkey, but than after the batayle he was moche more made of. Oftentymes the duke of Burgoyne demaunded of hym counsaile howe he myght entre into treatie with Lamorabaquy;<sup>b</sup> for the redemption of his sonne, and of the other prisoners in Turkey. Sir, quod this marchaüt, lytell and lytell some meanes wyll be founde; Syr, the marchautes of Gennes,<sup>c</sup> and of other isles, are knowen ouer all, and occupyeth the trade of marchaüdyse in Quayre,<sup>d</sup> in Alexandre, in Dāmas,<sup>e</sup> in Danuet,<sup>f</sup> in Turkey, and out in farre countreys hethan, for as ye knowe well marchaundyse flyeth ouer all the worlde: Syr, let the kyng and you write amably to theym, and promesste them great benefytes and profytes, if they wolde do for you; there is nothyng but it is ouercome with golde and syluer; and also syr, the kyng of Cyper, who hath hadde no warre with the kyng Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> he may ryght well ayde you: Syr, as for me, ye may be sure I wyll do what I canne, for I am bounde therto. It is nat to be marueyled though the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse sought out wayes howe they might recouer agayne their sonne, for he was their heyre, therefore it touched thē ryght nere. The ladyes of Fraunce tooke great sorowe for their husbundes and louers, specyally the lady of Coucy coude nat forget her husbände: she wepte pytuously nyght and daye, and coude take no comforte. The duke of Lorayne, and syr Henry, her two bretherne, came to saint Gobyn, to se and to recomforte her, as moche as they myght, and they sayd they wolde sende into Turkey to knowe howe he dyd, for they said they vnderstode howe he had a more gentyll prisone than any of his felowes had. The lady Coucy thanked greatly her two bretherne for their counsaile and great comforte: than she desyred sir Robert Den, a valyaunt knyght of Cambresys, to take the payne to go into Hungery, and into Turkey, to se what condycyon her husbände the lorde of Coucy was in. The knyght sayd, for her sake he was content to go thyder, and to bringe the certaynte of his estate. Thus he made him redy and fise persones with him. Other ladyes in Fraunce sent in lykewyse to knowe what case their husbundes were in.

VOL. II.

4 S

Ye

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXVII.<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.<sup>c</sup> Genoa.<sup>d</sup> Cairo.<sup>e</sup> Damascus.<sup>f</sup> Damietta.

Ye haue herde here before howe the kyng of Hungery wolde in no wyse consent that sir Morant shulde passe into Turkey with the frenche kynges presentes, and in this opynion the kyng longe contynued, whiche was right dyspleasaut to sir Morant, and to syr Helley, but they coude nat amende it: and so it happed ȳ the great mayster of the Rodes came into Hungery to the cytie of Bode,<sup>a</sup> to whome the kyng made good chere, wherto he was bounde, for the daye of the batayle the kyng had ben slayne or taken, and he had nat ben, and there he founde these two knyghtes of Frannc; they came to him and shewed hym howe the kyng wolde nat suffre them to passe into Turkey, with suche presentes as the frenche kyng had sent to Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> wherof he had meruayle, and sayde, howe he wolde speke to the kyng therin, and that they shulde well knowe; and so he dyd, and shewed to the kyng suche reasons that he tourned the kynges opynion, and so than they had leaue to passe into Turkey, with all their presentes: and so they passed forthe vnder sure safeconduct, and came to Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> who receyued theym and their gyftes ryght honorably, after their vsage, and made great ioye of the presentes. The knyghtes for all ȳ spake but ones all onely with the erle of Neuers at good leysare, and at their departyng the erle sayde to them: Syrs, I requyre you recommaunde me to my lorde my father, and to my lady my mother, and to my lorde of Berrey, and specyally to the kyng, and salute fro me all my other frendes: and desyre them that if Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> wyll set vs to raunsome, that by meanes of marchautes or otherwyse, our raunsomes may be quckly payed, and we delyuered, for by longe taryenge we shall lese, for in ȳ begynnyng we were but viii. prisoners, and nowe we be xvi. whiche is in all xxiiii. and we shall nat be delyuered without we be delyuered all at ones, and as soone all as one, for Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> hath so promysed, and surely he wyll nat be founde false of his worde. Syr Morant and syr Helley answered, and sayd: howe his cōmaundement shulde be doone, to the whiche he was bounde. So they departed and retourned into Hungery, and by the way they encountred the messenger that was sent into Frannc to the kyng, bringynge agayne letters fro the frenche kyng to the kyng of Hungery. Than this messenger retourned agayne with theym, for he had no more to do whan he sawe them retourne, and had done their voyage into Turkey, and so returned all togyther into Frannc.

*Howe the duke of Gloucestre subtilly sought out the meanes howe to dystroye kyng  
Rycharde of Englande his nephue.*

#### CAP. CCXXII.<sup>c</sup>

IT is long syth I spake of the duke of Gloucestre, yongest sonne to the kyng of Englande, Edwarde the thyrde; I had no tyme to speke of him tyll nowe, and bycause his herte coude neuer loue the frenchemen, therefore of the losse that the frenchemen had in Turkey, he was rather gladde than sory. The same seasoone he had a knyght with hym called syr Johan Laquyquay, chiefe of his counsaile, (as it was knowen after) he sayde to his lorde: Syr, the fumes and pride of the frenchemen are well abated, by reason of their journey into Hungery and Turkey, they be so full of pride and brages that they canne come to no good conclusion of any enterprise ȳ they take in hande. That is trewe, quod the duke, and that apered right well duryng the warre in the dayes of the kyng my father, and of my brother the prince of Wales, for as than they coulde  
neuer

<sup>a</sup> Buda.

<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXXVIII.

neuer atayne to any iourney agaynst the Englysshemen, therfore I canne nat tell why we shulde haue trewece with them: for if the warre were open, and by reason of our good tytell togyther, we shulde nowe make them better warre than euer was made before, for as nowe all the floure of chualry of Fraunce is outhere taken or slayne, and the men of Englande desyre to haue warre rather than peace, for they canne better lyue in warre than peace, for in lyenge styll is none aduantage: and I swere by god if I may lyue two yere in good helth the warre shall be renewed; I wyll nother spare for trewece, respyte, nor assurannce, for in tyme paste the Frenchemen haue kept no promesse with vs, but haue falsely and craftely taken away the heritage of the duchy of Acquytayn, whiche was gyuen and delyuered by agrement of good treatie of peace to the kyng my father, whiche oftentymes I haue shewed to the counsaile of Fraunce, whan we met and commed togyther in the fronter of the marchesse of Calays; but alwayes they florysshed their entetes with so swete wordes, that myne opynion was nat regarded nor belyued, nouthur by the kyng my nephewe, nor by my bretherne; but if there were a good heed kyng of Englande, that desyred the warre as well as I do, and wolde put to his payne to recouer his heritage, whiche craftely and falsely hath been taken fro hym without any good tyle of reasone, he shulde fynde in Englande a hundred thousande archers, and syxe thousande men of armes redy apparelled to serue him and to passe the see, and to put their goodes and lyues in aduenture in his seruyce; but it is nat so, there is no suche kyng in Englande as nowe that loueth any dedes of armes, if there were, he wolde shewe hymselfe in Fraunce; there was neuer so good tyme to make warre in Fraunce as now, for whosoeuer goeth nowe shal be fought withall, whiche is all the desyre that englysshmen haue in trust of wyning, as they had in tyme paste in the dayes of good kyng Edwarde my father, and in my brothers dayes the prince of Wales; I am y<sup>e</sup> youngest of all the bretherne of Englande, but if I may be beleued, I shall be the fyrste y<sup>e</sup> shall renewe the warre, and trust to recouer the wronges that the frenchmen haue done to vs, and dayly do, and all by the symple slouthfulnesse that is amonge vs, and specyally our heed the kyng my nephue, who wyll nowe alye hymselfe by maryage to the frenche kynges doughter; this is no token that he wyll make warre, his eye be to heuy, he careth for nothyng but for meate and drinke, and reste, and dalyenge with ladyes and damoselles; this is no lyfe for men of warre that wyll deserue to haue honour by prowes of dedes of armes; yet I remembre me of the last iourney y<sup>e</sup> I made into Fraunce: I thinke I had in my company but two thousande speares, and eyght thousande archers, and so passed the see, and entred into the realme of Fraunce fro Calayes, and so wente a longe into the realme, and foude none to withstaunde me, nor none that durst fyght with me; in lykewyse so dyd syr Robert Canoll,<sup>a</sup> and sir Hugh Caurell,<sup>b</sup> and Thomas of Graitsome, and syr Phylippe Gyssarde:<sup>c</sup> and yet they had nat the nombre that I had with me, and yet they were before Parys, and demanded batayle of the frenche kyng, but they coulde neuer be answered, nor founde any person that sayd any thyng to them, and so they rode into Bretayne, and so alonge through the realme of Fraunce, fro Calais to Burdeaux, without hauynge of any batayle or rencountre; but I thinke surely who so wolde nowe make any suche iourney they shulde be fought withall, for he that calleth hymselfe kyng in Fraunce is yonge, hote, and of great corage and enterprise; he wolde surely fyght, what ende so euer fell therof, and that is the thyng we desyre, for we loue nothyng so well as to haue batayle, for without it be by batayle and victory vpon the frenchemen, (who be ryche), els we shall haue no recouery, but suffre with the losse as we haue done euer sythe my nephewe was kyng of Englande; this thyng can nat longe endure in this estate, but at laste the realme of Englande shall perceyue the mater and repente it, for the kyng taketh and shall take

4 S 2

and

<sup>a</sup> Knolles.<sup>b</sup> Calverly.<sup>c</sup> Gifford.

and reyse great tayles of  $\text{f}$  marchauntes, wherwith they be nat content, and yet they can nat tell where the good becometh; thus the kyng empouereth the realme of Englande, and gyueth to one and other largely, and there as it is but yuell bestowed, and his people byeth the bargayne, whiche shortely wyll groweto a rebellyon within the realme: for the people begyn to clater and to murmure therat, sayeng, howe they wyll no lēger suffre nor beare it; he sayeth to stoppe the peoples rumure that the trewce ones concluded bytwene him and Fraunce, that than he wyll make a voyage into Irelande, and employe there his men of armes and archers, and there he hath ben but with a small conquest, for Irelāde is no lande of great conquest nor profyte; the people ther are but rude and yuell, and a right poore countrey and inhabytable, and looke, what is wonne there in one yere, is loste in another. Laquyngay, Laquyngay, quod the duke, all that I haue sayde is of trouth.

Thus the duke of Gloucestre deuysed with his knyght with suche wordes and other, as it was well known after; he hated the kyng, and coulde speke no good worde of him, and though he were with his brother the duke of Lancaster, as one of the greatest rulers of the realme, he toke no care therof: and whan the kyng dyd sende for him he wolde come at his pleasure, and sometyme nat a whyt; and whan he came to the kyng, he wolde be the laste shulde come, and the first that wolde departe, and in counsayle what he had ones sayd of his opynion, he wolde haue it taken and accepted, els he wolde be displeased, and somtyme take his leaue and departe to his maner in Essex, called Plasshey, there was his chiefe abydyng: this duke was a great prince, and might well spende by yere a threscore thousande ducates: he was duke of Gloucestre, erle of Essex and of Buckingham, and constable of Englande; he was of so marueylous condycyons, that the kyng douted hym more than any other of his vnclcs, for in his wordes he wolde nat spare nor forbear the kyng. The kyng alwayes was humble and meke to hym, and what so euer he wolde demaunde the kyng wolde graunte it hym: this duke had caused in Englade to be done many cruell and hasty iugementes, for he had caused to be beheeded withoute tytell of any good reasone, that noble knyght syr Symon Burle,<sup>3</sup> and dyuers other of the kynges counsayle, and chased out of Englande the archebyssshop of Yorke, and the duke of Irelande, bycause they were so nygh of the kynges counsayle, and layde to their charge that they had counsayled the kyng wronge, and ledde hym as they lyst, and had spent the reuenewes of Englande at their pleasures. This duke had two bretherne, the duke of Lancaster, and the duke of Yorke: these two were euer about the kyng, wherat this duke of Gloucestre hadde great enuy, and wolde say to dyuers, as to suche as he trusted, (as Robert byssshop of London, and to other, whan they came to him to Plasshey): Frendes, my two bretherne ouerchargeth greatly the kynges house: it were better they were at home at their owne houses: this duke by subtyl conerte wayes drewe to his acorde  $\text{f}$  londoners, for he thought if he might be sure of them, he shulde sone haue all the rest of the realme to his acorde. This duke had a nephue, sonne to the daughter of his elder brother, called Lyonell duke of Clarence, whiche daughter was maryed into Lombardy, to the sonne of syr Galeas duke of Myllayne; this duke Lyonell dyed in the cytie of Aste, in Piemounte: so this duke of Gloucestre wolde gladly haue sene his nephue, sonne to  $\text{f}$  daughter of the duke of Clarence, called Johan erle of Marche, to haue ben kyng of Englande, and to haue had his nephue kyng Rycharde deposed, for he sayd howe the kyng was nat worthy to holde nor to gouerne the realme of Englande. This he wolde say to them that he trusted, and he dyd so moch that he caused the erle of Marche to come to his house, and than and there he dyscouered to hym all his enty and secretnesse, and sayde: howe  
he

<sup>3</sup> Burley.



he had determyned to make hym kynge of Englande, and kyng Richarde to be put downe, and his wyfe also, and to be kept in prison duryng their lyues: and so he desyred effectuously the erle to accept his offre and good wyll, sayenge howe he wolde do the beste he coulde to bringe it aboute, and that he had of his acorde and alyauunce the erle of Arundell, and therle of Warwyke, and dyuers other prelates and lordes of Englande. The erle of Marche was sore abasshed whan he herde the duke his vncler speke suche wordes; howebeit, lyke a yonge man he dissymuled the mater, and aunswered wysely, to thentent to please the duke, and said: howe he wolde be glad to be ruled as he wolde haue hym, but he sayd, he wolde be well aduysed or he accepted suche promesse to sone, and wolde take therin aduise and delyberacyon. And whan þe duke of Gloucestre sawe the maner of the erle, than he desyred him to kepe the mater secrete. The erle answered so he wolde do. Than therle departed as sone as he coude, and so wente into Irelande to his heritage, and after he wolde neuer entende to the dukes treatie, but alwayes excused himselfe wysely, yet euer he kept the mater secrete, for he sawe well the conclusyon shulde nat be good.

It was sayd howe the duke of Gloucestre sought all the wayes he coude to set a trouble in Englande, and to styrrer the londoners agaynst the kynge. So it was the same yere that the truce was made bytwene Englande and Fraunce, to endure for thyrty yere, and that the kynge was returned agayne into Englande with his yonge wyfe; than the duke of Gloucestre enfourmed the Londoners, and sayd: Syrs, make ye a request to the kynge and it shall be reasonable: desyre, that seyng he hath peace with his enemyes, that ye may be franke and fre fro all subsidyes and aydes that hath ben graunted this twenty yere past, affyrmyng howe they were nat graunted but duryng the season of the warre: for ye syrs, (quod the duke), that be marchauntes are yuell entreated and sore oppressed, to pay of euery hundred florens xiii; and all these goodes are spent in ydlenesse, in daūsyng, and makyng of feastes, and eatyng and drinkyng, and all ye pay for, wherby ye be sore traueyled: and shewe you to the kynge howe ye wolde that the realme of Englande shulde be governed acordinge to the auncyent customes, and ye may say that whan the kyng hath any nede, or the realme, or for the honour of the cōtrey, and for the defence therof, howe that ye wyll be redy to ayde it, in suche wyse that the kynge and his counsaile shall holde them content. Thus by the settinge on of the duke of Gloucestre, the Londoners, and the counsailes of dyuers other cyties and townes of Englande, assembled theym togyther, and on a daye came to Eltham, a seuen myle fro London, where the kyng was: and whan they came before the kynge, they made a request of all these foresayd thynges, and wolde that it shulde haue ben acomplysshed incontynent. And whan this request was made there was with the kynge no mo of his vncler but two, the dukes of Lancastre and of Yorke. Than the kynge charged the Duke of Lancastre to make them an aunsweere, and than the duke sayd to them: syrs, the kynges pleasure is that ye departe home euery man to his owne, and within a moneth assemble agayne togyder at London, or at Westmyenster, and there the kynge wyll be with his counsaile, and his nobles, prelates and other, and there they wyll be redy to here your requestes, and loke what shall be thought necessary by his counsaile, the kynge wyll graunt it you, in suche wyse that ye shall all be well contente. This aunsweere pleased many of them, but nat all, for there were some that were of the opinyon of the duke of Gloucestre, who wolde haue had a shorter answer: but the dukes of Lancastre and of Yorke apeased them with fayre swete wordes, and so they departed for that tyme; but for all that they left nat their pursute, so that the next moneth after they assembled at Westmyenster, there beyng the kynge with his counsaile: and than there was present the duke of Gloucestre, who greatly enclined to their demaundes, but at makinge of the aunsweere he spake nat all that he thought in his hert, but dissymuled

dissymuled the mater, to the entent that the kyng nor his bretherne shulde nat preyue his mynde. Than the duke of Lancastre made the aunswere to the londoners for the kyng, and sayd : ye syrs of London and other, the kyng hath cōmaunded me to gyue you a determynable answere to your requestes in his name and his counsaile, and by the consent of other prelates and noble men of his realme. Sirs, ye knowe well to the entent to eschewe all paretles and daungers that myght come to this realme, there was a generall graunt made by you and other of the good cyties and townes of Englande, that there shulde be rased a tayle on the state of marchaundyse, in maner and fourme as it hath rynne nowe vpon a syxe yere, that was to paye of euery hundred, xiii; and by reason therof, the kyng graunted and sealed to you certayne fraunchesses, the whiche he is nat in mynde to take fro you, but rather to increase it dayly acordyng to your desertes; but where as ye nowe wolde repell agayne that ye ones wyllyngly agreed vnto and graunted, therefore here openly he repelyth agayne all suche graces and grauntes as he hath made to you before this tyme. Beholde here all these noble men and prelates haue sworne and promessed to the kyng to ayde and sustayne all thynges lawfully gyuen and graunted; therefore, syrs, conside well that the state of the kyng is great and chargeable, and if it augment in one maner it mynyssheth in another, for the rentes and reueneues turneth nat to the kynges profyte as moche as it hath doone in tyme paste: the kyng and his counsaile hath ben at great coste and charge sytly the warres renewed bytwene Englande and Fraunce, and great charge it hath been to the kyng for suche ambassadours as haue treated bytwene the parties, as well here as beyonde the see; also the pursuynge of the kynges maryage hath coste gret goodes: and though there be nowe peace bytwene the realmes, yet the charge is great of keypyng of the garysons in townes and castelles, beyng vnder the kynges obeysaunce as well in Gascoyne, Burde-loys, Bayonois, Bygore, and the marches of Gyan and Calays; also in keypyng the see and the portes and hauens of Englande; in lykewyse it is chargeable the keypyng of the fronters of Scotlande, whiche may nat be vnprouyded, and also the marchesse of Ire-lande: all these thynges and other conserynge the kynges estate and honour of the realme draweth yerely great coste and charge, whiche is farre better knowen by the noble men of þe realme than by any of you that medeleth but with your marchaundyse. Thanke god, sir, that ye be thus in peace, and take hede that none paye without he be worthy and occupye the feate of marchaundyse, and as well payeth the straungers as ye do; ye be at a freer marte than they of Fraunce or Lombardy, or other realmes whyther as youre marchaundyse repayreth, for they be tayled and retayled agayne two or thre tymes in a yere, and ye passe by a reasonable ordynance sette and assessed vpon your marchaundyse.

These wordes or suche lyke spoken by the duke of Lancastre apased greatly the people, who were sette to do yuell, by the settinge on of other. Thus they departed at þe tyme without any other thyng doynge, and the moste parte of theym were well content; and suche as wolde the contrary made no semblante therof at that tyme. The duke of Gloucestre retourned to his maner of Plasshey, and he sawe well as at that tyme he coulde nat brynge his purpose to passe, but styll he studyed howe to make trouble in Englande, and to fynde the wayes howe to renewe the warre in Fraunce: and he had of his acorde his wyfes vncle, the Erle of Arundell, who desyred nothyng but warre, and they had doone so moche that they had drawn to their acorde the erle of Warwyke.

The kyng of Englande had two bretherne by his mother, one called Thomas Erle of Kente, and the seconde sir Johan of Holande, a valyaunt knyght, who had to his wyfe the daughter of the duke of Lancastre: he was erle of Huntyngdon and chamberlayne  
with

with the kynge; it was he that slewe the sonne of Rycharde erle of stafforde, as ye haue herde here before in this hystorie. The sayde Rycharde erle of Stafford had a squyer to his sonne, who was with the duke of Gloucestre. This erle of Huntyngdon moste cōmonly was euer in the courte with the kynge his brother, and he knewe more of the dealynge of the duke of Gloucestre than any other dyd, for couertely and wysely he made enquiry, and also he douted greatly the duke, for he knewe he was fell and so-dayne, and hyghe mynded, and sawe howe he kept his enemye aboute hym, for the dethe of the yonge Stafford: and the peace therof was neuer made, but the grudge therof contynued styll. The kynge loued well his brother, and bare him against euery man; and the kynge sawe well howe his vncler the duke of Gloucestre was euer contrary to hym, and was euer about to conspyre agaynst him, and to styrre the realme to rebellyon: so the kynge and his brother of Holande wolde oftentymes comune together. The same season the frenche kyng had sent the erle of saynt Powle into Englande to se the kyng and his doughter the quene, and to norisse lone, for the truce was made in suche maner and cōdycion, that their subgiettes myght repayre echie to other, in dyspyte of all their yuell wyllers. The kynge and the erle of Huntyngdon made them good chere, as well for the honoure of the Frenche kynge, as for that he had wedded their suster. At that tyme the Dukes of Lancastre nor of yorke were nat with the kynge, for they began somewhat to dissymule, for they sawe well that the people in Englande beganne to murnure in dyuers places on the state and rewle that the kynge kept, and that the maters were lykely to go yuell: they thought they wolde nat be at the kinges cōmaundement nor at the peoples: and all this came by reasone of the duke of Gloucestre and his company. The kynge of Englande spared nat to shewe therle of saint Powle the state that Englande stode in, and howe he founde alwayes his vncler the duke of Gloucestre harde and rebell agaynst hym, and shewed hym all thyng y he knewe. Whan the erle of saynt powle herde the kynge say in that wyse, he had great marueyle therof, and sayde howe it ought nat to be suffred, and sayd: Syr, if ye suffre this, they wyll dystroy you: it is sayd in Fraūce howe the duke of Gloucestre entendeth to nothyng, but to breake the peace and to renewe the warre agayne, and that lytell and litell he draweth the hertes of yonge men of the realme to his parte, for they desyre rather warre than peace; so that the auncyent wyse men, if the warre beganne to styrre, they shulde nat be herde nor beleued, for reason, right, nor iustyce hath no place nor audyence where as yuell reyneth; therefore prouyde therfore rather betymes than to late; it were better ye had them in daunger than they you. These wordes of the erle of saynte Powle entered greatly into the kynges hert, and made hym sore to muse; and after that the erle of saynt Powle was returned into Fraunce, y kyng of Englande shewed all this mater to his brother the erle of Huntyngdon, who said to the kynge: Syr, my fayre brother of saynt Powle hath shewed you the trowth, therefore take good aduise in this mater.

And as I was enfourmed, aboute a moneth after that the erle of saynte Powle had ben in Englande and returned into Fraunce, a paryllous fame and renome ranne vpon the kynge in Englande, and in a maner there was a generall brewte that the erle of saynt Powles cōmyng into Englande was to treat with the kynge, that the frenchemen myght haue Calayes into their handes: this brute greatly troubled and moued the people in Englade, in so moche that certayne of London roode to Plasshey to the duke of Gloucestre, and shewed hym of that matter. The duke apeased nat their wordes, but rather augmented it more and more, sayenge: howe he coulde nat do therwith, but sayd, he was sure that the frēchemen wolde it hadde coste them all their kynges doughters, so that they might haue Calais at their pleasure. This answeire set the Londoners afyre, and sayde; howe they wolde speke with the kynge, and shewe hym howe the realme was  
nat

nat cōtent. Well, quod the duke, shewe it hym in good maner, and make doute that the people wyll nat be contente; and marke well what answer he maketh, and shewe me therof the nexte tyme I speke with you, and thervpon I shall gyue you counsaile what ye shall do farther. It maye well be that there be some false traytours counsayleth the Kyng to the same. There is the erle Marshall, who is Capytayne of Calays, who hath been two tymes in Fraūce and taryed at Parys, and he was one of the chief procurers in the treatie for the kynges maryage with the daughter of Fraunce; and these Frenchemen are ryght subtile, and can driue their purpose afarre of, and lytell and lytell pursue their ententes, and wyll gyue largely to bringe about their purpose.

Accordynge to the dukes counsaile, the Londoners on a daye wente to Eltham to the kyng, at whiche tyme there was the kynges two bretherne, the erle of Kent and therle of Huntynghdon, the erle of Salisbury, and the archebyssshoppes of Caūterbury and of Duuelyn<sup>a</sup> his confessour, the lorde Thomas Percy, the lorde Lysle, Richarde Credon, Johan Goulofer, and dyuers other knyghtes of the kynges chambre. There these londoners right wisely shewed the kyng their ententes in a meke hūble maner, and sayde, howe the brute ranne that the kyng was about to delyuer vp Calais into the Frenchemennes handes. The kyng had great marueile of these newes, for it touched hym nere to the hert; but right sagely he dissymuled the mater for that tyme, and apesed the Londoners, and sayd, howe all that noise was wronge, for it was nothyng so; but for trouthe, he said the erle of saynt Poule was come into Englande for none other entente but to sporte hym, and was sent thider by the Frenche kyng, to se hym and the quene his wyfe: other marchaundyse, the kyng sayde, there was none bytwene them, and that the kyng sware, by the faythe that he owed to god and to the crowne of Englāde, and said howe he had great marueyle, wherof suche wordes shulde ryse. Than the erle of Salisbury sayde: Sirs, ye good men of London, go home to youre houses, and be well assured that the kyng and his counsaile wyll do nor entende to do any thyng but that that shal be for the honour and profite of this his realme of Englande; and whosoever hath fyrst brought vp these wordes are yuell cōsayled, and shewe well howe they wolde gladly haue this realme in trouble, and to haue the people to ryse agaynst the kyng, whiche thyng ye of London ought to feare, for by reasone of the laste rebellyon ye were in great paryll to haue been all vterly dystroyed: for whan yuell people be vp and gouerne, iustyce nor reason than hath no place. Those wordes apesed greatly the Londoners, and were contented with the kynges answer, and so returned to the cytie of London; and the kyng taryed at Eltham ryght pensyue and full of displeasure, by reason of the wordes that he had herde, and had styll about hym his two bretherne and other suche as he trusted beste, for he thought hymselfe natte well assured amonge his vnclis; for he sawe well howe they absented theymselfe fro his courte, and kepte them at home at their owne houses, so that he was halfe in doute of them, and specially of the duke of Gloucestre, and so kepte dayly aboute hym a garde of a thousande archers.

Yt was enforced the kyng of Englande of a suretie, that his vnclē ŷ duke of Gloucestre and the Erle of Arundell purposed with puissaunce of people to take the kyng and the yong quene and to putte them into a castell, there to be kepte surely in an honest maner with meate and drinke and other necessaries; and also, howe there shulde be set four governours in the realme, as the duke of Lancastre and the duke of yorke, to rewle fro the Temmys northwarde vnto the ryuers of Hūbre and Thyne, and of  
Thay,

<sup>a</sup> Dublin.

Thay,<sup>a</sup> ronnyng by the cytie of Warwyke,<sup>b</sup> comprehendynge all the signories of Northumberland and the boundes of Scotlande; and the duke of Gloucestre had all the rule of Lōdon and of the londoners, and of Essex, cōprehendynge all the boundes of the see, and thider where as the ryuer of Hūbre entereth into the see, and also of all the portes and hauyns about London to Hampton and to Cornwall; and the erle of Arundell he to haue the rule of the landes mouynge fro London bytwene Sussexe and Kent, Arundell, Surrey, Deuonshyre, and Barkeshyre, and of all the hole signories bytwene the ryuer of Thamyse and Bristowe and the ryuer of Syuerne, whiche departeth Englande and Wales: and they shall holde and do iustyce and reason to euery man; but their entencionys is, if they can fynde any reasonable waye to moue agayne and to renewe the warre bytwene Englande and Fraunce, and that if ȝ Frēche kyng wolde haue agayne his daughter, he shulde: for sihe she is but eight yeres of age, paraduecture whan she cometh to xii. yeres she may repente her and refuce her marriage, bycause she was maryed in her youth; and also it was no reason to dismary her fro the heyre of Bretaygne, as it was promised; and if whan she cometh to perfyte age that she wyll nat refuce her maryage, than she must abyde by right styll quene of Englāde, and to haue her dowrye, but in no wyse she shulde be crowned Quene; and that if the kyng dyed or she came to lauffull age, than they purpose to sende her agayne into Fraūce to her father. This was shewed to ȝ kyng, for suche wordes were spoken by dyuers Englysshemen, and specially by the londoners, who coude nat loue the kyng: and they repented them, that whan the cōmons of Sussexe, Kent, and Essex were vp, and came to London, in that they dyde breake their purpose, for as some of them cōfessed, they were in mynde to haue slayne the kyng, the erle of Salisbury, the erle of Oxenforde, and all the kynges counsayle; and if they hadde so done by meanes of the rebellyon, the londoners thañe shulde soone haue made a newe heed, and by meanes of the duke of Gloucestre, to haue founde some person to haue had the crowne and gouernynge of the realme, and therby to haue brought the realme into a better case thañe it was in as than. Thus the londoners and suche other of their secte dayly murmured and had many secrete cōsaysls: all this the kyng was enformed of, and moost faute was layde vpon the duke of Gloucestre.

King Richarde was abashed ofentymes whan he herde and sawe suche couert hate and yuell wyll borne against hym: alwayes he made louynge countenance to his vncl of Gloucestre and to the lōdoners, but it aueyled hym nothyng. On a daye the kyng sayd to his other two vncl, of Lancastre and of yorke: Sirs, on goddes name I requyre you to gyue me your aduise and cōsaysls: I am dayly enformed of a suretie, that your brother myne vncl of Gloucestre, the erle of Arundell, and their complices, are mynded to take me perforce, by the agreement of the londoners, and purpose to close me in a castell, and to order my fyndynge by certayne porcion, and my wyfes in lykewise, who is but yonge, and to seperate her fro me, and to kepe her estate in another place. Fayre vncl, this is a cruell maner, and it ought nat to be suffred, as long as I maye withstand it: ye haue doone me homage and sworne to be trewe to me in the presence of kyng Edward of good memorie my graūtfather, at whiche tyme all the great prelates and lordes of this realme sware to kepe and maynteyn me as their kyng a xx. yere paste; wherfore, fayre vncl, for loue and charyte, and by the othe and promise that ye haue made, counsayle me trewly, as ye are bounde to do; for as farr as I can ymagin, myne vncl of glocestre entēdeth on none other thing but how he might renewe agayne the warre bitwene Englande and Fraunce, and to breake the peace whiche we haue confirmed, bothe you and all other of the realme, by sweryng and sealyng: and

VOL. II.

4 T

by

<sup>a</sup> Tweed.<sup>b</sup> Berwick.

by the same composycion I am ioyned in maryage to þy daughter of Fraūce without thynkynge of any yuell: and ye knowe well, that whosoever dothe contrary to þy he is sworne vnto and hath sealed to the same, and so proued, dothe yuell and ought to be punished therfore bothie in body and goodes; and also ye knowe well þy I forbear myne vncler of Gloucestre as moche as I may do, and take no regarde to thretynge, whiche myght cost me derely. Vncles, ye are bounde to counsaile me, sith I demaunde it with reason. And when they herde the kyng speke thus, and sawe well howe the mater sore troubled his mynde and that it touched hym nere, and also they knew well moche of his sayenge was trewe, they sayd: Sir, suffre and lette the tyme ryn and passe; we knowe well our brother of Gloucestre hath the moost paryllous heed and brayne of any manne in Englande; but we knowe well he can do no more than a man maye do; if he buylde on the one syde we shall buylde on the other; as long as ye wyll be ordred by our counsaile, ye shall nat nede to care for our brother; he saythe oftentymes many thynges wherof foloweth none effecte: he all alone nor they of his counsaile canne nat breke the peace that is taken, nor can nat enclose you in any castell; we shall neuer suffre that, nor to be seperated fro your wyfe, for if he saye so and thinke it, he is foule abused; therfore, sir, we humbly beseche you to apeace youreselfe; euery thyng shall turne well with goddes grace: all that a man speketh cometh nat to effecte, nor all that he sayth oftentymes he can nat accōplyssh. Thus the dukes of Lācastre and yorke apeased their nephewe kyng Richarde.

These two dukes sawe well that the busynesse of Englande began to be yuell, and perceyued that gret hatreded increased dayly bytwene the kyng and the duke of Gloucestre; and to thentent that they wolde nat entremedell bytwene them, they departed fro the kynges court with all their company and seruantes, and so toke their leaue of þy kyng for a tyme, and went to their owne; and the duke of Lancastre toke with hym his wyfe, the lady Katheryn Ruet, who hadde ben in company with the yong quene of Englande, and went a huntyng of þy dere, as the vsage is in Englande, and the kyng taryed about London; but afterwarde the kynges vncles repented them that they departed out of þy courte, for there fell afterwarde suche maters in Englande, that all þy realme was in trouble, the whiche had nat so fortunad if they had ben about the kyng, for they wolde haue founde other prouisyon for þy mater than they dyde that counsayled the kyng. There were none of the kynges seruantes but that greatly douted the duke of Gloucestre, and wolde gladly that he had ben deed, they had nat cared howe. The gentyll knight sir Thomas Percy had ben long souerayne squyer of the kynges house (that is in Fraūce mayster and seneschall), for all the state of the kyng passed throughe his handes. He than cōsydring the gret hatrededdes þy encreased bitwene the kyng and his vncler of Gloucestre, and among other great lordes of Englande, with whom he was wel beloued, like a sage knight he ymagined that the conclusyons coude nat be good; thā he gaue vp his offyce as honorably as he coulde, and tooke leaue of the kyng, and the kyng gaue hym leaue full sore agaynst his wyll; howbeit, he made suche excusacions, that he departed and another set in his offyce. The kyng had as than but yonge counsaile about hym, and they greatly douted the duke of Gloucestre, and oftentymes wolde saye to the kyng: Ryght dere sir, it is a perylous thying to serue you, for we haue sene suche as haue serued you in tymes paste, and suche as were ryght synguler in your fauoure, yet they haue had but small guerdone. Sir Symon Burtle,<sup>a</sup> who was a sage valyaunt knight, and in good fauoure with my lorde your father, whome god pardone, he had great payne and traueyle for your fyrst maryage: yet your vncler the duke of Gloucestour caused hym to dye shamefully, his heed to be stryken of lyke a traytour before

<sup>a</sup> Burley.

before all the worlde, with dyuers other that he hath put to dethe, as ye knowe well: for all the puissaunce that ye were of ye coude nat saue them; and, sir, we that saue you nowe, looke for the same rewarde: for whan your vnclē cometh to you, the whiche is nat often, we dare nat lyfte vp our eyen to loke vpon any persone, he loketh so hye ouer vs; he thynketh we do hym moche wrōg that we be so nere about you as we be; wherfore, sir, knowe for trouthē ŷ as long as he liueth there shall be no peace in Englande, nor ye shall do no mā good; also he thretneth you and your wife to close you vp in a castell, and there to be holden vnder subiection, and to lyue by porcion. Sir, ye be a kyng lost if ye take nat good hede to yourself: as for your wife nedeth nat to care, she is yong, and doughter to the frenche kyng; they dare nat displease her, for moche yuell might come therby in Englādē. Your vnclē of Gloucestre, to thentent to make you to be behated with your people, hath sowed dyuers sclaudorous wordes vpon you throughout Lōdon and in other places, sayeng: howe ye be nat worthy to beare ŷ crowne nor to holde so noble an heritage as is ŷ realme of Englande, sythe ye haue taken to your wyfe the daughter of the frenche kyng your aduersary: wherby he saythe ye haue greatly febled the signorie and realme of Englande, and hath sore discouraged the hertes of the noble valyant knightes and squiers of the realme, who haue alwayes valyantly cōtynued the warre, and yet wolde do. Thus they saye that ye haue brought the realme in great paryll and aduenture to be lost, affyrmyng, howe it is pytie that ye haue been suffred to contynue so long as ye haue done; also the Frenchemen bruteth that ye wyll put out of your armes tharmes of Fraūce, wherwith the people are nat content, and hateth you therfore; and they thynke it trewe, bycause ye were so redy and gladde to take a truce, they thynke more rather by force than by loue, for the noble men of ŷ realme, who haue serued and maynteyned the warres, neuer agreed therto; also they saye, that ye haue nat dilygently reuisyted nor ouersene the letters patentes, gyuen, accorded, sworne and sealed by kyng Johan, somtyme frenche kyng, and by his sonnes, the whiche graūt his children ljueng was nothyng vpholden but craftely broken: and the Frenchmen founde cautels and subtelties by wrongfull wayes to renewe agayne ŷ warre, and therby toke and usurped all the right that your predecessours had in that quarell, and hath wonne therby landes and countreis in Acquytany, with cyties, castelles, and townes; and all this, they saye, ye take no hede of, but haue loste it thouroughe your neglygence, and hath shewed but poore corage, and that ye doute your ennēmyes, and haue nat pursued the accydentēs of the mater, and the good and iuste quarell that ye had and as yet haue, the whiche quarell your predecessours had as longe as they lyued: first my lorde your father, ŷ prince of Wales and of Acquytayne, and also good kyng Edwardē your graūtfather, who toke great payne and dilygence to augment their signories. Thus, sir, the londoners saye, and so dothe other, that a day shall come that ye shall repent you; therfore, sir, we can no lengar hyde these wordes fro you, for they be daylye renewed.

*Howe the duke of Glocestre was taken by the erle marshall, by the cōmandement of the kyng.*

C A P. CCXXIII.\*

KING Richarde of Englād noted well these sayd wordes, ƿ which was shewed hym in secretnesse, and lyke an ymaginatyfe p̄rice as he was, within a season after that his vnclcs of Lācastre and of yorke were departed out of the courte, than the kyng toke more hardynesse on hym, and said to hymselfe: That fyrste it were better for hym to distroye another rather than another shulde distroye hym, thynkyng that shortly he wolde haue his vncl of Glocestre in suche case, that he wolde be assured of hym that he shulde do hym no displeasure after: and bycause he coulde nat bring about his purpose alone, he dyscouered his mynde to such as he trusted best, as to therle marshall his cosynerle of Notyngham, and shewed hym his full mynde what he wolde do and haue to be doone. The erle marshall (who loued the kyng better than the duke of Glocestre dyde) kept the kynges purpose secrete, sauig to suche as he wolde be ayded by, for he coude nat do ƿ kynges pleasure alone. On a day the kyng in maner as goyng a hūtyng, he rode to Haueryng Bourre, a xx. myle fro London in Essexe, and within xx. myle of Plasshey, where the duke of Gloucestre helde his house: after dyner the kyng departed fro haueryng with a small cōpany, and cāe to Plasshey about v. a clocke; ƿ weder was fayre and hote; so the kyng cāe sodainly thyder about the tyme that the duke of Gloucestre had supped, for he was but a small eater, nor satte neuer long at dyner nor at supper. Whā he herde of the kynges cōmyng, he went to mete with hym in the myddes of the court, and so dyde the duchesse and her chyldren, and they welcomed the kyng, and the kyng entred into the hall, and so into a chambre: thā a borde was spredde for the kynges supper: the kyng satte nat longe, and sayd at his fyrst comyng: Fayre vncl, cause fyue or sixe horses of yours to be sadyllled, for I wyll praye you to ryde with me to London: for to morowe the londoners wyll be before vs, and there wyll be also myne vnclcs of Lācastre and yorke, with dyuers other noble men: for vpon the londoners requestes I wyll be ordred accordyng to your counsaile, and cōmaunde your stewarde to folowe you with your trayne to lōdon, where they shall fynde you. The duke, who thought none yuell, lightly agreed to ƿ kyng; and whan the kyng had supped and rysen, euery thyng was redy: the kyng than toke leaue of the duchesse and of her children, and lepte a horsebacke and ƿ duke with hym, accompanied all onely but with seyn seruantes, thre squyers and foure yeomen, and tooke the waye of Bondelay, to take the playne waye, and to eschewe Brēdwode and London cōmon hyghe waye: so they rode a great pace, and talked by the way with his vncl and he with hym, and so approached to Stratforde on the ryuer of Thamise. Whan the kyng came nere to the bussment that he had layde, than he rode fro his vncl a great pace, and lefte hym somewhat behynde hym; than sodaynly the erle Marshall with his bande came galopyng after the duke, and ouertoke hym and saide: Sir, I arrest you in the kynges name. The duke was abasshed with that worde, and sawe well he was betrayed, and began to call loude after ƿ kyng: I can nat tell wheder the kyng herde hym or nat, but he turned nat, but rode forthe rather faster than he dyde before.

Nowe lette vs leaue spekyng of this matter for a season, tyll we retourne therto agayne.

Ye

\* Chapter CCXIX.



Ye haue herde here before in this historie howe sir Johā of Castell morant and sir Jaques of Helley were sente into Turkey to Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> fro the frenche kyng and fro the duke of Burgoyne, and howe they had spedde. Whan they were returned into Fraunce they were welcome to the kyng and to the duke of Burgoyne, and to the duches, because they brought certayne tidynges fro the erle of Neuers, and fro the lordes that were there with hym. They said to the kyng, howe they trusted that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> wolde gladly treat for their raūsons; and ſ̄ they sayd they knewe by some ſ̄ were of his priuue cōsaile, for they feare lest they shulde dye in prison, bycause they be out of their owne naturall ayre, and the Turkes thynke that by their delyuerāuce they shuld haue great fynauce for their raunsome. By reason of these wordes the kyng, the duke of Burgoyne, and the duchesse his wyfe studyed nyght and day howe and by what meanes they might haue their sonne and heyre delyuered, and sayde oftentymes that the iourney and siege before Nicopoly had cost them ouer moche, for therby they hadde deed thre bretherne, bastarde knyghtes, valyaunt men, whom they entierly loued. The fyrst, the Hasell of Flaunders; the seconde, sir Loyes of Briese; and the thyrde, sir Johan of Ipre. There was another, the youngest, who was styll at home. To saye the trouthe, ſ̄ duches of Burgoyne, cōtesse of Flaunders, studyed on her syde howe to delyuer her sonne; and so moche they studyed, that at laste they founde the meanes to agre with the turkes with moche payne; but that was nat sodaynly done, for the mater was suche that it requyred great leysar, and to be gotē lytell and lytell.

In this same season, in the cytie of Bursa, in Turkey, dyed ſ̄ gentyll knyght Fraūces Anguerant, lorde of Coucy, erle of Soisons, he was a great lorde in Fraunce; as sir Robert of Deane (who was sent by the lady of Coucy) was goyng to hym warde, he herde by the waye howe he was deed, and that he herd at Vyen in Austriche;<sup>b</sup> and so he returned into Fraunce, and shewed this to certayne of the lorde Coucies lynage, but nat to the good lady his wyfe, vntyll suche tyme as the chatellayne of saynt Goubayne was sent to fetche his deed body enbaulmed into Fraūce, to be buryed in thabbey of Nogent besyde Coucy, and there he was receuyed by the duchesse of Bare and the bysshop of Laon, and by dyuers other abbottes; and there this gētyll knight was buryed, in the yere of grace a thousāde thre hundred fourscore and seuyntene.

Ye maye well knowe that the Frenche kyng and the duke of Burgoyne alwayes ymagined howe to gette their frendes out of prison in Turkey. Sir Dyne of Respōde was alwayes in their cōsaile, and he sayd euer that the marchaūtes, venisyās, and genowayes myght well helpe and ayde in that busynesse, for he sayd, marchautes myght go whider they lyst, and by them myght well be knowen the dealyng of the turkes and tartaries with ſ̄ portes and passages of the kynges, soudans and miscreantes, and specially they resorted to Quaire,<sup>c</sup> to Alexandre, to Dāmas,<sup>d</sup> to Antyoche, and into the great puissaunt cyties of the Sarazins; dayly they passe and repasse, and daylye marchautes christened hath entrecours with the sarazins, and exchange one with another their marchaundyse. So the frenche kyng and the duke of Burgoyne sought all the frendes and meanes they coulde gette to forther them, and as than hadde no desyre to make warre vpon the duke of Myllayne, bycause they vnderstode that he was gret with Lamorabaquy.<sup>a</sup> On the other syde, kyng James of Cypre thought well he shulde haue great thanke of the Frenche kyng and of the duke of Burgoyne, if he myght asswage the furour of Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> and bringe hym to some good resonable poynt for the redemyng of the lordes of Fraunce, suche as he had in prison; and to please them, the kyng of Cypre caused a shyppe to be made of fine golde, right noble and riche, of ſ̄ value

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Vienna in Austria.<sup>c</sup> Cairo.<sup>d</sup> Damascus.

value well to the sōme of tenne thousande ducates, whiche shyppe he sente to Lamora-baquy<sup>a</sup> by his owne knightes: this shyppe was so goodlye and fayre, that it was great ioye to beholde it, the whiche gyfte the soudan toke in gree, and sente agayne to the kyng of Cypre the double in value therof. All this was anon knownen in Fraūce by marchauntes ý wrote therof to Dyne of Responde, to the entente that he shulde shewe it to the Frenche kyng and to the duke of Burgoyne, to haue a thanke of the kyng.

This kyng of Cypre had good cause thus to do, for he was in doute of ý frenche kynges displeasure, because he caused to be slayne and murdered by night his brother the valyaunt kyng Peter, who dyde moche trouble to the Sarazins, and toke Saptalye and Alexandre. The Sarazins douted hym more than any other kyng or emperour christened, because of his valyāttesse, of the whiche dede this sayde kyng James sore repented hymselfe, and knewe well he had done yuell; and after the same dede he fledde out of Cypre, or els the Christen men wolde haue slayne hym: so he entred into a galley of Gene,<sup>b</sup> beyng at the porte of Nicopossie,<sup>c</sup> and so wente to Genes,<sup>b</sup> and the genowayes receuyed hym: and some said, that he dyde that foule murdre by the entysement of the genoways, for anone after the genouois came with puissaunce of men of warre and galyes, and toke the cytie of Famagous<sup>d</sup> and the porte, and kepte it with puissaunce.

This kyng of Cypre had a fayre yonge sonne. The Cyprience crowned this chylde kyng, and after his crownyng he lyued nat long, but dyed soone after; and after his dethe the genouois with great puissaūce brought this Jaques into Cypre and crowned hym kyng, and so he reigned kyng of Cypre; and the genowayes alwayes susteyned hym agaynst all men, but they wolde neuer rendre vp the Cytie of Famagous<sup>d</sup> nor the porte, but helde it styll at the tyme that ý auctour wrot this hystorie; and to saye the trouthe, if the genowayes had nat had it, the Turkes had wonne it longe before and all the realme of Cypre, and had brought it into their obeysaūce, and by all lykelyhode had subdued the ysles of Rodes, and all other yles enclosed in the see to Venyce, but always the genoways and venisyās resysted them; and whan they sawe that the turkes had wonne the realme of Armony,<sup>e</sup> than they toke the strong towne of Corque in Hermyne<sup>f</sup> on the see syde, and so helde it, so that and it had nat ben for dout of the passage and straytes of Corque<sup>f</sup> and of Xere<sup>g</sup> before Cōstantyne the noble, the turkes had sore entred into Christendome, and vpon the border of the see, the whiche shulde haue been great preiudyce to the ysle of Rodes and to the ysles adioynyng. Thus by these meanes the fronters of Christendome were kepte and defended.

Nowe let vs retourne to our purpose.

This kyng Jaques of Cyper, who knewe hymselfe gylty of the deth of the kyng his brother, wherby he had the hatred of all other crysten kynges, therefore he dyd as moche as he coude do to get agayne their loue and fauour, and tooke it for a great honoure that the frenche kyng wrote fyrst to hym, for he douted him most of all, and so he had cause: for the duke of Burbone, by ryght successyon of the lynage of Lusygnan, ought to be kyng there and his heyres, for thoughe this kyng Jaques was brother to the kyng Peter of Cyper, yet he had no ryght to the crowne, for he was but a bastarde; and all this knewe ryght well the genouois, so that whan he was made kyng, there was made a great alyauce bytwene them, confermed nat to be broken, and the genouois to defende and kepe him and his heyres agaynst all other: and therby they atteyned great sygnories

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>b</sup> Genea.

<sup>c</sup> Nicosia.

<sup>d</sup> Famagusta.

<sup>e</sup> Armenia

<sup>f</sup> Cough in Armenia.

<sup>g</sup> Pera.

sygnories and fraunchesses in the realme of Ciper; and all that euer they dyd to the exaltinge of this Jaques, kyng of Cyper, was alwayes for their owne chiefe auantage, and to be stronge against the venycians, and to haunte and exercyse their feate of marchaundyse into the Sarazyns landes. This kyng Jaques as longe as he lynyed dyd what he coulde to please the Frenche kyng, by the meanes of the genouoys, for they wolde in no wyse dysplease hym: and therfore the same season this kyng Jaques ordeyned this shyppe of golde to presente Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> to haue loue and acquayntaunce with him: whiche gyft was ioyfully receuyed and moch praysed with the turkes, and it was thought that the lorde Dyne of Responde was meanes therof, and wrote therin to the genouoys, for in this maner and otherwayes he laboured all that he myght for the deluyeraunce of the erle of Neuers and of the other lordes of Fraunce.

Whan the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse his wyfe sawe that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> began to fall to treatie for the crysten prisoners, the newes therof was greatly to their pleasure, and apoynted a sage valyaunt knyght of the countie of Flaunders, called syr Gylberte of Linrenghe, who was souerayne of Flaunders vnder the duke and duchesse; and than they sent for syr Jaques of Helley, bycause he knewe the wayes and passages, and desyred hym to accompany syr Gylberte to treatie with Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> for the deluyeraunce of the crysten prisoners, and promysed hym that his payne shulde be well consydrad and rewarded. Syr Jaques promysed them so to do: so these two knyghtes departed, and rode so longe that they came into the realme of Hungery, and so drewe to the kyng, for they had letters to hym. The kyng receuyed them ioyously for loue of the frenche kyng, and also he knewe well syr Jaques of Helley: there they shewed the kyng the cause of their cōmyng out of Fraunce, and howe they were sente into Turkey to treatie for the deluyeraunce of the erle of Neuers and the other lordes of Fraunce, if Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> wolde gyue them the herynge. The kyng sayde it was well done to redeme them if they myght be put to raunsome, and sayd in the assayenge therof they coulde lese nothyng; besydes that the kyng offred them his body and goodes to ayde them in all maners; wherof these two knyghtes thanked hym. To entre into this treatye with Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> or they coulde come therto, these knyghtes had moche payne and made great dilygēce, for fyrst syr Jaques of Helley was fayne to go to Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> to requyre a sauconducte for his companyon syr Gylbert to come into Turkey; and whan he had ateyned it, than he returned into Hungery, and so they rode than into Turkey. The souerayne of Flaunders was receuyed of Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> and of his men ryght nobly, and was herde speke, and so lytell and lytell they entred into their treatie. The same tyme there haunted into Turkey a marchaunt genouoy of the isle of Sio, vnder the obeysaunce of the genouoys: this marchaūt was named Bartylmew Pologrine,<sup>b</sup> and he was well beloued in Turkey, and namely with Lamorabaquy.<sup>a</sup> Syr Dyne of Responde beyng at Parys, to thentent that this treatie myght haue the better expedicyon, he wrote letters to this sayde marchaunt of the isle of Sio, for they knewe eche other: and to the entent to please the frenche kyng, the duke of Burgoyne and the duches and other ladies in Fraunce, suche as had their husbandes and frendes in prison in Turkey; and in trust to be well rewarded for his good wyll, he wrote, ý what-soeuer ende was made for their redempcyon, that he wolde be come dettour for the somme of money: and that as soone as they were deluyered and come into the power of the venycians, and that he might be certyfyed therof, that incontynent he wolde come hymselfe to Venyce, and se the raunsomes payed and deluyered. By these wordes (written by syr Dyne of Responde) the sayde marchaunt genouoye enclyned to his deyre, and on the truste to be well rewarded of the frenche kyng, for he thought to  
suche

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Pelagrino.

suche a kyng it was good to lay eare, and also, as I was enfourmed, the kyng of Cyper, at the desyre of the frenche kyng and the duke of Burgoyne, he sente men of his specyall counsaile into Turkey; and in lykewyse syr Mathelyn and the lorde of Damyne, two great barones in Grece, and in good faouere with Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> traueyled greatly to auance this treatie, to thentent to do pleasure to the frenche kyng, for without suche meanes the mater shulde neuer haue been brought aboute, bycause Turkey is a great cōtrey and yuell for men to traueyle in that hath nat ben accustomed therto. Whan Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> was ones condyscended to entre into this treatie, than it was ordeyned by his counsaile that all the chrysten prisoners shulde be brought togyder into the cytie of Bursa, and there to cōclude their treatie: so the prisoners were brought thyder, who were in nombre a xxv.; but in their commyng thyder, the turkes that brought them dyd yuell entreate theym and bete them forwarde, for they were but easly horsed, they coulde nat go but a pace; the turkes bete them bycause they sawe they shulde be deluyered, wherwith they were sore dyspleased.

Whan these knyghtes were thus brought into the cytie of Bursa in Turkey, than they that were sent thyder fro the Frenche kyng and fro the duke of Burgoyne, fro the kyng of Cypers, and fro the genouys and venycyens, receuyed these prisoners gētylly, so that they were more at their ease than in the prisone that they were in before; howbeit, they were kept euer so straye that they coulde nat haue the thyrd parte of their wylles. Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> moste specyally herde euer the soueraygne of Flaunders, for syr Jaques of Helley hadde enfourmed hym howe he was one of the chyefe of counsaile with the duke of Burgoyne. Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> was in a castell besyde Bursa, and thither came the sayde messangers; at laste it was agreed that these xxv. prisoners shulde pay the sōme of two hundred thousande ducates, for the whiche sōme the lordes of Mathelyn and Damyne in Grece and the marchaunt genouy of Sio became dettours for the same, and taryed in pledge with Lamorabaquy:<sup>a</sup> and the erle of Neuers sware and boude himselfe to the sayd marchauntes, that as sone as he came to Venyce nat to departe thens tyll the money were payed. Thus concluded this treatie; but or it was all concluded the erle of Ewe was so sycke and feble by the alteracyon of the ayre and course meates, that he dyed at Lōge<sup>b</sup> in Grece, where he was kept prisoner, wherof all his company were ryght sory, but they coulde nat amende it. Thus syr Phylippe of Arthois, erle of Ewe and constable of Fraunce, after he was deed was enbawmed, and so brought into Fraunce, and buryed in the church of saynt Laurence of Ewe. Whan Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> was contented with the marchaundes bondes for the det of the sayd sōme, the soueraygne of Flaunders and sir Jaques of Helley tooke their leaue to retourne into Fraunce, and Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> was well contente therewith, and ordeyned that these two knyghtes shulde haue of the sōme that he shuld receuy twenty thousande ducates, to be rebated of the hole some; for this kyng Basaache<sup>a</sup> considered the payne and traueyle that they had endured, and specyally the soueraygne of Flaunders was greatly in his faouer. These two knyghtes thanked the kyng of his gyft: than they toke their leaue of hym, and afterwarde of the Frenche knyghtes and lordes. Whan they were departed fro the kyng they came to the cytie of Bursa, and than departed and lefte the erle of Neuers and the lordes of Fraunce styll in the cytie of Bursa, for they taryed for the lordes of Mathelyn and Damine, who shulde come thyder by see to receuy them into their galees: and these two knyghtes toke a galee passenger to sayle to Mathelyn; at their departyng fro the porte the wether was fayre and temperate, but whanne they were abrode in the see the wynde chaunged, and had a marueylous great tempest, so that the soueraigne of Flaunders, by reason of sore traueyle in that tempest, he fell sore sycke

on

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Haut-loge.—*D. Sauvage*.

on the see, and dyed or they came to Mathelyn, wherof syr Jaques of Helley was right sory, but there was no remedy: and so sayled forthe in a galee of Venyce, and passed by Rodes, and always as he went he publysshed the redempcyon of the lordes of Fraunce, wherof they of Rodes were ryght ioyfull: at last this knyght came into Fraunce, and shewed the kynge and the other lordes and ladyes howe he had spedde, wherof the Kynge and other were right ioyfull, and thanked the knyght of his traueyle and payne he had taken in that iourney.

Whan the redempcyon of these lordes and knyghtes of Fraunce was at a poynt, than Lamorabaquy<sup>3</sup> thought or they departed to haue them in lis company, and that they shulde be more at large and better entreated than they were before, as it was reason, sythe they were no longer prisoners; he thought they shulde se parte of his puyssaunce and state, whiche was, as it was shewed me, marueylous great and sumptuous, and kepte moche people dayly aboute hym. Thus he sent of the noble men of his house to bring them to his presence, to whom he made good chere, and had euery thyng delyuered them of the ordinary of his courte, acordyng to the vsage of the country; and euery daye the kynge talked with the erle of Neuers by a truchman, and greatly he honoured the erle of Neuers, for he sawe well he was lyke to be a great man in Fraunce, and sonne to a great lorde, wherof he was well enfourmed, the whiche he founde true, by reason of the great sute that was made for their redempcyon, and by the great sōme of money that they agreed to paye. The erle of Neuers and his company had great marueyle of the great state that he kept: he and his people laye euer in the felde, for no towne coulde suffyce them. The spence of his howseholde and charge of meate and drinke was marueyle to consydre fro whence it shulde come, but that the country is so hote that the people be of sobre dyet, and vse moche spycery, and specyally suger and gotes mylke, wherof they haue great haboundaunce, the whiche is cōmon drinke of the sarazyns: and they haue plenty of bredde, made of a grayne called mylle: he had euer aboute hym a seuen thousande fawconers and as many hunters. So it was on a daye he wente a hawkyng, and had a flyght with a fawcon at an egle, in the presence of the erle of Neuers, the whiche flyght pleased nat Lamorabaquy,<sup>3</sup> wherwith he was sore displeased, and as it was shewed me, for the same faute there was at the poynte a two thousande fauconers to haue loste their heedes, bearyng them in hande that they were nat dylygent in kepyng of his hawkes. Another tyme, in the presence of the erle of Neuers, a woman came to complayne to the kynge, desyringe to haue ryght and iustyce vpon a seruaunt of his, sayenge: Syr kynge, I come to you as to my soueraygne; I complayne me of a seruaunt of your chambre, as it is shewed me: he is come this same day into my howse, and the mylke of a gote that I had for me and my chyldren he hath drunken it agaynst my wyll; and, syr, I said to him, that if he wolde do me that wronge I wolde complayne to you; and as soone as I sayde so, he gaue me two great blowes, and wolde nat forbear for all that I spake in your name; therefore, syr kynge, do me iustyce, as ye are sworne to do to all your people. The kinge marked well the womans wordes, and so caused his seruaunte to come afore hym and the woman also, and than he caused the woman to renewe her complaynt. The seruaunt began to excuse hym, and sayd, that he knewe nothyng of that matter. The woman spake wysely, and affyrmed her wordes to be trewe. Than the kynge sayde: woman, aduyse þ well, for if I fynde thy wordes vntrewe, thou shalt dye an yuell dethe. Syr, quod she, I am content; for if my wordes were nat true, what nede me to come into your presēce? do me iustyce, I desyre none other thyng. Thou shalt haue iustyce, quod the kynge, for I haue sworne so to do to euery man and woman. Than the kynge caused the man to be taken, and

VOL. II.

4 U

caused

<sup>3</sup> Bajazet.

caused his bely to be opened, to se if he had eaten or droken the mylke or nat, and there he founde that he had dronke the mylke, for it was nat turned to digestyon: and whan the kyng sawe that the womans wordes were trewe, he said to her, thou haddest good cause to complayne; go thy way quyte, thou art well reuenged of the trespase that was done to the; and she had a good recompence, and the man deed. This iudgement the lordes of Fraunce sawe and herde.

*Howe the lordes of Fraunce returned by see to Venyce, and of the isles they founde by the waye.*

C A P. CCXXIV.<sup>2</sup>

WHAN the erle of Neuers and the other lordes of Fraunce, who had ben taken prisoners at the batayle before Nycopoly in Turkey, whan they had sene a season the state and maner of Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> and that he was content of euery thyng, and vnderstode that the lorde of Mathelyn and the lorde of Damyne, and the marchaunt of Sio were come to Burselle in Turkey, than he gaue them leaue to departe: so they came all togyther before Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> excepte the erle of Ewe and the lorde of Coucy, who were bothe deed: thus they toke their leaue, and thanked hym of his curtesies. Than Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> said to therle by a truchman: Johan, I knowe well thou arte a great lorde in thy countrey, and sonne to a great lorde; thou art yonge, and peradventure shall beare some blame and shame that this aduventure hath fallen to the in thy fyrste chyvalry; and to excuse thyselfe of this blame and to recouer thyne honour, peradventure thou wylt assemble a puyssaunce of men, and come and make warre agaynst me: if I were in doute or feare therof, or thou departed I shulde cause the swere by thy lawe and faythe y neuer thou nor none of thy company shulde beare armure or make warre agaynst me; but I wyll nother make y nor none of thy company to make any suche othe or promesse, but I wyll that whan thou arte retourned and arte at thy pleasure, rayse what puyssaunce thou wylte, and spare nat, but come agaynst me; thou shalt fynde me alwayes redy to receyue the and thy company in the feld in playne batayle; and this that I say, shewe it to whome thy lyst, for I am able to do dedes of armes, and euer redy to conquire further into crystendome. These hygh wordes the erle of Neuers vnderstode well, and so dyd his company; they thought on it after as longe as they lyued. Than they tooke their leaue, and they were conducted with a great nombre vnder the leadynge of Aslybathe<sup>c</sup> and Surbasaache,<sup>d</sup> and so delyuered to the lordes of Mathelyn and Damyne, who were cause of their delyuerance; and whan their galees were redy they entred, and their conducte retourned to their kyng. So they sayled tyll they came to y porte of Mathelyn, where they were receyued with great ioye.

The lady of Mathelyn was ryght honourable and gentle, and as well assured of herselfe as any lady in Grece, for in her youth she had ben brought vp in the emperour of Constantyue the nobles courte, with the lady Mary of Burbone, where she had lerned moche norture, for in Fraunce the lordes and ladyes be more honourable than in many other coütreyes. This lady was right ioyouse to se in her house the erle of Neuers and syr Henry of Bare, sir Guy of Tremoyle,<sup>e</sup> and the other; she receyued them ryght honourably

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXX.

<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>c</sup> Ali Bashaw.

<sup>d</sup> Soli Bashaw.

<sup>e</sup> De la Tremouille.

honourably with great ioy, and dyd what she coude to do them pleasure: first, she newly aparellled all the lordes and knyghtes of Fraunce with shyrtes, gownes, and other aparell of fyne damaske, acordynge to the vsage of Grece, and all other, euery man after his degre. The lady spared nothing on them, wherfore they gaue her great thanke, and greatly prayed her estate and ordre; in lykewyse they thaked and prayed the lordes of Mathelyn and of Damyne, who made them good chere and honourable. Anone tydynges of their delyueraunce was knowen at the Rodes, wherof the great mayster of the Roodes and all the knyghtes there were ryght ioyfull, and they determyned to arme forth two galees, and to sende for theym to come into the isle of Rodes, and so they dyd; and in the one galee they sette syr Jaques of Brassemont, a burgonyon marshall of the Rodes. So longe they sayled and rowed, that they aryued at Mathelyn. The marshall was well receyued of euery man and of the lady of Mathelyn. Than these lordes and other refreshed them there a foure dayes, and on the fyfte daye their galees were redy: than the erle of Neuers tooke leaue of the lady of Mathelyn, and thanked her greatly and the lordes also; and the erle of Neuers sayd, that he was bounde for cuer to owe them his good wyll. The lady answered wysely to them all. So they entred into the galees in the porte of Mathelyn, and had wynde and wether at wyll, and sayled so longe that without daunger or domage they came and aryued in the isle of the Rodes, in the same place where as all galees do aryue cōmynge fro Cyper or fro Barne,<sup>a</sup> and fro other partes of the see Orientall. There were many of the knyghtes of the Roodes, who be or ought to be men of valyaunt corage, for they beare the whyte crosse, in signyfieng of the crosse of Christ, who dyed and toke payne for the redempcyon of all crysten people; and nere hande daily these knyghtes haue skrymysshes and assawtes to ayde and sustayne the chrysten faythe agaynst the myscreaūtes, wherfore these knyghtes ought to be valyaunte men, and nourysshed in the warre.

Whan the erle of Neuers and his company were come into the isle of Rodes, the great mayster and the great priour of Acqyutanye, who was there, receyued the frenchemen honourably, and offred to lende them golde and syluer to paye their small charges and costes, whiche offre the erle of Neuers and his company toke for a great curtesy, and hertely thanked them, for they had great nede therof. The great priour of Acqyutanie, a right valyaunt knyght, lente to the erle of Neuers a thyrty thousand frankes in redy money; and syr Reygnere Potte, stewarde with the erle of Neuers, and the lorde of Rocheforde of Burgoyne, receyued the money. I thinke it was generally for them all that euery man shulde haue parte, but the erle became dettour for the money. Thus they taryed in the Isle of Rodes a good seaso to refresshe theym, and to sette euery thyng in good ordre, for the ayre was more attēperate there than wheras they had ben in Turkey: and as they taryed thus at Rodes, abydyng for the galees of Venyce, a sykenesse toke syr Guy of Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> lorde of Scully, of whiche sykenesse he dyed there, and was buryed in the churche of saynte Johan in the Rodes, and the lordes of France dyd his obsequy ryght reuerently, and were ryght sorye of his dethe, but there was no remedy. The Erle of Neuers knewe well that the duke of Burgoyne wolde be sore displeased of his deth, bycause he had always foude hym sage and of good counsayle. At the laste there aryued the galees of Venyce, wherof the frenchemen were ryght ioyous: than they tooke their leaue of the lordes of the Rodes. Thus departed the erle of Neuers, sir Henry of Bare, Boucyquante, Guillyam of Tremoyle,<sup>b</sup> the lorde of Rocheforde, and all other. The patrones of the galees (to do them pleasure) were contente to suffre them to refresshe theym in the isles bytwene Venyce and Rodes: fyrste they came to Modon, a fyue hundred myle fro the Roodes, and there they refreshed them; it parteyned to the venycyens.

4 U 2

And

<sup>a</sup> Baruth.<sup>b</sup> De la Tremouille.

And fro modon they sayled with wynde and wether at wyll, and so came to the isle of Calefo,<sup>a</sup> and there refresshed theym; and fro thence to the isle of Garre,<sup>b</sup> and there taryed, and than they came to the isle of Chyfolignie,<sup>c</sup> and there landed, and founde a great nombre of ladyes and damosels, who had the sygniorite of that isle; they receyued the frenchemen with great ioye, and brought them to passe the tyme aboute the isle, whiche is ryght fayre and pleasaunte: and suche as knowe the condicions of that isle, affyrmeth that the fayry and the nympes be moche conuersaunt there. Some of the marchautes of Venyce, and Geane,<sup>d</sup> and of other landes, suche as haue aryued there, and taryed there a seasoone to eschewe the daunger of the see, haue said that they haue sene some of the fairy there, and haue proued their wordes to be trewe. The erle of Neuers and his company were right ioyouse of the company of these ladyes, and ryght ioyously the ladyes receyued them, and sayd howe their comyng thyder dyd all the isle great honoure, bycause they were noble knyghtes and men of honoure, for the liath nat accustomed none other to be conuersaunt amonge them but marchautes. This isle is nat all onely enhabyted with women, but there be men amonge them, but the women haue the soueraynte and chefe rule there; they are workewomen in sylke worke, and make clothes of sylke, so subtely and so well, that there is none lyke them, nor the men of the isle canne nat make it, but they cary them out to sell where they thynke to haue most profyete, and the woman abyde styll in y<sup>e</sup> isle, and they honour the men for the sayde cause, and they haue the profyete therof; the isle is of that condycion that no man dare aproche it to do there any dōmage, for who so euer dothe are perysshed, and that liath ben sene and proued, and therfore these ladyes endure euer in peace, and dought no man: also they are marueylous swete, gentle, amyable, and humble, and when they wyll, they speke with the fayry, and be in their company.

Whan the erle of Neuers and his company had refresshed them in this isle of Chyfolignie<sup>e</sup> aboute a fyue dayes, than they toke leaue of these ladyes, and lefte amonge these ladyes parte of suche as they had that they myght forbear, so that the ladyes gaue them great thanke at their departyng, and so they sayled to a lande called Raguse, and there they rested, and fro thens to Clarence,<sup>f</sup> a hundred myle fro Venyce; and whyle they were there, thither came a squyer of Haynalt of great recōmendacyon, borne in the towne of Mons, he was called Brydoll: he came fro the holy sepulcre, and fro Quayre,<sup>g</sup> and fro saynt Katheryns mounte; and whan he came to Clarence,<sup>h</sup> the frenchemen made him good chere, bycause he was borne in Haynalt, for the countesse of Neuers was doughter to the erle of Heynalte, and also bycause he had ben in farre countreys, and they demaunded of him newes fro those parties, and also of the state of the kynge of Cyper. He answered to euery thyng ryght wysely.

Whan the erle of Neuers had refresshed hym there a seasoone, than he sayled forthe and came to the porte of Parouse;<sup>i</sup> the great galees coude go no further to come to y<sup>e</sup> porte of Venyce; than within a certayne space they tooke other small shyppes passengers, and so came to Venyce, and there were receyued with great ioye, and they thanked god that they were come thyder in sauegarde, and out of the bandes of the myscreautes, for they were ones in feare neuer to haue come out of their handes. Than euery man wente to his logynge which was prepared for them, for their comyng thyder was knowen before, their seruauantes were come thyder and prepared for them redye agaynst their comyng. The erle of Neuers founde there redy parte of his seruauantes, sente thyder by the duke of Burgoyne his father, and the duches his mother.

Also

<sup>a</sup> Corfu

<sup>b</sup> Zante

<sup>c</sup> Cephalonia.  
‡ Cairo.

<sup>d</sup> Genoa.  
‡ Parcnzo.

<sup>e</sup> Or, *Chiavenna*.



Also there was redy syr Dyne of Responde, bycause of their raunsome. Than clerkes were sette to write letters, and messengers were sente forthe to gyue knowledge to their frendes of their comyng. These newes was anone knowen ouer all; the duke of Burgoyne and the duchesse ordeyned for the state of their sonne, as vessel, and plate of syluer and golde, aparell, and stuffe of housholde: all this was sent to Venyce on sōmers, and the lorde of Angyers, and syr Jaques of Helley, dyd conney all this stuffe, and so came to Venyce; and all the other lordes and knyghtes frendes dyd sende thyder in lyke maner; and ye maye beleue well that this was nat doone without great coste, for there was nothyng spared; and also they laye at Venyce at great coste and charge, for Venyce is one of the derest townes in the worlde for straungers to lye in. Thus these lordes kept their estates there, and therle of Neuers was more charged than any other, as it was reasone, for he was the chiefe there. The duke of Burgoyne, and the duchesse sette all their ententes for the delyueraunce of their sonne, for they desyred greatly to se theym, and so dyd many other, and the duke sayd that without ayde of his men and good frendes that were in his landes, as well in Burgoyne, as in Arthoys, and in Flaunders, he coulde nat tell howe to atteyne to the somme of money that Lamorabaquy<sup>a</sup> shulde haue for his sonnes raunsome, and to beare the costes that dayly grewe by that occasyon: for though their raunsomes drewe but to two hundred thousande floreyms, all thynges consydred, their other charges drewe to as moch, as they sayde that had the receyte and delyueraunce therof. The duke tooke counsaile where this money shulde be reysed, for þe duke coulde nat breke nor mynysse his estate, nor it was nat his mynde to do. Than it was determyned that the ryche men in all his good townes shulde be taxed, and specyally they of Flaunders, bycause they were ryche, by reason of their marchaundyse. This taxacyon was sette forwarde, and when they of Gaunt, were called curtesly to the mater, they answered and sayd that they wolde gladly helpe to ayde their enherytour with the sōme of fyfty thousande florayns. In lykewyse they of Bruges, and of other good townes in Flaunders, were redy to ayde their lorde: the duke and duchesse thanked them curtesly: in lykewyse so dyde they of Arthoise and of Burgoyne. Also the Frenche kyng ayded well for his parte; and also it had cost hym great riches in sendyng of presentes and knyghtes into Hungry and Turkey; howebeit, he was well contente therwith, syth his cosyns and his knyght Bouciquant were come to Venyce in suretie.

Therle of Neuers laye thus styll at Venyce, for his entēt was nat to departe thens tyll euery thyng was payed and discharge: for the furnysshing of this fynauce sir Dyne of Responde toke great payne, to the entente to plecte the Frenche kyng, and the duke of Burgoyne; in suche busynesse he was subtile and wyse. Thus these Frenche lordes and knyghtes sported them eche with other. The same season there felle in Venyce a great mortalityte, and it began in the moneth of Auguste, and dured without ceassyng tyll saynt Andrewes tyde, wherin dyed moche people: and there dyed sir Henry of Bare, eldest sonne to the duke of Bare, and herytoure, (by his wyfe), of all the lorde of Coucyes landes, excepte the ladyes dowrye. Thus in the same season, bothe the ladies of Coucy were widowes, and their husbundes deed, the whiche was great dōmage; his body was enbaulmed and caryed into Fraunce, and buried in Parys, as I belcue, and there his obsequy was done solempnely. To flye and eschewe fro this deth at Venice, the erle of Neuers went and taryed at Trenuse,<sup>b</sup> with all his estate, and there taryed a four monethes with all his company.

Thus the erle of Neuers beyng at Trenuse,<sup>b</sup> it was shewed the kyng of Hungry by  
them

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>b</sup> Treviso.

them of the Roodes, howe the Frenche lordes were agreed with Lamorabaquy,<sup>a</sup> to paye for their sōmes two hundred thousande florens. Than the kyng sent letters by a byshoppe, and certayne knyghtes, to them of Venyce, in the fauour of the Frenche knyghtes; and also they were charged to saye certayne wordes to therle of Neuers, as as ye shall here, for whan they cāe thider they said to hym: Sir, we are sent hider fro our souerayne lorde the kyng of Hungry your cosin, who saluteth you by vs: and here be letters that he hath sente vnto you, and he vnderstādeth howe ye are deliuered fro the handes of the turkes his aduersaries for certayne raūsome, the whiche otherwyse ye coude nat haue ben deliuered, wherof he is right ioyouse; and sir, the kyng knoweth well ŷ your treatie coude nat haue ben made without great cost and charge, for besyde that ye lost in the batayle, your raunsome and other charges hath ben and is dayly great; wherfore, sir, the kyng sayth if he myght ayde you with any thyng he wolde gladly do it, for he thynketh himselfe bounde therto, as well by lynage or otherwyse: but sir, he and his toke suche dōmage at the daye of the batayle before Nichopoly, as ye knowe well, and also his reuenues of his realme for this yere and ŷ next be in a maner as lost; but whā he hath recouery therof, and is of power, (he saythe), he wyll so puruey for you, that ye shal be wel content with hym, and thus to do he is of good wyll; and sir, to theuent that ye shall gyue credence to his promise and sayeng, he hath in the cytie of Venyce of yerely reuenewes, seyn thousande ducates; and sir, he is content that this be solde to the venycience, and that of the money that shall ryse therof, that ye shulde vse it and ayde yourselfe therwith as ye wolde do of your owne goodes: and sir, of this we shall deliuer quitaūces to the venycience; we haue authorite so to do. This offre greatly pleased the erle of Neuers and his cōūsayle, and the lorde of Rocheforde answered and said: howe the erle and all his cōpany thanked greatly the kyng of Hungry in that he wolde sell or laye to gage his enherytaūce for to ayde them: sayeng, howe his offre was nat to be refused nor forgotten, desyryng to take a lytell counsayle in the mater, and so they dyde. Within a brefe tyme after, it was shewed to the kyng of Hūgeries ambassadours in the behalfe of the erle of Neuers, that it shulde nat be cōuent that the kyng of Hungry shulde sell or ley to pledge his enherytaūces, for other mennes causes; but if so be the ambassadours wolde do so moche as to shewe to the venicyēce that they wolde do so moche as to lende therle of Neuers a certayne sōme of florence, to helpe to paye the erles by charges, and to paye agayne to the priour of saynt Johñs, in Acquitayne, the xxx. thousande florens, that he lent to thē in the isle of the Rodes, in thus doying, they saide, they wolde highly thanke the kyng of Hungry and his counsayle. The ambassadours saide they wolde do their best, and assaye the venicyēce what they wolde do. Whan the venycience were moued in this mater, they answered but coldly, and said they wolde take counsayle, and gyue answer within fyftene dayes; at whiche tyme they answered, (as I was enformed, by one that was by at the answer gyueng), that if the kyng of Hungry wolde selle his hoole realme, the venycience shulde be redy to bargayne with hym, and paye hym in redy money; but they said, as for so lytell a thyng as seyn thousande ducates by yere, they coude make no price nor valewre therof, nother to by nor to sell, wherfore they said they wolde nat medell in that small mater. This was the answer that the venycience made. Some thought and ymagined, that this answer was made by waye of dissymulacion, and that though the kyng of Hungry made this offre, yet by agreement, ŷ venicyens made that answer. Thus the mater abode styll, and the kyng of Hungry styll in his possessyon of his reuenewes. Thāe the kynges ambassadours departed fro Venyce, and returned into Hungry, and the erle of Neuers abode styll at Trenuse,<sup>b</sup> by cause of the mortalyte in Venyce.

Ye

<sup>a</sup> Bajazet.<sup>b</sup> Treviso.

Ye haue herde here before howe the lorde Phylippe of Arthois, erle of Ewe, and constable of Fraūce, dyed in ſy cite of Bursa, in Turkey, of whose dethe all his frendes were sorie, and specially the frenche kyng, for he loued hym entierly; his office was suche that it myght nat longe be vacant, wherypon all the lordes of Fraunce assembled togider to take aduyse who shulde be made constable. The most parte of ſy cōsaile agreed on the valyant knight sir Loys of Sanxere, who had ben long marshall of Fraūce, and was the same tyme; he was in the parties of Languedoc, and so was sente for, and incōtyent he came to Paris, and ther was made cōstable. Than was voyde the office of the marshall: than ſy kyng sayd, none shulde haue ſy office, but al onely his knyght sir Bouciquaut; euery man agreed therto, for he was well worthy. When he was chosen he was at Venyce, but shortly after he came to Paris, for the rāsons ones payde, all the lordes and knyghtes of Fraūce returned home. So sir Bouciquaut was marshall of Fraunce. Therle of Neuers drewe to the duke of Burgoyne his father, and to the duches his mother; he had great chere made hym of them and of his other, as it was reason, for he came fro a longe voyage and a peryllous; he was well receyued i all his fathers countreis, as in Flaunders, in Arthoys, in Burgoyne, and in all other places parteynyng to his fathers and to his enherytaūce.

*Howe after the returne of the lordes of Fraunce, the frenche kyng entended what he myght to set a concorde and peace in the church.*

#### C A P. CCXXV.<sup>a</sup>

THERLE of Neuers thus returned into Fraūce, he abode about the duke his father, and visyted his lādes and signories; than he had desyre to go to se ſy frēche kyng, and the duke of Orlyāuce, who receyued hym with great ioye. The kyng and the duke of Orlyauce had great appetyte to here therle speke, and to here of ſy newes of Turkey, and of all his aduentures, and of the state of Lamorabaquy.<sup>b</sup> Therle answered wisely, and cōplayned nothing of Lamorabaquy,<sup>b</sup> but said he had fōūde hym ryght curtesse, and howe that he was well entreated; and he forgat nat to shewe ſy kyng and the ladies, howe at his departyng Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> said to hym, that he was borne in this worlde to do dedes of armes, and to cōquere ener more and more; and how that he wolde nat cōmaūde thē whan they were prisoners that they shulde no more beare armes agāst hym, but said he wolde rather haue thē come agayne the seconde, thirde, or fourthe tyme, if nede were, if the dedes of armes so required; and also he said howe his entent was to se Rome, and to make his horse eate otes vpon saynt Peters aluter; and also he sayde, howe our cristen faythe was nothyng worth, but corrupted by the heedes that ought to gouerne them, wherat the Turkes make but a mocke; wherfore he sayd, it shulde be the distruction of Christendome, and that ſy tyme was as than come: and dyers of the Turkes and sarazins sayde, that their kyng Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> was borne to be lorde of all the worlde, and this they of Turkey, of Tartarye, of Perce,<sup>c</sup> of Alexandre, and of other parties of the sarazins landes, sayde: they knewe it well that it shulde be so by reasone that the Christen men were abused vpon ii. popes, wherby the christen men were nat all of one accorde, but differdede, some beleuyng on the one pope, and some vpon the other: and the sarazins had great marueyle, howe the heedes of Christendome in euery realme wolde suffre it. These wordes of the erle of Neuers made the Frenche  
kyng

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXXI.

<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.

<sup>c</sup> Persia.

kyng and other lordes greatly to muse; and some sayd howe the sarazins had good reason to laugh and mocke at Christendome, bycause they suffred the prelates of the church to medell so moche; and therfore some sayde, it was tyme to abate their pompes, and to bringe thē to reason. The clerkes of the vnyuersite of Paris who traueyled to lerne, coude nat come to any preferment of any benifyce, by reason of the Scisme in the Church, and of the two popes, wherfore they wolde gladly that the people shulde murmur agaynst them, and were ryght gladd that the erle of Neuers sayde, that the turkes made a great derision therof; and sayd: howe that without the frēche kyng, and the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> fōude some remedy, euery thyng shulde be worse and worse: and to saye the trouthe, suche as helde them as neutre, they thought hadde taken the best waye, and so euery man ought to do, if they wolde bringe the Chūche into good case. Also it was secretly shewed the Frenche kyng, by suche as he loued, and suche as loued his helthe, howe that it was the cōmen opinyon in the realme of Fraūce, that he shulde neuer haue perfētly his helth, vnto the tyme that the Church were brought in another estate: and also they shewed the kyng, howe that kyng Charles his father, whan he laye in his dethe beed, charged his counsaile in conscyence, and had great dout that he was sore abused in those two popes. Than the frēche kyng answered them and sayd: Whan the kyng my father dyed, I was but yonge, and I haue beleued hyderto suche as haue counsayled me: if there be folly, it is in them and nat in me; but sythe we be nowe this enformed in the matter, we shall prouide for the remedy, and that shal be well sene.

The Frenche kyng marked the mater more profoundly thane euer he dyde before, and sayd to them of his cōsaile, howe he wolde proude for the mater, and spake therof to his brother the duke of Orlyauce, erle of Bloyes and of Valois, who agreed anone to the kynges wyll: in lykewise so dyde the duke of Burgoyne, for though he obeyed pope Clement, yet he had neuer ferme beleue on hym: but the prelates of the realme of Fraunce, and specially Guy of Roy, archebysshoppe of Reynolds,<sup>b</sup> the archebysshoppes of Sens, and of Rouen, and the bysshoppe of Ostune,<sup>c</sup> they had brought the duke to beleue on pope Clement: thane it was aduysed by the kynges secrete cōsaile that if they purposed to bringe the Church to rest and peace, to haue the accorde of Almayne.<sup>d</sup> Than was there sente sufficient ambassadours and clerkes of bothe lawes, (as maister Philyppe of Playes was one), into Almayne,<sup>e</sup> to the kyng of Boesme<sup>d</sup> and of Almayne,<sup>e</sup> who wrote hymselfe kyng of Romainys. This mater went so forwarde, y<sup>e</sup> a day was sette that the kyng of Almayne<sup>a</sup> and his counsaile, and the frēche kyng and his cōsaile, shulde mete personally at the cyte of Reynes.<sup>b</sup> This mater was done secretly, bicause the prelates, cardynalles, archebysshoppes, and bysshoppes, shulde nat breke their purpose that they were about; and they made it be noysed that the metyng of these two kynges and their counsails at Reynes,<sup>b</sup> was for non other purpose but to treat for a maryage to be had bytwene the sonne of the marques of Blanquebourg,<sup>c</sup> brother to the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and the daughter of the duke of Orlyauce; and so by reason and vnder colour of that mater, they wolde common of other.

In this same seasoone dyed at Nesues,<sup>f</sup> in Heynaulte, the lorde Guye of Chastellone, erle of Bloyes, and brought to Valencēnes, and buried at saynt Fraunces, in the Freres mynours, in a chapell called the chapell of Orthais;<sup>g</sup> he had done moche coste in the cloyng of the sayd Freres, and whan he dyed he was so in dette, that the countesse Mary of Namure forsoke al his goodes, and durst nat take on her the administracyon of his testament, but retourned to her dowric of the lande of Chinay, and of Beaumonde,  
and

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Rheims.<sup>c</sup> Autun.<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.<sup>e</sup> Brandenburg.<sup>f</sup> Avesnes.<sup>g</sup> Artois,—Johnes.

and his other herytages went to the heyres: the duke of Orlyauce hadde the countie of Blois, for he had payed whyle the erle Guye lyued, two hundred thousande crownes of Fraunce, and the landes of Hollande, Zelande, and Heynalte, wente to the duke Aubert of Bauyere,<sup>a</sup> erle of Heynaulte; and the lande of Dauernes, of Landrecier, and of Lonnon in terreasse,<sup>b</sup> fell to Johan of Bloyes, called Johñ of Bretaygne, and if the erle had nat solde the countie of Blois, the sayd Johan of Bretaygne shulde haue been his heyre therof. Consydre what a dōmage a lorde or any other may do to his heyre, by gyueng credēce to yuell counsayle, god forgyue hym.

Nowe lette vs retourne to the busynesse of Englande.

*Of the dethe of the duke of Gloucestre, and of the erle of Arūdell, and howe the kynges vnclis and the londoners toke the mater.*

C A P. CCXXVI.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde here before of the couert hates that was bytwene kyng Rycharde of Englande, and his vncl Thomas duke of Gloucestre, whiche the kyng wolde beare no lengar, but sayd, and also was counsayled, rather to distroye another man than hymselfe: and ye haue herde howe the kyng was at Plasshey, and by crafte and coloure, brought hym out of his owne house to London, and by the waye about x. or a xi. of the cloke in the nyght, therle marshall arested hym in the kynges name: and for all that he cryed after the kyng, yet the kyng made a deafe eare, and rode on before, and so the same nyght the kyng laye at the towre of London, but the duke of Gloucestre was otherwise lodged, for by force he was put into a barge, and out of the barge into a shyppe that laye in the Thamise, and the erle marshall with hym and all his company, and dyde so moche, that the nexte day by nyght they came to Calais, without knowledge of any man, excepte the kynges offycers of the sayd towne.

Ye maye well knowe whañe the takyng of the duke was knowen at Plasshey, by the duchesse and her chyldren, they were sore troubled and abashed, and thought well that the matter went nat well: the duchesse demaunded cōsaile (what was best to do), of sir Johan Laquyham.<sup>d</sup> The knight answered, that it was best to sende to his bretherne, the dukes of Lancastre and of Yorke, that they myght fynde some meanes to apeace the kynges dyspleasure, for he sayde, he thought that the kyng wolde nat displeasethem. The duchesse dyd as the knyght counsayled her, and she sente incontyent messangers to these two dukes, who were farre asondre, who whanne they herde therof were sore displeased, and sente worde agayne to the duchesse that she shuld be of good cōforte, for they sayd they knew well the kyng wolde nat entreat hym but by lauffull iudgement, for otherwise they coude nat suffre it: but as thanne they knewe natte where he was. The duchesse and her chyldren were somewhat confortd with their answer. The kyng the nexte daye wente fro the towre of London to Eltham, and there taried. The same night was brought to the towre of London as prisoners, the erle of Arundell, and the erle of Warwyke, wherof they of the cytie of London had great marueyle, and made therof great murmuryng, but none durst saye nay agaynst the kynges pleasure; but all maner of people, knightes, squyers, burgesses of good cyties and townes of Englade, said: we haue very well suffred: the duke of Lancastre, and

Vol. II.

4 X

<sup>a</sup> Albert of Bavaria:<sup>b</sup> Louvion in Thierache.<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXXII.<sup>d</sup> Before called Laquinyay.

the duke of Yorke, bretherne to the duke of Gloucestre, they maye prouyde for this whanne it please thē; we thynke they wolde well haue prouyded for the mater, if that they hadde knowen the kynges entent agaynst their brother of Glocestre, but bycause they were nat diligent in the cause, the matter is come yuell, and lyke to haue an yuell conclusyon.

When the duke of Gloucestre was brought to the castell of Calys, than he feared hymselfe greatlye, and said to the erle Marshall: For what cause am I brought out of Englande hyder to Calais? Me thynke ye holde me as a prisoner; lette me go abrode and se the fortesse aboute. Sir, quod the marshall, that ye desyre I dare nat do it, for I haue the charge vpon you on payne of my lyfe: the kyng my soueraygne lorde is a lytell myscontente with you, wherfore ye muste take payence here for a sezone, tyll I here other newes, and that shal be shortely by goddes grace; for sir, as helpe me God, I am right sorie for your trouble if I myght remedy it; but sir, ye knowe well I am sworne to the kyng, wherfore I must obey, and so wyll I do, for sauynge of myne honoure. The duke coude haue none other aunswere, but by that he sawe he feared greatly his lyfe: and on a daye he desyred a preest that sange masse before hym, that he myght be cōfessed, and so he was at good leysar before the sacrament with deuout herte, and cryed God mercy, and was sore repentaunt of all his synnes; and in dede it was tyme so for hym so to do, for his dethe was nerer to hym than he was ware of; for as I was enfourmed, whan he hadde dyned and was aboute to haue wassen his handes, there came into the chambre foure men, and caste sodaynlye a towell aboute the dukes necke, two at the one ende and two at the other, and drewe so sore that he fell to the erthe, and so they strangled hym and closed his eyen: and whan he was deed they dyspoyled hym, and bare hym to his beed, and layde hym bytwene the shetes all naked, and his heed on a softe pyllowe, and couered with clothes furred: and than they yssued out of the chambre into the hall, well determyned what they wolde saye, and sayde openly, howe a palueysye hadde taken the duke of Gloucestre the same night sodaynly, and so dyed. These wordes anon were abrode in the towne of Calais: some beleued theym and some natte. Within two dayes that the duke was thus deed, the erle marshall appareled hymselfe in blacke, bycause he was his nere cosyn, and so were many other knyghtes and squyers that were in Calais: his dethe was sooner knowen in Fraunce and in Flaunders, than in Englād: the Frenchemen were gladd therof, for there was a cōmon brute that there shulde be no good peace bytwene Fraunce and Englande, as long as he lyued; and in all treatys bytwene Fraūce and Englande, he was euermore harder and obstynater thane any other of his bretherne, wherfore they cared nat for his dethe. In lykewise many men in Englande, bothe knyghtes, squyers, and other officers of the kynges, who were in feare of hym, bycause of his crueltie, all suche were gladd of his dethe; they toke to recorde his cruell dedes, by ꝑ duke of Irelāde, whom he had exyled out of Englande; also of ꝑ deth of that valyant knight sir Symon Burle,<sup>a</sup> and of sir Robert Triuyllyen,<sup>b</sup> sir Nicholas Bramble,<sup>c</sup> sir Johan Standysshe, and dycuers other. The dukes dethe was but lytell regarded in Englande, excepte but with suche as were of his opinyon. Thus this duke dyed in Calais; his body was enbaumed and scared in leed and couered, and so sente by see into Englande, and the shyppe that caryed hym arryued at the castell of Hadley, vpon Thamysy syde, and fro thens caryed by chariot symply to his owne place at Plasshey, and there buryed in the churche, whiche the sayde duke hadde founded in the honoure of the hooly Trynite, wherin were twelue Chanonnes to synge diuyn seruyce.

Ye

<sup>a</sup> Burly.<sup>b</sup> Tresillian.<sup>c</sup> Barnber.

Ye maye well knowe that the duchesse of Gloucestre, and Affren<sup>3</sup> his sonne, and his two sisters, were sore discōfyted whan they sawe the duke brought thytlier deed. The duchesse had double sorowe, for Richarde, erle of Arundell, her vncl, was beheaded openly by the kynges cōmaundemēt in Chepesyde: there was no lorde durst speke to the contrary, the kyng beying presente at the same iustyce doynge; it was done by the erle Marshall, who hadde to wyfe the daughter of the sayde erle of Arundell, and yet he bounde his eyen hymselfe. The erle of Warwyke was in great daunger to be beheaded, but the erle of Salisbury, who was in the kynges fauour, desyred the kyng for his lyfe, and so dyde dyuers other barons and prelates in Englande. The kyng enclyned to their requestes, so y<sup>e</sup> he myght be banysshed, and putte in suche a place as he shulde natte come fro, for the kyng wolde nat clerely forgyue hym; he sayde he had well deserued to dye, bycause he was of counsaile with y<sup>e</sup> duke of Gloucestre, and with the erle of Arundell, to haue brokē the peace and truce taken bitwene Fraunce and Englande, for the whiche artycle the kyng sayd, they had deserued to dye, for the peace was taken bytwene the parties on suche cōdycion, y<sup>e</sup> who so euer dyde breake it, shulde be worthy to dye. The erle of Salisbury, who had ben the erle of Warwykes companyon dyuers tymes, in excusyng of him, said: Howe he was an olde man, and was desyred by the duke of Gloucestre, by his fayre wordes; wherfore he sayd, that he dyde was natte of his owne mocyon, but by theirs, affyrming howe there was neuer none of y<sup>e</sup> Beauchampes that euer dyd trayson agaynst the crowne of Englande. Thus the erle of Warwyke for pytie was respyted fro dethe; he was banysshed into the ysle of Wycht. And it was sayde to hym: Erle of Warwyke, ye haue deserued to dye as well as the erle of Arundell, but for the great seruyce that ye haue done in tyme past to kyng Edward, and to the prince his sonne, and to the crowne of Englande, as well on this syde the see as beyonde, hath done you great ayde, for the kyng hath pyte on you, and hath graūted you your lyfe; but it is ordayned by iudgement, y<sup>e</sup> ye shall go into the ysle of Wight, and lyue there as long as ye can, and shall haue sufficient of your owne to maynteyne there your estate soberly, but ye maye neuer departe thens. The erle toke this punysshement aworthe, and thāked the kyng and his counsaile for sauynge of his lyfe, and so made hym redy to go thyder at the daye apoynted; in the whiche ysle was space sufficient for a lorde to kepe his estate, enuyroned with the see. Thus passed forthe these Judgementes in Englande at that season, whiche multiplied dayly worse and worse, as ye shall here after.

Whan the dethe of y<sup>e</sup> duke of Gloucestre was knowē by the dukes of Lancastre and of Yorke, incōtinent they knewe well that the kyng their nephue had caused hym to be slayne and murdered at Calays. As than these two dukes were nat toguyder, eche of the were at their owne places; they wrote eche to other to knowe what were best to do, and so they came to London, for they knewe well that the Londoners were nat content with the dethe of the duke their brother. Whan they mette there toguyder, they tooke cōsaile, and sayd: Suche dedes ought nat to be suffred, as to putte to dethe so hyghe a price, as was their brother, for ydell wordes and false reportes; for they sayd, though he spake oftentymes of the breakyng of y<sup>e</sup> peace yet he neuer brake it, and bytwene sayenge and doynge is great difference, for by reason of wordes he ought nat to deserue dethe by suche cruell punycion: these two dukes were in the case to haue put all Englande to great trouble, and there were ynowe redy to counsaile them therto, and specially them of the erle of Arundelles lynage, and of the erle of Staffordes, whiche was a great kynred in Englande. The kyng as than was at Elthā, and had sente for all suche as helde of hym in chiefe, and he had redy assembled toguyder about London, in Kent,

<sup>3</sup> Humphrey.

and Essex, mo than ten thousande archers; and sir Johan Hollande his brother was with hym, and therle Marshall, and the erle of Salisbury, and a great nombre of lordes and knyghtes, and the kyng sent to thē of London, that they shulde nat receyue the duke of Lancastre. They answered and sayd: they knewe no cause that the duke hadde done, why they shulde refuse hym. The duke of Lancastre was at Lōdon, and the erle of Derby his sonne, and also the duke of Yorke, and his sonne Johan, erle of Rutlande; the kyng loued the erle of Rutlande beyonde measure, who dissymuled the dethe of his vnclē the duke of Gloucestre, and shewed howe he wolde gladly se a good peace bytwene the parties, and said howe he knewe well that his vnclē dyde wronge oftentimes agaynst the kyng. The Londoners in lykewyse consydred the great myschiefe y myght fall in Englande, by the discencyon bytwene the kynges vnclēs and the kyng, and their alyauces; also they consydred, syth the myscheffe was fallen of the duke of Gloucestres dethe, that there was no recouery therin; they knewe well it was bycause y duke of Gloucestre had been to lauesse of his tonge, and wolde haue styrred the realme to haue broken the trefwe bytwene Englande and Fraunce, wherfore suche as were wyse men in the cytie dissymuled the mater, and thought it was no tyme to amende it as than: they feared the puyssaūce of Fraunce, and lesyngē of their marchaundyse: than they beganne to treate and went as a meane bytwene the king and the duke of Lancastre, who was in many imaginacions, for the dethe of his brother troubled him sore: also he sawe howe his nephue kyng Rycharde was alyed by mariage with the frenche kyng: also y duke of Lancastre had ii. of his daughters out of the lande, one quene of Spayne, another quene of Portugale, by whome he thought he shulde haue great ayde if he made warre agaynst his nephue kyng Rycharde. All thynges consydred the duke chaunged his courage, at the desyre of the londoners, and of other prelates of Englande, who were meane bytwene the kyng and hym, and by their meanes the kyng was agreed with the duke, and peace made. With that the kyng promysed fro thens forward to be gouerned by the duke of Lancastre, and to do nothyng but by his counsayle and aduyse, whiche promesse the kyngē nothyngē fulfilled, but was counsayled by yonge and wyldē cōsayle, whiche was to his hurte and great dōmage, as ye shall here after in this history.

Thus the kyng of Englande had peace with his vnclēs, bycause of the dethe of the duke of Gloucestre: than he beganne to reygne more fierly than he dyd before; the kyngē went and lay in Essex, where as the duke of Gloucestre had the chiefe rule, whiche ought to haue pertayned to Affren,<sup>a</sup> his sonne and heyre; but the kyngē toke all, for the ordynance in Englande was, the kyngē to haue y warde of all herytours chyldren orphelyns vnder the age of xxi. yeres, and than they to haue their herytages. Thus the kyngē toke the wardeshyppe of his cosyn, the duke of Gloucestres herytour, and the kyngē toke the possession and profyte of all the dukes lande, and kepte the chylde with hym: and the duchesse of Gloucestre and her two daughters were with the quene. The duke of Gloucestre by enberytaunce was constable of Englande; the kyngē toke that offyce fro the right heyre, and gaue it to his cosyn the erle of Rutlande. The kyngē than kept greater state than euer he dyd, nor there had nat ben no kyngē before in Englande that spente so moche yerely by a hundred thousande nobles as he dyd. In lykewyse the kyngē had with hym the heyre of the erle of Arundell, who was beheaded at London. And bycause a knyght that was belongyng to the duke of Gloucestre, called Cerbe, spake at a tyme certayne wordes agaynst the kyngē and his counsayle, he was taken and beheaded. Syr Johan of Quynghay<sup>b</sup> was in great parell, but whan he sawe that the maters went so dyuersely as they dyd, he dyssymuled as moch as he might,

and

<sup>a</sup> Humphrey.<sup>b</sup> Laquinhay.



and departed from the duchesse of Gloucestres house, and wente and dwelt in other places.

In those dayes there was none so great in Englande y<sup>e</sup> durst speake agaynst any thyng that the kyng dyd or wolde do; he had counsaile mete for his appetyte, who exhorted hym to do what he lyst; the kyng kept styll in his wages ten thousande archers night and day, that wayted on him, for he reputed hymselfe nat perfyately sure of his vncles, nor of the lygnage of Arundell.

*Of the great assemble that was made in the cytie of Reynes,<sup>a</sup> as well by the emperour as of the realme of Frauce, on the state of holy churche.*

CAP. CCXXVII.<sup>b</sup>

THE same seasoene there was a great assëble of gret lordes in the cytie of Reynes,<sup>a</sup> what of lordes of the empyre and of Fraunce, to the entent to bring the churche to a peace and reste: for the frenche kyng dyd so moche, that at his request his cosyn the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> came to the cytie of Reynes,<sup>a</sup> with his counsaile, and bycause they wolde nat haue it brewed that they assembled there all onely for the mater bytwene the popes, the one at Rome, and the other at Auygnon, they made it to be noysed that they came thyder to treat for a maryage of the sonne of y<sup>e</sup> marques of Blâcquebourg,<sup>d</sup> with the daughter of the duke of Orlyauce: this Marques was brother to the kyng of Almayne.<sup>e</sup> The frenche kyng lay at the archebysshoppes palayes, and there was with hym the dukes of Orlyauce, Berrey, and Burbon, therle of saynt Powle, and dyuers other hygh barones and prelates of Fraunce: and whan the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> entred into the cytie, all the lordes and prelates, (and kyng Charles of Nauer, who was in lykewyse there), went to mete with hym, and receyued hym honourably; Fyrste, they brought hym to our lady churche, and after into the abbey of saynt Remy, there the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> laye, and his lordes aboute hym; and it was ordeyned by the frenche kyng, that what so euer the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> spent shulde be at the frenche kynges cost; the almayns had euery day delyuered theym ten tonne of herynge, for it was in Lent tyme, and eyght hundred carpes, besyde other fysshes, whiche was a great charge.

Whan the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> came first to the frenche kyng, all the lordes went for hym to saynt Remy, and so brought him to y<sup>e</sup> kynges palays. Whan these two kynges mette they made great honoure eche to other, and great reuerence, and specyally the frenche kyng, for almayns<sup>c</sup> of nature are rude and grose manered, without it be to take their profyte, therto they be experte and redy ynough; all the lordes of Fraunce and of Almayne<sup>c</sup> toke acquayntaunce eche with other, with louyng wordes and countinaunce, and the frenche kyng made the kyng of Almayne,<sup>c</sup> and his company, a great dyner; at one table there sate, fyrst, the patryarke of Jherusalem, than the kyng of Almayne<sup>c</sup> and the frenche kyng, and the kyng of Nauer, there sate no mo at that table: at the other tables sate the lordes and prelates of Almayne;<sup>c</sup> no lorde of Frauce sate that day, but sarued. To the kynges borde the meate was brought by the dukes of Berrey, and of Burbone, the erle of saynt Powle, and by other great lordes of Frauce. The duke of Orlyauce set euery man downe. Vessell of golde and syluer ranne plentuously through  
the

<sup>a</sup> Rheims.<sup>b</sup> Chapter CCXXXIII.<sup>c</sup> Germany.<sup>d</sup> Brandenburgh.

the palays, as though it had ben but of wode or erthe; it was a sumptuous dyner. And as I was enfourmed the frenche kynge gaue to his cosyn the kyng of Almayne<sup>a</sup> all the vessell and plate of golde and syluer that was serued that day in the palays at the dresser or elsewhere, and all other hangynges and babylymentes in the hall and chambre, whervnto the kynge retrayed after dynner, and spyces and wyne taken. This gyft was praysed and valewed to two hundred thousande florayns; and more ouer there was gyuen to the other almayns<sup>b</sup> great gyftes and goodly presentes of vessell and plate of golde and syluer, wherof the straungers that were there had great marueyle of the state and puyssaunce, and great ryches of the realme of Frauce. These kinges thus abydyng in the cytie of Reynes,<sup>b</sup> their counsayles mette togyther dyuers tymes on the maters that they came thyder for, as well for the maryage of the duke of Orlyauces daughter with the Marques of Blancquebourges<sup>c</sup> sonne, as for the reformacyon of the churche; at laste the maryage was concluded and openly publysshed through the cytie, but as for the mater consernyng the popes, there was nothyng knowne therof out of the counsayle, for all that was concluded in the counsayle was kept secrete. Afterwarde I was enfourmed, how it was agreed that maister Peter Daylly, bysshop of Cambraye, shulde go in legacyon fro the frenche kynge, and fro the kynge of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> to Rome, to hym that was called pope Bonyface, that he shulde submyt hymselfe to haue a newe electyon of a pope, and in lykewyse to fy other pope at Auygnon: and if so be that any of them wolde nat agree therto, to abyde the ordre of these two kinges, he to be dysgrated, and all ryghtes of the churche to be kepte fro hym, and the frenche kynge to comprise to his agrement his sonne in lawe the kynge of Englande, and the kynge of scottes, kynge Henry of Spayne, kynge Johan of Portugale, kynge Charles of Nauer, and the kyng of Aragon: and fy kinge of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> shulde compryse his brother Loys kynge of Hungery, and all the realme of Boesme,<sup>d</sup> and Almayne,<sup>a</sup> to Puce:<sup>e</sup> and it was ordeyned that whan this bysshop of Cambrey was retourned fro the somonyng of these two popes, than he to go into all the sayd realmes their alyes. Thus these two kinges sware to holde without varyacyon or let. Thus ended their counsayle at that tyme. The kinges and lordes departed amyably, and euery man tooke leaue and departed and went home.

At this counsayle at Reynes<sup>b</sup> the duke of Burgoyne was nat, nor wolde nat be, for he sayd before that it was but a payne, and a thyng loste to gyue any thyng to the almayns,<sup>a</sup> for they kepe no promesse nor couenaut; howebeit, for all the dukes wordes there was nothyng left, for the mater went forth as ye haue herde. And anon after, the bysshop of Cambraye made hym redy, and tooke his waye to Rome. Also the frenche kynge sent a great ambassade into Englande to se fy kyng and the quene, and to shewe them of this mater, and so they dyd: and whan they retourned they shewed the frenche kynge howe the kynge of Englande wolde take the same way that the kynge of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and the Frenche kynge wolde do. So they were all concluded, if nede were, to be as newter. Thus this mater stode in this case. Kynge Charles of Nauer who was in Frauce to se the kynge his cosyn, trustyng to recouer his herytage of Normandy, and of the countie of Ewrus,<sup>f</sup> the whiche the Frenche kynge had taken fro hym, as ye haue herde here before, but he coulde nat attayne therto by no meanes, what so euer he shewed or sayd: and whan the kynge of Nauerre sawe that he lost his payne, and labored in vayne, he toke the mater in great dyspleasure, and toke his leaue as sobrelly as he coulde, nat well contente with the frenche kynge nor with his counsayle, and so retourned into the realme of Nauerre.

Nowe

<sup>a</sup> Germany.

<sup>b</sup> Rheims.

<sup>c</sup> Brandenburgh.

<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>e</sup> Prussia.

<sup>f</sup> Evreux.

Nowe lette vs leaue speakyng of them, and speke of other accydentis that fell in Englande, wherby folowed so great yuell, that the lyke hath nat ben written of in this hystory: here foloweth the entre and begynnynge of the mater.

*Howe the erle Marshall in Englande apealed by gage of ritteraunce the erle of Derby, sonne to the duke of Lancastre, in the presence of the kyng and his counsayle.*

C A P. CCXXVIII.<sup>a</sup>

KINGE Richard of Englande hadde a condycion, that if he loued a man, he wolde make hym so great and so nere him that it was marueyle to consydre, and no man durste speke to the contrary; and also he wolde lightly beleue soner than any other kyng of remembrance before hym: and suche as were nere aboute hym and in his grace tooke no ensample of other that had ben great with the kyng before them, as the duke of Irelande, who was put out of Englande, and also syr Symon Burley, who by reason of suche counsayle as he gaue to the kyng he was beheeded, and syr Robert Treuilyan,<sup>b</sup> and syr Nycholas Bramble,<sup>c</sup> and other, that had been of the kynges counsayle, wherfore they suffred dethe, for the duke of Gloucestre dyd all his payne to dystroy them, and yet fynally he loste his lyfe, as ye haue herde: wherof suche as were than aboute the kyng was nothyng sory, wherby some that were aboute the kyng rose into suche pride that it was marueyle, and in so moche that they coulde nat colour nor hyde it, and specyally the erle Marshall, who was as great in the kynges fauoure as myght be; and to the entente to please the kyng and to flatter hym, he made the kyng beleue that he was a trewe, faythfull, and a secrete seruaunt, and that he coulde nat endure to here any worde spoken agaynst the kyng, and tolde the kyng many thynges to haue the kynges loue; howbeit, often tymes a man thynketh to be aunced, and is pulled backe; and so it fortunod of the erle Marshall; I shall shewe you howe.

Ye muste knowe that the erle of Derby and the duke of Gloucestre deed had to their wyues two susters, doughters to the erle of Hereforde and of Northampton, constable of Englande; so the chyldren of the erle of Derby and the duke of Gloucestre were cosyn germayns by their mother syde, and within a degre as nere of kynne by their fathers syde. To say trouthe, the dethe of the duke of Gloucestre was ryght dyspleasunt to many great lordes of Englande, and often tymes they wolde speke and murmure therat whan they were togyder, and the kyng than was so hygh vppon the whele that no man durste speke but the kyng knewe it, for he had caused to be spoken abrode in the realme, that whatsoeuer he were that spake any wordes of the duke of Gloucestre or of the erle of Arundell, he shulde be reputed as a traytour, wherfore the people durst nat speke: and on a day the erle of Derby and the erle Marshall communed togyder of dyuers maters; at last amonge other they spake of the state of the kyng and of his counsayle, suche as he had about hym and beleued them: so that at the last the erle of Derby spake certayne wordes which he thought for the best, wenyng that they shulde neuer haue ben called to rehersall, whiche wordes were nouthen vylenous nor outragious, for he sayde thus: Saint Mary, fayre cosyn, what thynketh the kyng oure cosyn to do? wyl he driue out of Englande all the noble men? within a whyle there shal be none

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXXIV.<sup>b</sup> Tresillian.<sup>c</sup> Bramber.

none left: it semeth clerely that he wylleth nat the augmentacyon of his realme. The erle marshall gaue none aunswere, but dissimuled the mater, and toke it that he spake agaynst the kyng, and thought in hymselfe that the Erle of Derby was ryght lykely to make great trouble in Englande, bycause he was so great with the londoners, and the dyuell was redy to styrre his brayne, and that thyng that shall fall can nat be eschewed.

So he thought to shewe this mater to the kyng, whan noble mē shulde be presente; and on a day to please the kyng, he sayde: Ryght dere syr, I am of youre lygnage, and ame your lyege man and marshall of Englande; wherefore, sir, I am bounde to you by myne alliegeaunce, and othe sworne, my handes in yours, that I shulde be in no place hearynge any thyng contrarye to your mageste royall, and shulde kepe it secrete: I ought to be reputed as a false traytour, whiche I wyll nat be, for I wyll trewly acquyte me agaynst you and all the worlde. The kyng loked on hym, and demanded and sayd: Why say you these wordes? we wyll know it. My right redouted souerayne lorde, quod the erle Marshall, I saye it bycause I canne nat suffre any thyng that shulde be preiudyciall or agaynst your grace. Syr, cause the erle of Derby to come before you, and than I shall shewe you more. Than the erle of Derby was sente for, and the kyng cōmaunded the erle Marshall to stande vp, for he was on his knee whyle he spake to the kyng: and whan the erle of Derby was before the kyng, who thought none yuell, than the erle Marshall sayde: Syr erle of Derby, I say to you, ye haue thought yuell and spoken otherwyse than ye ought to do agaynste your naturall lorde the kyng of Englande, whan ye sayde that he was nat worthy to holde lande or realme, seynge without lawe or iustyce, without counsaile of any of his noble men, he distourbeth his realme, and without tytell or good reason putteth out of his realme and dystroyeth them who ought to ayde and susteyne him; wherefore here I cast my gage, and wyll proue with my body agaynst yours, that ye are an yuell false traytour. The erle of Derby was sore abasshed with those wordes, and stepte backe a lytell and stode styll a season without demaundyng of his Father or of any other what aunswere he shulde make: whan he had studyed a lytell, he stept forthe with his cappe in his hande, and came before the kyng and the erle Marshall, and sayd: Erle Marshall, I saye thou arte an yuell and a false traytour, and y I shall proue, my body agaynst thyne, and in that quarell here is my gage. Therle Marshall, whan he herde howe he was apealed, shewed howe he desyred the batayle. With that the erle of Derby aunswere and sayde: I sette your wordes at the kynges pleasure, and other lordes that be here, and I tourne your wordes to a mocke and myne to be true. Than eche of these erles drewe to their company and lygnage, so that the manner of takynge of wyne and spyces was lette passe, for the kyng shewed hymselfe to be right sore displeased, and so entred into his chambre, and left his two vncles without and all their chyldeyn, and the erles of Salysbury and Huntynghdon his bretherne. Than anone after, the kyng sent for his vncles, and entred into his chambre: thanne the kyng demaunded of them what was best to do in this mater. Syr, quod they, cause your constable to come before you, and than we shall shewe you our opynyons. Than the erle of Rutlande, who was constable, was sente for, and whan he was come, than he was commaunded to go to the erle of Derby and to the erle Marshall, and to take suretye of theym, that they go nat out of the realme of Englande without the kynges lycence. The constable dyd as he was cōmaunded, and than retourned agayne to the kynges chambre.

Ye maye well knowe this matter greatly troubled the courte, and many lordes and knyghtes were sore dyspleased of that aduenture, and secretly they greatly blamed the erle Marshall, but he made as though he had set nothyng by the mater, his hert was so proude

proude and presumptuous. Thus the lordes departed for ȳ day. The duke of Lancaster, whatsoeuer coūtynauce he made, he was sore displeasid with these wordes, and he thought the kyng shulde nat haue taken the mater as he dyd, but shulde rather haue tourned it to nothyng, and so thought the moste parte of all the lordes of Englande. The erle of Derby went and lay at London, and helde his estate at his owne lodgyng; and there were pledges for him, the duke of Lancaster his father, the duke of yorke, the Erle of Northumberlande, and dyuers other lordes: and the erle Marshall was sente to the towre of London, and there helde his estate. These two lordes made prouysyon, for that was necessary for them for their batayle. The erle of Derby sent his messangers into Lombardy to the duke of Myllayne syr Galeas, for to haue armure at his pleasure. The duke agreed to the erles desyre, and caused the knight that the erle had sent thyder, whose name was Fraunces, to se all the dukes armorye; and whan the knyght had chosen suche as he lyked, than the duke furthermore for loue of the erle of Derby, he sent four of ȳ best armorers that were in Lombardy to the erle into Englande with the knight, to the entent that they shulde arme and make armure acordyng to the erles entente. The erle Marshall on his parte sent into Almayn<sup>1</sup> and into other places to prouyde him for that iourney. The charge of these two lordes was greate, but the erle of Derby was at moost charge. The erle Marshall, whan he beganne that busynesse, he thought to haue had more ayde of the kyng than he had, for suche as were nere aboute the kyng said to him: Syr, ye haue nothyng to do to medle bytwene these two lordes; dyssymule you the mater, and let them deale; they wyll do well ynough. Sir, ye knowe well the erle of Derby is well beloued in the realme, and specially with the Londoners, and if they se that ye shulde take parte with the erle Marshall, ye were lyke to lose their loue therby for euer. The kyng vnderstode well their wordes, and knew well it was trewe: he than dissymuled the mater as moche as he coulde, and suffred them to make their prouysyon where they lyst.

The newes spredde abrode in dyuers countreys of the defyaunce bytwene the erle of Derby and the erle Marshall: many men spake therof in dyuers maners, and specially in France. They sayd: lette theym alone, the knyghtes of Englande are ouer proude; at length they wyll dystroy eche other, for it is the worste nacyon in the worlde vnder the sonne, for in ȳ realme dwelleth the moste presumptuous people that canne be. Other there were that spake more soberly, and sayde: that the kyng of Englande shewed no wysdome, nor was nat well counsayled, whanne for wyld wordes he to suffre suche two noble men of his blode to enterprise armes in defyaunce; he shulde rather whan he herde the wordes fyrste, haue sayde to them bothe: ye are two lordes of my blode and lygnage, wherefore I cōmaunde you bothe to be in peace, and lette nouthur hate nor rancoure engendre bytwene you, but be frendes, louers, and cosyngs togyther; and if this lande canne nat contente you, go into what cuntry ye wyll, and seke adventures of armes there. If the kyng had sayde those wordes, and apesed these lordes thus, than he had done wysely. The duke of Lancaster was sore displeasid in his mynde to se the kyng his nephewe mysse vse hymselfe in dyuers thynges as he dyd; he consydred the tyme to come lyke a sage prince, and somtyme sayd to suche as he trusted best: Our nephue the kyng of Englande wyll shame all or he cease: he beleueth to lyghtly yuell counsayle who shall dystroy hym, and symply (if he lyue longe) he wyll lese his realme, and that hath been goten with moche coste and trauayle by our predecessours and by vs; he suffreth to engendre in this realme bytwene the noble men hate and dyscorde, by whom he shulde be serued and honoured, and this lande kepte and douted. He hath caused my brother to dye, whiche is one thyng to be noted, and

<sup>1</sup> Germany.

the erle of Arundell, bycause they shewed hym trouthe: but he wolde nat here them nor none other that wolde cōsaille hym agaynst his appetyte: he canne nat better dystroye his realme than to put trouble and hatred bytwene the noble men and good townes: the frenchemen are right subtyle; for one myschiefe that falleth amonge vs, they wolde it were ten, for otherwyse they canne nat recouer their dōnages, nor come to their ententes, but by our owne meanes and dyscorde bytwene ourselfe; and we se dayly that all realmes deuyded are dystroyed; it hath been sene by the realme of Fraunce, Spayne, Naples, and by landes of the church, as we maye se dayly by the two popes. whiche is and shall be to their dystruccioy; also it hath been sene by the cōtrey of Flaunders, howe by their owne meanes they are dystroyed; also presently it is sene by the lande of Frece,<sup>2</sup> with whome our cosyns of Haynalt are in warre, and howe the frenchemen amonge theymselfe are dystroyed; in lykewyse amonge ourselfe, without god prouyde for vs, we shall dystroy our selfe; the apparaunce therof sheweth greatly. Nowe the kyng suffereth that my sonne and heyre shall do batayle for a thyng of nought, and I that am his father maye nat speake to the contrary, for myne owne honoure and for my sonnes, for my sonne hathe the body of a knyght mete to entre into armes agaynst the erle Marshall; howbeit, take the best therof, they shall neuer loue agayne togyder as they dyd before. Thus said the duke of Lancastre.

All the seasoone that these two lordes dyd prouyde to do dedes of armes at vtterance the duke of Lancastre came neuer at ȝ kyng, nor but lytell at his sonne, and that he dyd for a polycy: for the Duke knewe well ȝ his sonne was marueylously well beloued in Englande, both with noble men and with other, and specyally with the londoners, for they had promysed and sayd to hym: Syr, be ye of good comforte in this busynesse, for howesoeuer the matter tourne, ye shall scape with honour, whether the kyng wyll or nat, or all the Marmosettes aboute hym, for we knowe well this mater is made and concyed by enuy, to the entente to driue you out of the realme, bycause ye be well beloued with many men; and if so be that ye departe in trouble, ye shall entre agayne with ioye, for ye ought rather to rule than Rycharde of Burdeaulx: for they that wyll seke out the profoundnesse of the mater, maye well knowe fro whence ye came, and fro whence he came, wherby they maye knowe ȝ ye be more nerer to the crowne of Englande than Rycharde of Burdeaulx, though we haue made to hym faythe and homage, and haue helde hym for our kyng more thanne this twenty yere; but that was by fauour and purchase of his grauntfather good kyng Edwarde, who douted of this poynte that we nowe speke of, and on a tyme great question was made bytwene kyng Edwarde your grauntfather by youre father syde, and duke Henry of Lancastre your grauntfather by your mother syde, the Lady Blaunche of Lancastre; but the lordes of Englande that than reygned apesed the matter, for kyng Edwarde was so valyaunt a man, and so happy in all his enterprises, that he had the loue of all his people poore and riche; nor also your grauntfather of Lancastre wolde nothyng to the Kyng but well and good, and serued the kyng in his tyme nobly and trewly, so that he is as yet to be recommaunded. These maters well consydred by kyng Rycharde, he myght well repente hym that he is no better gouerned than he is. Suche wordes these londoners spake: though they knewe but lytell of the trouth, that they spake was of a syn-guler fauoure. The erle of Derby receyued their wordes well aworthe, and dayly prepared for the batayle, and he desyred his frendes to be at that iourney, and so euery man prepared hymselfe, accordyng to the Erles desyre.

The

<sup>2</sup> Friezland.

The kynge all the season that these two lordes prepared for their batayle he had many ymagynacions, whether he shulde suffre them to fyght or nat. Though he were kynge of Englande, and more douted than any other kynge before hym, yet nyght and daye he kept about hym a garde of two thousande archers, who were payed their wages wekely: for the kynge trusted nat greatly in theym that were nexte of his blode, excepte his brother the erle of Huntynghton, and the erle of Salisbury, and the erle of Rutlande, his cosyn germaine, sonne to the duke of yorke, who was well in the kynges fauoure, and certayne knightes of his chambre: as for all other he cared lytell for. When the day aproched that these two lordes shulde do their dedes of armes as they hadde promysed, and had every thyng redy prepared, than on a daye, certayne of the kynges counsaile came to the kynge, and demaunded what was his entencion that these two lordes shulde do, and sayde: Sir, wyll ye suffre theym to fyght? Ye truelye, quod the kyng; why shulde they nat? we wyll se their dedes of armes: paraduenture we shall knowe therby that we knowe nat as yet, and shulde be right necessary to knowe, to the entente we shulde prouyde for it: for there is none so great in Englande but if he displease me I shall cause hym to make me amendes; for if I shulde any thyng submitte me to my subiettes, they wolde soone ouercome me; and I knowe for certayne that some of theym of my blode haue hadde dyners treatyse togyuder agaynste me and myne estate, and the moost princypall of the was the duke of Gloucestre, for in all Englande was natte a worse hedde agaynste me than he was. Nowe I shall haue peace fro hense forward, for I shall do well ynough with all the other; but, sirs, I praye you shewe me why ye make this demaunde to me. Sir, quod they, we are bounde to counsaile you; and, sir, we often tymes here wordes spoken that ye canne nat here, for, sir, ye be in youre chambre, and we abroad in the countrey or in London, where many thynges be spoken whiche greatlye toucheth you and vs also. Sir, it were tyme to prouyde remedy, and so ye muste do: sir, we counsaile you for the best. Howe so? quod the kyng; speke further and spare natte, for I wyll do euery thyng parteynyng to reason, and minyster iustyce in my realme. Sir, quod they, the renoume ronneth throughout Englande, and specially in the cytie of London, whiche is the soueraygne cytie of youre realme; they saye ye are cause of this enterpryce bytwene these two lordes, and that ye haue sette the erle Marshall to fyght with the erle of Derby.

The Londoners and dyners other noble men and prelates of þe realme saye, howe ye take the ryght waye to distroye your lygnage and the realme of Englande, whiche thyng they saye they wyll natte suffre; and if the Londoners rise agaynste you, with suche noble men as wyll take their parte, ye shall be of no puyssaunce to resyst theym; and also they haue you in a marueylous suspecte, bycause ye be alyed by maryage with the Frenche kynge, wherby ye be the worse beloued of all youre people; and, sir, knowe for certayne, that if ye suffre these two Erles to come into the place to do batayle, ye shall nat be lorde of the felde, but the Londoners and suche lordes of their parte wyll rule the felde, for the loue and fauoure that they beare to the erle of Derby: and the erle Marshall is soore hated, and specially the Londoners wolde he were slayne; and thre partes of the people of Englande saye, that whan ye harde þe wordes fyrst bytwene these two erles, that ye shulde haue done otherwyse than ye dyd, and that ye shulde haue broken the quarell, and haue sayd: Sirs, ye are bothe my cosyns and lyegmen, therfore I commaunde you to kepe the peace fro hensforthe: and shulde haue taken the Erle of Derby by the hande and haue ledde hym into youre chambre, and haue shewed hym some signe of loue; and bycause ye dyde nat thus, the brute ronneth that ye beare fauour to the erle Marshall's partie, and are agaynste the erle of Derby: sir, consyder well these wordes that we shewe you, for they be trewe: sir, ye had neuer more nede of good counsaile than ye haue nowe. When the kynge herde these wordes,

he chaunged countynauce, the wordes were so quickly spoken; therwith the kynge tourned fro them, and leaned out at a wyndowe, and studyed a certayne space, and than he tourned agayne to them that had spoken to hym, who were the archebyssshoppe of yorke, and the Erles of Salisbury and of Huntingdon his bretherne, and three other knyghtes of his chambre; than he sayde to them: Sirs, I haue well herde you, and if I shulde refuce your counsaile, I were greatly to blame; wherfore, sirs, consyder what is beste for me to do. Sir, quod one of theym that spake for all, the matter that we haue spoken of is ryght peryllous; ye muste dissymule the mater if ye wyll haue youre honour saued and to make peace; and, sir, ye ought rather to entertayne the generalite of your realme than the ydell wordes of two knyghtes: but, sir, the brute thoroughe out all the realme of Englande is, howe the erle Marshall hath greatlye trespassed, and hath renewed to many yuell thinges, and daylye reneweth, and the realme taketh all his wordes in vayne, and saith, how that by his ydell wordes he wolde reise a processe agaynst the erle of Derby, and to bringe the lande into trouble: first, they say it were better that he abode the payne, and the erle of Derby to be quyte. Sir, we thynke, that or they shulde arme thē to mete togyder, that ye shulde sende to them and cause thē to be bounde to abyde youre ordynance in this enterprise; and whan they be surely bounde to abyde youre sentence, than ye maye gyue theym this iudgemente: That within fyftene dayes after, the erle Marshall to auoyde the realme, without any truste euer to retourne agayne; and therle of Derby in lykewyse to auoyde the realme, and to be banysshed for tenne yere; and whan he shall departe the realme (to please the people withall) release foure yere of the tenne, and so let hym be banysshed for sixe yere without pardone. This is the counsaile, sir, that we wyll gyue you; for, sir, in no wyse let them be armed one agaynst another, for the inconuenyentes that maye fall therby. The kynge studyed a lytell, and sayde: Sirs, ye counsaile me trewly, and I shall folowe youre counsaile.

*Howe kynge Richarde gaue sentence, wherby he banysshed out of Englande therle of Derby for x. yere, and the erle Marshall for euer.*

#### CAP. CCXXIX.\*

ANONE after that this cōsaile was gyuen to the kynge, he assembled great nombre of prelates and grete lordes of Englande, and they came to hym to Elthā; there was his two vnclcs, the duke of Lancastre and the duke of yorke, the erles of Northumberlande, of Salysbury, and of Huntynghon: than the kynge sente for the erle of Derby and the erle Marshall, and sette echē of them in a seuerall chābre. The kynge shewed howe he wolde be a meane bytwene them, and howe their wordes hadde greatly displeased hym, and that they were suche that ought nat lightly to be pardoned, wherfore he wolde in all poyntes they shulde submytte themselves, and to abyde his ordynance in that behalfe. Than he ordayned the constable of Englande and foure other great lordes to go to the erle of Derby and to therle Marshall to take their bondes to abyde the kynges ordynance.

These lordes came to the sayd erles, and shewed them the kynges pleasure, and how the kynge wolde take the matter on hym: so they bounde themselves to abyde the kynges order. Than the kynge sayde: I ordayne and commaunde that the erle Marshall,  
bycause

\* Chapter CCXXV.



bycause he hath brought this realme into this trouble, by reason of his wordes, wherin he canne nat make profe, That he ordayne himselfe to auoide this realme of Englande, and goo dwell in what place he lyste out therof, and that he be banysshed in suche wyse that he neuer retourne agayne: and also I ordayne, that the erle of Derby our cosyn, bycause he hathe displeased vs, and that he is the chiefe cause of the hautysshment of therle Marshall, That within this fyftene dayes he auoyde the realme of Englande, and to be banysshed for tenne yeres without retournyng, excepte we repeale hym agayne, the whiche shall alwayes lye in our pleasure.

This sentence greatly contented the lordes that were there present, and they sayde: the erle of Derby maye well ynoughe go and sporte hym out of the realme for two or thre yeres, he is yonge ynoughe; though he haue been sore traueyled in his dayes in farre countreis, as into Pruce,<sup>a</sup> and to the holy Sepulchre, to Cayre,<sup>b</sup> and to saynt Katheryns mount: so he may do yet, goo some other voyages to passe the tyme if he lyste; he knoweth wyll ynoughe whider to go; he hath two susters, one quene of Spaygne, the other quene of Portugale; he maye well passe the tyme with them, and also as nowe there is no warre: whan he cometh into Spaygne he maye moue them to make warrre vpon the Sarazyns, and to make a voyage into Granade, wherby he maye better employe his tyme than abydyng in Englande, or elles he maye goo into Heynalte to his brother<sup>c</sup> and cosyn the Erle of Ostreaunt, who wyll receyue hym with great ioye and retaygne hym, for he hathe warre with the Fresons; and in Haynaulte he maye dayly here newes out of Englande and fro his children; he can natte go amysse goo where he wyll; and the kyng maye repeale hym agayne by good meanes whan it shall please hym, for he is one of the fayrest floures in his garlande; he shall nat be longe absente, if the kyng purpose to haue the loue of his people; but the erle Marshall is in a farre worse case, for he is banysshed without hope for euer to retourne agayne; and to saye the trouthe, he hath well deserued it, for all this myschiefe is come by hym and by his wordes. Thus dyuers knyghtes and squyers of Englande talked toguyder one with another the same daye that the kyng gaue the sayde iugemēt.

*Howe the erle of Derby departed fro London to go into Fraunce, and the erle Marshall went into Flaunders and so into Lombardy.*

C A P. CCXXX.<sup>d</sup>

WHAN these two Erles sawe what sentence ¶ kyng had gyuen them, they were ryght sore pensyue, and good cause why. The erle Marshall sore repented hym of that he had said and done, for whan he began the mater he thought otherwyse to haue ben borne out by the kyng than he was: for if he hadde knowen as moche before he wolde neuer haue begon the matter. Whan he sawe there was no remedy, he made hym redy, and made his exchaung fro London to Bruges, and so cāe to Calays, where as he had been capitayne, and there toke his leaue and so went to Bruges, and there taryed a fyftene dayes, and than to Gaunt, and so to Maynges,<sup>e</sup> and finally to Colloigne.

Lette vs leaue spekyng of hym, and speke of the erle of Derby, who prepared hymselfe in lykewise to departe out of Englande, accordyng to the kynges sentēce.

Whan

<sup>a</sup> Prussia.

<sup>b</sup> Cairo.

<sup>c</sup> "In armis."

<sup>d</sup> Chapter CCXXVI.

<sup>e</sup> Mechlin.

Whan his daye of departure aproched he came to Eltham to the kyng, where as the duke of Lācastre his father was, and the duke of yorke with them, the erle of Northumberlande, and sir Henry Percy his sonne, with a great nombre of other knyghtes and squyers of Englande, suche as loued hym, and were soore displeased of the fortune that he muste auoyde the realme. These lordes came thyder to se what ende the kyng wolde make in the mater, of whose cōmyng the kyng made semblaunt to be right ioyfull, and made them great chere, and helde a great court; also there was the erle of Salisbury, and the erle of Huntyngton, brother to the kyng, who hadde to his wyfe the duke of Lancastres doughter, and suster to the erle of Derby: these two lordes came to therle of Derby; I knowe nat if they dissymuled or nat: at the erles departyng the kyng humyled hym greatly to his cosyn of Derby, and said: As Godde helpe me, it right greatly displeaseth me the wordes that hath been bytwene you and the Erle Marshall; but the sentence that I haue gyuen is for the beste, and for to ap ease therby the people, who greatly murmured on this matter; wherefore, cosyn, yet to ease you somewhat of your payne, I release my iudgement fro tenne yere to syxe yere. Cosyn, take this aworth, and ordayne you thereafter. The erle answered and sayd: Sir, I thāke your grace, and whan it shall please you ye shall do me more grace. All the lordes that were there were well contented with the kyng as for that tyme. Than euery man departed, and some went to London with the erle of Derby. The Erle made all his prouisyon at Douer to passe to Calays; and the erle beyng at London or his departure was counsayled by his father for to go streight to the Frenche kyng and to his cosyns in Fraunce; and accordyng to his fathers counsaile so he dyde, or elles he wolde haue gone to the erle of Ostreuaunt his brother<sup>a</sup> and cosyn. Whan the Erle departed fro London, there were in the stretes mo thanne fourtie thousande men, wepyng and cryng after hym, that it was pytie to here; and sōe said: O gentyll erle of Derby, shall we thus leaue you? This realme shall neuer be in ioye tyll ye retourne agayne; but the daye of retourne is very longe, for enuy, falsehed, and trayson hath putte you out of this realme, where as ye ought to abyde rather thā many other, for ye are of suche lynage, and of so noble blode, that none ought to be compared to you; and gentyll erle, why shalle we leaue you? ye neuer dyde nor thought yuell.

Thus men and women pituously spake: He was nat conueyed out of the cytie with instrumentes, but with lamentable wepynges; and some sayd secretelye: Cōsider the order of these people, what displeasure they take for a small occasyon; whosoer wolde styrr the Londoners to ryse agaynst the kyng, he might than go seke further, and flye out of the realme rather than the erle of Derby; but it is as nowe no tyme, si the duke of Lācastre his father suffreth it, we must nedes suffre it. The mayre of Lōdon and a great nombre of the chiefe burgesses accompanied therle of Derby out of the cytie: some rode to Dartforde and some to Douer, and sawe hym take shipping, and than they returned: and the erle of Derby, or he came to Calais, he hadde sent a knight and an heralude to the Frenche kyng, and to his brother the duke of Orlyaunce, and to ȝ kynges vnclis, the dukes of Berrey, of Burbon, and of Burgoyne, to knowe the kynges pleasure if he wolde suffre the Erle to abyde at Parys, and to kepe there his house, and to pay for euery thyng that he or his men shulde take. To this request the Frenche kyng and his vnclis lightly agreed, and shewed that they were right ioyfull of his cōmyng, and said, howe they were ryght sorie of the erles trouble. These messengers returned to Calais, and founde the erle redy there. The frēche kyng sent sir Charles of Hangers to open all the cyties and townes bytwene Calais and Paris, to receyue therle and his cōpany. Thus the erle of Derby departed fro Calays, and toke the waye to Amyence, and in euery place he was well receyued.

*Howe*

<sup>a</sup> i. e. In arms.

*Howe the lorde Guillyam, erle of Ostreuaunt, sente to his cosyn therle of Derby certayne messangers; and howe therle came to Paris, and howe he was receyued.*

C A P. CCXXXI.<sup>a</sup>

THE erle of Ostreuaūt beyng at Quesnoy, assone as he knewe that his Cosyn the erle of Derby was passed the see, and was come to Calais, he ordayne sir Anncell of Trassagetes<sup>b</sup> and sir Fierebras of Vertayne to ride to Calais, and to desyre the erle of Derby to come into Heynaulte to sporte hym and to abyde there a season, promysynge hym to haue good chere. These two knyghtes departed fro Quesnoy, and rode to Cambrey and to Bapames, for they herde newes that the erle was departed fro Calais, and hadde taken the waye to Amycēe and so to go to Parys. These two knyghtes mette hym by the waye; they spake with hym and dyde their message, so that the Erle thanked them, and also his cosyn that had sent them to him; and than he excused hymselfe, and sayd howe he had made his prouisyon to go into Fraunce as at that tyme to the Frenche kyng and to his cosyns of Fraunce, but he wolde nat renounce the curtesy that his cosyn of Heynalt had shewed hym. Than these two knyghtes departed and returned, and shewed therle of Ostreuaunt what they had sene and done: and therle of Derby and his company rode so long that he aproched nere to Parys. Whā the kyng and the duke of Orlyauce and his vncler knewe that the erle of Derby came to Paris, he prepared his chābers in his place of saynt Poule richely to receyue therle, and caused all lordes to issue out of the cytie to receyue hym, and the kyng taryed at the house of saynt Poule. First mette hym the duke of Berrey and the duke of Orlyauce, and than the duke of Burgoyne and the duke of Burbon, and other noble prelates, lordes, and knyghtes: at the metyng there was frendly chere, and so in good order they entred into Paris with great ioye. The same daye one great mysfortune fell: there was a squyer named Boniface mounted on a great coursar, whiche horse rose vpright vpon his hynder fete and fell backwarde, and the squyers hedde lyght vpon the stones, that his hedde cloue asonder and so dyed: of whose dethe the duke of Orlyauce was ryght sorie, for he loued hym entierly, and so dyde the lorde of Coucy in his dayes, for he brought hym into Fraūce out of Lombardy.

Thus they came to the house of saynt Poule, where the kyng was, who receyued the erle nobly; and therle was sage and wyse, and knewe moch of that parteyned to honour: he made his reuerēce, and acquainted hym with the kyng after good maner so moche that he greatly pleased the kyng, and for good loue he gaue the erle his deuyse to weare, the whiche the erle receyued ioyfully. The wordes that were bitwene them I can nat tell, but all was well; and after takyng of spyce and wyne, the erle toke leaue of the kyng, and than went to the queene in the same house, and she made hym ioyouse chere: than after the erle departed and toke his horse to go to his lodgyng, and so was conueyed thyder. Thus passed the tyme, and the lordes of Frannc dyde often tymes kepe hym company, and caused hym to passe f̄ tyme with sportes and otherwyse, to the entent he shulde thynke the season the shorter, bycause he was out of his owne nacion.

Nowe lette vs leaue spekyng of the erle of Derby, and somewhat speke of the ordynance of the church of the two popes, Benedic beyng at Auignon, and Bonyface at Rome.

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXXVII.<sup>b</sup> Trassegines.

*Howe the treatie that had been at Reynes<sup>a</sup> bitwene the Frenche kyng and the kyng of Almaygne,<sup>b</sup> concernyng the vnyte of the churche, was folowed; and howe the bysshoppe of Cabray was sent by the sayd kyng to Rome and to Auynon, to thē that wrote themselfe popes, to thētent that they shulde depose thēselse fro their papalytes, and submyt thē to the order of these two kynges.*

C A P. CCXXXII.<sup>c</sup>

YE haue herde here before howe  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> and  $\hat{y}$  kyng of Fraunce, and the lordes of thempire and their cōsails had ben at the cytie of Reynes,<sup>a</sup> and there they had dyuers secrete counsayls; and their entencion was to bring the churche into a partyte vnyte: for to folowe the way that the churche helde as than, the errour was to great; and also ye haue herde howe mayster Peter de Ailly, bysshoppe of Cambrey, was sent in legacion to Rome to speke with pope Boniface: he spedde hym so in his iourney that he came to Fouides,<sup>d</sup> and there loude pope Boniface, and to hym he delyuered his letters of credence, dyirected fro the kynges of Almayne<sup>b</sup> and of Fraunce. The pope receyued them and the bysshoppe right mekelye: the pope knewe well parte of his message: than the bysshoppe declared  $\hat{y}$  cause of his cōmyng. When the pope hadde well herde hym, he sayde: Howe the answeere laye nat all onely in hym, but also in all the cardynalles that had chosen hym pope; but he said, whan he hadde spoken with them by delyberate counsayle, than he wolde make suche an answeere that he trusted to content them. This answeere was suffycient for that tyme. The bysshoppe dynd that daye in the popes palyce, and certayne cardynalles with hym: than after the pope departed fro Foundes<sup>d</sup> and went to Rome, and there the pope assembled a conuocacion of the cardynalles in his palyce besyde saynt Peters churche: in this consistorie there were none but the pope and his cardynalles; and there the pope shewed the request that the kyng of Almayne<sup>b</sup> and the Frenche kyng had made hym by the bysshoppe of Cambrey, and there he demaunded cōsaille what answeere he shuld make. There were thañ many reasons alledged, for it semed right contrary to the cardinalles to put downe that they hadde made; they sayde it shulde be greatly to their shame and rebuke. Than they said to the pope: Holy father, to cause these kynges to be in a good hope  $\hat{y}$  ye wyll obey to thē, ye must sōwhat dissymule  $\hat{y}$  mater, and saye howe ye wyll gladly obey to all thyng that the kyng of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> the kyng of Hungry, and the kyng of Englande wyll counsayle you vnto: so that he that is in Auignon, who writeth hymselfe pope Benedic, whom the Frenche kyng and the frenchmen vpholde in his errour, that he depose hym of the name of papalyte; and thā whersoer it shall please the sayde kynges to apoynt a cōclaue, ye wyll be redy and all your bretherne the cardynalles. This counsayle pleased well pope Boniface. This was the speciall and general answeere that the bysshoppe of Cambrey had. And whan the Romayns vnderstode that  $\hat{y}$  kynges of Almayne<sup>b</sup> and of Fraunce had sente to their pope their ambassade to haue him to leaue his papalyte, anone there multiplyed great murmuracion through the cytie of Rome; and the romayns douted greatly to lese the popes siege, whiche was yerey to them a gret profyte: for all pardons that shulde be two yere after, the vantage therof shulde growe to the cytie of Rome, and agaynst that pardone they had made great prouisyon, wherfore they douted lest it shulde haue ben loste, whiche shulde greatly haue ben to their preiudyce. Than the moost notablist perones in Rome assembled togyder, and came to the Pope and shewed hym more signe of loue than euer they hadde done before,

<sup>a</sup> Rheims.<sup>b</sup> Germany:<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXXXVIII.<sup>d</sup> Fondi.

before, and sayd: Holy father, ye are the trewe pope, therefore lese nat your herytage and patrimony of the church, the whiche was saynt Peters: take neuer counsaile to the contrarye, but abyde still as pope, for who so euer be agaist you, we shal abyde with you, and ieparde oure bodyes and goodes to defende you in youre right. The pope answered and sayd: My welbeloued chyldren, be of good confort, and be well assured that I wyll abyde as pope, for any treatie of kyng or kynges to the contrary. Thus the Romayns were contented and apesed, and returned to their houses. The popes answer was alwayes to the bysshoppe of Cambrey, that whā he perceyued clerely that Benedic deposed hymselfe, than he said, he wolde be ordred by the sayde kynges. So the bysshoppe returned and came into Almaygne,<sup>a</sup> and founde the kyng a Coualence,<sup>b</sup> and there he shewed f answer that he had at Rome. Than the kyng of Almaygne<sup>c</sup> sayde: Well, shewe all this to our brother and cosyn the Frenche kyng, and as he ordreth hymselfe, so shall I order me, and all the empyre; but as farre as I can se, he must begyn fyrst; and whan he hath putte downe his pope, than we shall putte downe ours. Than the bysshoppe departed from the kyng, and rode tyll he cāe to Parys, wher he foude the Frenche kyng, and there the bysshoppe shewed his answer whiche was kept secrete, tyll the kyng had assembled toguyder more nōbre of noble men and prelates of his realme, by whome he wolde be counsayled, howe he shulde procede further.

*Howe the Frenche kyng assēbled the prelates and other noble men of his realme, with the Vniuersyte of Paris, to take counsaile howe they shulde order pope Benedic, at Auygnou.*

GAP. CCXXXIII.<sup>e</sup>

WHAN the frenche kyng had herde the aunswere of pope Bonyface at Rome, and howe the kyng of Almayne<sup>a</sup> in lykewyse answered, how that first pope Benedyc muste be put downe: that done, than he wolde make a conuocacyon of prelates and noble men of his realme, and come to Parys. There were certayne prelates in Fraunce, as the archebysshop of Reins,<sup>d</sup> syr Guy of Roie, and the archebysshoppes of Rone<sup>e</sup> and Sens, and the bysshoppes of Parys, of Beauoys, and of Auxer, they had sore susteyned the opynions of pope Benedyc, at Auygnou, and specially of Clement, bycause he was auanced by their meanes; these syxe prelates were nat called to the kyng in this counsaile, but other prelates and the vnyuersyte of Parys; and whan the bysshop of Cambrey had shewed before them all, howe he had spedde at Rome, and the aunswere that pope Bonyface and his cardynals had made hym, and the aunswere of the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> than they entred into counsaile, and it was agreed, f the vnyuersite shulde haue the greatest voyce: than it was determyned by the vnyuersite, that the kyng shulde sende syr Bouciquant his marshall into the partyes of Auygnou, and to do so moche by treatie or otherwise, that Benedic shulde leaue his papalyte and to ordeyne hymselfe in all poyntes by the kyng and his counsaile, and that the church in all the lymytacions in the realme of Fraunce shulde be as newter, tyll the church were brought into parfyte vnyte; and that doone, than eury thyng to returne to the true right. Than this counsaile was thought good, and was accepted of the kyng and all other. Than

VOL. II.

4 Z

the

<sup>a</sup> Germany.<sup>b</sup> Constance.<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXXIX.<sup>d</sup> Rheims.<sup>e</sup> Rouen.

the marshall of Fraunce, and the bysshop of Cambray, were ordeyned to go to Auignon: they departed fro Parys, and rode tyll they came to Lyons, on the ryuer of Rosne, and ther they two departed asōdre, for it was ordeyned that the marshall shulde tary there styll tyll he herd tydynges fro the bysshoppe, who rode forthe and so came to Auignon; there were some of the cardynalles that knewe well wherfore he came, but they dissymuled the mater to knowe what pope Benedic wolde say. When the bysshop of Cambraye had refreshed hym at his lodgyng, and had chaunged his apparell, than he wente to the popes palays: and when he came in the popes presence he made his reuerence, but nat in such wyse as he ought to haue doone, if he had taken hym as pope, as other men dyd, and yet he made hym bysshoppe of Cambray, but that promocyon he had by the meanes of the lordes of Fraunce. Than the bysshoppe of Cambray, who was well langaged, bothe in laten and in frenche, spake and shewed howe he was sent thyder fro the french kyng, and fro the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and so beganne his proces: and when the bysshoppe came to the vtterance of the mater, howe the pope shulde resygne and depose hymselfe fro the papall dygnyte, and that he that was at Rome shulde do likewyse. With those wordes the pope beganne to chaunge colour, and lyfte vp his voyce, and sayd: I haue endured great payne and traueyle for the church, and by good election I was created pope, and nowe to depose myselfe, that shall I neuer do during my lyfe; and I wyll that the frenche kyng knowe that for all his ordynaūce I wyll do nothyng therafter, but I wyll kepe my name and papalyte tyll I dye. Syr, quod the bysshoppe of Cambray, sauynge your grace, I toke you for more prudent than I nowe fynde you; fyrste demaūde counsaile of your bretherne the cardynalles, and than make aunsweere, for you alone can nat make no resystence agaynst them if they agree to this opynyon, nor ye are nat able to resyste the puyssaunce of the kynges of Fraunce and Almayne.<sup>a</sup> Than two cardynalles that were there such as the pope had made before, they perceyuyng the mater nat lykely to do well, rose and sayd to the pope: Holy father, the bysshoppe of Cambray speketh well; syr, we desyre you do herin after his counsaile. Well, quod the pope, I am contente. So they departed for that tyme, and the bysshop went to his lodgyng, and went nat to se any cardynals, but dyssymuled hymselfe. The nexte day betymes the bell sowned to the consistory, and than there was a conuocacyon of all the cardynalles that were at Auignon: they all assembled at the palays, and entred into the consistory, and thyder was called the bysshop of Cambraye, who in laten shewed at length his message, and the cause of his comyng thyder. When he had sayd, than he was answered, howe the pope shulde take counsaile to answeere, and in the meane tyme he to departe out of the house, and so he dyd; and in the meane season Benedic and his cardynalles counsayled togyder, and were longe debatynge of the mater: and many thought it herde and a contrary mater to put downe that they had created. Than the cardynall of Amyence spake and sayd: Lordes, whether we wyll or nat, it must behoue vs to obey the Frenche kyng, and the kinge of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> sythe they be conioyned togyder, for without thē we can nat lyue; howbeit, we shulde do well ynough with the kyng of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> if the frenche kyng wolde take our parte: but it is otherwyse, for he cōmaundeth vs to obey, or els he wyll stoppe fro vs the frutes of our benefyces, without the whiche we can nat lyue: trewe it is, holy father, that we haue created you as pope, on ŷ condycion that to your power ye shulde ayde to reforme the church, and to bring it into parfyte vnyon; and this ye haue alwayes sayd and mayntayned; therefore syr, aunsweere atemperately, and in suche maner as we may prayse you, for syr, ye ought better to know your owne corage than we. Than dyuers other of the cardynalles sayd: syr, the cardynall of Amyence sayeth well and wysely, wherfore syr, we pray you

<sup>a</sup> Germany.

you all in generall, that ye wyll speke, and shewe vs what ye wyll do. Than Benedyc answered and said: the vnyon of the church I desyre, and I haue taken great payne therin, but syth god of his deuynce grace hath pryoyded for me the papalyte, and that ye haue chosen me therto: as longe as I lyue I wyll be pope, and I wyll nat depose myselfe nouthor for kyng, duke, erle, nor other treatie, nor by no processe nor meanes, but ý I wyll abyde pope. Than the cardynals rose vp all togyder with great murmurynge; some sayd he had spoken well, and some sayd contrary. Thus they dyffered and were in dyscorde; the most parte departed out of the consistory, and toke no leaue of the pope, and returned to their lodgynges; some, such as were in this popes fauour, taryed styll with hym. When the bysshoppe of Cambray sawe howe they departed in suche maner, he knewe well they acorded nat well, and therwith auanuced hymselfe, and entred into the consistory, and so came to the pope wyle he sate styll in his see, and without doynge of any great reuerence sayde: Syr, gyue me myne aunswere; sythe ye haue had your counsaile aboute you, ye ought to gyue me myne aunswere that I may retourne. This pope Benedic who was in great dyspleasure for the wordes that the cardynall of Amyence had spoken, sayd: Bysshoppe of Cambray, I haue counsaile of dyners of my bretherne the cardynals, who hath created me into the dignyte papall, and haue receyued all the solempnities therto belongyng, and am writen and named pope by all my subgyettes, and as pope I wyll abyde as longe as I lyue: I wyll nat do the contrary to dye in the payne, for I haue doone no cause why to lese it: and saye to our sonne of Fraunce, that hyther vnto I haue taken him as a good catholyke prince, but nowe by synister meanes if he wyll entre into great errour, he wyll repent it; I praye you to say to hym fro me, that he be well aduysed howe he enclyneth to any thyng that shulde trouble his consyence. Therwith this Benedic rose out of his chayre, and went into his chambre, and certayne cardynalles with hym, and the bysshoppe of Cambray returned to his lodgyng, and dyned sobrelly, and than after toke his horse and passed the bridge of Rone, and came to vile Nefe,<sup>a</sup> and at nyght lay at Baignoulx, whiche partaygned to the realme of Fraunce: and he vnderstode that syr Boucyquaut, marshall of Fraunce, was come to porte saynt Andrewe, a nyne leages fro Auignon. The nexte day thyder came the bysshoppe of Cambray, and shewed hym the aunswere of Benedic. When the marshall vnderstode that this pope Benedic wolde nat obey the kyng his maysters ordynaunce, he sayd to the bysshop: syr, ye are best to retourne into Fraunce, ye haue no more to do here, and I shall execute that I am comāunded to do by the kyng and his vnclis. The next daye the bysshoppe departed and toke the way to Albenoys, and to Pyne,<sup>b</sup> and the marshall set clerkes awarke to write, and sente for knyghtes, squyers, and men of warre, through all the countrey of Viurays, of Vyuieres, and Auuergne, to Mountpellyer, for he had comysson so to do by the king; and also he sent to the seneschall of Beucayre, that he shulde close all the passages as well by the ryuer of Rone as by lande, to the entent that nothyng shulde entre into Auignon; he wente hymselfe to the pownte saynt Esperyte, and closed there the passage ouer the ryuer of Rone, that nothyng shulde entre that way into Auignon. Thus the marshall dayly gathered men of warre, and many came to serue hym, some for obeyesauce, and some to pylle and robbe theym of Auignon. There came to hym syr Raymonde of Thourayne, and the lorde de la Both, the lorde of Tornon, the lorde of Monclaue, and the lorde Duses, so ý the marshall had a great nombre of men. Than the marshall sent an haraulde to defye pope Benedic in his palays, and all the cardynals that wolde take his parte. This was harde tydynges to the cardynals, and to them in the cytie of Auignon, for they knewe well they coulde nat longe susteyne the warre agaynst the puyssaunce of the Frenche kyng; than they determyned to go and speake with the

<sup>a</sup> Villeneuve.<sup>b</sup> Puy.

pope, and so they dyd, and shewed hym howe they coulde nat nor wolde nat susteyne the warre agaynst the frenche kyng: for they sayd they must lyue and haue their marchaundyse to go as well by lande as by ryuer. This Benedyc aunswere folysshly and sayd: syrs, your cytie is stronge and well prouyded: I wyll sende for men of warre to Gennes,<sup>a</sup> and into other places, and to my sonne the kyng of Aragon, that he come and serue me, whiche I am sure he wyll do, for he is bounde therto for two causes, he is of my lynage, and also he ought to be obeysant to the pope: Sirs, ye are abashed of to lytell a cause, go your wayes and kepe and defende your towne, and I shall kepe my palays. Other aunswere the cardynals and the men of the cytie coulde nat haue of this Benedyc. So euery man returned home. This Benedic had of longe tyme purueyed his palays with wyne, corne, larde, oyle, and of all other thynges parteynyng to a fortesse; and also he was of his person hygh and cruell, and wolde nat be abashed for a lytell thyng. The marshall of Fraunce departed fro pount saynt Spyrite, and passed with all his company by the towne of Orenge, by consent of the prince of Orenge, and so entred into the countre of Venyce,<sup>b</sup> whiche was lande parteynyng to the church, the whiche anone was ouerryne: and the men of warre passed at y<sup>e</sup> bridge of Sourgnys,<sup>c</sup> and so they were lordes of all the ryuer; and the marshall taryed in the towne of Sourgnys,<sup>c</sup> with a gret nombre of menne of warre to kepe the towne and passage, and also the garysone of Noues,<sup>d</sup> whiche partayned to the pope. Than the marshall went and lodged at saynt Verayne, nere to Auignon, and his men therabout: and dayly came thyder men of warre, so that the cytie of Auignon was closed in before and behinde by lande and by the ryuer, so that no thyng coulde entre nor issue without leaue; for at the towne of Noue,<sup>d</sup> without Auygnon, whiche partayned to the realme of Fraunce, was the seneschall of Beaucayre, with fyue hundred men, and kepte the entre on that syde, and the marshall of Fraunce, with two thousande men was on the other syde of Auignon, and he sent to theym of the cytie that without they wolde obey and open their cytie, that he wolde burne all their vynes and houses abrode in the country aboute to the ryuer of Dureuse.<sup>e</sup> That sōmonyng greatly abashed the men and women within the cytie, for their herytages laye without Auignon vnto the ryuer of Dureuse.<sup>e</sup> Than they went to counsayle without knowledge of the pope, and they called to their counsayle certayne cardynals, as the cardynall of Amyence, of Poictours, of Newcastle,<sup>f</sup> of Viuyers, and dyuers other. Than suche as had moste to lose shewed these cardynalles howe the marshall of Fraunce had threthened them to brinne their vynes and their howses, and all this had caused the frenche kyng, agaynst whome they coulde nat resyste, for his puyssaunce was so nere them; and all thynges consydred, they sayde they were better to obey to the frenche kyng, than to holde their paryllous opynions, for of Benedyc they coulde haue no ayde nor comforte; and they demanded of these cardynalles if they wolde ioyne and take their parte. The cardynals said, they were content to take their wayes, for vitayles beganne to fayle theym, and also their benefices were in the realme of Fraunce, whiche they sayd they wolde nat wyllingly lese: so they entred into treatie with the marshall of Fraunce, the whiche toke suche effecte, that all the men of warre entred into the cytie of Auignon, and it was apoynted to besiege the palays: their cotynant was to do no hurte nor dyspleasure to the cardynalles, nor to none of their men, nor to the hole body of the towne. This to do the marshall promysed. So they entred into Auignon, and lodged at their ease and lybertie, and than all the passages as well by lande as by water, were opened, to the entent that all maner of vytaile myght come to the cytie.

Whan

<sup>a</sup> Genoa.

<sup>b</sup> The Venaisin.

<sup>c</sup> Sorgues.  
<sup>f</sup> Neuchâtel.

<sup>d</sup> Villeneuve.

<sup>e</sup> Durance.



Whan he that wrote himselfe pope Benedyc, (beynge closed in his palays), sawe that the cardynals and the men of the cytie had made a treatie with the marshall of Fraunce without his counsaile or aduyse, he was therewith sore displeased; howbeit, he sayd that he wolde nat submytte himselfe, to dye in the payne, and so he kepte himselfe close in his palais, which was as stronge a place as any in the world, and most easyest to be kepte, so that it be well vytayled. This pope had sent letters to the kynge of Aragon instantly to socoure hym in his nede, and to sende him men of warre that he myght be able to resyst the marshall of Fraunce: also he sente the kynge worde in his letter, that if he coulde get hym thens fro Auignon, he wolde go and kepe his see apostolyke in Aragon, at Parpygnon, or at Barcelona. The kynge of Aragon sawe well the popes letters, but he made no force of them, and sayd to his counsaile that were aboute hym: What, weneth this preest that to susteyne hym and his argumentes, I shall enterpryse to make warre agaynste the frenche kyng to ayde hym? than I might well be reputed a fole; Syr, quod his counsaile, ye say trouthe, ye haue no nede to medle in that mater, for syr, ye may be sure the frenche kynge hath suche counsaile aboute hym, y he wolde make no warre agaynst hym without a iuste cause; lette the clergy alone, for if they purpose to lyue, the prelates must obey the great lordes vnder whome their rentes and reuennies are, they haue longe kept them in peace: and also syr, the frenche kynge had writen to you allredy, desyringe you to determyne you and your cuntry to be newter, as he is and wyll be: and syr, ye were beste so to do, for my lady the quene who is the Frenche kynges cosyn germayne, is content so to be, and so is the moste parte of your realme, and the clergy in lykewyse, and speycially Catelone<sup>a</sup> and Spayne; and syr, we thynke it is the best opynion, for if all cristen kynges do nat the same, the church shall neuer come to vnyte by reasone of two popes. Thus the kynge of Aragon and his counsaile deuysed togyder, and pope Benedic was styll in his palays, trustynge to haue ayde of the kynge of Aragon, but he was dysceyued; and the marshall of Frauce was within the cytie of Auignon, and the palays was so kept that none coulde issue out nor entre in: they lyued with that store they had, for of vytayles they had suffycient for two or thre yere, but they lacked woode to make fyre withall, and to sethe their meate, whiche made theym abashed; euery weke the marshall herde newes fro the frenche kynge, and the kynge fro hym, and the kynge comāunded hym that he shulde nat departe thens tyll he had atchyued his enterprise. Thus the pope coude nat issue out of y palays, there was suche wache layde on hym.

The conclusyon was, whan this Benedyc sawe that he was so straytely kepte, and that fyre fayled hym, and other prouysions dayly dyscreased, and sawe that no conforte nor ayde came to hym fro no parte, at laste he yelded, at the request of certayne of the cardynalles, and the treatie was thus: y he shulde nat departe out of Auignon, tyll there were made an vnyon in the church: and a certayne garde was sette aboute hym, and the cardynalles and ryche men of Auignon bounde themselves to kepe this Benedyc so strayte, that they shulde rendre accompte of hym agayne, outhur quycke or dede. Suche cardynals as had their benefyces in Fraunce tooke great payne to make this treatie and composycion, for they sayde all with one accorde, that they wolde abyde with the frenche kynge. Thus this busynesse ended at y tyme, and euery man departed, and the Marshall went to Parys, and anone after he ordeyned him to go into the realme of Hungery, for the kynge of Hungery had writen to the frenche kynge howe Lamorabaquy<sup>b</sup> assembled great pyssaunce of men of warre, of turkes, arabyes, tartaryes, and suryens, and of dyuers other of his secte, to fyght with hym. The erle of Derby the same season beynge at Paris, in the house of Clyssone, nere to the temple,

wgs

<sup>a</sup> Catalonia<sup>b</sup> Bajazet.

was wyllunge to go into Hungery, whiche shulde be the lesse coste to the Frenche kynge: for he had enery weke redy payed him fyue hundred crownes of golde, and the erle thought hymselfe moche bounde to the frenche kynge for that grace: and whan that tydynges came fro the kynge of Hungery into Fraunce, the erle of Derby entended well to that mater, and thought in hymselfe that voyage to be ryght honourable for hym to passe his tyme there, wherby he shulde the lightlyer forget the tyme of his trouble: and spake to them of his specyall counsaile, and they counsayled hym to go in that voyage, so that he knewe fyrst the duke of Lancastre, (his fathers), pleasure in that behaffe. Than the erle sent one of his knyghtes, called Dinorth,<sup>a</sup> into Englande, to knowe his fathers pleasure. This knyght came into Englande, and founde the duke of Lancastre at a castell, a twenty myle fro London, called Hertforde: there he shewed hym his sonnes entente. And whan the duke vnderstode the mynde of the erle his sonne, and the good wyll that he had to go into Hungery, to passe the tyme of his banysshment, he was ryght well content, and sayd to the knyght: syr, ye be welcome, your wordes and my sonnes letre requyreth counsaile, ye shall rest you here with vs a season, and in the meane whyle we shall take aduysse, and in the whyle ye may go and se my sonnes chyldren, for ye muste beare tydynges of them to their father. Syr, quod the knyght, ye say true. So this knyght, syr Dynorth,<sup>a</sup> taryed a season in Englande.

Nowe had the frenche kinge good occasyon to write to the kynge of Almayne,<sup>b</sup> and to his couisaile, in what case he had brought pope Benedic and the cardynalles. The kynge than sent thyder a noble ambassade, as the patryarke of Jherusalem, syr Charles of Hangers, and other knyghtes, and they founde the kynge at Strawbourgh,<sup>c</sup> and dyd their message, wherwith the kynge and his counsaile were well content, and sayd, howe they wolde determyne on that matter: but they said, they wolde gladly that the kyng of Englande shulde take the same waye, the whiche they feared shulde be herde to do. With this aunswere the ambassadours retourned into Fraunce, and shewed the kynge what they had doone and sene. The frenche kynge than to thentent to bring his purpose to passe, sente agayne into Englande to kynge Rycharde, and the messengers shewed the kynge the cause of their comyng. The kynge gaue good herynge to the mater, but as than he had nat the prelates of the realme nor the clergy with hym, nor were nat so plyable to folowe his pleasure, as they in Fraunce to folowe the pleasure of their kynge, and this he shewed to the frenche kynges messengers: howebeit, he sayde he wolde do his deuoyre, and so he dyd. And so the messengers returned into Fraunce. And kynge Rycharde on a daye at Westmyenster assembled all his prelates and clergy of Englande, and whan they were there  $\hat{y}$  kynge shewed wysely the dyfference that was in the churche, and howe the frenche kynge by delyberacyon and aduysse of counsaile, and by consent of the vnyuersite of Parys, and other clerkes, he was determyned to be newter, and in lykewyse so are the kynges of Spayne, of Scotlande, of Aragon, and of Nauer, and howe that all Almayne,<sup>b</sup> Boesme,<sup>d</sup> and Italy, were of the same opynyon. In lykewyse the kynge of Englande desyred that his realme shulde folowe the same. Whan the prelates and the clergy, who knewe nothyng why they were sent for, herde that mater, they had great marueyle, and were sore abashed; some stode styll and spake no worde, and some began to murmure, and sayde: Our kynge is become frenche, he entendeth to nothyng, hut to dyshonour and destroy vs, but he shal nat: what, wolde he bringe vs out of our belene? he maye do so moche that he shall haue yuell therof: let vs nat folowe this opynion, sythe the frenche kynge taketh that waye, lette hym holde hymselfe newter, and let vs holde styll our belene, and lette no man put it  
fro

<sup>a</sup> Dymocke ?<sup>b</sup> Germany.<sup>c</sup> Strasburg.<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.

fro vs, without there be greater apparaunce of a surer foundacyon, than we se as yet. Whan kyng Rycharde sawe the dyfference and murmuryng of the clergy, he caused the bysshoppe of London to demaunde of all the clergy what was best to do. They all answered that the matter was so great, that therein requyred great counsaile and delyberacyon: and so they departed, and euery man went to his lodgyng. And whan the londoners knewe the cause of that assemble, and the request that the kyng had made, they were than sore troubled agaynst y kyng, for the people of Englande were so ferrely set on the beleuynge on the pope at Rome, that they wolde nat leaue it, and sayde howe that Rycharde of Burdeaulx wolde destroy them all if he be let alone: his herte is so frenche that he canne nat hyde it: but a daye wyll come to paye for all, that he shall repente hym and all suche as gyue hym suche counsaile. What so euer the kyng sayd to haue his people newter, they wolde in no wyse agree therto. And the frenche kyng was nat well content with his sonne kyng Rycharde, in that he had nat incontynent caused his realme to haue been newter; but to saye the trouth, the kyng was nat to blame therein: and also suche accydenes fell soone after, the whiche were so great and horryble that the lyke hath nat ben sene in all this hystorye vpon no kyng crysten, except of noble kyng Peter of Lusygne, kyng of Cyper and Jherusalem, whome his owne brother and the cypriens martyred.

*Of the aunswere of the Duke of Lancastre to the knyght sent to hym fro his sonne the erle of Derby, and howe the duke of Lancastre dyed.*

CAP. CCXXXIII.<sup>a</sup>

WHAN sir Dinorth,<sup>b</sup> whom the erle of Derby had sente into Englande to his father the duke of Lancastre, and had his answere of the duke, and had vysyted all the erles landes, and had sene his chylde, four sonnes and two daughters, than he toke his leaue and returned into Fraunce; his aunswere was, howe that the duke wolde nat counsaile the erle his sonne to go into Hungery: but whan he was wery of beyng in Frauce, than rather to go into Castell to the kyng there, and to his suster, and if he lyst to go further, than to go and vysite his other suster the quene of Portugale. The erle redde his fathers letters two tymes ouer, and studied theron a season. And syr Dinorth<sup>b</sup> shewed him that the physicions and surgyons in Englande, sayd surely, howe that the duke his father had on hym a paryllous sycknesse, whiche shulde be his dethe. These wordes gretly letted the erle to take on hym any maner of voyage, but so taryed styll at Parys, and often tymes he went and sawe the frenche kyng, the duke of Orlyaunce, and the kynges vnclis, and alwayes they made hym good chere, so that he was moche bounde to them, and he sayde to the kyng: Syr, ye do me so moche honoure and curtesy, and shewe me so great sygne of loue, that I knowe nat in all my lyfe dayes howe to deserue it; but if euer I come in Englande my lady y quene your daughter to my power shall haue my seruyce. I thanke you, cosyn, quod the kyng. So it fell that aboute the feest of Crystmasse, duke Johan of Lancastre, who lyued in great dyspleasure, what bycause the kyng had banysshed his sonne out of the realme for so litell a cause, and also bycause of the yuell gouernynge of the realme, by his nephewe kyng Rycharde: for he sawe well that if he longe perceynered, and were suffred to contynue, the realme was lykely to be vterly loste. With these ymagynacyons and other, the duke

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXXX.

<sup>b</sup> Dymoke?

duke fell sycke, wheron he dyed, whose dethe was greatly sorowed of all his frendes and louers. The kyng by that he shewed, toke no great care for his dethe, but sone he was forgotten. Than certayne of the noblemen of Englande sawe well howe the realme febllysshed, sythe the duke of Lancastre was deed, and the duke of Gloucestre his brother slayne, and the erle of Arundell, and the erle of Derby, banysshed, who ought than to be duke of Lancastre by ryght succession. Than some sayde: nowe we shall se what the kyng wyll do: it is tyme nowe y he repeale home agayne his cosyn of Derby, and to pardone hym his yuell wyll, though he haue no cause to be dyspleased with hym: it were tyme he came and entred into his landes as duke of Lancastre. Suche wordes ranne abrode in the realme in dyuers places, and specially in the cytie of London, where the erle of Derby was a hundred tymes better beloued thanne the kyng; howbeit, for all the wordes and murmuring that the knyng and his counsaile knewe of, yet he dyd nothyng therafter, but clene the contrary; he was yuell counsayled, for if he had incontynent after the dethe of the duke of Lancastre sente for the erle of Derby, and at his cōmyng haue frendely welcomed hym home, and haue called hym duke of Lancastre, and haue taken hym as greatest personage in Englande nexte hymselfe, and haue sayde howe he wolde be gouerned in all poyntes after his aduise and counsaile, and to do nothyng without his aduise, than the kyng had done well, and lykely to haue contynued his estate as kyng of Englande, and had nat receyued the yuell fortune that fell to hym shortly after, as ye shall here after.

*Howe the dethe of the duke of Lācastre was known in Fraunce; the kyng of Englande wrote in maner of ioye to the Frenche kyng therof, and wrote nothyng therof to therle of Derby, who was the dukes soune.*

G A P. CCXXXV.

TIDYNGES of the duke of Lancasters dethe came into Fraunce, and kyng Rycharde of Englade in maner of ioye wrote therof to the frenche kyng, and nat to his cosyn therle of Derby; howbeit, the erle knewe it as soone as the Frenche kyng, or soner, by suche men as he had in Englande. Than the erle apparelled hym and all his men in blacke, and caused his obsequy to be done right honorably, at the whiche was the Frenche kyng, and his brother the duke of Orlyaunce, and all y kynges vnles, with a great nombre of prelates and great lordes of Fraunce; for the erle of Derby was wel beloued with euery mā, and many were right sorie of his trouble, for he was a pleasaunt knight, and an honest person, curtesse and swete, and meke to euery man; and euery man that sawe hym, said, howe y kyng of Englande was nat well counsayled, that he repealed hym nat home agayne: and truly to saye trouthe, if the kyng of Englande had wysely regarded the mater, and had ben well counsayled, the mater had nat tourned agaynst hym as it dyde: for the erle of Derby, after the dethe of his father, was right enherytoure to be duke of Lancastre, and to haue ben the seconde persone of the realme, and by whom all the busynesse of the realme shulde chiefly haue passed. Also the kyng and his counsaile ought to haue consydrd, howe often tymes the people of Englande hadde styrred and murmured agaynst hym, and shulde haue known howe he was nat very wel beloued of the people, nor of some knightes, and other; and how that in y duke of Gloucesters dayes, he was often tymes in daunger of his persone; as whan the Londoners

Londoners and the counsaylles of dyners good townes in Englande cāe to hym to Eltham, and there made their requestes, that all subsidies and aydes gyuen and granted within twentic yere, shulde haue ben frustrate and fordone: or els they were determyned by the consent of the duke of Gloucestre, and other noble men of the realme, to haue taken the kyng, and to haue sette another to haue reygned in his place, and to haue putte ȝ kyng and the quene into a place, and so to haue hadde meate and drinke as long as they had lyued: in so moche that the duke of Gloucester hadde desyred a nephewe of his, sonne to the daughter of the duke of Clarence, who was called Johan erle of Marche, that he wolde haue taken on hym the charge and gouernyng of the realme, and that they wolde haue made hym kyng: but the saue erle excused hymselfe honestly therfro. All these thynges were apeased and layde downe, by the wyse sadde meanes and prudence of the sayde duke of Lancastre, father to this sayd erle of Derby.

If kyng Richarde had wysely consyded all these maters, he had reigned in gretter prosperite than euer he did before. Kyng Richarde knewe all this well ynough, and so by yuell counsayle the kyng caused by colour of loue, the duke of Gloucestre to be taken and ledde to Calays, where he was strangled and murdered, wherof great brute was throughed out all the realme with great grudge and murmuracyons, so that it was at the poynt to haue deposed the sayde kyng Richarde; howbeit, the duke of Lancastre, lyke a sage and a prudent pryncer, for all that the duke of Gloucestre was his brother, and that the murdering of hym touched hym nere to his herte, all thynges consyded, and that he coude nat reconer agayne his brother, wisely and amiable he apeased all these maters, and the kyng his nephue more feared in Englade than he was before. All this the kyng ought to haue consyded, and specially howe therle of Derby was better beloued with the people, than any other man within the realme; all these thynges wysely cōsidred after the dethe of the duke of Lācastre, the kyng shulde haue repealed therle of Derby agayne into the realme: but the kyng had no mynde so to do, for he dyd clene the contrary: for incontynent he sente his offycers into all the duke of Lācasters landes, and toke the profites therof to hymselfe, and sayd, that as longe as therle of Derby stode as a banysshed man, that he nor none of his shulde receyue any reuenues of any landes within the realme of Englande: and moreouer, (wherof the kyng was greatly blamed of suche as loued the erle and his chyldren), the kyng gaue awaye landes parteynyng to the herytage of the duchy of Lancastre to some of his seruauentes, suche as asked them; for the whiche cause, many knyghtes and other in Englande spake and said: the kyng sheweth well that he oweth no good wyll to his cosyn the erle of Derby, sythe he wyll nat repeale hym home agayne, and suffre his landes to be gyuen awaye, where as therle and his chyldren shulde be great membres in Englande, and a good staffe for the kyng to leane by; but he dothe the contrary, for he driueth hym awaye, and so wyll kepe hym in this dāger, and worse if he coude, for he hath taken to hymselfe his heritage, and causeth his offycers to medell with the dukes landes, as though they were his owne; and if ȝ poore tenauntes complayne of the iniuries done to them in their lordes absence, they can nat be harde, there is none ȝ wyll do them right. Also it is but a small token of loue, that the kyng beareth to the erle of Derby, and to his chyldren, for their herytage of Lācastre, whiche shulde come to thē by right enberytaūce, descended fro their grandame the lady Blanche, daughter to duke Henry of Lancastre; the kyng gyueth parte therof away where as it pleaseth hym, and suche landes as shulde fall to them by the right of the lady their mother, who was daughter to the erle of Hereforde, and Northampton, and cōstable of Englande, the kyng gyueth parte therof at his pleasure: this is to moche done agāst all ryght and reason, and to the displeasure of all the noble men of Englande; this can nat longe endure vnmanded. Thus the prelates, noble men, and commons in Englade cōmuned and murmured.

In lykewise in þy realme of Frāce, suche men of honour as herde spekyng of this mater, and hadde sene the erle of Derby at Parys, hadde great marueyle therof, and sayd one to another: as we thynke, the kyng of Englande hath takenne to great a displeasure with his cosyng the erle of Derby, who is the greatest man in Englād next hymselfe; he is a gracious knyght, curtesse, meke, and treftable, and a man good to be spoken vnto. The kyng of Englande knoweth some other thyng by hym than we do, or elles the kyng is yuell counsayled; and it is marueyle, that the Frenche kyng and his brother the duke of Orlyounce, and the kynges vnclis, do nat attempter the mater, for the erle is daylye among theym; they shulde fynde best prouisyon in this case, for the kyng of Englande wyll do more for thē than for any men, bicause he hath married the Frenche kynges doughter; but sythe they do nothyng therin, it is best we holde our peace and lette it passe. As for the Frenche kyng and his brother and his vnclis, they thought nothyng but good; they honoured and loued greatly the erle of Derby, and desyred moche his company, and they sawe well he was a wydower and to marry, and that the duke of Berrey hadde a doughter, a wydowe of two husbandes, she was but yonge, of a xxiii. yere of age, and was named Mary; her fyrst husbāde was Loys of Bloys, who died yonge, and her secōde husbāde was þy lorde Philyppe of Arthoys, erle of Ewe, who died in his returne in Hungry, as ye haue herde here before; this maryage was at a poynt to haue concluded, for they in Frāuce knewe well that the duke of Lancastre was a great enherytoure in Englande, and the Frenche kyng was well pleased therwith, bycause his doughter was quene of Englande: for he thought that the company of those two ladyes togyder shulde be great pleasure to thē bothe, sythe they were so nere of blode, and therby the two realmes of Fraunce and Englande, shulde be the surer conioyned togyuder in loue and peace, whiche was trewe, if it myght haue been accomplysshed: but kyng Richarde of Englande and his cōsāyle brake all that mater, for the fortunes of this world whiche are marueylous, nor a thyng that shall be, canne nat be eschewed; the whiche fortune of this kyng Richarde was so marueylous, that it is harde to thynke theron: the kyng myght well haue remedyed the mater if he had wolde, but that that shall be, shal be. I shall shewe you what I Johan Froissarte, auctour of this hystorie, herde whāne I was but yonge in Englande, in a place called Bercestede, whiche as at that tyme parteyned to the price of Wales, father to this sayde kyng Rycharde: it was in the yere of grace, a thousande, three hundred, threescore and two;<sup>a</sup> and bycause þy same tyme the prince and the princes shulde departe out of Englande to go into Acquitayne to kepe their estate there, Kyng Edwarde his father, and quene Phyllyppe my maistres, and Lyon duke of Clarence, Johan duke of Lancastre, and the lorde Edmonde, who was after Erle of Cambridge, and duke of Yorke, and their chyldren, were come to the said maner place, to se the prince and princes or they departed; and as than I was of the age of xxiii. yere, and one of my said lady the quenes clerkes of her chambre: and as I satte on a benche I herde a knyght talkyng and deuysyng among dyuers ladyes and damoselles of the Quenes, and sayde to them: There is a booke in this cōntrey called the Brust,<sup>b</sup> and many men saye, it is full of marueylous prophycies: but accordyng to that booke, the realme and crowne of Englande shulde nat retourne to the price of Wales, nor yet to the duke of Clarence, nor that they shulde be kynges of England, though they were sonnes to kyng Edwarde; but this knyght sayd, that accordyng to that boke, the crowne of Englande shulde come to the house of Lancastre. The same season whan this knyght spake these wordes, this sayd Hēry erle of Derby was nat borne, nor yet seyn yere after, but yet in my dayes

the

<sup>a</sup> 1361.

<sup>b</sup> This, I apprehend, to be the old Chronicle called "Brut d'Angleterre," originally written in French, by Eustace and Wace, and translated by Robert de Brunne. For an account of it see Warton's History of English Poetry—Vol. 1, p. 62 et seq.

the same wordes tooke effecte, for I sawe after, the same Henry erle of Derby kyng of Englande.

*Of a treatie of a maryage bytwene the erle of Derby and the duke of Berryes daughter, and howe kyng Rycharde of Englande dyde lette it by the erle of Salisbury.*

C A P. CCXXXVI.<sup>2</sup>

AS soone as kyng Rycharde kyng of Englande herde of the treatie of the maryage bytwene the erle of Derby, and the duke of Berryes daughter, and that the parties were nere hāde accorded, he toke those newes to great dyspleasure, and sayd to the erle of Salisbury, in whom he had great affyaunce: ye must ordayne you to go into Fraunce with letters of credence, to our father in lawe the Frenche kyng, and to our frendes his brother and vnclcs, and shewe them fro vs, that in no wyse they conclude any treatie or alyauce of maryage with suchie a traytour as is the erle of Derby, who wolde betray his naturall souerayne lorde; and for the remynaunt of the mater ye are wyse ynough: do so therin that I maye can you thanke, and that the maryage maye be broken. The erle of Salisbury sayde: Sir, I shall do ryght well your cōmaundement; but sir, if it myght be broken by some other meanes, or by some other persone, I requyre youre grace it maye so be. Sir, quod the kyng, excuse you natte, for I wyll and also I praye you do this message, and whatsoeuer shall fall therof, I shall sustayne you. Well, sir, quod the erle, sithe ye cōmaunde me so specially, and that I se the mater toucheth you nere, I shall do it, though I be lothe therto. Ye shall go, quod the kyng, and make haste, or this alyauce be concluded. Than the Erle prepared for his departure. The letters of credence written and sealed, he departed fro the kyng, who was at that tyme at Leades, and the Quene also. The erle made haste and came to Douer, and so toke the See, and arryued at Calays, and there founde the erle of Huntynghon, who was capitayne of Calais, and brother to the kyng. The Erle shewed vnto hym all his busynesse, and so taryed nat longe at Calays, but roode to Amyence, and so to Parys, and all they waye that he rode he hadde good chere, and was lodged at the whyte horse; and whan he had chaūged him he wente to the kyng and to the quene, and to f̄ other lordes, and delyuered his letters of credence. Whan the kyng had reed the letters, he toke the erle aparte and demanded what was his credence. The erle at length shewed his charge, and named the Erle of Derby traytour agaynst his naturall lorde. Whan the Frenche kyng herde those wordes, he was in great displeasure, for he loued so the erle of Derby, that he wolde here none yuell spoken of him, and toke the letters of credence agayne to the erle of Salisbury, and sayd: Erle, we beleue you well ynoughe, but our sonne of Englande is to sore moued agaynst oure cosyn of Derby, and we marueyle greatly that his yuell wyll contyneweth so longe, for we thynke he shulde be the better furnysshed if he were about hym, and to be nexte of his counsaile. Sir, quod the erle of Salisbury, I do but as I am cōmaunded. That is trewe, quod the kyng, we are nat displeasid with you, and peradventure our sonne of Englande knoweth more than we do; do your message as ye were charged: and so he dyde, and to the duke of Berrey also. The duke gaue none aunswere therto, but wente to the kyng and demaunded of hym what newes he hadde out of Englande. The kyng shewed hym all,

<sup>2</sup> Chapter CCXXXII.

as the erle of Salisbury had sayde. Vpon those newes the kyng and his vnclcs assembled togyder secretly. Than the Frenche kyng sayd: the kyng of Englande by lykelyhode douteth greatly therle of Derby, or elles paraduecture he knoweth suche thynges as we knowe nat, nor can nat come to oure knowledge, and we ought rather to owe our fauoure to the kyng of Englande thane to the erle of Derby, sythe the kyng is ioyned with vs by maryage: and he wyll take it in great disdayne sythe we be enfourmed of his pleasure, if we shulde do the contrary, and marry the erle of Derby to the countesse of Ewe; it behoneth vs rather to dissymule and kepe these newes secrete, tyll the erle of Salisbury be retoured. Vpon this poynt the kyng and his vnclcs rested.

Whan the erle of Salisbury had done his message, he tooke his leaue and departed. The Frenche kyng was more displeasid with his comyng than ioyfull, for he delyuered agayne the erle of Salysbury his letters of credence, and wolde nat kepe them, he loued so well the erle of Derby, who knewe of the erle of Salysburies beyng at Parys, but he sawe hym nat, for he was departed without spekyng with him, and retourned to Calays, and so into Englande, and shewed the kyng of Englande howe he hadde spedde. Whan the erle of Derby knewe that the erle of Salisbury was departed fro Parys, without spekyng with hym, in his mynde he was soore displeasid, and thought the matter went nat well. Than his counsaile sayde to hym: Sir, shortely ye shall perceyue some other maters, that ye haue nat herde of as yet, thoughe it be kepte priyue for you; these Frenchmen are wyse and close; it maye be so, that the kyng of Englande, and suche as be of his secte are displeasid, with that the Frenche kyng maketh you so good chere as he dothe; and paraduecture it is spoken in Englande, howe ye shulde mary the duke of Berryes daughter, whiche pleaseth nat the kyng of Englande, and therefore he wyll do what he can to breke that maryage, and if it be so, ye shall shortly here therof.

Looke, as they ymagined so it was, for within a moneth after the erle of Salisbury was departed fro Parys, suche of therle of Derbies parte as had the treatie of the sayde maryage in hande, they spake agayne of the mater to the duke of Berryes counsaile, who had their charge what they shulde answer; they sayd: sirs, whan my lorde the erle of Derby is in the kynges presence, and the duke of Orlyauce and his vnclcs presente, than lette my lorde the erle of Derby speke hymselfe, for we can saye no more to the mater. Therle of Derby, who thought none yuell, but thought those wordes hadde ben spoken, to the entent to haue proched nerer to the poynt, for the kyng and his counsaile made hym as good chere thanne, as euer they dyde before: the erle thought to speke in the mater, whan he sawe conuenyent tyme: and on a daye whaene he sawe the kyng and the lordes togyder, he began to speke of this maryage. Than the duke of Burgoyne, who hadde the charge to aunswere hym, sayde: Cosyn of Derby, we haue nothyng to do to gyue in maryage oure cosyn to a traytour. With that worde the erle of Derby was greatly abasshed, and chaüged colour, and sayd: Sir, I am here in the kynges presence, I wyll answer to this: I was neuer traytour nor neuer thought trayson, and if there be any persone y wyll charge me with trayson, I am redy to answer, nowe or wha it shall please the kyng here beyng present. Nay, cosyn, quod the kyng, I beleue ye shall fynde no man in Fraunce that wyll chalenge youre honoure: for the wordes that myne vnclc hath spoken came out of Englande. Than the erle kneled downe and sayd: Sir, I beleue it well, but god defende me and all my frendes, and confounde all myne ennemyes. The Frenche kyng toke vp the erle and sayd: Cosyn, apeace yourselfe, euery thyng shall tourne to the best; and whaene euery thyng is agreed and at peace, thane we maye well speke and treatie of maryage, but  
fyrst



fyrst ye must take possession in the duchy of Lancastre, for that is the vsage in Fraunce and in dyuers countreis on this syde the see, that if a lorde shall marry by the consent of his soueraygne lorde, he must endowe his wyfe; and therwith they had spyces and wyne, and cessed of that cōmunycacion, and euery man departed to their owne lodgynges.

Whan the erle of Derby was cōe to his lodgyng he was sore displeased, and nat without a cause; whan he, who was reputed one of the trewest knyghtes of the worlde (in the presēce of the frenche kyng, who loued hym well, and had shewed him many curtesies) shuld be reputed as a traytour, and that those wordes shulde cōe out of Englande, and brought by the erle of Salisbury: he was therwith in a great malencoly. His counsaile apeased hym as well as they coude, and sayd: Sir, he that wyll lyue in this worlde must endure somtyme trouble: confort you for this tyme and be pacient, and paraunter hereafter ye shall haue great ioye and glorie; and, sir, of al ȝ lordes on this syde the see, the frenche kyng loueth you best; and we se well he wolde employe his payne to brūge you to ioye; and, sir, ye ought to gyue him and his vnclcs great thāke in that they kept this mater secrete tyll the erle of Salisbury was departed. Yea, sirs, quod the erle, I thynke it had ben better it had ben shewed me in his presence, that I myght haue made a sufficiēt excuse before ȝ kyng and all the lordes: thus I shall abyde styll in blame tyll the mater be otherwyse declared. Sir, quod they, all trespasses can nat be amended at the fyrst daye. Sir, suffre; let the tyme ryn; we beleue your busynesse in Englande dothe better than ye be ware of. The loue that is in the hertes of the people in Englande towards you with their good prayers, by ȝ grace of god, shall shortly delyuer you out of all daungers. This they sayd to recōfort their lorde, who was sore discomforted, and their sayeng was soner trewe than they were ware of.

Anone it was knowen in Englande howe therle of Salisbury had ben in Fraūce with the frenche kyng and his vnclcs, and borne letters thyder, conteynyng howe the erle of Derby was falsely periured and a traytour; of the whiche dyuers noble men and prelates were sore troubled, and were nothyng contente with the erle of Salisbury, and said generally that he was soore to blame to take on hym the charge to beare into Fraunce any suche wordes vpon as trewe a man as lyued: a daye wyll come that he shall repent the tyme ȝ euer he spake the worde. Ye maye well knowe the Londoners were greatly displeased, and murmured agaynst the kyng and his counsaile, and sayd: A gētyll knight erle of Derby, great enuy is there agaynst you: it is nat sufficient for the kyng and his counsaile to driue you out of the realme, but also to accuse you of trayson, to putte you to the more shame and rebuke. Well, euery thyng muste haue his tourne. Alas, quod the people, what faulte or trespasse hath your children done, that the kyng taketh thus awaye fro thē their herytage, whiche ought to be theirs by ryght succesyon? This thyng can nat longe abyde in this case without change, nor we can nat suffre it. Thus anone after the retourne of the erle of Salisbury out of Fraunce, kyng Richarde caused a iustes to be cryed and publysshed throughe out his realme, to Scotlande, to be at Wynsore, of xl. knyghtes and xl. squyers, agaynst all cōmers, and they to be apparelled in grene with a whyte faucon, and the quene to be there, well acōpanied with ladyes and damosels. This feest thus holden, ȝ quene beyng there ī gret noblenes, but there were but fewe lordes or noble men, for mo thā two partes of ȝ lordes and knyghtes and other of the realme of Englande had ȝ kyng in suche hated, what for the banysshyng of the erle of Derby, and the iniuries that he had done to his children, and for the dethe of the duke of Gloucestre, who was slayne in the castell of Calais, and for the dethe of the erle of Arūdell, who was beheded at Lōdon: the kynred of these

these lordes came nat to this feest, nor bnt fewe other: and at the same feest the kyng ordayned to go into Irelaude, to employ his men in that voyage; and so he departed, and lefte the Quene with her trayne styll at Wyndsore, and the kyng rode to Bristowe, and there made all his prouysion, and he had ten thousande knyghtes and squiers and ten thousande archers. Whāne the Londoners knewe that the kyng was goyng in that voyage they began to murmure, and said amonge themselfe: Nowe gothe Richarde of Burdeaux the waye to Bristowe, and so into yrelaude, whiche wyll be to his distruction; he shall neuer retourne agayne with ioye, no more than dyde kyng Edwarde the seconde, his great grauntfather, who was folysshely gouerned by to moche beleuyng of the Spēsers; in lykewise Rycharde of Burdeaulx hath beleued so moche yuell counsayle, that it can nat be hydden nor suffred any lengar.

*Hove kyng Richarde ordayned to go into the marchesse of Irelaude.*

CAP. CCXXXVII.<sup>a</sup>

THERE were many knyghtes and squyers in the kynges company that shulde go with hym into Irelāde that were nat cōtent with hym, and wente in maner with an yuell wyll, and sayd often tymes one to another: Our kyng gouerneth hymselfe folisshely, and beleueth yuell counsayle. Suche wordes were so multiplyed, that the lorde Henry Percy and sir Henry his soñe spake certayne wordes, whiche came to the kynges knowlege and to his counsayle; and it was sayd to the kyng: Sir, the wordes ought nat to be suffred, that the erle of Northumberlande and his soñe hath spoken, for it is to sette your subiettes agāst you: it must behoue you to correcte all these rebelles one after another, wherby they that be greatestt shall doute you, and take ensample. That is trewe, quod the kyng; but than what is beste to do. Sir, quod they, they be nat here with you, but they ought to come; and whan they be come, call them before you, and than by the erle of Salisbury and by some other, as it shall please you, lette it be rehersed to them the yuell wordes that they haue spoken agāst you and your cōsāyle: thā shall you here what answere they wyll make, and thervpon ye maye take aduysē, wheder ye wyll correcte them by prison or otherwyse. Well, sirs, quod the kyng, ye say well; this shal be done. The erle of Northumberlande and his soñe had good frendes in that armye, so that some of them knewe the kynges entent; and they sent suche worde to the erle and to his sonne, that they shulde natte come in the kynges presece, nor to go in that iourney; for they hadde worde that if they dyde, it shulde nat be for their welthe, but to their great dōmage, for the kyng was sore enformed agāst them. Whan they had this warnyng, they stopped their cōmyng to the kyng, and nat without good cause: for they were shewed that and if they came, they shulde be in ieopardye of their lyues. Whan § kynges counsayle sawe that therle and his soñe came nat, they sayd to the kyng: Sir, nowe ye may se whyder we dyde enforme you of the trouthe or nat: ye maye se therle and his sonne disdayneth to serue you, for they wyll nat come at youre cōmaundement, and that shall ye se if ye sende for them. And I shall sende for them, quod the kyng. Than letters were written and sente by notable messangers to therle and to the lorde Henry Percy his son: the content of the letters was, that incontynent without delaye vpon the sight of those letters, that they shulde come to § kyng and do their duetiē, as they were bounde to do. These messangers  
journeyed

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXXXIII.

journeyed so longe, that they came to a fayre castell of the erles, standyng on the frontier of Scotlande. The messenger acquyted hym well in doynge of his message, as he was cōmaūded. Therle reed his letters at length, and than shewed them to his sonne; than they toke aduise to make the messenger good chere, and to write agayn to the kyng in excusynge of themselves, howe they coulde nat come out of their country as at that tyme, and howe that the kyng had men ynowe to acōplysse his journey besyde them. The messengers retourned to the kyng, and deluyered the erles lettre. The kyng redde it, the whiche answeere was nothyng pleasaunt to the kyng nor to his counsaile; and thanne for this cause and for other thynges that were layde to the Erles charge and to his sonnes, they were openly banysshed the realme of Englande, tyll the kyng dyd repeale them agayne. This was publysshed throughout all the cyties and good townes of Englande, and specyally in London, wherof the londoners had great marueyle, nor they coulde nat knowe iustly for what cause it was, for the erle and his sonne were reputed for noble and as valyaunt men as any within the realme. Some sayd: it cōmeth by some of the kynges counsaile that hateth them, whiche counsaile wyll destroy the kyng at last; peraduenture the erle and his sonne haue spoken some wordes vpon the kyng and his counsaile, for the yuell gouernynge of the realme, and coulde nat be herde though they said the trowth, and for their true sayng nowe they be punisshed, but we thinke herafter they wyll be punysshed y nowe iudge them. Thus the londoners and other spake of this mater. The erle had a brother, a valiaunt knight, sir Thomas Percy, who had of a longe tyme done many noble seruyces to the kyng of Englande. When the erle knewe that he and his sonne were banysshed the realme, he toke it for an vnreasonable punysshment without cause: than he sente for all his frendes in the country, suche as he coulde get togyther, for many of his lynage were with the kyng to go into Irelande. The erle toke counsaile of them what was best to do sythe the kyng had banysshed hym without cause. Than he was counsailed to sende into the realme of Scotlande, and to desire the king there that he and his sonne might abyde peasably in Scotlande tyll the kyng of Englande were apeased of his dyspleasure. Thus therle sent to kyng Robert of Scotlande, and the kyng and the erle Archambalt Douglas and the other lordes of Scotlande condiscendyd lightly to the erles desyre, and sent the erle worde howe they shulde be gladly receyued, and also if they neded of fyue or syxe hundred speares, if they were signyfyed of the tyme, they shulde be redy to serue them. This message pleased greatly the erle and his lynage, and so the erle taryed styll in his country amonge his frendes, for kyng Rycharde and his counsaile had so moche to do in shorte season after, that they had no layser to do any dyspleasure to the erle nor to his sonne, as ye shall here after in this hystory.

King Rycharde thus beyng aboute Bristowe, than the state generally of all men in Englande began to murmure and to ryse one agaynst another, and mynstryng of iustyce was clene stopped vp in all courtes of Englande, wherof the valyaunt men and prelates, who loued reste and peace, and were glad to paye their duetyes, were greatly abashed: for there rose in the realme companyes in dyuers rowtes, kepyng the feldes and hygh wayes, so that marchauntes durste nat ryde abrode to exercyse their marchaundyse for doute of robberyng: and no man knewe to whome to cōplayne to do them ryght, reasone, and iustyce, whiche thynges were ryght preiudyciall and dyspleasaunt to the good people of Englande, for it was contrary to their accustomed vsage; for all people laborers and marchauntes in Englande were wonte to lyue in rest and peace, and to occupy their marchaundyse peasably, and the laborers to labour their landes quyetyly; and than it was contrary, for when marchauntes rode fro towne to towne with their marchaundyse, and had outhur golde or syluer in their purces, it was taken fro them, and fro other men, and labourers out of their houses: these compan-

yons



small reputation, and to gather great riches, and during the reigne of King George ought not to be suffered, and because that valiant man the duke of Goures was very clearly the master in Englands, went not as they should do by right, and in a time daily it was worse and worse, and because he spake plainly thereof, the traitors that be about the kinge caused hym to be murdered, and in the same the good erle of Arundelle, and have driven out of the reigne that valiant knyght Kinge Henry of Lancaster, erle of Derby, by whome the reigne might and ought to be recovered and maintained, and by his four sonnes that he hath, and yet for more crueltie, beside the offence that they cause the father to suffer out of the reigne, they despoyled the children, and the heritage that was their due, the lady dame Isobone of Lancaster, as daily gyven awaie to them that are not worthy to have them, and also because the erle of Northumberlande and his sonne the lord Henry Percy have somewhat spoken according to reason, kynge Richarde hath persecuted them, as it well appereth, that within a shorte tyme there shall never a valiant man be left in the reigne, wherfore all well wynde to thought, without remedy be founde shortly, and we thinke the best remedy were to sende for the erle of Derby, and leaue his season in Fraunce, and whan he is come, lets hym have the governance of the reigne, that he may reforme all that is amys, and bringe it into good state, and lets them be punished that have deserved, and let Richarde of Burdeux be taken and sent in the towre of London, and let his fautes put in writinge in articles, of the whiche there shall be founde a great nombre, and by that tyme they be examined, it shall be seen clerely that he is not worthy to beare a crowne, nor to kepe a reigne, for his owne dedes shall condempne hym.

*Howe the archbishoppe of Canterbury was sent into Fraunce, to the king of Ardenne, for the recoveryng and better gouernynge of Englands, to haue hym to reforme the same.*

CAP. CCXXXVIII<sup>a</sup>

THUS the Londoners offmoued togidre, and nat all onely they, but also in diuers other places of the reigne, but the chiefe murmuration that the people were in, was by the first seuerage of them of London, for the officers of London were as they, and by them lightly all other officers wylde be ruled, and upon the trowth that they sawe apperant in Englands, they had diuers secretes counsailes togidre, and with them certayne prelates and other knyghtes of the reigne, and they concluded to sende into Fraunce for the erle of Derby, and were determined whan he were come to shewe hym the worst gouernynge of kynge Richarde, and to put to hym the crowne and gouernynge of the reigne of Englands, and so to make hym kynge and his dewtye to susteyn, so that he wylde kepe the reigne in all good vsages. Than it was thought that he that shoulde go on that message must be a wyse man and of good credence, for they thought it shoulde be a great matter to geue the erle of Derby out of Fraunce, for the which that for any simple wordes of a meane messenger, or for any letters, he wylde geue no faythe there, but rather thinke it shoulde be to betraye hym. Than the archbishoppe of Canterbury, a man of honoure and credence, was desired to do that message, and for the officers profyts of the reigne accorded to go on their desires, and ordered for his departure so wysely, that none knewe thereof but suche as ought to knowe it, and so he toke a shyppe at London, and but season all, crosse with hym, and so part, wherfore

any parell and came to Sluse in Flaunders, and fro thens to Ardenbource, and so to Gaunte, to Andwarpe,<sup>a</sup> to Athe in Brabant, and to Conde, and so to Valencennes, and there toke his lodgyng at the signe of the Swanne in the market place, and there taryed a thre dayes, and refreshed himselfe; he rode nat lyke no bysshop, but lyke a monke pylgryme, and dyscouered to no man what he was nor what he entended to do: the fourth day he departed, and toke a man to be his guyde to Parys, sayenge howe he wolde go a pylgrymage to saynt More: he dyd so moch that he came thyder where as the erle of Derby was, at a place called vyncetour<sup>b</sup> besyde Parys. When the erle of Derby sawe the bysshop of Caunterbury cōmyng to him, his herte and spyrites reioysed, and so dyd all suche as were aboute him, for he thought well than to here some newes oute of Englande. The bysshoppe shewed nat as than the cause of his cōmyng, but dissymuled bycause euery man shulde nat knowe his entent, and therefore to couer his busynesse, he sayd openly, he was come on pylgrymage to saynt Mors. All suche as were aboute the erle thought it had ben so. When the bysshop sawe his tyme he toke aparte the erle of Derby alone into a chambre, and closed the dore to them: than the bysshop shewed the erle the debyltye of the realme of Englande, and of the desolacyon therof, and howe iustyce had no place to reygne for faute of a good kinge, and howe certayne valyaunt men and prelates, with the londoners and other in generall, had deuised a remedy, and for that cause he was sente thyder to hym, to desyre him to retourne into Englande, and they wolde make hym kynge, bycause ꝑ Rycharde of Burdeaulx had doone and consented to be done so many yuell dedes that all the people sorrowed it, and are redy to ryse agaynst hym; and therefore, syr, nowe is the tyme or neuer for you to seke for your delyueraūce and profyte, and for the welth of your chyldren: for if ye entende nat to helpe yourselfe and theym also none other wyll; for Rycharde of Burdeaux gyueth to them of his chambre and to other dayly parte of your enherytaūce and of your chyldrens, of the whiche many valyaunt men and the londoners were sore dyspleased therwith, if they coude amended it, but they durst neuer speake tyll nowe; but bycause the kynge hath yuell vsed hymselfe agaynst you and agaynst your vncler the duke of Gloucestre, who was taken by nyght and conneyed to Calays and there murdered, and the erle of Arundell beheeded without tytell of any good reason, and the erle of Warwyke exyled, and you banysshed, and thus the realme of Englande is nere dyssheryted of all noble men, by whome the realme shulde be susteyned: and also the kynge hath banysshed the erle of Northumberlande and the lorde Percy his sonne, bycause they spake somewhat agaynst the kynges gouernaunce and his counsaile. Thus they dayly increase in doyng yuell, and none dare speke agaynst it; great parte of the realme haue pytie therof, and therefore they desyre you to slepe no lenger, but to take leaue of ꝑ frenche kynge and retourne into Englande; there shall you be receyued with ioye: and all this that I haue sayd they wyll fyrmely vpholde, for they desyre to haue none other kynge but you, ye are so well beloued in the realme.

When the erle had herde the bysshops wordes at length, he was nat hasty in gyuenge of aunswere, but leaned out at a wyndowe lokyng downe into a gardeyne, and studied a certayne space, and had many imaginacions; at last he tourned hym to the archebysshop and sayd: Syr, your wordes causeth me to study. Lothe I wolde be to take on me this enterprise, and lothe I wolde be to leaue it, for I knowe well that it wyll be longe or I canne retourne into Englande, without it be by the same meanes as ye haue declared. Lothe I wolde be to encline to your wordes, for the Frenche kynge here and the frenchmen do to me, and haue done, and wyll do (if I lyst here to tary), all the honour and curtesye that I canne desyre: and if so be by reasone of your wordes, and promesse

<sup>a</sup> Oudenarde.<sup>b</sup> Hotel de Winchester; latterly called the Bœcôte.

messe of the londoners, my good frendes, that I shulde apply and agree to their wylls and desyre, and that therby kynge Rycharde shulde be taken and dystroyed, I shulde in that case beare great blame, wherof I wolde be ryght lothe, if any other meanes might be founde. Sir, quod the bysshoppe, I am sent hyther to you in hope of all goodnesse; call to you your counsayle, and shewe them what I haue sayd, and I shall also shewe them the cause of my comynge, and I thynke they wyll nat counsayle you to the contrary. That shall I do, quod the erle, for suche a weyghty mater requyreth counsayle. Than the erle called to hym his counsayle suche as he trusted best. When they were before hym, than the erle caused the bysshop to shewe them all the mater, and the cause of his comynge thyder. Than the erle demaüded counsayle what was beste for hym to do. They all answered with one voyce: syr, god hath taken pytie of you: howesoever ye do, refuse nat this bargayne, for ye shal neuer haue a better: and surely whosoever wyll enquire of your lygnage, and fro whence ye dyscended, ye are of the ryght stocke and generacyon of saynt Edward, somtyme kynge of Englande. Syr, thanke the londoners your good frendes, who wyll helpe to deliyer you out of daunger, and haue pytie on your chyl dren, and of the desolacyon of the realme of Englande; and, syr, remembre well what wröges and iniuries this Rycharde of Burdeaux hath done to you and dothe dayly; for whan the maryage bytwene you and the countesse of Ewe was nere at a poynte, dyd nat the erle of Salysbury breke it, and called you traytoure in the presence of the frenche kynge and other lordes? whiche wordes are nat to be pardoned, but ye ought to desyre howe to be reuenged. Sir, if ye wyll nat helpe yourselfe, who shulde helpe you? Syr, take good aduysse herin.

*Howe the erle of Derby toke leaue of the frenche kyng, and went to his cosyn the duke of Bretaygne.*

#### C A P. CCXXXIX.†

WHANNE the erle herde his cōsaylorours so earnestly counsayle him, his spyrites opened and sayd: Syrs, I wyll do as ye wyll haue me, for to haue your counsayle was the entente that I sent for you. Syr, quod they, ye saye well; and, syr, we counsayle you trewly to our power, and as the matter requyreth. Than as secretly as they coude they ordeyned for their departure: than it was deuysed howe they might passe the see, or any knowledge therof shulde come into Englande. They deuysed that of two wayes they muste take one: outhur to go into Haynalte and into Holande, and there take the see at Dordright, or els to go into Bretaygne to the duke, and there to take the see, and so to lande at Plummouth, or where as god wolde in Englande. All thynges consy-dred, they sayd the best way shulde be by Bretaygne, and than they sayd to the erle: syr, go and take your leaue of the frenche kynge, and thanke hym of the curtesy that he hath shewed vnto you, and take leaue of the duke of Orlyance, and of the kynges vnclcs and other, and thanke them all of the good chere they haue made you, and desyre of the kinge to haue conducte to go into Bretaygne, sayenge that ye wyll go se the duke your cosyn, and to tary there a season with hym. The erle acorded to their counsayle, and whan he was redy he wente to Parys to the kynge, as he was acustomed to do, for euer whan he came there was no dore closed agaynst him. At this last tyme he spake wysely to the kynge, and shewed hym howe he wolde go and sporte hym a season in Bretayne, and to se the duke, whome he called his vnclc, for he had had to his wyfe

† Chapter CCXXXV.

his fathers suster, doughter to Kyngedwarde. The frenche kyng thought nothyng but well, and so gaue hym lyghtly leaue. Than the erle desyred to haue conducte to bringe hym thyder. He graunted his desyre. So to make shorte, the Erle ordeyned all his busynesse by great wysdome, and toke his leaue of all the lordes of Fraunce, suche as were there as than, and he gaue great gyftes to the kynges offycers, and to offycers of armes, and to mynstrelles; and in the howse of Clysson he made a supper to all suche as wolde come to hym; and the nexte daye he toke his horse and departed fro Parys, and issued out at the gate of saynt Jaques, and toke þe way to Estampes. A knight of Beawsey<sup>a</sup> dyd guyde hym, called syr Guy of Baygneux.<sup>b</sup> So longe they rode that they came to Blois, and there they taryed an viii. dayes, for the erle had sente a knyght and his haraulde into Bretayne to sygnifie the duke of his cōmynge, as reason was.

Whan duke Johan of Bretaygne knewe that his nephewe the erle of Derby was cōmynge thyder, he was therof ryght ioyfull, for he loued alwayes the Duke of Lancaster and all his bretherne, and sayde to the knight that brought him worde, who was called Gillyam de la Pierre: Sir, why dothe our nephewe tary by the way, that he cometh nat hyther streight? The knyght excused the erle as well as he myght. Well, quod the duke, I sawe no man this seuen yere that I wolde be gladder to se than my nephewe the erle of Derby; retourne to hym and cause hym to come, for he shall fynde my countrey redy open to receyue hym. Of that aunswere the knyght was gladd, and returned as shortly as he coulde, and came to Bloys, and shewed the erle and his counsaile the dukes aunswere. The next day they rode forthe, and had payed for euery thyng, and in the erle of Derbys company was syr Peter of Craon, who was banysshed out of the realme of Fraunce, and all his castelles, rentes, and reuenues seased for the sōme of a hundred thousande frankes, iudged to the duchesse of Aniou, queene of Napoles, by proces of the lawe. Thus the erle of Derby came to Nautes, and there founde the duke, who receyued him nobly and all his company. Than syr Guy le Bayneux<sup>b</sup> returned into Fraunce, and the erle taryed with the duke of Bretaygne, who made hym as good chere as coulde be deuysed; and all this season the bysshoppe of Caunterbury was styll with the erle and his cōnsaile. The duke spared nothyng vpon the erle nor vpon his men, but shewed them all the loue of the worlde, and yet the duke knewe well the dyspleasure that kyngedwarde had agaynst the erle, wherof he had pytie. Whan the erle consyded the dukes good wyll and fauoure, he dyscouered to hym parte of his busynesse, as touchyng the duchy of Lancastre, and suche herytages as the duke his father had in possessyon whan he dyed, and desyryng therin to haue the dukes counsaile, sayenge: that he was nat repealed agayne by the kyng, but gyueth dayly away parte of his enherytaunces: wherby he shewed the duke, that many noble men and prelates in Englande were nat well contente with the kyng, and the realme therby in great dyfference, in so moche that dyuers noble men and the londoners had sent to hym to haue hym to come into Englande, promysyng that they wolde make his peace with the kyng, and set hym in his herytage. Whan the duke herde that, he sayd: Fayre nephew, where as be many wayes, the best ought to be chosen. By the kyngedwarde ye are in a harde case; ye demaunde counsaile, and I wyll counsaile you to gyue credence to your frendes in Englande; the londoners are myghty and puyssaunt; they, and by the ayde of other prelates, lordes, and knyghtes of the realme shall bringe the kyngedwarde to agre to their desyres; and, nephew, I shall ayde you with slyppes and with men of warre to resyste the daungers vpon the see. Of that offre the erle thanked the duke of Bretayne.

<sup>a</sup> Beauce.<sup>b</sup> Baveux.—*Johnes*.



*Howe the erle of Derby aryued in Englande, and howe he was receyued of the londoners.*

CAP. CCXL.<sup>2</sup>

THUS the duke of Bretayne and the erle of Derby were loungely concluded togyder, and the erle taryed there a certayne space, and made as though he wolde haue taryed styll there, and in the meane season the erle made his prouysyon at Wannes; and whan all thyng was redy, the duke and the erle came thyder, and whan the wynde serued the erle of Derby and his company tooke the see; he had with hym thre shyppes of warre to conducte hym into Englande, and the further they sayled the better wynde they had, so that within two dayes and two nyghtes they aryued at Plumouth in Englande, and issued out of their shyppes, and entred into the towne lytell and lytell. The bayly of Plumouth, who had charge of the towne vnder the kyng, had great marueyle whanne he sawe so moche people and men of warre entre into the towne; but the bysshop of Caunterbury apesed him, and sayd howe they were menne of warre that wolde do no harme in the realme of Englande, sent thyder by the duke of Bretayne to serue the kyng and the realme. Therwith the bayly was contente, and the erle of Derby kept hymselfe so priuy in a chaumbre, that none of the towne knewe hym. Than the bysshoppe of Caunterbury wrote letters sygnd with his hande to London, sygnfyenge the comynge of the erle of Derby, and sente them by a suffycient man in post, who tooke fresshe horses by the waye, and came to London the same daye at night, and passed ouer the bridge and so came to the mayres lodgyng, who as than was a bedde; and as sone as the mayre knewe that a messager was come from the bysshop of Caunterbury, he rose out of his bedde and made the messenger to entre into his chambre, who delyuered hym a lettre fro the bysshoppe of Caunterbury. The mayre redde it and reioysed greatly of those newes, and incontynent he sente of his seruauentes fro house to house, princypally to suche as were of counsaile of sendyng for the Erle of Derby. They were all gladde of that tydnges, and incontynent there assembled togyther of the moste notablist men of the cytie to the nombre of two hundred, and they spake togyder, and helde no longe counsaile, for the case required it nat, but they sayd: lette vs apparell ourselfe and go and receyue the duke of Lancastre, sythe we agreed to sende for hym; the archebysshoppe of Caunterbury hath well doone his deuoyre, seyng he hath brought hym into Englande. Than they dyd chose certayne men to go abrode to publysshe the erles comynge to lordes, knyghtes, and squyers, suche as were of their party, and mo than fyue hundred of the londoners tooke their horses, and they had so great desyre to go forthe that they were lothe to tarye one for another. The erle of Derby taryed nat longe at Plummouth, but the nexte daye as soone as their horses were vnshypped they rode towards London; and all that season sir Peter of Craon and fy bretons were styll with the erle. The mayre of London and they that hadde the gouernyng of the cytie, were the fyrst that mette the erle in the feldes, and humbly receyued him, and euer as they rode forwarde they mette more people. The fyrst daye they cae and laye at Guyldforde, a fyue and twentie myle fro Lodon: the next day a great nombre of the men, women, and chyldren of London and the clergy came to mete with the erle, they had suche desyre to se hym; and whan they cae into his sight they cried, welcome noble erle of Derby and duke of Lancastre; God

God sende you ioye, welthe, and prosperyte. Sithe ye wente out of Englande the realme hath ben in no prosperyte: nowe we truste ye shall bringe vs into a reasonable estate, for we haue lyued in great displeasance and desolacyon, by the meanes of Richarde of Burdeaux and his counsayle: and specially he ought moost chefe to be blamed, for a kynge that shulde gouerne a realme and people ought to haue suche discrecyon to knowe gode and yuell asondre, otherwise he is nat worthy to gouerne a realme; and this Rycharde of Burdeaux hath done contrary, whiche shal be well knownen and proued vpon him. With suche wordes and other the people brought the erle to London. The mayre rode cheke and cheke by hym, whiche was great pleasure for the people to se; and the mayre sometyme sayde to the erle: Sir, beholde howe the people reioyse of your cōmyng. That is trewe, quod the erle: and alwayes as he rode he enclyned his heed to the people on euery syde. Thus the erle was brought to his lodgyng, and euery man departed tyll after dyner. Than the mayre and the notable men of the cite, and dyuers other lordes and knyghtes, prelates, bysshoppes, and abbottes, suche as were in London cam to se the erle; also the duchesse of Gloucestre and her two daughters came to se therle, who were his cosyn germayns. Affren<sup>r</sup> their brother was with kynge Richarde, more for feare thane for loue. With these ladyes was the countesse of Arundell and her chyl dren, and also the countesse of Warwyke, with dyuers other ladyes, suche as were at London. The people of London were so ioyfull of the erles comyng, that there was no more workyng in London that daye than and it had ben Easter daye.

To come to a conclusyon of this busynesse: The people toke cōsayle and aduise to ryde agaynst the kynge, whom the Londoners named Richard of Burdeaux, kynge without tytell or honour: for the vyllaynes of London hadde the kyng in suche hate, that it was payne for them to here spekyng of hym, but to his cōdempnacion and destruction: for they hadde treated the erle of Derby to be their kynge, and he was moche ordred by their counsails. The erle of Derby toke on hym to be kyng, and so to endure for euer he and his heyres; and therto the Londoners dyde swere and seale, and promysed that all the resydue of the realme shulde do the same, so solempnely that there shulde neuer questyon be made therof after; also they promysed hym to aide and to assyste hym alwayes. These promyses and boundes ones taken and concluded, than it was ordayned that xii. hundred<sup>b</sup> men of London, well armed, shulde ryde with the erle towards Bristowe, and to do so moche, that Richarde of Burdeaux myght be taken and brought to London, and than to take aduise what shulde be done with hym, and to be iudged by the lawe and by the thre estates of the realme: also it was ordayned (to make the lesse brute and sclaudre), that the men of warre of Bretaygne, suche as were come thyder with the erle, shulde be retourned home agayne, for it was sayde howe they hadde men ynough to do their dedes without them; so that the erle had all the bretons before hym, and thanked them of their seruyce that they hadde done hym, and gauē them great rewardes so that they were well content, and so retourned to Plūmouthe to the shyppes and so into Bretaygne.

Nowe lette vs speke of the erle of Derby, who ordayned to ryde to Bristowe.

The erle of Derby was cheife of that armye, as reason was, for it touched hym most nerest. Thus he departed fro London, and as he rode, the country fell into hym. Tidynges cāe into the kynges host of the cōmyng of the erle of Derby and of the Londoners: many knyghtes, squyers, and other knewe it or the kynge hadde knowledge therof, but they durst nat speke therof. Whan the tidynges spredde more abrode, suche

<sup>a</sup> Humphrey.

<sup>b</sup> 12,000?

suche as were next the kyng were in great feare, for they knewe well the kyng and they bothe were lykely to fall in paryll, bycause they hadde so many ennemyes in the realme; and suche were thā their ennemyes, that hadde made good face before, for many knyghtes, squyers, and other, suche as hadde serued the kyng before, departed fro the courte without any lycence; some wente home to their owne houses, and some toke the nexte waye they coude streyght to the erle of Derby to serue hym. As soone as Affren<sup>a</sup> of Gloucestre, and Rycharde, soñe to the erle of Arundell, knewe that the Erle of Derby and the Londoners were cōmyng, they gotte their men toguyder and departed, and rode streyght to the erle of Derby, whome they founde beyonde Oxenforde, at a towne called Soucetour.<sup>b</sup> Therle of Derby hadde great ioye whāne he sawe his cosyns, and demaunded of the state of the kyng, and howe they were departed fro hym. They answered and sayde: Sir, at our departyng we spake nat with hym: for as soone as we knewe of your comyng, we lepte on our horses and departed to come to serue you, and to ayde to reuenge the dethe of our fathers, whome Rycharde of Burdeaulx hathe caused to be slayne. Sirs, quod the erle, ye be ryght welcome; ye shall ayde me and I shall helpe you, for it is behouable that oure cosyn Rycharde of Burdeaux be brought to London: so haue I promysed to the Londoners, and I wyll kepe my promyse, for therto they wyll ayde me; and we haue men ynowe to fyght with hym if nede be; and if he wyll haue batayle he shall haue it.

*Howe tidynges came to kyng Rycharde of the cōmyng of the erle of Derby with great puysaunce.*

#### CAP. CCXLI.<sup>c</sup>

IT was sayd to the kyng, whan the mater coude no lengar be hydde: Sir, aduise you well; ye haue nede of good counsayle shortly, for the Londoners and other cometh agaynst you with great puysaunce, and hath made therle of Derby your cosyn their chefe capitayne; they haue gotte hym out of Fraunce: this hath nat been done without great treatie. Whan the kyng herde that, he was sore abasshed, and wyste nat what to saye, for all his spyrites tymbled: for thā he saw well the maters were lykely to go yuell agaynst hym, without he coude gette puysaunce to resyst them. Than the kyng sayd: Sirs, make all our men redy, and sende througheout my realme for ayde, for I wyll nat flye before my subiettes. Sir, quod they, the mater gothe yuell, for your men do leaue you and flye awaye; ye haue loste the one halfe, and all the rest are sore abasshed, and leseth cōtynauce. Why? quod the kyng; what will ye that I shall do? Sir, leaue the felde, for ye are nat able to kepe it, and gette you into some stronge castell tyll sir Johan Hollade your brother come, who is aduertysed of all this mater; and whāne he is come he shall fynde some remedy, outhir biforce of armes or elles by treatie, at leest to bring you into some better case than ye be in at this present tyme, for if ye kepe the felde, paraduenture some wyll forsake you and go to hym. To this cōsaile the kyng agreed. At that tyme the erle of Salisbury was nat with ȝ kyng; he was in his countre. Whan he herde howe the erle of Derby with the Londoners and great puysaunce rode agaynst the kyng, he ymagined that the matter was in paryll for hym and for the kyng, and for suche as the kyng had ben counsayled by; so he sate styll to here other tidynges; also the duke of yorke was nat with the kyng, but his  
sonne

<sup>a</sup> Humphrey.

<sup>b</sup> Cirencester.

<sup>c</sup> Chapter CCXXXVII.

sonne the erle of Rutlande was alwayes with þy kyng, for two causes; the one was, kyng Richarde loued hym entierly; and another was, bycause he was constable of Eng-lande; therefore by right he ought to be with the kyng. Whan the kyng had supped, newe tidynges cāc agayne to hym, sayeng: Sir, it is tyme to take aduise howe ye wyll order yourselfe; your puyssaūce is nat sufficient agaynst thē that cometh agaynst you; it cannat aueyle you to make batayle agaynst them; it behoueth you to passe this daunger by sadde aduise and good counsaile, and by wysedome apease them that be your yuel willers, as ye haue done or this tyme, and than correcte them after at leysar. There is a castell a xii. myle hens, called the castell of Flynte, whiche is stronge; we counsaile you to go thider, and close you within it tyll ye here other newes fro the erle of Huntyngton your brother, and fro other of your frendes, and sende into Irelande for socours; and þy frēche kyng your father in lawe, whan he knoweth of your nede, he wyll conforte you. The kyng folowed that counsaile, and apoynted them that shulde ride with hym to the castell of Flynt; and he ordayned his cosyn erle of Rutlande to tary styll at Bristowe, and that they shulde be redy to sette forwarde whan he sent to them, and that he was of power to fyght with his enemyes. The nexte day the kyng, with suche as were of his householde, rode to the castell of Flynte, and entred into the castell without makynge any semblaunt to make any warre, but to abide there and to defende the castell if they were assayled.

*Howe kyng Richarde yelded himselfe to the erle of Derby to go to London.*

G A P. CCXLI.<sup>a</sup>

THE erle of Derby and the londoners had their spies goyng and cōmyng, who reported to them al þy state of the kyng; and also the erle knewe it by suche knyghtes and squyers as daylye came fro the kynges parte to therle, who had sure knowledge that the king was gone to the castell of Flynt, and had no company with him but such as were of his owne housholde, and semed that he wolde no warre, but to scape that daūger by treatie. Than therle determyned to ryde thyder, and to do so moche to haue þy kyng outhir biforce or by treatie. Than the erle and all his company rode thyder, and within two myle of the castell they founde a great vyllage; there the erle taryed and dranke, and determyned in hymselfe to ryde to the castell of Flynt with two hundred horse, and to leaue the rest of his company styll there: and he sayde he wolde do what he coude by fayre treatie to entre into the castell by loue and nat perforce, and to bring out the kyng with fayre wordes, and to assure hym fro all paryll, excepte goyng to London, and to promise hym that he shall haue no hurte of his body, and to be meane for hym to the Londoners, who were nat cōtent with hym. Therles deuise semed good to them that harde it, and they sayd to hym: Sir, beware of dissymulacion: this Rycharde of Burdeaux muste be taken outhir quycke or deed, and all the other traytours that be about hym and of his counsaile, and so to be brought to London and sette in the towre; the Londoners wyll nat suffre you to do the contrary. Than the erle sayde: Sirs, feare nat, but all that is enterprised shall be accomplysshed; but if I can gette hym out of the castell with fayre wordes, I wyll do it; and if I canne nat, I shall sende you worde therof, and than ye shall come and laye siege about the castell, and than we wyll do so moche by force or by assaute, that we wyll haue hym quycke or deed, for the castell is well prignable. To those wordes accorded well þy londoners. So the erle departed

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXXXVIII.

parted fro the army, and rode with two hūdred men to the castell, where as the kyng was amōg his men right sore abashed. The erle came ridyng to the castell gate, whiche was faste closed, as the case requyred: the erle knocked at the gate; the porters demaūded who was there; the erle answered, I am Henry of Lancastre; I come to the kyng to demaunde myne herytage of the duchy of Lancastre; shewe the kyng this fro me. Sir, quod they within, we shall do it. Incontynent they went into the hall and into the dongyon where as the kyng was, and suche knyghtes about hym as had long tyme cotisayled hym. Than these newes were shewed to the kyng, and sayd: sir, your cosyng of Derby is at f̄ gate, who demaūdeth of you to be set in possessyon of f̄ duchy of Lancastre his enherytaunce. The kyng then regarded suche as were aboute hym, and demaūded what was best to do. They said: sir, in this request is none yuell; ye maye let hym come into you with xii.<sup>3</sup> persons in his company, and here what he wyll saye; he is your cosyng, and a great lorde of the realme; he maye well make your peace and he wyll, for he is greatly beloued in the realme, and specially with the Londoners, who sente for hym into Fraūce; they be as nowe f̄ chefe that be agaynst you. Sir, ye must dissymule tyll the mater be apeased, and tyll the erle of Huntynghton your brother be with you; and it cometh nowe yuell to passe for you that he is at Calais, for there be many nowe in Englande that be rysen agaynst you, that and they knewe that youre brother were aboute you, they wolde sytte styll and durst nat displease you: and yet he hathe to his wyfe the erle of Derbyes suster: by his meanes we suppose ye shulde come to peace and cōcorde. The kyng agreed to those wordes, and said: Go and let hym come in with xii.<sup>4</sup> with hym and no mo. Two knyghtes went downe to the gate, and opnyed the wycket and issued out and made reuerence to the erle, and receyued hym with gracious wordes, for they knewe well that they hadde no force to resyst them, and also they knewe well the Londoners were sore displeased with thē: therfore they spake fayre, and sayde to the erle: Sir, what is your pleasure? the kyng is at masse; he hath sente vs hyder to speke with you? I saye, quod therle, ye knowe well I ought to haue possessyon of the duchy of Lancastre; I am come in partie for that cause, and also for other thynges that I wolde speke with the kyng of. Sir, quod they, ye be welcome; the kyng wolde be gladde to se you and to here you, and hath commaūded that ye come to hym all onely with xii.<sup>5</sup> persones. The erle answered: it pleaseth me well: so he entred into the castell with xii.<sup>6</sup> persones, and than the gate closed agayne, and the rest of his cōpany taryed without.

Nowe consyder what dāger therle of Derby was in, for the kyng than myght haue slayne hym and suche as were with hym, as easely as a byrde in a cage; but he feared nat the mater, but boldely went to the kyng, who chaūged colours whan he sawe the erle. Than the erle spake aloud, without makynge of any great honour or reuerence, and sayd: Sir, are ye fastynge? The kyng answered and sayd yea, why aske you? It is tyme, quod the erle, that ye had dyned, for ye haue a great journey to ryde. Why, wheder shulde I ryde, quod the kyng? Ye must ryde to London, quod therle, wherfore I counsayle you eate and drinke, that ye maye ryde with the more myrthe. Than the kyng, who was sore troubled in his mynde, and in a maner afrayde of those wordes, sayde: I am nat hungry; I haue no luste to eate. Than suche as were by, who were as than gladde to flatter therle of Derby, for they sawe well the mater was lyke to go dyuersly, sayde to the kyng: Sir, beleue your cosyng of Lancastre, for he wyll nothyng but good. Than the kyng sayd: well, I am content; couer the tables. Thanne the kyng washed and satte downe and was serued. Than the erle was demaūded if he wolde sytte downe: he sayde no, for he was nat fastynge.

In the mean season whyle the kyng satte at dyner, who dyde eate but lytell, his hert was so full that he had no lust to eate, all the countrey about the castell was full of men of warre: they within the castell myght se them out at the wyndowes, and the kyng whan he rose fro the table myght se them hymselfe. Than he demaunded of his cosyn what men they were that appered so many in the felde. Therle aunswered and sayde: the moost parte of thē be Londoners. What wolde they haue? quod the kyng. They wyll haue you, quod therle, and bringe you to London, and putte you into the towre; there is none other remedy, ye can scape none otherwise. No, quod y kyng, and he was sore afrayde of those wordes, for he knewe well the Lōdoners loued hym nat, and sayde: Cosyn, can you nat prouyde for my suretie? I wyll nat gladly putte me into their hādes, for I knowe well they hate me, and haue done long, though I be their kyng. Than therle sayd: Sir, I se none other remedy but to yelde yourselfe as my prisoner; and whan they knowe that ye be my prisoner they wyll do you no hurte; but ye must so ordayne you and your cōpany to ryde to Lōdon with me, and to be as my prisoner in the towre of London. The kyng, who sawe hymself in a harde case, all his spyrites were sore abashed, as he that doutted greatly that the londoners wolde slee hym. Than he yelded hymselfe prisoner to the erle of Derby, and boūde hymselfe, and promysed to do all that he wolde haue hym to do. In lykewise all other knyghtes, squyers, and offycers yelded to the erle, to eschewe the daūger and payrll that they were in: and the erle than receyued them as his prisoners, and ordayned incontynent horses to be sadyllid and brought forth into the courte and the gates opnyed, than many men of armes and archers entred; than the erle of Derby caused a crye to be made: on payne of dethe, no man to be so hardy to take away any thyng within y castell, nor to laye any handes vpon any persone, for all were vnder the erles sauegarde and protection; whiche crye was kept, no man durst breke it. The erle had the kyng downe into the courte talkyng toguyder, and caused all the kynges hole household and estate to go forwarde, as of custome they had done before, without chaūgyng or mynyschyng of any thyng. Whyle euery thyng was a preparyng, the kyng and the erle cōmuned toguyder in the court, and were well regarded by the Londoners: and as it was enforced me, kynge Richarde had a grayhounde called Mathe, who alwayes wayted vpon the kyng, and wolde knowe no man els: for whansoer the kyng dyde ryde, he that kept the grayhounde dyde lette hym lose, and he wolde streight rynne to the kyng and flawne vpon hym, and leape with his fore fete vpon the kynges shulders; and as the kyng and the erle of Derby talked toguyder in the courte, the grayhounde, who was wont to lepe vpon the kyng, left the kyng and came to the erle of Derby, duke of Lancastre, and made to hym the same frendly cōtinaūce and chere as he was wonte to do to the kyng. The duke, who knewe nat the grayhōūde, demaunded of the kyng what the grayhounde wolde do. Cosyn, quod the kyng, it is a gret good token to you, and an yuell signe to me. Sir, howe know you that? quod the duke. I knowe it well, quod the kyng: the grayhounde maketh you chere this day as kyng of Englande, as ye shal be, and I shal be deposed: the grayhōūde hath this knowledge naturally; therefore take hym to you, he wyll folowe you and forsake me. The duke vnderstode well those wordes, and cherished the grayhounde, who wolde neuer after folowe kyng Richarde, but folowed the duke of Lācastre.

So euery man lepte a horsbacke and departed fro the castell of Flynt, and entred into the felde. Thus duke Henry of Lancastre, who was no more called erle of Derby but duke of Lācastre, rode by the kyng and oftentymes talked togider, and men of warre before and behynde in great nombre, and all suche as were of the kynges courte rode toguyder in a company. That night they laye about Oxenforde. The duke of Lancastre ledde kyng Richarde by no castelles nor good townes, for feare of styryng of the people,  
but

but alwayes kepte the felde. Than the duke gaue lycence to a great nombre of his people to departe, and sayd: Sirs, ye maye departe, for we haue that we desyre; the kyng can nat flye nor scape fro vs: we and our owne company shall bring hym to London, and putte hym in sauegarde in ȝ towre, he and all his are my prisoners, I may bringe them whider I wyll; therefore sirs, go your wayes home tyll ye here other newes. They dyde as the duke cōmaunded thē, who toke the way to Wyndsore, and came thyder, and moost parte of the Lōdoners retourned to London, and other to their owne places. The duke of Lācastre departed fro Wynsore, and wolde nat ride by Colbroke, but toke the way by Shene, and so cāe to dyner to Chersay; ȝ king had desyred the duke that he shulde nat bringe hym London waye, nor through the cytie, and therefore they tooke that waye. As soone as they had the kyng thus in their handes, they sente notable persones to the yong quene, who was at Ledes in Kent, and they cāe to the lady Coucy, who was seconde persone there next to the quene, and sayd to her: Madame, make you redy, for ye must departe hens: and at your departyng make no semblant of displeasure before the quene, but saye howe your husbände hath sent for you, and for your daughter also; this that we saye, loke that you do accomplysse on payne of your lyfe, nor axe ye no questyons no further, and ye shal be conueyed to Douer, and there haue a shyppe that shall bring you to Boloynie. The lady who douted those wordes, for she knewe well Englysshe men were cruell and hasty, said: sirs, as god wyll I am redy to do as ye wyll haue me. Anone she made her redy, and horses were prouyded for her and for her cōpany. So all Frenche men and women departed, and they were conueyed to Douer, and at the next tyde they toke shippyng, and had good wynde, and so arryued at Boloynie.

*Of the state of quene Isabell of Englande, and howe she had all newe persones apoynted to wayte vpon her, and howe kynge Richarde was sette in the towre of London.*

C A P. CCXLII.<sup>a</sup>

AS for the state of the quene was so tourned and broken, for there was lefte nouthur man, woman, nor chylde of ȝ nacion of Frāce, nor yet of Englande, suche as were in any fauour with the kyng: her house was newly furnisshed with ladyes and damosselles, and other offycers and seruauntes; they were charged all, that in no wyse they shuld nat speke of the kyng, nat one to another. Thus the duke of Lācastre departed fro Chertsay, and rode to Shene, and fro thens in the nyght tyme they conueyed the kyng to the towre of London, and suche other knightes and squyers as the kyng wolde. The nexte mornyng whan the Londoners knewe that the kyng was in the towre, they were gretly reioysed, but there was great murmuring among thē, bycause the kyng was conueyed thyder so secretly; they were angry that the duke had nat brought hym throughe London openly, nat to haue done him honor, but shame, they hated hym so sore. Beholde the opinyon of cōmen people, whā they be vp agaynst their prince or lorde, and specially in Englande; amonge them there is no remedy, for they are the peryloust people of the worlde, and most outragyoust if they be vp, and specially the Londoners, and in dede they be riche and of a great nombre; there was well in Lōdon a xxiiii. thousande men in harnesse complete, and a xxx. thousande archers, and they

5 C 2

were

\* Chapter CCXXXIX.

were hardy and hygh of corage: the more blode they sawe shedde, the lesse they were abashed.

Nowe lette vs somewhat speke of the erle of Rutlande, constable of Englande, sonne to the duke of Yorke, who was taryed at Bristowe, and the lorde Spēser with hym, who had his suster to wyfe; whan they knewe ſ the castell of Flynte was gyuen vp, and the kyng taken and brought to London, thañe they thought surely the matters wente nat well for the kyng; therefore they thought no lengar to tary there, and gaue leaue to all their men of warre to departe, and the erle of Rutlande, and the lorde Spenser, rode togyder with their owne seruantes to Hull,<sup>a</sup> in the marches of Wales, a fayre māner of the lorde Spensers, and there they taryed tyll they herde other tidynges: and the duke of Yorke laye styll in his castell, and medled with nothyng of the busynesse of Englande: no more he dyde before, he toke euer the tyme aworthe as it came; howbeit, he was sore displeased in his mynde, to se suche difference within ſ realme, and bytwene his nephues and blode.

Nowe let vs retourne to speke of kyng Richarde.

Whan the duke of Lancastre had set his cosyn kyng Richard in ſ towre of London, and certayne of his couſaylours, and had sette sure kepyng on thē, the fyrst thyng than that the duke dyde, he sent for the erle of Warwyke, who was banysshed and commaunded to lye in the ysle of Wuyght, and discharged hym clene therof: and secondly, the duke of Lancastre sent to therle of Northumberlande, and to the lorde Percy his sonne, that they shulde come to hym, and so they dyde: after he enquered and sought out to haue the foure companyons that had strangled his vnclē the duke of Gloucestre in the castell of Calais; they were so well sought out, that they were all taken: they were sette in prisone aparte in Lōdon. Than the duke of Lancastre and his couſayle toke aduise what shulde be done with kyng Richarde, beyng in the towre of Lōdon, where as kyng Johan of Fraunce was kept, whyle kyng Edward wente into the realme of Frauce: than it was thought that kyng Rycharde shulde be put fro all his royalte and ioy that he hath lyued in, for they sayd, the newes of his takyng shulde sprede abroad into all realmes crystened; he had been kyng xxii. yere, and as than they determined to kepe him in prisone: than they regarded what case the realme stode in, and dyd put all his dedes in artycles to the nombre of xxviii. Than the duke of Lancastre and his counsaile went to the towre of London, and entred into the chambre where kyng Rycharde was, and without any reuerence makyng to hym, there was openly redde all the said artycles, to the whiche the kyng made none aunswere, for he sawe well all was true ſ was layde to his charge, sauynge he sayd, all that I haue doone passed by my counsaile. Than he was demaunded what they were that had gyuen couſayle, and by whome he was most ruled; he named them, in trust therby to haue ben deluyered hymselfe in accusyng of them, as he had doone before tyme, trustynge therby to scape, and to bringe them in the daunger and payne, but that was nat the mynde of them that loued hym nat. So as at that tyme they spake no more but departed, and the duke of Lancastre went to his lodgyng, and suffred the mayre and the men of lawe to procede: they went to ſ Guyldhall, where as all the maters of the cytie were determyned, and than moche people assēbled there. Whan they sawe the gouernours of the cytie go thyder, they thought some iustice shulde be done, as there was in dede. I shall shewe you howe: Fyrste, the artycles that were made agaynst the kyng, the whiche had been redde before hym in the towre, were redde agayne there openly; and it was shewed by hym that redde them, howe the kyng hymselfe denyed none of them, but confessed that he dyd them by the counsaile of four knyghtes of his chambre, and howe by their

counsaile



counsaille he had put to dethe the duke of Gloucestre, and the erle of Arūdell, sir Thomas Corbet, and other, and howe they had longe encyted the kynge to do those dedes; which dedes they sayd, were nat to be forgyuen, but demaunded punycion; for by them and their cōsaille the iustyce of right was closed vp through all the courtes of Englande, Westmyenster, and other, wherby many yuell dedes folowed, and companyes and rowtes of theues and murderers rose and assembled togyther in dyuers parties of the realme, and robbed marchauntes by the wayes, and poore men in their houses, by whiche meanes the realme was in great parell to haue ben lost without recouery; and it is to be ymagyned that fynally they wolde haue rendred Calais, or Guysnes, or bothe, into the frenchmennes handes. These wordes thus shewed to the people made many to be abashed, and many beganne to murmure and sayd: these causes demaunde punycion, that all other may take ensample therby, and Rycharde of Burdeaux to be deposed: for he is nat worthy to beare a crowne, but ought to be depriued fro all honour, and to be kept all his lyfe in prison with breed and water. Though some of the villaynes murmured, other said on hygh: Sir mayre of London, and ye other that haue iustyce in your handes to mynyster, execute iustyce: for we wyll ye spare no man, for ye se well the case that ye haue shewed vs demaūdeth iustyce incōtyent, for they are iudges vpon their owne dedes. Than the mayre and other of the gouernours of the lawe went togyther into the chambre of iudgement: than these four knyghtes were iudged to dye, and were iudged to be had to the foote of the towre, where as kynge Rycharde was, that he might se them drawen alonge by the dyke with horses eche after other, throughe the cytie into chepesyde, and than there heedes stryken of there, and sette vpon London bridge, and there bodyes drawen to the gybet, and there hanged.

This iudgment gyuen they were delyuered to execucyon, for the mayre of London, and suche as were deputed to the mater, wente fro the Gylldhall to the towre, and toke out the four knyghtes of the kynges, whose names were called sir Bernarde Brokas, syr Marclays, mayster Johā Derby, receyuour of Lyncolne, and mayster Stell, the kynges stewarde; eche of thē were tyed to two horses, in the presence of them that were in the towre, and the kynge myght well se it out at the wyndowes, wherwith he was sore discomforted, for all other that were there with the kynge loked to be in the same case, they knewe them of London so cruell. Thus these four knyghtes were drawen one after another alonge through the cyte tyll they came into chepe, and there on a fysshers stall their heedes were stryken of and set vpon London bridge, and their bodyes drawen by the shulders to the gybet, and there hanged vp. This iustyce thus doone, euery man went to their lodgynges. Kynge Rycharde knowyng himself taken, and in the daunger of the londoners, was in great sorowe in his herte, and rekened his puyssaunce nothyng: for he save howe euery man was agaynst hym, and if there were any that ought hym any fauour, it laye nat in their powers to do hym any ayde, nor they durste nat shewe it. Suche as were with the kynge sayde: Syr, we haue but small trust in our lyues as it may well apere; for whan your cosyn of Lancastre came to the castell of Flynte, and with your owne good wyll ye yelded you to hym, and he promysed that you and twelue of yours shulde be his prisoners and haue no hurte, and nowe of those twelue, four be executed shamefully, we are like to passe the same way; the cause is these londoners, who hath caused the duke of Lancastre your cosyn to do this dede, had hym so sore bounde to them that he muste do as they wyll haue hym: god dothe moche for vs, if he suffre that we myght dye here our naturall deth, and nat a shamefull dethe; it is great pytie to thynke on this. With those wordes kyng Rycharde began tēderly to wepe and wringe his handes, and cursed the houre that euer he was borne, rather than to haue suche an ende. Suche as were aboute hym had great pytie, and recomforted hym as well as they might. One of his knyghtes sayd: Syr, it behoueth you

you to take comforte; we se well, and so do you, that this worlde is nothyng, the fortunes therof are marueylous, and somtyme tourne as well vpon kinges and princes, as vpon poore men; the frenche kyng, whose daughter ye haue maryed, canne nat now ayde you, he is to farre of: if ye myght scape this myscheffe by dyssimulacyon, and saue your lyfe and ours, it were a good enterprise: peradventure within a yere or two there wolde be had some recouery. Why, quod the kyng, what wolde ye that I shulde do? there is nothyng but I wolde be glad to do it to saue vs therby. Syr, quod the knyght, we se for trouthe that these londoners wyll crowne your cosyn of Lancastre as kyng, and for that entent they sent for hym, and so haue ayded hym and do; it is nat possyble for you to lyue, without ye consent that he be crowned kyng: wherfore syr, we wyll counsaile you, (to the entent to saue your lyfe and ours), that whan your cosyn of Lancastre cometh to you to demaunde any thyng, than with swete and treatable wordes say to hym: howe that ye wyll resygne to hym the crowne of Englande, and all the ryght that ye haue in the realme, clerely and purely into his handes, and howe that ye wyll that he be kyng; therby ye shall greatly apease him and the londoners also; and desyre hym effectuously to suffre you to lyue and vs also with you, or els euery man a parte, as it shall please him, or els to banissh vs out of the realme for euer, for he that leseth his lyfe, leseth all. Kyng Rycharde herde those wordes well, and fyxed them surely in his herte, and sayd he wolde do as they counsayled hym, as he that sawe hymselfe in great danger: and than he sayd to them that kepte hym, howe he wolde gladly speke with his cosyn of Lancastre.

*Howe Kyng Rycharde of Englande resigned the crowne and the realme into the handes of the erle of Derby duke of Lancastre.*

#### CAP. CCXLIII.<sup>a</sup>

IT was shewed the duke of Lancastre howe Richarde of Burdeaux desyred to speke with hym. The Duke in an euenyng toke a barge and went to the towre by water, and went to the kyng, who receyued hym curtesly, and humbled hymselfe greatly, as he that sawe hymselfe in great daunger, and sayd: Cosyn of Lancastre, I regarde and consydre myne estate, whiche is as nowe but small, I thanke god therof; as any more to reygne or to gouerne people, or to beare a crowne, I thynke it nat, and as god helpe me I wolde I were deed by a naturall dethe, and that the frenche kinge had agayne his daughter, we haue had as yet no gret ioy togyder, nor syth I brought her into Englande, I coulde neuer haue the loue of my people as I had before. Cosyn, all thynges cosydred, I knowe well I haue greatly trespassed agaynst you, and agaynst other noble men of my blodde; by dyuers thynges, I perceyue I shall neuer haue pardone nor come to peace, wherfore with myne owne free and lyberall wyll, I wyll resygne to you the herytage of the Crowne of Englande, and I requyre you take the gyfte therof with the resignacyon. Whan the duke herde that, he sayd: syr, it is conuenient that parte of the thre estates of the realme be called to these wordes, and I haue sent allredy for some noble men, prelates, and counsaylours of the good townes of Englande, and I truste they wyll be here within this thre dayes, suffycient of them, for you to make a dewe resygnacion before them, and by this meanes ye shal greatly apease many men within the realme; for to withstande suche enormyties and yuels as haue ben vsed in the realme for

faute

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXL.

faute of iustyce, who had no place to reygne, I was sent for fro beyond the see: and the people wolde crowne me, for the renome rynneth through Englande, that I haue more ryght to the crowne than ye haue; for whan our grauntfather kyng Edward the thyrd dyd chose and make you kyng, the same was as than shewed hym, but he loued so his sonne the prince, that none coude breake his purpose nor opinyon, but that you shulde be kyng; and if ye wolde haue folowed the steppes of your father the prince, and haue beleued his counsaile, as a good sonne ought to haue done, ye myght haue ben styl kyng, and haue contynued your estate; but ye haue alwayes done the contrary, so that the comon renome rynneth through Englande, and in other places, that ye were neuer sonne to the prince of Wales, but rather sonne to a preest or to a chanon; for I haue herde of certayne knyghtes that were in the Princes howse, myne vncl, howe that he knew well that his wyfe had nat truely kepte her maryage; your mother was cosyn germaine to kyng Edward, and the kyng beganne to hate her, bycause she coulde haue no generacion; also she was the kynges gossyp of two chylde[n] at the fonte:<sup>a</sup> and she that coulde well kepe the prince in her bandon by craft and subtylte, she made the prince to be her husbnde, and bycause she coulde haue no chylde, she douted that the prince shulde be deuorsed fro her: she dyd so moch that she was with chylde with you, and with another before you; as of the fyrst I can nat tell what to iudge, but as for you bycause your cōdicions haue ben sene contrary fro all nobles and proves of the prince, therefore it is sayd that ye be rather sonne to a prest or to a chanon, for whan ye were gotten and borne at Burdeaux, there were many yonge preestes in y<sup>e</sup> princes house. This is the brute in this country, and your workes haue well folowed the same, for ye be alwayes enclnyed to the pleasure of the frenchmen, and to take with them peace to the confusyon and dyshonoure of the realme of Englande. And bycause myne vncl of Gloucestre, and the erle of Arundell, dyd cōsaile you truly and faythfully to kepe the honour of the realme, and to folowe the steppes of your auncestours, ye haue traytoursly caused them to dye; as for me I haue taken on me to defende your lyfe as longe as I may for pytie, and I shall pray the londoners and the herytours of them that ye haue slayne and banysshed, to do the same. Cosyn, I thanke you, quod y<sup>e</sup> kyng, I truste more in you than in any other. It is but ryght that ye so shulde do, for if I had nat ben, ye had ben taken by the people and deposed with great confusyon, and slayne, by reasone of your yuell workes. Kyng Rycharde herde well all the dukes wordes, and wyst nat what to saye agaynst it, for he sawe well that force nor argumentes coulde nat auceyle him, but rather mekenesse and humylite: wherfore he humbled hym, and prayed the duke to saue his lyfe.

Whan the duke of Lancastre had ben at the towre two houres with kyng Rycharde, and had shewed hym parte of his fautes, than he returned. And the next day he sent forthe mo cōmaundements into all parties of the realme, to cause noble men and other to come to London: his vncl the duke of Yorke came to London, and the erle of Rutlande his sonne, the erle of Northumberlande, and the lorde Thomas Percy his brother; the duke of Lancastre made them good chere: thyder came also great nombre of prelates and abbotes. And on a day the duke of Lancastre accompanied with lordes, dukes, prelates, erles, barones, and knyghtes, and of the notablist men of London, and of other good townes, rode to the Towre, and there alyghted. Than kyng Rycharde was brought into the hall, apparelled lyke a kyng in his robes of estate, his septer in his hande, and his crowne on his heed: than he stode vp alone, nat holden nor stayed by no man, and sayde aloude: I haue been kyng of Englande, duke of Acqyutany, and  
lorde

<sup>a</sup> The meaning of this passage is, "notwithstanding she had been the mother of two children by Sir Thomas Holland, which he (King Edward 3d) had stood godfather to."

lorde of Irelande, aboute xxii. yeres, whiche sygnory, royalte, cepter, crowne, and herytage, I clerely resygne here to my cosyn Henry of Lancastre: and I desyre hym here in this open presence, in entrynge of the same possession, to take this septour: and so delyuered it to the duke, who toke it. Than kyng Rycharde toke the crowne fro his heed with bothe his handes, and set it before hym, and sayd: Fayre cosyn, Henry duke of Lancastre, I gyue and delyuer you this crowne, wherwith I was crowned kyng of Englande, and therwith all the right therto dependyng. The duke of Lancastre tooke it, and the archebysshop of Caunterbury toke it out of the dukes handes. This resygnacion thus done, the duke of Lancastre called a notary, and demaunded to haue letters and wytnesse of all the prelates and lordes there beyng present. Than Rycharde of Burdeaux retourned agayne into the chambre fro whence he came. Than the duke of Lancastre and all other lept on their horses, and the crowne and ceptour were put in a cofer, and conueyed to the abbey of Westmynster, and there kept in the treasury. And euery man wente to their lodgynges, and abode tyll the day of parliament and counsaile shulde be at the palays of Westmynster.

*Of the coronacyon of kyng Henry duke of Lancastre, by the consent of the realme, and the maner of the feest.*

#### C A P. CCXLV.<sup>a</sup>

IN the yere of our lorde god a thousande, thre hundred, fourscore and nynetene, the last daye of septembre, on a tuysday,<sup>b</sup> began a parlyament at Westmynster, holden by Henry duke of Lancastre, at whiche tyme there was assembled prelates and clergy of the realme of Englande a great nombre, and also dukes, erles, and barones, and of euery towne a certayne. Thus the people assembled at Westmynster, there beyng presente the duke of Lancastre; and there the same duke chalenged the realme of Englande, and desyred to be kyng by thre reasones: Fyrst, by conquest; secondly, bycause he was heyre; and thyrddy, bycause Rycharde of Burdeaux had resygned the realme into his handes by his free wyll, in the presence of certayne dukes, erles, prelates, and barones, in the hall within the towre of London. These thre causes shewed, the duke of Lancastre requyred all the people there present, as well one as other, to shewe their myndes and ententes in that behalfe. Than all the people with one voyce sayd, that their wylles was to haue him kyng, and howe they wolde haue none other but hym. Than the duke agayne sayd to the people: Sirs, is this your myndes? And they all with one voyce sayde: ye, ye. And than the duke sate downe in the syege royall, whiche seate was reysed vp in the hall, and couered with a clothe of estate, so y<sup>e</sup> euery man myght well se hym sytte. And than the people lyfted vp their handes a hygh, promysing hym their faythe and allegyaunce. Thanne the parlyament cōcluded, and the day was taken for his coronacyon on saynt Edwardes day, the monday the xiii. day of Octobre: at whiche tyme, the saturday before his coronacyon, he departed fro Westmynster, and rode to the towre of London with a great nombre; and that night all suche squyers as shulde be made knyghtes the nexte day, watched, who were to the nombre of xlvi; euery squier had his owne bayne by himselfe: and the next day the duke of Lancastre made them all knyghtes at the masse tyme. Than had they longe cotes with strayte sleues, furred w<sup>th</sup> mynyuer lyke prelates, with whyte laces hangyng  
on

<sup>a</sup> Chapter CCXLI.

<sup>b</sup> Johnes calls it *Wednesday*, but the Lyons' edition and the Paris edition of Galliot du Prè, 1530, agree with Lord Berners.

on their sholders. And after dyner the duke departed fro the towre to Westmyenster, and rode all the way bareheeded, and aboute his necke the lyery of Fraunce; he was accompanied with ȝ prince his sonne, and syxe dukes, syxe erles, and xviii. barons, and in all, knyghtes and squyers a nyne hundred horse: than the kyng had on a shorte cote of clothe of golde, after the maner of Almayne,<sup>a</sup> and he was mounted on a whyte courser, and the garter on his left legge. Thus the duke rode through London with a great nombre of lordes, euery lordes seruaunt in their maysters lyuerey. All the burgesses and lombardes marchautes in London, and euery craft with their lyuerey and deuuse. Thus he was conueyed to Westmyenster. He was in nombre a syxe thousāde horse, and the streates hanged as he passed by: and the same day and the next there were in London rynnynge seuen cundyttes with wyne, whyte and reed. That nyght the duke was bayned, and the next mornyng he was confessed, and herde thre masses as he was acustomed to do, and than all the prelates and clergy came fro Westmyenster church to the palays, to fetch the kyng with procession: and so he went to the church a procession, and all the lordes with hym in their robes of scarlet, furred with menyuer, barred of their sholders, acordynge to their degrees; and ouer the kyng was borne a clothe of estate of blewe, with four belles of golde, and it was borne by four burgesses of the portes,<sup>b</sup> as Douer, and other; and on euery syde of him he had a sword borne, the one ȝ sworde of the church, and the other the sworde of iustyce; the sworde of the church his sonne the prince dyd beare, and the sworde of iustyce therle of Northumberlande dyd beare, for he was as than constable of Englande, for the erle of Rutlande was deposed fro that offyce: and the erle of Westmerlande, who was marshall of Englande, bare the ceptour. Thus they entred into ȝ church about nyne of the clocke, and in the myddes of the church there was an hygh scaffold all couered with reed, and in the myddes therof there was a chayre Royall, couered with clothe of golde: than the kyng satte downe in ȝ chayre and so sate in estate royall, sauynge he had nat on the crowne, but sate bareheeded. Than at four corners of the scaffold, the archebysshop of Caunterbury shewed vnto the people howe god had sent them a man to be their kyng, and demaunded if they were content that he shulde be consecrated and crowned as their kyng. And they all with one voyce sayd yea, and helde vp their handes, promysynge him faythe and obeysaunce. Than the kyng rose and wente downe the scaffold to the hygh auter to be sacred, at whiche consecracyon there were two archbysshoppes, and ten bysshops, and before the auter ther he was dispoyled out of all his vestures of estate, and there he was anoynted in vi. places, on the heed, on the brest, and on the two sholders behynde, and on the handes: than a bonet was set on his heed, and wyle he was anoyntyng, the clergy sange the latyny, and suche seruyce as they synge at the halowing of the fonte. Than ȝ kyng was aparelled lyke a prelate of the church, with a cope of reed sylke, and a payre of spures, with a poynte without a rowell; than the sworde of iustyce was drawn out of the shethe and halowed, and than it was taken to ȝ kyng, who dyd put it agayne into the sheth: than the archebysshop of Caunterbury dyd gyrd ȝ sworde about hym; than saynt Edwardes crowne was brought forthe (whiche is close aboue) and blessed, and than the archebysshop dyd sette it on the kynges heed. After masse the kyng departed out of the church in the same estate, and went to his palays, and there was a fountayne that ranne by dyuers branches whyte wyne and reed; than the kyng entred into the hall, and so into a priuy chamber, and after came out agayne to dyner. At the fyrst table sate the kyng; at the seconde ȝ fyue peres of the realme; at the thyrde the valyaunt men of London; at the fourth the newe made knyghtes; at the fyft the knyghtes and squiers of honour; and by the kyng stode the prince holdynge the sworde of the church, and on the other syde the Constable with

VOL. II.

5 D

the

<sup>a</sup> Germany<sup>b</sup> The barons or burgesses of the cinque ports still enjoy the right of carrying the canopy at a coronation.

the sworde of iustyce, and a lytell abone the marshall with the ceptour, and at ȝ kynges borde sate two archbysshops, and xvii. bysshoppes; and in the myddles of the dyner there came in a knyght, who was called Dinereth,<sup>4</sup> all armed vpon a good horse rychely aparelled, and had a knyght before hym bearyng his speare, and his sworde by his syde and his dagger. The knyght toke the kyng a lybell, the whiche was red; therin was conteyned that if there were outhr knyght, squyer, or any other gētylman, that wolde say that kyng Henry was nat rightfull kyng, he was there redy to fyght with him in that quarell, before the kyng, or where as it shulde please hym to apoynte: that byll was cryed by an haraulde in syxe places of the hall, and in the towne. There was none that wolde challenge hym. Whan the kyng had dynded he toke wyne and spyces in the hall, and than went into his chambre. Than euery man departed and went to their lodgings. Thus the day passed of kyng Henryes coronacyon with great ioy and feest, whiche endured all the next day. The erle of Salysbury was nat at this solēpnyte, for he was in sure prison, and the kynges cōsayle, and dyuers other noble men, and the londoners wolde that his heed shulde haue ben stryken of openly in chepe: for they said he had well deserued it, for bearynge of letters and credēce fro Rycharde of Burdeaux, to the frenche kyng, and there to reporte openly that kyng Henry was a false traytoure, whiche faute they sayd ought nat to be pardoned. Kyng Henry was more gentyll than so, for he had some pytie on hym, for therle excused hym and sayd: that he dyd, was by the kynges cōmaundement, and by the setting on of the four knyghtes that were beheaded. Kinge Henry beleued well the erles wordes, but his cōsayle wolde nat beleue it, but said, and so dyd ȝ londoners, that he shulde dye, bycause he had deserued deth. Thus the erle of Salysbury was in prison in great daunger of his lyfe. And syr Johan Holande erle of Huntynghdon, capytayne of Calais, was well enfourmed of the hole mater, and howe his brother kyng Rychard was taken and in prisone in the towre of London, and had resygned his crowne and all, and howe Henry of Lancastre was kinge of Englande. This erle of Huntynghdon, whatsoever dyspleasure he had for the trouble of his brother, yet wysely he consydred the tyme and aduentures, and sawe well ȝ he was nat able to withstande all the power and puyssaunce of the realme: also the countesse his wyfe, who was cosyn germayne to kyng Henry, sayd: Syr, it must behoue you to passe your displeasure pacyently and wysely, and do nat that thyng wherby ye shall haue dōmage: for the kyng may do you moche good: and ye se that all the realme enclyneth to hym; if ye shewe any dyspleasure to hym warde, ye are but lost; wherfore syr, I requyre you, and I cōsayle you to dyssimule the matter, for as well kyng Henry nowe is your brother, as kyng Rycharde was: therefore syr, stycke and leane to him, and ye shall fynde hym your good louer, for there was neuer a rycher kyng in Englande than he is; he may do to you and to your chyldren great good. The erle herde well the wordes of his wyfe and beleued her, and enclyned hym to kyng Henry, and offred hym humble obeysaunce, and promysed hym faythe and trouthe. The kyng receyued hym and had great ioy therof, and he dyd so moche with meanes of his frēdes, that the erle of Salysbury was taken to grace, and his excusacyons accepted, and was clene pardoned.

<sup>4</sup> Dymoke, in which family and name the right of appearing, at a coronation, as champion still exists.

*How newes of the taking of kyng Rycharde was knowen in Fraunce by the cōmyng thyder of the lady of Coucy, and howe the frenche kyng was displeased.*

## CAP. CCXLVI.\*

WHAN the lady of Coucy was aryued at Bouloynē, she hasted her to go to Parys. Great murmuryng there was in Fraunce of the sodayne incidentes ŷ were fallen in Englade: they knewe somewhat by marchautes of Bruges, but whan the lady of Coucy aryued, than the trouth was knowen; she went firste to her husbandes house, as it was reason. Anon the frenche kyng herde worde howe the lady of Coucy was come to Parys; than the kyng sent for the lorde of Coucy, who had ben all nyght with his wyfe. Whan he was come the kyng demaūded of the state of kyng Rycharde of Englande, and of the quene his daughter. The lorde durst nat hyde the trouth fro hym, but shewed hym playnely euery thyng, as his wyfe had shewed hym, whiche newes were sore dyspleasaut to the frenche kyng, for he knewe well the englysshmen were sore and harde men to apease; and so with dyspleasure the frenche kyng returned agayne into his olde sicknes of fransey, wherof the nobles of ŷ realme were sore displeased, but they coude nat amende it. Than the duke of Burgoyne said, I thought neuer otherwyse: for it was a maryage without good reasone, the whiche I sayd playnly ynough whan the mater was fyrst spokē of, but as than I coulde nat be herde: for I knewe well ŷ londoners neuer loued parfytely kyng Rycharde: all this myschefe is engendred by the duke of Gloucestre, it is tyme now to take hede what the englysshmen wyll do; sythe they haue taken their kyng and put him in prison, by all lykelyhode they wyll put hym to dethe, for they neuer loued him, bycause he loued no warre, but peace; they wyll crowne to their kyng the duke of Lancastre, he shall so bynde hymselfe to them, that whether he wyll or nat, he shall do all that they wyll; and sayd moreouer, nowe shall be sene what they of Burdeaux wyll do, for there he was borne, and was well beloued with them, and also with them of Bayon, and of Dax, and in all the lymtes of Burdeloys; it were good that ŷ constable of Fraūce, sir Loys of Sanxere, were signyfyed of this mater, and that he drewe hym to ŷ fronters there, and with him syr Raynolde of<sup>b</sup> Barroys, of Barreys, and other barones and prelates, and to treate with them and my brother the duke of Berrey, to go into Poictou, and to drawe to the fronters of Xaintes, of Blaues, and of mirebell, wherby if they of Burdeaux wyll any thyng entende to our treaties, that they may be receyued, for nowe shall we haue them or neuer. As he deuysed it was ordeyned, the whiche was a substanciall deuce; for whan they of Burdeaux, of Bayon, and of Dax, vnderstode that their kyng Rycharde was taken and sette in the towre of London, and Duke Henry of Lancastre crowned kyng, they had gret marueyle therof, and in the begynnyng wolde nat beleue it, but lytle and lytle they knewe the trouth therof. Than the sayd thre townes were closed and no man suffred to issue out nor to entre in: they were sore troubled and sorowfull, and specyally the cytie of Burdeaux, for kyng Rycharde was norysshed amonge them, therefore they loued hym: and whyle he was kyng, if any of Burdeloys came to hym they were well receyued, and alwayes ŷ kyng was redy to fulfill their desyres, wherfore they sayd whan they knewe the trouth: Ah, Rycharde, gentle kyng, ye were as noble a man as euer reigned in any realme:

5 D 2

\* Chapter CCXLII.

<sup>b</sup> The surname appears omitted here. D. Sauvage conjectures Sir Reginald du Roye to be intended; but Johnes calls him Sir Reginald d'Espaigne.

realme: this trouble þ̄ londoners haue caused, for they coulde neuer loue you, specyally sythe ye were alyed by maryage with the frenche kyng; this myschiefe is so great that we can nat suffre it: they haue holden you kyng this xxii. yere, and now to condempne you to the dethe, for sythe ye be in prison and haue crowned the duke of Lancastre, they wyll surely put you to dethe. So they of Burdeloys made great lamentacyons, in so moche that the seneschall of Burdeaux, a ryght valyaunt knyght of Englande, wrote letters, therin conteynyng the wordes and lamentacyons of them of the cytie of Burdeaux, of Bayon, and of Dax: also he wrote howe they were nere at the poynte to yelde vp their townes to the frenche kyng. He sent this lettre by a trusty seruaūt of his by the see, who had good wynde, and aryued at Cornewayle in Englāde, and than he rode so longe that he came to London; there he fōude kyng Henry, and delyuered his letters, which were dyrected to the kyng and to the londoners. They were opened and reed, and the kyng and the londoners toke counsaile vpon that mater. They of London answered lyke theym that were nothing abashed of that tydynge, but sayde: as for these townes wyll neuer tourne frenche, for they can nat lyue in their daunger, nor they canne nat suffre the extorcyon and pollinge of the frenchmen: for vnder vs they lyue franke and free, and if the frenchemen shulde be lordes ouer them, they shulde be taxed and tayed, and retayed two or thre tymes in a yere, the whiche they are nat nowe accustomed vnto, whiche shulde be a harde thyng nowe for them to begynne; also these thre cyties are closed in rōude about with great lordes, who are good englysshe, and longe haue been, as the lorde Pyuiers,<sup>a</sup> the lorde Musydent, the lorde Duras, the lorde Landuras, the lorde Copane, the lorde Rosem, the lorde Logeren,<sup>b</sup> and dyuers other barones and knyghtes, by whome they shulde haue warre at their handes, for they shuld nat issue out of their cities but they shulde be taken. For all the seneschalles wrytyng, we haue no doute þ̄ they shulde become frenche; howebeit, good it is to sende thyder some valyaunt wyse man that is beloued amonge theym, some such as hath gouerned there or this, and that is the lorde Thomas Percy. Thus as it was deuysed it was acomplysshed: he was desyred to go thyder, and to take hede of that cōtre. He fulfilled the kynges cōmaundement, and made hym redy to departe; it was about Christmasse, at whiche tyme the wyndes be sore and jeoperdous; he toke shyppe in Cornewayle: he had with him two hundred men of armes and four hundred archers, and with hym was his nephue Hugh Hastynges, Thomas Coleuyll, Gyllyam Lysle, Johan Graily, bastarde sonne to the Captall of Beufz,<sup>c</sup> Guillyam Traicton, Johan Danbreticourt, and diuers other, and also the bysshop of London, and mayster Rycharde Doall.<sup>d</sup> They taryed tyll it was mydde Marche or they toke the see; and or they came to Burdeaux the duke of Burbon was come to the cytie of Dagen, to treat with theym of Burdeloys; and he dyd so moche by his fayre wordes and good assuraunce, that the counsailes of Burdeaux, of Bayon, and of Dax, were sent to the cytie of Dagen. The duke receyued them frendly, and gaue them fayre wordes and many promyses, and shewed them that if they wolde turne frenche, and be under the obeysaunce of the frenche kyng, whatsoever they wolde demaunde shulde be graunted them, and sealed perpetually to endure. Many thynges they promysed and sware to seale, and to kepe for ener. They answered: whan they were retourned agayne into their cyties they wolde shewe all this to the people, and so take counsaile, and than gyue answer. Thus they departed fro Dagen and fro the duke of Burbon, and returned to their townes, and shewed all this to the people; but all tourned to nothyng, for the comynalties of the sayde cyties consydred the busynesse, and knewe well howe the realme of Fraunce was vexed and troubled with tayles and towages and shamful exaccions, all to get money. Than they sayd: if the frenchemen gouerne

ouer

<sup>a</sup> De Pomiers.<sup>b</sup> De Langurant.<sup>c</sup> De Buch.<sup>d</sup> Rowhall.



ouer vs, they wyll bringe vs to the same vsage; yet it is better for vs to be englysshe, for they kepe vs franke and free. If the londoners haue deposed kyng Rycharde and crowned kyng Henry, what is that to vs? we haue and shall haue alwayes a kyng, and we vnderstande that the bysshop of London and syr Thomas Percy shortly wyll be here; they shall enfourme vs of the trouthe; we haue also more marchaundyse of woll, wyne, and clothe with the Englysshemen than with the frenchmen: let vs be ware we make no treatie, wherby we shulde repent vs after. Thus the treatie with the frenche was broken and lette of. Than anone after, the bysshop of London and y<sup>e</sup> lorde Percy, with their charge of men of warre, aryued at Burdeaux, wherof moche people were greatly reioysed, and some displeased, suche as had rather haue been frenche than englysshe. All these englysshe lordes were lodged together in the abbey of saint Andrew, and whan they sawe their tyme, they shewed to the people the state of Englande, and y<sup>e</sup> cause why they were sent thyder; and they dyd so moche that euery thyng was apased both there and in all other places, for harde it was to haue caused them to haue tourned frenche.

Than it was determyned by the counsayle of Fraunce, sith the kyng was in syknesse by reason of the displeasure that he toke for the deposyng of his sonne in lawe kyng Rycharde, y<sup>e</sup> they shulde sende some notable wyse personage into Englande to knowe the state of the quene. To do this message was apoynted syr Charles de la Brethe<sup>a</sup> and Charles of Hangers, who (as they were comaunded) departed fro Parys and came to Bolygne and there taryed, for they had sent an haraulde to kyng Henry: for without assuraunce they durst nat go, for all the truce that was bytwene bothe realmes. Kyng Henry, who thought hymselfe moche bounde to the Frenche kyng, for the chere that he hadde in Fraunce, toke counsayle and concluded, and so the haraulde was answered, that it was the kynges pleasure that they and their company shulde come into Englande, and to come the streyght way to the kyng, and nat to ryde out of the way without lycence. The haraulde returned to Bolygne, and shewed what he had done; wherwith they were content, and so shynned their horses, and toke the see and aryued at Douer, where they founde redy a knyght of the kynges howse, who receuyed them: they had sene hym before with kyng Henry in Fraunce, wherby they were soner aquaynted: so they taryed at Douer tyll their horses were vnshynned, and than they rode to Caunterbury: and wheresoeuer they bayted or lay, their hostes were payed: at laste they came to Eltham, and there they founde kyng Henry and parte of his counsayle. The Kinge made them good chere for the loue of the frenche kyng. Than they shewed the kyng the cause of their comynge. The kyng answered and sayde: Sirs, ye shal go to London, and there I wyll be within this foure dayes and assemble my counsayle, and than ye shall haue answere of your demaunde. That daye they dynd with the kyng, and after dyner they rode to London, and the sayde knyght of the kynges styll with them, who sawe them well lodged. The kinge acording to his promyse came to Westmynster, and these frenche knyghtes had knowlege of the kynges comynge thyder, and made them redy to go whan they shulde be sent for. The kyng had his counsayle with hym, and than it was deuysed what answeere they shulde haue: than they were sent for, and than it was shewed them, that where as they desyred to se the quene, their desyre shulde nat be denyed, so that they wolde swere and promesse that nouthier they nor nonne of their menne shulde speke any worde of that was fallen vpon kyng Rycharde; for it was said to them, that if they dyd, they shulde rynne in great dyspleasure of the people, and be in great parell of their liues. The two knyghtes sayd they wolde in no wyse breake the ordre that they had sette, but obey their comauement:

\* D'Albret.

maundement: they sayd, whan they had ones sene and spoken with her, than they wolde retourne and departe. Anon after, the erle of Northumberlande brought them to Haueringe of the bowre to the yonge quene, who was there as than, and with her the duches of Irelande, doughter to the lorde Coucy, and ŷ duchesse of Gloucestre with her doughters, and other ladyes and damoselles. The quene receyued them swetely, and demaunded of them howe the frenche kinge her father dyd and the quene her mother. They sayde, well, and so comuned with her a gret season. They keppe well their promesse, for they spake no worde of kyng Rycharde: than they tooke leaue of the quene and returned to London: than shortly after they wente to Eltham to the kyng, and there dyned; and ŷ kyng gaue them fayre presentes and iowelles, and ryght amvably they toke their leaue of the kyng, who sayd to them: Syrs, ye may say whan ye come into Fraunce, ŷ the quene of Englande shall haue no hurte nor trouble, but shall alwaies kepe her estate as to her belongeth, and shall enioy all her right, for as yet she shall nat knowe the mutacyons of the worlde. Of these wordes spoken of the kynges mouth the two knyghtes were well content, and so departed and lay at Dertforde, and the next day at Osprynge, and so to Caunterbury, and than to Douer: and all their costes and charges commynge and goynge the kynges offycers payed. Than they tooke the see, and aryued at Boloyn and so to Parys, and there founde the kyng and the quene, and shewed them all that they had sene and herde.

Nowe let vs somewhat speake of Englande.

*Howe certayne lordes in Englande rose vp with an army to haue delyuered kyng Rycharde, and to haue dystroyed kyng Henry; and howe they were slayne.*

#### CAP. CCXLVII.\*

DIVERS questyons and argumetes were made in Englande amonge noble men and counsayls of the good townes, ŷ Richarde of Burdeaux was deed and slayne, wherfore men spake no more of hym, for well he had descerued it. To these poyntes kyng Henry answered and sayd: Nay, quod he, I haue pytie of his dethe; I wyll neuer consent therto: to kepe hym in prisone is suffycient: I haue warrated his lyfe, and I wyll kepe my promyse. Suche as wolde haue had hym deed sayd: Sir, we se well ye haue pytie on hym, but ye do for yourselfe a perylous thyng; for as long as he is alyue, though he haue willyngly resigned to you the crowne of Englande, and that euery man hath receyued you as kyng, and haue made to you faythe and homage, yet it can nat be but that there be in the realme some that loued hym, and as yet do, who wolde lightly ryse agaist you, if they might se any lykelyhode of his delyuerance; also the Frenche kyng is sore displeasid for his trouble; he wolde soone be reuenged yf he myght, and he is of great puyssaunce, with suche ayde as he maye fynde in Englande. The kyng answered and sayde: As longe as I se nat the contrary, or that the Frenche kyng wyll take no parte agaynst me, I wyll kepe my promyse. This aunswere that the kyng made had nere hande haue ben to his owne distructyon. The erle of Huntynghton, sir Johan of Hollande, brother to kyng Richarde, who hadde to wyfe kyng Henryes suster, could nat forgette the aduenture of his brother; no more coude the erle of Salisbury: and they had at Oxenforde secrete counsaile toguyder, and they de-

nysed

\* Chapter CCXLIII.

nyused how they might delyuer kynge Richarde out of the towre and distroye kyng Henry, and bring a trouble agayne into the realme. They deuysed to make a iustes of twentie knyghtes and twentie squyers to be holden at Oxenforde, and howe they wolde desyre the kyng to be there priuely: and whyle he shulde be syttyng at the table to slee hym: for they had deuysed to haue hadde men ynowe to haue performed their ententes; and they had redy a preest called Madalyn,\* who was a syngar in kyng Rychardes chapell, to haue putte hym in the kynges appareyle, for he was lyke kyng Rycharde in fauoure; and than they wolde haue made the people to haue beleued that kyng Rycharde hadde been delyuered, and returned into his fyrst state, and thañe to haue sente worde of their dede to the Frenche kyng, that he shulde incontynent haue sente into Englande some socoure to them by the erle of saynt Poule or by some other. As they had deuysed so they dyde begynne: they caused a feest at Oxenforde to be proclaymed of twentie knyghtes and twentie squyers, well accōpanyed with ladyes and damoselles; they hadde also on their partie the yonge erle of Kente, nephue to sir Johan Hollande, and also another great lorde, the lorde Spensar: and they beleued to haue hadde on their partie the erle Johan of Rutlande, because kyng Henry had put hym out of the offyce of the Cōstableshypp of Englande; but he fayled them, for some sayde, by hym they were bewrayed. This feest prouyded for, than the erle of Huntyngton came to Wyndsore, where the kyng was, and humbly made his reuerence, as he that thought to haue disceyued the kyng with swete wordes, and to haue gote hym to haue come to this feest: the whiche to do he desyred the kyng effectuously, and the kyng, who thought none yuell, graunted hym so to do; wherof the erle was ryght ioyouse, and departed from the kyng and toke his leau, and sayde to the Chanon Robsarde: Sir, appareyle you to come to our feest; I promyse the, if I mete the there in the felde, I shall gyue the a fayre encountre with my speare. Than sir Johan Robsarde said: Sir, if the kyng come to your feest, ye shall nat fayle to fynde me there. Than the erle strake his hande in his, and thanked hym, and so passed forthe. Dyuers knyghtes and squyers prepared thēselfes to be at that feest: all the armorers in London were sette a worke to trymme men in their harnessse for the iustes. Suche as were of the kynges counsaile sayde to hym: Sir, ye haue nothyng to do there; ye shall nat come there by our aduys: we haue herde certayne wordes in murmuryng, the which are nat very pleasaunt nor agreable: we shall knowe more shortely. The kyng beleued their counsaile, and so came nat at that feest, nor none of his knyghtes, nor but fewe came thither of suche as they wolde haue slayne.

Whan the erle of Salisbury, the erle of Hūtyngton, and the erle of Kente, and the lorde Spensar sawe that they hadde fayled of their entente, and that they coude nat haue the kyng as they wolde, than they counsayled togyuder and sayde: Lette vs go to Wynsore and styrrē vp the countre, and we shall putte Madalyn<sup>†</sup> in estate royall, and ryde with hym, and make the people beleue that it is kyng Rycharde, who is delyuered out of prisone: all suche as shall se hym wyll beleue it, and all suche as here therof, and thus we shall distroy our ennemyes. As they deuysed so they dyde, and assembled togyder, so that they were a fyue hundred men one and other: and they dyd putte this Madalyn<sup>†</sup> in appareyle royall, and made hym to ryde with them, and so rode towards Wyndsore, where kyng Henry was. Godde dyde ayde kyng Henry, for tidynges came to hym howe the sayd lordes were cōmyng with a great nombre to Wynsore to slee hym, and howe they were men ynowe to wygne the castell, and howe they had made Madalyn<sup>†</sup> in vesture lyke a kyng to ryde with thē, and made the people beleue that kyng Rycharde was delyuered: and moche people beleueth it, and some

\* Magdalen.

saye they haue sene him, and beleue verily that it is he; wherfore, sir, gette you hens incontynent and ryde to Lōdon, for they are cōmyng streyght hyder.

The kyng beleued their counsayle, and so he and all his men lepte on their horses and departed fro Wyndsore and rode towards London: and the kyng was nat farre gone but that these lordes came to Wyndsore, and entred in at the gates of the castell, for there was none to saye theym naye: thanne they went sertchyng fro chambre to chambre, and in the Chanons houses, wenyng to fynde the kyng, but they fayled. Whanne they sawe it wolde nat be, they were right sore displeased, and than departed fro Wynsore, and lay that nyght at Colebroke; and they made moche people to go with them, what by force and by treatie, sayeng, howe kyng Rycharde was in their company: some beleued it and some nat. Kyng Henry, who douted of trayson, hasted hym in his journey, and cāe to the towre of London by a secrete waye; than he went to Richarde of Burdeux, and sayd: I haue saued your lyfe w̄ moche payne, and nowe ye wolde murder me by your brother and other, but this enterprice shall be yuell for you. Richarde of Burdeux excused hym greatly, and sayd: As God myght helpe hym and saue his soule, he knewe nothyng therof, nor he wolde neuer desire other estate than he was in. Thus the mater stode. Thā kyng Henry sent for the mayre of London, and for other of his speciall frendes, and than he shewed them all the mater as it was. The lōdoners had great marueyle therof, and said: Sir, ye must sende for your men and go agaynst them betymes, or they multiply any further: we haue made you kyng, and so ye shall contynue, whosoever haue enuy therat. Thā letters were written in hast, and messangers sent forthe into all partes: the kyng wrote to his constable, the erle of Northumberlāde, and to his marshall, the erle of Westmerlāde, and to all other knyghtes and squyers into Essex, and into other places where as he thought to haue ayde of men: suche as herde therof cāe to the kyng as fast as they might.

Than the erles of Huntyngton and of Salisbury, and other of their affynyte, toke cōsaille and aduise to drawe towards London: for they sayde it coude nat be none otherwyse but that some of the Londoners loued kyng Rycharde, and all such, they said, wolde cōe to take their parte. Than they departed fro Colbrooke, and went and lodged at Braynforde, a seyn myle fro London; but there was neuer a lōdoner that came to them, but drewe all into their cytie. Whan these lordes sawe that, the nexte mornyng they tooke the way to saynt Albons, and there lodged, and taryed there a day; and fro thens they went to Barcamstede: thus they went about the countre, and styll made to be reported that this Madalyu<sup>a</sup> was kyng Rycharde, and so came to a good towne called Suscettour,<sup>b</sup> where there was a baylye sette there by kyng Henry, who had the keypyng of the towne and the countrey thereabout. Whan these lordes were come to Suscettour,<sup>b</sup> they lodged there one nyght in reste and peace, for the bayly was nat strōg enough to fyght with thē, therefore he dissymuled as well as he myght: and the nexte mornyng the erle of Salisbury and the lorde Spensar departed fro the erle of Huntyngton and fro the erle of Kent, and sayd howe they wolde ride further to get and to turne mo men to their opinyon, and to go and se the lorde Berceley, and to ryde along by the ryuer of Syuerne. They were yuell counsayled whan they departed one fro another, for they were so moche the weaker. The erle of Huntyngton began to treat with the bayly and with the men of Suscettour,<sup>b</sup> and shewed them howe kyng Rycharde was delyuered, and howe that the lōdoners had delyuered hym, and that he shulde be there within two dayes after. The bayly (who had assembled a good nombre of them of the countrey) sayde: that the contrarye was trewe, and howe that he had such tidynges fro kyng Henry and fro the londoners, that he wolde execute their comaundement

<sup>a</sup> Magdalen.

<sup>b</sup> Cirencester.

comaunderment. Whan therle of Hütyngton herde those wordes he chaunged colour, and sawe well he was disceyued: than he entred into his lodging and armed hym, and caused his mē to do the same, and thought to cōquere those villayns by batayle, and to sette the towne a fyre, therby to abasshe the people. The baylye of the towne on the other parte hasted hym, and assembled all his men in a certayne place, and he was with archers and other a two thousande men, and the lordes had nat past a thre hundred men; howbeit, they came oute of their lodgynges and began the batayle, and archers shotte on both partes, so that many were hurte. Than the bayly with his great nombre came vpon them without sparynge, for he had speciall comaunderment fro kynge Henry, that he shulde outhur take thē quicke or deed, if he myght overcome them: so finally the Erles menne were fayne to withdrawe into the houses; than the bayly and his men enuyroned their lodgynges on all partes, and specially where the two Erles were, and made there suche assautes that they entred perforce: there were many hurte and slayne: therle of Hütyngton defended hymselfe valyauntly as longe as he myght; but there were so many agaynst hym, that there he was slayne, and with hym the yonger erle of Kente, for whom great sorowe was made in dyuers partes of Englande: for he was a fayre yonge man, and was there in maner agaynst his wyll, but his vncl and the erle of Salisbury brought hym therto. The men of Suscettour,<sup>a</sup> who were fierse agaynst thē, strake of their heedes, and sent them by a messenger to the mayre of London, therwith to reioyce the kyng and the londoners. Therle of Salisbury and the lorde Spensar came to a lyke conclusyon, for certayne knyghtes and squyers of the kynges toke them where they were, and strake of their heedes and sente them to London; and many such as were with them alyed were putte to execucion, bothe knyghtes and squyers. After that the realme was in good rest and peace.

*Howe the frenche kyng reysed vp an army to sende vpon the fronters of Englande.*

CAP. CCXLVIII.<sup>b</sup>

WHAN easter was come, the yere of our lorde god M. four hundred, the frēche kyng, his brother, his vncl, and his counsaile vnderstode howe certayne Englyssh-men of armes and archers shulde passe the see and come to Calais and to Guynes, to Hāmes, and to those fronters: than there was a cōmaunderment made throughe France, that euery knight and squyer shulde be redy to leape a horsbacke, and to go thider as they shulde be sente; specially Bolonois and the see syde was well prouyded for.

The same tyme Johan of Bretayne died, and behynde he lefte two sonnes and a doughter: the eldest soñe shulde haue married the frenche kynges secōde doughter, for he might nat haue theldest, bycause she was maryed into Englande to kynge Richarde. This treatie of maryage fyrst for the eldest doughter of Fraunce with the heyre of Bretayne was cōcluded at Tourse in Tourayn, but afterwarde by the kynges cōsent and his counsaile, and to thentent to marry her the more richely, that mariage was broken with Bretayne, and she married into Englande: and dyuers lordes in Fraunce said and feared that no good shulde come therof; but than they concluded for ȝ secōde doughter. Than after the dethe of the duke of Bretaine, it was aduised that ȝ duke of Orlyauce, with a certayne nōbre of men of warre, shulde drawe to ȝ marches of Bretayne to speke with ȝ bretayns, and w<sup>th</sup> the counsaylours of good townes, to know what they wolde do

VOL. II.

5 E

with

<sup>a</sup> Cirencester.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CCXLIV.

with their heyre, and to desyre thē to delyuer him to be kept in the house of Fraūce. The duke of Orlyāuce dyde acording to this deuysse, and with a certayne nōbre came to Ponthorson and there rested, and sente worde of his cōmyng to the lordes of Bretayne. Than prelates, lordes, and cōsāylours of the good townes, in ȝ name of the thre estates of the countre assembled togider, and were determyned what aunswere to make, and so they came to Ponthorson to the Duke of Orlyauce, and there they made their answer all after one sorte, and that was: They said, howe that their yonge lorde and heyre of Bretayne, they wolde kepe hym thēsēlles in his owne countre. Than the duke of Orlyāuce, seyng it wolde none otherwise be, he toke bōdes of the grettest lordes in Bretayne, suche as had chefe charge of the countre, that they shulde delyuer hym to the frēche kyng whan the childe shulde come to his age. These writynges made and sealed, than the duke departed and returned into Fraunce, and shewed the kyng his brother howe he had spedde.

It was well knowen in Englande howe the Frenche kyng hadde furnysshed his garysons, cyties, good townes, and castels, on the fronters of Picardy and Bolonois, and howe the frenchmen had closed so the passage ouer ȝ water of Sōme, that no marchandyse, corne, nor other thyng shulde nat passe Abyule, nor ȝ marchaūtes of Englāde, who were wont to go into Frāce with their marchaūdis, durst no more cōe there, nor the frenche marchaūtes durste nat come into Englande; so that the fronters on bothe parties were in gret ruyne and desolacion, and yet they made no warre togyder, for they had no cōmaūdemēt so to do. Than it was said to kyng Hēry: sir, aduysse you well; it semeth by the Frenchmen they wyll make you warre; they make great prouisyon for shyppes at Harflewe, and capitayns of their armye is, the erle of saynt Poule and sir Charles de la Breth;<sup>a</sup> and it were to suppose, that if the erles of Huntynnton and of Salysbury were alyue, and all suche as be dedde, the Frenchmen than wolde soone passe ouer the see, on trust to haue great alyauce and ayde in Englande; but, sir, as longe as Richarde of Burdeaux is alyue, you nor your realme shal be at no suretie. I beleue that ye saye is trewe, quod the kyng; but as for me, I wyll nat cause hym to be slayne, for I haue so promysed hym, and I wyll kepe my promyse, without I parceyne that he worke trayson agaynst me. Well, sir, quod they of his counsaile, it were better for you that he were deed rather than alyue; for as longe as the frenchemen knowe that he is lyueng, they wyll enforce them to make you warre, and wyll hope alwayes to bring him agayne into his former estate, bycause of his wyfe the Frenche kynges doughter. The kyng gaue none aunswere, but departed fro them. as than, and lefte his counsaile commyng togyder, and the kyngē wente and toke a faucon on his hande, and passed ouer that mater.

*Of the dethe of kyng Rycharde of Englande; and howe the truse bytwene Englande and Fraunce was renewed; and also of the deposicion of pope Benedic at Auignon.*

#### C A P. CCXLIX.<sup>b</sup>

IT was nat longe after that true tidynges ran thorough London, howe Richarde of Burdeaux was deed; but howe he dyed, and by what meanes I coulde nat tell whan I wrote this cronycle: but this kyngē Rycharde deed was layde in a lytter and sette in a chayre, couered with blacke Baudkynne, and foure horses all blacke in the chayre, and two men in blacke leadyng the chayre, and four knyghtes all in black folowyng. Thus the

<sup>a</sup> D'Albrct.

<sup>b</sup> Chapter CCXLV.

the chare departed from the towre of London, and was brought along throughe London fayre and softely tyll they came into chepesyde, where as the chefe assembly of London was, and there the chare rested the space of two houres. Thyder came in and out mo than xx. M. persons, men and women, to se hym where as he laye, his hedde on a blacke quisshe and his visage open. Some had on hym pytie and some none, but sayd he had long ago deserved dethe. Now consider well ye great lordes, kynges, dukes, erles, barons, and prelates, and all men of great lynage and puissaunce; se and beholde howe the fortunes of this worlde are marueylous, and turne diuersly. This kyng Richarde reigned kynge of Englande xxii. yere in great prosperite, holdyng great estate and signorie: there was neuer before any kyng of Englande that spente so moche in his house as he dyd, by a C. M. florens euery yere: for I sir John Froissart, chanon and treasurer of Chinay, knewe it well, for I was in his court more than a quarter of a yere togider, and he made me good chere, bycause that in my youthe I was clerke and seruaunt to the noble kynge Edwarde the thirde his grauntfather, and with my lady Philyp of Heynault, quene of Englande, his grandame; and whan I departed fro hym it was at Wynsore, and at my departyng the kyng sent me by a knight of his, called sir John Golofer, a goblet of syluer and gylte, weyng two marke of siluer, and within it a C. nobles, by the which I am as yet the better, and shal be as long as I lyue; wherfore I am bounde to praye to God for his soule, and with moche sorowe I write of his dethe; but because I haue contynued this historie, therfore I write therof to folowe it. In my tyme I haue sene two thyngs; though they differ, yet they be true. I was in the cytie of Burdeaux, and sytting at the table whan kyng Richarde was borne, the whiche was on a tuisday<sup>a</sup> about x. of the clocke. The same tyme there came there as I was, sir Richarde Pountchardon, marshall as than of Acquytayne, and he said to me: Froissart, write and put in memorie that as nowe my lady princesse is brought abeed with a fayre son on this twelwe daye, that is the day of the thre kynges, and he is son to a kynges son, and shall be a kyng. This gentyll knight said trouthe, for he was kyng of Englande xxii. yere: but whan this knyght sayd these wordes, he knewe full lytell what shulde be his conclusyon. And the same tyme that kyng Richarde was borne, his father the prince was in Calyce,<sup>b</sup> the whiche kyng Dompeter<sup>c</sup> had gyuen hym, and he was there to conquere the realme. Upon these thyngs I haue greatlye imagined sythe, for the fyrst yere that I came into Englande into the seruyce of quene Philyppe, kyng Edwarde and the quene and all their chylidren were as than at Barcamstede, a maner of the prince of Wales beyonde London. The kyng and the quene were come thyder to take leaue of their sone the prince and the princesse, who were goyng into Acquitayne; and there I herde an ancient knyght deuynse amonge the ladyes, and sayde: There is a booke which is called le Brust,<sup>d</sup> and it deuynseth that the prince of Wales, eldest son to the king, nor the duke of Glocestre, shuld neuer be kyng of Englande; but the realme and crowne shuld returne to the house of Lancastre. There I Johan Froissart, auctour of this cronycle, consydring all these thynges, I say these two knyghtes, sir Richarde Pountcardon and sir Bartylmewe of Bruels<sup>e</sup> sayd both trouthe, for I sawe, and so dyde all the worlde, Rycharde of Burdeaux xxii. yere kyng of Englande, and after the crowne returned to the house of Lancastre, and that was whan kyng Henry was kyng: the which he had neuer ben if Richarde of Burdeaux had dalte amynably with hym, for the Londoners made hym kyng because they had pytie on hym and on his chylidren.

Thus whan kyng Richarde had layne two houres in the chare in Chepesyde, than they draue the chayre forward: and whan the foure knyghtes that folowed the chare afote were without London, they lept than on their horses, which were there redy for

5 E 2

them,

<sup>a</sup> Wednesday.

<sup>b</sup> Galicia.

<sup>c</sup> Don Pedro.

<sup>d</sup> See *ante, note*, folio 730.

<sup>e</sup> Sir Bartholomew Burghersh?

them, and so they rode tyll they came to a vyllage called Langley, a xxx. myle from London, and there this kyng Richarde was buried; god haue mercy on his soule.

Tydinges spredde abroad howe kyng Richarde was deed; he taryed<sup>d</sup> euery daye for it, for euery man myght well consyde that he shulde neuer come out of prisone alyue. His dethe was long kepte and hydde fro his wyfe. The frenche kyng and his counsaile were well enformed of all this, and the knightes and squyers desyred nothyng but the warre, and that they myght ryde vpon the fronters; howebeyt, the counsaile, as well of the one realme as of the other, toke their aduise, and thought it best to vpholde styll the truse that was taken before; they thought it more profitable than the warre: and a new treatie was deuysed to be in the marches of Calais, bycause the frenche kyng was nat in good case, nor had nat been sythe he knewe of the trouble that kyng Richarde was in; and yet his sicknesse doubled whan he knewe that he was deed, so that the duke of Burgoyne had the chefe rule of the realme; and he came to saynt Omers and to Burbour, where the duke of Burbone was, and sir Charles de la Brest,<sup>b</sup> and Charles of Hangeers, and Johan of Castell Morant; and of prelates, the patriarke of Ierusalem, and the bysshoppes of Paris and of Beauoyes: and on the Englysshe partie there was the erle of Northumberlande, the erle of Rutlande, the erle of Deuonshyre, and the lorde Henry Percy, the erles sonne, and yuan of Fitzwaren; and prelates, there were the bysshoppes of Wynchester and of Ely. The frenchemen demaunded to haue agayne delyuered the yong quene of Englande, but the Englysshemen wolde in no wyse delyuer her, but sayd she shulde lyue styll in Englande vpon her dowrie; and that though she had lost her husbunde, they wolde prouyde for her another, that shulde be fayre, yong, and gentyll, with whom she shuld be better pleased than with Richard of Burdeaux. for he was olde, and this shuld be the prince of Wales, eldest sone to kyng Henry. To this the Frenchemen wolde nat agre, for they wolde nat consent therto without licence of the kyng her father, who as than was nat in good poynt, for he was farre out of the way; no medysyn coude helpe hym: so that mater was layde aparte, and the treatie of truse went forwarde in suche wyse, that by consent of both parties they sware and were bounde to kepe the truse xxvi. yere more, to the four yeres that it had endured, the whiche in all was xxx. yere, accordyng to the fyrst couenant: and vpon this, writinges were made and sealed by procuracyons of bothe kyngs. This done euery man returned to their own countreis.

I haue nat as yet shewed you what became of therle Marshall, by whom fyrst all these trybulacyons began in the realme of Englande; but nowe I shall shewe you. He was at Venyce, and whan he knewe that kyng Henry was kyng, and kyng Rycharde taken and deed, he toke therof so great displeysure and sorowe, that he layde hym downe on his bedde and fell in a fransy, and so dyed. Suche mischeuousnesse fell in those dayes vpon great lordes of Englande.

And in the yere of our lorde god a thousande four hundred, one lesse, Pope Benedic at Auignon, who had ben susteyned long by the Frenchemen, was as than deposed; and in lykewyse so was the kyng of Almaygne,<sup>e</sup> for his yuell dedes: for the electours of the empyre and all the dukes and barons of Almaygne<sup>e</sup> rose agaynst hym,<sup>o</sup> and sente hym into Boesme,<sup>d</sup> where as he was kyng; and they chose another, a valyaunt and a wyse man to be kyng of Almayne,<sup>e</sup> and he was one of the Bauyers,<sup>e</sup> and was called Robert of Heleberge;<sup>f</sup> and he came to Coloygne, where he was crowned with the crowne of Almayne,<sup>e</sup> for they of Ayes wolde nat open their towne to hym, nor the Duke of Guerles<sup>g</sup> wolde

<sup>a</sup> "Nothing else had been expected for some time."

<sup>c</sup> Bavarians.

<sup>f</sup> Heidelberg.

<sup>b</sup> D'Albret.

<sup>e</sup> Germany.

<sup>d</sup> Bohemia.

<sup>g</sup> Gueldres.



wolde nat be vnder his obeysaunce. This newe kynge of Almaygne<sup>3</sup> promysed to bring the church to a vnyte and peace; howbeit, the Frenche kynge and his counsaile treated with the legeoys, who helde with the Pope at Rome: and they dyde so moche by the meanes of sir Baudwyn of Mount Jardyne, who gouerned a great parte of the bysshoprike of Liege, who was a knyght of the Frenche kynges; so that by his meanes, at the desyre of the frenche kyng, the countrey of Liege tourned to become neuter; so that the Legeois sente to Rome for all the clergy that were there of their countrey to come by a certayne day, or els to lese all their benefyces in the countrey. When they herde that, they returned fro Rome and came to Liege. And pope Bouyface, who lost moche by that transmutacion, sente a legate into Almaygne<sup>3</sup> to preche amonge them, to cause them to retourne agayne to his parte; but the legate durst nat passe Coloigne, and sent letters to Liege: whanne those letters were reed, the messenger was answered, that on payne of drownynge he shulde no more come on suche message; for they sayd, as many messengers as cometh with any suche message shal be drowned in the ryuer of Moeuze.

## FINIS TOTIOUS FROISSART.

<sup>3</sup> Germany.

Thus endeth the thurde and fourthe boke of sir John Froissart, of the cronycles of Englande, Fraunce, Spayne, Portyngale, Scotlande, Bretaygne, Flaunders, and other places adioynynge: Translated out of Frenche into maternall Englysshe, by Johan Bourchier knyght, lord Berners, deputie generall of the kynges towne of Calais and marches of the same, at the hyghe commaundement of our moost redouted souerayne lord kyng Henry the eight, kyng of Englande and of Fraunce, and hyghe defender of the christen faythe, &c. The whiche two boke be compyled into one volume, and fynysshed in the sayd towne of Calais the x. day of marche, in the xvi. yere of our said souerayne lordes raigne. Imprinted at London in Flete-strete, by Richarde Pynson, printer to the kynges moost noble grace, and ended the last day of August, the yere of our lord god M.D.xrv.

Cum priuilegio a rege indulto.

---

RE-PRINTED BY J. M<sup>C</sup>CREERY,  
BLACK-HORSE-COURT, FLEET-STREET, LONDON.  
1812.

---

# I N D E X.

*The Roman numerals denote the volumes—the figures denote the pages.*

- A.
- A**BENTON (Boynon), Sir Robert, killed at the storming of Berwyke by the Scots, i. 501.
- Aberdeen, the bysshope of. *See* Dadudane.
- Abreton (Abington), Sir Thomas, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottebourge (Otterbourne), ii. 399.
- Abuyle (Abbeville), the town of, taken by the French under Sir Guy Chastellon, i. 368.
- Achery on the Èsne, the town of, in Picardy, taken by the English under Sir Eustace Dambretycourt, i. 248.
- Acosta, the erle of. *See* Angouse.
- Acquayre, St. the shrine of, at the Abbey of Saint Waste in Arrasce (Arras), receives an offering of a man of wax, representing Charles the sixth, king of France, ii. 578.
- Acquency, the castle of, taken by Sir John de la Ryuer, i. 292.
- Acquitayne, the county of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 266. Given to John of Gaunt, duke of Lancastre, by king Richard the second and his council, ii. 607. The gift rescinded, 624.
- the towns of, send ambassadours to king Richard the second in England, to remonstrate against his gift of the duchy to the duke of Lancastre, ii. 613. Their remonstrance, 615. They succeed in their object, 624.
- Acteon, the story of, related by Froissart to a squyre of the erle of Foyz, ii. 78.
- Acunha, Lorenzo d'. *See* Coygne, Sir John Lawrence of.
- the Pouvasse d'. *See* Coygne the Ponasse of.
- Adventure of three German knights against a French foraging party of Mortayne, i. 78.
- Afolege, Sir John of. *See* Fofoge.
- Agace, Gobin. *See* Grace, Gobyn a.
- Agene, the city and castle of, in the county of Agenoyse, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Aguyllon, the castle of, in Gascony, surrenders to the erle of Derby, i. 131. Besieged by the duke of Normandy, 142. The siege abandoned by order of Philip, king of France, 161. Taken by the French under the duke of Aniou, 413.
- Aigle, the castle of l'. *See* Egle.
- Albenes, Sir Syluegrefyc of, slain by the Portuguese under Sir John Ferrant Portelet, ii. 148.
- Alenson, the erle of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- the erle of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- John, takes the town of Flauigny, i. 251.
- Alexandre, the town of, in Lombardy, besieged by the erle of Arminake, ii. 528. The siege raiscd, 531.
- Aljubarota, the town, and battle of. *See* Juberoth.
- Almare (Aumarle), the erle of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- Almayne (Germany), the king of, attends a great assembly at Reyues (Rheims), with Charles the sixth, king of France, to consult upon means for restoring the peace of the church, ii. 709. Deposed, 764.
- Alnoy (Aulnoy), the town of, in Poyctou, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 163.
- Aloys, the castle of, in Auuergne, taken by Amergot Marcel, i. 546.
- Alquest (Dalkeith), the castle of, taken by king Edward the third, i. 38.
- Alroy (Auray), the battle of, between the erle of Mountfort and Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 299.
- (Auray), the castle of, in Bretayne, taken by Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 105. Taken by the erle of Mountfort, 303. Surrenders to the French forces in the interest of Sir Charles of Bloys, 488.
- Alvarez, Don. *See* Dilguares.
- Amand, St. the town of, taken by the erle of Heynault, i. 81.
- Ambretycourt, Sir Eustace, and Sir John. *See* Dambretycourt.
- Ambretycourt, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Amery, the town of, pillaged and burned by the king of Nauers forces, i. 227.
- Ampostre (Amposta), the Cathelayn of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 199. Ransomed, 207.
- Amurath. *See* Lamorabaquy, the great Turk.

Amyense, the city of, attempted to be taken by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 225. Its suburbs pillaged and burned by them, 225.

Ancemis, Sir Wilyam d'. See Dancuncmys.

Andrehen, the castle of, belonging to the erle of Flaunders, pillaged and burned by the Whitehattes under John Lyon, i. 563.

Andrewes, St. the bysshope of, taken prisoner by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.

Andwarpe (Oudenarde), the town of, besieged by the men of Gaunt, i. 567. Taken and dismantled, 578. Besieged by Philyp Dartuell, 701. Taken by Francis Atreman, 772. Retaken by stratagem by the lorde Destornay, 790.

Anele, the great, king of Mecte (O'Neal, king of Meath?) in Ireland, submits himself to king Richard the second, ii. 620. Is knighted by him, 622.

Aufroy (Ansenoy), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.

Angers, Sir Aubert d'. See Dangyres.

Angles (Prignano), Bartylmew, chosen pope by the name of Urbane the sixth, i. 547.

Angolesme, the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 135. Retaken by the duke of Normandy, 142. Ceded to king Edward the third, 256. Surrenders a second time to the French, 452.

Angouse (Acosta), the erle of, with twenty Gallies, sails through the Spanish fleet of oue hundred sail before Lisbon, captures four, and succours the city, ii. 145.

Aniche, the town of. See Nyche.

Aniou and Mayn, the counties of, Edward the third, king of England, renounces his right to them, i. 257.

— the Duke of, goes to England as an hostage for John, king of France, i. 264. Returns to France, 277. Collects a force to make war on Edward, prince of Wales, in Acquitayne, 369. Heads an army agaynst Guyen, 413. Breaks up his expedition, 418. Causes the hostages from Durinall (Derval), to be beheaded, 472. Leads an army into Hygh Gascone, 473. Takes the town of Lourde, 473. Concludes a truce with the duke of Lancastre, 474. Takes Monsac and several other places in hygh Gascone, 475. Makes great preparation to besiege Bergerath, 491. Takes Bergerath, 495. Takes several other towns, &c. in hygh Gascone, 496 *et seq.* Returns to Tholouse, 500. Goes to Auynon to dissuade pope Gregory the eleventh from going to Rome, 509. Collects another army against the English in Gascone, 517. Makes war on Bretayne, 544. Receives the territories of the queen of Naples as a gift from pope Clement, 551. Is not sent for, on account of his covetousness, by his brother Charles the fifth, king of France, when dying, 599. Seizes the king's jewels immediately on his death, 601. Assumes the titles of king of Cycell, &c. 601. Usurps the government of France as regent during

the minority of Charles the sixth, 601. Makes preparations to march for Naples, 664. Sets out for Italy, 670. Enters Naples, 671. The Neapolitans refuse to acknowledge him, 791. Dies at a castle near Naples, 791. Takes Maluoysin, ii. 57.\* Besieges the castle of Lourde; but being unable to take it, he burus the town and retreats, 59 *et seq.*

Aniou, the duchess of, queen of Naples, advised on the death of her husband, the duke of Aniou, to solicit the Pope for possession of Pronence, i. 791. Urges her claims to that country, ii. 2. Makes her public entry into Parys in company with her son Lewes, duke of Aniou, as king of Cycell, &c. 370. Goes with him to Auynon on a visit to pope Clement, 437. Institutes a suit in the parliament of Parys against Sir Peter Craon, 636. Obtains judgment against him, 643.

— Lewes, duke of, son of the above, makes his public entry into Parys as king of Cycell, &c. 370. Takes leave of his mother and the Pope at Auynon, and goes to Aragon, 487. Marries the daughter of the king of Aragon, 437. Embarks with his queen for Naples, 438. Sends provisions to the French army, under the duke of Bourbon, at the siege of Aufryke, 506.

Anne, the lady, of Behayne (Bohemia), sets out for England, i. 668. Married to king Richard the second, 669. Dies without issue, ii. 607.

Anxell, the erle of. See Tello, Don.

Aragon. See Peter, king of.

Archat, the fortress of, stormed by the French, under the duke of Burbon, and razed, ii. 5.

Archeake, taken by the duke of Burbon, ii. 20.

Arde (Ardres), the town of, in Picardy, attacked ineffectually by the French forces, i. 377. Surrenders to the duke of Burgoyne, 486.

Ardenbounge, the town of, taken by the men of Gaunt, under Francis Atreman, 750. Narrowly escapes being taken by them a second time, ii. 9.

Arduyche, the castle of, in Picardy, taken by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 486.

Armayle, the castle of, taken by Espaignollet, ii. 114. Ransomed by the lorde of Armayle, 114. Retaken by Espaignollet, 114.

— the lord of, having paid a ransom for his castle to Espaignollet, is afterwards taken prisoner in it by him, when he re-enters it by night through a subterranean passage, ii. 114. Ransomed, 114.

Armony (Armenia), the kingdom of, conquered by the Turks, ii. 122. See also Lyon, king of Armony.

Arms of France, motives which induced Edward the third, king of England, to assume them, i. 58.

Armynake, the erle of, his homage for certain lands in France transferred to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. Complains to Charles the fifth, king of France, of the Fowage, a tax about to be imposed by the prince of Wales upon himself and other lords in Gascone, 351.

\* From the manner in which Froissart obtained, and compiled, the materials for his Cronycle, his facts are sometimes related out of chronological order.

- Armynake, the erle of, obtains, by the intercession of the princess of Wales, the remission of sixty thousand francs of his ransom of the erle of Foiz, ii. 49. Endeavours to prevail on the companions to sell their fortresses, 314. Is thwarted in the attempt by the erle of Foiz, 316. Leads an army into Lombardy against the duke of Myllayne, 524. Visits pope Clement at Auygnon, 525. Applies to Sir John Hacton (Hawwood) for his assistance, 527. Besieges Alexandre, 528. Suddenly loses the use of his limbs, is taken prisoner, and dies, 530. Buried at Rodays, 531.
- Sir Bernard of, does homage to the king of France for his lands, ii. 559.
- Artaveld, Jacob von. See Dartuell, Jaques.
- Philip von. See Dartuell, Philyp.
- Artes, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Arthoys, Sir Charles of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.
- lord Philyp of, erle of Ewe, marries the lady Mary of Berry, widow of the lord Loys of Bloys, and is appointed Constable of France, ii. 594. Goes with the expedition under John of Burgoyne against the Turks, 639. Disobeys orders at the battle of Nycopoly, 669. Taken prisoner there by the Turks, 671. Dies at Løge (Haut-logé), in Turkey, 696.
- Sir Robert d', befriends Isabell, queen of Edward the second, king of England, after she had been commanded to quit France, i. 7. Is banished, and his countess and two sons imprisoned by king Philyp, 36. Takes refuge in England, and is created erle of Rychemount (Richmond), 37. Encourages king Edward the third to make war against France, 39-41. Sent into Bretayne to aid the countess of Mountfort against Sir Charles of Bloys, 112. Engages Sir Loyes of Spayne at sea, 113. Lands in Bretayne, 114. Takes the town of Vannes, 115. Is besieged in it, 115. Is severely wounded, and goes to England for surgical aid, 115. Dies of his wounds, 116.
- Arthur, king, his round-table first established at Wyndsores, i. 120.
- Mackenur (Mac Murrrough), king of Lynster in Ireland, submits himself to king Richard the second, ii. 620. Formerly defeated by the duke of Clarence, 621. Knighted by king Richard, 622.
- Artuell (Martre), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Arundell, the erle of, besieged with king Edward the second in Bristowe by queen Isabell's forces, i. 11. Condemned to death and beheaded, 12.
- Richard erle of, neglects his duty before St. Malo, i. 526. Commands an armament of observation, ii. 6. Defeats the Flemish fleet under Sir John Bucke, 216. Appointed to the command of a naval expedition, 356. Lands near Rochelle, 374. Defeats the Rochellers in a skirmish, 376. Lands in Normandy, and over-runs
- the country, 421. Returns to Hampton (Southampton), 422. Joins the duke of Gloucestre in his attempts to excite disturbances in England, 686. Committed to the Tower, 705. Beheaded in Chepseyde, 707.
- Arundell, Sir John, heads an armament against France, and lands at Chierbourg, i. 518. Sent with a force to the assistance of the duke of Bretayne, 574. Perishes in a storm at sea, 574.
- Asolgne, Sir John of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Aspre, the town of, burned by the French, i. 61.
- Assunet (Seton ?), Sir John, a Scots knight, performs a gallant deed of arms, i. 417.
- Asti, in Pyemount (Piedmont), besieged by the erle of Armynake, ii. 527.
- Athens, the duke of, constable of France, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Athenys, the town of, (St. Jean d'Angely?) See St. John Dangle.
- Athyen (Attigny on the Aisne), the town of, taken by Sir Eustace Daumbretycourt, i. 238.
- Atreman, Francis, a citizen of Gaunt, accompanies the bysshope of Norwich in his wars in Flanders, i. 762. Surprises the town of Andwarpe (Oudenarde), 773. Defeats a party of the French near Ardenbourge, ii. 2. Makes an unsuccessful attempt to take the town, 10. Takes the town of Dan (Damme), 14. Besieged in it by Charles the sixth, king of France, 15. Escapes with his garrison to Gaunt, 18. Consents to a proposal for peace, 35. Concludes a treaty between the town of Gaunt and the duke of Burgoyne, 38. Murdered at Gaunt, 170.
- Aubencheul, the town of. See Daubecueyll.
- Aubenton, the town of, taken and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 62.
- Auberoche, the town of, in Pyergourt (Perigord), taken by the erle of Derby, ii. 126. Retaken by the duke of Anion, 476-497.
- Aubert (Aubriot), Hugh, Prouost of Parys, imprisoned by king Charles the fifth, liberated by the insurgents of Parys, i. 663.
- Aucer, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy (Auray), i. 300. Imprisoned by the king of France for assisting king Henry of Castyle, 346.
- Audere, Sir John Ferant, promotes the marriage of Ferrande, king of Portyngale, with Elynoure, wife of Sir Laurence of Coygne, ii. 138. Endeavours to obtain the crown of Portyngale for the king of Castyle, 140. Slain by order of Master Denyce (the Grand Master of Avis), 141.
- Audeley, Sir James, his distinguished bravery at the battle of Poycters, i. 200. Is handsomely rewarded by the prince of Wales, 204, 206. His generosity to his squires, 205. Is appointed Seneschall of Poycton, 378. He takes the town of Breuse, 379. His death 388.
- Sir Peter, makes an ineffectual attempt to take the town of Chalons, i. 231. His death, 238.

- Aufryke (Africa), the town of, besieged by the duke of Burbon, ii. 499. The siege abandoned, 517.
- Aulnoy, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Aunay, the castle of. See Dowaye.
- Aurcne, the town of, in Galyce, taken by the duke of Lancaster, ii. 262.
- Ausalle, Don John, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Ausnes le Sec. See Osmellall.
- Ausser (Auxere), the erle of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- Austarde, Vātayre, commands a body of Companions at Rolebosse, i. 280.
- Auterne, Roger d', and Sir Oliver d'. See Dauterne.
- Auvergne, the lord Berault, daulphyne of, marries the daughter of the erle of Forestes, i. 240. Goes to England as one of the hostages for John, king of France, 264. Ransomed, 368.
- Ayre, the town of, in Arthoys, besieged by the Flemings in the interest of the king of England, i. 172.
- Aymery, Sir John, taken prisoner by the French, ii. 82. Slain at Sansxere, 83.
- B.
- Bacon, a robber in Languedocke, takes the castle of Coubourne, in Lymosyn, and commits other depredations, i. 177.
- Baghes (Bachez), Sir Raymon of, takes the castle of Dulcen (Duren), ii. 208.
- Baillon d'Amour, the, a Romance so called, i. 369, *note*.
- Bajazet. See Lamorabaquy, the great Turk.
- Balaster, Vassyer of Colles, lord of, son of the erle of Naniure, slain at the battle of Raunesten, ii. 381.
- Ball, John, a priest, preaches equality to the people of Kent, ii. 640. Imprisoned by the Archbysshope of Canterbury, 641. Liberated, and again preaching, his doctrine becomes popular in London, 641. Enters London with Wat Tyler and Jack Straw, at the head of a large body of insurgents, 645. Taken and beheaded, 652.
- Balon, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amergot Marcel, i. 546.
- Bane, the town of, taken by the English under the Chamon of Robersart, i. 675.
- Bangler, Domage (Domage Baghor), conducts the combined armies of the duke of Lancaster and the king of Portuzale over the Derne (Duerio), ii. 298. Executed for it by the king of Castyle, 298.
- Bamyers, the town of, taken by Henry, king of Castyle, i. 346.
- Banos (Bavay), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Bans, Sir Agous des, being besieged in the castle of Ryoll, addresses the erle of Derby, and obtains terms for his garrison, i. 133.
- Bare, Sir Henry of, taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, ii. 671. Dies at Venice, 701.
- Bare, Sir Philip of, slain at the battle of Nycopoly, ii. 671.
- Barfleur, the town of. See Harflewre.
- Barkley castle, king Edward the second imprisoned there, i. 12.
- Barley (Beaulieu?), the town of, taken by Rabygoyse of Dury and Robyn le Scote, i. 224.
- Barres, Sir Barroys of, goes, with other French knights, to the assistance of the king of Castyle, ii. 158. Enters Coulougne (Coruma), to defend it against the duke of Lancaster, 161. Acquires great wealth by destroying the country before the English, 166. Is sent with a force by the dukes of Burgoyne and Berrey to arrest Sir Olyuer of Clysson at Mount le Henry, 581. Arrests the lorde de la Ryuer, &c. 582.
- Bare (Bassere), the castle of, besieged by Sir Gualtier Passac, ii. 115. Taken, 117.
- Basyll, St. the castle of, in Gascone, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 130. Retaken by the duke of Aniou, 476, 497.
- Batefoyle, Sir Seguy of, chosen commander of a band of freebooters in Gascone, i. 267. Takes the city of Briod, 272. Dies marvelously, 273.
- Sir Thomas of, governor of Lynde, prepares to deliver the town to the duke of Aniou, i. 414. Is killed in the attempt, and the town secured by the captall of Beufz, 415.
- Bauceen (Bacien), the lord of, slain before St. Valery, i. 229.
- Bauer (Bavaria), Aubert, duke of, goes to Cambray, and arranges with the duchess of Brabant the inter-marriages of his children with the children of the duke of Burgoyne, i. 793. Orders the duke of Ireland to quit Dordrest, ii. 293. Assembles an army and a large navy to make war on Frese, 659. Disbands his army, 663. Succeeds to the possession of Holland, &c. by the death of the erle of Bloys, 705.
- (Bavaria), Frederyke duke of, promotes the marriage of his niece Isabell with Charles the sixth, king of France, ii. 12.
- (Bavaria), Stephyn duke of, marries his daughter Isabell to Charles the sixth, king of France, ii. 15.
- Baylleul, Sir Gawen of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nauaret, i. 341.
- the lord of, slain in Montays, i. 65.
- Sir Peter of, slain in a skirmish with the men of Gaunt, ii. 2.
- Sir Robert of, defeats the troops of his brother, Sir Wilyam Baylleul, at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Sir Wilyam of, defeated by his brother in a skirmish at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Baynes (Ham), the seignory of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 257.
- Bayone, the town of, besieged by the king of Castyle, i. 518. Taken by the duke of Lancaster, ii. 188.
- Beamonde, Sir Henry, takes prisoner king Edward

- the second and Sir Hewe Speneer the younger, while endeavouring to escape from Bristowe, i. 12.
- Beaucayre, the Seneschall of, taken prisoner at the battle of Montauban, i. 322.
- Beauchampe, Sir John, called the Little, taken prisoner by the army of the duke of Gloucester, ii. 292. Beheaded at Oxford, 293.
- Beauforde, the cardynall of, elected Pope under the name of Gregory the eleventh, i. 427.
- Beaufort, the castle of, betrayed to the French by the governor, i. 369.
- Roger, fights with the erle of Pembroke in Lymoges, and yields himself prisoner to him, i. 423.
- Beauve, the lord Guyssbarde of, slain at the battle of Poyeters, i. 200.
- Sir Robert of, taken prisoner by the Companions, i. 270.
- the lord of, escapes with the French king and four other barons after the battle of Cressy, i. 159.
- Beaulieu, Wilyam of, taken prisoner by the English garrison of Chierbourg, i. 545.
- Beaulte (Beauté), the lord of, taken prisoner in Montays, i. 65.
- Beaumanoyre, the lord of, endeavours to make peace between the lord John of Mountfort and the lord Charles of Bloys, i. 298. Treacherously arrested with Sir Olyuer of Clysson by the duke of Bretayne, ii. 251. Liberated for the purpose of procuring Sir Olyuer's ransom, 255.
- Beaumont en Laylloies, the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Beauosyn (Beauvais), the country of, invaded by the English under king Edward the third, i. 151.
- Beauuoys, the bishop of, dies at Mount le Heury, ii. 267.
- Beauuoyse, the chastellan of, taken prisoner by the English at Lyques, i. 477.
- Beauwayes, the cathelayne of, slain, i. 183.
- Bele, John la, his cronycles adopted by Froissart as the foundation of his own, i. 2.
- Bellperche, the town of, taken by the Companions in the interest of the prince of Wales, i. 385. Besieged by the duke of Burbon, 407. Evacuated by the garrison and taken by the duke, 410.
- Bellville, the lands of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Benedict, pope, preaches before the kings of France, Aragon, Nauer, and Behayne, and exhorts them to a crusade, i. 40.
- pope, elected at Auygnon, ii. 604. Forced to resign his dignity by Charles the sixth, king of France, and the emperor of Almayne, 721. Deposed, 764.
- Benon, the town of, taken by the English under the erle of Derby, i. 163. Retaken by storm by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 455.
- Bereerell (Becherel), the town of, in Bretayne, besieged by the French under the lord of Clysson, i. 462. Surrenders on terms, 474, 477.
- Berle (Berkeley), Thomas, lord of, taken prisoner by a squire at the battle of Poyeters, i. 201.
- Bergenettes (Bergettes), Sir John of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nauaret, i. 341.
- Berges (Bergues), the town of, turns to the men of Gaunt, i. 698. Surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, 730. Surrenders to the bysshope of Norwiche, 762. Pillaged and burned by the king of France, 771.
- Bergerath (Bergerac), the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125. Besieged by the duke of Anjou, 492. Surrenders, 495.
- Bergues (Barege), Sir Bertrand of, killed at the battle of Jubereth, ii. 106.
- Berneete, Sir John. See Varlet.
- Bernoys, Perot le, takes the town of Mountferant by stratagem, ii. 340. Retires with great booty, 345. Takes the field at the request of the erle of Arundell, 373. Pillages the town of Selles and the adjacent country, 377.
- Berrey, John, duke of, goes to England as a hostage for John king of France, i. 264. Returns to France, 363. Collects a force to make war on the prince of Wales in Acquitayne, 369. Ravages Lymousyn, 414. Takes the town of Lymoges, &c. 419 *et seq.* Betroths his daughter to the son of the erle of Bloys, 796. Governs Languedocke, ii. 68. Prevents the sailing of the armament against England, 199. Besieges the castle of Ventadoure, 334. Endeavours to win over the duke of Bretayne to the French interest, 350. Proposes to marry the daughter of the duke of Lancaster, 359. Goes to Bloys to meet the duke of Bretayne, 368. Sends to the erle of Foiz to demand his ward, the daughter of the erle of Boulogne, in marriage for his son John of Berrey, 415. Marries her himself, 426. Accompanies the king of France in his visit to the Pope at Auygnon, 440. The government of Languedocke taken from him, 441. The king refuses to be accompanied in his journey by him, 442. Claims the liberation of his treasurer, Betsache, who was under prosecution for extortion and oppression, 451. Privately agrees with the vycount of Chastellon to obtain for him from the king of France the possessions of the erle of Foiz, 548. Is informed of Sir Peter Craon's intention to murder Sir Olyuer of Clysson, and connives at it, 565. Accompanies the king in his expedition against the duke of Bretayne, who protected Sir Peter Craon, 569. Appointed regent of France jointly with the duke of Burgoyne during the derangement of king Charles the sixth, 577. Determines to disgrace Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 578. Disapproves of the marriage of the king's daughter to Richard the second, king of England, 626.
- Jane of Boulogne, duchess of, petitions her

- husband in behalf of the lord de la Ryuer, ii. 584. Supports the lord de la Ryuer in opposition to the duchess of Burgoyne, 592.
- Berrey, John of. See Mountpensier, the erle of.
- Bersat, the town of, taken by the English, i. 529.
- Bertuell, the castle of, in Poyctou, taken by the duke of Bourbon, ii. 21.
- Bertyguinell (Vertigriculy), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Berwyke, the castle of, taken by king Edward the third, i. 39. Taken by the Scots, 501. Stormed and retaken by the erle of Northumberland, 504.
- Besances (Entença? Betanços?), the town of, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster, ii. 225.
- Besenghen, the fortress of, in Gascone, taken by the English under Sir Thomas Tryuet, i. 531.
- Bethwyn (Bethune), unsuccessfully besieged by the Flemings, i. 168.
- Bette, Sir Symon, a citizen of Gaunt, killed by Philip Dartuell, for having endeavoured to make peace between that town and the erle of Flaunders, i. 662.
- Betsache, John, treasurer of the duke of Berrey, tried at Besyers for oppression and extortion, ii. 450. Voluntarily confesses himself guilty of heresy, and is burned to death, 453.
- Beufz (Buch), the captall of. See Buz.
- Bierne (Berme), Sir Jaques, defeats the army of the erle of Armynake before Alexandre, ii. 531.
- Sir Peter of, his somnabulism, ii. 77. Separated from his wife by an extraordinary circumstance, 78. Killed at the battle of Jubertho, 106.
- Bigore, the lands and county of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Blames (Blayes), the town of, besieged by the erle of Derby, i. 135. Surrenders, 135.
- Blanche, daughter of Philip, king of Nauer, married to Philip of Valoys, king of France, i. 181.
- Blanche-Tague, the battle of, between king Edward the third and Sir Godmar du Fay, i. 153.
- Blanche (Le Blanc), the castle of, delivered to the duke of Bretayne, in part ransom of Sir Olyuer of Clysston, whom he had treacherously arrested, ii. 255.
- Blâque Berque (Blankenburg), the town of, taken by the bysshope of Norwich, i. 762.
- Blaudeau (Blonde), Sir Willyam, taken prisoner by the seneschall of Heynault, i. 67.
- Blanquefort, Sir Henry, of Boesme (Bohemia), brother of the king of Almayne, forcibly marries Margaret of Hungary, who had been betrothed to Loys of Valoys, ii. 19.
- Bleze, Sir Danyell de, taken prisoner in a skirmish at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Blondeau, Sir John, surrenders the castle of Roche sur Yon to the duke of Cambridge, i. 387. Put to death in consequence at Angers, 388.
- Blois, the county of, the reversion of it sold by the erle Guy of Bloys to the duke of Thourayne, ii. 553.
- Blois the lord Charles of, claims the duchy of Bretayne, i. 90. Declared by the parliament of Parys the lawful duke of Bretayne, 91. Enters Bretayne with a large force, assisted by the king of France, 92. Conquers several towns in the duchy, 92 *et seq.* Takes his adversary, the erle of Mountfort, prisoner, 93. Takes the town of Renes, 101. Takes the castle of Alroy, 105. Takes the town of Vannes by storm, 106. Takes the town of Carahes, 108. Obtains possession of the town of Jugon by treachery, 111. Enters into a truce with the countess of Mountfort, 111. Is besieged in Nantes by king Edward the third, 116. Besieges Rochdareu, 170. Taken prisoner by the forces of the countess of Mountfort, 171. Sent to England, 177. Raises an army to oppose the lord John of Mountfort, 295. Killed at the battle of Alroy, 301. Canonized by pope Urbane the fifth, 302.
- Blois, Guy of Chastellon, erle of, goes to England as an hostage for John, king of France, i. 264. Returns to France, 363. Joins the king of France against England, 411. Joins the king again at Arras in a litter, 768. Requests Froissart to write his Cronycle, ii. 43. Visited by king Charles the sixth, 552. Sells the reversion of the county of Blois, at the king's entreaty, to the duke of Thourayne, 553. Dies at Nesues (Avesnes), in Heynault, 704.
- Sir John of, bastard son of the lord Charles of Blois, slain with his father at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- John of, marries the widow of duke Guyllyam of Julyers, ii. 321. His death, 321.
- the erle Loys of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- the lord Loys of, son of the erle Guy of Blois, betrothed to the lady Mary of Berrey, i. 796. Married to her, ii. 348. Dies in Heynault, 536.
- Loys of, brother of the erle Guy of Blois, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- Bodenay, the lorde of. See Wodney.
- Boesme Lance (Bonne-lance), Sir John, takes prisoner Geromet of Mandurant and his companions in Auvergne, ii. 337.
- (Brunswick), the duke of, challenges the duke of Lancaster to single combat at Parys, i. 183.
- Bolayne, the erle of, his character, ii. 69. His daughter, Jane of Bolayne, put under the protection of the erle of Foiz by her mother, 69. She is married to the duke of Berrey, 426.
- Jane, countess of, married to the duke of Normandy, i. 181.
- pety (Bologne), by Parys, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- Bonet, the lord of, dies of fatigue before Auffyke, ii. 569.
- Boniface, pope, the ninth. elected by the cardynalls



- of Rome, ii. 460. Rejoices at the derangement of Charles the sixth, king of France, 577; and again at his being nearly burned to death, 592. Sends a learned friar to the king to preach to him and counsel him, 592. Declines the invitation of the kings of France and Almayne to resign the papacy, 721. Sends a legate into Almayne to preach in his behalf, 765.
- Bomes, or Brunes (Burghersh), Sir Bartynewe de, captured at the battle of Poycters, i. 202. Takes Sir Baudewyn Danebyn prisoner before St. Quintyne, 247. Besieges and destroys the castle of Comery, 250.
- Bonual (Bomeval), the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 126.
- Boordes, the lord of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 105.
- Bordes, Sir Wilyam of, taken prisoner by the garrison of Chierbourg, i. 489, 545.
- Bornesell, the lord of, sent by Charles the sixth, king of France, ambassadour to Robert, king of Scotland, i. 540. Arrested at Sluys by the bayly, and carried before the erle of Flaunders, 541. Returns to Parys, 541. Is challenged in the king's presence by Sir John of Gystels, 541.
- Boucyquault, the lord, taken prisoner in Heynault by the seneschall, i. 67.
- the lord of, taken prisoner at Remorentyne by the prince of Wales, i. 192. Appointed to the command of an expedition against the king of Nauer, 280. Takes the town of Maunte by stratagem, 281. Takes the towne of Meulecke, 281. Sent by king Charles the sixth to the duke of Lancastre to learn his reasons for coming into Aquitayne, ii. 613. Accompanies John of Burgoyne in his expedition against the Turks, 639. Taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, 671. Narrowly escapes being put to death afterwards, 672. Obtains his ransom, 696. Arrives at Venice, 700. Appointed marshall of France, 703. Obliges pope Benedict to submit to the emperour of Almayne and the king of France, 723. Sent to Hungary against the Turks, 725.
- Boulle, John, a citizen of Gaunt, appointed one of the captains of the White-battes in that city, i. 566. Put to death by the men of Gaunt, 624.
- Bourboure, the town of, turns to the men of Gaunt, i. 698. Surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, 730. Surrenders to the bysshope of Norwich, 760. Besieged and retaken by the king of France, 777.
- Bourchier, Sir John, appointed governor of Gaunt, i. 790. Retires to England, ii. 48.
- Bourdeaux, the archbysshope of, sent by the duke of Lancastre ambassadour to Aragon, ii. 205. Imprisoned at Barcelona, 205. Liberated, 207.
- Bourdeill, the town of, besieged by the English under the duke of Cambridge, 371. Taken, 384.
- Bourze, the queens (Bourg la Reine), burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- Bourgueull, the lord of, taken prisoner by the duke of Guerles at the battle of Rauesten, ii. 381.
- Bourke, the lord of, dies of fatigue before Auffyke, ii. 509.
- Bousquetyne, the vycount of, taken by the English at Bergerath, i. 124.
- Boutuyll, the castle of, taken by the French, i. 538.
- Boynton, Sir Robert. See Abenton.
- Boys, Sir Henry of, taken prisoner by the English at the battle of Calais, i. 180.
- Boyse, Peter du (Peter Du Bois), a citizen of Gaunt, chosen one of the commanders of the White-battes in that city, i. 566. Causes the houses of the gentry to be destroyed, 580. Narrowly escapes being put to death by the men of Gaunt, 631. Obtains Philyp Dartuell to be appointed governor of Gaunt, 636. Defeated at the passage of Comynes on the Lys with great slaughter, 726. Prevents the town of Bruges from surrendering to the king of France, 731. Retreats to Gaunt after the defeat of Philyp Dartuell, 740. Encourages the men of Gaunt to withstand the army of the king of France, 743. Causes every one suggesting peace to be killed, ii. 33. Retires into England after a peace being concluded between the men of Gaunt and the erle of Flaunders, 42. Rewarded by king Richard the second, 43. Serves under the erle of Arundell at the destruction of the Flemish fleet near Cagaunt, 216.
- Brabant, the duke of, entertains Sir Robert of Arthoys, who was banished France by king Philyp, i. 36. His territories invaded and devastated by the French, 36. Assures the king that he will not assist king Edward the third of England, 49. Joins the English forces before Cambray, 52. Defies the king of France, 52. Purchases three castles belonging to the duke of Guerles, ii. 322. Appointed chief of the Languefryde, 324. Invades the country of Julyers, 325. Defeated and taken prisoner by the dukes of Julyers and Guerles, 325. Obtains his liberty, 327. His death, 328.
- the duchess of, wife of the above, forms a marriage between the children of the houses of Burgoyne and Heynault, i. 792. Causes the daughter of Stephyn, duke of Bauier, to be sent to France to marry king Charles the sixth, ii. 12. Applies to the emperour of Almayne to interest himself in obtaining the liberation of her husband from the duke of Julyers, 326. Sends ambassadours to France to solicit assistance against the duke of Guerles, 330. Besieges the town of Graue, 377. Makes peace with the duke of Guerles, 411.
- Brabanters, the, besiege Graue, ii. 377. Defeated with great slaughter at the battle of Rauesten, 379. Abandon the siege of Graue, 380. Refuse to permit the king of France and his army to march through their country against Guerles, 385.
- Bramble (Bramber), Sir Nicholas, counsels Richard the second, king of England, to exert his authority against his uncles, ii. 288. Taken prisoner in

- escaping from the king's army after its defeat by the duke of Gloucester, 293. Be-headed, 293.
- Brandon (Brantome), the town of, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 424.
- Brehappe, the town of, in Turkey, taken and burned by the army under John of Burgoyne, ii. 647.
- Bredse (Breda), the lands of, exchanged for the town of Graue, ii. 357.
- Bresme, the erle of, goes to England as a hostage for king John of France, i. 264.
- Bresny, Sir Othes of (Sir Otho of Brunswick), having made war on the Romans for pope Clement, demands pay of him for his troops, ii. 129.
- Brest, the castle of, taken by the erle of Mountfort as duke of Bretayne, i. 87. Besieged by the French under Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 465. The siege turned into a blockade, 465. Relieved by the erle of Salisbury, 467. Besieged by Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 515. Besieged a second time by him, ii. 113.
- Bresnell, the lord, taken prisoner at the battle of Naurset, i. 341.
- Bretayne, the duchy of, adjudged to the lord Charles of Bloys by the parliament of Parys, i. 91.
- the country of, Edward the third, king of England, renounces his right to it, i. 257.
- Guy of, son of Sir Charles of Bloys, surety in England for his father's ransom, dies there, ii. 211.
- John of, brother of the above, surety in England for his father's ransom, obtains his liberation after a long imprisonment, ii. 211. Marries the daughter of Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 213. He consents that his son by her shall marry the daughter of the duke of Bretayne, 550. Becomes erle of Ponthieus, 551. His revenues increased, 635. Succeeds by the death of the erle of Bloys to part of his estates, 705.
- John duke of, his death, i. 86.
- the lords of, on the death of their duke, John of Mountfort, undertake the wardship of his heir until he should come of age, ii. 762.
- John of Mountfort, duke of, [*for previous particulars respecting him, see Mountfort, the lord John of*], marries the daughter of the princess of Wales by the lord Thomas Hollaude, i. 306. Applies to England for assistance against the king of France, 459. Goes to England on his duchy being invaded by the duke of Burbon, 463. Re-enters Bretayne with an army from England, 478. Retakes several towns, &c. 479. Besieges Campelly, 480. Disbands his army and retires to England, 480. Is entertained in defiance of the French king by the erle of Flanders, 540. Returns to England, 543. Enters Bretayne again, 572. Solicits king Richard the second for succours, 584. Excuses himself to the erle of Buckingham, who had come to his assistance, for not meeting him on his march, 604. Makes peace with the king of France, 618. Endeavours to mediate a peace between England and France, 779. Treacherously arrests Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy and others in the castle of Ermyne, which causes the French expedition against England to be abandoned, ii. 250. Liberates Sir Olyuer on ransom and his other prisoners, 255. Required by the king of France to restore the places and money he had received for the ransom of Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 271. His answer, 272. Secretly allies himself with the English, 273. Disregards the overtures of the duke of Berrey to gain him over to the French interest, 350. Enters into an alliance with England, 354; and with Nauer, 356. Restores the castles of Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 363. Goes to Parys at the entreaty of the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne, 369. Makes his peace with the king of France, 371. Returns to Bretayne, 384. Is invited by the king of France to join him with an army in an expedition against Rome, 520. His opinion of the expedition, 520. Meets the king of France at Thouars, to make an amicable adjustment of the differences existing between them, 546. Agrees to marry his son to the daughter of the king of France, and his daughter to the son of John of Bretayne, 550. Grants an asylum to Sir Peter Craon after his attempt to murder Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 566. Refuses to deliver him up to the king of France, 567. Is engaged in a violent war with Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 595. Sends commissioners to him to treat for peace, 596. Entreats him for an interview, and sends his eldest son as an hostage, 634. Makes peace with Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, 635. Entertains the erle of Derby, and sends assistance with him on his returning to England, 740. His death, 761.
- Breth (Broc), the castle of, delivered up to the duke of Bretayne, in part ransom of Sir Olyuer of Clyssoy, ii. 235.
- Bretuell, the castle of, besieged and taken by the king of France, i. 189.
- Breuse, the town of, taken by the English under Sir James Audeley, i. 379.
- Brian, Sir Guy of, defeats a Flemish fleet off the bay of Bay, on the coast of Bretayne, i. 435.
- Briese, Sir Loys of, perishes in the expedition against Turkey, ii. 693.
- Brimeve, the lord of, taken prisoner with his two sons by the English, under Sir Thomas Tryuet, i. 589.
- Brine of Thomöde, king of Thomöde, in Ireland, submits himself to Richard the second, king of England, ii. 620. Is knighted by him, 622.
- Briod (Brioude), the town of, taken by Sir Seguy of Batefoyle, i. 272. Delivered to the seneschall of Auergne, ii. 87.
- Briquebeke, the lord of, slain, i. 183.
- Briquet, Sir Robert, slain at Oliuet, ii. 83.
- Bristowe, the city of, besieged by Isabell, queen of king Edward the second, to obtain possession of her husband and the two Sir Hewe Spencers, i. 11. Surrenders to her forces, 11.

- Brokas, Sir Bernarde, executed in London for having counselled king Richard to put the duke of Gloucester to death, ii. 749.
- Bromewell (Brudenell), Sir Hugh, taken prisoner in Breтайne, i. 471.
- Bruce, the vycount of, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales, i. 193.
- Bruc de Vaulx (St. Brien), besieged by the duke of Breтайne, i. 479.
- Bruges, the town of, compelled to an alliance by the men of Gaunt, i. 565. Taken by the men of Gaunt, 693. Its gates and walls demolished, 698. Submits to the mercy of the king of France after the defeat of the men of Gaunt under Philip Dartnell, 742.
- Brunay (Brignais), the castle of, taken by the companions calling themselves the Late-comers, i. 268.
- Bruse, Robert, king of Scotland, conquers Scotland from king Edward the second of England, i. 3. Invades England, 3. Defeats the king and his barons at Esteruelyn, 5. Sends a defiance to king Edward the third, 15. Invades England, 18. His army retreats, 27. His dying request to lord James Douglas, 28. His death, 29.
- Robert, succeeds to the crown of Scotland on the death of king David the second, i. 462. Enters into an alliance with the king of France, 501. Makes preparations to invade England, 501. Acknowledges pope Clement, 548. Sends to excuse himself to king Richard the second for the inroads which the Scots, contrary to his orders, had made into England, 786. Included in a truce between France and England, 787. Engages to join the French under Sir John Vieu in the invasion of England, ii. 8. Arrives at Edenborow for that purpose, 21. His person and disposition described, 21. Returns into the highlands, 27. Calls a meeting of his nobles respecting a peace, 427.
- Brust, the (Brut d'Angleterre), an old chronicle so called, ii. 730, *note*. Said to contain a prophecy relative to the succession of the crown of England, 730, 763.
- Bryngoles, the lord of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Bucke, Sir John, commander of the Flemish fleet, defeated and taken prisoner by the English fleet under the erle of Arundell, ii. 215. Dies in London, 218.
- Buckingham, Thomas of Wodstocke, erle of, appointed to the command of an army to go to the assistance of the duke of Breтайne, i. 585. Arrives at Caais, 585. Marches into France, 586. Burns and despoils the country of Champayne, 590. Over-runs the countries of Gastenoyes (Gatinois) and Beause (Beaume), 596. Crosses the Sarthe with great difficulty, 601. Arrives at Vannes in Breтайne, greatly dissatisfied with the conduct of the duke of Breтайne, 604. Besieges Nantes, 607. Raises the siege of Nantes, 611. Remonstrates with the duke of Breтайne, for not having joined him, 612. Arrives at Vannes, 612. Returns to England in disgust, 619. Suspected of favouring the rebellion of Wat Tyler and Jack Straw, 644. Created duke of Gloucester, ii. 200. [*For subsequent particulars of this prince, see Gloucester, the duke of.*]
- Bucy, the lord Symonde of, killed in the palays of Parys, i. 215.
- Budes, Sylvester, goes to the relief of Mountpaon, having drawn straws with Jolin of Malestroyt to determine which should go, i. 430. Taken prisoner there by the duke of Lancaster, 431. Makes war on the Romans on the behalf of pope Clement, 547. Defeated and taken prisoner by Sir John Haconde (Hawkwood), 552. Beheaded at Mascou, 552.
- Bufforce (Beaufort), Sir Robert, taken prisoner in the sea battle off Rochelle, i. 442.
- Buffyer, the lord Pyers, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200. Arrests Sir Eustace Dambreycount, who sought an asylum in his castle, 427. Dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Burbon, Sir Jaques of, taken prisoner by the English at the battle of Poycters, i. 202. Sent by the king of France to oppose the companions, called the *Late-comers*, 257. Completely defeated, and with his son severely wounded by them, 270. Their death, 270.
- Loys duke of, goes to England as a hostage for Jolin, king of France, i. 264. Returns into France, and obtains Willyam of Wycan to be appointed by the pope bysshope of Wynchestre, 364. Takes the castle of Bellperche, 410. Heads an army into Poyctoyt and Lymousyn, ii. 4. Takes Mountlewe in Nayntoyne, &c. 5. Besieges Tailbourcke, 5. Takes Bertuell, and returns to Parys, 20. Joins the armament of the king of France against England at Shys, 191. Appointed to the command of an army, to assist the king of Castyle against the duke of Lancaster, 215. Arrives at Bugus, 309. Returns to France, 310. Magnificently entertained by the erle of Foiz, 311. Appointed commander in chief of an expedition fitted out by the Genonoyes against Barbary, 477. Embarks at Genes (Genoa), 478. Lands with his army before the town of Aufryke, which he beseges, 499. His army suffers from the heat and insalubrity of the climate, 505. His courage doubted, 505. Abandons the siege and returns to France, 517. Makes an ineffectual attempt to gain over the towns of Acquitayne during the imprisonment of king Richard the second in the Tower, 756.
- Peter duke of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Burgoyne, the country of, over-run and pillaged by the Late-comers, i. 257.
- Philip duke of, enters into a composition with king Edward the third to spare his duchy in marching through France, i. 251. His death, 181.

Burgoyne, the lord Philyp of, erle of Arthoys, mortally hurt before Aguyllon, i. 161.

Philyp duke of, (son of John, king of France), his creation, i. 290. Sent against the Companions into Calx (Caux), &c. 291. Takes the castle of Marchranuyll and several other places, 291 *et seq.* Over-runs great part of the country of Mountbelyart, 292. Takes the town of Charyté, 294. Marries the daughter of the erle of Flaunders, 375. Marches with a large army against the duke of Laucastre at Calais, 389. Retreats without fighting, 397. Takes the town of Arde and other places, 486. Makes peace between the erle of Flaunders and the men of Gaunt, 570. Appointed governor of Picardy, 606. Instigates the king of France to make war on Flaunders, 704. Sends succours to the erle of Flaunders to oppose the bysshope of Norwich, 762. Marries his children with the children of the duke of Bauier, 794. Obtains the town of Sluys in exchange for the county of Bethwyn, ii. 16. Makes peace with the men of Gaunt, 38. Governs Languedoyle, &c. 68. Joins the armament of the king of France at Sluys, 191. Sends forces to the assistance of the duchess of Brabant against the duke of Guerles, 335. Goes to Bloys to meet the duke of Breтайne, 369. Accompanies the king of France in his visit to the pope at Auygnon, 440. Ordered to return, to his great dissatisfaction, 442. Accompanies the king in his expedition against the duke of Breтайne, 569. Appointed principal regent of France during the derangement of king Charles the sixth, 577. Insults Sir Olyuer of Clysson, the constable of France, 580. Arrests several of the king's concil, 581. Raises a backe-tayle (reserved-tax), to maintain the state of his son, John of Burgoyne, as commander in chief of an expedition against the Turks, 639. Visits Richard the second, king of England, at Calais, respecting a peace, 657. Reduces his household, &c. to raise the ransom for his son, who was taken prisoner by the Turks, 681. Refuses to assist at the council at Reynes for the reunion of the church, 710.

John of, erle of Neuers, son of the above, his marriage, i. 795. Appointed commander in chief of an expedition to assist the king of Hungary against the Turks, ii. 637. Crosses the Danube with a large force, in company with the king of Hungary, 646. Takes by storm the town of Coniecte, 647. Besieges Nycopoly, 648. Defeated by the Turkish army under Lamorabaquy the great Turk, 668. Taken prisoner, 670. Obtains his ransom, 698. Returns to France, 703.

the duchess of, appointed to attend on the person of the queen during the derangement of king Charles the sixth, ii. 578. Instigates the duke her husband against Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 578.

Barle (Burley), Sir Simon, taken prisoner by the French, i. 372. Exchanged, 412. Sent to ne-

gociate a marriage between king Richard the second and the daughter of Charles of Behayne, emperor of Almayne, 573. Advises the removal of the shrine of St. Thomas a Becket from Canterbury to Dover Castle, by which he gives great offence, ii. 193, 281. Committed to the Tower by the commissioners of accounts appointed to examine into his conduct during his administration, 279. Beheaded, 281.

Burley, Sir Richard, nephew and heir of the above, dies in Castyle, ii. 281, 306.

Butler, Sir John, severely wounded and taken prisoner at Rochprion, i. 107. Condemned by Sir Loyes of Spayne to be beheaded, and rescued by Sir Walter Manny, 109.

Buz, or Beufz (Buch), the captall of, defeats the atrocious Jaquery of Beauuoysyn with great slaughter, i. 218. Takes the town of Cleremount, in Beauuoysyn, 227. Joins the king of Nauer, 280. Taken prisoner at the battle of Cocherel, in Normandy, 288. Makes peace between the kings of France and Nauer, and obtains his liberty, 306. Prevents the town of Lynde from being given up to the French, 414. Taken prisoner by the French at Soubise, 452. Imprisoned in the Temple at Parys, 456. Dies there of chagrin, 485, 519.

Bysset, John, captain of the town of Berwyke, shuts up the Scots in the castle of Berwyke, i. 502. Appointed captain of the castle by the erle of Northumberland after he had stormed it, 504.

Bysshope's Bridge (Pont l'Éveque), the town of, taken by Sir Robert Canoll, i. 417.

### C.

Cadylac, the town of, taken from the English by the Bretons, i. 498.

Cagaunt (Cadsand), the island of, taken by the English, and the town burned, i. 45.

Calais, the battle of, between the English and French forces, i. 179.

the town of, besieged by king Edward the third, i. 160. A portion of its inhabitants sent without the walls by the governor, 160. Surrenders, 175. Its French inhabitants entirely expelled, 176. Repeopled with Englishmen, 176. A plot for its delivery to the French discovered, 178. Ceded to the crown of England, 257.

Calatrane (Calatrava), the great master of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nauaret, i. 342. Killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.

Calipole (Gallipoli), the town of, taken by the erle of Sauoy, ii. 124. Stormed by the Turks, 124.

Cambrai, the city of, besieged by king Edward the third, i. 51.

Cambreses, the country of, burned by the Heynaulters, i. 68.

Cambrey, Sir Philyp of, taken prisoner in Breтайne, i. 471.

Cambridge, the erle of, sent to the assistance of the prince of Wales in Acquitayne, i. 370. Makes

- war in Piergourt, 371. Takes the town of Bourdeill, 384. Leads a body of troops to the relief of Bellperche, 408. Returns to England, 429. Appointed to the command of an army to go to the assistance of the king of Portyngale against the king of Castyle, 639. Arrives at Lysbone, 656. Returns with his army dissatisfied with the conduct of the king of Portyngale, 682. ii. 44. Created duke of York, ii. 200. [*For subsequent particulars of this prince, see York, the duke of.*]
- Campecorentyne (Quimper-Corentin), the town of, in Bretayne, besieged by the lord of Mountfort, i. 304. Taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464.
- Campelly (Quimperlé), the town of, in Bretayne, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 464. Besieged by the duke of Bretayne, 479. Relieved, 480.
- Camponall, Sir Camponell of, liberated by exchange, i. 406.
- Campremy, the lord of, taken prisoner before Parys, i. 254.
- Candley (Chandler), Sir John, taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471.
- Cane, the erle of. *See Kent.*
- the town of, taken by king Edward the third, i. 149.
- Cauceny, the lord Gerard of, taken prisoner by Hanekyn Francoys, i. 233.
- Caerrolles, the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 292. Razed to the ground, 292.
- Caull, Sir Arnolde, Reynold (Sir Cervole), the archpriest, collects a body of armed men, and pillages Pronence, i. 214. Captured at the battle of Brunay, 270.
- Caunolle (Knolles), Sir Robert, commands a body of the Companions in Normandy, i. 215. Makes an incursion into Berry and Auvergne, 239. Goes to the assistance of the prince of Wales, 379. Appointed Captain of the knights, &c. in the service of the prince of Wales, 379. Goes to England on the summons of king Edward the third, 410. Leads an army into Picardy, 415. Enters into a composition to save the country from being pillaged, 416. Part of his forces defeated at Pont Valont by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 426. Incurs the displeasure of the king of England, 435. Reinstated in his favour, 435. Appointed governor of Bretayne, 464. Causes four knights and a squire, his prisoners, to be beheaded at Duriuall, 472, ii. 57. Goes to Bretayne with the duke, i. 572. Takes prisoner the lord of Mauuoysin, 601.
- Caours, the town of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. Turns to the French interest, 373.
- Sir Raolt of, defeats the English under Sir Thomas Dagorne in Bretayne, i. 182.
- Caraches (Carhaix), taken by the erle of Mountfort, as duke of Bretayne, i. 89. Taken by Sir Charles of Bloys, 108.
- Carcasson, the seneschall of, taken prisoner at the battle of Montaubon, i. 322.
- Carcyllat, the castle of, taken and burned by the English under Sir Thomas Trynet, i. 531.
- Carentyne, or Quarentyne (Carentan), the town of, surrenders to the English, i. 146. Pillaged and burned, and the inhabitants carried off, 147. Retaken by the lord Coucy, 516.
- Carlouet (Carnet le Breton), taken prisoner by the English at the bridge of Lussac, i. 404.
- Carmaime, the vycount of, his homage for certain lands in France ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Carongne, Sir John of, goes abroad, ii. 201. His wife ravished by Jaques le Grys in his absence, 202. He returns and appeals to the parliament against Jaques le Grys, 203. Kills Jaques le Grys in a duel ordained by the parliament, 204. Goes to the holy sepulchre, 204.
- Carquesy (Carquefou), the town of, taken by Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 92.
- Cassell, the battle of, between the Flemyns and Philip of Valoys, king of France, i. 31.
- the town of, turns to the men of Gaunt, i. 698. Surrenders to king Charles the sixth of France, 730. Taken by the byshoppe of Norwich, 760. Retaken by the king of France, 768.
- Casseres, the town of, taken by the erle of Foyz, ii. 54.
- Castell (du Châtell) Sir Garses of the, takes the castle of Trygalet, ii. 57.
- Morant, Sir John of, carries over from England truces for three years, signed by king Richard the second and his allies, ii. 436. Sent by Charles the sixth, king of France, ambassadour to Lamorabauquy, after the battle of Nycopoly, with rich presents, to treat for the ransom of the French prisoners, 676. His presents detained by the king of Hungary, 678. Fulfils his mission, and returns to France, 682.
- Castenans, Sir John Radigos de, slain by the Portuguese under Sir John Ferrant Portelet, ii. 148.
- Castyde, or Christell, Sir Henry, relates to Froissart particulars respecting the expedition of king Richard the second into Ireland, ii. 619. Taken prisoner in Ireland in a singular manner by Brinc Costeret, 620. Marries his daughter, 621. Exchanged for his father-in-law, 621. Appointed by king Richard the second to attend on four Irish kings and teach them good manners, 621.
- Casuryell, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amergot Marcell, i. 546.
- Cavendish, John. *See Standyshe.*
- Cauder (Caudorier), John, mayor of Rochelle, obtains possession of the castle from the English by stratagem, i. 453.
- Caunterbury, Symon, archbysshope of, murdered in the Tower of London by the rabble under Wat Tyler, i. 646.
- the archbysshope of, sent to Bristowe by the duke of Glocestre and the Londoners on an embassy to king Richard the second, ii. 293.

- Conducts him to London, 294. Sent to France with an application from the Londoners to the erle of Derby to return to England, 737. Conducts the erle to London, 741.
- Caurell (Calverley), Sir Hugh, joins the prince of Wales in Aquitaine with a large body of the Companions, i. 370. Appointed governor of Calais, 483. Endeavours to dissuade the bysshope of Norwich from making war in Flanders with the forces under his command, 755, 759, 769. Escapes out of Berges, greatly dissatisfied with the issue of the bishop's expedition, 771.
- Cerbe, a knight so called, beheaded for speaking against king Richard the second, ii. 708.
- Chalon, Sir Loys of, taken prisoner at Brunay by the Companions, called the Late-comers, i. 270.
- Chalons, the bysshop of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- the town of, unsuccessfully attacked by Sir Peter Audeley, i. 231.
- the vydame of, slain with his two sons at Aubenton by the erle of Heynault, i. 62.
- Chambley, Sir Guyuenton of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Chamout, the hermyte of, taken prisoner at Remorentyne by the prince of Wales, i. 191.
- Champayne, Sir Alaine of, dies of fatigue before Auffyke, ii. 509.
- Chandos, Sir John, receives the lands of St. Saujour the Vycount as a gift from Edward the third, king of England, i. 263. Goes to France as seneschall over the possessions of the king of England there, 266. Appointed constable of Guyene, 274. Sent to the assistance of the lord John of Mountfort in Bretayne, 294. Prevents a peace being negotiated between John of Mountfort and Sir Charles of Bloys, 298. Defeats the army of Sir Charles of Bloys at the battle of Alroy, 301. Narrowly escapes death at the battle of Nauaret, 338. Advises the prince of Wales not to persevere in his design of enforcing the fowage, or hearth-tax, and failing to succeed, retires to his country seat, 352. Recalled by the prince, and sent to make war on the French and the lords of Gascone, 365. Takes the town of Tarriers and several others in the Thoulosayn, 372, *et seq.* Appointed seneschall of Poycton, 388. Invades and pillages the territories of Amiou and Rochchoart, 390. Goes to the relief of the erle of Pembroke, who had refused serving with him, and is in danger of being taken prisoner by the French, 393. Mortally wounded in a skirmish at the Bridge of Lussac, 403. His death, 404.
- Chapel, Sir Geoffrey of the, dies of fatigue before Auffyke, ii. 509.
- Chargny en Dormoys, the castle of, taken by Sir John Chandos, i. 248.
- Charlemayne, several ancient charters and privileges granted by him, pleaded by divers lords of France in justification of their refusal to transfer their allegiance to England, i. 265.
- Charles, king of Almaygne (Germany), dissimulates concerning the schism in the papacy, i. 548. His death, 573.
- of Boesme (Bohemia), emperour of Almayne, collects a large army to make war on the duke of Julyers in the cause of the duchess of Brabant, ii. 326. Receives his submission, 327.
- son of the above. See Vincelyns.
- of Luzenbourge (Luxembourg), king of Behayne (Bohemia), slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 157.
- the fourth, king of France, takes measures to assist his sister Isabell, queen of Edward the second, king of England, against her husband and the Spencers, i. 6. Is prevailed upon by Sir Hewe Spencer to break up the expedition which he had encouraged his sister to raise in France, 7. Commands her to quit the kingdom, 7. His marriage, 30. His death, 30.
- the fifth, king of France [*for previous particulars of this monarch, see Normandy, Charles duke of*], crowned at Reynes (Rheims), i. 290. Makes peace with the lord John of Mountfort, and acknowledges him lawful duke of Bretayne, i. 305. Makes peace with the king of Nauer, 306. Raises an army to make war on Peter, king of Castyle, 308. Is advised to assume the sovereignty of Guyen, and to renew the war with England, 357, 360. Summones the prince of Wales to appear before the parliament of Parys and answer the complaints of the lords of Gascone, &c. 361. Makes preparations to renew the war against the English, 363. Gains over several captains of the Companions, 366. Sends ambassadours to Edward the third, king of England, with remonstrances, 366. Sends his defiance to him by a varlet, 366. Prepares an armament for the invasion of England, 386. Breaks up the expedition in consequence of the arrival of the duke of Lancastre at Calais, 396. Assembles a large force to make war on Aquitayne, 411. Makes peace with the king of Nauer, 412. Enters into an alliance with Henry, king of Castyle, 438. Makes peace with the king of Nauer, 462. Sends an army to invade the duchy of Bretayne, 463. His terms for a peace with England, 481. Fits out a fleet for the invasion of England, which does considerable mischief, 484. Is informed of the death of king Edward the third, 484. Causes two secretaries of the king of Nauer to be beheaded, 486, 513. Commences war against the king of Nauer, 486. Strengthens his alliances, 500. Instigates the king of Scotland to make war on England, 501. His queen dies in child-bed, 508. He never married afterwards, 508. Refuses to release the king of Nauer's two sons, 512. Seizes the possessions of the king of Nauer in Normandy in the name of his two sons, 513. Sends an ambassadour to the king of Scotland, 540. His ambassadour detained by the erle of Flanders, 541. Orders the erle of Flanders to send the

- duke of Breтайne out of his dominions, 542. Puts himself under obedience to Clement as the lawful pope, 548. Afflicted with a singular disorder, 599. His last words and advice on his death-bed, 599. Dies at Paris, 601. Interred at St. Denyse, 601.
- Charles the sixth, king of France, his birth, i. 360. Crowned at Reymes (Remes), with great ceremony, 605. Makes peace with the duke of Breтайne, 618. Sends an army to the assistance of the king of Castyle, 668. Determines to make war in Flaunders on behalf of the erle, 704. Chooses a flying hart for his device on account of a dream, 706. Imprisons the bearer of a letter to him from Philip Dartuell, 707. Endeavours to treat with the Flemings, 711. Collects a large force to reduce them to obedience, 715. Defeats the Flemish army at the bridge of Comynes, 726. Receives the submission of Ipre and several other places, 729 *et seq.* Defeats the Flemings under Philip Dartuell with great slaughter, 738. Enters Courtray, 741. Receives the submission of Bruges, 741. Returns to France, 745. Makes his entry into Parys, 748. Assembles a large army to oppose the bysshope of Norwich in Flaunders, 766. Takes Cassell, 768; and Bourbourg, 777. Returns to France, 778. Enters into a truce with England, 780. Prepares to renew the war, 792, 796. Goes to Cambray to the marriage of the children of the dukes of Bauier and Burgoyne, 794. Sends Sir Loys of Sanxere to make war in Prouence for the duchess of Aniou, ii. 2. Marries the lady Isabell of Bauier (Bavaria), 15. Sets out from Amynce to renew the war in Flaunders, 15. Takes the town of Dau, 18. Returns to Parys, 19. Promises to assist Lyon, king of Armony (Armenia), in regaining his kingdom, 129. Makes immense preparations to invade England, 167. Promises to assist the king of Castyle after the destruction of England, 173. Joins his armament at Sluys, 191. Puts off his design, and disbands his army, 199. Makes preparations to assist the king of Castyle, 214. Prepares another armament against England under Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 242. His designs frustrated by the arrest of Sir Olyuer by the duke of Breтайne, 254. Receives an insulting defiance from the duke of Guerles, 257. Demands of the duke of Breтайne the restoration of the places and money to Sir Olyuer of Clysson, which he had unjustly obtained for his ransom, 271. Receives a haughty answer from the duke of Breтайne, 272. Promises to assist the duchess of Brabant against the duke of Guerles, 331. Invites the duke of Ireland, who had fled from England, to reside in France, 353. Is visited by the duke of Breтайne, 371. Prepares an army to invade Guerles, 371, 382. Sends ambassadours to explain his intentions to the king of Almayne, 383. Receives favourable answers, 386. Enters the duchy of Julyers, 389. Receives the submission of the duke of Julyers, 406. Re-
- ceives the submission of the duke of Guerles, 411. Returns to France, 411. Takes upon himself the government of his kingdom on coming of age, 414. Sends Sir John Vjen to the king of Castyle, to remonstrate with him on the marriage of his son with the daughter of the duke of Lancastrre, 414. Prepares to visit the erle of Foiz, 422. Enters into a truce with the king of England, 427. Causes the duke of Ireland to quit France, 439. Visits pope Clement at Auygnon, 440. Visits Mountpellyer, &c. and receives great complaints in his progress of the oppressions of the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne, 442 *et seq.* Is visited by the erle of Foyz in great splendour at Tholouse, and receives his homage, 455. Travels with great speed from Mountpellyer to Parys for a wager, which he loses, to the duke of Thourayne, 458. Present in *cognita* at the jousts near St. Ingylbertes, 472. Dissatisfied with the erle of Ostreuant for accepting the order of the garter from the king of England, 515. Proposes to march to Rome, to restore the union of the church, 520. Receives ambassadours from the king of England, with propositions for a peace, 521. On the death of the erle of Foiz, is advised to seize on his territories, 540. Sends commissioners to Orthayes to make arrangements for the settlement of the country, 540. Meets the duke of Breтайne at Towrs, to make an amicable settlement of the differences between them, 546. Confirms the succession of the viscount of Chastellon to the territories of the erle of Foiz, 548. Agrees to marry his daughter to the son of the duke of Breтайne, 550. Visits the erle of Bloys, 552. Receives the duke of Lancastrre and the other commissioners from the king of England to treat for peace at Amynce, 555. Not being able to conclude a peace, he enters into a truce for a year, 557. Falls sick, and is carried to Beauuoys for the recovery of his health, 559. Visits Sir Olyuer of Clysson, who had been severely wounded, and narrowly escape being assassinated by Sir Peter Craon, 563. Commands the duke of Breтайne, who protects Sir Peter Craon, to deliver him up, 567. Exchanges the duchy of Orlyance with the duke of Thourayne for his duchy, 569. Leads an army against the duke of Breтайne on his refusing to deliver up Sir Peter Craon, 569. Remains three weeks ill of a fever at Maus, 570. Again requires the duke of Breтайne to surrender Sir Peter Craon, 570. Resumes his march in a high fever, and is suddenly stopped in the forest of Mans, and admonished by a supposed fool to proceed no further, 572. Continuing his march, he becomes deranged, 573. His expedition is in consequence broken up, 574. Removed to the castle of Crayell, for the benefit of his health, 576. Recovers his senses, 586. Returns to Parys, 589. His life in great danger at a masked dance in Parys, 590. His health quite restored, but the government remains with the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne as regents, 593. Appoints commission-

- ers to negotiate a peace with the commissioners of the king of England at Balyngbam (Leulinghem), 598. Prolongs the truce with England, 602. Relapses into his former malady, 603. Removed to Crayell, 603. Recovers, 604. Endeavours to settle the affairs of the church, 605. Sends ambassadors to the duke of Lancaster in Aquitaine to learn his intention in coming into that country, 613. Receives proposals of marriage for his daughter from the king of England, 624. Sends Robert the Hermit to England to assist in bringing about a peace between the two countries, 629. Liberates the lord de la Ryuer and Sir John Mercier, who had been imprisoned by his uncles during his derangement, 631. Appoints John of Burgoyne, erle of Neuers, son of the duke of Burgoyne, commander in chief of an expedition to assist the king of Hungary against the Turks, 637. Betroths his daughter, the lady Isabell, to Richard the second, king of England, 643. Arrives at St. Omer's to meet the king of England, 665. Has an interview with him at Arde, 665. Delivers up his daughter to him, 666. Proposes to lead an army into Lombardy against the duke of Mylayne, 667. Receives the news of the defeat of the combined armies by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, 674. Meets the king of Almayne at Reynes, to confer upon measures for the reunion of the church, 709. Sends ambassadors to pope Boniface, to acquaint him with the resolutions of the assembly, 720. Sends the same to pope Benedict at Auygnon, 721. Sends to king Richard the second and the king of Almayne, requiring them to enforce pope Boniface to resign, 726. Informed of the imprisonment of king Richard the second in the tower of London, 755. Relapses into his derangement, 755. His council sends Sir Charles Dalbreth, &c. to England, to visit his daughter during the imprisonment of the king, 757.
- Charles, king of Nauer, causes the constable of France to be murdered, i. 183. Obtains the pardon of the king of France, 184. Lands with a large army at Chierbourg, 186. Is again pardoned by the king of France, 186. Arrested by the king of France, 188. Escapes by stratagem from the castle of Alleres, 215. Appeases the duke of Normandy, 215. Haranges the Parisians, 216. Destroys many of the atrocious Jaquery of Beauuossyn, 217. Makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 219. Declares war against France, 222. Takes several towns and fortresses in France, 222. Again makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 234. Declares war against him, 248. Makes war on France, 280. Makes peace with the king of France, 306. Enters into an alliance with Peter, king of Castyle, 316. Conducts the prince of Wales and Don Peter to Pampylone (Pampeluna), 327. Dissatisfied with the conduct of the prince's troops, 328. Taken prisoner by Sir Olyuer Manny, 330. Visits and enters into an alliance with the king of England, 376. Makes peace with the king of France, 412, 462. Applies to Richard the second, king of England, for assistance against the king of France, 487, 514. His queen dies, 509. Goes to England, and enters into an alliance with the king, 515. Arrives at Burdeaux, and solicits aid from the English to raise the siege of Pampylone, 530. Concludes a peace with the king of Castyle, 536. Permits the French to pass over his territories, to assist the king of Castyle, ii. 238. His extraordinary death, 333.
- Charles, son of the above, marries the daughter of king Henry of Castyle, i. 536. Is crowned king of Nauer, ii. 333. Releases his subjects from the imposition of a grievous tax proposed by his father, 333. Returns from France, after failing to persuade the king to restore his inheritance of Normandy, &c. 710.
- of Spayne, erle of Angolen (Angoulême), appointed constable of France, i. 182. Marries the daughter of the lord Charles of Bloys, 183. Murdered by order of the king of Nauer, 183.
- Charney, Sir Geffray, endeavours to gain possession of Calais from the English, by bribing the governor, Sir Amery of Pauy, i. 178. Defeated by king Edward the third, and taken prisoner, 180. Embarks for Scotland, to offer his assistance against England, 784. Pillages and burns various parts of Northumberland, 786. Returns, and is in great danger from the Zealanders, 788. Arrives at Edenborowe with the French armament for the invasion of England, ii. 7.
- the lord of, slain at the battle of Poyeters, i. 202.
- Charters of peace—between the kings of England and France, i. 256, 358. Between the duke of Burgoyne and the men of Gaunt, ii. 38.
- Charytie, the town of, on the Loyre, taken by Sir Loys of Nauer, i. 291. Taken by the duke of Burgoyne, 294. Taken a second time by the French, ii. 83.
- Chasteleraut, the town of, taken by the French, i. 407.
- Chastellon, Sir Charles of, taken prisoner by the English at Lyques, i. 477.
- Sir Hewe of, master of the cross-bows of France, conquers Poyetou from the English, i. 368. Takes Sir Nycholas Louayng prisoner, 368. Taken prisoner at Abbeulle by Sir Nycholas Louayng, 400. Escapes from England, 476.
- Jaques of, son of the above, forcibly divorced during the regency of the dukes of Berry and Burgoyne from the daughter of the lord de la Ryuer, and forced to marry another, ii. 583.
- the lord of, taken prisoner by the English at Bergerath, i. 124.
- (Castillon), the town of, besieged by the duke of Anjou, i. 495. Surrenders, 497.
- (Châtel-bon), the vicount of, claims the succession of Foiz, ii. 540. Formerly imprisoned



- by the erle of Foiz, 542. His claim confirmed by the king of France, 548. Takes possession of the county as his inheritance, 554. Does homage to the king of France, 589.
- Chastôceault, the castle of, taken by Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 92.
- Chatenas, Sir John of, dies of fatigue before Auryke, ii. 509.
- Chateau-neuf, Sir John of. See Newcastle.
- Chamny, the lord of, taken prisoner with his two sons before Mauconsell, i. 224.
- Changny, the lord of, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales, i. 193. Quits the interest of the prince of Wales for that of the king of France, 378.
- the town of, in Poyctou, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesqy, i. 446.
- Cheney, Sir Robert, slain at Oliuet, ii. 83.
- Chierbourge, the town of, pillaged and burned by the English, i. 146. Besieged by Sir Bertram of Clesqy, 487, 527. First built by Julius Cesar, 487.
- Chimay, the town of. See Simay.
- Chyfolgnie (Cephalonia), the isle of, its singular government, manufactures, &c. ii. 700.
- Civray, the battle of. See Syreth.
- the town of. See Syreth.
- Clarence, Lyonell duke of, when erle of Ulster, accompanies his father, king Edward the third, into France, i. 243. Marries the daughter of the lord of Mylayne, 349. His death, 357. Makes war in Ireland, ii. 621.
- Clary, the lord of, killed before Dau, ii. 15.
- the lord of, challenges Sir Peter Courtney to do arms, ii. 444. Wounds him, 445. Imprisoned by the king of France, 446. Liberated, 447.
- Clement the sixth, pope, deprives the Flemings of the rites of the church, i. 63. Sends two cardinals to mediate a truce between France and England, 119. Mediates another truce between these nations, 177. Dies at Auygnon, 183.
- the seventh, pope, elected during the pope-dome of Urbane the sixth, which causes a schism in the church, i. 547. Acknowledged by the king of France, &c. 548. Goes to Auygnon, 549. Presents the duke of Aniou with the territories of the queen of Naples, which she had given up to his disposal, 551. Visited by Charles the sixth, king of France, ii. 440. Dies at Auygnon, 604.
- Clerefont, the cardynall of, elected pope under the name of Innocent the sixth, i. 183.
- lord John, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 198.
- lord Robert of, killed in the palays of Parys, i. 215.
- the town of, in Beauuoysyn, taken by the captall of Buz (Buch), i. 227.
- Clertes, the lord of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- Clergy, the, their manners in the time of Froissart, ii. 130.
- Clerke, Arnoldie, one of the commanders of the men of Gaunt, defeats a party of the Flemish nobility at Audwarpe, i. 632. Defeated and slain at the Abbey of Chem (Berchem), 633.
- Clesqy, Sir Bertram of (Sir Bertrand du Guesclin), appointed commander of the French forces in Normandy, i. 280. Assists the lord of Boucequant in the taking of Maunte, &c. 281. Defeats the forces of the king of Nauer at the battle of Cocherell, 285. Obtains possession of the castle of Roleboyse, 290. Goes to the assistance of Sir Charles of Bloys, 294. Taken prisoner at the battle of Aloy, 300. Ransomed, 308. Leads an army into Spayne, 308. Appointed constable of Castyle, 311. Goes to the assistance of Henry, king of Castyle, against Don Peter and the prince of Wales, 332. Taken prisoner at the battle of Nauarct, 341. Obtains his ransom, 348. Joins king Henry before Toledo, 353. Again appointed constable of Castyle, 357. Joins the duke of Aniou in an expedition against the prince of Wales, 413. Invades the country of Lymoges, 419. Takes the town of Yrier, 422. Appointed constable of France, 425. Defeats the forces of Sir Robert Canoll (Knolles), at Pont Valont, 426. Takes the city of Duses in Auvergne, 434. Takes the castle of Montmorillon and several other places in Poyctou, 446 *et seq.* Heads an army against Bretayne, 463. Takes the town of Reyneus and several others, 464 *et seq.* Sent with a large army against the king of Nauer, 486. Makes war on Bretayne, 544. Is displeas'd by the execution of his cousin, Sylvester Budes, 552. Dies at Auvergne, 583. The etymology of his name, ii. 269.
- Clesqy (Guesclin), Sir Olyuer of, taken prisoner by the garrison of Chierbourge, i. 528.
- Clesqyn, Sir Olyuer. See Clysso.
- St Cloud, the town of, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- the battle of, between the English and the Parysians, i. 220.
- Clysso, Sir Garnyer (Walter) of, slain at Brest by the erle of Mountfort, i. 87.
- the lord of, taken prisoner at Vannes, i. 117. Exchanged for lord Stafforde, 120. Beheaded at Parys, 120.
- Sir Olyuer of, loses an eye at the battle of Aloy, i. 300. Besieges the town of Bercerell, 462. Besieges Roche sur Youe, 465. Takes the town of Dynant, 574. Appointed constable of France, 583. Counsels king Charles the sixth to make vigorous war in England, ii. 33. Causes four hostages for the castle of Durinall to be executed, 57. Besieges Brest, 113. His fleet dispersed by a storm on his voyage to Sluys to join the armament of the king of France, 197. Takes measures for obtaining the liberation of John of Bretayne from England, 211. Marries him to his daughter, 213. Makes preparations to invade England, 246. Treacherously arrested by the duke of Bretayne at the castle of Arnyne, 250. Obtains his liberty,

255. Complains to the king of France of the conduct of the duke of Breтайne, and tenders his resignation of the office of constable, 256. Retires to Mount le Herry, 257. Takes the towns of St. Malo and St. Mathieu of Fyne Poterne, 358. His castles, delivered to the duke of Breтайne for his ransom, restored to him, 363. Severely wounded by Sir Peter Craon, who had intended to murder him, 562. Incurs the hatred and suspicions of the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne on account of his wealth, 568. Insulted by the duke of Burgoyne, 580. Retires from Parys to avoid the consequences of his hatred, 580. Summoned before the parliament of Parys, 585. Does not appear, and is heavily fined and declared to be dispossessed of his office of constable, 585. Refuses to deliver up the martell or staff, 595. Wages a violent warfare against the duke of Breтайne, 595. Makes peace with him, 635.
- Cocsey on the Downes, the town of, burned by the English under the erle of Arundell, ii. 218.
- Cocherell, the battle of, in Normandy, between the French and the Naueroise, i. 285.
- Coin of gold, called Florence of the Lambe, issued in France, and all other coin prohibited, i. 185.
- Coloyne, Sir Robert of, slain in a skirmish between Sir Robert of Namure and the French, i. 396.
- Combats. See Deeds of arms.
- Comercy, the castle of, taken and destroyed by Sir Barylmeu de Bonnes, i. 250.
- Commission of Edward the third, king of England, to his governors and allies in France, requiring them to observe the peace between England and France, i. 261.
- Commissioners sent from England to France to execute the conditions of peace between the two countries, i. 265.
- appointed, at the request of the Londoners, &c. to examine into the management of the finances, &c. under Richard the second, ii. 277.
- Commit Sir Symon Burley to the Tower, 279.
- Condemn him to death, 281. Appoint a new council for the king, 282.
- Companions, the, numerous bands of armed adventurers, under Sir Robert Canoll and other expert commanders, over-run and pillage various places in France, &c. and hire themselves as mercenaries to the powers at war, i. 214 *et seq.*
- Comporsels (Porkers), of Respaile, a set of pillagers so called, commit great depredations in Flaunders, ii. 1.
- Comynges, the lord of. See Gommegynes.
- Concarneau, the town of. See Koucke.
- Conches, the town of, taken by the French under the lord Coucy, i. 516.
- Conclauē of cardynalls at Rome, whilst electing a pope, on the death of Gregory the eleventh, forced by the populace, i. 510.
- Condose (Condom), surrenders to the duke of Aniou, i. 476.
- Conflan, Sir Rafe of, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Conflans, the lord of, killed in the palays of Parys, i. 215.
- Conlue, king of Cheueno and Darpe (O'Connor, king of Connaught?), submits himself to Richard the second, king of England, ii. 620. Knighted by him, 622.
- Coniecte (Nissa?), the town of, in Turkey, taken by storm by the combined Christian armies, under the king of Hungary and John of Burgoyne, ii. 647.
- Connay, the castle of, in Normandy, besieged by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 292. Surrenders, 293.
- Conquest, the castle of, taken by Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 104. Retaken the next day by Sir Walter Manny, 105.
- Constable of France, the, taken prisoner in Cane by king Edward the third, i. 149.
- Constance, the lady, daughter of Peter, king of Castyle, married to the duke of Lancastrē, i. 437.
- Constances (Coutances), the battle of, between the forces under the lord Godfrey of Harcourt and the lord Loys of Rauennall, i. 209.
- Constantyne le Noble (Constantinople), the emperour of, subdued by the great Tacon (Cham) of Tartarie, ii. 124. Gives his daughter to the Tacon in marriage, 124.
- Conuall, the castle of, in Rabestan, stormed and taken by the French under Sir Gualtier of Passac, ii. 118.
- Copeland, John, takes David, king of Scotland, prisoner at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166. Is rewarded by king Edward the third at Calais, 166. Delivers the king of Scotland to the queen of England, by order of king Edward, 167.
- Corasse, Raymon lord of, served by a familiar spirit called Orthone, ii. 110. Communicates the circumstance to the erle of Foiz, 111. By means of his familiar, gives the erle quick intelligence of events abroad, 111. Frightens Orthone, who entirely quits him, 112. His death, 113.
- Corby, Sir Raynalt of, one of the council of Charles the sixth, king of France, advises him to receive the proposal of marriage for his daughter made by Richard the second, king of England, ii. 625.
- Corque (Couch), the town of, in Armony, taken and kept by the Genouoys against the Turks, ii. 694.
- Couborne, the castle of, in Lymosyn, taken by Brigands, i. 177.
- Coucy, Sir Ingram (Inquerrant), lord of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- the lord of, erle of Soissons, travels to avoid taking any part in the wars between the kings of France and England, i. 405. Leads a large army into Austryche (Austria), 481. Returns without having effected any thing, 482. Takes the town of Carentyne, &c. 516. Takes the town of Eureux, 522. Appointed to the chief command in

- Picardy, 585. Appeases the insurgents of Parys, 664. Endeavours to gain over the duke of Breтайne to the French interest, ii. 361. Married to the daughter of the duke of Lorayne, 428. Accompanies the lord Loys of Aniou, king of Cyeell, &c. into Aragon, 457. Refuses to accept the office of constable of France after the disgrace of Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 593. Goes on a mission to Geane, 638. Goes with the expedition under John of Burgoyne against the Turks, 638. Defeats a large Turkish force near Nycopoly, 654. Taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, 671. Dies at Bursa, in Turkey, 693.
- Coucy, the lady, an attendant upon the queen of king Richard the second, sent back to France by the duke of Lancastre after the arrest of the king, ii. 747. Informs Charles the sixth of the state of affairs in England, 755.
- the lord Raoll of, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales near Poyeters, i. 193; and again at Mauconsell, 224.
- Coudane, the lord Anthony of, taken prisoner before Mauconsell, i. 224.
- Coulongne, the seignory of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 257.
- Council of state, a new one appointed for king Richard the second, by the commissioners of accounts, ii. 282.
- Courase, Sir Raymon of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Courtsyen, the lord of, entertains the English at Gaunt, i. 44; which offends king Philyp, and he causes him to be beheaded by the erle of Flaunders, i. 44.
- Courtney, Sir Peter, complains to the countess of St. Poule that no knight in France would do arms with him, ii. 444. Challenged to a deed of arms by the lord Clary, and wounded, 445.
- Sir Philyp, taken prisoner at Pont Valont by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 426.
- Courtray, the town of, pillaged of its cattle by the men of Tournay, i. 64. Forms an alliance with the men of Gaunt, 566. Turns to the interest of the erle of Flaunders, 625. Besieged by the men of Gaunt under Peter de Boyse, 631. Returns to the interest of the men of Gaunt, 698. Burned by order of Charles the sixth, king of France, 741.
- Courtyse, the castle of, taken by the English under the chanon Robersarde, i. 675.
- Cousay, Sir Ayme of, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Coygne, Sir John Lawrence of (Lorenzo d'Acunha), goes to Castyle, and his wife is married in his absence by Ferrande, king of Portyngale, ii. 138. Returns to Portyngale, 142. Is captain of Lysebone, and slain there in a skirmish, 144.
- the Ponase of (Pouvasse d'Acunha), slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Craell, the town of, taken by the king of Nauer, i. 223.
- Craon, the lord of, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales at Remorentyn, i. 192.
- Sir Peter, accused of defrauding the king of Cyeyll, ii. 532. In great favour at the court of France, 532. Betrays the confidence of the duke of Thourayne, 534. Ordered to quit the court, 534. Retires into Breтайne, 535. Projects the assassination of Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 560. Waylays him at Parys, but fails in killing him, 562. Three of his adherents taken and executed, 566. Is protected by the duke of Breтайne, 566. Makes his peace with the king of France, 635. Goes to Parys, 636. Prosecuted in the parliament of Parys by the duchess of Aniou, 636. Appointed to receive the English ambassadors, 642. Judgment being given against him by the parliament, he is committed to prison, 643. Obtains his liberty, 667. Accompanies Henry, erle of Derby, into England, 741.
- Crede, the castle of, in Breтайne, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 464.
- Cressy burned by the English, i. 54.
- the battle of, between Edward the third, king of England, and Philyp of Valoys, king of France, i. 157. The English number the slain after having gained a signal victory, 160.
- Cressyn (Tressin), the bridge of, ill success of Sir Wyllyam Bayleull in a skirmish near there, i. 79. The French defeated there in a skirmish, 83.
- Creunyn, Roger de, takes measures for procuring peace to the town of Gaunt, ii. 34.
- Crey, Sir John of, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Croquart, a page, turns brigand, his adventures and death, i. 178 *et seq.*
- Crotay, the town of, taken by king Edward the third, i. 154. Retaken by Sir Hewe of Chastellon, 368.
- Crox or Croyse (Croix), Sir Vauflart de la, defeated in a skirmish before Lysle, i. 64; and at the bridge of Cressyn, where he is taken prisoner, 79. Put to death at Lysle by order of the king of France, 80.
- Croysey (Croisade), a, preached against the Saracens, i. 40; also against the Companions, by pope Innocent the seventh, 271. One undertaken by king Richard the second against the adherents to pope Clement, 753.
- Calpedup (Copeland), Sir John of, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 400.
- Cursone, Sir John, taken prisoner in the sea-fight off Rochelle, i. 442.

## D.

- Dabegnyn, the lord, escapes with Philyp, king of France, and four other barons, after the battle of Cressy, i. 159.
- Dacenes, the lord of, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Dadudauc (Aberdeen), the bysshope of, taken pri-

- soner by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Dägorne** (Dagworth), Sir Thomas, sent into Bre-  
tayne to the assistance of the countess of Mount-  
fort, i. 122. Taken prisoner before Rochedarien,  
171. Killed in Breтайne, 182.
- Dalbreth**, the lord Charles, his birth, i. 360. Is  
granted by king Charles the sixth the arms of  
France as an augmentation of his own arms, ii.  
457. Sent to England to visit Isabell, the queen  
of Richard the second, during her husband's im-  
prisonment, 757.
- Sir Perducas, the lord of, is engaged by  
the prince of Wales to assist him with one thousand  
men in his expedition against Spayne, i. 319.  
Takes offence at the conduct of the prince, 324.  
His letter in answer to the prince's, 324. Joins  
the prince in Nauer, 327. Marries the lady Isa-  
bell of Burbon, 350. Complains to the king of  
France of a tax the prince of Wales was about to  
impose upon himself and the other lords of Gas-  
cony, 351. Returns to the interest of the prince  
of Wales, 380. Receives the investiture of the  
lands of Chammont, 708. His death, 709.
- Dalkeith**, the castle of. See Alquest.
- Damartyn**, the erle of, slain at the battle of Poycters,  
i. 202.
- Damassene**, the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby,  
i. 135. Retaken by the duke of Normandy, 142.
- Dambretycourt**, Sir Eustace, hospitably receives queen  
Isabell of England after she had fled from Parys,  
i. 8. Strikes the first blow at the battle of Poyc-  
ters and is taken prisoner, 198. Rescued by his  
own men, 199. Commands in Champayne, 233.  
Marries the lady Isabell of Julyers, 233. De-  
feated and taken prisoner at the battle of Nogent,  
235. Obtains his freedom, and takes several towns  
in Champayne, 238. Takes the town of Achery  
on the Esue in Picardy, 248. Commits great de-  
vastations in Picardy, &c. 252. Joins the prince  
of Wales, 376. Made prisoner in Lynousyn  
and ransomed, 427. Dies at Carenten in Nor-  
mandy, 427.
- Sir John, on his return from Galyce  
goes to Paris to perform a deed of arms with the  
lord Bouciqualt, ii. 308.
- Dampeln**, Sir Loys, taken prisoner in a skirmish at  
the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Dampmartyne**, the erle of, resists the dukes of Ber-  
rey and Burgoyne in their attempts to break off the  
marriage of his daughter with the son of the lord  
de la Ryner, ii. 583.
- Dampuary** taken by Sir Eustace Dambretycourt, i.  
239.
- Damaunt** (Dampmaire), captured at the battle of  
Poycters, i. 202.
- Dancensys** (D'Anceennes), Sir Willyam, informs Frois-  
sart of the etymology of Sir Bertram Clesquy's  
name, and of the reception of the king of France's  
messengers by the duke of Breтайne, ii. 270.
- Dauchyn**, Peter, takes the town and castle of Ortaise,  
ii. 51. Sells them for eight thousand frankes,  
52.
- Dandrehen**, Sir Arnolde, taken prisoner at Xaynton,  
i. 182; and at the battle of Poycters, 198. Ad-  
vises Henry, king of Castyle, not to hazard a battle  
with the prince of Wales, 334. Taken prisoner  
at the battle of Nauaret, 341. Becomes super-  
annuated, 386.
- Danekyn**, Sir Baudewyn, taken prisoner in a skirmish  
near St. Quintyne, i. 247.
- Danghien**, the lord Water, defeats the White-hattes  
at Chem (Berchem), i. 633. Takes the town of  
Grauntmont, in Flaunders, for the erle, 659. Slain  
before Gaunt, 659.
- Dangle**, Sir Guychart, appointed marshall of Guyene,  
i. 274. Sent on a mission by the prince of Wales  
to pope Urbane at Rome, and returns to France  
through Acquitayne in disguise, 366. Created a  
knight of the garter, 429. Taken by the Spaniards  
in the sea battle off Rochell, 442. Ransomed,  
474. Appointed tutor to king Richard the second,  
483. Created erle of Huutyngdon, 483. Dies  
at London, 584, 655.
- Dangers** (D'Angers), Sir Aubert, drowned on board  
the French fleet at sea in attempting a feat of agi-  
lity, ii. 6.
- Danne** (Damme), the town of, forms an alliance with  
the men of Gaunt, i. 567. Taken by the men of  
Gaunt, 697. ii. 14. Besieged by the king of  
France, 15. Taken and burned, 18.
- Dantöigne**, Sir Henry, of Heynault, taken prisoner  
by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, and put to  
death afterwards, ii. 672.
- Danyels** (Danvilliers), Peter, takes prisoner the cap-  
tall of Beufz at Soubise, i. 452. Receives a large  
reward from the French king, 456.
- Daraynes**, Sir Lionel, taken prisoner by the English  
at Lyques, i. 477.
- Dardenbourg**, the town of. See Ardenbourge.
- Dardenbourke**, Jaques, takes measures for procuring  
peace to the men of Gaunt, ii. 34.
- Dartmouth**, the town of, burned by the French, i.  
484.
- Dartuell**, Jaques (Jacob von Artaveld), a citizen of  
Gaunt, governs all Flaunders, i. 43. Engages to  
befriend Edward the third, king of England, in his  
designs against France, 44. Sends ambassadours  
to king Edward, to invite him over to Flaunders,  
46. Sends large reinforcements to the erle of  
Heynault before Thyne Leuesque, 70. Declares  
at Valenciennes the right of Edward the third to the  
crown of France, 73. Arrives at Tournay with  
sixty thousand men to assist in the siege, 75. At-  
tempts to disinherite the erle of Flaunders, and to  
give the country to the king of England, 136.  
Murdered at Gaunt, 138.
- (von Artaveld), Philyp, son of the above, ap-  
pointed governor of Gaunt, i. 636. Causes twelve  
of those who were the occasion of his father's death  
to be beheaded, 658. Kills Sir Symon Bette,  
662. Goes to Tournay to treat for peace with

- the erle of Flaunders, 686. Harangues the people of Gaunt, touching the erle's terms for peace, 689. Leads the men of Gaunt to attack the erle of Flaunders at Bruges, 690. Defeats the erle, and takes Bruges, 692. Returns to Gaunt, and lives in great state, 699. Besieges Andwarpe, 701, 706. Writes to the king of France to solicit his interference to make peace between the country of Flaunders and the erle, 707. His letters treated with contempt, 707. Imprisons a messenger from the king of France, 712. His answer to the letters he had brought him, 712. Takes measures to guard the passes of the country against the army of the king of France, 716. Collects a force after the defeat of Peter de Boyse to oppose the king of France in person, 732. Is alarmed the night before the battle of Rosebeque by strange noises, 733. Defeated and slain at the battle of Rosebeque, 739.
- Dastredare, the erle, slain by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Daugour (D'Avangour), the lord, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Daubeneull (Aubenchcul), the town of, taken and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 63.
- Dauberth, the town of. *See* Auberoche.
- Dauterne, Roger, bailly of Gaunt, murdered there by the White-hattes, i. 560.
- Sir Olyuer, revenges the death of Roger Dauterne by maiming the mariners of Gaunt, i. 578. Banished from Flaunders by the erle, 580.
- Dautryche (Utrecht), the town of, taken by the erle of Heynault, i. 138.
- Dautryne, Sir Lyonet (Sir Lionel Daultry), taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471.
- David, the second, king of Scotland, marries Johan, sister of Edward the third, king of England, i. 30. Retires to France, 47. Enters into an alliance with king Philip, 48. Returns, after seven years residence in France, to Scotland, 95. Assembles an army to invade England, 95. Takes and burns the town of Durham, 96. Besieges Werk castle, 96. Returns to Scotland, 98. Invades England a second time, 105. Defeated by the queen of England, and taken prisoner near Newcastle, 166. Sent to the Tower of London, 167. Liberated by a treaty of peace, 211. Allies himself to France, 569. Enters into a truce with England, 415. His death, 462.
- Dayre, John, a citizen of Calais, his patriotic conduct during the siege of that city by king Edward the third, i. 175.
- Dayzay, Sir Guy, endeavours to prevent the Companions re-entering France from Castyle, i. 320. Defeated and taken at the battle of Montaubon, 322.
- Death, miraculous, of an English squire who had committed sacrilege in the church of Rouay in Champayne, i. 237.
- of a sacrilegious Breton in St. Johu's Church at Bourboure, i. 778.
- Deeds of arms, at Mons, at a noble feast given by the erle of Heynault, i. 85. At London, against all comers, ordained by king Edward the third out of affection for the countess of Salisbury, 111. Before Reyne, between Sir Nycholas Dagonne, an English knight, and Sir Bertraude of Glesquyre, a French knight, 212. At Auygnon, before John, king of France, between Sir Aymon of Pommiers and Sir Fouques of Archiac, 275. At Noyon, during the siege, by Sir John Assucton singly against several knights, 417. At Tourey and Marcheanuoy, before the erle of Buckingham, between Joachym Cathore, an English squire, and Gawen Mychaell, a French squire, 596, 598. At Vannes, before the erle of Buckingham, between several French and English knights and squires, 615 *et seq.* At the castle of Josselyn, before Sir Olyuer of Clysson, between Nycholas Clyfforde, an English squire, and John Boucmeil, a French squire, 620. Before the city of Vale de Lore (Badajos), between Sir Myles Wyndsores, an English knight, and Sir Tristram de Roy, a French knight, 681. At Cambray, before Charles the sixth and his court, in honour of the marriage of the children of the dukes of Burgoyne and Bauier, 795. At Parys, before the king and his court, in mortal combat, ordained by the parliament, between Sir John of Carongne and Jaques le Grys, ii. 203. At Bourdeaux, before the seneschall, between the lord of Rouchfoucaulte and Sir Wilyam Mountferant, 209. At Besances, before the king of Portyngale and the duke and duchess of Lancastre, between Sir John Hollande and Sir Raynold du Roy, 233. At Moustreau ou faulte you (Montereau sur Yonne), before the king of France and his nobles, between Sir Thomas Harpyngham and Sir John of Barres, 372. At Bourdeaux, before the duke of Lancastre, between five English knights and five French knights, 423. At Parys, before the court for four days, in honour of the public entry of Isabell of Banier, queen of Charles the sixth, 435. Near Calais, between the lord of Clary and Sir Peter Courtney, an English knight, 445. Near St. Ingilbertes, for thirty days, at which the king of France is present *in cognito*, on the challenge of Sir Bouciquant the younger, Sir Raynolde of Roys, and the lorde of St. Pye against all comers, 467. In Smithfield, for three days, against all comers, ordained by king Richard the second, 511. At Wyndsores, before king Richard the second, against all comers, which, on account of his unpopularity, is thinly attended, 733. At Oxford, by the erle of Huntynghon, in furtherance of a plot against king Henry the fourth, 739.
- De la Payx (Durazzo), the lord Charles, defends the kingdom of Naples against the pretensions of the duke of Aniou, i. 671. Put to death in Hungary, ii. 10.
- Delbarwyn, the lord, slain at the battle of Rosebeque, i. 738.
- Delle, Sir John, negotiates a peace between the

- men of Gaunt and the duke of Burgoyne, ii. 34.  
 Dendermonde, the town of. See Teremoude.
- Denoyr, Sir Henry, taken prisoner in the castle of Comery, i. 250.
- Denyce, St., the town of, pillaged by the troops of the king of Nauer, i. 222.
- king of Portyngale. See John (grand master of Avis), king, &c.
- Deputations from the different towns of England wait on king Richard the second at Wyndors to lay their grievances before him, and to demand redress, ii. 276.
- Derby, the erle of, appointed to the command of a large army to go into Gascone, i. 122. Takes Bergerath and several other places in Gascone, &c. 123 *et seq.*
- Henry erle of, son of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, appointed the lieutenant of his father during his absence in Spayne, ii. 157. His children, 588. Challenged by the erle marshal of England in the presence of the king, 712. Banned the kingdom, 716. Arrives at Paris, 719. Goes into mourning for his father's death, 728. [For subsequent particulars of this prince, see Lancaster, Henry, duke of.]
- mayster John, receyvoir of Lyncolne, executed in London for having counselled king Richard the second to put to death the duke of Glocester, ii. 749.
- Dergesy, Sir Lyger, taken prisoner by the French, i. 513.
- Derne (la Rue ?), the town of, taken by Sir Hewe Chastellon, i. 368.
- Descoux, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Despencer, the lord. See Spencer.
- Destornaye, the lord, takes the town of Andwarpe Oudenarde, i. 790.
- Deure, Sir John Radigo. See Eure.
- Deureux, Sir John, takes the castle of Duses, in Auvergne, i. 434. Taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy at the battle of Syreth (Civray), 460.
- Deureux, the countie of, over-run, and all its castles and fortresses destroyed by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 487.
- Dilguares (Alvarez), don, brother of the great prior of St. John's, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Dinereth (Dymoke), a knight, at the coronation of Henry the fourth, king of England, challenges all knights, &c. who would deny the king's right, ii. 754.
- Disensions at York between the archers of England and the Heynaulters, i. 16.
- Dolyferne, Agadingor, a Sarazyn knight at Aufryke, son to the duke of Olyferne, remarkable for his chivalrous feats, ii. 502. Challenges ten of the French army to a combat with ten Sarazyns, 507.
- Dome, the town of, besieged by the English under Sir John Chandos, i. 381.
- Doude (Dundee), the town of, burned by king Richard the second, ii. 23.
- Dorchies (Orchies), the town of, taken and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 75.
- Doubles (Doublet), Olyuer, beheaded at Roan, i. 188.
- Douffremlyn (Dumfermline), destroyed by king Edward the third, i. 38.
- Douzanche (Donzack), Sir Raymond of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Dowaye (Aunay), the castle of, taken by the duke of Berrey, i. 454.
- Dreams, remarkable, of Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 765. Of Sir Peter of Bierne, ii. 77.
- Drewe, the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 292.
- Driceham (Dixmude), the castle of, taken by the bysshop of Norwich, i. 760. Retaken by the king of France, 778.
- Drowe, the town of, surrenders to the duke of Aniou, i. 476.
- Duels. See Deeds of arms.
- Duffle, Sir Henry, killed in Flaunders, i. 717.
- Duglas, Sir Archambalt, wields an enormous sword, and fights with great bravery under Sir Wilyam Lyndsay against the English, i. 507. Is a bastard, ii. 404.
- lord William (James), departs for the Holy Land, to fulfil the request of Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, i. 29. Killed in Spayne fighting against the Sarazyns, 30.
- James erle of, welcomes the French forces at Edenborowe, destined for the invasion of England, ii. 7. Invades England with a large force, 390. Fights hand to hand with Sir Henry Percy before Newcastle and takes his pemon, 393. Slain at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), 397. Buried at Ninay (Melrose), 404.
- the erle John, slain at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- lord Wilyam, takes the castle of Edenborowe by stratagem, i. 77. Taken prisoner at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Dulcen (Duren or Durban), the castle of, in Narbone, taken by brigands, ii. 206. Retaken by the Aragonese under Sir Raymon of Baghes, 208.
- Dunbar, Patrick erle of. See Patrys, the erle.
- Dunce (Danube), the river, described, ii. 646.
- Dunkyrke, the town of, surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 730. Retaken by the bysshop of Norwich, 759. Taken a second time by the king of France, 778.
- Durach, Sir Raymonde, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Duras, the lord Robert of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 199.
- the lord, taken prisoner by the French at the battle of Yuret, i. 494. Turns to the French interest, 496; but quits it afterwards, 496.

- Duras, the town of, taken by storm by the duke of Anjou, i. 499. The castle surrenders, and is razed, 499.
- Durham, the bysshop of, takes Sir James Linsay prisoner, ii. 402.
- the city of, taken and destroyed by the Scots, i. 96.
- Duriuall (Derval), the castle of, besieged by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 465. Relieved by Sir Robert Canolle, 468.
- Dury, Rabygoose of, takes the town of Barley, i. 224.
- Duses, the city of, taken by Sir John Deureux, i. 434. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 434.
- Duzes, the erle, taken prisoner by the Companions, called the Late-comers, i. 270.
- Dyenue (Didonne), the castle of, surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 461.
- Dygaes, Don Dygo, brother of the great master of Calestrane, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Dyghos (Vigo?), the town of, in Galyce, taken by the forces of the duke of Lancastre, ii. 186.
- Dygomor (Diego Moro), Sir, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Dynan, Sir Charles of, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Dynant, the town of, in Breтайne, taken by the forces of Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 105. Taken by the English under king Edward the third, 117. Surrenders to the lord John of Mountfort, 304. Taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464. Taken by Sir Olyner of Clysnon, 574.
- Dyscouourte, Sir Raynolde, killed by order of the duke of Guerles, ii. 328.
- E.
- Ebretou (Emerton), Sir Thomas, taken prisoner in Breтайne, i. 471.
- Edenborowe, the town of, taken by Edward the third, king of England, i. 38. Retaken by stratagem by Sir Willyam Douglas, 77. Its state in Froissart's time, ii. 7. Entirely destroyed by king Richard the second, 27.
- Edward, St. king of England, his arms borne by king Richard the second in his expedition into Ireland, ii. 623.
- the first, king of England, his character and successes, i. 3. Dies at Berwyke, 39. His singular request on his death-bed, 40.
- the second, his character, i. 3. His family relations, 3. Influenced in his government by Sir Hewe Spencer, 4. Shuts himself up in Bristolwe against the queen and her party, 10. Taken prisoner by them in endeavouring to escape by sea, 12. Confined in Barkely castle, 12. Publicly deposed and sentenced by the people of England to be imprisoned during his life, 14. His death, 27.
- the third, son of the above, when at Valen-

ciennes with his mother, queen Isabell, courts Philyppe, the daughter of the erle of Heynault, i. 8. His coronation, 14. Receives a defiance from Robert Bruce, king of Scotland, 15. Leads a large army to oppose the invasion of the Scots, 18. Returns, 26. Marries the lady Philyppe of Heynault, 27. Enters into a truce with the Scots, 27. Does homage to the king of France for the duchy of Guyen, 34. Demands homage of the king of Scotland, 37. Raises an army to invade Scotland, 58. Takes Edeburowe and several other places, 38 *et seq.* Returns to England, 39. Takes measures to make war on the king of France, 41. Solicits the friendship of the Flemings, 43. Passes over to Flaunders, and makes great alliances in the empire, 46. Appointed vicar-general of the empire of Almayne (Germany), 47. Sends his defiance, with those of his allies, to the king of France, 49. Besieges Cambray, 51. Marches into France, 53. Returns to Heynault, 58. Returns to England, 59. Sails with a large armament for Flaunders, 72. Defeats the French at sea, 72. Arrives at Gaunt, 73. Besieges Tourney, 75. Enters into a truce with France, and returns to England, 85. Receives the homage of the lord John of Mountfort for the duchy of Breтайne, 90. Assembles an army to oppose an invasion of the Scots, 94. Concludes a truce with the Scots, 94. Is enamoured of the countess of Salisbury, 98. Sends a force to the assistance of the lord John of Mountfort, 100. Makes great feasts out of affection for the countess of Salisbury, 111. Sends reinforcements into Breтайne, 112. Determines on the entire conquest of Scotland, 112. Concludes a truce with the Scots for two years, 112. Heads a large army into Breтайne, 116. Besieges the town of Vannes, 116. Besieges and takes several other places, 116 *et seq.* Enters into a truce with the French, 119. Visits the countess of Mountfort at Hanybout, 120. Returns to England, 120. Institutes the order of the garter, 120. Ordains a yearly feast at Wyndsores on St. George's day, 120. Founds the chapel of St. George at Wyndsores, 120. Sends his defiance to the king of France, 121. Appoints the erle of Derby to the command of an expedition into Gascone, 122. Arrives at Sluse with the prince of Wales, in hopes of getting possession of Flaunders, 136. Heads a large army into Normandy, 145. Falls to the ground in landing, and hails it as a good token, 146. Takes the town of Harlewe (Barleu), and several others, 146 *et seq.* Marches towards Parys, destroying the country in his way, 148. Distressed to find a passage over the Soume, 152. Conducted to one by a peasant, named Gobyn a Grace (Agace), 153. Halts at Cressy, 154. Marshals his army, 155. Engages the French, under Philyp of Valoys, at Cressy, and totally defeats them, 157 *et seq.* Besieges the town of Calais, 160. Solicits the friendship of the Flemings, 168. Refuses the French king's invitation to battle, 173.

- Obtains possession of Calais, 175. Orders six of its principal citizens, who, for the security of the other inhabitants, had generously volunteered to submit themselves to his pleasure, to be put to death, 175. Is dissuaded from his purpose by the queen, 176. Orders all the old inhabitants of the town to be expelled, 176. Makes his public entry into Calais, 176. Enters into a truce with the king of France, 177. Returns to England, 177. Arrives at Calais to prevent the treacherous surrender of the town, which the governor had agreed to sell to the French, 180. Fights there *in cognito* under the banner of Sir Walter Manny, 180. Is engaged hand to hand with Sir Eustace of Ribamont, and takes him prisoner, 180. Presents him with a chaplet of pearls in honour of his prowess, 181. Concludes a truce with John, king of France, 185. Makes an irruption into France, 186. Concludes a treaty with David, king of Scotland, and liberates him, 211. Enters into a treaty of peace with John, king of France, his prisoner, 238. Leads a large army into France during the imprisonment of king John in England, 242. Besieges Reynes (Rheims), 247. Takes the town of Tonnerre, 251. Enters into a composition with the duke of Burgoyne to spare his duchy, 252. Proceeds towards Parys, destroying the country in his march, 252. Appalled by a sudden tempest, he hastily concludes a peace with the king of France, 255. Declines settling a peace concerning the duchy of Breтайne, 262. Entertains the king of France at Calais, 263. Returns to England, 264. Declines embarking in the crusades, 277. Is visited in London by the king of France, who dies there, 280. Receives a defiance from Charles the fifth, king of France, 367. Sends reinforcements into Poictou, &c. 368. Sends the erle of Cambridge to the assistance of the prince of Wales in Acquitayne, 370. Sends to Brabant and Heynault for assistance, 374. Enters into an alliance with the king of Nauer, 376. Sends the duke of Lancastre with an army to Calais, 386. Applies to Sir Robert of Namur for his assistance, 386. Sends letters to the lords and others in Acquitayne, requiring them to retain their allegiance, 406. Sends a large force to make war on the king of France, 411. Enters into a truce with the Scots, 415. Makes peace with the Flemings, 436. Prepares an army to invade France, 439. Solemnly settles the succession to the crown in case of his death, 456, 482. Sails from Hampton (Southampton), 456. Is obliged to return by contrary winds, 457. Enters into a truce with the French, 480. Dies at Shene, 483.
- Edward, the black prince of Wales, son of the above, his valour at the battle of Cressy, i. 158. Heads an army into Gascone, 186. Invades the county of Berrey, 190. Takes the town of Remorentyne, 192. Defeats and takes prisoner John, king of France, at the battle of Poycters, 202. Embarks for England with his prisoner, king John, 210. Arrives in London, 210. Accompanies the king of England in an expedition against France, 242. Sets out for Acquitayne, 274. Gives great entertainments at Angoulesme on the birth of his son Edward, 277. Makes preparations, against the advice of his council, to assist Peter (Don Pedro), king of Castyle, 313. Engages twelve thousand of the Companions for his expedition, 318. Coins his plate, 319. Promises the king of Mallorques (Majorca), to assist him against the king of Aragon, 323. His letter to the lord Dalbreth, which offends him, 324. Takes the town of Sauerter, 330. His letter in answer to one from Henry of Trastamare, king of Castyle, 335. Defeats the army of king Henry at the battle of Nauaret, 342. Sets out on his return to Acquitayne, displeased with the conduct of Don Peter, 347. Arrives with his army at Burdeaux, 348. Endeavours to impose the fowage (or a hearth-tax) in Acquitayne, 351. Excites discontent and opposition among the lords, 351. Summoned to appear before the parliament of Parys to answer their complaints, 361. His resolute answer to the summons, 362. Prepares to make war on France, 364. His health impaired by a sickness taken in Spayne, 364. Recals Sir John Chandos from his retirement, and appoints him to the command of a force against the French and Gascon lords, 365. Receives succours from England under the erles of Cambridge and Pembroke, 371. Prepares to oppose the dukes of Aniou and Berrey, 414. Is disabled by his disease to bear fatigue, 420. Takes the town of Lymoges by storm, 422. His sickness increases, 424. Gives up the duchy of Acquitayne, on the death of his eldest son Edward, to the care of his brother, the duke of Lancastre, and returns to England for the recovery of his health, 429. Dies at Westmynstre, 482. Visits the erle of Armysnake at Tarbe, ii. 48. Is visited by the erle of Foiz, 48. Appoints Sir Pyer Ernaulde (Sir Peter Ernaut), governor of Lourde, 49. Threatens to compel the erle of Foiz to hold the country of Biene of him, 60.
- Egle (l'Aigle), the castle of the, in Angoulinoy (Angoumois), stormed by the French under Sir Wilham of Lynacke, ii. 4.
- Eltham, Sir John of, brother of king Edward the third, created erle of Cornewal, i. 28.
- Enchaunter, an, offers to deliver up the castle of Leufe to the duke of Aniou by enchantment, i. 672. Beheaded by order of the erle of Sauoy, 673.
- English, the, their singular opinion respecting their kings, i. 3. Their manners in the time of Froisart, ii. 121.
- Entença or Betanços, the town of. See Besances.
- Epernay or Sparney, the town of, pillaged and burned by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 227. Taken by Sir Eustace Dambreycourt, 239.
- Erin. See Here.
- Ernaulde, Sir Pyer (Peter Ernaut), appointed gover-



- nor of Lourde by the prince of Wales, i. 49. Murdered by the erle of Foiz, 66.
- Escandure, the castle of, in Heynault, taken by the duke of Normandy and destroyed, i. 67.
- Escarmayne, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Escaudan, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Espaigoulet of Basque (Espaignolet of Biscay), takes the castle of Armayle, and makes a subterraneous way from it beyond the walls, ii. 114. Delivers it upon ransom to the lord of Armayle, 114. Re-enters it at night by the subterraneous passage, and takes him prisoner, 114. Liberates him on ransom, and retains the castle, 114. Taken by Sir Gaultier de Paschac in the castle of Couuall and hanged, 119.
- Estampes, the lord d'. See Stampes.
- Estelles le Ventre, burned by the Flemings, i. 172.
- Esturmelyne (Sterling), the castle of, taken by the Scots, i. 94.
- the town and abbey of, burned by the English, ii. 28.
- Estynen, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Evan of Wales. See Yuan, Sir, of Wales.
- Eure (Deure), Sir John Radigo of, slain by the Portuguese under Sir John Ferrant Portelet, ii. 148.
- Eureux, the country of, burned and pillaged by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150. Subdued by the French under Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 487.
- the city and castle of, taken by stratagem by Sir Wilyam of Granuyll, i. 212. Besieged by the French under the lord Coucy, 513. Surrenders, 522.
- Ewe, the erle of. See Arthoys, the lord Philyp of.
- Raffé, erle of, taken prisoner by the English under king Edward the third, i. 149. Beheaded at Parys for treason, 182.
- Eustace of St. Peters (Eustace de St. Pierre), a citizen of Calais, his patriotic conduct during the siege of that town, i. 175.
- F.
- Falquemont, Sir Valeron (Valerian), lorde of, captain of Maubeuge, surprises the duke of Normandy's forces at Sels, i. 66.
- Famagosta, the city of. See Samagose.
- Famine. See France, the kingdom of.
- Faucell, John de, a rich citizen of Gaunt, retires from the town after the murder of the bailly by the White-hattes, i. 561. Dies at Lysle, 634.
- Faulque (Foulkes), Sir Thomas, taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471.
- Fay, Sir Godmar du, defends the ford of Blanch Taque against king Edward the third and his army, i. 153. Defeated by the English, 153. Narrowly escapes being put to death, 161.
- Felton, Sir William, killed in Spayne, i. 334.
- Fenestrages, the lord Broquart of, takes the castle of Hans, i. 235. Defeats Sir Eustace Dambretycourt at the battle of Nogent and takes him prisoner, 235. Sends his defiance to the duke of Normandy, and over-runs Champayne, 239.
- Ferande, Sir John, imprisoned by the king of Portyngale for accompanying the chanon Robersarde against the Spaniards, i. 676. Liberated, 677.
- Feroull, the town of, taken by the king of Portyngale, ii. 265.
- Ferrande (Ferdinand), king of Portyngale, declares war against John, king of Castyle, i. 637. Applies to England for assistance, 637. Takes the field against the Spaniards, 680. Makes peace with the king of Castyle, 680. Marries his daughter to him, 682. His death, 682. Marries the wife of one of his knights, ii. 138.
- Figiere, the castle of. See Sighyre.
- Fitzwater, the lord, dies in Castyle, ii. 305.
- Flamant, Nicholas, a draper of Parys, beheaded, i. 749.
- Flaugny, the town of, taken by John Alenson, i. 251.
- Flanders, the country of, endeavoured to be put under the sovereignty of Edward the third, king of England, by Jaques Dartuell, i. 136. The origin of its civil wars, 552.
- the erle of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- Loys erle of, betrothed through the constraint of the Flemings to Isabell, daughter of the king of England, i. 169. Escapes into France, 169. Detains an ambassador from the king of France to the king of Scotland, 540. Carries himself haughtily towards the king upon receiving his remonstrance, 542. Supports the cause of pope Vrbane in his dominions against the Clementists, 548. Endeavours to put down the White-hattes, which had been revived at Gaunt, 560. Collects a force to make war on them, 567. Makes peace with them, 570. Comes to Gaunt at the entreaty of the inhabitants, 575. Endeavours to prevail on them to lay aside the White-hattes, 576. Causes John Pruniaux to be beheaded, 580. Goes to Bruges at the request of the inhabitants, 622. Renews the war with the men of Gaunt, 622. Besieges the town, 625. Defeats the men of Gaunt under Raffé de Harselles, and burns a body of them in the church at Nieule, 629. Besieges again the town of Gaunt, 638. Breaks up the siege, 660. His answer to the request of the men of Gaunt for peace, 686. Defeated by the men of Gaunt at Bruges, 692. Narrowly escapes being taken prisoner, 694. Flies to Lysle in disguise, 697. Applies to the king of France for assistance, 702. Intercedes with the king of France for the town of Bruges, 742. Becomes an object of hatred to the English, 751. Applies to the duke of Burgoyne for assistance to oppose the bysshop of Norwich, 760. Dies at St. Omers, 781. The ceremony of his funeral, 781.

- Flanders, the hasell of, perishes in the expedition against Turkey, ii. 693.
- Sir Riflard of, slain in a skirmish with the men of Gaunt, ii. 2.
- Flemings, the, under Colen Dannequyn, defeated at Cassell by Philip of Valoys, king of France, i. 31.
- under Jaques Dartuell, promise to assist Edward the third, king of England, against France, i. 44. Remain firm to their alliance, notwithstanding the solicitations of the king of France, 63.
- under Sir Robert Darthoys, fly in confusion and panic from before St. Omer's, i. 84.
- refuse to disinherit the erle of Flaunders, i. 136. Constrain him to be betrothed to the daughter of the king of England, 169. Besiege the town of Ayre, 172. Defeated by the English in a sea engagement before the hauyn of la Bay, 435. Make peace with the king of England, 436.
- Foins (Froins), the castle of, taken by the English under Sir John Chandos, i. 382.
- Foiz, Gaston erle of, defeats the atrocious Jaquery of Beauosyn with great slaughter at Meaulx, i. 218. His homage for certain lands in France transferred to Edward the third, king of England, 256. Tenders his service to the prince of Wales, 326. Entertains Froissart, and furnishes him with materials for his Cronycle, ii. 44. Visits the prince of Wales at Tarbe, 48. Remits, at the entreaty of the princess of Wales, sixty thousand francs of the ransom of the erle of Arminake, 49. Takes the town of Casseres from the Arminakes, 54. His riches and liberality, 59. Murders Sir Peter Ernulton (Ernant), 66. Refuses to accept the county of Bigore on the condition of holding it of the king of France, 67; but accepts the castle of Maluoysin, 67. Governs the country of Tholousin, 68. Origin of the wars between him and the Arminakes, 70. His character and manner of life, 72-237. Murders his son and heir Gaston, 76. His manner of keeping the feast of St. Nicholas, 79; and Christmas, 88. Endeavours to dissuade the lords and knights of Biernne from joining the king of Castyle against Portyngale, 91. Rapidly and in a secret manner informed of the battle of Juberoth, 109. Favours the war of the duke of Lancastre in Aragon, 206. Grants permission to the French army to pass through his territories on their way to Castyle, 231. Magnificently entertains the duke of Bourbon on his return towards France, 311. Prevents the erle of Arminake from succeeding in his attempt to purchase the forts occupied by the Companions, 315. Receives proposals from the duke of Lancastre for the marriage of his son, the erle of Derby, with the daughter of the erle of Boulonge, 425. Marries her to the duke of Berrey, 426. Visits the king of Frauce at Tholouse in great splendour, and does homage to him for the county of Foiz, 455. Dies suddenly, 536. His funeral, 541.
- Foiz, Sir Jenbayne (Evan) of, bastard son of the above erle of Foiz, on the death of his father seizes his treasure, ii. 537. Retained by Charles the sixth, king of France, as one of the knights of his chamber, 589. Burned to death by accident at a masked dance, 591.
- Folant, the castle of, taken by the English, i. 587.
- Fologe (Afolege), Sir John of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Fougasse, Laurence, sent ambassadour from John, king of Portyngale, to England, ii. 136. Relates to the duke of Lancastre the affairs of Portyngale after the return of the erle of Cambridge, 138.
- Forestbertran (Fores. Bertrand), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Forestes, the young erle of, slain by the Companions, called the Late-comers, i. 270.
- Sir Reynolde of, taken prisoner by the Late-comers, i. 270.
- Forget, the castle of, taken by Sir Gaultier of Paschac, ii. 115.
- Forsathe (Fronsac), in Gascone, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Fountayns, the town of, pillaged and burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 152.
- Fountnay the Countie (le Comte), the castle of, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 455.
- Fountnelles, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 67.
- Foy, St., the town of, taken by the duke of Aniou, i. 495.
- France, the kingdom of, experiences great dearths and famines, i. 183, 223, 226, 228, 244.
- the crown of, declared by the peers incapable of being held by females, i. 31. Edward the third, king of England, renounces his right to it, 257.
- the intended queens of, examined as to their capacity for child-bearing, ii. 11.
- the three estates of, settle the government of the realm during the imprisonment of king John in England, i. 207.
- the great prior of, slain by the English at Cressy, i. 159.
- Francoys, Hanekyn, defeats the erle of Roucy, and takes him prisoner, i. 233.
- Franke, Sir Bertram of, taken prisoner at the battle of Cocherell, i. 289.
- Franuyll, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Frelanes, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Frelays, Sir John de, a knight of Burgoyne, taken prisoner by three knights of Almayne (Germany) in a skirmish near Tournay, i. 78.
- Frese (Friezland), invaded by the erle of Ostreuaunt, ii. 661.
- Fresnoy, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.

- Fresnoy, Sir Hubert of (Sir Matthew Trelawney), severely wounded at Rochprion, i. 107. Condemned to death by Sir Loys of Spayne, 109. Rescued by Sir Walter Manny, 109.
- Froissart, Sir John, his Prologue to his Cronycles, i. 1. Undertakes to write his history, with corrections, at the entreaty of Sir Robert of Namure, lord of Bewfort, 2. Presents a volume of his cronycles to Phelyppe of Heynault, queen of Englande, 2. Informed by the lord of Destenort (D'Estomenort) of the miraculous dispersion of a mist by the Orilambe, 738. His reasons for visiting the erle of Foiz, ii. 43. Accompanied to Bierne by Sir Espaigne de Lion, who informs him of many particulars relative to the wars in Guyen, &c. 50 *et seq.* Commits to writing every night the information he obtained in the day, 67. Arrives at Ortaise, 71. Becomes acquainted with the bastot of Maulyon, 79. His description of the manners of the English and Gascons in his time, 121. Is informed by the nobles of Portyn-gale of the real differences between that kingdom and Castyle, 133. Details the means by which he obtained information for his cronycle, 134. Is informed by Sir Wilyam Danceny's of the etymology of Sir Bertram of Clesquy (Guesclin)'s name, the particulars of Sir Olyuer of Clysson's arrest by the duke of Bretayne, &c. 269. Returns to France from Ortaise in company with Elinoure of Bolougne, and is present at her marriage with the duke of Berrey, 426. Visits the erle of Bloys in Holland, 428. Returns to Parys to learn the particulars of the truce between England and France, 428. Is present at the public entry of Isabell of Bauier (Bavaria), queen of Charles the sixth, into Parys, 429. Goes to Abuyle to learn the particulars of the negotiation for peace between France and England, 509. Visits England in the reign of king Richard the second, 609. Presents his book of amours and moraltyetes to the king, 618. Moralizes on the fortunes of that monarch, 763.
- Frossart, Danne, a monk, his gallant defence of the abbey of St. Amande against the erle of Heynault, i. 81.
- Furnes, the town of, surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 730.
- Fyennes, the lord Morell, constable of France, relieves the city of Amyense, i. 225. Takes the town of St. Vallery, 229. Is besieged in the castle of Tomerre by the king of England, 251.
- Fykaole (Fitz-Paul?), Sir Guylliam, taken prisoner in Seaulle by Sir Wilyam Tremoye, ii. 356.
- G.
- Gabell of salt, the, imposed throughtout France, i. 187.
- Gacill, Sir Wilyam of, dies of fatigue before Auffyke, ii. 509.
- Galande, the castle of, in Bretayne, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 464.
- Gallipoli, the town of. See Calipole.
- Garde, Sir Guissharde de la, dies of fatigue before Auffyke, ii. 509.
- Gargoll, the lord of, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Garnat, taken by the duke of Burbone, ii. 20.
- Garremnes, the countess of, and other ladies who attended queen Isabell of England into England, dismissed with presents, i. 14.
- Gars, the abbott of, beheaded at Amyens, i. 226.
- Garylz, Sir Wilyam (Gomez), taken prisoner at the battle of Nanaret, and beheaded by order of Peter, king of Castyle, i. 344.
- Gascone (Gascony), possessions there ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Gascons, the, oppose the attempt of the prince of Wales to impose the fowage or hearth-tax in Gascone, i. 351 *et seq.* Their character in the time of Froissart, ii. 121.
- Gascoyne, Sir Nycholl, taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471.
- Gastelayne, Sir Bleres (Alberis), slain before the castle of Varley, ii. 23.
- Gauaches, the town of, taken by the English under Sir John Chandos, i. 382.
- Gaunt, the town of, besieged by the erle of Flaunders, i. 625, 658. The siege abandoned, 660. — the men of, murder Jaques Dartucll (Jacob von Artaveld), i. 138. Revive the custom of the White-hattes, and elect John Lyon their captain, 556. Apply to the erle of Flaunders to preserve their franchises, 559. Murder the baily of Gaunt, 560. Endeavour to make their peace with the erle, 562. March against Bruges and compel it and other towns of Flaunders to an alliance, 564 *et seq.* Choose new leaders after the death of John Lyon, 566. Enter into an alliance with the town of Yper, 566. Besiege Andwarpe (Oudenarde), 567. March to attack the erle of Flaunders in Teremoude (Dendremoude), 568. Make peace with the erle, 570. Take the town of Andwarpe, 578. Surrender it to the erle's forces, 580. Destroy the houses of the nobility, 580. Put to death John Bulle, one of their commanders, 624. Defeated with great slaughter at Nieule, where several hundreds of them are burned in a church, 629. Besiege Courtrey, 632. Greatly distressed for provisions, but relieved by the men of Liege, 684. Defeat the erle of Flaunders at Bruges, 692. Take the town of Bruges and several others, 693 *et seq.* Besiege Andwarpe, 701. Endeavour to form an alliance with England, 708. Defeated at the passage of Comynes, under Peter de Boyse, 726. Defeated under Philip Dartucll at the battle of Rosebeque, 739. Take the town of Ardenbourg, 750. Assist the English at the siege of Yper, 762. Included in a truce between France and England, 780. Defeat a party of the French at Ardenbourg, ii. 9. Make peace with the duke of Burgoyne, the heir of Flaunders, 38.
- Genesue (Geneva), the cardynall of, elected pope during the life-time of Urbane the sixth, i. 547.

- Geneuys (Genoese), their manners, commerce, and possessions in the time of Froissart, ii. 122. They raise a large army to invade Barbary, 476. Besiege the town of Auffyre, 499. Abandon the siege, 517. Negotiate with the lord Coucy respecting the surrender of their duchy to the duke of Orlyvaunce, 638.
- Gensay, Hogreymen (Hugonin), of, burned to death by accident at a masked dance in Parys, ii. 590.
- Gente, Sir Gylbert (Guisebert), a citizen of Gaunt, killed by Peter de Boyse for having endeavoured to make peace between the town and the erle of Flaunders, i. 662.
- Genuille (Joinville), the fortress of, taken and pillaged by the Companions, i. 267. Sold by them, 267.
- Genuyll, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- George, St., the chapel of, at Wyndstore, founded by king Edward the third, i. 120.
- Germany. See Almayne.
- Germayne, St., in laye, the town of, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- Gernos, the lord of, slain at the battle of Yuret, i. 494.
- Glocestre, the duke of, [*for previous particulars of this prince, see Buckingham, the erle of.*] His creation, ii. 200. Confederates with the duke of York and others against king Richard the second and his council, 275. Defeats the king's forces under the duke of Ireland near Oxford, 291. Thwarts the king in his intentions of making peace with the king of France, 331. Goes to France with the duke of Lancastre to negotiate a peace, 598. Wishes king Richard the second to marry his daughter, 614. Counsels the king not to listen to the deputies from the towns of Aquitayne, 617. Jealous of the duke of Lancastre, 618. Disapproves the intended peace with France, 629. Displeased with the king's marriage, 643. Refuses to acknowledge the duke of Lancastre's third wife, 644. Plots the destruction of the king, 682. Instigates the Londoners to petition for a repeal of the war taxes, 686. Arrested by order of the king, 692. Carried to Calais, 705. Put to death there, 706.
- Gloucestre, Affren (Humphrey), duke of, joins the erle of Derby against king Richard the second, ii. 743.
- Gommeynes, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- the lord of, defeated and taken prisoner on his way to join Edward the third, king of England, before Réynes, i. 249. Buys the erle of St. Poule of the squire that took him prisoner, and presents him to the king, 477. Accompanies the erle of Ostreaunt to the grand entertainment of king Richard the second at London, ii. 511.
- Goy la Forest, the castle of, taken by the erle of Mountfort, as duke of Bretayne, i. 89. Taken by
- Sir Walter Manny, 107. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464.
- Goodman, James, chosen leader of the atrocious Jaquery of Beauuoysin, i. 217.
- Gousalles, Sir Loys of, killed at the battle of Rosebeque, i. 739.
- Goussart, Sir Peter, of Mōdesque, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Don Peter, of Sonuyl (Seville), killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Gowre (Gaure), the county, country and lands of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Grace (Agace), Gobina, betrays his knowledge of a ford on the Somme to king Edward the third, and guides the English army over, 153.
- Graily, Sir John, bastard of the captall of Beufz (Buch), relates to Froissart many particulars relative to the affairs of England, Acquitayne, &c. ii. 612.
- Grancy, Sir Odes of (Odoart de Renty?), relieves the town of Chalons, i. 232.
- Granyll (Graville), the young lord of, knighted by Phylp of Nauer, i. 230.
- Sir Wilyam of, takes the strong castle and city of Eureux by stratagem, i. 212. Taken prisoner at the battle of Cocherell, 289.
- Gratson (Grandison), Sir Thomas, taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy at Pont-Valont, i. 426.
- Graue, the town of, exchanged for the lands of Bresde (Breda), ii. 357. Besieged by the Brabanters, 357, 377. The siege abandoned, 380.
- Grauell, Sir Guy of, taken prisoner by the French, i. 513.
- Grauelynes, the town of, surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 730. Taken by the byshoppe of Norwich, 755. Retaken by the king of France, 778.
- Grauntmont (Grammont), the town of, in Flaunders, forms an alliance with the men of Gaunt, i. 567. Turns to the interest of the erle of Flaunders, 627. Taken by the men of Gaunt, 627. Stormed and burned by the lord Dangheim, 659.
- Graütson, Sir Othes, taken prisoner by the Spaniards in the sea-fight off Rochelle, i. 442.
- Grauylle, the lord of, beheaded at Roan, i. 188.
- Gray, Sir Thomas, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), ii. 399.
- Gregory the eleventh, pope, elected at Auygnon, i. 427. Endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, 472 *et seq.* Removes to Rome, 483, 510. His death, 510.
- Grimyers (Grimstone), Sir John of, taken prisoner by the Spaniards in the sea-battle off Rochelle, i. 442. Ransomed, 474.
- Grys, Jaques le, ravishes the wife of Sir John Carongne, ii. 201. Killed by him at Parys in a duel ordained by the parliament, 204.
- Guerles (Gueldres), Raynold (Reginald), erle of, his extravagance, ii. 317. Marries the daughter of Berthault of Malynes, 320. She dies, and he

- marries Isabell, daughter of Edward the second, king of England, 320.
- Guerles (Guedres), Sir Edward of, slain at the battle with the duke of Brabant, ii. 325.
- the duke of, sends his defiance as ally of the king of England to the king of France, i. 374. Enters into an alliance with England, ii. 257. Sends an insulting defiance to the king of France, 257. Endeavours to obtain possession of the town of Graue and three castles belonging to his duchy, which had been sold to the duke of Brabant, 328. Visits England, and forms an alliance with king Richard the second, 329. Obtains possession of Graue, in exchange for the lands of Bresde (Breda), 357. Fails in obtaining assistance from England, 378. Defeats the Brabanters at the bridge of Rauesten, 379. Makes peace with the king of France and the duchess of Brabant, 411. Defeated and taken prisoner in Pruce, 419. Delivered by the great mayster of Pruce, 419. Returns to Pruce to keep his faith with his capturer, and obtains his liberty, 420.
- Guerande, the town of, taken by the forces of Sir Charles of Bloys, i. 105.
- Guesclin, Sir Bertram, and Sir Olyuer of. See Clesquy.
- Guiercy (Guerchy), in Beauvoys, taken and pillaged by the Companions, i. 267.
- Guigante (Guincamp), the town of, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 464.
- Guyen, possessions there, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Guynes, the county and towns, &c. of, ceded to king Edward the third, i. 257.
- the town of, taken by the English, i. 185.
- Guyret, Sir Wilyam, dies of fatigue before Anfryke, ii. 509.
- Guys burned by the English, i. 54.
- Guisghen (Cossington), Sir Thomas of, compelled by the insurgents under Wat Tyler to accompany them to London, i. 642.
- Guystell, the lord of, appeases an insurrection at Bruges against the French troops, ii. 198.
- Gyfford, Sir Gylbert, taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy at Pont Valant, i. 426.
- Gyngencourt, John of, a noble clerk, who had laboured for the reform and union of the church, dies at Parys, ii. 605.
- Gysors, the town of, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- under Wat Tyler to accompany them to London, i. 642.
- Halyn, Sir Josse. See Valuin.
- Ham, the seignory of. See Baynes.
- Hampton (Southampton), pillaged by the French, i. 51.
- Hanges, Sir Robert of, dies of fatigue before Anfryke, ii. 509.
- Hanon, the town of, in Heynault, taken and burned, the abbey violated, and the mynster destroyed by the garrison of St. Amande, i. 75.
- Hans, the castle of, in Champaigne, taken by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 227. Retaken by the French, 235.
- Hansane (Hausane), Sir Peter, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Hanybout (Hennebon), the town of, taken by the erle of Mountfort as duke of Bretayne, i. 88. Besieged by the lord Charles of Bloys, 101. The siege raised, 110. Taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464.
- Harecourt, the erle of, brother of Sir Godfrey, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- the erle of, beheaded at Rowan (Rouen), i. 188.
- the young erle of, knighted by Philyp of Nauer, i. 230. Makes peace with the duke of Normandy, 234. Marries the daughter of the duke of Burbon, 234. Goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264. Returns to France, 363.
- Sir Godfrey of, banished from France, i. 135. Arrives in England, 144. Accompanies the king of England in an expedition into Normandy, 145. Created one of the marshals of his army, 146. Defeats a body of men from Amyense on their way to join the king of France, 151. Carries on the war in Normandy in the name of the king of Nauer, 207. Defeated and slain at the battle of Coutances, 210.
- Haren, Sir Martyn, escapes from the battle of Juberoth with the rich bassenet of the king of Castyle, ii. 107. Rejoins the king at St. Yrayne (Santarem), 109.
- Harflewe (Barfleure), the town of, in Normandy, taken and pillaged, and the inhabitants carried away by the English, i. 146.
- Harlston, Sir John, appointed governor of Chierbourge, i. 488. Defeats a body of French troops under Sir Wilyam of Bordes, who is taken prisoner, i. 489.
- Harpe (Harpedon), Sir Hughe, taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471.
- Harseley, Guylliam, appointed physician to Charles the sixth, king of France, during his derangement, ii. 576. Cures him, 586. Dies at Laon, 587. His character, 587.
- Harselles, Raffie of, chosen one of the commanders of the White-hattes of Gaunt, i. 566. Defeated and slain in an engagement with the erle of Flaunders, 629.

## H.

- Haconde or Hacton (Hawkwood), Sir John, an English commander, achieves numerous deeds of arms, and enters into the service of pope Urbane, i. 552. Defeats Syluester Bude and takes him prisoner, 552. Invited by the erle of Armyuake to join him in his wars in Lombardy, ii. 527.
- Hales, Sir Stephyn of, compelled by the insurgents

- Harselles, the lord of, slain at Gaunt, i. 790.
- Hay, Sir Henry, taken prisoner by the French before Soubise, i. 452.
- Helchyer, the town of. See Seclnye.
- Helcon (Holton), Sir Thomas, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 399.
- Helly, Sir Jaques of, taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, ii. 670. Sent to France on his parole, with information of the defeat of the army of John of Burgoyne, 673. Receives rich presents from the duke of Berrey, 675. Returns to Turkey, and is liberated by Lamorabaquy with presents, 676. Goes to France, 682.
- Helman, Sir Wilyam, sent to the Tower of London on a charge of having sold Bourbourc and Grauelynes to the French, i. 779.
- Hemon, Sir Wilyam, taken prisoner by the English at Bersat, i. 529.
- Hennebreque (Havenkerque), Sir Loys of, slain at the battle of Cocherell, i. 289.
- Henry the fourth, king of England, [*for previous particulars of this prince, see Derby, Henry erle of, and Lancastrre, the duke of*], crowned at Westminster with great ceremony, after having received the resignation of king Richard the second, ii. 753. Refuses to cause him to be put to death, 758, 768. In danger of being murdered by the erles of Huntingdon and Salisbury, 759.
- the bastard (of Transtamare), enters Castyle with a large army to dethrone his brother Don Peter, i. 309. Acknowledged and crowned king of Castyle by the Spaniards, 310. Takes measures to oppose Don Peter and the prince of Wales, 317. His resolute letter to the prince of Wales, 329. Defeated at the battle of Nauaret, 338. Escapes to Aragon, 345. Makes war on the prince of Wales in Aquitayne, 346. Makes war on Don Peter, assisted by the king of Aragon, 352. Defeats and takes prisoner Don Peter near Montiel, 354. Kills him in a scuffle, 356. Obtains the submission of Castyle, 356. Enters into an alliance with the king of France, 438. Courteously receives the erle of Pembroke and the other English prisoners taken in the sea battle off Rochelle, 446. Makes war on the king of Nauer, 487. Concludes a peace with him, 536. His death, 536.
- prince of Galyce, marries the daughter of the duke of Lancastrre, ii. 424. Crowned kyng of Castyle, 524.
- king of Hungary, sends ambassadours to Charles the sixth, king of France, for assistance against the Turks under Lamorabaquy (Bajazet), ii. 636. Crosses the Danube with a large army, accompanied by John of Burgoyne and his forces, 646. Takes the town of Coniecte by storm, 647. Besieges Nycopoly, 648. Defeated by Lamorabaquy, 669. Escapes after the battle with difficulty, 671. Detains the presents sent by the king of France to Lamorabaquy, 677. Allows them to be forwarded, 682.
- Herciers, John Radigo of, slain at the battle of Jurboroth, ii. 153.
- Here (Erin), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Hereel, the castle of, taken by the king of Nauer, i. 223.
- Hewet, Sir Water, killed in a skirmish in Bretayne, i. 471.
- Heynault, the country of, invaded and pillaged by the French, i. 59, 65. In danger of being pillaged by the Bretons belonging to the army of Charles the sixth, king of France, 742.
- the lord Antoyngne of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nauaret, i. 341.
- Sir John of, offers his assistance to Isabell, queen of Edward the second, king of England, i. 8. Engages a large body of nobles and others in her cause, and with them escorts her to England, 11. Receives large presents, and quits England, 14. Returns to England with a numerous force on the invitation of king Edward the third, and assists him in the expedition against the Scots, 16. Quits England, 26. Counsels Edward the third to make war on France, 42. His territories invaded and devastated by the army of Philyp of Valoys, king of France, 60, 65. Appointed governor of Holande and Zelande during the absence of the erle his brother in England, 63. Quits the allegiance of England for that of France, 139. Escapes with John, king of France, and four barons, after the battle of Cressy, 159.
- Guylлаume erle of, entertains queen Isabell of England and her son at Valencyennes, i. 8. His daughter Philyppe married to Edward the third, king of England, 27. His death, 44.
- Wilyam erle of, son of the above, sends his defiance to the king of France, i. 61. Takes the town of Aubenton, &c. 62. Visits England, 63. Almayne (Germany), 69. Returns to Heynault, 70. Assembles a large army to raise the siege of Thyne Leuesque, 70. Burns the town of Seclnye, &c. 75. Takes the town of St. Amande, 81. Takes Dautryche (Utrecht), 138. Slain in Frieze (Friesland), 139.
- Wilyam erle of, married to the youngest daughter of Henry, duke of Lancastrre, i. 273.
- Wilyam of, marries the daughter of the duke of Burgoyne, i. 794.
- the erle of. See Ostreuaunt, the erle of.
- Margaret duchess of. See Brabant, the duchess of.
- Hollande, Sir John of, kills the lord Richarde Stafforde, ii. 25. Married to Phyltp, daughter of the duke of Lancastrre, 157. Appointed constable of the expedition under the duke of Lancastrre against Castyle, 157. Engages in a deed of arms with Sir Raynolde du Roy, 253. [*For subsequent particulars of this nobleman, see Huntingdon, John erle of.*]
- the lord Thomas, his daughter by the princess of Wales married to the erle of Mountfort (duke of Bretayne), i. 306.

Horologe, a curious, removed from the town of Courtrey by order of the duke of Burgoyne, and set up in Dyon, in Burgoyne, i. 745.

Hostages sent to England for John, king of France, i. 262.

House, Sir Baudrin de la, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.

Houssage, Sir Saymon (Sir Simon Whitaker), slain in the sea-fight off Rochelle, i. 442.

Hundrey (de la Hourdrie), Sir Robert and Sir Thomas, killed by the townsmen of Ipre, i. 567.

Huntyngdon, the erle of, [*for previous particulars of this personage, see Daugle, Sir Guychart*], his creation, i. 483. Appointed tutor to king Richard the second, 483. His death, 584, 655.

— John erle of, [*for previous particulars of this personage, see Hollande, Sir John*], promises allegiance to king Henry the fourth, ii. 754. Proclaims an entertainment at Oxford, with the view of murdering him, 759. Slain at Sussetour (Cirencester), 761.

## I.

Innocent the sixth, pope, elected at Auygnon, i. 183.

Endeavours to make a peace between the kings of France and England and the kings of France and Nauer, 192. Mediates a truce after the battle of Poycters between France and England, 211; and a treaty for the enlargement of David, king of Scots, 211. Makes a treaty with and largely rewards Sir Arnolde Canoll, who had pillaged Pronence, 214. Orders a crusade to be preached against the Companions, 271. His death, 273.

Insurrection in England against king Richard the second under Wat Tyler, &c. i. 641; and again against him in favour of the duke of Lancaster, ii. 737.

— in France against Charles the sixth, i. 663, 664, 687, 730.

— in Flaunders against the erle by the men of Gaunt and of other towns, i. 556 *et seq.*

Interview between the king of Portyngale and the duke of Lancaster, ii. 181.

— between the kings of France and England at Arde, ii. 665.

Ipre, Sir John of, perishes in the expedition against Turkey, ii. 693.

— or Iper (Ypres), the town of. See Yper.

Ireland, king Richard the second goes there at the head of a large army, ii. 608. The state of the country, and manners, and mode of warfare of the natives in Froissart's time, 619. Four of the kings submit themselves to Richard the second, 621.

— the duke of, [*for previous particulars of this nobleman, see Oxenforde (Oxford), the erle of*], his creation, ii. 200. Influences king Richard the second to liberate John of Bretayne, 215. Increases the differences between the king and his uncles, 243. Incurs the hatred of the people of England, 274. Obtains a divorce from his wife, the

lady Isabell de Coucy, and marries one of the attendants on the queen, 274. Endeavours to counteract the measures of the commissioners of accounts and the new council of state, 284. Is appointed by the king his lieutenant, 285. Marches from Bristowe towards London, 288. Flies from the head of his army on its being attacked by the Londoners under the duke of Gloucester, and quits the kingdom, 292. Is ordered to leave Dordrest (Dordrecht), 293. Invited to France, 353. Ordered from thence, 439. Retires to a castle near Lonnagne, 439.

Ireland, the duchess of, wife of the above, on being divorced from her husband, is received by his mother, ii. 283. Accompanies the duke of Lancaster to Calais, to see her father the lord Coucy, 555.

Isabell, daughter of Philip le Beaw, king of France, and queen to Edward the second of England, declared ineligible to the crown of France, i. 4. Incurs the hatred of Sir Hewe Spencer, 4. Flies from England with her son to her brother, Charles the fourth of France, and solicits his advice and assistance, 5. Commanded to quit France, 7. Goes to Heynault, 8. Lands in England with a considerable force, and is joined by the English barons, 10. Takes her husband prisoner at Bristol, 12. Confines him in Barkeley castle, 12. Enters London amidst great rejoicings, 13. Obtains the coronation of her son, Edward the third, 14. Suspected of being pregnant by Sir Roger Mortymer, 32. Committed to prison by order of the council, 32. Dies in London, 274.

— daughter of Edward the third, king of England, betrothed to the erle of Flaunders, i. 169.

— the lady, of Bauier (Bavaria), married to Charles the sixth, king of France, ii. 15. Makes her public entry into Parys, 429.

— daughter of Charles the sixth, betrothed to Richard the second, king of England, ii. 643. Delivered to him by king Charles at Arde (Ardres), 666. Married to him at Calais, 666.

Isles, Sir Henry of the, and John his brother, taken prisoner by the English at Lyques, i. 477.

## J.

Jafrey (Jaffre), the town and mynster of, taken and burned by the chaon Robersarde, i. 675.

James, St. of Compostella, in Galyce, the town of, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster, ii. 165.

James, king of Cypre, interests himself to obtain the liberation of John of Burgoyne and his companions, who were prisoners in Turkey, ii. 693.

— king of Mallorques (Majorca), applies to the prince of Wales for his assistance against the king of Aragon, i. 323. Accompanies the prince and Don Peter into Castyle, 328. Falls sick, and is left behind by the prince of Wales on his quitting Spayne, 347. Taken prisoner there by king Henry of Castyle, 352. Ransomed by his wife,

- the queen of Naples, and his sister, 436. Makes war on the king of Aragon, 437. Dies in the Vale of Sorey (Soria), 437.
- James, St. the great prior of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nauaret, i. 342.
- Jaquery, the, an atrocious body of men under this appellation arise in Beauvoysin, i. 216. Their dreadful outrages, 216, &c. A large number of them destroyed by the king of Nauer, 217. Thousands of them slain at Meaulty by the erle of Foiz and the captall of Buz (Buch), 218.
- Jagues, St. the great master of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- in Galyce, the great master of, slain at Valewyde (Valverde), ii. 155.
- Jaquet, brother of Peter, king of Cypre, murders him in his bed, ii. 123. Taken prisoner by the Genoouys, 123. Crowned king of Cypre, 124.
- Jaylle, Sir Tristram de la, taken prisoner by the garison of Nantes, i. 611.
- Joel (Jewell), Sir John, slain, ii. 81.
- Johan, sister of Edward the third, king of England, married to David the second, king of Scotland, i. 50.
- John, son of the erle of Cambridge, marries the lady Beatrice, daughter of the king of Portyngale, i. 665. Separated from her, 682. Returns to England with his father, 682.
- (son of Philip of Valoys), king of France [*for previous particulars of this prince, see Normandy, John duke of*], his coronation, i. 182. Makes his public entry into Parys, 182. Prevents a combat between the duke of Lancaster and the duke of Boesme (Brunswick), 183. Concludes a truce with Edward the third, king of England, 185. Takes possession of the lands of the king of Nauer in Normandy, 185. Issues a gold coin, called Florence of the lambe, 185. Gives the duchy of Normandy to his eldest son, 186. Obtains a large grant of taxes from his parliament to carry on the wars, 187. Arrests the king of Nauer and others, 188. Marches an army against the duke of Lancaster, 189. Collects an army to oppose the prince of Wales, 192. Defeated and taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, 202. Surrenders to the prince of Wales, 203. Embarked for England, 210. Rides through London, 210. Confined in Wyndsore castle, 211. Enters into a treaty with the king of England and the prince of Wales, 238. The French council refuse to ratify it, 238. Sent to the Tower of London, 243. Obtains his liberty, and returns to France, 263. Magnificently entertained at Parys, 265. Visits the pope at Auygn, 273. Puts on the cross, 275. Visits Edward the third in England, 278. His death, 280. Buried at St. Denyce, 283.
- Dou, son of Henry of Transtamare, crowned king of Castyle, i. 536. Is defied by the king of Portyngale, 637. Takes the field against the king of Portyngale and the erle of Cambridge, 680. Makes peace with the king of Portyngale, 680. Marries his daughter, 682. Sends his defiance to the new king of Portyngale, and raises an army to make war on him, ii. 47, 91. Besieges Lysbone, 91, 144. Applies to the king of France for assistance, 91. Abandons the siege of Lysbone, 93, 145. Takes the field against the king of Portyngale, 96. Defeated with great slaughter at the battle of Juberoth, 103. Enters into a truce with the king of Portyngale, 109. Is joined at Burgis by three hundred French knights, &c. 153. Applies to France for assistance against the king of Portyngale and the duke of Lancaster, 173. Grants permission to the duke of Lancaster to send his men into Castyle to recruit their health, 305. Regains possession of Galyce after the departure of the duke of Lancaster, 351. Sends ambassadours to the duke of Lancaster, to demand his daughter for his son Henry, 367. Makes peace with the duke, 421. Marries his son to the lady Katherine of Lancaster, 424. His death, 523.
- John, Mayster Denyce (grand master of Avis), declared king of Portyngale, i. 682, ii. 159. Crowned 46, 146. Sends ambassadours to England to solicit the alliance of Richard the second, 47, 89. Raises an army to make war on the king of Castyle, 97. Defeats him at the battle of Juberoth, 103. Enters into a truce with him, 109. Enters Lysbone in triumph, 135. Sends ambassadours to solicit the assistance of the duke of Lancaster and his brother, 136. His character, 155. Receives favourable answers from England, 156. Writes friendly letters to the duke of Lancaster on his arrival in Galyce, 173. Sends presents of mules to the duke and duchess and her daughters, 178. Has an interview with the duke, 181. Marries the lady Philip, daughter of the duke of Lancaster, 224. Takes the field against the king of Castyle, 263. Burns the town of St. Yrayne, 264. Takes Feroul, 265. Forms a junction with the duke of Lancaster, 297. Dismisses his army, 306.
- frere of Roche tayllade, foretels the miseries of France, i. 252. Delivers an apologue before the cardynalls concerning the papacy, ii. 131.
- St. Dangle or Athenys (St. Jean d'Angely), the town of, taken from the English by the duke of Normandy, i. 141. Surrenders to the erle of Derby, 163. Surrenders to the French, 182. Taken again by the French, 452.
- John's, St. (Perth), the town of, burned by Richard the second, king of England, ii. 28.
- Hospital in London, belonging to the knights of Rhodes, burned by the insurgents under Wat Tyler, i. 645.
- (i.e. Templars), the lord (the prior) of, beheaded by Wat Tyler in the Tower of London, i. 646.
- in Portyngale, the great priour of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Joigny, the erle of, taken prisoner by the prince of Wales, i. 193. Taken prisoner at the battle of Aloy, i. 300.



- Joinville, the fort of. See Genuille.
- Jonell (Jewell), Sir John, joins the king of Nauer, i. 282. Slain at the battle of Cocherell, in Normandy, 289.
- Josselyn, the castle of, delivered to the duke of Bretayne in part ransom of Sir Olyver of Clysston, whom he had treacherously arrested, ii. 255.
- Jouor, Juye (Ives), counsels the Fresons how to resist the invasion of the duke of Banier, ii. 661. Slain, 662.
- Jugowé (Jugon), the town of, taken by the lord Charles of Bloys through treachery, i. 110. Retaken by the lord John of Mountfort, 303. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464. Delivered up to the duke of Bretayne in ransom of Sir Olyver Clysston, whom he had treacherously arrested, ii. 255.
- Jouy, the erle of, burned to death by accident at a masked dance at Parys, ii. 590.
- Jußeroth (Aljubarota), the battle of, between John, king of Castyle, and John, king of Portygale, ii. 103-150. A great battle fought there by Charlemagne, who founds an abbey of black monks on the spot, 151.
- Julyan, St. Sir Loys of, taken prisoner by the English at the bridge of St. Lussac, i. 404. Takes the town of Chasteleraut, 407.
- Julyers, Willyam count of, becomes, by marriage, duke of Guerles, ii. 328.
- the duke of, sends his defiance, as an ally of the king of England, to the king of France, i. 574. Defeats the duke of Brabant with great slaughter, ii. 325. Makes his peace with the emperor, 326. Makes his submission to the king of France, 406. Mediates peace between the duke of Guerles and the king of France, 409.
- the lady Isabell of, married to the lord Eustace Dambretycourt, i. 233.
- Justs. See Deeds of arms.
- K.
- Keut, the erle of, escapes with Isabell, queen of Edward the second of England, into France, i. 5. Counsels king Edward the third in his government, 15. Beheaded through the jealousy of Sir Robert Mortymer, 32.
- the erle of, conspires with his uncle, the erle of Huntingdon, to murder king Henry the fourth, ii. 759. Slain at Suscettour (Cirencester), 761.
- Kitell, Sir Hugh. See Tytiell.
- Knight, an English, his rash adventure before Parys, i. 421.
- Knights of the Garter, the order of the, instituted at Wyndsores by king Edward the third, i. 120.
- Hare, why so called, i. 57.
- Knowles, Sir Robert. See Canoll.
- Koucke (Concarneau), the town of, stormed and taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 465.
- L.
- Lacke, Le, the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Laige (Leg), John, a sergeaunt at armes, murdered in the Tower by Wat Tyler's mob, i. 646.
- Lambe, Florence of the, a French coin so called, first issued, i. 185.
- Lamorabiquy (Amurath), lord of Turkey, his character and power, ii. 124. Purposes to conquer Hungary, 126. Sends ambassadors with a sack of grain, as a similitude of his army, to demand of the erle of Lazaran a passage over his territories, 126. Sends an army of sixty thousand men against him, 128.
- (Bajazet), the great Turk, raises a large army to oppose the king of Hungary and John of Burgoyne, who had invaded Turkey, ii. 652. Marches for Nycopoly, 653. Defeats the combined Christian armies with great slaughter, 669. Puts his prisoners, with very few exceptions, to death, 671. A singular instance of his justice, 698. His speech to John of Burgoyne on releasing him and his other prisoners, 698.
- Lanulæ (Milhaud), the castle of, in Rouergue, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 434.
- Lanache (Lingnach), the lord of, of Bierre, taken prisoner by the Portuguese at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 103. Killed, 104.
- Lancastre, Thomas erle of, beheaded through the enmity of Sir Hewe Spencer, i. 5.
- Henry erle of, brother of the above, joins the party of queen Isabell of England with reinforcements against king Edward the second and the Spencers, i. 10. Refuses to attend the parliament, 28. Differences adjusted between him and the king, 28.
- the duke of, son of the above, goes to Parys to meet the duke of Boesme (Brunswick) in single combat, 183. Arrives in Constantyne (the Coutantin), to assist Philyp of Nauer against John, king of France, i. 189. Takes the town of Vernueyll, 189. Besieges Rennes, 212. Leads a large army into Picardy, 243. Persuades the king of England to make peace with the duke of Normandy, 255. Dies, 273.
- John of Gaunt, duke of, his birth, i. 73. Married to the eldest daughter of Henry, duke of Lancastre, 273. Embarks with troops to serve under his brother, the prince of Wales, in Spayne, 323. Leads a large army into France, 386. Overruns the country between Calais and Harflewé (Barfleur), 399. Returns to England, 400. Appointed governor of Aquitayne by the prince of Wales, 428. Takes Mout Paon, 431. Marries the lady Constance, daughter of Don Peter of Castyle, 437. Arrives at Calais with a large army, 468. Marches through France to Bourdeaux, 468 *et seq.* Enters into a truce with the French, and returns to England, 474. Appointed regent of England during the minority of king Richard the second,

483. Heads an army into Bretayne, 488. Besieges St. Malo, 488. Lands there with a large army from England, 518. Abandons the siege, 527. Learns the particulars of the death of king Henry of Castyle and the coronation of king John from a herald, 540. Sent to treat with the Scots, 639. Makes a truce with them, 652. Refused admission into Berwyke castle, 652. Returns into Scotland with the erle of Douglas, 653. Sent for by king Richard, 654. Quarrels with the erle of Northumberland, 655. Appeased by the king, 656. Offended at the intended marriage of lord Wyllyam of Heynault, and sends messengers there to the duke of Bauier, 794. Commands an army against the Scots, ii. 23. Obtains an army to make war on Castyle, 156. Embarks for Portyngale, 157. Forces the French to raise the blockade of Brest, 160. Arrives at Coulongne (Corunna), 161. Takes the town of St. James of Compostella and several others in Galyce, 164 *et seq.* Sends presents of falcons and greyhounds to the king of Portyngale, 178. Has an interview with him, 181. Agrees to give him his daughter Phylip in marriage, 182. Makes war on Aragon, 205. Marries his daughter, the lady Phylip, to the king of Portyngale, 224. Takes the town of Besanecs, 225 *et seq.* Suffers greatly from the heat of the climate, 296. Forms a junction with the king of Portyngale, 297. Passes the Derne (Duero), 298. Dispirited by the sickness of himself and army, 300. Disbands his army, 302. Obtains permission from the king of Castyle for them to recruit their health in his towns, 305. Quits Galyce and returns to Bayon, 314, 352. Applies to England for fresh assistance, 352. Receives a proposal of marriage for his daughter from the duke of Berrey, 360. Betroths his daughter Katheryne to the prince of Spayne, 414. Makes peace with the king of Castyle, 421. Marries his daughter to the prince of Galyce, 424. Goes to France to endeavour to negotiate a peace, 555, 598. Receives the duchy of Aquitayne as a gift from king Richard the second and his council, 607. Embarks for Aquitayne, 608. Dispossessed of the duchy of Aquitayne by the king, in consequence of the remonstrances of the townes of Aquitayne against the gift, 624. Marries his concubine, 644. His issue by her before marriage, 644. Withdraws from court, 690. Offended with king Richard for the murder of the duke of Glocestre, 707. Makes peace with him, 708. His death, 728.
- Lancastre, Henry of, bastard son of the above, joins the expedition fitted out by the Genouoys against Barbary, ii. 477.
- Constance duchess of, wife of John of Gaunt, accompanies with her daughters the duke to Portyngale, ii. 137. Visits the king and queen of Portyngale, 227. Takes her daughter to Castyle, and betroths her to the prince of Galyce, 424.
- Finds the bones of her father, Don Peter, and has them buried at Ciuyll, 424.
- Lancastre, the duke of, son of John of Gaunt [*for previous particulars of this prince, see Derby, Henry erle of*] goes into mourning at Parys for his father's death, ii. 728. His hereditary possessions seized on the death of his father by king Richard the second, 729. His marriage in France with the lady Mary of Berrey prevented by the interference of king Richard, 731. Receives a request by the archbysshope of Caunterbury from the people of London to return to England, 738. Quits the court of France, and visits the duke of Bretayne, 740. Lands in England with a large body of men, 741. Welcomed by the mayor and chief citizens of London, 741. Arrives in London, 742. Assumes the sovereignty at the desire of the Londoners, 742. Sends back the troops of the duke of Bretayne who had accompanied him to England, and marches against the king to Bristowe, 742. Arrives at Plynt castle, takes the king prisoner there, and conducts him to London, 746. Imputes bastardy to him, 751. Convoques an assembly of the nobility and others, and accompanies them to the Tower, to receive the king's resignation of the crown, 751. Holds a parliament and claims the crown, 752. Crowned as Henry the fourth, king of England—*which see.*
- Laudas, the lord of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- the town of, taken and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 75.
- Landrechus (Laudrecy), pillaged by the Almaynes (Germans) of Male Mayson, i. 68.
- Lane, Sir Raymonde of, visits Froissart at his inn at Tourney, i. 60.
- Langay (Langley), Sir John, taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy in the Koucke (Concarneau), i. 465.
- Langon (Langon), the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125. Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, 476.
- Languedoc, the country of, ceded by Charles the sixth, king of France, to the crown of England in perpetuity, ii. 602.
- Langurant, the lord of, taken prisoner by the French at the battle of Yuret, i. 494. Turns to the French interest, 496. Evinces great bravery at the storming of Duras, 499. Slain near Cadyllhatte, 537.
- Lantonne, Sir John, slain in the sea battle off Rochelle, i. 442.
- Laon, the city of, six of its principal burgeses beheaded, i. 226.
- the bysshoppe of, escapes from the city to the king of Nauer, i. 226.
- Laquire, the town of. *See* Quaxre.
- Late-comers, numerous bands of brigands so denominated, who with the Companions commit great ravages in France during the peace with England, i. 266 *et seq.*
- Laube (Lambe), John, appointed chamberlain to

- Yuan of Wales, i. 519. Assassinate him before Mortayne, 520.
- Launoy, John, one of the commanders of the men of Gaunt, slain at the church of Nieule, i. 630.
- Layle (Lisle), the erle of, makes war in Gascone for the king of France, i. 123. His territories invaded by the erle of Derby, 125. Besieges Auberoche, 127. Taken prisoner by the erle of Derby, 129. His homage for certain lands in France transferred to Edward the third, king of England, 256.
- Lazaran, the erle of, by a similitude of two thousand capous, expresses his refusal to allow Lamorabauy (Amurat), a passage through his territories, ii. 127. Makes preparations to resist the Turks, 127. Destroys thirty thousand of them, 128.
- Le dos Julian (Le-dos Jullian), the castle of, taken by the French under Sir Gaultier de Pasclac and razed, ii. 120.
- Leger, St., the fortress of, taken by the English under the lord Neuyll, i. 525.
- the lord of, mortally wounded by the English near Comynes, and dies at Lysle, i. 763.
- Leon, Sir Henry of, taken prisoner before Vannes, i. 117. Liberated by king Edward the third, 121. Dies at Angyers, 121.
- Sir Espayne, accompanies Froissart to Bierne, and relates to him many particulars respecting the wars in Guyen, &c. ii. 51.
- Lescu, the lord de, taken prisoner by the English at Bergerath, i. 124.
- Lescume, Sir Peter, slain before St. Malo, i. 519.
- Lesey (Lacy), Sir Stephyn, taken prisoner by the duke of Normandy at Athenys, i. 141.
- Lespere, the lord, taken prisoner by the Spaniards in his way from Burdeaux to England, i. 493.
- Lespres, the lord of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, i. 106.
- Letters patent of homage of king Edward the third, as duke of Guyen, to Philyp of Valoys, king of France, i. 35.
- or charters of the peace before Chartres, between Edward the third, and John, king of France, i. 256, 359.
- Letter of Edward the third, king of England, into Aquitayne, requiring the barons, &c. to retain their allegiance to him, i. 406.
- the prince of Wales to the lord Dalbreth, i. 324.
- the lord Dalbreth, in answer to the above, i. 324.
- king Henry of Castyle to Edward, prince of Wales, i. 329.
- the prince of Wales, in answer to the above, i. 330.
- the commissioners of Charles the sixth, king of France, to Philyp Dartuell, i. 711.
- Philyp Dartuell, in answer to the above, i. 712.
- Letter of Philyp Dartuell to the prouost and citizens of Tourney, i. 714.
- Leufe (del Ovo), the castle of, set by enchantment in the sea, and only to be won by the power of nigromancy, i. 671.
- Leve, la, the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Leyria, the town of. See Tuy.
- Lige, the men of, refuse to receive the legate sent into Almayne (Germany), by pope Boniface, and threaten to drown his messengers, ii. 765.
- the bysshope of, endeavours to make peace between the erle of Flaunders and the bysshope of Norwich, i. 764.
- Lignac, Sir Helyon of, sent to treat with the duke of Lancastre for the marriage of his daughter to the duke of Berrey, ii. 360.
- Sir William of, takes Sir Thomas Phelton prisoner at the battle of Yuret, i. 494. Liberates him on ransom, 496. Storms the castle of the Egle (L'Aigle), ii. 4. Accompanies the duke of Burbone to the assistance of the king of Castyle, 215. Arrives at Burgus, 238. Besieges the castle of Vandachore (Ventadour), 334.
- Line (Luna), the cardynall de la, elected pope at Auygnon under the title of Benedict, ii. 604.
- Linrenghen, Sir Gyllberte of, goes to Turkey to negotiate the liberation of John of Burgoyne and the other French prisoners in the hands of the Turks, ii. 695. Dies on his return, 696.
- Linyer, the lord of, taken prisoner by the duke of Guerles at the battle of Rauesten, ii. 381. Hanged, 381.
- Lobeme (Limonia), the town of, taken by the erle of Sauoy, ii. 124.
- Loe, la, the march of, burned by the Flemings, i. 172.
- Loheac, the lord of, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- London, the bysshop of, appointed to command an expedition against Spayne, &c. i. 753.
- Londoners, the, entertain queen Isabell of England after she had taken her husband, Edward the second, prisoner, i. 13. Make great rejoicings for the victory of the prince of Wales in Spayne, 345. Dissatisfied with king Richard and his council, apply to the duke of Glocestre to take upon him the government of the realm, ii. 275. Wait upon the king at Wyndstore, to lay their grievances before him, and to demand redress, 276. Prevail upon the king to fix a day to examine into the conduct of those who had had the management of the finances, 277. Defeat the duke of Ireland and the king's forces near Oxford, 291. Make great presents to Isabell, queen of Richard the second, on her arrival in London, 667. Wait upon the king, at the instigation of the duke of Glocestre, to demand the repeal of the taxes which had been imposed to carry on the war with France, 685. Wait on the king, and request him not to give up Calais, 687. Take part with the erle of Derby in

- his quarrel with the erle marshall, 715. Rise in favour of the erle of Derby (duke of Lancaster) against Richard the second, 737. Send the archebysshoppe of Canterbury to France to bring back the erle of Derby, 737. Welcome his arrival with the mayor at their head, and furnish him with an army against the king, 742. Adopt proceedings against the king and counsellors, 748 *et seq.*
- Longebte (Langley), Sir Rafe, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), ii. 399.
- Louall, Sir Willyam of, takes the castle of Mont Paon, i. 429. Surrenders it to the duke of Lancaster, 431.
- Lorayne, the duke of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- Lornich (Lorvich), the town of, taken and burned by the Spaniards, i. 530.
- Lorrys, Sir Launcelotte of, slain by Sir John Coplande in a just at Chierbourge, i. 545.
- Louyang, Sir Nicolas, governor of Abyulle, taken prisoner by Sir Hewe of Chastillon, i. 368. Takes prisoner Sir Hewe of Chastillon, 400.
- Lourde, the town and castle of, stormed and pillaged by the duke of Anjou, i. 473. The town besieged by him, ii. 59. Taken, 64; and burned, 65. — the garrison of, take several places in France, ii. 51 *et seq.*
- Lourg (Laurche), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Louyers, the town of, taken and pillaged by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- Lowe, St., the town of, taken and pillaged by king Edward the third, i. 148.
- Loyes of Valoys, Sir, married by proxy to Margaret, daughter of the king of Hungary, ii. 10. — of Spayne, Sir, raises the siege of Hanyboubt (Hennebon), i. 104. Takes the town of Dynant, &c. 105. Defeated at Camperle (Quimperleè), by Sir Walter Manny, 106. Demands of Sir Charles of Bloys two knights taken prisoners, in order to behead them, 109. Engages Sir Robert D'Arthoys at sea, 113. Lands at Guerande, 114.
- Lucheu, the town of, burned by the duke of Lancaster, i. 399.
- Lusenbourge, St. Peter of, cardynall, dies, and his body works miracles, ii. 331.
- Lusignan, the town of, in Poyetou, burned by the erle of Derby, i. 163. Surrenders to the Bretons under Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 461.
- Lusseborne, Sir John, and all his family, taken prisoner by the French in the castle of Varley, ii. 23.
- Luzat (Lussac), the town and castle of, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 446.
- Luzemont, the castle of, in Bretayne, stormed by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 464.
- Lybourne, the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 127.
- Lycelle (Cette), the town of, taken and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 75.
- Lyerbon (Lilburn), Sir John, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), ii. 399.
- Lyeu, Saynt Amande, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Lymoges, the city and castle of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. Surrenders to the duke of Berrey, i. 419. Taken by storm by the prince of Wales, the inhabitants massacred, and the town burned, i. 423. — the erle of, his homage for certain lands in France transferred to the crown of England, i. 256.
- Lymosyn, the county of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. — Sir Raymonde, marshall of the king of Castyle, sent by him to appease the inhabitants of St. Yrayne (Santarem), ii. 92. Killed at the battle of Juberoth, 107.
- Lynde, the town of, besieged by the duke of Anjou, i. 414. Delivered by the captall of Buz (Buch), 415.
- Lyne, Sir Mores (Sir Maubrun de Limieres), taken prisoner by the French before Soubise, i. 452. Dies at Noye, in Spayne, ii. 306.
- Lynsay, Sir James, takes prisoner Sir Mathew Redman after the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 401. Taken prisoner by the bysshop of Durham, 402. — Sir Willyam of, with the Scots under his command, defeats the English under Sir Thomas Mosegrauce, i. 507.
- Lyon, king of Armony (Leo, king of Armenia), arrives in France after losing his kingdom, ii. 122. Relates particulars of the wars of the Turks, 124. Arrives in England, and endeavours to negociate a peace with France, 194. — Sir Guy of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301. — the lord of, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301. — John, murders a man for the erle of Flaunders, i. 555. Appointed by the erle to the command of his navy, 553. Offends the erle, who dispossesses him of his command, 554. In resentment against the erle, revives a faction in Gaunt, called the White-hattes, 556. Instigates the men of Gaunt to demand of the erle the preservation of their franchises, 557. Pillages and burns the castle of Andrehen, belonging to the erle, 563. Marches against Bruges, 563. Dies at Ardenbourge, 566. — Richard, a rich merchant of London, beheaded by Wat Tyler, i. 645.
- Lys, the river, its course attempted to be turned from Gaunt by the men of Bruges, i. 555.
- Lysbon or Luxbone (Lisbon), the city of, besieged by the king of Castyle, ii. 47, 90, 144. The siege abandoned, 94, 145.

Lysle, Sir Willyam, relates to Froissart many particulars relative to the affairs of England, &c. ii. 610, 612.

Lystre, Guillyam, of Stafford, heads a body of insurgents in the rebellion under Wat Tyler, i. 648.

## M.

Mac Murrough, Arthur, king of Lyuster. See Arthur Mackemur.

Madalyn (Magdalen), a priest, persuaded by the erle of Huntynghon and other conspirators against Henry the fourth, king of England, to personate Richard the second, ii. 759.

Mahewe (Matthews), Gylbert, and his brothers, plot the disgrace of John Lyon with the erle of Flaunders, i. 553. Gylbert obtains John Lyon's office, 555. They accompany the bayly of Gaunt, who is killed, in an attempt to arrest John Lyon, 560. Escape to the erle of Flaunders, 560. Their houses pillaged, 561.

Makyrell (Maxwell), Sir John, takes Sir Rafe Percy prisoner at the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 398.

Malestroyt, the lord of, slain at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.

——— Sir Henry of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.

Maleuall, Sir Loyes of, turns to the French interest, i. 400.

Malo, St., seven Spanish ships burned in the hauyn by the erle of Salisbury, i. 463. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464. Besieged by the duke of Lancastre, 488, 519, 522. The siege abandoned, 527. Taken by Sir Olyuer of Clyson, ii. 358.

Maluysin, the castle of, taken by the duke of Aniou, ii. 59. Is given to the erle of Foiz, 67.

Malygues (Mechlin), Berthault of, receives proposals of marriage for his daughter from the duke of Guerles, ii. 319. Marries her to the duke on certain conditions, 320.

Mandurant, the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.

Manners of the English and Gascons in the time of Froissart, ii. 121.

Manny, Sir Gyles of, brother of Sir Walter, killed before Cambrai, i. 60.

——— the lord of, the manner of his death and discovery of his tomb by his son, Sir Walter Manny, i. 132, who causes the body to be re-interred at Valenciennes, 133.

——— Sir Olyuer of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301. Takes the king of Nauer prisoner, 330. Marries, 475.

——— Sir Walter, makes the first incursion under Edward the third, king of England, into France, i. 50. Sent with an English force into Breтайne to the assistance of the countess of Mountfort, 100. Arrives at Hanybont (Hennebon), 103. Retakes the castle of Conquest, 105. Defeats Sir Loys of Spayne at Camperle (Quimperleè), 106. Takes the castle of Goney la Forest (Goy la

Foret), 108. Rescues two knights from being put to death by Sir Loyes of Spayne, 109. Accompanies the erle of Derby into Gascone, 122. Projects the surprise of the French army besieging Auberoche, 128. Finds the sepulchre of his father at Ryoil, 132. Harasses the French before Aguyllon, 143. Obtains a safe-conduct from Aguyllon to join king Edward at Calais, 162. Taken prisoner, and brought to the French king at Parys, who intends to put him to death, but is dissuaded by the duke of Normandy, 162. Dismissed with presents, 162. Arrives at Calais, and king Edward causes him to return the French king's presents, 162. Generously interferes with king Edward to save the burgesses of Calais, who had surrendered themselves to induce the king to spare their fellow-townsmen, 175. Commands at the battle of Calais, and king Edward fights under his banner, 180. Wounded at the battle of Nogent, 236. Fails in persuading the duke of Lancastre to attack the French army under the duke of Burgoyne, 397. Surrenders in Aguyllon to the duke of Aniou, [error, see note], 413. Dies in London, and is buried in the Charter-house, 439.

Marant, the castle of, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 455.

Marcell, Amergot, takes the castle of Aloys and other places in Auergne, i. 546 *et seq.* Taken prisoner and ransomed, 546. Takes by surprise the castle of Marquell, 774. Refuses to join Perote le Bernoys in taking Mountferrant, ii. 341. Laments the want of opportunity to pillage, 480. Fortifies himself in the Roche of Vandoyes, 481. Besieged by the vycount of Meaulx, 486. Sends to England to solicit assistance, 486. Secretly quits the fortress to seek for aid, 492. During his absence at Pyergourt his fortress surrenders, 494. Treacherously arrested by a relative, to whom he had applied for an asylum, 496. Set on the pyllory and beheaded at Parys, 497.

——— (Marseilles), the city of, submits to the duchess of Aniove, ii. 3.

Marche, the erle of, taken prisoner by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.

——— the erle de la, appointed constable of the English army under king Edward the third, i. 243.

——— the erle of, required by the duke of Gloucestre to become king of England instead of Richard the second, ii. 684. Dissimulates and retires to Ireland, to avoid further communication with the duke, 685.

——— the lord John of Burbon, erle of, commands an army against Don Peter, king of Castyle, i. 308. Joins the duke of Burbone at Nyort, ii. 4. Taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Ny-copoly, 671.

Marchepoys, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.

Marchienes, the abbey of, taken by the erle of Heynault, i. 82.

Marchranuyll (Marchville), the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 291.

- Marclays, Sir, executed in London for counselling king Richard the second to put to death the duke of Gloucester, ii. 749.
- Mare, the erle of, slain by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Marettes, John, unjustly put to death at Parys, i. 749.
- Margaret, countess of Heynault, takes possession of the country as her inheritance after the death of erle Willamy, i. 139.
- of Hungary, married by procuracy to Loys of Valoys, ii. 10. Forcibly married by Sir Henry de Blauquefort, brother of the king of Almayne, ii. 19.
- Marle, the castle of, taken by the duke of Berrey, i. 454.
- Marneyle, Sir Raymon of, turns to the French interest, i. 406. Taken prisoner by the English, 427. Destined to be put to death by king Edward the third, but escapes by the connivance of his keeper, 427.
- Marquayre, St., surrenders to the duke of Aniou, i. 476, 497.
- Marquell, the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by Amergot Marcell, i. 774.
- Marquylles, Sir Richard of, taken prisoner by the English at St. Quyntyn, i. 590.
- Marshall, the erle, of England. See Notyngham, the erle of.
- Marshalse, the, and other prisons in London, broken open and the prisoners liberated by the insurgents under Wat Tyler, i. 645.
- Martel (Marcell), Stephyn, prouost of the merchants of Parys, kills three knights in the apartment of the regent, i. 215. Builds walls round Parys, 217. Killed by John Mayllart, while attempting to betray the city to the English and Naucrois, 221.
- Martheras, the battle of, between a party from the French garrisons and a party from Lourde, ii. 62.
- Martre, in Heynault. See Artuell, in Heynault.
- Martyn, St., Jakes of, mortally wounds Sir John Chandos at the bridge of Lussac, i. 403.
- Mastull, the castle of, taken by the French under Sir Gaultier of Paschac, ii. 120.
- Mathe, a grayhound so called, a favourite of Richard the second, king of England, quits him and fawns upon the duke of Lancaster, ii. 746.
- Matheve, St., of Fyne Poterne (St. Mathieu Fin de terre), the town of, in Bretaine, surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 464. Retaken by the duke of Bretaine, 479. Retaken by Sir Olyuer of Clisson, ii. 358.
- Mauberen (Maubert), the fortress of, taken by the English under the lord Neuyll, i. 325.
- Mauber Fountaynes, the town of, taken and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 62.
- Mauben, the lord, beheaded at Roan, i. 188.
- Maucoucell, the castle of, taken by the king of Nauer, i. 223. Besieged by the duke of Normandy, 223. Sold by the garrison, and razed to the ground, 237.
- Maudurant, Geronet, taken prisoner with his men in Auvergne by Sir John Boesme Launce (Bome-lance), and carried to Mountferant, ii. 337. Ransomed, 339. Re-enters Mountferant in disguise, 340. Lets in at night Perot le Bernoys and his company in disguise, 344.
- Maulyon, the bastot of, relates his adventures to Froissart at Ortaise, ii. 79. Taken prisoner by the French, 81.
- (Moron), the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 134. Surrenders to the duke of Aniou, 476.
- Maunte, the town of, taken by the French under the lord Bonciquant, i. 281.
- Maures (Muros), the town of, in Galyce, surrenders to the duke of Lancaster, ii. 222.
- Maumoysin, the lord of, taken prisoner by Sir Robert Canoll (Knolles), i. 601.
- Maxat, St., the town of, in Poyctou, taken by the duke of Berrey, i. 454.
- Mayorke, or Mallorques (Majorca), the kingdom of, conquered by Peter, king of Aragon, and annexed to his crown, ii. 204.
- Mayllart, John, a citizen of Parys, prevents the city being betrayed by the prouost of the merchants, ii. 221.
- Maystre (Menstreworth), Sir John, disapproves of the measures of Sir Robert Canoll, i. 425. Executed in London, 435.
- Meaulx, the vyeount of, ordered by the king of France to march against Aymergot Marcell, ii. 483. Besieges him in the Roche of Vandoys, 486. Receives letters from king Richard the second and the duke of Lancaster, requiring him to abandon the siege, 488; and from the duke of Berrey, 490. Takes the fortress, 494.
- Melle (Nielle), Sir William of, taken prisoner by the English at Lyques, i. 477; and again by them at St. Venaunt, 761.
- Melun, the town of, on the Seyne, besieged by the duke of Normandy, i. 233.
- Melwall, Sir Loys of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Mendrich, Sir Dangoues, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Menyuell (Mourville) la gorge, burned by the Flemings in the interest of king Edward the third, i. 172.
- Mercier, Sir John, one of the ministers of Charles the sixth, king of France, committed to prison during the regency of the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne, ii. 581. His property confiscated, 581. Nearly loses his eye-sight through grief, 584. Released from prison, 631.
- Merle, the castle, town, and signorie of, ceded by France to Edward the third, king of England, i. 257.
- Merlo Goussaleuas of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.

- Meslyn, the lytell, chief captain of the Companions in Lusenburge (Luxembourg), put to death, ii. 323.
- Mesnyll (Neville), Sir Willyam, taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy at Pont Valout, i. 426.
- Messyng (Malines), the town of, surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 730. Surrenders again to the bysshop of Norwich, 762.
- Meulecke (Meulan), the town of, taken by the French under the lord Boucequaut, i. 281.
- Mewrous (Melrose), the abbey of, burned by Richard the second, king of England, ii. 26.
- Miels, Dassue Martyne of, slain at the battle of Juberother, ii. 154.
- Vassue (Vasco), Martyne of, and Vassue his son, slain at the battle of Juberother, ii. 154.
- Milbraud, the castle of. See Lamulae.
- Miracles performed by a statue of the Virgin, &c. at Bourbourc, i. 778; and by the body of cardynall St. Peter, of Lusenburge, ii. 331.
- Miraculous appearances seen by the Sarazyns during the siege of Aufryke, ii. 504.
- Mirpoyse (Mirepoix), the lord of, slain at Bergerath, i. 124.
- Molayne (Manley), the lord, compelled by the insurgents under Wat Tyler to accompany them to London, i. 642.
- Molmeux (Molieux), the castle of, taken by the French under the lord Concy, i. 516.
- Mommorrey, Sir Charles of, taken prisoner at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 83. Escapes with the king of France and four other barons after the battle of Cressy, 159.
- the lord of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- Mons, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Monsac (Moissac), the town of, in Quercy, taken by the English under Sir John Chandos, i. 381. Surrenders to the duke of Aniou, 413, 475.
- Monstier, Sir Peter of, cardynall of Arras, appointed chief of a crosyge (cruise), against the Companions in France, i. 272.
- Monstrell boyuin (Montreuil Bonin), the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 163.
- Montague (Montacute), Sir Willyam, created erle of Salisbury by king Edward the third, i. 39.
- the lord Willyam of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Montaubon, the battle of, between Sir Guy Dazay and the Companions, i. 321.
- Monteguy, the lord of, taken prisoner by Hanckyn Francoys, i. 233.
- Monteil, the battle of. See Nantueyle.
- Montendre, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.
- Monteny, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Montigny, the lord of, slain before Gaunt, i. 659.
- Montmorelon, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Montaubon, i. 322.
- Monyg (Main), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 67.
- Morayne, the lord of, killed at the battle of Juberother, ii. 106.
- Morbecke, Sir Denyce, takes prisoner John, king of France, at the battle of Poycters, i. 202. Is rewarded by the prince of Wales, 207.
- More, St., the abbey of, on the Loyre, taken by the English under the erle of Pembroke, i. 398.
- Moret (Moray or Murray), the erle of, taken prisoner by the English before Newcastle, i. 95. Exchanged for the erle of Salisbury, 100. A second time taken prisoner by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Morette (Moray), the erle of, counsels Sir Geffray Charny to advise the French to enter England by the way of Scotland, i. 788. Welcomes the arrival of the French armament at Edenborowe with the forces for the invasion of England, ii. 7.
- Morlayne, Sir Pyncharde of, and Sir Trystram his brother, die of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Mornay, Sir John of, taken prisoner by the English at St. Quynines, i. 590.
- Moro, Diego. See Dygomor.
- Mortan, the lord of, slain at the battle of Juberother, ii. 154.
- Mortayne, Sir John of, slain by the Spaniards in the sea-fight off Rochelle, i. 442.
- the town of, in Normandy, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 486.
- (Mortain sur Mer), the town of, in Poyctou, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 163. Besieged by Sir Yuan of Wales, 500, 519. The siege raised by the lord Neuyll, 524.
- Mortymer, the castle of, surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 461.
- Sir Roger, counsels king Edward the third in his government, i. 15. Takes bribes of the Scots invaders, 25. Created erle of Marche against the will of the barons, 28. Ignominiously put to death, 32.
- Mosegrauce, Sir Thomas, taken prisoner by the Scots under Sir Willyam of Lyndsay, i. 507.
- Mote, Sir Aubert de la, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Moton (Newton), Sir John, governor of Rochester castle, forced by the insurgents under Wat Tyler to accompany them to London, i. 642. Compelled by them to go on an embassy to king Richard the second, 643.
- Moucecaux (Moncheau), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 67.
- Moulyne, Sir John de, taken prisoner at Emenyn by the English, i. 765.
- Mountbelyet, the erle of, invades the duchy of Burgoyne, i. 292.
- Mountbourgue, the town of, pillaged and burned by the English, i. 146.
- Mountcombre (Montgomery), the lord of, fights hand to hand with Sir Henry Percy at the battle of Ot-

- tenbourge (Otterbourne), and takes him prisoner, ii. 399.
- Mountcontour, the castle of, in Poyctou, taken by the English under lord Thomas Percy, i. 433. Retaken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 447.
- Mountferant, the town of, taken by stratagem by Perot le Bernois, ii. 340.
- the marquis of, leads the Companions into Lombardy, i. 272. Conquers several places from the lords of Myllayne, 272.
- Mountfort, the erle of, takes measures to secure to himself the duchy of Bretayne after the death of his brother, i. 86. Takes the town of Brest and several other places, 87 *et seq.* Does homage to Edward the third, king of England, for the duchy of Bretayne, 90. Summoned before the parliament of Parys, at the suit of the lord Charles of Bloys, 90. Taken prisoner by the French, 93. Dies in the Loure (Louvre) at Parys, 93.
- the lord of, escapes with the French king and four other barons from the battle of Cressy, i. 159.
- the lord John of, defeats the forces of the lord Charles of Bloys at the battle of Alroy, i. 299. His behaviour on seeing the body of his adversary, 302. Takes Alroy and other places, 303 *et seq.* Makes peace with the king of France, and is acknowledged duke of Bretayne, 305. [*For subsequent particulars of this personage, see Bretayne, John duke of.*]
- the countess of, carries on the war against the lord Charles of Bloys after the capture of her husband, i. 93. Solicits assistance from England 100. Besieged by Sir Charles of Bloys in Hanyboubt (Hennebont), 101. Displays great courage in the defence of the town, 101. Enters into a truce with the lord Charles of Bloys, and goes to England, 111. Returns to Bretayne with reinforcements under Sir Robert of Arthoys, 113. Visits king Edward the third at the siege of Vannes, 116. Is visited by him after his truce with the French, 120. Her forces take Sir Charles of Bloys prisoner at Rochedaren, 171.
- Mountgyse (Montgis), the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Mountioy, the town, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- Mount Jardyne, Sir Baudvyn of, influences the bishopric of Liege to remain neuter in the affairs of the church, ii. 765.
- Mounikarell, the lord of, taken prisoner by the freebooters of Almayne (Germany), ii. 413.
- Mountlewe, the castle of, stormed by the French under the duke of Burborne, ii. 5.
- Mountmorillon, the castle of, in Poyctou, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 446.
- Mount Paon, the castle of, surrenders to the French under Sir Wilyam Lomall, i. 429. Retaken by the duke of Lancaster, 451.
- Mountpelyer, the town of, surrenders to the duke of Anjou, i. 413.
- Mountpelyer, the town and barony of, belonging to the king of Nauer, seized by the French, i. 513.
- Mountpensier, the erle of. See Berrey, John of.
- Mountpesance (Mouppouillant), the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 134.
- Mountpyen, the fortress of, taken by Sir Thomas Trynet, i. 531.
- Mountsaugon, the castle of, taken by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 227.
- Mountsegure surrenders to the erle of Derby, i. 130.
- Taken by the duke of Anjou, 497.
- Mourase, Sir Adam of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Mucydney, the lord of, killed before Chargny en Dormoys, i. 248.
- the lord of, taken prisoner by the French at the battle of Yuret, i. 494. Turns to the French party, 496. Returns to the English interest, 537.
- Muttrel on the see (Montreuil sur Mer), the vycount of, his homage for certain lands in France, transferred to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Myllayne, Galeas, erle of Vertues, duke of, his territories invaded by the erle of Arminake, ii. 525. Reinforces the garrison of Alexandre, 529. Sends presents to the great Turk, and informs him of the expedition intended against him under John of Burgoyne, 648. Particulars respecting his ancestors and family, 649. Sends his defiance to the king of France, 652.
- Myrabell (Mirabeau), the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 163.
- Myremont (Miramont), taken by the erle of Derby, i. 135. Retaken by the duke of Normandy, 140.

## N.

- Namure, Sir Loyes of, taken prisoner by the duke of Julyers, ii. 325.
- Sir Philyp of, slain at Teremonde (Dendermonde), i. 627.
- Sir Robert of, does homage to Edward the third, king of England, before Calais, i. 170. Prepares to assist him against France, 386. Joins the English forces under the duke of Lancastr before Tornehen, 389. Defeats a party of the French in a skirmish, 396. Gives the town of Sluys to the duke of Burgoyne in exchange for the country of Bethume, ii. 16. Taken prisoner by the duke of Julyers, ii. 325.
- Sir Wilyam of, taken prisoner by the duke of Julyers, ii. 325.
- Nantes, the town of, taken by Sir Charles of Bloyes, i. 92. Besieged by king Edward the third, 116. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 466. Besieged by the erle of Buckingham, 607.
- Nantueyle (Monteil), the battle of, between king Henry of Castyle and Don Peter (Pedro), i. 354.
- Naples, the queen of, visits pope Clement, and re-



- lates her grievances, i. 550. Surrenders her dominions to him, 550.
- Narbon, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Montauban, i. 322.
- Naval engagement, before Sluys, between the French and English, i. 72. Off the haven of La Bay, in Bretayne, between the English and Flemynges, 435. Before Rochelle, between the erle of Pembroke and the Spaniards, 440, 442. Off Cagant (Cadsand), between the erle of Arundell and the Flemynges under Sir John Buck, ii. 216.
- Nauare, the erle of (count of Novaire), constable of Portugale, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154. The Castellans at Valewyde (Valverde) defeated by him, 155.
- Nauaret (Nazaret), the castle of, taken by the French under Sir Gaultyer Paschac, and razed, ii. 120.
- or Najara, the battle of, between the prince of Wales and Henry king of Castyle, i. 336.
- the town of, taken by the prince of Wales, 342.
- Nauer, Sir Loyes of, takes the town of Charlyte, i. 291. Marries the queen of Naples, 306. Dies, 306.
- Philyp of, refuses to deliver the possessions of his brother Charles, king of Nauer, in Normandy, to the king of France, and raises an army to defend them, i. 189. Makes St. Eureux his head quarters for the war in Normandy, 214. His reasons for declining to visit his brother in Parys, 216. Raises an army to raise the siege of St. Valery, 229. Makes a rapid retreat before a superior French force, 230. Refuses to accept the peace which had been concluded between his brother and the duke of Normandy, 234.
- Neell, the lord Guy of, marshal of France, defeated and taken prisoner by the English in Xaynton, i. 182. Slain, 183.
- the lord Willyam of, taken prisoner at Xaynton, i. 182. Slain at the battle of Poycters, 200.
- Nendrece, Sir Dangomes, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Neuers, the erle of. See Burgoyne, John of.
- Neville, Sir William. See Mesuyll.
- Neuyl, the lord, raises the siege of Mortayne, i. 524. Takes St. Mauberen, 525. Dismissed from his command in Northumberland, ii. 389.
- Newcastell, the battle near, between the English and Scots, i. 165.
- (Chateau-neuf), the lorde of, taken prisoner by the English at Bergerath, i. 124.
- (Chateau-neuf), Sir John of, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), ii. 405.
- of Raudone (Chateau-neuf de Raudon), the castle of, in Auvergne, taken by the French under Sir Bertram of Clesquy, who dies before it, i. 583.
- Newtuyle, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Newport, the town of, in Flaunders, taken by the bysshop of Norwich, i. 762. Retaken by the king of France, 778.
- Newton, Sir John. See Moton.
- Nielle, Sir Willyam of. See Melle.
- Nivcle (Nivcle), the church of, burned by the erle of Flaunders, with several hundreds of the men of Gaunt in it, i. 629.
- Nissa, the town of. See Coniecte.
- Nogent, the battle of, between the French under the lord Broquart of Penestrages and the English under Sir Eustace Dambrecourt, i. 235.
- the fortress of, sold to the bysshop of Troyes, i. 237.
- Norbernyche (North-Berwick), Sir Willyam of, chaplain to the erle of Douglas, fights valiantly at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), ii. 398. Made Archdeacon of Abredan (Aberdeen), 398.
- Normandy, the duchy of, invaded and devastated by Edward the third, king of England, i. 145 *et seq.* The right to it renounced by him, 257.
- John duke of, invades Heynault, and burns numerous towns in his progress, i. 65. Besieges Thyne Leuesque, 69. Enters Bretayne with Sir Charles of Bloyes, 92. Leads a large army to oppose Edward the third, king of England, in Bretayne, 118. Enters into a truce with him, 119. Leads an army into Gascone to oppose the erle of Derby, 140. Takes the castle of Myremont and other places, 140 *et seq.* Besieges Aguyllon, 142. Abandons the siege, 161. Marries Jane, countesse of Bolayne, 181. Crowned king of France, 182. [*For subsequent particulars of this prince, see John, king of France.*]
- Charles duke of, appointed regent of France during the imprisonment of king John in England, i. 210. Quarrels with the prouost of the merchants in his palays, and three of his knights slain in his presence, 215. Compelled to pardon the offenders, 215. Besieges Parys, 219. Makes peace with the king of Nauer, 219. Re-enters Parys, 222. Lays siege to Melune, 233. Collects a force to drive the English out of Champayne, 234. Refuses to ratify the peace concluded between king John and the English, 238. Declines to accept the challenge of Edward the third, king of England, 253. Endeavours to make peace with him, 255. Appointed regent on the departure of king John to visit England, 278. Crowned king of France at Reynes, 290. [*For subsequent particulars of this prince, see Charles the fifth, king of France.*]
- Northumberlande, the erle of, his creation, i. 483. Retakes Berwyke castle by storm from the Scots, 503. Enters Scotland with a large army, 505. Appointed wardeyn of Northumberlande, &c. 629. Enters Scotland with a large force, 784. Banished the realm by king Richard the second, ii. 735. Recalled by the duke of Lancaster, 748.
- Norwich, the bysshop of, appointed by pope Urbans

- commander of a croysey against the Clemeutyns, i. 752. Enters Flaunders, contrary to the advice of Sir Hugh Caurell (Calverley), 754. Takes the town of Grauclyng and other places, 755 *et seq.* Refuses to let messengers from the erle of Flaunders pass to England, 757. Besieges Ipre, 762. Abandons the siege, 767. Returns to England, 767. Badly received on his return, 778.
- Norwyck, John, escapes with his garrison from Angolesme by a device, i. 142.
- Notyngham, the erle of, his creation, i. 483. Is erle marshall of England, and arrests the duke of Glocestre by order of king Richard the second, ii. 692. Challenges the erle of Derby in the king's presence, 712. Banished the kingdom, 716. Dies of grief at Venyce, 764.
- Noyon, the bysshop of, taken prisoner at Mauconsel, i. 224.
- Nyche (Aniche), the town of, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Nycopoly, the town of, in Turkey, besieged by the king of Hungary and John of Burgoyne, ii. 648. The siege raised by Lamorabaquy (Bajazet), 667.
- the battle of, between the combined armies of the king of Hungary and John of Burgoyne and the great Turk Lamorabaquy (Bajazet), ii. 668.
- Nygret, the village of, pillaged and burned by the English under Sir Thomas Tryuet, i. 534.
- Nyngromancer, a, of Tollet (Toledo), occasions Henry, king of Castyle, to abandon the siege of Bayone, i. 518.
- Nyngromancers, certain, accuse the duchess of Orlyance of having bewitched Charles the sixth, king of France, ii. 680.
- Nyorth, the town of, stormed by the English, i. 450. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 450.
- O.
- Obeys, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- O'Connor, king of Connaught. See Conhue, king of Cheucno and Darpe.
- Ogle, Sir Thomas, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenboumge (Otterbourne), ii. 399.
- O'Neal, king of Meath. See Anle, king of Mecte.
- Orchies, the town of. See Dorchies.
- Orifambe, the, a precious banner sent from heaven, displayed by the king of France at the battle of Rosebeque, in Flaunders, i. 738.
- Origny, saynt Buoyste, burned by the English, i. 54.
- Orlyance, the duke of [for *previous particulars of this prince, see Thourayne, the duke of*], accompanies Charles the sixth, king of France, in his expedition against the duke of Bretayne, ii. 569. Declines being present at the judgment of the parliament on Sir Olyuer of Clysso, 585. Accidentally occasions four knights to be burned to death, and endangers the king's life at a masked daunce in Parys, 590. Opposes the marriage of the king's daughter to Richard the second, king of England, 626. Succeeds to the possession of the county of Bloys, by the death of the erle, 705.
- Orlyance, the duchess of, suspected of attempting to poison the dolphyn of France, ii. 651. Suspected of causing the king's illness by enchantment, 652. Accused of it by certain nyngromancers, 680. Leaves Parys in consequence, 680.
- Philip duke of, son to Philip, king of Fraunce, goes to England as a hostage for king John, i. 264.
- Ormonde, the erle of, induces four kings of Ireland to submit themselves to Richard the second, king of England, at Duelyn (Dublin), ii. 620.
- Orsell (Worsley), Sir Geffray, taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy at Pont Valont, i. 426.
- Ortayse (Ortingas), the town of, taken by Peter Danclim, ii. 52.
- Orthone, a familiar spirit, sent by a priest to torment the lorde of Corasse, ii. 110. Agrees to leave the priest and serve the lorde of Corasse, 111. Quits his service, 112.
- Osmehall (Ausnes le sec), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Ostrate, Water, takes the castle of Robeboyse, i. 248.
- Ostre, the erle of, slain at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Ostreuan (Ostrevant), the country of, in Heynault, ravaged by the garrison of Dowaye, i. 68.
- Ostreuaunt, the erle of, goes to the grand entertainment of king Richard the second at London, ii. 511. Wins a prize at the jousts, 513. Created a knight of the garter, 514. Gives offence to the king of France by his acceptance of that order, 514. Required to do homage to the king of France for the county of Ostreuaunt, 515. Raises an army to invade Frese (Friesland), 640. Invades Frese, 655. Disbands his army, 663. Invites the erle of Derby to Heynault after he had been banished from England, 719.
- Ottenboumge (Otterbourne), the battle of, between the Scots and the English, ii. 396.
- Oudenarde, the town of. See Audwarpe.
- Ouen, St. near Parys, the fraternyte of the house of, published, i. 182.
- Ourde, Sir John. See May-trude (Men-strewoth), Sir John.
- Oxenforde\* (Oxford), the erle of, advises king Richard the second to distrust the counsels of his uncles, ii. 29. Endeavours to dissuade him from assisting them in their pretensions to the crown of Castyle, 45. Created duke of Irelande, 260. [For subsequent particulars of this nobleman, see Irelande, the duke of.]

\* This nobleman has been erroneously called "Suffolk" at p. 29 and 30, vol. ii.

- Oxford, the erle of. See Quenfort.
- Oye, the seignory of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 257.
- P.
- Pampylone (Pampeluna), the town of, besieged by the king of Castyle, i. 518. The siege relinquished, 532.
- Parteney, Sir Geffray of, taken prisoner by the Portuguese at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 103. Killed, 106.
- Parys, the city of, evacuated by Philipp of Valoys, king of France, on the approach of the English army under Edward the third, king of England, i. 150. First inclosed with walls, 217. Besieged by the duke of Normandy, 219. A massacre of its inhabitants prevented, 221. They rebel against king Charles the sixth, on account of the taxes, &c. 663, 687, 730. The city gates and chains removed, 748. The citizens heavily fined, 749. They make rich presents to Isabell of Bauier, queen of Charles the sixth, on her marriage and entry, and to the king and duchess of Thourayne, ii. 434.
- Sir John, taken prisoner at the battle of Nogent, i. 236.
- Paschac, Sir Gaultier of, takes St. Forget and several other places in the Tholousyne, ii. 115 *et seq.* Accompanies the duke of Bourbon in an expedition into Castyle, 215. Obtains leave of the erle of Foyz to pass through his territories with a French army, 230. Arrives at Burgus, 238.
- Past (Passy), the town of, taken by the French under the lord of Concy, i. 516.
- Patryke's, St. Purgatorie (St. Patrick's Hole), in Ireland, described to Froissart by Sir Wilyam Lysle, ii. 610.
- Patrys, the erle (Patrick, erle of Dunbar?), slain by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Pauy, Sir Amery of, a Lombarde, governor of Calais, agrees with Sir Geffray of Charney to sell him the town, i. 178. Prevented by king Edward the third, 178.
- Pembroke, the erle of, sent to the assistance of the prince of Wales in Aquitayne, i. 370. Makes war in Pyergourt, &c. 371. Declines serving with Sir John Chandos in an incursion into Anjou, 390. Invades Anjou after him, 391. Is surprised by the French on his return, who rob him of his booty, 391. Narrowly escapes being captured, 392. Sends to Sir John Chandos for assistance, 393. Makes another irruption into Anjou, 398. Succeeds to the estates and property of Sir Walter Manny, 439. Appointed governor of Poictou, 439. Defeated and taken prisoner by the Spaniards at the sea battle off Rochelle, 440, 442. Insulted by Yuan of Wales at St. Andrewe, in Galyce, 446. Ransomed, 475. Dies at Arras, 475.
- Percy, the lord, dies in Castyle, ii. 306.
- Percy, lord Henry, appointed commander in chief of the forces in Northumberlande, ii. 300. Fights hand to hand with the erle Douglas, who takes his pennon, 393. Taken prisoner at the battle of Ottenbourge, 399.
- Sir Rafe, taken prisoner at the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 398.
- Sir Thomas, appointed seneschall of Poictou, i. 405. Takes the castle of Mountentour, 433. Taken prisoner by the French at Soubyse, 452. Goes to Portyngale as admiral of the navy in the duke of Lancastre's expedition against Castyle, ii. 157. Goes ambassadour to Parys with two other nobles to treat for a peace with France, 521. Resigns his office of sovereign squire of the house to king Richard the second, 690. Sent to Burdeaux to appease the discontents there, 756.
- Perriere (Pereyra), Radigos, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Persement, Sir Digo, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Pertin, the town of. See John's, St.
- Pertney, the lord, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.
- Pestel (Potel), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Peter, king of Aragon, promises to assist king Henry of Castyle against Dam Peter (Don Pedro) and the prince of Wales, i. 318. His kingdom invaded by the king of Mayllorques (Majorca), 437. His death, ii. 204.
- Dam (Don Pedro the fourth), king of Castyle, reigus with great cruelty, i. 307. Murders his queen, 307. Summoned to appear before pope Urbane the fifth at Avuygnon, 308. Excommunicated, 308. Endeavours to raise a force to oppose his bastard brother Henry and the erle of Marche, 309. Flies to Cologne (Corumna), 309. Sends and afterwards goes to Aquitayne to solicit the assistance of the prince of Wales, 311. Re-enters Spayne, accompanied by the prince and a large force, 330. Defeats the army of king Henry at the battle of Nauaret, 336. Obtains the submission of Castyle, 344. Incurs the displeasure of the prince of Wales, 347. Defeated by king Henry at Nantueyle (Monteil), 354. Taken prisoner, 355. Killed in a scuffle by his brother, 356. His remains disinterred by his daughter Constance, duchess of Lancastre, and buried at Ciuyll (Seville), in great state, ii. 424.
- of Lusiegenen (Lusignan), king of Cypres, takes the city of Salate from the Sarazyns, i. 274. Visits pope Urbane at Avuygnon, 275. Visits the emperour of Almayne (Germany), at Prague, to exhort him to a crusade against the Sarazyns, 276. Visits king Edward the third at London for the same purpose, 277; and the prince of Wales at Angolesme, 277. Returns to Parys to the duke of Normandy, and mourns with him the death of king John, 283. Murdered by his brother, ii. 123. The inscription on his tomb, 123.
- Peterson, Sir John, admiral of the Flemish fleet, de-

- feated and taken prisoner by the English off the haun of Bay, i. 435.
- Phagon, St., the town of, in Spayne, pillaged and burned, ii. 312.
- Phelton, Sir Thomas, causes the lord of Pomiers to be beheaded at Burdeaux, i. 491. Taken prisoner by the French at the battle of Yuret, 494. Ransomed, 496.
- Philyp le Beaw, king of France, his issue, i. 4.
- of Chastaulx (Chateaux), chief esquier of Sir John of Heynault, presented on his leaving England by king Edward the third with one hundred marks yearly rent, i. 14.
- son of John, king of France, taken prisoner with his father by the English at the battle of Poycters and carried to England, i. 204. Created duke of Burgoyne, 290. [*For subsequent particulars of this prince, see Burgoyne, Philyp duke of.*]
- of Valoys, chosen king of France, to the exclusion of Isabell, queen of Edward the second of England, and her issue, i. 4, 30. Makes war on the Flemynges, 31. Banishes Sir Robert of Artoysse from France, 36. Puts on the cross, 40. Countermands the preparations for a crusade, 42. Receives a defiance from Edward the third, king of England, and his allies, 49. Takes measures for invading England as soon as the English should enter France, 49. Seizes Pontyeu, 50. Leads an army to oppose the English, 55. Destroys the territories of Sir John of Heynault, 60. Invades Flaunders, 62. Reinforces in person the army of the duke of Normandy, 70. Sends forces into Scotland, to assist the Scots against the English, 76. Assembles a large army to raise the siege of Tourney, 77. Enters into a truce with the king of England, 85. Assists the lord Charles of Bloys to recover the duchy of Breтайne from the erle of Mountfort, 92. Assembles an army to oppose the erle of Derby in Gascone, 139. Collects another army to oppose Edward the third in Normandy, 147. Leaves Parys on his approach, 150. Halts at Abuyte, 155. Signally defeated at the battle of Cressy, 155. Escapes with only five of his barons, 158. Collects a large army to raise the siege of Calais, 171. Offers battle to the king of England, 173. Enters into a truce with him, 177. Marries the lady Blanche, daughter of Philyp, king of Nauer, 181. Dies at Nogent, 182.
- Philyppe, daughter of Willyam erle of Heynault, presented by Froissart with his first written Cronycle, i. 2. Married to Edward the third, king of England, 27. In the absence of the king, raises an army to oppose the Scots, 165. Defeats them near Newcastle, 165. Receives the king of Scotland as her prisoner at York, 167. Obtains from her husband the pardon of six citizens of Calais whom he intended to put to death, 176. Entertains and liberates them, 176. Her three last requests of king Edward, 395. Her death, 395.
- daughter of the duke of Lancaster, married to John, king of Portyngale, ii. 224.
- Pierpont, the towne of, taken by Sir Eustace Dambreytcourt, i. 252.
- Piquegny, the lord John of, delivers the king of Nauer from the castle of Alleres, i. 215. Defeats the French before Mauconsell, 223. Forces the duke of Normandy to raise the siege, 224. Endeavours to take the town of Amyense, 225. Dies at Herreel, 236.
- Planchuy, Sir Jaques, slain at the battle of Cocherell, ii. 81.
- Playsac, Helyot of, governor of Botuyll, taken by the French, i. 538.
- Plomouth (Plymouth), the town of, burned by the French, i. 484.
- Poe (Poole?), the town of, in England, burned by the French, i. 484.
- Podich, Egeas Toille of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Polle, St. de Lyon (St. Pol de Leon), the town of, taken by the duke of Breтайne, i. 479.
- Pompador, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Pomyers, Sir Aymon of, missing after the battle of Cocherell, i. 289. Goes on pilgrimage during the wars in Acquitayne, 405.
- the lord of, beheaded at Burdeaux for treason, i. 491.
- Pondayre, the towre of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Pons, the lord of, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.
- the lord of, turns to the French interest, i. 432. Taken prisoner at Liques, 477.
- Pont, the lord of, slain at the battle of Alroy (Auray), i. 301.
- Pontaillyer, Sir Guy of, marshall of Burgoyne, defeated in a skirmish by the men of Gaunt under Francis Atreman, ii. 2.
- Pont de large, Sir Water de, slain in a skirmish at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Ponteau de mere, the fortress of, in Normandy, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 486. Razed to the ground, 486.
- Ponthieu, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.
- the county of, seized by Philyp of Valoys, king of France, i. 50. Ceded to Edward the third, king of England, 266.
- Ponynges, the lord, dies in Castyle, ii. 306.
- Populace, the, of England, rebel against king Richard the second, i. 641. Enter London, and commit great outrages, 645 *et seq.* Dispersed by the king, 650.
- Porceen, Sir John of Ligne, erle of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264. Ransomed, 368.
- Porceyud (Pontevedra), the town of, in Galycy, surrenders to the army of the duke of Lancaster, ii. 184.
- Porie Alue, marshall of the host of Portyngale, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Porkers of Respaile. *See* Comporsels.

- Portbeufe, Sir Pyers, captain of Dynant, taken prisoner by king Edward the third, i. 118.
- Porteke (Portelet), Galoyes, Peter, and Agalype Ferrant, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Portelet, Sir John Ferrande, informs Froissart of many particulars relative to the affairs of Castyle, Portyngale, &c. ii. 135. Defeats the Spaniards under Sir John Radigos de Castenans, 148.
- Portsmouth, the town of, burned by the French, i. 484, *note*.
- Portyngale, the king of, makes war against Henry, king of Castyle, i. 356. Concludes a peace, 357.
- the kingdom of, the renewal of its wars with Castyle, ii. 137.
- Poulât, the castle of, in Gascone, taken by the English under Sir Thomas Tryuet, i. 532.
- Poule, St., the county of, over-ran by the duke of Lancaster, i. 399.
- the erle of, slain at the battle of Cressy, i. 158.
- Guy, erle of, killed in the battle between the duke of Julyers and the duke of Brabant, ii. 325.
- Valeran, erle of, son of the above, relieves the city of Amyense, i. 225. Takes the town of St. Vallery, 229. Pursues a large army under Philip of Nauer, who escapes by a masterly retreat, 230. Goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, 264. Taken prisoner near Lyques, and presented by the lord of Gommegnys to king Edward the third, 477. Betrothed to the lady Maude, daughter of the princess of Wales, 543. Liberated on ransom, 543. Returns to France to procure it, and is arrested there, 544. Is liberated, returns to England, and marries the lady Maude, 544. Returns to France after the death of king Charles the fifth, 606. Taken prisoner at the battle between the dukes of Julyers and Brabant, ii. 325. Visits Auygnon at the request of the pope, where the dead body of his brother worked miracles, 332. Goes to the grand entertainment of king Richard the second at London, 512. Wins a prize at the justs, 515. Sent by the French court to London, with articles for a treaty of peace, 636. Appointed to the command of a French army, with which he joins the expedition under the erle of Ostreuaunt at Bencuse, in base Frese (Enckhuysen, in Lower Friezland), 659.
- Poycters, the battle of, between John, king of France, and Edward, prince of Wales, i. 197.
- the castle and country of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. Conquered from the English by Sir Hewe of Chastelon, 368.
- the city of, taken and pillaged by the erle of Derby, i. 164. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 450.
- Poycters, Sir Charles of, burned to death by accident at a masked dance at Parys, ii. 590.
- Poys, the town and castle of, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 151.
- Poytrels, the lord of, slain in a skirmish at Landreches, i. 68.
- Prcauls, the lord of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- Presigny, Sir Reynolde of, put to death, i. 185.
- Prier, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 300.
- Prignauo. *See* Angles Bartylmewe.
- Prony (Prouvy), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 67.
- Propringne (Poperingne), the town of, turns to the men of Gaunt, i. 698. Surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, 730. Surrenders to the bysshop of Norwich, 762.
- Prouost of the merchants of Parys. *See* Martell, Stephyn.
- Parys. *See* Aubert (Aubriot), Hugh.
- Prudence (Prudene), the towre of, surrenders to the duke of Aniou, i. 476.
- Prumiaux, John, a citizen of Gaunt, appointed one of the commanders of the White-battes in that city, i. 566. Takes the town of Andwarpe (Oudenarde), 578. Banished from Flaunders, 580. Delivered up to the erle of Flaunders and beleaded, 580.
- Prux (Preux), the castle of, taken by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 292.
- Pulpuron, the castle of besieged by the French under Sir Gaultier of Paschac, ii. 117. Evacuated by the garrison through a subterraneous passage, 117. Taken possession of by the besiegers, 118.
- Punache, the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 125.
- Purceuaunt Damors (the Poursuivant d'Amour), delivers up the castle of Beanforte to the French, i. 369.
- Pye, St. (Saimpi), the lord of, and two other knights, hold justs near St. Inglybertes against all comers for thirty days, ii. 467.
- Pycpreux (Perseaux), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Pyergourt (Perigord), the city, town, and castle of, taken to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- the cardynall of, endeavours to make peace between John, king of France, and the prince of Wales, previous to the battle of Poycters, i. 195 *et seq.* Makes peace between the duke of Normandy and the king of Nauer, 234.
- the erle of, his homage for certain lands in France transferred to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. He defeats Sir Thomas Wake, the seneshall of Rouerne (Rouergue), 365. Besieges Riamulle, 372. Takes it, 377.
- Pynon, the lord of, narrowly escapes being taken prisoner by the Naueroyse, i. 228. Taken prisoner

- by the Spaniards in the sea battle off Rochelle, 442.
- Pypœnix**, Sir Willyam of, slain in a skirmish at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Pyquigny** (Requigny), the lord of, slain in Hainault, i. 66.
- Q.
- Quarentyne**, the town of. See Carentan, Carentyne.
- Quarrel**, between the houses of Brabant and Guerles, the cause of, explained, ii. 317 *et seq.*
- Quayre** (Laquaire), the town of, in Turkey, stormed and destroyed by John of Burgoyne, ii. 647.
- Queens**, three, besieged in the town of Melune, i. 233.
- Quenelart**, Sir Henry, takes prisoner Sir Eustace Dambretycourt at the battle of Nogent, i. 256.
- Quenfort** (Oxford), the erle of, taken prisoner in Gascone, i. 126.
- Quesnes**, the vycont of, taken prisoner in Heynault by the lord of Falquemont, i. 66.
- Quimper-Corentin**, the town of. See Campecorentyne.
- Quimperlé**, the town of. See Campelly.
- R.
- Radigo**, John, cousin to the king of Portyngale, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Radwyn**, Sir John (Sir Matthew Redman), captain of Berwyke, taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471. Refuses the duke of Lancastre entrance into Berwyke, 652. Escapes from the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 400. Is pursued and taken prisoner by Sir James Lynsay, 401.
- Raix**, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 300.
- Rambalt**, Loyes, a captain of the Companions, causes Lymosin, a squire, to be whipped through Brioude for intriguing with his mistress, ii. 85. Is taken prisoner by a stratagem of Lymosin's, 86. Beheaded by order of the king of France, 86.
- Ramsey**, the lord Alysander, who bare the banner of David the second, king of Scotland, slain at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Alysander, takes the castle of Berwyke, i. 501. Taken prisoner in the castle by the erle of Northumberland, 504.
- Rauenall** (Reyneval), Sir Loys of, defeats Sir Godfray of Harcourt, who is slain, i. 209.
- the lord Raoll of, taken prisoner at Mauconsell, i. 224.
- the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Rausteu**, the battle of, between the duke of Guerles and the Brabanters, ii. 379.
- Raymon**, Sir Bertram, taken prisoner by the English at Bersat, i. 529.
- Reainuille** (Realville), the town of, besieged by the French, i. 372. Taken by storm, 377.
- Rebydewe** (Ribadéo), the erle of. See Vyllayns, the begue of.
- Rec** (Rue), Sir John of, taken prisoner by the Portuguese at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 103. Killed, 106.
- Remy**, St., the bridge and fortress of (Pont de St. Remy), taken from the English by the French, i. 368.
- Remorentyne**, the castle of, taken by Edward, prince of Wales, i. 191.
- Renes**, the town of, taken by the erle of Mountfort, as duke of Bretayne, i. 88. Surrenders to Sir Charles of Bloys, 101. Besieged by the English, 116. By the duke of Lancastre, 212. Taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464.
- Renty**, Sir Odoart de. See Grancy, Sir Odes of.
- Renyell**, Sir Fleton of, killed at the battle of Rosebeque, i. 739.
- Requigny**, the lord of. See Pyquigny.
- Resermant**, Sir Peter, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Responde**, Sir Dyne of, a rich merchant, employed to negociate with Lamorabaquy (Bajazet), for the ransom of John of Burgoyne and his companions, ii. 681, 693.
- Reynes** (Rheims), the archebysshop of, takes the castle of Roucy, i. 238.
- the town of, besieged by Edward the third, king of England, i. 247. The siege raised, 250.
- Richard**, son of Edward, prince of Wales, born at Burdeaux, i. 325, ii. 763. Declared presumptive heir to the throne of England, i. 456, 482. Crowned king of England on the death of Edward the third, 483. [See the next article.]
- the second, king of England, placed under the tuition of Sir Guychart Dangle (erle of Huntynghdon), i. 483. Sends an army to the assistance of the king of Nauer, 487. Enters into an alliance with him, 515. Forms an alliance with the duke of Bretayne, 572. Sends an army to his assistance, 573. Promises assistance to Ferrande, king of Portyngale, against the king of Castyle, 638. Quells the rebellion of the commons under Wat Tyler, &c. 649. Makes a tour through several parts of England to punish the insurgents, 654. Marries the lady Anne of Behayne (Bohemia), 668. Sends an army in crusade against the adherents of pope Clement, 753. Heads an army to oppose the irruption of the combined armies of France and Scotland into England, ii. 23. Destroys the town of Edenborowe, the abbey of Mewros (Melrose), and several other places in Scotland, 27 *et seq.* Distrusts his uncle, the duke of Lancastre, and returns to England, 29. Takes measures of defence against invasion, 172. Quarrels with his uncles, the dukes of York and Gloucester, 243. Excites the discontent of the people of England, 243. Retires to Wales, 245. Constrained by the people to appoint commissioners to

- inquire into the accounts of his confidential ministers, 277. Fails in obtaining the liberation of his minister, Sir Symon Burle (Burley), from the Tower, 280. Threatens to revenge his execution, 282. Retires to Bristowe, 283. Takes measures to counteract the proceedings of the new council which had been appointed for him by the commissioners of accounts, 284. Sends the duke of Ireland as his lieutenant with a large army towards London, 285. His troops routed near Oxford, 291. Returns to London under the conduct of the archebysshop of Caunterbury, 294. Assembles a parliament to receive the homage of his subjects, 295. Enters into a truce with Charles the sixth, king of France, 427. Gives a grand entertainment and jousts at London, 511. Sends commissioners and ambassadours to France to endeavour to conclude a peace between the two nations, 522, 546, 555. Prolongs the truce with the French king, 602. Presents the duke of Lancastre with the duchy of Acquitayne, 607. Heads an army into Ireland, 608. Seeks to marry the lady Isabell, daughter of the king of France, 614, 618. Is presented by Froissart with a book, 618. Obtains the submission of four Irish kings, 620. Confers on them the honour of knighthood, 622. Rescinds his gift to the duke of Lancastre of the duchy of Acquitayne, 624. Sends ambassadours to France with proposals of marriage for the lady Isabell, 626. Espouses her by proxy, 643. Goes to France to forward the peace, 656. Returns to England, 657. Again visits France, 664. Has an interview with the king of France at Arde (Ardres), 665. Receives the lady Isabell from her father, king Charles, in his tent at Arde, 666. Marries her at Calais, 666. Returns with her to England, 666. Becomes unpopular in England, 685. Alarmed at the opposition and intrigues of the duke of Glocestre, 687; and the coolness of the dukes of Lancastre and York, 688. Is informed of the treasonable designs of the duke of Glocestre, 689. Causes him to be arrested, 692, and imprisoned at Calais, where he is put to death, 707. Invests the erle of Rutland with the constablership of England, 708. Agrees to the measures of the kings of France and Almayne (Germany) for the re-union of the church, 710. Baniſhes the erle Marshall for life, and the erle of Derby for six years, 716. Fails in persuading the clergy of the necessity of uniting against pope Boniface, 726. Acquaints the king of France with the death of the duke of Lancastre, 728. Seizes the revenues of the duchy of Lancastre on the death of the duke, 729. Breaks off a marriage which was in contemplation between the erle of Derby and the daughter of the duke of Berrey, 731. Gives a grand entertainment at Wyndſore, which is thinly attended, 733. Prepares to go with an expedition into Ireland, 734. Baniſhes the erle of Northumberland and his son, 735. Rebelled against by the
- people of England, who rise in favour of the erle of Derby (duke of Lancastre), 737. Retires to Flynt castle, 744. Surrenders to the erle of Derby, 746. Forsaken by his favourite greyhound, which favours on the erle, 746. Imprisoned in the Tower of London, 748. Gives up his counsellors in expectation of escaping death, 748. His behaviour whilst in the Tower, 749. Resigns the crown to the duke of Lancastre, 751. A conspiracy in his favour formed by the erle of Huntington, &c. 759. His death, 761. His funeral, 762. Buried at Langley, 764.
- Richon, Sir Geffray, taken prisoner by the Portuguese at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 103. Afterwards killed, 154.
- Robeboise (Roulleboise sur Seine), the castle of, taken by Water Ostrate, i. 248. Delivered up to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 290.
- Robersarde, the chanon of, defeats the Naueroyse near Craull (Creil), i. 228. Turns to the English interest, 369. Arrested by the king of France, 544. Takes the castle of Sighyre, &c. and makes war on the Spaniards against the orders of the king of Portygale, 666, 674. Appeases a mutiny of the troops, 676. Is at the court of king Henry the fourth in London, ii. 759.
- Robert, king of Cicyle, studies the influence of the heavens, and dissuades Philyp, king of France, from giving battle to Edward the third, king of England, i. 57. Endeavours to make peace between the kings of France and England, 73.
- of Heleberge (Heidelberg), crowned emperour of Almayne (Germany), ii. 764.
- the Hermyte, ordered in a vision to interfere in obtaining a peace between France and England, ii. 627. Attends the conferences at Balyngham (Leulinghen), 628. Sent into England, 629, 656.
- Roche, Sir Hugh de la, fights with the erle of Cambridge in Lymoges, and yields himself prisoner to him, i. 423.
- Rochechoart or Rochuart, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poyeters, i. 202. Imprisoned by the prince of Wales, 378. Liberated, 388. His lands invaded by Sir John Chandos, 390.
- Rochedaren (La Roche-derrien), the town of, surrenders to the English, i. 170. Besieged by Sir Charles of Bloys, 171. The siege raised, and Sir Charles taken prisoner, 171. The town taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464.
- Rochefort, the castle of, taken by Sir Gaultier of Paschac, ii. 120.
- the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Rochelle, the town and castle of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. The inhabitants remonstrate against the cession, 266. The town blockaded by the Spaniards and French under Yuan of Wales, 451. The townsmen get possession of the castle by stratagem, and send away the English garrison, 452. Refuse to deliver the town

- to the duke of Berrey until they gain permission to raze the castle, 454. Obtain great privileges from the French king by charter, and destroy the castle before they admit the French, 454.
- Rochelle, the great sea-battle off, between the Spaniards and the English, i. 440.
- Rochemador (Roquemadour), the town of, taken by Sir John Chandos, i. 382.
- Rochemyllone, the castle of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 130.
- Roche of Posay, the castle of the, taken by the French under Sir John of Bucil, i. 378.
- of Vandoy's, the castle of the, possessed by Amergot Marcell, ii. 481. Besieged by the vycount of Meaulx, 486. Taken, 494. Razed, 495.
- Rochestre bridge broken down on the expectation of an invasion by the French, ii. 172.
- Roche sur Yone, the castle of, surrenders to the erle of Cambridge, i. 387. Besieged by the French under Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 463. Surrenders, 465.
- Rochetayllade, friar John of. See John of Rochetayllade, frere.
- Rodaix, the city, town, and castle of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Rodes, Sir Thomas of, mortally wounded before Nantes by the French, i. 608.
- Rohan, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Rollhays, the castle of, in Aragon, taken by the garrison of Lourde, ii. 206.
- Romans, the, espouse the interest of pope Vibane against pope Clement, i. 547. Have several encounters with Sylvester Budes, who was sent by Clement to subdue them, 547 *et seq.*
- Romminy, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 67.
- Ronay, the town of, taken by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 227.
- Rone (Rouen), the archebysshop of, slain by the English at Cressy, i. 159.
- the town of, its inhabitants rebel against king Charles the sixth, i. 664.
- Roscheque, the battle of, between Charles the sixth, king of France, and the men of Gaunt under Philip Dartaell, i. 737.
- Rosen, the lord, taken prisoner by the French at the battle of Yuret, i. 494. Turns to the French interest, 496. Quits it afterwards, 496.
- Rosermont, Sir Don Peter of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Roucy, the castle of, in Picardy, taken by Robyn le Stotte, i. 228. Retaken by the archebysshop of Reyes (Rheims), 238.
- the erle of, taken prisoner with his wife and children, i. 223. Ransomed, 228. Taken prisoner again by Hanckyn Francoys, 233. Regains his town and castle, 238.
- Rouergne, the county and country of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- Roussel, Don Johan Radigo (Rodrigo), killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Rouselone, Sir Geffray of, taken prisoner at the battle of Cocherell, i. 289.
- Roux, Alayne and Peter, commanders of Ventadoure, treacherously propose terms to the besiegers of that fortress, ii. 460. Are circumvented and taken prisoners, 463. Set on the pillory at Parys and beheaded, 466.
- (Roos or Rous?), Sir Robert de, sent with an army by Richard the second, king of England, to the assistance of the king of Nauer, i. 487.
- Rowmorey, the bourge of (the bourge of Rouvroy), taken prisoner at Mauconseil, i. 224.
- Rovtes, a band of armed men so called, make war on Aragon, ii. 206. Defeated by Raymond of Baghes, 208.
- Roy, the lord of, defeats and takes prisoner the lord of Gommegynnes, i. 249. Goes to England as a hostage for king John of France, i. 264.
- Sir Raynold da, engages with Sir John Holande in a deed of arms, ii. 233. Holds jousts with two other knights at St. Ingybertes, near Calais, against all comers for thirty days, 467.
- Sir John of. See Voy.
- Royx, the castle of, taken by the French under Sir Gaultyer of Pa chae, ii. 120.
- Rue, James of, a squyer and secretary of the king of Nauer, put to death at Parys for treason against the king of France, i. 513.
- Ruelles, the town of, in Galyce, surrenders to the duke of Lancastre, ii. 174.
- Ruet, the lady Katherine of, concubyne to John of Gaunt, duke of Lancastre, is married by him after the death of the lady Constance of Spayne, his duchess, ii. 644.
- Ruette (Roelt), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Rutlyn, a Walshman, at the head of a numerous band of desperadoes, pillages various towns and fortresses in France, i. 214.
- Rutlande, the erle of, son of the duke of York, appointed constable of England by king Richard the second, ii. 708. Retires into Wales on the king's arrest, 748.
- Ruyll, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Rybadane (Rybadavia), the town of, taken by storm by the duke of Lancastre, ii. 222.
- Rybemount, Sir Eustace of, fights hand to hand with Edward the third, king of England, who takes him prisoner at the battle of Calais, i. 180. Receives a chaplet of pearls from the king and his liberty, in reward for his prowess, 181. Slain at the battle of Poycters, 200.
- Sir Galahault of, mortally wounded in a skirmish with the English, i. 246.
- Rye, the town of, burned by the French, i. 484.
- Ryeux, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.



- Rygal, Gyles de Roussy, presented with the red bat in the presence of king John of Parys, i. 182.
- Ryoll (La Réole), the town of, besieged by the erle of Derby, i. 131. Surrenders, 134. Besieged and taken by the duke of Anjou, 476.
- Rys, Sir John of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Ryuer (Rivière), the lord de la, takes the castle of Acquency, i. 292. Sent to the duke of Bretayne to endeavour to conciliate him to the court of France, ii. 361. Arrested by order of the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne during their regency, 582. His estates seized, 583. Delivered from prison and his estates restored, 631.
- Sir Guy de la, taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, ii. 670.
- S.
- Saimpi, the lord of. See Pye, St.
- Saintes, the city and castle of. See Xaintes.
- Salate (Satalee), the city of, taken from the Sarazyns by the king of Cypr, i. 274.
- Salisbury, the erle of, taken prisoner by the garrison of Lyle, i. 64. Exchanged for the erle of Moret (Moray), 100. Heads an expedition into Bretayne, 463. Opposes the incursions of the French on the English coast, 484. Sent to France by king Richard the second, to break off the marriage intended between the erle of Derby and the daughter of the duke of Berrey, ii. 731. Impeached and pardoned by king Henry the fourth, 754. Conspires with the erle of Huntynon in a plot to murder king Henry, 759. Beheaded, 761.
- the countess of, defends Werk castle against the Scots, i. 97. Resists with great spirit the dishonourable overtures of king Edward the third, 99.
- Sir John of, taken prisoner by the army of the duke of Glocestre, ii. 292. Beheaded at Oxford, 293.
- Sale, Sir Robert, capitayne of Norwich, killed by the insurgents during Wat Tyler's rebellion, i. 648.
- Salt monopolized in France by the officers of the duke of Normandy to raise pay for the army, i. 226.
- Saluce, Don Ange, of Geneue, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Salues, John James of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Saluest, Sir Guy de la, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Saluyn, St., the abbey of, in Poycton, betrayed to the French by a monk, i. 398.
- Sals (Sauche), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Salybers, Sir Peter of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Saniagose (Famagousta), the city of, taken by the Genevoys, ii. 123.
- Samuers (Famars), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Sanache, Sir Bertram de, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Sangates, the towns, castles, and seignory of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 237.
- Sanguill (Saque-ville), Sir Peter of, taken prisoner at the battle of Cocherell, i. 289. Beheaded at Rome, 290.
- Sansterre, Sir John, a bastard son of the erle of Flaunders, taken prisoner by the English at Emeyn, i. 765.
- Santarem, the town of. See Yranc, St.
- Saxere, the lord Loys of, appointed marshall of France, i. 386. Defeats the erle of Pembroke, 391. Sent into Pronouce by king Charles the sixth, to make war there for the duchess of Anjou, ii. 2. Visits the erle of Foiz at Ortayse, 422. Made constable of France, 703.
- Sir Stephyn, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Sarenne, Sir Manaut of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Saryten, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Sassegynges, Sir Gararde of, suspected of having betrayed the castle of Escandure, put to death at Mons, i. 68.
- Saueter (Salvatierra), the town of, surrenders to the army under Peter, king of Castyle, and the prince of Wales, i. 331.
- Saulte, the town of, in Gascoyne, besieged by the duke of Anjou, i. 474.
- Saulx, the lord of, slain at the battle of Cocherell, i. 289.
- Sauoy, the, in London, John, king of France, lodged there when brought prisoner to England, by the prince of Wales, i. 211. Burned by the insurgents under Wat Tyler, 648.
- the erle of, dies in Italy, i. 791.
- the erle Couiet (count Verd), of, takes the towns of Calipole and Lobeme, ii. 124.
- Ame erle of, married to Boesme (Bona), daughter of the duke of Berrey, dies marvelously, ii. 536.
- Sauueterre, the town of, besieged and taken by the duke of Anjou, i. 497.
- Sauvour le Vveount, St., the castle of, sold to the English, i. 210. Besieged by the French, 478. Taken, 480.
- Sayntre, the lord John of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.
- Scalet, Sir Lyon, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Scarity. See France.
- Schisms in the church, which lead to the election of two popes on the death of pope Gregory, how occasioned, i. 547, ii. 130.

- Scote, or Stotte, Robyn le (Robert Scott), takes the town of Barley, i. 224. Takes the town of Roucy, 228.
- Scots, the, take Berwyke, i. 3. Their character and manners in the time of Froissart, 18. ii. 7. Make a truce with the English, i. 27. Retake many of their fortresses, and penetrate into England as far as Durham, 76. Retake Edenborowe, 77. Take Esturmelyne (Sterling) castle, 94. Enter into a truce with the English, 94. Invade England again under king David, 95. Take and burn the town of Durham, 96. Besiege Werk castle, 96. Conclude further truces with the English, 99, 112. Defeated by the English at the battle near Newcastle, 165. Make truces with the English, 211, 415, 652. Refuse to abide by the truce which had been agreed upon between the French and English, including their respective allies, 785. Invade England, contrary to the orders of king Robert, 786. Enter into a truce with the English, 788. Invade England in concert with a French army under Sir John de Vien, ii. 22. Treat him with much harshness, 30, 31. Invade England under the erle of Douglas, 390. Defeat the English at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne, 396.
- Seaulle, the town of, in Guerles (Gueldres), taken, pillaged, and burned by the French under Sir William of Tremoyle, ii. 335.
- Seclnye, the town of, burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 75.
- Segart, the castle of, taken by assault by the erle of Derby, i. 131.
- Segny the great and Segny the lytell pillaged and burned by the erle of Heynault, i. 63.
- Segure, John, governor of Nogent, murdered at Troyes, i. 237.
- Selles, the town of, pillaged by Perot le Bernoys, ii. 377.
- Semerles, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Senayne (Suntain), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Senecrahe, the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Serole, the erle Don John Alphons, slain at the battle of Juberother, ii. 153.
- Seton, Sir John. See Assueton.
- Seuere (Sauveur), St., in Lymosyn, taken by the Companions in the interest of the prince of Wales, i. 385. Taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 449.
- Sighyre (Figliere), the castle of, taken by the English under the chanon Robersarde, i. 666.
- Simay (Chimay), the town of, in Heynault, pillaged by the French, i. 60.
- Sluys, the town of, taken by the men of Gaunt, i. 697. Exchanged for the country of Bethune, ii. 16. The castle erected, 17. An immense armament for the invasion of England collected there by Charles the sixth, king of France, 168.
- Sluys, the great naval victory of, obtained by king Edward the third over the French fleet, i. 72.
- Soissons, the erle of. See Coucy, the lord of.
- Soltier (Sounder), Sir John, bastard brother of Richard the second, king of England, heads a mutiny of the troops under the command of the erle of Cambridge, i. 676.
- Solyere, Sir Reynolde of, slain at the battle of Juberother, ii. 154.
- Soubyse, the castle of, taken by the French under Yuan of Wales, i. 452.
- Southampton, the town of. See Hampton.
- Soyre, Sir John de, taken prisoner in a skirmish at the bridge of Cressyn, i. 79.
- Spamey (Epermay), the town of, pillaged and burned by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 227.
- Spayne, Charles of, appointed constable of France, i. 182. Murdered by order of king Charles of Nauer, 183.
- Ernulton, bourge of, exhibits extraordinary strength to the erle of Foiz at Ortays, ii. 63.
- Sir Espaynolet of, slain at the battle of Juberother, ii. 154.
- the lord Martine of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nogent, i. 236.
- Spencer, Sir Hewe, the elder, and his son, by their influence over king Edward the second, become masters of the realm of England, i. 4. Besieged with Edward the second in Bristowe, 11. Taken and beheaded, 12.
- Sir Hewe, the younger, directs the government of king Edward the second, i. 4. Causes the erle of Lancaster and other lords to be beheaded, 5. Frustrates the endeavours of queen Isabell to obtain assistance in France, 7. Besieged in Bristowe with the king by the queen's forces, 11. Taken prisoner in endeavouring to escape by sea, 12. Ignominiously put to death at Hereford, 13.
- Sir Hugh, taken prisoner by Sir Bertram of Clesquy at Pont Valont, i. 426.
- (Despencer), the lord, mortally wounded and taken prisoner at Vannes, i. 115.
- (Despencer), the lord, his death, i. 485.
- the lord, conspires with the erle of Huntynghdon and others to murder king Henry the fourth, ii. 759.
- Sir Thomas, taken prisoner in Bretayne, i. 471.
- Spyryt, St., the town of, the bridge of taken by the Companions, called the Late-comers, i. 271.
- Sresiers, Sir Geffrey, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Stafforde, lord, taken prisoner before Vannes, i. 117. Exchanged for the lord Clysso, 120.
- the lord Richarde (Ralph?), killed by Sir John of Holande, ii. 25.
- Stampes (D'Estampes), the lord John of, goes to

- England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264. Sent to endeavour to win over the duke of Breтайne to the French interest, ii. 349.
- Standyshe (Cavendish?), John, assists in putting Wat Tyler to death in Smithfield, i. 650.
- Stanfours, Sir Fonkes of, dies of fatigue before Aurfryke, ii. 509.
- Staple, Sir Wilyam of, dies of fatigue before Aurfryke, ii. 509.
- Stell, mayster, executed in London for having counselled king Richard the second to put to death the duke of Glocestre, ii. 749.
- Sterling, the castle of. *See* Esturmelyne.
- Stouteuill, the lord of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.
- Strande, Sir John, and his son taken prisoners by the French in Scotland, ii. 92.
- Straw, Jaques, becomes one of the leaders of the populace of England in the rebellion against king Richard and the nobility, i. 641. Taken and beheaded, 652.
- Suffolk, the erle of (his son, *see note*), taken prisoner by the governor of Lyle, i. 64.
- Surgeres, the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 163. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 455.
- Surlant (Sutherland?), the erle of, slain by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Sury (Stury), Sir Richarde, relates many particulars to Froissart of the affairs of Acquitayne and England, ii. 615.
- Syluere, St., the town of, surrenders to the duke of Anjou, i. 473.
- Syreth (Civray), the town of, in Poitou, besieged by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 459. Taken, 460.
- the battle of, between the French under Sir Bertram of Clesquy and the English garrison of the fortress, i. 460.
- Sys, the erle of, slain by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Syssome (Sissonne), the town of, taken by the king of Nauer's forces, i. 233.
- T.
- Tailebourcke, the town of, taken by the English under the erle of Derby, i. 163. Surrenders to the French, 452. Besieged by the duke of Burbone, ii. 6. Taken, 15.
- Talbot, the lord, dies in Spayue, ii. 306.
- Tankernylle (Tancarville), the erle of, taken prisoner by the English under king Edward the third, i. 149. Taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, 202.
- Tanyboton, the lord of, taken prisoner by the Spaniards in the sea battle off Rochelle, i. 442.
- Tarbe, the castle and country of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.
- the city of, put in the possession of the French, ii. 50.
- Tarriers, the town of, taken by Sir John Chandos, i. 372.
- Tartarie, grete Tacon (Cham) of, subdues the emperor of Constantyne le noble (Constantinople), ii. 124. Marries his daughter, 124.
- Tassegnon, the castle of, in Gascone, taken by Sir Thomas Tryuet, i. 531. Razed by the garrison of Bayone, 531.
- Tax upon Income levied throughout France for carrying on the war, i. 186.
- Tello, Don, brother of Henry, king of Castyle, defeats a body of English troops under Sir Wilyam Phelton, i. 533.
- Don. *See* Auxell, therle of.
- Tempest, a sudden, induces king Edward the third to hasten the conclusion of a peace with the king of France, i. 255.
- Templars, the great prior of the. *See* John's, St.
- Teremonde (Dendremoude), the town of, stormed by the men of Gaunt, i. 627.
- Terte, Peter of, a clerk, secretary to the king of Nauer, put to death at Parys for treason against the king of France, i. 513.
- Tetenoyre, Geffray, obtains possession of the castle of Ventadore, in Auvergne, i. 546. Keeps the surrounding country in great dread, 775. Mortally wounded, ii. 417. Makes his will, 418. Dies, 418.
- Tharse, Sir Amyery of, slain by the Spaniards in the sea battle off Rochell, i. 442.
- Thilyers, the castle of, taken by John, king of France, i. 189.
- Tholouse, the archebysshop of, and others preach the right of Charles the fifth, king of France, in the war against England, and gain numerous towns to his interest, i. 373.
- the town of, puts itself and the country of Tholousyn under the government of the erle of Foiz, ii. 68.
- Thomynes (Tomines), the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 135. Surrenders to the duke of Anjou, 413.
- Thouars, the fee of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256. The city surrenders to the French, 457.
- Thourayne, the county of, king Edward the third renounces his right to, i. 257.
- Loys duke of, brother of Charles the sixth, king of France, married to Valentyne, daughter of the duke of Myllayne, ii. 433. Is discovered by her in an intrigue, 533. Buys the reversion of the county of Bloys, 553. Exchanges his duchy of Thouraine with the king for the duchy of Orlyauce, 569. [For subsequent particulars of this prince, *see* Orlyauce, the duke of.]
- Thury, the town and castle of, in Albany, taken by the bastot of Maulyon by stratagem, ii. 84.
- Thyaux (Thyan), in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 67.
- Thyne Leuesque, the town of, besieged by the duke of Normandy, i. 69.
- Tilts. *See* Deeds of Arms.

- Tomerre**, the town of, taken by king Edward the third, i. 251.
- Tomroye (Tormine)**, the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Alroy, i. 301.
- Toraguy (Torigny)**, the town of, taken and pillaged by the erle of Arundell, ii. 422.
- Touchette**, Sir John, slain in the sea battle off Rochelle, i. 442.
- Tournay (Tomay)**, Sir Aync of, dies of fatigue before Aufryke, ii. 509.
- Tournaments**. See Deeds of arms.
- Tourney**, the town of, besieged by Edward the third, king of England, i. 75. The siege raised, 84.
- the lord of, his rents gathered by the men of Gaunt, i. 780. Vows never to make peace with them, 780.
- Tourout**, the town of, surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 750.
- Towre**, the lord de la, slain at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Trauchen**, the lord Loys of, chief counsellor of the duke of Brabant, goes ambassadour to France to assure the king of the duke's intention not to assist Edward the third, i. 49. Dies of grief on the duke sending his defiance to the French king, 52.
- Trayone (Touraine)**, taken by Sir Eustace Dambretycourt, i. 239.
- Trelawney**, Sir Matthew of. See Fresnoy, Sir Hubert of.
- Tremoyle (Tremouille)**, Sir Guy of, lord of Sully, taken prisoner by the Turks at the battle of Nycopoly, dies on his return home, after being ransomed, ii. 699.
- (Tremouille), Sir Willyam of, appointed by the duke of Burgoyne to command a body of men to assist the duchess of Brabant against the duke of Guerles, ii. 335. Takes the town and castle of Scaulle, 336. Slain with his son at the battle of Nycopoly, in Turkey, 670.
- Tressin**, the bridge of. See Cressyn.
- Triuylyen (Pressillian)**, Sir Robert, enters London disguised as a spy for the duke of Ireland, ii. 285. Is discovered and executed by order of the duke of Glocestre, 286.
- Troucet (La Troncette)**, the fortress of, stormed by the French under the duke of Burbone, and razed, ii. 5.
- Truces**, between the English and the French, i. 85, 119, 177, 185, 211, 474, 480, 780; ii. 427, 557, 588, 602, 764.
- between the English and the Scots, i. 27, 94, 99, 112, 211, 415, 652, 788.
- between the lord Charles of Bloys and the countess of Mountfort, i. 111.
- between the kings of Castyle and Portyngale, ii. 109.
- Trughen**, the castle of, in Flanders, taken by storm by Sir Olyver of Clysson, i. 768.
- Truye (Sow)**, the, a military machine so called, its use, i. 493.
- Try**, the town and castle of, in Heynault, taken by the duke of Normandy, i. 67. Retaken, 67.
- Trygalet**, the castle of, in Flanders, taken by Sir Garses of the Castell, ii. 57. Razed, 58.
- Tryuet**, Sir Thomas, sent to the assistance of the king of Navar, i. 530. Takes several places in Gascone, 531 *et seq.* Marches into Spayne, 534. Returns to England, 539. Defeats the French under lord Coucy near Arras, 589. Takes prisoners the lord of Brimewe and his two sons, 589. Committed to the Tower of London, 779. Killed by a fall from his horse, ii. 279.
- Turgies**, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Turte**, the lord of, taken prisoner at Mauconsell, i. 224.
- Tuy (Leyria)**, the town of, besieged by the king of Castyle, ii. 143.
- Tyler**, Wat, heads the populace of England in an extensive insurrection against Richard the second and the nobility, i. 641. Marches with a large force through Canterbury and Rochester to Blackheath, committing great excesses, 642. Deputes a messenger to the king, requiring him to come to them, 643. Enters London, and sets open the prisons, 645. Killed in Smithfield, 650.
- Tyticl (Kitch)**, Sir Hugh, slain before Maunte by the French, i. 610.

## U.

- Ubrues (Devereux)**, Sir John, taken prisoner at the battle of Syreth, i. 460.
- Ubyque (Wight)**, the isle of, invaded by the French, i. 484.
- Ulster**, the erle of. See Clarence, Lyonell duke of.
- Urbanc**, the fifth, pope, elected at Auygnon, i. 273. Preaches a crusade against the Sarazyns, 275. Excommunicates Dame Peter (Don Pedro), king of Castyle, 308. Absolves the erle of Narbon and others taken at the battle of Montaubon from the payment of ransom, 323. His death, 427.
- the sixth, pope, elected at Rome, i. 511. Displeases the cardynalls, who choose another pope, 547. Sends bulls to England for the destruction of the Clementyns, 752. Besieged in Peras or Pruce (Perugia), ii. 130. Escapes to Rome, 130. Dies there, 458.
- Utrecht**, the city of. See Dautr, &c.

## V.

- Vaisnell**, Sir Gaaues (Guy) of, taken prisoner by the English at Lyques, i. 477.
- Valcon-eaux**, Mendignes of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Vale**, Sir Beaumont de la (De Laval), taken prisoner by Sir Guy of Granuyll before Eurcux, i. 282.
- the lord de la, treacherously arrested with Sir

- Olyuer of Clysson by the duke of Bretayne, ii. 251. Dissuades the duke from murdering Sir Olyuer, 252.
- Valentyne, Sir Raymonde of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Sir Stephyn, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 106.
- Valeronceaux, Radigo Radiges of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Valery, St., the castle of, taken by the king of Nauere, i. 223. Besieged by the erle of St. Poule, 226. Surrenders, 229. Taken by Sir Hewe of Chastellon, 368.
- Valoys, the lady Jane (Joan) of, concludes a truce between the kings of France and England, i. 84.
- Valuin (Haluin), Sir Josse of, slain before Gaunt, i. 626.
- Vandone (Vendôme), the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Vandos (Vaudemont), the erle of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.
- Vannes, the town of, surrenders to the erle of Mountfort, as duke of Bretayne, i. 89. Taken by storm by the lord Charles of Bloys, 106. Retaken by Sir Robert Dartoys, 115. Taken by Sir Olyuer of Clysson, 115. Besieged by king Edward the third, 116. Surrenders to Sir Bertram of Clesquy, 464.
- Vaqqyre (Walker), one of the leaders of the insurgents in Wat Tyler's rebellion, executed, i. 654.
- Vargyn, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Varlet (Bernecte), Sir John, slain in a skirmish with the men of Gaunt, ii. 2.
- Varley castle, the castle of Werk, *which see*.
- Varuge, Sir Bertram of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 154.
- Vauclinen, the town of, taken by the duke of Burgoyne, i. 486.
- Vaylant, the town of, surrenders to Charles the sixth, king of France, i. 730.
- Vcdegres (Vendegyses), in the Wood, and Vedegres on the Sandes upon the Cynell in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Velton (Felton), Thomas, an English squire, fights with extraordinary bravery at the battle of Ottenboure (Otterbourne), and refusing quarter, is killed, ii. 400.
- Venant, St., Sir Alefant of, taken prisoner at the battle of Nauaret, i. 341.
- Venaunt, taken by the English under the bysshop of Norwich, i. 761.
- Vendueyll, the lord of, taken prisoner at Mauconsell, i. 224.
- Ventadore, the castle of Mount, in Annergue, betrayed to Geoffrey Tetenoyre, i. 545. Besieged by the duke of Berrey, ii. 334. Taken by his forces after a remarkable negociation, 465.
- Verchyn, Sir Gararde of, mortally wounded at Mons, i. 85.
- Sir Loys of, taken prisoner by the English at St. Quynyn, i. 590.
- Sir Richarde of, steward of Heynault, surprises by night the duke of Normandy's forces at Montays, i. 65.
- Verd, count. *See* Sauoy, the erle Couiet of.
- Vergyn (Wargyn) the great and Vergyn the lytell, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.
- Verlayne, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 68.
- Vernaulx (Vervaux), Sir Amye of, taken prisoner by the erle of Heynault in the abbey of Marchiennes, i. 82.
- Vernon, the town of, burned by the English under king Edward the third, i. 150.
- Vernucyll, the town of, taken by the duke of Lancaster, i. 189.
- Versaunt, Lugeres of, slain at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 153.
- Versaux, Sir Mare of, killed at the battle of Juberoth, ii. 107.
- Vertigrieux, in Heynault. *See* Bertynquinnell.
- Vertus (Visconti), Sir Barnabo, treacherously seized and murdered by his nephew, ii. 3.
- Galeas erle of, murders his uncle, Sir Barnabo Vertus, and seizes his estates, ii. 3. Forms an alliance with the great Turk Amorabaquy (Bajazet), 648. [*For other particulars of this personage, see* Myllayne, the duke of.]
- the town of, pillaged and burned by the king of Nauere's forces, i. 227. Taken by Sir Eustace Dambreyeourt, 239. Burned by the erle of Buckingham, 591.
- Vesny (De Wersy), lord Robert, taken prisoner by the English at the battle near Newcastle, i. 166.
- Vien, Sir John, governor of Calais, sent prisoner to England, i. 176.
- Sir John of, admiral of France, commands an expedition to Scotland to invade England, ii. 6. Badly treated by the Scots, 8. Invades England, accompanied by a Scottish army, 22. Returns to France, 32. Sent to the duke of Bretayne, to endeavour to conciliate him to France, 361. Sent on an embassy into Castyle, 414, 420. Killed at the battle of Nycopoly, in Turkey, 670.
- (Vienna), the town of, taken and burned by the Spaniards, i. 530.
- Vienoys, Charles dolphyn of, invested with the duchy of Normandy, i. 186. [*For subsequent particulars of this prince, see* Normandy, Charles duke of, and Charles the fifth, king of France.]
- Viesulle, the lord of, taken prisoner by the freebooters of Almayne (Germany), ii. 413.
- Vietat, Alphons, mayster of the navy of Portyngale, sent to England with a fleet to convey the duke of Lancaster and his army to Portyngale, ii. 156.

Vigo, the town of. See Dyghos.  
 Vincelyns, emperour, &c. See Wynceslaus.  
 Villyers, the begue of, slain at the battle of Nauaret, i. 341.  
 Vire, the town of, in Normandy, taken by the English, i. 370.  
 Volengy, the erle of. See Buckingham, Thomas erle of.  
 Voy (Roye), Sir John of, dies at Segbome, in Castyle, ii. 306.  
 Vyleclope (Villoclope), the town of, in Galyce, taken by the duke of Lancastr, ii. 176.  
 Vyle Franche (Ville-franche), the town of, taken by the erle of Derby, i. 135. Taken by storm by the duke of Normandy, 140. Repossessed by the erle of Derby, 140. Taken by Sir John Chandos, 383.  
 Vyllays, the begue of, erle of Rebydewe (Ribadéo), one of the ministers of Charles the sixth, king of France, arrested by order of the dukes of Berrey and Burgoyne during their regency, ii. 581. Liberated, 583.  
 Vyllers, in Heynault, burned by the duke of Normandy, i. 66.  
 Yrgyn Mary, the, and a great dog miraculously appear to the assistance of the French against the Sarazyns at the siege of Auffyke, ii. 504.

## W.

Wage (Wager), Sir Thomas, and other knights, &c. condemn Sir Hewe Spencer the elder and the erle of Arundell to death at Bristowe, i. 12.  
 Wake, Sir Thomas, seneschall of Rouerne (Rouvergue), defeated by the Gascon lords, i. 365.  
 Wales, the seignory of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 257.  
 Walker. See Vaqure.  
 Wall, John. See Ball, John.  
 Walsyngham, Sir Willam, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge, ii. 399.  
 Walworthe, Sir Nicholas, mayre of London, kills Wat Tyler in Smithfield, i. 650.  
 Warrennes, John of, resigns his preferments in the church and preaches in favour of pope Benedict, ii. 606.  
 Wargyn, in Heynault. See Vergyn.  
 Warre, Sir Pypyn de la, taken prisoner by the English at the battle of Calais, i. 180.  
 Wars, the, between France and England, how caused, i. 2.  
 Warwyke, the erle of, joins the duke of Glocestre in his attempts to excite disturbances, ii. 686. Sent to the Tower, 705. Banished to the isle of Wight, 707. Recalled by the duke of Lancastr, 748.  
 Wenant, St., the lord of, goes to England as a hostage for John, king of France, i. 264.  
 Werk castle, belonging to the erle of Salisbury, besieged by the Scots, i. 97. Taken by the French and razed, ii. 22.

Wersy, lord Robert. See Vesy.  
 Whitaker, Sir Simon. See Houssagre.  
 White-hattes, a desperate faction at Gaunt. [*For their proceedings, see Gaunt, men of, and Lyon, John.*]  
 Wight, the isle of. See Ubygue.  
 Wodney (Bodenay), the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 200.  
 Worsley, Sir Geffray. See Orsell.  
 Wycan (Wykeham), Sir Willyam, appointed bishop of Wynchestre and chancellour of England, i. 364.  
 Wyelfranche. See Vyle Franche.  
 Wyer, Sir Bacho de la, drowned at the taking of the abbey of Marchiennes, i. 82.  
 Wyllemure, Sir John, fights with the duke of Lancastr in Lymoges, and yields himself prisoner to him, i. 423.  
 Wynceslaus (Vyncelyns) the sixth, emperour of Almayne, his election, i. 573. Sends his sister Anne of Behayne (Bohemia) to England, to be married to king Richard the second, 668. Dies at Lusenburgh (Luxembourg), 779.  
 Wyndore castle re-edified by king Edward the third, i. 120. St. George's chapel there built by him, 120. John, king of France, and his son, when prisoners in England, reside there, 211.  
 Wynguy, the erle of. See Joigny.  
 Wysant, Jaques and Peter, their patriotic conduct during the siege of Calais, i. 175.

## X.

Xaintes (Sâintes), the city and castle of, taken by the French, i. 452.  
 Xaynton (Xaintonge), the lands and county of, ceded to Edward the third, king of England, i. 256.  
 ——— the lord of, taken prisoner at the battle of Poycters, i. 202.

## Y.

York, Willyam Neuell, archebyssshop of, dismissed from his office of lord treasurer, with great disgrace, by the commissioners of accounts, ii. 282. Retires to a castle in Brabant with the duke of Ireland, 440.  
 ——— the duke of, [*for previous particulars of this prince, see Cambridge, the erle of*], his creation, ii. 200. Confederates with the duke of Glocestre and others against king Richard the second and his council, 275. Influenced in his opinions by the duke of Glocestre, 644. Withdraws from court, 690. Retires into Wales on the king's arrest, 748.  
 ——— the seneschall of, taken prisoner by the Scots at the battle of Ottenbourge (Otterbourne), ii. 400.  
 Yper or Iper (Ypres), the town of, the inhabitants of, enter into an alliance with the men of Gaunt, i. 566. Turn to the erle of Flaunders, 625. Return to the men of Gaunt, 698. Surrender to

- Charles the sixth, king of France, 729. Besieged by the bysshop of Norwich, 762.
- Yranc, St. (Santarem), the town of, rebels against the king of Castyle, ii. 92. Returns to obedience, 93. Burned by the king of Portyngale, 264.
- Yriell (Yrier), the town of, in Lymoges, taken by Sir Bertram of Clesquy, i. 422.
- Yuan (Evan), Sir, of Wales, his father, Aymon (Edmund), prince of Wales, put to death by Edward the third, king of England, who gives the principality to his own son, i. 444. Complains of his injuries to Charles the fifth, king of France, who gives him a naval command, 444. Defeats the English in the island of Gernsay, 444. Sent to Spayne to solicit assistance from king Henry against
- Rochell, 444. Insults the erle of Pembroke at St. Andrewe, in Galyce, 445. Blockades the town of Rochell, 451. Defeats the captall of Beufz (Buch), before Soubyse, 451. Takes the castle of Soubyse, 452. Besieges Mortayne, 500. Assassinated by his chamberlain, James Laube (Lambe), 520.
- Yuret, the battle of, between the English and the French, i. 494.

## Z.

- Zerecyell (Zuric-see), the town of, in Zelande, refuses to assist in the invasion of England, ii. 218.











0035522984

No. 1

SP 12

1

1

